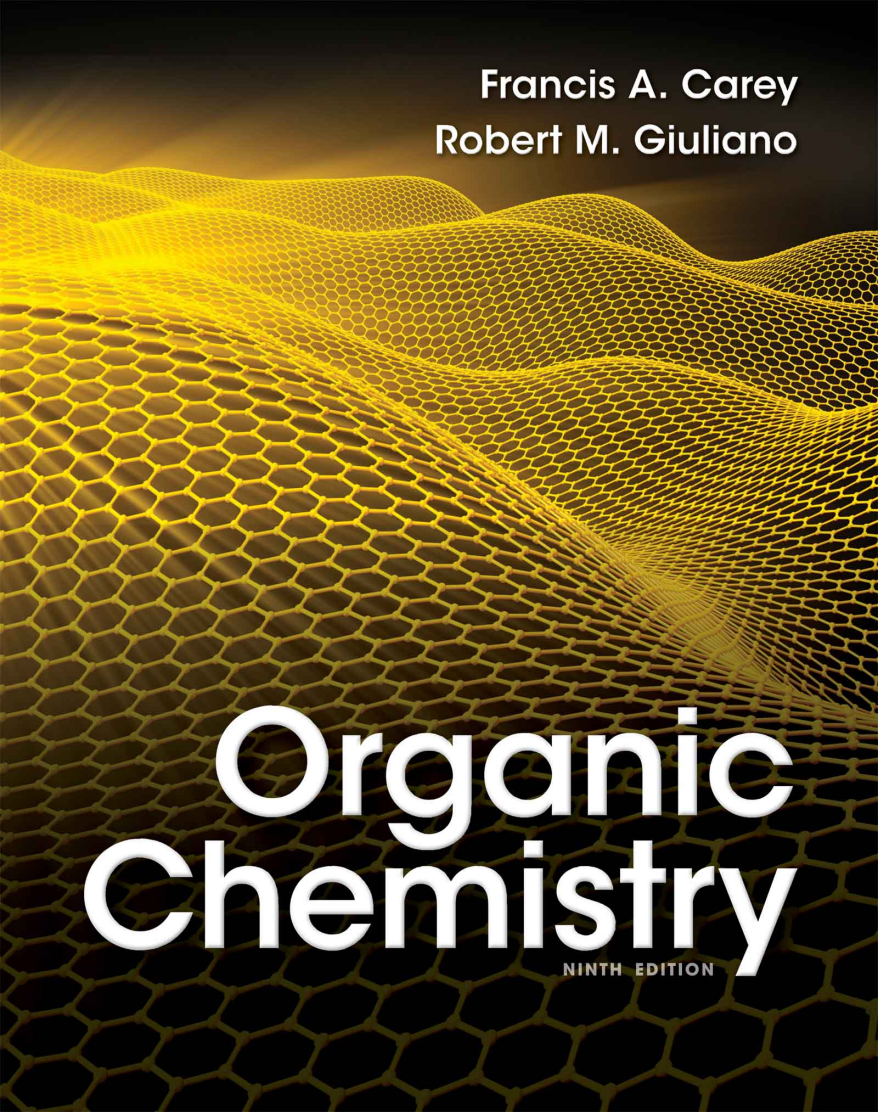
Francis A. Carey
Robert M. Giuliano



Organic Chemistry

NINTH EDITION

Organic Chemistry

NINTH EDITION

Francis A. Carey
University of Virginia

Robert M. Giuliano
Villanova University

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, NINTH EDITION

Published by McGraw-Hill, a business unit of The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., 1221 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. Copyright © 2014 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Previous editions © 2011, 2008, and 2006. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written consent of The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., including, but not limited to, in any network or other electronic storage or transmission, or broadcast for distance learning.

Some ancillaries, including electronic and print components, may not be available to customers outside the United States.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 DOW/DOW 1 0 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

ISBN 978_0_07_340274_1
MHID 0_07_340274_5

Senior Vice President, Products & Markets: *Kurt L. Strand*
Vice President, General Manager, Products & Markets: *Marty Lange*
Vice President, Content Production & Technology Services: *Kimberly Meriwether David*
Managing Director: *Thomas Timp*
Brand Manager: *J. Derek Elgin, Ph.D.*
Director of Development: *Rose Koos*
Senior Development Editor: *Lora Neyens*
Director of Digital Content: *Andrea M. Pellerito, Ph.D.*
Executive Marketing Manager: *Tamara L. Hodge*
Lead Project Manager: *Sheila M. Frank*
Senior Buyer: *Sandy Ludovissy*
Senior Designer: *Laurie B. Janssen*
Cover Design: *Ron Bissell*
Cover Image: *Pasieka/Science Source/Photo Researchers*
Content Licensing Specialist: *John C. Leland*
Media Project Manager: *Laura L. Bies*
Photo Research: *David Tietz/Editorial Image, LLC*
Compositor: *Precision Graphics*
Typeface: *10.5/12 Times LT Std*
Printer: *R. R. Donnelley*

All credits appearing on page or at the end of the book are considered to be an extension of the copyright page.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Cataloging-in-Publication Data has been requested from the Library of Congress.

The Internet addresses listed in the text were accurate at the time of publication. The inclusion of a website does not indicate an endorsement by the authors or McGraw-Hill, and McGraw-Hill does not guarantee the accuracy of the information presented at these sites.

Each of the nine editions of this text has benefited from the individual and collective contributions of the staff at McGraw-Hill. They are the ones who make it all possible. We appreciate their professionalism and thank them for their continuing support.

About the Authors

Prior to retiring in 2000, **Frank Carey**'s career teaching chemistry was spent entirely at the University of Virginia.

In addition to this text, he is coauthor (with Robert C. Atkins) of *Organic Chemistry: A Brief Course* and (with Richard J. Sundberg) of *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, a two-volume treatment designed for graduate students and advanced undergraduates.

Frank and his wife Jill, who is a teacher/director of a preschool and a church organist, are the parents of Andy, Bob, and Bill and the grandparents of Riyad, Ava, Juliana, Miles, and Wynne.

Robert M. Giuliano was born in Altoona, Pennsylvania and attended Penn State (B.S. in chemistry) and the University of Virginia (Ph.D., under the direction of Francis Carey). Following postdoctoral studies with Bert Fraser-Reid at the University of Maryland, he joined the chemistry department faculty of Villanova University in 1982, where he is currently Professor. His research interests are in synthetic organic and carbohydrate chemistry, and in functionalized carbon nanomaterials.

Bob and his wife Margot, an elementary and preschool teacher he met while attending UVa, are the parents of Michael, Ellen, and Christopher and grandparents of Carina and Aurelia.

Brief Contents

List of Important Features xvi
Preface xx
Acknowledgements xxvi

1 Structure Determines Properties 2
2 Alkanes and Cycloalkanes: Introduction to Hydrocarbons 52
3 Alkanes and Cycloalkanes: Conformations and cis–trans Stereoisomers 96
4 Alcohols and Alkyl Halides: Introduction to Reaction Mechanisms 132
5 Structure and Preparation of Alkenes: Elimination Reactions 176
6 Addition Reactions of Alkenes 216
7 Chirality 262
8 Nucleophilic Substitution 306
9 Alkynes 342
10 Conjugation in Alkadienes and Allylic Systems 370
11 Arenes and Aromaticity 406
12 Electrophilic and Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution 456
13 Spectroscopy 510
14 Organometallic Compounds 578
15 Alcohols, Diols, and Thiols 614
16 Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides 650
17 Aldehydes and Ketones: Nucleophilic Addition to the Carbonyl Group 686
18 Carboxylic Acids 736
19 Carboxylic Acid Derivatives: Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution 770
20 Enols and Enolates 820
21 Amines 858
22 Phenols 914
23 Carbohydrates 946
24 Lipids 992
25 Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins 1030
26 Nucleosides, Nucleotides, and Nucleic Acids 1084
27 Synthetic Polymers 1122

Glossary G-1
Credits C-1
Index I-1

This page intentionally left blank

Contents

List of Important Features xvi
Preface xx
Acknowledgements xxvi

CHAPTER 1

Structure Determines Properties 2

1.1 Atoms, Electrons, and Orbitals 2
Organic Chemistry: The Early Days 3
1.2 Ionic Bonds 6
1.3 Covalent Bonds, Lewis Formulas, and the Octet Rule 8
1.4 Double Bonds and Triple Bonds 9
1.5 Polar Covalent Bonds, Electronegativity, and Bond Dipoles 10
Electrostatic Potential Maps 13
1.6 Formal Charge 13
1.7 Structural Formulas of Organic Molecules 15
1.8 Resonance 19
1.9 Sulfur and Phosphorus-Containing Organic Compounds and the Octet Rule 23
1.10 The Shapes of Some Simple Molecules 24
Molecular Models And Modeling 25
1.11 Molecular Dipole Moments 27
1.12 Curved Arrows and Chemical Reactions 28
1.13 Acids and Bases: The Brønsted–Lowry View 30
1.14 How Structure Affects Acid Strength 35
1.15 Acid–Base Equilibria 39
1.16 Lewis Acids and Lewis Bases 41
1.17 **Summary 43**
Problems 46
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 1: Amide Lewis Structural Formulas 51

CHAPTER 2

Alkanes and Cycloalkanes: Introduction to Hydrocarbons 52

2.1 Classes of Hydrocarbons 53
2.2 Electron Waves and Chemical Bonds 53
2.3 Bonding in H_2: The Valence Bond Model 55
2.4 Bonding in H_2: The Molecular Orbital Model 56
2.5 Introduction to Alkanes: Methane, Ethane, and Propane 57
2.6 sp^3 Hybridization and Bonding in Methane 58
Methane and the Biosphere 59
2.7 Bonding in Ethane 61
2.8 sp^2 Hybridization and Bonding in Ethylene 61
2.9 *sp* Hybridization and Bonding in Acetylene 63
2.10 Which Theory of Chemical Bonding Is Best? 64
2.11 Isomeric Alkanes: The Butanes 65
2.12 Higher *n*-Alkanes 66
2.13 The C_5H_{12} Isomers 66
2.14 IUPAC Nomenclature of Unbranched Alkanes 68
2.15 Applying the IUPAC Rules: The Names of the C_6H_{14} Isomers 69
What's in a Name? Organic Nomenclature 70
2.16 Alkyl Groups 72
2.17 IUPAC Names of Highly Branched Alkanes 73
2.18 Cycloalkane Nomenclature 75
2.19 Sources of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes 76
2.20 Physical Properties of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes 77
2.21 Chemical Properties: Combustion of Alkanes 80
Thermochemistry 83
2.22 Oxidation–Reduction in Organic Chemistry 83
2.23 **Summary 86**
Problems 90
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 2: Some Biochemical Reactions of Alkanes 94

CHAPTER 3

Alkanes and Cycloalkanes: Conformations and cis–trans Stereoisomers 96

3.1 Conformational Analysis of Ethane 97
3.2 Conformational Analysis of Butane 101
3.3 Conformations of Higher Alkanes 102
Computational Chemistry: Molecular Mechanics and Quantum Mechanics 103
3.4 The Shapes of Cycloalkanes: Planar or Nonplanar? 104
3.5 Small Rings: Cyclopropane and Cyclobutane 105
3.6 Cyclopentane 106
3.7 Conformations of Cyclohexane 107
3.8 Axial and Equatorial Bonds in Cyclohexane 108
3.9 Conformational Inversion in Cyclohexane 109
3.10 Conformational Analysis of Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes 110
Enthalpy, Free Energy, and Equilibrium Constant 113
3.11 Disubstituted Cycloalkanes: cis–trans Stereoisomers 114
3.12 Conformational Analysis of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes 115

3.13 Medium and Large Rings 119
3.14 Polycyclic Ring Systems 119
3.15 Heterocyclic Compounds 122
3.16 **Summary 123**
Problems 126
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 3: Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates 131

CHAPTER 4

Alcohols and Alkyl Halides: Introduction to Reaction Mechanisms 132

4.1 Functional Groups 133
4.2 IUPAC Nomenclature of Alkyl Halides 134
4.3 IUPAC Nomenclature of Alcohols 135
4.4 Classes of Alcohols and Alkyl Halides 136
4.5 Bonding in Alcohols and Alkyl Halides 136
4.6 Physical Properties of Alcohols and Alkyl Halides: Intermolecular Forces 137
4.7 Preparation of Alkyl Halides from Alcohols and Hydrogen Halides 141
4.8 Reaction of Alcohols with Hydrogen Halides: The S_N1 Mechanism 142
Mechanism 4.1 Formation of *tert*-Butyl Chloride from *tert*-Butyl Alcohol and Hydrogen Chloride 143
4.9 Structure, Bonding, and Stability of Carbocations 149
4.10 Effect of Alcohol Structure on Reaction Rate 152
4.11 Reaction of Methyl and Primary Alcohols with Hydrogen Halides: The S_N2 Mechanism 153
Mechanism 4.2 Formation of 1-Bromoheptane from 1-Heptanol and Hydrogen Bromide 154
4.12 Other Methods for Converting Alcohols to Alkyl Halides 155
4.13 Halogenation of Alkanes 156
4.14 Chlorination of Methane 156
4.15 Structure and Stability of Free Radicals 157
From Bond Enthalpies to Heats of Reaction 161
4.16 Mechanism of Methane Chlorination 161
Mechanism 4.3 Free-Radical Chlorination of Methane 162
4.17 Halogenation of Higher Alkanes 163
4.18 **Summary 167**
Problems 170
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 4: More About Potential Energy Diagrams 174

CHAPTER 5

Structure and Preparation of Alkenes: Elimination Reactions 176

5.1 Alkene Nomenclature 176
5.2 Structure and Bonding in Alkenes 178
Ethylene 179
5.3 Isomerism in Alkenes 180
5.4 Naming Stereoisomeric Alkenes by the *E*–*Z* Notational System 181
5.5 Physical Properties of Alkenes 183
5.6 Relative Stabilities of Alkenes 184
5.7 Cycloalkenes 187
5.8 Preparation of Alkenes: Elimination Reactions 188
5.9 Dehydration of Alcohols 189
5.10 Regioselectivity in Alcohol Dehydration: The Zaitsev Rule 190
5.11 Stereoselectivity in Alcohol Dehydration 191
5.12 The E1 and E2 Mechanisms of Alcohol Dehydration 191
Mechanism 5.1 The E1 Mechanism for Acid-Catalyzed Dehydration of *tert*-Butyl Alcohol 192
5.13 Rearrangements in Alcohol Dehydration 193
Mechanism 5.2 Carbocation Rearrangement in Dehydration of 3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol 194
Mechanism 5.3 Hydride Shift in Dehydration of 1-Butanol 196
5.14 Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides 197
5.15 The E2 Mechanism of Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides 199
Mechanism 5.4 E2 Elimination of 1-Chlorooctadecane 200
5.16 Anti Elimination in E2 Reactions: Stereoelectronic Effects 202
5.17 Isotope Effects and the E2 Mechanism 204
5.18 The E1 Mechanism of Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides 205
Mechanism 5.5 The E1 Mechanism for Dehydrohalogenation of 2-Bromo-2-methylbutane 205
5.19 **Summary 207**
Problems 210
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 5: A Mechanistic Preview of Addition Reactions 215

CHAPTER 6

Addition Reactions of Alkenes 216

6.1 Hydrogenation of Alkenes 216
6.2 Stereochemistry of Alkene Hydrogenation 217
Mechanism 6.1 Hydrogenation of Alkenes 218
6.3 Heats of Hydrogenation 219
6.4 Electrophilic Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Alkenes 221
Mechanism 6.2 Electrophilic Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to 2-Methylpropene 223
Rules, Laws, Theories, and the Scientific Method 225
6.5 Carbocation Rearrangements in Hydrogen Halide Addition to Alkenes 225
6.6 Acid-Catalyzed Hydration of Alkenes 226
Mechanism 6.3 Acid-Catalyzed Hydration of 2-Methylpropene 227
6.7 Thermodynamics of Addition–Elimination Equilibria 228

6.8 Hydroboration–Oxidation of Alkenes 231
6.9 Mechanism of Hydroboration–Oxidation 233
Mechanism 6.4 Hydroboration of 1-Methylcyclopentene 233
Mechanism 6.5 Oxidation of an Organoborane 235
6.10 Addition of Halogens to Alkenes 234
Mechanism 6.6 Bromine Addition to Cyclopentene 237
6.11 Epoxidation of Alkenes 239
Mechanism 6.7 Epoxidation of Bicyclo[2.2.1]-2-heptene 240
6.12 Ozonolysis of Alkenes 241
6.13 Free-Radical Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to Alkenes 242
Mechanism 6.8 Free-Radical Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to 1-Butene 243
6.14 Free-Radical Polymerization of Alkenes 245
Mechanism 6.9 Free-Radical Polymerization of Ethylene 245
6.15 Introduction to Organic Chemical Synthesis: Retrosynthetic Analysis 246
Ethylene and Propene: The Most Important Industrial Organic Chemicals 248
6.16 Summary 249
Problems 252
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 6: Oxymercuration 258

CHAPTER 7

Chirality 262

7.1 Molecular Chirality: Enantiomers 263
7.2 The Chirality Center 265
7.3 Symmetry in Achiral Structures 266
7.4 Optical Activity 268
7.5 Absolute and Relative Configuration 269
7.6 The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R*–*S* Notational System 271
7.7 Fischer Projections 273
7.8 Properties of Enantiomers 275
7.9 The Chirality Axis 276
Chiral Drugs 277
7.10 Reactions That Create a Chirality Center 279
7.11 Chiral Molecules with Two Chirality Centers 282
7.12 Achiral Molecules with Two Chirality Centers 284
Chirality of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes 286
7.13 Molecules with Multiple Chirality Centers 287
7.14 Reactions That Produce Diastereomers 288
7.15 Resolution of Enantiomers 290
7.16 Stereoregular Polymers 293
7.17 Chirality Centers Other Than Carbon 294
7.18 Summary 295
Problems 298
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 7: Prochirality 304

CHAPTER 8

Nucleophilic Substitution 306

8.1 Functional Group Transformation by Nucleophilic Substitution 307
8.2 Relative Reactivity of Halide Leaving Groups 309
8.3 The S_N2 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution 310
Mechanism 8.1 The S_N2 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution 311
8.4 Steric Effects and S_N2 Reaction Rates 313
8.5 Nucleophiles and Nucleophilicity 315
Enzyme-Catalyzed Nucleophilic Substitutions of Alkyl Halides 317
8.6 The S_N1 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution 317
Mechanism 8.2 The S_N1 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution 318
8.7 Stereochemistry of S_N1 Reactions 320
8.8 Carbocation Rearrangements in S_N1 Reactions 321
Mechanism 8.3 Carbocation Rearrangement in the S_N1 Hydrolysis of 2-Bromo-3-methylbutane 322
8.9 Effect of Solvent on the Rate of Nucleophilic Substitution 322
8.10 Substitution and Elimination as Competing Reactions 326
8.11 Nucleophilic Substitution of Alkyl Sulfonates 329
8.12 Nucleophilic Substitution and Retrosynthetic Analysis 332
8.13 Summary 333
Problems 335
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 8: Nucleophilic Substitution 340

CHAPTER 9

Alkynes 342

9.1 Sources of Alkynes 342
9.2 Nomenclature 344
9.3 Physical Properties of Alkynes 344
9.4 Structure and Bonding in Alkynes: *sp* Hybridization 344
9.5 Acidity of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes 347
9.6 Preparation of Alkynes by Alkylation of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes 348
9.7 Preparation of Alkynes by Elimination Reactions 350
9.8 Reactions of Alkynes 352
9.9 Hydrogenation of Alkynes 352
9.10 Metal–Ammonia Reduction of Alkynes 354
9.11 Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Alkynes 354
Mechanism 9.1 Sodium–Ammonia Reduction of an Alkyne 355
9.12 Hydration of Alkynes 357
Mechanism 9.2 Conversion of an Enol to a Ketone 357

9.13 Addition of Halogens to Alkynes 358
Some Things That Can Be Made from Acetylene . . . But Aren't 359
9.14 Ozonolysis of Alkynes 359
9.15 Alkynes in Synthesis and Retrosynthesis 360
9.16 **Summary 361**
Problems 363
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 9: Thinking Mechanistically About Alkynes 368

CHAPTER 10

Conjugation in Alkadienes and Allylic Systems 370

10.1 The Allyl Group 371
10.2 S_N1 and S_N2 Reactions of Allylic Halides 374
Mechanism 10.1 S_N1 Hydrolysis of an Allylic Halide 375
10.3 Allylic Free-Radical Halogenation 377
Mechanism 10.2 Allylic Chlorination of Propene 379
10.4 Allylic Anions 380
10.5 Classes of Dienes: Conjugated and Otherwise 381
10.6 Relative Stabilities of Dienes 382
10.7 Bonding in Conjugated Dienes 383
10.8 Bonding in Allenes 385
10.9 Preparation of Dienes 386
Diene Polymers 387
10.10 Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Conjugated Dienes 388
Mechanism 10.3 Addition of Hydrogen Chloride to 1,3-Cyclopentadiene 388
10.11 Halogen Addition to Dienes 390
10.12 The Diels–Alder Reaction 391
10.13 Retrosynthetic Analysis and the Diels–Alder Reaction 394
10.14 Molecular Orbital Analysis of the Diels–Alder Reaction 395
10.15 **Summary 396**
Problems 398
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 10: Intramolecular and Retro Diels–Alder Reactions 402

CHAPTER 11

Arenes and Aromaticity 406

11.1 Benzene 407
11.2 The Structure of Benzene 407
11.3 The Stability of Benzene 409
11.4 Bonding in Benzene 410
11.5 Substituted Derivatives of Benzene and Their Nomenclature 412
11.6 Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons 414
Fullerenes, Nanotubes, and Graphene 416
11.7 Physical Properties of Arenes 416
11.8 The Benzyl Group 418
11.9 Nucleophilic Substitution in Benzylic Halides 420
11.10 Benzylic Free-Radical Halogenation 422
11.11 Benzylic Anions 423
11.12 Oxidation of Alkylbenzenes 424
11.13 Alkenylbenzenes 426
11.14 Polymerization of Styrene 428
Mechanism 11.1 Free-Radical Polymerization of Styrene 428
11.15 The Birch Reduction 429
Mechanism 11.2 The Birch Reduction 429
11.16 Benzylic Side Chains and Retrosynthetic Analysis 431
11.17 Cyclobutadiene and Cyclooctatetraene 431
11.18 Hückel's Rule 433
11.19 Annulenes 435
11.20 Aromatic Ions 437
11.21 Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds 440
11.22 Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds and Hückel's Rule 442
11.23 **Summary 444**
Problems 448
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 11: The Hammett Equation 453

CHAPTER 12

Electrophilic and Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution 456

12.1 Representative Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions of Benzene 457
12.2 Mechanistic Principles of Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution 458
12.3 Nitration of Benzene 459
Mechanism 12.1 Nitration of Benzene 460
12.4 Sulfonation of Benzene 461
Mechanism 12.2 Sulfonation of Benzene 461
12.5 Halogenation of Benzene 462
Mechanism 12.3 Bromination of Benzene 463
Biosynthetic Halogenation 464
12.6 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation of Benzene 465
Mechanism 12.4 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation 465
12.7 Friedel–Crafts Acylation of Benzene 467
Mechanism 12.5 Friedel–Crafts Acylation 468
12.8 Synthesis of Alkylbenzenes by Acylation–Reduction 469
12.9 Rate and Regioselectivity in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution 470
12.10 Rate and Regioselectivity in the Nitration of Toluene 472
12.11 Rate and Regioselectivity in the Nitration of (Trifluoromethyl)benzene 474
12.12 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Activating Substituents 476
12.13 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Strongly Deactivating Substituents 480
12.14 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Halogens 482

12.15 Multiple Substituent Effects 484
12.16 Retrosynthetic Analysis and the Synthesis of Substituted Benzenes 486
12.17 Substitution in Naphthalene 488
12.18 Substitution in Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds 489
12.19 Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution 490
12.20 The Addition–Elimination Mechanism of Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution 492
Mechanism 12.6 Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution in *p*-Fluoronitrobenzene by the Addition–Elimination Mechanism 493
12.21 Related Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitutions 494
12.22 Summary 496
Problems 500
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 12: Benzyne 507

CHAPTER 13

Spectroscopy 510

13.1 Principles of Molecular Spectroscopy: Electromagnetic Radiation 511
13.2 Principles of Molecular Spectroscopy: Quantized Energy States 512
13.3 Introduction to ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy 512
13.4 Nuclear Shielding and ^{1}H Chemical Shifts 514
13.5 Effects of Molecular Structure on ^{1}H Chemical Shifts 517
Ring Currents: Aromatic and Antiaromatic 522
13.6 Interpreting ^{1}H NMR Spectra 523
13.7 Spin–Spin Splitting and ^{1}H NMR 525
13.8 Splitting Patterns: The Ethyl Group 528
13.9 Splitting Patterns: The Isopropyl Group 529
13.10 Splitting Patterns: Pairs of Doublets 530
13.11 Complex Splitting Patterns 531
13.12 ^{1}H NMR Spectra of Alcohols 534
Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) 535
13.13 NMR and Conformations 535
13.14 ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy 536
13.15 ^{13}C Chemical Shifts 537
13.16 ^{13}C NMR and Peak Intensities 539
13.17 ^{13}C—^{1}H Coupling 541
13.18 Using DEPT to Count Hydrogens 541
13.19 2D NMR: COSY and HETCOR 543
13.20 Introduction to Infrared Spectroscopy 545
Spectra by the Thousands 546
13.21 Infrared Spectra 547
13.22 Characteristic Absorption Frequencies 549
13.23 Ultraviolet-Visible Spectroscopy 553
13.24 Mass Spectrometry 555
13.25 Molecular Formula as a Clue to Structure 560
13.26 Summary 561
Problems 564
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 13: More on Coupling Constants 575

CHAPTER 14

Organometallic Compounds 578

14.1 Organometallic Nomenclature 579
14.2 Carbon–Metal Bonds 579
14.3 Preparation of Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds 581
14.4 Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds as Brønsted Bases 582
14.5 Synthesis of Alcohols Using Grignard and Organolithium Reagents 583
14.6 Synthesis of Acetylenic Alcohols 586
14.7 Retrosynthetic Analysis and Grignard and Organolithium Reagents 586
14.8 An Organozinc Reagent for Cyclopropane Synthesis 587
14.9 Transition-Metal Organometallic Compounds 589
An Organometallic Compound That Occurs Naturally: Coenzyme B_{12} 591
14.10 Organocopper Reagents 592
14.11 Palladium-Catalyzed Cross-Coupling Reactions 595
14.12 Homogeneous Catalytic Hydrogenation 597
Mechanism 14.1 Homogeneous Catalysis of Alkene Hydrogenation 599
14.13 Olefin Metathesis 600
Mechanism 14.2 Olefin Cross-Metathesis 602
14.14 Ziegler–Natta Catalysis of Alkene Polymerization 603
Mechanism 14.3 Polymerization of Ethylene in the Presence of Ziegler–Natta Catalyst 605
14.15 Summary 606
Problems 608
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 14: Cyclobutadiene and (Cyclobutadiene) tricarbonyliron 612

CHAPTER 15

Alcohols, Diols, and Thiols 614

15.1 Sources of Alcohols 615
15.2 Preparation of Alcohols by Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones 617
15.3 Preparation of Alcohols by Reduction of Carboxylic Acids 620
15.4 Preparation of Alcohols from Epoxides 620
15.5 Preparation of Diols 621
15.6 Reactions of Alcohols: A Review and a Preview 623
15.7 Conversion of Alcohols to Ethers 624
Mechanism 15.1 Acid-Catalyzed Formation of Diethyl Ether from Ethyl Alcohol 624
15.8 Esterification 625
15.9 Oxidation of Alcohols 627
15.10 Biological Oxidation of Alcohols 629
Sustainability and Organic Chemistry 630

15.11 Oxidative Cleavage of Vicinal Diols 633
15.12 Thiols 634
15.13 Spectroscopic Analysis of Alcohols and Thiols 637
15.14 **Summary 638**
Problems 641
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 15: The Pinacol Rearrangement 646

CHAPTER 16

Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides 650

16.1 Nomenclature of Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides 650
16.2 Structure and Bonding in Ethers and Epoxides 652
16.3 Physical Properties of Ethers 652
16.4 Crown Ethers 654
16.5 Preparation of Ethers 655
Polyether Antibiotics 656
16.6 The Williamson Ether Synthesis 657
16.7 Reactions of Ethers: A Review and a Preview 658
16.8 Acid-Catalyzed Cleavage of Ethers 659
Mechanism 16.1 Cleavage of Ethers by Hydrogen Halides 660
16.9 Preparation of Epoxides 660
16.10 Conversion of Vicinal Halohydrins to Epoxides 661
16.11 Reactions of Epoxides with Anionic Nucleophiles 662
Mechanism 16.2 Nucleophilic Ring-Opening of an Epoxide 664
16.12 Acid-Catalyzed Ring Opening of Epoxides 665
Mechanism 16.3 Acid-Catalyzed Ring Opening of an Epoxide 666
16.13 Epoxides in Biological Processes 667
16.14 Preparation of Sulfides 667
16.15 Oxidation of Sulfides: Sulfoxides and Sulfones 668
16.16 Alkylation of Sulfides: Sulfonium Salts 669
16.17 Spectroscopic Analysis of Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides 670
16.18 **Summary 672**
Problems 675
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 16: Epoxide Rearrangements and the NIH Shift 682

CHAPTER 17

Aldehydes and Ketones: Nucleophilic Addition to the Carbonyl Group 686

17.1 Nomenclature 687
17.2 Structure and Bonding: The Carbonyl Group 689
17.3 Physical Properties 691
17.4 Sources of Aldehydes and Ketones 691
17.5 Reactions of Aldehydes and Ketones: A Review and a Preview 695
17.6 Principles of Nucleophilic Addition: Hydration of Aldehydes and Ketones 696
Mechanism 17.1 Hydration of an Aldehyde or Ketone in Basic Solution 699
Mechanism 17.2 Hydration of an Aldehyde or Ketone in Acid Solution 700
17.7 Cyanohydrin Formation 700
Mechanism 17.3 Cyanohydrin Formation 701
17.8 Reaction with Alcohols: Acetals and Ketals 703
Mechanism 17.4 Acetal Formation from Benzaldehyde and Ethanol 705
17.9 Acetals and Ketals as Protecting Groups 706
17.10 Reaction with Primary Amines: Imines 707
Mechanism 17.5 Imine Formation from Benzaldehyde and Methylamine 709
Imines in Biological Chemistry 710
17.11 Reaction with Secondary Amines: Enamines 712
Mechanism 17.6 Enamine Formation 713
17.12 The Wittig Reaction 714
17.13 Stereoselective Addition to Carbonyl Groups 716
17.14 Oxidation of Aldehydes 718
17.15 Spectroscopic Analysis of Aldehydes and Ketones 718
17.16 **Summary 721**
Problems 724
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 17: The Baeyer–Villiger Oxidation 732

CHAPTER 18

Carboxylic Acids 736

18.1 Carboxylic Acid Nomenclature 737
18.2 Structure and Bonding 739
18.3 Physical Properties 739
18.4 Acidity of Carboxylic Acids 740
18.5 Substituents and Acid Strength 742
18.6 Ionization of Substituted Benzoic Acids 744
18.7 Salts of Carboxylic Acids 745
18.8 Dicarboxylic Acids 747
18.9 Carbonic Acid 748
18.10 Sources of Carboxylic Acids 749
18.11 Synthesis of Carboxylic Acids by the Carboxylation of Grignard Reagents 751
18.12 Synthesis of Carboxylic Acids by the Preparation and Hydrolysis of Nitriles 752
18.13 Reactions of Carboxylic Acids: A Review and a Preview 753
18.14 Mechanism of Acid-Catalyzed Esterification 754
Mechanism 18.1 Acid-Catalyzed Esterification of Benzoic Acid with Methanol 754
18.15 Intramolecular Ester Formation: Lactones 757
18.16 Decarboxylation of Malonic Acid and Related Compounds 758
18.17 Spectroscopic Analysis of Carboxylic Acids 760
18.18 **Summary 761**
Problems 763
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 18: Lactonization Methods 768

CHAPTER 19

Carboxylic Acid Derivatives: Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution 770

19.1 Nomenclature of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 771
19.2 Structure and Reactivity of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 772
19.3 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanisms 775
19.4 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in Acyl Chlorides 776
19.5 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in Acid Anhydrides 778
Mechanism 19.1 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in an Anhydride 780
19.6 Physical Properties and Sources of Esters 780
19.7 Reactions of Esters: A Preview 781
19.8 Acid-Catalyzed Ester Hydrolysis 783
Mechanism 19.2 Acid-Catalyzed Ester Hydrolysis 784
19.9 Ester Hydrolysis in Base: Saponification 786
Mechanism 19.3 Ester Hydrolysis in Basic Solution 789
19.10 Reaction of Esters with Ammonia and Amines 790
19.11 Reaction of Esters with Grignard and Organolithium Reagents and Lithium Aluminum Hydride 791
19.12 Amides 792
19.13 Hydrolysis of Amides 796
Mechanism 19.4 Amide Hydrolysis in Acid Solution 797
Mechanism 19.5 Amide Hydrolysis in Basic Solution 799
19.14 Lactams 800
β-Lactam Antibiotics 800
19.15 Preparation of Nitriles 802
19.16 Hydrolysis of Nitriles 803
Mechanism 19.6 Nitrile Hydrolysis in Basic Solution 804
19.17 Addition of Grignard Reagents to Nitriles 805
19.18 Spectroscopic Analysis of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 805
19.19 **Summary 807**
Problems 810
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 19: Thioesters 816

CHAPTER 20

Enols and Enolates 820

20.1 Enol Content and Enolization 821
Mechanism 20.1 Acid-Catalyzed Enolization of 2-Methylpropanal 823
20.2 Enolates 824
20.3 The Aldol Condensation 828
Mechanism 20.2 Aldol Addition of Butanal 828
20.4 Mixed and Directed Aldol Reactions 831
Chalcones as Aromatase Inhibitors: From the Mulberry Tree to Cancer Chemotherapy 832
20.5 Acylation of Enolates: The Claisen and Related Condensations 833
Mechanism 20.3 Claisen Condensation of Ethyl Propanoate 834
20.6 Alkylation of Enolates: The Acetoacetic Ester and Malonic Ester Syntheses 837
20.7 The Haloform Reaction 840
The Haloform Reaction and the Biosynthesis of Trihalomethanes 841
Mechanism 20.4 The Haloform Reaction 842
20.8 Conjugation Effects in α,β-Unsaturated Aldehydes and Ketones 843
20.9 **Summary 847**
Problems 849
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 20: The Enolate Chemistry of Dianions 855

CHAPTER 21

Amines 858

21.1 Amine Nomenclature 859
21.2 Structure and Bonding 860
21.3 Physical Properties 862
21.4 Basicity of Amines 863
Amines as Natural Products 868
21.5 Tetraalkylammonium Salts as Phase-Transfer Catalysts 869
21.6 Reactions That Lead to Amines: A Review and a Preview 870
21.7 Preparation of Amines by Alkylation of Ammonia 872
21.8 The Gabriel Synthesis of Primary Alkylamines 873
21.9 Preparation of Amines by Reduction 874
Mechanism 21.1 Lithium Aluminum Hydride Reduction of an Amide 877
21.10 Reductive Amination 878
21.11 Reactions of Amines: A Review and a Preview 879
21.12 Reaction of Amines with Alkyl Halides 881
21.13 The Hofmann Elimination 881
21.14 Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution in Arylamines 883
21.15 Nitrosation of Alkylamines 885
21.16 Nitrosation of Arylamines 887
21.17 Synthetic Transformations of Aryl Diazonium Salts 888
21.18 Azo Coupling 891
From Dyes to Sulfa Drugs 892
21.19 Spectroscopic Analysis of Amines 894
21.20 **Summary 896**
Problems 902
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 21: Synthetic Applications of Enamines 910

CHAPTER 22

Phenols 914

22.1 Nomenclature 914
22.2 Structure and Bonding 916
22.3 Physical Properties 916
22.4 Acidity of Phenols 917
22.5 Substituent Effects on the Acidity of Phenols 918
22.6 Sources of Phenols 919
22.7 Naturally Occurring Phenols 920
22.8 Reactions of Phenols: Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution 921
22.9 Acylation of Phenols 923
22.10 Carboxylation of Phenols: Aspirin and the Kolbe–Schmitt Reaction 925
22.11 Preparation of Aryl Ethers 926
James Bond, Oxidative Stress, and Antioxidant Phenols 928
22.12 Cleavage of Aryl Ethers by Hydrogen Halides 930
22.13 Claisen Rearrangement of Allyl Aryl Ethers 931
22.14 Oxidation of Phenols: Quinones 932
22.15 Spectroscopic Analysis of Phenols 933
22.16 **Summary 935**
Problems 937
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 22: Directed Metalation of Aryl Ethers 943

CHAPTER 23

Carbohydrates 946

23.1 Classification of Carbohydrates 947
23.2 Fischer Projections and D,L Notation 948
23.3 The Aldotetroses 949
23.4 Aldopentoses and Aldohexoses 950
23.5 A Mnemonic for Carbohydrate Configurations 952
23.6 Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates: Furanose Forms 952
23.7 Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates: Pyranose Forms 956
23.8 Mutarotation 958
Mechanism 23.1 Acid-Catalyzed Mutarotation of D-Glucopyranose 959
23.9 Carbohydrate Conformation: The Anomeric Effect 960
23.10 Ketoses 962
23.11 Deoxy Sugars 963
23.12 Amino Sugars 964
23.13 Branched-Chain Carbohydrates 965
23.14 Glycosides: The Fischer Glycosidation 965
Mechanism 23.2 Preparation of Methyl D-Glucopyranosides by Fischer Glycosidation 967
23.15 Disaccharides 969
23.16 Polysaccharides 971
How Sweet It Is! 972
23.17 Application of Familiar Reactions to Monosaccharides 973
23.18 Oxidation of Monosaccharides 976
23.19 Glycosides: Synthesis of Oligosaccharides 978
Mechanism 23.3 Silver-Assisted Glycosidation 980
23.20 Glycobiology 981
23.22 **Summary 983**
Problems 984
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 23: Emil Fischer and the Structure of (+)-Glucose 989

CHAPTER 24

Lipids 992

24.1 Acetyl Coenzyme A 993
24.2 Fats, Oils, and Fatty Acids 994
24.3 Fatty Acid Biosynthesis 997
24.4 Phospholipids 999
24.5 Waxes 1001
24.6 Prostaglandins 1002
Nonsteroidal Antiinflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs) and COX-2 Inhibitors 1004
24.7 Terpenes: The Isoprene Rule 1005
24.8 Isopentenyl Diphosphate: The Biological Isoprene Unit 1008
24.9 Carbon–Carbon Bond Formation in Terpene Biosynthesis 1008
24.10 The Pathway from Acetate to Isopentenyl Diphosphate 1011
24.11 Steroids: Cholesterol 1013
Mechanism 24.1 Biosynthesis of Cholesterol from Squalene 1015
24.12 Vitamin D 1016
Good Cholesterol? Bad Cholesterol? What's the Difference? 1016
24.13 Bile Acids 1017
24.14 Corticosteroids 1017
24.15 Sex Hormones 1018
24.16 Carotenoids 1019
Crocuses Make Saffron from Carotenes 1020
24.17 **Summary 1021**
Problems 1022
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 24: Polyketides 1027

CHAPTER 25

Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins 1030

25.1 Classification of Amino Acids 1031
25.2 Stereochemistry of Amino Acids 1035
25.3 Acid–Base Behavior of Amino Acids 1036
Electrophoresis 1039

25.4 Synthesis of Amino Acids 1040
25.5 Reactions of Amino Acids 1041
25.6 Some Biochemical Reactions of Amino Acids 1043
Mechanism 25.1 Pyridoxal 5′-Phosphate-Mediated Decarboxylation of an α-Amino Acid 1044
Mechanism 25.2 Transamination: Biosynthesis of L-Alanine from L-Glutamic Acid and Pyruvic Acid 1047
25.7 Peptides 1049
25.8 Introduction to Peptide Structure Determination 1052
25.9 Amino Acid Analysis 1052
25.10 Partial Hydrolysis and End Group Analysis 1053
25.11 Insulin 1055
25.12 Edman Degradation and Automated Sequencing of Peptides 1056
Mechanism 25.3 The Edman Degradation 1057
Peptide Mapping and MALDI Mass Spectrometry 1058
25.13 The Strategy of Peptide Synthesis 1059
25.14 Amino and Carboxyl Group Protection and Deprotection 1060
25.15 Peptide Bond Formation 1061
Mechanism 25.4 Amide Bond Formation Between a Carboxylic Acid and an Amine Using *N,N*′-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide 1063
25.16 Solid-Phase Peptide Synthesis: The Merrifield Method 1064
25.17 Secondary Structures of Peptides and Proteins 1066
25.18 Tertiary Structure of Polypeptides and Proteins 1069
Mechanism 25.5 Carboxypeptidase-Catalyzed Hydrolysis 1072
25.19 Coenzymes 1073
Oh NO! It's Inorganic! 1074
25.20 Protein Quaternary Structure: Hemoglobin 1074
25.21 G-Coupled Protein Receptors 1075
25.22 **Summary 1076**
Problems 1078
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 25: Amino Acids in Enantioselective Synthesis 1081

CHAPTER 26

Nucleosides, Nucleotides, and Nucleic Acids 1084

26.1 Pyrimidines and Purines 1085
26.2 Nucleosides 1088
26.3 Nucleotides 1090
26.4 Bioenergetics 1091
26.5 ATP and Bioenergetics 1092
26.6 Phosphodiesters, Oligonucleotides, and Polynucleotides 1094
26.7 Nucleic Acids 1095
26.8 Secondary Structure of DNA: The Double Helix 1096
It Has Not Escaped Our Notice… 1096
26.9 Tertiary Structure of DNA: Supercoils 1098
26.10 Replication of DNA 1100
26.11 Ribonucleic Acids 1102
26.12 Protein Biosynthesis 1104
26.13 AIDS 1105
26.14 DNA Sequencing 1106
26.15 The Human Genome Project 1108
26.16 DNA Profiling and the Polymerase Chain Reaction 1108
26.17 Recombinant DNA Technology 1111
26.18 **Summary 1112**
Problems 1115
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 26: Oligonucleotide Synthesis 1117

CHAPTER 27

Synthetic Polymers 1122

27.1 Some Background 1122
27.2 Polymer Nomenclature 1123
27.3 Classification of Polymers: Reaction Type 1124
27.4 Classification of Polymers: Chain Growth and Step Growth 1126
27.5 Classification of Polymers: Structure 1127
27.6 Classification of Polymers: Properties 1130
27.7 Addition Polymers: A Review and a Preview 1130
27.8 Chain Branching in Free-Radical Polymerization 1133
Mechanism 27.1 Branching in Polyethylene Caused by Intramolecular Hydrogen Transfer 1134
Mechanism 27.2 Branching in Polyethylene Caused by Intermolecular Hydrogen Transfer 1135
27.9 Anionic Polymerization: Living Polymers 1135
Mechanism 27.3 Anionic Polymerization of Styrene 1136
27.10 Cationic Polymerization 1137
Mechanism 27.4 Cationic Polymerization of 2-Methylpropene 1138
27.11 Polyamides 1139
27.12 Polyesters 1140
27.13 Polycarbonates 1141
27.14 Polyurethanes 1141
27.15 Copolymers 1142
Conducting Polymers 1144
27.16 **Summary 1145**
Problems 1148
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 27: Chemically Modified Polymers 1149

Glossary G-1
Credits C-1
Index I-1

List of Important Features

Mechanisms

4.1 Formation of *tert*-Butyl Chloride from *tert*-Butyl Alcohol and Hydrogen Chloride 143
4.2 Formation of 1-Bromoheptane from 1-Heptanol and Hydrogen Bromide 154
4.3 Free-Radical Chlorination of Methane 162
5.1 The E1 Mechanism for Acid-Catalyzed Dehydration of *tert*-Butyl Alcohol 192
5.2 Carbocation Rearrangement in Dehydration of 3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol 194
5.3 Hydride Shift in Dehydration of 1-Butanol 196
5.4 E2 Elimination of 1-Chlorooctadecane 200
5.5 The E1 Mechanism for Dehydrohalogenation of 2-Bromo-2-methylbutane 205
6.1 Hydrogenation of Alkenes 218
6.2 Electrophilic Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to 2-Methylpropene 223
6.3 Acid-Catalyzed Hydration of 2-Methylpropene 227
6.4 Hydroboration of 1-Methylcyclopentene 233
6.5 Oxidation of an Organoborane 235
6.6 Bromine Addition to Cyclopentene 237
6.7 Epoxidation of Bicyclo[2.2.1]-2-heptene 240
6.8 Free-Radical Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to 1-Butene 243
6.9 Free-Radical Polymerization of Ethylene 245
8.1 The S_N2 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution 311
8.2 The S_N1 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution 318
8.3 Carbocation Rearrangement in the S_N1 Hydrolysis of 2-Bromo-3-methylbutane 322
9.1 Sodium–Ammonia Reduction of an Alkyne 355
9.2 Conversion of an Enol to a Ketone 357
10.1 S_N1 Hydrolysis of an Allylic Halide 375
10.2 Allylic Chlorination of Propene 379
10.3 Addition of Hydrogen Chloride to 1,3-Cyclopentadiene 388
11.1 Free-Radical Polymerization of Styrene 428
11.2 The Birch Reduction 429
12.1 Nitration of Benzene 460
12.2 Sulfonation of Benzene 461
12.3 Bromination of Benzene 463
12.4 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation 465
12.5 Friedel–Crafts Acylation 468
12.6 Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution in *p*-Fluoronitrobenzene by the Addition–Elimination Mechanism 493
14.1 Homogeneous Catalysis of Alkene Hydrogenation 599
14.2 Olefin Cross-Metathesis 602
14.3 Polymerization of Ethylene in the Presence of Ziegler–Natta Catalyst 605
15.1 Acid-Catalyzed Formation of Diethyl Ether from Ethyl Alcohol 624
16.1 Cleavage of Ethers by Hydrogen Halides 660
16.2 Nucleophilic Ring-Opening of an Epoxide 664
16.3 Acid-Catalyzed Ring Opening of an Epoxide 666
17.1 Hydration of an Aldehyde or Ketone in Basic Solution 699
17.2 Hydration of an Aldehyde or Ketone in Acid Solution 700
17.3 Cyanohydrin Formation 701
17.4 Acetal Formation from Benzaldehyde and Ethanol 705
17.5 Imine Formation from Benzaldehyde and Methylamine 709
17.6 Enamine Formation 713
18.1 Acid-Catalyzed Esterification of Benzoic Acid with Methanol 754
19.1 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in an Anhydride 780
19.2 Acid-Catalyzed Ester Hydrolysis 784
19.3 Ester Hydrolysis in Basic Solution 789
19.4 Amide Hydrolysis in Acid Solution 797
19.5 Amide Hydrolysis in Basic Solution 799
19.6 Nitrile Hydrolysis in Basic Solution 804
20.1 Acid-Catalyzed Enolization of 2-Methylpropanal 823
20.2 Aldol Addition of Butanal 828
20.3 Claisen Condensation of Ethyl Propanoate 834
20.4 The Haloform Reaction 842
21.1 Lithium Aluminum Hydride Reduction of an Amide 877
23.1 Acid-Catalyzed Mutarotation of D-Glucopyranose 959
23.2 Preparation of Methyl D-Glucopyranosides by Fischer Glycosidation 967
23.3 Silver-Assisted Glycosidation 980
24.1 Biosynthesis of Cholesterol from Squalene 1015
25.1 Pyridoxal 5′-Phosphate-Mediated Decarboxylation of an α-Amino Acid 1044
25.2 Transamination: Biosynthesis of L-Alanine from L-Glutamic Acid and Pyruvic Acid 1047
25.3 The Edman Degradation 1057
25.4 Amide Bond Formation Between a Carboxylic Acid and an Amine Using *N,N*′-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide 1063
25.5 Carboxypeptidase-Catalyzed Hydrolysis 1072
27.1 Branching in Polyethylene Caused by Intramolecular Hydrogen Transfer 1134
27.2 Branching in Polyethylene Caused by Intermolecular Hydrogen Transfer 1135
27.3 Anionic Polymerization of Styrene 1136
27.4 Cationic Polymerization of 2-Methylpropene 1138

Tables

1.1 Electron Configurations of the First Twelve Elements of the Periodic Table 5
1.2 Lewis Formulas of Methane, Ammonia, Water, and Hydrogen Fluoride 9
1.3 Selected Values from the Pauling Electronegativity Scale 11
1.4 Selected Bond Dipole Moments 12
1.5 A Systematic Approach to Writing Lewis Formulas 16
1.6 Introduction to the Rules of Resonance 21
1.7 VSEPR and Molecular Geometry 24
1.8 Acidity Constants (pK_a) of Acids 33
2.1 The Number of Constitutionally Isomeric Alkanes of Particular Molecular Formulas 67
2.2 IUPAC Names of Unbranched Alkanes 69
2.3 Heats of Combustion ($-\Delta H°$) of Representative Alkanes 81
2.4 Oxidation Number of Carbon in One-Carbon Compounds 84
2.5 Summary of IUPAC Nomenclature of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes 88
2.6 Summary of IUPAC Nomenclature of Alkyl Groups 89
3.1 Heats of Combustion ($-\Delta H°$) of Cycloalkanes 105
3.2 Heats of Combustion of Isomeric Dimethylcyclohexanes 115
4.1 Functional Groups in Some Important Classes of Organic Compounds 134
4.2 Boiling Point of Some Alkyl Halides and Alcohols 139
4.3 Some Bond Dissociation Enthalpies 159
4.4 Conversions of Alcohols and Alkanes to Alkyl Halides 169
5.1 Cahn–Ingold–Prelog Priority Rules 182
5.2 Preparation of Alkenes by Elimination Reactions of Alcohols and Alkyl Halides 209
6.1 Heats of Hydrogenation of Some Alkenes 220
6.2 Some Compounds with Carbon–Carbon Double Bonds Used to Prepare Polymers 247
6.3 Addition Reactions of Alkenes 250
7.1 Absolute Configuration According to the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog Notational System 271
7.2 Classification of Isomers 295
8.1 Functional Group Transformation via Nucleophilic Substitution 307
8.2 Nucleophilicity of Some Common Nucleophiles 316
8.3 Properties of Some Solvents Used in Nucleophilic Substitution 323
8.4 Relative Rate of S_N2 Displacement of 1-Bromobutane by Azide in Various Solvents 324
8.5 Relative Rate of S_N1 Solvolysis of *tert*-Butyl Chloride as a Function of Solvent Polarity 325
8.6 Approximate Relative Leaving-Group Abilities 329
8.7 Comparison of S_N1 and S_N2 Mechanisms of Nucleophilic Substitution in Alkyl Halides 334
9.1 Structural Features of Ethane, Ethylene, and Acetylene 346
9.2 Preparation of Alkynes 362
9.3 Conversion of Alkynes to Alkenes and Alkanes 363
9.4 Electrophilic Addition to Alkynes 364
11.1 Names of Some Frequently Encountered Derivatives of Benzene 412
11.2 Reactions Involving Alkyl and Alkenyl Side Chains in Arenes and Arene Derivatives 446
12.1 Representative Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions of Benzene 457
12.2 Classification of Substituents in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions 477
12.3 Representative Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions 497
12.4 Limitations on Friedel–Crafts Reactions 498
13.1 Splitting Patterns of Common Multiplets 529
13.2 Chemical Shifts of Representative Carbons 538
13.3 Infrared Absorption Frequencies of Some Common Structural Units 552
13.4 Absorption Maxima of Some Representative Alkenes and Polyenes 554
13.5 Approximate Values of Proton Coupling Constants (in Hz) 575
14.1 Reactions of Grignard Reagents with Aldehydes and Ketones 585
15.1 Reactions Discussed in Earlier Chapters That Yield Alcohols 616
15.2 Reactions of Alcohols Discussed in Earlier Chapters 623
15.3 Preparation of Alcohols by Reduction of Carbonyl Functional Groups 639
15.4 Reactions of Alcohols Presented in This Chapter 640
15.5 Oxidation of Alcohols 641
16.1 Physical Properties of Diethyl Ether, Pentane, and 1-Butanol 653
16.2 Preparation of Ethers and Epoxides 674
17.1 Summary of Reactions Discussed in Earlier Chapters That Yield Aldehydes and Ketones 693
17.2 Summary of Reactions of Aldehydes and Ketones Discussed in Earlier Chapters 695
17.3 Equilibrium Constants (K_{hydr}) and Relative Rates of Hydration of Some Aldehydes and Ketones 696
17.4 Reactions of Aldehydes and Ketones with Derivatives of Ammonia 712
17.5 Nucleophilic Addition to Aldehydes and Ketones 722
18.1 Systematic and Common Names of Some Carboxylic Acids 738
18.2 Effect of Substituents on Acidity of Carboxylic Acids 743
18.3 Acidity of Some Substituted Benzoic Acids 745
18.4 Summary of Reactions Discussed in Earlier Chapters That Yield Carboxylic Acids 750
18.5 Summary of Reactions of Carboxylic Acids Discussed in Earlier Chapters 753
19.1 Conversion of Acyl Chlorides to Other Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 777
19.2 Conversion of Acid Anhydrides to Other Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 779
19.3 Preparation of Esters 782
19.4 Conversion of Esters to Other Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 783
19.5 Intermolecular Forces in Amides 793
19.6 Preparation of Nitriles 802

20.1 Enolization Equilibria (keto ⇌ enol) of Some Carbonyl Compounds 821
20.2 pK_a Values of Some Aldehydes, Ketones, and Esters 825
21.1 Basicity of Amines As Measured by the pK_a of Their Conjugate Acids 864
21.2 Effect of para Substituents on the Basicity of Aniline 865
21.3 Methods for Carbon–Nitrogen Bond Formation Discussed in Earlier Chapters 871
21.4 Reactions of Amines Discussed in Previous Chapters 880
21.5 Preparation of Amines 897
21.6 Reactions of Amines Discussed in This Chapter 898
21.7 Synthetically Useful Transformations Involving Aryl Diazonium Ions (Section 21.17) 900
22.1 Comparison of Physical Properties of an Arene, a Phenol, and an Aryl Halide 917
22.2 Acidities of Some Phenols 918
22.3 Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions of Phenols 922
23.1 Some Classes of Monosaccharides 947
23.2 Familiar Reaction Types of Carbohydrates 974
24.1 Some Representative Fatty Acids 995
24.2 Classification of Terpenes 1006
25.1 The Standard Amino Acids 1032
25.2 Acid–Base Properties of Amino Acids with Neutral Side Chains 1037
25.3 Acid–Base Properties of Amino Acids with Ionizable Side Chains 1038
25.4 Covalent and Noncovalent Interactions Between Amino Acid Side Chains in Proteins 1070
26.1 Pyrimidines and Purines That Occur in DNA and/or RNA 1087
26.2 The Major Pyrimidine and Purine Nucleosides in RNA and DNA 1089
26.3 $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ for the Hydrolysis of Bioenergetically Important Phosphates 1093
26.4 The Genetic Code (Messenger RNA Codons) 1103
26.5 Distribution of DNAs with Increasing Number of PCR Cycles 1111
27.1 Recycling of Plastics 1129
27.2 Summary of Alkene Polymerizations Discussed in Earlier Chapters 1131

Boxed Essays

Chapter 1
Organic Chemistry: The Early Days 3
Electrostatic Potential Maps 13
Molecular Models And Modeling 25

Chapter 2
Methane and the Biosphere 59
What's in a Name? Organic Nomenclature 70
Thermochemistry 83

Chapter 3
Computational Chemistry: Molecular Mechanics and Quantum Mechanics 103
Enthalpy, Free Energy, and Equilibrium Constant 113

Chapter 4
From Bond Enthalpies to Heats of Reaction 161

Chapter 5
Ethylene 179

Chapter 6
Rules, Laws, Theories, and the Scientific Method 225
Ethylene and Propene: The Most Important Industrial Organic Chemicals 248

Chapter 7
Chiral Drugs 277
Chirality of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes 286

Chapter 8
Enzyme-Catalyzed Nucleophilic Substitutions of Alkyl Halides 317

Chapter 9
Some Things That Can Be Made from Acetylene . . . But Aren't 359

Chapter 10
Diene Polymers 387

Chapter 11
Fullerenes, Nanotubes, and Graphene 416

Chapter 12
Biosynthetic Halogenation 464

Chapter 13
Ring Currents: Aromatic and Antiaromatic 522
Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) 535
Spectra by the Thousands 546

Chapter 14
An Organometallic Compound That Occurs Naturally: Coenzyme B_{12} 591

Chapter 15
Sustainability and Organic Chemistry 630

Chapter 16
Polyether Antibiotics 656

Chapter 17
Imines in Biological Chemistry 710

Chapter 19
β-Lactam Antibiotics 800

Chapter 20
Chalcones as Aromatase Inhibitors: From the Mulberry Tree to Cancer Chemotherapy 832
The Haloform Reaction and the Biosynthesis of Trihalomethanes 841

Chapter 21
Amines as Natural Products 868
From Dyes to Sulfa Drugs 892

Chapter 22
James Bond, Oxidative Stress, and Antioxidant Phenols 928

Chapter 23
How Sweet It Is! 972

Chapter 24
Nonsteroidal Antiinflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs) and COX-2 Inhibitors 1004
Good Cholesterol? Bad Cholesterol? What's the Difference? 1016
Crocuses Make Saffron from Carotenes 1020

Chapter 25
Electrophoresis 1039
Peptide Mapping and MALDI Mass Spectrometry 1058
Oh NO! It's Inorganic! 1074

Chapter 26
It Has Not Escaped Our Notice... 1096

Chapter 27
Conducting Polymers 1144

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems

Chapter 1
Amide Lewis Structural Formulas 51

Chapter 2
Some Biochemical Reactions of Alkanes 94

Chapter 3
Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates 131

Chapter 4
More About Potential Energy Diagrams 174

Chapter 5
A Mechanistic Preview of Addition Reactions 215

Chapter 6
Oxymercuration 258

Chapter 7
Prochirality 304

Chapter 8
Nucleophilic Substitution 340

Chapter 9
Thinking Mechanistically About Alkynes 368

Chapter 10
Intramolecular and Retro Diels–Alder Reactions 402

Chapter 11
The Hammett Equation 453

Chapter 12
Benzyne 507

Chapter 13
More on Coupling Constants 575

Chapter 14
Cyclobutadiene and (Cyclobutadiene)tricarbonyliron 612

Chapter 15
The Pinacol Rearrangement 646

Chapter 16
Epoxide Rearrangements and the NIH Shift 682

Chapter 17
The Baeyer–Villiger Oxidation 732

Chapter 18
Lactonization Methods 768

Chapter 19
Thioesters 816

Chapter 20
The Enolate Chemistry of Dianions 855

Chapter 21
Synthetic Applications of Enamines 910

Chapter 22
Directed Metalation of Aryl Ethers 943

Chapter 23
Emil Fischer and the Structure of (+)-Glucose 989

Chapter 24
Polyketides 1027

Chapter 25
Amino Acids in Enantioselective Synthesis 1081

Chapter 26
Oligonucleotide Synthesis 1117

Chapter 27
Chemically Modified Polymers 1149

Preface

It's different now.

What's different?

How we read, share information, and learn. That's what's different. All of these things are more visual, more graphical than before.

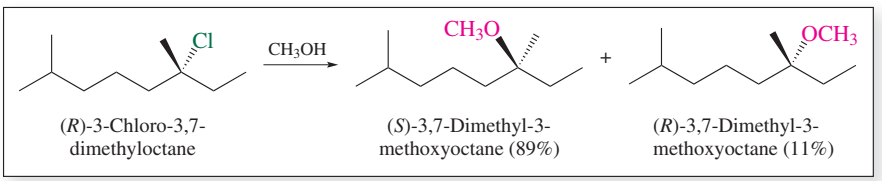
And so is this book.

Reading and Seeing

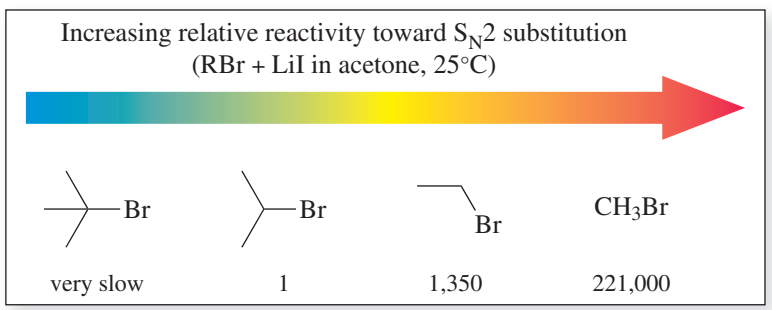
The central message of chemistry is that the properties of a substance come from its structure. What is less obvious, but very powerful, is that someone with training in chemistry can look at the structure of a substance and tell you a lot about its properties. Organic chemistry has always been, and continues to be, the branch of chemistry that best connects structure with properties.

The goal of this text, as it has been through eight previous editions, is to provide students with the conceptual tools to understand and apply the relationship between the structures of organic compounds and their properties. Both the organization of the text and the presentation of individual topics were designed with this objective in mind.

In planning this edition, we committed ourselves to emphasizing line formulas as the primary tool for communicating structural information. Among other features, they replace the act of *reading* and interpreting strings of letters with *seeing* structural relationships between molecules. In order to provide a smooth transition for students as they progress from the textual representations they've used in introductory chemistry, we gradually increase the proportion of bond-line formulas chapter by chapter until they eventually become the major mode of structural representation. Thus, we illustrate S_N1 stereochemistry in Chapter 8 by the equation:

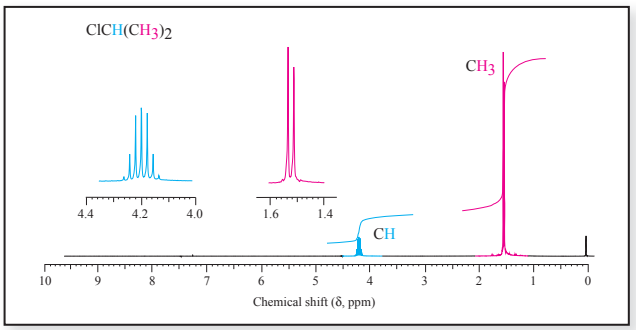


The conversion from reading to seeing is also evident in data recast from a tabular to a graphical format. One example compares S_N2 reaction rates:

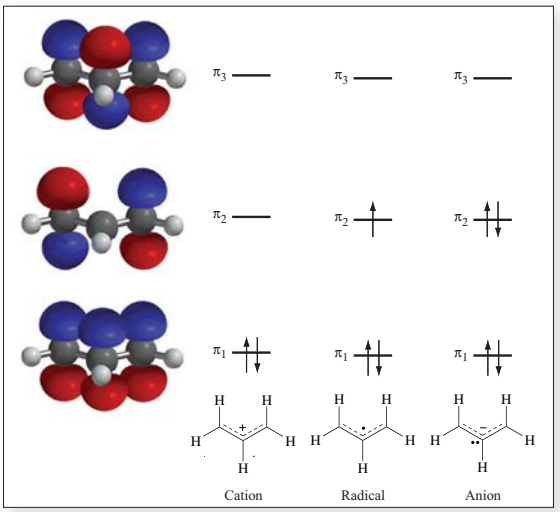


The pace of technological improvements in nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy requires regular updating of this core topic, and almost all of the proton spectra in this

edition were obtained at 300 MHz. The spectra themselves were provided courtesy of Sigma-Aldrich, then graphically enhanced to maximize their usefulness as a teaching tool.



The teaching of organic chemistry has especially benefited as powerful modeling and graphics software have become routinely available. Computer-generated molecular models and electrostatic potential maps were integrated into the third edition of this text and their number has increased in each succeeding edition. Also seeing increasing use are molecular orbital theory and the role of orbital interactions in chemical reactivity. These, too, have been adapted to enhance their value as teaching tools as illustrated in Figure 10.2 showing the π-molecular orbitals of allylic carbocations, radicals, and anions.



Audience

Organic Chemistry is designed to meet the needs of the "mainstream," two-semester undergraduate organic chemistry course. From the beginning and with each new edition, we have remained grounded in some fundamental notions. These include important issues concerning the intended audience. Is the topic appropriate for them with respect to their interests, aspirations, and experience? Just as important is the need to present an accurate picture of the present state of organic chemistry. How do we know what we know? What makes organic chemistry worth knowing? Where are we now? Where are we headed?

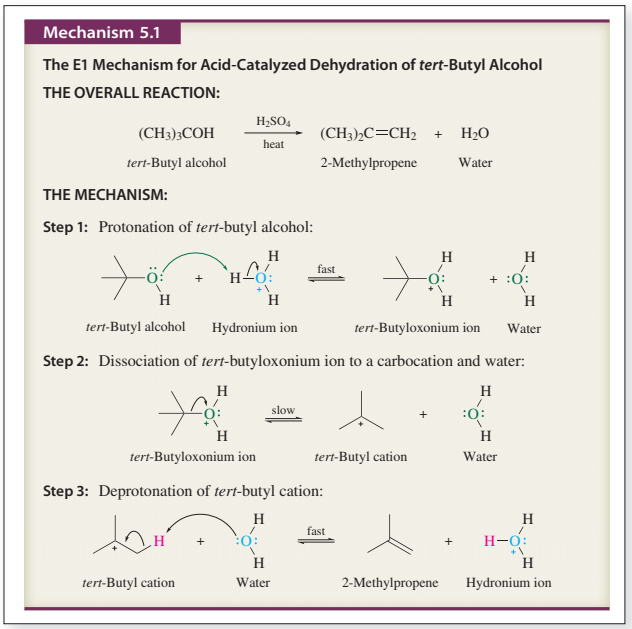
A Functional Group Organization With a Mechanistic Emphasis

The text is organized according to functional groups—the structural units most closely identified with a molecule's characteristic properties. This time-tested organization offers two major advantages over alternatives organized according to mechanisms or reaction types.

1. The information content of individual chapters is more manageable in the functional–group approach. A text organized around functional groups typically has more and shorter chapters than one organized according to mechanism.
2. Patterns of reactivity are reinforced when a reaction used to prepare a particular functional–group family reappears as a characteristic reaction of another.

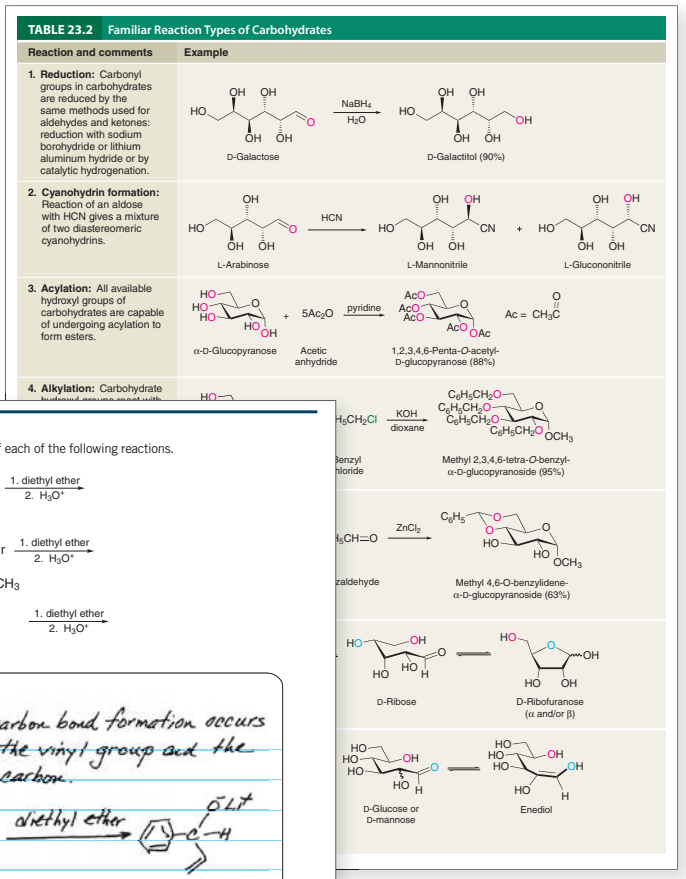
Understanding organic chemistry, however, is impossible without a solid grasp of mechanisms. Our approach is to build this understanding from the ground up beginning in Section 1.12 "Curved Arrows and Chemical Reactions" and continuing through Section 1.16 with applications to Brønsted and Lewis acid-base chemistry. The text contains more than 60 mechanisms that are featured as stand-alone items presented as a series of elementary steps. Numerous other mechanisms—many of them accompanied by potential energy diagrams—are incorporated into the narrative flow.

Numerous other mechanisms—many of them accompanied by potential energy diagrams—are incorporated into the narrative flow.



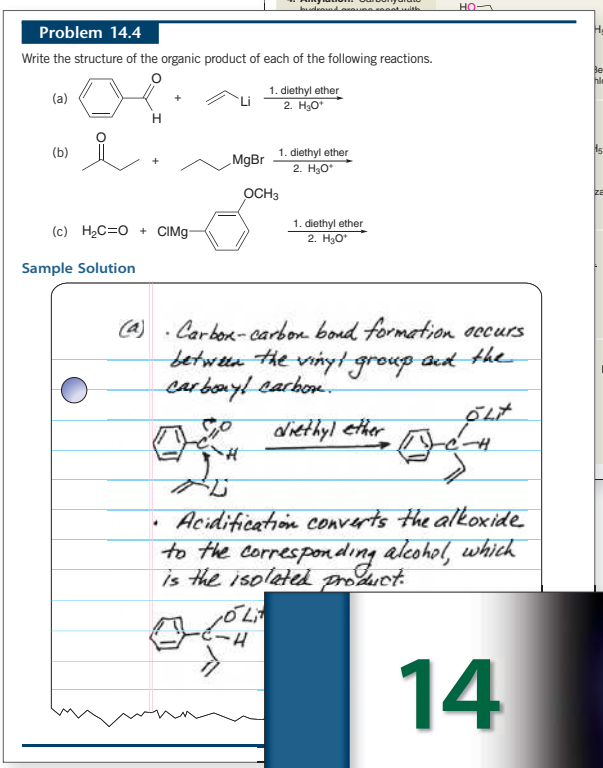
Generous and Effective Use of Tables

Annotated summary tables that incorporate commentary have been a staple of *Organic Chemistry* since the first edition. Some review reactions from earlier chapters, others the reactions or concepts of a current chapter. Still others walk the reader step-by-step through skill builders and concepts unique to organic chemistry. Well received by students and faculty alike, these summary tables remain one of the text's strengths.



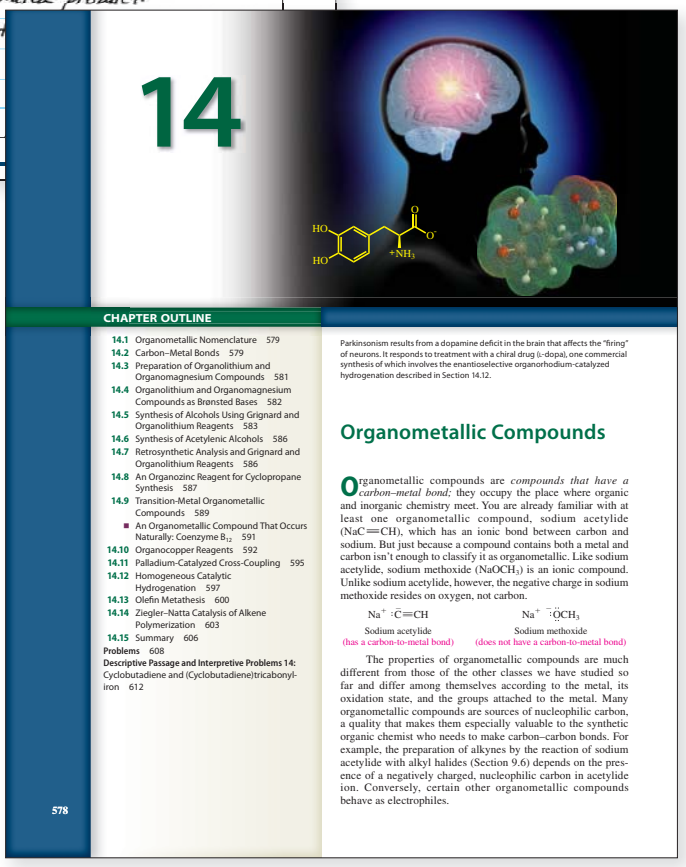
Problems

Problem-solving strategies and skills are emphasized throughout. Understanding is progressively reinforced by problems that appear within topic sections. For many problems, sample solutions are given, including examples of handwritten solutions from the author.



Chapter Openers

Each chapter begins with an opener meant to capture the reader's attention. Chemistry that is highlighted in the opener is relevant to chemistry that is included in the chapter.



Descriptive Passages and Interpretive Problems

Many organic chemistry students later take standardized pre-professional examinations composed of problems derived from a descriptive passage; this text includes comparable passages and problems to familiarize students with this testing style.

Thus, *every* chapter concludes with a self-contained *Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems* unit that complements the chapter's content while emulating the "MCAT style." These 27 passages—listed on page xix—are accompanied by more than 100 total multiple-choice problems. Two of these: *More on Spin-Spin Splitting and Coupling Constants* in Chapter 13 and *Cyclobutadiene and (Cyclobutadiene)tricarbonyliron* in Chapter 14 are new to this edition.

The passages focus on a wide range of topics—from structure, synthesis, mechanism, and natural products. They provide instruc-

tors with numerous opportunities to customize their own organic chemistry course while giving students practice in combining new information with what they have already learned.

What's New

We have already described a number of graphical features designed to foster learning:

- an emphasis on bond–line structural drawings
- adoption of 300 MHz as the standard for nuclear magnetic resonance spectra and enhancing them graphically to allow easier interpretation
- greater integration of molecular orbital diagrams

There have also been significant changes in content.

- **Chapter 14 (Organometallic Compounds)** has been a prominent part of our text since the first edition and, owing to Nobel-worthy advances based on organic compounds of transition metals, has steadily increased in importance. The chemistry of these transition–metal organic compounds has been expanded in 9e to where it now comprises approximately one-half of the chapter.
- **Chapter 20 (Enols and Enolates)** has been extensively revised and is much shorter. The new, more conceptual organization allows many synthetic reactions formerly treated independently according to purpose to be grouped efficiently according to mechanism.
- **Retrosynthetic analysis** is introduced earlier (Section 6.15), elaborated with dedicated sections in subsequent chapters (8.12, 10.13, 11.16, 12.16, 14.7), and used regularly thereafter.
- **Boxed essays–** *Fullerenes, Nanotubes, and Graphene* updates the ever-expanding role of elemental carbon in its many forms in Chapter 11. *Sustainability and Organic Chemistry* is a new boxed essay in Chapter 15 that uses real-world examples to illustrate principles of "green" chemistry.

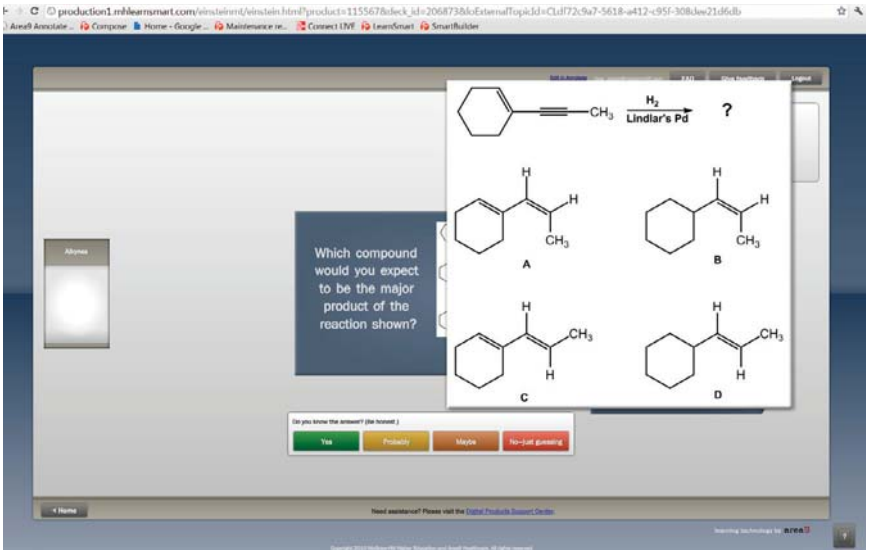
McGraw-Hill Higher Education and Blackboard Have Teamed Up

Blackboard®, the Web-based course management system, has partnered with McGraw-Hill to better allow students and faculty to use online materials and activities to complement face-to-face teaching. Blackboard features exciting social learning and teaching tools that foster more logical, visually impactful, and active learning opportunities for students. You'll transform your closed-door classrooms into communities where students remain connected to their educational experience 24 hours a day. This partnership allows you and your students access to McGraw-Hill's Connect® and McGraw-Hill Create™ right from within your Blackboard course—all with one single sign-on. Not only do you get single sign-on with Connect and Create, you also get deep integration of McGraw-Hill content and content engines right in Blackboard. Whether you're choosing a book for your course or building Connect assignments, all the tools you need are right where you want them—inside of Blackboard. Gradebooks are now seamless. When a student completes an integrated Connect assignment, the grade for that assignment automatically (and instantly) feeds your Blackboard grade center. McGraw-Hill and Blackboard can now offer you easy access to industry leading technology and content, whether your campus hosts it or we do. Be sure to ask your local McGraw-Hill representative for details.

McGraw-Hill LearnSmart™

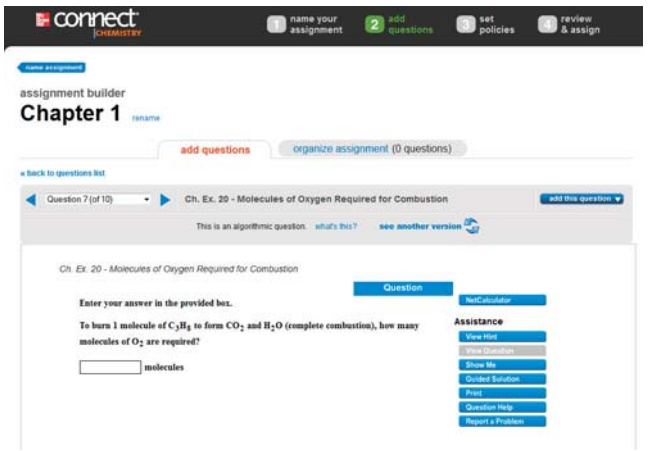
McGraw-Hill LearnSmart is available as an integrated feature of McGraw-Hill Connect® Chemistry It is an adaptive learning system designed to help students learn faster, study more efficiently, and retain more knowledge for greater success. LearnSmart assesses a student's knowledge of course content through a series of adaptive

questions. It pinpoints concepts the student does not understand and maps out a personalized study plan for success. This innovative study tool also has features that allow instructors to see exactly what students have accomplished and a built-in assessment tool for graded assignments. Visit the following site for a demonstration. www.mhlearnsmart.com



McGraw-Hill Connect® Chemistry

McGraw-Hill Connect Chemistry provides online presentation, assignment, and assessment solutions. It connects your students with the tools and resources they'll need to achieve success. With Connect Chemistry, you can deliver assignments, quizzes, and tests online. A robust set of questions and activities are presented and aligned with the textbook's learning outcomes. As an instructor, you can edit existing questions and author entirely new problems. Track individual student performance—by question, assignment, or in relation to the class overall—with detailed grade reports. Integrate grade reports easily with Learning Management Systems (LMS), such as WebCT and Blackboard—and much more. **ConnectPlus Chemistry** provides students with all the advantages of Connect Chemistry, plus 24/7 online access to an eBook. This media-rich version of the book is available through the McGraw-Hill Connect platform and allows seamless integration of text, media, and assessments. To learn more, visit www.mcgrawhillconnect.com



McGraw-Hill Create™

With **McGraw-Hill Create,** you can easily rearrange chapters, combine material from other content sources, and quickly upload content you have written, like your course syllabus or teaching notes. Find the content you need in Create by searching through thousands of leading McGraw-Hill textbooks. Arrange your book to fit your teaching style. Create even allows you to personalize your book's appearance by selecting the cover and adding your name, school, and course information. Order a Create book and you'll receive a complimentary print review copy in 3–5 business days or a complimentary electronic review copy (eComp) via e-mail in minutes. Go to www.mcgrawhillcreate.com today and register to experience how McGraw-Hill Create empowers you to teach *your* students *your* way. **www.mcgrawhillcreate.com**

My Lectures—Tegrity®

McGraw-Hill Tegrity® records and distributes your class lecture with just a click of a button. Students can view anytime/anywhere via computer, iPod, or mobile device. It indexes as it records your PowerPoint® presentations and anything shown on your computer so students can use keywords to find exactly what they want to study. Tegrity is available as an integrated feature of McGraw-Hill Connect Biology and as a standalone.

Instructor Resources

Presentation Center

Accessed from the Connect website, **Presentation Center** is an online digital library containing photos, artwork, animations, and other media types that can be used to create customized lectures, visually enhanced tests and quizzes, compelling course websites, or attractive printed support materials. All assets are copyrighted by McGraw-Hill Higher Education, but can be used by instructors for classroom purposes. The visual resources in this collection include:

- **Art** Full-color digital files of all illustrations in the book can be readily incorporated into lecture presentations, exams, or custom-made classroom materials. In addition, all files are pre-inserted into PowerPoint slides for ease of lecture preparation.
- **Photos** The photo collection contains digital files of photographs from the text, which can be reproduced for multiple classroom uses.

Also accessed through your textbook's Connect website are:

- **PowerPoint® Lecture Outlines** Ready-made presentations that combine art and lecture notes are provided for each chapter of the text.
- **Classroom Response Systems** bring interactivity into the classroom or lecture hall. These wireless response systems, which are essentially remote that are easy to use and engage students, give the instructor and students immediate feedback from the entire class. Wireless response systems allow instructors to motivate student preparation, interactivity, and active learning. Nearly 600 questions covering the content of the *Organic Chemistry* text are available on the *Organic Chemistry* site for use with any classroom response system.
- **Test Bank** An updated test bank with over 1300 questions is available with the 9th edition. The Test Bank is available as both word files and in a computerized test bank program, which utilizes testing software to quickly create customized exams. This user-friendly program allows instructors to sort questions by format; edit existing questions or add new ones; and scramble questions for multiple versions of the same test.
- **Solutions Manual** This manual provides complete solutions to all end-of-chapter problems in the text. The Solutions Manual includes step-by-step solutions to each problem in the text as well as self-tests to assess student understanding.

Student Resources

Solutions Manual

The Solutions Manual provides step-by-step solutions guiding the student through the reasoning behind each problem in the text. There is also a self-test section at the end of each chapter that is designed to assess the student's mastery of the material.

Schaum's Outline of Organic Chemistry

This helpful study aid provides students with hundreds of solved and supplementary problems for the organic chemistry course.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Special thanks to the author of the Student Solutions Manual, Neil Allison, University of Arkansas, who had a monumental task in updating the manual for this edition. Thanks, as well, to Matt McIntosh, University of Arkansas, who completed an accuracy review of the manual. The authors acknowledge the generosity of Sigma-Aldrich for providing almost all of the 300-MHz NMR spectra.

Reviewers

Hundreds of teachers of organic chemistry have reviewed this text in its various editions. Our thanks to all of them, especially the following reviewers for the ninth edition.

Igor Alabugin, *Florida State University*
Donald H. Aue, *University of California, Santa Barbara*
William Bailey, *University of Connecticut*
Arthur Bull, *Oakland University*
Kevin Caran, *James Madison University*
Brenton DeBoef, *University of Rhode Island*
William S. Jenks, *Iowa State University*
James McKee, *University of the Sciences in Philadelphia*
Musiliyu Musa, *Florida A&M University*
Bob Kane, *Baylor University*
Margaret Kerr, *Worcester State College*
Dennis Kevill, *Northern Illinois University*
Rebecca M. Kissling, *Binghamton University*
Kyungsoo Oh, *Indiana University Purdue University – Indianapolis*
Jon Parquette, *Ohio State University*
Laurie Starkey, *California Polytechnic, Pomona*
Andreas Zavitsas, *Long Island University, Brooklyn Campus*

The addition of LearnSmart to the McGraw-Hill digital offerings has been invaluable. Thank you to the individuals who gave their time and talent to develop LearnSmart for *Organic Chemistry*.

Margaret R. Asirvatham, *University of Colorado, Boulder*
Susan Bane, *Binghamton University*
Kelly B. Butzler, *Pennsylvania College of Technology*
David Cartrette, *South Dakota State University*
Tammy Davidson, *University of Florida*
Peter de Lijser, *California State University, Fullerton*
Danaè R. Quirk Dorr, *Minnesota State University, Mankato*
David G. Jones, *North Carolina Central University*
Adam I. Keller, *Columbus State Community College*
Margaret Ruth Leslie, *Kent State University*
Karen E. S. Phillips, *Hunter College of CUNY*
Ron Wikholm, *University of Connecticut*

Organic Chemistry is also complemented by the exemplary digital products in Connect. We are extremely appreciative for the talents of the following individuals who played important roles in the authoring and content development for our digital products.

Kim Albizati, *University of California – San Diego*
Neil Allison, *University of Arkansas*
Chloe Brennan, *St. Olaf University*
David P. Cartrette, *South Dakota State University*
Ronald K. Castellano, *University of Florida*
Greg Cook, *North Dakota State University*
Peter de Lijser, *California State University – Fullerton*
Amy Deveau, *University of New England*
Mike Evans, *University of Illinois at Urbana–Champaign*
Tiffany Gierasch, *University of Maryland – Baltimore County*
Sara Hein, *Winona State University*
Shirley Hino, *Santa Rosa Junior College*
Phil Janowicz, *California State University – Fullerton*
Eric Kantorowski, *California Polytechnic State University*
Jens Kuhn, *Santa Barbara City College*
Amy Lane, *University of North Florida*
Michael Lewis, *Saint Louis University*
Eric Masson, *Ohio University*
Mark McMills, *Ohio University*
Layne Alan Morsch, *University of Illinois – Springfield*
Thomas W. Nalli, *Winona State University*
Andrea Pellerito, *Indiana University – Bloomington*
Jacob Schroeder, *Clemson University*
Chad Stearman, *Missouri State University*
Brent Sumerlin, *Southern Methodist University*
Emily Tansey, *Otterbein University*
John T. Tansey, *Otterbein University*
Yitzhak Tor, *University of California – San Diego*
Khoi N. Van, *Texas A&M University*
Haim Weizman, *University of California – San Diego*
Ron Wikholm, *University of Connecticut*
Gregory M. Williams, *University of Oregon*
Regina Zibuck, *Wayne State University*

This page intentionally left blank

Organic Chemistry

1

CHAPTER OUTLINE

1.1 Atoms, Electrons, and Orbitals 2
- Organic Chemistry: The Early Days 3

1.2 Ionic Bonds 6
1.3 Covalent Bonds, Lewis Formulas, and the Octet Rule 8
1.4 Double Bonds and Triple Bonds 9
1.5 Polar Covalent Bonds, Electronegativity, and Bond Dipoles 10
- Electrostatic Potential Maps 13

1.6 Formal Charge 13
1.7 Structural Formulas of Organic Molecules: Isomers 15
1.8 Resonance 19
1.9 Sulfur and Phosphorus-Containing Organic Compounds and the Octet Rule 23
1.10 The Shapes of Some Simple Molecules 24
- Molecular Models and Modeling 25

1.11 Molecular Dipole Moments 27
1.12 Curved Arrows and Chemical Reactions 28
1.13 Acids and Bases: The Brønsted–Lowry View 30
1.14 How Structure Affects Acid Strength 35
1.15 Acid–Base Equilibria 39
1.16 Lewis Acids and Lewis Bases 41
1.17 Summary 43

Problems 46
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 1: Amide Lewis Structural Formulas 51

Although function dictates form in the things we build, structure determines properties in molecules. Dragsters are designed to accelerate to high speeds in a short distance from a standing start. Most are powered by nitromethane (CH_3NO_2), which, because of its structure, makes it more suitable for this purpose than gasoline.

Structure Determines Properties

Structure* is the key to everything in chemistry. The properties of a substance depend on the atoms it contains and the way these atoms are connected. What is less obvious, but very powerful, is the idea that someone who is trained in chemistry can look at the structural formula of a substance and tell you a lot about its properties. This chapter begins your training toward understanding the relationship between structure and properties in organic compounds. It reviews some fundamental principles of the Lewis approach to molecular structure and bonding. By applying these principles, you will learn to recognize structural patterns that are more stable than others and develop skills in communicating structural information that will be used throughout your study of organic chemistry. A key relationship between structure and properties will be introduced by examining the fundamentals of acid–base chemistry from a structural perspective.

1.1 Atoms, Electrons, and Orbitals

Before discussing structure and bonding in *molecules,* let's first review some fundamentals of *atomic* structure. Each element is characterized by a unique **atomic number *Z*,** which is equal to

*A glossary of the terms shown in boldface may be found immediately before the index at the back of the book.

Organic Chemistry: The Early Days

Eighteenth-century chemists regarded their science as being composed of two branches. One dealt with substances obtained from natural or living sources and was called *organic chemistry;* the other dealt with materials from nonliving matter—minerals and the like—and was called *inorganic chemistry.* Over time, combustion analysis established that the compounds derived from natural sources contained carbon, and a new definition of organic chemistry emerged: *Organic chemistry is the study of carbon compounds.* This is the definition we still use today.

As the eighteenth century gave way to the nineteenth, many scientists still subscribed to a doctrine known as *vitalism,* which held that living systems possessed a "vital force" that was absent in nonliving systems. Substances derived from natural sources (organic) were thought to be fundamentally different from inorganic ones. It was believed that inorganic compounds could be synthesized in the laboratory, but organic compounds could not—at least not from inorganic materials.

In 1823, Friedrich Wöhler, after completing medical studies in Germany, spent a year in Stockholm studying under one of the world's foremost chemists of the time, Jöns Jacob Berzelius. Wöhler subsequently went on to have a distinguished independent career, spending most of it at the University of Göttingen. He is best remembered for a brief paper he published in 1828 in which he noted that, on evaporating an aqueous solution of ammonium cyanate, he obtained "colorless, clear crystals often more than an inch long," which were not ammonium cyanate but were instead urea.

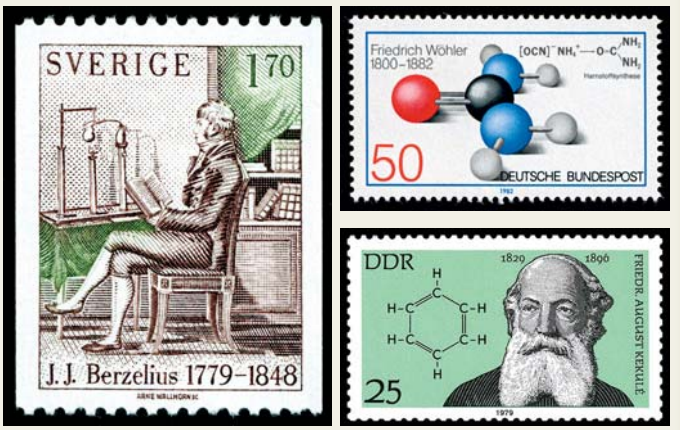
$$\underset{\text{Ammonium cyanate (inorganic)}}{NH_4OCN} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Urea (organic)}}{O{=}C(NH_2)_2}$$

This transformation was remarkable at the time because an *inorganic* salt, ammonium cyanate, was converted to urea, a known *organic* substance earlier isolated from urine. It is now recognized as a significant early step toward overturning the philosophy of vitalism. Although Wöhler himself made no extravagant claims concerning the relationship of his discovery to vitalist theory, the die was cast, and over the next generation organic chemistry outgrew vitalism. What particularly seemed to excite Wöhler and Berzelius had very little to do with vitalism. Berzelius was interested in cases in which two clearly different materials had the same elemental composition, and he invented the word *isomers* to apply to them. Wöhler's observation that an inorganic compound (ammonium cyanate) of molecular formula CH_4N_2O could be transformed into an organic compound (urea) of the same molecular formula had an important bearing on the concept of isomerism.

From the concept of isomerism we can trace the origins of the *structural theory*—the idea that a specific arrangement of atoms uniquely defines a substance. Ammonium cyanate and urea are different compounds because they have different structures.

Three mid-nineteenth-century scientists, August Kekulé, Archibald S. Couper, and Alexander M. Butlerov, stand out for separately proposing the elements of the structural theory. The essential features of Kekulé's theory, developed and presented while he taught at Heidelberg in 1858, were that carbon normally formed four bonds and had the capacity to bond to other carbons so as to form long chains. Isomers were possible because the same elemental composition (say, the CH_4N_2O molecular formula common to both ammonium cyanate and urea) accommodates more than one pattern of atoms and bonds. Shortly thereafter, Couper, a Scot working at the École de Medicine in Paris, and Butlerov, a Russian chemist at the University of Kazan, proposed similar theories.

In the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, major discoveries about atoms and electrons placed theories of molecular structure and bonding on a more secure, physics-based foundation. Several of these are described at the beginning of this section.



the number of protons in its nucleus. A neutral atom has equal numbers of protons, which are positively charged, and electrons, which are negatively charged.

Electrons were believed to be particles from the time of their discovery in 1897 until 1924, when the French physicist Louis de Broglie suggested that they have wavelike properties as well. Two years later Erwin Schrödinger took the next step and calculated the energy of an electron in a hydrogen atom by using equations that treated the electron as if it were a wave. Instead of a single energy, Schrödinger obtained a series of them, each of which corresponded to a different mathematical description of the electron wave. These mathematical descriptions are called **wave functions** and are symbolized by the Greek letter ψ (psi).

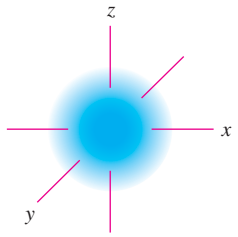


Figure 1.1

Probability distribution (ψ^2) for an electron in a 1*s* orbital.

According to the Heisenberg uncertainty principle, we can't tell exactly where an electron is, but we can tell where it is most likely to be. The probability of finding an electron at a particular spot relative to an atom's nucleus is given by the square of the wave function (ψ^2) at that point. Figure 1.1 illustrates the probability of finding an electron at various points in the lowest energy (most stable) state of a hydrogen atom. The darker the color in a region, the higher the probability. The probability of finding an electron at a particular point is greatest near the nucleus and decreases with increasing distance from the nucleus but never becomes zero.

Wave functions are also called **orbitals.** For convenience, chemists use the term "orbital" in several different ways. A drawing such as Figure 1.1 is often said to represent an orbital. We will see other kinds of drawings in this chapter, and use the word "orbital" to describe them too.

Orbitals are described by specifying their size, shape, and directional properties. Spherically symmetrical ones such as shown in Figure 1.1 are called *s orbitals.* The letter *s* is preceded by the **principal quantum number** *n* ($n = 1, 2, 3$, etc.), which specifies the **shell** and is related to the energy of the orbital. An electron in a 1*s* orbital is likely to be found closer to the nucleus, is lower in energy, and is more strongly held than an electron in a 2*s* orbital.

Instead of probability distributions, it is more common to represent orbitals by their **boundary surfaces,** as shown in Figure 1.2 for the 1*s* and 2*s* orbitals. The region enclosed by a boundary surface is arbitrary but is customarily the volume where the probability of finding an electron is high—on the order of 90–95%. Like the probability distribution plot from which it is derived, a picture of a boundary surface is usually described as a drawing of an orbital.

A hydrogen atom ($Z = 1$) has one electron; a helium atom ($Z = 2$) has two. The single electron of hydrogen occupies a 1*s* orbital, as do the two electrons of helium. We write their electron configurations as:

Hydrogen: $1s^1$ Helium: $1s^2$

In addition to being negatively charged, electrons possess the property of **spin.** The **spin quantum number** of an electron can have a value of either $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$. According to the **Pauli exclusion principle,** two electrons may occupy the same orbital only when they have opposite, or "paired," spins. For this reason, no orbital can contain more than two electrons. Because two electrons fill the 1*s* orbital, the third electron in lithium ($Z = 3$) must occupy an orbital of higher energy. After 1*s,* the next higher energy orbital is 2*s.* The third electron in lithium therefore occupies the 2*s* orbital, and the electron configuration of lithium is

Lithium: $1s^2 2s^1$

The **period** (or **row**) of the periodic table in which an element appears corresponds to the principal quantum number of the highest numbered occupied orbital ($n = 1$ in the case of hydrogen and helium). Hydrogen and helium are first-row elements; lithium ($n = 2$) is a second-row element.

With beryllium ($Z = 4$), the 2*s* level becomes filled and, beginning with boron ($Z = 5$), the next orbitals to be occupied are $2p_x$, $2p_y$, and $2p_z$. These three orbitals (Figure 1.3) are of equal energy and are characterized by boundary surfaces that are usually

A complete periodic table of the elements is presented at the back of the book.

Other methods are also used to contrast the regions of an orbital where the signs of the wave function are different. Some mark one lobe of a *p* orbital + and the other −. Others shade one lobe and leave the other blank. When this level of detail isn't necessary, no differentiation is made between the two lobes.

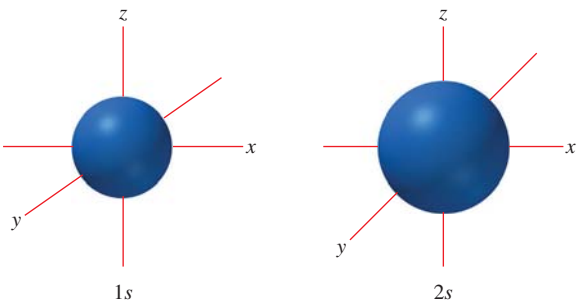


Figure 1.2

Boundary surfaces of a 1*s* orbital and a 2*s* orbital.

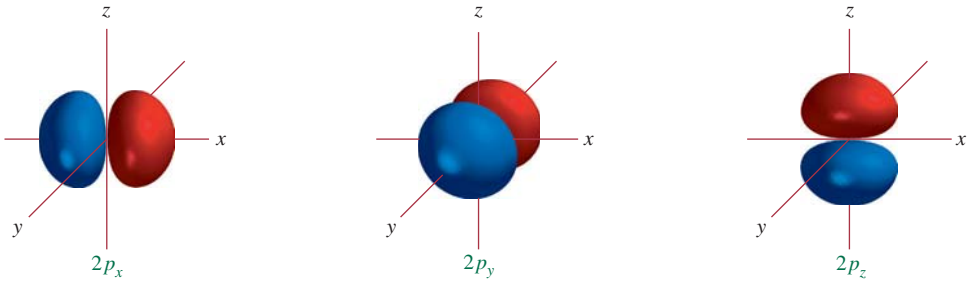


Figure 1.3

Boundary surfaces of the 2*p* orbitals. The wave function changes sign at the nucleus. The two halves of each orbital are indicated by different colors. The *yz*-plane is a nodal surface for the $2p_x$ orbital. The probability of finding a $2p_x$ electron in the *yz*-plane is zero. Analogously, the *xz*-plane is a nodal surface for the $2p_y$ orbital, and the *xy*-plane is a nodal surface for the $2p_z$ orbital.

described as "dumbell-shaped." The axes of the three 2*p* orbitals are at right angles to one another. Each orbital consists of two "lobes," represented in Figure 1.3 by regions of different colors. Regions of a single orbital, in this case, each 2*p* orbital, may be separated by **nodal surfaces** where the wave function changes sign and the probability of finding an electron is zero.

The electron configurations of the first 12 elements, hydrogen through magnesium, are given in Table 1.1. In filling the 2*p* orbitals, notice that each is singly occupied before any one is doubly occupied. This general principle for orbitals of equal energy is known as **Hund's rule.** Of particular importance in Table 1.1 are *hydrogen, carbon, nitrogen,* and *oxygen.* Countless organic compounds contain nitrogen, oxygen, or both in addition to carbon, the essential element of organic chemistry. Most of them also contain hydrogen.

It is often convenient to speak of the **valence electrons** of an atom. These are the outermost electrons, the ones most likely to be involved in chemical bonding and

TABLE 1.1 Electron Configurations of the First Twelve Elements of the Periodic Table

Element	Atomic number *Z*	Number of electrons in indicated orbital					
		1*s*	2*s*	$2p_x$	$2p_y$	$2p_z$	3*s*
Hydrogen	1	1					
Helium	2	2					
Lithium	3	2	1				
Beryllium	4	2	2				
Boron	5	2	2	1			
Carbon	6	2	2	1	1		
Nitrogen	7	2	2	1	1	1	
Oxygen	8	2	2	2	1	1	
Fluorine	9	2	2	2	2	1	
Neon	10	2	2	2	2	2	
Sodium	11	2	2	2	2	2	1
Magnesium	12	2	2	2	2	2	2

reactions. For second-row elements these are the $2s$ and $2p$ electrons. Because four orbitals ($2s$, $2p_x$, $2p_y$, $2p_z$) are involved, the maximum number of electrons in the **valence shell** of any second-row element is 8. Neon, with all its $2s$ and $2p$ orbitals doubly occupied, has eight valence electrons and completes the second row of the periodic table. For **main-group elements,** the number of valence electrons is equal to its group number in the periodic table.

Detailed solutions to all of the problems are found in the *Student Solutions Manual* along with a brief discussion and advice on how to do problems of the same type.

Problem 1.1

How many electrons does carbon have? How many are valence electrons? What third-row element has the same number of valence electrons as carbon?

Once the $2s$ and $2p$ orbitals are filled, the next level is the $3s$, followed by the $3p_x$, $3p_y$, and $3p_z$ orbitals. Electrons in these orbitals are farther from the nucleus than those in the $2s$ and $2p$ orbitals and are of higher energy.

In-chapter problems that contain multiple parts are accompanied by a sample solution to part (a).

Problem 1.2

Referring to the periodic table as needed, write electron configurations for all the elements in the third period.

Sample Solution The third period begins with sodium and ends with argon. The atomic number Z of sodium is 11, and so a sodium atom has 11 electrons. The maximum number of electrons in the $1s$, $2s$, and $2p$ orbitals is ten, and so the eleventh electron of sodium occupies a $3s$ orbital. The electron configuration of sodium is $1s^2 2s^2 2p_x^2 2p_y^2 2p_z^2 3s^1$.

Neon, in the second period, and argon, in the third, have eight electrons in their valence shell; they are said to have a complete **octet** of electrons. Helium, neon, and argon belong to the class of elements known as **noble gases** or **rare gases.** The noble gases are characterized by an extremely stable "closed-shell" electron configuration and are very unreactive.

Structure determines properties and the properties of atoms depend on atomic structure. All of an element's protons are in its nucleus, but the element's electrons are distributed among orbitals of various energy and distance from the nucleus. More than anything else, we look at its electron configuration when we wish to understand how an element behaves. The next section illustrates this with a brief review of ionic bonding.

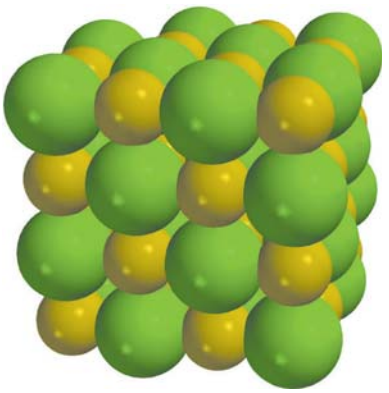


Figure 1.4

An ionic bond is the force of attraction between oppositely charged ions. Each Na^+ ion in the crystal lattice of solid NaCl is involved in ionic bonding to each of six surrounding Cl^- ions and vice versa. The smaller balls are Na^+ and the larger balls are Cl^-.

1.2 Ionic Bonds

Atoms combine with one another to give **compounds** having properties different from the atoms they contain. The attractive force between atoms in a compound is a **chemical bond.** One type of chemical bond, called an **ionic bond,** is the force of attraction between oppositely charged species **(ions)** (Figure 1.4). Positively charged ions are referred to as **cations;** negatively charged ions are **anions.**

Whether an element is the source of the cation or anion in an ionic bond depends on several factors, for which the periodic table can serve as a guide. In forming ionic compounds, elements at the left of the periodic table typically lose electrons, giving a cation that has the same electron configuration as the preceding noble gas. Loss of an electron from sodium, for example, yields Na^+, which has the same electron configuration as neon.

$$\underset{\substack{\text{Sodium atom}\\ 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1}}{Na(g)} \longrightarrow \underset{\substack{\text{Sodium ion}\\ 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6}}{Na^+(g)} + \underset{\text{Electron}}{e^-}$$

[The symbol (g) indicates that the species is present in the gas phase.]

Problem 1.3

Species that have the same number of electrons are described as *isoelectronic*. What +2 ion is isoelectronic with Na^+? What −2 ion?

A large amount of energy, called the **ionization energy,** must be transferred to any atom to dislodge an electron. The ionization energy of sodium, for example, is 496 kJ/mol (119 kcal/mol). Processes that absorb energy are said to be **endothermic.** Compared with other elements, sodium and its relatives in group 1A have relatively low ionization energies. In general, ionization energy increases across a row in the periodic table.

The SI (*Système International d'Unites*) unit of energy is the *joule* (J). An older unit is the *calorie* (cal). Many chemists still express energy changes in units of kilocalories per mole (1 kcal/mol = 4.184 kJ/mol).

Elements at the right of the periodic table tend to gain electrons to reach the electron configuration of the next higher noble gas. Adding an electron to chlorine, for example, gives the anion Cl^-, which has the same closed-shell electron configuration as the noble gas argon.

$$\underset{\substack{\text{Chlorine atom}\\ 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^5}}{Cl(g)} + \underset{\text{Electron}}{e^-} \longrightarrow \underset{\substack{\text{Chloride ion}\\ 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6}}{Cl^-(g)}$$

Problem 1.4

Which of the following ions possess a noble gas electron configuration?

(a) K^+ (c) H^- (e) F^-

(b) He^+ (d) O^- (f) Ca^{2+}

Sample Solution (a) Potassium has atomic number 19, and so a potassium atom has 19 electrons. The ion K^+, therefore, has 18 electrons, the same as the noble gas argon. The electron configurations of both K^+ and Ar are $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$.

Energy is released when a chlorine atom captures an electron. Energy-releasing reactions are described as **exothermic,** and the energy change for an exothermic process has a negative sign. The energy change for addition of an electron to an atom is referred to as its **electron affinity** and is −349 kJ/mol (−83.4 kcal/mol) for chlorine.

We can use the ionization energy of sodium and the electron affinity of chlorine to calculate the energy change for the reaction:

$$\underset{\text{Sodium atom}}{Na(g)} + \underset{\text{Chlorine atom}}{Cl(g)} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Sodium ion}}{Na^+(g)} + \underset{\text{Chloride ion}}{Cl^-(g)}$$

Were we to simply add the ionization energy of sodium (496 kJ/mol) and the electron affinity of chlorine (−349 kJ/mol), we would conclude that the overall process is endothermic by +147 kJ/mol. The energy liberated by adding an electron to chlorine is insufficient to override the energy required to remove an electron from sodium. This analysis, however, fails to consider the force of attraction between the oppositely charged ions Na^+ and Cl^-, as expressed in terms of the energy released in the formation of solid NaCl from the separated gas-phase ions:

$$\underset{\text{Sodium ion}}{Na^+(g)} + \underset{\text{Chloride ion}}{Cl^-(g)} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Sodium chloride}}{NaCl(s)}$$

This *lattice energy* is 787 kJ/mol and is more than sufficient to make the overall process for formation of sodium chloride from the elements exothermic. Forces between oppositely charged particles are called **electrostatic,** or **Coulombic,** and constitute an ionic bond when they are attractive.

Ionic bonding was proposed by the German physicist Walther Kossel in 1916, in order to explain the ability of substances such as molten sodium chloride to conduct an electric current. He was the son of Albrecht Kossel, winner of the 1910 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for early studies of nucleic acids.

Problem 1.5

What is the electron configuration of C^+? Of C^-? Does either one of these ions have a noble gas (closed-shell) electron configuration?

Ionic bonds are very common in *inorganic* compounds, but rare in *organic* ones. The ionization energy of carbon is too large and the electron affinity too small for carbon to realistically form a C^{4+} or C^{4-} ion. What kinds of bonds, then, link carbon to other elements in millions of organic compounds? Instead of losing or gaining electrons, carbon *shares* electrons with other elements (including other carbon atoms) to give what are called covalent bonds.

1.3 Covalent Bonds, Lewis Formulas, and the Octet Rule

Gilbert Newton Lewis has been called the greatest American chemist.

The **covalent,** or **shared electron pair,** model of chemical bonding was first suggested by G. N. Lewis of the University of California in 1916. Lewis proposed that a *sharing* of two electrons by two hydrogen atoms permits each one to have a stable closed-shell electron configuration analogous to helium.

Two hydrogen atoms, each with a single electron

Hydrogen molecule: covalent bonding by way of a shared electron pair

The amount of energy required to dissociate a hydrogen molecule H_2 to two separate hydrogen atoms is its **bond dissociation enthalpy.** For H_2 it is quite large, amounting to +435 kJ/mol (+104 kcal/mol). The main contributor to the strength of the covalent bond in H_2 is the increased Coulombic force exerted on its two electrons. Each electron in H_2 "feels" the attractive force of two nuclei, rather than one as it would in an isolated hydrogen atom.

Only the electrons in an atom's valence shell are involved in covalent bonding. Fluorine, for example, has nine electrons, but only seven are in its valence shell. Pairing a valence electron of one fluorine atom with one of a second fluorine gives a fluorine molecule (F_2) in which each fluorine has eight valence electrons and an electron configuration equivalent to that of the noble gas neon. Shared electrons count toward satisfying the octet of both atoms.

Two fluorine atoms, each with seven electrons in its valence shell

Fluorine molecule: covalent bonding by way of a shared electron pair

Unshared pairs are also called *lone pairs.*

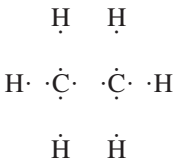
The six valence electrons of each fluorine that are not involved in bonding comprise three **unshared pairs.**

Structural formulas such as those just shown for H_2 and F_2 where electrons are represented as dots are called **Lewis formulas,** or **Lewis structures.** It is usually more convenient to represent shared electron-pair bonds as lines and to sometimes omit electron pairs.

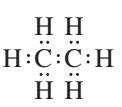
The Lewis model limits second-row elements (Li, Be, B, C, N, O, F, Ne) to a total of eight electrons (shared plus unshared) in their valence shells. Hydrogen is limited to two. Most of the elements that we'll encounter in this text obey the **octet rule:** *In forming compounds they gain, lose, or share electrons to achieve a stable electron configuration characterized by eight valence electrons*. When the octet rule is satisfied for carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, and fluorine, each has an electron configuration analogous to the noble gas neon. The Lewis formulas of methane (CH_4), ammonia (NH_3), water (H_2O), and hydrogen fluoride (HF) given in Table 1.2 illustrate the octet rule.

With four valence electrons, carbon normally forms four covalent bonds as shown in Table 1.2 for CH_4. In addition to C—H bonds, most organic compounds contain covalent C—C bonds. Ethane (C_2H_6) is an example.

Combine two carbons and six hydrogens



to write a Lewis formula for ethane



or

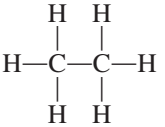
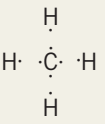
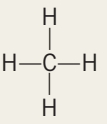
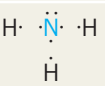
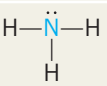
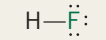


TABLE 1.2 Lewis Formulas of Methane, Ammonia, Water, and Hydrogen Fluoride

Compound	Atom	Number of valence electrons in atom	Atom and sufficient number of hydrogen atoms to complete octet	Lewis formula	
				Dot	Line
Methane	Carbon	4			
Ammonia	Nitrogen	5			
Water	Oxygen	6			
Hydrogen fluoride	Fluorine	7			

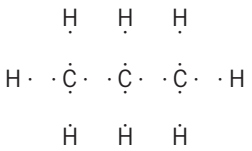
Problem 1.6

Write Lewis formulas, including unshared pairs, for each of the following. Carbon has four bonds in each compound.

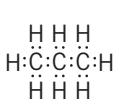
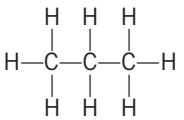
(a) Propane (C_3H_8)
(b) Methanol (CH_4O)
(c) Methyl fluoride (CH_3F)
(d) Ethyl fluoride (C_2H_5F)

Sample Solution (a) The Lewis formula of propane is analogous to that of ethane but the chain has three carbons instead of two.

Combine three carbons and eight hydrogens



to write a Lewis formula for propane

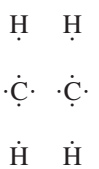
 or 

The ten covalent bonds in the Lewis formula shown account for 20 valence electrons, which is the same as that calculated from the molecular formula (C_3H_8). The eight hydrogens of C_3H_8 contribute 1 electron each and the three carbons 4 each, for a total of 20 (8 from the hydrogens and 12 from the carbons). Therefore, all the valence electrons are in covalent bonds; propane has no unshared pairs.

1.4 Double Bonds and Triple Bonds

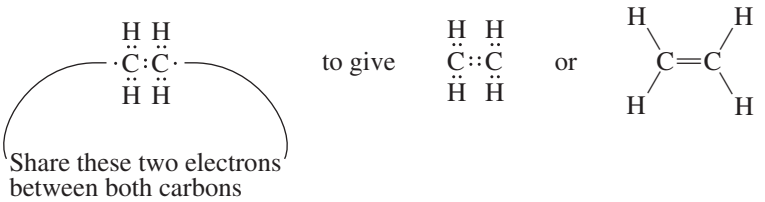
Lewis's concept of shared electron pair bonds allows for four-electron double bonds and six-electron triple bonds. Ethylene (C_2H_4) has 12 valence electrons, which can be distributed as follows:

Combine two carbons and four hydrogens



to write

The structural formula produced has a single bond between the carbons and seven electrons around each. By pairing the unshared electron of one carbon with its counterpart of the other carbon, a **double bond** results and the octet rule is satisfied for both carbons.



Likewise, the ten valence electrons of acetylene (C_2H_2) can be arranged in a structural formula that satisfies the octet rule when six of them are shared in a **triple bond** between the carbons.

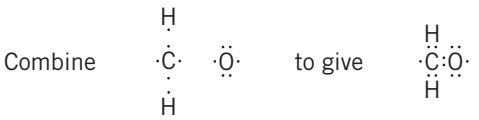
Carbon dioxide (CO_2) has two carbon–oxygen double bonds, thus satisfying the octet rule for both carbon and oxygen.

Problem 1.7

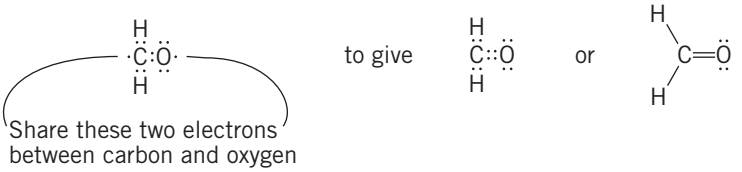
All of the hydrogens are bonded to carbon in both of the following. Write a Lewis formula that satisfies the octet rule for each.

(a) Formaldehyde (CH_2O) (b) Hydrogen cyanide (HCN)

Sample Solution (a) Formaldehyde has 12 valence electrons; 4 from carbon, 2 from two hydrogens, and 6 from oxygen. Connect carbon to oxygen and both hydrogens by covalent bonds.



Pair the unpaired electron on carbon with the unpaired electron on oxygen to give a carbon–oxygen double bond. The resulting structural formula satisfies the octet rule.



1.5 Polar Covalent Bonds, Electronegativity, and Bond Dipoles

Electrons in covalent bonds are not necessarily shared equally by the two atoms that they connect. If one atom has a greater tendency to attract electrons toward itself than the other, the electron distribution is *polarized,* and the bond is described as **polar covalent.** The tendency of an atom to attract the electrons in a covalent bond toward itself defines its **electronegativity.** An electronegative element attracts electrons; an electropositive one donates them.

Hydrogen fluoride, for example, has a polar covalent bond. Fluorine is more electronegative than hydrogen and pulls the electrons in the H—F bond toward itself, giving

fluorine a partial negative charge and hydrogen a partial positive charge. Two ways of representing the polarization in HF are:

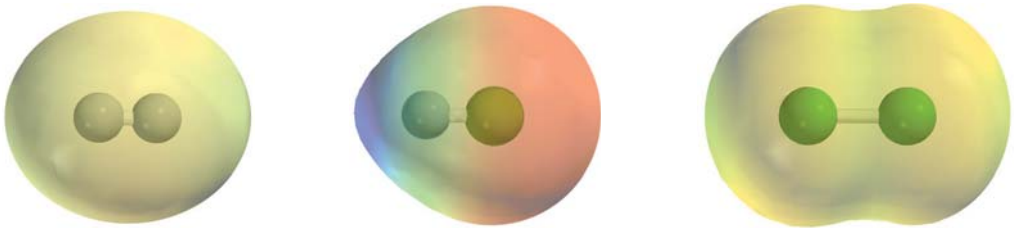
$\overset{\delta+}{\text{H}}\text{—}\overset{\delta-}{\text{F}}$ (The symbols $\delta+$ and $\delta-$ indicate partial positive and partial negative charge, respectively)

$\overset{+}{\text{H}}\text{—}\overset{}{\text{F}}$ (The symbol $\overset{+}{\longleftrightarrow}$ represents the direction of polarization of electrons in the H—F bond)

A third way of illustrating the electron polarization in HF is graphically, by way of an **electrostatic potential map,** which uses the colors of the rainbow to show the charge distribution. Blue through red tracks regions of greater positive charge to greater negative charge. (For more details, see the boxed essay *Electrostatic Potential Maps* in this section.)

Positively charged region of molecule — Negatively charged region of molecule

Contrast the electrostatic potential map of HF with those of H_2 and F_2.



H—H $\quad$ $\overset{\delta+}{\text{H}}\text{—}\overset{\delta-}{\text{F}}$ $\quad$ F—F

The covalent bond in H_2 joins two hydrogen atoms. Because the bonded atoms are identical, so are their electronegativities. There is no polarization of the electron distribution, the H—H bond is nonpolar, and a neutral yellow-green color dominates the electrostatic potential map. Likewise, the F—F bond in F_2 is nonpolar and its electrostatic potential map resembles that of H_2. The covalent bond in HF, on the other hand, unites two atoms of different electronegativity, and the electron distribution is very polarized. Blue is the dominant color near the positively polarized hydrogen, and red the dominant color near the negatively polarized fluorine.

The most commonly used electronegativity scale was devised by Linus Pauling. Table 1.3 keys Pauling's electronegativity values to the periodic table.

Linus Pauling (1901–1994) was born in Portland, Oregon, and was educated at Oregon State University and at the California Institute of Technology, where he earned a Ph.D. in chemistry in 1925. In addition to research in bonding theory, Pauling studied the structure of proteins and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry for that work in 1954. Pauling won a second Nobel Prize (the Peace Prize) in 1962 for his efforts to limit the testing of nuclear weapons. He was one of only four scientists to have won two Nobel Prizes. The first double winner was a woman. Can you name her?

TABLE 1.3 Selected Values from the Pauling Electronegativity Scale

	Group number						
Period	1A	2A	3A	4A	5A	6A	7A
1	H 2.1						
2	Li 1.0	Be 1.5	B 2.0	C 2.5	N 3.0	O 3.5	F 4.0
3	Na 0.9	Mg 1.2	Al 1.5	Si 1.8	P 2.1	S 2.5	Cl 3.0
4	K 0.8	Ca 1.0					Br 2.8
5							I 2.5

Electronegativity *increases* from left to right across a row in the periodic table. Of the second-row elements, the most electronegative is fluorine, the least electronegative is lithium. Electronegativity *decreases* going down a column. Of the halogens, fluorine is the most electronegative, then chlorine, then bromine, then iodine. Indeed, fluorine is the most electronegative of all the elements; oxygen is second.

In general, the greater the electronegativity difference between two elements, the more polar the bond between them.

Problem 1.8

In which of the compounds CH_4, NH_3, H_2O, SiH_4, or H_2S is $\delta+$ for hydrogen the greatest? In which one does hydrogen bear a partial negative charge?

Table 1.4 compares the polarity of various bond types according to their **bond dipole moments.** A dipole exists whenever opposite charges are separated from each other, and a **dipole moment μ** is the product of the amount of the charge e multiplied by the distance d between the centers of charge.

$$\mu = e \times d$$

The debye unit is named in honor of Peter Debye, a Dutch scientist who did important work in many areas of chemistry and physics and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1936.

Because the charge on an electron is 4.80×10^{-10} electrostatic units (esu) and the distances within a molecule typically fall in the 10^{-8} cm range, molecular dipole moments are on the order of 10^{-18} esu·cm. To simplify the reporting of dipole moments, this value of 10^{-18} esu·cm is defined as a **debye, D.** Thus the experimentally determined dipole moment of hydrogen fluoride, 1.7×10^{-18} esu·cm is stated as 1.7 D.

The bond dipoles in Table 1.4 depend on the difference in electronegativity of the bonded atoms and on the bond distance. The polarity of a C—H bond is relatively low; substantially less than a C—O bond, for example. Don't lose sight of an even more important difference between a C—H bond and a C—O bond, and that is the *direction* of the dipole moment. In a C—H bond the electrons are drawn away from H, toward C. In a C—O bond, electrons are drawn from C toward O. As we'll see in later chapters, the kinds of reactions that a substance undergoes can often be related to the size and direction of key bond dipoles.

Problem 1.9

Indicate the direction of the dipole for the following bonds using the symbol $\overset{+}{\longleftrightarrow}$ and δ^+, δ^- notation.

H—O H—N C—O C═O C—N C═N C≡N

TABLE 1.4 Selected Bond Dipole Moments

Bond*	Dipole moment, D	Bond*	Dipole moment, D
H—F	1.7	C—F	1.4
H—Cl	1.1	C—O	0.7
H—Br	0.8	C—N	0.4
H—I	0.4	C═O	2.4
H—C	0.3	C═N	1.4
H—N	1.3	C≡N	3.6
H—O	1.5		

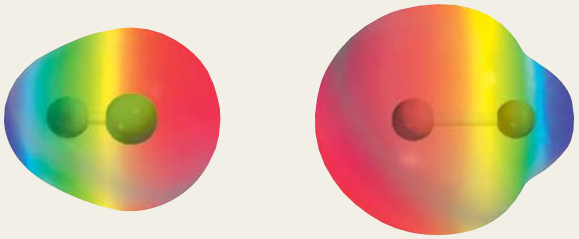
*The direction of the dipole moment is toward the more electronegative atom. In the listed examples hydrogen and carbon are the positive ends of the dipoles. Carbon is the negative end of the dipole associated with the C—H bond.

Electrostatic Potential Maps

All of the material in this text, and most of chemistry generally, can be understood on the basis of what physicists call the *electromagnetic force*. Its major principle is that opposite charges attract and like charges repel. A good way to connect structure to properties such as chemical reactivity is to find the positive part of one molecule and the negative part of another. Most of the time, these will be the reactive sites.

Imagine that you bring a positive charge toward a molecule. The interaction between that positive charge and some point in the molecule will be attractive if the point is negatively charged, repulsive if it is positively charged, and the strength of the interaction will depend on the magnitude of the charge. Computational methods make it possible to calculate and map these interactions. It is convenient to display this map using the colors of the rainbow from red to blue. Red is the negative (electron-rich) end and blue is the positive (electron-poor) end.

The electrostatic potential map of hydrogen fluoride (HF) was shown in the preceding section and is repeated here. Compare it with the electrostatic potential map of lithium hydride (LiH).



H—F H—Li

The H—F bond is polarized so that hydrogen is partially positive (blue) and fluorine partially negative (red). Because hydrogen is more electronegative than lithium, the H—Li bond is polarized in the opposite sense, making hydrogen partially negative (red) and lithium partially positive (blue).

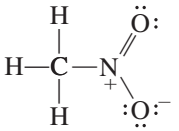
We will use electrostatic potential maps often to illustrate charge distribution in both organic and inorganic molecules. However, we need to offer one cautionary note. Electrostatic potential mapping within a single molecule is fine, but we need to be careful when comparing maps of different molecules. The reason for this is that the entire red-to-blue palette is used to map the electrostatic potential regardless of whether the charge difference is large or small. This is apparent in the H—F and H—Li electrostatic potential maps just shown. If, as shown in the following map, we use the same range for H—F that was used for H—Li we see that H is green instead of blue and the red of F is less intense.

H—F

Thus, electrostatic potential maps can give an exaggerated picture of the charge distribution when the entire palette of colors is used. In most cases, that won't matter to us inasmuch as we are mostly concerned with the distribution within a single molecule. When we want to compare trends in a series of molecules, we'll use a common scale and will point that out. For example, the electrostatic potentials of H_2, F_2, and HF that were compared on page 11 were mapped using the same color scale.

1.6 Formal Charge

Lewis formulas frequently contain atoms that bear a positive or negative charge. If the molecule as a whole is neutral, the sum of its positive charges must equal the sum of its negative charges. An example is nitromethane CH_3NO_2.

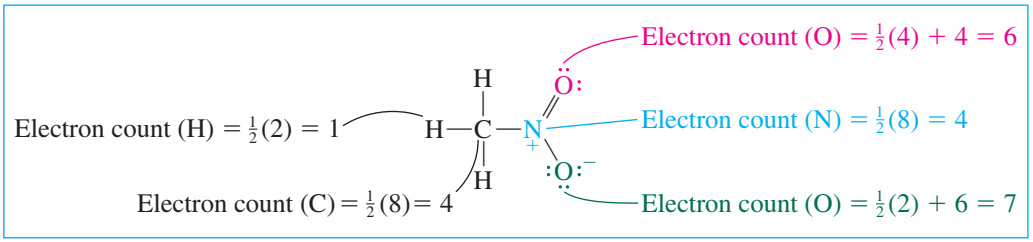


As written, the Lewis formula for nitromethane shows one of the oxygens doubly bonded to nitrogen while the other is singly bonded. The octet rule is satisfied for nitrogen, carbon, and both oxygens. Carbon, the three hydrogens, and the doubly bonded oxygen are uncharged, but nitrogen bears a charge of +1 and the singly bonded oxygen a charge of –1. These charges are called formal charges and are required for the Lewis formula of nitromethane to be complete.

Formal charges correspond to the difference between the number of valence electrons in the neutral free atom and the number of valence electrons in its bonded state. The number of electrons in the neutral free atom is the same as the atom's group number in the periodic table. To determine the electron count of an atom in a Lewis formula, we add the total number of electrons in unshared pairs to one-half the number of electrons in bonded pairs. It's important to note that counting electrons for the purpose of assigning formal charge differs from counting electrons to see if the octet rule is satisfied. A second-row

Figure 1.5

Counting electrons in nitric acid. The electron count of each atom is equal to half the number of electrons it shares in covalent bonds plus the number of electrons in its own unshared pairs.



It will always be true that a covalently bonded hydrogen has no formal charge (formal charge = 0).

It will always be true that a nitrogen with four covalent bonds has a formal charge of +1. (A nitrogen with four covalent bonds cannot have unshared pairs, because of the octet rule.)

It will always be true that an oxygen with two covalent bonds and two unshared pairs has no formal charge.

It will always be true that an oxygen with one covalent bond and three unshared pairs has a formal charge of −1.

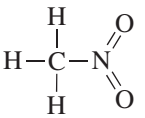
element has a complete octet if the sum of all the electrons around it, shared and unshared, is eight. When counting the electrons to assign formal charge, half the number of electrons in covalent bonds are assigned to each atom.

Figure 1.5 applies this procedure to the calculation of formal charges in nitromethane. Starting with the three hydrogens, we see that each is associated with two electrons, giving each an electron count of $\frac{1}{2}(2) = 1$. Because a neutral hydrogen atom has one electron, the hydrogens of nitromethane have no formal charge. Similarly for carbon, the electron count is $\frac{1}{2}(8) = 4$, which is the number of electrons on a neutral carbon atom, so carbon has no formal charge in nitromethane.

Moving to nitrogen, we see that is has four covalent bonds, so its electron count is $\frac{1}{2}(8) = 4$, which is one less than the number of valence electrons of a nitrogen atom; therefore, its formal charge is +1. The doubly bonded oxygen has an electron count of six (four electrons from the two unshared pairs + two from the double bond). An electron count of six is the same as that of a neutral oxygen's valence electrons; therefore, the doubly bonded oxygen has no formal charge. The singly bonded oxygen, however, has an electron count of seven: six for the three nonbonded pairs plus one for the single bond to nitrogen. This total is one more than the number of valence electrons of a neutral oxygen, so the formal charge is –1.

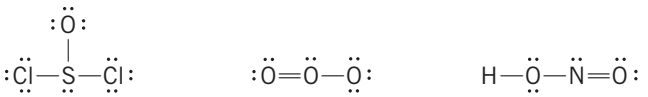
Problem 1.10

Why is the formula shown for nitromethane incorrect?



Problem 1.11

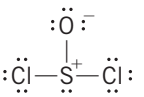
The following inorganic species will be encountered in this text. Calculate the formal charge on each of the atoms in the Lewis formulas given.



(a) Thionyl chloride (b) Ozone (c) Nitrous acid

Sample Solution (a) The formal charge is the difference between the number of valence electrons in the neutral atom and the electron count in the Lewis formula. (The number of valence electrons is the same as the group number in the periodic table for the main-group elements.)

	Valence electrons of neutral atom	Electron count	Formal charge
Sulfur:	6	$\frac{1}{2}(6) + 2 = 5$	+1
Oxygen:	6	$\frac{1}{2}(2) + 6 = 7$	−1
Chlorine:	7	$\frac{1}{2}(2) + 6 = 7$	0

The formal charges are shown in the Lewis formula of thionyl chloride as 

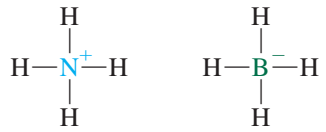
The method described for calculating formal charge has been one of reasoning through a series of logical steps. It can be reduced to the following equation:

$$\text{Formal charge} = \text{Group number in periodic table} - \text{Electron count}$$

where

$$\text{Electron count} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\text{Number of shared electrons}) + \text{Number of unshared electrons}$$

So far we've only considered neutral molecules—those in which the sums of the positive and negative formal charges were equal. With ions, of course, these sums will not be equal. Ammonium cation and borohydride anion, for example, are ions with net charges of +1 and −1, respectively. Nitrogen has a formal charge of +1 in ammonium ion, and boron has a formal charge of −1 in borohydride. None of the hydrogens in the Lewis formulas shown for these ions bears a formal charge.

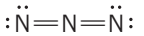


Ammonium ion Borohydride ion

Formal charges are based on Lewis formulas in which electrons are considered to be shared equally between covalently bonded atoms. Actually, polarization of N—H bonds in ammonium ion and of B—H bonds in borohydride leads to some transfer of positive and negative charge, respectively, to the hydrogens.

Problem 1.12

Calculate the formal charge on each nitrogen in the following Lewis formula (azide ion) and the net charge on the species.



Determining formal charges on individual atoms in Lewis formulas is an important element in good "electron bookkeeping." So much of organic chemistry can be made more understandable by keeping track of electrons that it is worth taking some time at the beginning to become proficient at the seemingly simple task of counting them.

1.7 Structural Formulas of Organic Molecules

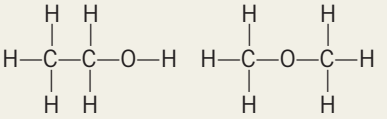
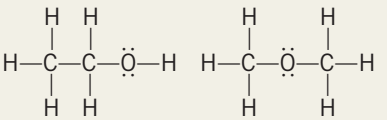
Most organic compounds are more complicated than the examples we've seen so far and require a more systematic approach to writing structural formulas for them. The approach outlined in Table 1.5 begins (step 1) with the **molecular formula** that tells us which atoms and how many of each are present in the compound. From the molecular formula we calculate the number of valence electrons (step 2).

In step 3 we set out a partial structure that shows the order in which the atoms are connected. This is called the **connectivity** of the molecule and is almost always determined by experiment. Most of the time carbon has four bonds, nitrogen has three, and oxygen two. It frequently happens in organic chemistry that two or more different compounds have the same molecular formula, but different connectivities. Ethanol and dimethyl ether—the examples shown in the table—are different compounds with different properties, yet have the same molecular formula (C_2H_6O). Ethanol is a liquid with a boiling point of 78°C. Dimethyl ether is a gas at room temperature; its boiling point is −24°C.

Different compounds that have the same molecular formula are classified as **isomers.** Isomers can be either **constitutional isomers** (differ in connectivity) or **stereoisomers** (differ in arrangement of atoms in space). Constitutional isomers are also sometimes called

The suffix *-mer* in the word "isomer" is derived from the Greek word *meros,* meaning "part," "share," or "portion." The prefix *iso-* is also from Greek (*isos,* meaning "the same"). Thus isomers are different molecules that have the same parts (elemental composition).

TABLE 1.5 A Systematic Approach to Writing Lewis Formulas

Step	Illustration
1. The molecular formula is determined experimentally.	Ethanol and dimethyl ether both have the molecular formula C_2H_6O.
2. Based on the molecular formula, count the number of valence electrons.	In C_2H_6O, each hydrogen contributes 1 valence electron, each carbon contributes 4, and oxygen contributes 6 for a total of 20.
3. Given the connectivity, connect bonded atoms by a shared electron pair bond (:) represented by a dash (—).	Oxygen and the two carbons are connected in the order CCO in ethanol and COC in dimethyl ether. The connectivity and the fact that carbon normally has four bonds in neutral molecules allow us to place the hydrogens of ethanol and dimethyl ether.  Ethanol Dimethyl ether
4. Count the number of electrons in the bonds (twice the number of bonds), and subtract this from the total number of valence electrons to give the number of electrons that remain to be added.	The structural formulas in step 3 contain eight bonds, accounting for 16 electrons. Because C_2H_6O contains 20 valence electrons, 4 more are needed.
5. Add electrons in pairs so that as many atoms as possible have eight electrons. It is usually best to begin with the most electronegative atom. (Hydrogen is limited to two electrons.) *Under no circumstances can a second-row element such as C, N, or O have more than eight valence electrons.*	Both carbons already have complete octets in the structures illustrated in step 3. The remaining four electrons are added to each oxygen as two unshared pairs to complete its octet. The Lewis structures are:  Ethanol Dimethyl ether
6. If one or more atoms (excluding hydrogens) has fewer than eight electrons, use an unshared pair from an adjacent atom to form a double or triple bond to complete the octet. Use one double bond for each deficiency of two electrons to complete the octet for each atom.	All the carbon and oxygen atoms in the structural formulas of ethanol and dimethyl ether have complete octets. No double bonds are needed.
7. Calculate formal charges.	None of the atoms in the Lewis formulas shown in step 5 bears a formal charge.

structural isomers. Ethanol and dimethyl ether are constitutional isomers of each other. Stereoisomers will be introduced in Section 3.11.

The framework of covalent bonds revealed by the connectivity information accounts for 16 of the 20 valence electrons in C_2H_6O (step 4). The remaining four valence electrons are assigned to each oxygen as two unshared pairs in step 5 to complete the Lewis formulas of ethanol and dimethyl ether.

Problem 1.13

Write structural formulas for all the constitutional isomers that have the given molecular formula.

(a) C_2H_7N (b) C_3H_7Cl (c) C_3H_8O

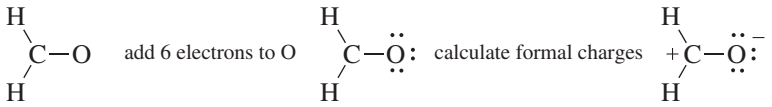
Sample Solution (a) The molecular formula C_2H_7N requires 20 valence electrons. Two carbons contribute a total of eight, nitrogen contributes five, and seven hydrogens contribute a total of seven. Nitrogen and two carbons can be connected in the order CCN or CNC. Assuming four bonds to each carbon and three to nitrogen, we write these connectivities as:

Place a hydrogen on each of the seven available bonds of each framework.

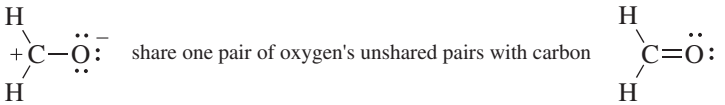
The nine bonds in each structural formula account for 18 electrons. Add an unshared pair to each nitrogen to complete its octet and give a total of 20 valence electrons as required by the molecular formula.

These two are constitutional isomers.

Now let's consider a molecule in which we have to include multiple bonds when writing the Lewis formula (step 6). Formaldehyde has the molecular formula CH_2O, and both hydrogens are attached to carbon. The total number of valence electrons is 12, and 6 of these are accounted for in 3 bonds to carbon. Because oxygen is more electronegative than carbon, we assign the six additional electrons to oxygen.



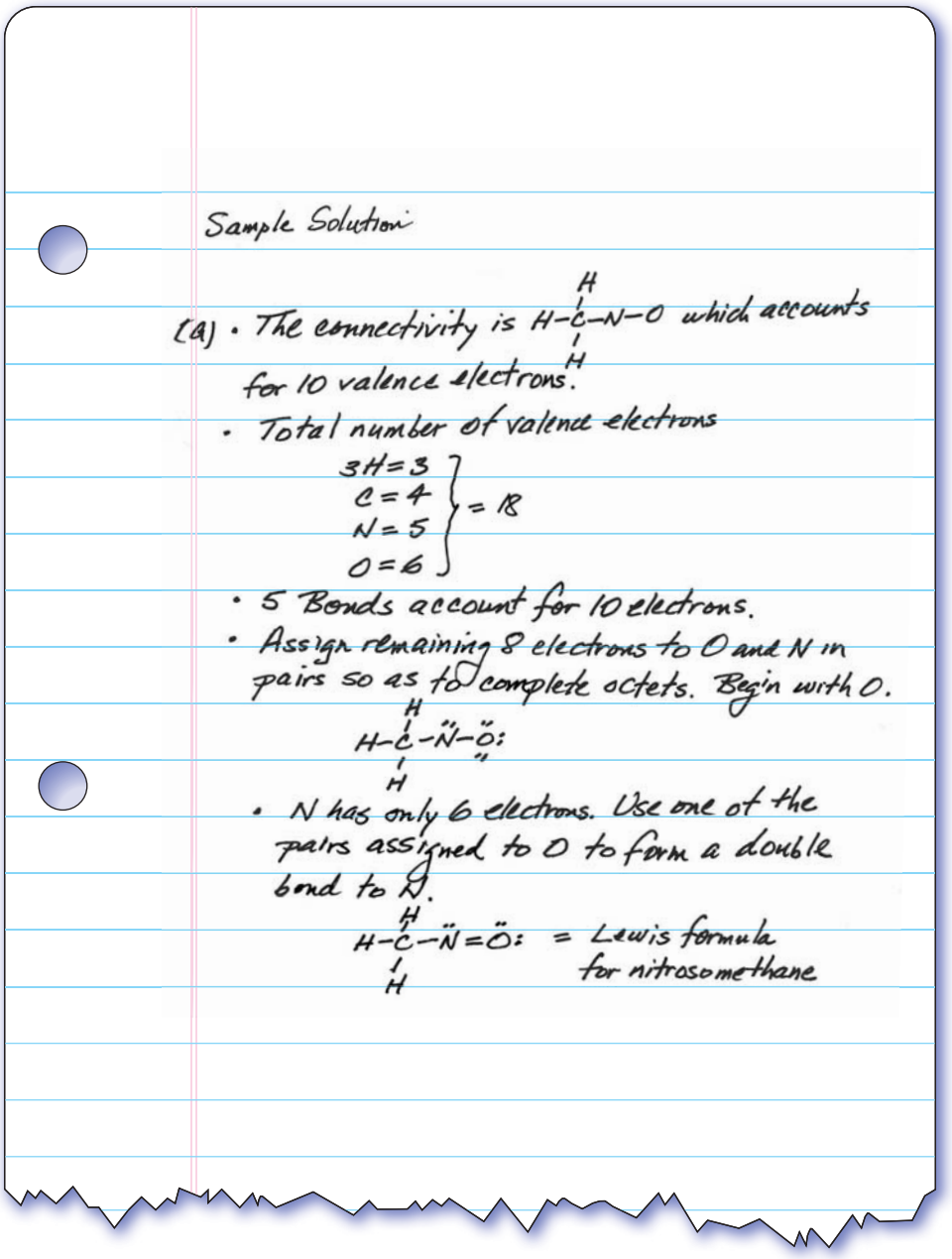
At this point, the octet rule is satisfied for oxygen, but not carbon. Moreover, the structural formula is destabilized by separation of positive charge from negative. The octet rule can be satisfied for both atoms and the charge separation removed by involving one of the unshared pairs of oxygen in a double bond to carbon.



The resulting structure has one more bond than the original and no separation of opposite charges. It is the structural formula for formaldehyde that best satisfies the Lewis rules.

Problem 1.14

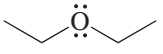
Nitrosomethane and formaldoxime both have the molecular formula CH_3NO and the connectivity CNO. All of the hydrogens are bonded to carbon in nitrosomethane. In formaldoxime, two of the hydrogens are bonded to carbon and one to oxygen. Write Lewis formulas for (a) nitrosomethane and (b) formaldoxime that satisfy the octet rule and are free of charge separation.



As illustrated for diethyl ether, chemists often find condensed formulas and line formulas in which carbon chains are represented as a zig-zag collection of bonds to be more convenient than Lewis formulas.

$CH_3CH_2\ddot{O}CH_2CH_3$ or $(CH_3CH_2)_2\ddot{O}$:

Condensed formulas

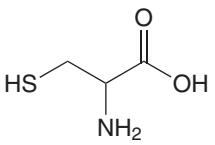


Bond-line formula

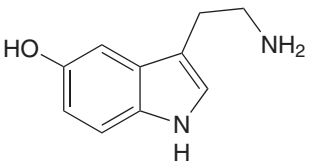
In a **condensed formula,** we omit the bonds altogether. Atoms and their attached hydrogens are grouped and written in sequence; subscripts indicate the number of identical groups attached to a particular atom. **Bond-line formulas** (or *skeletal formulas*) are modified line formulas (see Section 1.3) in which labels for individual carbons are omitted and hydrogens attached to carbon are shown only when necessary for clarity. **Heteroatoms**—atoms other than carbon or hydrogen—are shown explicitly as are hydrogens attached to them. Unshared electron pairs are shown when necessary, but are often omitted.

Problem 1.15

Expand the bond-line formulas of the amino acid cysteine and the neurotransmitter serotonin to show all the unshared electron pairs. Molecular formulas of organic compounds are customarily presented in the fashion $C_aH_bX_cY_d$. Carbon and hydrogen are cited first, followed by the other atoms in alphabetical order. What are the molecular formulas of cysteine and serotonin?



Cysteine

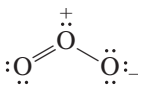


Serotonin

1.8 Resonance

Sometimes more than one Lewis formula can be written for a molecule, especially if the molecule contains a double or triple bond. A simple example is ozone (O_3), for which we can write:

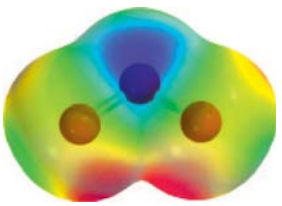
Ozone occurs naturally in large quantities in the upper atmosphere where it screens the surface of the Earth from much of the sun's ultraviolet rays.



This Lewis formula, however, is inconsistent with the experimentally determined structure. On the basis of the Lewis formula, we would expect ozone to have two different O—O bond lengths, one of them similar to the O—O single bond distance of 147 pm in hydrogen peroxide (HO—OH) and the other similar to the 121 pm double bond distance in O_2. In fact, both bond distances are the same (128 pm)—somewhat shorter than a single bond, somewhat longer than a double bond. *The structure of ozone requires that the central oxygen must be identically bonded to both terminal oxygens.*

We will express bond distances in picometers (pm), which is an SI unit (1 pm = 10^{-12} m). To convert pm to angstrom units (1 Å = 10^{-10} m), divide by 100.

An electrostatic potential map shows the equivalence of the two terminal oxygens. Notice, too, that the central oxygen is blue (positively charged) and both terminal oxygens are red (negatively charged).



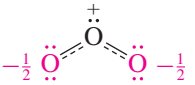
To deal with circumstances such as the bonding in ozone, yet retain Lewis formulas as a useful tool for representing molecular structure, the notion of **resonance** was developed. According to the resonance concept, when two or more Lewis formulas that *differ only in the distribution of electrons* can be written for a molecule, no single Lewis structural formula is sufficient to describe the true electron distribution. The true structure is said to be a **resonance hybrid** of the various Lewis formulas, called **contributing structures,** that can

be written for the molecule. In the case of ozone, the two Lewis formulas are equivalent and contribute equally to the resonance hybrid. We use a double-headed arrow to signify resonance and read it to mean that the Lewis formulas shown contribute to, but do not separately describe, the electron distribution in the molecule.

Resonance attempts to correct a fundamental defect in Lewis formulas. Lewis formulas show electrons as being **localized;** they either are shared between two atoms in a covalent bond or are unshared electrons belonging to a single atom. In reality, electrons distribute themselves in the way that leads to their most stable arrangement. This means that a pair of electrons can be **delocalized,** or shared by several nuclei. In the case of ozone, resonance attempts to show the delocalization of four electrons (an unshared pair of one oxygen plus two of the electrons in the double bond) over the three oxygens.

Resonance is indicated by a double-headed arrow ↔; equilibria are described by two arrows ⇌.

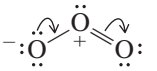
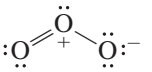
It is important to remember that the double-headed resonance arrow does *not* indicate a *process* in which contributing Lewis formulas interconvert. Ozone, for example, has a *single* structure; it does not oscillate back and forth between two contributors. An average of the two Lewis formulas is sometimes drawn using a dashed line to represent a "partial" bond. In the dashed-line notation the central oxygen is linked to the other two by bonds that are halfway between a single bond and a double bond, and the terminal oxygens each bear one half of a unit negative charge. The structure below represents the resonance hybrid for ozone.



Dashed-line notation

Writing the various Lewis formulas that contribute to a resonance hybrid can be made easier by using **curved arrows** to keep track of delocalized electrons. We can convert one Lewis formula of ozone to another by moving electron pairs as shown:

The main use of curved arrows is to show electron flow in chemical reactions and will be described in Section 1.12.

Move electron pairs as shown by curved arrows  to transform one Lewis formula to another 

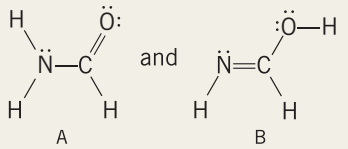
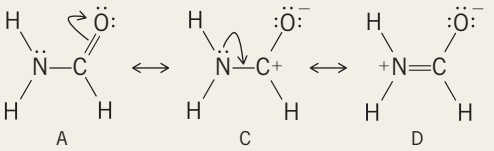
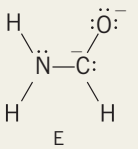
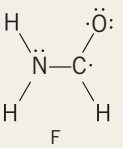
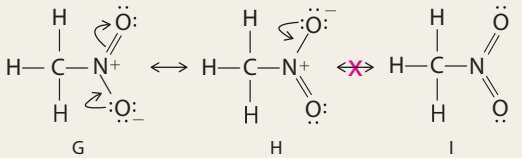
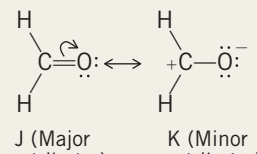
Curved arrows show the origin and destination of a pair of electrons. In the case of ozone, one arrow begins at an unshared pair and becomes the second half of a double bond. The other begins at a double bond and becomes an unshared pair of the other oxygen.

Problem 1.16

All of the bonds in the carbonate ion (CO_3^{2-}) are between C and O. Write Lewis formulas for the major resonance contributors, and use curved arrows to show their relationship. Apply the resonance concept to explain why all of the C—O bond distances in carbonate are equal.

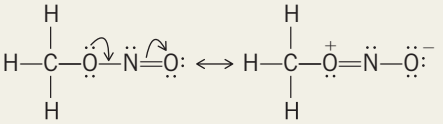
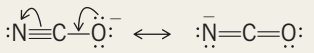
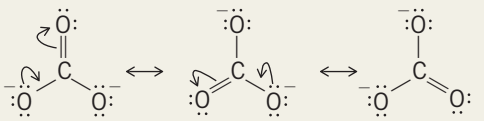
In most cases, the various resonance structures of a molecule are not equivalent and do not contribute equally to the resonance hybrid. The electron distribution in the molecule resembles that of its major contributor more closely than any of its alternative resonance structures. Therefore, it is important that we develop some generalizations concerning the factors that make one resonance form more important (more stable) than another. Table 1.6 outlines the structural features that alert us to situations when resonance needs to be considered and lists criteria for evaluating the relative importance of the contributing structures.

TABLE 1.6 Introduction to the Rules of Resonance

Rule	Illustration
I. *When can resonance be considered?*	
1. The connectivity must be the same in all contributing structures; only the electron positions may vary among the various contributing structures.	The Lewis formulas A and B are *not* resonance forms of the same compound. They are *isomers* (different compounds with the same molecular formula).  A and B The Lewis formulas A, C, and D are resonance forms of a single compound.  A C D
2. Each contributing structure must have the same number of electrons and the same *net* charge. The formal charges of individual atoms may vary among the various Lewis formulas.	Structures A, C, and D (preceding example) all have 18 valence electrons and a net charge of 0, even though they differ in respect to formal charges on individual atoms. Structure E has 20 valence electrons and a net charge of −2. It is not a resonance structure of A, C, or D.  E
3. Each contributing structure must have the same number of *unpaired* electrons.	Structural formula F has the same atomic positions and the same number of electrons as A, C, and D, but is not a resonance form of any of them. F has two unpaired electrons; all the electrons in A, C, and D are paired.  F
4. Contributing structures in which the octet rule is exceeded for second-row elements make no contribution. (The octet rule may be exceeded for elements beyond the second row.)	Lewis formulas G and H are resonance contributors to the structure of nitromethane. Structural formula I is not a permissible Lewis formula because it has ten electrons around nitrogen.  G H I
II. *Which resonance form contributes more?*	
5. As long as the octet rule is not exceeded for second-row elements, the contributing structure with the greater number of covalent bonds contributes more to the resonance hybrid. Maximizing the number of bonds and satisfying the octet rule normally go hand in hand. This rule is more important than rules 6 and 7.	Of the two Lewis formulas for formaldehyde, the major contributor J has one more bond than the minor contributor K.  J (Major contributor) K (Minor contributor)

Continued

TABLE 1.6 Introduction to the Rules of Resonance (*Continued*)

Rule	Illustration
6. When two or more structures satisfy the octet rule, the major contributor is the one with the smallest separation of oppositely charged atoms.	The two structures L and M for methyl nitrite have the same number of bonds, but L is the major contributor because it lacks the separation of positive and negative charge that characterizes M.  L (Major contributor) M (Minor contributor)
7. Among structural formulas that satisfy the octet rule and in which one or more atoms bears a formal charge, the major contributor is the one in which the negative charge resides on the most electronegative atom, and the positive charge on the least electronegative element.	The major contributing structure for cyanate ion is N because the negative charge is on its oxygen.  N (Major contributor) O (Minor contributor) In O the negative charge is on nitrogen. Oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen and can better support a negative charge.
III. *What is the effect of resonance?*	
8. Electron delocalization stabilizes a molecule. Resonance is a way of showing electron delocalization. Therefore, the true electron distribution is more stable than any of the contributing structures. The degree of stabilization is greatest when the contributing structures are of equal stability.	Structures P, Q, and R for carbonate ion are equivalent and contribute equally to the electron distribution. The true structure of carbonate ion is a hybrid of P, Q, and R and is more stable than any of them.  P Q R

Problem 1.17

Write the resonance structure obtained by moving electrons as indicated by the curved arrows. Compare the stabilities of the two Lewis formulas according to the guidelines in Table 1.6. Are the two structures equally stable, or is one more stable than the other? Why?

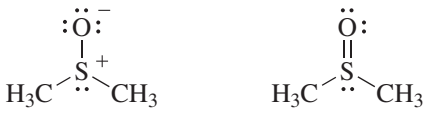
Sample Solution (a) The curved arrow shows how we move an unshared electron pair assigned to oxygen so that it becomes shared by carbon and oxygen. This converts a single bond to a double bond and leads to a formal charge of +1 on oxygen.

The structure on the right is more stable because it has one more covalent bond than the original structure. Carbon did not have an octet of electrons in the original structure, but the octet rule is satisfied for both carbon and oxygen in the new structure.

It is good chemical practice to represent molecules by their most stable contributing structure. However, the ability to write alternative resonance forms and to assess their relative contributions can provide insight into both molecular structure and chemical behavior.

1.9 Sulfur and Phosphorus-Containing Organic Compounds and the Octet Rule

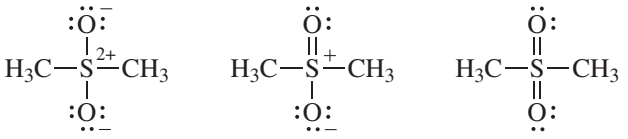
Applying the Lewis rules to compounds that contain a *third-row element* such as sulfur is sometimes complicated by a conflict between minimizing charge separation and following the octet rule. Consider the two structural formulas **A** and **B** for dimethyl sulfoxide:



A **B**

According to resonance, **A** and **B** are contributing structures, and the actual structure is a hybrid of both. The octet rule favors **A,** but maximizing bonding and eliminating charge separation favor **B.** The justification for explicitly considering **B** is that sulfur has vacant 3*d* orbitals that permit it to accommodate more than eight electrons in its valence shell.

The situation is even more pronounced in dimethyl sulfone in which structural formula **C** has 8 electrons in sulfur's valence shell, **D** has 10, and **E** has 12.

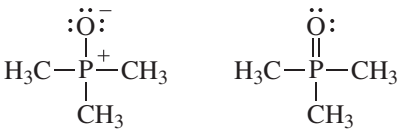


C **D** **E**

There is no consensus regarding which Lewis formula is the major contributor in these and related sulfur-containing compounds. The IUPAC recommends writing double bonds rather than dipolar single bonds; that is, **B** for dimethyl sulfoxide and **E** for dimethyl sulfone.

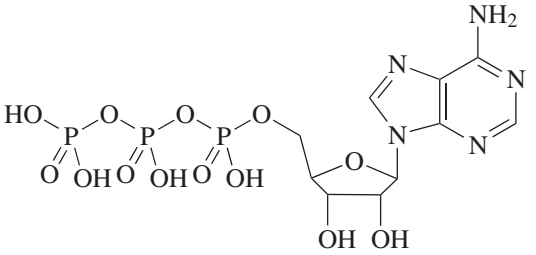
The 2008 IUPAC Recommendations "Graphical Representation Standards for Chemical Structure Diagrams" can be accessed at http://www.iupac.org/publications/pac/80/2/0277/. For more on the IUPAC, see the boxed essay "What's In A Name? Organic Nomenclature" in Chapter 2.

Similarly, compounds with four atoms or groups bonded to phosphorus can be represented by contributing structures of the type **F** and **G** shown for trimethylphosphine oxide.



F **G**

Phosphorus shares 8 electrons in **F,** 10 in **G.** The octet rule favors **F;** involvement of 3*d* orbitals allows **G.** As with sulfur-containing compounds, the IUPAC recommends **G,** but both formulas have been used. Many biochemically important compounds—adenosine triphosphate (ATP), for example—are *phosphates* and can be written with either a P=O or $^{+}$P—O^{-} unit. The same recommendation applies to them; the double-bonded structure is preferred.



Adenosine triphosphate

Before leaving this introduction to bonding in sulfur and phosphorus compounds, we should emphasize that the only valence orbitals available to second-row elements (Li, Be, B, C, N, O, F, Ne) are 2*s* and 2*p,* and the octet rule cannot be exceeded for them.

Problem 1.18

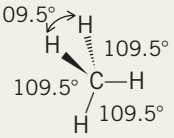
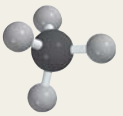
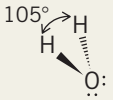
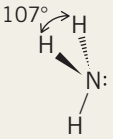
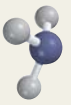
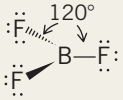
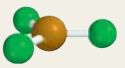
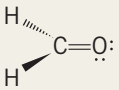
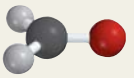
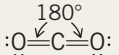
Of the four structural formulas shown, three are permissible and one is not. Which one is not a permissible structure? Why?

$(CH_3)_3N{=}CH_2$ $(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{N}{-}\overset{-}{C}H_2$ $(CH_3)_3P{=}CH_2$ $(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{P}{-}\overset{-}{C}H_2$

1.10 The Shapes of Some Simple Molecules

So far we have emphasized structure in terms of "electron bookkeeping." We now turn our attention to molecular geometry and will see how we can begin to connect the three-dimensional shape of a molecule to its Lewis formula. Table 1.7 lists some simple compounds illustrating the geometries that will be seen most often in our study of organic chemistry.

TABLE 1.7 VSEPR and Molecular Geometry

Compound	Structural formula	Repulsive electron pairs	Arrangement of electron pairs	Molecular shape	Molecular model
Methane (CH_4)		Carbon has four bonded pairs	Tetrahedral	**Tetrahedral**	
Water (H_2O)		Oxygen has two bonded pairs + two unshared pairs	Tetrahedral	**Bent**	
Ammonia (NH_3)		Nitrogen has three bonded pairs + one unshared pair	Tetrahedral	**Trigonal pyramidal**	
Boron trifluoride (BF_3)		Boron has three bonded pairs	Trigonal planar	**Trigonal planar**	
Formaldehyde (H_2CO)		Carbon has two bonded pairs + one double bond, which is counted as one bonded pair	Trigonal planar	**Trigonal planar**	
Carbon dioxide (CO_2)		Carbon has two double bonds, which are counted as two bonded pairs	Linear	**Linear**	

Molecular Models And Modeling

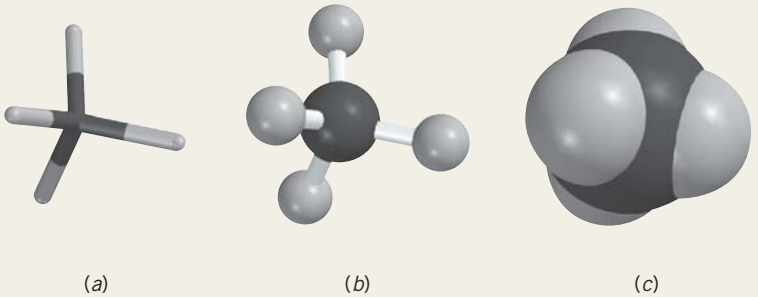
We can gain a clearer idea about the features that affect structure and reactivity when we examine the three-dimensional shape of a molecule, using either a physical model or a graphical one. Physical models are tangible objects and first appeared on the chemistry scene in the nineteenth century. They proved their worth in two of the pioneering scientific achievements of the mid-twentieth century—Pauling's protein α-helix and the Watson–Crick DNA double helix. But physical models are limited to information about overall shape, angles, and distances and have given way to computer graphics rendering of models in twenty-first century chemistry, biochemistry, and molecular biology.

At its lowest level, computer graphics substitutes for a physical molecular modeling kit. It is a simple matter to assemble atoms into a specified molecule, then display it in a variety of orientations and formats. Three of these formats are illustrated for methane in Figure 1.6. The most familiar are ball-and-stick models (Figure 1.6*b*), which direct attention both to the atoms and the bonds that connect them. Framework models (Figure 1.6*a*) and space-filling models (Figure 1.6*c*) represent opposite extremes. Framework models emphasize a molecule's bonds while ignoring the sizes of the atoms. Space-filling models emphasize the volume occupied by individual atoms at the cost of a clear depiction of the bonds; they are most useful in those cases where we wish to examine the overall molecular shape and to assess how closely nonbonded atoms approach each other.

Collections such as the Protein Data Bank (PDB) are freely available on the Internet along with viewers for manipulating the models. As of 2011, the PDB contains experimentally obtained structural data for more than 77,000 molecules—mainly proteins—and serves as a resource for scientists seeking to understand the structure and function of important biomolecules. Figure 1.7 shows a model of human insulin in a display option in which the two chains are shown as ribbons of different colors.

Computational chemistry takes model making to a yet higher level. Most modeling software also incorporates programs that identify the most stable geometry of a molecule by calculating the energies of possible candidate structures. More than this, the electron distribution in a molecule can be calculated and displayed as described in the boxed essay *Electrostatic Potential Maps* earlier in this chapter.

Molecular models of various types are used throughout this text. Their number and variety of applications testify to their importance in communicating the principles and applications of molecular structure in organic chemistry.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

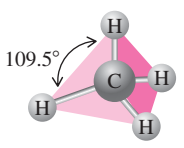
Figure 1.6

Molecular models of methane (CH_4). (*a*) Framework models show the bonds connecting the atoms but not the atoms themselves. (*b*) Ball-and-stick models show the atoms as balls and the bonds as rods. (*c*) Space-filling models portray overall molecular size; the radius of each sphere approximates the van der Waals radius of the atom.

Figure 1.7

A ribbon model of the two strands of human insulin. The model may be accessed, viewed, and downloaded in various formats by entering 2KJJ as the PDB ID at http://www.rcsb.org/pdb/home/home.do. (From coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank, PDB ID: 2KJJ. Q. X. Hua, M. A. Weiss, Dynamics of Insulin Probed by ^{1}H NMR. Amide Proton Exchange. Anomalous Flexibility of the Receptor-Binding Surface.)

Methane (CH_4) is a tetrahedral molecule; its four hydrogens occupy the corners of a tetrahedron with carbon at its center. Several types of molecular models of methane are shown in Figure 1.6, and Table 1.7 recalls their tetrahedral geometry by way of a ball-and-spoke model. Table 1.7 also shows a common method of representing three-dimensionality through the use of different bond styles. A solid wedge (▬) stands for a bond that projects



Tetrahedral methane

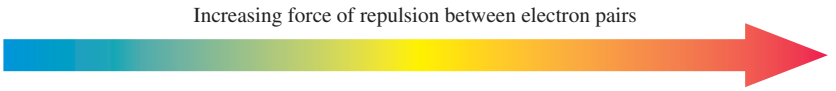
toward you, a "hashed" wedge (▨) for one that points away from you, and a simple line (—) for a bond that lies in the plane of the paper.

The tetrahedral geometry of methane is often explained with the **valence shell electron-pair repulsion (VSEPR) model.** The VSEPR model rests on the idea that an electron pair, either a bonded pair or an unshared pair, associated with a particular atom will be as far away from the atom's other electron pairs as possible. Thus, a tetrahedral geometry permits the four bonds of methane to be maximally separated and is characterized by H—C—H angles of 109.5°, a value referred to as the **tetrahedral angle.**

Although reservations have been expressed concerning VSEPR as an *explanation* for molecular geometries, it remains a useful *tool* for predicting the shapes of organic compounds.

Water, ammonia, and methane share the common feature of an approximately tetrahedral arrangement of four electron pairs. Because we describe the shape of a molecule according to the positions of its atoms only rather than by the orientation of its electron pairs, water is said to be *bent,* and ammonia is *trigonal pyramidal.*

The H—O—H angle in water (105°) and the H—N—H angles in ammonia (107°) are slightly smaller than the tetrahedral angle. These bond-angle contractions are easily accommodated by VSEPR by reasoning that bonded pairs take up less space than unshared pairs. A bonded pair feels the attractive force of two nuclei and is held more tightly than an unshared pair localized on a single atom. Thus, repulsive forces increase in the order:



Bonded pair-bonded pair < Unshared pair-bonded pair < Unshared pair-unshared pair
Least repulsive — Most repulsive

Repulsions among the four bonded pairs of methane give the normal tetrahedral angle of 109.5°. Repulsions among the unshared pair of nitrogen in ammonia and the three bonded pairs cause the bonded pair-bonded pair H—N—H angles to be smaller than 109.5°. In water, a larger repulsive force exists because of two unshared pairs, and the H—O—H angle is compressed further to 105°.

Boron trifluoride is a *trigonal planar* molecule. There are six electrons, two for each B—F bond, associated with the valence shell of boron. These three bonded pairs are farthest apart when they are coplanar, with F—B—F bond angles of 120°.

Problem 1.19

The salt sodium borohydride, $NaBH_4$, has an ionic bond between Na^+ and the anion BH_4^-. What are the H—B—H angles in borohydride anion?

Multiple bonds are treated as a single unit in the VSEPR model. Formaldehyde is a trigonal planar molecule in which the electrons of the double bond and those of the two single bonds are maximally separated. A linear arrangement of atoms in carbon dioxide allows the electrons in one double bond to be as far away as possible from the electrons in the other double bond.

Problem 1.20

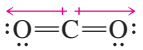
Specify the shape of the following:

(a) H—C≡N: (Hydrogen cyanide)
(b) H_4N^+ (Ammonium ion)
(c) $^{-}\ddot{:}N{=}\overset{+}{N}{=}\ddot{N}:^{-}$ (Azide ion)
(d) CO_3^{2-} (Carbonate ion)

Sample Solution (a) The structure shown accounts for all the electrons in hydrogen cyanide. No unshared electron pairs are associated with carbon, and so the structure is determined by maximizing the separation between its single bond to hydrogen and the triple bond to nitrogen. Hydrogen cyanide is a *linear* molecule.

1.11 Molecular Dipole Moments

We can combine our knowledge of molecular geometry with a feel for the polarity of chemical bonds to predict whether a molecule has a dipole moment or not. The **molecular dipole moment** is the resultant of all of the individual bond dipole moments of a substance. Some molecules, such as carbon dioxide, have polar bonds, but lack a dipole moment because their geometry causes the individual C═O bond dipoles to cancel.



Carbon dioxide

Dipole moment = 0 D

Carbon tetrachloride, with four polar C—Cl bonds and a tetrahedral shape, has no net dipole moment, because the result of the four bond dipoles, as shown in Figure 1.8, is zero. Dichloromethane, on the other hand, has a dipole moment of 1.62 D. The C—H bond dipoles reinforce the C—Cl bond dipoles.

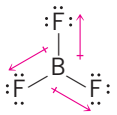
Problem 1.21

Which of the following compounds would you expect to have a dipole moment? If the molecule has a dipole moment, specify its direction.

(a) BF_3 (c) CH_4 (e) CH_2O

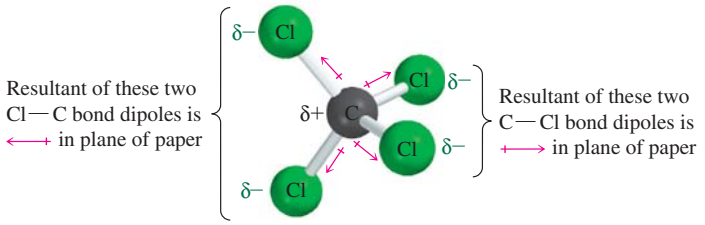
(b) H_2O (d) CH_3Cl (f) HCN

Sample Solution (a) Boron trifluoride is planar with 120° bond angles. Although each boron–fluorine bond is polar, their combined effects cancel and the molecule has no dipole moment.

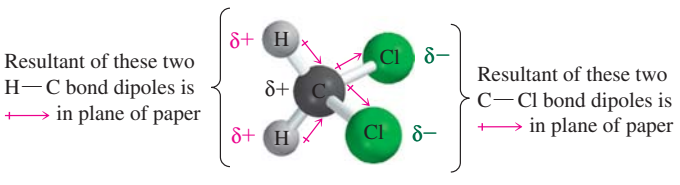


μ = 0 D

The opening paragraph of this chapter emphasized that the connection between structure and properties is central to understanding organic chemistry. We have just seen one such connection. From the Lewis formula of a molecule, we can use electronegativity to tell us about the polarity of bonds and combine that with VSEPR to predict whether the molecule has a dipole moment. In the next several sections we'll see a connection between structure and *chemical reactivity* as we review acids and bases.



(*a*) There is a mutual cancellation of individual bond dipoles in carbon tetrachloride. It has no dipole moment.



(*b*) The H—C bond dipoles reinforce the C—Cl bond moment in dichloromethane. The molecule has a dipole moment of 1.62 D.

Figure 1.8

Contribution of individual bond dipole moments to the molecular dipole moments of (*a*) carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4) and (*b*) dichloromethane (CH_2Cl_2).

1.12 Curved Arrows and Chemical Reactions

In Section 1.8 we introduced curved arrows as a tool for systematically converting one resonance contributor to another. Their more common use is to track electron flow in chemical reactions. The remainder of this chapter introduces acid–base chemistry and illustrates how curved-arrow notation enhances our understanding of chemical reactions by focusing on electron movement.

There are two kinds of curved arrows. A double-barbed arrow (↷) shows the movement of a *pair* of electrons, either a bonded pair or a lone pair. A single-barbed, or fishhook, arrow (↶) shows the movement of *one* electron. For now, we'll concern ourselves only with reactions that involve electron pairs and focus on double-barbed arrows.

We'll start with some simple examples,—reactions involving only one electron pair. Suppose the molecule A—B dissociates to cation A^+ and anion B^-. A chemical equation for this ionization could be written as:

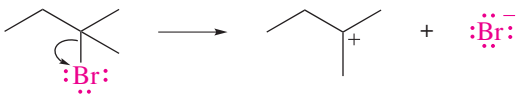
$$AB \longrightarrow A^+ + B^-$$

Alternatively, we could write:

$$A\text{—}B \longrightarrow A^+ + :B^-$$

The reaction is the same but the second equation provides more information by including the bond that is broken during ionization and showing the flow of electrons. The curved arrow begins where the electrons are originally—in the bond—and points to atom B as their destination where they become an unshared pair of the anion B^-.

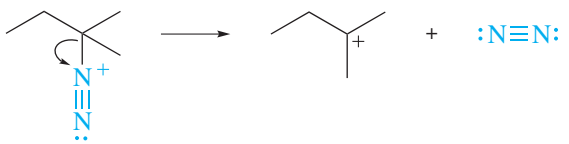
Dissociations of this type are common in organic chemistry and will be encountered frequently as we proceed through the text. In many cases, the species A^+ has its positive charge on carbon and is referred to as a **carbocation.** Dissociation of an alkyl bromide for example, involves breaking a C—Br bond with the two electrons in that bond becoming an unshared pair of bromide ion.



An alkyl bromide A carbocation Bromide ion

Charge is conserved, as it must be in all reactions. Here, the reactant is uncharged, and the net charge on the products is 0. In a conceptually related dissociation, a net charge of +1 is conserved when a positively charged reactant dissociates to a carbocation and a neutral molecule.

These alkyl bromide and diazonium ion dissociations are discussed in detail in Sections 5.18 and 21.15, respectively.

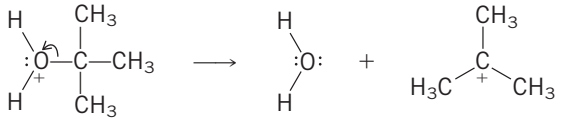


A diazonium ion A carbocation Nitrogen

Problem 1.22

Using the curved arrow to guide your reasoning, show the products of the following dissociations. Include formal charges and unshared electron pairs. Check your answers to ensure that charge is conserved.

Sample Solution (a) The curved arrow tells us that the C—O bond breaks and the pair of electrons in that bond becomes an unshared electron pair of oxygen.



Water is one product of the reaction. The organic species produced is a cation. Its central carbon has six electrons in its valence shell and a formal charge of +1. Charge is conserved in the reaction. The net charge on both the left and right side of the equation is +1.

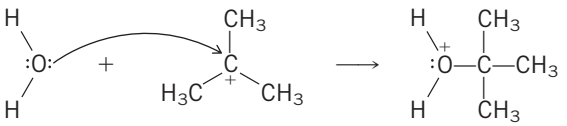
The reverse of a dissociation is a combination, such as the formation of a covalent bond between a cation A^+ and an anion $:B^-$.

Here the tail of the curved arrow begins near the middle of the unshared electron pair of $:B^-$ and the head points to the location of the new bond—in this case the open space just before A^+. *Electrons flow from sites of higher electron density to lower.* The unshared electron pair of $:B^-$ becomes the shared pair in the A—B bond.

Problem 1.23

Write equations, including curved arrows, describing the reverse reactions of Problem 1.22.

Sample Solution (a) First write the equation for the reverse process. Next, use a curved arrow to show that the electron pair in the C—O bond in the product originates as an unshared electron pair of oxygen in water.

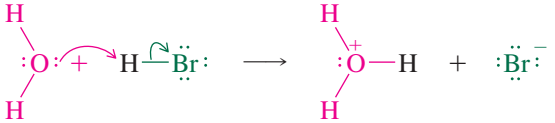


Many reactions combine bond making with bond breaking and require more than one curved arrow.

Note that the electron counts and, therefore, the formal charges of A and C, but not B, change. An example is a reaction that will be discussed in detail in Section 8.3.

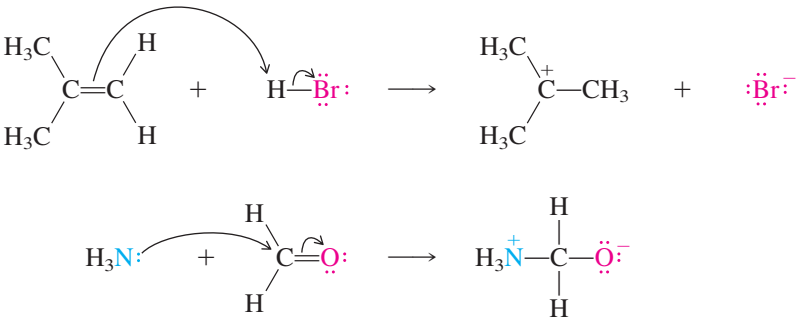
An unshared electron pair of a negatively charged oxygen becomes a shared electron pair in a C—O bond. Again, notice that electrons flow from electron-rich to electron-poor sites. Hydroxide ion is negatively charged and, therefore, electron-rich while the carbon of H_3CBr is partially positive because of the polarization of the C—Br bond (Section 1.5).

A very common process is the transfer of a proton from one atom to another as in the reaction that occurs when hydrogen bromide dissolves in water.



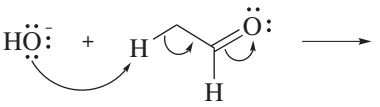
Numerous other proton-transfer reactions will appear in the remainder of this chapter.

Curved-arrow notation is also applied to reactions in which double and triple bonds are made or broken. Only one component (one electron pair) of the double or triple bond is involved. Examples include:



Problem 1.24

Reactions of the type shown are an important part of Chapter 20. Follow the arrows to predict the products. Show formal charges and include all unshared electron pairs.



Before we conclude this section and move on to acids and bases, we should emphasize an important point.

- *Resist the temptation to use curved arrows to show the movement of atoms*. Curved arrows always show *electron* flow.

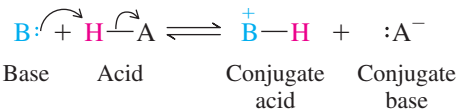
Although our eyes are drawn to the atoms when we look at a chemical equation, following the electrons provides a clearer understanding of how reactants become products.

1.13 Acids and Bases: The Brønsted–Lowry View

Acids and bases are a big part of organic chemistry, but the emphasis is much different from what you may be familiar with from your general chemistry course. Most of the attention in general chemistry is given to numerical calculations: pH, percent ionization, buffer problems, and so on. Some of this returns in organic chemistry, but mostly we are concerned with acids and bases as reactants, products, and catalysts in chemical reactions. We'll start by reviewing some general ideas about acids and bases.

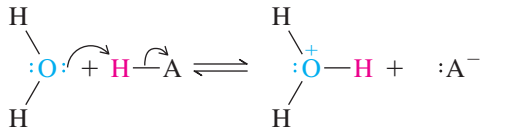
According to the theory proposed by Svante Arrhenius, a Swedish chemist and winner of the 1903 Nobel Prize in Chemistry, an acid is a substance that ionizes to give protons when dissolved in water; a base ionizes to give hydroxide ions.

A more general theory of acids and bases was devised by Johannes Brønsted (Denmark) and Thomas M. Lowry (England) in 1923. In the Brønsted–Lowry approach, an acid is a **proton donor,** and a base is a **proton acceptor.** The reaction that occurs between an acid and a base is *proton transfer*.



In the equation shown, the base uses an unshared pair of electrons to remove a proton from an acid. The base is converted to its **conjugate acid,** and the acid is converted to its **conjugate base.** A base and its conjugate acid always differ by a single proton. Likewise, an acid and its conjugate base always differ by a single proton.

In the Brønsted–Lowry view, an acid doesn't dissociate in water; it transfers a proton to water. Water acts as a base.



The systematic name for the conjugate acid of water (H_3O^+) is **oxonium ion.** Its common name is **hydronium ion.**

Problem 1.25

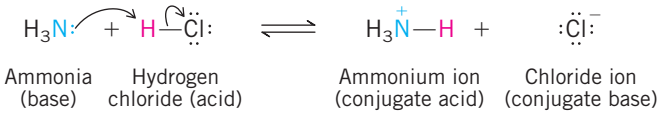
Write an equation for proton transfer from hydrogen chloride (HCl) to

(a) Ammonia ($:NH_3$)

(b) Trimethylamine [$(CH_3)_3N:$]

Identify the acid, base, conjugate acid, and conjugate base and use curved arrows to track electron movement.

Sample Solution We are told that a proton is transferred from HCl to $:NH_3$. Therefore, HCl is the Brønsted acid and $:NH_3$ is the Brønsted base.

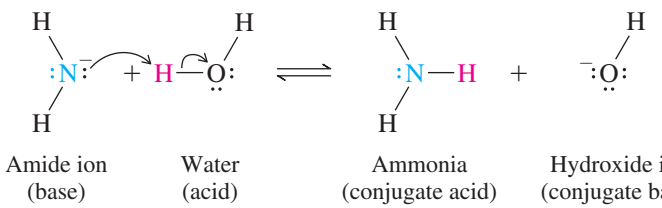


The strength of an acid is measured by its **acidity constant** K_a defined as:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][:A^-]}{[HA]}$$

Even though water is a reactant (a Brønsted base), its concentration does not appear in the expression for K_a because it is the solvent. The convention for equilibrium constant expressions is to omit concentration terms for pure solids, liquids, and solvents.

Water can also be a Brønsted acid, donating a proton to a base. Sodium amide ($NaNH_2$), for example, is a source of the strongly basic amide ion, which reacts with water to give ammonia.



Problem 1.26

Potassium hydride (KH) is a source of the strongly basic hydride ion ($:H^-$).

Using curved arrows to track electron movement, write an equation for the reaction of hydride ion with water. What is the conjugate acid of hydride ion?

A convenient way to express the strength of an acid is by its **pK_a**, defined as:

$$pK_a = -\log_{10} K_a$$

Thus, acetic acid with $K_a = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}$ has a pK_a of 4.7. The advantage of pK_a over K_a is that it avoids exponentials. You are probably more familiar with K_a, but most organic chemists and biochemists use pK_a. It is a good idea to be comfortable with both systems, so you should practice converting K_a to pK_a and vice versa.

Problem 1.27

Salicylic acid, the starting material for the preparation of aspirin, has a K_a of 1.06×10^{-3}. What is its pK_a?

Problem 1.28

Hydrogen cyanide (HCN) has a pK_a of 9.1. What is its K_a?

Table 1.8 lists a number of acids, their acidity constants, and their conjugate bases. The list is more extensive than we need at this point, but we will return to it repeatedly throughout the text as new aspects of acid–base behavior are introduced. The table is organized so that acid strength decreases from top to bottom. Conversely, the strength of the conjugate base increases from top to bottom. Thus, *the stronger the acid, the weaker its conjugate base. The stronger the base, the weaker its conjugate acid.*

The Brønsted–Lowry approach involving conjugate relationships between acids and bases makes a separate basicity constant K_b unnecessary. Rather than having separate tables listing K_a for acids and K_b for bases, the usual practice is to give only K_a or pK_a as was done in Table 1.8. Assessing relative basicities requires only that we remember that the weaker the acid, the stronger the conjugate base and find the appropriate acid–base pair in the table.

Problem 1.29

Which is the stronger base in each of the following pairs? (*Note:* This information will prove useful when you get to Chapter 9.)

(a) Sodium ethoxide ($NaOCH_2CH_3$) or sodium amide ($NaNH_2$)

(b) Sodium acetylide ($NaC{\equiv}CH$) or sodium amide ($NaNH_2$)

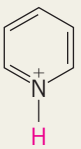
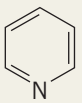
(c) Sodium acetylide ($NaC{\equiv}CH$) or sodium ethoxide ($NaOCH_2CH_3$)

Sample Solution (a) $NaOCH_2CH_3$ contains the ions Na^+ and $CH_3CH_2O^-$. $NaNH_2$ contains the ions Na^+ and H_2N^-. $CH_3CH_2O^-$ is the conjugate base of ethanol; H_2N^- is the conjugate base of ammonia.

Base	$CH_3CH_2O^-$	H_2N^-
Conjugate acid	CH_3CH_2OH	NH_3
pK_a of conjugate acid	16	36

The conjugate acid of $CH_3CH_2O^-$ is stronger than the conjugate acid of H_2N^-. Therefore, H_2N^- is a stronger base than $CH_3CH_2O^-$.

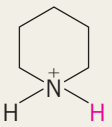
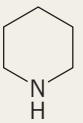
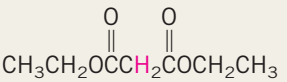
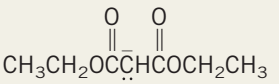
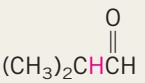
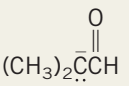
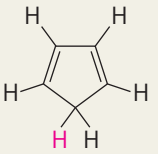
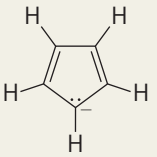
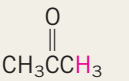
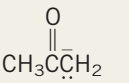
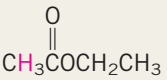
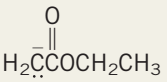
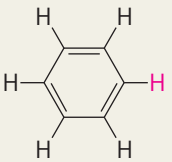
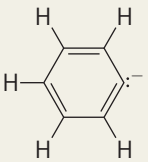
TABLE 1.8 Acidity Constants (pK_a) of Acids

Acid	pK_a	Formula	Conjugate base	Discussed in section
Hydrogen iodide	–10.4	HI	I^-	1.14; 1.15
Hydrogen bromide	–5.8	HBr	Br^-	1.14; 1.15
Sulfuric acid	–4.8	$HOSO_2OH$	$HOSO_2O^-$	1.15
Hydrogen chloride	–3.9	HCl	Cl^-	1.14; 1.15
Hydronium ion*	–1.7	H_3O^+	H_2O	1.15
Nitric acid	–1.4	$HONO_2$	$^-ONO_2$	1.14
Hydrogen sulfate ion	2.0	$HOSO_2O^-$	$^-OSO_2O^-$	1.15
Hydrogen fluoride	3.1	HF	F^-	1.14
Anilinium ion	4.6	$C_6H_5\overset{+}{N}H_3$	$C_6H_5NH_2$	21.4
Acetic acid	4.7	$CH_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}OH$	$CH_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}O^-$	1.14; 1.15; 18.5
Pyridinium ion	5.2			11.22; 21.4
Carbonic acid	6.4	H_2CO_3	HCO_3^-	18.9
Hydrogen sulfide	7.0	H_2S	HS^-	8.10
2,4-Pentanedione	9	$CH_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}CH_2\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}CH_3$	$CH_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}\overset{-}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{C}}H\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}CH_3$	20.2
Hydrogen cyanide	9.1	HCN	CN^-	8.10
Ammonium ion	9.3	NH_4^+	NH_3	21.4
Glycine	9.6	$H_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}O^-$	$H_2NCH_2\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}O^-$	25.3
Phenol	10	C_6H_5OH	$C_6H_5O^-$	1.15; 22.4
Hydrogen carbonate ion	10.2	HCO_3^-	CO_3^{2-}	18.9
Methanethiol	10.7	CH_3SH	CH_3S^-	15.12
Dimethylammonium ion	10.7	$(CH_3)_2\overset{+}{N}H_2$	$(CH_3)_2NH$	21.4
Methylammonium ion	10.7	$CH_3\overset{+}{N}H_3$	CH_3NH_2	21.4
Ethyl acetoacetate	11	$CH_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}CH_2\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}OCH_2CH_3$	$CH_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}\overset{-}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{C}}H\overset{O}{\overset{\|\|}{C}}OCH_2CH_3$	20.2

Continued

*For acid–base reactions in which water is the solvent, the pK_a of H_3O^+ is zero and the pK_a of H_2O is 14.

TABLE 1.8 Acidity Constants (pK_a) of Acids (*Continued*)

Acid	pK_a	Formula	Conjugate base	Discussed in section
Piperidinium ion	11.2			21.4
Diethyl malonate	13			20.2
Methanol	15.2	CH_3OH	CH_3O^-	1.14; 14.4
2-Methylpropanal	15.5			20.2
Water*	15.7	H_2O	HO^-	1.14
Ethanol	16	CH_3CH_2OH	$CH_3CH_2O^-$	1.14
Cyclopentadiene	16			11.20
Isopropyl alcohol	17	$(CH_3)_2CHOH$	$(CH_3)_2CHO^-$	1.14
tert-Butyl alcohol	18	$(CH_3)_3COH$	$(CH_3)_3CO^-$	1.14
Acetone	19			20.2
Ethyl acetate	25.6			20.2
Acetylene	26	$HC{\equiv}CH$	$HC{\equiv}C{:}^-$	9.5
Hydrogen	35	H_2	H^-	20.8
Ammonia	36	NH_3	H_2N^-	1.14; 1.15; 14.4
Diisopropylamine	36	$[(CH_3)_2CH]_2NH$	$[(CH_3)_2CH]_2N^-$	20.2
Benzene	43			14.4; 14.5
Ethylene	45	$H_2C{=}CH_2$	$H_2C{=}\ddot{C}H$	9.4; 9.5
Methane	60	CH_4	$\ddot{C}H_3$	1.14; 9.4; 9.5; 14.4
Ethane	62	CH_3CH_3	$CH_3\ddot{C}H_2$	14.5

Web collections of pK_a data include those of H. Reich (University of Wisconsin) at *http://www.chem.wisc.edu/areas/reich/pkatable/kacont.htm* and D. Ripin and D. A. Evans (Harvard) at *http://www2.lsdiv.harvard.edu/labs/evans/pdf/evans_pKa_table.pdf.*

*For acid-base reactions in which water is the solvent, the pK_a of H_3O^+ is zero and the pK_a of H_2O is 14.

1.14 How Structure Affects Acid Strength

In this section we'll introduce some generalizations that will permit us to connect molecular structure with acidity in related compounds. The main ways in which structure affects acidity in solution depend on:

1. The strength of the bond to the atom from which the proton is lost
2. The electronegativity of the atom from which the proton is lost
3. Electron delocalization in the conjugate base

Bond Strength. The effect of bond strength is easy to see by comparing the acidities of the hydrogen halides.

	HF	HCl	HBr	HI
pK_a	3.1	−3.9	−5.8	−10.4

Strongest H—X bond
Weakest acid

Weakest H—X bond
Strongest acid

In general, bond strength decreases going down a group in the periodic table. As the halogen X becomes larger, the H—X bond becomes longer and weaker and acid strength increases. This is the dominant factor in the series HCl, HBr, HI and also contributes to the relative weakness of HF.

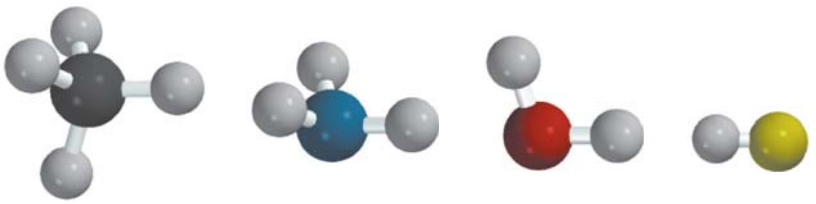
With HF, a second factor concerns the high charge-to-size ratio of F^-. Other things being equal, processes that give ions in which the electric charge is constrained to a small volume are less favorable than processes in which the charge is more spread out. The strong H—F bond and the high charge-to-size ratio of F^- combine to make HF the weakest acid of the hydrogen halides.

Because of the conjugate relationship between acidity and basicity, the strongest acid (HI) has the weakest conjugate base (I^-), and the weakest acid (HF) has the strongest conjugate base (F^-).

Problem 1.30

Which is the stronger acid, H_2O or H_2S? Which is the stronger base, HO^- or HS^-? Check your predictions against the data in Table 1.8.

Electronegativity. The effect of electronegativity on acidity is evident in the following series involving bonds between hydrogen and the second-row elements C, N, O, and F.

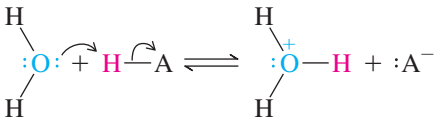


	CH_4	NH_3	H_2O	HF
pK_a	60	36	15.7	3.1

Least electronegative
Weakest acid

Most electronegative
Strongest acid

As the atom (A) to which H is bonded becomes more electronegative, the polarization $^{\delta+}H—A^{\delta-}$ becomes more pronounced and the equilibrium constant K_a for proton transfer increases.



Bond strength is more important than electronegativity when comparing elements in the same group of the periodic table as the pK_a's for the hydrogen halides show. Fluorine is the most electronegative and iodine the least electronegative of the halogens, but HF is the weakest acid while HI is the strongest. Electronegativity is the more important factor when comparing elements in the same row of the periodic table.

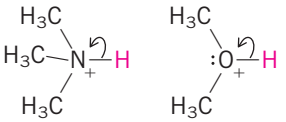
Problem 1.31

Try to do this problem without consulting Table 1.8.

(a) Which is the stronger acid: $(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{N}H$ or $(CH_3)_2\overset{+}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{O}}H$?

(b) Which is the stronger base: $(CH_3)_3N:$ or $(CH_3)_2\ddot{O}:$?

Sample Solution (a) The ionizable proton is bonded to N in $(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{N}H$ and to O in $(CH_3)_2\overset{+}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{O}}H$.



Nitrogen and oxygen are in the same row of the periodic table, so their relative electronegativities are the determining factor. Oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen; therefore $(CH_3)_2\overset{+}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{O}}H$ is a stronger acid than $(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{N}H$.

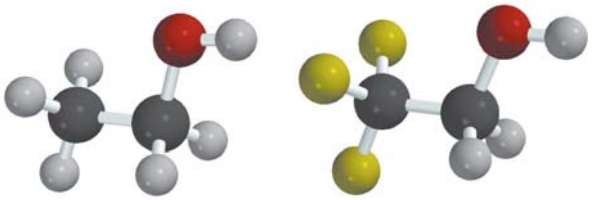
In many acids the acidic proton is bonded to oxygen. Such compounds can be considered as derivatives of water. Among organic compounds, the ones most closely related to water are alcohols. Most alcohols are somewhat weaker acids than water; methanol is slightly stronger.

	$HO—H$	$CH_3O—H$	$CH_3CH_2O—H$	$(CH_3)_2CHO—H$	$(CH_3)_3CO—H$
	Water	Methanol	Ethanol	Isopropyl alcohol	*tert*-Butyl alcohol
pK_a	15.7	15.2	16	17	18

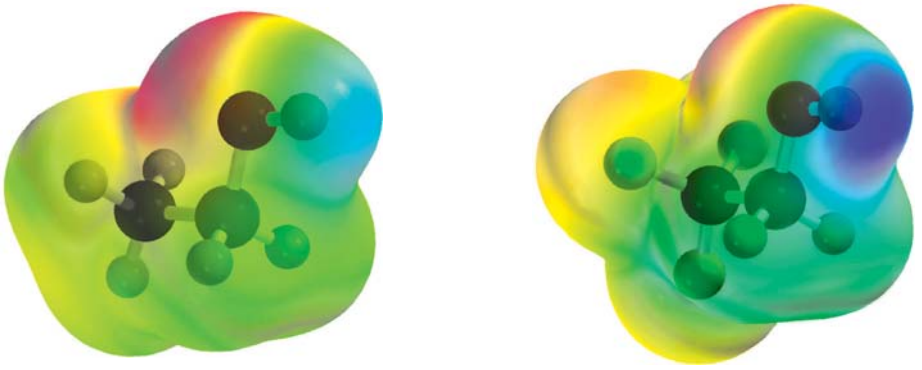
Problem 1.32

Which is a stronger base, ethoxide ($CH_3CH_2\ddot{O}:^-$) or *tert*-butoxide [$(CH_3)_3C\ddot{O}:^-$]?

Electronegative atoms in a molecule can affect acidity even when they are not directly bonded to the ionizable proton. Compare ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH) with a related compound in which a CF_3 group replaces the CH_3 group.



	$CH_3CH_2O—H$	$CF_3CH_2O—H$
	Ethanol	2,2,2-Trifluoroethanol
pK_a	16	11.3

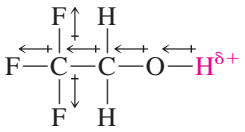


Ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH) 2,2,2-Trifluoroethanol (CF_3CH_2OH)

Figure 1.9

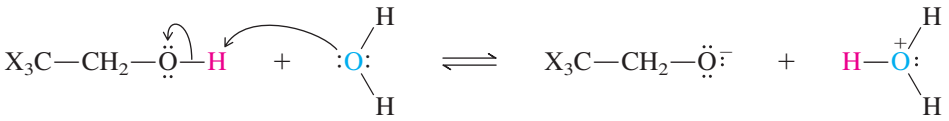
Electrostatic potential maps of ethanol and 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol. As indicated by the more blue, less green color in the region near the OH proton in 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol, this proton bears a greater degree of positive charge and is more acidic than the OH proton in ethanol. The color scale is the same in both maps.

We see that the substitution of C—H bonds by C—F increases the acidity of the O—H proton by 4.7 pK_a units, which corresponds to a difference of $10^{4.7}$ in K_a. The simplest explanation for this enhanced acidity is that the electronegative fluorines attract electrons and that this attraction is transmitted through the bonds, increasing the positive character of the O—H proton.



The greater positive character, hence the increased acidity, of the O—H proton of 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol can be seen in the electrostatic potential maps displayed in Figure 1.9.

We can also explain the greater acidity of CF_3CH_2OH relative to CH_3CH_2OH by referring to the equations for their ionization.



X = H: Ethanol
X = F: 2,2,2-Trifluoroethanol

X = H: Conjugate base of ethanol
X = F: Conjugate base of 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol

The conjugate base of 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol, the anion $CF_3CH_2O^-$, is stabilized by its three fluorines, which attract electrons from the negatively charged oxygen, dispersing the negative charge. Because of this stabilization, the equilibrium for ionization of CF_3CH_2OH lies farther to the right than that of CH_3CH_2OH.

Structural effects that are transmitted through bonds are called **inductive effects.** A substituent *induces* a polarization in the bonds between it and some remote site.

The same kind of inductive effects that make CF_3CH_2OH a stronger acid than CH_3CH_2OH makes the trifluoro derivative of acetic acid more than 4 pK_a units stronger than acetic acid.

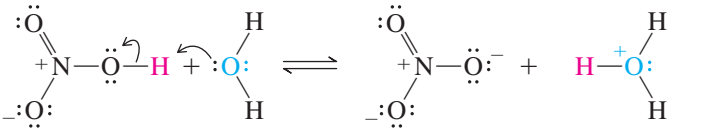
	$CH_3CO—H$	$CF_3CO—H$
	Acetic acid	Trifluoroacetic acid
pK_a	4.7	0.50

Problem 1.33

Hypochlorous and hypobromous acid (HOCl and HOBr) are weak acids. Write chemical equations for the ionization of each in water and predict which one is the stronger acid.

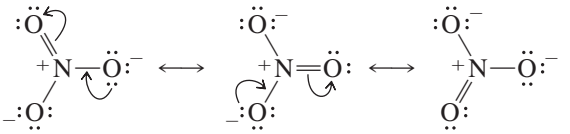
Inductive effects depend on the electronegativity of the substituent and the number of bonds between it and the affected site. As the number of bonds between the two units increases, the inductive effect decreases.

Electron Delocalization in the Conjugate Base. With a pK_a of −1.4, nitric acid is almost completely ionized in water. If we look at the Lewis formula of nitric acid in light of what we have said about inductive effects, we can see why. The N atom in nitric acid is not only electronegative in its own right, but bears a formal charge of +1, which enhances its ability to attract electrons away from the —OH group. But inductive effects are only part of the story. When nitric acid transfers its proton to water, nitrate ion is produced.



Nitric acid (acid) | Water (base) | Nitrate ion (conjugate base) | Hydronium ion (conjugate acid)

Nitrate ion is stabilized by electron delocalization, which we can represent in terms of resonance between three equivalent contributing structures:

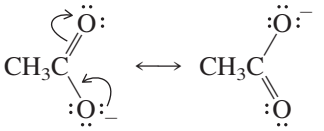


The negative charge is shared equally by all three oxygens. Stabilization of nitrate ion by electron delocalization increases the equilibrium constant for its formation.

Problem 1.34

What is the average formal charge on each oxygen in nitrate ion?

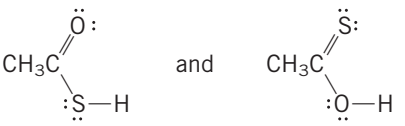
A similar electron delocalization stabilizes acetate ion and related species.



Both oxygens of acetate share the negative charge equally, which translates into a K_a for acetic acid that is greater than it would be if the charge were confined to a single oxygen.

Problem 1.35

Show by writing appropriate resonance structures that the two compounds shown form the same conjugate base on ionization. Which atom in the conjugate base, O or S, bears the greater share of negative charge?



Organic chemistry involves a good bit of reasoning by analogy and looking for trends. At the beginning of this section we listed three ways that structure can affect acidity. The last two—electronegativity of the atom from which the proton is lost, and electron delocalization

in the conjugate base—are both related to the stability of the conjugate base. A useful trend emerges: *factors that stabilize the conjugate base increase the acidity of the parent acid.*

1.15 Acid–Base Equilibria

In any proton-transfer reaction:

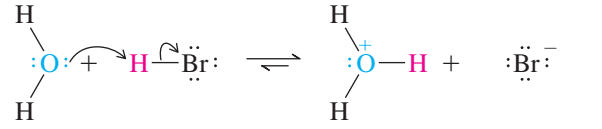
$$\text{Acid} + \text{Base} \rightleftharpoons \text{Conjugate acid} + \text{Conjugate base}$$

we are concerned with the question of whether the position of equilibrium lies to the side of products or reactants. There is an easy way to determine this. The reaction proceeds in the direction that converts the stronger acid and the stronger base to the weaker acid and the weaker base.

$$\text{Stronger acid} + \text{Stronger base} \xrightleftharpoons{K > 1} \text{Weaker acid} + \text{Weaker base}$$

This generalization can be stated even more simply. *The reaction will be favorable when the stronger acid is on the left and the weaker acid is on the right*. The equilibrium favors dissociation of the stronger acid.

Consider first the case of adding a strong acid such as HBr to water. The equation for the Brønsted acid–base reaction that occurs between them is:



Water — Hydrogen bromide, $pK_a = -5.8$, stronger acid — Hydronium ion, $pK_a = 0$, weaker acid — Bromide ion

For acid–base reactions in which water is the solvent, the pK_a of $H_3O^+ = 0$. See Table 1.8.

We identify the acid on the left and the acid on the right and compare their pK_a's to decide which is stronger. (Remember, the more negative the pK_a, the stronger the acid.) The acid on the left is HBr, which has a pK_a of −5.8. The acid on the right is H_3O^+, which has a pK_a of 0. The stronger acid (HBr) is on the left and the weaker acid (H_3O^+) is on the right, so the position of equilibrium lies to the right. The equilibrium constant K_{eq} for an acid–base reaction is given by the ratio of the K_a of the reactant acid to the K_a of the product acid.

$$K_{eq} = \frac{K_a \text{ of reactant acid}}{K_a \text{ of product acid}}$$

Since $10^{-pK_a} = K_a$, we rewrite the expression as:

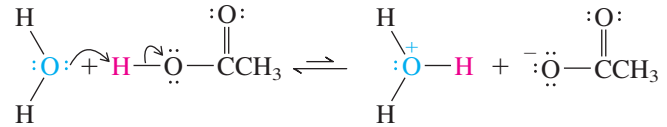
$$K_{eq} = \frac{10^{-pK_a} \text{ of reactant acid}}{10^{-pKa} \text{ of product acid}}$$

and substitute the pK_a values of HBr and H_3O^+ to calculate K_{eq}.

$$K_{eq} = \frac{10^{5.8}}{10^{0}}$$

This equilibrium constant is so large that we consider HBr to be completely ionized in water.

Compare the reaction of HBr with water to that of acetic acid with water.



Water — Acetic acid, $pK_a = 4.7$, weaker acid — Hydronium ion, $pK_a = 0$, stronger acid — Acetate ion

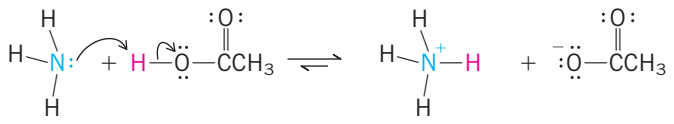
Here, the weaker acid (acetic acid) is on the left and the stronger acid (hydronium ion) is on the right. The equilibrium constant $K_{eq} = 10^{-4.7}$, and the position of equilibrium lies far to the left.

Problem 1.36

What is the equilibrium constant for the following acid–base reactions?

(a) ammonia and acetic acid
(b) fluoride ion and acetic acid
(c) ethanol and hydrobromic acid

Sample Solution (a) Always start with an equation for an acid–base reaction. Ammonia is a Brønsted base and accepts a proton from the —OH group of acetic acid. Ammonia is converted to its conjugate acid, and acetic acid to its conjugate base.



Ammonia | Acetic acid $pK_a = 4.7$ stronger acid | Ammonium ion $pK_a = 9.3$ weaker acid | Acetate ion

From their respective pK_a's, we see that acetic acid is a much stronger acid than ammonium ion. Therefore, the equilibrium lies to the right. The equilibrium constant for the process is

$$K_{eq} = \frac{10^{-pK_a \text{ of acetic acid (reactant)}}}{10^{-pK_a \text{ of ammonium ion (product)}}} = \frac{10^{-4.7}}{10^{-9.3}} = 10^{4.6}$$

An unexpected fact emerges by working through this exercise. We see that although acetic acid is a weak acid and ammonia is a weak base, the acid–base reaction between them is virtually complete.

Two important points come from using relative pK_a's to analyze acid–base equilibria:

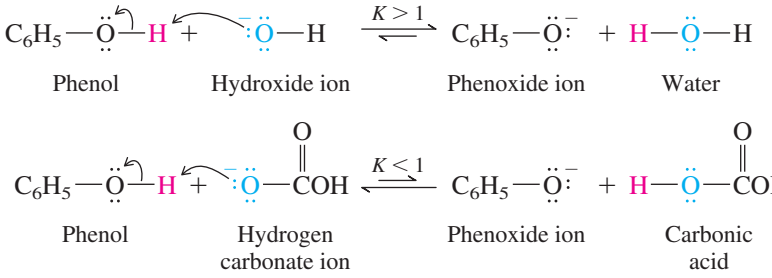
1. They permit clear-cut distinctions between strong and weak acids and bases. *A strong acid is one that is stronger than H_3O^+.* Conversely, a weak acid is one that is weaker than H_3O^+.
   Example: The pK_a's for the first and second ionizations of sulfuric acid are −4.8 and 2.0, respectively. Sulfuric acid ($HOSO_2OH$) is a strong acid; hydrogen sulfate ion ($HOSO_2O^-$) is a weak acid.
   A *strong base is one that is stronger than HO^-.*
   Example: A common misconception is that the conjugate base of a weak acid is strong. This is sometimes, but not always, true. It is true, for example, for ammonia, which is a very weak acid (pK_a 36). Its conjugate base amide ion (H_2N^-) is a much stronger base than HO^-. It is not true, however, for acetic acid; both acetic acid and its conjugate base acetate ion are weak. The conjugate base of a weak acid will be strong only when the acid is a weaker acid than water.
2. The strongest acid present in significant amounts at equilibrium after a strong acid is dissolved in water is H_3O^+. The strongest acid present in significant amounts when a weak acid is dissolved in water is the weak acid itself.
   Example: $[H_3O^+] = 1.0$ M in a 1.0 M aqueous solution of HBr. The concentration of undissociated HBr molecules is near zero. $[H_3O^+] = 0.004$ M in a 1.0 M aqueous solution of acetic acid. The concentration of undissociated acetic acid molecules is near 1.0 M. Likewise, HO^- is the strongest base that can be present in significant quantities in aqueous solution.

Problem 1.37

Rank the following in order of decreasing concentration in a solution prepared by dissolving 1.0 mol of sulfuric acid in enough water to give 1.0 L of solution. (It is not necessary to do any calculations.)

$$H_2SO_4,\ HSO_4^-,\ SO_4^{2-},\ H_3O^+$$

Analyzing acid–base reactions according to the Brønsted–Lowry picture provides yet another benefit. Table 1.8, which lists acids according to their strength in descending order along with their conjugate bases, can be used to predict the direction of proton transfer. Acid–base reactions in which a proton is transferred from an acid to a base that lies below it in the table have favorable equilibrium constants. Proton transfers from an acid to a base that lies above it in the table are unfavorable. Thus the equilibrium constant for proton transfer from phenol to hydroxide ion is greater than 1, but that for proton transfer from phenol to hydrogen carbonate ion is less than 1.



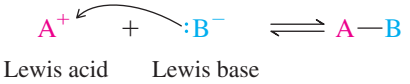
Hydroxide ion lies below phenol in Table 1.8; hydrogen carbonate ion lies above phenol. The practical consequence of the reactions shown is that NaOH is a strong enough base to convert phenol to phenoxide ion, but $NaHCO_3$ is not.

Problem 1.38

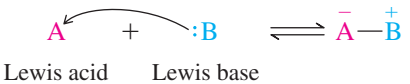
Verify that the position of equilibrium for the reaction between phenol and hydroxide ion lies to the right by comparing the pK_a of the acid on the left to the acid on the right. Which acid is stronger? Do the same for the reaction of phenol with hydrogen carbonate ion.

1.16 Lewis Acids and Lewis Bases

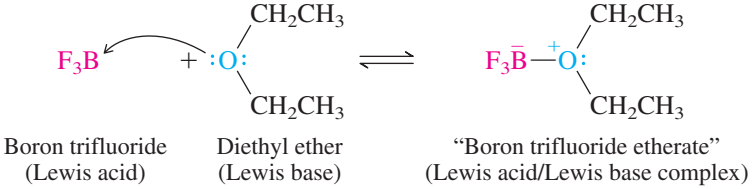
The same G. N. Lewis who gave us electron-dot formulas also suggested a way to classify acids and bases that is more general than the Brønsted–Lowry approach. Where Brønsted and Lowry viewed acids and bases as donors and acceptors of protons (positively charged), Lewis took the opposite view and focused on electron pairs (negatively charged). According to Lewis *an acid is an electron-pair acceptor, and a base is an electron-pair donor.*



An unshared pair of electrons from the Lewis base is used to form a covalent bond between the Lewis acid and the Lewis base. The Lewis acid and the Lewis base are shown as ions in the equation, but they need not be. If both are neutral molecules, the corresponding equation becomes:



We can illustrate this latter case by the reaction:



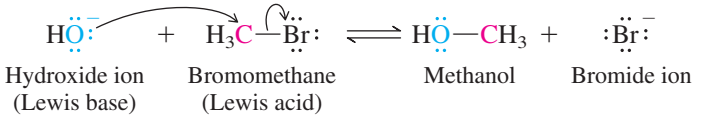
Verify that the formal charges on boron and oxygen in "boron trifluoride etherate" are correct.

The product of this reaction, a **Lewis acid/Lewis base complex** called informally "boron trifluoride etherate," may look unusual but it is a stable species with properties different from those of the reactants. Its boiling point (126°C), for example, is much higher than that of boron trifluoride—a gas with a boiling point of −100°C—and diethyl ether, a liquid that boils at 34°C.

Problem 1.39

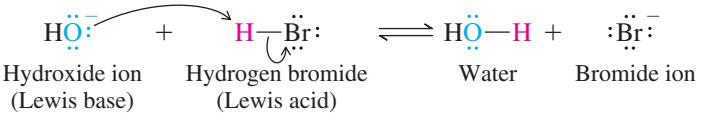
Write an equation for the Lewis acid/Lewis base reaction between boron trifluoride and dimethyl sulfide [$(CH_3)_2S$]. Use curved arrows to track the flow of electrons and show formal charges if present.

The Lewis acid/Lewis base idea also includes certain **substitution** reactions in which one atom or group replaces another.



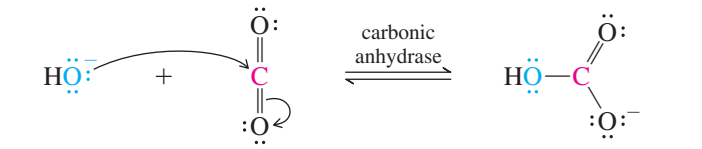
The carbon atom in bromomethane can accept an electron pair if its covalent bond with bromine breaks with both electrons in that bond becoming an unshared pair of bromide ion. Thus, bromomethane acts as a Lewis acid in this reaction.

Notice the similarity of the preceding reaction to one that is more familiar to us.



Clearly, the two reactions are analogous and demonstrate that the reaction between hydroxide ion and hydrogen bromide is simultaneously a Brønsted–Lowry acid–base reaction and a Lewis acid/Lewis base reaction. *Brønsted–Lowry acid–base reactions constitute a subcategory of Lewis acid/Lewis base reactions.*

Many important biochemical reactions involve Lewis acid/Lewis base chemistry. Carbon dioxide is rapidly converted to hydrogen carbonate ion in the presence of the enzyme *carbonic anhydrase*.



Recall that the carbon atom of carbon dioxide bears a partial positive charge because of the electron-attracting power of its attached oxygens. When hydroxide ion (the Lewis base) bonds to this positively polarized carbon, a pair of electrons in the carbon–oxygen double bond leaves carbon to become an unshared pair of oxygen.

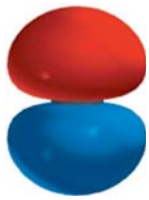
Lewis bases use an unshared pair to form a bond to some other atom and are also referred to as **nucleophiles** ("nucleus seekers"). Conversely, Lewis acids are **electrophiles** ("electron seekers"). We will use these terms hundreds of times throughout the remaining chapters.

Examine the table of contents. What chapters include terms related to *nucleophile* or *electrophile* in their title?

1.17 SUMMARY

Section 1.1 A review of some fundamental knowledge about atoms and electrons leads to a discussion of **wave functions, orbitals,** and the **electron configurations** of atoms. Neutral atoms have as many electrons as the number of protons in the nucleus. These electrons occupy orbitals in order of increasing energy, with no more than two electrons in any one orbital. The most frequently encountered atomic orbitals in this text are *s* orbitals (spherically symmetrical) and *p* orbitals ("dumbbell"-shaped).

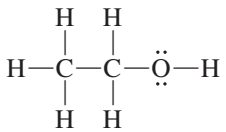
Boundary surface of a carbon 2*s* orbital



Boundary surface of a carbon 2*p* orbital

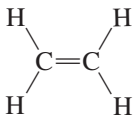
Section 1.2 An **ionic bond** is the force of electrostatic attraction between two oppositely charged ions. Atoms at the upper right of the periodic table, especially fluorine and oxygen, tend to gain electrons to form anions. Elements toward the left of the periodic table, especially metals such as sodium, tend to lose electrons to form cations. Ionic bonds in which carbon is the cation or anion are rare.

Section 1.3 The most common kind of bonding involving carbon is **covalent bonding;** the sharing of a pair of electrons between two atoms. **Lewis formulas** are written on the basis of the **octet rule,** which limits second-row elements to no more than eight electrons in their valence shells. In most of its compounds, carbon has four bonds.

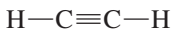


Each carbon has four bonds in ethyl alcohol; oxygen and each carbon are surrounded by eight electrons.

Section 1.4 Many organic compounds have **double** or **triple bonds** to carbon. Four electrons are involved in a double bond; six in a triple bond.

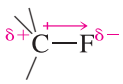


Ethylene has a carbon–carbon double bond.



Acetylene has a carbon–carbon triple bond.

Section 1.5 When two atoms that differ in **electronegativity** are covalently bonded, the electrons in the bond are drawn toward the more electronegative element.



The electrons in a carbon–fluorine bond are drawn away from carbon, toward fluorine.

Section 1.6 Counting electrons and assessing charge distribution in molecules is essential to understanding how structure affects properties. A particular atom in a Lewis formula may be neutral, positively charged, or negatively charged.

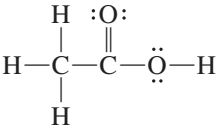
The **formal charge** of an atom in the Lewis formula of a molecule can be calculated by comparing its electron count with that of the neutral atom itself.

$$\text{Formal charge} = \text{Group number in periodic table} - \text{Electron count}$$

where

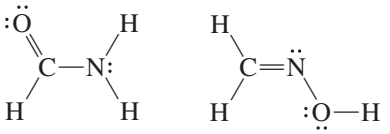
$$\text{Electron count} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\text{Number of shared electrons}) + \text{Number of unshared electrons}$$

Section 1.7 Table 1.5 in this section sets forth the procedure to be followed in writing Lewis formulas for organic molecules. It begins with experimentally determined information: the **molecular formula** and the **connectivity** (order in which the atoms are connected).



The Lewis formula of acetic acid

Different compounds that have the same molecular formula are called **isomers.** If they are different because their atoms are connected in a different order, they are called **constitutional isomers.**

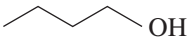


Formamide (*left*) and formaldoxime (*right*) are constitutional isomers; both have the same molecular formula (CH_3NO), but the atoms are connected in a different order.

Condensed formulas and line formulas are used to economize the drawing of organic structures.

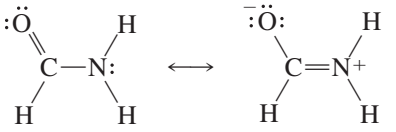
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$
or
$CH_3(CH_2)_2CH_2OH$

condensed formula



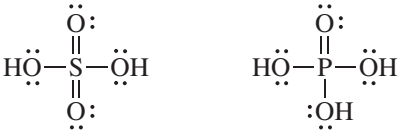
line formula

Section 1.8 Many molecules can be represented by two or more Lewis formulas that differ only in the placement of electrons. In such cases the electrons are delocalized, and the real electron distribution is a hybrid of the **contributing structures.** The rules for resonance are summarized in Table 1.6.

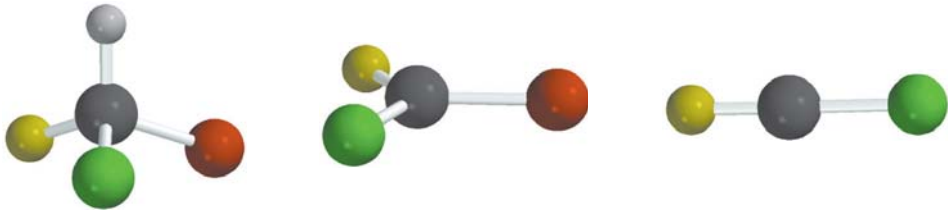


Two Lewis structures (resonance contributors) of formamide; the atoms are connected in the same order, but the arrangement of the electrons is different.

Section 1.9 The octet rule can be exceeded for second-row elements. Resonance contributors in which sulfur contains 10 or 12 electrons in its valence shell are permissible, as are phosphorus compounds with 10 electrons. Familiar examples include sulfuric acid and phosphoric acid.



Section 1.10 The shapes of molecules can often be predicted on the basis of **valence shell electron-pair repulsions.** A tetrahedral arrangement gives the maximum separation of four electron pairs (*left*); a trigonal planar arrangement is best for three electron pairs (*center*), and a linear arrangement for two electron pairs (*right*).



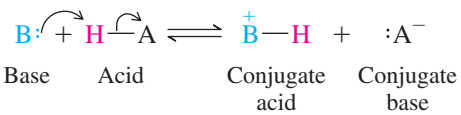
Section 1.11 Knowing the shape of a molecule and the polarity of its various bonds allows the presence or absence of a **molecular dipole moment** and its direction to be predicted.

Both water and carbon dioxide have polar bonds,
but water has a dipole moment while carbon dioxide does not.

Section 1.12 Curved arrows increase the amount of information provided by a chemical equation by showing the flow of electrons associated with bond making and bond breaking. In the process:

an electron pair of nitrogen becomes the pair of electrons in a C—N bond. The C—Br bond breaks, with the pair of electrons in that bond becoming an unshared pair of bromide ion.

Section 1.13 According to the Brønsted–Lowry definitions, an acid is a proton donor and a base is a proton acceptor.



The strength of an acid is given by its equilibrium constant K_a for ionization in aqueous solution:

$$K_a = \frac{[H_3O^+][:A^-]}{[HA]}$$

or more conveniently by its pK_a:

$$pK_a = -\log_{10} K_a$$

Section 1.14 The strength of an acid depends on the atom to which the proton is bonded. Two important factors are the strength of the H—X bond and the electronegativity of X. Bond strength is more important for atoms in the same group of the periodic table; electronegativity is more important for atoms in the same row. Electronegative atoms elsewhere in the molecule can increase the acidity by **inductive effects.**

Electron **delocalization** in the conjugate base, usually expressed via resonance between contributing Lewis formulas, increases acidity by stabilizing the conjugate base.

Section 1.15 The position of equilibrium in an acid–base reaction lies to the side of the weaker acid.

$$\text{Stronger acid} + \text{Stronger base} \xrightleftharpoons{K > 1} \text{Weaker acid} + \text{Weaker base}$$

This is a very useful relationship. You should practice writing equations according to the Brønsted–Lowry definitions of acids and bases and familiarize yourself with Table 1.8, which gives the pK_a's of various Brønsted acids.

Section 1.16 The Lewis definitions of acids and bases provide for a more general view of acid–base reactions than the Brønsted–Lowry picture. A **Lewis acid** is an electron-pair acceptor. A **Lewis base** is an electron-pair donor. The Lewis approach incorporates the Brønsted–Lowry approach as a subcategory in which the atom that accepts the electron pair in the Lewis acid is a hydrogen.

PROBLEMS

1.40 Each of the following species will be encountered at some point in this text. They all have the same number of electrons binding the same number of atoms and the same arrangement of bonds; they are *isoelectronic.* Specify which atoms, if any, bear a formal charge in the Lewis formula given and the net charge for each species.

(a) :N≡N: (c) :C≡C: (e) :C≡O:

(b) :C≡N: (d) :N≡O:

1.41 The connectivity of carbon oxysulfide is OCS.

(a) Write a Lewis formula for carbon oxysulfide that satisfies the octet rule.

(b) What is the molecular geometry according to VSEPR?

(c) Does carbon oxysulfide have a dipole moment? If so, what is its direction?

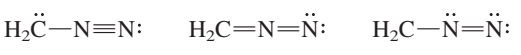
1.42 Write a Lewis formula for each of the following organic molecules:

(a) C_2H_3Cl (vinyl chloride: starting material for the preparation of PVC plastics)

(b) $C_2HBrClF_3$ (halothane: a nonflammable inhalation anesthetic; all three fluorines are bonded to the same carbon)

(c) $C_2Cl_2F_4$ (Freon 114: formerly used as a refrigerant and as an aerosol propellant; each carbon bears one chlorine)

1.43 Consider Lewis formulas A, B, and C:



A B C

(a) Are A, B, and C constitutional isomers, or are they resonance contributors?

(b) Which have a negatively charged carbon?

(c) Which have a positively charged carbon?

(d) Which have a positively charged nitrogen?

(e) Which have a negatively charged nitrogen?

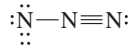
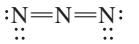
(f) What is the net charge on each?

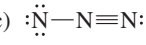
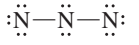
(g) Which is a more stable structure, A or B? Why?

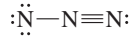
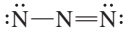
(h) Which is a more stable structure, B or C? Why?

(i) What is the CNN geometry in each according to VSEPR?

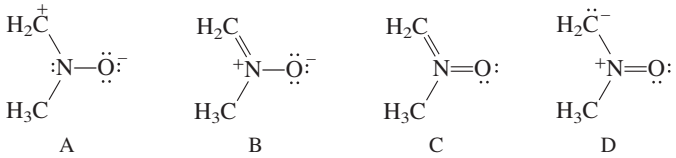
1.44 In each of the following pairs, determine whether the two represent resonance contributors of a single species or depict different substances. If two structures are not resonance contributors, explain why.

(a)  and 

(c)  and 

(b)  and 

1.45 (a) Which one of the following is *not* a permissible contributing structure? Why?

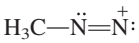


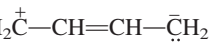
A B C D

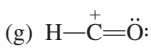
(b) Rank the three remaining structures in order of their contribution to the resonance hybrid. Explain your reasoning.

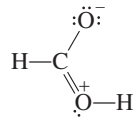
(c) Using curved arrows, show the electron movement that connects the three resonance contributors.

1.46 Write a more stable contributing structure for each of the following. Use curved arrows to show how to transform the original Lewis formula to the new one. Be sure to specify formal charges, if any.

(a) 

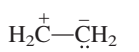
(d) 

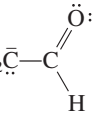
(g) 

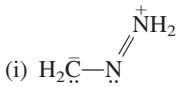
(b) 

(e)

(h)

(c) 

(f) 

(i) 

1.47 Write structural formulas for all the constitutionally isomeric compounds having the given molecular formula.

(a) C_4H_{10} (c) $C_2H_4Cl_2$ (e) C_3H_9N

(b) C_5H_{12} (d) C_4H_9Br

1.48 Write structural formulas for all the constitutional isomers of

(a) C_3H_8 (b) C_3H_6 (c) C_3H_4

1.49 Write structural formulas for all the constitutional isomers of molecular formula C_3H_6O that contain

(a) Only single bonds (b) One double bond

1.50 For each of the following molecules that contain polar covalent bonds, indicate the positive and negative ends of the dipole, using the symbol $\longleftrightarrow$. Refer to Table 1.3 as needed.

(a) HCl (c) H_2O

(b) HI (d) HOCl

1.51 The compounds FCl and ICl have dipole moments μ that are similar in magnitude (0.9 and 0.7 D, respectively) but opposite in direction. In one compound, chlorine is the positive end of the dipole; in the other it is the negative end. Specify the direction of the dipole moment in each compound, and explain your reasoning.

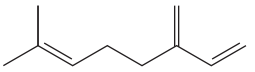
1.52 Which compound in each of the following pairs would you expect to have the greater dipole moment μ? Why?

(a) HF or HCl (d) $CHCl_3$ or CCl_3F

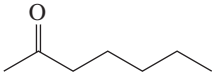
(b) HF or BF_3 (e) CH_3NH_2 or CH_3OH

(c) $(CH_3)_3CH$ or $(CH_3)_3CCl$ (f) CH_3NH_2 or CH_3NO_2

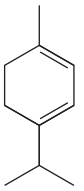
1.53 Expand the following structural representations so as to more clearly show all the atoms and any unshared electron pairs. What are their molecular formulas? Are any of them isomers?

(a) 

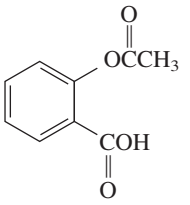
Occurs in bay and verbena oil

(d) 

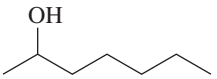
Found in Roquefort cheese

(b) 

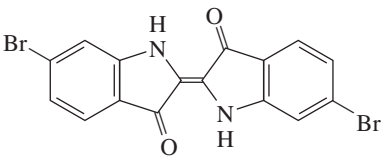
Pleasant-smelling substance found in marjoram oil

(e) 

Aspirin

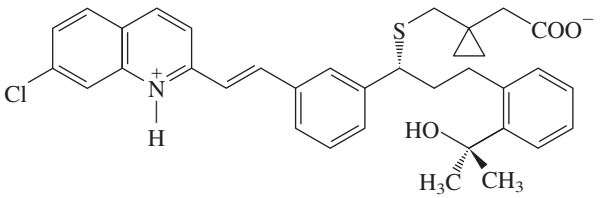
(c) 

Present in oil of cloves

(f) 

Tyrian purple: a purple dye extracted from a species of Mediterranean sea snail

1.54 The structure of montelukast, an antiasthma drug, is shown here.



(a) Use Table 1.8 to identify the most acidic and most basic sites in the molecule. (Although you won't find an exact match in structure, make a prediction based on analogy with similar groups in simpler molecules.)

(b) Write the structure of the product formed by treating montelukast with one equivalent of sodium hydroxide.

(c) Write the structure of the product formed by treating montelukast with one equivalent of HCl.

1.55 (a) One acid has a pK_a of 2, the other has a pK_a of 8. What is the ratio of their K_a's?

(b) Two acids differ by a factor of 10,000 in their K_a's. If the pK_a of the weaker acid is 5, what is the pK_a of the stronger acid?

1.56 Calculate K_a for each of the following acids, given its pK_a. Rank the compounds in order of decreasing acidity.

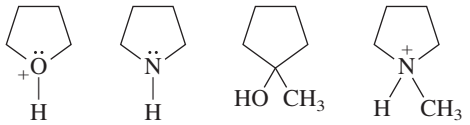
(a) Aspirin: pK_a = 3.48

(b) Vitamin C (ascorbic acid): pK_a = 4.17

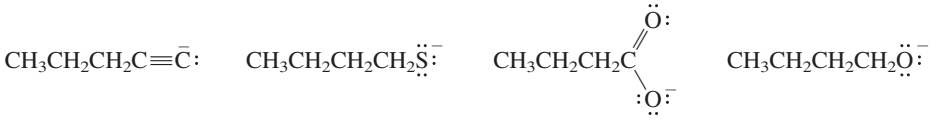
(c) Formic acid (present in sting of ants): pK_a = 3.75

(d) Oxalic acid (poisonous substance found in certain berries): pK_a = 1.19

1.57 Rank the following in order of decreasing acidity. Although none of these specific structures appear in Table 1.8, you can use analogous structures in the table to guide your reasoning.



1.58 Rank the following in order of decreasing basicity. As in the preceding problem, Table 1.8 should prove helpful.



1.59 Consider 1.0 M aqueous solutions of each of the following. Which solution is more basic?

(a) Sodium cyanide (NaCN) or sodium fluoride (NaF)

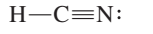
(b) Sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3) or sodium acetate (CH_3CONa)

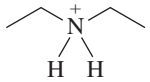
(c) Sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4) or sodium methanethiolate ($NaSCH_3$)

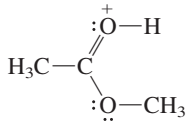
1.60 (a) Which is the stronger acid: $(CH_3)_3NH^+$ or $(CH_3)_3PH^+$?

(b) Which is the stronger base: $(CH_3)_3N$: or $(CH_3)_3P$:?

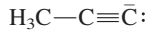
1.61 Write an equation for the Brønsted–Lowry acid–base reaction that occurs when each of the following acids reacts with water. Show all unshared electron pairs and formal charges, and use curved arrows to track electron movement.

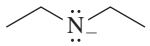
(a) 

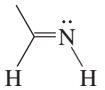
(b) 

(c) 

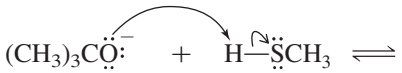
1.62 Write an equation for the Brønsted–Lowry acid–base reaction that occurs when each of the following bases reacts with water. Show all unshared electron pairs and formal charges, and use curved arrows to track electron movement.

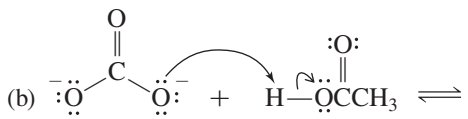
(a) 

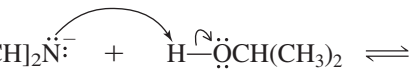
(b) 

(c) 

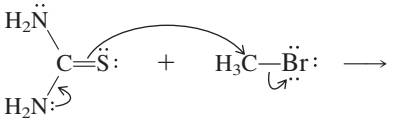
1.63 All of the substances shown in the following acid–base reactions are found in Table 1.8, and the equilibrium lies to the right in each case. Following the curved arrows, complete each equation to show the products formed. Identify the acid, base, conjugate acid, and conjugate base. Calculate the equilibrium constant for each reaction.

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

1.64 What are the products of the following reaction based on the electron flow represented by the curved arrows?



1.65 Each of the following acid–base reactions involves substances found in Table 1.8. Use the pK_a data in the table to help you predict the products of the reactions. Use curved arrows to show electron flow. Predict whether the equilibrium lies to the left or to the right and calculate the equilibrium constant for each reaction.

(a) $HC{\equiv}CH + {}^{-}{:}\ddot{N}H_2 \rightleftharpoons$

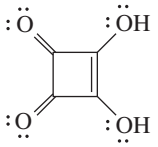
(b) $HC{\equiv}CH + {}^{-}{:}\ddot{O}{-}CH_3 \rightleftharpoons$

(c) $CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}CH_2\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}CH_3 + {}^{-}{:}\ddot{O}{-}CH_3 \rightleftharpoons$

(d) $CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}OCH_2CH_3 + {}^{-}{:}\ddot{O}{-}CH_3 \rightleftharpoons$

(e) $CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}OCH_2CH_3 + {}^{-}{:}\ddot{N}[CH(CH_3)_2]_2 \rightleftharpoons$

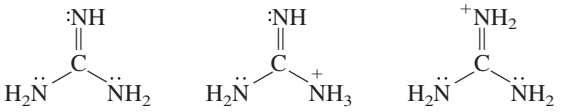
1.66 With a pK_a of 1.2, squaric acid is unusually acidic for a compound containing only C, H, and O.



Squaric acid

Write a Lewis formula for the conjugate base of squaric acid and, using curved arrows, show how the negative charge is shared by two oxygens.

1.67 Of two possible structures A and B for the conjugate acid of guanidine, the more stable is the one that is better stabilized by electron delocalization. Which one is it? Write resonance structures showing this electron delocalization.



Guanidine A B

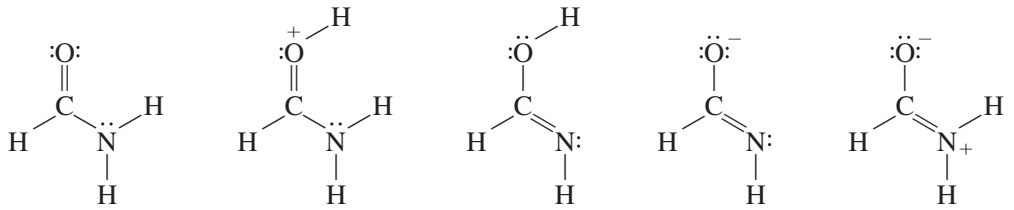
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 1

Amide Lewis Structural Formulas

Lewis formulas are the major means by which structural information is communicated in organic chemistry. These structural formulas show the atoms, bonds, location of unshared pairs, and formal charges.

Two or more Lewis formulas, differing only in the placement of electrons, can often be written for a single compound. In such cases the separate structures represented by the Lewis formulas are said to be in *resonance,* and the true electron distribution is a *hybrid* of the electron distributions of the *contributing structures.*

The amide function is an important structural unit in peptides and proteins. Formamide, represented by the Lewis structure shown, is the simplest amide. It is a planar molecule with a dipole moment of 3.7 D. Lewis structures I–IV represent species that bear some relationship to the Lewis structure for formamide.



Formamide I II III IV

1.68 Formamide is a planar molecule. According to VSEPR, does the structural formula given for formamide satisfy this requirement?

A. Yes
B. No

1.69 Which Lewis formula is both planar according to VSEPR and a resonance contributor of formamide?

A. I C. III
B. II D. IV

1.70 According to VSEPR, which Lewis formula has a pyramidal arrangement of bonds to nitrogen?

A. I C. III
B. II D. IV

1.71 Which Lewis formula is a constitutional isomer of formamide?

A. I C. III
B. II D. IV

1.72 Which Lewis formula is a conjugate acid of formamide?

A. I C. III
B. II D. IV

1.73 Which Lewis formula is a conjugate base of formamide?

A. I C. III
B. II D. IV

2

CHAPTER OUTLINE

2.1 Classes of Hydrocarbons 53
2.2 Electron Waves and Chemical Bonds 53
2.3 Bonding in H_2: The Valence Bond Model 55
2.4 Bonding in H_2: The Molecular Orbital Model 56
2.5 Introduction to Alkanes: Methane, Ethane, and Propane 57
2.6 sp^3 Hybridization and Bonding in Methane 58
- Methane and the Biosphere 59

2.7 Bonding in Ethane 61
2.8 sp^2 Hybridization and Bonding in Ethylene 61
2.9 *sp* Hybridization and Bonding in Acetylene 63
2.10 Which Theory of Chemical Bonding Is Best? 64
2.11 Isomeric Alkanes: The Butanes 65
2.12 Higher *n*-Alkanes 66
2.13 The C_5H_{12} Isomers 66
2.14 IUPAC Nomenclature of Unbranched Alkanes 68
2.15 Applying the IUPAC Rules: The Names of the C_6H_{14} Isomers 69
- What's in a Name? Organic Nomenclature 70

2.16 Alkyl Groups 72
2.17 IUPAC Names of Highly Branched Alkanes 73
2.18 Cycloalkane Nomenclature 75
2.19 Sources of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes 76
2.20 Physical Properties of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes 77
2.21 Chemical Properties: Combustion of Alkanes 80
- Thermochemistry 83

2.22 Oxidation–Reduction in Organic Chemistry 83
2.23 Summary 86
Problems 90
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 2: Some Biochemical Reactions of Alkanes 94

Analogous to photosynthesis in which carbon dioxide is the carbon source, chemosynthesis in the deep (and dark) ocean uses methane. Bacteria in the red filaments of worms that live in paper-like tubes convert the methane to energy and the materials of life. Photo Credit: Nicolle Rager Fuller, National Science Foundation.

Alkanes and Cycloalkanes: Introduction to Hydrocarbons

This chapter continues the connection between structure and properties begun in Chapter 1. In it we focus on the simplest organic compounds—those that contain only carbon and hydrogen, called *hydrocarbons*. These compounds occupy a key position in the organic chemical landscape. Their framework of carbon–carbon bonds provides the scaffolding on which more reactive groups, called *functional groups,* are attached. We'll have more to say about functional groups beginning in Chapter 4; for now, we'll explore aspects of structure and bonding in hydrocarbons, especially alkanes.

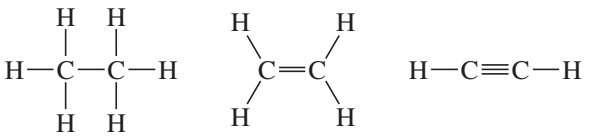
We'll expand our picture of bonding by introducing two approaches that grew out of the idea that electrons can be described as waves: the *valence bond* and *molecular orbital* models. In particular, one aspect of the valence bond model, called *orbital hybridization,* will be emphasized.

A major portion of this chapter deals with how we name organic compounds. The system used throughout the world is based on a set of rules for naming hydrocarbons, then extending these rules to encompass other families of organic compounds.

2.1 Classes of Hydrocarbons

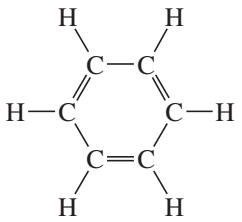
Hydrocarbons are divided into two main classes: aliphatic and aromatic. This classification dates from the nineteenth century, when organic chemistry was devoted almost entirely to the study of materials from natural sources, and terms were coined that reflected a substance's origin. Two sources were fats and oils, and the word *aliphatic* was derived from the Greek word *aleiphar* meaning "fat." Aromatic hydrocarbons, irrespective of their own odor, were typically obtained by chemical treatment of pleasant-smelling plant extracts.

Aliphatic hydrocarbons include three major groups: *alkanes, alkenes,* and *alkynes*. **Alkanes** are hydrocarbons in which all the bonds are single bonds, **alkenes** contain at least one carbon–carbon double bond, and **alkynes** contain at least one carbon–carbon triple bond. Examples of the three classes of aliphatic hydrocarbons are the two-carbon compounds *ethane, ethylene,* and *acetylene*.



Ethane (alkane) Ethylene (alkene) Acetylene (alkyne)

Another name for aromatic hydrocarbons is **arenes.** The most important aromatic hydrocarbon is *benzene*.



Benzene (arene)

Different properties in these hydrocarbons are the result of the different types of bonding involving carbon. The shared electron pair, or Lewis model of chemical bonding described in Section 1.3, does not account for all of the differences. In the following sections, we will consider two additional bonding theories; the valence bond model and molecular orbital theory.

2.2 Electron Waves and Chemical Bonds

G.N. Lewis proposed his shared electron-pair model of bonding in 1916, almost a decade before Louis de Broglie's theory of wave–particle duality. De Broglie's radically different view of an electron, and Erwin Schrödinger's success in using wave equations to calculate the energy of an electron in a hydrogen *atom,* encouraged the belief that bonding in *molecules* could be explained on the basis of interactions between electron waves. This thinking produced two widely used theories of chemical bonding; one is called the *valence bond model,* the other the *molecular orbital model*.

De Broglie's and Schrödinger's contributions to our present understanding of electrons were described in Section 1.1.

Before we describe these theories in the context of organic molecules, let's first think about bonding between two hydrogen atoms in the most fundamental terms. We'll begin with two hydrogen atoms that are far apart and see what happens as the distance between them decreases. The forces involved are electron–electron (−−) repulsions, nucleus–nucleus (++) repulsions, and electron–nucleus (−+) attractions. All of these forces *increase* as the distance between the two hydrogens *decreases*. Because the electrons are so mobile, however, they can choreograph their motions so as to minimize their

All of the forces in chemistry, except for nuclear chemistry, are electrical. Opposite charges attract; like charges repel. This simple fact can take you a long way.

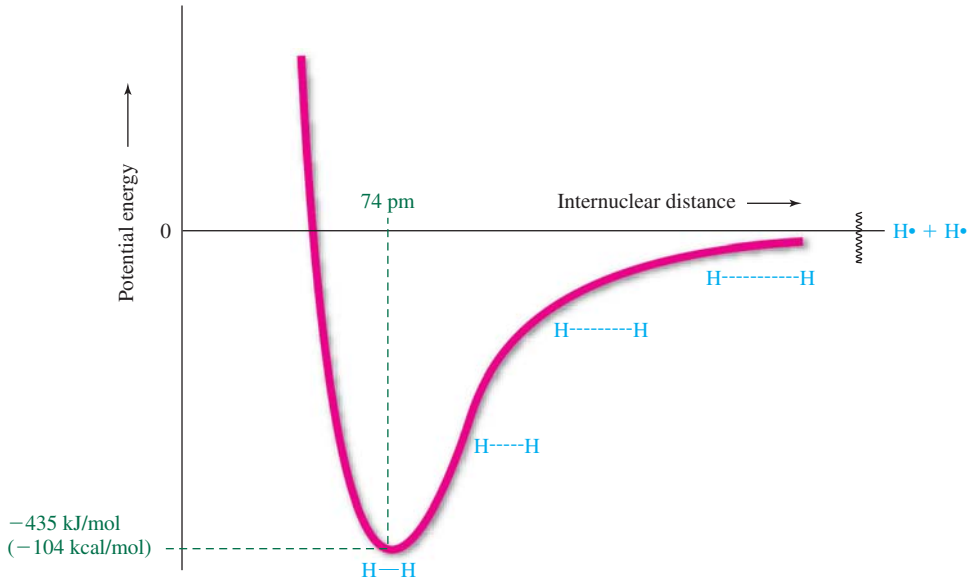


Figure 2.1

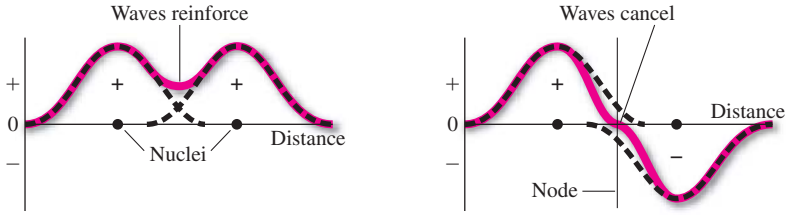
Plot of potential energy versus distance for two hydrogen atoms. At long distances, there is a weak attractive force. As the distance decreases, the potential energy decreases, and the system becomes more stable because each electron now "feels" the attractive force of two protons rather than one. The lowest energy state corresponds to a separation of 74 pm, which is the normal bond distance in H_2. At shorter distances, nucleus–nucleus and electron–electron repulsions are greater than electron–nucleus attractions, and the system becomes less stable.

mutual repulsion while maximizing their attractive forces with the protons. Thus, as shown in Figure 2.1, a net, albeit weak, attractive force exists between the two hydrogens even when the atoms are far apart. This interaction becomes stronger as the two atoms approach each other—the electron of each hydrogen increasingly feels the attractive force of two protons rather than one, the total energy decreases, and the system becomes more stable. A potential energy minimum is reached when the separation between the nuclei reaches 74 pm, which corresponds to the H—H bond length in H_2. At distances shorter than this, the nucleus–nucleus and electron–electron repulsions dominate, and the system becomes less stable.

Valence bond and molecular orbital theory both incorporate the wave description of an atom's electrons into this picture of H_2, but in somewhat different ways. Both assume that electron waves behave like more familiar waves, such as sound and light waves. One important property of waves is called interference in physics. *Constructive interference* occurs when two waves combine so as to reinforce each other (in phase); *destructive interference* occurs when they oppose each other (out of phase) (Figure 2.2).

Recall from Section 1.1 that electron waves in atoms are characterized by their wave function, which is the same as an orbital. For an electron in the most stable state of a hydrogen atom, for example, this state is defined by the 1*s* wave function and is often called the 1*s* orbital. The *valence bond* model bases the connection between two atoms on the overlap between half-filled orbitals of the two atoms. The *molecular orbital* model assembles a set of molecular orbitals by combining the atomic orbitals of *all* of the atoms in the molecule.

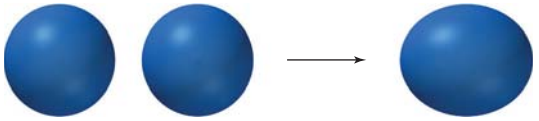
For a molecule as simple as H_2, valence bond and molecular orbital theory produce very similar pictures. The next two sections describe these two approaches.



(*a*) Amplitudes of wave functions added (*b*) Amplitudes of wave functions subtracted

Figure 2.2

Interference between waves. (*a*) Constructive interference occurs when two waves combine in phase with each other. The amplitude of the resulting wave at each point is the sum of the amplitudes of the original waves. (*b*) Destructive interference decreases the amplitude when two waves are out of phase with each other.



1*s* orbitals of two hydrogen atoms. Each orbital contains one electron.

In-phase overlap of two 1*s* orbitals gives new orbital encompassing both hydrogen atoms. This orbital contains two electrons.

Figure 2.3

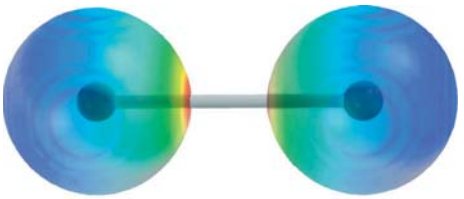
Valence bond picture of bonding in H_2. Overlap of half-filled 1*s* orbitals of two hydrogen atoms gives a new orbital that encompasses both atoms and contains both electrons. The electron density (electron probability) is highest in the region between the two atoms. When the wave functions are of the same sign, constructive interference increases the probability of finding an electron in the region where the two orbitals overlap.

2.3 Bonding in H_2: The Valence Bond Model

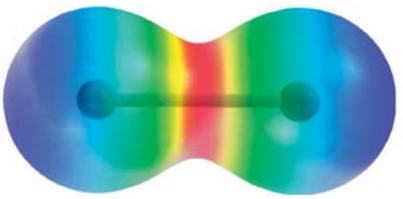
The characteristic feature of **valence bond theory** is that it pictures a covalent bond between two atoms in terms of an in-phase overlap of a half-filled orbital of one atom with a half-filled orbital of the other, illustrated for the case of H_2 in Figure 2.3. Two hydrogen atoms, each containing an electron in a 1*s* orbital, combine so that their orbitals overlap to give a new orbital associated with both of them. In-phase orbital overlap (constructive interference) increases the probability of finding an electron in the region between the two nuclei where it feels the attractive force of both of them.

Figure 2.4 uses electrostatic potential maps to show this build-up of electron density in the region between two hydrogen atoms as they approach each other closely enough for their orbitals to overlap.

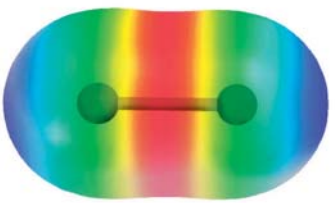
(*a*) The 1*s* orbitals of two separated hydrogen atoms, sufficiently far apart so that essentially no interaction takes place between them. Each electron is associated with only a single proton.



(*b*) As the hydrogen atoms approach each other, their 1*s* orbitals begin to overlap and each electron begins to feel the attractive force of both protons.



(*c*) The hydrogen atoms are close enough so that appreciable overlap of the two 1*s* orbitals occurs. The concentration of electron density in the region between the two protons is more readily apparent.



(*d*) A molecule of H_2. The center-to-center distance between the hydrogen atoms is 74 pm. The two individual 1*s* orbitals have been replaced by a new orbital that encompasses both hydrogens and contains both electrons. The electron density is greatest in the region between the two hydrogens.

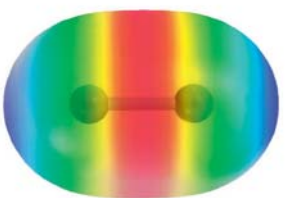
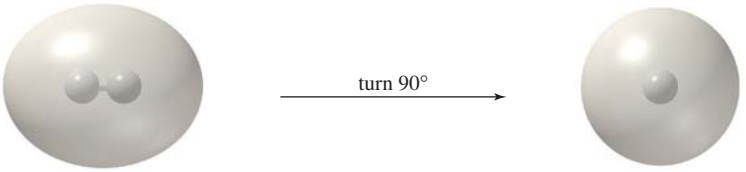


Figure 2.4

Valence bond picture of bonding in H_2 as illustrated by electrostatic potential maps. The 1*s* orbitals of two hydrogen atoms overlap to give an orbital that contains both electrons of an H_2 molecule.

A bond in which the orbitals overlap along a line connecting the atoms (the *internuclear axis*) is called a **sigma (σ) bond.** The electron distribution in a σ bond is cylindrically symmetrical; were we to slice through a σ bond perpendicular to the internuclear axis, its cross section would appear as a circle. Another way to see the shape of the electron distribution is to view the molecule end-on.



Orbitals overlap along a line connecting the two atoms

Circular electron distribution when viewing down the H—H bond

We will use the valence bond approach extensively in our discussion of organic molecules and expand on it shortly. First though, let's introduce the molecular orbital method to see how it uses the 1*s* orbitals of two hydrogen atoms to generate the orbitals of an H_2 molecule.

2.4 Bonding in H_2: The Molecular Orbital Model

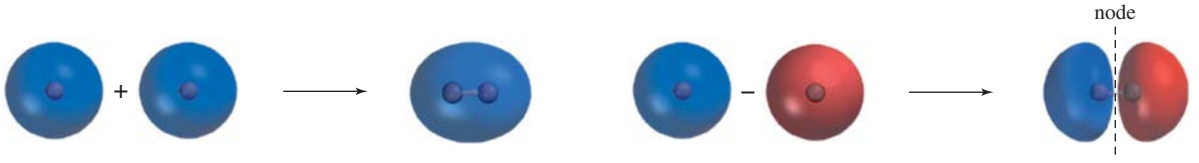
The molecular orbital theory of chemical bonding rests on the notion that, as electrons in atoms occupy *atomic orbitals,* electrons in molecules occupy *molecular orbitals*. Just as our first task in writing the electron configuration of an atom is to identify the atomic orbitals that are available to it, so too must we first describe the orbitals available to a molecule. In the molecular orbital method this is done by representing molecular orbitals as combinations of atomic orbitals, the *linear combination of atomic orbitals-molecular orbital* (LCAO-MO) method.

Two molecular orbitals (MOs) of H_2 are generated by combining the 1*s* atomic orbitals (AOs) of two hydrogen atoms. In one combination, the two wave functions are added; in the other they are subtracted. The two new orbitals that are produced are portrayed in Figure 2.5. The additive combination generates a **bonding orbital;** the subtractive combination generates an **antibonding orbital.** Both the bonding and antibonding orbitals have σ symmetry, meaning that they are symmetrical with respect to the internuclear axis. The two are differentiated by calling the bonding orbital σ and the antibonding orbital σ* ("sigma star"). The bonding orbital is characterized by a region of high electron probability between the two atoms, whereas the antibonding orbital has a nodal surface between them.

A molecular orbital diagram for H_2 is shown in Figure 2.6. The customary format shows the starting AOs at the left and right sides and the MOs in the middle. It must always be true that *the number of MOs is the same as the number of AOs that combine to produce them*. Thus, when the 1*s* AOs of two hydrogen atoms combine, two MOs result. The bonding MO (σ) is lower in energy and the antibonding MO (σ*) higher in energy than either of the original 1*s* orbitals.

(*a*) Add the 1*s* wave functions of two hydrogen atoms to generate a bonding molecular orbital (σ) of H_2. There is a high probability of finding both electrons in the region between the two nuclei.

(*b*) Subtract the 1*s* wave function of one hydrogen atom from the other to generate an antibonding molecular orbital (σ*) of H_2. There is a nodal surface where there is a zero probability of finding the electrons in the region between the two nuclei.



add 1*s* wave functions

σ orbital (bonding)

subtract 1*s* wave functions

σ* orbital (antibonding)

Figure 2.5

Generation of σ and σ* molecular orbitals of H_2 by combining 1*s* orbitals of two hydrogen atoms.

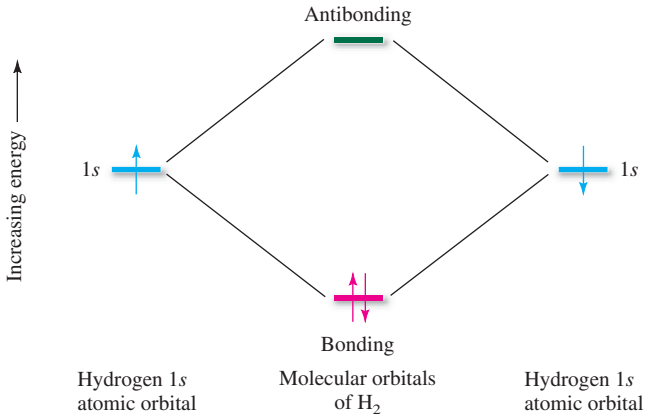


Figure 2.6

Two molecular orbitals (MOs) are generated by combining two hydrogen 1*s* atomic orbitals (AOs). The bonding MO is lower in energy than either of the AOs that combine to produce it. The antibonding MO is of higher energy than either AO. Each arrow indicates one electron, and the electron spins are opposite in sign. Both electrons of H_2 occupy the bonding MO.

When assigning electrons to MOs, the same rules apply as for writing electron configurations of atoms. Electrons fill the MOs in order of increasing orbital energy, and the maximum number of electrons in any orbital is two. Both electrons of H_2 occupy the bonding orbital, have opposite spins, and both are held more strongly than they would be in separated hydrogen atoms. There are no electrons in the antibonding orbital.

For a molecule as simple as H_2, it is hard to see much difference between the valence bond and molecular orbital methods. The most important differences appear in molecules with more than two atoms. In those cases, the valence bond method continues to view a molecule as a collection of bonds between connected atoms. The molecular orbital method, however, leads to a picture in which the same electron can be associated with many, or even all, of the atoms in a molecule. We'll have more to say about the similarities and differences in valence bond and molecular orbital theory as we continue to develop their principles, beginning with the simplest alkanes: methane, ethane, and propane.

Problem 2.1

Construct a diagram similar to Figure 2.6 for diatomic helium (He_2). Why is helium monatomic instead of diatomic?

2.5 Introduction to Alkanes: Methane, Ethane, and Propane

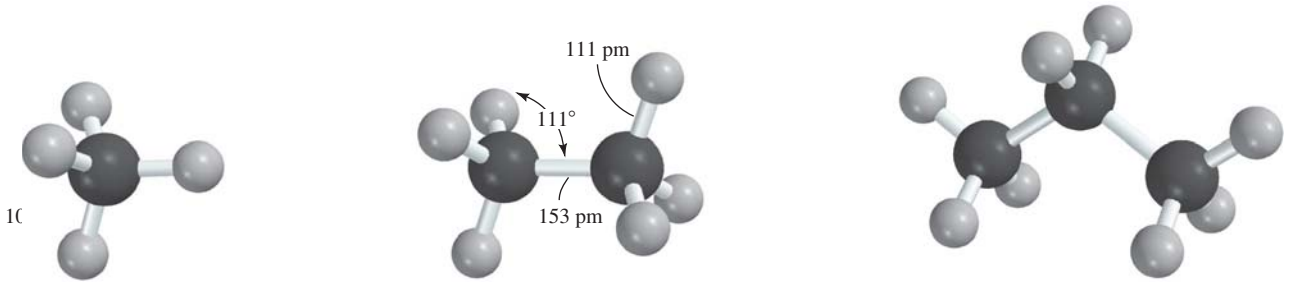
Alkanes have the general molecular formula C_nH_{2n+2}. The simplest one, methane (CH_4), is also the most abundant. Large amounts are present in our atmosphere, in the ground, and in the oceans. Methane has been found on Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto, on Halley's Comet, even in the atmosphere of a planet in a distant solar system. About 2–8% of the atmosphere of Titan, Saturn's largest moon, is methane. When it rains on Titan, it rains methane.

Ethane (C_2H_6: CH_3CH_3) and propane (C_3H_8: $CH_3CH_2CH_3$) are second and third, respectively, to methane in many ways. Ethane is the alkane next to methane in structural simplicity, followed by propane. Ethane (≈10%) is the second and propane (≈ 5%) the third most abundant component of natural gas, which is ≈ 75% methane. Natural gas is colorless and nearly odorless, as are methane, ethane, and propane. The characteristic odor of the natural gas we use for heating our homes and cooking comes from trace amounts of unpleasant-smelling sulfur-containing compounds, called thiols, that are deliberately added to it to warn us of potentially dangerous leaks.

Methane is the lowest boiling alkane, followed by ethane, then propane.

	CH_4	CH_3CH_3	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$
	Methane	Ethane	Propane
Boiling point:	−160°C	−89°C	−42°C

Boiling points cited in this text are at 1 atm (760 mm Hg) unless otherwise stated.



Methane Ethane Propane

Figure 2.7

Structures of methane, ethane, and propane showing bond distances and bond angles.

All the alkanes with four carbons or fewer are gases at room temperature and atmospheric pressure. With the highest boiling point of the three, propane is the easiest one to liquefy. We are all familiar with "propane tanks." These are steel containers in which a propane-rich mixture of hydrocarbons called *liquefied petroleum gas* (LPG) is maintained in a liquid state under high pressure as a convenient clean-burning fuel.

It is generally true that as the number of carbon atoms increases, so does the boiling point. The C_{70}-alkane heptacontane $[CH_3(CH_2)_{68}CH_3]$ boils at 653°C, and its C_{100} analog hectane at 715°C.

The structural features of methane, ethane, and propane are summarized in Figure 2.7. All of the carbon atoms have four bonds, all of the bonds are single bonds, and the bond angles are close to tetrahedral. In the next section we'll see how to adapt the valence bond model to accommodate the observed structures.

2.6 sp^3 Hybridization and Bonding in Methane

Before we describe the bonding in methane, it is worth emphasizing that bonding theories attempt to describe a molecule on the basis of its component atoms; bonding theories do not attempt to explain *how* bonds form. The world's methane does *not* come from the reaction of carbon atoms with hydrogen atoms; it comes from biological processes. The boxed essay *Methane and the Biosphere* tells you more about the origins of methane and other organic compounds.

We *begin* with the experimentally determined three-dimensional structure of a molecule, *then* propose bonding models that are consistent with the structure. We do not claim that the observed structure is a result of the bonding model. Indeed, there may be two or more equally satisfactory models. Structures are facts; bonding models are theories that we use to try to understand the facts.

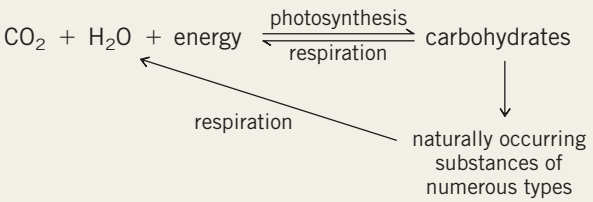
A vexing puzzle in the early days of valence bond theory concerned the fact that methane is CH_4 and that the four bonds to carbon are directed toward the corners of a tetrahedron. Valence bond theory is based on the in-phase overlap of half-filled orbitals of the connected atoms. But with an electron configuration of $1s^2 2s^2\ 2p_x^1 2p_y^1$ carbon has only two half-filled orbitals (Figure 2.10*a*). How, then, can it have four bonds?

In the 1930s Linus Pauling offered an ingenious solution to this puzzle. He suggested that the electron configuration of a carbon bonded to other atoms need not be the same as that of a free carbon atom. By mixing ("hybridizing") the $2s$, $2p_x$, $2p_y$, and $2p_z$ orbitals, four new orbitals are obtained (Figure 2.10*b*). These four new orbitals are called **sp^3 hybrid orbitals** because they come from one *s* orbital and three *p* orbitals. Each sp^3 hybrid orbital has 25% *s* character and 75% *p* character. Among their most important features are the following:

1. *All four* sp^3 *orbitals are of equal energy*. Therefore, according to Hund's rule (Section 1.1) the four valence electrons of carbon are distributed equally among them, making four half-filled orbitals available for bonding.

Methane and the Biosphere

One of the things that environmental scientists do is to keep track of important elements in the biosphere—in what form do these elements normally occur, to what are they transformed, and how are they returned to their normal state? Careful studies have given clear, although complicated, pictures of the "nitrogen cycle," the "sulfur cycle," and the "phosphorus cycle," for example. The "carbon cycle" begins and ends with atmospheric carbon dioxide. It can be represented in an abbreviated form as:



Methane is one of literally millions of compounds in the carbon cycle, but one of the most abundant. It is formed when carbon-containing compounds decompose in the absence of air (*anaerobic* conditions). The organisms that bring this about are called *methanoarchaea*. Cells can be divided into three types: *archaea, bacteria,* and *eukarya*. Methanoarchaea convert carbon-containing compounds, including carbon dioxide and acetic acid, to methane. Virtually anywhere water contacts organic matter in the absence of air is a suitable place for methanoarchaea to thrive—at the bottom of ponds, bogs, rice fields, even on the ocean floor. They live inside termites and grass-eating animals; one source quotes 20 L/day as the methane output of a large cow.

The scale on which the world's methanoarchaea churn out methane, estimated to be 10^{11}–10^{12} lb/year, is enormous. About 10% of this amount makes its way into the atmosphere, but most of the rest simply ends up completing the carbon cycle. It exits the anaerobic environment where it was formed and enters the aerobic world where it is eventually converted to carbon dioxide. But not all of it. Much of the world's methane lies trapped beneath the Earth's surface. *Firedamp,* an explosion hazard to coal miners, is mostly methane, as is the *natural gas* that accompanies petroleum deposits. When methane leaks from petroleum under the ocean floor and the pressure is high enough (50 atm) and the water cold enough (4°C), individual methane molecules become trapped inside clusters of 6–18 water molecules as *methane clathrates* or *methane hydrates* (Figure 2.8). Aggregates of these hydrates remain at the bottom of the ocean in what looks like a lump of dirty ice, ice that burns (Figure 2.9). Far from being mere curiosities, methane hydrates are potential sources of energy on a scale greater than that of all the known oil reserves combined. The extraction of methane from hydrates has been demonstrated on a small scale and estimates suggest some modest contribution to the global energy supply by 2020.

Methane hydrates contributed to the 2010 environmental disaster in the Gulf of Mexico in an unexpected and important way. Because the hydrates are stable only under the extreme conditions of pressure and temperature found in the deep ocean, their effect on the methods used to repair damage to the oil rigs proved difficult to anticipate and their ice-like properties interfered with attempts to cap the flow of oil in its early stages.

In a different vein, environmental scientists are looking into the possibility that methane hydrates contributed to a major global warming event that occurred 55 million years ago, lasted 40,000 years, and raised the temperature of the Earth some 5°C. They speculate that a modest warming of the oceans encouraged the dissociation of hydrates, releasing methane into the atmosphere. Methane is a potent greenhouse gas, and the resulting greenhouse effect raised the temperature of the Earth. This, in turn, caused more methane to be released from the oceans into the atmosphere, causing more global warming. Eventually a new, warmer equilibrium state was reached.

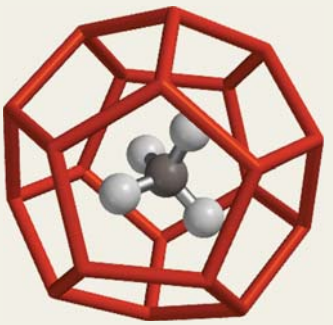


FIGURE 2.8

In a hydrate a molecule of methane is surrounded by a cage of hydrogen-bonded water molecules. The cages are of various sizes; the one shown here is based on a dodecahedron. Each vertex corresponds to one water molecule, and the lines between them represent hydrogen bonds (O—H·····O)

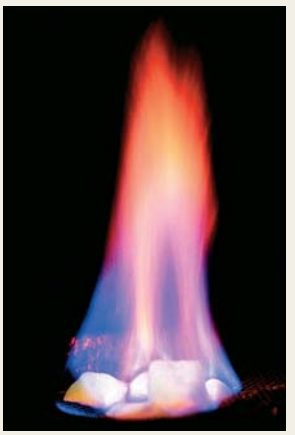
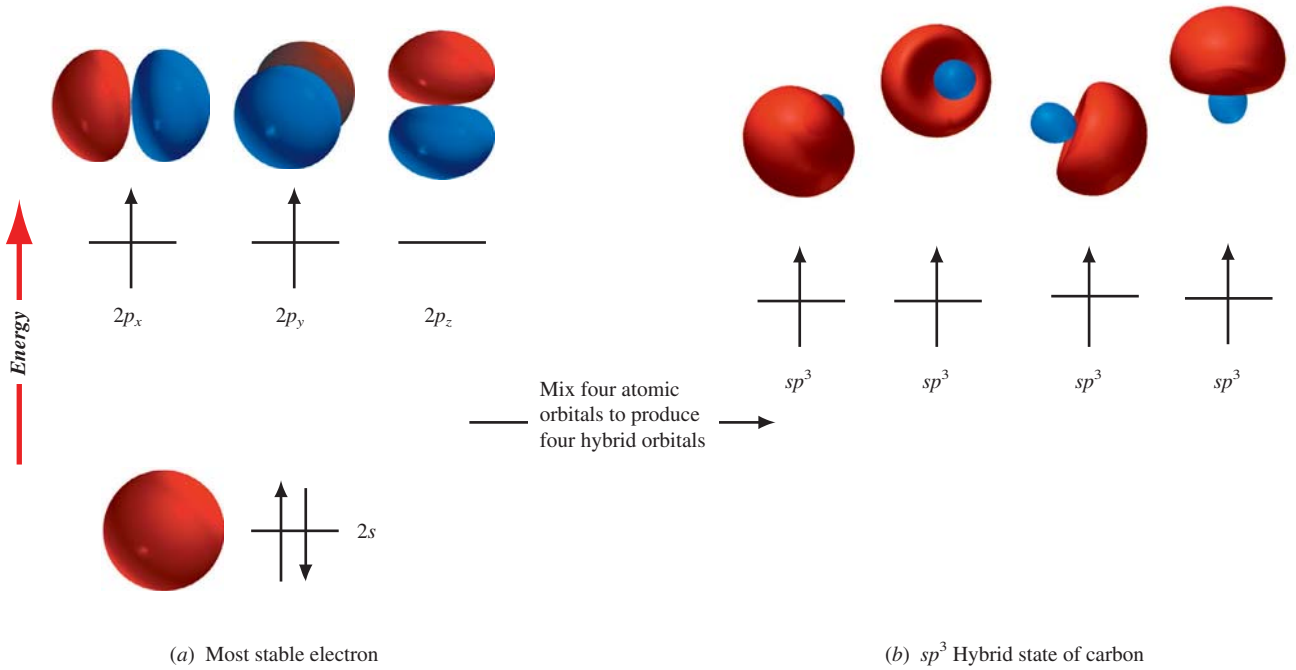


Figure 2.9

Methane burning as it is released from a clathrate.



(*a*) Most stable electron configuration of carbon atom

(*b*) sp^3 Hybrid state of carbon

Figure 2.10

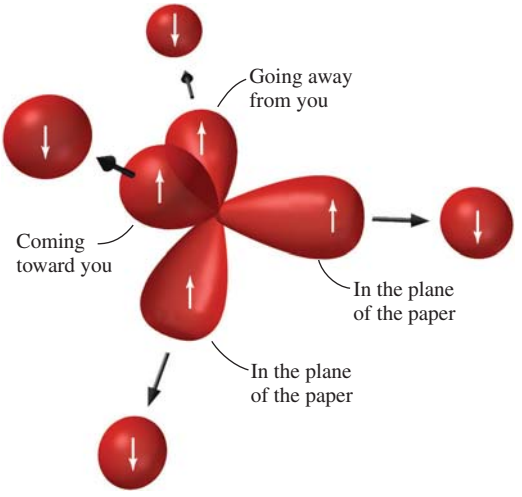
sp^3 Hybridization. (*a*) Electron configuration of carbon in its most stable state. (*b*) Mixing the *s* orbital with the three *p* orbitals generates four sp^3 hybrid orbitals. The four sp^3 hybrid orbitals are of equal energy; therefore, the four valence electrons are distributed evenly among them. The axes of the four sp^3 orbitals are directed toward the corners of a tetrahedron.

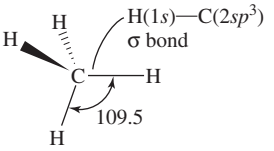
2. *The axes of the* sp^3 *orbitals point toward the corners of a tetrahedron*. Therefore, sp^3 hybridization of carbon is consistent with the tetrahedral structure of methane. Each C—H bond is a σ bond in which a half-filled 1*s* orbital of hydrogen overlaps with a half-filled sp^3 orbital of carbon along a line drawn between them (Figure 2.11).
3. σ *Bonds involving* sp^3 *hybrid orbitals of carbon are stronger than those involving unhybridized* 2s *or* 2p *orbitals*. Each sp^3 hybrid orbital has two lobes of unequal size, making the electron density greater on one side of the nucleus than the other. In a C—H σ bond, it is the larger lobe of a carbon sp^3 orbital that overlaps with a hydrogen 1*s* orbital. This concentrates the electron density in the region between the two atoms.

The orbital hybridization model accounts for carbon having four bonds rather than two, the bonds are stronger than they would be in the absence of hybridization, and they are arranged in a tetrahedral fashion around carbon.

Figure 2.11

Each half-filled sp^3 orbital overlaps with a half-filled hydrogen 1*s* orbital along a line between them giving a tetrahedral arrangement of four σ bonds. Only the major lobe of each sp^3 orbital is shown. Each orbital contains a smaller back lobe, which has been omitted for clarity.





2.7 Bonding in Ethane

The orbital hybridization model of covalent bonding is readily extended to carbon–carbon bonds. As Figure 2.12 illustrates, ethane is described in terms of a carbon–carbon σ bond joining two CH_3 **(methyl)** groups. Each methyl group consists of an sp^3-hybridized carbon attached to three hydrogens by sp^3–1*s* σ bonds. Overlap of the remaining half-filled sp^3 orbital of one carbon with that of the other generates a σ bond between them. Here is a third kind of σ bond, one that has as its basis the overlap of two half-filled sp^3-hybridized orbitals. *In general, you can expect that carbon will be* sp^3*-hybridized when it is directly bonded to four atoms.*

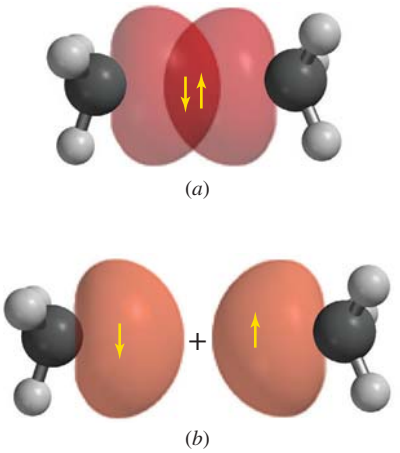


Figure 2.12

The C—C σ bond of ethane (*a*) is viewed as a combination of two half-filled sp^3 orbitals (*b*). As in methane, each of the C—H bonds is viewed as a combination of a half-filled sp^3 orbital of carbon with a half-filled 1*s* orbital of hydrogen.

Problem 2.2

Describe the bonding in propane according to the orbital hybridization model.

In the next few sections we'll examine the application of the valence bond-orbital hybridization model to alkenes and alkynes, then return to other aspects of alkanes in Section 2.11. We'll begin with ethylene.

2.8 sp^2 Hybridization and Bonding in Ethylene

Ethylene is planar with bond angles close to 120° (Figure 2.13); therefore, some hybridization state other than sp^3 is required. The hybridization scheme is determined by the number of atoms to which carbon is directly attached. In sp^3 hybridization, four atoms are attached to carbon by σ bonds, and so four equivalent sp^3 hybrid orbitals are required. In ethylene, three atoms are attached to each carbon, so three equivalent hybrid orbitals are needed. As shown in Figure 2.14, these three orbitals are generated by mixing the carbon 2*s* orbital with *two* of the 2*p* orbitals and are called **sp^2 hybrid orbitals.** One of the 2*p* orbitals is left unhybridized. The three sp^2 orbitals are of equal energy; each has one-third *s* character and two-thirds *p* character. Their axes are coplanar, and each has a shape much like that of an sp^3 orbital. The three sp^2 orbitals and the unhybridized *p* orbital each contain one electron.

Each carbon of ethylene uses two of its sp^2 hybrid orbitals to form σ bonds to two hydrogen atoms, as illustrated in the first part of Figure 2.15. The remaining sp^2 orbitals, one on each carbon, overlap along the internuclear axis to give a σ bond connecting the two carbons.

Each carbon atom still has, at this point, an unhybridized 2*p* orbital available for bonding. These two half-filled 2*p* orbitals have their axes perpendicular to the framework of σ bonds of the molecule and overlap in a side-by-side manner to give a **pi (π) bond.** The carbon–carbon double bond of ethylene is viewed as a combination of a σ bond plus a π bond. The additional increment of bonding makes a carbon–carbon double bond both stronger and shorter than a carbon–carbon single bond.

Electrons in a π bond are called **π electrons.** The probability of finding a π electron is highest in the region above and below the plane of the molecule. The plane of the molecule corresponds to a nodal plane, where the probability of finding a π electron is zero.

In general, you can expect that carbon will be sp^2*-hybridized when it is directly bonded to three atoms in a neutral molecule.*

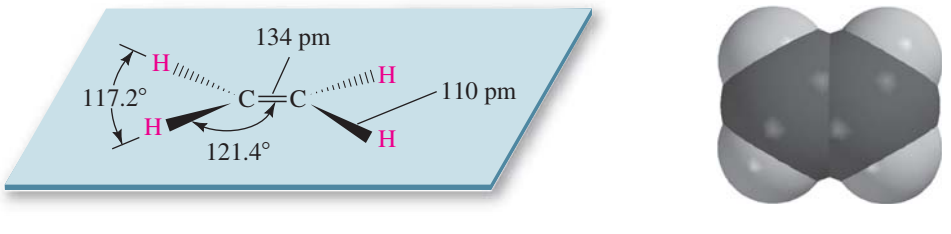
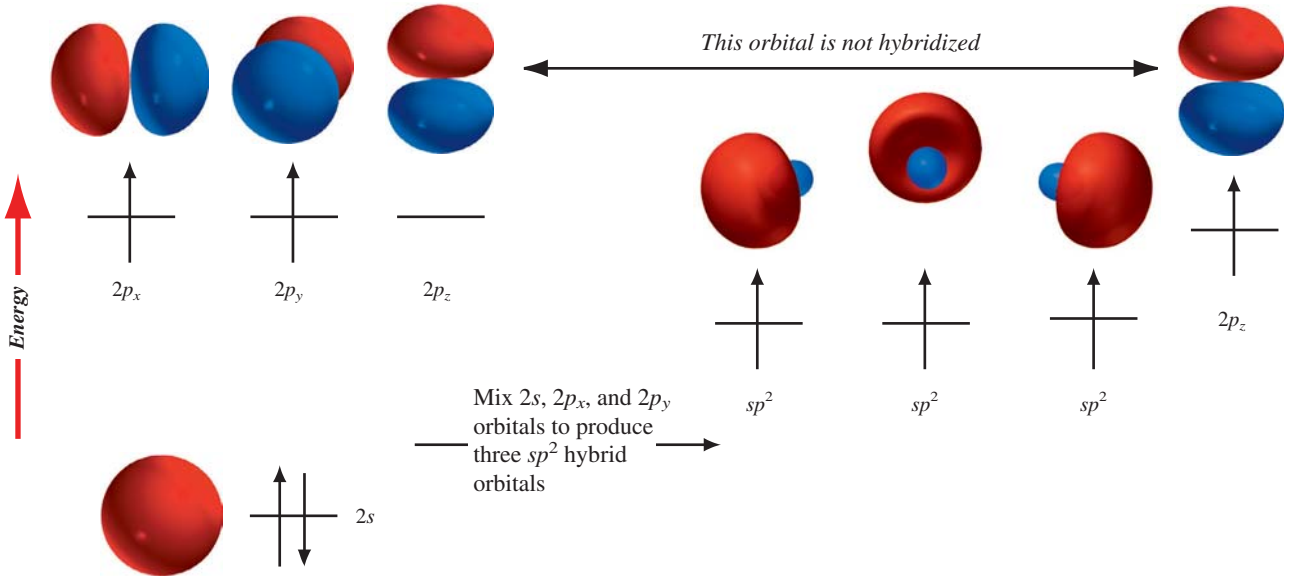


Figure 2.13

(*a*) All the atoms of ethylene lie in the same plane, the bond angles are close to 120°, and the carbon–carbon bond distance is significantly shorter than that of ethane. (*b*) A space-filling model of ethylene.



(*a*) Most stable electron configuration of carbon atom

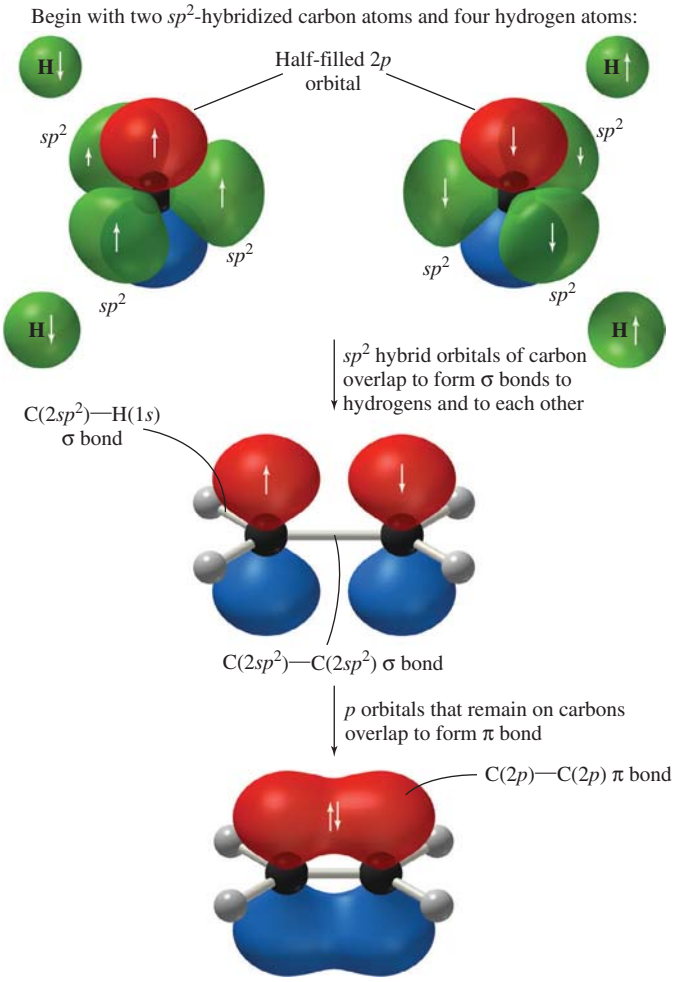
(*b*) sp^2 Hybrid state of carbon

Figure 2.14

sp^2 Hybridization. (*a*) Electron configuration of carbon in its most stable state. (*b*) Mixing the *s* orbital with two of the three *p* orbitals generates three sp^2 hybrid orbitals and leaves one of the 2*p* orbitals untouched. The axes of the three sp^2 orbitals lie in the same plane and make angles of 120° with one another.

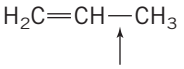
Figure 2.15

The carbon–carbon double bond in ethylene has a σ component and a π component. The σ component arises from overlap of sp^2-hybridized orbitals along the internuclear axis. The π component results from a side-by-side overlap of 2*p* orbitals.



Problem 2.3

Identify the orbital overlaps involved in the indicated bond in the compound shown (propene). Is this a π bond or a σ bond?



2.9 *sp* Hybridization and Bonding in Acetylene

One more hybridization scheme is important in organic chemistry. It is called ***sp* hybridization** and applies when carbon is directly bonded to two atoms, as in acetylene. The structure of acetylene is shown in Figure 2.16 along with its bond distances and bond angles. Its most prominent feature is its linear geometry.

Because each carbon in acetylene is bonded to two other atoms, the orbital hybridization model requires each carbon to have two equivalent orbitals available for σ bonds as outlined in Figure 2.17. According to this model the carbon 2*s* orbital and one of its 2*p* orbitals combine to

Figure 2.16

Acetylene is a linear molecule as indicated in (*a*) the structural formula and (*b*) a space-filling model.

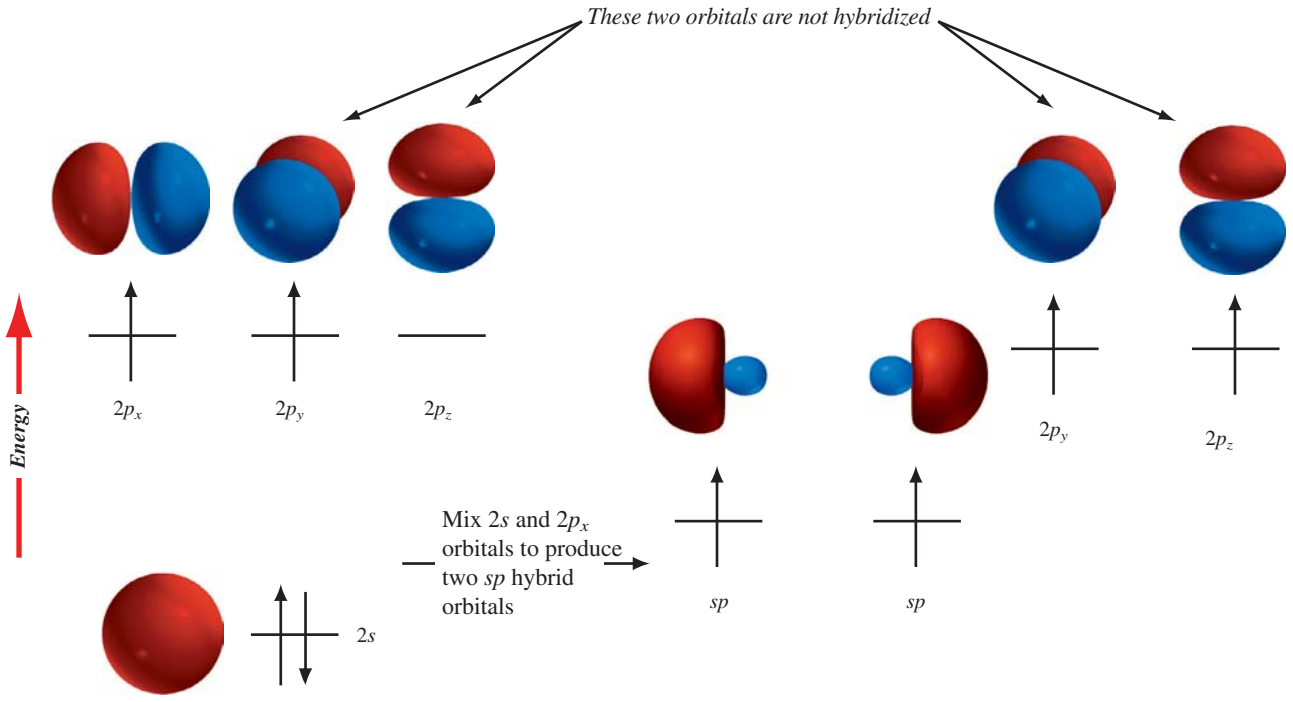
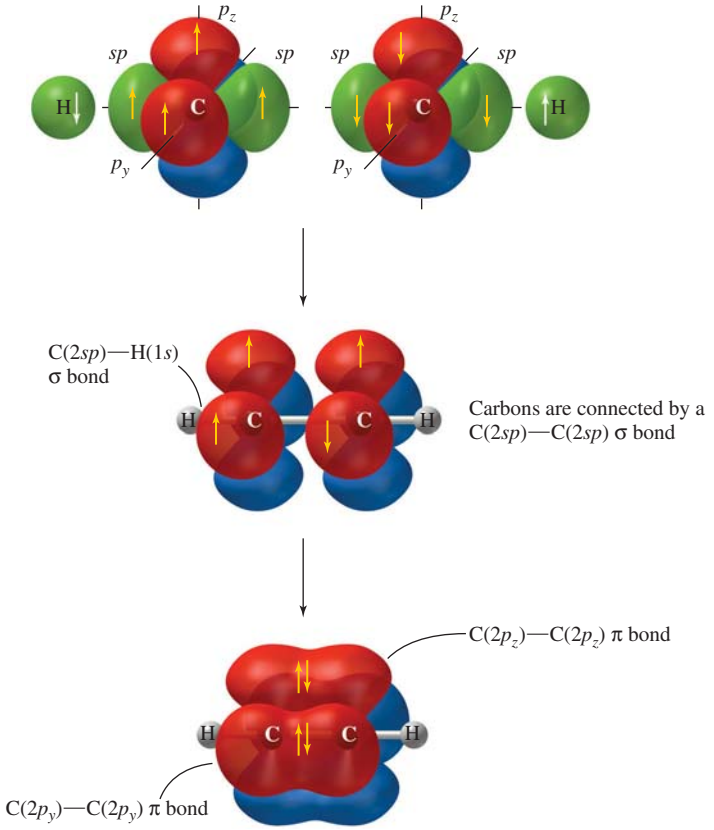


Figure 2.17

sp Hybridization. (*a*) Electron configuration of carbon in its most stable state. (*b*) Mixing the *s* orbital with one of the three *p* orbitals generates two *sp* hybrid orbitals and leaves two of the 2*p* orbitals untouched. The axes of the two *sp* orbitals make an angle of 180° with each other.

Figure 2.18

Bonding in acetylene based on *sp* hybridization of carbon. The carbon–carbon triple bond is viewed as consisting of one σ bond and two π bonds.



generate two *sp* hybrid orbitals, each of which has 50% *s* character and 50% *p* character. These two *sp* orbitals share a common axis, but their major lobes are oriented at an angle of 180° to each other. Two of the original 2*p* orbitals remain unhybridized.

As portrayed in Figure 2.18, the two carbons of acetylene are connected to each other by a 2*sp*–2*sp* σ bond, and each is attached to a hydrogen substituent by a 2*sp*–1*s* σ bond. The unhybridized 2*p* orbitals on one carbon overlap with their counterparts on the other to form two π bonds. The carbon–carbon triple bond in acetylene is viewed as a multiple bond of the σ + π + π type.

In general, you can expect that carbon will be sp*-hybridized when it is directly bonded to two atoms in a neutral molecule.*

Problem 2.4

The hydrocarbon shown, called *vinylacetylene,* is used in the synthesis of neoprene, a synthetic rubber. Identify the orbital overlaps involved in the indicated bond. How many σ bonds are there in vinylacetylene? How many π bonds?

$$H_2C{=}CH{-}C{\equiv}CH$$

2.10 Which Theory of Chemical Bonding Is Best?

We have introduced three approaches to chemical bonding:

1. The Lewis model
2. The orbital hybridization model (which is a type of valence bond model)
3. The molecular orbital model

Which one should you use?

Generally speaking, the three models offer complementary information. Organic chemists use all three, emphasizing whichever one best suits a particular feature of structure or reactivity. Until recently, the Lewis and orbital hybridization models were used far more than the molecular orbital model. But that is changing.

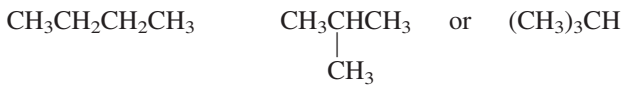
The Lewis rules are relatively straightforward, easiest to master, and the most familiar. You will find that your ability to write Lewis formulas increases rapidly with experience. *Get as much practice as you can early in the course. Success in organic chemistry depends on writing correct Lewis formulas.*

Orbital hybridization descriptions, because they too are based on the shared electron-pair bond, enhance the information content of Lewis formulas by distinguishing among various types of atoms, electrons, and bonds. As you become more familiar with a variety of structural types, you will find that the term *sp^3-hybridized carbon* triggers associations in your mind that are different from those of some other term, such as *sp^2-hybridized carbon,* for example.

Molecular orbital theory can provide insights into structure and reactivity that the Lewis and orbital hybridization models can't. It is the least intuitive of the three methods, however, and requires the most training, background, and experience to apply. We have *discussed* molecular orbital theory so far only in the context of the bonding in H_2. We have *used* the results of molecular orbital theory, however, several times without acknowledging it until now. Electrostatic potential maps are obtained by molecular orbital calculations. Four molecular orbital calculations provided the drawings that we used in Figure 2.4 to illustrate how electron density builds up between the atoms in the valence bond (!) treatment of H_2. Molecular orbital theory is well suited to quantitative applications and is becoming increasingly available for routine use. You will see the results of molecular orbital theory often in this text, but the theory itself will be developed only at an introductory level.

2.11 Isomeric Alkanes: The Butanes

Methane is the only alkane of molecular formula CH_4, ethane the only one that is C_2H_6, and propane the only one that is C_3H_8. Beginning with C_4H_{10}, however, constitutional isomers (Section 1.7) are possible; two alkanes have this particular molecular formula. In one, called ***n*-butane,** four carbons are joined in a continuous chain. The *n* in *n*-butane stands for "normal" and means that the carbon chain is unbranched. The second isomer has a branched carbon chain and is called **isobutane.**



	n-Butane	Isobutane
Boiling point:	−0.4°C	−10.2°C
Melting point:	−139°C	−160.9°C

As noted in Section 2.7, CH_3 is called a *methyl* group. In addition to having methyl groups at both ends, *n*-butane contains two CH_2, or **methylene** groups. Isobutane contains three methyl groups bonded to a CH unit. The CH unit is called a **methine** group.

n-Butane and isobutane have the same molecular formula but differ in connectivity. They are *constitutional isomers* of each other and have different properties. Both are gases at room temperature, but *n*-butane boils almost 10°C higher than isobutane and has a melting point that is over 20°C higher.

Bonding in *n*-butane and isobutane continues the theme begun with methane, ethane, and propane. All of the carbon atoms are sp^3-hybridized, all of the bonds are σ bonds, and the bond angles at carbon are close to tetrahedral. This generalization holds for all alkanes regardless of the number of carbons they have.

"Butane" lighters contain about 5% *n*-butane and 95% isobutane in a sealed container. The pressure produced by the two compounds (about 3 atm) is enough to keep them in the liquid state until opening a small valve emits a fine stream of the vaporized mixture across a spark, which ignites it.

2.12 Higher *n*-Alkanes

n-Pentane and *n*-hexane are *n*-alkanes possessing five and six carbon atoms, respectively.

$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$

n-Pentane *n*-Hexane

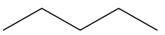
These condensed formulas can be abbreviated by indicating within parentheses the number of methylene groups in the chain. Thus, *n*-pentane may be written as $CH_3(CH_2)_3CH_3$ and *n*-hexane as $CH_3(CH_2)_4CH_3$. This shortcut is especially convenient with longer-chain alkanes. The laboratory synthesis of the "ultralong" alkane $CH_3(CH_2)_{388}CH_3$ was achieved in 1985; imagine trying to write its structural formula in anything other than an abbreviated way!

Problem 2.5

An *n*-alkane of molecular formula $C_{28}H_{58}$ has been isolated from a certain fossil plant. Write a condensed structural formula for this alkane.

n-Alkanes have the general formula $CH_3(CH_2)_xCH_3$ and constitute a **homologous series** of compounds. A homologous series is one in which successive members differ by a $—CH_2—$ group.

Unbranched alkanes are sometimes referred to as "straight-chain alkanes," but, as we'll see in Chapter 3, their chains are not straight but instead tend to adopt the "zigzag" shape as portrayed in their line formulas.

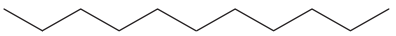


Bond-line formula of *n*-pentane

Bond-line formula of *n*-hexane

Problem 2.6

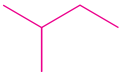
Much of the communication between insects involves chemical messengers called *pheromones*. A species of cockroach secretes a substance from its mandibular glands that alerts other cockroaches to its presence and causes them to congregate. One of the principal components of this *aggregation pheromone* is the alkane shown. Give the molecular formula of this substance, and represent it by a condensed formula.



2.13 The C_5H_{12} Isomers

Three isomeric alkanes have the molecular formula C_5H_{12}. The unbranched isomer is *n*-pentane. The isomer with a single methyl branch is called *isopentane*. The third isomer has a three-carbon chain with two methyl branches and is called *neopentane*.

n-Pentane: $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ or $CH_3(CH_2)_3CH_3$ or

Isopentane: $CH_3CH(CH_3)CH_2CH_3$ or $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$ or 

Neopentane: $CH_3C(CH_3)_2CH_3$ or $(CH_3)_4C$ or

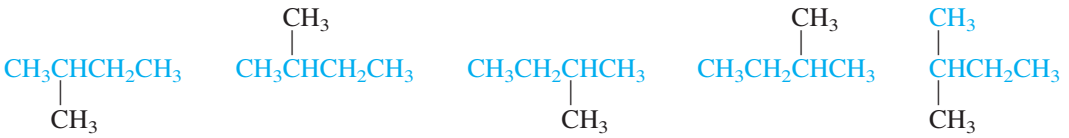
TABLE 2.1 The Number of Constitutionally Isomeric Alkanes of Particular Molecular Formulas

Molecular formula	Number of constitutional isomers
CH_4	1
C_2H_6	1
C_3H_8	1
C_4H_{10}	2
C_5H_{12}	3
C_6H_{14}	5
C_7H_{16}	9
C_8H_{18}	18
C_9H_{20}	35
$C_{10}H_{22}$	75
$C_{15}H_{32}$	4,347
$C_{20}H_{42}$	366,319
$C_{40}H_{82}$	62,491,178,805,831

Table 2.1 lists the number of possible alkane isomers according to the number of carbon atoms they contain. As the table shows, the number of isomers increases enormously with the number of carbon atoms and raises two important questions:

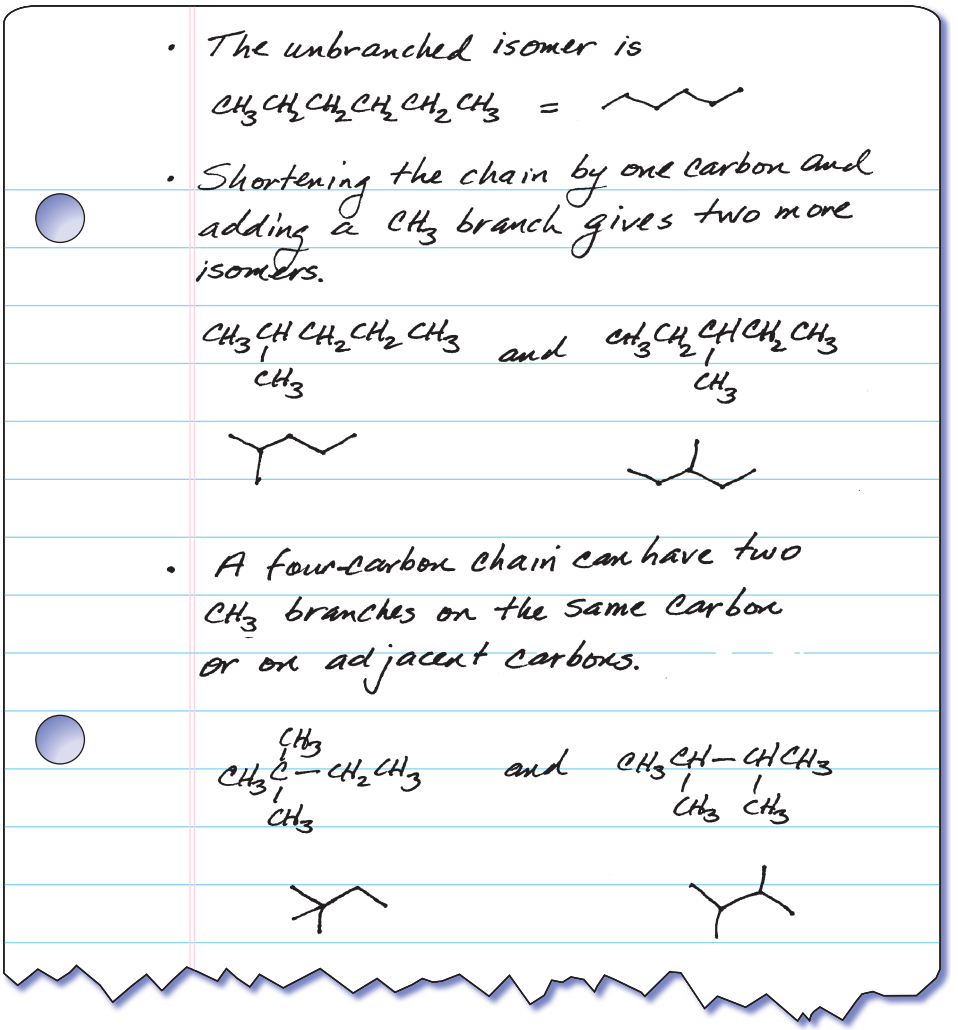
1. How can we tell when we have written all the possible isomers corresponding to a particular molecular formula?
2. How can we name alkanes so that each one has a unique name?

The answer to the first question is that you cannot easily calculate the number of isomers. The data in Table 2.1 were determined by a mathematician who concluded that no simple expression can calculate the number of isomers. The best way to ensure that you have written all the isomers of a particular molecular formula is to work systematically, beginning with the unbranched chain and then shortening it while adding branches one by one. It is essential that you be able to recognize when two different-looking structural formulas are actually the same molecule written in different ways. The key point is the *connectivity* of the carbon chain. For example, the following structural formulas do *not* represent different compounds; they are just a portion of the many ways we could write a structural formula for isopentane. Each one has a continuous chain of four carbons with a methyl branch located one carbon from the end of the chain, and all represent the same compound.



Problem 2.7

Write condensed and bond-line formulas for the five isomeric C_6H_{14} alkanes.



The answer to the second question—how to provide a name that is unique to a particular structure—is presented in the following section. It is worth noting, however, that being able to name compounds in a *systematic* way is a great help in deciding whether two structural formulas represent isomers or are the same compound written in two different ways. By following a precise set of rules, you will always get the same systematic name for a compound, regardless of how it is written. Conversely, two different compounds will always have different names.

2.14 IUPAC Nomenclature of Unbranched Alkanes

We have just seen that the three C_5H_{12} isomers all incorporate "pentane" in their names and are differentiated by the prefixes "*n*-", "iso", and "neo." Extending this approach to alkanes beyond C_5H_{12} fails because we run out of descriptive prefixes before all the isomers have unique names. As difficult as it would be to invent different names for the 18 constitutional isomers of C_8H_{18}, for example, it would be even harder to remember which structure corresponded to which name. For this and other reasons, organic chemists developed systematic ways to name compounds based on their structure. The most widely used approach is called the **IUPAC rules;** *IUPAC* stands for the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry. (See the boxed essay, *What's in a Name? Organic Nomenclature*.)

TABLE 2.2 IUPAC Names of Unbranched Alkanes

Number of carbon atoms	Name	Number of carbon atoms	Name	Number of carbon atoms	Name
1	Methane	11	Undecane	21	Henicosane
2	Ethane	12	Dodecane	22	Docosane
3	Propane	13	Tridecane	23	Tricosane
4	Butane	14	Tetradecane	24	Tetracosane
5	Pentane	15	Pentadecane	30	Triacontane
6	Hexane	16	Hexadecane	31	Hentriacontane
7	Heptane	17	Heptadecane	32	Dotriacontane
8	Octane	18	Octadecane	40	Tetracontane
9	Nonane	19	Nonadecane	50	Pentacontane
10	Decane	20	Icosane	100	Hectane

Figure 2.19

Worker bees build the hive with an alkane-containing wax secreted from their abdominal glands.

Alkane names form the foundation of the IUPAC system; more complicated compounds are viewed as being derived from alkanes. The IUPAC names assigned to unbranched alkanes are shown in Table 2.2. Methane, ethane, propane, and butane are retained for CH_4, CH_3CH_3, $CH_3CH_2CH_3$, and $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$, respectively. Thereafter, the number of carbon atoms in the chain is specified by a Greek prefix preceding the suffix *-ane,* which identifies the compound as a member of the alkane family. Notice that the prefix *n-* is not part of the IUPAC system. The IUPAC name for $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$ is butane, not *n*-butane.

Problem 2.8

Refer to Table 2.2 as needed to answer the following questions:

(a) Beeswax (Figure 2.19) contains 8–9% hentriacontane. Write a condensed structural formula for hentriacontane.

(b) Octacosane has been found to be present in a certain fossil plant. Write a condensed structural formula for octacosane.

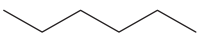
(c) What is the IUPAC name of the alkane described in Problem 2.6 as a component of the cockroach aggregation pheromone?

Sample Solution (a) Note in Table 2.2 that hentriacontane has 31 carbon atoms. All the alkanes in Table 2.2 have unbranched carbon chains. Hentriacontane has the condensed structural formula $CH_3(CH_2)_{29}CH_3$.

In Problem 2.7 you were asked to write structural formulas for the five isomeric alkanes of molecular formula C_6H_{14}. In the next section you will see how the IUPAC rules generate a unique name for each isomer.

2.15 Applying the IUPAC Rules: The Names of the C_6H_{14} Isomers

We can present and illustrate the most important of the IUPAC rules for alkane nomenclature by naming the five C_6H_{14} isomers. By definition (see Table 2.2), the unbranched C_6H_{14} isomer is hexane.

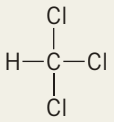
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ or 

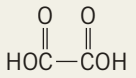
IUPAC name: hexane

What's in a Name? Organic Nomenclature

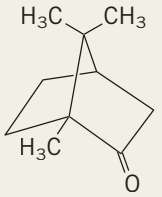
Systematic Names and Common Names *Systematic names are derived according to a prescribed set of rules, common names are not.*

Many compounds are better known by **common names** than by their **systematic names.**





Common name:	Chloroform	Oxalic acid
Systematic name:	Trichloromethane	Ethanedioic acid



Common name: Camphor

Systematic name: 1,7,7-Trimethylbicyclo[2.2.1]heptan-2-one

Common names, despite their familiarity in certain cases, suffer serious limitations compared with systematic ones. The number of known compounds (more than 50 million as of 2009) far exceeds our capacity to give each one a unique common name, and most common names are difficult to connect directly to a structural formula. A systematic approach *based on structure* not only conveys structural information, but also generates a unique name for each structural variation.

Evolution of the IUPAC Rules *A single compound can have several acceptable systematic names but no two compounds can have the same name.*

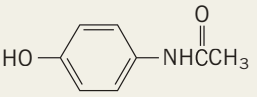
As early as 1787 with the French publication of *Méthode de nomenclature chimique,* chemists suggested guidelines for naming compounds according to chemical composition. Their proposals were more suited to inorganic compounds than organic ones, and it was not until the 1830s that comparable changes appeared in organic chemistry. Later (1892), a group of prominent chemists met in Geneva, Switzerland, where they formulated the principles on which our present system of organic nomenclature is based.

During the twentieth century, what we now know as the *International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry* (IUPAC) carried out major revisions and extensions of organic nomenclature culminating in the IUPAC Rules of 1979 and 1993. When the 1979 IUPAC names are more widely used than those of the 1993 sequel, the 1979 names are emphasized in this text and vice versa. Exercises illustrating the relationship of the 1979 and 1993 names are included where appropriate.

Our practice will be to name compounds in the manner of most active chemists and to use nomenclature as a tool to advance our understanding of organic chemistry.

Other Nomenclatures Chemical Abstracts Service, a division of the American Chemical Society, surveys all the world's leading scientific journals and publishes brief abstracts of their chemistry papers. *Chemical Abstracts* nomenclature has evolved in a direction geared to computerized literature searches and, although once similar to IUPAC, it is now much different. In general, it is easier to make the mental connection between a structure and its IUPAC name than its *Chemical Abstracts* name.

The **generic name** of a drug is not derived from systematic nomenclature. The group responsible for most generic names in the United States is the U.S. Adopted Names (USAN) Council, a private organization founded by the American Medical Association, the American Pharmacists Association, and the U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention.



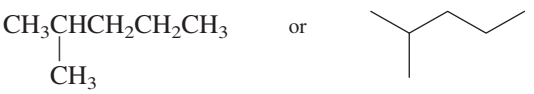
Tylenol

USAN	Acetaminophen
INN	Paracetamol
IUPAC	*N*-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)acetamide

The USAN name is recognized as the official name by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. International Proprietary Names (INN) are generic names as designated by the World Health Organization.

*The 1979 and 1993 IUPAC rules may be accessed at http://www.acdlabs.com/iupac/nomenclature.

The IUPAC rules name branched alkanes as *substituted derivatives* of the unbranched parent alkanes listed in Table 2.2. Consider the C_6H_{14} isomer represented by the structure



Step 1

Pick out the *longest continuous carbon chain,* and find the IUPAC name in Table 2.2 that corresponds to the unbranched alkane having that number of carbons. This is the parent alkane from which the IUPAC name is to be derived.

In this case, the longest continuous chain has *five* carbon atoms; the compound is named as a derivative of pentane. The key word here is *continuous*. It does not matter

whether the carbon skeleton is drawn in an extended straight-chain form or in one with many bends and turns. All that matters is the number of carbons linked together in an uninterrupted sequence.

Step 2

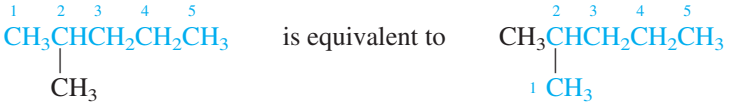
Identify the substituent groups attached to the parent.

The parent pentane chain bears a methyl (CH_3) group as a substituent.

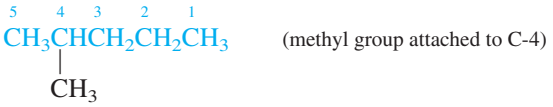
Step 3

Number the longest continuous chain in the direction that gives the lowest number to the substituent at the first point of branching.

The numbering scheme

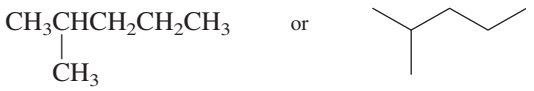


Both schemes count five carbon atoms in their longest continuous chain and bear a methyl group as a substituent at the second carbon. An alternative numbering sequence that begins at the other end of the chain is incorrect:



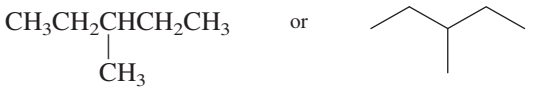
Step 4

Write the name of the compound. The parent alkane is the last part of the name and is preceded by the names of the substituents and their numerical locations **(locants).** Hyphens separate the locants from the words.



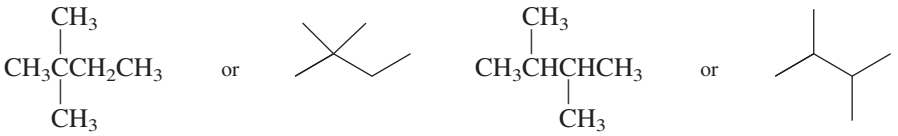
IUPAC name: 2-methylpentane

The same sequence of four steps gives the IUPAC name for the isomer that has its methyl group attached to the middle carbon of the five-carbon chain.



IUPAC name: 3-methylpentane

Both remaining C_6H_{14} isomers have two methyl groups as substituents on a four-carbon chain. Thus the parent chain is butane. When the same substituent appears more than once, use the multiplying prefixes *di-*, *tri-*, *tetra-*, and so on. A separate locant is used for each substituent, and the locants are separated from each other by commas and from the words by hyphens.



IUPAC name: 2,2-dimethylbutane **IUPAC name: 2,3-dimethylbutane**

Problem 2.9

Phytane is the common name of a naturally occurring alkane produced by the alga *Spirogyra* and is a constituent of petroleum. The IUPAC name for phytane is 2,6,10,14-tetramethylhexadecane. Write a line formula for phytane.

Problem 2.10

Derive the IUPAC names for

(a) The isomers of C_4H_{10}
(b) The isomers of C_5H_{12}
(c) $(CH_3)_3CCH_2CH(CH_3)_2$
(d) $(CH_3)_3CC(CH_3)_3$

Sample Solution (a) There are two C_4H_{10} isomers. Butane (see Table 2.2) is the IUPAC name for the isomer that has an unbranched carbon chain. The other isomer has three carbons in its longest continuous chain with a methyl branch at the central carbon; its IUPAC name is 2-methylpropane.

IUPAC name: butane **IUPAC name: 2-methylpropane**

So far, the only branched alkanes that we've named have methyl groups attached to the main chain. What about groups other than CH_3? What do we call these groups, and how do we name alkanes that contain them?

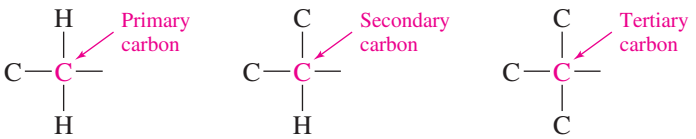
2.16 Alkyl Groups

An **alkyl group** lacks one of the hydrogens of an alkane. A methyl group (—CH_3) is an alkyl group derived from methane (CH_4). Unbranched alkyl groups in which the point of attachment is at the end of the chain are named in IUPAC nomenclature by replacing the *-ane* endings of Table 2.2 by *-yl*.

Ethyl group **Heptyl** group **Octadecyl** group

The dash at the end of the chain represents a potential point of attachment for some other atom or group.

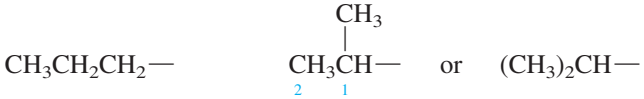
Carbon atoms are classified according to their degree of substitution by other carbons. A **primary** carbon is *directly* attached to one other carbon. Similarly, a **secondary** carbon is directly attached to two other carbons, a **tertiary** carbon to three, and a **quaternary** carbon to four. Alkyl groups are designated as primary, secondary, or tertiary according to the degree of substitution of the carbon at the potential point of attachment.



Primary alkyl group Secondary alkyl group Tertiary alkyl group

Ethyl (CH_3CH_2—), heptyl [$CH_3(CH_2)_5CH_2$—], and octadecyl [$CH_3(CH_2)_{16}CH_2$—] are examples of primary alkyl groups.

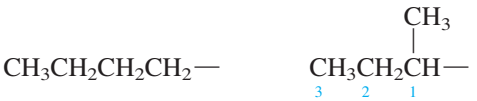
Branched alkyl groups are named by using the longest continuous chain *that begins at the point of attachment* as the parent. Thus, the systematic names of the two C_3H_7 alkyl groups are propyl and 1-methylethyl. Both are better known by their common names, *n*-propyl and isopropyl, respectively.



Propyl group (common name: ***n*-propyl**) **1-Methylethyl** group (common name: **isopropyl**)

An isopropyl group is a *secondary* alkyl group. Its point of attachment is to a secondary carbon atom, one that is directly bonded to two other carbons.

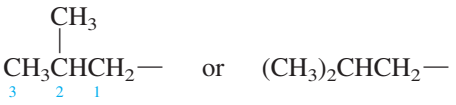
The C_4H_9 alkyl groups may be derived either from the unbranched carbon skeleton of butane or from the branched carbon skeleton of isobutane. Those derived from butane are the butyl (*n*-butyl) group and the 1-methylpropyl (*sec*-butyl) group.



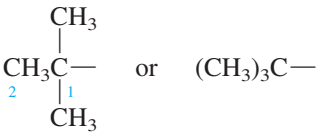
Butyl group (common name: ***n*-butyl**)

1-Methylpropyl group (common name: ***sec*-butyl**)

Those derived from isobutane are the 2-methylpropyl (isobutyl) group and the 1,1-dimethylethyl (*tert*-butyl) group. Isobutyl is a primary alkyl group because its potential point of attachment is to a primary carbon. *tert*-Butyl is a tertiary alkyl group because its potential point of attachment is to a tertiary carbon.



2-Methylpropyl group (common name: **isobutyl**)

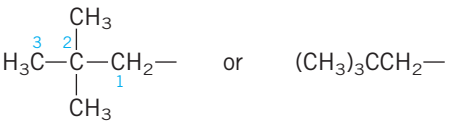


1,1-Dimethylethyl group (common name: ***tert*-butyl**)

Problem 2.11

Give the structures and IUPAC names of all the C_5H_{11} alkyl groups, and identify them as primary, secondary, or tertiary, as appropriate.

Sample Solution Consider the alkyl group having the same carbon skeleton as $(CH_3)_4C$. All the hydrogens are equivalent; replacing any one of them by a potential point of attachment is the same as replacing any of the others.



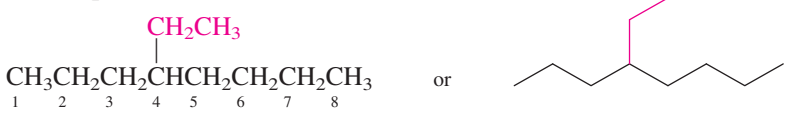
Numbering always begins at the point of attachment and continues through the longest continuous chain. In this case the chain is three carbons and there are two methyl groups at C-2. The IUPAC name of this alkyl group is *2,2-dimethylpropyl*. (The common name for this group is *neopentyl*.) It is a *primary* alkyl group because the carbon that bears the potential point of attachment (C-1) is itself directly bonded to one other carbon.

In addition to methyl and ethyl groups, *n*-propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, and neopentyl groups will appear often throughout this text. You should be able to recognize these groups on sight and to give their structures when needed.

The names and structures of the most frequently encountered alkyl groups are given on the inside back cover.

2.17 IUPAC Names of Highly Branched Alkanes

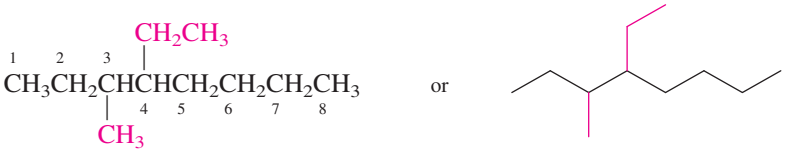
By combining the basic principles of IUPAC notation with the names of the various alkyl groups, we can develop systematic names for highly branched alkanes. We'll start with the following alkane, name it, then increase its complexity by successively adding methyl groups at various positions.



As numbered on the structural formula, the longest continuous chain contains eight carbons, and so the compound is named as a derivative of octane. Numbering begins at the

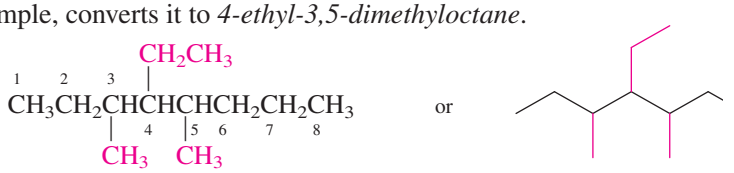
end nearest the branch, and so the ethyl substituent is located at C-4, and the name of the alkane is *4-ethyloctane*.

What happens to the IUPAC name when a methyl group replaces one of the hydrogens at C-3?



The compound becomes an octane derivative that bears a C-3 methyl group and a C-4 ethyl group. *When two or more different substituents are present, they are listed in alphabetical order in the name*. The IUPAC name for this compound is *4-ethyl-3-methyloctane*.

Replicating prefixes such as *di-*, *tri-*, and *tetra-* (Section 2.15) are used as needed but are ignored when alphabetizing. Adding a second methyl group to the original structure, at C-5, for example, converts it to *4-ethyl-3,5-dimethyloctane*.

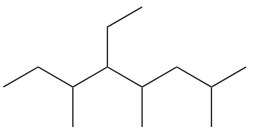


Italicized prefixes such as *sec-* and *tert-* are ignored when alphabetizing except when they are compared with each other. *tert*-Butyl precedes isobutyl, and *sec*-butyl precedes *tert*-butyl.

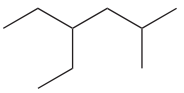
Problem 2.12

Give an acceptable IUPAC name for each of the following alkanes:

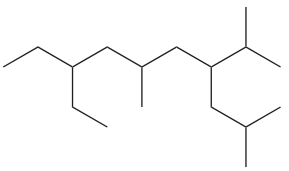
(a) $CH_3CH_2CHCHCHCH_2CHCH_3$ (CH2CH3; CH3, CH3, CH3) or



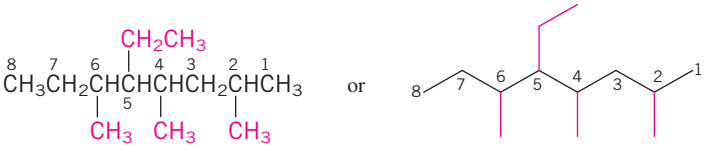
(b) $(CH_3CH_2)_2CHCH_2CH(CH_3)$ or



(c) $CH_3CH_2CHCH_2CHCH_2CHCH(CH_3)_2$ (CH3; CH2CH3; CH2CH(CH3)2) or

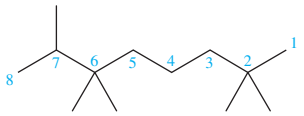


Sample Solution (a) This problem extends the preceding discussion by adding a third methyl group to 4-ethyl-3,5-dimethyloctane, the compound just described. It is, therefore, an *ethyltrimethyloctane*. Notice, however, that the numbering sequence needs to be changed in order to adhere to the rule of numbering from the end of the chain nearest the first branch. When numbered properly, this compound has a methyl group at C-2 as its first-appearing substituent.

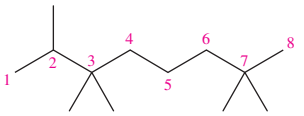


5-Ethyl-2,4,6-trimethyloctane

An additional feature of IUPAC nomenclature that concerns the direction of numbering is the "first point of difference" rule. Consider the two directions in which the following alkane may be numbered:



2,2,6,6,7-Pentamethyloctane
(correct)



2,3,3,7,7-Pentamethyloctane
(incorrect!)

When deciding on the proper direction, a point of difference occurs when one order gives a lower locant than another. Thus, although 2 is the first locant in both numbering schemes, the tie is broken at the second locant, and the rule favors 2,2,6,6,7, which has 2 as its second locant, whereas 3 is the second locant in 2,3,3,7,7. Notice that locants are *not* added together, but examined one by one.

Finally, when equal locants are generated from two different numbering directions, choose the direction that gives the lower number to the substituent that appears first in the name. (Remember, substituents are listed alphabetically.)

The IUPAC nomenclature system is inherently logical and incorporates healthy elements of common sense into its rules. Granted, some long, funny-looking, hard-to-pronounce names are generated. Once one knows the code (rules of grammar) though, it becomes a simple matter to convert those long names to unique structural formulas.

Tabular summaries of the IUPAC rules for alkane and alkyl group nomenclature appear in Tables 2.5 and 2.6 on pages 88–89.

2.18 Cycloalkane Nomenclature

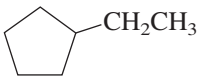
Cycloalkanes are alkanes that contain a ring of three or more carbons. They are frequently encountered in organic chemistry and are characterized by the molecular formula C_nH_{2n}. They are named by adding the prefix *cyclo-* to the name of the unbranched alkane with the same number of carbons as the ring.

Cycloalkanes are one class of *alicyclic* (*aliphatic cyclic*) hydrocarbons.

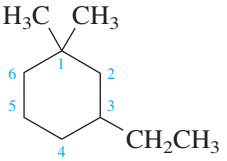
Cyclopropane

Cyclohexane

Substituents are identified in the usual way. Their positions are specified by numbering the carbon atoms of the ring in the direction that gives the lowest number to the substituents at the first point of difference.

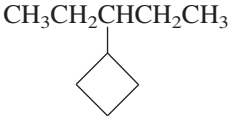


Ethylcyclopentane



3-Ethyl-1,1-dimethylcyclohexane
(not 1-ethyl-3,3-dimethylcyclohexane, because first point of difference rule requires 1,1,3 substitution pattern rather than 1,3,3)

When the ring contains fewer carbon atoms than an alkyl group attached to it, the compound is named as an alkane, and the ring is treated as a *cycloalkyl* substituent:

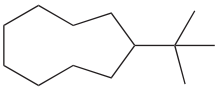


3-Cyclobutylpentane

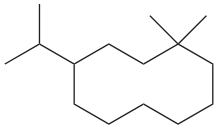
Problem 2.13

Name each of the following compounds:

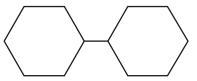
(a)



(b)



(c)



Sample Solution (a) The molecule has a *tert*-butyl group bonded to a nine-membered cycloalkane. It is *tert*-butylcyclononane. Alternatively, the *tert*-butyl group could be named systematically as a 1,1-dimethylethyl group, and the compound would then be named (1,1-dimethylethyl)cyclononane. Parentheses are used when necessary to avoid ambiguity. In this case the parentheses alert the reader that the locants 1,1 refer to substituents on the alkyl group and not to ring positions.

2.19 Sources of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes

The word *petroleum* is derived from the Latin words for "rock" *(petra)* and "oil" *(oleum)*.

As noted earlier, natural gas is mostly methane but also contains ethane and propane, along with smaller amounts of other low-molecular-weight alkanes. Natural gas is often found associated with petroleum deposits. Petroleum is a liquid mixture containing hundreds of substances, including approximately 150 hydrocarbons, roughly half of which are alkanes or cycloalkanes. Distillation of crude oil gives a number of fractions, which by custom have the names given in Figure 2.20. High-boiling fractions such as kerosene and gas oil find wide use as fuels for diesel engines and furnaces, and the nonvolatile residue can be processed to give lubricating oil, greases, petroleum jelly, paraffin wax, and asphalt. Jet fuels are obtained from the naphtha–kerosene fractions.

Although both are closely linked in our minds and by our own experience, the petroleum industry predated the automobile industry by half a century. The first oil well, drilled in Titusville, Pennsylvania, by Edwin Drake in 1859, provided "rock oil," as it was then called, on a large scale. This was quickly followed by the development of a process to "refine" it so as to produce kerosene. As a fuel for oil lamps, kerosene burned with a bright, clean flame and soon replaced the vastly more expensive whale oil then in use (Figure 2.21). Other oil fields were discovered, and uses for other petroleum products were

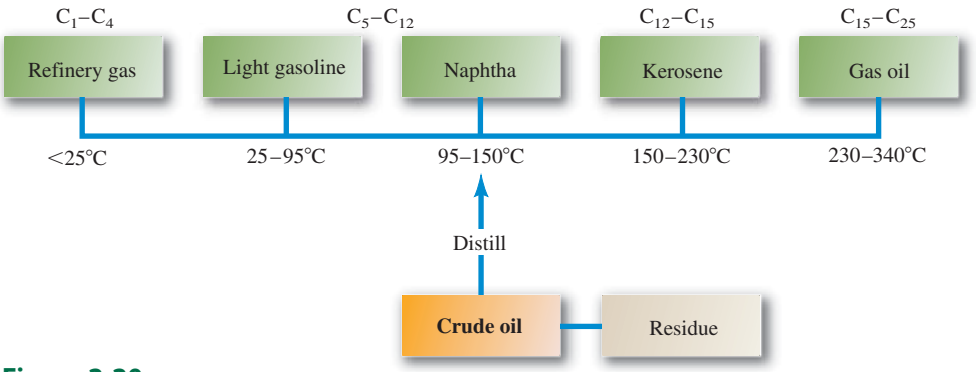


Figure 2.20

Distillation of crude oil yields a series of volatile fractions having the names indicated, along with a nonvolatile residue. The number of carbon atoms that characterize the hydrocarbons in each fraction is approximate.

Figure 2.21

The earliest major use for petroleum was as a fuel for oil lamps.

found—illuminating city streets with gas lights, heating homes with oil, and powering locomotives. There were oil refineries long before there were automobiles. By the time the first Model T rolled off Henry Ford's assembly line in 1908, John D. Rockefeller's Standard Oil holdings had already made him one of the half-dozen wealthiest people in the world.

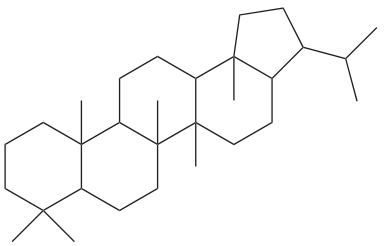
Modern petroleum **refining** involves more than distillation, however, and includes two major additional operations:

1. **Cracking.** The more volatile, lower-molecular-weight hydrocarbons are useful as automotive fuels and as a source of petrochemicals. Cracking increases the proportion of these hydrocarbons at the expense of higher-molecular-weight ones by processes that involve the cleavage of carbon–carbon bonds induced by heat (*thermal cracking*) or with the aid of certain catalysts (*catalytic cracking*).
2. **Reforming.** The physical properties of the crude oil fractions known as *light gasoline* and *naphtha* (Figure 2.20) are appropriate for use as a motor fuel, but their ignition characteristics in high-compression automobile engines are poor and give rise to preignition, or "knocking." Reforming converts the hydrocarbons in petroleum to aromatic hydrocarbons and highly branched alkanes, both of which show less tendency for knocking than unbranched alkanes and cycloalkanes.

The tendency of a gasoline to cause "knocking" in an engine is given by its octane number. The lower the octane number, the greater the tendency. The two standards are heptane (assigned a value of 0) and "isooctane" (2,2,4-trimethylpentane, which is assigned a value of 100). The octane number of a gasoline is equal to the percentage of isooctane in a mixture of isooctane and heptane that has the same tendency to cause knocking as that sample of gasoline.

Petroleum is not the only place where alkanes occur naturally. Solid *n*-alkanes, especially those with relatively long chains, have a waxy constituency and coat the outer surface of many living things where they help prevent the loss of water. Pentacosane $[CH_3(CH_2)_{23}CH_3]$ is present in the waxy outer layer of most insects. Hentriacontane $[CH_3(CH_2)_{29}CH_3]$ is a component of beeswax (see Problem 2.8) as well as the wax that coats the leaves of tobacco, peach trees, pea plants, and numerous others. The C_{23}, C_{25}, C_{27}, C_{29}, and C_{31} *n*-alkanes have been identified in the surface coating of the eggs of honeybee queens.

Cyclopentane and cyclohexane are present in petroleum, but as a rule, unsubstituted cycloalkanes rarely occur naturally. A significant exception is a group of more than 200 hydrocarbons called *hopanes,* related to the parent having the carbon skeleton shown.



Hopane

Hopanes were first found in petroleum and geological sediments, later as components of certain bacterial cell membranes. Although present in small amounts, hopanes are so widespread that they rank among the most abundant natural products on Earth.

Problem 2.14

What is the molecular formula of hopane?

2.20 Physical Properties of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes

Boiling Point. As we have seen earlier in this chapter, methane, ethane, propane, and butane are gases at room temperature. The unbranched alkanes pentane (C_5H_{12}) through heptadecane ($C_{17}H_{36}$) are liquids, whereas higher homologs are solids. As shown in

Figure 2.22

Boiling points of unbranched alkanes and their 2-methyl-branched isomers.

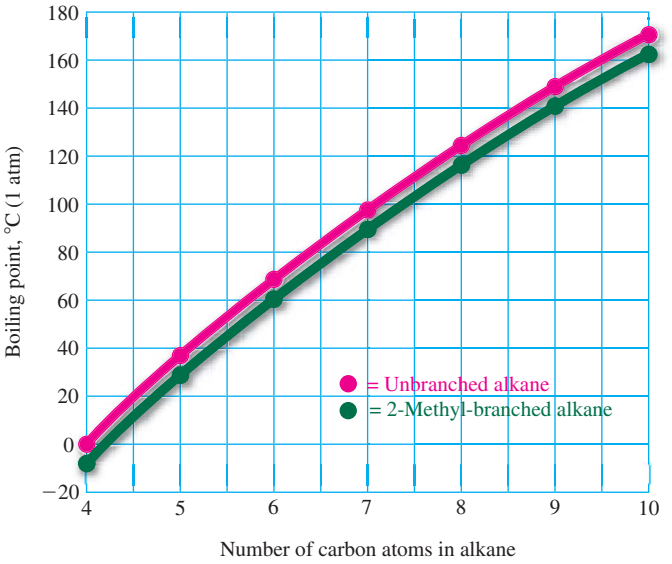


Figure 2.22, the boiling points of unbranched alkanes increase with the number of carbon atoms. Figure 2.22 also shows that the boiling points for 2-methyl-branched alkanes are lower than those of the unbranched isomer. By exploring at the molecular level the reasons for the increase in boiling point with the number of carbons and the difference in boiling point between branched and unbranched alkanes, we can continue to connect structure with properties.

A substance exists as a liquid rather than a gas because attractive forces between molecules **(intermolecular attractive forces)** are greater in the liquid than in the gas phase. Attractive forces between neutral species (atoms or molecules, but not ions) are referred to as **van der Waals forces** and may be of three types:

1. dipole–dipole (including hydrogen bonding)
2. dipole/induced-dipole
3. induced-dipole/induced-dipole

Induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractive forces are often called *London forces,* or *dispersion forces.*

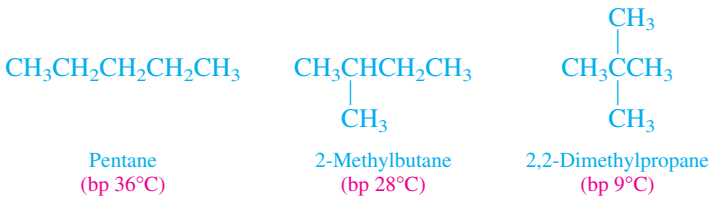
These forces are electrical in nature, and in order to vaporize a substance, enough energy must be added to overcome them. Most alkanes have no measurable dipole moment, and therefore the only van der Waals force to be considered is the **induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractive force.**

It might seem that two nearby molecules A and B of the same nonpolar substance would be unaffected by each other.

In fact, the electric fields of both A and B are dynamic and fluctuate in a complementary way that results in a temporary dipole moment and a weak attraction between them.

Extended assemblies of induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractions can accumulate to give substantial intermolecular attractive forces. An alkane with a higher molecular weight has more atoms and electrons and, therefore, more opportunities for intermolecular attractions and a higher boiling point than one with a lower molecular weight.

As noted earlier in this section, branched alkanes have lower boiling points than their unbranched isomers. Isomers have, of course, the same number of atoms and electrons, but a molecule of a branched alkane has a smaller surface area than an unbranched one. The extended shape of an unbranched alkane permits more points of contact for intermolecular associations. Compare the boiling points of pentane and its isomers:



The shapes of these isomers are clearly evident in the space-filling models depicted in Figure 2.23. Pentane has the most extended structure and the largest surface area available for "sticking" to other molecules by way of induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractive forces; it has the highest boiling point. 2,2-Dimethylpropane has the most compact, most spherical structure, engages in the fewest induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractions, and has the lowest boiling point.

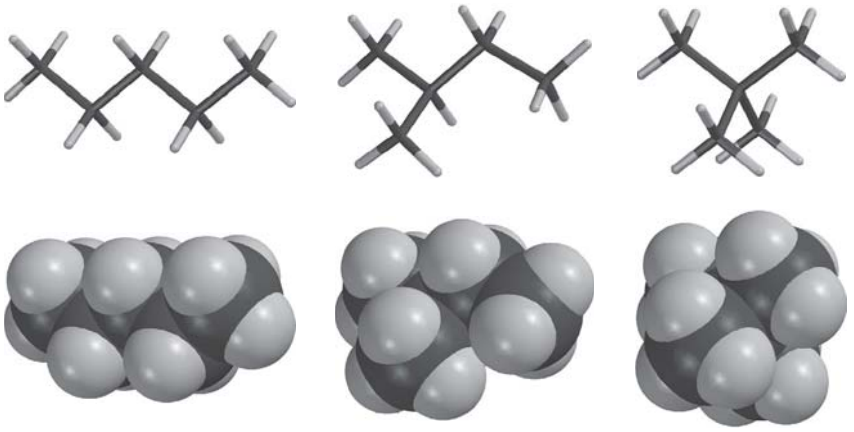
Induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractions are very weak forces individually, but a typical organic substance can participate in so many of them that they are collectively the most important of all the contributors to intermolecular attraction in the liquid state. They are the only forces of attraction possible between nonpolar molecules such as alkanes.

Problem 2.15

Match the boiling points with the appropriate alkanes.
Alkanes: octane, 2-methylheptane, 2,2,3,3-tetramethylbutane, nonane
Boiling points (°C, 1 atm): 106, 116, 126, 151

Cyclopentane has a higher boiling point (49.3°C) than pentane (36°C), indicating greater forces of association in the cyclic alkane than in the alkane.

Melting Point. Solid alkanes are soft, generally low-melting materials. The forces responsible for holding the crystal together are the same induced-dipole/induced-dipole interactions that operate between molecules in the liquid, but the degree of organization is greater in the solid phase. By measuring the distances between the atoms of one



(*a*) Pentane: $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ (*b*) 2-Methylbutane: $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$ (*c*) 2,2-Dimethylpropane: $(CH_3)_4C$

Figure 2.23

Tube (*top*) and space-filling (*bottom*) models of (*a*) pentane, (*b*) 2-methylbutane, and (*c*) 2,2-dimethylpropane. The most branched isomer, 2,2-dimethylpropane, has the most compact, most spherical three-dimensional shape.

molecule and its neighbor in the crystal, it is possible to specify a distance of closest approach characteristic of an atom called its **van der Waals radius.** In space-filling molecular models, such as those of pentane, 2-methylbutane, and 2,2-dimethylpropane shown in Figure 2.23, the radius of each sphere corresponds to the van der Waals radius of the atom it represents. The van der Waals radius for hydrogen is 120 pm. When two alkane molecules are brought together so that a hydrogen of one molecule is within 240 pm of a hydrogen of the other, the balance between electron–nucleus attractions versus electron–electron and nucleus–nucleus repulsions is most favorable. Closer approach is resisted by a strong increase in repulsive forces.

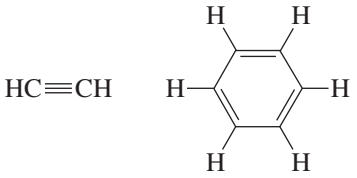
Solubility in Water. A familiar physical property of alkanes is contained in the adage "oil and water don't mix." Alkanes—indeed all hydrocarbons—are virtually insoluble in water. In order for a hydrocarbon to dissolve in water, the framework of hydrogen bonds between water molecules would become more ordered in the region around each molecule of the dissolved hydrocarbon. This increase in order, which corresponds to a decrease in entropy, signals a process that can be favorable only if it is reasonably exothermic. Such is not the case here. The hydrogen bonding among water molecules is too strong to be disrupted by nonpolar hydrocarbons. Being insoluble, and with densities in the 0.6–0.8 g/mL range, alkanes float on the surface of water. The exclusion of nonpolar molecules, such as alkanes, from water is called the **hydrophobic effect.** We will encounter it again at several points later in the text.

2.21 Chemical Properties: Combustion of Alkanes

An older name for alkanes is **paraffin hydrocarbons.** *Paraffin* is derived from the Latin words *parum affinis* ("with little affinity") and testifies to the low level of reactivity of alkanes.

Alkanes are so unreactive that George A. Olah of the University of Southern California was awarded the 1994 Nobel Prize in Chemistry in part for developing novel substances that do react with alkanes.

Table 1.8 shows that hydrocarbons are extremely weak acids. Among the classes of hydrocarbons, acetylene is a stronger acid than methane, ethane, ethylene, or benzene, but even its K_a is 10^{10} smaller than that of water.



	$HC{\equiv}CH$		$H_2C{=}CH_2$	CH_4	CH_3CH_3
pK_a:	26	43	45	60	62

Although essentially inert in acid–base reactions, alkanes do participate in oxidation–reduction reactions as the compound that undergoes oxidation. Burning in air **(combustion)** is the best known and most important example. Combustion of hydrocarbons is exothermic and gives carbon dioxide and water as the products.

$$\underset{\text{Methane}}{CH_4} + \underset{\text{Oxygen}}{2O_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Carbon dioxide}}{CO_2} + \underset{\text{Water}}{2H_2O} \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -890 \text{ kJ } (-212.8 \text{ kcal})$$

$$\underset{\text{2-Methylbutane}}{(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3} + \underset{\text{Oxygen}}{8O_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Carbon dioxide}}{5CO_2} + \underset{\text{Water}}{6H_2O} \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -3529 \text{ kJ } (-843.4 \text{ kcal})$$

Problem 2.16

Write a balanced chemical equation for the combustion of cyclohexane.

The heat released on combustion of a substance is called its **heat of combustion** and is equal to $-\Delta H^\circ$ for the reaction. By convention

$$\Delta H^\circ = H^\circ_{\text{products}} - H^\circ_{\text{reactants}}$$

where H° is the heat content, or **enthalpy,** of a compound in its standard state, that is, the gas, pure liquid, or crystalline solid at a pressure of 1 atm. In an exothermic process the enthalpy of the products is less than that of the starting materials, and ΔH° is a negative number.

Table 2.3 lists the heats of combustion of several alkanes. Unbranched alkanes have slightly higher heats of combustion than their 2-methyl-branched isomers, but the most important factor is the number of carbons. The unbranched alkanes and the 2-methyl-branched alkanes constitute two separate *homologous series* (Section 2.12) in which there is a regular increase of about 653 kJ/mol (156 kcal/mol) in the heat of combustion for each additional CH_2 group.

Problem 2.17

Using the data in Table 2.3, estimate the heat of combustion of

(a) 2-Methylnonane (in kcal/mol) (b) Icosane (in kJ/mol)

Sample Solution (a) The last entry for the group of 2-methylalkanes in the table is 2-methylheptane. Its heat of combustion is 1306 kcal/mol. Because 2-methylnonane has two more methylene groups than 2-methylheptane, its heat of combustion is 2×156 kcal/mol higher.

Heat of combustion of 2-methylnonane = 1306 + 2(156) = 1618 kcal/mol

Heats of combustion can be used to measure the relative stability of isomeric hydrocarbons. They tell us not only which isomer is more stable than another, but by how much.

TABLE 2.3 Heats of Combustion ($-\Delta H^\circ$) of Representative Alkanes

Compound	Formula	$-\Delta H^\circ$ kJ/mol	$-\Delta H^\circ$ kcal/mol
Unbranched alkanes			
Hexane	$CH_3(CH_2)_4CH_3$	4,163	995.0
Heptane	$CH_3(CH_2)_5CH_3$	4,817	1,151.3
Octane	$CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_3$	5,471	1,307.5
Nonane	$CH_3(CH_2)_7CH_3$	6,125	1,463.9
Decane	$CH_3(CH_2)_8CH_3$	6,778	1,620.1
Undecane	$CH_3(CH_2)_9CH_3$	7,431	1,776.1
Dodecane	$CH_3(CH_2)_{10}CH_3$	8,086	1,932.7
Hexadecane	$CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CH_3$	10,701	2,557.6
2-Methyl-branched alkanes			
2-Methylpentane	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2CH_3$	4,157	993.6
2-Methylhexane	$(CH_3)_2CH(CH_2)_3CH_3$	4,812	1,150.0
2-Methylheptane	$(CH_3)_2CH(CH_2)_4CH_3$	5,466	1,306.3

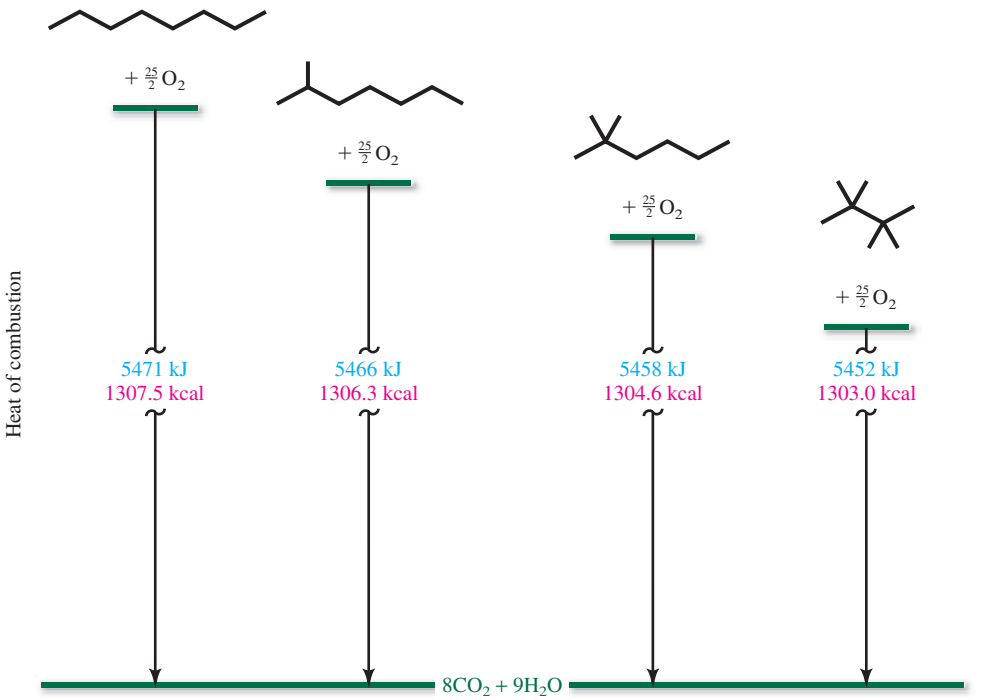


Figure 2.24

Energy diagram comparing heats of combustion of isomeric C_8H_{18} alkanes. The most branched isomer is the most stable; the unbranched isomer has the highest heat of combustion and is the least stable.

Figure 2.24 compares the heats of combustion of several C_8H_{18} isomers on a *potential energy diagram*. **Potential energy** is comparable with enthalpy; it is the energy a molecule has exclusive of its kinetic energy. These C_8H_{18} isomers all undergo combustion to the same final state according to the equation:

$$C_8H_{18} + \tfrac{25}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow 8CO_2 + 9H_2O$$

therefore, the differences in their heats of combustion translate directly to differences in their potential energies. *When comparing isomers, the one with the lowest potential energy (in this case, the smallest heat of combustion) is the most stable*. Among the C_8H_{18} alkanes, the most highly branched isomer, 2,2,3,3-tetramethylbutane, is the most stable, and the unbranched isomer octane is the least stable. It is generally true for alkanes that a more branched isomer is more stable than a less branched one.

The small differences in stability between branched and unbranched alkanes result from an interplay between attractive and repulsive forces *within* a molecule **(intramolecular forces).** These forces are nucleus–nucleus repulsions, electron–electron repulsions, and nucleus–electron attractions, the same set of fundamental forces we met when talking about chemical bonding (Section 2.2) and van der Waals forces between molecules (Section 2.20). When the energy associated with these interactions is calculated for all of the nuclei and electrons within a molecule, it is found that the attractive forces increase more than the repulsive forces as the structure becomes more compact. Sometimes, though, two atoms in a molecule are held too closely together. We'll explore the consequences of that in Chapter 3.

Problem 2.18

Without consulting Table 2.3, arrange the following compounds in order of decreasing heat of combustion: pentane, 2-methylbutane, 2,2-dimethylpropane, hexane.

Thermochemistry

Thermochemistry is the study of the heat changes that accompany chemical processes. It has a long history dating back to the work of the French chemist Antoine Laurent Lavoisier in the late eighteenth century. Thermochemistry provides quantitative information that complements the qualitative description of a chemical reaction and can help us understand why some reactions occur and others do not. It is of value when assessing the relative value of various materials as fuels, when comparing the stability of isomers, or when determining the practicality of a particular reaction. In the field of bioenergetics, thermochemical information is applied to the task of sorting out how living systems use chemical reactions to store and use the energy that originates in the sun.

By allowing compounds to react in a calorimeter, it is possible to measure the heat evolved in an exothermic reaction or the heat absorbed in an endothermic one. Thousands of reactions have been studied to produce a rich library of thermochemical data. These data take the form of heats of reaction and correspond to the value of the standard enthalpy change $\Delta H°$ for a particular reaction of a particular substance.

In this section you have seen how heats of combustion can be used to determine relative stabilities of isomeric alkanes. In later sections we shall expand our scope to include the experimentally determined heats of certain other reactions, such as *bond dissociation enthalpies* (Section 4.15) and *heats of hydrogenation* (Section 6.3), to see how $\Delta H°$ values from various sources can aid our understanding of structure and reactivity.

The **standard heat of formation** ($\Delta H_f°$), is the enthalpy change for formation of one mole of a compound directly from its elements, and is one type of heat of reaction. In cases such as the formation of CO_2 or H_2O from the combustion of carbon or hydrogen, respectively, the heat of formation of a substance can be measured directly. In most other cases, heats of formation are not measured experimentally but are calculated from the measured heats of other reactions. Consider, for example, the heat of formation of methane. The reaction that defines the formation of methane from its elements,

$$\underset{\text{Carbon}}{\text{C (graphite)}} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{2H_2(g)} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Methane}}{CH_4(g)}$$

can be expressed as the sum of three reactions:

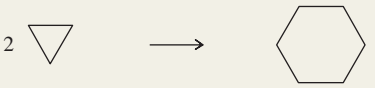
$$\begin{aligned}
&(1)\ \text{C (graphite)} + O_2(g) \longrightarrow CO_2(g) \quad \Delta H° = -393 \text{ kJ}\\
&(2)\ 2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2H_2O(l) \quad \Delta H° = -572 \text{ kJ}\\
&(3)\ CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(l) \longrightarrow CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \quad \Delta H° = +890 \text{ kJ}\\
&\text{C (graphite)} + 2H_2(g) \longrightarrow CH_4(g) \quad \Delta H° = -75 \text{ kJ}
\end{aligned}$$

Equations (1) and (2) are the heats of formation of one mole of carbon dioxide and two moles of water, respectively. Equation (3) is the reverse of the combustion of methane, and so the heat of reaction is equal to the heat of combustion but opposite in sign. The sum of equations (1)–(3) is the enthalpy change for formation of one mole of methane from its elements. Thus, $\Delta H_f° = -75$ kJ/mol.

The heats of formation of most organic compounds are derived from heats of reaction by arithmetic manipulations similar to that shown. Chemists find a table of $\Delta H_f°$ values to be convenient because it replaces many separate tables of $\Delta H°$ values for individual reaction types and permits $\Delta H°$ to be calculated for any reaction, real or imaginary, for which the heats of formation of reactants and products are available.

Problem 2.19

Given the standard enthalpies of formation ($\Delta H_f°$) of cyclopropane (39.30 kJ/mol) and cyclohexane (–124.6 kJ/mol), calculate $\Delta H°$ for the reaction:



2.22 Oxidation–Reduction in Organic Chemistry

As we have just seen, the reaction of alkanes with oxygen to give carbon dioxide and water is called *combustion*. A more fundamental classification of reaction types places it in the **oxidation–reduction** category. To understand why, let's review some principles of oxidation–reduction, beginning with the **oxidation number** (also known as **oxidation state**).

There are a variety of methods for calculating oxidation numbers. In compounds that contain a single carbon, such as methane (CH_4) and carbon dioxide (CO_2), the oxidation number of carbon can be calculated from the molecular formula. For neutral molecules the algebraic sum of all the oxidation numbers must equal zero. Assuming, as is customary, that the oxidation state of hydrogen is +1, the oxidation state of carbon in CH_4 then is calculated to be −4. Similarly, assuming an oxidation state of −2 for oxygen, carbon is +4 in CO_2. This kind of calculation provides an easy way to develop a list of one-carbon compounds in order of increasing oxidation state, as shown in Table 2.4.

TABLE 2.4 Oxidation Number of Carbon in One-Carbon Compounds

Compound	Structural formula	Molecular formula	Oxidation number
Methane	CH_4	CH_4	−4
Methanol	CH_3OH	CH_4O	−2
Formaldehyde	$H_2C{=}O$	CH_2O	0
Formic acid	$\begin{matrix}O\\\|\\HCOH\end{matrix}$	CH_2O_2	+2
Carbonic acid	$\begin{matrix}O\\\|\\HOCOH\end{matrix}$	H_2CO_3	+4
Carbon dioxide	$O{=}C{=}O$	CO_2	+4

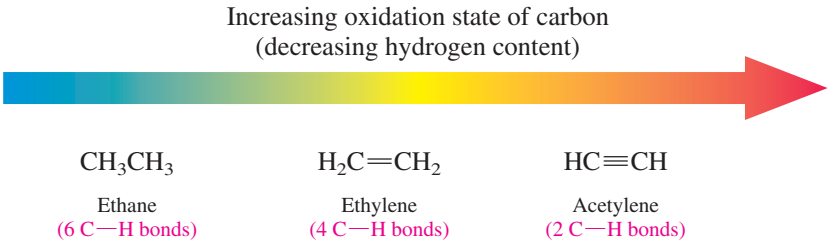
The carbon in methane has the lowest oxidation number (−4) of any of the compounds in Table 2.4. Methane contains carbon in its most *reduced* form. Carbon dioxide and carbonic acid have the highest oxidation numbers (+4) for carbon, corresponding to its most *oxidized* state. When methane or any alkane undergoes combustion to form carbon dioxide, carbon is oxidized and oxygen is reduced.

A useful generalization from Table 2.4 is the following:

> *Oxidation of carbon corresponds to an increase in the number of bonds between carbon and oxygen or to a decrease in the number of carbon–hydrogen bonds. Conversely, reduction corresponds to an increase in the number of carbon–hydrogen bonds or to a decrease in the number of carbon–oxygen bonds.*

From Table 2.4 it can be seen that each successive increase in oxidation state increases the number of bonds between carbon and oxygen and decreases the number of carbon–hydrogen bonds. Methane has four C—H bonds and no C—O bonds; carbonic acid and carbon dioxide both have four C—O bonds and no C—H bonds.

Among the various classes of hydrocarbons, alkanes contain carbon in its most reduced state, and alkynes contain carbon in its most oxidized state.



We can extend the generalization by recognizing that the pattern of oxidation states is not limited to increasing oxygen or hydrogen content. Any element *more electronegative* than carbon will have the same effect on oxidation number as oxygen. Thus, the oxidation numbers of carbon in CH_3Cl and CH_3OH are the same (−2). The reaction of chlorine with methane (to be discussed in Section 4.14) involves *oxidation* at carbon.

$$\underset{\text{Methane}}{CH_4} + \underset{\text{Chlorine}}{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Chloromethane}}{CH_3Cl} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen chloride}}{HCl}$$

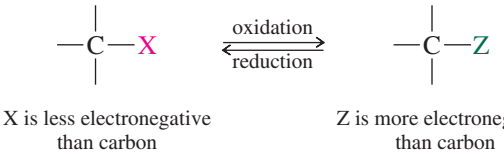
Any element *less electronegative* than carbon will have the same effect on oxidation number as hydrogen. Thus, the oxidation numbers of carbon in CH_3Li and CH_4 are the

same (−4), and the reaction of CH_3Cl with lithium (to be discussed in Section 14.3) involves *reduction* at carbon.

$$\underset{\text{Chloromethane}}{CH_3Cl} + \underset{\text{Lithium}}{2\,Li} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Methyllithium}}{CH_3Li} \qquad \underset{\text{Lithium chloride}}{LiCl}$$

The oxidation number of carbon decreases from −2 in CH_3Cl to −4 in CH_3Li.

The generalization illustrated by the preceding examples can be expressed in terms broad enough to cover these reactions and many others, as follows: *Oxidation of carbon occurs when a bond between a carbon and an atom that is less electronegative than carbon is replaced by a bond to an atom that is more electronegative than carbon. The reverse process is reduction.*



Problem 2.20

Both of the following reactions will be encountered in Chapter 4. One is oxidation–reduction, the other is not. Which is which?

$$(CH_3)_3COH + HCl \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3CCl + H_2O$$
$$(CH_3)_3CH + Br_2 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3CBr + HBr$$

Many, indeed most, organic compounds contain carbon in more than one oxidation state. Consider ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH), for example. One carbon is connected to three hydrogens; the other carbon to two hydrogens and one oxygen. Although we could calculate the actual oxidation numbers, we rarely need to in organic chemistry. Most of the time we are only concerned with whether a particular reaction is an oxidation or a reduction. The ability to recognize when oxidation or reduction occurs is of value when deciding on the kind of reactant with which an organic molecule must be treated to convert it into a desired product.

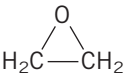
Problem 2.21

Which of the following reactions requires an oxidizing agent, a reducing agent, or neither?

(a) $CH_3CH_2OH \longrightarrow CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}H$

(b) $CH_3CH_2Br \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2Li$

(c) $H_2C{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2OH$

(d) $H_2C{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow$ 

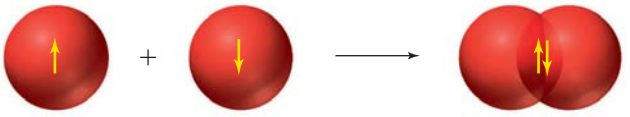
Sample Solution The CH_3 carbon is unchanged in the reaction; however, the carbon of CH_2OH now has two bonds to oxygen. Therefore, the reaction requires an oxidizing agent.

2.23 SUMMARY

Section 2.1 The classes of hydrocarbons are **alkanes, alkenes, alkynes,** and **arenes.** Alkanes are hydrocarbons in which all of the bonds are *single* bonds and are characterized by the molecular formula C_nH_{2n+2}.

Section 2.2 Two theories of bonding, valence bond and molecular orbital theory, are based on the wave nature of an electron. Constructive interference between the electron wave of one atom and that of another gives a region between the two atoms in which the probability of sharing an electron is high—a bond.

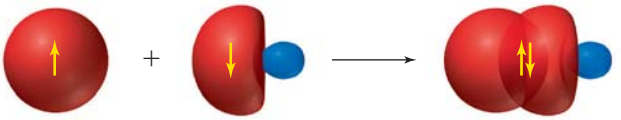
Section 2.3 In valence bond theory a covalent bond is described in terms of in-phase overlap of a half-filled orbital of one atom with a half-filled orbital of another. When applied to bonding in H_2, the orbitals involved are the 1*s* orbitals of two hydrogen atoms and the bond is a σ bond.



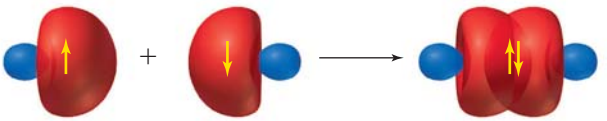
Section 2.4 In molecular orbital theory, the molecular orbitals (MOs) are approximated by combining the atomic orbitals (AOs) of all of the atoms in a molecule. The number of MOs must equal the number of AOs that are combined.

Section 2.5 The first three alkanes are methane (CH_4), ethane (CH_3CH_3), and propane ($CH_3CH_2CH_3$).

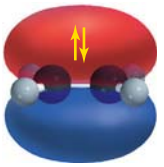
Section 2.6 Bonding in methane is most often described by an orbital hybridization model, which is a modified form of valence bond theory. Four equivalent sp^3 hybrid orbitals of carbon are generated by mixing the 2*s*, $2p_x$, $2p_y$, and $2p_z$ orbitals. In-phase overlap of each half-filled sp^3 hybrid orbital with a half-filled hydrogen 1*s* orbital gives a σ bond.



Section 2.7 The carbon–carbon bond in ethane is a σ bond viewed as an overlap of a half-filled sp^3 orbital of one carbon with a half-filled sp^3 orbital of another.



Section 2.8 Carbon is ***sp*²-hybridized** in ethylene, and the double bond has a σ component and a π component. The sp^2 hybridization state is derived by mixing the 2*s* and two of the three 2*p* orbitals. Three equivalent sp^2 orbitals result, and their axes are coplanar. Overlap of a half-filled sp^2 orbital of one carbon with a half-filled sp^2 orbital of another gives a σ bond between the two carbons. Each carbon still has one unhybridized *p* orbital available for bonding, and "side-by-side" overlap of half-filled *p* orbitals of adjacent carbons gives a π bond between them.



The π bond in ethylene is generated by overlap of half-filled *p* orbitals of adjacent carbons.

Section 2.9 Carbon is ***sp*-hybridized** in acetylene, and the triple bond is of the σ + π + π type. The 2*s* orbital and one of the 2*p* orbitals combine to give two equivalent *sp* orbitals that have their axes in a straight line. A σ bond between the two carbons is supplemented by two π bonds formed by overlap of the remaining half-filled *p* orbitals.

The triple bond of acetylene has a σ bond component and two π bonds; the two π bonds are shown here and are perpendicular to each other.

Section 2.10 Lewis structures, orbital hybridization, and molecular orbital descriptions of bonding are all used in organic chemistry. Lewis structures are used the most, MO descriptions the least. All will be used in this text.

Section 2.11 Two constitutionally isomeric alkanes have the molecular formula C_4H_{10}. One has an unbranched chain ($CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$) and is called ***n*-butane;** the other has a branched chain [$(CH_3)_3CH$] and is called **isobutane.** Both *n*-butane and isobutane are **common names.**

Section 2.12 Unbranched alkanes of the type $CH_3(CH_2)_xCH_3$ are often referred to as *n*-alkanes, and are said to belong to a **homologous series.**

Section 2.13 There are three constitutional isomers of C_5H_{12}: *n*-pentane ($CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$), isopentane [$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$], and neopentane [$(CH_3)_4C$].

Sections 2.14–2.18 A single alkane may have several different names; a name may be a common name, or it may be a *systematic name* developed by a well-defined set of rules. The most widely used system is **IUPAC** nomenclature. Table 2.5 summarizes the rules for alkanes and cycloalkanes. Table 2.6 gives the rules for naming alkyl groups.

Section 2.19 Natural gas is an abundant source of methane, ethane, and propane. Petroleum is a liquid mixture of many hydrocarbons, including alkanes. Alkanes also occur naturally in the waxy coating of leaves and fruits.

Section 2.20 Alkanes and cycloalkanes are nonpolar and insoluble in water. The forces of attraction between alkane molecules are **induced-dipole/induced-dipole** attractive forces. The boiling points of alkanes increase as the number of carbon atoms increases. Branched alkanes have lower boiling points than their unbranched isomers. There is a limit to how closely two atoms can approach each other, which is given by the sum of their **van der Waals radii.**

Section 2.21 Alkanes and cycloalkanes burn in air to give carbon dioxide, water, and heat. This process is called **combustion.**

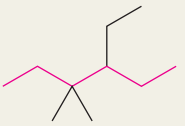
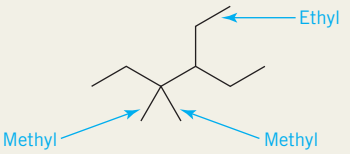
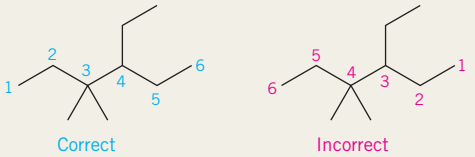
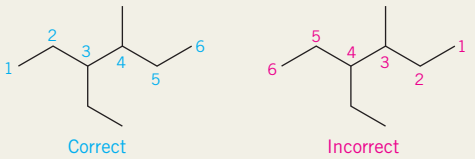
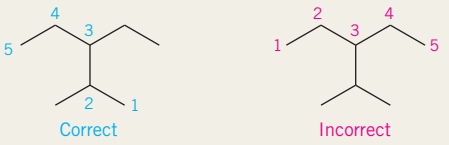
$$\underset{\text{2-Methylbutane}}{(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3} + \underset{\text{Oxygen}}{8O_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Carbon dioxide}}{5CO_2} + \underset{\text{Water}}{6H_2O}$$

$$\Delta H^\circ = -3529 \text{ kJ } (-843.4 \text{ kcal})$$

The heat evolved on burning an alkane increases with the number of carbon atoms. The relative stability of isomers may be determined by comparing their respective **heats of combustion.** The more stable of two isomers has the lower heat of combustion.

Section 2.22 Combustion of alkanes is an example of **oxidation–reduction.** Although it is possible to calculate oxidation numbers of carbon in organic molecules, it is more convenient to regard oxidation of an organic substance as an increase in its oxygen content or a decrease in its hydrogen content.

TABLE 2.5 Summary of IUPAC Nomenclature of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes

Rule	Example
A. Alkanes	
1. Find the longest continuous chain of carbon atoms, and assign a parent name to the compound corresponding to the IUPAC name of the unbranched alkane having the same number of carbons.	The longest continuous chain in the alkane shown is six carbons.  This alkane is named as a derivative of hexane.
2. List the substituents attached to the longest continuous chain in alphabetical order. Use the prefixes *di-, tri-, tetra-,* and so on, when the same substituent appears more than once. Ignore these prefixes when alphabetizing.	The alkane bears two methyl groups and an ethyl group. It is an *ethyldimethylhexane*. 
3. Number from the end of the chain in the direction that gives the lower locant to a substituent at the first point of difference.	When numbering from left to right, the substituents appear at carbons 3, 3, and 4. When numbering from right to left the locants are 3, 4, and 4; therefore, number from left to right.  The correct name is *4-ethyl-3,3-dimethylhexane*.
4. When two different numbering schemes give equivalent sets of locants, choose the direction that gives the lower locant to the group that appears first in the name.	In the following example, the substituents are located at carbons 3 and 4 regardless of the direction in which the chain is numbered.  Ethyl precedes methyl in the name; therefore *3-ethyl-4-methylhexane* is correct.
5. When two chains are of equal length, choose the one with the greater number of substituents as the parent. (Although this requires naming more substituents, the substituents have simpler names.)	Two different chains contain five carbons in the alkane:  The correct name is *3-ethyl-2-methylpentane* (disubstituted chain), rather than 3-isopropylpentane (monosubstituted chain).

Continued

TABLE 2.5 Summary of IUPAC Nomenclature of Alkanes and Cycloalkanes (*Continued*)

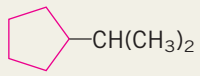
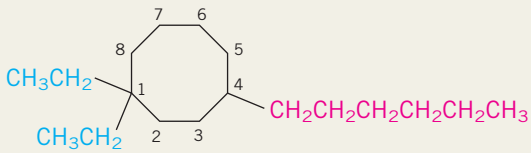
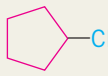
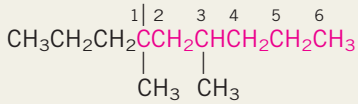
Rule	Example
B. Cycloalkanes **1.** Count the number of carbons in the ring, and assign a parent name to the cycloalkane corresponding to the IUPAC name of the unbranched cycloalkane having the same number of carbons.	The compound shown contains five carbons in its ring.  It is named as a derivative of *cyclopentane*.
2. Name the alkyl group, and append it as a prefix to the cycloalkane. No locant is needed if the compound is a monosubstituted cycloalkane. It is understood that the alkyl group is attached to C-1.	The previous compound is *isopropylcyclopentane*. Alternatively, the alkyl group can be named according to the rules summarized in Table 2.6, whereupon the name becomes (*1-methylethyl*)*cyclopentane*. Parentheses are used to set off the name of the alkyl group as needed to avoid ambiguity.
3. When two or more different substituents are present, list them in alphabetical order, and number the ring in the direction that gives the lower number at the first point of difference.	The compound shown is *1,1-diethyl-4-hexylcyclooctane*. 
4. Name the compound as a cycloalkyl-substituted alkane if the substituent has more carbons than the ring.	is *pentylcyclopentane*  is *1-cyclopentylhexane*

TABLE 2.6 Summary of IUPAC Nomenclature of Alkyl Groups

Rule	Example
1. Number the carbon atoms beginning at the point of attachment, proceeding in the direction that follows the longest continuous chain.	The longest continuous chain that begins at the point of attachment in the group shown contains six carbons. 
2. Assign a parent name according to the number of carbons in the corresponding unbranched alkane. Drop the ending *-ane* and replace it with *-yl*.	The alkyl group shown in step 1 is named as a substituted *hexyl* group.
3. List the substituents attached to the basis group in alphabetical order using replicating prefixes when necessary.	The alkyl group in step 1 is a *dimethylpropylhexyl* group.
4. Locate the substituents according to the numbering of the main chain described in step 1.	The alkyl group is a *1,3-dimethyl-1-propylhexyl* group.

PROBLEMS

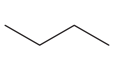
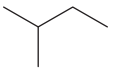
2.22 The general molecular formula for alkanes is C_nH_{2n+2}. What is the general molecular formula for:

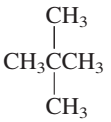
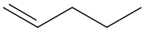
(a) Cycloalkanes
(b) Alkenes
(c) Alkynes
(d) Cyclic hydrocarbons that contain one double bond

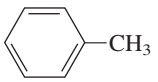
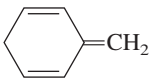
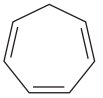
2.23 A certain hydrocarbon has a molecular formula of C_5H_8. Which of the following is *not* a structural possibility for this hydrocarbon?

(a) It is a cycloalkane.
(b) It contains one ring and one double bond.
(c) It contains two double bonds and no rings.
(d) It is an alkyne.

2.24 Which of the hydrocarbons in each of the following groups are isomers?

(a)  $(CH_3)_3CH$ 

(b)  

(c)    $HC{\equiv}CCH_2CH_2C{\equiv}CCH_3$

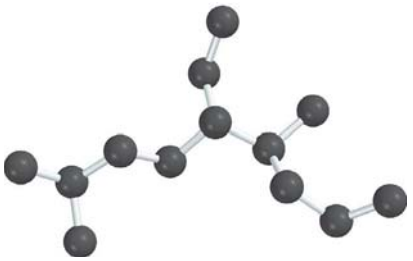
2.25 Write structural formulas and give the IUPAC names for the nine alkanes that have the molecular formula C_7H_{16}.

2.26 From among the 18 constitutional isomers of C_8H_{18}, write structural formulas, and give the IUPAC names for those that are named as derivatives of

(a) Heptane (b) Hexane (c) Pentane (d) Butane

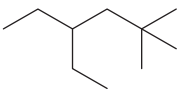
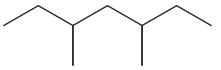
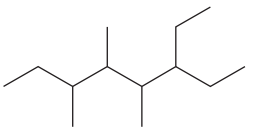
2.27 *Pristane* is an alkane that is present to the extent of about 14% in shark liver oil. Its IUPAC name is 2,6,10,14-tetramethylpentadecane. Write its structural formula.

2.28 All the parts of this problem refer to the alkane having the carbon skeleton shown.



(a) What is the molecular formula of this alkane?
(b) What is its IUPAC name?
(c) How many methyl groups are present in this alkane? Methylene groups? Methine groups?
(d) How many carbon atoms are primary? Secondary? Tertiary? Quaternary?

2.29 Give the IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

(a) $CH_3(CH_2)_{25}CH_3$
(b) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2(CH_2)_{14}CH_3$
(c) $(CH_3CH_2)_3CCH(CH_2CH_3)_2$
(d) 
(e) 
(f) 

2.30 Write a structural formula for each of the following compounds:

(a) 6-Isopropyl-2,3-dimethylnonane
(b) 4-*tert*-Butyl-3-methylheptane
(c) 4-Isobutyl-1,1-dimethylcyclohexane
(d) *sec*-Butylcycloheptane
(e) Cyclobutylcyclopentane

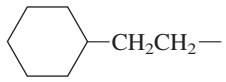
2.31 Using the method outlined in Section 2.16, give an IUPAC name for each of the following alkyl groups, and classify each one as primary, secondary, or tertiary:

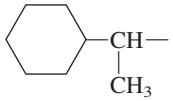
(a) $CH_3(CH_2)_{10}CH_2$—

(b) —$CH_2CH_2CHCH_2CH_2CH_3$ with CH_2CH_3 branch

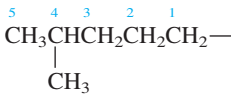
(c) —$C(CH_2CH_3)_3$

(d) —$CHCH_2CH_2CH_3$ with cyclopropyl ring

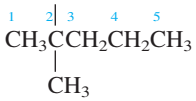
(e)  with —CH_2CH_2— attached

(f)  with —CH— and CH_3 attached

2.32 It has been suggested that the names of alkyl groups be derived from the alkane having the same carbon chain as the alkyl group. The *-e* ending of that alkane is replaced by *-yl,* and the chain is numbered from the end that gives the carbon at the point of attachment its lower number. This number immediately precedes the *-yl* ending and is bracketed by hyphens.



4-Methylpentan-1-yl



2-Methylpentan-2-yl

Name the C_4H_9 alkyl groups according to this system.

2.33 Write the structural formula of a compound of molecular formula $C_4H_8Cl_2$ in which

(a) All the carbons belong to methylene groups

(b) None of the carbons belong to methylene groups

2.34 Female tiger moths signify their presence to male moths by giving off a sex attractant (pheromone). The sex attractant has been isolated and found to be a 2-methyl-branched alkane having a molecular weight of 254. What is this material?

2.35 Write a balanced chemical equation for the combustion of each of the following compounds:

(a) Decane

(b) Cyclodecane

(c) Methylcyclononane

(d) Cyclopentylcyclopentane

2.36 The heats of combustion of methane and butane are 890 kJ/mol (212.8 kcal/mol) and 2876 kJ/mol (687.4 kcal/mol), respectively. When used as a fuel, would methane or butane generate more heat for the same mass of gas? Which would generate more heat for the same volume of gas?

2.37 In each of the following groups of compounds, identify the one with the largest heat of combustion and the one with the smallest. (Try to do this problem without consulting Table 2.3.)

(a) Hexane, heptane, octane

(b) 2-Methylpropane, pentane, 2-methylbutane

(c) 2-Methylbutane, 2-methylpentane, 2,2-dimethylpropane

(d) Pentane, 3-methylpentane, 3,3-dimethylpentane

(e) Ethylcyclopentane, ethylcyclohexane, ethylcycloheptane

2.38 (a) Given $\Delta H°$ for the reaction

$$H_2(g) + \tfrac{1}{2}O_2(g) \longrightarrow H_2O(l) \qquad \Delta H° = -286 \text{ kJ}$$

along with the information that the heat of combustion of ethane is 1560 kJ/mol and that of ethylene is 1410 kJ/mol, calculate $\Delta H°$ for the hydrogenation of ethylene:

$$H_2C{=}CH_2(g) + H_2(g) \longrightarrow CH_3CH_3(g)$$

(b) If the heat of combustion of acetylene is 1300 kJ/mol, what is the value of $\Delta H°$ for its hydrogenation to ethylene? To ethane?

(c) What is the value of $\Delta H°$ for the hypothetical reaction

$$2H_2C{=}CH_2(g) \longrightarrow CH_3CH_3(g) + HC{\equiv}CH(g)$$

2.39 We have seen in this chapter that, among isomeric alkanes, the unbranched isomer is the least stable and has the highest boiling point; the most branched isomer is the most stable and has the lowest boiling point. Does this mean that one alkane boils lower than another *because* it is more stable? Explain.

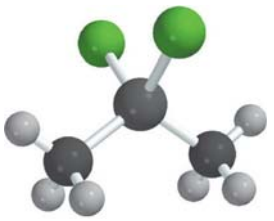
2.40 Higher octane gasoline typically contains a greater proportion of branched alkanes relative to unbranched ones. Are branched alkanes better fuels because they give off more energy on combustion? Explain.

2.41 The reaction shown is important in the industrial preparation of dichlorodimethylsilane for eventual conversion to silicone polymers.

$$2CH_3Cl + Si \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2SiCl_2$$

(a) Is carbon oxidized, reduced, or neither in this reaction?

(b) On the basis of the molecular model of $(CH_3)_2SiCl_2$, deduce the hybridization state of silicon in this compound. What is the principal quantum number n of the silicon s and p orbitals that are hybridized?



2.42 Alkanes spontaneously burst into flame in the presence of elemental fluorine. The reaction that takes place between pentane and F_2 gives CF_4 and HF as the only products.

(a) Write a balanced equation for this reaction.

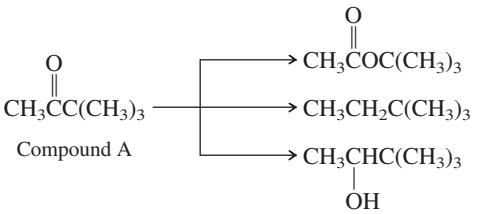
(b) Is carbon oxidized, reduced, or does it undergo no change in oxidation state in this reaction?

2.43 What is the hybridization of each carbon in $CH_3CH{=}CHC{\equiv}CH$? What are the CCC bond angles?

2.44 Which atoms in the following reaction undergo changes in their oxidation state? Which atom is oxidized? Which one is reduced?

$$2CH_3CH_2OH + 2Na \longrightarrow 2CH_3CH_2ONa + H_2$$

2.45 Compound A undergoes the following reactions:

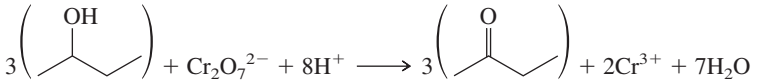


(a) Which of the reactions shown require(s) an oxidizing agent?

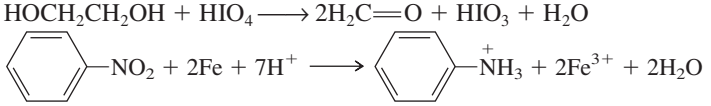
(b) Which of the reactions shown require(s) a reducing agent?

2.46 Each of the following reactions will be encountered at some point in this text. Classify each one according to whether the organic substrate is oxidized or reduced in the process.

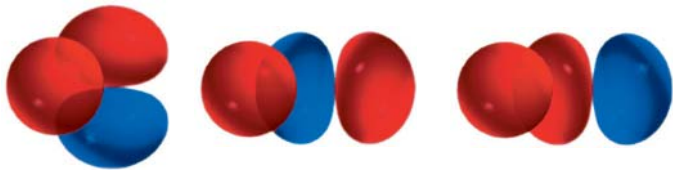
(a) $CH_3C{\equiv}CH + 2Na + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3CH{=}CH_2 + 2NaNH_2$

(b) 

(c) $HOCH_2CH_2OH + HIO_4 \longrightarrow 2H_2C{=}O + HIO_3 + H_2O$

(d) 

2.47 Of the overlaps between an *s* and a *p* orbital as shown in the illustration, one is bonding, one is antibonding, and the third is nonbonding (neither bonding nor antibonding). Which orbital overlap corresponds to which interaction? Why?



2.48 Does the overlap of two *p* orbitals in the fashion shown correspond to a σ bond or to a π bond? Explain.

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 2

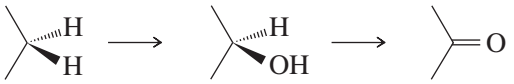
Some Biochemical Reactions of Alkanes

Alkanes occur naturally in places other than petroleum deposits. In insects, for example. The waxy alkanes dispersed in its cuticle help protect an insect from dehydration. Some insects use volatile alkanes to defend themselves or communicate with others of the same species. Alkanes even serve as starting materials that the insect converts to other biologically important substances.

The major biosynthetic pathway leading to alkanes is by enzyme-catalyzed decarboxylation (loss of CO_2) of fatty acids, compounds of the type $CH_3(CH_2)_nCO_2H$ in which n is an even number and the chain has 14 or more carbons.

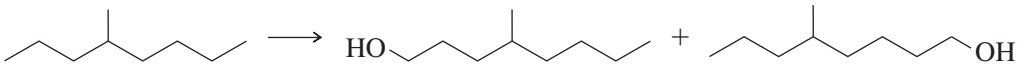
$$CH_3(CH_2)_nCO_2H \longrightarrow CH_3(CH_2)_{n-1}CH_3 + CO_2$$

Biochemical conversion of alkanes to other substances normally begins with oxidation.



In addition to alkanes, the oxidation of drugs and other substances occurs mainly in the liver and is catalyzed by the enzyme cytochrome P-450. Molecular oxygen and nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) are also required.

Oxidation by microorganisms has been extensively studied and is often selective for certain kinds of C—H bonds. The fungus *Pseudomonas oleovorans,* for example, oxidizes the CH_3 groups at the end of the carbon chain of 4-methyloctane faster than the CH_3 branch and faster than the CH_2 and CH units within the chain.



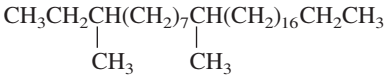
2.49 Tridecane [$CH_3(CH_2)_{11}CH_3$] is a major component of the repellent which the stink bug *Piezodorus guildinii* releases from its scent glands when attacked. What fatty acid gives tridecane on decarboxylation?

A. $CH_3(CH_2)_{10}CO_2H$
B. $CH_3(CH_2)_{11}CO_2H$
C. $CH_3(CH_2)_{12}CO_2H$
D. $CH_3(CH_2)_{13}CO_2H$

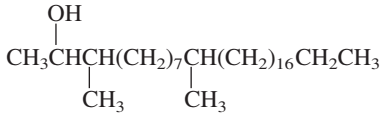
2.50 Assuming a selectivity analogous to that observed in the microbiological oxidation of 4-methyloctane by *Pseudomonas oleovorans,* which of the following is expected to give two constitutionally isomeric alcohols on oxidation?

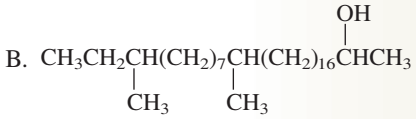
A. Heptane
B. 3-Methylheptane
C. 4-Methylheptane
D. 4,4-Dimethylheptane

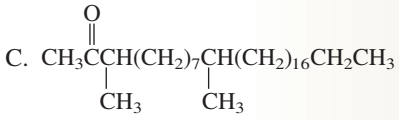
2.51 Female German cockroaches convert the alkane shown to a substance that attracts males.

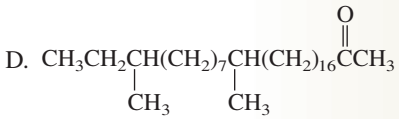


Oxidation at C-2 of the alkane gives the sex attractant, which has a molecular formula $C_{31}H_{62}O$ and the same carbon skeleton as the alkane. What is the structure of the sex attractant?

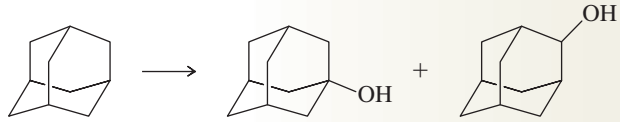
A.


B.


C.


D.


2.52 Biological oxidation of the hydrocarbon adamantane by the fungus *Absidia glauca* gives a mixture of two alcohols.

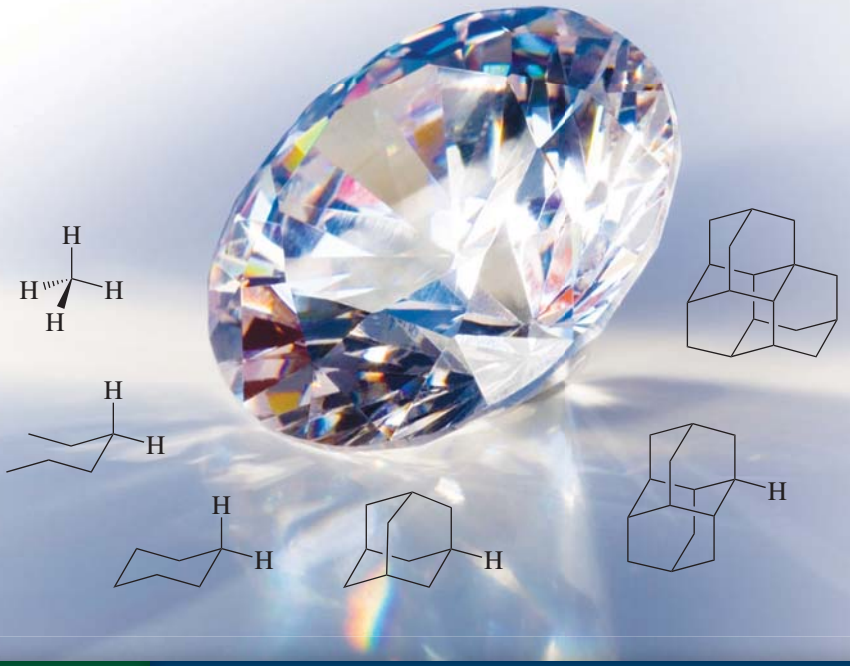


Adamantane Major Minor

Classify the carbon in adamantane that is oxidized in forming the major product.

A. Primary
B. Secondary
C. Tertiary
D. Quaternary

3



CHAPTER OUTLINE

3.1 Conformational Analysis of Ethane 97
3.2 Conformational Analysis of Butane 101
3.3 Conformations of Higher Alkanes 102
- **Computational Chemistry: Molecular Mechanics and Quantum Mechanics** 103

3.4 The Shapes of Cycloalkanes: Planar or Nonplanar? 104
3.5 Small Rings: Cyclopropane and Cyclobutane 105
3.6 Cyclopentane 106
3.7 Conformations of Cyclohexane 107
3.8 Axial and Equatorial Bonds in Cyclohexane 108
3.9 Conformational Inversion in Cyclohexane 109
3.10 Conformational Analysis of Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes 110
- **Enthalpy, Free Energy, and Equilibrium Constant** 113

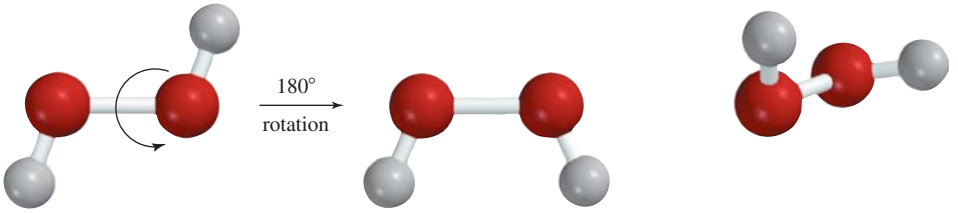
3.11 Disubstituted Cycloalkanes: cis–trans Stereoisomers 114
3.12 Conformational Analysis of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes 115
3.13 Medium and Large Rings 119
3.14 Polycyclic Ring Systems 119
3.15 Heterocyclic Compounds 122
3.16 Summary 123

Problems 126
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 3: Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates 131

Carbon's unrivaled ability to form bonds to itself can produce not only chains and rings, but also compact frameworks of many rings. Diamonds represent the ultimate elaboration of the pattern introduced by the progression of structural formulas shown. The three most complicated structures, plus many analogous but even larger ones, are all found in petroleum.

Alkanes and Cycloalkanes: Conformations and cis–trans Stereoisomers

Hydrogen peroxide is formed in the cells of plants and animals but is toxic to them. Consequently, living systems have developed mechanisms to rid themselves of hydrogen peroxide, usually by enzyme-catalyzed reduction to water. An understanding of how reactions take place, be they in living systems or in test tubes, begins with a thorough knowledge of the structure of the reactants, products, and catalysts. Even a molecule as simple as hydrogen peroxide (four atoms!) may be structurally more complicated than you think. Suppose we wanted to write the structural formula for H_2O_2 in enough detail to show the positions of the atoms relative to one another. We could write two different planar geometries A and B that differ by a 180° rotation about the O—O bond. We could also write an infinite number of nonplanar structures, of which C is but one example, that differ from one another by tiny increments of rotation about the O—O bond.



A B C

Structures A, B, and C represent different **conformations** of hydrogen peroxide. *Conformations are different spatial arrangements of a molecule that are generated by rotation about single bonds.* Although we can't tell from simply looking at these structures, we now know from experimental studies that all are in rapid equilibrium and that C is the most stable conformation.

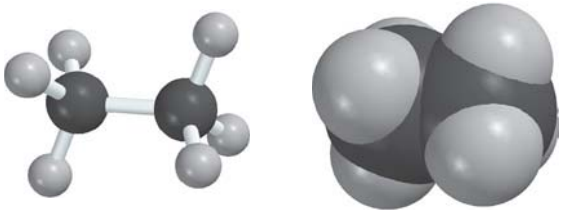
Conformational analysis is the study of how conformational factors affect the structure of a molecule and its properties. In this chapter we'll examine the conformations of various alkanes and cycloalkanes, focusing most of our attention on three of them: *ethane, butane,* and *cyclohexane.* You will see that even simple organic molecules can exist in many conformations. Conformational analysis will help us to visualize organic molecules in 3D and to better understand their structure and properties.

3.1 Conformational Analysis of Ethane

Ethane is the simplest hydrocarbon that can have distinct conformations. Two, the **staggered conformation** and the **eclipsed conformation,** deserve special mention and are illustrated with molecular models in Figure 3.1.

In the staggered conformation, each C—H bond of one carbon bisects an H—C—H angle of the other carbon. In the eclipsed conformation, each C—H bond of one carbon is aligned with a C—H bond of the other carbon.

Staggered conformation of ethane



Eclipsed conformation of ethane

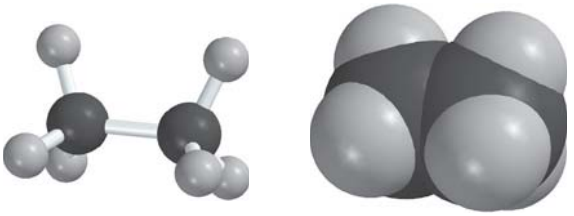
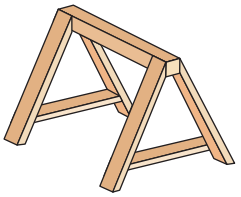


Figure 3.1

The staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane shown as ball-and-spoke models (*left*) and as space-filling models (*right*).



Sawhorses are beams with four legs that are used in pairs to support a plank for sawing, or in other uses as a support structure or road marker.

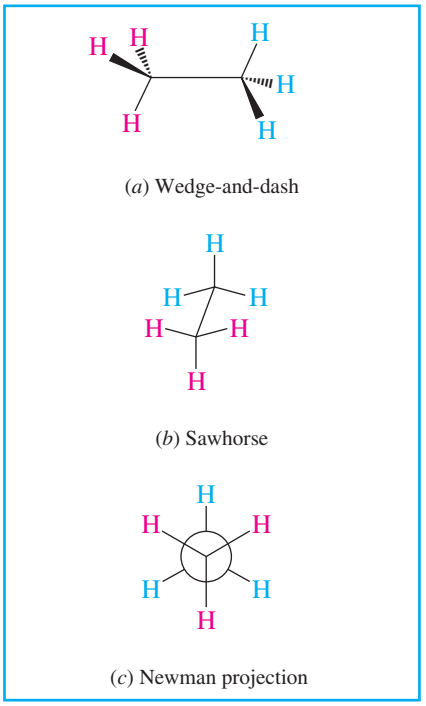


Figure 3.2

Some commonly used drawings of the staggered conformation of ethane.

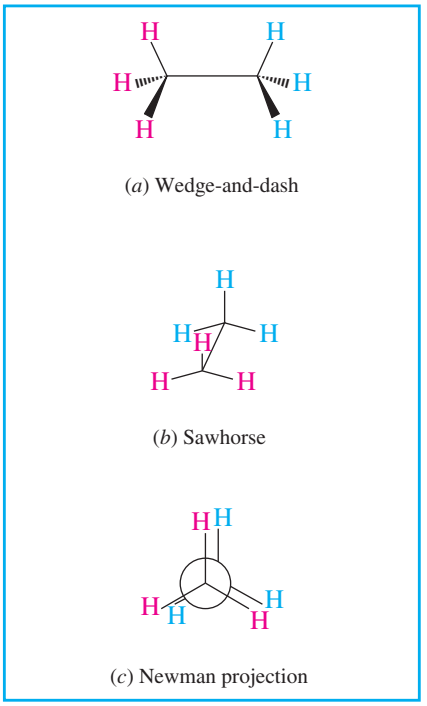


Figure 3.3

Some commonly used drawings of the eclipsed conformation of ethane.

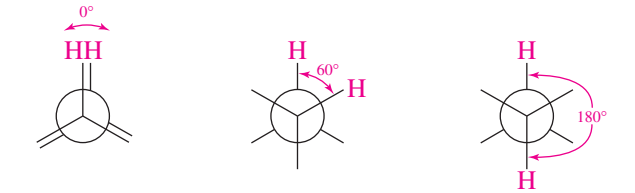
The staggered and eclipsed conformations interconvert by rotation around the C—C bond, and do so very rapidly. We'll see just how rapidly later in this section.

Among the various ways in which the staggered and eclipsed forms are portrayed, wedge-and-dash, sawhorse, and Newman projection drawings are especially useful. These are shown for the staggered conformation of ethane in Figure 3.2 and for the eclipsed conformation in Figure 3.3.

We used *wedge-and-dash* drawings in earlier chapters, and so Figures 3.2*a* and 3.3*a* are familiar to us. A *sawhorse* drawing (Figures 3.2*b* and 3.3*b*) shows the conformation of a molecule without having to resort to different styles of bonds. In a *Newman projection* (Figures 3.2*c* and 3.3*c*), we sight down the C—C bond, and represent the front carbon by a point and the back carbon by a circle. Each carbon has three other bonds that are placed symmetrically around it.

Newman projections were devised by Professor Melvin S. Newman of Ohio State University.

The structural feature that Figures 3.2 and 3.3 illustrate is the spatial relationship between bonds on adjacent carbons. Each H—C—C—H unit in ethane is characterized by a *torsion angle* or *dihedral angle,* which is the angle between the H—C—C plane and the C—C—H plane. The torsion angle is easily seen in a Newman projection of ethane as the angle between C—H bonds of adjacent carbons.



Torsion angle = 0° Eclipsed

Torsion angle = 60° Gauche

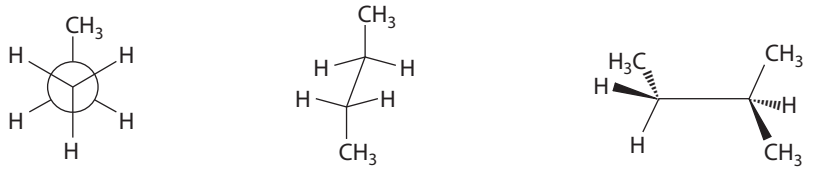
Torsion angle = 180° Anti

Eclipsed bonds are characterized by a torsion angle of 0°. When the torsion angle is approximately 60°, we say that the spatial relationship is **gauche;** and when it is 180° it

is **anti.** Staggered conformations have only gauche or anti relationships between bonds on adjacent atoms.

Problem 3.1

Identify the alkanes corresponding to each of the drawings shown.



(*a*) Newman projection (*b*) Sawhorse (*c*) Wedge-and-dash

Sample Solution (a) The Newman projection of this alkane resembles that of ethane, except one of the hydrogens has been replaced by a methyl group. The drawing is a Newman projection of propane, $CH_3CH_2CH_3$.

Of the two conformations of ethane, the staggered is 12 kJ/mol (2.9 kcal/mol) more stable than the eclipsed. The staggered conformation is the most stable conformation, the eclipsed is the least stable conformation. Two main explanations have been offered for the difference in stability between the two conformations. One explanation holds that repulsions between bonds on adjacent atoms *destabilize* the eclipsed conformation. The other suggests that better electron delocalization *stabilizes* the staggered conformation. Both effects contribute to the preference for the staggered conformation.

Conformations in which the torsion angles between adjacent bonds are other than 60° are said to have **torsional strain.** Eclipsed bonds produce the most torsional strain; staggered bonds none. Because three pairs of eclipsed bonds are responsible for 12 kJ/mol (2.9 kcal/mol) of torsional strain in ethane, it is reasonable to assign an "energy cost" of 4 kJ/mol (1 kcal/mol) to each pair. In this chapter we'll learn of additional sources of strain in molecules, which together with torsional strain comprise **steric strain.**

Steric is derived from the Greek word *stereos* for "solid" and refers to the three-dimensional or spatial aspects of chemistry.

In principle, ethane has an infinite number of conformations that differ by only tiny increments in their torsion angles. Not only is the staggered conformation more stable than the eclipsed, it is the most stable of all of the conformations; the eclipsed is the least stable. Figure 3.4 shows how the potential energy of ethane changes for a 360° rotation about the

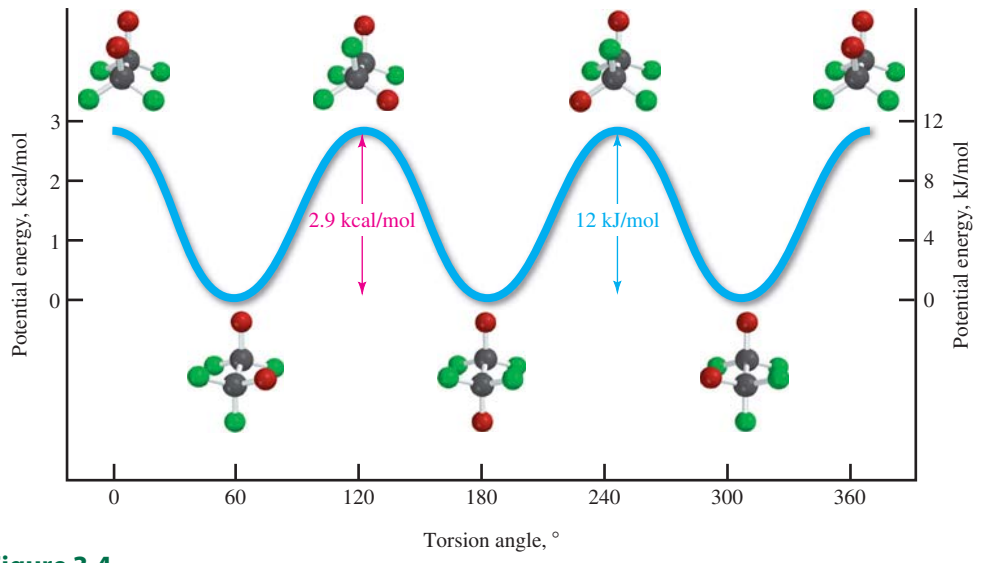


Figure 3.4

Potential energy diagram for rotation about the carbon–carbon bond in ethane. Two of the hydrogens are shown in red and four in green so as to indicate more clearly the bond rotation.

carbon–carbon bond. Three equivalent eclipsed conformations and three equivalent staggered conformations occur during the 360° rotation; the eclipsed conformations appear at the highest points on the curve (*potential energy maxima*), the staggered ones at the lowest (*potential energy minima*). Conformations that correspond to potential energy minima are called **conformers.**

At any instant, almost all of the molecules are in staggered conformations; hardly any are in eclipsed conformations.

Problem 3.2

Find the conformations in Figure 3.4 in which the hydrogens marked in red are (a) gauche and (b) anti.

Diagrams such as Figure 3.4 help us understand how the potential energy of a system changes during a process. The process can be as simple as the one described here—rotation around a carbon–carbon bond. Or it might be more complicated—a chemical reaction, for example. We will see applications of potential energy diagrams to a variety of processes throughout the text.

Let's focus our attention on a portion of Figure 3.4. The region that lies between a torsion angle of 60° and 180° tracks the conversion of one staggered conformer of ethane to the next one. Both conformers are equivalent and equal in energy, but for one to get to the next, it must first pass through an eclipsed conformation and needs to gain 12 kJ/mol (2.9 kcal/mol) of energy to reach it. This amount of energy is the **activation energy (E_a)** for the process. Molecules must become energized in order to undergo a chemical reaction or, as in this case, to undergo rotation around a carbon–carbon bond. Kinetic (thermal) energy is absorbed by a molecule from collisions with other molecules and is transformed into potential energy. When the potential energy exceeds E_a, the unstable arrangement of atoms that exists at that instant relaxes to a more stable structure, giving off its excess potential energy in collisions with other molecules or with the walls of a container. The point of maximum potential energy encountered by the reactants as they proceed to products is called the **transition state.** The eclipsed conformation is the transition state for the conversion of one staggered conformation of ethane to another.

The structure that exists at the transition state is sometimes referred to as the *transition structure* or the *activated complex*.

Rotation around carbon–carbon bonds is one of the fastest processes in chemistry. Among the ways that we can describe the rate of a process is by its *half-life,* which is the length of time it takes for one half of the molecules to have reacted. It takes less than 10^{-6} s for half of the molecules in a sample of ethane to have gone from one staggered conformation to another at 25°C.

A second way is by citing the experimentally determined **rate constant *k***, which is related to the energy of activation by the **Arrhenius equation**:

$$k = Ae^{-E_a/RT}$$

where A is a frequency factor related to the collision rate and geometry. The $e^{-E_a/RT}$ term is the probability that a collision will result in reaction, T is the temperature in kelvins, and R is a constant (8.314 kJ/K · mol or 1.987×10^{-3} kcal/K · mol). E_a is calculated by comparing reaction rates as a function of temperature. Raising the temperature decreases E_a/RT and increases $Ae^{-E_a/RT}$, thereby increasing k. Small increases in E_a result in large decreases in rate. Quantitative studies of reaction rates are grouped under the general term **kinetics** and provide the basis for many of the structure–reactivity relationships that we will see in this and later chapters.

As shown in Figure 3.5, most of the molecules in a sample have energies that are clustered around some average value; some have less energy, a few have more. Only molecules with a potential energy greater than E_a, however, are able to go over the transition state and proceed on. The number of these molecules is given by the shaded areas under the curve in Figure 3.5. The energy distribution curve flattens out at higher temperatures, and a greater proportion of molecules have energies in excess of E_a at T_2 (higher) than at T_1 (lower). The effect of temperature is quite pronounced; an increase of only 10°C produces a two- to threefold increase in the rate of a typical chemical process.

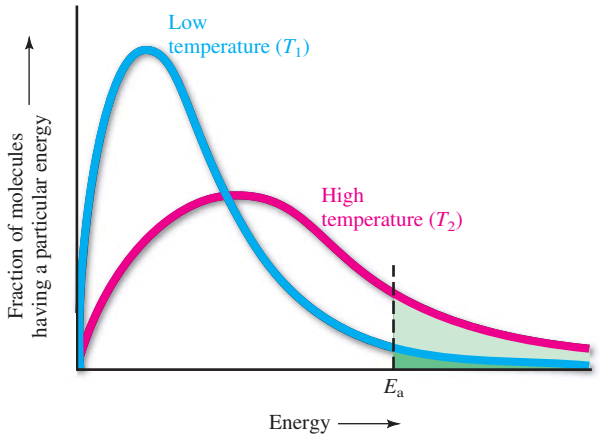


Figure 3.5

Distribution of energies. The number of molecules with energy greater than E_a at temperature T_1 is shown as the darker green-shaded area. At some higher temperature T_2, the curve is flatter, and more molecules have energies in excess of E_a.

3.2 Conformational Analysis of Butane

The next alkane that we will examine is butane. In particular, we consider conformations related by rotation about the bond between the middle two carbons. Unlike ethane, in which the staggered conformations are equivalent, butane has two different staggered conformations, as shown in Figure 3.6. The methyl groups of butane are gauche to each other in one, anti in the other. Both conformations are staggered, so are free of torsional strain, but two of the methyl hydrogens of the gauche conformation lie within 210 pm of each other. This distance is less than the sum of their van der Waals radii (240 pm), and there is a repulsive force between them. The destabilization of a molecule that results when two of its atoms are too close to each other is called **van der Waals strain,** or **steric hindrance,** and contributes to the total steric strain. In the case of butane, van der Waals strain makes the gauche conformation approximately 3.3 kJ/mol (0.8 kcal/mol) less stable than the anti.

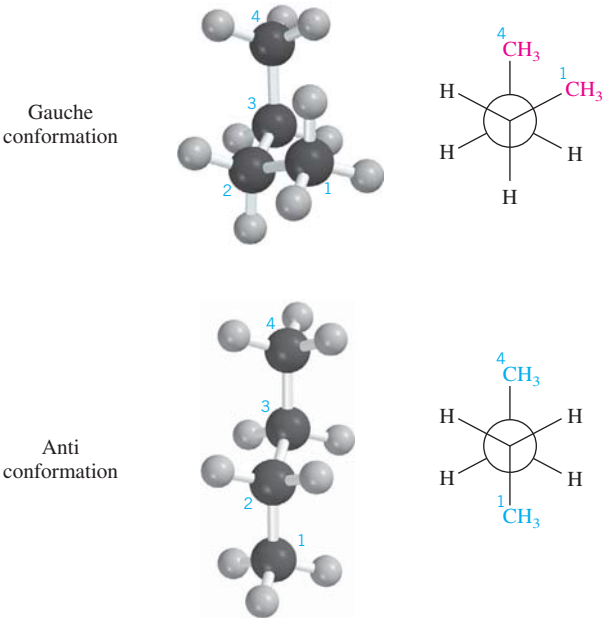


Figure 3.6

The gauche and anti conformations of butane shown as ball-and-spoke models (*left*) and as Newman projections (*right*). The gauche conformation is less stable than the anti because of the van der Waals strain between the methyl groups. Sighting along the C(2)—C(3) bond produces the perspective in the Newman projection.

Figure 3.7

Potential energy diagram for rotation around the central carbon–carbon bond in butane.

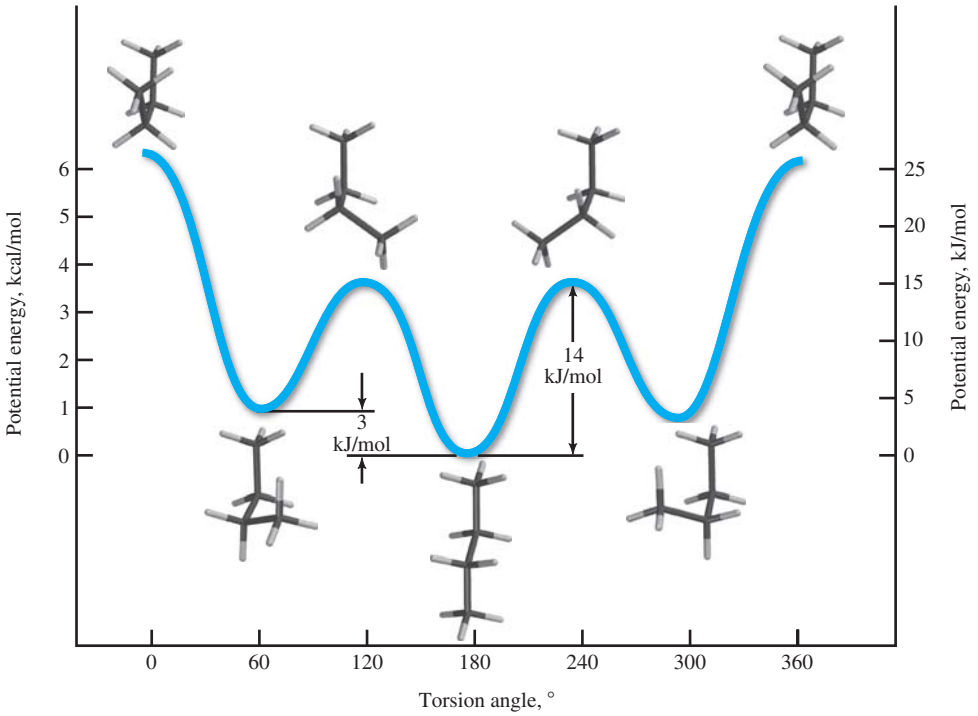


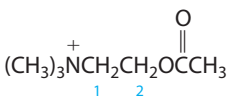
Figure 3.7 illustrates the potential energy relationships among the various conformations of butane around the central carbon–carbon bond. The staggered conformations are more stable than the eclipsed. At any instant, almost all the molecules exist in staggered conformations, and more are present in the anti conformation than in the gauche. The point of maximum potential energy lies some 25 kJ/mol (6.1 kcal/mol) above the anti conformation. The total strain in this structure is approximately equally divided between the torsional strain associated with three pairs of eclipsed bonds (12 kJ/mol; 2.9 kcal/mol) and the van der Waals strain between the eclipsed methyl groups.

Problem 3.3

Sketch a potential energy diagram for rotation around a carbon–carbon bond in propane. Identify each potential energy maximum and minimum with a structural formula that shows the conformation of propane at that point. Does your diagram more closely resemble that of ethane or of butane? Would you expect the activation energy for bond rotation in propane to be more than or less than that of ethane? Of butane?

Problem 3.4

Acetylcholine is a neurotransmitter in the central nervous system in humans. Sighting along the C-1 to C-2 bond, draw Newman projection formulas for the anti and gauche conformations of acetylcholine.



3.3 Conformations of Higher Alkanes

Higher alkanes having unbranched carbon chains are, like butane, most stable in their all-anti conformations. The energy difference between gauche and anti conformations is similar to that of butane, and appreciable quantities of the gauche conformation are present in liquid alkanes at 25°C. In depicting the conformations of higher alkanes it is often more

Computational Chemistry: Molecular Mechanics and Quantum Mechanics

Molecular mechanics is a method for calculating the energy of a molecule by comparing selected structural features with those of "unstrained" standards. It makes no attempt to explain why the van der Waals radius of hydrogen is 120 pm, why the bond angles in methane are 109.5°, why the C—C bond distance in ethane is 153 pm, or why the staggered conformation of ethane is 12 kJ/mol more stable than the eclipsed. Instead, it uses these and other experimentally determined values as benchmarks to which the features of other substances are compared. If we assume that there are certain "ideal" values for bond angles, bond distances, and so on, it follows that deviations from them will destabilize a particular structure. The resulting increase in potential energy is referred to as the *strain energy* (E_{strain}) of the structure. Other terms include *steric energy* and *steric strain*.

Arithmetically, the strain energy of a structure can be separated into several components:

$$E_{strain} = E_{bond\ stretch} + E_{angle\ bend} + E_{torsion} + E_{nonbonded}$$

where $E_{bond\ stretch}$ is the strain that results when bond distances are distorted from their ideal values, $E_{angle\ bend}$ from the expansion or contraction of bond angles, $E_{torsion}$ from deviation of torsion angles from their stable relationship, and $E_{nonbonded}$ from attractive or repulsive forces between atoms that aren't bonded to one another. It often happens that the shape of a molecule causes two atoms to be close in space, even though they may be separated by many bonds. Although van der Waals forces in alkanes are weakly attractive at most distances, two atoms that are closer than the sum of their van der Waals radii experience repulsive forces that can dominate the $E_{nonbonded}$ term. This resulting destabilization is called *van der Waals strain.* Another frequently encountered nonbonded interaction is *Coulombic,* which is the attractive force between oppositely charged atoms or the repulsive force between atoms of like charge. In molecular mechanics, each component of strain is separately described by a mathematical expression developed and refined so that it gives solutions that match experimental observations for reference molecules. A computer-driven *strain energy minimization* routine searches for the combination of bond angles, distances, torsion angles, and nonbonded interactions that has the lowest total strain.

Consider the rotation about the C(2)—C(3) bond in butane discussed in Section 3.2 and its potential energy diagram shown in Figure 3.7. As calculated by molecular mechanics, E_{strain} for the anti and gauche conformations of butane are –21.2 and –18.0 kJ/mol, respectively. The 3.2 kJ/mol difference between these values is in good agreement with the experimentally determined value of 3.3 kJ/mol cited in the opening paragraph of Section 3.2.

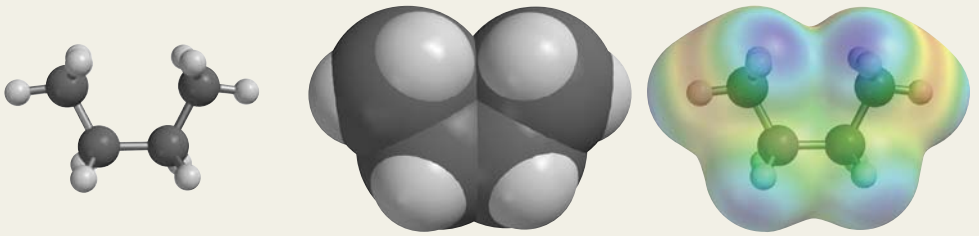
Problem 3.5

As calculated by molecular mechanics, E_{strain} for the eclipsed conformation of butane is +9.3 kJ/mol. On the basis of this and the E_{strain} values just cited, calculate the activation energy for rotation about the C(2)—C(3) bond.

Quantum mechanical calculations are much different and are based on the Schrödinger equation (Section 1.1). Instead of treating molecules as collections of atoms and bonds, quantum mechanics focuses on nuclei and electrons and treats electrons as waves. The energy of a chemical species is determined as the sum of the attractive (nucleus–electron) and repulsive (nucleus–nucleus and electron–electron) forces plus the kinetic energies of the electrons and the nuclei. Minimizing the total energy gives a series of solutions called *wave functions,* which are equivalent to orbitals. Calculations based on quantum mechanics are generally referred to as *molecular orbital (MO) calculations*.

The computing requirements are so much greater for MO calculations than for molecular mechanics that MO calculations were once considered a specialty area. That is no longer true and it is now a routine matter to carry out MO calculations on personal computers. Strain-energy minimization by molecular mechanics is increasingly seen as a preliminary step prior to carrying out an MO calculation. A molecule is constructed, its geometry minimized by molecular mechanics, then MO methods are used to calculate energies, geometries, and other properties.

Our first encounter with the results of computational methods is often visual. Figure 3.8*a* shows a ball-and-spoke model of the methyl-methyl eclipsed conformation of butane as it would appear before doing any calculations. Either a molecular mechanics or MO calculation can produce, among other renderings, the space-filling model of butane shown in Figure 3.8*b,* which clearly reveals the close contact between hydrogens that contributes to van der Waals strain in the eclipsed conformation. However, only an MO calculation can generate an electrostatic potential map, which we see in Figure 3.8*c* as an overlay of charge distribution on a van der Waals surface.



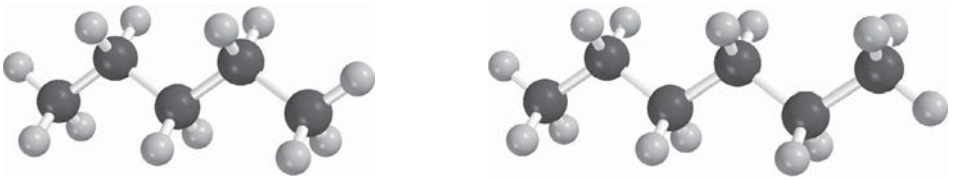
(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Figure 3.8

The methyl–methyl eclipsed conformation of butane: (*a*) ball-and-spoke model, (*b*) space-filling model, and (*c*) electrostatic potential map. The molecule itself is the same size in each.

Figure 3.9

Ball-and-spoke models of pentane and hexane in their all-anti (zigzag) conformations.



Pentane Hexane

helpful to look at them from the side rather than end-on as in a Newman projection. Viewed from this perspective, the most stable conformations of pentane and hexane have their carbon "backbones" arranged in a zigzag fashion, as shown in Figure 3.9. All the bonds are staggered, and the chains are characterized by anti arrangements of C—C—C—C units.

3.4 The Shapes of Cycloalkanes: Planar or Nonplanar?

During the nineteenth century it was widely believed—incorrectly, as we'll see—that cycloalkane rings are planar. A leading advocate of this view was the German chemist Adolf von Baeyer. He noted that compounds containing rings other than those based on cyclopentane and cyclohexane were rarely encountered naturally and were difficult to synthesize. Baeyer connected both observations with cycloalkane stability, which he suggested was related to how closely the internal angles of planar rings match the tetrahedral value of 109.5°. For example, the 60° bond angle of cyclopropane and the 90° bond angles of a planar cyclobutane ring are much smaller than the tetrahedral angle of 109.5°. Baeyer suggested that three- and four-membered rings suffer from what we now call angle strain. **Angle strain** is the strain a molecule has because one or more of its bond angles deviate from the ideal value; in the case of alkanes the ideal value is 109.5°.

Although better known now for his incorrect theory that cycloalkanes were planar, Baeyer was responsible for notable advances in the chemistry of organic dyes such as indigo and was awarded the 1905 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his work in that area.

According to Baeyer, cyclopentane should be the most stable of all the cycloalkanes because the ring angles of a planar pentagon, 108°, are closer to the tetrahedral angle than those of any other cycloalkane. A prediction of the *Baeyer strain theory* is that the cycloalkanes beyond cyclopentane should become increasingly strained and correspondingly less stable. The angles of a regular hexagon are 120°, and the angles of larger polygons deviate more and more from the ideal tetrahedral angle.

Problems with the Baeyer strain theory become apparent when we use heats of combustion (Table 3.1) to probe the relative energies of cycloalkanes. The most important column in the table is the heat of combustion per methylene (CH_2) group. Because all of the cycloalkanes have molecular formulas of the type C_nH_{2n}, dividing the heat of combustion by n allows direct comparison of ring size and potential energy. Cyclopropane has the highest heat of combustion per methylene group, which is consistent with the idea that its potential energy is raised by angle strain. Cyclobutane has less angle strain at each of its carbon atoms and a lower heat of combustion per methylene group. Cyclopentane, as expected, has a lower value still. Notice, however, that contrary to the prediction of the Baeyer strain theory, cyclohexane has a *smaller* heat of combustion per methylene group than cyclopentane. If angle strain were greater in cyclohexane than in cyclopentane, the opposite would have been observed.

Furthermore, the heats of combustion per methylene group of the very large rings are all about the same and similar to that of cyclopentane and cyclohexane. Rather than rising because of increasing angle strain in large rings, the heat of combustion per methylene group remains constant at approximately 653 kJ/mol (156 kcal/mol), the value cited in Section 2.21 as the difference between successive members of a homologous series of alkanes. We conclude, therefore, that the bond angles of large cycloalkanes are not much different from the bond angles of alkanes themselves. The prediction of the Baeyer strain theory that angle strain increases steadily with ring size is contradicted by experimental fact.

The Baeyer strain theory is useful to us in identifying angle strain as a destabilizing effect. Its fundamental flaw is its assumption that the rings of cycloalkanes are planar. *With the exception of cyclopropane, cycloalkanes are nonplanar.* Sections 3.5–3.13 describe the shapes of cycloalkanes. We'll begin with cyclopropane.

TABLE 3.1 Heats of Combustion ($-\Delta H°$) of Cycloalkanes

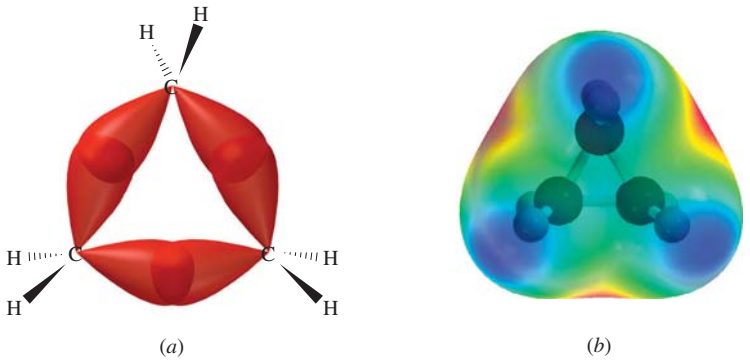
Cycloalkane	Number of CH_2 groups	Heat of combustion		Heat of combustion per CH_2 group	
		kJ/mol	kcal/mol	kJ/mol	kcal/mol
Cyclopropane	3	2,091	499.8	697	166.6
Cyclobutane	4	2,721	650.3	681	162.7
Cyclopentane	5	3,291	786.6	658	157.3
Cyclohexane	6	3,920	936.8	653	156.0
Cycloheptane	7	4,599	1099.2	657	157.0
Cyclooctane	8	5,267	1258.8	658	157.3
Cyclononane	9	5,933	1418.0	659	157.5
Cyclodecane	10	6,587	1574.3	659	157.5
Cycloundecane	11	7,237	1729.8	658	157.3
Cyclododecane	12	7,845	1875.1	654	156.3
Cyclotetradecane	14	9,139	2184.2	653	156.0
Cyclohexadecane	16	10,466	2501.4	654	156.3

3.5 Small Rings: Cyclopropane and Cyclobutane

Conformational analysis is far simpler in cyclopropane than in any other cycloalkane. Cyclopropane's three carbon atoms are, of geometric necessity, coplanar, and rotation about its carbon–carbon bonds is impossible. You saw in Section 3.4 how angle strain in cyclopropane leads to an abnormally large heat of combustion. Let's now look at cyclopropane in more detail to see how our orbital hybridization bonding model may be adapted to molecules of unusual geometry.

In keeping with the "bent-bond" description of Figure 3.10, the carbon–carbon bond distance in cyclopropane (151 pm) is slightly shorter than that of ethane (153 pm) and cyclohexane (154 pm).

Strong sp^3–sp^3 σ bonds are not possible for cyclopropane, because the 60° bond angles of the ring do not permit the orbitals to be properly aligned for effective overlap (Figure 3.10). The less effective overlap that does occur leads to what chemists refer to as "bent" bonds. The electron density in the carbon–carbon bonds of cyclopropane does not lie along the internuclear axis but is distributed along an arc between the two carbon atoms. The ring bonds of cyclopropane are weaker than other carbon–carbon σ bonds.



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 3.10

"Bent bonds" in cyclopropane. (*a*) The orbitals involved in carbon–carbon bond formation overlap in a region that is displaced from the internuclear axis. (*b*) The three areas of greatest negative electrostatic potential (red) correspond to those predicted by the bent-bond description.

In addition to angle strain, cyclopropane is destabilized by torsional strain. Each C—H bond of cyclopropane is eclipsed with two others.

All adjacent pairs of bonds are eclipsed

Neighboring C—H bonds are eclipsed in any planar cycloalkane. Thus all planar conformations are destabilized by torsional strain.

Cyclobutane has less angle strain than cyclopropane and can reduce the torsional strain that goes with a planar geometry by adopting the nonplanar "puckered" conformation shown in Figure 3.11, in which hydrogen atoms are twisted away from one another. A fully staggered arrangement in cyclobutane is not possible, but eclipsing interactions are decreased in the puckered form.

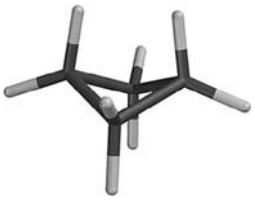


Figure 3.11

Nonplanar ("puckered") conformation of cyclobutane. The nonplanar conformation reduces the eclipsing of bonds on adjacent carbons that characterizes the planar conformation.

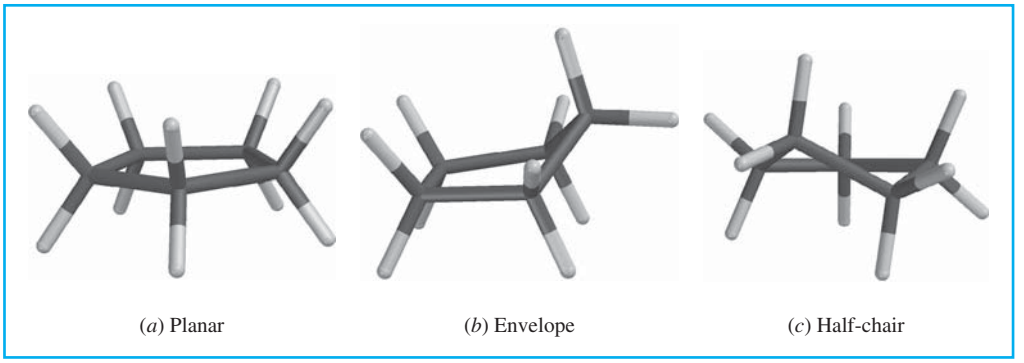
Problem 3.6

The heats of combustion of ethylcyclopropane and methylcyclobutane have been measured as 3352 and 3384 kJ/mol (801.2 and 808.8 kcal/mol). Assign the correct heat of combustion to each isomer.

3.6 Cyclopentane

Angle strain in the planar conformation of cyclopentane is relatively small because the 108° angles of a regular pentagon are not much different from the normal 109.5° bond angles of sp^3-hybridized carbon. The torsional strain, however, is substantial, because five bonds are eclipsed on the top face of the ring, and another set of five are eclipsed on the bottom face (Figure 3.12*a*). Some, but not all, of this torsional strain is relieved in nonplanar conformations. Two nonplanar conformations of cyclopentane, the **envelope** (Figure 3.12*b*) and the **half-chair** (Figure 3.12*c*), are of similar energy.

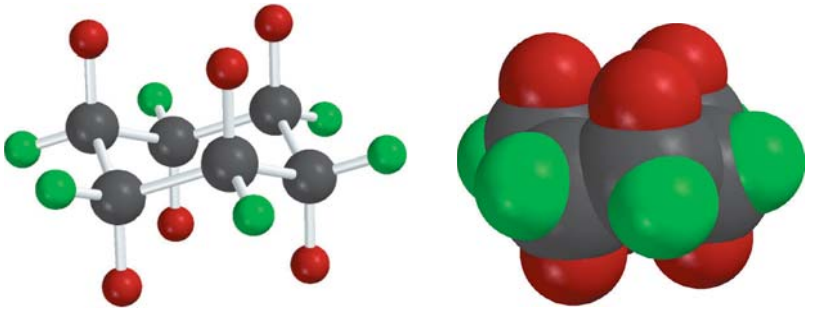
In the envelope conformation four of the carbon atoms are coplanar. The fifth carbon is out of the plane of the other four. There are three coplanar carbons in the half-chair conformation, with one carbon atom displaced above that plane and another below it. In both the envelope and the half-chair conformations, in-plane and out-of-plane carbons exchange positions rapidly. Equilibration between conformations of cyclopentane is very fast and occurs at rates similar to that of rotation about the carbon–carbon bond of ethane.



(*a*) Planar (*b*) Envelope (*c*) Half-chair

Figure 3.12

The (*a*) planar, (*b*) envelope, and (*c*) half-chair conformations of cyclopentane.



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 3.13

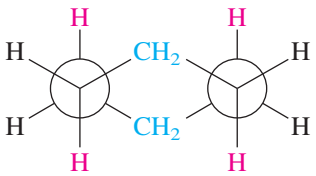
(*a*) A ball-and-spoke model and (*b*) a space-filling model of the chair conformation of cyclohexane.

Chair cyclohexane bears some resemblance to a chaise lounge.

3.7 Conformations of Cyclohexane

Experimental evidence indicating that six-membered rings are nonplanar began to accumulate in the 1920s. Eventually, Odd Hassel of the University of Oslo established that the most stable conformation of cyclohexane has the shape shown in Figure 3.13. This is called the **chair** conformation. With C—C—C bond angles of 111°, the chair conformation is nearly free of angle strain. All its bonds are staggered, making it free of torsional strain as well. The staggered arrangement of bonds in the chair conformation of cyclohexane is apparent in a Newman-style projection.

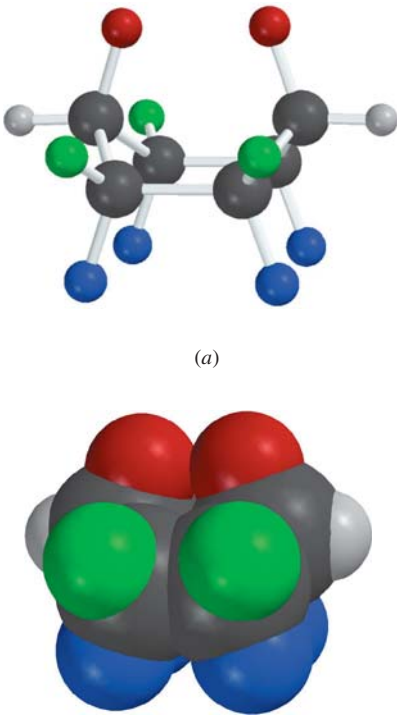
Hassel shared the 1969 Nobel Prize in Chemistry with Sir Derek Barton of Imperial College (London). Barton demonstrated how Hassel's structural results could be extended to an analysis of conformational effects on chemical reactivity.



Staggered arrangement of bonds in chair conformation of cyclohexane

The cyclohexane chair is best viewed from the side-on perspective, which is useful for describing its conformational properties. You may draw chair cyclohexane in this pespective using different techniques, but your final drawing must have the following features. Bonds that are across the ring from each other are parallel, as indicated for the pairs of red, green, and blue bonds in the following drawing. Notice also that the bonds shown in red are drawn with longer lines to show the side-on perspective. In reality, all of the C—C bonds of cyclohexane are of the same length. Bonds are slanted as indicated. Although not planar, the cyclohexane ring should be level with respect to carbons 2 and 4 and carbons 1 and 5. The side-on perspective of cyclohexane is sometimes depicted with wedge bonds for C-1 to C-2 and C-3 to C-4 and a bold line for C-2 to C-3.

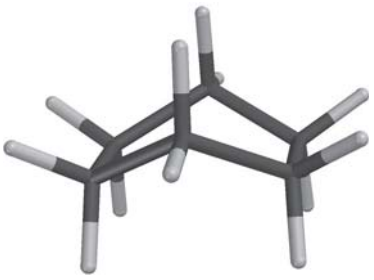
A second, but much less stable, nonplanar conformation called the **boat** is shown in Figure 3.14. Like the chair, the boat conformation has bond angles that are approximately tetrahedral and is relatively free of angle strain. It is, however, destabilized by the torsional strain associated with eclipsed bonds on four of its carbons. The close approach of the two "flagpole" hydrogens shown in Figure 3.14 contributes a small amount of van der Waals



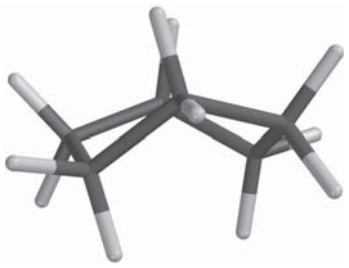
(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 3.14

(*a*) A ball-and-spoke model and (*b*) a space-filling model of the boat conformation of cyclohexane. Torsional strain from eclipsed bonds and van der Waals strain involving the "flagpole" hydrogens (red) make the boat less stable than the chair.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 3.15

(*a*) The boat and (*b*) skew boat conformations of cyclohexane. Some of the torsional strain in the boat is relieved by rotation about C—C bonds in going to the twist conformation. This motion also causes the flagpole hydrogens to move away from one another, reducing the van der Waals strain between them.

strain as well. Both sources of strain are reduced by rotation about the carbon–carbon bond to give the slightly more stable **twist boat,** or **skew boat,** conformation (Figure 3.15).

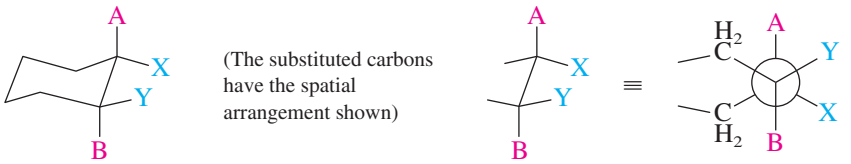
The various conformations of cyclohexane are in rapid equilibrium with one another, but at any moment almost all of the molecules exist in the chair conformation. Less than five molecules per 100,000 are present in the skew boat conformation at 25°C. Thus, the discussion of cyclohexane conformational analysis that follows focuses exclusively on the chair conformation.

3.8 Axial and Equatorial Bonds in Cyclohexane

One of the most important findings to come from conformational studies of cyclohexane is that its 12 hydrogen atoms can be divided into two groups, as shown in Figure 3.16. Six of the hydrogens, called **axial** hydrogens, have their bonds parallel to a vertical axis that passes through the ring's center. These axial bonds alternately are directed up and down on adjacent carbons. The second set of six hydrogens, called **equatorial** hydrogens, are located approximately along the equator of the molecule. Notice that the four bonds to each carbon are arranged tetrahedrally, consistent with an sp^3 hybridization of carbon.

The conformational features of six-membered rings are fundamental to organic chemistry, so it is essential that you have a clear understanding of the directional properties of axial and equatorial bonds and be able to represent them accurately. Figure 3.17 offers some guidance.

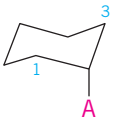
It is no accident that sections of our chair cyclohexane drawings resemble sawhorse projections of staggered conformations of alkanes. The same spatial relationships seen in alkanes carry over to substituents on a six-membered ring. In the structure



substituents A and B are anti to each other, and the other relationships—A and Y, X and Y, and X and B—are gauche.

Problem 3.7

Given the following partial structure, add a substituent X to C-1 so that it satisfies the indicated stereochemical requirement What is the A—C—C—X torsion (dihedral) angle in each?



(a) Anti to A
(b) Gauche to A
(c) Anti to C-3
(d) Gauche to C-3

Sample Solution (a) In order to be anti to A, substituent X must be axial. The blue lines in the drawing show the A—C—C—X torsion angle to be 180°.

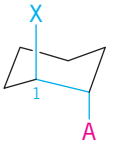
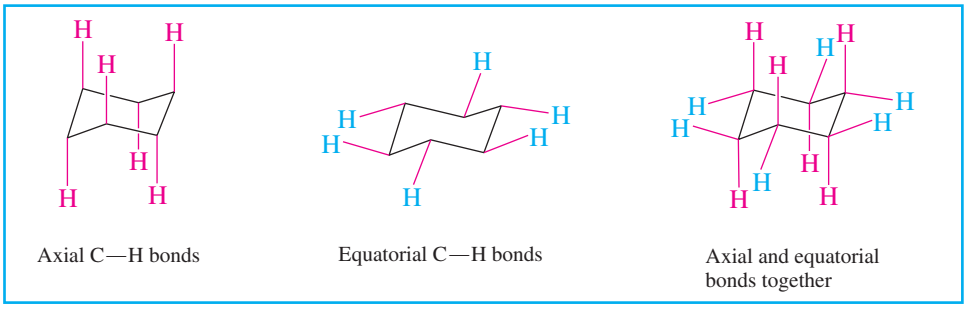
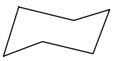


Figure 3.16

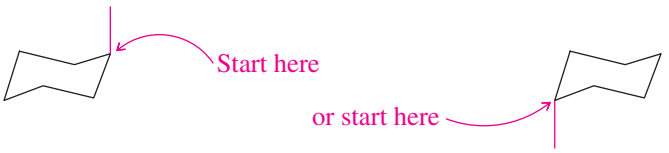
Axial and equatorial bonds in cyclohexane.



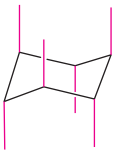
(1) Begin with the chair conformation of cyclohexane.



(2) Draw the axial bonds before the equatorial ones, alternating their direction on adjacent atoms. Always start by placing an axial bond "up" on the uppermost carbon or "down" on the lowest carbon.

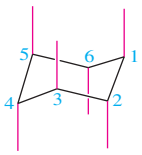


Then alternate to give

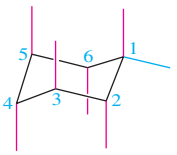


in which all the axial bonds are parallel to one another

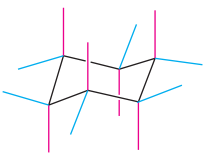
(3) Place the equatorial bonds so as to approximate a tetrahedral arrangement of the bonds to each carbon. The equatorial bond of each carbon should be parallel to the ring bonds of its two nearest neighbor carbons.



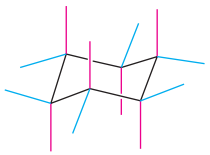
Place equatorial bond at C-1 so that it is parallel to the bonds between C-2 and C-3 and between C-5 and C-6.



Following this pattern gives the complete set of equatorial bonds.



(4) Practice drawing cyclohexane chairs oriented in either direction.



and

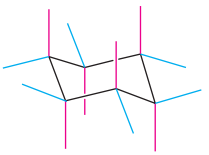
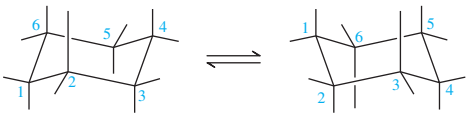


Figure 3.17

A guide to representing the orientations of the bonds in the chair conformation of cyclohexane.

3.9 Conformational Inversion in Cyclohexane

We have seen that alkanes are not locked into a single conformation. Rotation around the central carbon–carbon bond in butane occurs rapidly, interconverting anti and gauche conformations. Cyclohexane, too, is conformationally mobile. Through a process known as **ring inversion,** or **chair–chair interconversion,** one chair conformation is converted to another chair.



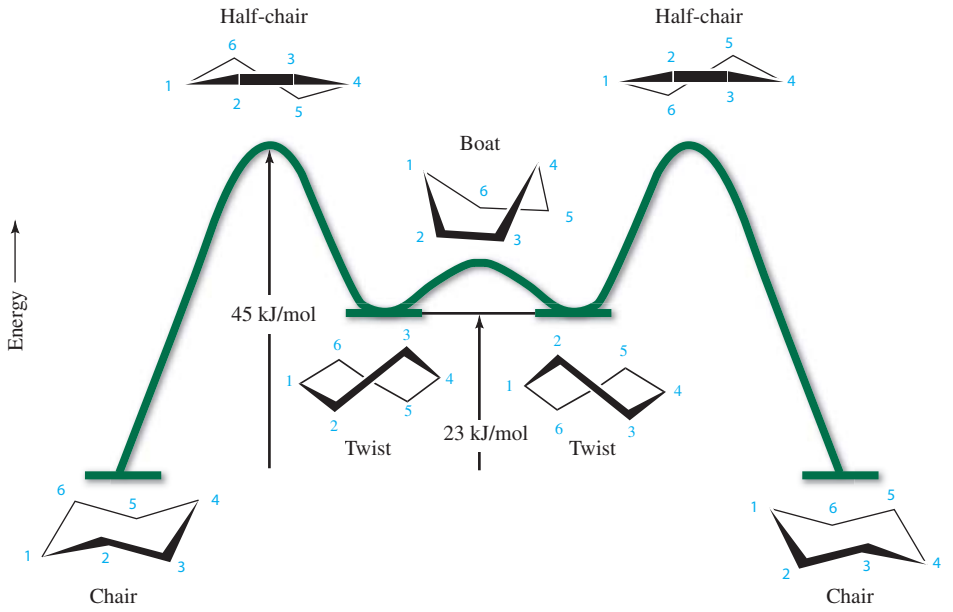
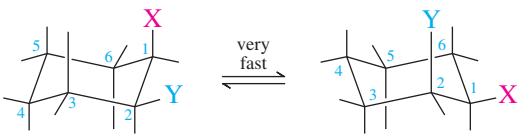


Figure 3.18

Energy diagram for ring inversion in cyclohexane. The energy of activation is the difference in energy between the chair and half-chair conformations. The twist conformations are intermediates. The boat and half-chair conformations are transition states.

A potential energy diagram for chair–chair interconversion in cyclohexane is shown in Figure 3.18. In the first step, the chair is converted to a twist conformation. In this step, cyclohexane passes through a higher-energy half-chair conformation. The twist is converted to an alternate twist, via the boat conformation. The second twist then proceeds to the inverted chair via another half-chair conformation. The twist conformations are *intermediates* in the process of ring inversion. Unlike a transition state, an **intermediate** is not a potential energy maximum but is a local minimum on the potential energy profile. The half-chair conformations are highest in energy because they have the most eclipsing interactions. The difference in energy between the chair and half-chair conformations is the activation energy for the chair–chair interconversion, which is 45 kJ/mol (10.8 kcal/mol). It is a very rapid process with a half-life of 10^{-5} s at 25°C.

The most important result of ring inversion is that any substituent that is axial in the original chair conformation becomes equatorial in the ring-inverted form and vice versa.



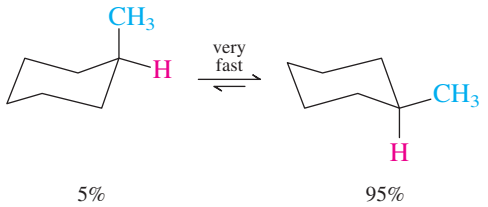
X axial; Y equatorial X equatorial; Y axial

The consequences of this point are developed for a number of monosubstituted cyclohexane derivatives in the following section, beginning with methylcyclohexane.

3.10 Conformational Analysis of Monosubstituted Cyclohexanes

Ring inversion in methylcyclohexane differs from that of cyclohexane in that the two chair conformations are not equivalent. In one chair the methyl group is axial; in the other it is equatorial. At room temperature approximately 95% of the molecules of methylcyclohexane

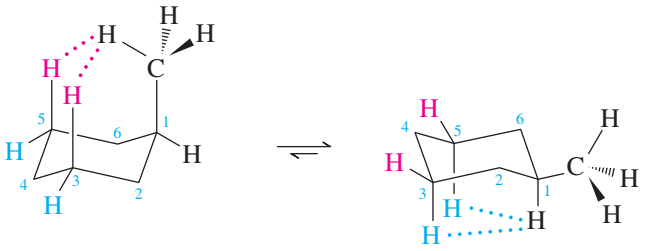
are in the chair conformation that has an equatorial methyl group, whereas only 5% of the molecules have an axial methyl group.



When two conformations of a molecule are in equilibrium with each other, the one with the lower free energy predominates. Why is equatorial methylcyclohexane more stable than axial methylcyclohexane?

See the box entitled *Enthalpy, Free Energy, and Equilibrium Constant* accompanying this section for a discussion of these relationships.

A methyl group is less crowded when it is equatorial than when it is axial. One of the hydrogens of an axial methyl group is within 190–200 pm of the axial hydrogens at C-3 and C-5. This distance is less than the sum of the van der Waals radii of two hydrogens (240 pm) and causes van der Waals strain in the axial conformation. When the methyl group is equatorial, it experiences no significant crowding.



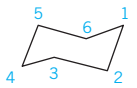
Van der Waals strain between hydrogen of axial CH_3 and axial hydrogens at C-3 and C-5

Negligible van der Waals strain between hydrogen at C-1 and axial hydrogens at C-3 and C-5

The greater stability of an equatorial methyl group, compared with an axial one, is another example of a *steric effect* (Section 3.2). An axial substituent is said to be crowded because of **1,3-diaxial repulsions** between itself and the other two axial substituents located on the same side of the ring.

Problem 3.8

The following questions relate to a cyclohexane ring in the chair conformation shown.

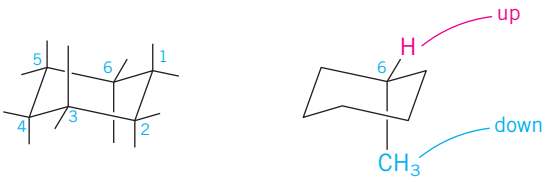


(a) Is a methyl group at C-6 that is "down" axial or equatorial?

(b) Is a methyl group that is "up" at C-1 more or less stable than a methyl group that is up at C-4?

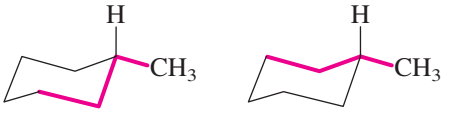
(c) Place a methyl group at C-3 in its most stable orientation. Is it up or down?

Sample Solution (a) First indicate the directional properties of the bonds to the ring carbons. A substituent is down if it is below the other substituent on the same carbon atom. A methyl group that is down at C-6 is therefore axial.

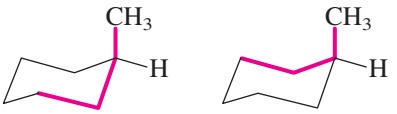


We can relate the conformational preference for an equatorial methyl group in methylcyclohexane to the conformation of butane. The red bonds in the following structural

formulas trace paths through four carbons, beginning at an equatorial methyl group. The zigzag arrangement described by each path mimics the anti conformation of butane.



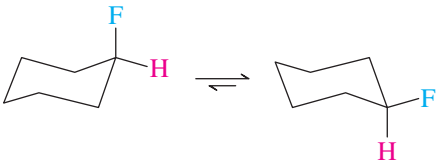
When the methyl group is axial, each path mimics the gauche conformation of butane.



The preference for an equatorial methyl group in methylcyclohexane is therefore analogous to the preference for the anti conformation in butane. Two gauche butane-like units are present in axial methylcyclohexane that are absent in equatorial methylcyclohexane. As we saw earlier in Figure 3.7, the anti conformation of butane is 3.3 kJ/mol (0.8 kcal/mol) lower in energy than the gauche. Therefore, the energy difference between the equatorial and axial conformations of methylcyclohexane should be twice that, or 6.6 kJ/mol (1.6 kcal/mol). The experimentally measured difference of 7.1 kJ/mol (1.7 kcal/mol) is close to this estimate. This gives us confidence that the same factors that govern the conformations of noncyclic compounds also apply to cyclic ones. What we call 1,3-diaxial repulsions in substituted cyclohexanes are really the same as van der Waals strain in the gauche conformations of alkanes.

Other substituted cyclohexanes are similar to methylcyclohexane. Two chair conformations exist in rapid equilibrium, and the one in which the substituent is equatorial is more stable. The relative amounts of the two conformations depend on the effective size of the substituent. The size of a substituent, in the context of cyclohexane conformations, is related to the degree of branching at the atom connected to the ring. A single atom, such as a halogen, does not take up much space, and its preference for an equatorial orientation is less than that of a methyl group.

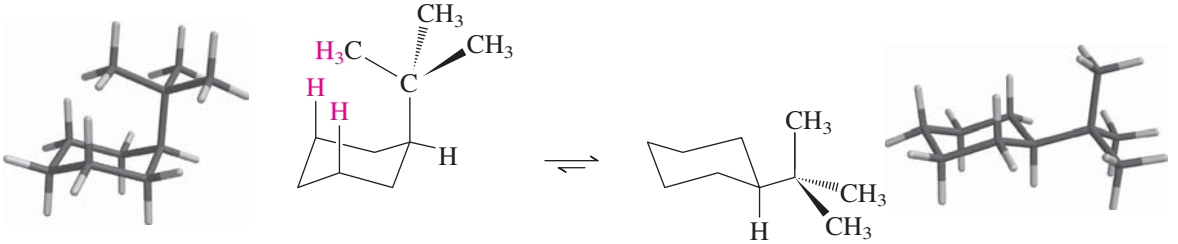
The halogens F, Cl, Br, and I do not differ much in their preference for the equatorial position. As the atomic radius increases in the order F < Cl < Br < I, so does the carbon–halogen bond distance, and the two effects tend to cancel.



40% 60%

A branched alkyl group such as isopropyl exhibits a slightly greater preference for the equatorial orientation than does methyl, but a *tert*-butyl group is so large that *tert*-butylcyclohexane exists almost entirely in the conformation in which the group is equatorial. The amount of axial *tert*-butylcyclohexane present is too small to measure.

Highly branched groups such as *tert*-butyl are commonly described as "bulky."



Less than 0.01%
(Serious 1,3-diaxial repulsions involving *tert*-butyl group)

Greater than 99.99%
(Decreased van der Waals strain)

Problem 3.9

Draw the most stable conformation of 1-*tert*-butyl-1-methylcyclohexane.

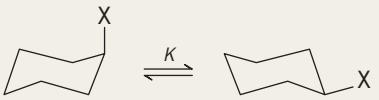
Enthalpy, Free Energy, and Equilibrium Constant

One of the fundamental equations of thermodynamics concerns systems at equilibrium and relates the equilibrium constant K to the difference in **standard free energy** ($\Delta G°$) between the products and the reactants.

$$\Delta G° = G°_{\text{products}} - G°_{\text{reactants}} = -RT \ln K$$

where T is the absolute temperature in kelvins and the constant R equals 8.314 J/mol · K (1.99 cal/mol · K).

For the equilibrium between the axial and equatorial conformations of a monosubstituted cyclohexane,



the equilibrium constant is given by the expression

$$K = \frac{[\text{products}]}{[\text{reactants}]}$$

Inserting the appropriate values for R, T (298 K), and K gives the values of $\Delta G°$ listed in the following table for the various substituents discussed in Section 3.10.

The relationship between $\Delta G°$ and K is plotted in Figure 3.19. A larger value of K is associated with a more negative $\Delta G°$.

Free energy and enthalpy are related by the expression

$$\Delta G° = \Delta H° - T\Delta S°$$

where $\Delta S°$ is the difference in *entropy* between the products and reactants. A positive $\Delta S°$ is accompanied by an increase in the disorder of a system. A positive $\Delta S°$ leads to a $\Delta G°$ that is more negative than $\Delta H°$ and a larger K than expected on the basis of enthalpy considerations alone. Conversely, a negative $\Delta S°$ gives a smaller K than expected. In the case of conformational equilibration between the chair forms of a substituted cyclohexane, $\Delta S°$ is close to zero and $\Delta G°$ and $\Delta H°$ are approximately equal.

				$\Delta G°_{298K}$	
Substituent X	Percent axial	Percent equatorial	K	kJ/mol	kcal/mol
—F	40	60	1.5	–1.0	–0.24
—CH_3	5	95	19	–7.3	–1.7
—$CH(CH_3)_2$	3	97	32.3	–8.6	–2.1
—$C(CH_3)_3$	<0.01	>99.99	>9999	–22.8	–5.5

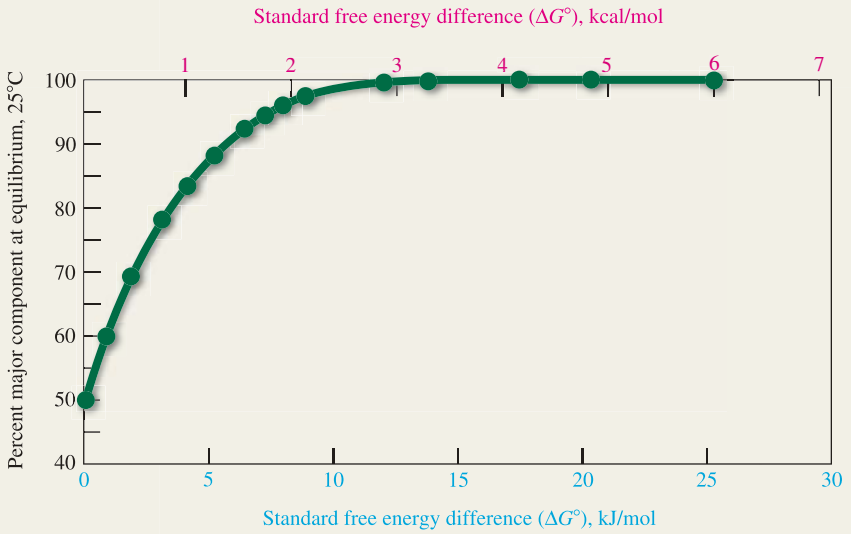
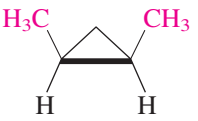


Figure 3.19

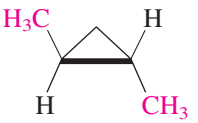
Distribution of two products at equilibrium at 25°C as a function of the standard free energy difference ($\Delta G°$) between them.

3.11 Disubstituted Cycloalkanes: cis–trans Stereoisomers

When a cycloalkane bears two substituents on different carbons—methyl groups, for example—these substituents may be on the same or on opposite sides of the ring. When substituents are on the same side, we say they are ***cis*** to each other; if they are on opposite sides, they are ***trans*** to each other. Both terms come from the Latin, in which *cis* means "on this side" and *trans* means "across."



cis-1,2-Dimethylcyclopropane



trans-1,2-Dimethylcyclopropane

Problem 3.10

Exclusive of compounds with double bonds, four hydrocarbons are *constitutional* isomers of *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane. Identify these compounds.

Stereochemistry is the term applied to the three-dimensional aspects of molecular structure and reactivity.

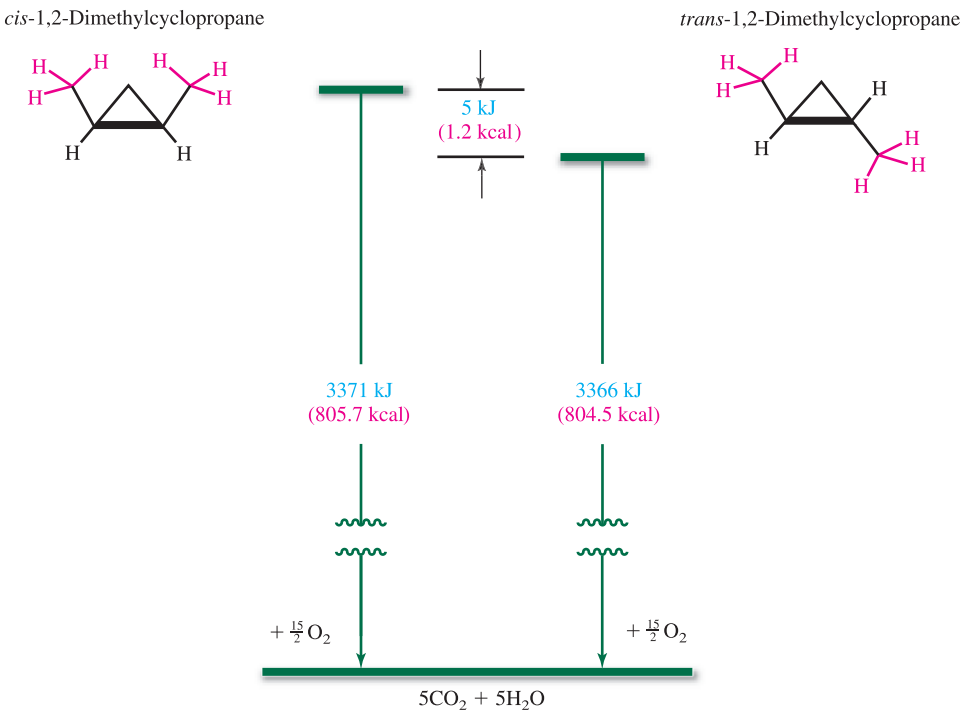
The cis and trans forms of 1,2-dimethylcyclopropane are stereoisomers. **Stereoisomers** are isomers that have their atoms bonded in the same order—that is, they have the same constitution, but they differ in the arrangement of atoms in space. You learned in Section 2.21 that constitutional isomers could differ in stability. What about stereoisomers?

We can measure the energy difference between *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane by comparing their heats of combustion. As illustrated in Figure 3.20, the difference in their heats of combustion is a direct measure of the difference in their energies. Because the heat of combustion of *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane is 5 kJ/mol (1.2 kcal/mol) less than that of its cis stereoisomer, it follows that *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane is 5 kJ/mol (1.2 kcal/mol) more stable than *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane.

In this case, the relationship between stability and stereochemistry is easily explained on the basis of van der Waals strain. The methyl groups on the same side

Figure 3.20

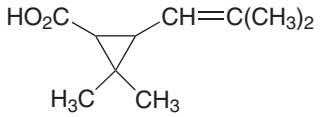
The enthalpy difference between *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane can be determined from their heats of combustion. Van der Waals strain between methyl groups on the same side of the ring makes the cis stereoisomer less stable than the trans.



of the ring in *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane crowd each other and increase the potential energy of this stereoisomer. Steric hindrance between methyl groups is absent in *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropane.

Problem 3.11

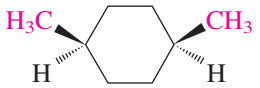
Chrysanthemic acid, from the chrysanthemum flower, is a naturally occurring insecticide, with the constitution indicated. Draw the structures of the cis and trans stereoisomers of chrysanthemic acid.



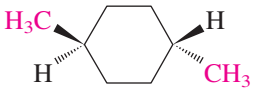
Disubstituted cyclopropanes exemplify one of the simplest cases involving stability differences between stereoisomers. A three-membered ring has no conformational mobility, so cannot reduce the van der Waals strain between cis substituents on adjacent carbons without introducing other strain. The situation is different in disubstituted derivatives of cyclohexane.

3.12 Conformational Analysis of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes

We'll begin with *cis*- and *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane.



cis-1,4-Dimethylcyclohexane



trans-1,4-Dimethylcyclohexane

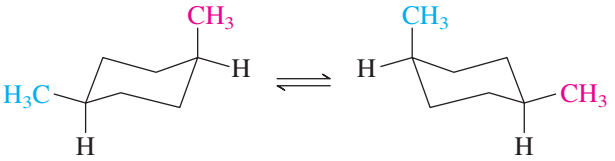
Wedges fail to show conformation, and it's important to remember that the rings of *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane exist in a chair conformation. This fact must be taken into consideration when evaluating the relative stabilities of the stereoisomers.

Their heats of combustion (Table 3.2) reveal that *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane is 7 kJ/mol (1.7 kcal/mol) more stable than the cis stereoisomer. It is unrealistic to believe that van der Waals strain between cis substituents is responsible, because the methyl groups are too far away from each other. To understand why *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane is more stable than *cis*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane, we need to examine each stereoisomer in its most stable conformation.

TABLE 3.2 Heats of Combustion of Isomeric Dimethylcyclohexanes

Compound	Orientation of methyl groups in most stable conformation	Heat of combustion		Difference in heat of combustion		More stable stereoisomer
		kJ/mol	kcal/mol	kJ/mol	kcal/mol	
cis-l,2-Dimethylcyclohexane *trans*-l,2-Dimethylcyclohexane	Axial–equatorial Diequatorial	5223 5217	1248.3 1246.8	6	1.5	trans
cis-l,3-Dimethylcyclohexane *trans*-l,3-Dimethylcyclohexane	Diequatorial Axial–equatorial	5212 5219	1245.7 1247.4	7	1.7	cis
cis-l,4-Dimethylcyclohexane *trans*-l,4-Dimethylcyclohexane	Axial–equatorial Diequatorial	5219 5212	1247.4 1245.7	7	1.7	trans

cis-1,4-Dimethylcyclohexane can adopt either of two equivalent chair conformations, *each having one axial methyl group and one equatorial methyl group.* The two are in rapid equilibrium with each other by ring inversion. The equatorial methyl group becomes axial, and the axial methyl group becomes equatorial.

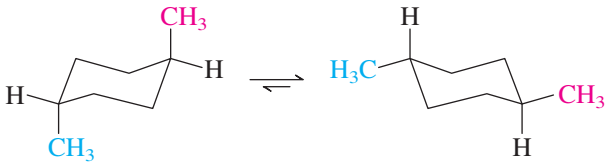


(One methyl group is axial, the other equatorial) (One methyl group is axial, the other equatorial)

(Both methyl groups are up)
cis-1,4-Dimethylcyclohexane

The methyl groups are cis because both are up relative to the hydrogen present at each carbon. If both methyl groups were down, they would still be cis to each other. Notice that ring inversion does not alter the cis relationship between the methyl groups. Nor does it alter their up-versus-down quality; substituents that are up in one conformation remain up in the ring inverted form.

The most stable conformation of trans-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane has both methyl groups in equatorial orientations. The two chair conformations of *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane are not equivalent. One has two equatorial methyl groups; the other, two axial methyl groups.



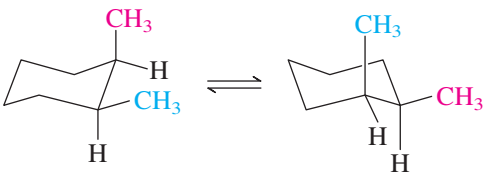
(Both methyl groups are axial: less stable chair conformation) (Both methyl groups are equatorial: more stable chair conformation)

(One methyl group is up, the other down)
trans-1,4-Dimethylcyclohexane

The more stable chair—the one with both methyl groups equatorial—is adopted by most of the *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane molecules.

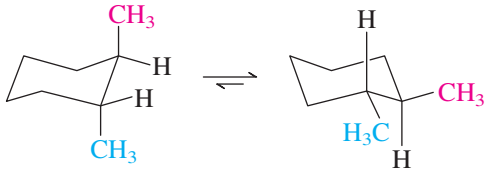
trans-1,4-Dimethylcyclohexane is more stable than *cis*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane because both of the methyl groups are equatorial in its most stable conformation. One methyl group must be axial in the cis stereoisomer. Remember, it is a general rule that any substituent is more stable in an equatorial orientation than in an axial one. It is worth pointing out that the 7 kJ/mol (1.7 kcal/mol) energy difference between *cis*- and *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane is the same as the energy difference between the axial and equatorial conformations of methylcyclohexane. There is a simple reason for this: in both instances the less stable structure has one axial methyl group, and the 7 kJ/mol (1.7 kcal/mol) energy difference can be considered the "energy cost" of having a methyl group in an axial rather than an equatorial orientation.

Like the 1,4-dimethyl derivatives, *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane has a lower heat of combustion (see Table 3.2) and is more stable than *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane. The cis stereoisomer has two chair conformations of equal energy, each containing one axial and one equatorial methyl group.



cis-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane

Both methyl groups are equatorial in the most stable conformation of *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane.



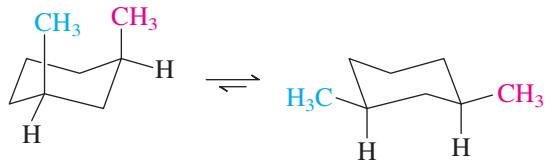
(Both methyl groups are axial: less stable chair conformation) (Both methyl groups are equatorial: more stable chair conformation)

trans-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane

As in the 1,4-dimethylcyclohexanes, the 6 kJ/mol (1.5 kcal/mol) energy difference between the more stable (trans) and the less stable (cis) stereoisomer is attributed to the strain associated with the presence of an axial methyl group in the cis stereoisomer.

Probably the most interesting observation in Table 3.2 concerns the 1,3-dimethylcyclohexanes. Unlike the 1,2- and 1,4-dimethylcyclohexanes, in which the trans stereoisomer is more stable than the cis, we find that *cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane is 7 kJ/mol (1.7 kcal/mol) more stable than *trans*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane. Why?

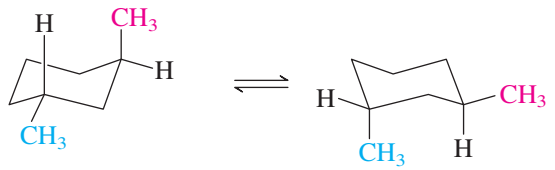
The most stable conformation of *cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane has both methyl groups equatorial.



(Both methyl groups are axial: less stable chair conformation) (Both methyl groups are equatorial: more stable chair conformation)

cis-1,3-Dimethylcyclohexane

The two chair conformations of *trans*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane are equivalent to each other. Both contain one axial and one equatorial methyl group.



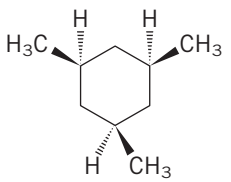
(One methyl group is axial, the other equatorial) (One methyl group is axial, the other equatorial)

trans-1,3-Dimethylcyclohexane

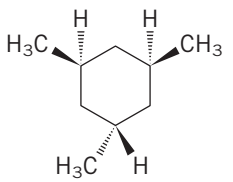
Thus the trans stereoisomer, with one axial methyl group, is less stable than *cis*-1,3- dimethylcyclohexane where both methyl groups are equatorial.

Problem 3.12

Based on what you know about disubstituted cyclohexanes, which of the following two stereoisomeric 1,3,5-trimethylcyclohexanes would you expect to be more stable?

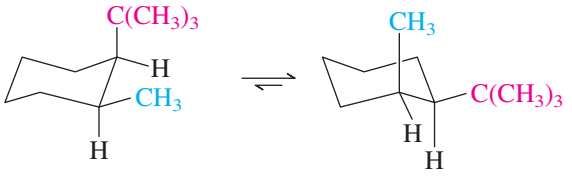


cis-1,3,5-Trimethylcyclohexane



trans-1,3,5-Trimethylcyclohexane

If a disubstituted cyclohexane has two different substituents, then the most stable conformation is the chair that has the larger substituent in an equatorial orientation. This is most apparent when one of the substituents is a bulky group such as *tert*-butyl. Thus, the most stable conformation of *cis*-1-*tert*-butyl-2-methylcyclohexane has an equatorial *tert*-butyl group and an axial methyl group.



(Less stable conformation: larger group is axial) (More stable conformation: larger group is equatorial)

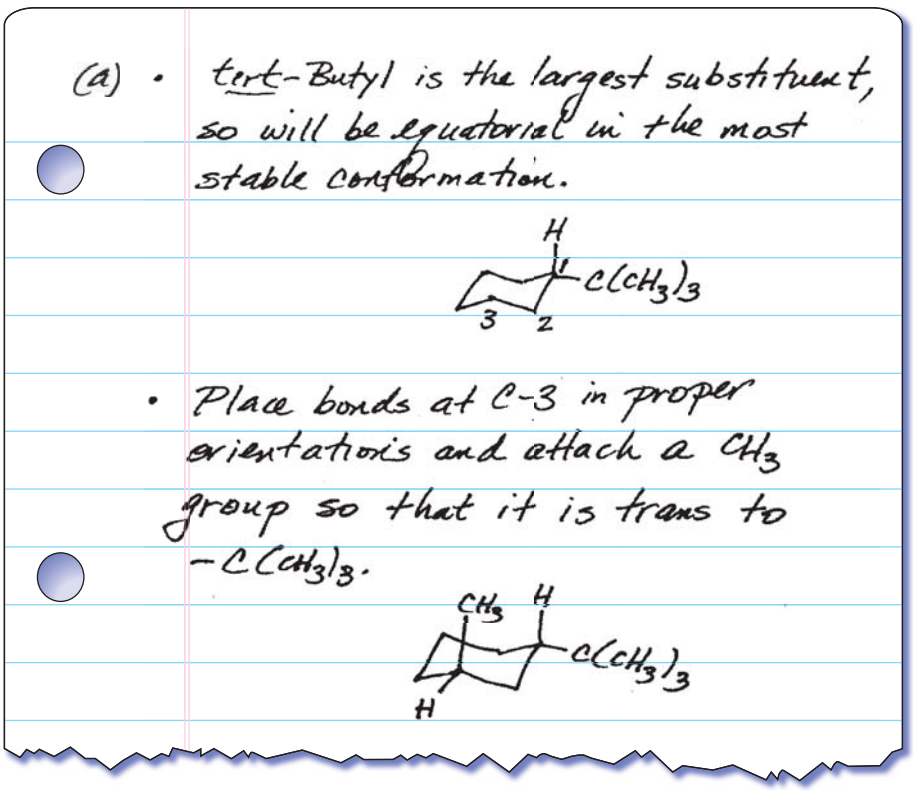
cis-1-*tert*-Butyl-2-methylcyclohexane

Problem 3.13

Write structural formulas for the most stable conformation of each of the following compounds:

(a) *trans*-1-*tert*-Butyl-3-methylcyclohexane
(b) *cis*-1-*tert*-Butyl-3-methylcyclohexane
(c) *trans*-1-*tert*-Butyl-4-methylcyclohexane
(d) *cis*-1-*tert*-Butyl-4-methylcyclohexane

Sample Solution



Cyclohexane rings that bear *tert*-butyl substituents are examples of conformationally biased molecules. A *tert*-butyl group has such a pronounced preference for the equatorial orientation that it will strongly bias the equilibrium to favor such conformations. This does not mean that ring inversion does not occur, however. Ring inversion does occur, but at any instant only a tiny fraction of the molecules exist in conformations having axial *tert*-butyl groups. It is not strictly correct to say that *tert*-butylcyclohexane and its derivatives are

"locked" into a single conformation; conformations related by ring inversion are in rapid equilibrium with one another, but the distribution between them strongly favors those in which the *tert*-butyl group is equatorial.

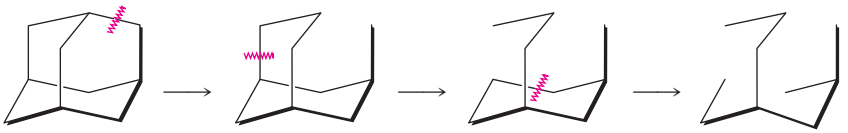
3.13 Medium and Large Rings

The largest known cycloalkane has a ring with 288 carbons.

Beginning with cycloheptane, which has four conformations of similar energy, conformational analysis of cycloalkanes becomes more complicated. The same fundamental principles apply to medium and large rings as apply to smaller ones—but there are more atoms, more bonds, and more conformational possibilities.

3.14 Polycyclic Ring Systems

Polycyclic compounds are those that contain more than one ring. The IUPAC classifies polycyclic structures according to the minimum number of bond cleavages required to generate a noncyclic structure. The structure is *bicyclic* if two bond disconnections yield an open-chain structure, *tricyclic* if three, *tetracyclic* if four, and so on. Adamantane, a naturally occurring hydrocarbon found in petroleum, for example, is tricyclic because three bond cleavages are needed before an open-chain structure results.



Adamantane

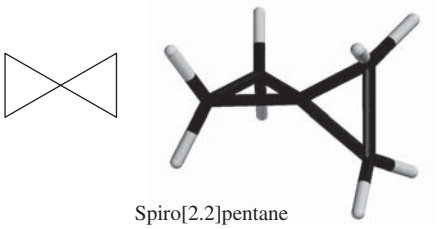
The correct number of rings may be determined by different sets of disconnections, and the final open-chain structure need not be the same for different sets. All that matters is finding the minimum number of disconnections.

Problem 3.14

Cubane (C_4H_8) is the common name of the polycyclic hydrocarbon shown. As it name implies, its structure is that of a cube. How many rings are present in cubane according to the bond-disconnection rule?

In addition to classifying polycyclic compounds according to the number of rings they contain, we also classify them with respect to the way in which the rings are joined. In a **spiro** compound, one atom is common to two rings.

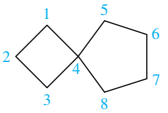
The simplest spiro alkane is *spiro[2.2]pentane,* a molecular model of which illustrates an interesting structural feature of spiro compounds. The two rings lie at right angles to each other.



Spiro[2.2]pentane

The IUPAC names of spiro alkanes take the form *spiro[number.number]alkane.* The *alkane* suffix is simply the name of the unbranched alkane having the same number of carbons as those in the two rings. The numbers inside the brackets are, in ascending order, the number

of carbons unique to each ring. Thus, eight carbons make up the two rings of spiro[3.4]octane; the spiro carbon is bridged by three carbons of one ring and four carbons of the other.



Spiro[3.4]octane

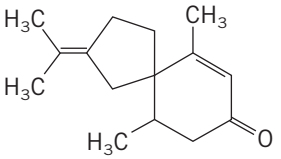
When substituents are present, numbering begins in the smaller ring adjacent to the spiro carbon and proceeds consecutively around the smaller ring away from the spiro carbon, through it, then around the larger ring. As with alkanes, the direction is chosen so as to give the lower locant at the first point of difference, substituents are listed in alphabetical order, and the locants and substituents appear first in the name.

Figure 3.21

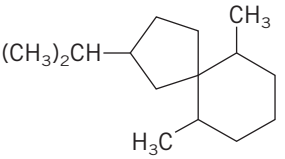
Vetiver grass is the source of vetiver oil.

Problem 3.15

Vetiver, a soothing oil popular in aromatherapy (Figure 3.21), contains β-vetivone, which can be viewed as a derivative of compound A. What is the IUPAC name of A?

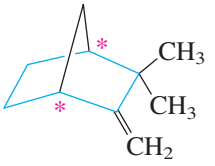


β–Vetivone



Compound A

In a **bridged** compound, two atoms are common to two or more rings. *Camphene,* a naturally occurring hydrocarbon obtained from pine oil, is a representative bridged bicyclic hydrocarbon. It is convenient to regard camphene as a six-membered ring (indicated by the blue bonds in the following structure) in which the two carbons designated by asterisks (*) are bridged by a CH_2 group. The two designated carbons are known as *bridgehead* carbons.

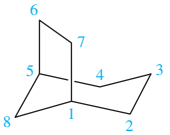


Camphene

Problem 3.16

Use the bond-cleavage criterion to verify that camphene is bicyclic.

Bridged bicyclic alkanes are named in the manner: *bicyclo[number.number.number] alkane.* As illustrated for bicyclo[3.2.1]octane, the parent alkane is the one with the same number of carbons as the total in the bicyclic skeleton.



Bicyclo[3.2.1]octane

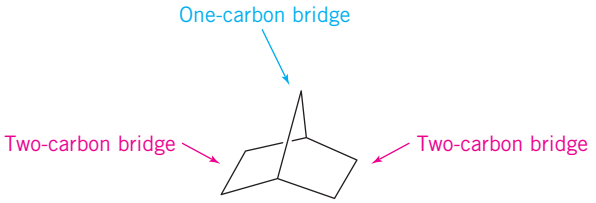
The bracketed numbers identify the number of carbons in the three bridges in descending order. Numbering begins at a bridgehead position and proceeds consecutively in the direction of the largest bridge and continues through the next largest. The atoms in the smallest bridge are numbered last.

Problem 3.17

Write structural formulas for each of the following bicyclic hydrocarbons:

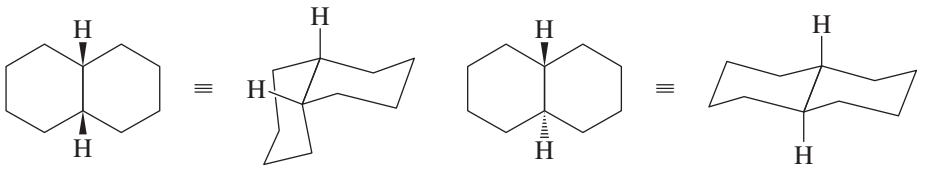
(a) Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane
(b) 1,7,7-Trimethylbicyclo[2.2.1]heptane
(c) Bicyclo[3.1.1]heptane

Sample Solution (a) The bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane ring system is one of the most frequently encountered bicyclic structural types. It contains seven carbon atoms, as indicated by the suffix *-heptane*. The bridging groups contain two, two, and one carbon, respectively.



Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane

Many compounds contain rings that share a common side. Such compounds are normally referred to as *fused-ring* compounds, but for classification and naming purposes they are placed in the "bridged" category. The bridge in these cases is the common side and is given a value of zero atoms. The two stereoisomeric bicyclo[4.4.0]decanes, called *cis*- and *trans*-decalin, are important examples.

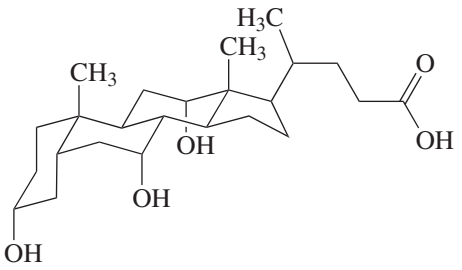


cis-Bicyclo[4.4.0]decane (*cis*-decalin)

trans-Bicyclo[4.4.0]decane (*trans*-decalin)

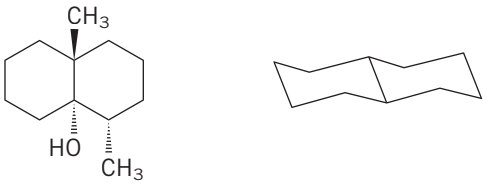
The hydrogen atoms at the ring junctions are on the same side in *cis*-decalin and on opposite sides in *trans*-decalin. Both rings adopt the chair conformation in each stereoisomer.

Decalin ring systems appear as structural units in a large number of naturally occurring substances, particularly the steroids. Cholic acid, for example, a steroid present in bile that promotes digestion, incorporates *cis*-decalin and *trans*-decalin units into a rather complex *tetracyclic* structure.



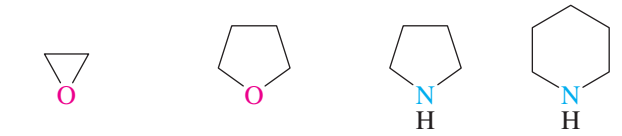
Problem 3.18

Geosmin is a natural product that smells like dirt. It is produced by several microorganisms and can be obtained from beet extracts. Complete the following decalin ring skeleton, placing the substituents of geosmin in their proper orientations.



3.15 Heterocyclic Compounds

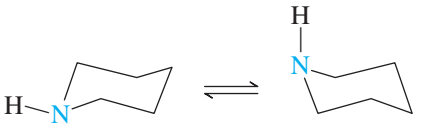
Not all cyclic compounds are hydrocarbons. Many substances include an atom other than carbon, called a *heteroatom* (Section 1.7), as part of a ring. A ring that contains at least one heteroatom is called a *heterocycle,* and a substance based on a heterocyclic ring is a **heterocyclic compound.** Each of the following heterocyclic ring systems will be encountered in this text:



Ethylene oxide Tetrahydrofuran Pyrrolidine Piperidine

The names cited are common names, which have been in widespread use for a long time and are acceptable in IUPAC nomenclature. We will introduce the systematic nomenclature of these ring systems as needed in later chapters.

The shapes of heterocyclic rings are very much like those of their all-carbon analogs. Thus, six-membered heterocycles such as piperidine exist in a chair conformation analogous to cyclohexane.



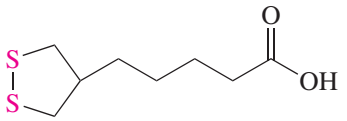
The hydrogen attached to nitrogen can be either axial or equatorial, and both chair conformations are approximately equal in stability.

Problem 3.19

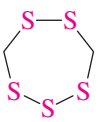
Draw what you would expect to be the most stable conformation of the piperidine derivative in which the hydrogen bonded to nitrogen has been replaced by methyl.

Sulfur-containing heterocycles are also common. Compounds in which sulfur is the heteroatom in three-, four-, five-, and six-membered rings, as well as larger rings, are all well known. Two interesting heterocyclic compounds that contain sulfur–sulfur bonds are *lipoic acid* and *lenthionine.*

Cyclic structures also exist in inorganic chemistry. The most stable form of elemental sulfur is an 8-membered ring of sulfur atoms.



Lipoic acid: a growth factor required by a variety of different organisms



Lenthionine: contributes to the odor of shiitake mushrooms

Many heterocyclic systems contain double bonds and are related to arenes. The most important representatives of this class are introduced in Sections 11.21 and 11.22.

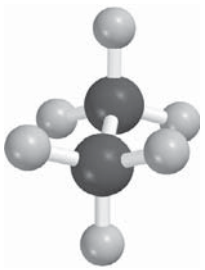
3.16 SUMMARY

In this chapter we explored the three-dimensional shapes of alkanes and cycloalkanes. The most important point to be taken from the chapter is that a molecule adopts the shape that minimizes its total strain. The sources of strain in alkanes and cycloalkanes are:

1. ***Bond length distortion:*** destabilization of a molecule that results when one or more of its bond distances are different from the normal values
2. ***Angle strain:*** destabilization that results from distortion of bond angles from their normal values
3. ***Torsional strain:*** destabilization that results when bonds on adjacent atoms are not staggered
4. ***Van der Waals strain:*** destabilization that results when atoms or groups on nonadjacent atoms are too close to one another

The various spatial arrangements available to a molecule by rotation about single bonds are called **conformations,** and **conformational analysis** is the study of the differences in stability and properties of the individual conformations. Rotation around carbon–carbon single bonds is normally very fast, occurring hundreds of thousands of times per second at room temperature. Molecules are rarely frozen into a single conformation but engage in rapid equilibration among the conformations that are energetically accessible.

Section 3.1 The most stable conformation of ethane is the **staggered** conformation. It is approximately 12 kJ/mol (3 kcal/mol) more stable than the **eclipsed,** which is the least stable conformation.

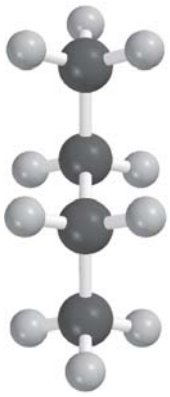


Staggered conformation of ethane
(most stable conformation)

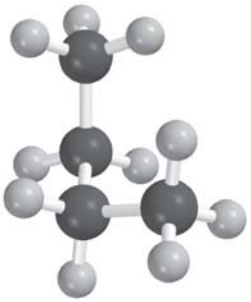
Eclipsed conformation of ethane
(least stable conformation)

The difference in energy between the two results from two effects: a destabilization of the eclipsed conformation due to electron–electron repulsion in aligned bonds, and a stabilization of the staggered conformation due to better electron delocalization. At any instant, almost all the molecules of ethane reside in the staggered conformation.

Section 3.2 The two staggered conformations of butane are not equivalent. The **anti** conformation is more stable than the **gauche.**



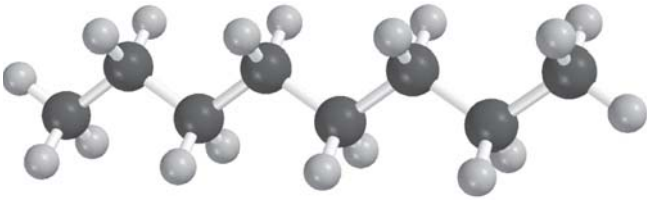
Anti conformation of butane



Gauche conformation of butane

Neither conformation suffers torsional strain, because each has a staggered arrangement of bonds. The gauche conformation is less stable because of van der Waals strain involving the methyl groups.

Section 3.3 Higher alkanes adopt a zigzag conformation of the carbon chain in which all the bonds are staggered.

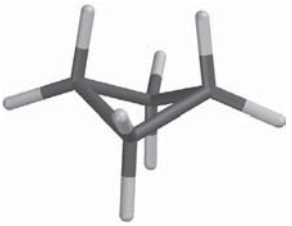


Octane

Section 3.4 At one time all cycloalkanes were believed to be planar. It was expected that cyclopentane would be the least strained cycloalkane because the angles of a regular pentagon (108°) are closest to the tetrahedral angle of 109.5°. Heats of combustion established that this is not so. With the exception of cyclopropane, the rings of all cycloalkanes are nonplanar.

Section 3.5 Cyclopropane is planar and destabilized by angle strain and torsional strain. Cyclobutane is nonplanar and less strained than cyclopropane.

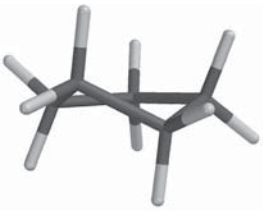
Cyclopropane



Cyclobutane

Section 3.6 Cyclopentane has two nonplanar conformations that are of similar stability: the **envelope** and the **half-chair.**

Envelope conformation of cyclopentane

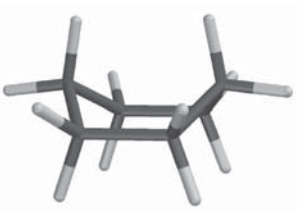


Half-chair conformation of cyclopentane

Section 3.7 Three conformations of cyclohexane have approximately tetrahedral angles at carbon: the chair, the boat, and the twist. The chair is by far the most stable; it is free of torsional strain, but the others are not. When a cyclohexane ring is present in a compound, it almost always adopts a chair conformation.

Chair

Twist



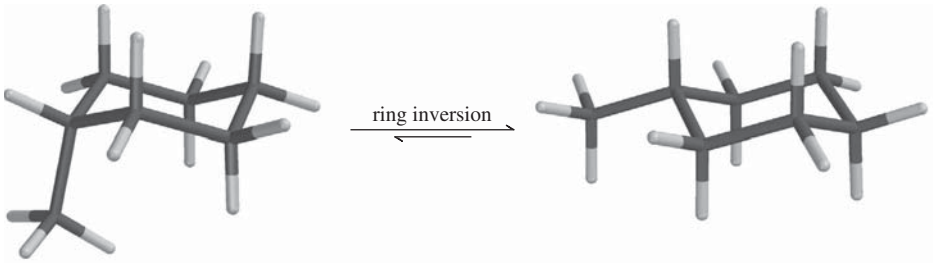
Boat

Section 3.8 The C—H bonds in the chair conformation of cyclohexane are not all equivalent but are divided into two sets of six each, called **axial** and **equatorial.**

Axial bonds to H in cyclohexane Equatorial bonds to H in cyclohexane

Section 3.9 Conformational inversion is rapid in cyclohexane and causes all axial bonds to become equatorial and vice versa. As a result, a monosubstituted derivative of cyclohexane adopts the chair conformation in which the substituent is equatorial. *No bonds are made or broken in this process.*

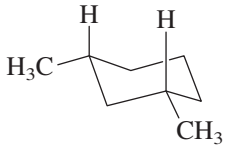
Section 3.10 A substituent is less crowded and more stable when it is equatorial than when it is axial on a cyclohexane ring. Ring inversion of a monosubstituted cyclohexane allows the substituent to become equatorial.



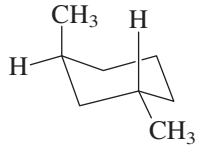
Methyl group axial (less stable) Methyl group equatorial (more stable)

Branched substituents, especially *tert*-butyl, have an increased preference for the equatorial position.

Sections 3.11–3.12 **Stereoisomers** are isomers that have the same constitution but differ in the arrangement of atoms in space. *Cis*- and *trans*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane are stereoisomers. The cis isomer is more stable than the trans.



Most stable conformation of *cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane (no axial methyl groups)

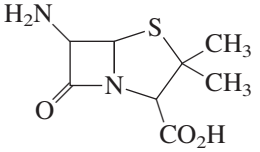


Most stable conformation of *trans*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane (one axial methyl group)

Section 3.13 Higher cycloalkanes have angles at carbon that are close to tetrahedral and are sufficiently flexible to adopt conformations that reduce their torsional strain. They tend to be populated by several different conformations of similar stability.

Section 3.14 Cyclic hydrocarbons can contain more than one ring. **Spiro** hydrocarbons are characterized by the presence of a single carbon that is common to two rings. Bicyclic alkanes contain two rings that share two or more atoms.

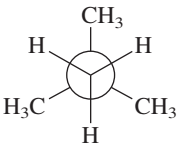
Section 3.15 Substances that contain one or more atoms other than carbon as part of a ring are called **heterocyclic** compounds. Rings in which the heteroatom is oxygen, nitrogen, or sulfur rank as both the most common and the most important.



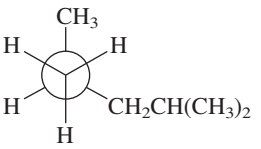
6-Aminopenicillanic acid (bicyclic and heterocyclic)

PROBLEMS

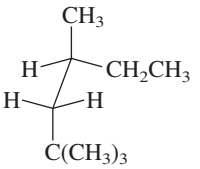
3.20 Give the IUPAC names of each of the following alkanes.



(a)



(b)



(c)

3.21 Sight down the C-2—C-3 bond, and draw Newman projection formulas for the

(a) Most stable conformation of 2,2-dimethylbutane

(b) Two most stable conformations of 2-methylbutane

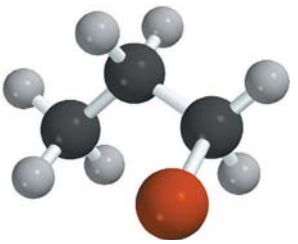
(c) Two most stable conformations of 2,3-dimethylbutane

3.22 One of the staggered conformations of 2-methylbutane in Problem 3.21b is more stable than the other. Which one is more stable? Why?

3.23 Sketch an approximate potential energy diagram for rotation about the carbon–carbon bond in 2,2-dimethylpropane similar to that shown in Figures 3.4 and 3.7. Does the form of the potential energy curve of 2,2-dimethylpropane more closely resemble that of ethane or that of butane?

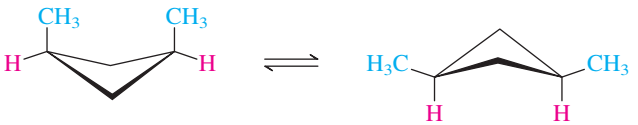
3.24 Repeat Problem 3.23 for the case of 2-methylbutane.

3.25 Identify all atoms that are (a) anti and (b) gauche to bromine in the conformation shown for $CH_3CH_2CH_2Br$.



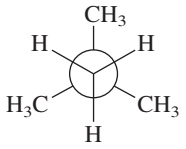
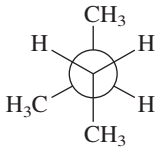
3.26 Even though the methyl group occupies an equatorial site, the conformation shown is not the most stable one for methylcyclohexane. Explain.

3.27 Which do you expect to be the more stable conformation of *cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclobutane, A or B? Why?

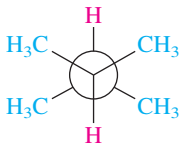
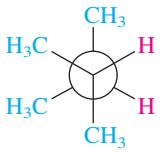


A B

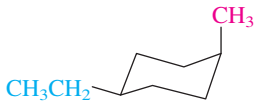
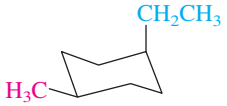
3.28 Determine whether the two structures in each of the following pairs represent *constitutional isomers,* different *conformations* of the same compound, or *stereoisomers* that cannot be interconverted by rotation about single bonds.

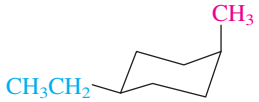
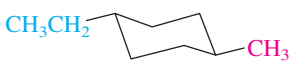
(a)  and 

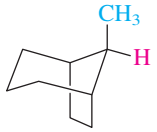
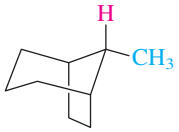
(b) and

(c)  and 

(d) *cis*-1,2-Dimethylcyclopentane and *trans*-1,3-dimethylcyclopentane

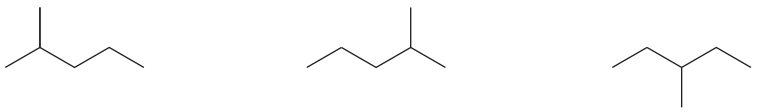
(e)  and 

(f)  and 

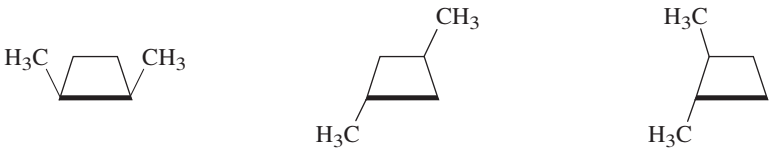
(g)  and 

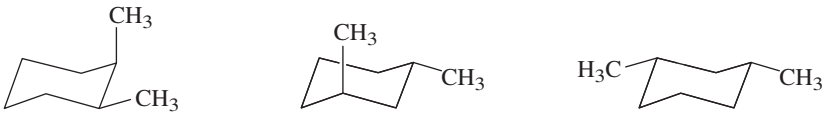
3.29 Select the compounds in each group that are isomers and specify whether they are constitutional isomers or stereoisomers.

(a) $(CH_3)_3CCH_2CH_2CH_3$ $(CH_3)_3CCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ $(CH_3)_2CHCHCH_2CH_3$ (CH_3)

(b) 

(c)

(d) 

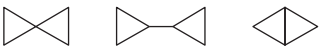
(e) 

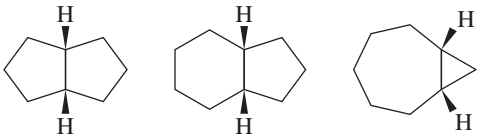
3.30 Excluding compounds that contain methyl or ethyl groups, write structural formulas for all the bicyclic isomers of (a) C_5H_8 and (b) C_6H_{10}.

3.31 In each of the following groups of compounds, identify the one with the largest heat of combustion and the one with the smallest. In which cases can a comparison of heats of combustion be used to assess relative stability?

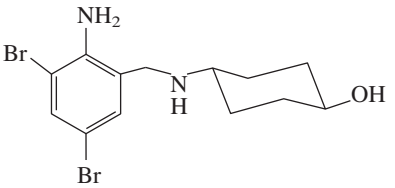
(a) Cyclopropane, cyclobutane, cyclopentane

(b) *cis*-1,2-Dimethylcyclopentane, methylcyclohexane, 1,1,2,2-tetramethylcyclopropane

(c) 

(d) 

3.32 Ambroxol is a drug used to treat bronchopulmonary disease.



Draw the structure of ambroxol in the alternative chair conformation. Which of the two conformations is more stable?

3.33 Write a structural formula for the most stable conformation of each of the following compounds:

(a) 2,2,5,5-Tetramethylhexane (Newman projection of conformation about C-3—C-4 bond)

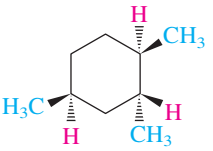
(b) 2,2,5,5-Tetramethylhexane (zigzag conformation of entire molecule)

(c) *cis*-1-Isopropyl-3-methylcyclohexane

(d) *trans*-1-Isopropyl-3-methylcyclohexane

(e) *cis*-1-*tert*-Butyl-4-ethylcyclohexane

(f) *cis*-1,1,3,4-Tetramethylcyclohexane

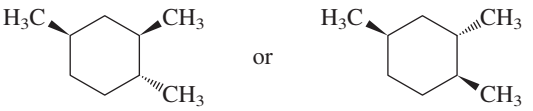
(g) 

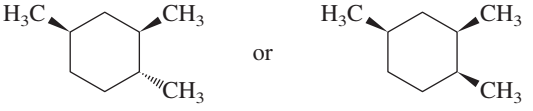
3.34 Identify the more stable stereoisomer in each of the following pairs, and give the reason for your choice:

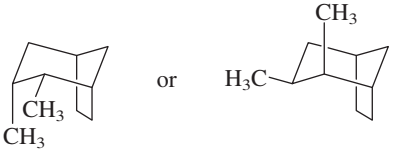
(a) *cis*- or *trans*-1-Isopropyl-2-methylcyclohexane

(b) cis- or *trans*-1-Isopropyl-3-methylcyclohexane

(c) cis- or *trans*-1-Isopropyl-4-methylcyclohexane

(d) 

(e) 

(f) 

3.35 One stereoisomer of 1,1,3,5-tetramethylcyclohexane is 15 kJ/mol (3.7 kcal/mol) less stable than the other. Indicate which isomer is the less stable, and identify the reason for its decreased stability.

3.36 The heats of combustion of the more and less stable stereoisomers of the 1,2-, 1,3-, and 1,4-dimethylcyclohexanes are given here. The values are higher for the 1,2-dimethylcyclohexanes than for the 1,3- and 1,4-isomers. Suggest an explanation.

Dimethylcyclohexane	1,2	1,3	1,4
Heats of combustion (kJ/mol):			
More stable stereoisomer	5217	5212	5212
Less stable stereoisomer	5223	5219	5219

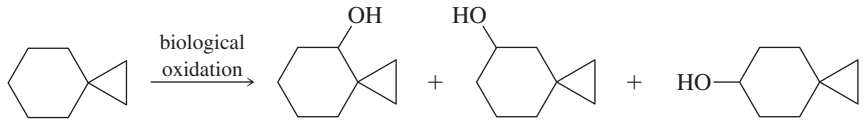
3.37 One of the following two stereoisomers is 20 kJ/mol (4.9 kcal/mol) less stable than the other. Indicate which isomer is the less stable, and identify the reason for its decreased stability.

A B

3.38 Oxidation of 4-*tert*-butylthiane proceeds according to the equation shown, but the resulting sulfoxide is a mixture of two isomers. Explain by writing appropriate sructural formulas.

3.39 Biological oxidation of hydrocarbons is a commonly observed process.

(a) To what class of hydrocarbons does the reactant in the following equation belong? What is its IUPAC name?

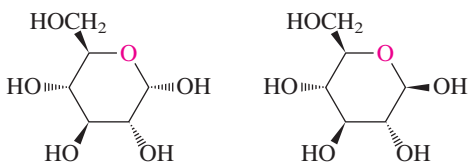


Hydrocarbon Alcohol A (19%) Alcohol B (63%) Alcohol C (18%)

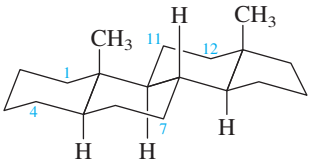
(b) Identify by IUPAC locant the carbon that is oxidized in the formation of each product.

(c) How are alcohols A, B, and C related? Are they constitutional isomers or stereoisomers?

3.40 The following are representations of two forms of glucose. The six-membered ring is known to exist in a chair conformation in each form. Draw clear representations of the most stable conformation of each. Are they two different conformations of the same molecule, or are they stereoisomers that cannot be interconverted by rotation about single bonds? Which substituents (if any) occupy axial sites?

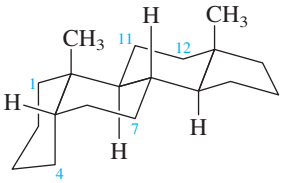


3.41 A typical steroid skeleton is shown along with the numbering scheme used for this class of compounds. Specify in each case whether the designated substituent is axial or equatorial.



(a) Substituent at C-1 cis to the methyl groups
(b) Substituent at C-4 cis to the methyl groups
(c) Substituent at C-7 trans to the methyl groups
(d) Substituent at C-11 trans to the methyl groups
(e) Substituent at C-12 cis to the methyl groups

3.42 Repeat Problem 3.41 for the stereoisomeric steroid skeleton having a cis ring fusion between the first two rings.



3.43 (a) Write Newman projections for the gauche and anti conformations of 1,2-dichloroethane ($ClCH_2CH_2Cl$).

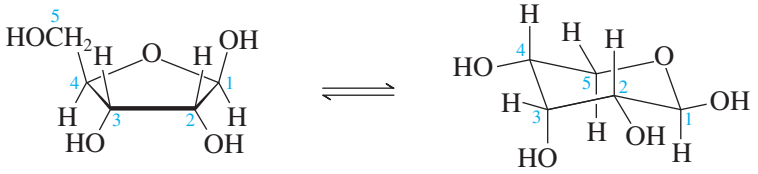
(b) The measured dipole moment of $ClCH_2CH_2Cl$ is 1.12 D. Which one of the following statements about 1,2-dichloroethane is false?

(1) It may exist entirely in the anti conformation.
(2) It may exist entirely in the gauche conformation.
(3) It may exist as a mixture of anti and gauche conformations.

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 3

Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates

Five- and six-membered ring structures are common in carbohydrates and are often in equilibrium with each other. The five-membered ring structures are called furanose forms; the six-membered ring structures are pyranose forms. D-Ribose, especially in its β-furanose form, is a familiar carbohydrate.



D-Ribose: β–Furanose form β–Pyranose form

3.44 The β–furanose and β–pyranose forms of D-ribose are:

A. Conformational isomers
B. Constitutional isomers
C. Resonance forms
D. Stereoisomers

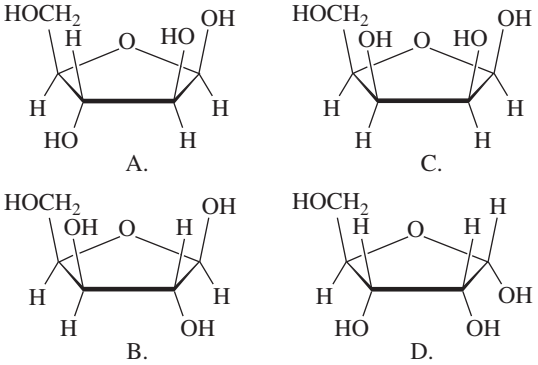
3.45 What is the orientation of the OH groups at C-2 and C-3 in the β–pyranose form of D-ribose?

A. Both are axial.
B. Both are equatorial.
C. C-2 is axial; C-3 is equatorial.
D. C-2 is equatorial; C-3 is axial.

3.46 The OH groups at C-2 and C3 in the β–pyranose form of D-ribose are:

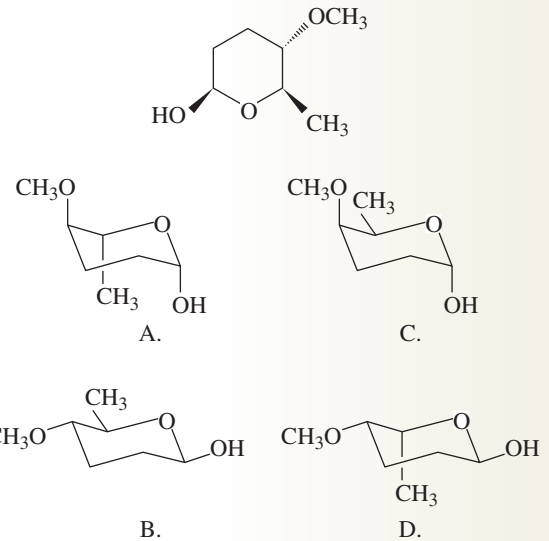
A. cis and gauche
B. cis and anti
C. trans and gauche
D. trans and anti

3.47 All of the OH groups of the β–pyranose form of D-xylose are equatorial. Which of the following is the β–furanose form of D-xylose?



A. C. B. D.

3.48 The carbohydrate shown here is a component of a drug used in veterinary medicine. Which is its most stable pyranose conformation?

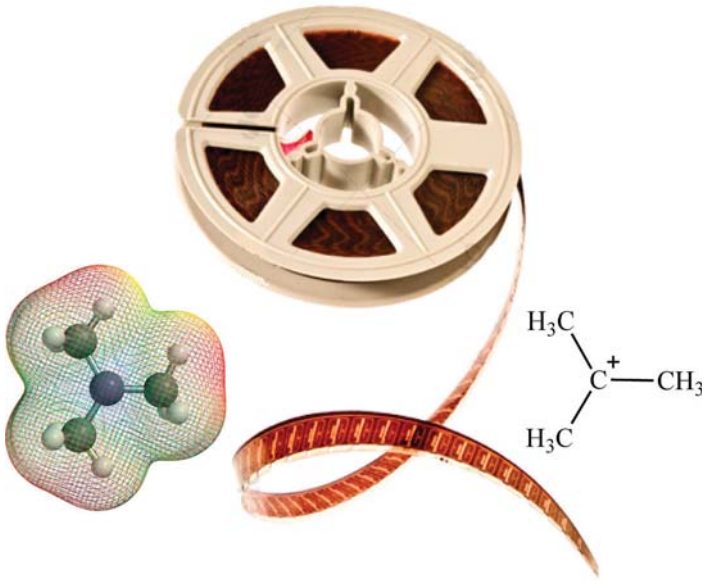


A. C. B. D.

3.49 What are the O—C(1)—C(2)—O and O—C(2)—C(3)—O torsion (dihedral) angles in the β-pyranose form of D-ribose?

A. 60° and 180°, respectively.
B. 180° and 60°, respectively.
C. Both are 60°.
D. Both are 180°.

4



CHAPTER OUTLINE

4.1 Functional Groups 133
4.2 IUPAC Nomenclature of Alkyl Halides 134
4.3 IUPAC Nomenclature of Alcohols 135
4.4 Classes of Alcohols and Alkyl Halides 136
4.5 Bonding in Alcohols and Alkyl Halides 136
4.6 Physical Properties of Alcohols and Alkyl Halides: Intermolecular Forces 137
4.7 Preparation of Alkyl Halides from Alcohols and Hydrogen Halides 141
4.8 Reaction of Alcohols with Hydrogen Halides: The S_N1 Mechanism 142
4.9 Structure, Bonding, and Stability of Carbocations 149
4.10 Effect of Alcohol Structure on Reaction Rate 152
4.11 Reaction of Methyl and Primary Alcohols with Hydrogen Halides: The S_N2 Mechanism 153
4.12 Other Methods for Converting Alcohols to Alkyl Halides 155
4.13 Halogenation of Alkanes 156
4.14 Chlorination of Methane 156
4.15 Structure and Stability of Free Radicals 157
■ From Bond Enthalpies to Heats of Reaction 161
4.16 Mechanism of Methane Chlorination 161
4.17 Halogenation of Higher Alkanes 163
4.18 Summary 167
Problems 170
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 4: More About Potential Energy Diagrams 174

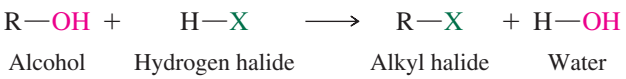
As a motion picture tells a story, so too a mechanism tells us how a chemical reaction takes place. If we could look at a reaction "frame-by-frame," as we can with a film reel, we would observe intermediates and transition states that appear during it.

Alcohols and Alkyl Halides: Introduction to Reaction Mechanisms

Our first three chapters established some fundamental principles concerning the *structure* of organic molecules and introduced the connection between structure and *reactivity* with a review of acid–base reactions. In this chapter we explore structure and reactivity in more detail by developing two concepts: *functional groups* and *reaction mechanisms.* A **functional group** is the atom or group in a molecule most responsible for the reaction the compound undergoes under a prescribed set of conditions. *How* the structure of the reactant is transformed to that of the product is what we mean by the reaction **mechanism.**

Organic compounds are grouped into families according to the functional groups they contain. Two of the most important families are **alcohols** and **alkyl halides;** both of which are versatile starting materials for preparing numerous other families and *will appear in virtually all of the remaining chapters of this text.*

The major portion of the present chapter concerns the conversion of alcohols to alkyl halides by reaction with hydrogen halides:



It is convenient in equations such as this to represent generic alcohols and alkyl halides as ROH and RX, respectively, where **"R"** stands for an alkyl group. In addition to convenience, this notation lets us focus more clearly on the functional group transformation; the OH functional group of an alcohol is replaced by a halogen, such as chlorine (X = Cl) or bromine (X = Br).

While developing the connections between structure, reaction, and mechanism, we will also extend the fundamentals of IUPAC nomenclature to functional group families, beginning with alcohols and alkyl halides.

4.1 Functional Groups

The families of hydrocarbons—*alkanes, alkenes, alkynes,* and *arenes*—were introduced in Section 2.1. The double bond is a functional group in an alkene, the triple bond a functional group in an alkyne, and the benzene ring itself is a functional group in an arene. Alkanes (RH) are not considered to have a functional group, although as we'll see later in this chapter, reactions that replace a hydrogen atom can take place. In general though, hydrogen atoms of alkanes are relatively unreactive and any other group attached to the hydrocarbon framework will be the functional group.

Table 4.1 lists the major families of organic compounds covered in this text and their functional groups.

Problem 4.1

(a) Write a structural formula for a sulfide having the molecular formula C_3H_8S. (b) What two thiols have the molecular formula C_3H_8S?

Sample Solution (a) According to Table 4.1, sulfides have the general formula RSR and the Rs may be the same or different. The only possible connectivity for a sulfide with three carbons is C—S—C—C. Therefore, the sulfide is $CH_3SCH_2CH_3$.

We have already touched on some of these functional-group families in our discussion of acids and bases. We have seen that alcohols resemble water in pK_a and that carboxylic acids, although weak acids, are stronger acids than alcohols. Carboxylic acids belong to one of the most important classes of organic compounds—those that contain carbonyl groups (C═O). They and other carbonyl-containing compounds rank among the most abundant and biologically significant naturally occurring substances. In this chapter we focus our attention on two classes of organic compounds listed in Table 4.1: alkyl halides and alcohols.

Carbonyl group chemistry is discussed in a block of four chapters (Chapters 17–20).

Problem 4.2

Many compounds contain more than one functional group. Elenolic acid is obtained from olive oil and contains three carbonyl groups. Classify each type according to Table 4.1. Identify the most acidic proton in elenolic acid and use Table 1.8 to estimate its pK_a.

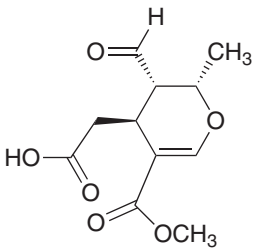
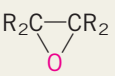
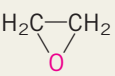
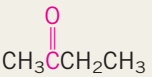
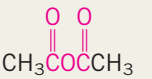
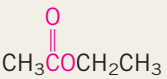


TABLE 4.1 Functional Groups in Some Important Classes of Organic Compounds

Class	Generalized abbreviation*	Representative example	Name of example†
Alcohol	ROH	CH_3CH_2OH	Ethanol
Alkyl halide	RCl	CH_3CH_2Cl	Chloroethane
Amine‡	RNH_2	$CH_3CH_2NH_2$	Ethanamine
Epoxide			Oxirane
Ether	ROR	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$	Diethyl ether
Nitrile	$RC{\equiv}N$	$CH_3CH_2C{\equiv}N$	Propanenitrile
Nitroalkane	RNO_2	$CH_3CH_2NO_2$	Nitroethane
Sulfide	RSR	CH_3SCH_3	Dimethyl sulfide
Thiol	RSH	CH_3CH_2SH	Ethanethiol
Aldehyde			Ethanal
Ketone			2-Butanone
Carboxylic acid			Ethanoic acid
Carboxylic acid derivatives			
Acyl halide			Ethanoyl chloride
Acid anhydride			Ethanoic anhydride
Ester			Ethyl ethanoate
Amide			Ethanamide

*When more than one R group is present, the groups may be the same or different.
†Most compounds have more than one acceptable name.
‡The example given is a *primary* amine (RNH_2). *Secondary* amines have the general structure R_2NH; *tertiary* amines are R_3N.

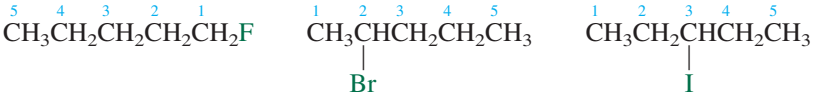
4.2 IUPAC Nomenclature of Alkyl Halides

The IUPAC rules permit certain common alkyl group names to be used. These include *n*-propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, isobutyl, *tert*-butyl, and neopentyl (Section 2.16).

The IUPAC rules permit alkyl halides to be named in two different ways, called *functional class* nomenclature and *substitutive* nomenclature. In **functional class nomenclature** the alkyl group and the halide (*fluoride, chloride, bromide,* or *iodide)* are designated as separate words. The alkyl group is named on the basis of its longest continuous chain beginning at the carbon to which the halogen is attached.

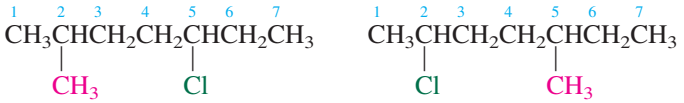
Methyl fluoride | Pentyl chloride | 1-Ethylbutyl bromide | Cyclohexyl iodide

Substitutive nomenclature of alkyl halides treats the halogen as a *halo (fluoro-, chloro-, bromo-,* or *iodo-) substituent* on an alkane chain. The carbon chain is numbered in the direction that gives the substituted carbon the lower number.



1-Fluoropentane | 2-Bromopentane | 3-Iodopentane

When the carbon chain bears both a halogen and an alkyl substituent, the two are considered of equal rank, and the chain is numbered so as to give the lower number to the substituent nearer the end of the chain.



5-Chloro-2-methylheptane | 2-Chloro-5-methylheptane

Problem 4.3

Write structural formulas and give the functional class and substitutive names of all the isomeric alkyl chlorides that have the molecular formula C_4H_9Cl.

Substitutive names are preferred, but functional class names are sometimes more convenient or more familiar and are frequently encountered in organic chemistry.

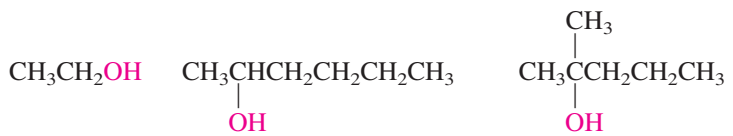
Functional class names are part of the IUPAC system; they are not "common names."

4.3 IUPAC Nomenclature of Alcohols

Functional class names of alcohols are derived by naming the alkyl group that bears the hydroxyl substituent (—OH) and then adding *alcohol* as a separate word. The chain is always numbered beginning at the carbon to which the hydroxyl group is attached.

Substitutive names of alcohols are developed by identifying the longest continuous chain that bears the hydroxyl group and replacing the *-e* ending of the corresponding alkane by *-ol.* The position of the hydroxyl group is indicated by number, choosing the sequence that assigns the lower locant to the carbon that bears the hydroxyl group.

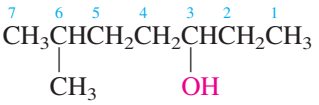
The 1993 IUPAC recommendations alter the substitutive names of alcohols by bracketing the numerical locant for the substituted carbon with hyphens and placing it immediately before the *-ol* ending.



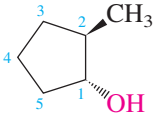
Functional class name:	Ethyl alcohol	1-Methylpentyl alcohol	1,1-Dimethylbutyl alcohol
Substitutive names:	Ethanol	2-Hexanol Hexan-2-ol	2-Methyl-2-pentanol 2-Methylpentan-2-ol

Several alcohols are commonplace substances, well known by common names that reflect their origin (wood alcohol, grain alcohol) or use (rubbing alcohol). Wood alcohol is *methanol* (methyl alcohol, CH_3OH), grain alcohol is *ethanol* (ethyl alcohol, CH_3CH_2OH), and rubbing alcohol is *2-propanol* [isopropyl alcohol, $(CH_3)_2CHOH$].

Hydroxyl groups take precedence over ("outrank") alkyl groups and halogens in determining the direction in which a carbon chain is numbered. The OH group is assumed to be attached to C-1 of a cyclic alcohol.



6-Methyl-3-heptanol
6-Methylheptan-3-ol



trans-2-Methylcyclopentanol
trans-2-Methylcyclopentan-1-ol

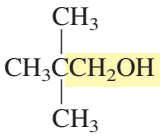
3-Fluoro-1-propanol
3-Fluoropropan-1-ol

Problem 4.4

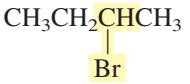
Write structural formulas, and give the functional class and substitutive names of all the isomeric alcohols that have the molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$.

4.4 Classes of Alcohols and Alkyl Halides

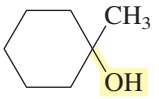
Alcohols and alkyl halides are classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary according to the degree of substitution of the carbon that bears the functional group (Section 2.16). Thus, *primary alcohols* and *primary alkyl halides* are compounds of the type RCH_2G (where G is the functional group), *secondary alcohols* and *secondary alkyl halides* are compounds of the type R_2CHG, and *tertiary alcohols* and *tertiary alkyl halides* are compounds of the type R_3CG.



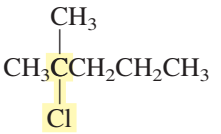
2,2-Dimethyl-1-propanol
(a primary alcohol)



2-Bromobutane
(a secondary alkyl halide)



1-Methylcyclohexanol
(a tertiary alcohol)



2-Chloro-2-methylpentane
(a tertiary alkyl halide)

Problem 4.5

Classify the isomeric $C_4H_{10}O$ alcohols as being primary, secondary, or tertiary.

Many of the properties of alcohols and alkyl halides are affected by whether their functional groups are attached to primary, secondary, or tertiary carbons. We will see a number of cases in which a functional group attached to a primary carbon is more reactive than one attached to a secondary or tertiary carbon, as well as other cases in which the reverse is true.

4.5 Bonding in Alcohols and Alkyl Halides

The carbon that bears the functional group is sp^3-hybridized in alcohols and alkyl halides. Figure 4.1 illustrates bonding in methanol. The bond angles at carbon are approximately tetrahedral, as is the C—O—H angle. A similar orbital hybridization model applies to alkyl halides, with the halogen connected to sp^3-hybridized carbon by a σ bond. Carbon–halogen bond distances in alkyl halides increase in the order C—F (140 pm) < C—Cl (179 pm) < C—Br (197 pm) < C—I (216 pm).

Carbon–oxygen and carbon–halogen bonds are polar covalent bonds, and carbon bears a partial positive charge in alcohols ($^{\delta+}C—O^{\delta-}$) and in alkyl halides ($^{\delta+}C—X^{\delta-}$).

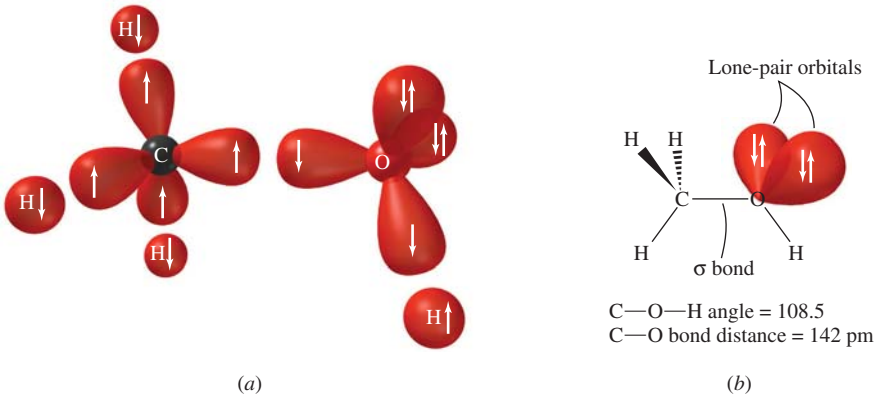
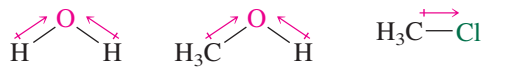


Figure 4.1

Orbital hybridization model of bonding in methanol. (*a*) The orbitals used in bonding are the 1*s* orbital of hydrogen and sp^3-hybridized orbitals of carbon and oxygen. (*b*) The bond angles at carbon and oxygen are close to tetrahedral, and the carbon–oxygen σ bond is about 10 pm shorter than a carbon–carbon single bond.

Alcohols and alkyl halides are polar molecules. The dipole moments of methanol and chloromethane are very similar to each other and to water.



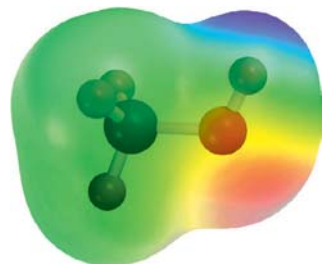
Water (μ = 1.8 D) Methanol (μ = 1.7 D) Chloromethane (μ = 1.9 D)

Problem 4.6

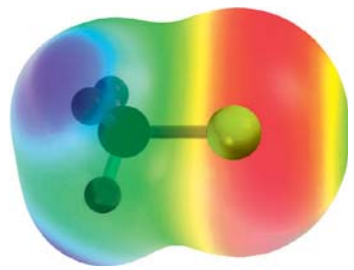
Bromine is less electronegative than chlorine, yet methyl bromide and methyl chloride have very similar dipole moments. Why?

Figure 4.2 maps the electrostatic potential in methanol and chloromethane. Both are similar in that the sites of highest negative potential (red) are near the electronegative atoms: oxygen and chlorine. The polarization of the bonds to oxygen and chlorine, as well as their unshared electron pairs, contribute to the concentration of negative charge on these atoms.

Relatively simple notions of attractive forces between opposite charges are sufficient to account for many of the properties of chemical substances. You will find it helpful to keep the polarity of carbon–oxygen and carbon–halogen bonds in mind as we develop the properties of alcohols and alkyl halides in later sections.



Methanol (CH_3OH)



Chloromethane (CH_3Cl)

Figure 4.2

Electrostatic potential maps of methanol and chloromethane. The electrostatic potential is most negative near oxygen in methanol and near chlorine in chloromethane. The most positive region is near the O—H proton in methanol and near the methyl group in chloromethane.

4.6 Physical Properties of Alcohols and Alkyl Halides: Intermolecular Forces

Boiling Point. When describing the effect of alkane structure on boiling point in Section 2.20, we pointed out that van der Waals attractive forces between neutral molecules are of three types.

1. Induced-dipole/induced-dipole forces (dispersion forces; London forces)
2. Dipole/induced-dipole forces
3. Dipole–dipole forces

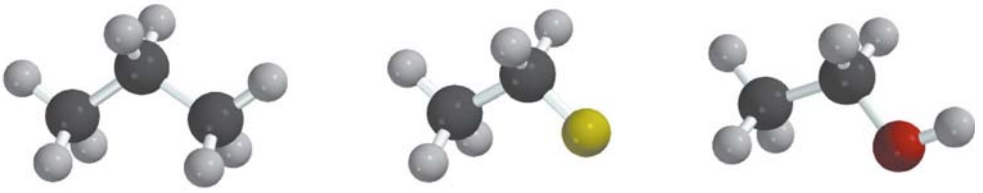
Induced-dipole/induced-dipole forces are the only intermolecular attractive forces available to nonpolar molecules such as alkanes and are important in polar molecules as well. In addition, polar molecules also engage in dipole–dipole and dipole/induced-dipole

Figure 4.3

A dipole–dipole attractive force. Two molecules of a polar substance associate so that the positively polarized region of one and the negatively polarized region of the other attract each other.

attractions. The **dipole–dipole attractive force** is easiest to visualize and is illustrated in Figure 4.3. Two molecules of a polar substance experience a mutual attraction between the positively polarized region of one molecule and the negatively polarized region of the other. The **dipole/induced-dipole force** combines features of both the induced-dipole/induced-dipole and dipole–dipole attractive forces. A polar region of one molecule alters the electron distribution in a nonpolar region of another in a direction that produces an attractive force between them.

We can gain a sense of the relative importance of these intermolecular forces by considering three compounds similar in size and shape: the alkane propane, the alkyl halide fluoroethane, and the alcohol ethanol. Both of the polar compounds, ethanol and fluoroethane, have higher boiling points than the nonpolar one, propane. We attribute this to a combination of dipole/induced-dipole and dipole–dipole attractive forces that are present in the liquid states of ethanol and fluoroethane, but absent in propane.



	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	CH_3CH_2F	CH_3CH_2OH
	Propane (μ = 0 D)	Fluoroethane (μ = 1.9 D)	Ethanol (μ = 1.7 D)
Boiling point:	−42°C	−32°C	78°C

The most striking difference, however, is that despite the similarity in their dipole moments, ethanol has a much higher boiling point than fluoroethane. This suggests that the attractive forces in ethanol are unusually strong. They are an example of a special type of dipole–dipole attraction called **hydrogen bonding** and involve, in this case, the positively polarized proton of the —OH group of one ethanol molecule with the negatively polarized oxygen of another. The oxygen of the —OH group of alcohols serves as a hydrogen bond *acceptor,* while the hydrogen attached to the oxygen serves as a hydrogen bond *donor.* Having both hydrogen bond acceptor and donor capability in the same molecule creates a strong network among ethanol molecules in the liquid phase.

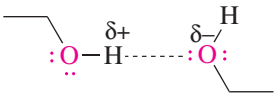


Figure 4.4 shows the association of two ethanol molecules to form a hydrogen-bonded complex. The proton in the hydrogen bond (O—H---O) is not shared equally between the two oxygens, but is closer to and more strongly bonded to one oxygen than the other. Typical hydrogen bond strengths are on the order of 20 kJ/mol (about 5 kcal/mol), making them some 15–20 times weaker than most covalent bonds. Extended networks of hydrogen bonds are broken when individual ethanol molecules escape from the liquid to the vapor phase, but the covalent bonds remain intact.

Among organic compounds, hydrogen bonding involves only OH or NH protons, as in:

O—H---O O—H---N N—H---O N—H---N

The hydrogen must be bonded to a strongly electronegative element in order for the bond to be polar enough to support hydrogen bonding. Therefore, C—H groups do not participate in hydrogen bonds.

Hydrogen bonds between —OH groups are stronger than those between —NH groups, as a comparison of the boiling points of water (H_2O, 100°C) and ammonia (NH_3, –33°C) demonstrates.

Problem 4.7

The constitutional isomer of ethanol, dimethyl ether (CH_3OCH_3), is a gas at room temperature. Suggest an explanation for this observation.

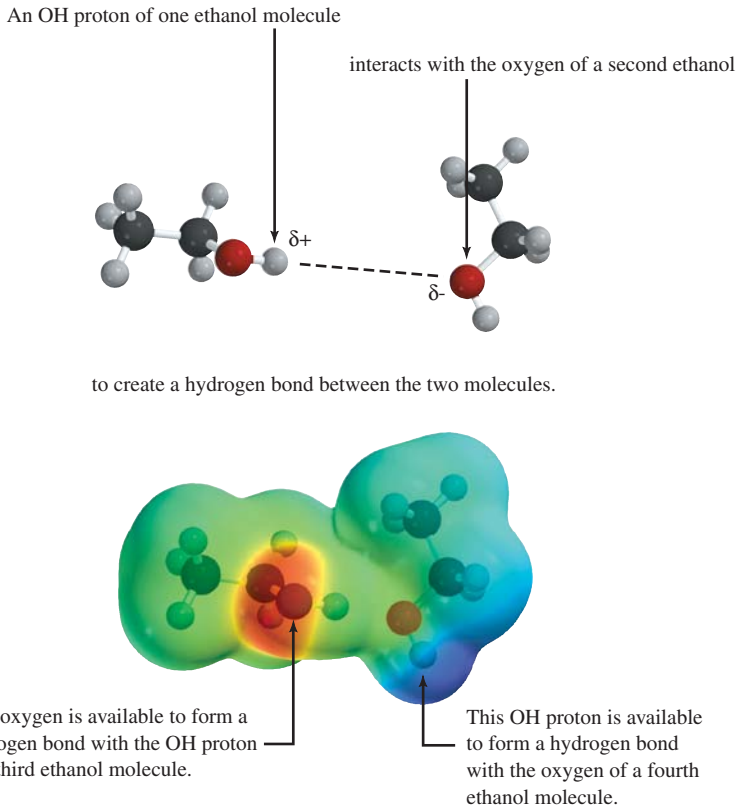


Figure 4.4

Hydrogen bonding in ethanol involves the oxygen of one molecule and the proton of the —OH group of another. A network of hydrogen-bonded complexes composed of many molecules characterizes the liquid phase of ethanol.

More than other dipole–dipole attractions, intermolecular hydrogen bonds are strong enough to impose a relatively high degree of structural order on systems in which they occur. We'll see, in Chapters 25 and 26, that the three-dimensional structures adopted by proteins and nucleic acids, the organic chemicals of life, are strongly influenced by hydrogen bonds.

Table 4.2 lists the boiling points of some representative alkyl halides and alcohols. When comparing the boiling points of related compounds as a function of the *alkyl group,* we find that the boiling point increases with the number of carbon atoms, as it does with alkanes.

The importance of hydrogen bonding in alcohols is evident in the last column of the table where it can be seen that the boiling points of alcohols are consistently higher than the corresponding alkyl fluoride, chloride, or bromide.

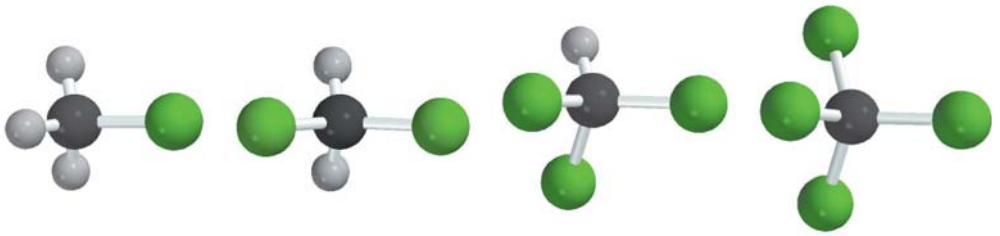
Among alkyl halides, the boiling point increases with increasing size of the halogen; alkyl fluorides have the lowest boiling points, alkyl iodides the highest. Dispersion forces are mainly responsible. Induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractions are favored when the electron cloud around an atom is easily distorted. This property of an atom is its **polarizability** and is more pronounced when the electrons are farther from the nucleus (iodine) than when they

TABLE 4.2 Boiling Point of Some Alkyl Halides and Alcohols

Name of alkyl group	Formula	Substituent X and boiling point, °C (1 atm)				
		X = F	X = Cl	X = Br	X = I	X = OH
Methyl	CH_3X	–78	–24	3	42	65
Ethyl	CH_3CH_2X	–32	12	38	72	78
Propyl	$CH_3CH_2CH_2X$	–3	47	71	103	97
Pentyl	$CH_3(CH_2)_3CH_2X$	65	108	129	157	138
Hexyl	$CH_3(CH_2)_4CH_2X$	92	134	155	180	157

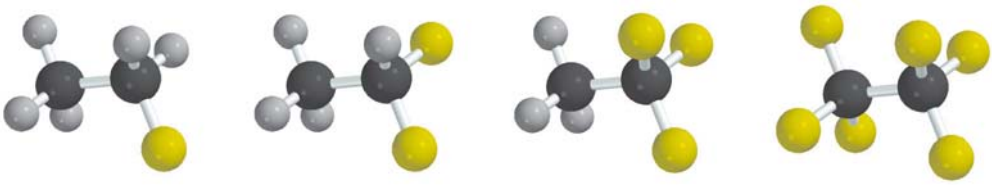
are closer (fluorine). Thus, induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractions are strongest in alkyl iodides, weakest in alkyl fluorides, and the boiling points of alkyl halides reflect this.

The boiling points of the chlorinated derivatives of methane increase with the number of chlorine atoms because the induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractive forces increase with each replacement of hydrogen by chlorine.



	CH_3Cl	CH_2Cl_2	$CHCl_3$	CCl_4
	Chloromethane	Dichloromethane	Trichloromethane	Tetrachloromethane
Boiling point:	−24°C	40°C	61°C	77°C

Fluorine is unique among the halogens in that increasing the number of fluorines does not lead to higher and higher boiling points.



	CH_3CH_2F	CH_3CHF_2	CH_3CF_3	CF_3CF_3
	Fluoroethane	1,1-Difluoroethane	1,1,1-Trifluoroethane	Hexafluoroethane
Boiling point:	−32°C	−25°C	−47°C	−78°C

These boiling points illustrate why we should do away with the notion that boiling points always increase with increasing molecular weight.

Thus, although the difluoride CH_3CHF_2 boils at a higher temperature than CH_3CH_2F, the trifluoride CH_3CF_3 boils at a lower temperature than either of them. Even more striking is the observation that the hexafluoride CF_3CF_3 is the lowest boiling of any of the fluorinated derivatives of ethane. The boiling point of CF_3CF_3 is, in fact, only 11°C higher than that of ethane itself. The reason for this behavior has to do with the very low polarizability of fluorine and a decrease in induced-dipole/induced-dipole forces that accompanies the incorporation of fluorine substituents into a molecule. Their weak intermolecular attractive forces give fluorinated hydrocarbons certain desirable physical properties such as that found in the "no stick" *Teflon* coating of frying pans. Teflon is a *polymer* (Section 6.14 and Chapter 27) made up of long chains of —CF_2CF_2— units.

Solubility in Water. Alkyl halides and alcohols differ markedly from one another in their solubility in water. All alkyl halides are insoluble in water, but low-molecular-weight alcohols (methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, and isopropyl) are soluble in water in all proportions. Their ability to participate in intermolecular hydrogen bonding not only affects the boiling points of alcohols, but also enhances their water solubility. Hydrogen-bonded networks of the type shown in Figure 4.5, in which alcohol and water molecules associate with one another, replace the alcohol–alcohol and water–water hydrogen-bonded networks present in the pure substances.

Higher alcohols become more "hydrocarbon-like" and less water-soluble. 1-Octanol, for example, dissolves to the extent of only 1 mL in 2000 mL of water. As the alkyl chain gets longer, the hydrophobic effect (Section 2.20) becomes more important, to the point that it, more than hydrogen bonding, governs the solubility of alcohols.

Density. Alkyl fluorides and chlorides are less dense, and alkyl bromides and iodides more dense, than water.

	$CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_2F$	$CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_2Cl$	$CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_2Br$	$CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_2I$
Density (20°C):	0.80 g/mL	0.89 g/mL	1.12 g/mL	1.34 g/mL

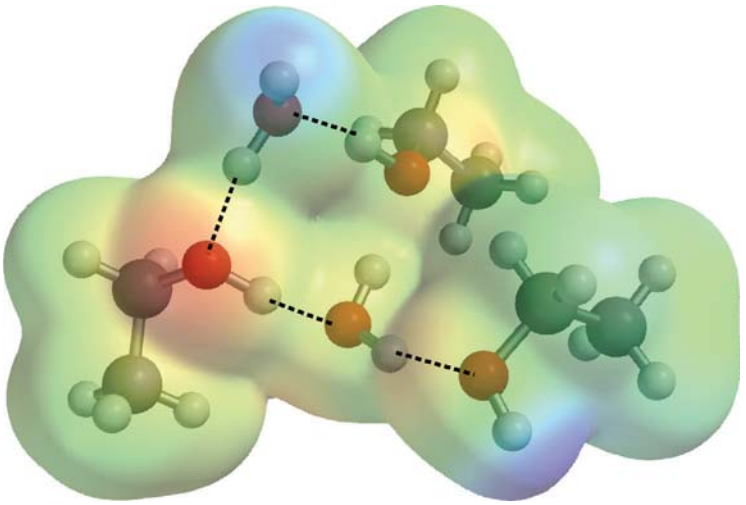


Figure 4.5

Hydrogen bonding between molecules of ethanol and water.

Because alkyl halides are insoluble in water, a mixture of an alkyl halide and water separates into two layers. When the alkyl halide is a fluoride or chloride, it is the upper layer and water is the lower. The situation is reversed when the alkyl halide is a bromide or an iodide. In these cases the alkyl halide is the lower layer. Polyhalogenation increases the density. The compounds CH_2Cl_2, $CHCl_3$, and CCl_4, for example, are all more dense than water.

All liquid alcohols have densities of approximately 0.8 g/mL and are less dense than water.

4.7 Preparation of Alkyl Halides from Alcohols and Hydrogen Halides

Much of what organic chemists do is directed toward practical goals. Chemists in the pharmaceutical industry synthesize new compounds as potential drugs for the treatment of disease. Agricultural chemicals designed to increase crop yields include organic compounds used for weed control, insecticides, and fungicides. Among the "building block" molecules used as starting materials to prepare new substances, alcohols and alkyl halides are especially valuable.

The reactions to be described in the remainder of this chapter use either an alkane or an alcohol as the starting material for preparing an alkyl halide. By knowing how to prepare alkyl halides, we can better appreciate the material in later chapters, where alkyl halides figure prominently in key functional group transformations. *Just as important, the preparation of alkyl halides will serve as our focal point as we examine the principles of reaction mechanisms.* We'll begin with the preparation of alkyl halides from alcohols by reaction with hydrogen halides according to the general equation:

$$\underset{\text{Alcohol}}{R{-}OH} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen halide}}{H{-}X} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Alkyl halide}}{R{-}X} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H{-}OH}$$

The order of reactivity of the hydrogen halides parallels their acidity: HI > HBr > HCl >> HF. Hydrogen iodide is used infrequently, however, and the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen fluoride is not a useful method for the preparation of alkyl fluorides.

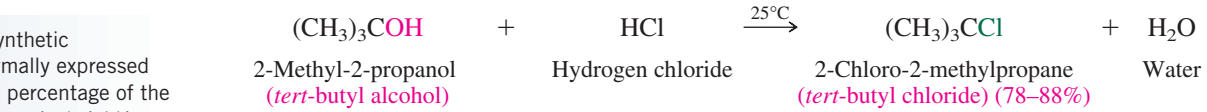
Among the various classes of alcohols, tertiary alcohols are observed to be the most reactive and primary alcohols the least reactive.

Increasing reactivity of alcohols toward hydrogen halides

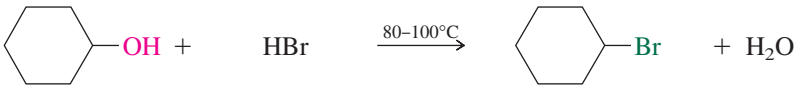
$$\underset{\substack{\text{Primary}\\ \text{Least reactive}}}{RCH_2OH} < \underset{\text{Secondary}}{R_2CHOH} < \underset{\substack{\text{Tertiary}\\ \text{Most reactive}}}{R_3COH}$$

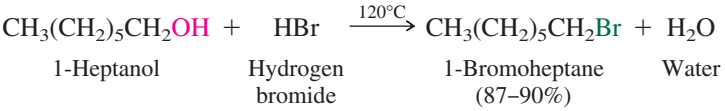
Tertiary alcohols are converted to alkyl chlorides in high yield within minutes on reaction with hydrogen chloride at room temperature and below.

The efficiency of a synthetic transformation is normally expressed as a *percent yield*, or percentage of the theoretical yield. *Theoretical yield* is the amount of product that could be formed if the reaction proceeded to completion and did not lead to any products other than those given in the equation.

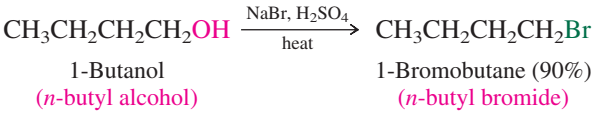


Secondary and primary alcohols do not react with HCl at rates fast enough to make the preparation of the corresponding alkyl chlorides a method of practical value. Therefore, the more reactive hydrogen halide HBr is used; even then, elevated temperatures are required to increase the rate of reaction.





The same kind of transformation may be carried out by heating an alcohol with sodium bromide and sulfuric acid.



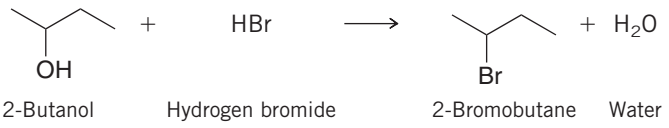
We'll often write chemical equations in the abbreviated form just shown, in which reagents, especially inorganic ones, are not included in the body of the equation but instead are indicated over the arrow. Inorganic products—in this case, water—are usually omitted.

Problem 4.8

Write chemical equations for the reaction that takes place between each of the following pairs of reactants:

(a) 2-Butanol and hydrogen bromide
(b) 3-Ethyl-3-pentanol and hydrogen chloride
(c) 1-Tetradecanol and hydrogen bromide

Sample Solution (a) An alcohol and a hydrogen halide react to form an alkyl halide and water. In this case 2-bromobutane was isolated in 73% yield.



4.8 Reaction of Alcohols with Hydrogen Halides: The S_N1 Mechanism

The reaction of an alcohol with a hydrogen halide is a **substitution.** A halogen, usually chlorine or bromine, replaces a hydroxyl group as a substituent on carbon. Calling the reaction a substitution tells us the relationship between the organic reactant and product but does not reveal the mechanism. The **mechanism** is the step-by-step pathway that leads from reactants to products. In developing a mechanism for a particular reaction, we combine some basic principles of chemical reactivity with experimental observations to deduce the most likely sequence of steps.

Mechanism 4.1

Formation of *tert*-Butyl Chloride from *tert*-Butyl Alcohol and Hydrogen Chloride

THE OVERALL REACTION:

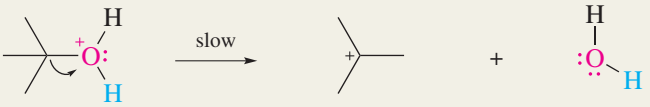
tert-Butyl alcohol Hydrogen chloride *tert*-Butyl chloride Water

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Protonation of *tert*-butyl alcohol to give an alkyloxonium ion:

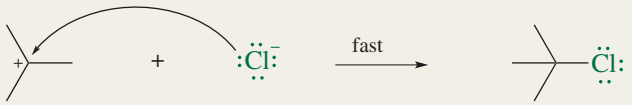
tert-Butyl alcohol Hydrogen chloride *tert*-Butyloxonium ion Chloride ion

Step 2: Dissociation of *tert*-butyloxonium ion to give a carbocation:



tert-Butyloxonium ion *tert*-Butyl cation Water

Step 3: Capture of *tert*-butyl cation by chloride ion:



tert-Butyl cation Chloride ion *tert*-Butyl chloride

Consider the reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride:

$$(CH_3)_3COH + HCl \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3CCl + H_2O$$

tert-Butyl alcohol; Hydrogen chloride; *tert*-Butyl chloride; Water

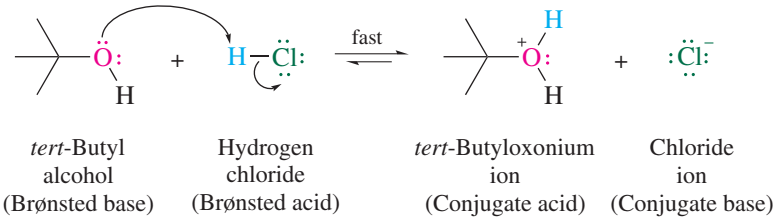
The generally accepted mechanism for this reaction is presented as a series of three equations in Mechanism 4.1. We say "generally accepted" because a reaction mechanism can never be proven correct. A mechanism is our best present assessment of how a reaction proceeds and must account for all experimental observations. If new experimental data appear that conflict with the mechanism, the mechanism must be modified to accommodate them. If the new data are consistent with the proposed mechanism, our confidence grows that the mechanism is likely to be correct.

Each equation in Mechanism 4.1 represents a single **elementary step,** meaning that it involves only one transition state. A particular reaction might proceed by way of a single elementary step, in which it is described as a **concerted reaction,** or by a series of elementary steps as in Mechanism 4.1. To be valid a proposed mechanism must meet a number of criteria, one of which is that the sum of the equations for the elementary steps must correspond to the equation for the overall reaction. Before we examine each step in detail, you should verify that the process in Mechanism 4.1 satisfies this requirement.

Step 1: Proton Transfer

We saw in Chapter 1, especially in Table 1.8, that alcohols resemble water in respect to their Brønsted acidity (ability to donate a proton *from oxygen*). They also resemble water in their Brønsted basicity (ability to accept a proton *on oxygen*). Just as proton transfer to a water molecule gives oxonium ion (hydronium ion, H_3O^+), proton transfer to an alcohol gives an **alkyloxonium ion** (ROH_2^+).

Recall from Section 1.12 that curved arrows indicate the *movement of electrons* in chemical reactions.



Furthermore, a strong acid such as HCl that ionizes completely when dissolved in water, also ionizes completely when dissolved in an alcohol. Many important reactions of alcohols involve strong acids either as reactants or as catalysts. In all these reactions the first step is formation of an alkyloxonium ion by proton transfer from the acid to the alcohol.

The **molecularity** of an elementary step is given by the number of species that undergo a chemical change in that step. Transfer of a proton from hydrogen chloride to *tert*-butyl alcohol is **bimolecular** because two molecules [HCl and $(CH_3)_3COH$] undergo chemical change.

The *tert*-butyloxonium ion formed in step 1 is an **intermediate.** It was not one of the initial reactants, nor is it formed as one of the final products. Rather it is formed in one elementary step, consumed in another, and lies on the pathway from reactants to products.

Potential energy diagrams of the kind introduced in Section 3.1 are especially useful when applied to reaction mechanisms. One for proton transfer from hydrogen chloride to *tert*-butyl alcohol is shown in Figure 4.6. The potential energy of the system is plotted against the "reaction coordinate," which is a measure of the degree to which the reacting molecules have progressed on their way to products. Several aspects of the diagram are worth noting:

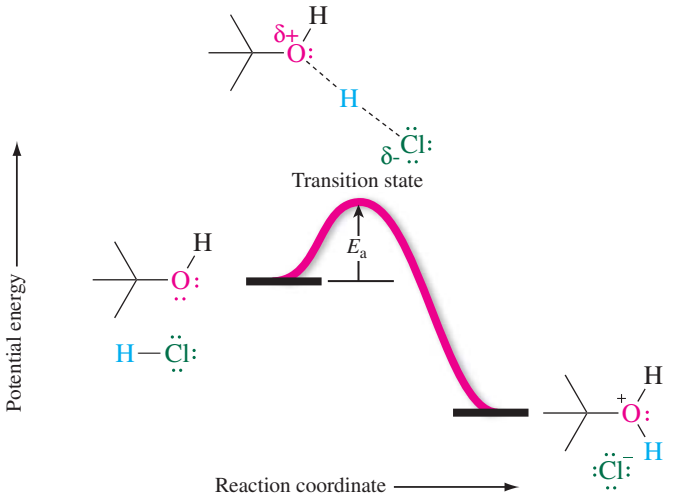
- Because this is an elementary step, it involves a single transition state.
- Proton transfers from strong acids to water and alcohols rank among the most rapid chemical processes and occur almost as fast as the molecules collide with one another. Thus the height of the energy barrier E_a for proton transfer must be quite low.
- The step is known to be exothermic, so the products are placed lower in energy than the reactants.

The 1967 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was shared by Manfred Eigen, a German chemist who developed novel methods for measuring the rates of very fast reactions such as proton transfers.

The concerted nature of proton transfer contributes to its rapid rate. The energy cost of breaking the H—Cl bond is partially offset by the energy released in forming the new

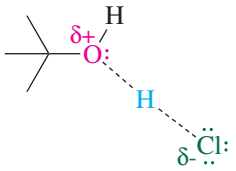
Figure 4.6

Potential energy diagram for proton transfer from hydrogen chloride to *tert*-butyl alcohol (step 1 of Mechanism 4.1).



bond between the transferred proton and the oxygen of the alcohol. Thus, the activation energy is far less than it would be for a hypothetical two-step process in which the H—Cl bond breaks first, followed by bond formation between H^+ and the alcohol.

The species present at the transition state is not a stable structure and cannot be isolated or examined directly. In general, the bonds in transition states are partially rather than fully formed. Its structure is assumed to be one in which the proton being transferred is partially bonded to both chlorine and oxygen simultaneously, although not necessarily to the same extent.



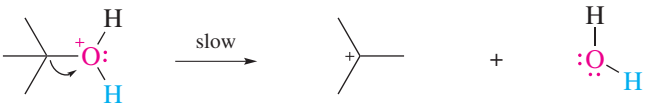
Dashed lines in transition-state structures represent *partial* bonds, that is, bonds in the process of being made or broken.

Inferring the structure at the transition state on the basis of the reactants and products of the elementary step in which it is involved is a time-honored practice in organic chemistry. Speaking specifically of transition states, George S. Hammond suggested that *if two states are similar in energy, they are similar in structure.* This rationale is known as **Hammond's postulate.** One of its corollaries is that the structure of a transition state more closely resembles the immediately preceding or following state to which it is closer in energy. In the case of the exothermic proton transfer in Figure 4.6, the transition state is closer in energy to the reactants and so resembles them more closely than it does the products of this step. We often call this an "early" transition state. The next step of this mechanism will provide us with an example of a "late" transition state.

Hammond made his proposal in 1955 while at Iowa State University. He later did pioneering work in organic photochemistry at CalTech.

Step 2: Carbocation Formation

In the second elementary step of Mechanism 4.1, the alkyloxonium ion dissociates to a molecule of water and a **carbocation,** an ion that contains a positively charged carbon.



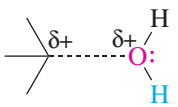
tert-Butyloxonium ion *tert*-Butyl cation Water

One way to name carbocations in the IUPAC system is to add the word "cation" to the name of the alkyl group.

Only one species, *tert*-butyloxonium ion, undergoes a chemical change in this step. Therefore, the step is **unimolecular.**

Like *tert*-butyloxonium ion, *tert*-butyl cation is an intermediate along the reaction pathway. It is, however, a relatively unstable species and its formation by dissociation of the alkyloxonium ion is endothermic. Step 2 is the slowest step in the mechanism and has the highest activation energy. Figure 4.7 shows a potential energy diagram for this step.

- Because this step is endothermic, the products of it are placed higher in energy than the reactants.
- The transition state is closer in energy to the carbocation (*tert*-butyl cation), so, according to Hammond's postulate, its structure more closely resembles the carbocation than it resembles *tert*-butyloxonium ion. The transition state has considerable "carbocation character," meaning that a significant degree of positive charge has developed at carbon, and its hybridization is closer to sp^2 than sp^3.



There is ample evidence from a variety of sources that carbocations are intermediates in many chemical reactions but are almost always too unstable to isolate. The simplest reason for the instability of carbocations is that the positively charged carbon has only six electrons in its valence shell—the octet rule is not satisfied for the positively charged carbon.

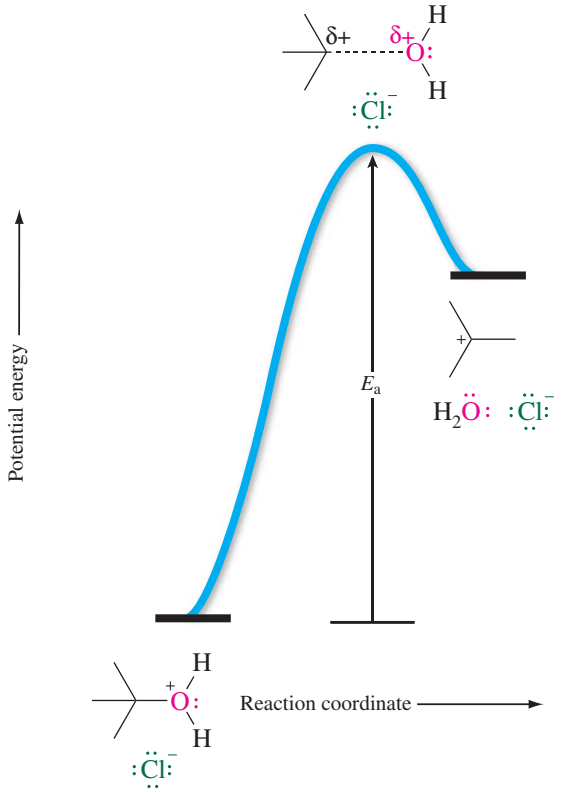
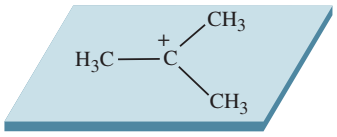


Figure 4.7

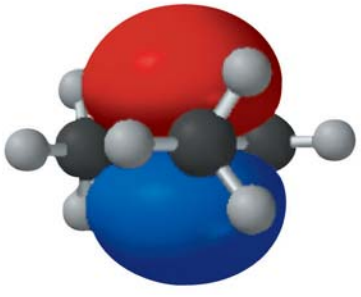
Potential energy diagram for dissociation of *tert*-butyloxonium ion to *tert*-butyl cation (step 2 of Mechanism 4.1).

The properties of *tert*-butyl cation can be understood by focusing on its structure shown in Figure 4.8. With only six valence electrons, which are distributed among three coplanar σ bonds, the positively charged carbon is sp^2-hybridized. The unhybridized $2p$ orbital that remains on the positively charged carbon contains no electrons.

The positive charge on carbon and the vacant *p* orbital combine to make carbocations strongly **electrophilic** ("electron-loving" or "electron-seeking"). Electrophiles are Lewis acids (Section 1.16). They are electron-pair acceptors and react with Lewis bases (electron-pair donors). Step 3, which follows and completes the mechanism, is a Lewis acid/Lewis base reaction. We'll return to carbocations to describe them in more detail in Section 4.9.



(*a*)



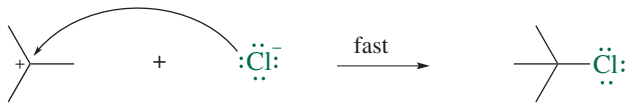
(*b*)

Figure 4.8

tert-Butyl cation. (*a*) The positively charged carbon is sp^2-hybridized. Each methyl group is attached to the positively charged carbon by a σ bond, and these three bonds lie in the same plane. (*b*) The sp^2-hybridized carbon has an empty $2p$ orbital, the axis of which is perpendicular to the plane of the carbon atoms.

Step 3: Reaction of tert-Butyl Cation with Chloride Ion

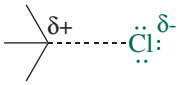
The Lewis bases that react with electrophiles are called **nucleophiles** ("nucleus seekers"). They have an unshared electron pair that they can use in covalent bond formation. The nucleophile in step 3 of Mechanism 4.1 is chloride ion.



tert-Butyl cation (electrophile) Chloride ion (nucleophile) *tert*-Butyl chloride

Step 3 is bimolecular because two species, the carbocation and chloride ion, react together. Figure 4.9 is a potential energy diagram for this step, and Figure 4.10 shows the orbitals involved in C—Cl bond formation.

- The step is exothermic; it leads from the carbocation intermediate to the stable isolated products of the reaction.
- The activation energy for this step is small, and bond formation between a positive ion and a negative ion occurs rapidly.
- The transition state for this step involves partial bond formation between *tert*-butyl cation and chloride ion.



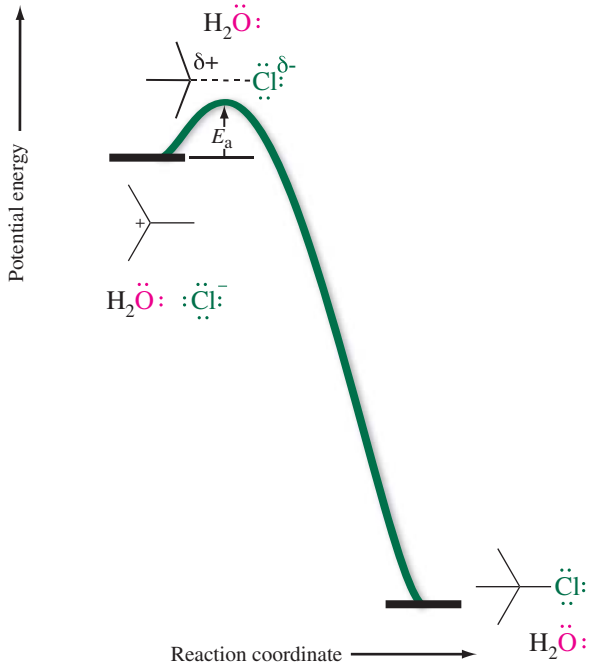


Figure 4.9

Potential energy diagram for reaction of *tert*-butyl cation with chloride anion (step 3 of Mechanism 4.1).

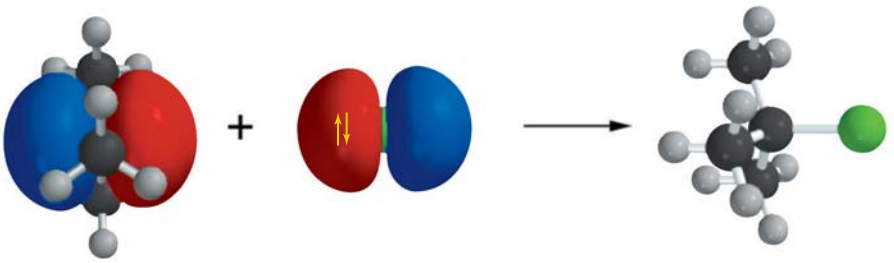


Figure 4.10

Combination of *tert*-butyl cation and chloride anion to give *tert*-butyl chloride. In-phase overlap between a vacant *p* orbital of $(CH_3)_3C^+$ and a filled *p* orbital of Cl^- gives a C—Cl σ bond.

Having seen how Mechanism 4.1 for the reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride can be supplemented with potential energy diagrams for its three elementary steps, we'll complete the picture by combining these diagrams into one that covers the entire process. To do so requires one additional fact—the energy relationship between the original reactants and the final products. For the case involving hydrogen chloride gas:

$$(CH_3)_3COH(l) + HCl(g) \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3CCl(l) + H_2O(l)$$

the reaction is exothermic, the products are of lower energy than the reactants, and the composite diagram (Figure 4.11) has three peaks and two valleys. The peaks correspond to transition states, one for each of the three elementary steps. The valleys correspond to the reactive intermediates—*tert*-butyloxonium ion and *tert*-butyl cation—species formed in one step and consumed in another. The transition state for formation of *tert*-butyl cation from the oxonium ion is the point of highest energy on the diagram, which makes this elementary step the slowest of the three. It is called the **rate-determining** step, and the overall reaction can proceed no faster than the rate of this, its slowest step.

With the potential energies shown on a common scale, we see that the transition state for formation of $(CH_3)_3C^+$ is the highest energy point on the diagram.

Substitution reactions, of which the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides is but one example, will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 8. There, we will make extensive use of a notation originally introduced by Sir Christopher Ingold. Ingold proposed the symbol, S_N, to stand for *substitution nucleophilic,* to be followed by the number *1* or *2* according to whether the rate-determining step is unimolecular or bimolecular. The reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride, for example, is said to follow an **S_N1 mechanism** because its slow step (dissociation of *tert*-butyloxonium ion) is unimolecular. Only the alkyloxonium ion undergoes a chemical change in this step.

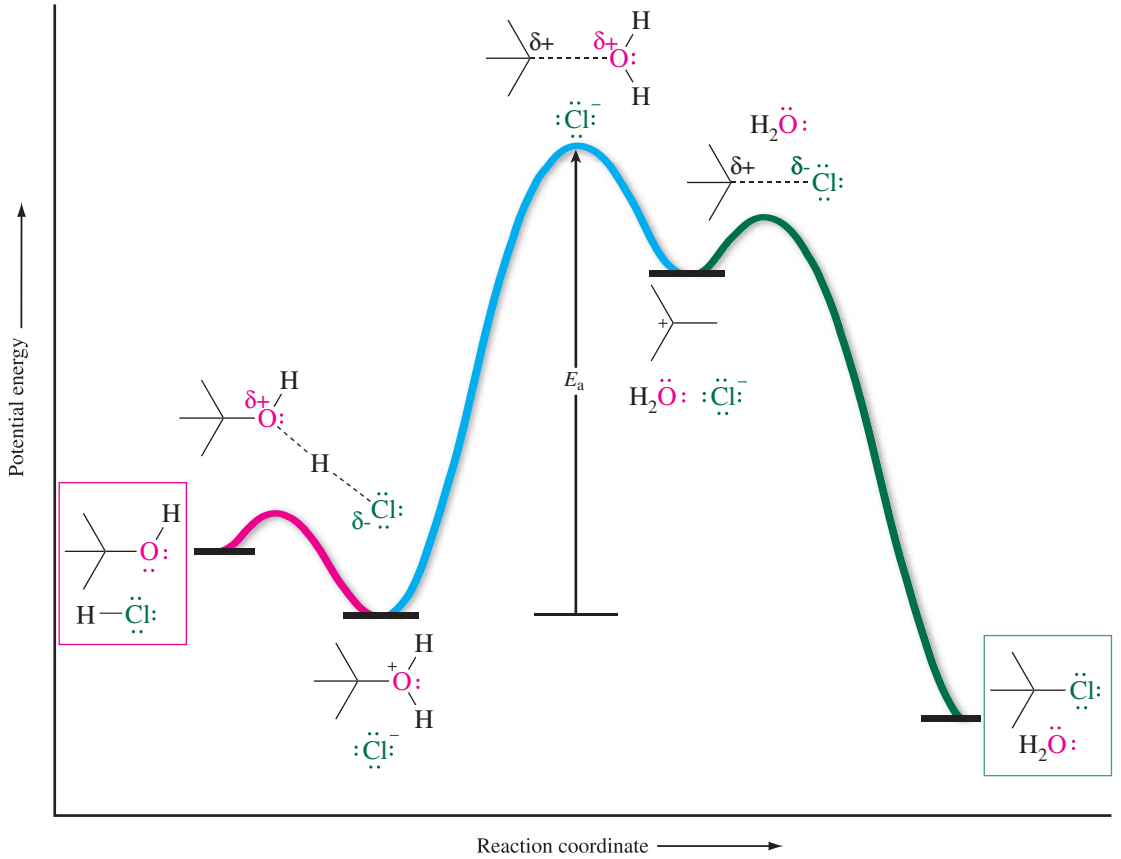
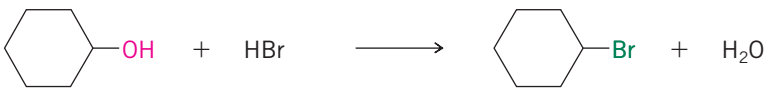


Figure 4.11

Potential energy diagram for the reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol and hydrogen chloride according to the S_N1 mechanism (Mechanism 4.1).

Problem 4.9

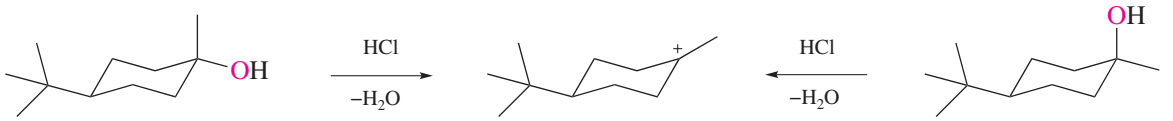
Assume the reaction



Cyclohexanol — Hydrogen bromide — Bromocyclohexane — Water

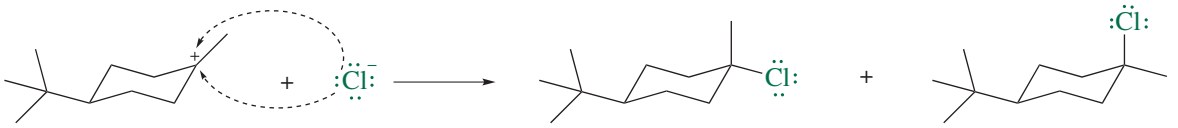
follows an S_N1 mechanism, and write a chemical equation for the rate-determining step. Use curved arrows to show the flow of electrons.

When studying reactions that are believed to involve carbocations as intermediates, it is common to test this proposal by assessing the stereochemical relationship between the organic reactant and its product. For example, if a carbocation is an intermediate in the reaction of tertiary alcohols with hydrogen halides, both stereoisomers of 4-*tert*-butyl-1-methylcyclohexanol are converted to the same carbocation:



Methyl *cis* to *tert*-butyl — Carbocation — Methyl *trans* to *tert*-butyl

Therefore, we would expect the same mixture of stereoisomeric forms of the product to result regardless of which reactant is used. This is, in fact, what is observed and is consistent with the S_N1 mechanism.



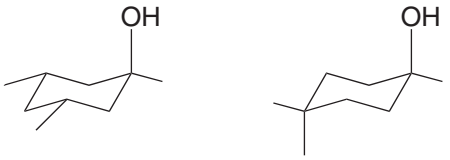
Carbocation

Methyl *cis* to *tert*-butyl (18–22%)

Methyl *trans* to *tert*-butyl (78–82%)

Problem 4.10

On reaction with hydrogen chloride, one of the trimethylcyclohexanols shown yields a single product, the other gives a mixture of two stereoisomers. Explain.



4.9 Structure, Bonding, and Stability of Carbocations

As we have just seen, the rate-determining step in the reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride is formation of the carbocation $(CH_3)_3C^+$. Convincing evidence from a variety of sources tells us that carbocations can exist, but are relatively unstable. When carbocations are involved in chemical reactions, it is as reactive intermediates, formed slowly in one step and consumed rapidly in another.

Numerous other studies have shown that *alkyl groups directly attached to the positively charged carbon stabilize a carbocation.* Figure 4.12 illustrates this generalization for CH_3^+, $CH_3CH_2^+$, $(CH_3)_2CH^+$, and $(CH_3)_3C^+$. Among this group, CH_3^+ is the least stable and $(CH_3)_3C^+$ the most stable.

Carbocations are classified according to the degree of substitution at the positively charged carbon. The positive charge is on a primary carbon in $CH_3CH_2^+$, a secondary carbon in $(CH_3)_2CH^+$, and a tertiary carbon in $(CH_3)_3C^+$. Ethyl cation is a primary carbocation, isopropyl cation a secondary carbocation, and *tert*-butyl cation a tertiary carbocation.

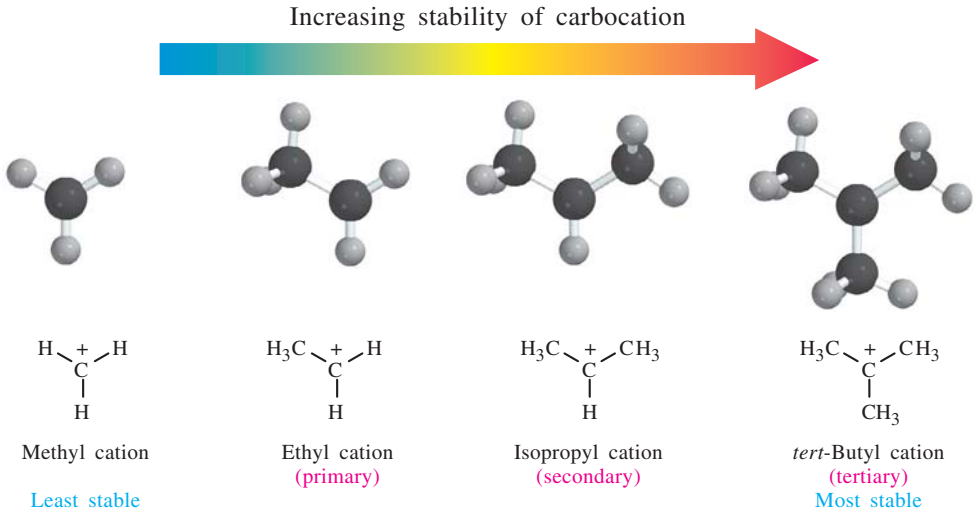
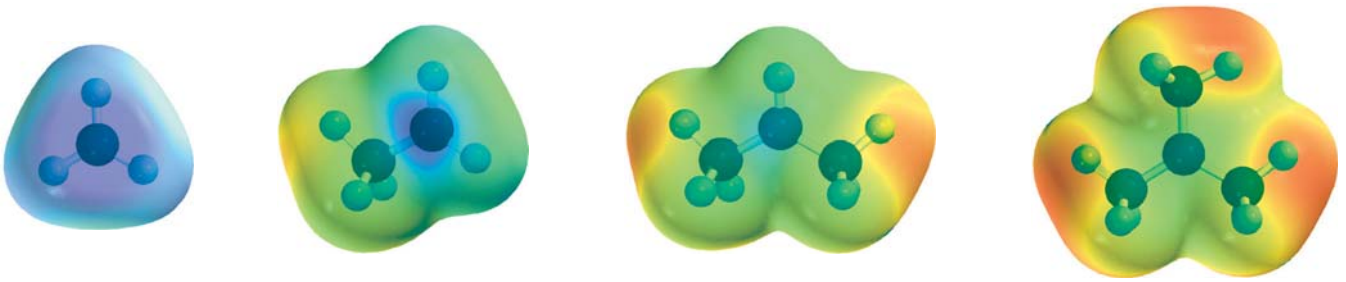


Figure 4.12

The order of carbocation stability is methyl < primary < secondary < tertiary. Alkyl groups that are directly attached to the positively charged carbon stabilize carbocations.



Methyl cation (CH_3^+) Ethyl cation ($CH_3CH_2^+$) Isopropyl cation [$(CH_3)_2CH^+$] *tert*-Butyl cation [$(CH_3)_3C^+$]

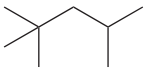
Figure 4.13

Electrostatic potential maps of carbocations. The positive charge (blue) is most concentrated in CH_3^+ and most spread out in $(CH_3)_3C^+$. (The electrostatic potentials were mapped on the same scale to allow direct comparison.)

As carbocations go, CH_3^+ is particularly unstable, and its existence as an intermediate in chemical reactions has never been demonstrated. Primary carbocations, although more stable than CH_3^+, are still too unstable to be involved as intermediates in chemical reactions. The threshold of stability is reached with secondary carbocations. Many reactions, including the reaction of secondary alcohols with hydrogen halides, are believed to involve secondary carbocations. The evidence in support of tertiary carbocation intermediates is stronger yet.

Problem 4.11

Carbocations are key intermediates in petroleum refining. Of particular importance is one having the carbon skeleton shown.



How many different $C_8H_{17}^+$ carbocations have this carbon skeleton? Write a line formula for each and classify the carbocation as primary, secondary, or tertiary. The most stable of them corresponds to the intermediate in petroleum refining. Which one is it?

Alkyl groups stabilize carbocations by releasing electron density to the positively charged carbon, thereby dispersing the positive charge. Figure 4.13 illustrates this effect by comparing the electrostatic potential maps of CH_3^+, $CH_3CH_2^+$, $(CH_3)_2CH^+$, and $(CH_3)_3C^+$. The decreased intensity of the blue color reflects the greater dispersal of positive charge as the number of methyl groups on the positively charged carbon increases.

Dispersal of positive charge goes hand in hand with delocalization of electrons. The redistribution of negative charge—the electrons—is responsible for spreading out the positive charge. There are two main ways that methyl and other alkyl groups act as electron sources to stabilize carbocations:

- Inductive effect (by polarization of σ bonds)
- Hyperconjugation (by delocalization of electrons in σ bonds)

Recall from Section 1.14 that an inductive effect is an electron-donating-or-withdrawing effect of a substituent that is transmitted by the polarization of σ bonds. As illustrated for $CH_3CH_2^+$ in Figure 4.14, the positively charged carbon draws the electrons in its σ bonds toward itself and away from the atoms attached to it. Electrons in a C—C bond are more polarizable than those in a C—H bond, so replacing hydrogens by alkyl groups reduces the net charge on the positively charged carbon. Alkyl groups are electron-releasing substituents with respect to their inductive effect. The more alkyl groups that are directly attached to the positively charged carbon, the more stable the carbocation.

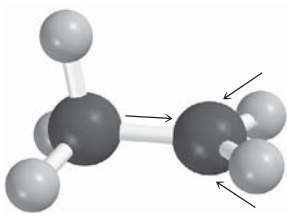


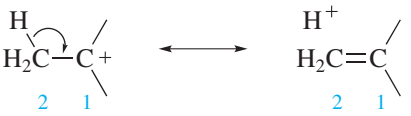
Figure 4.14

The charge in ethyl cation is stabilized by polarization of the electron distribution in the σ bonds to the positively charged carbon atom. Alkyl groups release electrons better than hydrogen.

Problem 4.12

Which would you expect to be more stable: $(CH_3)_3C^+$ or $(CF_3)_3C^+$? Why?

Hyperconjugation refers to the delocalization of electrons in σ bonds. Its application to carbocations such as $CH_3CH_2^+$ can be described in terms of resonance between contributing structures, and valence bond and molecular orbital models as well. According to the resonance description, delocalization of the electron pair in a C—H bond of the methyl group is represented by a contributing structure containing a C=C double bond.



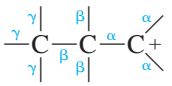
Major contributor Minor contributor

Such electron delocalization disperses the positive charge by allowing it to be shared between C(1) and the hydrogens at C(2).

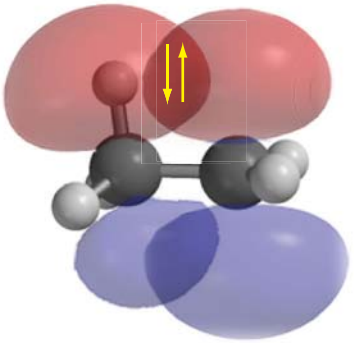
The valence-bond approach to hyperconjugation in $CH_3CH_2^+$ is illustrated in Figure 4.15*a*. Overlap of an orbital associated with one of the C—H σ bonds of the methyl group with the vacant *p* orbital of the positively charged carbon gives an extended orbital that encompasses both and permits the electrons in the σ bond to be shared by both carbons. The positive charge is dispersed, and the delocalized electrons feel the attractive force of both carbons.

A molecular-orbital approach parallels the valence-bond model. One of the filled bonding MOs of $CH_3CH_2^+$ (Figure 4.15*b*) combines a portion of the 2*p* orbital of the positively charged carbon with orbitals associated with the CH_3 group. The pair of electrons in this MO are shared by the CH_3 group and by the positively charged carbon.

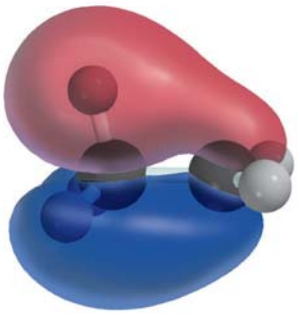
When applying hyperconjugation to carbocations more complicated than $CH_3CH_2^+$, it is helpful to keep track of the various bonds. Begin with the positively charged carbon and label the three bonds originating from it with the Greek letter α. Proceed down the chain, labeling the bonds extending from the next carbon β, those from the next carbon γ, and so on.



Only electrons in bonds that are β to the positively charged carbon can stabilize a carbocation by hyperconjugation. Moreover, it doesn't matter whether H or another carbon is at the far end of the β bond; stabilization by hyperconjugation will still operate. The key point is that electrons in bonds that are β to the positively charged carbon are more stabilizing than electrons in an α^+C—H bond. Thus, successive replacement of first one, then two, then three hydrogens of CH_3^+ by alkyl groups increases the opportunities for hyperconjugation, which is consistent with the observed order of carbocation stability: $CH_3^+ < CH_3CH_2^+ < (CH_3)_2CH^+ < (CH_3)_3C^+$.



(*a*) Valence bond



(*b*) Molecular orbital

Figure 4.15

Two views of the stabilization of $CH_3CH_2^+$ by hyperconjugation. (*a*) *Valence bond:* Overlap of the vacant 2*p* orbital of the positively charged carbon with the σ orbital of a C—H bond delocalizes the σ electrons and disperses the positive charge. (*b*) *Molecular orbital:* One of the molecular orbitals of $CH_3CH_2^+$ encompasses both the CH_3 group and the positively charged carbon; it is a bonding MO and contains two electrons.

Problem 4.13

For the general case of R = any alkyl group, how many bonded pairs of electrons are involved in stabilizing R_3C^+ by hyperconjugation? How many in R_2CH^+? In $RCH_2{}^+$?

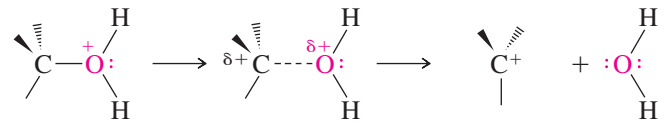
We will see numerous reactions that involve carbocation intermediates as we proceed through the text, so it is important to understand how their structure determines their properties.

4.10 Effect of Alcohol Structure on Reaction Rate

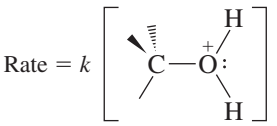
For a proposed reaction mechanism to be valid, the sum of its elementary steps must equal the equation for the overall reaction and the mechanism must be consistent with all experimental observations. The S_N1 process set forth in Mechanism 4.1 satisfies the first criterion. What about the second?

One important experimental fact is that the rate of reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides increases in the order primary < secondary < tertiary. This reactivity order parallels the carbocation stability order and is readily accommodated by the mechanism we have outlined.

The rate-determining step in the S_N1 mechanism is dissociation of the alkyloxonium ion to the carbocation.



The rate of this step is proportional to the concentration of the alkyloxonium ion:



The rate of any chemical reaction increases with increasing temperature. Thus the value of *k* for a reaction is not constant, but increases as the temperature increases.

where *k* is a constant of proportionality called the *rate constant.* The value of *k* is related to the activation energy for alkyloxonium ion dissociation and is different for different alkyloxonium ions. A low activation energy implies a large value of *k* and a rapid rate of alkyloxonium ion dissociation. Conversely, a large activation energy is characterized by a small *k* for dissociation and a slow rate.

The transition state is closer in energy to the carbocation and, according to Hammond's postulate, more closely resembles it than the alkyloxonium ion. Thus, structural features that stabilize carbocations stabilize transition states leading to them. It follows, therefore, that alkyloxonium ions derived from tertiary alcohols have a lower energy of activation for dissociation and are converted to their corresponding carbocations faster than those derived from secondary and primary alcohols. Simply put: *more stable carbocations are formed faster than less stable ones.* Figure 4.16 expresses this principle via a series of potential energy diagrams.

The S_N1 mechanism is generally accepted to be correct for the reaction of tertiary and secondary alcohols with hydrogen halides. It is almost certainly *not* correct for methyl alcohol and primary alcohols because methyl and primary carbocations are believed to be much too unstable, and the activation energies for their formation much too high, for them to be reasonably involved. The next section describes how methyl and primary alcohols are converted to their corresponding halides by a mechanism related to, but different from, S_N1.

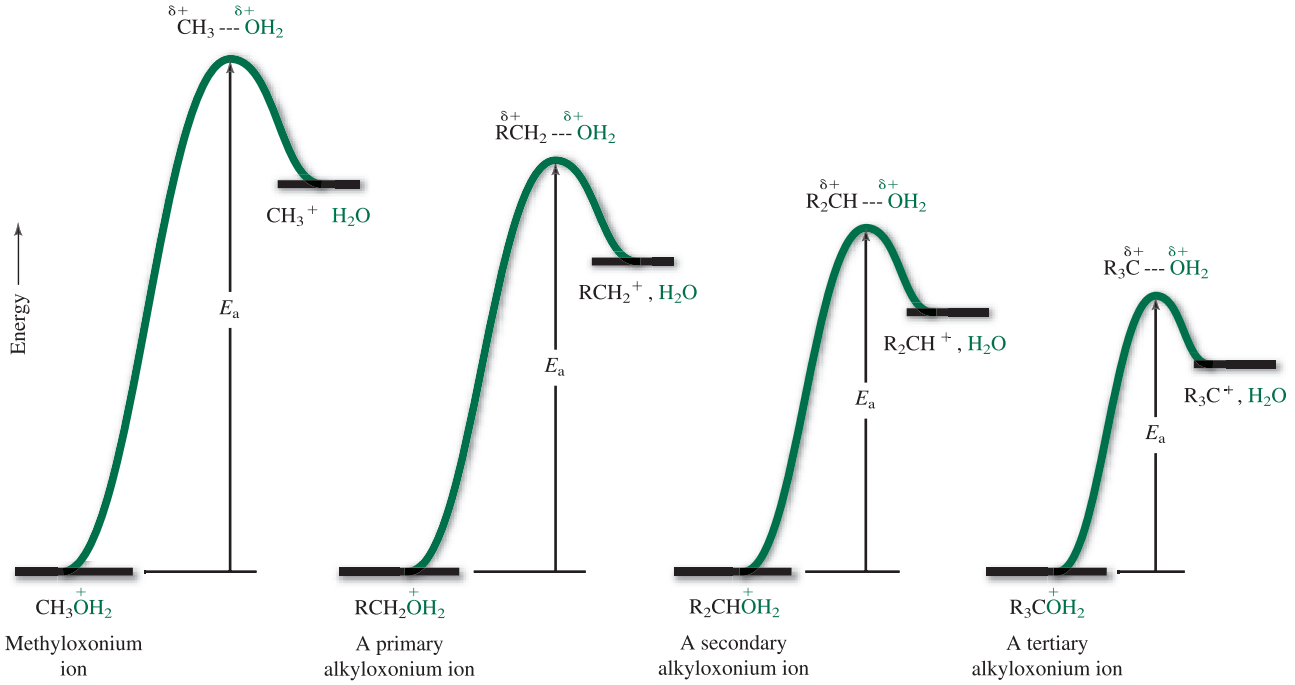


Figure 4.16

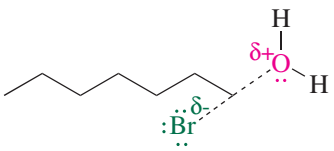
Energies of activation for formation of carbocations from alkyloxonium ions of methyl, primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols.

4.11 Reaction of Methyl and Primary Alcohols with Hydrogen Halides: The S_N2 Mechanism

Unlike tertiary and secondary carbocations, methyl and primary carbocations are too high in energy to be intermediates in chemical reactions. However, methyl and primary alcohols are converted, albeit rather slowly, to alkyl halides on treatment with hydrogen halides. Therefore, they must follow a different mechanism, one that avoids carbocation intermediates. This alternative process is outlined in Mechanism 4.2 for the reaction of 1-heptanol with hydrogen bromide.

The first step of this new mechanism is exactly the same as that seen earlier for the reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride—formation of an alkyloxonium ion by proton transfer from the hydrogen halide to the alcohol. Like the earlier example, this is a rapid, reversible Brønsted acid–base reaction.

The major difference between the two mechanisms is the second step. The second step in the reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride is the unimolecular dissociation of *tert*-butyloxonium ion to *tert*-butyl cation and water. Heptyloxonium ion, however, instead of dissociating to an unstable primary carbocation, reacts differently. It reacts with bromide ion, which acts as a nucleophile. We can represent the transition state of this displacement as:



Transition state for step 2

Bromide ion forms a bond to the primary carbon by "pushing off" a water molecule. This step is bimolecular because it involves both bromide and heptyloxonium ion. Step 2 is

Mechanism 4.2

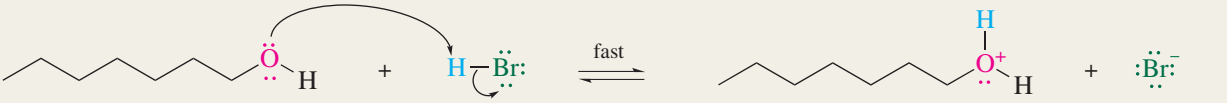
Formation of 1-Bromoheptane from 1-Heptanol and Hydrogen Bromide

THE OVERALL REACTION:

1-Heptanol Hydrogen bromide 1-Bromoheptane Water

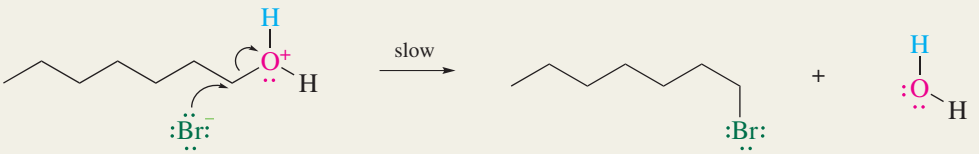
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Proton transfer from hydrogen bromide to 1-heptanol to give the corresponding alkyloxonium ion:



1-Heptanol Hydrogen bromide Heptyloxonium ion Bromide ion

Step 2: Displacement of water from the alkyloxonium ion by bromide:



Heptyloxonium ion + bromide ion 1-Bromoheptane Water

slower than the proton transfer in step 1, so it is rate-determining. Using Ingold's terminology, we classify nucleophilic substitutions that have a bimolecular rate-determining step by the mechanistic symbol **S_N2.**

Problem 4.14

Sketch a potential energy diagram for the reaction of 1-heptanol with hydrogen bromide, paying careful attention to the positioning and structures of the intermediates and transition states.

Problem 4.15

1-Butanol and 2-butanol are converted to their corresponding bromides on being heated with hydrogen bromide. Write a suitable mechanism for each reaction, and assign each the appropriate symbol (S_N1 or S_N2).

It is important to note that although methyl and primary alcohols react with hydrogen halides by a mechanism that involves fewer steps than the corresponding reactions of secondary and tertiary alcohols, fewer steps do not translate to faster reaction rates. Remember, the observed order of reactivity of alcohols with hydrogen halides is tertiary > secondary > primary. Reaction rate is governed by the activation energy of the slowest step, regardless of how many steps there are.

We described the effect of temperature on reaction rates in Section 3.1 and will examine concentration effects beginning in Section 5.15. These and other studies will be seen to provide additional information that can be used to determine reaction mechanisms and a deeper understanding of how reactions occur.

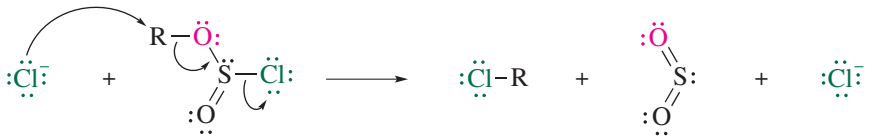
4.12 Other Methods for Converting Alcohols to Alkyl Halides

Alkyl halides are such useful starting materials for preparing other functional group types that chemists have developed several different methods for converting alcohols to alkyl halides. Two methods, based on the inorganic reagents *thionyl chloride* and *phosphorus tribromide,* bear special mention.

Thionyl chloride reacts with alcohols to give alkyl chlorides.

$$\underset{\text{Alcohol}}{ROH} + \underset{\text{Thionyl chloride}}{SOCl_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Alkyl chloride}}{RCl} + \underset{\text{Sulfur dioxide}}{SO_2} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen chloride}}{HCl}$$

Because tertiary alcohols are so readily converted to chlorides with hydrogen chloride, thionyl chloride is used mainly to prepare primary and secondary alkyl chlorides. An early step in the mechanism of this reaction is the conversion of the alcohol to a chlorosulfite, which then reacts with chloride ion to yield the alkyl chloride.



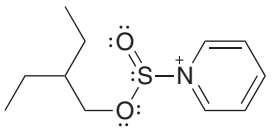
Chloride ion — Alkyl chlorosulfite — Alkyl chloride — Sulfur dioxide — Chloride ion

As normally performed, pyridine is the solvent but also acts as a weak base and catalyst.

$$\underset{\text{2-Ethyl-1-butanol}}{(CH_3CH_2)_2CHCH_2OH} \xrightarrow[\text{pyridine}]{SOCl_2} \underset{\substack{\text{1-Chloro-2-ethylbutane}\\(82\%)}}{(CH_3CH_2)_2CHCH_2Cl}$$

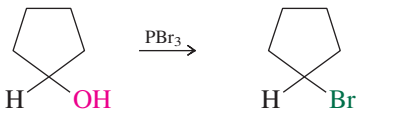
Problem 4.16

For the reaction in the preceding equation, a mechanism involving pyridine via the intermediate shown can be written. Use curved arrows to show how chloride ion reacts with this species in a single elementary step to give 1-chloro-2-ethylbutane and sulfur dioxide.



Phosphorus tribromide reacts with alcohols to give alkyl bromides and phosphorous acid.

$$\underset{\text{Alcohol}}{3ROH} + \underset{\text{Phosphorus tribromide}}{PBr_3} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Alkyl bromide}}{3RBr} + \underset{\text{Phosphorous acid}}{H_3PO_3}$$

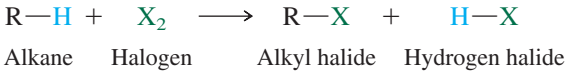


Cyclopentanol — Cyclopentyl bromide (78–84%)

Analogous to the reaction of alcohols with thionyl chloride, an early step in the mechanism of phosphorus tribromide with alcohols is the formation of an intermediate of the type $ROPBr_2$ or related species, which then reacts with the nucleophilic bromide ion in a subsequent step.

4.13 Halogenation of Alkanes

The rest of this chapter describes a completely different method for preparing alkyl halides, one that uses alkanes as reactants. It involves substitution of a halogen atom for one of the alkane's hydrogens.



Volume 11 of *Organic Reactions,* an annual series that reviews reactions of interest to organic chemists, contains the statement "Most organic compounds burn or explode when brought in contact with fluorine."

The alkane is said to undergo *fluorination, chlorination, bromination,* or *iodination* according to whether X_2 is F_2, Cl_2, Br_2, or I_2, respectively. The general term is **halogenation.** Chlorination and bromination are the most widely used.

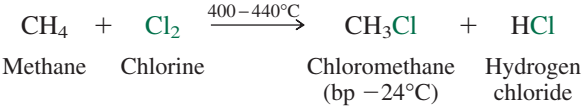
The reactivity of the halogens decreases in the order $F_2 > Cl_2 > Br_2 > I_2$. Fluorine is an extremely aggressive oxidizing agent, and its reaction with alkanes is strongly exothermic and difficult to control. Direct fluorination of alkanes requires special equipment and techniques, is not a reaction of general applicability, and will not be discussed further.

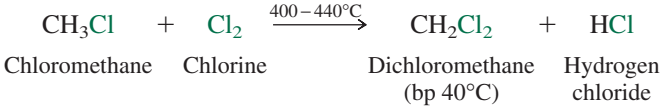
Chlorination of alkanes is less exothermic than fluorination, and bromination less exothermic than chlorination. Iodine is unique among the halogens in that its reaction with alkanes is endothermic and alkyl iodides are never prepared by iodination of alkanes.

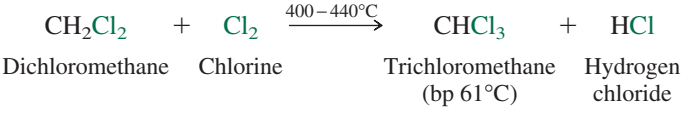
4.14 Chlorination of Methane

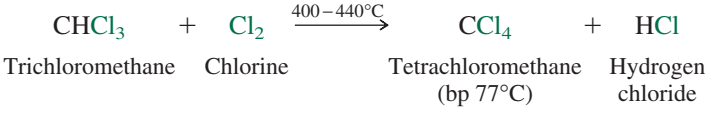
Chlorination of methane is a reaction of industrial importance and is carried out in the gas phase to give a mixture of chloromethane (CH_3Cl), dichloromethane (CH_2Cl_2), trichloromethane ($CHCl_3$), and tetrachloromethane (CCl_4).

Chlorination of methane provides approximately one third of the annual U.S. production of chloromethane. The reaction of methanol with hydrogen chloride is the major synthetic method for the preparation of chloromethane.









Dichloromethane, trichloromethane, and tetrachloromethane are widely known by their common names methylene chloride, chloroform, and carbon tetrachloride, respectively.

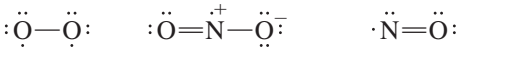
One of the chief uses of chloromethane is as a starting material from which silicone polymers are made. Dichloromethane is widely used as a paint stripper. Trichloromethane was once used as an inhalation anesthetic, but its toxicity caused it to be replaced by safer materials many years ago. Tetrachloromethane is the starting material for the preparation of several chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), at one time widely used as refrigerant gases. Most of the world's industrialized nations have agreed to phase out all uses of CFCs because these compounds have been implicated in atmospheric processes that degrade the Earth's ozone layer.

The chlorination of methane is carried out at rather high temperatures (400–440°C), even though each substitution in the series is exothermic. The high temperature provides the energy to initiate the reaction. The term *initiation step* has a specific meaning in organic chemistry, one that is related to the mechanism of the reaction. This mechanism, to be presented in Section 4.16, is fundamentally different from the mechanism by which alcohols react with hydrogen halides. Alcohols are converted to alkyl halides in reactions involving ionic (or "polar") intermediates—alkyloxonium ions and carbocations. The intermediates

in the chlorination of methane and other alkanes are quite different; they are neutral ("nonpolar") species called *free radicals*.

4.15 Structure and Stability of Free Radicals

Free radicals are species that contain unpaired electrons. The octet rule notwithstanding, not all compounds have all of their electrons paired. Oxygen (O_2) is the most familiar example of a compound with unpaired electrons; it has two of them. Compounds that have an odd number of electrons, such as nitrogen dioxide (NO_2), must have at least one unpaired electron.

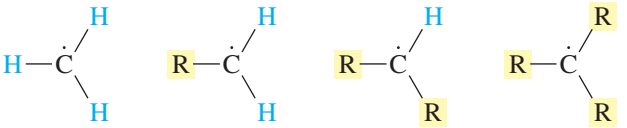


Oxygen Nitrogen dioxide Nitrogen monoxide

Nitrogen monoxide ("nitric oxide") is another stable free radical. Although known for hundreds of years, NO has only recently been discovered to be an extremely important biochemical messenger and moderator of so many biological processes that it might be better to ask "Which ones is it not involved in?"

For more on the role of NO in physiology, see the boxed essay *Oh NO! It's Inorganic!* in Chapter 25.

The free radicals that we usually see in carbon chemistry are much less stable than these. Simple alkyl radicals, for example, require special procedures for their isolation and study. We will encounter them here only as reactive intermediates, formed in one step of a reaction mechanism and consumed in the next. Alkyl radicals are classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary according to the number of carbon atoms directly attached to the carbon that bears the unpaired electron.



Methyl radical Primary radical Secondary radical Tertiary radical

An alkyl radical is neutral and has one more electron than the corresponding carbocation. Thus, bonding in methyl radical may be approximated by simply adding an electron to the vacant 2*p* orbital of sp^2-hybridized carbon in methyl cation (Figure 4.17*a*). Alternatively, we could assume that carbon is sp^3-hybridized and place the unpaired electron in an sp^3 orbital (Figure 4.17*b*).

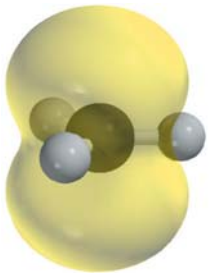
Of the two extremes, experimental studies indicate that the planar sp^2 model describes the bonding in alkyl radicals better than the pyramidal sp^3 model. Methyl radical is planar,

(*a*) Planar CH_3 Carbon is sp^2-hybridized (120° bond angles). Unpaired electron is in 2*p* orbital.

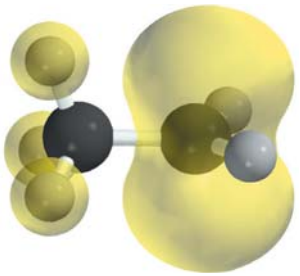
(*b*) Pyramidal CH_3 Carbon is sp^3-hybridized (109.5° bond angles). Unpaired electron is in sp^3-hybridized orbital.

Figure 4.17

Bonding in methyl radical. Model (*a*) is more consistent with experimental observations.



(*a*) $\cdot CH_3$



(*b*) $H_3C—\dot{C}H_2$

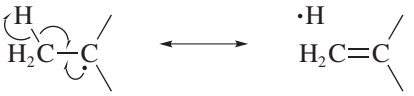
Figure 4.18

Spin density (yellow) in methyl and ethyl radical. (*a*) The unpaired electron in methyl radical is localized in a *p* orbital of sp^2-hybridized carbon. (*b*) The unpaired electron in ethyl radical is shared by the sp^2-hybridized carbon and by the hydrogens of the CH_3 group.

A curved arrow shown as a single-barbed fishhook ↷ signifies the movement of one electron. "Normal" curved arrows ↷ track the movement of a *pair* of electrons.

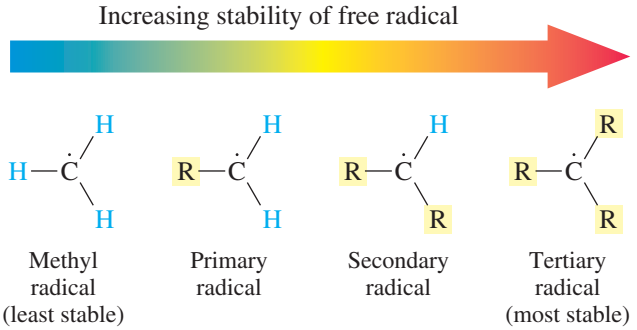
and more highly substituted radicals such as *tert*-butyl radical are flattened pyramids closer in shape to that expected for sp^2-hybridized carbon than for sp^3.

Free radicals, like carbocations, have an unfilled 2*p* orbital and are stabilized by substituents such as alkyl groups that can donate electrons by hyperconjugation. According to the resonance description of hyperconjugation, the unpaired electron, plus those in σ bonds that are β to the radical site, are delocalized.



Major contributor Minor contributor

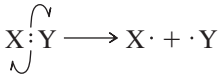
This delocalization is illustrated in Figure 4.18, which compares the spin density in methyl radical and ethyl radical. **Spin density** is a measure of unpaired electron density at a particular point in a molecule—it tells us where the unpaired electron is most likely to be. In the case of methyl radical, which cannot be stabilized by hyperconjugation, the spin density is concentrated on a single atom, carbon. In ethyl radical, hyperconjugation allows the spin density to be shared by the sp^2-hybridized carbon plus the three hydrogens of the methyl group. More highly substituted radicals are more stable than less highly substituted ones because they have more electron pairs β to the radical site, and the order of free-radical stability parallels that of carbocations.



Problem 4.17

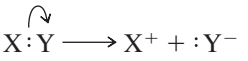
Write a line formula for the most stable of the free radicals that have the formula C_5H_{11}.

Some of the evidence indicating that alkyl substituents stabilize free radicals comes from bond enthalpies. The strength of a bond is measured by the energy required to break it. A covalent bond can be broken in two ways. In a **homolytic cleavage** a bond between two atoms is broken so that each of them retains one of the electrons in the bond.



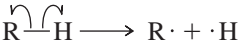
Homolytic bond cleavage

In contrast, in a **heterolytic cleavage** one fragment retains both electrons.



Heterolytic bond cleavage

We can assess the relative stability of alkyl radicals by measuring the enthalpy change ($\Delta H°$) for the homolytic cleavage of a C—H bond in an alkane:



The more stable the radical, the lower the energy required to generate it by homolytic cleavage of a C—H bond.

The energy required for homolytic bond cleavage is called the **bond dissociation enthalpy** (***D***)**.** A list of some bond dissociation enthalpies is given in Table 4.3.

As the table indicates, C—H bond dissociation enthalpies in alkanes are approximately 400–440 kJ/mol (95–105 kcal/mol). Cleaving the H—CH_3 bond in methane gives methyl radical and requires 439 kJ/mol (105 kcal/mol). The dissociation enthalpy of the H—CH_2CH_3 bond in ethane, which gives a primary radical, is somewhat less (421 kJ/mol, or 100.5 kcal/mol) and is consistent with the notion that ethyl radical (primary) is more stable than methyl.

The dissociation enthalpy of the terminal C—H bond in propane is almost the same as that of ethane. The resulting free radical is primary ($R\dot{C}H_2$) in both cases.

$$\underset{\text{Propane}}{CH_3CH_2CH_2{-}H} \longrightarrow \underset{\substack{\text{Propyl}\\\text{radical}\\\text{(primary)}}}{CH_3CH_2\dot{C}H_2} + \underset{\substack{\text{Hydrogen}\\\text{atom}}}{H\cdot} \qquad \Delta H^\circ = +423 \text{ kJ } (101 \text{ kcal})$$

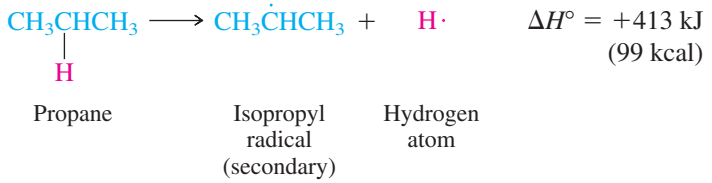
Note, however, that Table 4.3 includes two entries for propane. The second entry corresponds to the cleavage of a bond to one of the hydrogens of the methylene (CH_2) group.

TABLE 4.3 Some Bond Dissociation Enthalpies*

Bond	Bond dissociation enthalpy (*D*) kJ/mol	kcal/mol	Bond	Bond dissociation enthalpy (*D*) kJ/mol	kcal/mol
Diatomic molecules					
H—H	436	104	H—F	571	136
F—F	159	38	H—Cl	432	103
Cl—Cl	243	58	H—Br	366	87.5
Br—Br	193	46	H—I	298	71
I—I	151	36			
Alkanes					
CH_3—H	439	105	CH_3—CH_3	375	90
CH_3CH_2—H	421	100.5	CH_3CH_2— CH_3	369	88
$CH_3CH_2CH_2$—H	423	101			
$(CH_3)_2CH$—H	413	99			
$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2$—H	422	101	$(CH_3)_2CH$—CH_3	370	88
$(CH_3)_3C$—H	400	95	$(CH_3)_3C$—CH_3	362	86
Alkyl halides					
CH_3—F	459	110	$(CH_3)_2CH$—Cl	355	85
CH_3—Cl	351	84	$(CH_3)_2CH$—Br	297	72
CH_3—Br	292	70			
CH_3—I	238	57			
CH_3CH_2—Cl	350	83	$(CH_3)_3C$—Cl	349	83
$CH_3CH_2CH_2$—Cl	354	85	$(CH_3)_3C$—Br	292	69

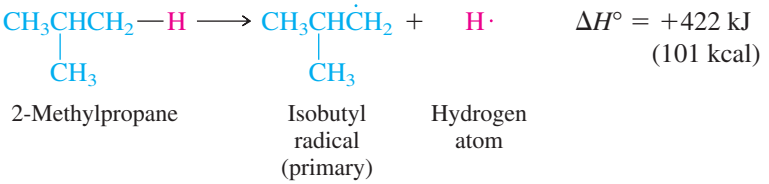
*Bond dissociation enthalpies refer to the bond indicated in each structural formula and were calculated from standard enthalpy of formation values as recorded in the NIST Standard Reference Database Number 69, http://webbook.nist.gov/chemistry/.

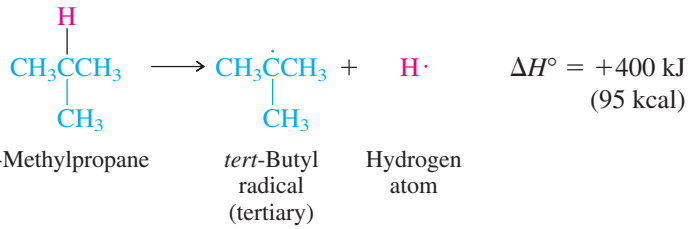
It requires slightly less energy to break a C—H bond in the methylene group than in the methyl group.



Because the starting material (propane) and one of the products (H·) are the same in both processes, the difference in bond dissociation enthalpies is equal to the energy difference between a propyl radical (primary) and an isopropyl radical (secondary). As depicted in Figure 4.19, the secondary radical is 10 kJ/mol (2 kcal/mol) more stable than the primary radical.

Similarly, by comparing the bond dissociation enthalpies of the two different types of C—H bonds in 2-methylpropane, we see that a tertiary radical is 22 kJ/mol (6 kcal/mol) more stable than a primary radical.





Problem 4.18

The bond dissociation enthalpies of propyl and isopropyl chloride are the same within experimental error (see Table 4.3). However, it is incorrect to conclude that the data indicate equal stabilities of propyl and isopropyl radical. Why? Why are the bond dissociation enthalpies of propane a better indicator of the free-radical stabilities?

Like carbocations, most free radicals are exceedingly reactive species—too reactive to be isolated but capable of being formed as transient intermediates in chemical reactions. Methyl radical, as we shall see in the following section, is an intermediate in the chlorination of methane.

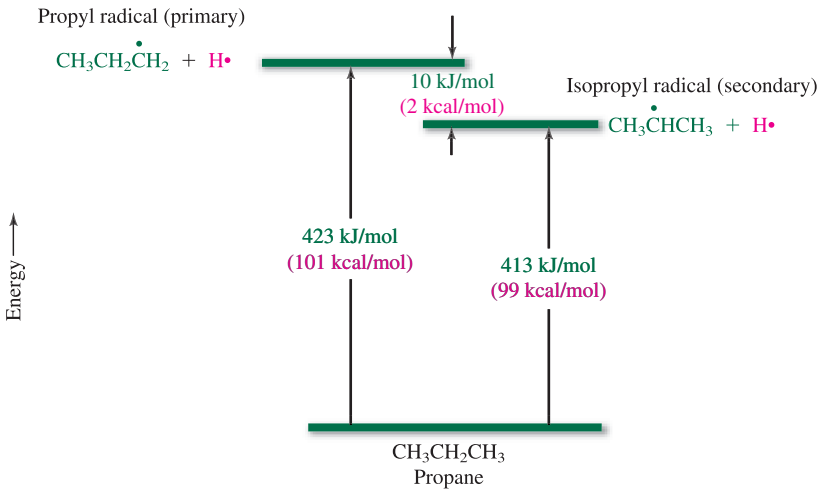


Figure 4.19

The bond dissociation enthalpies of methylene and methyl C—H bonds in propane reveal a difference in stabilities between two isomeric free radicals. The secondary radical is more stable than the primary.

From Bond Enthalpies to Heats of Reaction

You have seen that measurements of heats of reaction, such as heats of combustion, can provide quantitative information concerning the relative stability of constitutional isomers (Section 2.21) and stereoisomers (Section 3.11). The box in Section 2.21 described how heats of reaction can be manipulated arithmetically to generate heats of formation (ΔH_f°) for many molecules. The following material shows how two different sources of thermochemical information, heats of formation and bond dissociation enthalpies (see Table 4.3), can reveal whether a particular reaction is exothermic or endothermic and by how much.

Consider the chlorination of methane to chloromethane. The heats of formation of the reactants and products appear beneath the equation. These heats of formation for the chemical compounds are taken from published tabulations; the heat of formation of chlorine is zero, as it is for all elements.

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl$$

ΔH_f°: (kJ/mol)	−74.8	0	−83.7	−92.3

The overall heat of reaction is given by

$\Delta H^\circ = \sum$(heats of formation of products) − $\sum$(heats of formation of reactants)

$\Delta H^\circ = (-83.7 \text{ kJ} - 92.3 \text{ kJ}) - (-74.8 \text{ kJ}) = -101.2 \text{ kJ}$

Thus, the chlorination of methane is calculated to be exothermic on the basis of heat of formation data.

The same conclusion is reached using bond dissociation enthalpies. The following equation shows the bond dissociation enthalpies of the reactants and products taken from Table 4.3:

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl$$

BDE: (kJ/mol)	439	243	351	432

Because stronger bonds are formed at the expense of weaker ones, the reaction is exothermic and

$\Delta H^\circ = \sum$(BDE of bonds broken) − $\sum$(BDE of bonds formed)

$\Delta H^\circ = (439 \text{ kJ} + 243 \text{ kJ}) - (351 \text{ kJ} + 432 \text{ kJ}) = -101 \text{ kJ}$

This value is in good agreement with that obtained from heats of formation.

Compare chlorination of methane with iodination. The relevant bond dissociation enthalpies are given in the equation.

$$CH_4 + I_2 \longrightarrow CH_3I + HI$$

BDE: (kJ/mol)	439	151	238	298

$\Delta H^\circ = \sum$(BDE of bonds broken) − $\sum$(BDE°of bonds formed)

$\Delta H^\circ = (439 \text{ kJ} + 151 \text{ kJ}) - (238 \text{ kJ} + 298 \text{ kJ}) = +54 \text{ kJ}$

A positive value for ΔH° signifies an **endothermic** reaction. The reactants are more stable than the products, and so iodination of alkanes is not a feasible reaction. You would not want to attempt the preparation of iodomethane by iodination of methane.

A similar analysis for fluorination of methane gives $\Delta H^\circ = -432$ kJ for its heat of reaction. Fluorination of methane is about four times as exothermic as chlorination. A reaction this exothermic, if it also occurs at a rapid rate, can proceed with explosive violence.

Bromination of methane is exothermic, but less so than chlorination. The value calculated from bond dissociation enthalpies is $\Delta H^\circ = -26$ kJ. Although bromination of methane is energetically favorable, economic considerations cause most of the methyl bromide prepared commercially to be made from methanol by reaction with hydrogen bromide.

4.16 Mechanism of Methane Chlorination

The generally accepted process for the chlorination of methane is presented in Mechanism 4.3. As we noted earlier (Section 4.14), the reaction is normally carried out in the gas phase at high temperature. The reaction itself is strongly exothermic, but energy must be put into the system to get it going. This energy goes into breaking the weakest bond in the system, which, as we see from the bond dissociation enthalpy data in Table 4.3, is the Cl—Cl bond with a bond dissociation enthalpy of 243 kJ/mol (58 kcal/mol). The step in which Cl—Cl bond homolysis occurs is called the **initiation step.**

The bond dissociation enthalpy of the other reactant, methane, is much higher. It is 439 kJ/mol (105 kcal/mol).

Each chlorine atom formed in the initiation step has seven valence electrons and is very reactive. Once formed, a chlorine atom abstracts a hydrogen atom from methane as shown in step 2 in Mechanism 4.3. Hydrogen chloride, one of the isolated products from the overall reaction, is formed in this step. A methyl radical is also formed, which then reacts with a molecule of Cl_2 in step 3 giving chloromethane, the other product of the overall reaction, along with a chlorine atom. The chlorine atom then cycles back to step 2, and the process repeats. Steps 2 and 3 are called the **propagation steps** of the reaction and, when added together, give the overall equation for the reaction. Because one initiation step can result in a great many propagation cycles, the overall process is called a free-radical **chain reaction.**

Mechanism 4.3

Free-Radical Chlorination of Methane

THE OVERALL REACTION:

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl$$

Methane — Chlorine — Chloromethane — Hydrogen chloride

THE MECHANISM:

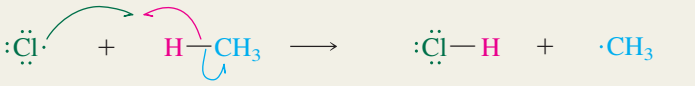
(*a*) Initiation

Step 1: Dissociation of a chlorine molecule into two chlorine atoms:

Chlorine molecule — Two chlorine atoms

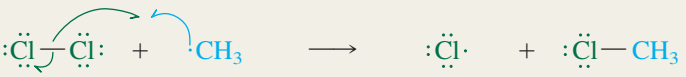
(*b*) Chain propagation

Step 2: Hydrogen atom abstraction from methane by a chlorine atom:



Chlorine atom — Methane — Hydrogen chloride — Methyl radical

Step 3: Reaction of methyl radical with molecular chlorine:



Chlorine molecule — Methyl radical — Chlorine atom — Chloromethane

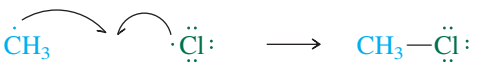
Steps 2 and 3 then repeat many times.

Problem 4.19

Write equations for the initiation and propagation steps for the formation of dichloromethane by free-radical chlorination of chloromethane.

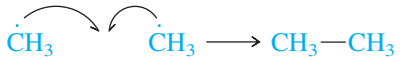
In practice, side reactions intervene to reduce the efficiency of the propagation steps. The chain sequence is interrupted whenever two odd-electron species combine to give an even-electron product. Reactions of this type are called **chain-terminating steps.** Some commonly observed chain-terminating steps in the chlorination of methane are shown in the following equations.

Combination of a methyl radical with a chlorine atom:



Methyl radical — Chlorine atom — Chloromethane

Combination of two methyl radicals:



Two methyl radicals — Ethane

Combination of two chlorine atoms:

Two chlorine atoms Chlorine molecule

Termination steps are, in general, less likely to occur than the propagation steps. Each of the termination steps requires two free radicals to encounter each other in a medium that contains far greater quantities of other materials (methane and chlorine molecules) with which they can react. Although some chloromethane undoubtedly arises via direct combination of methyl radicals with chlorine atoms, most of it is formed by the propagation sequence shown in Mechanism 4.3.

4.17 Halogenation of Higher Alkanes

Like the chlorination of methane, chlorination of ethane is carried out on an industrial scale as a high-temperature gas-phase reaction.

$$\underset{\text{Ethane}}{CH_3CH_3} + \underset{\text{Chlorine}}{Cl_2} \xrightarrow{420^\circ C} \underset{\substack{\text{Chloroethane (78\%)}\\ \text{(ethyl chloride)}}}{CH_3CH_2Cl} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen chloride}}{HCl}$$

As in the chlorination of methane, it is often difficult to limit the reaction to monochlorination, and derivatives having more than one chlorine atom are also formed.

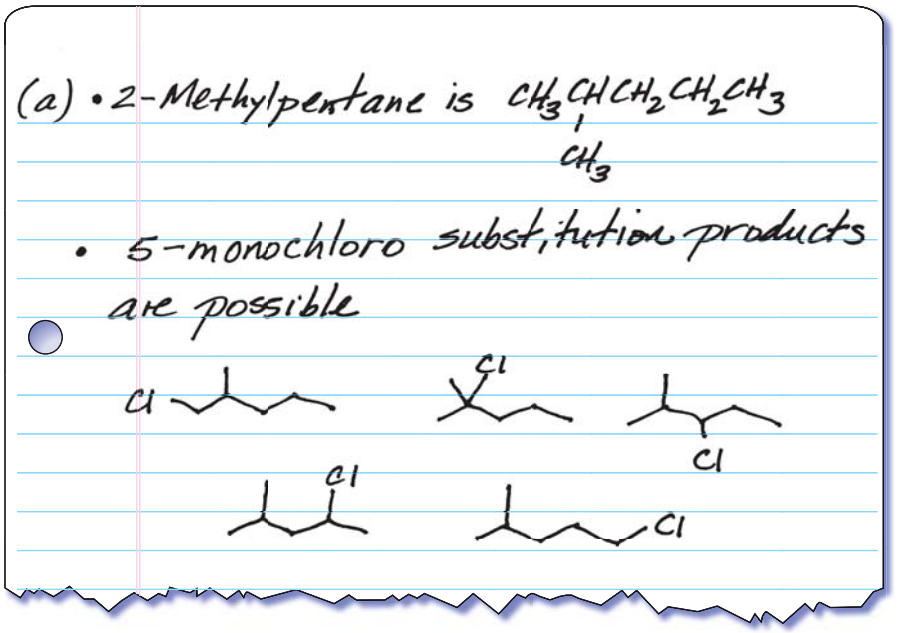
Problem 4.20

Chlorination of ethane yields, in addition to ethyl chloride, a mixture of two isomeric dichlorides. What are the structures of these two dichlorides?

Problem 4.21

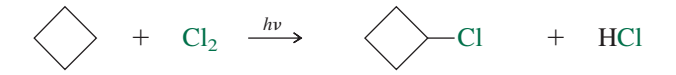
Which constitutional isomer of C_6H_{14} gives only two monochlorination products?

(a) 2-Methylpentane
(b) 3-Methylpentane
(c) 2,2-Dimethylbutane
(d) 2,3-Dimethylbutane



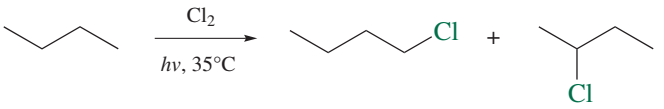
In the laboratory it is more convenient to use light, either visible or ultraviolet, as the source of energy to initiate the reaction. Reactions that occur when light energy is absorbed by a molecule are called **photochemical reactions.** Photochemical techniques permit the reaction of alkanes with chlorine to be performed at room temperature.

Photochemical energy is indicated by writing "light" or "$h\nu$" above or below the arrow. The symbol $h\nu$ is equal to the energy of a light photon and will be discussed in more detail in Section 13.1.



Cyclobutane — Chlorine — Chlorocyclobutane (73%) (cyclobutyl chloride) — Hydrogen chloride

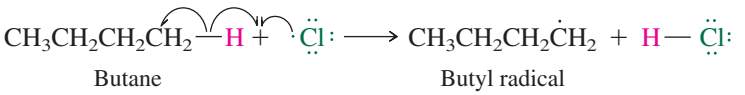
Methane, ethane, and cyclobutane share the common feature that each one can give only a *single* monochloro derivative. All the hydrogens of cyclobutane, for example, are equivalent, and substitution of any one gives the same product as substitution of any other. Chlorination of alkanes in which the hydrogens are not all equivalent is more complicated in that a mixture of every possible monochloro derivative is formed, as the chlorination of butane illustrates:



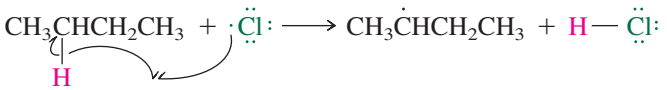
Butane — 1-Chlorobutane (28%) (*n*-butyl chloride) — 2-Chlorobutane (72%) (*sec*-butyl chloride)

The percentages cited in the preceding equation reflect the composition of the monochloride fraction of the product mixture rather than the isolated yield of each component.

These two products arise because in one of the propagation steps a chlorine atom may abstract a hydrogen atom from either a methyl or a methylene group of butane.

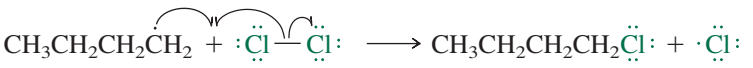


Butane — Butyl radical

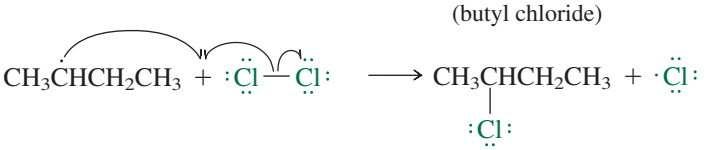


Butane — *sec*-Butyl radical

The resulting free radicals react with chlorine to give the corresponding alkyl chlorides. Butyl radical gives only 1-chlorobutane; *sec*-butyl radical gives only 2-chlorobutane.



Butyl radical — 1-Chlorobutane (butyl chloride)



sec-Butyl radical — 2-Chlorobutane (*sec*-butyl chloride)

If every collision of a chlorine atom with a butane molecule resulted in hydrogen abstraction, the butyl/*sec*-butyl radical ratio and, therefore, the 1-chloro/2-chlorobutane ratio, would be given by the relative numbers of hydrogens in the two equivalent methyl groups of $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$ (six) compared with those in the two equivalent methylene groups (four). The product distribution expected on this basis would be 60% 1-chlorobutane and 40% 2-chlorobutane. The *experimentally observed* product distribution, however, is 28% 1-chlorobutane and 72% 2-chlorobutane. *sec*-Butyl radical is therefore formed in greater amounts, and butyl radical in lesser amounts, than expected.

This behavior stems from the greater stability of secondary compared with primary free radicals. The transition state for the step in which a chlorine atom abstracts a hydrogen from carbon has free-radical character at carbon.

Transition state for abstraction of a primary hydrogen

Transition state for abstraction of a secondary hydrogen

A secondary hydrogen is abstracted faster than a primary hydrogen because the transition state with secondary radical character is more stable than the one with primary radical character. The same factors that stabilize a secondary radical stabilize a transition state with secondary radical character more than one with primary radical character. Hydrogen atom abstraction from a CH_2 group occurs faster than from a CH_3 group. We can calculate how much faster a *single* secondary hydrogen is abstracted compared with a *single* primary hydrogen from the experimentally observed product distribution.

$$\frac{72\%\text{ 2-chlorobutane}}{28\%\text{ 1-chlorobutane}} = \frac{\text{rate of secondary H abstraction} \times 4\text{ secondary hydrogens}}{\text{rate of primary H abstraction} \times 6\text{ primary hydrogens}}$$

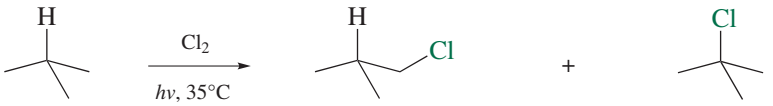
$$\frac{\text{Rate of secondary H abstraction}}{\text{Rate of primary H abstraction}} = \frac{72}{28} \times \frac{6}{4} = \frac{3.9}{1}$$

A single secondary hydrogen in butane is abstracted by a chlorine atom 3.9 times faster than a single primary hydrogen.

Problem 4.22

Assuming the relative rate of secondary to primary hydrogen atom abstraction to be the same in the chlorination of propane as it is in that of butane, calculate the relative amounts of propyl chloride and isopropyl chloride obtained in the free-radical chlorination of propane.

A similar study of the chlorination of 2-methylpropane established that a tertiary hydrogen is removed 5.2 times faster than each primary hydrogen.



2-Methylpropane

1-Chloro-2-methylpropane (63%) (isobutyl chloride)

2-Chloro-2-methylpropane (37%) (*tert*-butyl chloride)

In summary, the chlorination of alkanes is not very selective. The various kinds of hydrogens present in a molecule (tertiary, secondary, and primary) differ by only a factor of 5 in the relative rate at which each reacts with a chlorine atom.

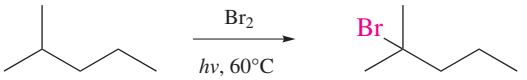
	R_3CH	$>$	R_2CH_2	$>$	RCH_3
	(tertiary)		(secondary)		(primary)
Relative rate (chlorination)	5.2		3.9		1

Bromine reacts with alkanes by a free-radical chain mechanism analogous to that of chlorine. There is an important difference between chlorination and bromination, however. Bromination is highly selective for substitution of *tertiary hydrogens*. The spread in reactivity among primary, secondary, and tertiary hydrogens is greater than 10^3.

	R_3CH	$>$	R_2CH_2	$>$	RCH_3
	(tertiary)		(secondary)		(primary)
Relative rate (bromination)	1640		82		1

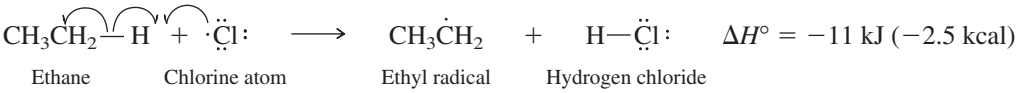
In practice, this means that when an alkane contains primary, secondary, and tertiary hydrogens, it is usually only the tertiary hydrogen that is replaced by bromine.

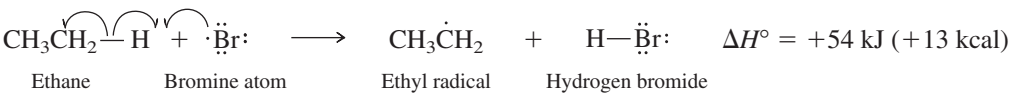
The percentage cited in this reaction is the isolated yield of purified product. Isomeric bromides constitute only a tiny fraction of the product.



2-Methylpentane — 2-Bromo-2-methylpentane (76% isolated yield)

We can understand why bromination is more selective than chlorination by using bond dissociation enthalpies (Table 4.3) to calculate the energy changes for the propagation step in which each halogen atom abstracts a hydrogen from ethane.





The alkyl radical-forming step is *exothermic for chlorination, endothermic for bromination.* Applying Hammond's postulate to these elementary steps, we conclude that alkyl radical character is more highly developed in the transition state for abstraction of hydrogen by a bromine atom than by a chlorine atom. Thus, bromination is more sensitive to the stability of the free-radical intermediate than chlorination and more selective.

The greater selectivity of bromination can be illustrated by comparing potential energy diagrams for the formation of primary and tertiary radicals by hydrogen atom abstraction from 2-methylpropane with bromine versus chlorine atoms (Figure 4.20). Abstraction of hydrogen by a chlorine atom is exothermic for the formation of either the primary or tertiary radical. The transition states are early and more reactant-like, and the difference in E_a is small. Conversely, abstraction of hydrogen by a bromine atom, illustrated in Figure 4.20*b,* is endothermic in both cases. The transition states are more product-like and possess more radical character; therefore, the difference in radical stability is more

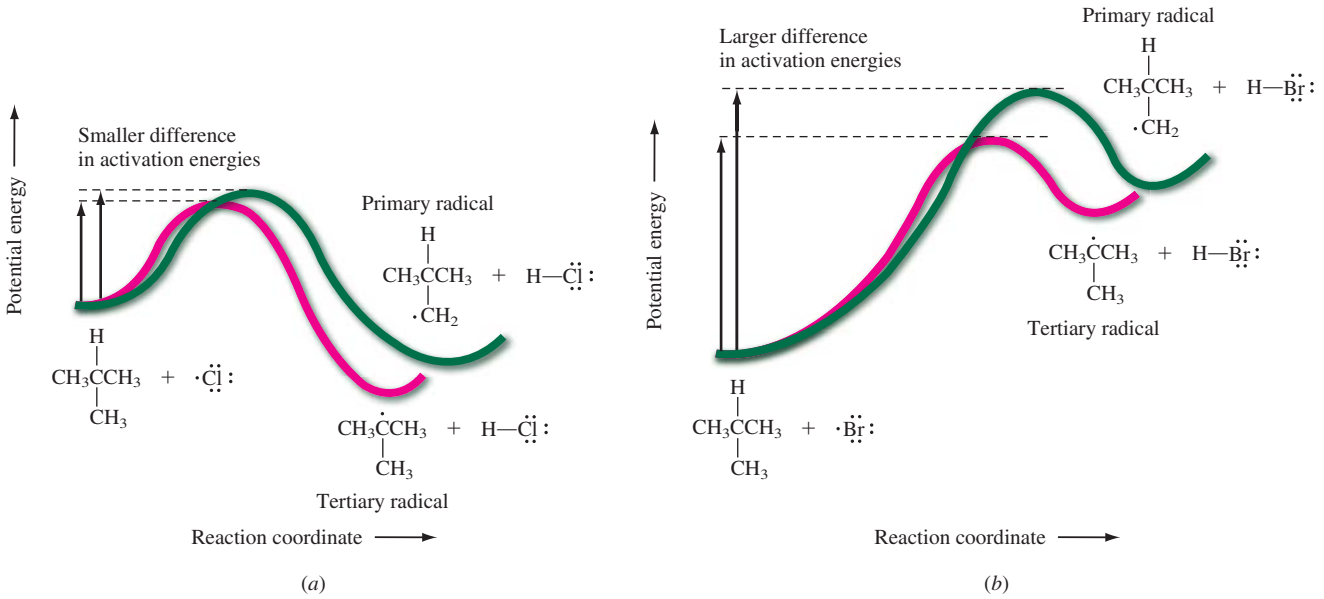


Figure 4.20

These potential energy diagrams for the formation of primary and tertiary alkyl radicals by halogen atom abstraction from 2-methylpropane illustrate a larger difference in the activation energies for the reaction with a bromine atom (*b*) than with a chlorine atom (*a*). This difference is consistent with the higher selectivity of bromination.

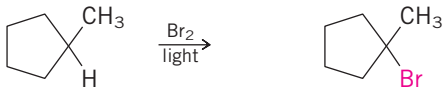
strongly expressed, and the difference in activation energies is larger. The more stable free radical is formed faster and gives rise to a greater share of the product.

Problem 4.23

Give the structure of the principal organic product formed by free-radical bromination of each of the following:

(a) Methylcyclopentane
(b) 2,2,4-Trimethylpentane
(c) 1-Isopropyl-1-methylcyclopentane

Sample Solution (a) Write the structure of the starting hydrocarbon, and identify any tertiary hydrogens that are present. The only tertiary hydrogen in methylcyclopentane is the one attached to C-1. This is the one replaced by bromine.



Methylcyclopentane 1-Bromo-1-methylcyclopentane

This difference in selectivity between chlorination and bromination of alkanes needs to be kept in mind when one wishes to prepare an alkyl halide from an alkane:

1. Because chlorination of an alkane yields every possible monochloride, it is used only when all the hydrogens in an alkane are equivalent.
2. Bromination of alkanes is mainly used to prepare tertiary alkyl bromides.

4.18 SUMMARY

Chemical reactivity and functional group transformations involving the preparation of alkyl halides from alcohols and from alkanes are the main themes of this chapter. Although the conversions of an alcohol or an alkane to an alkyl halide are both classified as substitutions, they proceed by very different mechanisms.

Section 4.1 **Functional groups** are the structural units responsible for the characteristic reactions of a molecule. The hydrocarbon chain to which a functional group is attached can often be considered as simply a supporting framework. The most common functional groups characterize the families of organic compounds listed on the inside front cover of the text.

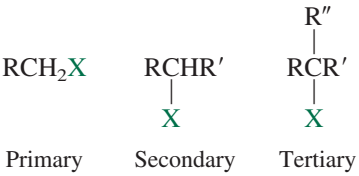
Section 4.2 Alcohols and alkyl halides may be named using either **substitutive** or **functional class** IUPAC nomenclature. In substitutive nomenclature alkyl halides are named as halogen derivatives of alkanes. The parent is the longest continuous chain that bears the halogen substituent, and in the absence of other substituents the chain is numbered from the direction that gives the lower number to the carbon that bears the halogen. The functional class names of alkyl halides begin with the name of the alkyl group and end with the halide as a separate word.

Substitutive name: 2-Bromohexane
Functional class name: 1-Methylpentyl bromide

Section 4.3 The substitutive names of alcohols are derived by replacing the *-e* ending of an alkane with *-ol*. The longest chain containing the OH group becomes the basis for the name. Functional class names of alcohols begin with the name of the alkyl group and end in the word *alcohol*.

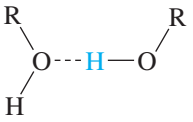
Substitutive name: 2-Hexanol or Hexan-2-ol
Functional class name: 1-Methylpentyl alcohol

Section 4.4 Alcohols (X = OH) and alkyl halides (X = F, Cl, Br, or I) are classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary according to the degree of substitution at the carbon that bears the functional group.



Section 4.5 The halogens (especially fluorine and chlorine) and oxygen are more electronegative than carbon, and the carbon–halogen bond in alkyl halides and the carbon–oxygen bond in alcohols are polar. Carbon is the positive end of the dipole and halogen or oxygen the negative end.

Section 4.6 Dipole/induced-dipole and dipole–dipole attractive forces make alcohols higher boiling than alkanes of similar molecular size. The attractive force between —OH groups is called **hydrogen bonding.**



Hydrogen bonding between the hydroxyl group of an alcohol and water makes the water-solubility of alcohols greater than that of hydrocarbons. Low-molecular-weight alcohols [CH_3OH, CH_3CH_2OH, $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$, and $(CH_3)_2CHOH$] are soluble in water in all proportions. Alkyl halides are insoluble in water.

Section 4.7 See Table 4.4

Section 4.8 Secondary and tertiary alcohols react with hydrogen halides by an S_N1 mechanism that involves formation of a carbocation intermediate in the rate-determining step.

1. $ROH + HX \underset{}{\overset{\text{fast}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \overset{+}{R}OH_2 + X^-$

Alcohol; Hydrogen halide; Alkyloxonium ion; Halide anion

2. $\overset{+}{R}OH_2 \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} R^+ + H_2O$

Alkyloxonium ion; Carbocation; Water

3. $R^+ + X^- \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} RX$

Carbocation; Halide ion; Alkyl halide

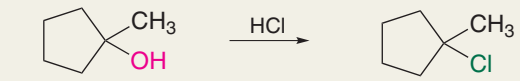
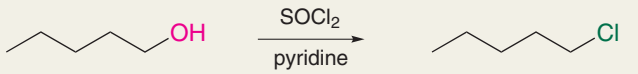
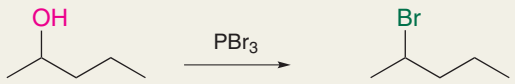
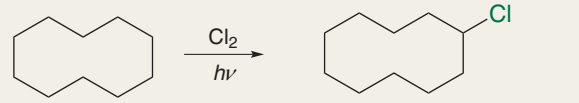
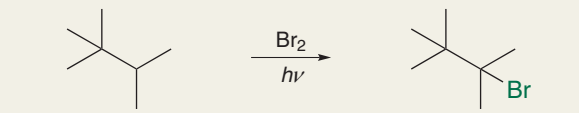
Section 4.9 Carbocations contain a positively charged carbon with only three atoms or groups attached to it. This carbon is sp^2-hybridized and has a vacant 2*p* orbital.

Carbocations are stabilized by alkyl substituents attached directly to the positively charged carbon. Alkyl groups are *electron-releasing* substituents. Stability increases in the order

(least stable) $CH_3^+ < RCH_2^+ < R_2CH^+ < R_3C^+$ (most stable)

Carbocations are strong **electrophiles** (Lewis acids) and react with **nucleophiles** (Lewis bases).

TABLE 4.4 Conversions of Alcohols and Alkanes to Alkyl Halides

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example(s)
Reactions of alcohols with hydrogen halides (Section 4.7) Alcohols react with hydrogen halides to yield alkyl halides. The reaction is useful as a synthesis of alkyl halides. The reactivity of hydrogen halides decreases in the order HI > HBr > HCl > HF. Alcohol reactivity decreases in the order tertiary > secondary > primary.	ROH + HX → RX + H_2O Alcohol; Hydrogen halide; Alkyl halide; Water  1-Methylcyclopentanol → 1-Chloro-1-methylcyclopentane (96%)
Reaction of alcohols with thionyl chloride (Section 4.12) Thionyl chloride converts alcohols to alkyl chlorides.	ROH + $SOCl_2$ → RCl + SO_2 + HCl Alcohol; Thionyl chloride; Alkyl chloride; Sulfur dioxide; Hydrogen chloride  1-Pentanol → 1-Chloropentane (80%)
Reaction of alcohols with phosphorus tribromide (Section 4.12) As an alternative to converting alcohols to alkyl bromides with hydrogen bromide, the inorganic reagent phosphorus tribromide is sometimes used.	3ROH + PBr_3 → 3RBr + H_3PO_3 Alcohol; Phosphorus tribromide; Alkyl bromide; Phosphorous acid  2-Pentanol → 2-Bromopentane (67%)
Free-radical halogenation of alkanes (Sections 4.13 through 4.17) Alkanes react with halogens by substitution of a halogen for a hydrogen on the alkane. The reactivity of the halogens decreases in the order $F_2 > Cl_2 > Br_2 > I_2$. The ease of replacing a hydrogen decreases in the order tertiary > secondary > primary > methyl. Chlorination is not very selective and so is used only when all the hydrogens of the alkane are equivalent. Bromination is highly selective, replacing tertiary hydrogens much more readily than secondary or primary ones.	RH + X_2 → RX + HX Alkane; Halogen; Alkyl halide; Hydrogen halide  Cyclodecane → Cyclodecyl chloride (64%)  2,2,3-Trimethylbutane → 2-Bromo-2,3,3-trimethylbutane (80%)

Section 4.10 The rate at which alcohols are converted to alkyl halides depends on the rate of carbocation formation: tertiary alcohols are most reactive; primary alcohols are least reactive.

Section 4.11 Primary alcohols and methanol do not react with hydrogen halides by way of carbocation intermediates. The nucleophilic species (Br^- for example) attacks the alkyloxonium ion and displaces a water molecule from carbon in a bimolecular step. This step is rate-determining, and the mechanism is S_N2.

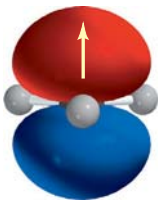
An increase in temperature will increase the value of the rate constant (k). Small differences in activation energy lead to large differences in reaction rate.

Section 4.12 See Table 4.4

Section 4.13 See Table 4.4

Section 4.14 Methane reacts with Cl_2 to give chloromethane, dichloromethane, trichloromethane, and tetrachloromethane.

Section 4.15 Chlorination of methane, and halogenation of alkanes generally, proceed by way of **free-radical** intermediates. Alkyl radicals are neutral and have an unpaired electron on carbon.



Like carbocations, free radicals are stabilized by alkyl substituents. The order of free-radical stability parallels that of carbocation stability, but is less pronounced.

Section 4.16 Elementary steps (1) through (3) describe a free-radical chain mechanism for the reaction of an alkane with a halogen.

1. (initiation step)

$$\underset{\text{Halogen molecule}}{X_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Two halogen atoms}}{2X\cdot}$$

2. (propagation step)

$$\underset{\text{Alkane}}{RH} + \underset{\text{Halogen atom}}{X\cdot} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Alkyl radical}}{R\cdot} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen halide}}{HX}$$

3. (propagation step)

$$\underset{\text{Alkyl radical}}{R\cdot} + \underset{\text{Halogen molecule}}{X_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Alkyl halide}}{RX} + \underset{\text{Halogen atom}}{\cdot X}$$

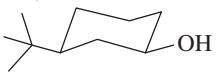
Section 4.17 See Table 4.4

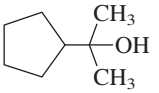
PROBLEMS

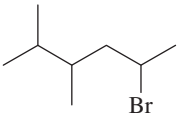
4.24 Write structural formulas for each of the following alcohols and alkyl halides:

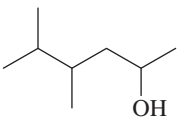
(a) Cyclobutanol
(b) *sec*-Butyl alcohol
(c) 3-Heptanol
(d) *trans*-2-Chlorocyclopentanol
(e) 2,6-Dichloro-4-methyl-4-octanol
(f) *trans*-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexanol
(g) 1-Cyclopropylethanol
(h) 2-Cyclopropylethanol

4.25 Name each of the following compounds according to substitutive IUPAC nomenclature:

(a) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2CH_2Br$
(b) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2CH_2OH$
(c) Cl_3CCH_2Br
(d) $Cl_2CHCHBr$ (Cl)
(e) CF_3CH_2OH
(f) 

(g) 

(h) 

(i) 

4.26 Each of the following is a functional class name developed according to the 1993 IUPAC recommendations. Alkyl group names of this type are derived by naming the longest continuous chain that includes the point of attachment, numbering in the direction so as to give the substituted carbon the lower number. The *-e* ending of the corresponding alkane is replaced by *-yl,* which is preceded by the number corresponding to the substituted carbon bracketed by hyphens. Write a structural formula for each alkyl halide.

(a) 6-Methylheptan-3-yl chloride

(b) 2,2-Dimethylpentan-3-yl bromide

(c) 3,3-Dimethylcyclopentan-1-yl alcohol

4.27 Write structural formulas for all the constitutionally isomeric alcohols of molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$. Assign a substitutive and a functional class name to each one, and specify whether it is a primary, secondary, or tertiary alcohol.

4.28 A hydroxyl group is a somewhat "smaller" substituent on a six-membered ring than is a methyl group. That is, the preference of a hydroxyl group for the equatorial orientation is less pronounced than that of a methyl group. Given this information, write structural formulas for all the isomeric methylcyclohexanols, showing each one in its most stable conformation. Give the substitutive IUPAC name for each isomer.

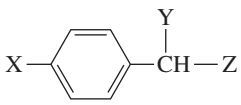
4.29 By assuming that the heat of combustion of the cis isomer is larger than the trans, structural assignments were made many years ago for the stereoisomeric 2-, 3-, and 4-methylcyclohexanols. This assumption is valid for two of the stereoisomeric pairs but is incorrect for the other. For which pair of stereoisomers is the assumption incorrect? Why?

4.30 (a) *Menthol,* used to flavor various foods and tobacco, is the most stable stereoisomer of 2-isopropyl-5-methylcyclohexanol. Draw its most stable conformation. Is the hydroxyl group cis or trans to the isopropyl group? To the methyl group?

(b) *Neomenthol* is a stereoisomer of menthol. That is, it has the same constitution but differs in the arrangement of its atoms in space. Neomenthol is the second most stable stereoisomer of 2-isopropyl-5-methylcyclohexanol; it is less stable than menthol but more stable than any other stereoisomer. Write the structure of neomenthol in its most stable conformation.

4.31 *Epichlorohydrin* is the common name of an industrial chemical used as a component in epoxy cement. The molecular formula of epichlorohydrin is C_3H_5ClO. Epichlorohydrin has an epoxide functional group; it does not have a methyl group. Write a structural formula for epichlorohydrin.

4.32 (a) Complete the structure of the pain-relieving drug *ibuprofen* on the basis of the fact that ibuprofen is a carboxylic acid that has the molecular formula $C_{13}H_{18}O_2$, X is an isobutyl group, and Y is a methyl group.

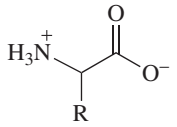


(b) *Mandelonitrile* may be obtained from peach flowers. Derive its structure from the template in part (a) given that X is hydrogen, Y is the functional group that characterizes alcohols, and Z characterizes nitriles.

4.33 *Isoamyl acetate* is the common name of the substance most responsible for the characteristic odor of bananas. Write a structural formula for isoamyl acetate, given the information that it is an ester in which the carbonyl group bears a methyl substituent and there is a 3-methylbutyl group attached to one of the oxygens.

4.34 *n-Butyl mercaptan* is the common name of a foul-smelling substance obtained from skunk spray. It is a thiol of the type RX, where R is an *n*-butyl group and X is the functional group that characterizes a thiol. Write a structural formula for this substance.

4.35 Some of the most important organic compounds in biochemistry are the α-*amino acids,* represented by the general formula shown.



Write structural formulas for the following α-amino acids.

(a) Alanine (R = methyl)

(b) Valine (R = isopropyl)

(c) Leucine (R = isobutyl)

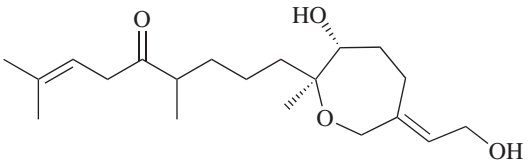
(d) Isoleucine (R = *sec*-butyl)

(e) Serine (R = XCH_2, where X is the functional group that characterizes alcohols)

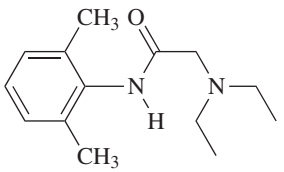
(f) Cysteine (R = XCH_2, where X is the functional group that characterizes thiols)

(g) Aspartic acid (R = XCH_2, where X is the functional group that characterizes carboxylic acids)

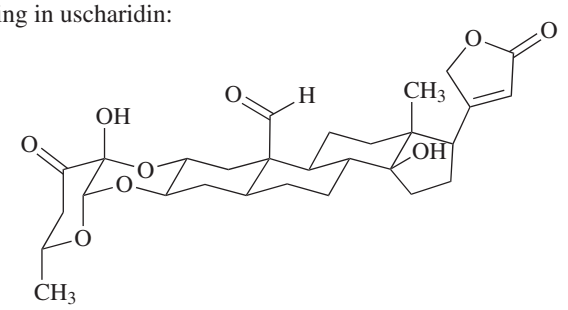
4.36 The compound *zoapatanol* was isolated from the leaves of a Mexican plant. Classify each oxygen in zoapatanol according to the functional group to which it belongs. If an oxygen is part of an alcohol, classify the alcohol as primary, secondary, or tertiary.



4.37 Consult Table 4.1 and classify each nitrogen-containing functional group in the anesthetic *lidocaine* according to whether it is an amide, or a primary, secondary, or tertiary amine.



4.38 *Uscharidin* is a natural product present in milkweed. It has the structure shown. Locate all of the following in uscharidin:



(a) Alcohol, aldehyde, ketone, and ester functional groups

(b) Methylene groups

(c) Primary carbons

4.39 Write a chemical equation for the reaction of 1-butanol with each of the following:

(a) Sodium amide ($NaNH_2$)

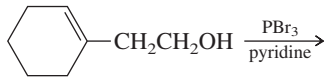
(b) Hydrogen bromide, heat

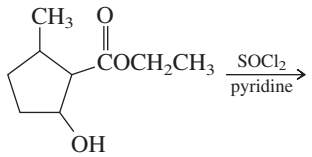
(c) Sodium bromide, sulfuric acid, heat

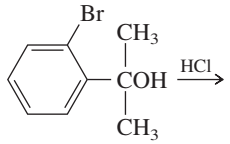
(d) Phosphorus tribromide

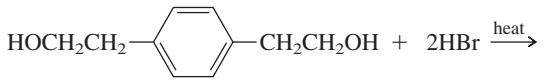
(e) Thionyl chloride

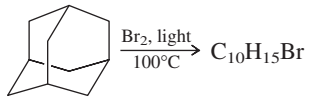
4.40 Each of the following reactions has been described in the chemical literature and involves an organic reactant somewhat more complex than those we have encountered so far. Nevertheless, on the basis of the topics covered in this chapter, you should be able to write the structure of the principal organic product of each reaction.

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

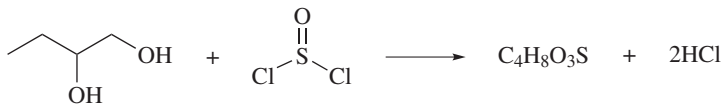
(d) 

(e) 

4.41 Select the compound in each of the following pairs that will be converted to the corresponding alkyl bromide more rapidly on being treated with hydrogen bromide. Explain the reason for your choice.

(a) 1-Butanol or 2-butanol
(b) 2-Methyl-1-butanol or 2-butanol
(c) 2-Methyl-2-butanol or 2-butanol
(d) 2-Methylbutane or 2-butanol
(e) 1-Methylcyclopentanol or cyclohexanol
(f) 1-Methylcyclopentanol or *trans*-2-methylcyclopentanol
(g) 1-Cyclopentylethanol or 1-ethylcyclopentanol

4.42 Compounds with more than one hydroxyl group can react with thionyl chloride in a manner different from that of simple alcohols. On reaction with thionyl chloride, butane-1,2-diol gave a single organic product in 85% yield according to the following balanced equation:



Suggest a reasonable structure for this product.

4.43 Bromomethylcycloheptane has been prepared in 92% yield by the reaction shown. Write a stepwise mechanism and use curved arrows to show electron flow. The reaction was carried out in water, so use H_3O^+ as the proton donor in your mechanism. Is the rate-determining step unimolecular (S_N1) or bimolecular (S_N2)?

4.44 Although useful in agriculture as a soil fumigant, methyl bromide is an ozone-depleting chemical, and its production is being phased out. The industrial preparation of methyl bromide is from methanol, by reaction with hydrogen bromide. Write a mechanism for this reaction and classify it as S_N1 or S_N2.

4.45 Cyclopropyl chloride has been prepared by the free-radical chlorination of cyclopropane. Write a stepwise mechanism for this reaction.

4.46 (a) Use the bond dissociation enthalpy data in Table 4.3 to calculate $\Delta H°$ for the propagation step

$$CH_4 + \cdot\ddot{B}r: \longrightarrow \cdot CH_3 + H{-}\ddot{B}r:$$

(b) The activation energy for this step is 76 kJ/mol (18.3 kcal/mol). Sketch a potential energy diagram for this step, labeling reactants, products, and transition state.

(c) Does the structure of the transition state more closely resemble reactants or products? Why?

4.47 Carbon–carbon bond dissociation enthalpies have been measured for many alkanes. Without referring to Table 4.3, identify the alkane in each of the following pairs that has the lower carbon–carbon bond dissociation enthalpy, and explain the reason for your choice.

(a) Ethane or propane

(b) Propane or 2-methylpropane

(c) 2-Methylpropane or 2,2-dimethylpropane

4.48 In both the following exercises, assume that all the methylene groups in the alkane are equally reactive as sites of free-radical chlorination.

(a) Photochemical chlorination of heptane gave a mixture of monochlorides containing 15% 1-chloroheptane. What other monochlorides are present? Estimate the percentage of each of these additional $C_7H_{15}Cl$ isomers in the monochloride fraction.

(b) Photochemical chlorination of dodecane gave a monochloride fraction containing 19% 2-chlorododecane. Estimate the percentage of 1-chlorododecane present in that fraction.

4.49 Photochemical chlorination of 2,2,4-trimethylpentane gives four isomeric monochlorides.

(a) Write structural formulas for these four isomers.

(b) The two primary chlorides make up 65% of the monochloride fraction. Assuming that all the primary hydrogens in 2,2,4-trimethylpentane are equally reactive, estimate the percentage of each of the two primary chlorides in the product mixture.

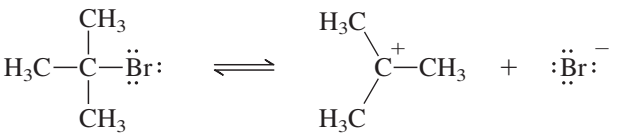
4.50 Photochemical chlorination of pentane gave a mixture of three isomeric monochlorides. The principal monochloride constituted 46% of the total, and the remaining 54% was approximately a 1:1 mixture of the other two isomers. Write structural formulas for the three monochloride isomers and specify which one was formed in greatest amount. (Recall that a secondary hydrogen is abstracted three times faster by a chlorine atom than a primary hydrogen.)

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 4

More About Potential Energy Diagrams

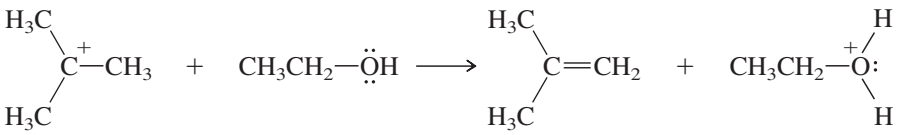
Chapter 5 will describe *elimination* reactions and their mechanisms. In one example, heating *tert*-butyl bromide in ethanol gives the alkene 2-methylpropene by a two-step mechanism:

Step 1:



tert-Butyl bromide — *tert*-Butyl cation — Bromide ion

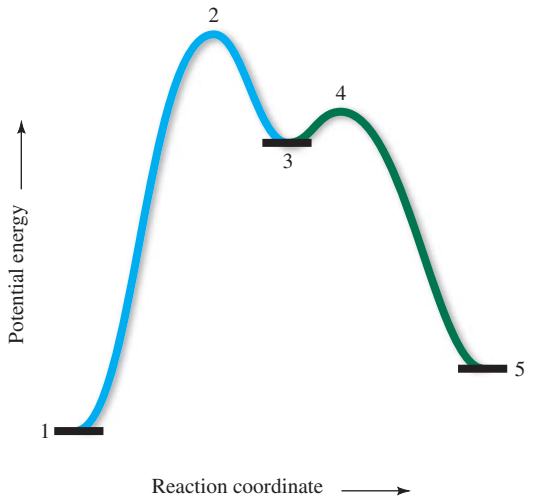
Step 2:



tert-Butyl cation — Ethanol — 2-Methylpropene — Ethyloxonium ion

A potential energy diagram for the reaction provides additional information to complement the mechanism expressed in the equations for the two elementary steps.

The energy relationships in the diagram are not only useful in their own right, but also aid in understanding the structural changes occurring at the transition state. Hammond's postulate tells us that if two states occur consecutively, the closer they are in energy, the more similar they are in structure.



4.51 Ethanol is:

A. a catalyst
B. a reactive intermediate
C. a Brønsted acid
D. a Brønsted base

4.52 According to the potential energy diagram, the overall reaction is:

A. endothermic
B. exothermic

4.53 Classify the elementary steps in the mechanism according to their molecularity.

A. Step 1 is unimolecular; step 2 is bimolecular.
B. Step 1 is bimolecular; step 2 is unimolecular.
C. Both steps are unimolecular.
D. Both steps are bimolecular.

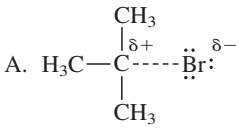
4.54 Classify states 2–4 in the potential energy diagram.

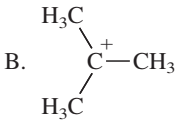
A. 2, 3, and 4 are transition states
B. 2, 3, and 4 are reactive intermediates
C. 2 and 4 are transition states; 3 is a reactive intermediate
D. 2 and 4 are reactive intermediates; 3 is a transition state

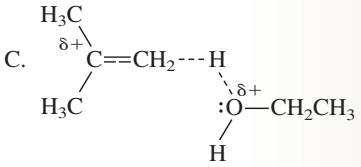
4.55 According to the diagram, the activation energy of the slow step is given by the energy difference between states

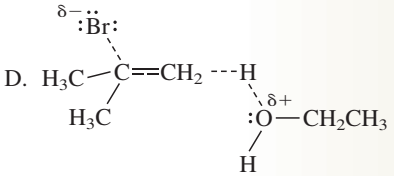
A. 1 and 2
B. 2 and 3
C. 3 and 4
D. 1 and 5

4.56 What best describes the species at the rate-determining transition state?

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

4.57 By applying Hammond's postulate to the potential energy diagram for this reaction, we can say that:

A. the structure of 2 is more carbocation-like than 4
B. the structure of 2 is less carbocation-like than 4
C. the structure of 2 resembles 1 more than it resembles 3
D. the structure of 4 resembles 5 more than it resembles 3

5

CHAPTER OUTLINE

5.1 Alkene Nomenclature 176
5.2 Structure and Bonding in Alkenes 178
- Ethylene 179

5.3 Isomerism in Alkenes 180
5.4 Naming Stereoisomeric Alkenes by the *E*–*Z* Notational System 181
5.5 Physical Properties of Alkenes 183
5.6 Relative Stabilities of Alkenes 184
5.7 Cycloalkenes 187
5.8 Preparation of Alkenes: Elimination Reactions 188
5.9 Dehydration of Alcohols 189
5.10 Regioselectivity in Alcohol Dehydration: The Zaitsev Rule 190
5.11 Stereoselectivity in Alcohol Dehydration 191
5.12 The E1 and E2 Mechanisms of Alcohol Dehydration 191
5.13 Rearrangements in Alcohol Dehydration 193
5.14 Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides 197
5.15 The E2 Mechanism of Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides 199
5.16 Anti Elimination in E2 Reactions: Stereoelectronic Effects 202
5.17 Isotope Effects and the E2 Mechanism 204
5.18 The E1 Mechanism of Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides 205
5.19 Summary 207

Problems 210

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 5: A Mechanistic Preview of Addition Reactions 215

Squalene ($C_{30}H_{50}$) is a hydrocarbon with six carbon–carbon double bonds. It is present in plants and animals and, as will be seen in Chapter 24 is the biosynthetic precursor to steroids such as cholesterol. The oil present in shark liver is an important commerical source.

Structure and Preparation of Alkenes: Elimination Reactions

Alkenes are hydrocarbons that contain a carbon–carbon double bond. A carbon–carbon double bond is both an important structural unit and an important functional group in organic chemistry. The shape of an organic molecule is influenced by its presence, and the double bond is the site of most of the chemical reactions that alkenes undergo.

This chapter is the first of two dealing with alkenes; it describes their structure, bonding, and preparation. Chapter 6 examines their chemical reactions.

5.1 Alkene Nomenclature

We give alkenes IUPAC names by replacing the *-ane* ending of the corresponding alkane with *-ene*. The two simplest alkenes are ethene and propene. Both are also well known by their common names *ethylene* and *propylene*.

$H_2C{=}CH_2$	$CH_3CH{=}CH_2$
IUPAC name: **ethene**	IUPAC name: **propene**
Common name: ethylene	Common name: propylene

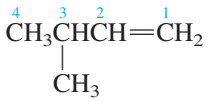
The alkene corresponding to the longest continuous chain that includes the double bond is considered the parent, and the chain is numbered in the direction that gives the doubly bonded

carbons their lower numbers. The locant (or numerical position) of only one of the doubly bonded carbons is specified in the name; it is understood that the other doubly bonded carbon must follow in sequence. The locant may precede the parent chain (1979 IUPAC rules) or the *-ene* suffix (1993 rules).

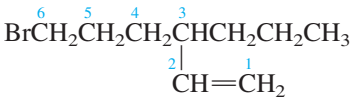
1-Butene
But-1-ene

2-Hexene
Hex-2-ene

Carbon–carbon double bonds take precedence over alkyl groups and halogens in determining the main carbon chain and the direction in which it is numbered.

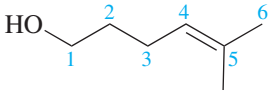


3-Methyl-1-butene
3-Methylbut-1-ene



6-Bromo-3-propyl-1-hexene
6-Bromo-3-propylhex-1-ene

Hydroxyl groups, however, outrank the double bond, and a chain that contains both an —OH group and a double bond is numbered in the direction that gives the carbon attached to the —OH group the lower number. Compounds that contain both a double bond and a hydroxyl group combine the suffixes *-en* + *-ol* to signify that both functional groups are present.



5-Methyl-4-hexen-1-ol
5-Methylhex-4-en-1-ol

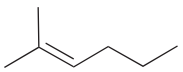
Problem 5.1

Name each of the following using IUPAC nomenclature:

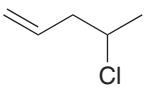
(a) $(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$

(b) $(CH_3)_3CCH{=}CH_2$

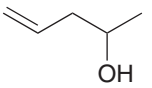
(c)



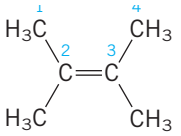
(d)



(e)



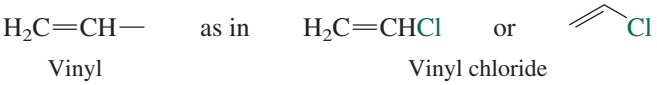
Sample Solution (a) The longest continuous chain in this alkene contains four carbon atoms. The double bond is between C-2 and C-3, and so it is named as a derivative of 2-butene.



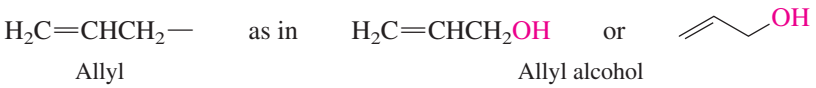
2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene
or
2,3-Dimethylbut-2-ene

The two methyl groups are substituents attached to C-2 and C-3 of the main chain.

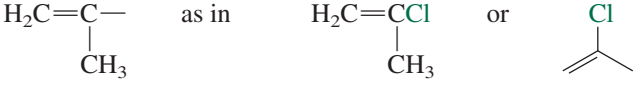
The common names of certain frequently encountered *alkyl* groups, such as isopropyl and *tert*-butyl, are acceptable in the IUPAC system. Three *alkenyl* groups—**vinyl, allyl,** and **isopropenyl**—are treated the same way.



Vinyl — Vinyl chloride



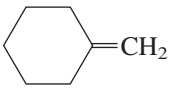
Allyl — Allyl alcohol



Isopropenyl — Isopropenyl chloride

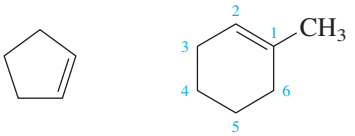
Vinyl chloride is an industrial chemical produced in large amounts (10^{10} lb/year in the United States) and is used in the preparation of poly(vinyl chloride). Poly(vinyl chloride), often called simply *vinyl*, has many applications, including siding for houses, wall coverings, and PVC piping.

When a CH_2 group is doubly bonded to a ring, the prefix *methylene* is added to the name of the ring.



Methylenecyclohexane

Cycloalkenes and their derivatives are named by adapting cycloalkane terminology to the principles of alkene nomenclature.



Cyclopentene 1-Methylcyclohexene 3-Chlorocycloheptene
(not 1-chloro-2-cycloheptene)

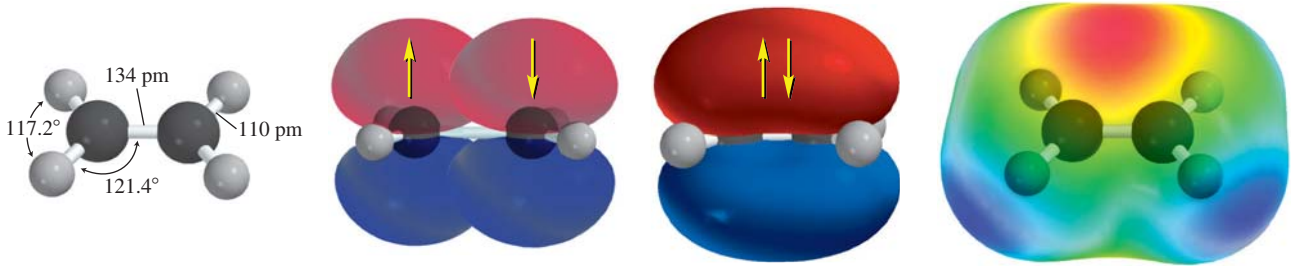
No locants are needed in the absence of substituents; it is understood that the double bond connects C-1 and C-2. Substituted cycloalkenes are numbered beginning with the double bond, proceeding through it, and continuing in sequence around the ring. The direction is chosen so as to give the lower of two possible numbers to the substituent.

Problem 5.2

Write structural formulas and give the IUPAC names of all the monochloro-substituted derivatives of cyclopentene.

5.2 Structure and Bonding in Alkenes

The structure of ethylene and the orbital hybridization model for its double bond were presented in Section 2.8 and are briefly reviewed in Figure 5.1. Ethylene is planar, each carbon is sp^2-hybridized, and the double bond is considered to have a σ component and a π component. The σ component arises from overlap of sp^2 hybrid orbitals along a line connecting the two carbons, the π component via a "side-by-side" overlap of two *p* orbitals. Regions of high π-electron density are present above and below the plane of the molecule. Most of the reactions of ethylene and other alkenes involve these π electrons.



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*) (*d*)

Figure 5.1

(*a*) The planar framework of σ bonds in ethylene showing bond distances and angles. (*b*) and (*c*) The half-filled *p* orbitals of two sp^2-hybridized carbons overlap to produce a π bond. (*d*) The electrostatic potential map shows a region of high negative potential due to the π electrons above and below the plane of the atoms.

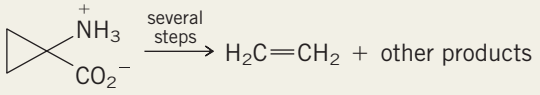
Ethylene

Ethylene was known to chemists in the eighteenth century and isolated in pure form in 1795. An early name for ethylene was *gaz oléfiant* (French for "oil-forming gas"), to describe the fact that an oily liquid product is formed when two gases—ethylene and chlorine—react with each other.

$$\underset{\text{Ethylene (bp: } -104^\circ\text{C)}}{H_2C{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Chlorine (bp: } -34^\circ\text{C)}}{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{1,2-Dichloroethane (bp: 83°C)}}{ClCH_2CH_2Cl}$$

The term *gaz oléfiant* was the forerunner of the general term *olefin,* formerly used as the name of the class of compounds we now call *alkenes.*

Ethylene occurs naturally in small amounts as a plant hormone. It is formed in a complex series of steps from a compound containing a cyclopropane ring:



1-Amino-cyclopropane-carboxylic acid — Ethylene

Even minute amounts of ethylene can stimulate the ripening of fruits, and the rate of ripening increases with the concentration of ethylene. This property is used to advantage in the marketing of bananas. Bananas are picked green in the tropics, kept green by being stored with adequate ventilation to limit the amount of ethylene present, and then induced to ripen at their destination by passing ethylene over the fruit.

Ethylene is the cornerstone of the world's mammoth petrochemical industry and is produced in vast quantities. In a typical year the amount of ethylene produced in the United States (5×10^{10} lb) exceeds the combined weight of all of its people. In one process, ethane from natural gas is heated to bring about its dissociation into ethylene and hydrogen:

$$\underset{\text{Ethane}}{CH_3CH_3} \xrightarrow{750^\circ\text{C}} \underset{\text{Ethylene}}{H_2C{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{H_2}$$

This **dehydrogenation** is simultaneously both a source of ethylene and one of the methods by which hydrogen is prepared on an industrial scale. Most of this hydrogen is subsequently used to reduce nitrogen to ammonia for the preparation of fertilizer.

Similarly, dehydrogenation of propane gives propene:

$$\underset{\text{Propane}}{CH_3CH_2CH_3} \xrightarrow{750^\circ\text{C}} \underset{\text{Propene}}{CH_3CH{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{H_2}$$

Propene is the second most important petrochemical and is produced on a scale about half that of ethylene.

Almost any hydrocarbon can serve as a starting material for production of ethylene and propene. Cracking of petroleum (Section 2.19) gives ethylene and propene by processes involving cleavage of carbon–carbon bonds of higher molecular weight hydrocarbons. An area of current research interest is directed toward finding catalytic methods for converting methane from natural gas to ethylene.

The major uses of ethylene and propene are as starting materials for the preparation of polyethylene and polypropylene plastics, fibers, and films. These and other applications will be described in Chapter 6.

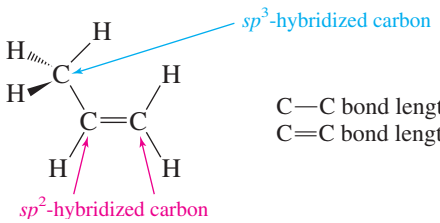
On the basis of their bond-dissociation enthalpies, the C═C bond in ethylene is stronger than the C—C single bond in ethane, but it is not twice as strong.

$$\underset{\text{Ethylene}}{H_2C{=}CH_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Methylene}}{2\,\dot{C}H_2} \quad \Delta H^\circ = +730 \text{ kJ (172 kcal)}$$

$$\underset{\text{Ethane}}{H_3C{-}CH_3} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Methyl}}{2\,\dot{C}H_3} \quad \Delta H^\circ = +375 \text{ kJ (90 kcal)}$$

While it is not possible to apportion the C═C bond energy of ethylene between its σ and π components, the data suggest that the π bond is weaker than the σ bond.

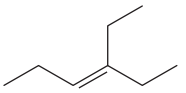
There are two different types of carbon–carbon bonds in propene, $CH_3CH{=}CH_2$. The double bond is of the σ + π type, and the bond to the methyl group is a σ bond formed by sp^3–sp^2 overlap.



C—C bond length = 150 pm
C═C bond length = 134 pm

Problem 5.3

How many carbon atoms are sp^2-hybridized in the alkene shown? How many are sp^3-hybridized? How many bonds are of the sp^2-sp^3 type? How many are of the sp^3-sp^3 type?



5.3 Isomerism in Alkenes

Although ethylene is the only two-carbon alkene, and propene the only three-carbon alkene, there are *four* isomeric alkenes of molecular formula C_4H_8:

1-Butene | 2-Methylpropene | *cis*-2-Butene | *trans*-2-Butene

1-Butene has an unbranched carbon chain with a double bond between C-1 and C-2. It is a constitutional isomer of the other three. Similarly, 2-methylpropene, with a branched carbon chain, is a constitutional isomer of the other three.

The pair of isomers designated *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene have the same constitution; both have an unbranched carbon chain with a double bond connecting C-2 and C-3. They differ from each other in that the cis isomer has both of its methyl groups on the same side of the double bond, while the methyl groups in the trans isomer are on opposite sides. Recall from Section 3.11 that isomers that have the same constitution but differ in the arrangement of their atoms in space are classified as *stereoisomers*. *cis*-2-Butene and *trans*-2-butene are stereoisomers, and the terms *cis* and *trans* specify the *configuration* of the double bond.

Stereoisomeric alkenes are sometimes referred to as *geometric isomers*.

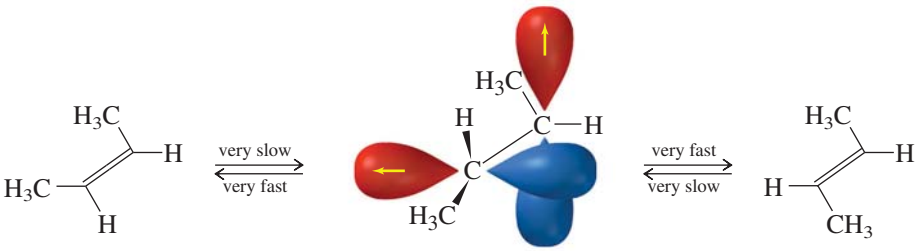
Cis–trans stereoisomerism in alkenes is not possible when one of the doubly bonded carbons bears two identical substituents. Thus, neither 1-butene nor 2-methylpropene can have stereoisomers.

1-Butene (no stereoisomers possible) | 2-Methylpropene (no stereoisomers possible)

Problem 5.4

How many alkenes have the molecular formula C_5H_{10}? Write their structures and give their IUPAC names. Specify the configuration of stereoisomers as cis or trans as appropriate.

In principle, *cis*-2-butene and *trans*-2-butene may be interconverted by rotation about the C-2—C-3 double bond. However, unlike rotation about single bonds, which is quite fast, rotation about double bonds is restricted. Interconversion of the cis and trans isomers of 2-butene has an activation energy which is 10–15 times greater than that for rotation about the single bond of an alkane and does *not* occur under normal circumstances.



cis-2-Butene (stable) | transition state for rotation about C═C (unstable: *p* orbitals perpendicular to each other; poor geometry for bonding) | *trans*-2-Butene (stable)

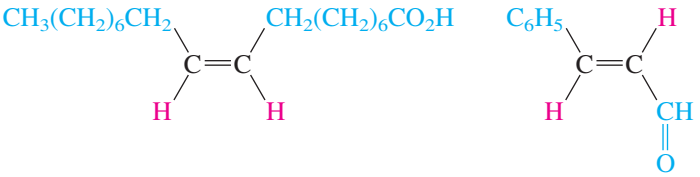
π-Bonding in *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene is strong because of the favorable parallel alignment of the *p* orbitals at C-2 and C-3. Interconverting the two stereoisomers, however, requires these *p* orbitals to be at right angles to each other, decreases their overlap, and weakens the π component of the double bond.

Problem 5.5

Are *cis*-2-hexene and *trans*-3-hexene stereoisomers? Explain.

5.4 Naming Stereoisomeric Alkenes by the *E–Z* Notational System

When the groups on either end of a double bond are the same or are structurally similar to each other, it is a simple matter to describe the configuration of the double bond as cis or trans. Oleic acid, for example, has a cis double bond. Cinnamaldehyde has a trans double bond.



Oleic acid | Cinnamaldehyde

Oleic acid is prepared from olive oil.

Cinnamaldehyde gives cinnamon its flavor.

Problem 5.6

Female houseflies attract males by sending a chemical signal known as a *pheromone*. The substance emitted by the female housefly that attracts the male has been identified as *cis*-9-tricosene, $C_{23}H_{46}$. Write a structural formula, including stereochemistry, for this compound.

The terms *cis* and *trans* are ambiguous, however, when it is not obvious which substituent on one carbon is "similar" or "analogous" to a reference substituent on the other. An unambiguous system for specifying double-bond stereochemistry has been adopted by the IUPAC based on an *atomic number* criterion for ranking substituents. When atoms of higher atomic number are on the *same* side of the double bond, we say that the double bond has the ***Z*** configuration, where *Z* stands for the German word ***zusammen,*** meaning "together." When atoms of higher atomic number are on *opposite* sides, the configuration is ***E,*** standing for the German word ***entgegen,*** meaning "opposite."

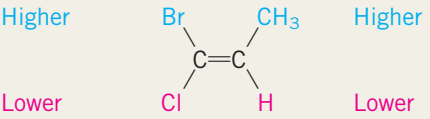
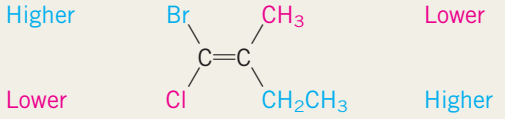
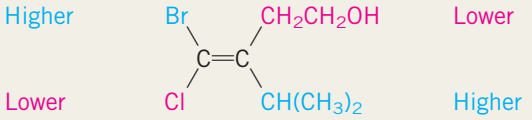
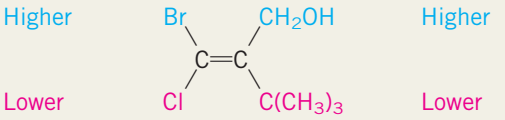
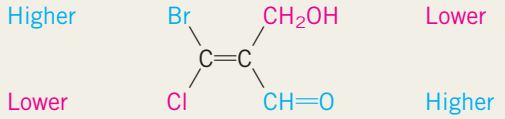
Z configuration
Higher ranked substituents (Cl and Br) are on same side of double bond

E configuration
Higher ranked substituents (Cl and Br) are on opposite sides of double bond

The groups on the double bonds of most alkenes are, of course, often more complicated than in this example. The rules for ranking substituents, especially alkyl groups, are described in Table 5.1.

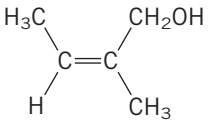
The priority rules in Table 5.1 were developed by R. S. Cahn and Sir Christopher Ingold (England) and Vladimir Prelog (Switzerland) in the context of a different aspect of organic stereochemistry; they will appear again in Chapter 7.

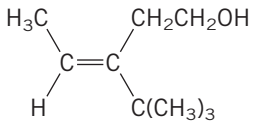
TABLE 5.1 Cahn–Ingold–Prelog Priority Rules

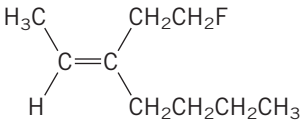
Rule	Example
1. Higher atomic number takes precedence over lower. Bromine (atomic number 35) outranks chlorine (atomic number 17). Methyl (C, atomic number 6) outranks hydrogen (atomic number 1).	The compound  has the *Z* configuration. Higher ranked atoms (Br and C of CH_3) are on the same side of the double bond.
2. When two atoms directly attached to the same carbon of the double bond are identical, compare the atoms attached to these two on the basis of their atomic numbers. Precedence is determined at the first point of difference: Ethyl [—C(C,H,H)] outranks methyl [—C(H,H,H)] Similarly, *tert*-butyl outranks isopropyl, and isopropyl outranks ethyl: $—C(CH_3)_3 > —CH(CH_3)_2 > —CH_2CH_3$ —C(C,C,C) > —C(C,C,H) > —C(C,H,H)	The compound  has the *E* configuration.
3. Work outward from the point of attachment, comparing all the atoms attached to a particular atom before proceeding further along the chain: $—CH(CH_3)_2$ [—C(C,C,H)] outranks $—CH_2CH_2OH$ [—C(C,H,H)]	The compound  has the *E* configuration.
4. When working outward from the point of attachment, always evaluate substituent atoms one by one, never as a group. Because oxygen has a higher atomic number than carbon, $—CH_2OH$ [—C(O,H,H)] outranks $—C(CH_3)_3$ [—C(C,C,C)]	The compound  has the *Z* configuration.
5. An atom that is multiply bonded to another atom is considered to be replicated as a substituent on that atom: is treated as if it were —C(O,O,H) The group —CH═O [—C(O,O,H)] outranks $—CH_2OH$ [—C(O,H,H)]	The compound  has the *E* configuration.

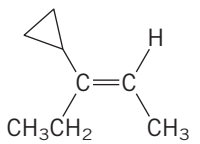
Problem 5.7

Determine the configuration of each of the following alkenes as *Z* or *E* as appropriate:

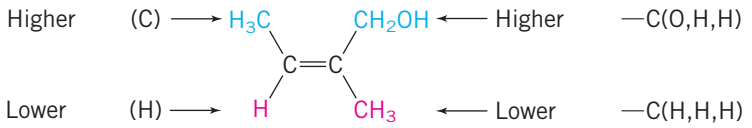
(a) 

(c) 

(b) 

(d) 

Sample Solution (a) One of the doubly bonded carbons bears a methyl group and a hydrogen. According to the rules of Table 5.1, methyl outranks hydrogen. The other carbon atom of the double bond bears a methyl and a —CH_2OH group. The —CH_2OH group is of higher priority than methyl.



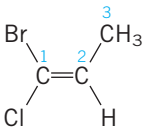
Higher ranked groups are on the same side of the double bond; the configuration is *Z*.

A table on the inside back cover lists some of the more frequently encountered atoms and groups in order of increasing precedence. You should not attempt to memorize this table, but should be able to derive the relative placement of one group versus another. When naming compounds according to the *E*, *Z* system, the descriptor is placed in parenthesis and precedes the rest of the name.

Problem 5.8

Name the first three compounds in Table 5.1.

Sample Solution



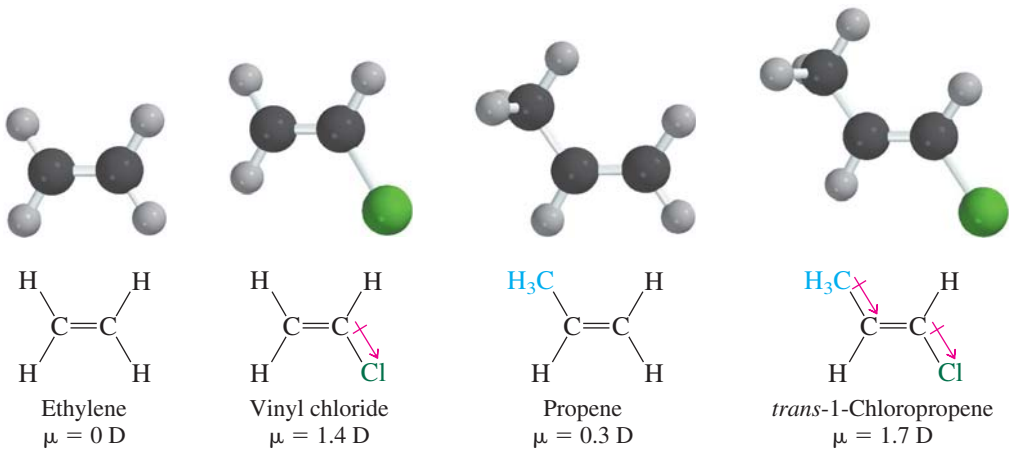
Number the chain as shown and list the substituents alphabetically. The compound is (*Z*)-1-bromo-1-chloropropene.

5.5 Physical Properties of Alkenes

Alkenes resemble alkanes in most of their physical properties. The lower molecular weight alkenes through C_4H_8 are gases at room temperature and atmospheric pressure.

The dipole moments of most alkenes are quite small. Among the C_4H_8 isomers, 1-butene, *cis*-2-butene, and 2-methylpropene have dipole moments in the 0.3–0.5 D range; *trans*-2-butene has no dipole moment. Nevertheless, we can learn some things about alkenes by looking at the effect of substituents on dipole moments.

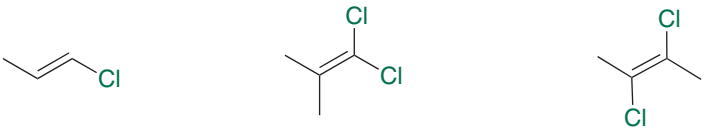
Experimental measurements of dipole moments give size, but not direction. We normally deduce the overall direction by examining the individual bond dipoles. With alkenes the basic question concerns the alkyl groups attached to C=C. *Does an alkyl group donate electrons to or withdraw electrons from a double bond?* This question can be approached by comparing the effect of an alkyl group, methyl for example, with other substituents.



Ethylene, of course, has no dipole moment. Replacing one of its hydrogens by an electron-attracting chlorine atom gives vinyl chloride, which has a dipole moment of 1.4 D. The effect is much smaller when one of the hydrogens of ethylene is replaced by methyl; propene has a dipole moment of only 0.3 D. Now place CH_3 and Cl trans to each other on the double bond. If methyl releases electrons better than H, then the dipole moment of *trans*-$CH_3CH{=}CHCl$ should be larger than that of $H_2C{=}CHCl$, because the effects of CH_3 and Cl reinforce each other. If methyl is electron attracting, the opposite should occur, and the dipole moment of *trans*-$CH_3CH{=}CHCl$ will be smaller than 1.4 D. In fact, the dipole moment of *trans*-$CH_3CH{=}CHCl$ is larger than that of $H_2C{=}CHCl$, indicating that a methyl group acts as an electron-donating substituent on the double bond.

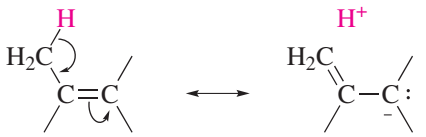
Problem 5.9

Arrange the following in order of increasing dipole moment.



(*E*)-1-Chloropropene 1,1-Dichloro-2-methylpropene (*E*)-2,3-Dichloro-2-butene

A methyl group releases electrons to an attached double bond in much the same way that it releases electrons to an sp^2-hybridized carbon of a carbocation or free radical—by an inductive effect and by hyperconjugation. The resonance description of hyperconjugation in an alkene is consistent with a flow of electrons from the alkyl group to the carbons of the double bond.



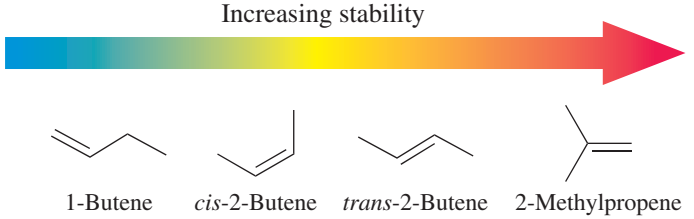
Major contributor Minor contributor

This delocalization, however, produces a contributing structure that has one less bond than the major contributor. Consequently, electron release to double bonds by alkyl substituents should be, and is observed to be, less pronounced than comparable stabilization of carbocations and free radicals—species in which the major and minor contributors have the same number of bonds.

Other alkyl groups resemble methyl in respect to their ability to stabilize double bonds by hyperconjugation. We'll see another example of this substituent effect in the next section.

5.6 Relative Stabilities of Alkenes

We bave seen how heats of combustion can be used to compare the stabilities of isomeric alkanes (Section 2.21) and dimethylcyclohexanes (Section 3.11). When a similar analysis of heats of combustion data is applied to the four alkenes of molecular formula C_4H_8, we find that l-butene is the least stable isomer and 2-methylpropene the most stable. Of the pair of stereoisomeric 2-butenes, *trans*-2-butene is more stable than *cis*-.



	1-Butene	*cis*-2-Butene	*trans*-2-Butene	2-Methylpropene
Heat of combustion (kJ/mol):	2717	2710	2707	2700

Similar data for a host of alkenes tell us that the most important factors governing alkene stability are:

1. Degree of substitution of C═C (an electronic effect)
2. van der Waals strain in the cis stereoisomer (a steric effect)
3. Chain branching (analogous to the increased stability of branched alkane chains relative to their unbranched isomers)

Degree of substitution refers to the number of carbons *directly* attached to the C═C unit. An alkene of the type $RCH{=}CH_2$ has a *monosubstituted* or *terminal* double bond regardless of the number of carbons in R. Disubstituted, *trisubstituted*, and *tetrasubstituted* double bonds have two, three, and four carbon atoms, respectively, directly attached to C═C. Among the C_4H_8 isomeric alkenes, only 1-butene has a monosubstituted double bond; the other three have disubstituted double bonds and are, as measured by their heats of combustion, more stable than 1-butene.

Problem 5.10

Write structural formulas and give the IUPAC names for all the alkenes of molecular formula C_6H_{12} that contain a trisubstituted double bond. (Don't forget to include stereoisomers.)

Like the sp^2-hybridized carbons of carbocations and free radicals, the sp^2-hybridized carbons of double bonds are electron attracting, and alkenes are stabilized by substituents that release electrons to these carbons. As we saw in the preceding section, alkyl groups are better electron-releasing substituents than hydrogen and are, therefore, better able to stabilize an alkene.

In general, alkenes with more highly substituted double bonds are more stable than isomers with less substituted double bonds.

Problem 5.11

Standard enthalpies of formation are known for all 17 isomeric C_6H_{12} alkenes. Which one is most stable ($\Delta H_f^\circ = -70$ kJ/mol)? Which one is least stable ($\Delta H_f^\circ = -42$ kJ/mol)?

An effect that results when two or more atoms or groups interact so as to alter the electron distribution in a molecule is called an **electronic effect.** The greater stability of more highly substituted alkenes is an example of an electronic effect.

Problem 5.12

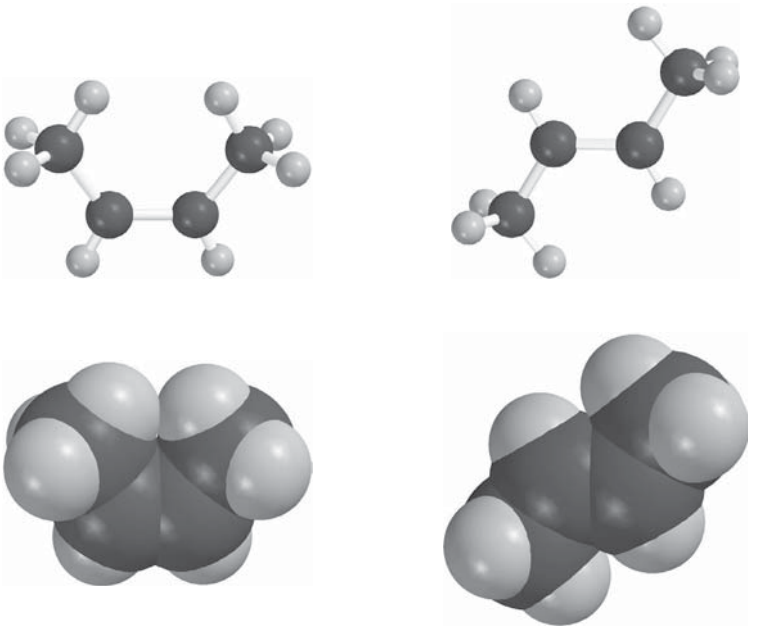
Arrange the following alkenes in order of decreasing stability: 1-pentene; (*E*)-2-pentene; (*Z*)-2-pentene; 2-methyl-2-butene.

Steric effects were introduced in Section 3.10 and applied to the relative stabilities of cis and trans stereoisomeric 1,2-dimethylcyclopropanes in Section 3.11.

van der Waals strain in alkenes is a **steric effect** most commonly associated with repulsive forces between substituents that are cis to each other and is reflected in the observation that the heat of combustion of *cis*-2-butene is 3 kJ/mol (0.7 kcal/mol) greater than *trans*-2 butene. The source of this difference is illustrated in the space-filling models of Figure 5.2, where it is can be seen that the methyl groups crowd each other in *cis*, but not *trans*-2-butene.

In general, trans alkenes are more stable than their cis stereoisomers.

The difference in stability between stereoisomeric alkenes is especially pronounced with bulky alkyl groups as substituents on the double bond. The heat of combustion of the



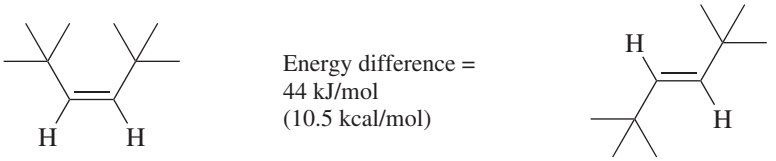
cis-2 Butene *trans*-2 Butene

Figure 5.2

Ball-and-spoke and space-filling models of *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene. The space-filling model shows the serious van der Waals strain between two of the hydrogens in *cis*-2-butene. The molecule adjusts by expanding those bond angles that increase the separation between the crowded atoms. The combination of angle strain and van der Waals strain makes *cis*-2-butene less stable than *trans*-2-butene.

The common names of these alkenes are *cis*- and *trans*-di-*tert*-butylethylene. In cases such as this the common names are somewhat more convenient than the IUPAC names because they are more readily associated with molecular structure.

cis stereoisomer of 2,2,5,5-tetramethyl-3-hexene, for example, is 44 kJ/mol (10.5 kcal/mol) higher than that of the trans because of van der Waals strain between cis *tert*-butyl groups.



cis-2,2,5,5-Tetramethyl-3-hexene (less stable)

trans-2,2,5,5-Tetramethyl-3-hexene (more stable)

Problem 5.13

Despite numerous attempts, the alkene 3,4-di-*tert*-butyl-2,2,5,5-tetramethyl-3-hexene has never been synthesized. Can you explain why?

Chain branching was seen earlier (Section 2.22) to have a stabilizing effect on alkanes. The same is true of carbon chains that include a double bond. Of the three disubstituted C_4H_8 alkenes, the branched isomer $(CH_3)_2C{=}CH_2$ is more stable than either *cis*- or *trans*-$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$.

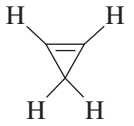
In general, alkenes with branched chains are more stable than unbranched isomers. This effect is usually less important than the degree of substitution or stereochemistry of the double bond.

Problem 5.14

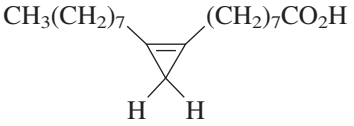
Write structural formulas for the six isomeric alkenes of molecular formula C_5H_{10} and arrange them in order of increasing stability (smaller heat of combustion, more negative ΔH_f°).

5.7 Cycloalkenes

Double bonds are accommodated by rings of all sizes. The smallest cycloalkene, cyclopropene, was first synthesized in 1922. A cyclopropene ring is present in sterculic acid, a substance derived from the oil present in the seeds of a tree (*Sterculia foetida*) that grows in the Philippines and Indonesia.



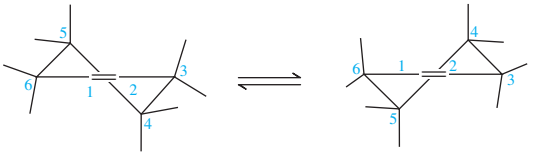
Cyclopropene



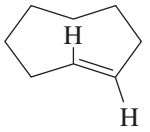
Sterculic acid

As we saw in Section 3.5, cyclopropane is destabilized by angle strain because its 60° bond angles are much smaller than the normal 109.5° angles associated with sp^3-hybridized carbon. Cyclopropene is even more strained because of the distortion of the bond angles at its doubly bonded carbons from their normal sp^2-hybridization value of 120°. Cyclobutene has, of course, less angle strain than cyclopropene, and the angle strain in cyclopentene, cyclohexene, and higher cycloalkenes is negligible.

The presence of the double bond in cycloalkenes affects the conformation of the ring. The conformation of cyclohexene is a half-chair, with carbons 1, 2, 3, and 6 in the same plane, and carbons 4 and 5 above and below the plane. Substituents at carbons 3 and 6 are tilted from their usual axial and equatorial orientations and are referred to as *pseudoaxial* and *pseudoequatorial*. Conversion to the alternative half-chair occurs readily, with an energy barrier of 22.2 kJ/mol (5.3 kcal/mol), which is about one half that required for chair-to-chair interconversion in cyclohexane.

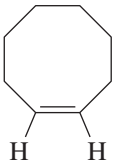


So far we have represented cycloalkenes by structural formulas in which the double bonds are of the cis configuration. If the ring is large enough, however, a trans stereoisomer is also possible. The smallest trans cycloalkene that is stable enough to be isolated and stored in a normal way is *trans*-cyclooctene.



(*E*)-Cyclooctene
(*trans*-cyclooctene)
Less stable

Energy difference =
39 kJ/mol (9.2 kcal/mol)



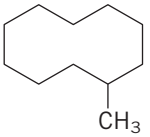
(*Z*)-Cyclooctene
(*cis*-cyclooctene)
More stable

trans-Cycloheptene has been prepared and studied at low temperature (–90°C) but is too reactive to be isolated and stored at room temperature. Evidence has also been presented for the fleeting existence of the even more strained *trans*-cyclohexene as a reactive intermediate in certain reactions.

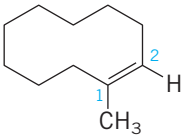
Problem 5.15

Place a double bond in the carbon skeleton shown so as to represent

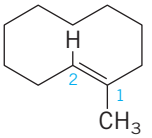
(a) (*Z*)-1-Methylcyclodecene
(b) (*E*)-1-Methylcyclodecene
(c) (*Z*)-3-Methylcyclodecene
(d) (*E*)-3-Methylcyclodecene
(e) (*Z*)-5-Methylcyclodecene
(f) (*E*)-5-Methylcyclodecene



Sample Solution (a) and (b) Because the methyl group must be at C-1, there are only two possible places to put the double bond:



(*Z*)-1-Methylcyclodecene



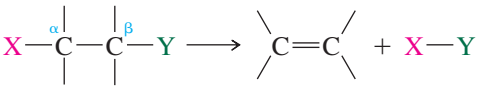
(*E*)-1-Methylcyclodecene

In the *Z* stereoisomer the two lower priority substituents—the methyl group and the hydrogen—are on the same side of the double bond. In the *E* stereoisomer these substituents are on opposite sides of the double bond. The ring carbons are the higher ranking substituents at each end of the double bond.

Because larger rings have more carbons with which to span the ends of a double bond, the strain associated with a trans cycloalkene decreases with increasing ring size. The strain eventually disappears when a 12-membered ring is reached and *cis*- and *trans*-cyclododecene are of approximately equal stability. When the rings are larger than 12-membered, trans cycloalkenes are more stable than cis. In these cases, the ring is large enough and flexible enough that it is energetically similar to a noncyclic cis alkene.

5.8 Preparation of Alkenes: Elimination Reactions

The rest of this chapter describes how alkenes are prepared by elimination; that is, reactions of the type:



Alkene formation requires that X and Y be substituents on adjacent carbon atoms. By making X the reference atom and identifying the carbon attached to it as the α carbon, we see that atom Y is a substituent on the β carbon. Carbons succeedingly more remote from the reference atom are designated γ, δ, and so on. Only β elimination reactions will be discussed in this chapter. **β Eliminations** are also known as *1,2 eliminations.*

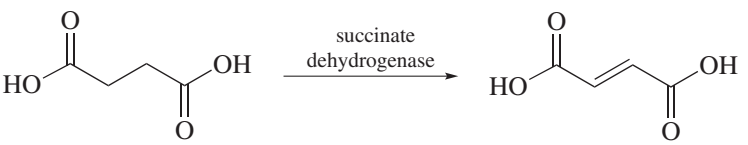
You are already familiar with one type of β elimination, having seen in Section 5.2 that ethylene and propene are prepared on an industrial scale by the high-temperature *dehydrogenation* of ethane and propane. Both reactions involve β elimination of H_2.

$$\underset{\text{Ethane}}{CH_3CH_3} \xrightarrow{750^\circ C} \underset{\text{Ethylene}}{H_2C{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{H_2}$$

$$\underset{\text{Propane}}{CH_3CH_2CH_3} \xrightarrow{750^\circ C} \underset{\text{Propene}}{CH_3CH{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{H_2}$$

A quote from a biochemistry text is instructive here. "This is not an easy reaction in organic chemistry. It is, however, a very important type of reaction in metabolic chemistry and is an integral step in the oxidation of carbohydrates, fats, and several amino acids." G. L. Zubay, *Biochemistry,* 4th ed., William C. Brown Publishers, 1996, p. 333.

Many reactions classified as dehydrogenations occur within the cells of living systems at 25°C. H_2 is not one of the products, however. Instead, the hydrogens are lost in separate steps of an enzyme-catalyzed process.



Succinic acid Fumaric acid

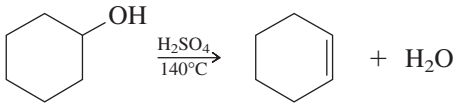
Dehydrogenation of alkanes is not a practical *laboratory* synthesis for the vast majority of alkenes. The principal methods by which alkenes are prepared in the laboratory are two other β eliminations: the *dehydration* of alcohols and the *dehydrohalogenation* of alkyl halides. A discussion of these two methods makes up the remainder of this chapter.

5.9 Dehydration of Alcohols

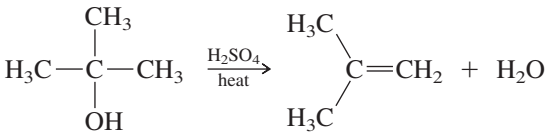
In the **dehydration** of alcohols, the H and OH are lost from adjacent carbons. An acid catalyst is necessary. Before dehydrogenation of ethane became the dominant method, ethylene was prepared by heating ethyl alcohol with sulfuric acid.

$$\underset{\text{Ethyl alcohol}}{CH_3CH_2OH} \xrightarrow[160^\circ C]{H_2SO_4} \underset{\text{Ethylene}}{H_2C{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O}$$

Other alcohols behave similarly. Secondary alcohols undergo elimination at lower temperatures than primary alcohols, and tertiary alcohols at lower temperatures than secondary.



Cyclohexanol — Cyclohexene (79–87%) — Water



2-Methyl-2-propanol — 2-Methylpropene (82%) — Water

Reaction conditions, such as the acid used and the temperature, are chosen to maximize the formation of alkene by elimination. Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) and phosphoric acid (H_3PO_4) are the acids most frequently used in alcohol dehydrations. Potassium hydrogen sulfate ($KHSO_4$) is also often used.

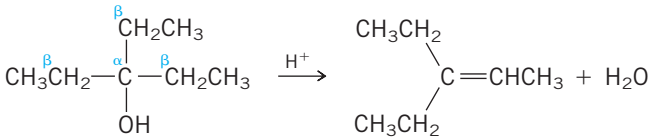
HSO_4^- and H_3PO_4 are very similar in acid strength. Both are much weaker than H_2SO_4, which is a strong acid.

Problem 5.16

Identify the alkene obtained on dehydration of each of the following alcohols:

(a) 3-Ethyl-3-pentanol
(b) 1-Propanol
(c) 2-Propanol
(d) 2,3,3-Trimethyl-2-butanol

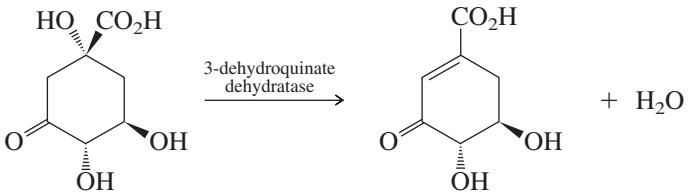
Sample Solution (a) The hydrogen and the hydroxyl are lost from adjacent carbons in the dehydration of 3-ethyl-3-pentanol.



3-Ethyl-3-pentanol — 3-Ethyl-2-pentene — Water

The hydroxyl group is lost from a carbon that bears three equivalent ethyl substituents. β elimination can occur in any one of three equivalent directions to give the same alkene, 3-ethyl-2-pentene.

Some biochemical processes involve alcohol dehydration as a key step. An example is the conversion of 3-dehydroquinic acid to 3-dehydroshikimic acid.

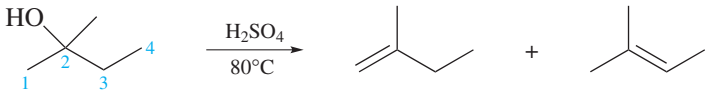


3-Dehydroquinic acid — 3-Dehydroshikimic acid — Water

This reaction is catalyzed by a *dehydratase* enzyme and is one step in the pathway by which plants convert glucose to certain amino acids.

5.10 Regioselectivity in Alcohol Dehydration: The Zaitsev Rule

Except for the biochemical example just cited, the structures of all of the alcohols in Section 5.9 were such that each one could give only a single alkene by β elimination. What about elimination in alcohols such as 2-methyl-2-butanol, in which dehydration can occur in two different directions to give alkenes that are constitutional isomers? Here, a double bond can be generated between C-1 and C-2 or between C-2 and C-3. Both processes occur but not nearly to the same extent. Under the usual reaction conditions 2-methyl-2-butene is the major product, and 2-methyl-1-butene the minor one.

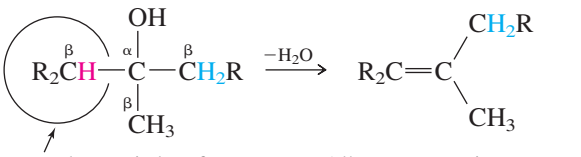


2-Methyl-2-butanol — 2-Methyl-1-butene (10%) — 2-Methyl-2-butene (90%)

Dehydration of this alcohol is selective in respect to its *direction.* Elimination occurs in the direction that leads to the double bond between C-2 and C-3 more than between C-2 and C-1. Reactions that can proceed in more than one direction, but in which one direction is preferred, are said to be **regioselective.**

In 1875, Alexander M. Zaitsev of the University of Kazan (Russia) set forth a generalization describing the regioselectivity of β eliminations. **Zaitsev's rule** summarizes the results of numerous experiments in which alkene mixtures were produced by β elimination. In its original form, Zaitsev's rule stated that *the alkene formed in greatest amount is the one that corresponds to removal of the hydrogen from the β carbon having the fewest hydrogens.*

Although Russian, Zaitsev published most of his work in German scientific journals, where his name was transliterated as *Saytzeff.* The spelling used here *(Zaitsev)* corresponds to the currently preferred style.



Hydrogen is lost from β carbon having the fewest attached hydrogens — Alkene present in greatest amount in product

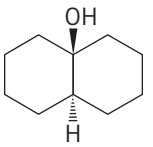
Zaitsev's rule as applied to the acid-catalyzed dehydration of alcohols is now more often expressed in a different way: *β elimination reactions of alcohols yield the most highly substituted alkene as the major product.* Because, as was discussed in Section 5.6, the most highly substituted alkene is also normally the most stable one, Zaitsev's rule is sometimes expressed as a preference for *predominant formation of the most stable alkene that could arise by β elimination.*

Problem 5.17

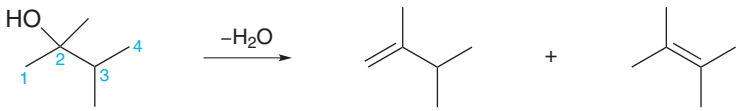
Each of the following alcohols has been subjected to acid-catalyzed dehydration and yields a mixture of two isomeric alkenes. Identify the two alkenes in each case, and predict which one is the major product on the basis of the Zaitsev rule.

(a) $(CH_3)_2CCH(CH_3)_2$ with OH

(b) H_3C OH

(c) 

Sample Solution (a) Dehydration of 2,3-dimethyl-2-butanol can lead to either 2,3-dimethyl-1-butene by removal of a C-1 hydrogen or to 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene by removal of a C-3 hydrogen.

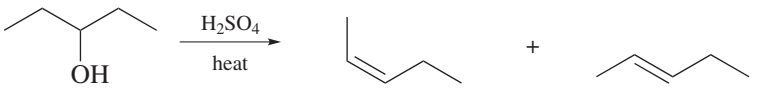


2,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol — 2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene (minor product) — 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene (major product)

The major product is 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene. It has a tetrasubstituted double bond and is more stable than 2,3-dimethyl-1-butene, which has a disubstituted double bond. The major alkene arises by loss of a hydrogen from the β carbon that has fewer attached hydrogens (C-3) rather than from the β carbon that has the greater number of hydrogens (C-1).

5.11 Stereoselectivity in Alcohol Dehydration

In addition to being regioselective, alcohol dehydrations are stereoselective. A **stereoselective** reaction is one in which a single starting material can yield two or more stereoisomeric products, but gives one of them in greater amounts than any other. Alcohol dehydrations tend to produce the more stable stereoisomer of an alkene. Dehydration of 3-pentanol, for example, yields a mixture of *trans*-2-pentene and *cis*-2-pentene in which the more stable trans stereoisomer predominates.



3-Pentanol — *cis*-2-Pentene (25%) (minor product) — *trans*-2-Pentene (75%) (major product)

Problem 5.18

What three alkenes are formed in the acid-catalyzed dehydration of 2-pentanol?

5.12 The E1 and E2 Mechanisms of Alcohol Dehydration

The dehydration of alcohols resembles the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides (Section 4.7) in two important ways.

1. Both reactions are promoted by acids.
2. The relative reactivity of alcohols increases in the order primary < secondary < tertiary.

These common features suggest that carbocations are key intermediates in alcohol dehydrations, just as they are in the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides. Mechanism 5.1 portrays a three-step process for the acid-catalyzed dehydration of *tert*-butyl alcohol. Steps

Mechanism 5.1

The E1 Mechanism for Acid-Catalyzed Dehydration of *tert*-Butyl Alcohol

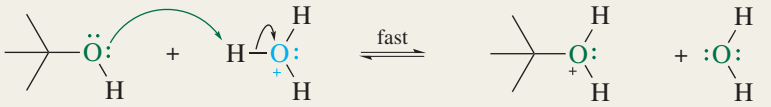
THE OVERALL REACTION:

$$(CH_3)_3COH \xrightarrow[\text{heat}]{H_2SO_4} (CH_3)_2C{=}CH_2 + H_2O$$

tert-Butyl alcohol — 2-Methylpropene — Water

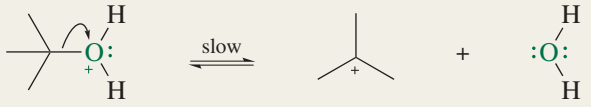
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Protonation of *tert*-butyl alcohol:



tert-Butyl alcohol — Hydronium ion — *tert*-Butyloxonium ion — Water

Step 2: Dissociation of *tert*-butyloxonium ion to a carbocation and water:



tert-Butyloxonium ion — *tert*-Butyl cation — Water

Step 3: Deprotonation of *tert*-butyl cation:

tert-Butyl cation — Water — 2-Methylpropene — Hydronium ion

Step 3 in Mechanism 5.1 shows water as the base that abstracts a proton from the carbocation. Other Brønsted bases present in the reaction mixture that can function in the same way include *tert*-butyl alcohol and hydrogen sulfate ion.

1 and 2 describe the generation of *tert*-butyl cation by a process similar to that which led to its formation as an intermediate in the reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride.

Like the reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride, step 2 in which *tert*-butyloxonium ion dissociates to $(CH_3)_3C^+$ and water, is rate-determining. Because the rate-determining step is unimolecular, the overall dehydration process is referred to as a *unimolecular elimination* and given the symbol **E1.**

Step 3 is an acid–base reaction in which the carbocation acts as a Brønsted acid, transferring a proton to a Brønsted base (water). This is the property of carbocations that is of the most significance to elimination reactions. Carbocations are strong acids; they are the conjugate acids of alkenes and readily lose a proton to form alkenes. Even weak bases such as water are sufficiently basic to abstract a proton from a carbocation.

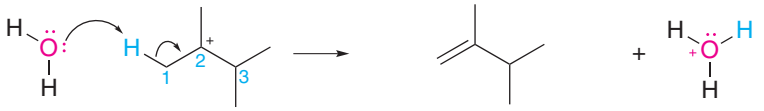
Problem 5.19

Write a structural formula for the carbocation intermediate formed in the dehydration of each of the alcohols in Problem 5.17 (Section 5.10). Using curved arrows, show how each carbocation is deprotonated by water to give a mixture of alkenes.

Sample Solution (a) The carbon that bears the hydroxyl group in the starting alcohol is the one that becomes positively charged in the carbocation.

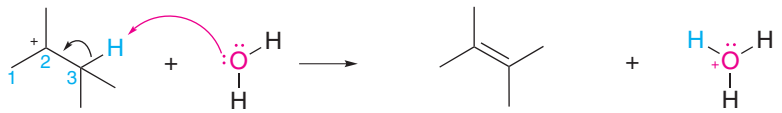
$$(CH_3)_2\underset{\displaystyle OH}{\underset{|}{C}}CH(CH_3)_2 \xrightarrow[-H_2O]{H^+} (CH_3)_2\overset{+}{C}CH(CH_3)_2$$

Water may remove a proton from either C-1 or C-3 of this carbocation. Loss of a proton from C-1 yields the minor product 2,3-dimethyl-1-butene. (This alkene has a disubstituted double bond.)



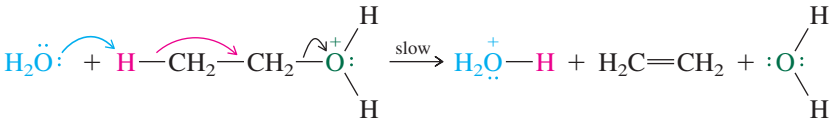
2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene

Loss of a proton from C-3 yields the major product 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene. (This alkene has a tetrasubstituted double bond.)



2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene

As noted earlier (Section 4.9) primary carbocations are too high in energy to be intermediates in most chemical reactions. If primary alcohols don't form primary carbocations, then how do they undergo elimination? A modification of our general mechanism for alcohol dehydration offers a reasonable explanation. For primary alcohols it is believed that a proton is lost from the alkyloxonium ion in the same step in which carbon–oxygen bond cleavage takes place. For example, the rate-determining step in the sulfuric acid-catalyzed dehydration of ethanol may be represented as:



Water | Ethyloxonium ion | Hydronium ion | Ethylene | Water

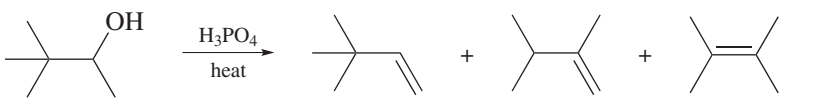
Because the rate-determining step involves two molecules—the alkyloxonium ion and water—the overall reaction is classified as a **bimolecular elimination** and given the symbol **E2.**

Like tertiary alcohols, secondary alcohols normally undergo dehydration by way of carbocation intermediates.

In Chapter 4 you learned that carbocations could be captured by halide anions to give alkyl halides. In the present chapter, a second type of carbocation reaction has been introduced—a carbocation can lose a proton to form an alkene. In the next section a third aspect of carbocation behavior will be described, the *rearrangement* of one carbocation to another.

5.13 Rearrangements in Alcohol Dehydration

Some alcohols undergo dehydration to yield alkenes having carbon skeletons different from the starting alcohols. In the example shown, only the least abundant of the three alkenes in the isolated product has the same carbon skeleton as the original alcohol. A **rearrangement** of the carbon skeleton has occurred during the formation of the two most abundant alkenes.



3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol | 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butene (3%) | 2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene (33%) | 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene (64%)

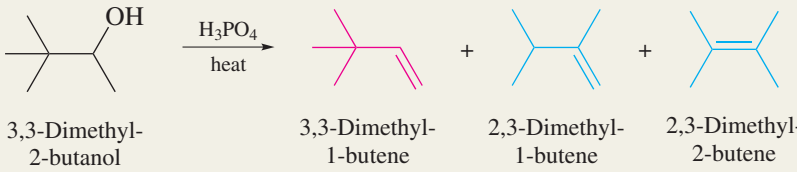
The generally accepted explanation for this rearrangement is outlined in Mechanism 5.2. It extends the E1 mechanism for acid-catalyzed alcohol dehydration by introducing a new reaction path for carbocations. Not only can a carbocation give an alkene by deprotonation, it can also rearrange to a more stable carbocation that becomes the source of the rearranged alkenes.

Similar reactions called Wagner–Meerwein rearrangements were discovered over one hundred years ago. The mechanistic explanation is credited to Frank Whitmore of Penn State who carried out a systematic study of rearrangements during the 1930s.

Mechanism 5.2

Carbocation Rearrangement in Dehydration of 3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol

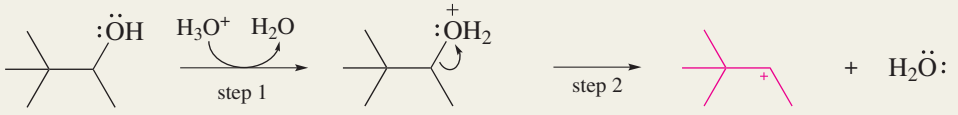
THE OVERALL REACTION:



3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol | 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butene | 2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene | 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene

THE MECHANISM:

Steps 1 and 2: These are analogous to the first two steps in the acid-catalyzed dehydration of *tert*-butyl alcohol described in Mechanism 5.1. The alcohol is protonated in aqueous acid to give an oxonium ion that dissociates to a carbocation and water.



3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol | 1,2,2-Trimethylpropyloxonium ion | 1,2,2-Trimethylpropyl cation | Water

Steps 3 and 3′: The carbocation formed in step 2 can do two things. It can give an alkene by transferring a proton to a Brønsted base such as water present in the reaction mixture (step 3), or it can rearrange (step 3′). Because alkenes with a rearranged carbon skeleton predominate in the product, we conclude that step 3′ is faster than step 3.

Step 3:

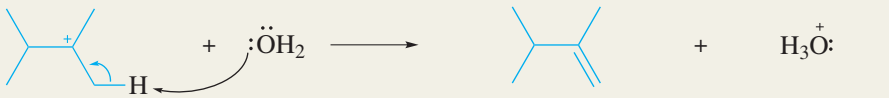
1,2,2-Trimethylpropyl cation | Water | 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butene | Hydronium ion

Step 3′: Rearrangement by methyl migration is driven by the conversion of a less stable secondary carbocation to a more stable tertiary one.

1,2,2-Trimethylpropyl cation (secondary) | 1,1,2-Trimethylpropyl cation (tertiary)

Steps 4 and 4′: The tertiary carbocation formed in step 3′ can be deprotonated in two different directions. The major pathway (step 4′) gives a tetrasubstituted double bond and predominates over step 4, which gives a disubstituted double bond.

Step 4:



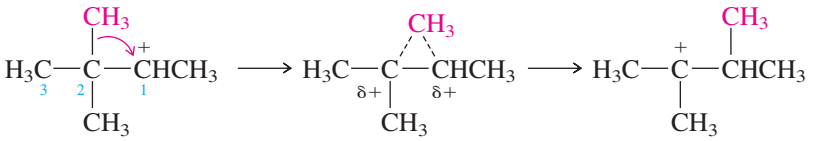
1,1,2-Trimethylpropyl cation | Water | 2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene | Hydronium ion

Step 4′:

Water | 1,1,2-Trimethylpropyl cation | Hydronium ion | 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene

Why do carbocations rearrange? The answer is straightforward once we recall that tertiary carbocations are more stable than secondary carbocations (Section 4.9); rearrangement of a secondary to a tertiary carbocation is energetically favorable. As shown in Mechanism 5.2, the carbocation that is formed first in the dehydration of 3,3-dimethyl-2-butanol is secondary; the rearranged carbocation is tertiary. Rearrangement occurs, and almost all of the alkene products come from the tertiary carbocation.

How do carbocations rearrange? To understand this we need to examine the structural change that takes place at the transition state. Referring to the initial (secondary) carbocation intermediate in Mechanism 5.2, rearrangement occurs when a methyl group shifts from C-2 of the carbocation to the positively charged carbon. The methyl group migrates with the pair of electrons that made up its original σ bond to C-2. In the curved arrow notation for this methyl migration, the arrow shows the movement of both the methyl group and the electrons in the σ bond.



1,2,2-Trimethylpropyl cation (secondary, less stable) — Transition state for methyl migration (dashed lines indicate partial bonds) — 1,1,2-Trimethylpropyl cation (tertiary, more stable)

At the transition state for rearrangement, the methyl group is partially bonded both to its point of origin and to the carbon that will be its destination.

This rearrangement is shown in orbital terms in Figure 5.3. The relevant orbitals of the secondary carbocation are shown in structure (*a*), those of the transition state for rearrangement in (*b*), and those of the tertiary carbocation in (*c*). Delocalization of the *electrons* of the C—CH_3 σ bond into the vacant *p* orbital of the positively charged carbon by hyperconjugation is present in both (*a*) and (*c*), requires no activation energy, and stabilizes each carbocation. Migration of the *atoms* of the methyl group, however, occurs only when sufficient energy is absorbed by (*a*) to achieve the transition state (*b*). The activation energy is modest, and carbocation rearrangements are normally quite fast.

Once a carbocation is formed, anything that happens afterward occurs rapidly.

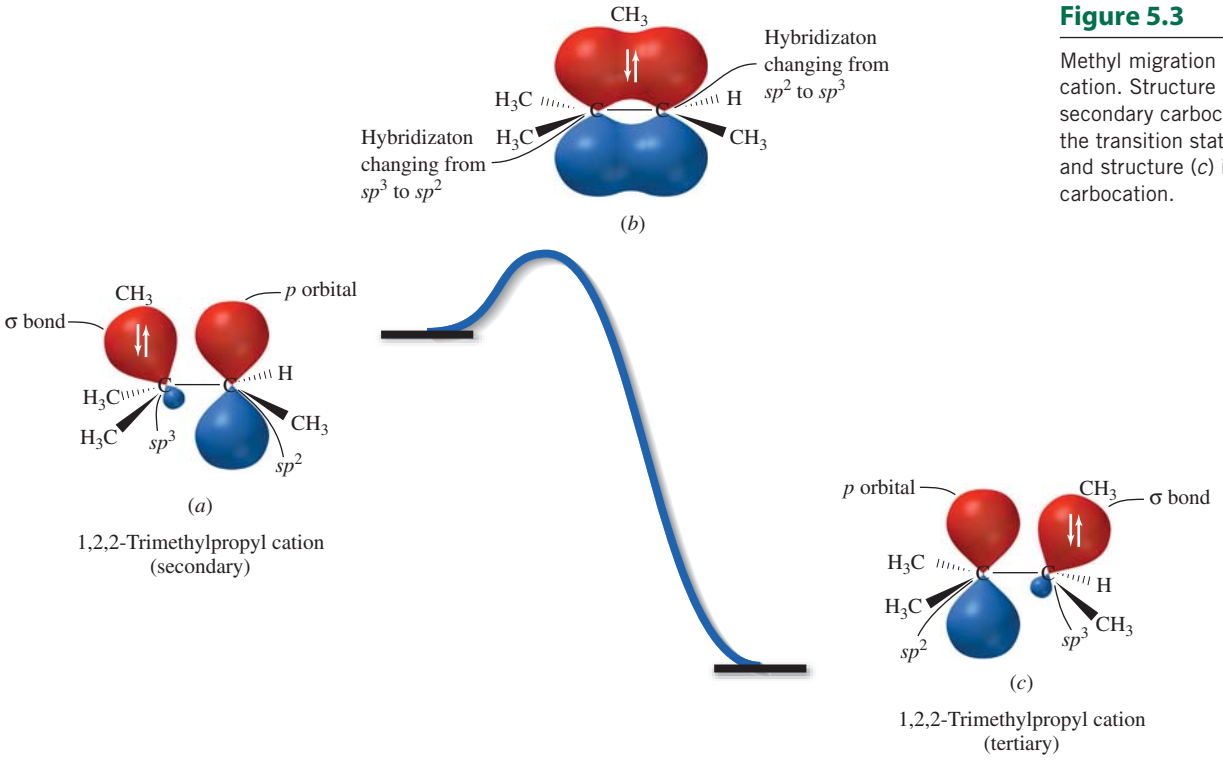
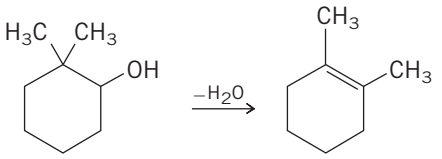


Figure 5.3

Methyl migration in 1,2,2-trimethylpropyl cation. Structure (*a*) is the initial secondary carbocation; structure (*b*) is the transition state for methyl migration, and structure (*c*) is the final tertiary carbocation.

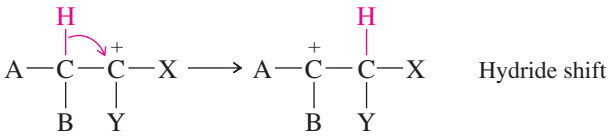
Problem 5.20

The alkene mixture obtained on dehydration of 2,2-dimethylcyclohexanol contains appreciable amounts of 1,2-dimethylcyclohexene. Give a mechanistic explanation for the formation of this product.



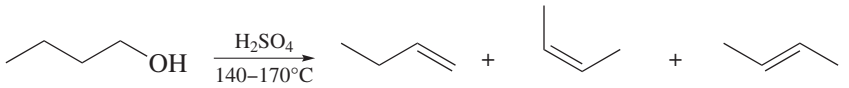
Alkyl groups other than methyl can also migrate to a positively charged carbon.

Many carbocation rearrangements involve migration of a hydrogen. These are called **hydride shifts.** The same requirements apply to hydride shifts as to alkyl group migrations; they proceed in the direction that leads to a more stable carbocation; the origin and destination of the migrating hydrogen are adjacent carbons, one of which must be positively charged; and the hydrogen migrates with a pair of electrons.



Hydride shift

Hydride shifts often occur during the dehydration of primary alcohols. Thus, although 1-butene would be expected to be the only alkene formed on dehydration of 1-butanol, it is in fact accompanied by a mixture of *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene.



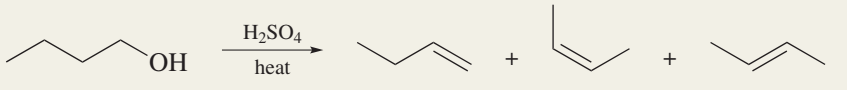
1-Butanol — 1-Butene (12%) — *cis*-2-Butene (32%) — *trans*-2-Butene (56%)

The formation of all three alkenes begins with protonation of the hydroxyl group as shown in step 1 of Mechanism 5.3. Because 1-butanol is a primary alcohol, it can give 1-butene by an E2 process in which a proton at C-2 of butyloxonium ion is removed while a water molecule departs from C-1 (step 2). The cis and trans stereoisomers of 2-butene, however, are formed from the secondary carbocation that arises via a hydride shift from C-3 to C-2, which accompanies loss of water from the oxonium ion (step 2′).

Mechanism 5.3

Hydride Shift in Dehydration of 1-Butanol

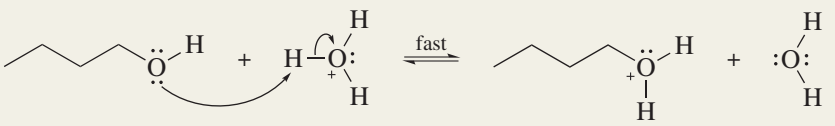
THE OVERALL REACTION:



1-Butanol — 1-Butene — *cis*-2-Butene — *trans*-2-Butene

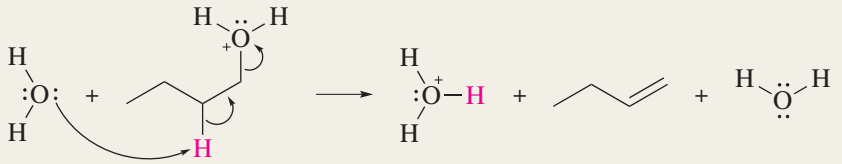
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Protonation of the alcohol gives the corresponding alkyloxonium ion.

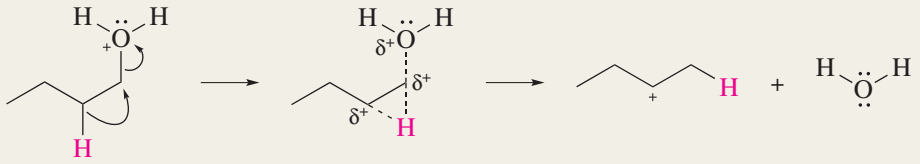


1-Butanol — Hydronium ion — Butyloxonium ion — Water

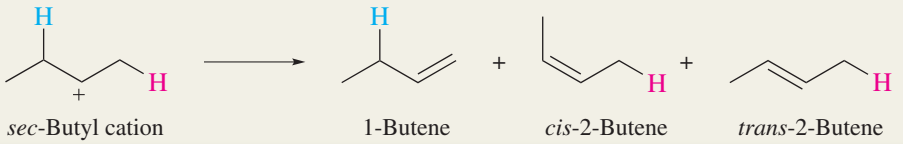
Step 2: One reaction available to butyloxonium ion leads to 1-butene by an E2 pathway.



Step 2′: Alternatively, butyloxonium ion can form a secondary carbocation by loss of water accompanied by a hydride shift.



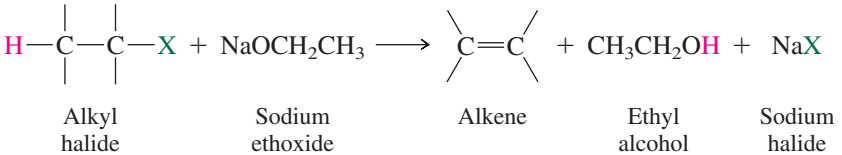
Step 3: The secondary carbocation formed in step 2 can give 1-butene or a mixture of *cis*-2-butene and *trans*-2-butene, depending on which proton is removed.

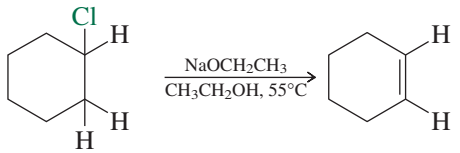


This concludes discussion of our second functional group transformation involving *alcohols:* the first was the conversion of alcohols to alkyl halides (Chapter 4), and the second the conversion of alcohols to alkenes. In the remaining sections of the chapter the conversion of *alkyl halides* to alkenes by dehydrohalogenation is described.

5.14 Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides

Dehydrohalogenation is the loss of a hydrogen and a halogen from an alkyl halide. It is one of the most useful methods for preparing alkenes by β elimination. When applied to the preparation of alkenes, the reaction is carried out in the presence of a strong base, such as sodium ethoxide.





Similarly, sodium methoxide ($NaOCH_3$) is a suitable base and is used in methyl alcohol. Potassium hydroxide in ethyl alcohol is another base–solvent combination often employed in the dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides. Potassium *tert*-butoxide [$KOC(CH_3)_3$] is the

Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) has the structure $(CH_3)_2\overset{+}{S}—\ddot{O}:^-$. It is a relatively inexpensive solvent, obtained as a byproduct in paper manufacture.

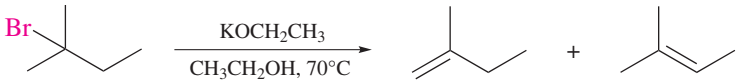
preferred base when the alkyl halide is primary; it is used in either *tert*-butyl alcohol or dimethyl sulfoxide as solvent.

Mechanism 5.4 in Section 5.15 describes this reaction in more detail.

$$CH_3(CH_2)_{15}CH_2CH_2Cl \xrightarrow[DMSO,\ 25°C]{KOC(CH_3)_3} CH_3(CH_2)_{15}CH{=}CH_2$$

1-Chlorooctadecane — 1-Octadecene (86%)

The regioselectivity of dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides follows the Zaitsev rule; β elimination predominates in the direction that leads to the more highly substituted alkene.



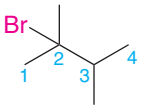
2-Bromo-2-methylbutane — 2-Methyl-1-butene (29%) + 2-Methyl-2-butene (71%)

Problem 5.21

Write the structures of all the alkenes that can be formed by dehydrohalogenation of each of the following alkyl halides. Apply the Zaitsev rule to predict the alkene formed in greatest amount in each case.

(a) 2-Bromo-2,3-dimethylbutane
(b) *tert*-Butyl chloride
(c) 3-Bromo-3-ethylpentane
(d) 2-Bromo-3-methylbutane
(e) 1-Bromo-3-methylbutane
(f) 1-Iodo-1-methylcyclohexane

Sample Solution (a) First analyze the structure of 2-bromo-2,3-dimethylbutane with respect to the number of possible β elimination pathways.

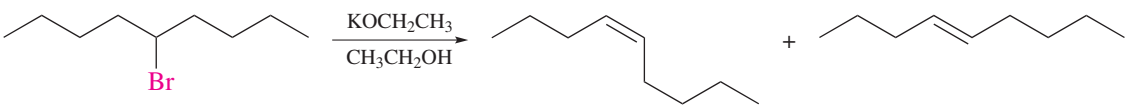


The two possible alkenes are

2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene (minor product) — 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene (major product)

The major product, predicted on the basis of Zaitsev's rule, is 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene. It has a tetrasubstituted double bond. The minor alkene has a disubstituted double bond.

In addition to being regioselective, dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides is stereoselective and favors formation of the more stable stereoisomer. Usually, as in the case of 5-bromononane, the trans (or *E*) alkene is formed in greater amounts than its cis (or *Z*) stereoisomer.

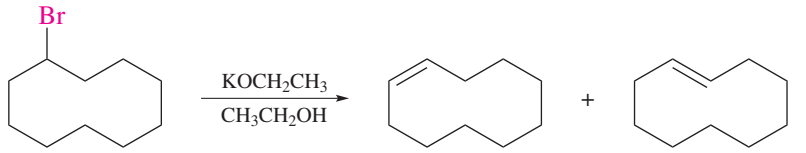


5-Bromononane — *cis*-4-Nonene (23%) + *trans*-4-Nonene (77%)

Problem 5.22

Write structural formulas for all the alkenes that can be formed in the reaction of 2-bromobutane with potassium ethoxide ($KOCH_2CH_3$).

Dehydrohalogenation of cycloalkyl halides leads exclusively to cis cycloalkenes when the ring has fewer than ten carbons. As the ring becomes larger, it can accommodate either a cis or a trans double bond, and large-ring cycloalkyl halides give mixtures of cis and trans cycloalkenes.



Bromocyclodecane

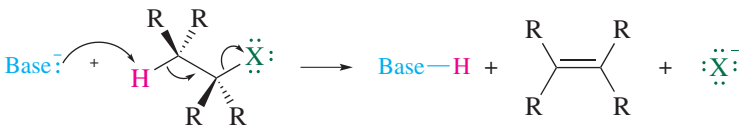
cis-Cyclodecene
(*Z*)-cyclodecene
(85%)

trans-Cyclodecene
(*E*)-cyclodecene
(15%)

5.15 The E2 Mechanism of Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides

The mechanisms described so far have emphasized the role of intermediates and transition states encountered by reactants on their way to products. These discussions have largely been concerned with the *energies* of the various species and their effect on rate (E_a), equilibrium (ΔG), and heat of reaction (ΔH). In this section we highlight how *kinetics*—the study of reaction rates (Section 4.10)—provides additional information upon which to build a clearer mechanistic understanding. These kinetic studies were begun by Sir Christopher K. Ingold in the 1920s and carried out with his collaborator Edward D. Hughes at University College, London, during the period 1930–1963. Their results and interpretation provide the conceptual framework on which our current understanding of elimination and, as we'll see in Chapter 8, nucleophilic substitution reactions rests.

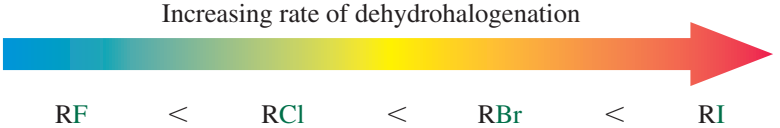
Kinetic studies begin by measuring the concentration of reactants and products in a reaction as a function of time. The reaction rate can be expressed as the rate of decrease in the concentration of the reactants or the rate of increase in the concentration of products. For the dehydrohalogenation of an alkyl halide with a strong base:



the reaction rate is directly proportional to the concentration of the base and the alkyl halide.

$$\text{Rate} = k[\text{Alkyl halide}][\text{Base}]$$

Doubling the concentration of either the alkyl halide or the base doubles the reaction rate. Doubling the concentration of both increases the rate by a factor of 4. The exponent in each concentration term is 1; the reaction is *first order* with respect to the concentration of the alkyl halide and first order in the concentration of the base. The overall kinetic order is the sum of the exponents, or *second order*. The constant of proportionality k, called the *rate constant* (Section 4.10) depends on the alkyl halide and the base among other experimental variables (temperature, solvent, etc.). The larger the rate constant, the more reactive the alkyl halide. The value of k for the formation of cyclohexene from cyclohexyl *bromide* and sodium ethoxide, for example, is over 60 times larger than that of cyclohexyl *chloride*. Among the halogens, iodide is the best **leaving group** in dehydrohalogenation, fluoride the poorest. Fluoride is such poor leaving group that alkyl fluorides are rarely used to prepare alkenes.



This trend in leaving group behavior correlates with certain other properties, such as decreasing carbon–halogen bond strength and decreasing basicity of the halide leaving group. Among the alkyl halides, the C—I bond is the weakest, C—F the strongest. Among halide ions, I^- is the weakest base, F^- the strongest.

Problem 5.23

A study of the hydrolysis behavior of chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) carried out by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency found that 1,2-dichloro-1,1,2-trifluoroethane (ClF_2C—CHClF) underwent dehydrohalogenation on treatment with aqueous sodium hydroxide. Suggest a reasonable structure for the product of this reaction.

In formulating a mechanism for dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides by strong bases, Ingold reasoned that second-order kinetics suggests a bimolecular rate-determining step involving both the alkyl halide and the base; that is, proton removal from the β carbon by the base occurs during the rate-determining step, not after it. He proposed a one-step bimolecular (E2) mechanism in which four key elements

1. Base---H bond making
2. C---H bond breaking
3. C=C π bond development
4. C---X bond breaking

all contribute to the structure of the activated complex at the transition state.

Mechanism 5.4 shows the E2 mechanism for the reaction of 1-chlorooctadecane with potassium *tert*-butoxide presented in the preceding section. The bimolecular transition state is characterized by partial bonds between *tert*-butoxide and one of the hydrogens at C-2 of 2-chlorooctadecane, a partial double bond between C-1 and C-2, and a partial bond between C-1 and chlorine.

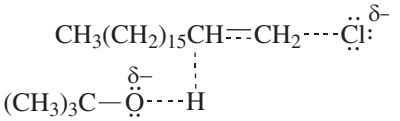
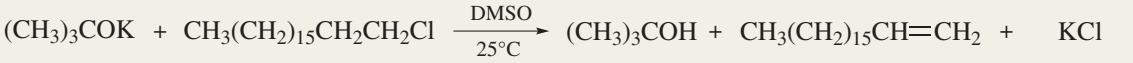


Figure 5.4 is a potential energy diagram for a simpler reaction (ethyl chloride + hydroxide ion) that also illustrates the orbital interactions involved.

Mechanism 5.4

E2 Elimination of 1-Chlorooctadecane

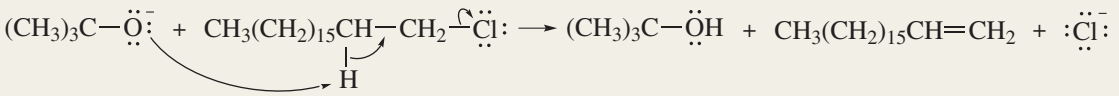
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Potassium *tert*-butoxide	1-Chlorooctadecane	*tert*-Butyl alcohol	1-Octadecene (86%)	Potassium chloride

THE MECHANISM:

The reaction takes place in a single step in which the strong base *tert*-butoxide abstracts a proton from C-2 of the alkyl halide concurrent with loss of chloride from C-1. We can omit writing K^+ in the equation because it appears on both sides of the equation (a "spectator ion").



tert-Butoxide ion	1-Chlorooctadecane	*tert*-Butyl alcohol	1-Octadecene	Chloride ion

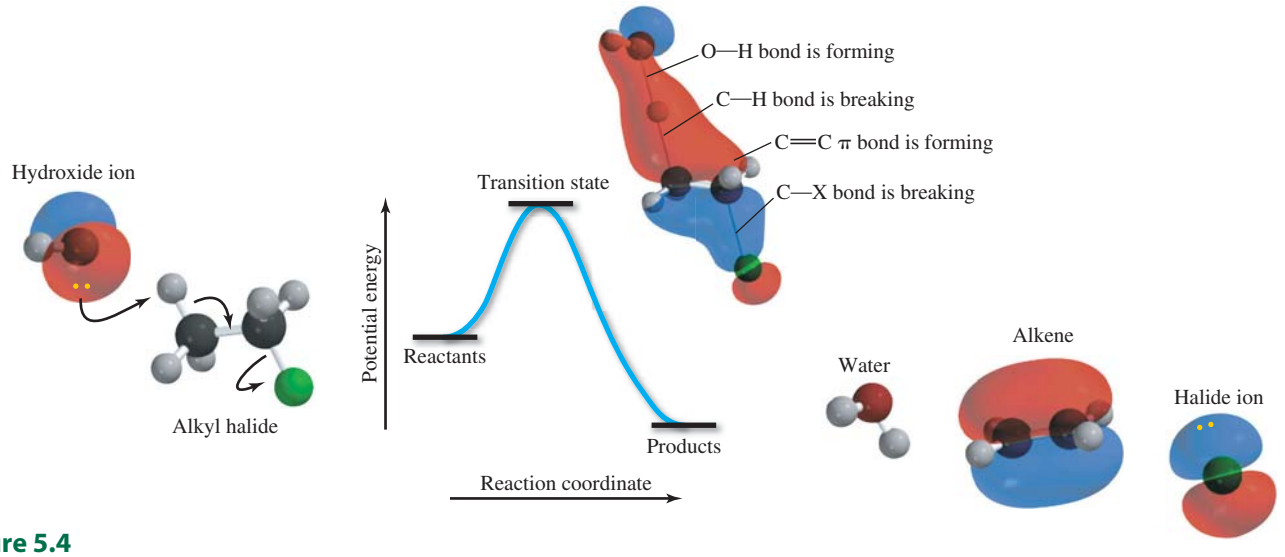


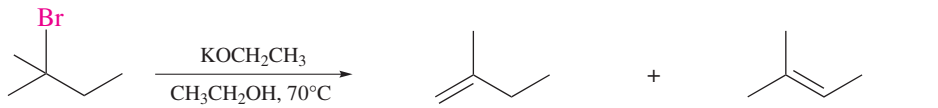
Figure 5.4

Potential energy diagram for E2 elimination of ethyl chloride.

Problem 5.24

Use curved arrows to illustrate the electron flow in the chloroflurocarbon dehydrohalogenation of Problem 5.23.

Two aspects of dehydrohalogenation, both based on the stabilization of double bonds by alkyl groups, are accommodated by the E2 mechanism. As shown earlier (Section 5.14), the reaction:

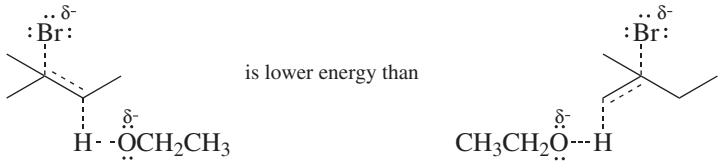


2-Bromo-2-methylbutane

2-Methyl-1-butene (29%) disubstituted double bond

2-Methyl-2-butene (71%) trisubstituted double bond

is regioselective and follows the Zaitsev rule in that β elimination gives greater amounts of the more stable isomer; that is, the one with the more substituted double bond. Because alkyl groups stabilize double bonds, it is reasonable that they also stabilize a partially formed π bond in the transition state.

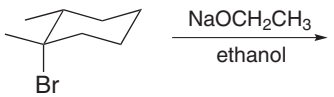


Transition state for formation of 2-methyl-2-butene

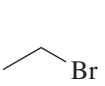
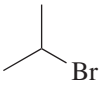
Transition state for formation of 2-methyl-1-butene

Problem 5.25

Predict the major product of the reaction shown.



Partial double bond character in the transition state also contributes to the fact that the rate of elimination is fastest for tertiary alkyl halides, slowest for primary halides.

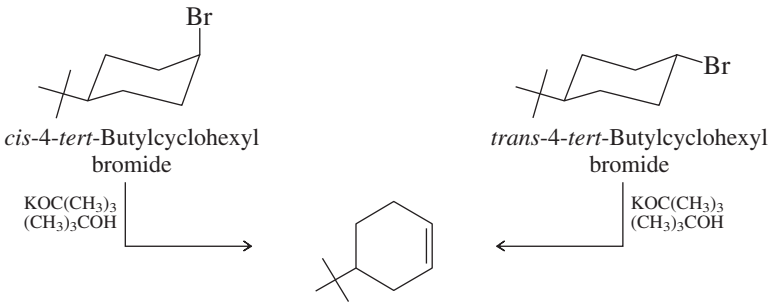
Alkyl halide	 Ethyl bromide	 Isopropyl bromide	2-Bromo-2-methylbutane
Relative E2 rate (sodium ethoxide, ethanol, 55°C)	1	6	42

The two regioisomeric alkenes formed via the E2 transition state of the tertiary halide 2-bromo-2-methylbutane are both more substituted than the alkenes (ethylene and propene) formed from ethyl and isopropyl bromide, respectively.

The E2 mechanism is followed whenever an alkyl halide—be it primary, secondary, or tertiary—undergoes elimination in the presence of a strong base. If a strong base is absent, or present in very low concentration, elimination can sometimes still occur by a unimolecular mechanism (E1). The E1 mechanism for dehydrohalogenation will be described in Section 5.18.

5.16 Anti Elimination in E2 Reactions: Stereoelectronic Effects

Further insight into the E2 mechanism comes from stereochemical studies. One such experiment compares the rates of elimination of the cis and trans isomers of 4-*tert*-butylcyclohexyl bromide.



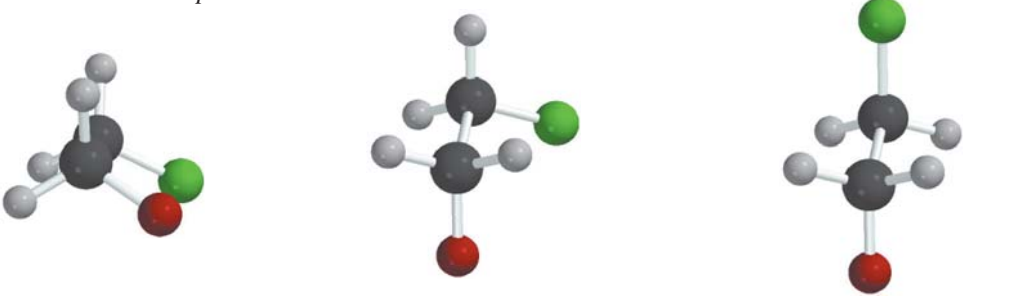
cis-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl bromide

trans-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl bromide

4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexene

Although both stereoisomers yield 4-*tert*-butylcyclohexene as the only alkene, they do so at quite different rates. The cis isomer reacts over 500 times faster than the trans.

The difference in reaction rate results from different degrees of π bond development in the E2 transition state. Since π overlap of *p* orbitals requires their axes to be parallel, π bond formation is best achieved when the four atoms of the H—C—C—X unit lie in the same plane at the transition state. The two conformations that permit this are termed *syn coplanar* and *anti coplanar.*



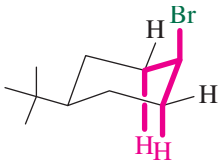
Syn coplanar
Eclipsed conformation
C—H and C—X bonds aligned

Gauche
Staggered conformation
C—H and C—X bonds not aligned

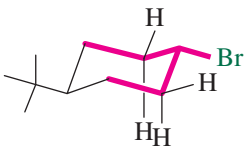
Anti coplanar
Staggered conformation
C—H and C—X bonds aligned

Because adjacent bonds are eclipsed when the H—C—C—X unit is syn coplanar, a transition state with this geometry is less stable than one that has an anti coplanar relationship between the proton and the leaving group.

Bromine is axial and anti coplanar to two axial hydrogens in the most stable conformation of *cis*-4-*tert*-butylcyclohexyl bromide and has the proper geometry for ready E2 elimination. The transition state is reached with little increase in strain, and elimination occurs readily.



cis-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl bromide
(faster E2 rate:
H and Br are anti coplanar)

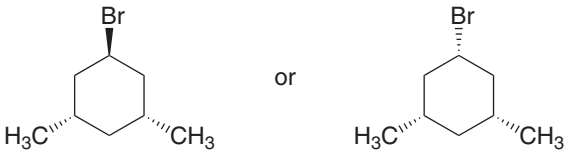


trans-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl bromide
(slower E2 rate:
no H atoms anti to Br)

In its most stable conformation, the trans stereoisomer has no β hydrogens anti to Br; all four are gauche. Strain increases significantly in going to the E2 transition state, and the rate of elimination is slower than for the cis stereoisomer.

Problem 5.26

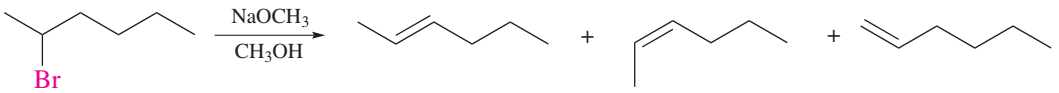
Which stereoisomer do you predict will undergo elimination on treatment with sodium ethoxide in ethanol at the faster rate?



A B

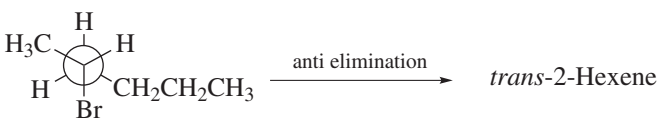
Effects on rate or equilibrium that arise because one spatial arrangement of electrons (or orbitals or bonds) is more stable than another are called **stereoelectronic effects.** *There is a stereoelectronic preference for the anti coplanar arrangement of proton and leaving group in E2 reactions.* Although coplanarity of the developing *p* orbitals is the best geometry for the E2 process, modest deviations from it can be tolerated at the cost of a decrease in reaction rate.

The stereoelectronic preference for an anti coplanar arrangement of the H—C—C—X unit in the E2 mechanism, as illustrated in Figure 5.4, is also reflected in the preference for formation of trans rather than cis alkenes.



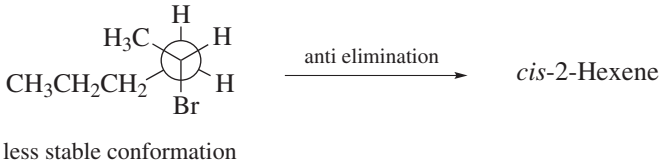
2-Bromohexane *trans*-2-Hexene (54%) *cis*-2-Hexene (18%) 1-Hexene (28%)

Anti elimination from the more stable staggered conformation gives the major product.



more stable conformation

Anti elimination from the less stable staggered conformation gives the minor product.



less stable conformation

Not only is this conformation less populated than the other, but van der Waals repulsions between the CH_3 and $CH_3CH_2CH_2$ groups increase in going to the transition state, which raises the energy of the activated complex, increases E_a, and decreases the reaction rate.

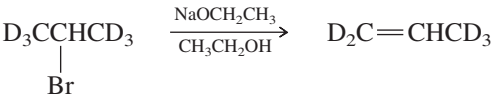
5.17 Isotope Effects and the E2 Mechanism

The E2 mechanism as outlined in the preceding two sections receives support from studies of the dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides that contain deuterium (D = ^{2}H) instead of protium (^{1}H) at the β carbon. The fundamental *kinds* of reactions a substance undergoes are the same regardless of which isotope is present, but the reaction *rates* can be different.

A C—D bond is ≈ 12 kJ/mol stronger than a C—H bond, making the activation energy for breaking a C—D bond slightly greater than that of an analogous C—H bond. Consequently, the rate constant k for an elementary step in which a C—D bond breaks is smaller than for a C—H bond. This difference in rate is expressed as a ratio of the respective rate constants (k_H/k_D) and is a type of **kinetic isotope effect.** Because it compares ^{2}H to ^{1}H, it is also referred to as a **deuterium isotope effect.**

Typical deuterium isotope effects for reactions in which C—H bond breaking is rate-determining lie in the range k_H/k_D = 3–8. If the C—H bond breaks after the rate-determining step, the overall reaction rate is affected only slightly and k_H/k_D = 1–2. *Thus, measuring the deuterium isotope effect can tell us if a C—H bond breaks in the rate-determining step.*

According to the E2 mechanism for dehydrohalogenation, a base removes a proton from the β carbon in the same step as the halide is lost. This step, indeed it is the only step in the mechanism, is rate-determining. Therefore, elimination by the E2 mechanism should exhibit a deuterium isotope effect. This prediction was tested by comparing the rate of elimination in the reaction:

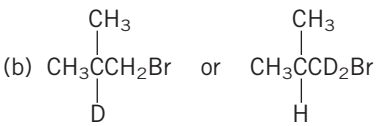


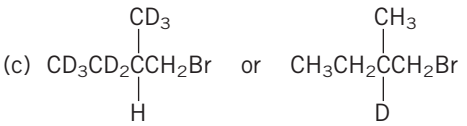
with that of $(CH_3)_2CHBr$. The measured value was k_H/k_D = 6.7, consistent with the idea that the β hydrogen is removed by the base in the rate-determining step, not after it.

Problem 5.27

Choose the compound in the following pairs that undergoes E2 elimination at the faster rate.

(a) $CH_3CH_2CH_2CD_2Br$ or $CH_3CH_2CD_2CH_2Br$

(b) 

(c) 

Sample Solution (a) A double bond is formed between C-1 and C-2 when either of the two compounds undergoes elimination. Bromine is lost from C-1, and H (or D) is lost from C-2. A C—H bond breaks faster than a C—D bond; therefore, E2 elimination is faster in $CH_3CH_2CH_2CD_2Br$ than in $CH_3CH_2CD_2CH_2Br$.

The size of an isotope effect depends on the ratio of the atomic masses of the isotopes; thus, those that result from replacing ^1H by ^2H or ^3H (tritium) are easiest to measure. This, plus the additional facts that most organic compounds contain hydrogen and many reactions involve breaking C—H bonds, have made rate studies involving hydrogen isotopes much more common than those of other elements.

In later chapters we'll see several additional examples of reactions in which deuterium isotope effects were measured in order to test proposed mechanisms.

5.18 The E1 Mechanism of Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides

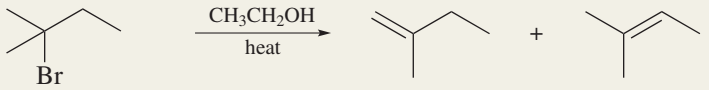
The E2 mechanism is a concerted process in which the carbon–hydrogen and carbon–halogen bonds both break in the same elementary step. What if these bonds break in separate steps?

One possibility is the two-step process of Mechanism 5.5, in which the carbon–halogen bond breaks first to give a carbocation intermediate, followed by deprotonation of the carbocation in a second step.

Mechanism 5.5

The E1 Mechanism for Dehydrohalogenation of 2-Bromo-2-methylbutane

THE OVERALL REACTION:



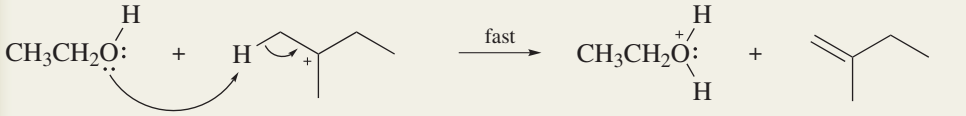
2-Bromo-2-methylbutane — 2-Methyl-1-butene (25%) — 2-Methyl-2-butene (75%)

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: *Ionization* The alkyl halide dissociates by heterolytic cleavage of the carbon–halogen bond. The products are a carbocation and a halide ion. This is the rate-determining step.

2-Bromo-2-methylbutane — 1,1-Dimethylpropyl cation — Bromide ion

Step 2: *Deprotonation* Ethanol acts as a Brønsted base to remove a proton from the carbocation to give the two alkene products. Zaitsev's rule is followed, and the regioisomer with the more highly substituted double bond predominates.



Ethanol — 1,1-Dimethylpropyl cation — Ethyloxonium ion — 2-Methyl-1-butene

Ethanol — 1,1-Dimethylpropyl cation — Ethyloxonium ion — 2-Methyl-2-butene

The alkyl halide, in this case 2-bromo-2-methylbutane, ionizes to a carbocation and a halide anion by a heterolytic cleavage of the carbon–halogen bond. Like the dissociation of an alkyloxonium ion to a carbocation, this step is rate-determining. Because the rate-determining step is unimolecular—it involves only the alkyl halide and not the base—it is an E1 mechanism.

Typically, elimination by the E1 mechanism is observed only for tertiary and some secondary alkyl halides, and then only when the base is weak or in low concentration. Unlike eliminations that follow an E2 pathway and exhibit second-order kinetic behavior:

$$\text{Rate} = k[\text{alkyl halide}][\text{base}]$$

those that follow an E1 mechanism obey a first-order rate law.

$$\text{Rate} = k[\text{alkyl halide}]$$

The reactivity order parallels the ease of carbocation formation.

Increasing rate of elimination by the E1 mechanism

RCH_2X	<	R_2CHX	<	R_3CX
Primary alkyl halide slowest rate of E1 elimination				Tertiary alkyl halide fastest rate of E1 elimination

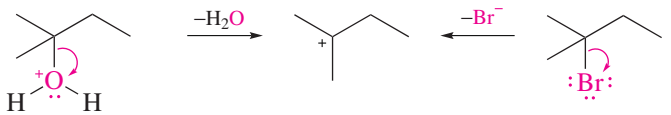
Because the carbon–halogen bond breaks in the slow step, the rate of the reaction depends on the leaving group. Alkyl iodides have the weakest carbon–halogen bond and are the most reactive; alkyl fluorides have the strongest carbon–halogen bond and are the least reactive.

Problem 5.28

Based on the E1 mechanism shown for it in Mechanism 5.5, would you expect elimination in 2-bromo-2-methylbutane to exhibit a deuterium isotope effect?

The best examples of E1 eliminations are those carried out in the absence of added base. In the example cited in Mechanism 5.5, the base that abstracts the proton from the carbocation intermediate is a very weak one; it is a molecule of the solvent, ethyl alcohol. At even modest concentrations of strong base, elimination by the E2 mechanism is much faster than E1 elimination.

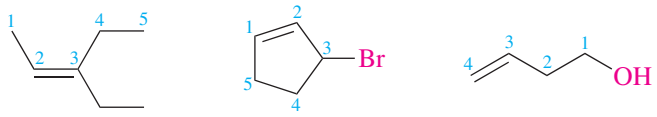
There is a strong similarity between the process shown in Mechanism 5.5 and the one shown for alcohol dehydration in Mechanism 5.1. The main difference between the dehydration of 2-methyl-2-butanol and the dehydrohalogenation of 2-bromo-2-methylbutane is the source of the carbocation. When the alcohol is the substrate, it is the corresponding alkyloxonium ion that dissociates to form the carbocation. The alkyl halide ionizes directly to the carbocation.



Like alcohol dehydrations, E1 reactions of alkyl halides can be accompanied by carbocation rearrangements. Eliminations by the E2 mechanism, on the other hand, normally proceed without rearrangement. Consequently, if one wishes to prepare an alkene from an alkyl halide, conditions favorable to E2 elimination should be chosen. In practice this simply means carrying out the reaction in the presence of a strong base.

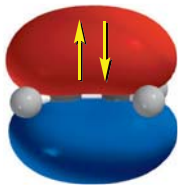
5.19 SUMMARY

Section 5.1 Alkenes and cycloalkenes contain carbon–carbon double bonds. According to IUPAC nomenclature**,** alkenes are named by substituting *-ene* for the *-ane* suffix of the alkane that has the same number of carbon atoms as the longest continuous chain that includes the double bond. The chain is numbered in the direction that gives the lower number to the first-appearing carbon of the double bond. The double bond takes precedence over alkyl groups and halogens in dictating the direction of numbering, but is outranked by a hydroxyl group.

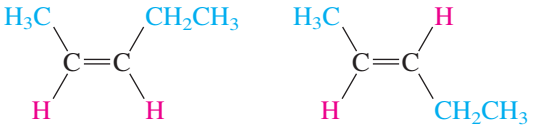


3-Ethyl-2-pentene 3-Bromocyclopentene 3-Buten-1-ol

Section 5.2 Bonding in alkenes is described according to an sp^2 orbital hybridization model. The double bond unites two sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms and is made of a σ component and a π component. The σ bond arises by overlap of an sp^2 hybrid orbital on each carbon. The π bond is weaker than the σ bond and results from a side-by-side overlap of half-filled *p* orbitals.



Sections 5.3–5.4 Isomeric alkenes may be either **constitutional isomers** or **stereoisomers.** There is a sizable barrier to rotation about a carbon–carbon double bond, which corresponds to the energy required to break the π component of the double double bond. Stereoisomeric alkenes do not interconvert under normal conditions. Their configurations are described according to two notational systems. One system adds the prefix *cis-* to the name of the alkene when similar substituents are on the same side of the double bond and the prefix *trans-* when they are on opposite sides. The other ranks substituents according to a system of rules based on atomic number. The prefix *Z* is used for alkenes that have higher ranked substituents on the same side of the double bond; the prefix *E* is used when higher ranked substituents are on opposite sides.



cis-2-Pentene [(*Z*)-2-pentene] *trans*-2-Pentene [(*E*)-2-pentene]

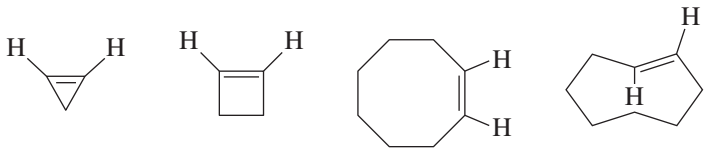
Section 5.5 Alkenes are nonpolar. Alkyl substituents donate electrons to an sp^2-hybridized carbon to which they are attached slightly better than hydrogen does.

Section 5.6 Electron release from alkyl substituents stabilizes a double bond. In general, the order of alkene stability is:

1. Tetrasubstituted alkenes ($R_2C{=}CR_2$) are the most stable.
2. Trisubstituted alkenes ($R_2C{=}CHR$) are next.
3. Among disubstituted alkenes, *trans*-RCH═CHR is normally more stable than *cis*-RCH═CHR. Exceptions are cycloalkenes, cis cycloalkenes being more stable than trans when the ring contains fewer than 12 carbons.
4. Monosubstituted alkenes ($RCH{=}CH_2$) have a more stabilized double bond than ethylene (unsubstituted) but are less stable than disubstituted alkenes.

The greater stability of more highly substituted double bonds is an example of an **electronic effect.** The decreased stability that results from van der Waals strain between cis substituents is an example of a **steric effect.**

Section 5.7 Cycloalkenes that have trans double bonds in rings smaller than 12 members are less stable than their cis stereoisomers. *trans*-Cyclooctene can be isolated and stored at room temperature, but *trans*-cycloheptene is not stable above −30°C.

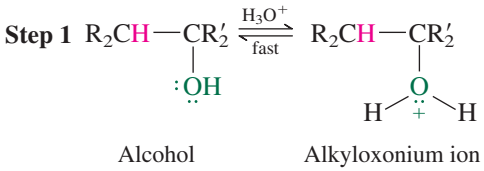


Cyclopropene Cyclobutene *cis*-Cyclooctene *trans*-Cyclooctene

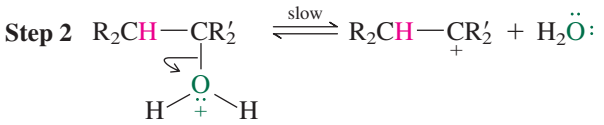
Section 5.8 Alkenes are prepared by **β elimination** of alcohols and alkyl halides. These reactions are summarized with examples in Table 5.2. In both cases, β elimination proceeds in the direction that yields the more highly substituted double bond **(Zaitsev's rule).**

Sections 5.9–5.11 See Table 5.2.

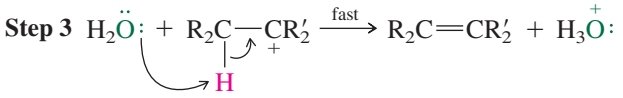
Section 5.12 Secondary and tertiary alcohols undergo **dehydration** by an E1 mechanism involving carbocation intermediates.



Alcohol Alkyloxonium ion



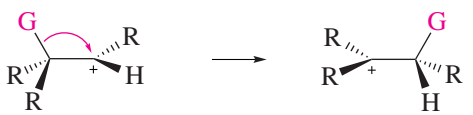
Alkyloxonium ion Carbocation Water



Water Carbocation Alkene Hydronium ion

Primary alcohols do not dehydrate as readily as secondary or tertiary alcohols, and their dehydration does not involve a primary carbocation. A proton is lost from the β carbon in the same step in which carbon–oxygen bond cleavage occurs. The mechanism is E2.

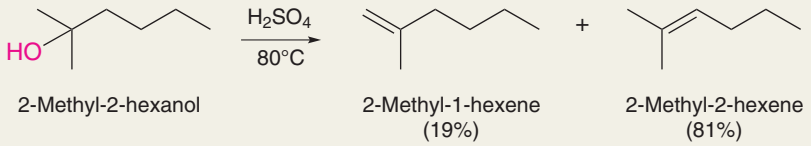
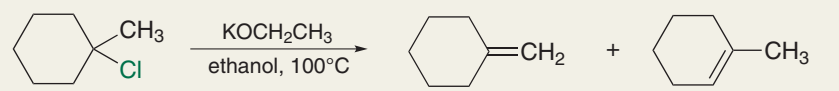
Section 5.13 Alkene synthesis via alcohol dehydration is sometimes accompanied by carbocation **rearrangement.** A less stable carbocation can rearrange to a more stable one by an alkyl group migration or by a hydride shift, opening the possibility for alkene formation from two different carbocations.



Secondary carbocation Tertiary carbocation

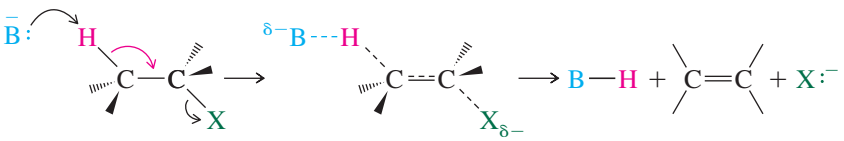
(G is a migrating group; it may be either a hydrogen or an alkyl group)

TABLE 5.2 Preparation of Alkenes by Elimination Reactions of Alcohols and Alkyl Halides

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Dehydration of alcohols (Sections 5.9–5.13) Dehydration requires an acid catalyst; the order of reactivity of alcohols is tertiary > secondary > primary. Elimination is regioselective and proceeds in the direction that gives the most highly substituted double bond. When stereoisomeric alkenes are possible, the more stable one is formed in greater amounts. An E1 (elimination unimolecular) mechanism via a carbocation intermediate is followed with secondary and tertiary alcohols. Primary alcohols react by an E2 (elimination bimolecular) mechanism. Sometimes elimination is accompanied by rearrangement.	$R_2CHCR'_2$ (OH) $\xrightarrow{H^+}$ $R_2C{=}CR'_2$ + H_2O Alcohol — Alkene — Water  2-Methyl-2-hexanol — 2-Methyl-1-hexene (19%) + 2-Methyl-2-hexene (81%)
Dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides (Sections 5.14–5.16) Strong bases cause a proton and a halide to be lost from adjacent carbons of an alkyl halide to yield an alkene. Regioselectivity is in accord with the Zaitsev rule. The order of halide reactivity is I > Br > Cl > F. A concerted E2 reaction pathway is followed; carbocations are not involved, and rearrangements do not occur. An anti coplanar arrangement of the proton being removed and the halide being lost characterizes the transition state.	$R_2CHCR'_2$ (X) + $:B^-$ → $R_2C{=}CR'_2$ + H—B + X^- Alkyl halide — Base — Alkene — Conjugate acid of base — Halide  1-Chloro-1-methylcyclohexane — Methylenecyclohexane (6%) + 1-Methylcyclohexene (94%)

Section 5.14 See Table 5.2.

Section 5.15 **Dehydrohalogenation** of alkyl halides by alkoxide bases is not complicated by rearrangements, because carbocations are not intermediates. The mechanism is E2. It is a concerted process in which the base abstracts a proton from the β carbon while the bond between the halogen and the α carbon undergoes heterolytic cleavage.

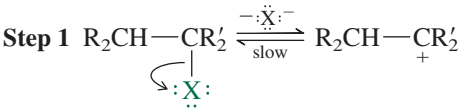


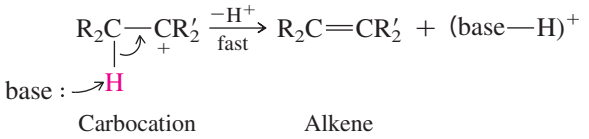
Transition state

Section 5.16 The preceding equation shows the proton H and the halogen X in the *anti coplanar* relationship that is required for elimination by the E2 mechanism.

Section 5.17 A β C—D bond is broken more slowly in the E2 dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides than a β C—H bond. The ratio of the rate constants k_H/k_D is a measure of the **deuterium isotope effect** and has a value in the range 3–8 when a carbon–hydrogen bond breaks in the rate-determining step of a reaction.

Section 5.18 In the absence of a strong base, alkyl halides eliminate by an E1 mechanism. Rate-determining ionization of the alkyl halide to a carbocation is followed by deprotonation of the carbocation.





PROBLEMS

5.29 Write structural formulas for each of the following:

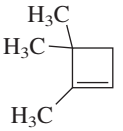
(a) 1-Heptene
(b) 3-Ethyl-2-pentene
(c) *cis*-3-Octene
(d) *trans*-1,4-Dichloro-2-butene
(e) (*Z*)-3-Methyl-2-hexene
(f) (*E*)-3-Chloro-2-hexene
(g) 1-Bromo-3-methylcyclohexene
(h) 1-Bromo-6-methylcyclohexene
(i) 4-Methyl-4-penten-2-ol
(j) Vinylcycloheptane
(k) 1,1-Diallylcyclopropane
(l) *trans*-1-Isopropenyl-3-methylcyclohexane

5.30 Write a structural formula and give two acceptable IUPAC names for each alkene of molecular formula C_7H_{14} that has a *tetrasubstituted* double bond.

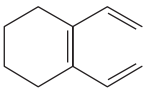
5.31 Give an IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

(a) $(CH_3CH_2)_2C{=}CHCH_3$
(b) $(CH_3CH_2)_2C{=}C(CH_2CH_3)_2$
(c) $(CH_3)_3CCH{=}CCl_2$

(e)

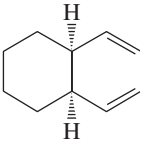


(g)



(d)

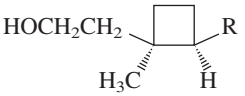
(f)



5.32 (a) A hydrocarbon isolated from fish oil and from plankton was identified as 2,6,10,14-tetramethyl-2-pentadecene. Write its structure.

(b) Alkyl isothiocyanates are compounds of the type RN═C═S. Write a structural formula for *allyl isothiocyanate,* a pungent-smelling compound isolated from mustard.

(c) Grandisol is one component of the sex attractant of the boll weevil. Write a structural formula for grandisol given that R in the structure shown is an isopropenyl group.



5.33 Write bond-line formulas for each of the following naturally occurring compounds, clearly showing their stereochemistry.

(a) (*E*)-6-Nonen-l-ol: the sex attractant of the Mediterranean fruit fly.

(b) Geraniol: a hydrocarbon with a rose-like odor present in the fragrant oil of many plants (including geranium flowers). It is the *E* isomer of

$$(CH_3)_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_2\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}CHCH_2OH$$

(c) Nerol: a stereoisomer of geraniol found in neroli and lemongrass oil.

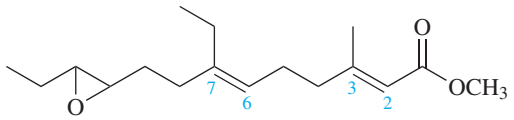
(d) The worm in apples is the larval stage of the codling moth. The sex attractant of the male moth is the 2*Z*,6*E* stereoisomer of the compound shown.

$$CH_3CH_2CH_2\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}CHCH_2CH_2\underset{\displaystyle CH_2CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}CHCH_2OH$$

(e) The *E* stereoisomer of the compound is the sex pheromone of the honeybee.

$$CH_3\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}(CH_2)_4CH_2CH{=}CHCO_2H$$

(f) A growth hormone from the cecropia moth has the structure shown. Express the stereochemistry of the double bonds according to the *E*–*Z* system.



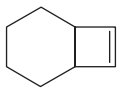
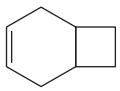
5.34 Match each alkene with the appropriate heat of combustion:
Heats of combustion (kJ/mol): 5293; 4658; 4650; 4638; 4632
Heats of combustion (kcal/mol): 1264.9; 1113.4; 1111.4; 1108.6; 1107.1

(a) 1-Heptene
(b) 2,4-Dimethyl-1-pentene
(c) 2,4-Dimethyl-2-pentene
(d) (*Z*)-4,4-Dimethyl-2-pentene
(e) 2,4,4-Trimethyl-2-pentene

5.35 Choose the more stable alkene in each of the following pairs. Explain your reasoning.

(a) 1-Methylcyclohexene or 3-methylcyclohexene

(b) Isopropenylcyclopentane or allylcyclopentane

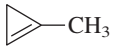
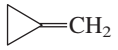
(c)  or 

Bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-7-ene Bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-ene

(d) (*Z*)-Cyclononene or (*E*)-cyclononene

(e) (*Z*)-Cyclooctadecene or (*E*)-cyclooctadecene

5.36 (a) Suggest an explanation for the fact that 1-methylcyclopropene is some 42 kJ/mol (10 kcal/mol) less stable than methylenecyclopropane.

 is less stable than 

1-Methylcyclopropene Methylenecyclopropane

(b) On the basis of your answer to part (a), compare the expected stability of 3-methylcyclopropene with that of 1-methylcyclopropene and that of methylenecyclopropane.

5.37 How many alkenes would you expect to be formed from each of the following alkyl bromides under conditions of E2 elimination? Identify the alkenes in each case.

(a) 1-Bromohexane
(b) 2-Bromohexane
(c) 3-Bromohexane
(d) 2-Bromo-2-methylpentane
(e) 2-Bromo-3-methylpentane
(f) 3-Bromo-2-methylpentane
(g) 3-Bromo-3-methylpentane
(h) 3-Bromo-2,2-dimethylbutane

5.38 Write structural formulas for all the alkene products that could reasonably be formed from each of the following compounds under the indicated reaction conditions. Where more than one alkene is produced, specify the one that is the major product.

(a) 1-Bromo-3,3-dimethylbutane (potassium *tert*-butoxide, *tert*-butyl alcohol, 100°C)

(b) 1-Methylcyclopentyl chloride (sodium ethoxide, ethanol, 70°C)

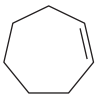
(c) 3-Methyl-3-pentanol (sulfuric acid, 80°C)

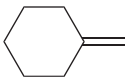
(d) 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol (phosphoric acid, 120°C)

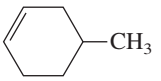
(e) 3-Iodo-2,4-dimethylpentane (sodium ethoxide, ethanol, 70°C)

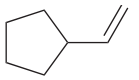
(f) 2,4-Dimethyl-3-pentanol (sulfuric acid, 120°C)

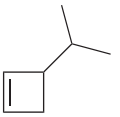
5.39 Choose the compound of molecular formula $C_7H_{13}Br$ that gives each alkene shown as the *exclusive* product of E2 elimination.

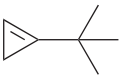
(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

(d) 

(e) 

(f) 

5.40 Give the structures of two different alkyl bromides both of which yield the indicated alkene as the *exclusive* product of E2 elimination.

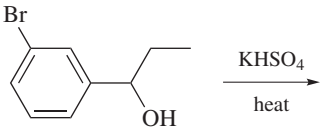
(a) $CH_3CH{=}CH_2$

(b) $(CH_3)_2C{=}CH_2$

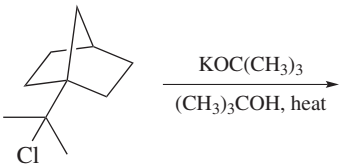
(c) $BrCH{=}CBr_2$

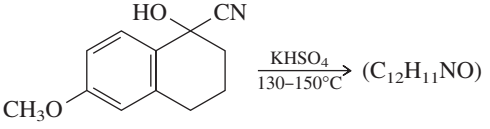
(d)

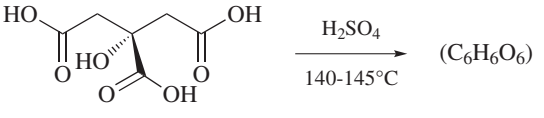
5.41 Predict the major organic product of each of the following reactions. In spite of the structural complexity of some of the starting materials, the functional group transformations are all of the type described in this chapter.

(a) 

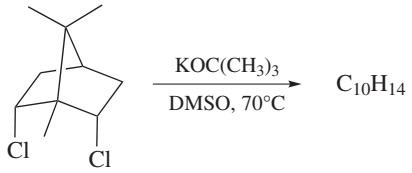
(b) $ICH_2CH(OCH_2CH_3)_2 \xrightarrow[(CH_3)_3COH,\ heat]{KOC(CH_3)_3}$

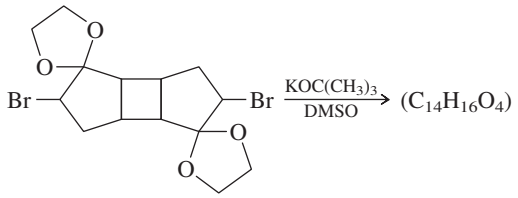
(c) 

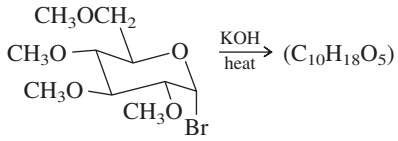
(d) 

(e) 

Citric acid

(f) 

(g) 

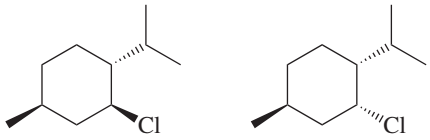
(h) 

5.42 The rate of the reaction

$$(CH_3)_3CCl + NaSCH_2CH_3 \rightarrow (CH_3)_2C{=}CH_2 + CH_3CH_2SH + NaCl$$

is first-order in $(CH_3)_3CCl$ and first-order in $NaSCH_2CH_3$. Give the symbol (E1 or E2) for the most reasonable mechanism, and use curved arrows to show the flow of electrons.

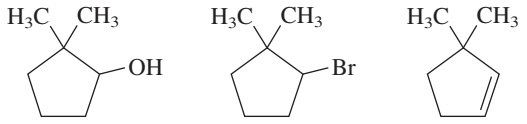
5.43 Menthyl chloride and neomenthyl chloride have the structures shown. One of these stereoisomers undergoes elimination on treatment with sodium ethoxide in ethanol much more readily than the other. Which reacts faster, menthyl chloride or neomenthyl chloride? Why?



Menthyl chloride Neomenthyl chloride

5.44 Draw a Newman projection for the conformation adopted by 2-bromo-2,4,4-trimethylpentane in a reaction proceeding by the E2 mechanism. Assume the regioselectivity is consistent with the Zaitsev rule.

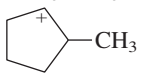
5.45 You have available 2,2-dimethylcyclopentanol **(A)** and 2-bromo-1,1-dimethylcyclopentane **(B)** and wish to prepare 3,3-dimethylcyclopentene **(C).** Which would you choose as the more suitable reactant, **A** or **B,** and with what would you treat it?



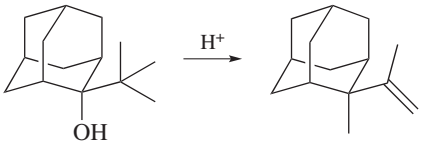
A **B** **C**

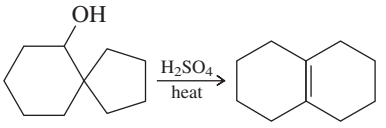
5.46 In the acid-catalyzed dehydration of 2-methyl-1-propanol, what carbocation would be formed if a hydride shift accompanied cleavage of the carbon–oxygen bond in the alkyloxonium ion? What ion would be formed as a result of a methyl shift? Which pathway do you think will predominate, a hydride shift or a methyl shift?

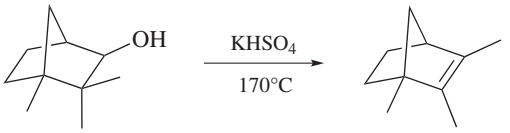
5.47 Each of the following carbocations has the potential to rearrange to a more stable one. Write the structure of the rearranged carbocation, and use curved arrows to show how it is formed.

(a) $CH_3CH_2\overset{+}{C}H_2$
(b) $(CH_3)_2CH\overset{+}{C}HCH_3$
(c) $(CH_3)_3C\overset{+}{C}HCH_3$
(d) $(CH_3CH_2)_3C\overset{+}{C}H_2$
(e) 

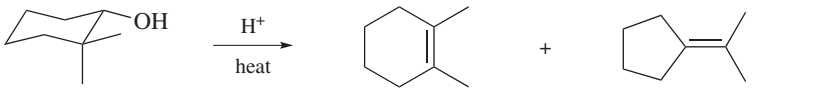
5.48 Write a sequence of steps depicting the mechanisms of each of the following reactions. Use curved arrows to show electron flow.

(a) 

(b) 

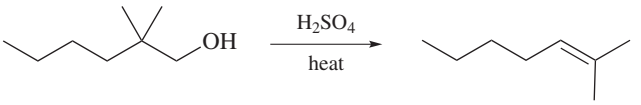
(c) 

5.49 In Problem 5.20 (Section 5.13) we saw that acid-catalyzed dehydration of 2,2-dimethylcyclohexanol afforded 1,2-dimethylcyclohexene. To explain this product we must write a mechanism for the reaction in which a methyl shift transforms a secondary carbocation to a tertiary one. Another product of the dehydration of 2,2-dimethylcyclohexanol is isopropylidenecyclopentane. Write a mechanism to rationalize its formation, using curved arrows to show the flow of electrons.



2,2-Dimethylcyclohexanol 1,2-Dimethylcyclohexene Isopropylidenecyclopentane

5.50 Acid-catalyzed dehydration of 2,2-dimethyl-1-hexanol gave a number of isomeric alkenes including 2-methyl-2-heptene as shown in the following equation.



(a) Write a stepwise mechanism for the formation of 2-methyl-2-heptene, using curved arrows to show the flow of electrons.

(b) What other alkenes do you think are formed in this reaction?

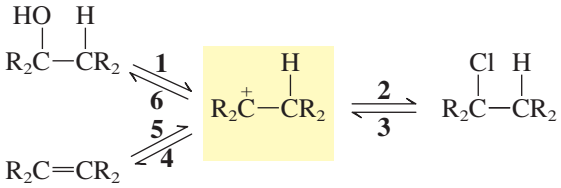
5.51 Compound A (C_4H_{10}) gives two different monochlorides on photochemical chlorination. Treatment of either of these monochlorides with potassium *tert*-butoxide in dimethyl sulfoxide gives the same alkene B (C_4H_8) as the only product. What are the structures of compound A, the two monochlorides, and alkene B?

5.52 Compound A (C_6H_{14}) gives three different monochlorides on photochemical chlorination. One of these monochlorides is inert to E2 elimination. The other two monochlorides yield the same alkene B (C_6H_{12}) on being heated with potassium *tert*-butoxide in *tert*-butyl alcohol. Identify compound A, the three monochlorides, and alkene B.

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 5

A Mechanistic Preview of Addition Reactions

The following flow chart connects three of the reactions we have discussed that involve carbocation intermediates. *Each arrow may represent more than one elementary step in a mechanism.*



Arrows **1** and **2** summarize the conversion of alcohols to alkyl halides, **3** and **4** the dehydrohalogenation of an alkyl halide to an alkene by the E1 mechanism, and **1** and **4** the formation of an alkene by dehydration of an alcohol.

The reaction indicated by arrow **5** constitutes a major focus of the next chapter. There we will explore reactions that give overall *addition* to the double bond by way of carbocation intermediates. One such process converts alkenes to alkyl halides (**5** + **2**), another converts alkenes to alcohols (**5** + **6**).

5.53 Based on the S_N1 mechanism for the reaction of tertiary alcohols with HCl as summarized in arrows **1** and **2,** which arrow(s) represent(s) more than one elementary step?

A. Arrow **1**
B. Arrow **2**
C. Both **1** and **2**
D. Neither **1** nor **2**

5.54 Based on the E1 mechanism for the acid-catalyzed dehydration of a tertiary alcohol as summarized in arrows **1** and **4,** which arrow(s) represent(s) more than one elementary step?

A. Arrow **1**
B. Arrow **4**
C. Both **1** and **4**
D. Neither **1** nor **4**

5.55 Based on the E1 mechanism for the conversion of a tertiary alkyl chloride to an alkene as summarized in arrows **3** and **4,** which arrow(s) represent(s) more than one elementary step?

A. Arrow **3**
B. Arrow **4**
C. Both **3** and **4**
D. Neither **3** nor **4**

5.56 Based on the E1 mechanism for the conversion of a tertiary alkyl chloride to an alkene as summarized in arrows **3** and **4,** which arrow(s) correspond(s) to exothermic processes?

A. Arrow **3**
B. Arrow **4**
C. Both **3** and **4**
D. Neither **3** nor **4**

5.57 What term best describes the relationship between an alkene and a carbocation?

A. Isomers
B. Resonance contributors
C. Alkene is conjugate acid of carbocation
D. Alkene is conjugate base of carbocation

5.58 The overall equation for the addition of HCl to alkenes is:

If the transition state for proton transfer from HCl to the alkene (arrow **5**) resembles a carbocation and this step is rate-determining, what should be the effect of alkene structure on the rate of the overall reaction?

	Fastest rate		Slowest rate
A.	$H_2C{=}CH_2$	$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$	$(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$
B.	$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$	$(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$	$H_2C{=}CH_2$
C.	$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$	$H_2C{=}CH_2$	$(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$
D.	$(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$	$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$	$H_2C{=}CH_2$

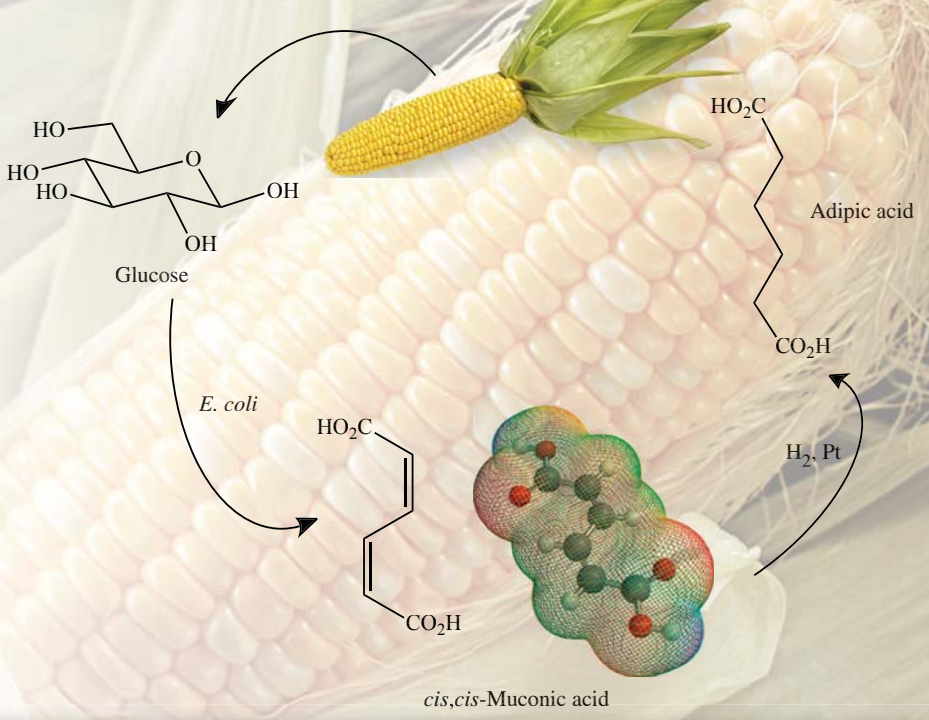
5.59 For the addition of HCl to alkenes according to the general equation given in the preceding problem, assume the mechanism involves rate-determining formation of the more stable carbocation (arrow **5**) and predict the alkyl chloride formed by reaction of HCl with $(CH_3)_2C{=}CH_2$.

A. $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2Cl$
B. $(CH_3)_3CCl$

5.60 *Zaitsev's rule* was presented in this chapter. In the next chapter we will introduce *Markovnikov's rule*, which is related to arrow **5.** To which arrow does *Zaitsev's rule* most closely relate from a mechanistic perspective?

A. **1**
B. **2**
C. **3**
D. **4**

6



CHAPTER OUTLINE

6.1 Hydrogenation of Alkenes 216
6.2 Stereochemistry of Alkene Hydrogenation 217
6.3 Heats of Hydrogenation 219
6.4 Electrophilic Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Alkenes 221
- Rules, Laws, Theories, and the Scientific Method 225

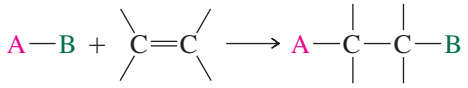
6.5 Carbocation Rearrangements in Hydrogen Halide Addition to Alkenes 225
6.6 Acid-Catalyzed Hydration of Alkenes 226
6.7 Thermodynamics of Addition–Elimination Equilibria 228
6.8 Hydroboration–Oxidation of Alkenes 231
6.9 Mechanism of Hydroboration–Oxidation 233
6.10 Addition of Halogens to Alkenes 234
6.11 Epoxidation of Alkenes 239
6.12 Ozonolysis of Alkenes 241
6.13 Free-Radical Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to Alkenes 242
6.14 Free-Radical Polymerization of Alkenes 245
6.15 Introduction to Organic Chemical Synthesis: Retrosynthetic Analysis 246
- Ethylene and Propene: The Most Important Industrial Organic Chemicals 248

6.16 Summary 249
Problems 252
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 6: Oxymercuration 258

Petroleum-derived benzene is the source of the six carbon atoms of adipic acid, an industrial chemical used to make nylon. An alternative process has been developed that uses genetically engineered strains of the bacterium *Escherichia coli* to convert glucose, a renewable resource obtained from cornstarch, to *cis,cis*-muconic acid. Subsequent hydrogenation gives adipic acid. This chapter is about reactions that involve addition to double bonds and begins with hydrogenation.

Addition Reactions of Alkenes

Now that we're familiar with the structure and preparation of alkenes, let's look at their chemical reactions, the most characteristic of which is **addition** to the double bond according to the general equation:

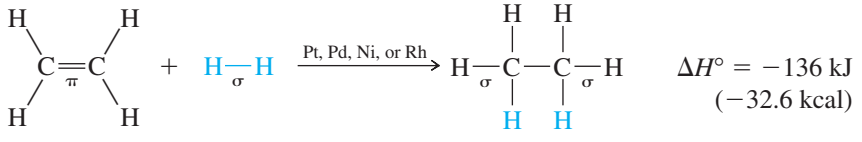


The range of compounds represented as A—B in this equation offers a wealth of opportunity for converting alkenes to a number of other structural types.

Alkenes are commonly described as **unsaturated hydrocarbons** because they have the capacity to react with substances that add to them. Alkanes, on the other hand, are **saturated hydrocarbons** and are incapable of undergoing addition reactions.

6.1 Hydrogenation of Alkenes

The relationship between reactants and products in addition reactions can be illustrated by the *hydrogenation* of alkenes to yield alkanes. **Hydrogenation** is the addition of H_2 to a multiple bond, as illustrated in the conversion of ethylene to ethane.

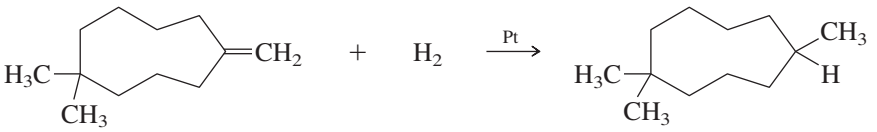


Ethylene Hydrogen Ethane

The French chemist Paul Sabatier received the 1912 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his discovery that finely divided nickel is an effective hydrogenation catalyst.

The reaction is exothermic and is characterized by a negative sign for $\Delta H°$. Indeed, *hydrogenation of all alkenes is exothermic.* The heat given off is called the **heat of hydrogenation** and cited without a sign. In other words, heat of hydrogenation $= -\Delta H°$.

The uncatalyzed addition of hydrogen to an alkene, although exothermic, is very slow, but its rate is increased in the presence of certain finely divided metal catalysts, such as platinum, palladium, nickel, and rhodium. The reaction is normally rapid at room temperature, and the alkane is the only product.



5,5-Dimethyl(methylene)cyclononane Hydrogen 1,1,5-Trimethylcyclononane (73%)

Problem 6.1

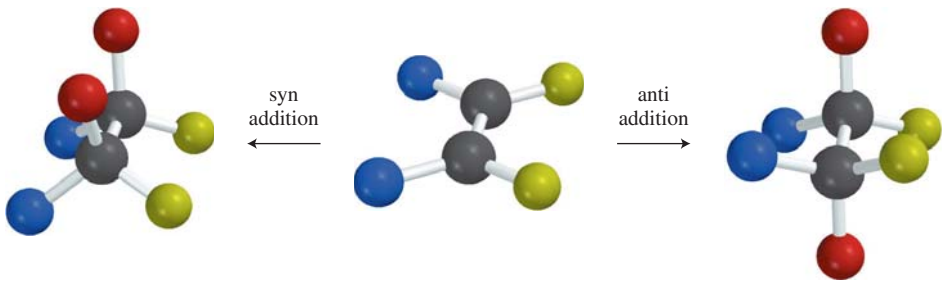
What three alkenes yield 2-methylbutane on catalytic hydrogenation?

The solvent used in catalytic hydrogenation is chosen for its ability to dissolve the alkene and is typically ethanol, hexane, or acetic acid. The metal catalysts are insoluble in these solvents (or, indeed, in any solvent). Two phases, the solution and the metal, are present, and the reaction takes place at the interface between them. Reactions involving a substance in one phase with a different substance in a second phase are called **heterogeneous reactions.**

Catalytic hydrogenation of an alkene is believed to proceed by the series of steps shown in Mechanism 6.1. The addition of hydrogen to the alkene is very slow in the absence of a metal catalyst, meaning that any uncatalyzed mechanism must have a very high activation energy. The metal catalyst accelerates the rate of hydrogenation by providing an alternative pathway that involves a sequence of several low activation energy steps.

6.2 Stereochemistry of Alkene Hydrogenation

Two stereochemical aspects—*stereospecificity* and *stereoselectivity*—attend catalytic hydrogenation. Stereospecificity will be considered more fully in the next chapter, but we can apply one of its principles—that the stereochemical outcome of a particular reaction depends on the stereochemistry of the reactants—to catalytic hydrogenation. According to Mechanism 6.1, even though the two hydrogen atoms are not transferred from the catalyst surface to the double bond simultaneously, both do add to the same face of the double bond. This is called **syn addition** and is one of several terms applied to stereospecificity**.** Its counterpart—**anti addition**—signifies addition to opposite faces of a double bond.

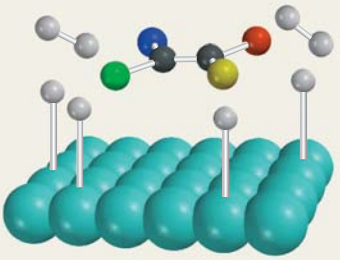


Elimination reactions that proceed by the E2 mechanism (see Section 5.16) are stereospecific in that they require an anti relationship between the proton and leaving group.

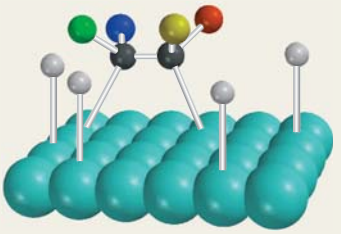
Mechanism 6.1

Hydrogenation of Alkenes

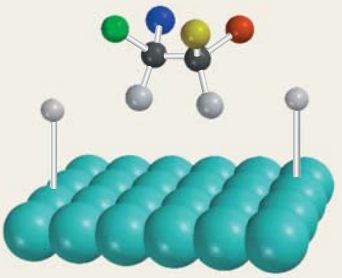
Step 1: Hydrogen molecules react with metal atoms at the catalyst surface. The relatively strong hydrogen–hydrogen σ bond is broken and replaced by two weak metal–hydrogen bonds.



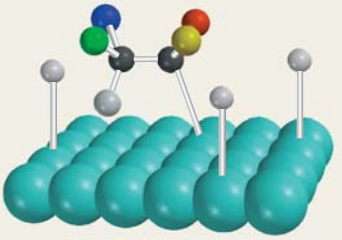
Step 2: The alkene reacts with the metal catalyst. The π component of the double bond between the two carbons is replaced by two relatively weak carbon–metal σ bonds.



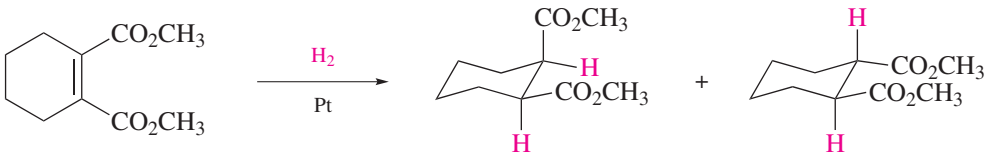
Step 3: A hydrogen atom is transferred from the catalyst surface to one of the carbons of the double bond.



Step 4: The second hydrogen atom is transferred, forming the alkane. The sites on the catalyst surface at which the reaction occurred are free to accept additional hydrogen and alkene molecules.



Experimental support for syn addition can be found in the hydrogenation of the cyclohexene derivative shown where the product of syn addition is formed exclusively, even though it is the less stable stereoisomer.



Dimethyl cyclohexene-1,2-dicarboxylate

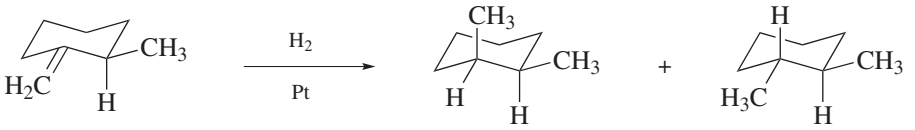
Product of syn addition (100%)

Product of anti addition (not formed)

Not all additions to alkenes are syn. As we proceed in this chapter, we'll see others that take place by anti addition, and still others that are not stereospecific. Identifying the stereochemical course of a reaction is an important element in proposing a mechanism.

The second stereochemical aspect of alkene hydrogenation concerns its *stereoselectivity*. A stereoselective reaction is one in which a single starting material can give two or more stereoisomeric products but yields one of them in greater amounts than the other (or even to the exclusion of the other). Recall from Section 5.11 that the acid-catalyzed dehydration of alcohols is stereoselective in that it favors the formation of the more stable stereochemistry of the alkene double bond. In catalytic hydrogenation, stereoselectivity

is associated with a different factor—the direction from which hydrogen atoms are transferred from the catalyst to the double bond. In the example shown:

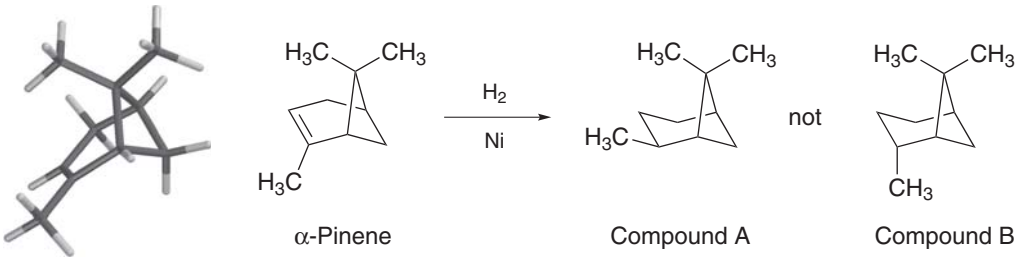


2-Methyl(methylene)-cyclohexane | *cis*-1,2-Dimethyl-cyclohexane (68%) | *trans*-1,2-Dimethyl-cyclohexane (32%)

the major product is the cis stereoisomer of the product. The reason for this is that the face of the double bond that is opposite the C-2 methyl group in the alkene is less hindered and better able to contact the catalyst surface. Therefore, hydrogen is transferred predominantly to that face. We customarily describe the stereochemistry of alkene hydrogenation as proceeding by syn addition of hydrogen to the less hindered face of the double bond. Reactions that discriminate between nonequivalent sides or faces of a reactant are common in organic chemistry and are examples of steric effects on *reactivity*. Previously we saw steric effects on *stability* in the case of cis and trans stereoisomers of substituted cycloalkanes (Sections 3.11–3.12) and alkenes (Sections 5.6–5.7).

Problem 6.2

Catalytic hydrogenation of α-pinene (a constituent of turpentine) is 100% stereoselective and gives only compound A. Explain using the molecular model of α-pinene to guide your reasoning.



α-Pinene | Compound A | Compound B

6.3 Heats of Hydrogenation

In much the same way as heats of combustion, heats of hydrogenation are used to compare the relative stabilities of alkenes. Both methods measure the differences in the energy of *isomers* by converting them to a product or products common to all. Catalytic hydrogenation of 1-butene, *cis*-2-butene, or *trans*-2-butene yields the same product—butane. As Figure 6.1 shows, the measured heats of hydrogenation reveal that *trans*-2-butene is 4 kJ/mol (1.0 kcal/mol) lower in energy than *cis*-2-butene and that *cis*-2-butene is 7 kJ/mol (1.7 kcal/mol) lower in energy than 1-butene.

Remember that a catalyst affects the rate of a reaction but not the energy relationships between reactants and products. Thus, the heat of hydrogenation of a particular alkene is the same irrespective of what catalyst is used.

Heats of hydrogenation can be used to *estimate* the stability of double bonds as structural units, even in alkenes that are not isomers. Table 6.1 lists the heats of hydrogenation for a representative collection of alkenes.

The pattern of alkene stability determined from heats of hydrogenation parallels exactly the pattern deduced from heats of combustion.

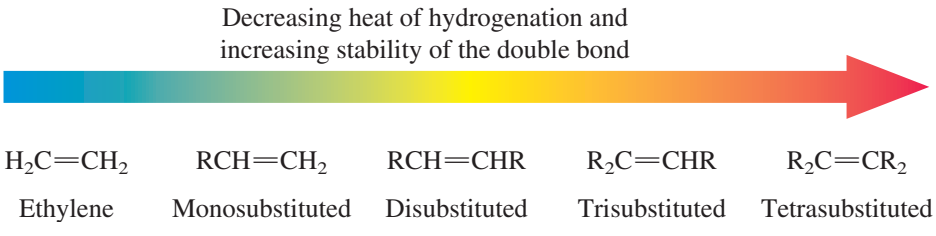


Figure 6.1

Heats of hydrogenation of butene isomers. All energies are in kilojoules per mole.

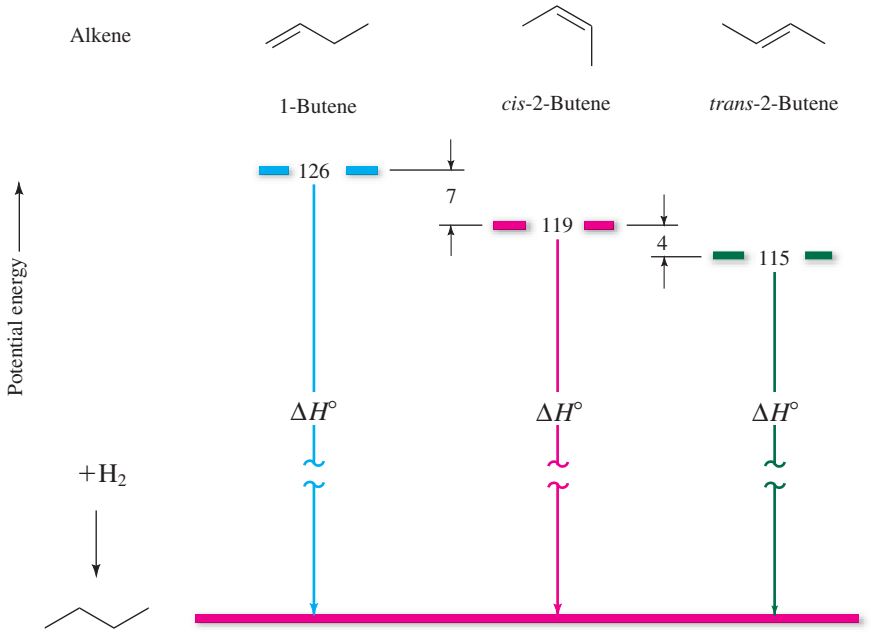
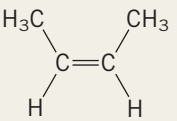
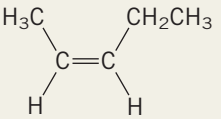
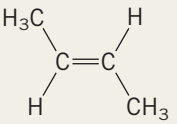
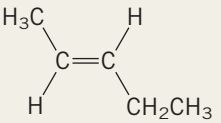


TABLE 6.1 Heats of Hydrogenation of Some Alkenes

Alkene	Structure	Heat of hydrogenation kJ/mol	Heat of hydrogenation kcal/mol
Ethylene	$H_2C{=}CH_2$	136	32.6
Monosubstituted alkenes			
Propene	$H_2C{=}CHCH_3$	125	29.9
1-Butene	$H_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_3$	126	30.1
1-Hexene	$H_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	126	30.2
Cis-disubstituted alkenes			
cis-2-Butene		119	28.4
cis-2-Pentene		117	28.1
Trans-disubstituted alkenes			
trans-2-Butene		115	27.4
trans-2-Pentene		114	27.2
Trisubstituted alkenes			
2-Methyl-2-pentene	$(CH_3)_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_3$	112	26.7
Tetrasubstituted alkenes			
2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene	$(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$	110	26.4

Ethylene, which has no alkyl substituents to stabilize its double bond, has the highest heat of hydrogenation. Alkenes that are similar in structure to one another have similar heats of hydrogenation. For example, the heats of hydrogenation of the monosubstituted alkenes propene, 1-butene, and 1-hexene are almost identical. Cis-disubstituted alkenes have lower heats of hydrogenation than monosubstituted alkenes but higher heats of hydrogenation than their more stable trans stereoisomers. Alkenes with trisubstituted double bonds have lower heats of hydrogenation than disubstituted alkenes, and tetrasubstituted alkenes have the lowest heats of hydrogenation.

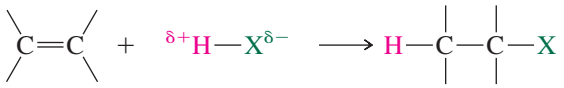
Problem 6.3

Match each alkene of Problem 6.1 with its correct heat of hydrogenation.

Heats of hydrogenation in kJ/mol (kcal/mol): 112 (26.7); 118 (28.2); 126 (30.2)

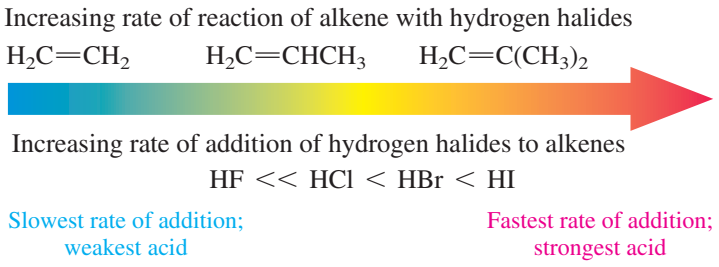
6.4 Electrophilic Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Alkenes

Addition to the double bond, of which catalytic hydrogenation is but one example, is the most characteristic chemical property of alkenes. In many of these reactions the attacking reagent is a polar molecule such as a hydrogen halide. Addition occurs rapidly in a variety of solvents, including pentane, benzene, dichloromethane, chloroform, and acetic acid.

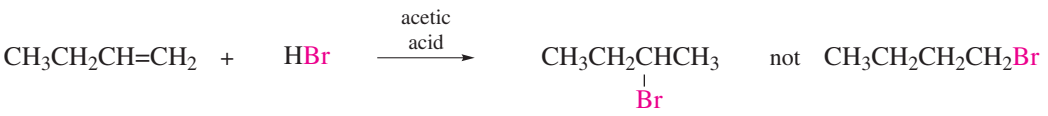


Alkene Hydrogen halide Alkyl halide

The electrostatic potential maps in Figure 6.2 illustrate the complementary distribution of charge in hydrogen chloride and ethylene. The proton of hydrogen chloride is positively polarized (electrophilic), and the region of greatest negative character in the alkene is where the π electrons are—above and below the plane of the bonds to the sp^2-hybridized carbons. During the reaction, π electrons flow from the alkene toward the proton of the hydrogen halide. More highly substituted double bonds are more "electron-rich" and react faster than less substituted ones. Among the hydrogen halides, reactivity increases with acid strength; hydrogen iodide reacts at the fastest rate, hydrogen fluoride at the slowest.



As shown in the following examples, hydrogen halide addition to alkenes can be highly regioselective, even regiospecific. In both cases, two constitutionally isomeric alkyl halides can be formed by addition to the double bond, but one is formed in preference to the other.



1-Butene Hydrogen bromide 2-Bromobutane (only product, 80% yield) 1-Bromobutane (not formed)

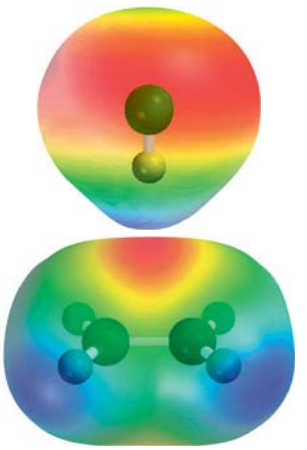
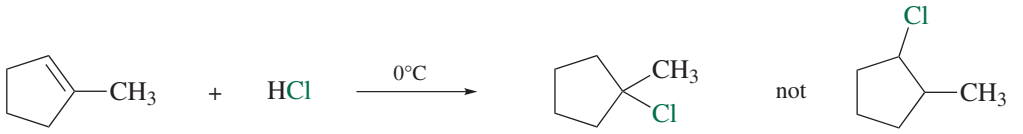


Figure 6.2

Electrostatic potential maps of HCl and ethylene. When the two react, the interaction is between the electron-rich site (red) of ethylene and electron-poor region (blue) of HCl. The electron-rich region of ethylene is associated with the π electrons of the double bond, and H is the electron-poor atom of HCl.

Recall from Section 5.10 that a regioselective reaction is one that can produce two (or more) constitutional isomers from a single reactant, but gives one in greater amounts than the other. A regiospecific reaction is one that is 100% regioselective.



1-Methylcyclopentene | Hydrogen chloride | 1-Chloro-1-methylcyclopentane (only product, 100% yield) | 1-Chloro-2-methylcyclopentane (not formed)

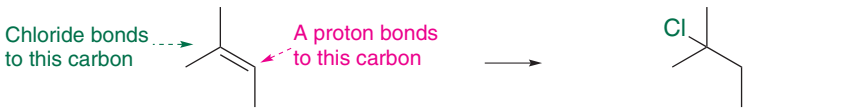
Observations such as these prompted Vladimir Markovnikov, a colleague of Alexander Zaitsev at the University of Kazan (Russia), to offer a generalization in 1870. According to what is now known as **Markovnikov's rule,** *when an unsymmetrically substituted alkene reacts with a hydrogen halide, the hydrogen adds to the carbon that has the greater number of hydrogens, and the halogen adds to the carbon that has fewer hydrogens.*

Problem 6.4

Use Markovnikov's rule to predict the major organic product formed in the reaction of hydrogen chloride with each of the following:

(a) 2-Methyl-2-butene
(b) *cis*-2-Butene
(c) 2-Methyl-1-butene
(d) CH_3CH=

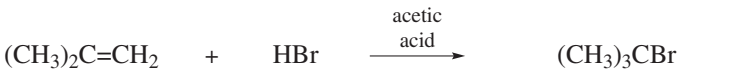
Sample Solution (a) Hydrogen chloride adds to the double bond of 2-methyl-2-butene in accordance with Markovnikov's rule. The proton adds to the carbon that has one attached hydrogen, chlorine to the carbon that has none.



2-Methyl-2-butene | 2-Chloro-2-methylbutane

Like Zaitsev's rule (Section 5.10), Markovnikov's rule collects experimental observations into a form that allows us to predict the outcome of future experiments. To understand its basis we need to look at the mechanism, called **electrophilic addition,** by which these reactions take place.

Mechanism 6.2 outlines the two-step sequence for the electrophilic addition of hydrogen bromide to 2-methylpropene.



2-Methylpropene | Hydrogen bromide | *tert*-Butyl bromide (only product, 90% yield)

The first step is rate-determining protonation of the double bond by the hydrogen halide, forming a carbocation. The regioselectivity of addition is set in this step and is controlled by the relatively stabilities of the two possible carbocations.

Mechanism 6.2

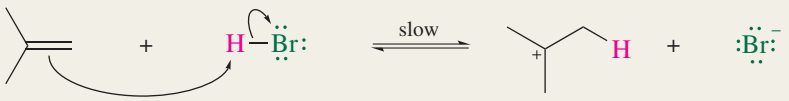
Electrophilic Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to 2-Methylpropene

THE OVERALL REACTION:

2-Methylpropene Hydrogen bromide *tert*-Butyl bromide

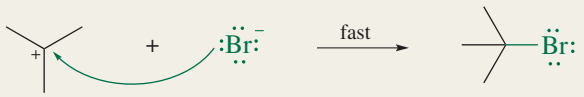
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: This is the rate-determining step and is bimolecular. Protonation of the double bond occurs in the direction that gives the more stable of two possible carbocations. In this case the carbocation is tertiary. Protonation of C-2 would have given a less stable secondary carbocation.



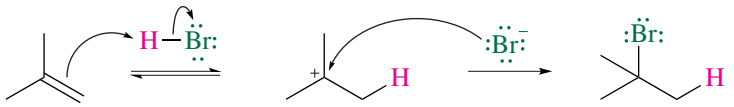
2-Methylpropene Hydrogen bromide *tert*-Butyl cation Bromide ion

Step 2: This step is the combination of a cation (Lewis acid, electrophile) with an anion (Lewis base, nucleophile) and occurs rapidly.



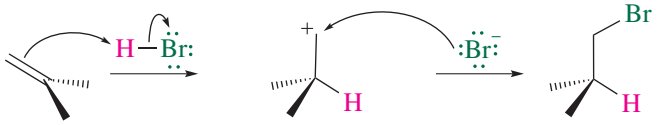
tert-Butyl cation Bromide ion *tert*-Butyl bromide

(a) *Addition according to Markovnikov's rule:*



Tertiary carbocation Observed product

(b) Addition opposite to Markovnikov's rule:



Primary carbocation Not formed

Figure 6.3 compares potential energy diagrams for these two competing modes of addition. According to Hammond's postulate, the transition state for protonation of the double bond resembles the carbocation more than the alkene, and E_a for formation of the more stable carbocation (tertiary) is less than that for formation of the less stable carbocation (primary). The major product is derived from the carbocation that is formed faster, and the energy difference between a primary and a tertiary carbocation is so great and their rates of formation so different that essentially all of the product is derived from the tertiary carbocation.

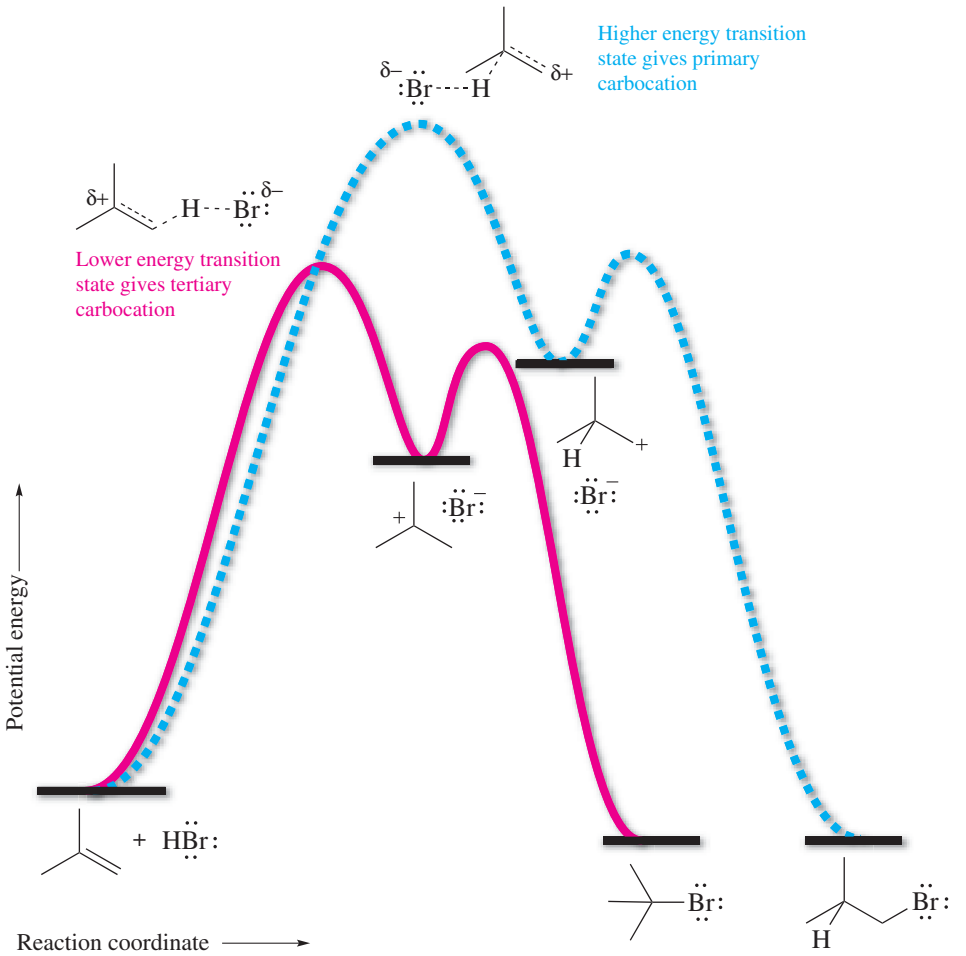


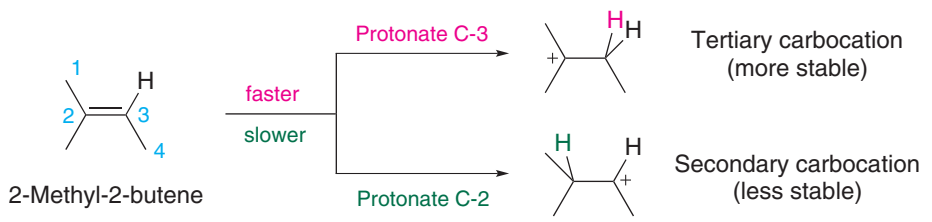
Figure 6.3

Energy diagram comparing addition of hydrogen bromide to 2-methylpropene according to Markovnikov's rule (solid red curve) and opposite to it (dashed blue curve). E_a is less, and the reaction is faster for the reaction that proceeds via the more stable tertiary carbocation.

Problem 6.5

Give a structural formula for the carbocation intermediate that leads to the major product in each of the reactions of Problem 6.4.

Sample Solution (a) Protonation of the double bond of 2-methyl-2-butene can give a tertiary carbocation or a secondary carbocation.



The product of the reaction is derived from the more stable carbocation—in this case, it is a tertiary carbocation that is formed more rapidly than a secondary one.

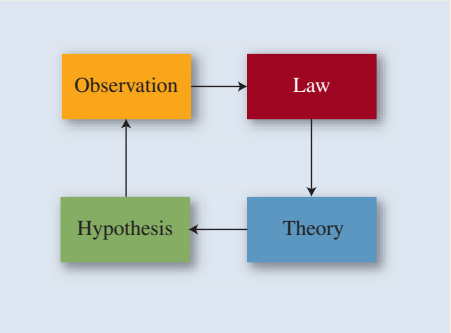
Rules, Laws, Theories, and the Scientific Method

As we have just seen, Markovnikov's rule can be expressed in two ways:

1. When a hydrogen halide adds to an alkene, hydrogen adds to the carbon of the alkene that has the greater number of hydrogens attached to it, and the halogen to the carbon that has the fewer hydrogens.
2. When a hydrogen halide adds to an alkene, protonation of the double bond occurs in the direction that gives the more stable carbocation.

The first of these statements is close to the way Vladimir Markovnikov expressed it in 1870; the second is the way we usually phrase it now. These two statements differ in an important way—a way that is related to the **scientific method.**

Adherence to the scientific method is what defines science. The scientific method has four major elements: observation, law, theory, and hypothesis.



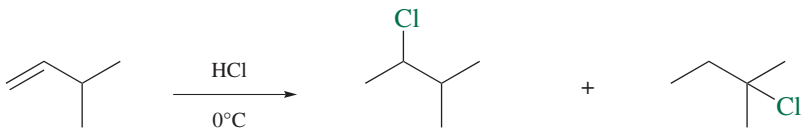
Most *observations* in chemistry come from experiments. If we do enough experiments we may see a pattern running through our observations. A *law* is a mathematical (the law of gravity) or verbal (the law of diminishing returns) description of that pattern. Establishing a law can lead to the framing of a *rule* that lets us predict the results of future experiments. This is what the 1870 version of Markovnikov's rule is: a statement based on experimental observations that has predictive value.

A *theory* is our best present interpretation of why things happen the way they do. The modern version of Markovnikov's rule, which is based on mechanistic reasoning and carbocation stability, recasts the rule in terms of theoretical ideas. Mechanisms, and explanations grounded in them, belong to the theory part of the scientific method.

It is worth remembering that a theory can never be proven correct. It can only be proven incorrect, incomplete, or inadequate. Thus, theories are always being tested and refined. As important as anything else in the scientific method is the *testable hypothesis.* Once a theory is proposed, experiments are designed to test its validity. If the results are consistent with the theory, our belief in its soundness is strengthened. If the results conflict with it, the theory is flawed and must be modified. Section 6.5 describes some observations that support the theory that carbocations are intermediates in the addition of hydrogen halides to alkenes.

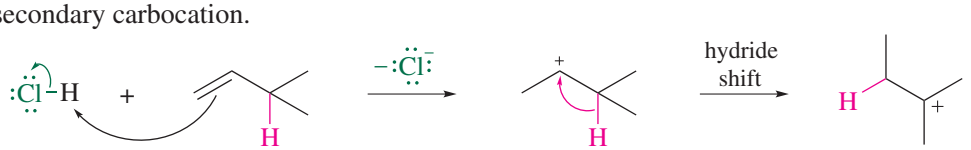
6.5 Carbocation Rearrangements in Hydrogen Halide Addition to Alkenes

Our belief that carbocations are intermediates in the addition of hydrogen halides to alkenes is strengthened by the fact that rearrangements of the kind seen in alcohol dehydrations (Section 5.13) sometimes occur. For example, the reaction of hydrogen chloride with 3-methyl-1-butene is expected to produce 2-chloro-3-methylbutane. Instead, a mixture of 2-chloro-3-methylbutane and 2-chloro-2-methylbutane results.



3-Methyl-1-butene — 2-Chloro-3-methylbutane (40%) — 2-Chloro-2-methylbutane (60%)

Addition begins in the usual way, by protonation of the double bond to give, in this case, a secondary carbocation.



Hydrogen chloride — 3-Methyl-1-butene — 1,2-Dimethylpropyl cation (secondary) — 1,1-Dimethylpropyl cation (tertiary)

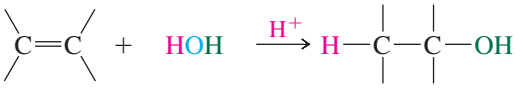
This carbocation can be captured by chloride to give 2-chloro-3-methylbutane (40%) or it can rearrange by way of a hydride shift to give a tertiary carbocation. The tertiary carbocation reacts with chloride ion to give 2-chloro-2-methylbutane (60%). The similar yields of the two alkyl chloride products indicate that the rate of attack by chloride on the secondary carbocation and the rate of rearrangement must be very similar.

Problem 6.6

Addition of hydrogen chloride to 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene gives a mixture of two isomeric chlorides in approximately equal amounts. Suggest reasonable structures for these two compounds, and offer a mechanistic explanation for their formation.

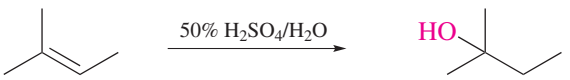
6.6 Acid-Catalyzed Hydration of Alkenes

Analogous to the conversion of alkenes to alkyl halides by electrophilic addition of hydrogen halides across the double bond, acid-catalyzed addition of water gives alcohols.



Alkene Water Alcohol

Markovnikov's rule is followed.



2-Methyl-2-butene 2-Methyl-2-butanol (90%)

Mechanism 6.3 extends the general principles of electrophilic addition to acid-catalyzed hydration. In the first step of the mechanism, proton transfer converts the alkene to a carbocation, which then reacts with a molecule of water in step 2. The alkyloxonium ion formed in this step is the conjugate acid of the ultimate alcohol and yields it in step 3 while regenerating the acid catalyst.

Problem 6.7

Instead of the three-step process of Mechanism 6.3, the following two-step mechanism might be considered:

1. $(CH_3)_2C{=}CH_2 + H_3O^+ \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} (CH_3)_3C^+ + H_2O$

2. $(CH_3)_3C^+ + HO^- \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} (CH_3)_3COH$

This mechanism cannot be correct! What is its fundamental flaw?

The notion that carbocation formation is rate-determining follows from our previous experience with reactions that involve carbocation intermediates and by observing how the reaction rate is affected by the structure of the alkene. Alkenes that yield more stable carbocations react faster than those that yield less stable ones.

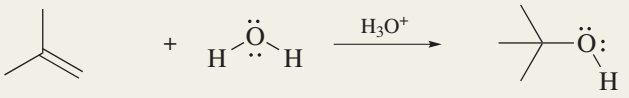
Increasing relative rate of acid-catalyzed hydration, 25°C

$H_2C{=}CH_2$	$H_2C{=}CHCH_3$	$H_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$
1.0	1.6×10^6	2.5×10^{11}

Mechanism 6.3

Acid-Catalyzed Hydration of 2-Methylpropene

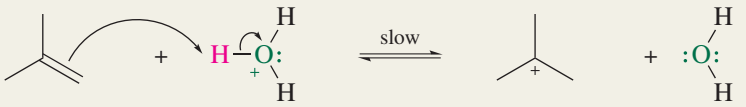
THE OVERALL REACTION:



2-Methylpropene Water *tert*-Butyl alcohol

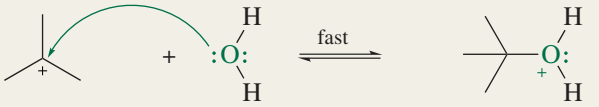
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Protonation of the carbon-carbon double bond in the direction that leads to the more stable carbocation:



2-Methylpropene Hydronium ion *tert*-Butyl cation Water

Step 2: Water acts as a nucleophile to capture *tert*-butyl cation:



tert-Butyl cation Water *tert*-Butyloxonium ion

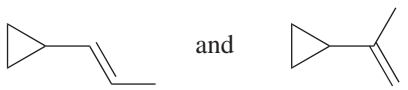
Step 3: Deprotonation of *tert*-butyloxonium ion. Water acts as a Brønsted base:

tert-Butyloxonium ion Water *tert*-Butyl alcohol Hydronium ion

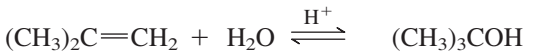
Protonation of ethylene, the least reactive alkene of the three, would give a primary carbocation; protonation of 2-methylpropene, the most reactive, gives a tertiary carbocation. The more stable the carbocation, the faster its rate of formation and the faster the overall reaction rate.

Problem 6.8

The rates of hydration of the two alkenes shown differ by a factor of over 7000 at 25°C. Which isomer is the more reactive? Why?



You may have noticed that the acid-catalyzed hydration of an alkene and the acid-catalyzed dehydration of an alcohol are the reverse of each other. For example:



2-Methylpropene Water *tert*-Butyl alcohol

An important principle, called **microscopic reversibility,** connects the mechanisms of the forward and reverse reactions. It states that *in any equilibrium, the sequence of intermediates and transition states encountered as reactants proceed to products in one direction must also be encountered, and in precisely the reverse order, in the opposite direction.* Just as the reaction is reversible with respect to reactants and products, so each tiny increment of progress along the mechanistic pathway is reversible. Once we know the mechanism for the forward reaction, we also know the intermediates and transition states for its reverse. In particular, the three-step mechanism for the acid-catalyzed hydration of 2-methylpropene shown in Mechanism 6.3 is the reverse of that for the acid-catalyzed dehydration of *tert*-butyl alcohol in Mechanism 5.1.

It would be a good idea to verify the statement in the last sentence of this paragraph by revisiting Mechanisms 5.1 (p. 192) and 6.3.

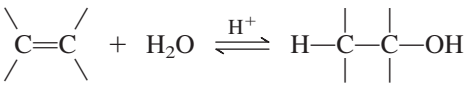
Problem 6.9

Is the electrophilic addition of hydrogen chloride to 2-methylpropene the reverse of the E1 or E2 elimination of *tert*-butyl chloride?

Reaction mechanisms help us understand the "how" of reversible reactions, but not the "how much." To gain an appreciation for the factors that influence equilibria in addition reactions we need to expand on some ideas introduced when we discussed acid–base reactions in Chapter 1 and conformational equilibria in Chapter 3.

6.7 Thermodynamics of Addition–Elimination Equilibria

We have seen that both the forward and reverse reactions represented by the hydration–dehydration equilibrium are useful synthetic methods.



Alkene Water Alcohol

We can prepare alcohols from alkenes, and alkenes from alcohols, but how do we control the position of equilibrium so as to maximize the yield of the compound we want?

The qualitative reasoning expressed in **Le Châtelier's principle** is a helpful guide: *a system at equilibrium adjusts so as to minimize any stress applied to it.* For hydration–dehydration equilibria, the key stress factor is the water concentration. Adding water to a hydration–dehydration equilibrium mixture causes the system to respond by consuming water. More alkene is converted to alcohol, and the position of equilibrium shifts to the right. When we prepare an alcohol from an alkene, we use a reaction medium in which the molar concentration of water is high—dilute sulfuric acid, for example.

On the other hand, alkene formation is favored when the concentration of water is kept low. The system responds to the absence of water by causing more alcohol molecules to dehydrate, forming more alkene. The amount of water in the reaction mixture is kept low by using concentrated acids as catalysts. Distilling the reaction mixture is an effective way of removing water as it is formed, causing the equilibrium to shift to the left. If the alkene is low-boiling, it too can be removed by distillation. This offers the additional benefit of protecting the alkene from acid-catalyzed isomerization after it is formed.

Problem 6.10

We studied the forward phase of the reaction

$$(CH_3)_3COH + HCl \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3CCl + H_2O$$

in Section 4.8 and will study its reverse in Section 8.6. Which would provide a more complete conversion of one mole of *tert*-butyl alcohol to *tert*-butyl chloride, a concentrated or a dilute solution containing 1 mol of HCl in water? Explain.

Le Châtelier's principle helps us predict *qualitatively* how an equilibrium will respond to changes in experimental conditions. For a *quantitative* understanding, we need to examine reactions from a thermodynamic point of view.

At constant temperature and pressure, the direction in which a reaction proceeds—that is, the direction in which it is **spontaneous**—is the one that leads to a decrease in **free energy (G)**

$$\Delta G = G_{\text{products}} - G_{\text{reactants}} \qquad \text{spontaneous when } \Delta G < 0$$

Free energy is also called "Gibbs free energy." The official term is **Gibbs energy,** in honor of the nineteenth century American physicist J. Willard Gibbs.

The free energy of the reactants and products depends on what they are and how much of each is present. The sign of G is always positive, but ΔG can be positive or negative. If only the reactants are present at the beginning, $G_{\text{reactants}}$ has some value but G_{products} is zero; therefore, ΔG is negative and the reaction is spontaneous in the direction written. As the reaction proceeds, $G_{\text{reactants}}$ decreases while G_{products} increases until both are equal and $\Delta G = 0$. At this point the system is at equilibrium. Both the forward and reverse reactions continue to take place, but at equal rates.

Because reactions are carried out under a variety of conditions, it is convenient to define a *standard state* for substances and experimental conditions. The standard state is the form (solid, liquid, or gas) assumed by the pure substance at 1 atm pressure. For substances in aqueous solution, the standard-state concentration is 1 M. Standard-state values are designated by a superscript ° following the thermodynamic symbol as in ΔG°.

For a reversible reaction

$$a\text{A} + b\text{B} \rightleftharpoons c\text{C} + d\text{D}$$

the relationship between ΔG and ΔG° is

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT \ln \frac{[\text{C}]^c[\text{D}]^d}{[\text{A}]^a[\text{B}]^b}$$

where $R = 8.314$ J/(mol·K) or 1.99 cal/(mol·K) and T is the kelvin temperature. At equilibrium $\Delta G = 0$, and $\dfrac{[\text{C}]^c[\text{D}]^d}{[\text{A}]^a[\text{B}]^b}$ becomes the equilibrium constant K. Substituting these values in the preceding equation and rearranging, we get

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K$$

Reactions for which the sign of ΔG° is negative are described as **exergonic;** those for which ΔG° is positive are **endergonic.** Exergonic reactions have an equilibrium constant greater than 1; endergonic reactions have equilibrium constants less than 1.

Free energy has both an enthalpy (H) and an entropy (S) component.

$$G = H - TS$$

At constant temperature, $\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$

For the hydration of 2-methylpropene, the standard-state thermodynamic values are given beside the equation.

$$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}{=}\text{CH}_2(g) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(\ell) \rightleftharpoons (\text{CH}_3)_3\text{COH}(\ell)$$

$\Delta G^\circ =$	-5.4 kJ (-1.3 kcal)	Exergonic
$\Delta H^\circ =$	-52.7 kJ (-12.6 kcal)	Exothermic
$\Delta S^\circ =$	-0.16 kJ/K (-0.038 kcal/K)	Entropy decreases

The negative sign for ΔG° tells us the reaction is exergonic. From the relationship

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K$$

we can calculate the equilibrium constant at 25°C as $K = 9$.

Problem 6.11

You can calculate the equilibrium constant for the dehydration of $(CH_3)_3COH$ (the reverse of the preceding reaction) by reversing the sign of ΔG° in the expression $\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K$, but there is an easier way. Do you know what it is? What is K for the dehydration of $(CH_3)_3COH$?

The ΔH° term is dominated by bond strength. A negative sign for ΔH° almost always means that bonding is stronger in the products than in the reactants. Stronger bonding reduces the free energy of the products and contributes to a more negative ΔG°. Such is the normal case for addition reactions. Hydrogenation, hydration, and hydrogen halide additions to alkenes, for example, are all characterized by negative values for ΔH°.

The ΔS° term is a measure of the increase or decrease in the order of a system. A more ordered system has less entropy and is less probable than a disordered one. The main factors that influence ΔS° in a chemical reaction are the number of moles of material on each side of the balanced equation and their physical state. The liquid phase of a substance has more entropy (less order) than the solid, and the gas phase has much more entropy than the liquid. Entropy increases when more molecules are formed at the expense of fewer ones, as for example in elimination reactions. Conversely, addition reactions convert more molecules to fewer ones and are characterized by a negative sign for ΔS°.

The negative signs for both ΔH° and ΔS° in typical addition reactions of alkenes cause the competition between addition and elimination to be strongly temperature-dependent. Addition is favored at low temperatures, elimination at high temperatures. The economically important hydrogenation–dehydrogenation equilibrium that connects ethylene and ethane illustrates this.

$$\underset{\text{Ethylene}}{H_2C{=}CH_2(g)} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{H_2(g)} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{Ethane}}{CH_3CH_3(g)}$$

Hydrogenation of ethylene converts two gas molecules on the left to one gas molecule on the right, leading to a decrease in entropy. The hydrogenation is sufficiently exothermic and ΔH° sufficiently negative, however, that the equilibrium lies far to the right over a relatively wide temperature range.

Very high temperatures—typically in excess of 750°C—reverse the equilibrium. At these temperatures, the $-T\Delta S^\circ$ term in

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

becomes so positive that it eventually overwhelms ΔH° in magnitude, and the equilibrium shifts to the left. In spite of the fact that *dehydrogenation* is very endothermic, billions of pounds of ethylene are produced from ethane each year by this process.

Problem 6.12

Does the presence or absence of a catalyst such as finely divided platinum, palladium, or nickel affect the equilibrium constant for the ethylene–ethane conversion?

Problem 6.13

The gas phase reaction of ethanol with hydrogen bromide can occur either by elimination or substitution.

$$CH_3CH_2OH(g) \overset{HBr}{\rightleftharpoons} H_2C{=}CH_2(g) + H_2O(g)$$

$$CH_3CH_2OH(g) + HBr(g) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CH_2Br(g) + H_2O(g)$$

Which product, ethylene or ethyl bromide, will increase relative to the other as the temperature is raised? Why?

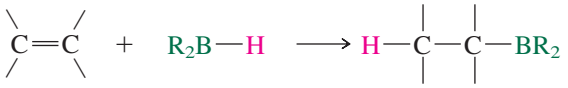
6.8 Hydroboration–Oxidation of Alkenes

Acid-catalyzed hydration converts alkenes to alcohols according to Markovnikov's rule. Frequently, however, one needs an alcohol having a structure that corresponds to hydration of an alkene with a regioselectivity opposite to that of Markovnikov's rule. The conversion of 1-decene to 1-decanol is an example of such a transformation.

$$\underset{\text{1-Decene}}{CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{1-Decanol}}{CH_3(CH_2)_7CH_2CH_2OH}$$

A synthetic method used to accomplish this is an indirect one known as **hydroboration–oxidation.** *Hydroboration* is a reaction in which a boron hydride, a compound of the type R_2BH, adds to a carbon–carbon π bond. A carbon–hydrogen bond and a carbon–boron bond result.

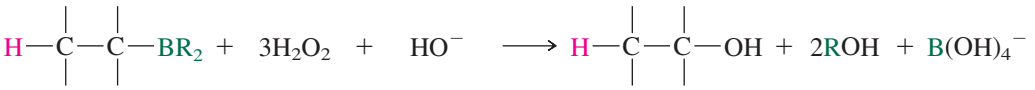
Hydroboration–oxidation was developed by Professor Herbert C. Brown [Nobel Prize in Chemistry (1979)] as part of a broad program designed to apply boron-containing reagents to organic chemical synthesis.



Alkene — Boron hydride — Organoborane

Following hydroboration, the organoborane is oxidized by treatment with hydrogen peroxide in aqueous base. This is the *oxidation* stage of the sequence; hydrogen peroxide is the oxidizing agent, and the organoborane is converted to an alcohol.

With sodium hydroxide as the base, boron of the alkylborane is converted to the water-soluble and easily removed sodium salt of boric acid.



Organoborane — Hydrogen peroxide — Hydroxide ion — Alcohol — Alcohol — Borate ion

Hydroboration–oxidation leads to the overall hydration of an alkene. Notice, however, that water is not a reactant. The hydrogen that becomes bonded to carbon comes from the organoborane, and the hydroxyl group from hydrogen peroxide.

With this as introduction, let us now look at the individual steps in more detail for the case of hydroboration–oxidation of 1-decene. A boron hydride that is often used is *diborane* (B_2H_6). Diborane adds to 1-decene to give tridecylborane according to the balanced equation:

$$\underset{\text{1-Decene}}{6CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Diborane}}{B_2H_6} \xrightarrow{\text{diglyme}} \underset{\text{Tridecylborane}}{2[CH_3(CH_2)_7CH_2CH_2]_3B}$$

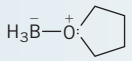
Diglyme, shown above the arrow in the equation, is the solvent in this example. Diglyme is an acronym for *di*ethylene *gly*col di*m*ethyl *e*ther, and its structure is $CH_3OCH_2CH_2OCH_2CH_2OCH_3$.

There is a regioselective preference for boron to bond to the less substituted carbon of the double bond. Thus, the hydrogen atoms of diborane add to C-2 of 1-decene, and boron to C-1. Oxidation of tridecylborane gives 1-decanol. The net result is the conversion of an alkene to an alcohol with a regioselectivity opposite to that of acid-catalyzed hydration.

$$\underset{\text{Tridecylborane}}{[CH_3(CH_2)_7CH_2CH_2]_3B} \xrightarrow[\text{NaOH}]{H_2O_2} \underset{\text{1-Decanol}}{CH_3(CH_2)_7CH_2CH_2OH}$$

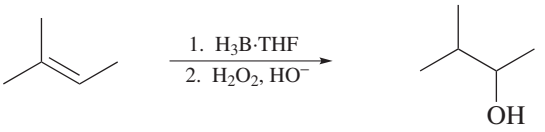
It is customary to combine the two stages, hydroboration and oxidation, in a single equation with the operations numbered sequentially above and below the arrow.

$$\underset{\text{1-Decene}}{CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH_2} \xrightarrow[\text{2. } H_2O_2,\ HO^-]{\text{1. } B_2H_6,\ \text{diglyme}} \underset{\text{1-Decanol (93\%)}}{CH_3(CH_2)_7CH_2CH_2OH}$$



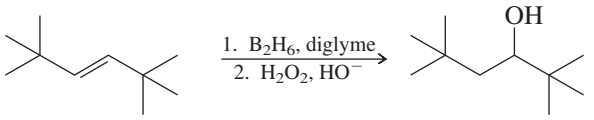
Borane–tetrahydrofuran complex

A more convenient hydroborating agent is the borane–tetrahydrofuran complex ($H_3B{\cdot}THF$). It is very reactive, adding to alkenes within minutes at 0°C, and is used in tetrahydrofuran as the solvent.



2-Methyl-2-butene — 3-Methyl-2-butanol (98%)

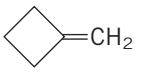
Carbocation intermediates are not involved in hydroboration–oxidation. Hydration of double bonds takes place without rearrangement, even in alkenes as highly branched as the following:



(*E*)-2,2,5,5-Tetramethyl-3-hexene — 2,2,5,5-Tetramethyl-3-hexanol (82%)

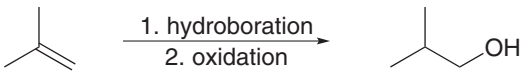
Problem 6.14

Write the structure of the major organic product obtained by hydroboration–oxidation of each of the following alkenes:

(a) 2-Methylpropene
(b) *cis*-2-Butene
(c) 

(d) Cyclopentene
(e) 3-Ethyl-2-pentene
(f) 3-Ethyl-1-pentene

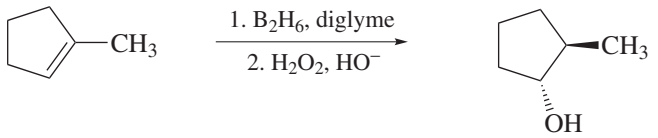
Sample Solution (a) In hydroboration–oxidation H and OH are introduced with a regioselectivity opposite to that of Markovnikov's rule. In the case of 2-methylpropene, this leads to 2-methyl-1-propanol as the product.



2-Methylpropene — 2-Methyl-1-propanol

Hydrogen becomes bonded to the carbon that has the fewer hydrogens, hydroxyl to the carbon that has the greater number of hydrogens.

Both operations, hydroboration and oxidation, are stereospecific and lead to syn addition of H and OH to the double bond.



1-Methylcyclopentene — *trans*-2-Methylcyclopentanol (only product, 86% yield)

Problem 6.15

Hydroboration–oxidation of α-pinene, like its catalytic hydrogenation (Problem 6.2), is stereoselective. Addition takes place at the less hindered face of the double bond, and a single alcohol is produced in high yield (89%). Suggest a reasonable structure for this alcohol.

6.9 Mechanism of Hydroboration–Oxidation

The regioselectivity and syn stereospecificity of hydroboration–oxidation, coupled with a knowledge of the chemical properties of alkenes and boranes, contribute to our understanding of the reaction mechanism.

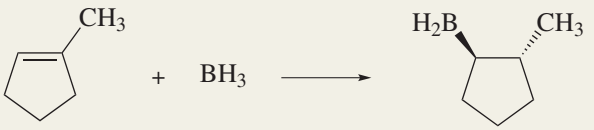
In order to simplify our presentation, we'll regard the hydroborating agent as if it were borane (BH_3) itself rather than B_2H_6 or the borane–tetrahydrofuran complex. BH_3 is electrophilic; it has a vacant $2p$ orbital that interacts with the π –electron pair of the alkene as shown in step 1 of Mechanism 6.4. The product of this step is an unstable intermediate

Borane (BH_3) does not exist as such at room temperature and atmospheric pressure. Two molecules of BH_3 combine to give diborane (B_2H_6), which is the more stable form.

Mechanism 6.4

Hydroboration of 1-Methylcyclopentene

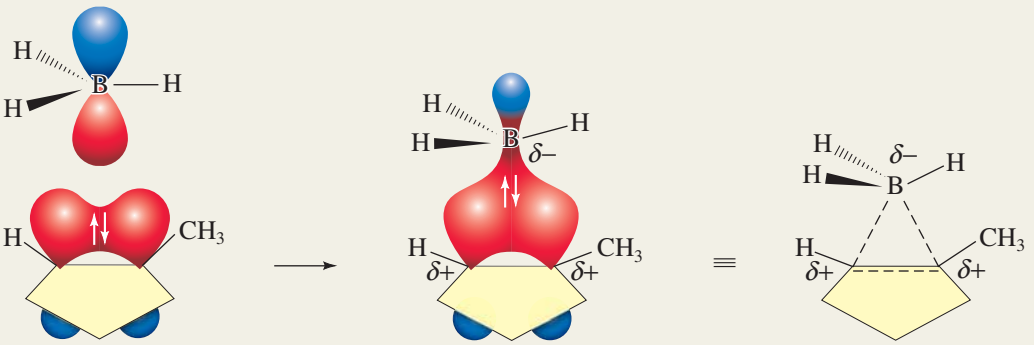
THE OVERALL REACTION:



1-Methyl-cyclopentene | Borane | *trans*-2-Methylcyclo-pentylborane

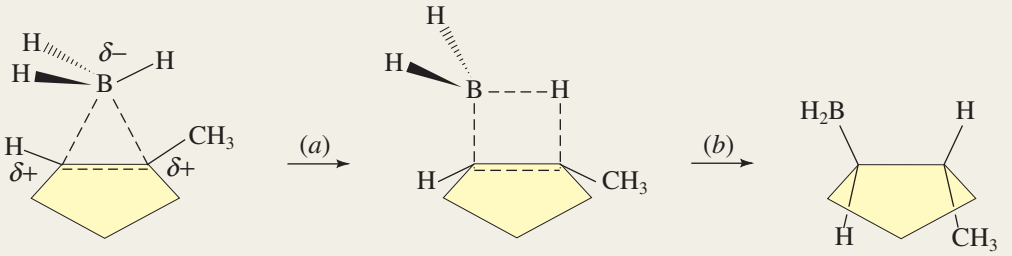
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: A molecule of borane (BH_3) attacks the alkene. Electrons flow from the π orbital of the alkene to the $2p$ orbital of boron. A π complex is formed.



Alternative representations of π-complex intermediate

Step 2: The π complex rearranges to an organoborane. Hydrogen migrates from boron to carbon, carrying with it the two electrons in its bond to boron.



Transition state for hydride migration in π-complex intermediate

Product of addition of borane (BH_3) to 1-methylcyclopentene

called a *π complex* in which boron and the two carbons of the double bond are joined by a three-center, two-electron bond. Structures of this type in which boron and two other atoms share two electrons are frequently encountered in boron chemistry. Each of the two carbons of the π complex has a small positive charge, whereas boron is slightly negative. This negative character of boron assists one of its hydrogens to migrate with a pair of electrons (a hydride shift) from boron to carbon as shown in step 2, yielding a stable alkylborane. The carbon–boron bond and the carbon–hydrogen bond are formed on the same face of the alkene in a stereospecific syn addition.

Step 1 is consistent with the regioselectivity of hydroboration. Boron, with its attached substituents is more sterically demanding than hydrogen, and bonds to the less crowded carbon of the double bond; hydrogen bonds to the more crowded one. Electronic effects are believed to be less important than steric ones, but point in the same direction. Hydrogen is transferred with a pair of electrons to the carbon atom that bears more of the positive charge in the π complex, namely, the one that bears the methyl group.

The oxidation stage (Mechanism 6.5) of hydroboration–oxidation begins with the formation of the conjugate base of hydrogen peroxide in step 1, followed by its bonding to boron in step 2. The resulting intermediate expels hydroxide with migration of the alkyl group from boron to oxygen in step 3. It is in this step that the critical C—O bond is formed. The stereochemical orientation of this new bond is the same as that of the original C—B bond, thereby maintaining the syn stereochemistry of the hydroboration stage. Migration of the alkyl group from boron to oxygen occurs with *retention of configuration* at carbon. The alkoxyborane intermediate formed in step 3 undergoes subsequent base-promoted oxygen–boron bond cleavage in step 4 to give the alcohol product.

The mechanistic complexity of hydroboration–oxidation stands in contrast to the simplicity with which these reactions are carried out experimentally. Both the hydroboration and oxidation steps are extremely rapid and are performed at room temperature with conventional laboratory equipment. Ease of operation, along with the fact that hydroboration–oxidation leads to syn hydration of alkenes with a regioselectivity opposite to Markovnikov's rule, makes this procedure one of great value to the synthetic chemist.

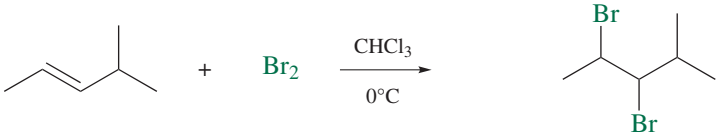
6.10 Addition of Halogens to Alkenes

In contrast to the free-radical substitution observed when halogens react with *alkanes,* halogens normally react with *alkenes* by electrophilic addition.

Alkene Halogen Vicinal dihalide

The addition products are called **vicinal** dihalides, meaning that the halogens are attached to adjacent carbons. Addition of chlorine or bromine takes place rapidly at room temperature and below in a variety of solvents, including acetic acid, carbon tetrachloride, chloroform, and dichloromethane.

Like the word, *vicinity, vicinal* comes from the Latin *vicinalis,* which means "neighboring."



4-Methyl-2-pentene Bromine 2,3-Dibromo-4-methylpentane (100%)

The addition of iodine to alkenes is not as straightforward, and vicinal diiodides are less commonly encountered than vicinal dichlorides and dibromides. The reaction of fluorine

Mechanism 6.5

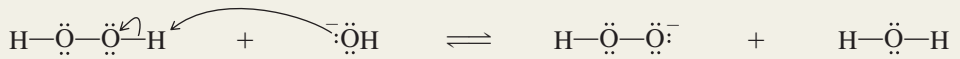
Oxidation of an Organoborane

THE OVERALL REACTION:

trans-2-Methylcyclopentylborane | Hydrogen peroxide | *trans*-2-Methylcyclopentanol | Hydroxyborane

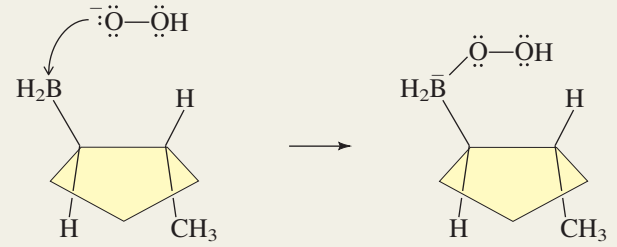
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Hydrogen peroxide is converted to its anion in basic solution:



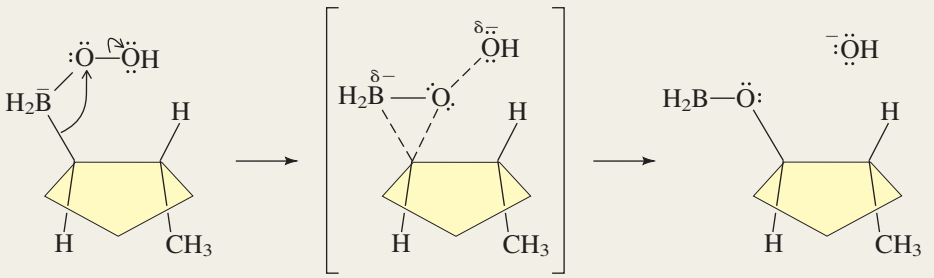
Hydrogen peroxide | Hydroxide ion | Hydroperoxide ion | Water

Step 2: Anion of hydrogen peroxide acts as a nucleophile, attacking boron and forming an oxygen–boron bond:



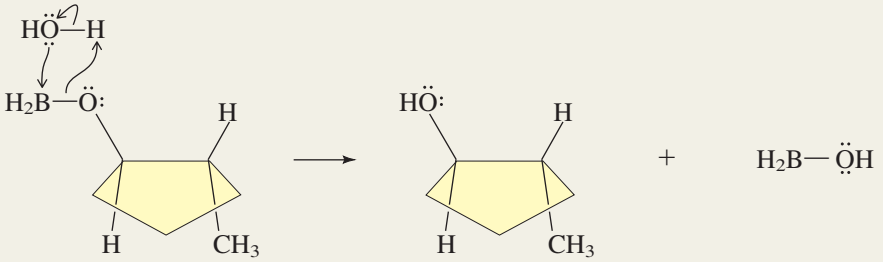
Organoborane intermediate from hydroboration of 1-methylcyclopentene

Step 3: Carbon migrates from boron to oxygen, displacing hydroxide ion. Carbon migrates with the pair of electrons in the carbon–boron bond; these become the electrons in the carbon–oxygen bond.



Transition state for migration of carbon from boron to oxygen | Alkoxyborane

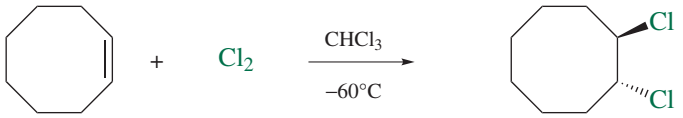
Step 4: Hydrolysis cleaves the boron–oxygen bond, yielding the alcohol:



Alkoxyborane | *trans*-2-Methylcyclopentanol

with alkenes is violent, difficult to control, and accompanied by substitution of hydrogens by fluorine.

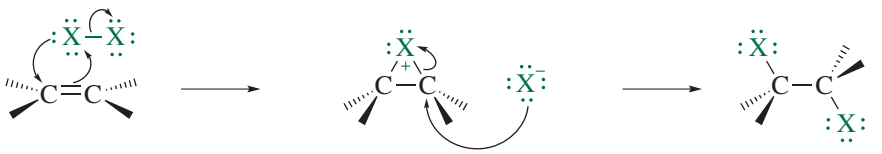
Chlorine and bromine react with cycloalkenes by stereospecific anti addition.



Cyclooctene Chlorine *trans*-1,2-Dichlorocyclooctane (73% yield; none of the cis stereoisomer is formed)

The observed anti stereochemistry rules out a simple one-step "bond-switching" mechanism that would require syn addition.

To accommodate the anti addition requirement, a mechanism involving a cyclic **halonium ion** was proposed in 1937.



Alkene + halogen Cyclic halonium ion + halide ion Vicinal dihalide

In spite of its unfamiliar structure, a cyclic halonium ion is believed to be more stable than an isomeric β-haloalkyl carbocation because, unlike a carbocation, a halonium ion is consistent with the octet rule for the halogen and both carbons.

Cyclic halonium ion β-Haloalkyl carbocation

The fact that rearrangements characteristic of carbocation intermediates are not observed in bromination supports a bromonium ion mechanism as does the isolation and characterization of a stable bromonium ion. Rearrangements, however, are sometimes observed in chlorine addition.

The trend in relative rates as a function of alkene structure is consistent with a rate-determining step in which electrons flow from the alkene to the halogen.

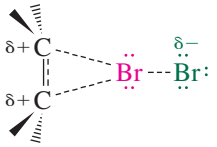
Relative rate of bromine addition (25°C)

$H_2C{=}CH_2$	$H_2C{=}CHCH_3$	$H_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$	$(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$
1.0	61	5,400	920,000

Alkyl groups on the double bond release electrons, stabilize the transition state for the rate-determining step, and increase the reaction rate. The much greater reactivity of

$(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$ compared with $H_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$ indicates that both of the carbons of the double bond participate in this stabilization.

Transition state for bromonium ion formation from an alkene and bromine



Mechanism 6.6 describes the bromonium ion mechanism for the reaction of cyclopentene with bromine.

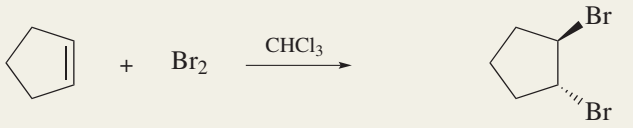
Problem 6.16

Arrange the compounds 2-methyl-1-butene, 2-methyl-2-butene, and 3-methyl-1-butene in order of decreasing reactivity toward bromine.

Mechanism 6.6

Bromine Addition to Cyclopentene

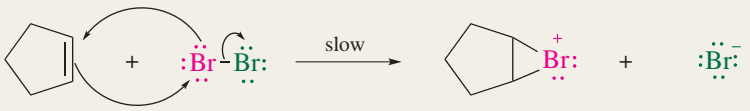
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Cyclopentene Bromine *trans*-1,2-Dibromocyclopentane (80%)

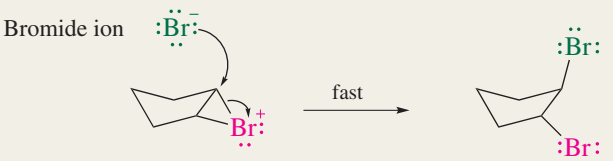
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Bromine acts as an electrophile and reacts with cyclopentene to form a cyclic bromonium ion. This is the rate-determining step.



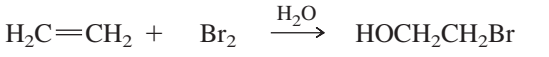
Cyclopentene Bromine Bromonium ion intermediate Bromide ion

Step 2: Bromide ion acts as a nucleophile, forming a bond to one of the carbons of the bromonium ion and displacing the positively charged bromine from that carbon. Because substitutions of this type normally occur with the nucleophile approaching carbon from the side opposite the bond that is broken, the two bromine atoms are trans to one another in the product.



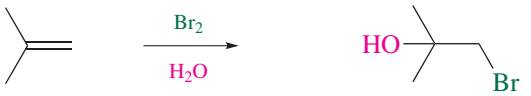
Bromonium ion intermediate *trans*-1,2-Dibromocyclopentane

In a related reaction, chlorine and bromine react with alkenes in aqueous solution to give **vicinal halohydrins,** compounds that have a halogen and a hydroxyl group on adjacent carbons.



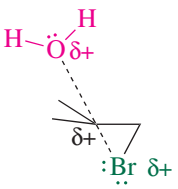
Ethylene Bromine 2-Bromoethanol (70%)

Like the acid-catalyzed hydration of alkenes and the reaction of alkenes with hydrogen halides, halohydrin formation is regioselective. The halogen bonds to the less substituted carbon of the double bond and hydroxyl to the more substituted carbon.

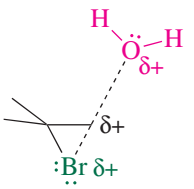


2-Methylpropene 1-Bromo-2-methyl-2-propanol (77%)

The generally accepted mechanism for this reaction is modeled after the formation of vicinal dihalides. It begins with formation of a cyclic bromonium ion, followed by nucleophilic attack of water from the side opposite the carbon-halogen bond. The transition state for bromonium ion ring opening has some of the character of a carbocation; therefore, the reaction proceeds by breaking the bond between bromine and the more substituted carbon.

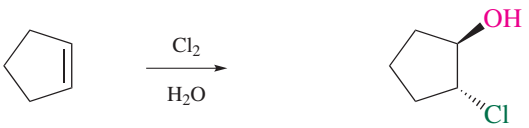


More stable transition state;
positive charge shared by tertiary carbon



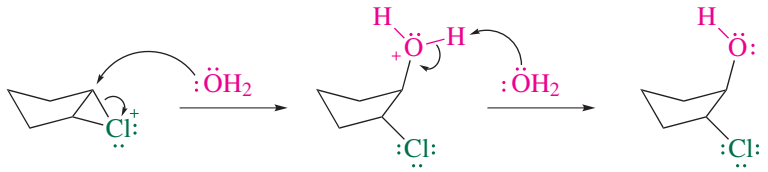
Less stable transition state;
positive charge shared by primary carbon

Vicinal halohydrin formation also resembles that of vicinal dihalides in that addition is stereospecific and anti.



Cyclopentene *trans*-2-Chlorocyclopentanol
(52-56% yield; cis isomer not formed)

A mechanism involving approach by a water molecule from the side opposite the carbon–chlorine bond of a cyclic chloronium ion accounts for the observed stereochemistry.



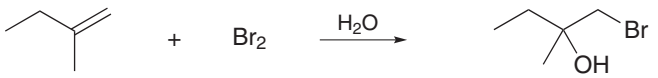
Chloronium ion intermediate *trans*-2-Chlorocyclopentanol

Problem 6.17

Give the structure of the product formed when each of the following alkenes reacts with bromine in water:

(a) 2-Methyl-1-butene
(b) 2-Methyl-2-butene
(c) 3-Methyl-1-butene
(d) 1-Methylcyclopentene

Sample Solution (a) The hydroxyl group becomes bonded to the more substituted carbon of the double bond, and bromine bonds to the less substituted one.



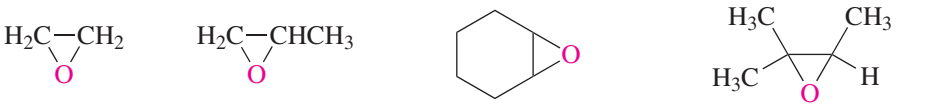
2-Methyl-1-butene Bromine 1-Bromo-2-methyl-2-butanol

6.11 Epoxidation of Alkenes

Up to this point we have seen reactions in which alkenes react with electrophilic reagents via cyclic transition states (hydroboration) or intermediates (halonium ions). In this section we'll introduce a reaction that gives a cyclic product—a three-membered oxygen-containing ring called an **epoxide.**

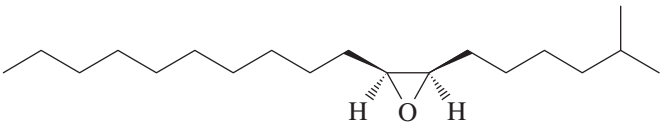
Substitutive IUPAC nomenclature treats epoxides as *epoxy* derivatives of alkane parents; the *epoxy*-prefix is listed in alphabetical order like other substituents. Some industrial chemicals have common names formed by adding the word "oxide" to the name of the alkene.

A second method for naming epoxides in the IUPAC system is described in Section 16.1.



Epoxyethane (ethylene oxide) 1,2-Epoxypropane (propylene oxide) 1,2-Epoxycyclohexane 2,3-Epoxy-2-methylbutane

Countless numbers of naturally occurring substances are epoxides. *Disparlure,* the sex attractant of the female gypsy moth is but one example.



Disparlure

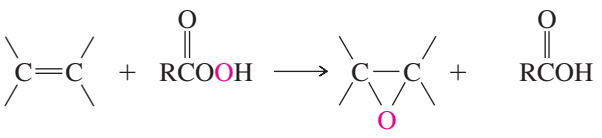
In one strategy designed to control the spread of the gypsy moth, infested areas are sprayed with synthetic disparlure. With the sex attractant everywhere, male gypsy moths become hopelessly confused as to the actual location of individual females. Many otherwise fertile female gypsy moths then live out their lives without producing hungry gypsy moth caterpillars.

Gypsy moths were accidentally introduced into United States forests around 1869 in Medford, Massachusetts. They have become persistent pests throughout the Northeast and Middle Atlantic states, defoliating millions of acres of woodlands.

Problem 6.18

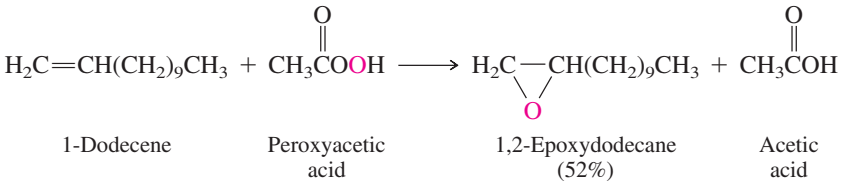
Give the substitutive IUPAC name, including stereochemistry, for disparlure.

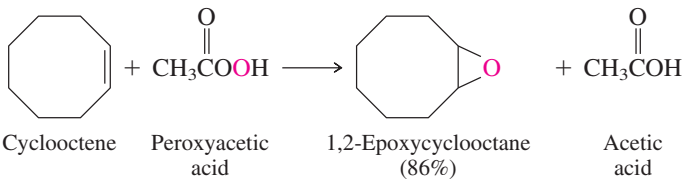
Epoxides are very easy to prepare via the reaction of an alkene with a peroxy acid. This process is known as **epoxidation.**



Alkene Peroxy acid Epoxide Carboxylic acid

A commonly used peroxy acid is peroxyacetic acid (CH_3CO_2OH). Peroxyacetic acid is normally used in acetic acid as the solvent, but epoxidation reactions tolerate a variety of solvents and are often carried out in dichloromethane or chloroform.





Epoxidation of alkenes with peroxy acids is a syn addition to the double bond. Substituents that are cis to each other in the alkene remain cis in the epoxide; substituents that are trans in the alkene remain trans in the epoxide.

Problem 6.19

Give the structure of the alkene, including stereochemistry, that you would choose as the starting material in a preparation of synthetic disparlure.

Electron-releasing substitutents on the double bond increase the rate of epoxidation, which suggests that the peroxy acid acts as an electrophile toward the alkene.

Relative rate of epoxidation (peroxyacetic acid, 25°C)

$H_2C=CH_2$	$H_2C=CHCH_3$	$H_2C=C(CH_3)_2$	$(CH_3)_2C=C(CH_3)_2$
1.0	22	484	6,526

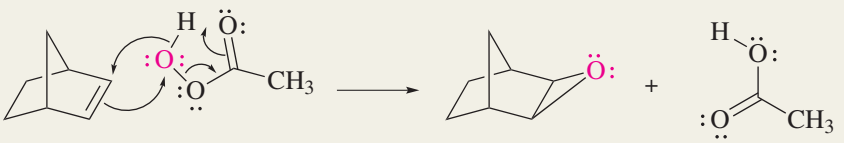
Alkene epoxidation is believed to occur in a single bimolecular step as shown in Mechanism 6.7

Mechanism 6.7

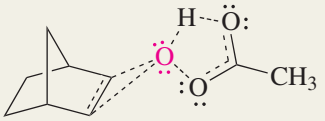
Epoxidation of Bicyclo[2.2.1]-2-heptene

THE REACTION AND THE MECHANISM:

Oxygen is transferred from the peroxy acid to the less crowded (upper) face of the alkene.



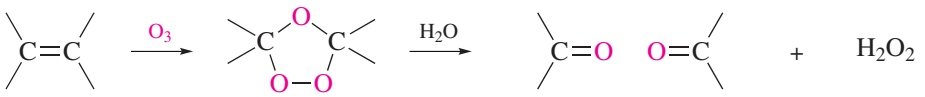
The various bonding changes occur in the same transition state.



6.12 Ozonolysis of Alkenes

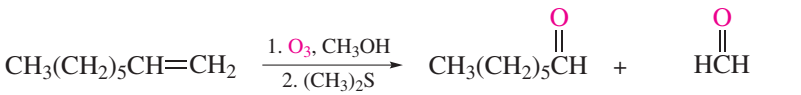
Ozone (O_3), the triatomic form of oxygen, is a polar molecule (μ = 0.5 D) that can be represented as a hybrid of its two most stable Lewis structures.

It is a powerful electrophile and reacts with alkenes to cleave the double bond, forming an **ozonide.** Ozonides undergo hydrolysis in water, giving carbonyl compounds.

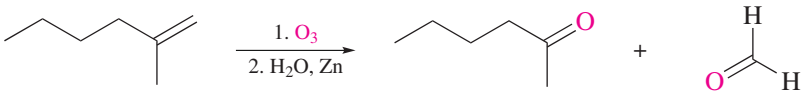


Alkene Ozone Ozonide Two carbonyl compounds Hydrogen peroxide

Because hydrogen peroxide is a product of ozonide hydrolysis and has the potential to oxidize the products, the second half of this two-stage **ozonolysis** sequence is carried out in the presence of a reducing agent, usually zinc or dimethyl sulfide.



1-Octene Heptanal (75%) Formaldehyde



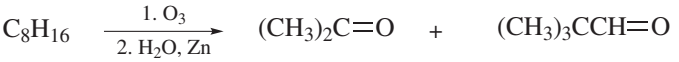
2-Methyl-1-hexene 2-Hexanone (60%) Formaldehyde

The types of carbonyl compounds that result are determined by the substituents on the doubly bonded carbons. Formaldehyde, aldehydes, or ketones are possible, depending on whether a particular carbon is attached to two hydrogens, a hydrogen and an alkyl group, or two alkyl groups respectively. Thus, the $=CH_2$ unit in each of the preceding examples gives formaldehyde. The remaining seven carbons of 1-octene are incorporated into the aldehyde heptanal, and the remaining six carbons of 2-methyl-1-hexene into the ketone 2-hexanone.

Problem 6.20

1-Methylcyclopentene gives a single compound ($C_6H_{12}O_2$) on ozonolysis. What is it?

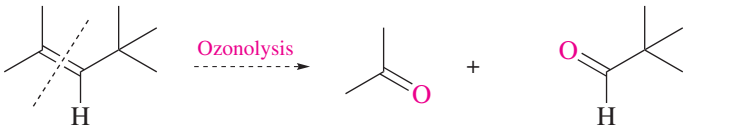
Ozonolysis has both synthetic and analytical applications in organic chemistry. In synthesis, ozonolysis of alkenes provides a method for the preparation of aldehydes and ketones. When the objective is analytical, the products of ozonolysis are isolated and identified, thereby allowing the structure of the alkene to be deduced. In one such example, an alkene having the molecular formula C_8H_{16} was obtained from a chemical reaction and gave acetone and 2,2-dimethylpropanal as the products.



Acetone 2,2-Dimethylpropanal

Together, these two products contain all eight carbons of the starting alkene. The two carbonyl carbons correspond to those that were doubly bonded in the original alkene. Therefore,

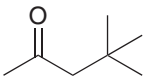
one of the doubly bonded carbons bears two methyl substituents; the other bears a hydrogen and a *tert*-butyl group and identifies the alkene as 2,4,4-trimethyl-2-pentene.



Acetone 2,2-Dimethylpropanal

Problem 6.21

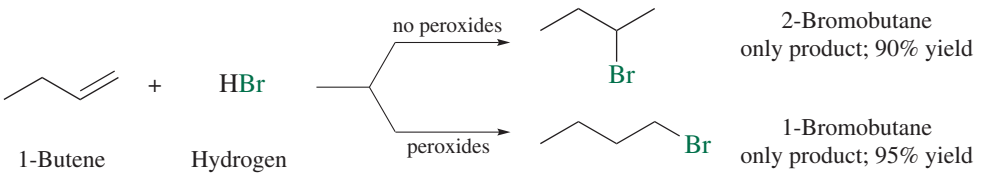
The same reaction that gave 2,4,4-trimethyl-2-pentene also yielded an isomeric alkene. This second alkene produced formaldehyde and 4,4-dimethyl-2-pentanone on ozonolysis. Identify this alkene.



4,4-Dimethyl-2-pentanone

6.13 Free-Radical Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to Alkenes

For a long time, the regioselectivity of addition of hydrogen bromide (but not hydrogen chloride or hydrogen iodide) to alkenes was a puzzle. Sometimes it obeyed Markovnikov's rule; at other times, seemingly under the same conditions, it didn't. After hundreds of experiments during the period 1929–1933, Morris Kharasch and his students at the University of Chicago found that addition occurred in accordance with Markovnikov's rule when peroxides were carefully excluded from the reaction mixture, opposite to Markovnikov's rule when they were intentionally added.



1-Butene Hydrogen bromide

2-Bromobutane only product; 90% yield

1-Bromobutane only product; 95% yield

He called this the **peroxide effect** and proposed that the difference in regioselectivity was due to a peroxide-induced change in mechanism. The conventional electrophilic addition pathway responsible for Markovnikov addition operates in the absence of peroxides; the other mechanism is a free-radical addition sequence (Mechanism 6.8).

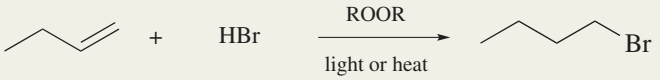
Like free-radical chlorination of methane (Section 4.16), the free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide to 1-butene outlined in Mechanism 6.8 is characterized by *initiation* and *chain propagation* stages. The initiation stage, however, involves two steps rather than one and it is this "extra" step that accounts for the role of peroxides. Peroxides are *initiators;* they are not incorporated into the product but act as a source of radicals necessary to get the chain reaction started.

The regioselectivity of electrophilic addition of HBr to alkenes is controlled by the tendency of a proton to add to the double bond to produce the more stable carbocation. Under free-radical conditions the regioselectivity is governed by addition of a bromine atom to give the more stable alkyl radical. Returning to the case of 1-butene, electrophilic addition involves a secondary carbocation, free-radical addition involves a secondary radical.

Mechanism 6.8

Free-Radical Addition of Hydrogen Bromide to 1-Butene

THE OVERALL REACTION:

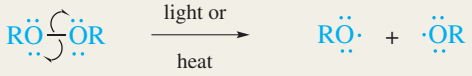


1-Butene — Hydrogen bromide — 1-Bromobutane

THE MECHANISM:

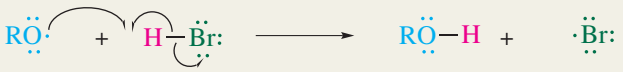
(a) Initiation

Step 1: The weak O—O bond of the peroxide undergoes homolytic dissociation to give two alkoxy radicals.



Peroxide — Two alkoxy radicals

Step 2: An alkoxy radical abstracts a hydrogen atom from hydrogen bromide, generating a bromine atom and setting the stage for a chain reaction.



Alkoxy radical — Hydrogen bromide — Alcohol — Bromine atom

(b) Chain propagation

Step 3: The regiochemistry of addition is set in this step. Bromine bonds to C-1 of 1-butene to give a secondary radical. If it had bonded to C-2, a less stable primary radical would have resulted.

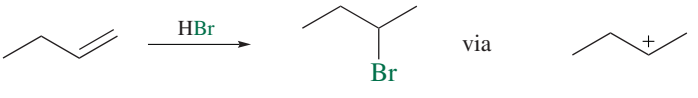
1-Butene — Bromine atom — 1-(Bromomethyl)propyl radical

Step 4: The radical produced in step 3 abstracts a hydrogen atom from hydrogen bromide giving the product 1-bromobutane. This hydrogen abstraction also generates a bromine atom, which reacts with another molecule of alkene as in step 3.

Hydrogen bromide — 1-(Bromomethyl)propyl radical — Bromine atom — 1-Bromobutane

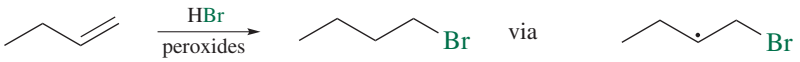
Steps 3 and 4 repeat many times unless interrupted by chain termination steps.

Electrophilic addition:



1-Butene 2-Bromobutane 1-Methylpropyl cation

Free-radical addition:

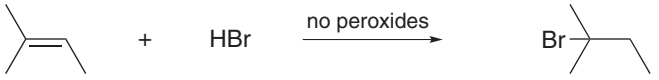


1-Butene 1-Bromobutane 1-Bromomethylpropyl radical

Problem 6.22

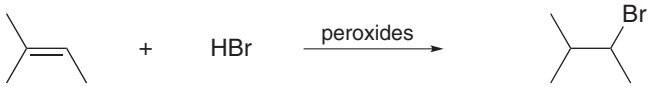
Give the major organic product formed when hydrogen bromide reacts with each of the alkenes in Problem 6.4 in the absence of peroxides and in their presence.

Sample Solution (a) The addition of hydrogen bromide in the absence of peroxides exhibits a regioselectivity just like that of hydrogen chloride addition; Markovnikov's rule is followed.



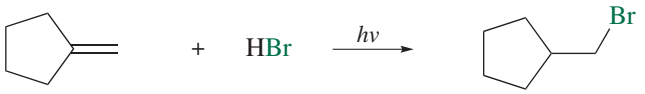
2-Methyl-2-butene Hydrogen bromide 2-Bromo-2-methylbutane

Under free-radical conditions in the presence of peroxides, addition takes place with a regioselectivity opposite to that of Markovnikov's rule.



2-Methyl-2-butene Hydrogen bromide 2-Bromo-3-methylbutane

Free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide to alkenes can also be initiated photochemically, either with or without added peroxides.



Methylenecyclopentane Hydrogen bromide Bromomethylcyclopentane (60%)

Although the possibility of having two different reaction paths available to an alkene and hydrogen bromide may seem like a complication, it can be an advantage in organic synthesis. Rearrangements analogous to those that can accompany reactions proceeding by way of carbocation intermediates are much less common in free-radical processes, and it is often possible to regioselectively prepare either of two different alkyl bromides by choosing reaction conditions that favor electrophilic addition or free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide.

Problem 6.23

Electrophilic addition of HBr to $H_2C{=}CHCH(CH_3)_2$ gives a mixture of two constitutional isomers A and B. Only B is formed, however, when $CH_3CH{=}C(CH_3)_2$ reacts with HBr in the presence of peroxides. Identify A and B and explain your reasoning.

6.14 Free-Radical Polymerization of Alkenes

The boxed essay *Ethylene and Propene: The Most Important Industrial Chemicals* summarizes the main uses of these two alkenes, especially their polymerization to *polyethylene* and *polypropylene,* respectively. Of the methods used to prepare polyethylene, the oldest involves free radicals and is carried out by heating ethylene under pressure in the presence of oxygen or a peroxide initiator.

$$n(H_2C{=}CH_2) \xrightarrow[O_2 \text{ or peroxides}]{200^\circ C,\ 2000 \text{ atm}} {-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}(CH_2{-}CH_2)_{n-2}{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}$$

Ethylene — Polyethylene

In this reaction, n can have a value of thousands.

Mechanism 6.9 shows the steps in the free-radical polymerization of ethylene. Dissociation of a peroxide initiates the process in step 1. The resulting peroxy radical adds to the carbon–carbon double bond in step 2, giving a new radical, which then adds to a second molecule of ethylene in step 3. The carbon–carbon bond-forming process in step 3 can be repeated thousands of times to give long carbon chains. In spite of the *-ene* ending to its

Mechanism 6.9

Free-Radical Polymerization of Ethylene

THE OVERALL REACTION:

$$n(H_2C{=}CH_2) \longrightarrow {+}CH_2CH_2{+}_n$$

Ethylene — Polyethylene

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Homolytic dissociation of a peroxide produces alkoxy radicals that serve as free-radical initiators:

$$R\ddot{O}{-}\ddot{O}R \longrightarrow R\ddot{O}\cdot + \cdot\ddot{O}R$$

Peroxide — Two alkoxy radicals

Step 2: An alkoxy radical adds to the carbon–carbon double bond:

$$R\ddot{O}\cdot + H_2C{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow R\ddot{O}{-}CH_2{-}\dot{C}H_2$$

Alkoxy radical — Ethylene — 2-Alkoxyethyl radical

Step 3: The radical produced in step 2 adds to a second molecule of ethylene:

$$R\ddot{O}{-}CH_2{-}\dot{C}H_2 + H_2C{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow R\ddot{O}{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}\dot{C}H_2$$

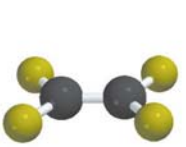
2-Alkoxyethyl radical — Ethylene — 4-Alkoxybutyl radical

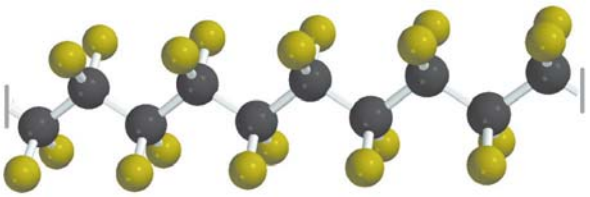
The radical formed in step 3 then adds to a third molecule of ethylene, and the process continues, forming a long chain of methylene groups.

name, polyethylene is much more closely related to alkanes than to alkenes. It is simply a long chain of CH_2 groups bearing at its ends an alkoxy group (from the initiator) or a carbon–carbon double bond.

The properties that make polyethylene so useful come from its alkane-like structure. Except for the ends of the chain, which make up only a tiny portion of the molecule, polyethylene has no functional groups so is almost completely inert to most substances with which it comes in contact.

Teflon is made in a similar way by free-radical polymerization of tetrafluoroethylene.





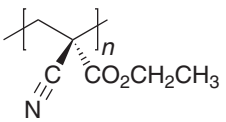
$$n F_2C{=}CF_2 \xrightarrow[\text{peroxides}]{80^\circ C,\ 40\text{–}100\ \text{atm}} -CF_2-CF_2-(CF_2-CF_2)_{n-2}-CF_2-CF_2-$$

Tetrafluoroethene — Teflon

Carbon–fluorine bonds are quite strong (slightly stronger than C—H bonds), and like polyethylene, Teflon is a very stable, inert material. We are all familiar with the most characteristic property of Teflon, its "nonstick" surface. This can be understood by comparing it with polyethylene. The high electronegativity of fluorine makes C—F bonds less polarizable than C—H bonds, causing the dispersion forces to be weaker than in polyethylene and the surface to be slicker.

Problem 6.24

The materials shown in Table 6.2 are classified as *vinyl polymers* because the starting material, the *monomer,* contains a carbon–carbon double bond. Super Glue sticks because of its ready conversion to the vinyl polymer shown. What is the monomer?



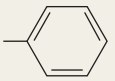
A large number of compounds with carbon–carbon double bonds have been polymerized to yield materials with useful properties. Some of the more familiar ones are listed in Table 6.2. Not all are effectively polymerized under free-radical conditions, and much research has been carried out to develop alternative methods. The most notable of these, **coordination polymerization** employs transition-metal catalysts and is used to prepare polypropylene. Aspects of coordination polymerization are described in Sections 7.16 and 14.14. Chapter 27 is devoted entirely to synthetic polymers.

6.15 Introduction to Organic Chemical Synthesis: Retrosynthetic Analysis

An important concern to chemists is *synthesis,* the challenge of preparing a particular compound in an economical way with confidence that the method chosen will lead to the desired structure. In this section we introduce the topic of synthesis, emphasizing the need for systematic planning to decide what is the best sequence of steps to prepare a desired product (the target molecule).

TABLE 6.2 Some Compounds with Carbon–Carbon Double Bonds Used to Prepare Polymers

A. Alkenes of the type $H_2C{=}CH{-}X$ used to form polymers of the type $\text{-}(CH_2{-}\underset{\displaystyle X}{\underset{|}{CH}})_n\text{-}$

Compound	Structure	—X in polymer	Application
Ethylene	$H_2C{=}CH_2$	—H	Polyethylene films as packaging material; "plastic" squeeze bottles are molded from high-density polyethylene.
Propene	$H_2C{=}CH{-}CH_3$	$-CH_3$	Polypropylene fibers for use in carpets and automobile tires; consumer items (luggage, appliances, etc.); packaging material.
Styrene	$H_2C{=}CH{-}$		Polystyrene packaging, housewares, luggage, radio and television cabinets.
Vinyl chloride	$H_2C{=}CH{-}Cl$	—Cl	Poly(vinyl chloride) (PVC) has replaced leather in many of its applications; PVC tubes and pipes are often used in place of copper.
Acrylonitrile	$H_2C{=}CH{-}C{\equiv}N$	$-C{\equiv}N$	Wool substitute in sweaters, blankets, etc.

B. Alkenes of the type $H_2C{=}CX_2$ used to form polymers of the type $\text{-}(CH_2{-}CX_2)_n\text{-}$

Compound	Structure	X in polymer	Application
1,1-Dichloroethene (vinylidene chloride)	$H_2C{=}CCl_2$	Cl	Saran used as air- and watertight packaging film.
2-Methylpropene	$H_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$	CH_3	Polyisobutylene is component of "butyl rubber," one of earliest synthetic rubber substitutes.

C. Others

Compound	Structure	Polymer	Application
Tetrafluoroethene	$F_2C{=}CF_2$	$\text{-}(CF_2{-}CF_2)_n\text{-}$ (Teflon)	Nonstick coating for cooking utensils; bearings, gaskets, and fittings.
Methyl methacrylate	$H_2C{=}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}CO_2CH_3$	$\text{-}(CH_2{-}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{\overset{\displaystyle CO_2CH_3}{\overset{|}{C}}}})_n\text{-}$	When cast in sheets, is transparent; used as glass substitute (Lucite, Plexiglas).
2-Methyl-l,3-butadiene	$H_2C{=}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}CH{=}CH_2$	$\text{-}(CH_2C{=}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}CH{=}CH_2)_n\text{-}$ (Polyisoprene)	Synthetic rubber.

Source: R. C. Atkins and F. A. Carey, *Organic Chemistry: A Brief Course,* 3rd ed. McGraw-Hill, New York, 2002, p. 237.

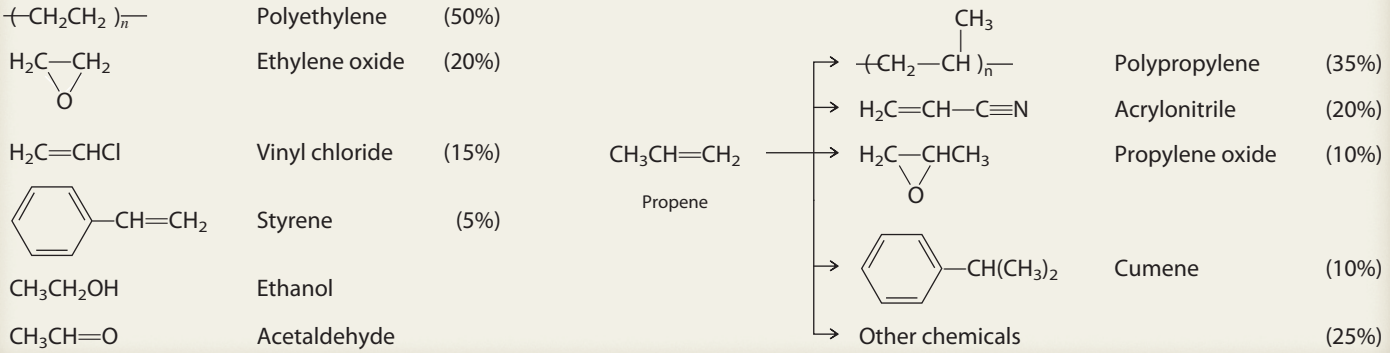
Ethylene and Propene: The Most Important Industrial Organic Chemicals

Having examined the properties of alkenes and introduced the elements of polymers and polymerization, let's now look at some commercial applications of ethylene and propene.

Ethylene We discussed ethylene production in an earlier boxed essay (Section 5.1), where it was pointed out that the output of the U.S. petrochemical industry exceeds 5×10^{10} lb/year. Approximately 90% of this material is used for the preparation of four compounds (polyethylene, ethylene oxide, vinyl chloride, and styrene), with polymerization to polyethylene accounting for half the total. Both vinyl chloride and styrene are polymerized to give poly(vinyl chloride) and polystyrene, respectively. Ethylene oxide is a starting material for the preparation of ethylene glycol for use as an antifreeze in automobile radiators and in the production of polyester fibers.

Propene The major use of propene is in the production of polypropylene. Two other propene-derived organic chemicals, acrylonitrile and propylene oxide, are also starting materials for polymer synthesis. Acrylonitrile is used to make acrylic fibers, and propylene oxide is one component in the preparation of *polyurethane* polymers. Cumene itself has no direct uses but rather serves as the starting material in a process that yields two valuable industrial chemicals: acetone and phenol.

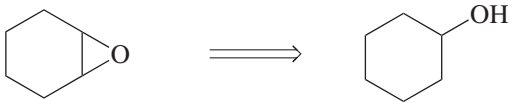
We have not indicated the reagents employed in the reactions by which ethylene and propene are converted to the compounds shown. Because of patent requirements, different companies often use different processes. Although the processes may be different, they share the common characteristic of being extremely efficient. The industrial chemist faces the challenge of producing valuable materials, at low cost. Success in the industrial environment requires both an understanding of chemistry and an appreciation of the economics associated with alternative procedures.



Retrosynthetic analysis is one component of a formal system for synthetic planning developed by E. J. Corey (Harvard). Corey received the 1990 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his achievements in synthetic organic chemistry.

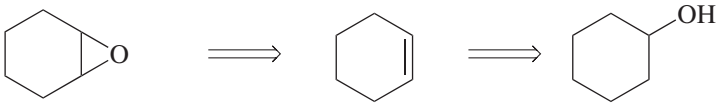
A critical feature of synthetic planning is to *always use reactions that you know will work.* A second is to *reason backward from the target to the starting material.* One way to represent the reasoning backward process is called **retrosynthetic analysis.** A retrosynthetic operation is identified by an arrow of the type ⇒ pointing from the product of a synthetic step toward the reactant.

Suppose you wanted to prepare 1,2-epoxycyclohexane, given cyclohexanol as the starting material. We represent this retrosynthetically as:



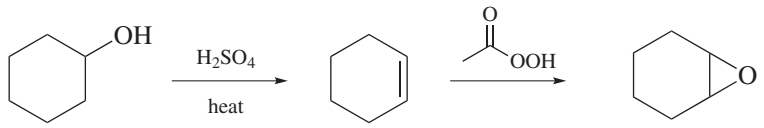
1,2-Epoxycyclohexane (the target) ⇒ Cyclohexanol (the starting material)

However, we know of no reactions that convert alcohols directly to epoxides. Because we do know that epoxides are prepared from alkenes, we expand our retrosynthesis to reflect that.



1,2-Epoxycyclohexane ⇒ Cyclohexene ⇒ Cyclohexanol

Recognizing that cyclohexene can be prepared by acid-catalyzed dehydration of cyclohexanol, we write a suitable synthesis in the forward direction complete with the necessary reagents.



Cyclohexanol Cyclohexene 1,2-Epoxycyclohexane

Problem 6.25

Suggest a reasonable synthesis of 1,2-epoxycyclohexane from cyclohexane. Indicate appropriate reagents over the reaction arrow.

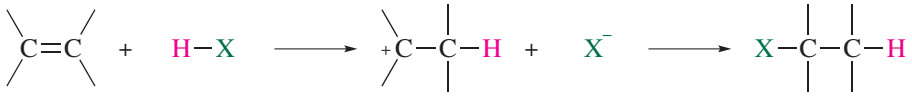
More commonly, chemists are presented with the task of preparing a target molecule from an unspecified starting material. In those cases, begin by asking the question, "What kind of compound is the target, and what methods can I use to prepare that kind of compound?" More often than not, there will be several possibilities and choosing the best one includes considering a number of factors—availability of the starting materials, cost, scale, and disposal of hazardous waste, among others. As we proceed through the text and develop a larger inventory of functional group transformations and methods for forming carbon–carbon bonds, our ability to evaluate alternative synthetic plans will increase. In most cases the best synthetic plan is the one with the fewest steps.

6.16 SUMMARY

Alkenes are **unsaturated hydrocarbons** and react with substances that add to the double bond. This chapter surveys the kinds of substances that react with alkenes, the mechanisms by which the reactions occur, and their synthetic applications.

Sections 6.1–6.3 See Table 6.3. Aspects of addition reactions are introduced in these sections as they apply to the catalytic hydrogenation of alkenes.

Sections 6.4–6.5 See Table 6.3. The mechanism of electrophilic addition is outlined for the reaction of hydrogen halides with alkenes. Carbocations are intermediates.



Alkene Hydrogen halide Carbocation Halide ion Alkyl halide

Addition is regioselective because protonation of the double bond occurs in the direction that gives the more stable of two possible carbocations.

Section 6.6 See Table 6.3. Acid-catalyzed addition of water to the double bond of an alkene gives an alcohol. The mechanism is analogous to that for electrophilic addition of hydrogen halides and is the reverse of that for acid-catalyzed dehydration of alcohols.

Section 6.7 Addition and elimination reactions are often reversible, and proceed spontaneously in the direction in which the free energy G decreases. The reaction is at equilibrium when $\Delta G = 0$. Free energy is related to enthalpy (H) and entropy (S) by the equations

$$G = H - TS \qquad \text{and} \qquad \Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$$

The standard free energy change $\Delta G°$ is related to the equilibrium constant K by the equation

$$\Delta G° = -RT \ln K$$

TABLE 6.3 Addition Reactions of Alkenes

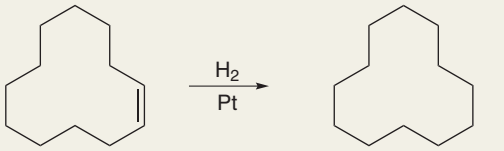
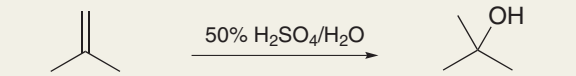
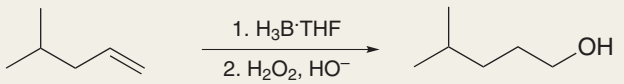
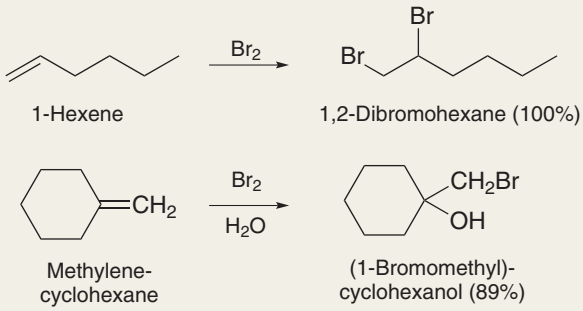
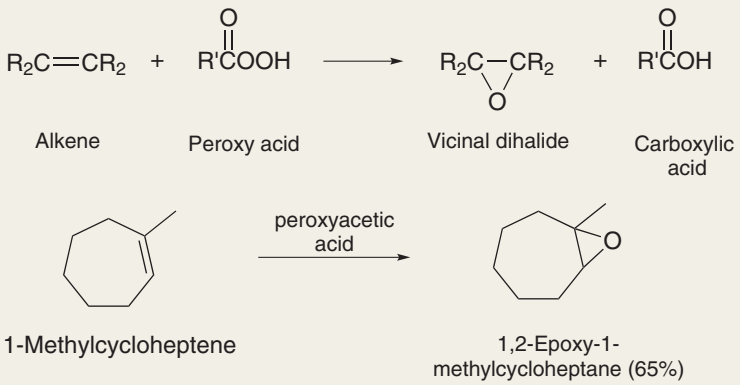
Reaction (section) and Comments	General Equation and Specific Example
Catalytic hydrogenation (Sections 6.1–6.3) Alkenes react with hydrogen in the presence of a platinum, palladium, rhodium, or nickel catalyst to form the corresponding alkane. Both hydrogens add to the same face of the double bond (syn addition). Heats of hydrogenation can be used to compare the relative stability of various double-bond types.	$R_2C{=}CR_2 + H_2 \xrightarrow{Pt,\ Pd,\ Rh,\ or\ Ni} R_2CHCHR_2$ Alkene — Hydrogen — Alkane  H_2 / Pt *cis*-Cyclododecene — Cyclododecane (100%)
Addition of hydrogen halides (Sections 6.4–6.5) A proton and a halogen add to the double bond of an alkene to yield an alkyl halide. Addition proceeds in accordance with Markovnikov's rule: hydrogen adds to the carbon that has the greater number of hydrogens, halide to the carbon that has the fewer hydrogens. The regioselectivity is controlled by the relative stability of the two possible carbocation intermediates. Because the reaction involves carbocations, rearrangement is possible.	$RCH{=}CR'_2 + HX \longrightarrow RCH_2{-}CR'_2$ (X) Alkene — Hydrogen halide — Alkyl halide Methylenecyclohexane — Hydrogen chloride — 1-Chloro-1-methylcyclohexane (75–80%)
Acid-catalyzed hydration (Section 6.6) Addition of water to the double bond of an alkene takes place according to Markovnikov's rule in aqueous acid. A carbocation is an intermediate and is captured by a molecule of water acting as a nucleophile. Rearrangements are possible.	$RCH{=}CR'_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+} RCH_2{-}CR'_2$ (OH) Alkene — Water — Alcohol  2-Methylpropene — *tert*-Butyl alcohol (55–58%)
Hydroboration-oxidation (Sections 6.8–6.9) This two-step sequence converts alkenes to alcohols with a regioselectivity opposite to Markovnikovs's rule. Addition of H and OH is stereospecific and syn. The reaction involves electrophilic addition of a boron hydride to the double bond, followed by oxidation of the intermediate organoborane with hydrogen peroxides. Carbocations are not intermediates and rearrangements do not occur.	$RCH{=}CR'_2 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2,\ HO^-]{1.\ B_2H_6,\ diglyme} RCH(OH){-}CHR'_2$ Alkene — Alcohol  4-Methyl-1-pentene — 4-Methyl-1-pentanol (80%)
Addition of Halogens (Section 6.10) Reactions with Br_2 or Cl_2 are the most common and yield vicinal dihalides except when the reaction is carried out in water. In water, the product is a vicinal halohydrin. The reactions involve a cyclic halonium ion intermediate and are stereospecific (anti addition). Halohydrin formation is regiospecific; the halogen bonds to the carbon of C═C that has the greater number of hydrogens.	$R_2C{=}CR'_2 + X_2 \longrightarrow R_2C(X){-}CR'_2(X)$ Alkene — Halogen — Vicinal dihalide $RCH{=}CR'_2 + X_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow RCH(X){-}CR'_2(OH) + HX$ Alkene — Halogen — Water — Vicinal halohydrin — Hydrogen halide

TABLE 6.3 Addition Reactions of Alkenes *continued*



Epoxidation (Section 6.11) Peroxy acids transfer oxygen to the double bond of alkenes to yield epoxides. Addition is stereospecific and syn.

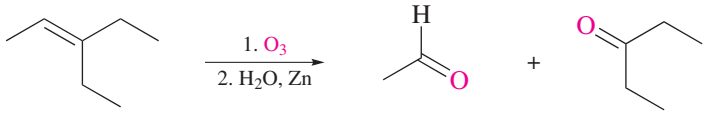


Sections 6.8–6.9 See Table 6.3. Hydroboration-oxidation is a synthetically useful and mechanistically novel method for converting alkenes to alcohols.

Section 6.10 See Table 6.3. Bromine and chlorine react with alkenes to give cyclic halonium ions, which react further to give vicinal dihalides. In aqueous solution, the product is a vicinal bromohydrin.

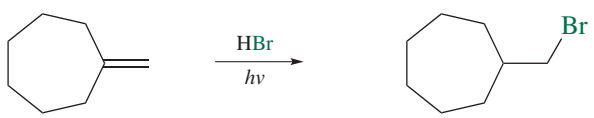
Section 6.11 See Table 6.3. Peroxy acids are a source of electrophilic oxygen and convert alkenes to epoxides.

Section 6.12 Alkenes are cleaved to carbonyl compounds by **ozonolysis.** This reaction is useful both for synthesis (preparation of aldehydes, ketones, or carboxylic acids) and analysis. When applied to analysis, the carbonyl compounds are isolated and identified, allowing the substituents attached to the double bond to be deduced.



3-Ethyl-2-pentene Acetaldehyde 3-Pentanone

Section 6.13 Hydrogen bromide is unique among the hydrogen halides in that it can add to alkenes either by electrophilic or free-radical addition. Under photochemical conditions or in the presence of peroxides, free-radical addition is observed, and HBr adds to the double bond with a regioselectivity opposite to that of Markovnikov's rule.



Methylenecycloheptane (Bromomethyl)cycloheptane (61%)

Section 6.14 In their **polymerization**, many individual alkene molecules combine to give a high-molecular-weight product. Several economically important polymers are prepared by free-radical processes.

Section 6.15 The reactions described so far can be combined to prepare compounds of prescribed structure from some given starting material. The best way to approach a synthesis is to reason backward from the desired target molecule (**retrosynthetic analysis**) and to always use reactions that you know will work.

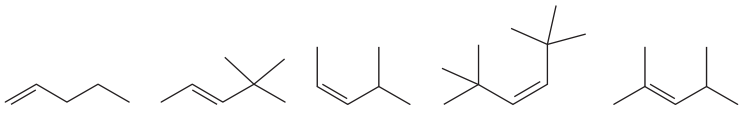
PROBLEMS

6.26 (a) How many alkenes yield 2,2,3,4,4-pentamethylpentane on catalytic hydrogenation?
(b) How many yield 2,3-dimethylbutane?
(c) How many yield methylcyclobutane?

6.27 Two alkenes undergo hydrogenation to yield a mixture or *cis*- and *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane. Which two are these? A third, however, gives only *cis*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane. What compound is this?

6.28 1-Butene has a higher heat of hydrogenation than 2,3-dimethyl-2-butane. Which has the higher heat of combustion? Explain.

6.29 Match the following alkenes with the appropriate heats of hydrogenation:

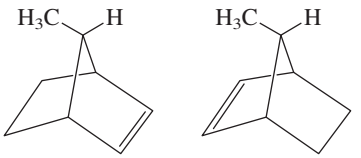


A B C D E

Heats of hydrogenation in kJ/mol (kcal/mol): 151(36.2); 122(29.3); 114(27.3); 111(26.5); 105(25.1).

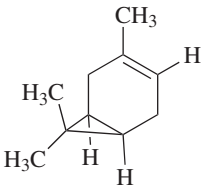
6.30 Catalytic hydrogenation of 1,4-dimethylcyclopentene yields a mixture of two products. Identify them. One of them is formed in much greater amounts than the other (observed ratio = 10:1). Which one is the major product?

6.31 Compound A undergoes catalytic hydrogenation much faster than does compound B. Why?



A B

6.32 Hydrogenation of 3-carene is, in principle, capable of yielding two stereoisomeric products. Write their structures. Only one of them was actually obtained on catalytic hydrogenation over platinum. Which one do you think is formed?



6.33 The heats of reaction were measured for addition of HBr to *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene.

$$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3 + HBr \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2\underset{\displaystyle Br}{\underset{|}{C}}HCH_3$$

cis-2-butene: $\Delta H^\circ = -77$ kJ (-18.4 kcal)

trans-2-butene: $\Delta H^\circ = -72$ kJ (-17.3 kcal)

Use these data to calculate the energy difference between *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene. How does this energy difference compare to that based on heats of hydrogenation (Section 6.3) and heats of combustion (Section 5.6)?

6.34 Write the structure of the major organic product formed in the reaction of 1-pentene with each of the following:

(a) Hydrogen chloride
(b) Hydrogen bromide
(c) Hydrogen bromide in the presence of peroxides
(d) Hydrogen iodide
(e) Dilute sulfuric acid
(f) Diborane in diglyme, followed by basic hydrogen peroxide
(g) Bromine in carbon tetrachloride
(h) Bromine in water
(i) Peroxyacetic acid
(j) Ozone
(k) Product of part (j) treated with zinc and water
(l) Product of part (j) treated with dimethyl sulfide $(CH_3)_2S$.

6.35 Repeat Problem 6.34 for 2-methyl-2-butene.

6.36 Repeat Problem 6.34 for 1-methylcyclohexene.

6.37 Specify reagents suitable for converting 3-ethyl-2-pentene to each of the following:

(a) 2,3-Dibromo-3-ethylpentane
(b) 3-Chloro-3-ethylpentane
(c) 2-Bromo-3-ethylpentane
(d) 3-Ethyl-3-pentanol
(e) 3-Ethyl-2-pentanol
(f) 2,3-Epoxy-3-ethylpentane
(g) 3-Ethylpentane

6.38 (a) Which primary alcohol of molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$ cannot be prepared from an alkene by hydroboration–oxidation? Why?

(b) Write equations describing the preparation of three isomeric primary alcohols of molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$ from alkenes.

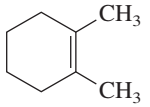
(c) Write equations describing the preparation of the tertiary alcohol of molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$ by acid-catalyzed hydration of two different alkenes.

6.39 All the following reactions have been reported in the chemical literature. Give the structure of the principal organic product in each case.

(a) $CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3 + HBr \xrightarrow{\text{no peroxides}}$

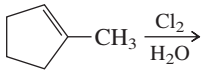
(b) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2CH_2CH{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow[\text{peroxides}]{\text{HBr}}$

(c) 2-*tert*-Butyl-3,3-dimethyl-1-butene $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2,\ HO^-]{1.\ B_2H_6}$

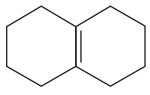
(d)  $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2,\ HO^-]{1.\ B_2H_6}$

(e) $H_2C{=}C(CH_3)CH_2CH_2CH_3 + Br_2 \xrightarrow{CHCl_3}$

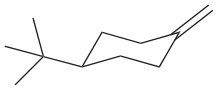
(f) $(CH_3)_2C{=}CHCH_3 + Br_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O}$

(g)  $\xrightarrow[H_2O]{Cl_2}$

(h) $(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2 + CH_3C(=O)OOH \longrightarrow$

(i)  $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ O_3}$

6.40 On catalytic hydrogenation over a rhodium catalyst, the compound shown gave a mixture containing *cis*-1-*tert*-butyl-4-methylcyclohexane (88%) and *trans*-1-*tert*-butyl-4-methylcyclohexane (12%). With this stereochemical result in mind, consider the reactions in (a) and (b).



(a) What two products are formed in the epoxidation of this compound? Which one do you think will predominate?

(b) What two products are formed in the hydroboration–oxidation of this compound? Which one do you think will predominate?

6.41 Apply retrosynthetic analysis to guide the preparation of each of the following compounds from the indicated starting material, then write out the synthesis showing the necessary reagents.

(a) 1-Propanol from 2-propanol

(b) 1-Bromopropane from 2-bromopropane

(c) 1,2-Dibromopropane from 2-bromopropane

(d) 1-Bromo-2-propanol from 2-propanol

(e) 1-Bromo-2-methyl-2-propanol from *tert*-butyl bromide

(f) 1,2-Epoxypropane from 2-propanol

(g) *tert*-Butyl alcohol from isobutyl alcohol

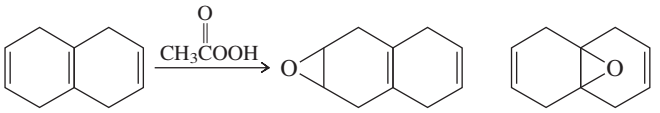
(h) *tert*-Butyl iodide from isobutyl iodide

(i) *trans*-2-Chlorocyclohexanol from cyclohexyl chloride

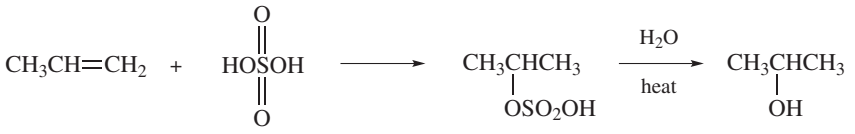
(j) Cyclopentyl iodide from cyclopentane

(k) *trans*-1,2-Dichlorocyclopentane from cyclopentane

6.42 A single epoxide was isolated in 79–84% yield in the following reaction. Was this epoxide A or B? Explain your reasoning.

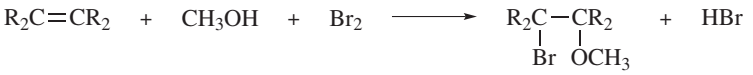


6.43 Concentrated sulfuric acid (95–98%) adds to alkenes to give alkyl hydrogen sulfates. Markovnikov's rule is followed. The reaction is useful in an industrial synthesis of isopropyl alcohol because the resulting alkyl hydrogen sulfate gives isopropyl alcohol by O—S bond cleavage on hydrolysis.

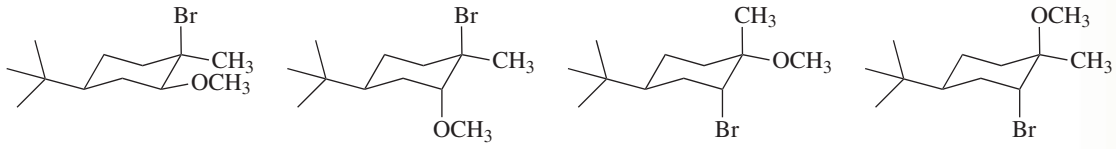


A mixture of three isomeric alkenes gives a single $C_4H_{10}O$ alcohol by this method. What is the alcohol, and what are the three alkenes?

6.44 Bromine reacts with alkenes in methanol according to the equation:



When this reaction was carried out with 4-*tert*-butylcyclohexene, only one isomer with the molecular formula $C_{11}H_{21}BrO$ was formed (80% yield). Which of the following is the most reasonable structure for this compound? Explain your reasoning.



A B C D

6.45 Complete the following table by adding + and − signs to the $\Delta H°$ and $\Delta S°$ columns so as to correspond to the effect of temperature on a reversible reaction.

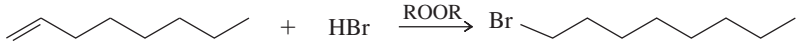
	Sign of	
Reaction is	$\Delta H°$	$\Delta S°$
(a) Exergonic at all temperatures		
(b) Exergonic at low temperature; endergonic at high temperature		
(c) Endergonic at all temperatures		
(d) Endergonic at low temperature; exergonic at high temperature		

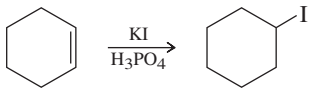
6.46 The iodination of ethylene at 25°C is characterized by the thermodynamic values shown.

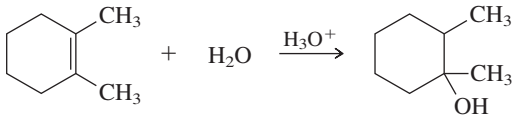
$$H_2C{=}CH_2(g) + I_2(g) \rightleftharpoons ICH_2CH_2I(g) \qquad \Delta H° = -48 \text{ kJ}; \Delta S° = -0.13 \text{ kJ/K}$$

(a) Calculate $\Delta G°$ and K at 25°C.
(b) Is the reaction exergonic or endergonic at 25°C?
(c) What happens to K as the temperature is raised?

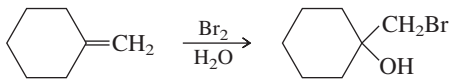
6.47 Suggest reasonable mechanisms for each of the following reactions. Use curved arrows to show electron flow.

(a) 

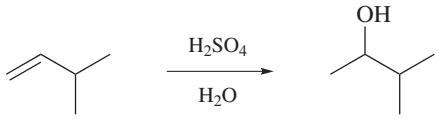
(b) 

(c) 

(mixture of stereoisomers)

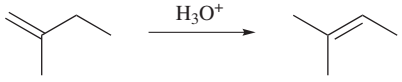
(d) 

6.48 On the basis of the mechanism of acid-catalyzed hydration, can you suggest why the reaction

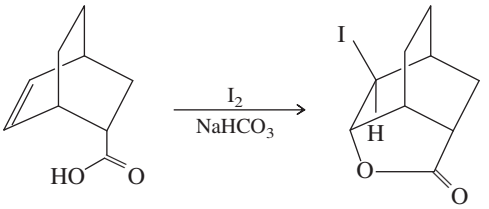


would probably *not* be a good method for the synthesis of 3-methyl-2-butanol?

6.49 As a method for the preparation of alkenes, a weakness in the acid-catalyzed dehydration of alcohols is that the initially formed alkene (or mixture of alkenes) sometimes isomerizes under the conditions of its formation. Write a stepwise mechanism for the reaction:



6.50 The following reaction was performed as part of a research program sponsored by the National Institutes of Health to develop therapeutic agents for the treatment of cocaine addiction. Using what you have seen about the reactions of halogens with alkenes, propose a mechanism for this process.

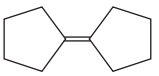


6.51 On being heated with a solution of sodium ethoxide in ethanol, compound A ($C_7H_{15}Br$) yielded a mixture of two alkenes B and C, each having the molecular formula C_7H_{14}. Catalytic hydrogenation of the major isomer B or the minor isomer C gave only 3-ethylpentane. Suggest structures for compounds A, B, and C consistent with these observations.

6.52 Compound A ($C_7H_{15}Br$) is not a primary alkyl bromide. It yields a single alkene (compound B) on being heated with sodium ethoxide in ethanol. Hydrogenation of compound B yields 2,4-dimethylpentane. Identify compounds A and B.

6.53 Compounds A and B are isomers of molecular formula $C_9H_{19}Br$. Both yield the same alkene C as the exclusive product of elimination on being treated with potassium *tert*-butoxide in dimethyl sulfoxide. Hydrogenation of alkene C gives 2,3,3,4-tetramethylpentane. What are the structures of compounds A and B and alkene C?

6.54 Alcohol A ($C_{10}H_{18}O$) is converted to a mixture of alkenes B and C on being heated with potassium hydrogen sulfate ($KHSO_4$). Catalytic hydrogenation of B and C yields the same product. Assuming that dehydration of alcohol A proceeds without rearrangement, deduce the structures of alcohol A and alkene C.



Compound B

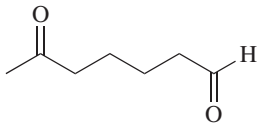
6.55 A mixture of three alkenes (A, B, and C) was obtained by dehydration of 1,2-dimethylcyclohexanol. The composition of the mixture was A (3%), B (31%), and C (66%). Catalytic hydrogenation of A, B, or C gave 1,2-dimethylcyclohexane. The three alkenes can be equilibrated by heating with sulfuric acid to give a mixture containing A (0%), B (15%), and C (85%). Identify A, B, and C.

6.56 Reaction of 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene with hydrogen iodide yields two compounds A and B, each having the molecular formula $C_6H_{13}I$, in the ratio A:B = 90:10. Compound A, on being heated with potassium hydroxide in *n*-propyl alcohol, gives only 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene. Compound B undergoes elimination under these conditions to give 2,3-dimethyl-2-butene as the major product. Suggest structures for compounds A and B, and write a reasonable mechanism for the formation of each.

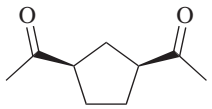
6.57 Dehydration of 2,2,3,4,4-pentamethyl-3-pentanol gave two alkenes A and B. Ozonolysis of the lower boiling alkene A gave formaldehyde ($H_2C{=}O$) and 2,2,4,4-tetramethyl-3-pentanone. Ozonolysis of B gave formaldehyde and 3,3,4,4-tetramethyl-2-pentanone. Identify A and B, and suggest an explanation for the formation of B in the dehydration reaction.

2,2,4,4-Tetramethyl-3-pentanone 3,3,4,4-Tetramethyl-2-pentanone

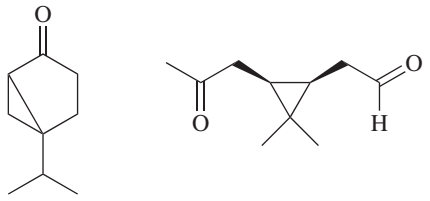
6.58 Compound A ($C_7H_{13}Br$) is a tertiary bromide. On treatment with sodium ethoxide in ethanol, A is converted into B (C_7H_{12}). Ozonolysis of B gives C as the only product. Deduce the structures of A and B. What is the symbol for the reaction mechanism by which A is converted to B under the reaction conditions?



6.59 East Indian sandalwood oil contains a hydrocarbon given the name *santene* (C_9H_{14}). Ozonolysis of santene gives compound A. What is the structure of santene?

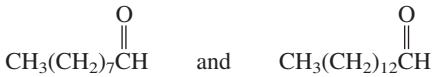


6.60 *Sabinene* and Δ^3-*carene* are isomeric natural products with the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{16}$. (a) Ozonolysis of sabinene followed by hydrolysis in the presence of zinc gives compound A. What is the structure of sabinene? What other compound is formed on ozonolysis? (b) Ozonolysis of Δ^3-carene gives compound B. What is the structure of Δ^3-carene?



Compound A Compound B

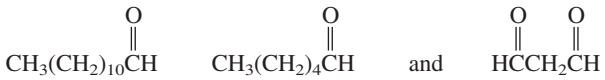
6.61 The sex attractant by which the female housefly attracts the male has the molecular formula $C_{23}H_{46}$. Catalytic hydrogenation yields an alkane of molecular formula $C_{23}H_{48}$. Ozonolysis yields



What is the structure of the housefly sex attractant?

6.62 A certain compound of molecular formula $C_{19}H_{38}$ was isolated from fish oil and from plankton. On hydrogenation it gave 2,6,10,14-tetramethylpentadecane. Ozonolysis gave $(CH_3)_2C{=}O$ and a 16-carbon aldehyde. What is the structure of the natural product? What is the structure of the aldehyde?

6.63 The sex attractant of the female arctiid moth contains, among other components, a compound of molecular formula $C_{21}H_{40}$ that yields



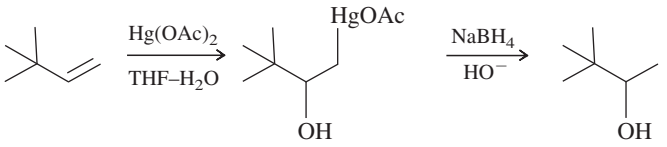
on ozonolysis. What is the constitution of this material?

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 6

Oxymercuration

Concerns about mercury's toxicity have led to decreased use of mercury-based reagents in synthetic organic chemistry. Alternatives exist for many of the transformations formerly carried out with mercury compounds while carrying much less risk. The chemistry of several of the reactions, however, is sufficiently interesting to examine here.

Among the synthetically useful reactions of Hg(II) salts with organic compounds, the most familiar is a two-stage procedure for alkene hydration called **oxymercuration–demercuration.** Its application in the conversion of 3,3-dimethyl-1-butene to 3,3-dimethyl-2-butanol illustrates the procedure.



Oxymercuration stage Demercuration stage

The reaction is performed in two operations, the first of which is oxymercuration. In this stage the alkene is treated with mercury(II) acetate [$Hg(O_2CCH_3)_2$, abbreviated as $Hg(OAc)_2$]. Mercury(II) acetate is a source of the electrophile ^+HgOAc, which bonds to C-1 of the alkene. The oxygen of water, one of the components in the THF–H_2O solvent mixture, bonds to C-2. The demercuration operation uses sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$, a reducing agent) to convert C—Hg to C—H.

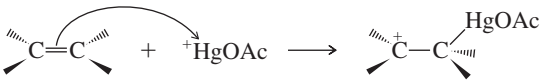
From the overall reaction, we see that oxymercuration–demercuration

1. accomplishes hydration of the double bond in accordance with Markovnikov's rule, and
2. carbocation rearrangements do not occur.

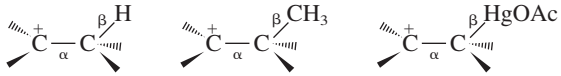
Additional information from stereochemical studies with other alkenes has established that

3. anti addition of HgOAc and OH characterizes the oxymercuration stage, and
4. the replacement of HgOAc by H in the demercuration stage is not stereospecific.

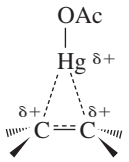
The structure of the intermediate in oxymercuration has received much attention and can be approached by considering what is likely to happen when the electrophile ^+HgOAc reacts with the double bond of an alkene.



Recall from Section 4.10 that electrons in bonds that are β to a positively charged carbon stabilize a carbocation by hyperconjugation.

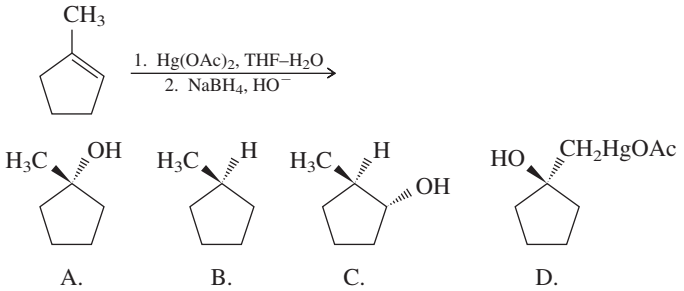


The electrons in a C—Hg σ bond are more loosely held than C—H or C—C electrons, making stabilization by hyperconjugation more effective for β-C—Hg than for β-C—H or β-C—C. Hyperconjugative stabilization of the intermediate in oxymercuration is normally shown using dashed lines to represent partial bonds. The intermediate is referred to as a "bridged" *mercurinium ion.*

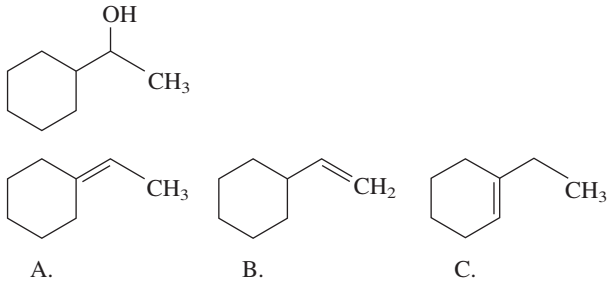


The problems that follow explore various synthetic aspects of oxymercuration–demercuration. Experimental procedures sometimes vary depending on the particular transformation. The source of the electrophile may be a mercury(II) salt other than $Hg(OAc)_2$, the nucleophile may be other than H_2O, and the reaction may be intramolecular rather than intermolecular.

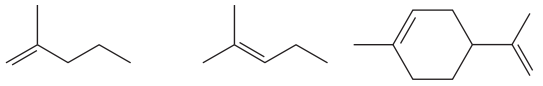
6.64 Oxymercuration-demercuration of methylcyclopentene gives which of the following products?



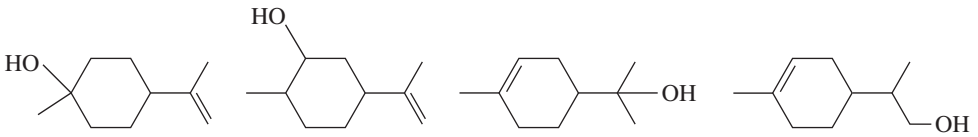
6.65 Which alkene would be expected to give the following alcohol by oxymercuration–demercuration?



6.66 Given that 2-methyl-1-pentene undergoes oxymercuration–demercuration approximately 35 times faster than 2-methyl-2-pentene, predict the major product from oxymercuration–demercuration of limonene.

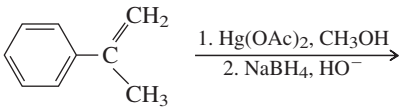


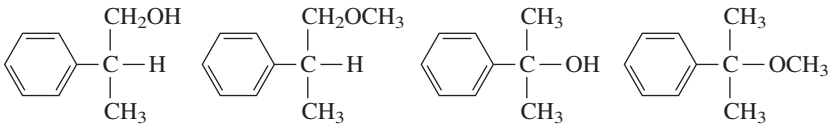
2-Methyl-1-pentene 2-Methyl-2-pentene Limonene



A. B. C. D.

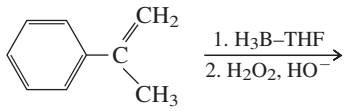
6.67 In a procedure called solvomercuration–demercuration an alkene is treated with $Hg(OAc)_2$ or $Hg(OCCF_3)_2$ in an alcohol solvent rather than in the THF–H_2O mixture used in oxymercuration. The oxygen of the alcohol solvent reacts with the mercurinium ion during solvomercuration. What is the product of the following solvomercuration–demercuration?



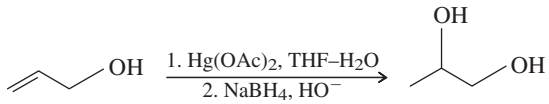


A. B. C. D.

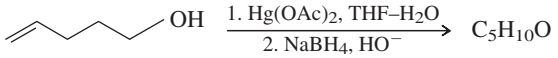
6.68 From among the same product choice as Problem 6.67, which one is the major product of the following reaction?



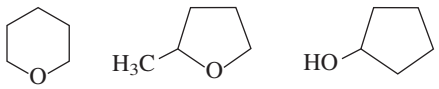
6.69 Oxymercuration–demercuration of allyl alcohol gives 1,2-propanediol.



Under the same conditions, however, 4-penten-1-ol yields a compound having the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O$.

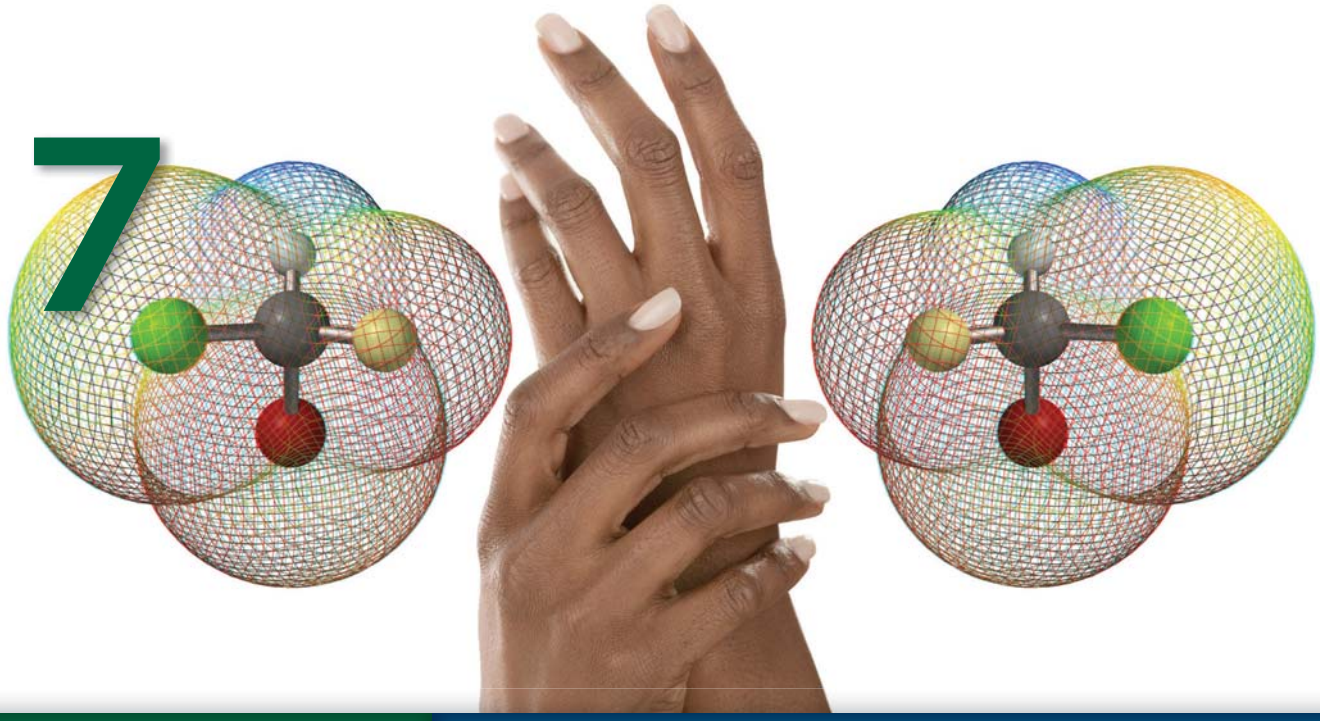


What is the most reasonable structure for the product of this reaction?



A. B. C.

7



CHAPTER OUTLINE

7.1 Molecular Chirality: Enantiomers 263
7.2 The Chirality Center 265
7.3 Symmetry in Achiral Structures 266
7.4 Optical Activity 268
7.5 Absolute and Relative Configuration 269
7.6 The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R–S* Notational System 271
7.7 Fischer Projections 273
7.8 Properties of Enantiomers 275
7.9 The Chirality Axis 276
■ Chiral Drugs 277
7.10 Reactions That Create a Chirality Center 279
7.11 Chiral Molecules with Two Chirality Centers 282
7.12 Achiral Molecules with Two Chirality Centers 284
■ Chirality of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes 286
7.13 Molecules with Multiple Chirality Centers 287
7.14 Reactions That Produce Diastereomers 288
7.15 Resolution of Enantiomers 290
7.16 Stereoregular Polymers 293
7.17 Chirality Centers Other Than Carbon 294
7.18 Summary 295
Problems 298
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 7: Prochirality 304

Bromochlorofluoromethane molecules come in right- and left-handed versions.

Chirality

Stereochemistry is chemistry in three dimensions. Its foundations were laid by Jacobus van't Hoff* and Joseph Achille Le Bel in 1874. Van't Hoff and Le Bel independently proposed that the four bonds to carbon were directed toward the corners of a tetrahedron. One consequence of a tetrahedral arrangement of bonds to carbon is that two compounds may be different because the arrangement of their atoms in space is different. Isomers that have the same constitution but differ in the spatial arrangement of their atoms are called **stereoisomers.** We have already had considerable experience with certain types of stereoisomers—those involving cis and trans substitution in alkenes and in cycloalkanes.

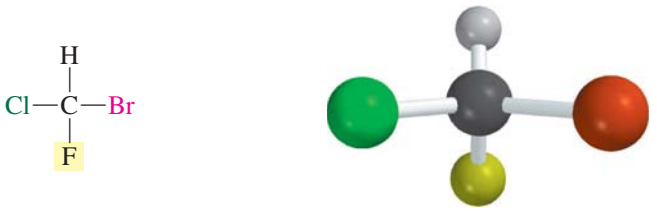
Our major objectives in this chapter are to develop a feeling for molecules as three-dimensional objects and to become familiar with stereochemical principles, terms, and notation. A full understanding of organic and biological chemistry requires an awareness of the spatial requirements for interactions between molecules; this chapter provides the basis for that understanding.

*Van't Hoff was the recipient of the first Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1901 for his work in chemical dynamics and osmotic pressure—two topics far removed from stereochemistry.

7.1 Molecular Chirality: Enantiomers

Everything has a mirror image, but not all things are superimposable on their mirror images. Mirror-image superimposability characterizes many objects we use every day. Cups and saucers, forks and spoons, chairs and beds are all identical with their mirror images. Many other objects though—and this is the more interesting case—are not. Your left hand and your right hand are mirror images of each other but can't be made to coincide point for point, palm to palm, knuckle to knuckle, in three dimensions. In 1894, William Thomson (Lord Kelvin) coined a word for this property. He defined an object as **chiral** if it is not superimposable on its mirror image. Applying Thomson's term to chemistry, we say that a *molecule is chiral if its two mirror-image forms are not superimposable in three dimensions.* The word *chiral* is derived from the Greek word *cheir,* meaning "hand," and it is entirely appropriate to speak of the "handedness" of molecules. The opposite of chiral is **achiral.** A molecule that *is* superimposable on its mirror image is achiral.

In organic chemistry, chirality most often occurs in molecules that contain a carbon that is attached to four different groups. An example is bromochlorofluoromethane (BrClFCH).



Bromochlorofluoromethane

As shown in Figure 7.1, the two mirror images of bromochlorofluoromethane cannot be superimposed on each other. *Because the two mirror images of bromochlorofluoromethane are not superimposable, BrClFCH is chiral.*

The mirror images of bromochlorofluoromethane have the same constitution. That is, the atoms are connected in the same order. But they differ in the arrangement of their atoms in space; they are stereoisomers. Stereoisomers that are related as an object and its nonsuperimposable mirror image are classified as **enantiomers.** The word *enantiomer* describes a particular relationship between two objects. One cannot look at a single molecule in isolation and ask if it is an enantiomer any more than one can look at an individual human being and ask, "Is that person a cousin?" Furthermore, just as an object has one, and only one, mirror image, a chiral molecule can have one, and only one, enantiomer.

Bromochlorofluoromethane is a known compound, and samples selectively enriched in each enantiomer have been described in the chemical literature. In 1989 two chemists at the Polytechnic Institute of New York University described a method for the preparation of BrClFCH that is predominantly one enantiomer.

Notice in Figure 7.1*c,* where the two enantiomers of bromochlorofluoromethane are similarly oriented, that the difference between them corresponds to an interchange of the positions of bromine and chlorine. It will generally be true for species of the type C(*w,x,y,z*), where *w, x, y,* and *z* are different atoms or groups, that an exchange of two of them converts a structure to its enantiomer, but an exchange of three returns the original structure, albeit in a different orientation.

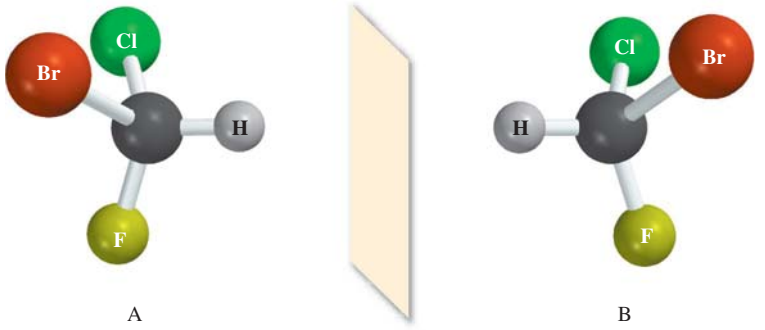
Consider next a molecule such as chlorodifluoromethane (ClF_2CH), in which two of the atoms attached to carbon are the same. Figure 7.2 shows two molecular models of ClF_2CH drawn so as to be mirror images. As is evident from these drawings, it is a simple matter to merge the two models so that all the atoms match. *Because mirror-image representations of chlorodifluoromethane are superimposable on each other, ClF_2CH is achiral.*

The surest test for chirality is a careful examination of mirror-image forms for superimposability. Working with models provides the best practice in dealing with molecules as three-dimensional objects and is strongly recommended.

Figure 7.1

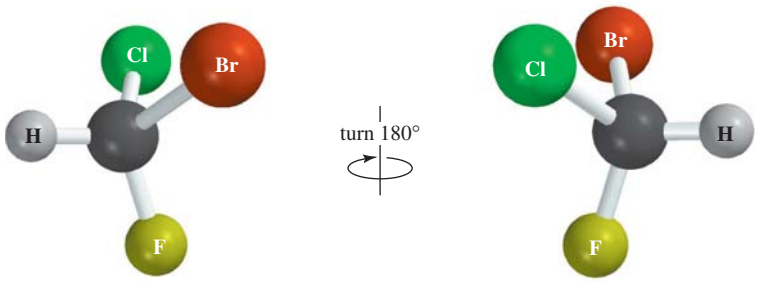
A molecule with four different groups attached to a single carbon is chiral. Its two mirror-image forms are not superimposable.

(*a*) Structures A and B are mirror-image representations of bromochlorofluoromethane (BrClFCH).



A B

(*b*) To test for superimposability, reorient B by turning it 180°.



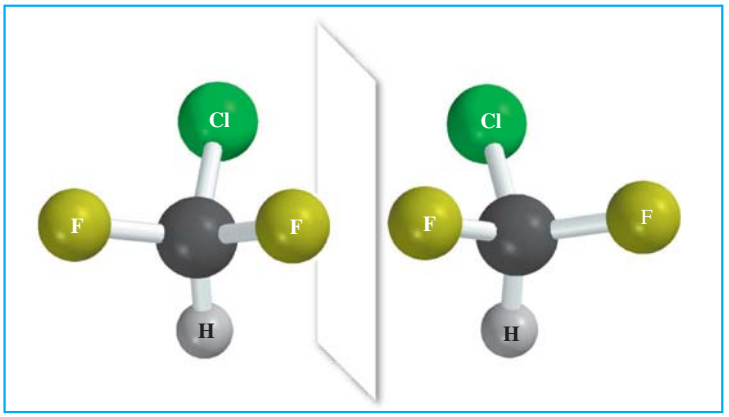
B B′

(*c*) Compare A and B′. The two do not match. A and B′ cannot be superimposed on each other. Bromochlorofluoromethane is therefore a chiral molecule. The two mirror-image forms are called enantiomers.

A B′

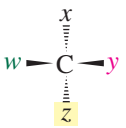
Figure 7.2

Mirror-image forms of chlorodifluoromethane are superimposable on each other. Chlorodifluoromethane is achiral.



7.2 The Chirality Center

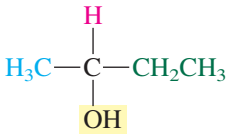
As we've just seen, molecules of the general type



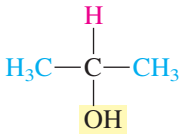
are chiral when *w, x, y,* and *z* are different. The IUPAC recommends that a tetrahedral carbon atom attached to four different atoms or groups be called a **chirality center,** which is the term that we will use. Several earlier terms, including *asymmetric center, asymmetric carbon, chiral center, stereogenic center,* and *stereocenter,* are still widely used.

The IUPAC recommendations for stereochemical terms can be viewed at www.chem.qmul.ac.uk/iupac/stereo

Noting the presence of one (but not more than one) chirality center is a simple, rapid way to determine if a molecule is chiral. For example, C-2 is a chirality center in 2-butanol; it bears H, OH, CH_3, and CH_3CH_2 as its four different groups. By way of contrast, none of the carbon atoms bear four different groups in the achiral alcohol 2-propanol.



2-Butanol
Chiral; four different groups at C-2



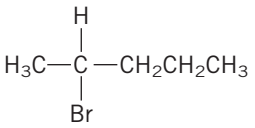
2-Propanol
Achiral; two of the groups at C-2 are the same

Problem 7.1

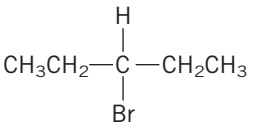
Examine the following for chirality centers:

(a) 2-Bromopentane
(b) 3-Bromopentane
(c) 1-Bromo-2-methylbutane
(d) 2-Bromo-2-methylbutane

Sample Solution A carbon with four different groups attached to it is a chirality center. (a) In 2-bromopentane, C-2 satisfies this requirement. (b) None of the carbons in 3-bromopentane has four different substituents, and so none of its atoms is a chirality center.

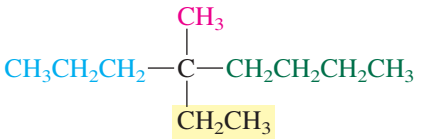


2-Bromopentane

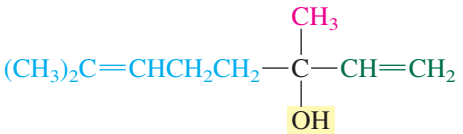


3-Bromopentane

Molecules with chirality centers are very common, both as naturally occurring substances and as the products of chemical synthesis. (Carbons that are part of a double bond or a triple bond can't be chirality centers.)



4-Ethyl-4-methyloctane
(a chiral alkane)

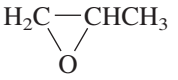


Linalool
(a pleasant-smelling oil obtained from oranges)

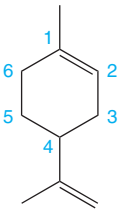
Linalool is one of the half-dozen most abundant of the more than 90 organic compounds that remain after evaporating the water from orange juice.

A carbon atom in a ring can be a chirality center if it bears two different groups and the path traced around the ring from that carbon in one direction is different from that traced in the other. The carbon atom that bears the methyl group in 1,2-epoxypropane, for

example, is a chirality center. The sequence of groups is O—CH_2 as one proceeds clockwise around the ring from that atom, but is H_2C—O in the counterclockwise direction. Similarly, C-4 is a chirality center in limonene.



1-2-Epoxypropane
(product of epoxidation of propene)



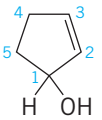
Limonene
(a constituent of lemon oil)

Problem 7.2

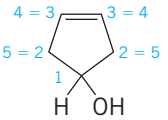
Identify the chirality centers, if any, in

(a) 2-Cyclopentenol and 3-cyclopentenol
(b) 1,1,2-Trimethylcyclobutane and 1,1,3-trimethylcyclobutane

Sample Solution (a) The hydroxyl-bearing carbon in 2-cyclopentenol is a chirality center. There is no chirality center in 3-cyclopentenol, because the sequence of atoms 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 is equivalent regardless of whether one proceeds clockwise or counterclockwise.

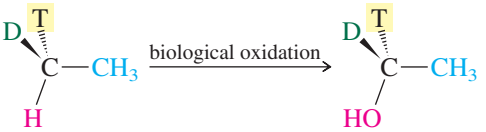


2-Cyclopentenol



3-Cyclopentenol
(does not have a chirality center)

Even isotopes qualify as different substituents at a chirality center. The stereochemistry of biological oxidation of a derivative of ethane that is chiral because of deuterium (D = ^{2}H) and tritium (T = ^{3}H) atoms at carbon, has been studied and shown to proceed as follows:



The stereochemical relationship between the reactant and the product, revealed by the isotopic labeling, shows that oxygen becomes bonded to carbon on the same side from which H is lost. As you will see in this and the chapters to come, determining the three-dimensional aspects of a chemical or biochemical transformation can be a subtle, yet powerful, tool for increasing our understanding of how these reactions occur.

One final, very important point: *Everything we have said in this section concerns molecules that have one and only one chirality center; molecules with more than one chirality center may or may not be chiral.* Molecules that have more than one chirality center will be discussed in Sections 7.11 through 7.14.

7.3 Symmetry in Achiral Structures

Certain structural features can help us determine whether a molecule is chiral or achiral. For example, a molecule that has a *plane of symmetry* or a *center of symmetry* is superimposable on its mirror image and is achiral.

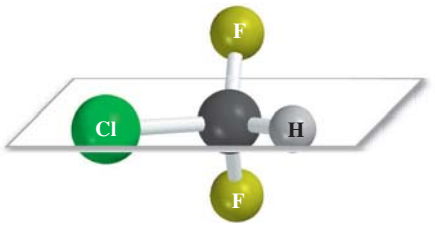


Figure 7.3

A plane of symmetry defined by the atoms H—C—Cl divides chlorodifluoromethane into two mirror-image halves. Note that the Cl and H atoms lie within the plane and reflect upon themselves.

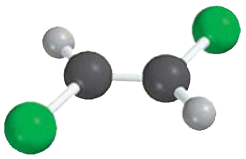
A **plane of symmetry** bisects a molecule so that one half of the molecule is the mirror image of the other half. The achiral molecule chlorodifluoromethane, for example, has the plane of symmetry shown in Figure 7.3.

Problem 7.3

Locate any planes of symmetry in each of the following compounds. Which of the compounds are chiral? Which are achiral?

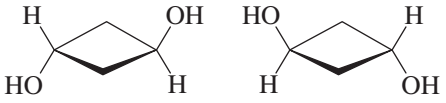
(a) (*E*)-1,2-Dichloroethene
(b) (*Z*)-1,2-Dichloroethene
(c) *cis*-1,2-Dichlorocyclopropane
(d) *trans*-1,2-Dichlorocyclopropane

Sample Solution (a) (*E*)-1,2-Dichloroethene is planar. The molecular plane is a plane of symmetry. Identifying a plane of symmetry tells us the molecule is achiral.



A point in the center of a molecule is a **center of symmetry** if any line drawn from it to some element of the structure will, when extended an equal distance in the opposite direction, encounter an identical element. *Trans*-1,3-cyclobutanediol has a plane of symmetry as well as a center of symmetry. The center of symmetry is the center of the molecule. A line starting at one of the hydroxyl groups and drawn through the center of the molecule encounters the equidistant hydroxyl group on the opposite side. Mirror images A and B are superimposable, and *trans*-1,3-cyclobutanediol is achiral.

Among the compounds given in Problem 7.3, only (*E*)-1,2-dichloroethene has a center of symmetry.



A B

Problem 7.4

(a) Where is the plane of symmetry in *trans*-1,3-cyclobutanediol?
(b) Does *cis*-1,3-cyclobutanediol possess a center of symmetry? A plane of symmetry? Is it chiral or achiral?

Planes of symmetry are easier to identify and more common than centers of symmetry. Because either one is sufficient to make a molecule achiral, look first for a plane of symmetry. A molecule without a plane or center of symmetry is *likely* to be chiral, but the superimposability test must be applied to be certain.

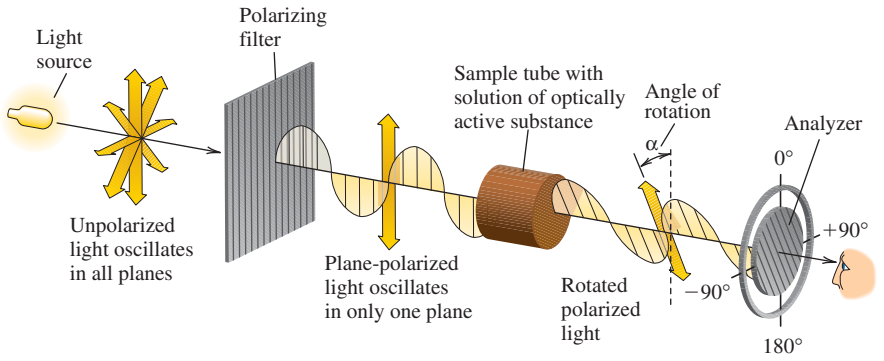


Figure 7.4

The sodium lamp emits light moving in all planes. When the light passes through the first polarizing filter, only one plane emerges. The plane-polarized beam enters the sample compartment, which contains a solution enriched in one of the enantiomers of a chiral substance. The plane rotates as it passes through the solution. A second polarizing filter (called the analyzer) is attached to a movable ring calibrated in degrees that is used to measure the angle of rotation α. (Adapted from M. Silberberg, *Chemistry,* 6th ed., McGraw-Hill Higher Education, New York, 2009, p. 640.)

7.4 Optical Activity

The phenomenon of optical activity was discovered by the French physicist Jean-Baptiste Biot in 1815.

The experimental facts that led van't Hoff and Le Bel to propose that molecules having the same constitution could differ in the arrangement of their atoms in space concerned the physical property of optical activity. **Optical activity** is the ability of a chiral substance to rotate the plane of plane-polarized light and is measured using an instrument called a **polarimeter** (Figure 7.4).

The light used to measure optical activity has two properties: it consists of a single wavelength and it is plane-polarized. The wavelength used most often is 589 nm (called the *D line*), which corresponds to the yellow light produced by a sodium lamp. Except for giving off light of a single wavelength, a sodium lamp is like any other lamp in that its light is unpolarized, meaning that the plane of its electric field vector can have any orientation along the line of travel. A beam of unpolarized light is transformed to plane-polarized light by passing it through a polarizing filter, which removes all the waves except those that have their electric field vector in the same plane. This plane-polarized light now passes through the sample tube containing the substance to be examined, either in the liquid phase or as a solution in a suitable solvent (usually water, ethanol, or chloroform). The sample is "optically active" if it rotates the plane of polarized light. The direction and magnitude of rotation are measured using a second polarizing filter (the "analyzer") and cited as α, the observed rotation.

To be optically active, the sample must contain a chiral substance and one enantiomer must be present in excess of the other. A substance that does not rotate the plane of polarized light is said to be optically inactive. *All achiral substances are optically inactive.*

What causes optical rotation? The plane of polarization of a light wave undergoes a minute rotation when it encounters a chiral molecule. Enantiomeric forms of a chiral molecule cause a rotation of the plane of polarization in exactly equal amounts but in opposite directions. A solution containing equal quantities of enantiomers therefore exhibits no net rotation because all the tiny increments of clockwise rotation produced by molecules of one "handedness" are canceled by an equal number of increments of counterclockwise rotation produced by molecules of the opposite handedness.

Mixtures containing equal quantities of enantiomers are called **racemic mixtures.** *Racemic mixtures are optically inactive.* Conversely, when one enantiomer is present in excess, a net rotation of the plane of polarization is observed. When all the molecules are of the same handedness, the substance is **enantiopure.** In common practice, enantiopurity is normally expressed as percent **enantiomeric excess,** (e.e.) where:

$$\%\ \text{Enantiomeric excess} = (\%\ \text{Major enantiomer}) - (\%\ \text{Minor enantiomer})$$

Problem 7.5

A sample of the chiral molecule limonene is 95% enantiopure. What percentage of each enantiomer is present?

Rotation of the plane of polarized light in the clockwise sense is taken as positive (+), and rotation in the counterclockwise sense is taken as a negative (−) rotation. Older terms for positive and negative rotations were *dextrorotatory* and *levorotatory,* from the Latin prefixes *dextro-* ("to the right") and *levo-* ("to the left"), respectively. At one time, the symbols *d* and *l* were used to distinguish between enantiomeric forms of a substance. Thus the dextrorotatory enantiomer of 2-butanol was called *d*-2-butanol, and the levorotatory form *l*-2-butanol; a racemic mixture of the two was referred to as *dl*-2-butanol. Current custom favors using algebraic signs instead, as in (+)-2-butanol, (−)-2-butanol, and (±)-2-butanol, respectively.

The observed rotation α of an optically pure substance depends on how many molecules the light beam encounters. A filled polarimeter tube twice the length of another produces twice the observed rotation, as does a solution twice as concentrated. To account for the effects of path length and concentration, chemists have defined the term **specific rotation,** given the symbol [α] and calculated from the observed rotation according to the expression

$$[\alpha] = \frac{100\,\alpha}{cl}$$

where *c* is the concentration of the sample in grams per 100 mL of solution, and *l* is the length of the polarimeter tube in decimeters. (One decimeter is 10 cm.)

If concentration is expressed as grams per milliliter of solution instead of grams per 100 mL, an equivalent expression is

$$[\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{cl}$$

Specific rotation is a physical property of a substance, just as melting point, boiling point, density, and solubility are. For example, the lactic acid obtained from milk is exclusively a single enantiomer. We cite its specific rotation in the form $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +3.8°$. The temperature in degrees Celsius and the wavelength of light at which the measurement was made are indicated as superscripts and subscripts, respectively. Optical purity is calculated from the specific rotation:

$$\text{Optical purity} = \frac{\text{specific rotation of sample}}{\text{specific rotation of pure enantiomer}} \times 100$$

Problem 7.6

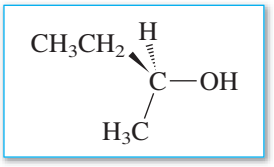
(a) Cholesterol isolated from natural sources is enantiopure. The observed rotation of a 0.3-g sample of cholesterol in 15 mL of chloroform solution contained in a 10-cm polarimeter tube is −0.78°. Calculate the specific rotation of cholesterol.

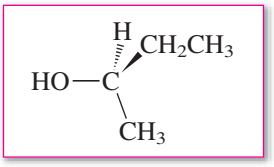
(b) A sample of synthetic cholesterol consisting entirely of (+)-cholesterol was mixed with some natural (−)-cholesterol. The specific rotation of the mixture was −13°. What fraction of the mixture was (+)-cholesterol?

It is convenient to distinguish between enantiomers by prefixing the sign of rotation to the name of the substance. For example, we refer to one of the enantiomers of 2-butanol as (+)-2-butanol and the other as (−)-2-butanol. Optically pure (+)-2-butanol has a specific rotation $[\alpha]_D^{27}$ of +13.5°; optically pure (−)-2-butanol has an exactly opposite specific rotation $[\alpha]_D^{27}$ of −13.5°.

7.5 Absolute and Relative Configuration

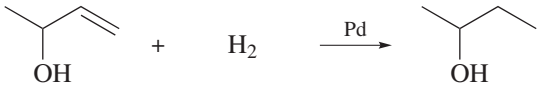
The exact three-dimensional spatial arrangement of substituents at a chirality center is its **absolute configuration.** Neither the sign nor the magnitude of rotation by itself can tell us the absolute configuration of a substance. Thus, one of the following structures is (+)-2-butanol and the other is (−)-2-butanol, but without additional information we can't tell which is which.





In several places throughout the chapter we will use red and blue frames to call attention to structures that are enantiomeric.

Although no absolute configuration was known for any substance until the mid-twentieth century, organic chemists had experimentally determined the configurations of thousands of compounds relative to one another (their **relative configurations**) through chemical interconversion. To illustrate, consider (+)-3-buten-2-ol. Hydrogenation of this compound yields (+)-2-butanol.



3-Buten-2-ol $[\alpha]_D^{27}$ +33.2° | Hydrogen | 2-Butanol $[\alpha]_D^{27}$ +13.5°

Because hydrogenation of the double bond does not involve any of the bonds to the chirality center, the spatial arrangement of substituents in (+)-3-buten-2-ol must be the same as that of the substituents in (+)-2-butanol. The fact that these two compounds have the same sign of rotation when they have the same relative configuration is established by the hydrogenation experiment; it could not have been predicted in advance of the experiment.

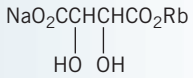
Compounds that have the same relative configuration can have optical rotations of opposite sign. For example, treatment of (−)-2-methyl-1-butanol with hydrogen bromide converts it to (+)-1-bromo-2-methylbutane.

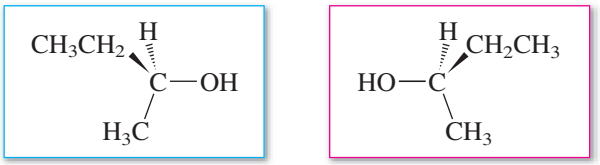
2-Methyl-1-butanol $[\alpha]_D^{25}$ −5.8° | Hydrogen bromide | 1-Bromo-2-methylbutane $[\alpha]_D^{25}$ +4.0° | Water

This reaction does not involve any of the bonds to the chirality center, and so both the starting alcohol (−) and the product bromide (+) have the same relative configuration.

An elaborate network connecting signs of rotation and relative configurations was developed that included the most important compounds of organic and biological chemistry. When, in 1951, the absolute configuration of a salt of (+)-tartaric acid was determined, the absolute configurations of all the compounds whose configurations had been related to (+)-tartaric acid stood revealed as well. Thus, returning to the pair of 2-butanol enantiomers that began this section, their absolute configurations are now known to be as shown.

The salt of tartaric acid analyzed by X-ray crystallography was the sodium rubidium salt of (+)-tartaric acid. X-ray crystallography of biomolecules is described in the boxed essays in Sections 14.9 and 26.8.

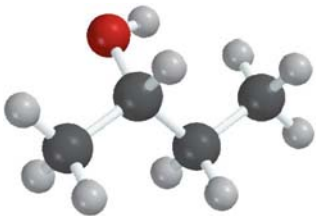




(+)-2-Butanol (−)-2-Butanol

Problem 7.7

Does the molecular model shown represent (+)-2-butanol or (−)-2-butanol?



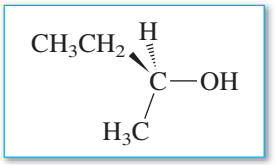
7.6 The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R–S* Notational System

Just as it makes sense to have a nomenclature system by which we can specify the constitution of a molecule in words rather than pictures, so too is it helpful to have one that lets us describe stereochemistry. We have already had some experience with this idea when we distinguished between *E* and *Z* stereoisomers of alkenes.

In the *E–Z* system, substituents are ranked by atomic number according to a set of rules devised by R. S. Cahn, Sir Christopher Ingold, and Vladimir Prelog (Section 5.4). Actually, Cahn, Ingold, and Prelog first developed their ranking system to deal with the problem of the absolute configuration at a chirality center, and this is the system's major application. Table 7.1 shows how the **Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system,** called the **sequence rules,** is used to specify the absolute configuration at the chirality center in (+)-2-butanol.

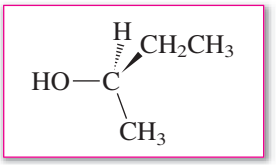
The rules for establishing precedence were given in Table 5.1.

As outlined in Table 7.1, (+)-2-butanol has the *S* configuration. Its mirror image is (−)-2-butanol, which has the *R* configuration.



(*S*)-2-Butanol

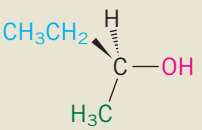
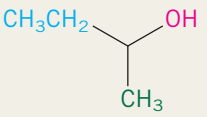
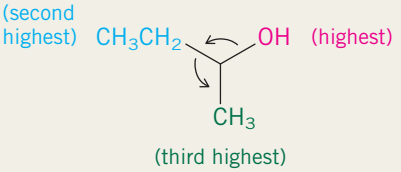
and



(*R*)-2-Butanol

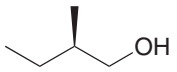
Often, the *R* or *S* configuration and the sign of rotation are incorporated into the name of the compound, as in (*R*)-(−)-2-butanol and (*S*)-(+)-2-butanol.

TABLE 7.1 Absolute Configuration According to the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog Notational System

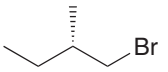
Step number	Example
Given that the absolute configuration of (+)-2-butanol is	 (+)-2-Butanol
1. Identify the substituents at the chirality center, and rank them in order of decreasing precedence according to the system described in Table 5.1 (Section 5.4). Precedence is determined by atomic number, working outward from the point of attachment at the chirality center.	In order of decreasing precedence, the four substituents attached to the chirality center of 2-butanol are HO— (highest) > CH_3CH_2— > CH_3— > H— (lowest)
2. Orient the molecule so that the lowest ranked atom or group points away from you.	As represented in the wedge-and-dash drawing at the top of this table, the molecule is already appropriately oriented. Hydrogen is the lowest ranked atom attached to the chirality center and points away from us.
3. Draw the three highest ranked substituents as they appear to you when the molecule is oriented so that the lowest ranked group points away from you.	
4. If the order of decreasing precedence of the three highest ranked substituents appears in a clockwise sense, the absolute configuration is *R* (Latin *rectus,* "right," "correct"). If the order of decreasing precedence is counterclockwise, the absolute configuration is *S* (Latin *sinister,* "left").	The order of decreasing precedence is *counterclockwise*. The configuration at the chirality center is *S*.  (second highest) (highest) (third highest)

Problem 7.8

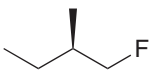
Assign absolute configurations as *R* or *S* to each of the following compounds:

(a) 

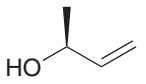
(+)-2-Methyl-1-butanol

(c) 

(+)-1-Bromo-2-methylbutane

(b) 

(+)-1-Fluoro-2-methylbutane

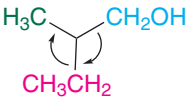
(d) 

(+)-3-Buten-2-ol

Sample Solution (a) The highest ranking substituent at the chirality center of 2-methyl-1-butanol is CH_2OH; the lowest is H. Of the remaining two, ethyl outranks methyl.

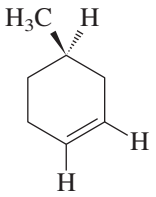
Order of precedence: $CH_2OH > CH_3CH_2 > CH_3 > H$

The lowest ranking group (hydrogen) points away from us in the drawing. The three highest ranking groups trace a clockwise path from $CH_2OH \rightarrow CH_3CH_2 \rightarrow CH_3$.



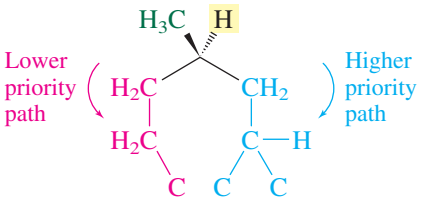
This compound therefore has the *R* configuration. It is (*R*)-(+)-2-methyl-1-butanol.

Compounds in which a chirality center is part of a ring are handled in an analogous fashion. To determine, for example, whether the configuration of (+)-4-methylcyclohexene is *R* or *S,* treat the right- and left-hand paths around the ring as if they were independent groups.



(+)-4-Methylcyclohexene

is treated as

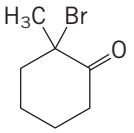


With the lowest ranked group (hydrogen) directed away from us, we see that the order of decreasing sequence rule precedence is *clockwise.* The absolute configuration is *R.*

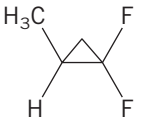
Problem 7.9

Draw three-dimensional representations of

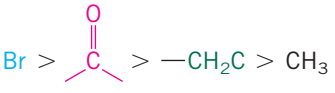
(a) The *R* enantiomer of



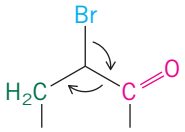
(b) The *S* enantiomer of



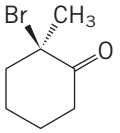
Sample Solution (a) The chirality center is the one that bears the bromine. In order of decreasing precedence, the substituents attached to the chirality center are



When the lowest ranked substituent (the methyl group) is away from us, the order of decreasing precedence of the remaining groups must appear in a clockwise sense in the *R* enantiomer.



which leads to the structure



(*R*)-2-Bromo-2-methylcyclohexanone

The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system is the standard method of stereochemical notation. It replaced an older system based on analogies to specified reference compounds that used the prefixes D and L, a system that is still used for carbohydrates and amino acids. We will use D and L notation when we get to Chapters 23–26, but won't need it until then.

7.7 Fischer Projections

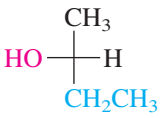
Stereochemistry deals with the three-dimensional arrangement of a molecule's atoms, and we have attempted to show stereochemistry with wedge-and-dash drawings and computer-generated models. It is possible, however, to convey stereochemical information in an abbreviated form using a method devised by the German chemist Emil Fischer.

Fischer was the foremost organic chemist of the late nineteenth century. He won the 1902 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his pioneering work in carbohydrate and protein chemistry.

Let's return to bromochlorofluoromethane as a simple example of a chiral molecule. The two enantiomers of BrClFCH are shown as ball-and-spoke models, as wedge-and-dash drawings, and as **Fischer projections** in Figure 7.5. Fischer projections are always generated the same way: the molecule is oriented so that the vertical bonds at the chirality center are directed away from you and the horizontal bonds point toward you. A projection of the bonds onto the page is a cross. The chirality center lies at the center of the cross but is not explicitly shown.

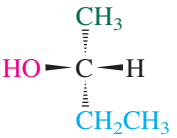
It is customary to orient the molecule so that the carbon chain is vertical with the lowest numbered carbon at the top as shown for the Fischer projection of (*R*)-2-butanol.

The Fischer projection



(*R*)-2-Butanol

corresponds to



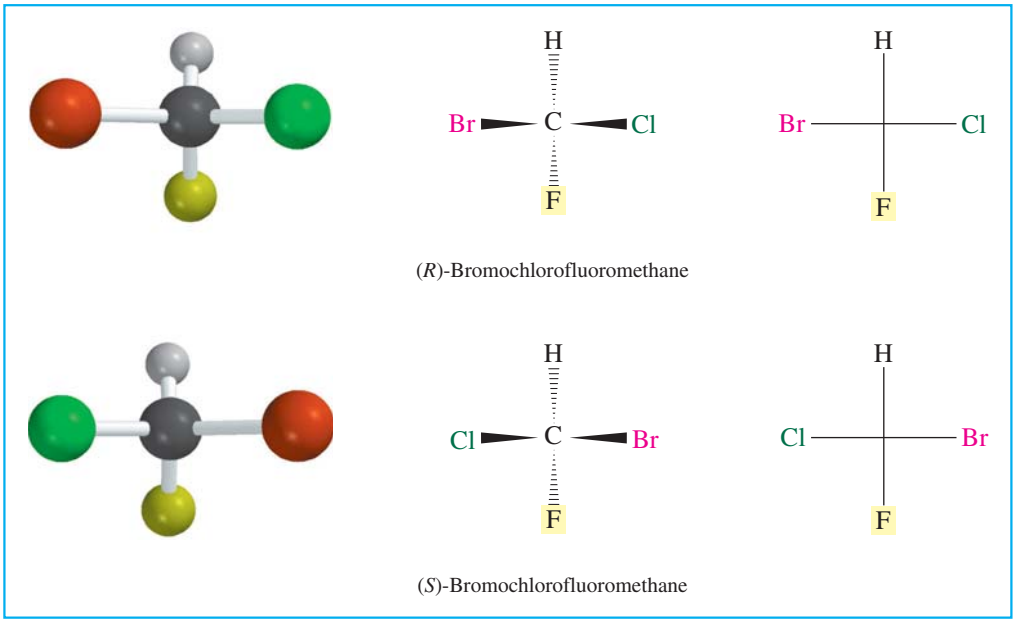
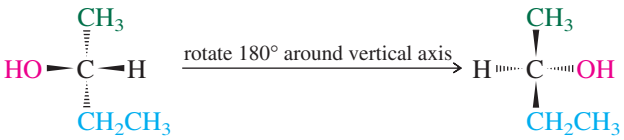


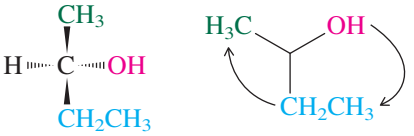
Figure 7.5

Ball-and-spoke models (*left*), wedge-and-dash drawings (*center*), and Fischer projections (*right*) of the *R* and *S* enantiomers of bromochlorofluoromethane.

To verify that the Fischer projection has the *R* configuration at its chirality center, rotate the three-dimensional representation so that the lowest-ranked atom (H) points away from you. Be careful to maintain the proper stereochemical relationships during the operation.



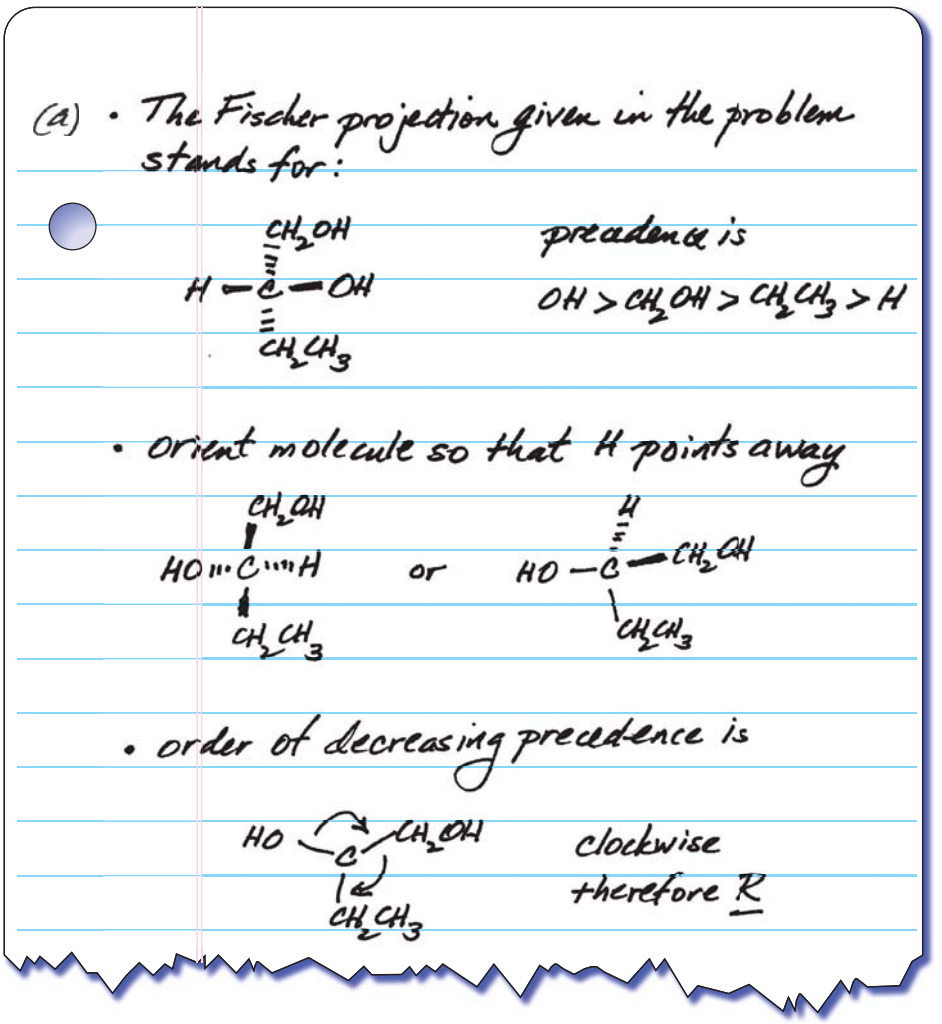
With H pointing away from us, we can see that the order of decreasing precedence OH > CH_2CH_3 > CH_3 traces a clockwise path, verifying the configuration as *R*.



Problem 7.10

What is the absolute configuration (*R* or *S*) of the compounds represented by the Fischer projections shown here?

Sample Solution

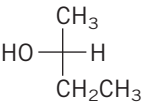


As you work with Fischer projections, you may notice that some routine structural changes lead to predictable outcomes—outcomes that may reduce the number of manipulations you need to do to solve stereochemistry problems. Instead of listing these shortcuts, Problem 7.11 invites you to discover some of them for yourself.

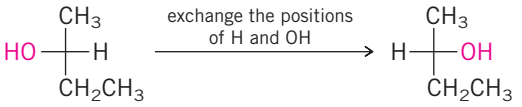
Problem 7.11

Using the Fischer projection of (*R*)-2-butanol shown, explain how each of the following affects the configuration of the chirality center.

(a) Switching the positions of H and OH.
(b) Switching the positions of CH_3 and CH_2CH_3.
(c) Switching the positions of three groups.
(d) Switching H with OH, and CH_3 with CH_2CH_3.
(e) Rotating the Fischer projection 180° around an axis perpendicular to the page.



Sample Solution (a) Exchanging the positions of H and OH in the Fischer projection of (*R*)-2-butanol converts it to the mirror-image Fischer projection. The configuration of the chirality center goes from *R* to *S*.



(*R*)-2-butanol (*S*)-2-butanol

Switching the positions of two groups in a Fischer projection reverses the configuration of the chirality center.

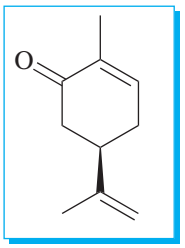
We mentioned in Section 7.6 that the D,L system of stereochemical notation, while outdated for most purposes, is still widely used for carbohydrates and amino acids. Likewise, Fischer projections find their major application in these same two families of compounds.

7.8 Properties of Enantiomers

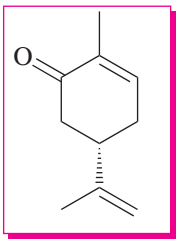
The usual physical properties such as density, melting point, and boiling point are identical for both enantiomers of a chiral compound.

Enantiomers can have striking differences, however, in properties that depend on the arrangement of atoms in space. Take, for example, the enantiomeric forms of carvone. (*R*)-(−)-Carvone is the principal component of spearmint oil. Its enantiomer, (*S*)-(+)-carvone, is the principal component of caraway seed oil. The two enantiomers do not smell the same; each has its own characteristic odor.

Spearmint leaves



(*R*)-(−)-Carvone (from spearmint oil)



(*S*)-(+)-Carvone (from caraway seed oil)

Caraway seeds

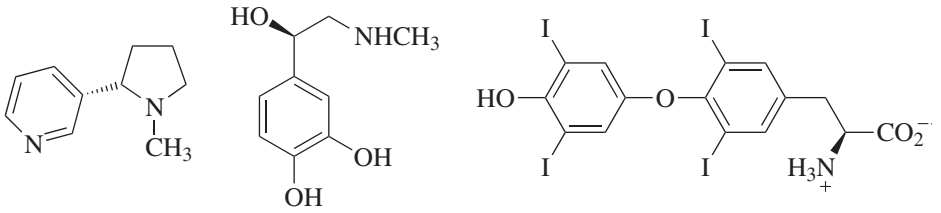
The difference in odor between (*R*)- and (*S*)-carvone results from their different behavior toward receptor sites in the nose. It is believed that volatile molecules occupy only those odor receptors that have the proper shape to accommodate them. Because the receptor sites are themselves chiral, one enantiomer may fit one kind of receptor while the other enantiomer fits a different kind. An analogy that can be drawn is to hands and gloves. Your left hand and your right hand are enantiomers. You can place your left hand into a left

glove but not into a right one. The receptor (the glove) can accommodate one enantiomer of a chiral object (your hand) but not the other.

The term *chiral recognition* refers to a process in which some chiral receptor or reagent interacts selectively with one of the enantiomers of a chiral molecule. Very high levels of chiral recognition are common in biological processes. (−)-Nicotine, for example, is much more toxic than (+)-nicotine, and (+)-adrenaline is more active than (−)-adrenaline in constricting blood vessels. (−)-Thyroxine, an amino acid of the thyroid gland that speeds up metabolism, is one of the most widely used of all prescription drugs—about 10 million people in the United States take (−)-thyroxine on a daily basis. Its enantiomer, (+)-thyroxine has none of the metabolism-regulating effects, but was formerly given to heart patients to lower their cholesterol levels.

Problem 7.12

Assign appropriate *R,S* symbols to the chirality centers in (−)-nicotine, (−)-adrenaline, and (−)-thyroxine.

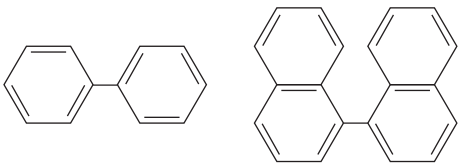


(−)-Nicotine (−)-Adrenaline (−)-Thyroxine

7.9 The Chirality Axis

We have, so far, restricted our discussion of chiral molecules to those that contain a chirality center. Although these are the most common, they are not the only kinds of chiral molecules. A second group consists of molecules that contain a **chirality axis**—an axis about which a set of atoms or groups is arranged so that the spatial arrangement is not superimposable on its mirror image. We can think of two enantiomers characterized by a chirality axis as being analogous to a left-handed screw and a right-handed screw.

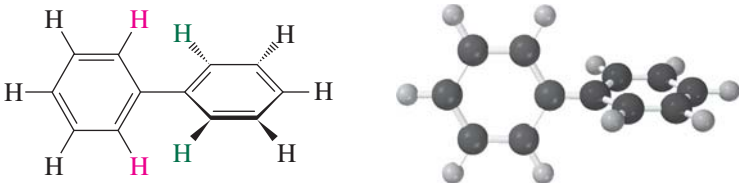
Among molecules with a chirality axis, substituted derivatives of biaryls have received much attention. **Biaryls** are compounds in which two aromatic rings are joined by a single bond: biphenyl and 1,1′-binaphthyl, for example.



Biphenyl 1,1′-Binaphthyl

Although the individual rings in biphenyl and 1,1′-binaphthyl are flat, the molecules themselves are not. Rotation about the single bond connecting the two rings in biphenyl reduces the steric strain between nearby hydrogens of one ring (red) and those of the other (green). This rotation makes the "twisted" conformation more stable than one in which all of the atoms lie in the same plane.

The experimentally measured angle between the two rings of biphenyl in the gas phase is 44°.

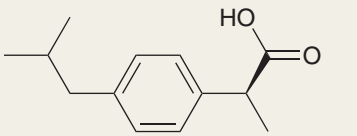


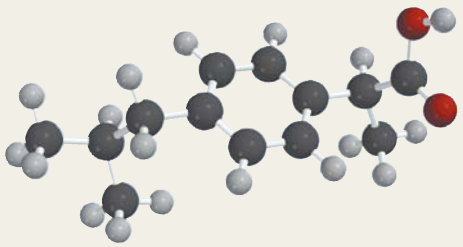
Nonplanar "twisted" conformation of biphenyl

Chiral Drugs

A recent estimate places the number of prescription and over-the-counter drugs marketed throughout the world at about 2000. Approximately one third of these are either naturally occurring substances themselves or are prepared by chemical modification of natural products. Most of the drugs derived from natural sources are chiral and are almost always obtained as a single enantiomer rather than as a racemic mixture. Not so with the over 500 chiral substances represented among the more than 1300 drugs that are the products of synthetic organic chemistry. Until recently, such substances were, with few exceptions, prepared, sold, and administered as racemic mixtures even though the desired therapeutic activity resided in only one of the enantiomers. Spurred by a number of factors ranging from safety and efficacy to synthetic methodology and economics, this practice is undergoing rapid change as more and more chiral synthetic drugs become available in enantiomerically pure form.

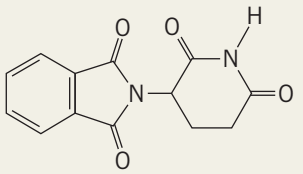
Because of the high degree of chiral recognition inherent in most biological processes (Section 7.8), it is unlikely that both enantiomers of a chiral drug will exhibit the same level, or even the same kind, of effect. At one extreme, one enantiomer has the desired effect, and the other exhibits no biological activity at all. In this case, which is relatively rare, the racemic form is simply a drug that is 50% pure and contains 50% "inert ingredients." Real cases are more complicated. For example, the *S* enantiomer is responsible for the pain-relieving properties of ibuprofen, normally sold as a racemic mixture. The 50% of racemic ibuprofen that is the *R* enantiomer is not completely wasted, however, because enzyme-catalyzed reactions in our body convert much of it to active (*S*)-ibuprofen.

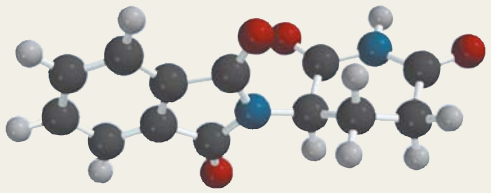




Ibuprofen

A much more serious drawback to using chiral drugs as racemic mixtures is illustrated by thalidomide, briefly employed as a sedative and antinausea drug in Europe during the period 1959–1962. The desired properties are those of (*R*)-thalidomide. (*S*)-Thalidomide, however, has a very different spectrum of biological activity and was shown to be responsible for over 2000 cases of serious birth defects in children born to women who took it while pregnant.





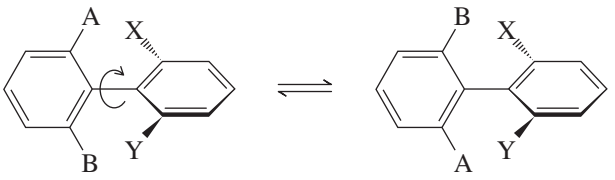
Thalidomide

Basic research aimed at controlling the stereochemistry of chemical reactions has led to novel methods for the synthesis of chiral molecules in enantiomerically pure form. Aspects of this work were recognized with the award of the 2001 Nobel Prize in Chemistry to William S. Knowles (Monsanto), Ryoji Noyori (Nagoya University), and K. Barry Sharpless (Scripps Research Institute). Most major pharmaceutical companies are examining their existing drugs to see which are the best candidates for synthesis as single enantiomers and, when preparing a new drug, design its synthesis so as to provide only the desired enantiomer. One incentive to developing enantiomerically pure versions of existing drugs, called a "chiral switch," is that the novel production methods they require may make them eligible for extended patent protection.

Problem 7.13

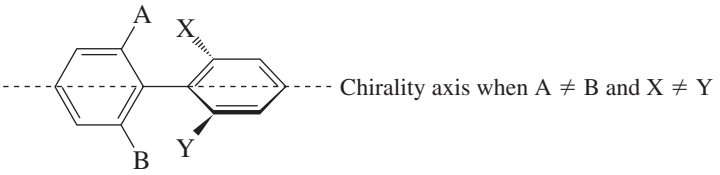
Find the chirality center in the molecular model of thalidomide shown above and identify its configuration as *R* or *S*.

Rotation about the bond joining the two rings is very fast in biphenyl, about the same as in ethane, but is slowed when the carbons adjacent to the ones joining the two rings bear groups other than hydrogen.

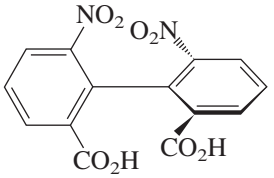


If the substituents are large enough, the steric strain that accompanies their moving past each other during rotation about the single bond can decrease the rate of equilibration so much that it becomes possible to isolate the two conformations under normal laboratory conditions.

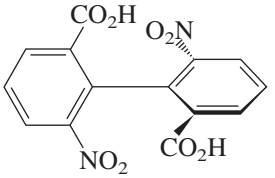
When A ≠ B, and X ≠ Y, the two conformations are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other; that is, they are enantiomers. The bond connecting the two rings lies along a chirality axis.



The first compound demonstrated to be chiral because of restricted rotation about a single bond was 6,6′-dinitrobiphenyl-2,2′-dicarboxylic acid in 1922.



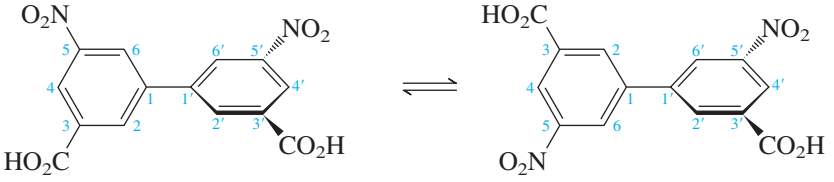
(+)-6,6′-Dinitrobiphenyl-2,2′-dicarboxylic acid
$[\alpha]_D^{29}$ +127° (methanol)



(−)-6,6′-Dinitrobiphenyl-2,2′-dicarboxylic acid
$[\alpha]_D^{29}$ −127° (methanol)

Problem 7.14

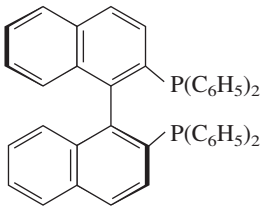
The 3,3′-5,5′ isomer of the compound just shown has a chirality axis, but its separation into isolable enantiomers would be extremely difficult. Why?



Chemists don't agree on the minimum energy barrier for bond rotation that allows isolation of enantiomeric atropisomers at room temperature, but it is on the order of 100 kJ/mol (24 kcal/mol). Recall that the activation energy for rotation about C—C single bonds in alkanes is about 12 kJ/mol (3 kcal/mol).

Structures such as chiral biaryls, which are related by rotation around a single bond yet are capable of independent existence, are sometimes called **atropisomers,** from the Greek *a* meaning not, and *tropos* meaning turn. They represent a subcategory of conformers.

Derivatives of 1,1′-binaphthyl exhibit atropisomerism, due to hindered rotation about the single bond that connects the two naphthalene rings. A commercially important application of chiral binaphthyls is based on a substituted derivative known as BINAP, a component of a hydrogenation catalyst. In this catalyst, ruthenium is bound by the two phosphorus atoms present on the groups attached to the naphthalene rings.



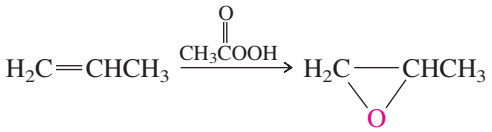
(*S*)-(−)-BINAP

BINAP is an abbreviation for 2,2′-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1′-binaphthyl.

We will explore the use of the ruthenium BINAP catalysts in the synthesis of chiral drugs in Section 14.12.

7.10 Reactions That Create a Chirality Center

Many of the reactions we've already encountered can yield a chiral product from an achiral starting material. Epoxidation of propene, for example, creates a chirality center by adding oxygen to the double bond.



Propene (achiral) — 1,2-Epoxypropane (chiral)

In this, as in other reactions in which achiral reactants yield chiral products, the product is formed as a *racemic mixture* and is *optically inactive.* Remember, for a substance to be optically active, not only must it be chiral but one enantiomer must be present in excess of the other.

It is a general principle that *optically active products cannot be formed from an optically inactive starting material unless at least one optically active reactant or catalyst is present.* This principle holds irrespective of whether the addition is syn or anti, concerted or stepwise. No matter how many steps are involved in a reaction, if the reactants are achiral, formation of one enantiomer is just as likely as the other, and a racemic mixture results.

Figure 7.6 shows why equal amounts of (*R*)- and (*S*)-1,2-epoxypropane are formed in the epoxidation of propene. Transfer of oxygen to the top face of the double bond gives

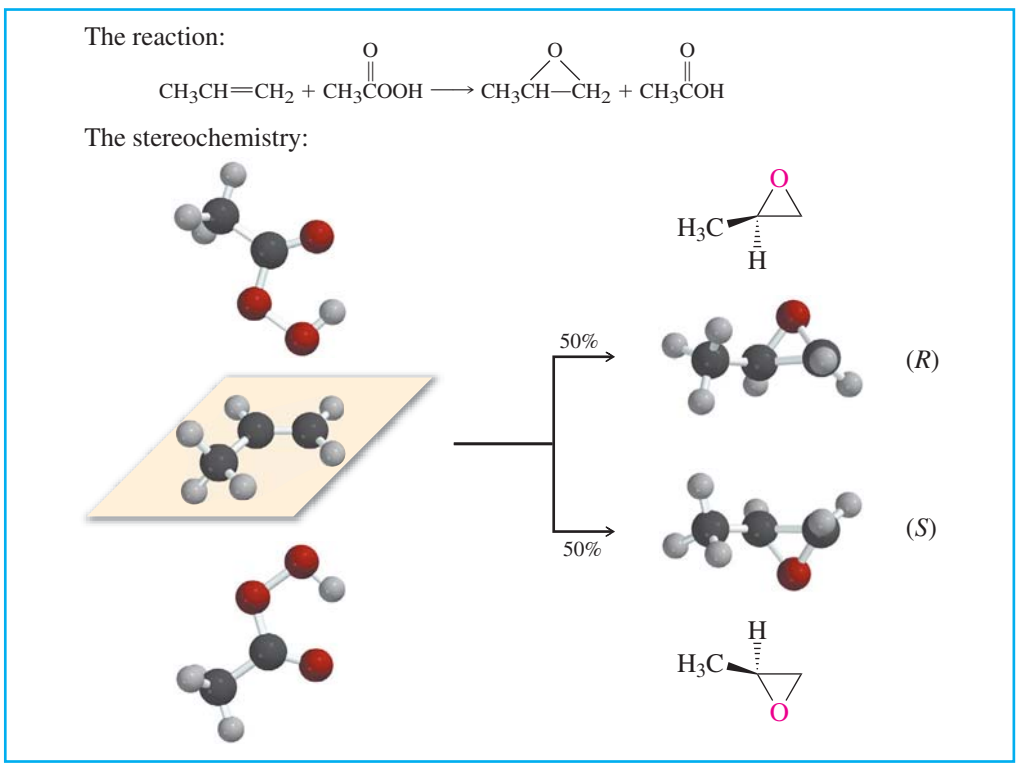


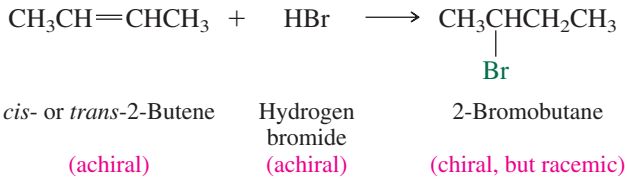
Figure 7.6

Epoxidation of propene produces equal amounts of (*R*)- and (*S*)-1,2-epoxypropane.

The Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems at the end of this chapter explore prochirality in more detail.

(*R*)-1,2-epoxypropane; oxygen transfer to the bottom face gives (*S*). The two faces are termed **prochiral** because addition to either face converts an achiral reactant to a chiral product. They are further classified as **enantiotopic** because the product from reaction at one face is the enantiomer of the product from reaction at the other. An achiral reagent reacts at the same rate at each of two enantiotopic faces and gives equal amounts of enantiomers.

In a second example, addition of hydrogen bromide converts 2-butene, which is achiral, to 2-bromobutane, which is chiral. But, as before, the product is racemic because both enantiomers are formed at equal rates. This is true regardless of whether the starting alkene is *cis*- or *trans*-2-butene or whether the mechanism is electrophilic addition or free-radical addition of HBr.



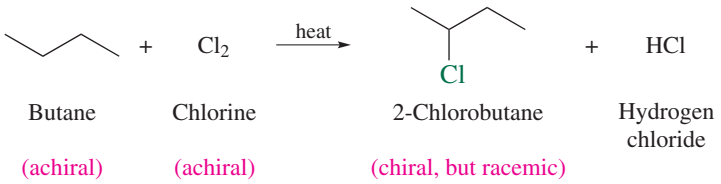
Whatever happens at one enantiotopic face of the double bond of *cis*- or *trans*-2-butene happens at the same rate at the other, resulting in a 1:1 mixture of (*R*)- and (*S*)-2-bromobutane.

Problem 7.15

What two stereoisomeric alkanes are formed in the catalytic hydrogenation of (*E*)-3-methyl-2-hexene? What are the relative amounts of each?

Addition to double bonds is not the only kind of reaction that converts an achiral molecule to a chiral one. Other possibilities include substitution reactions such as the formation of 2-chlorobutane by free-radical chlorination of butane. Here again, the product is chiral, but racemic.

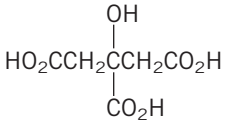
1-Chlorobutane is also formed in this reaction.



C-2 of butane is a **prochirality center;** replacing one of its attached hydrogens by chlorine converts it to a chirality center in 2-chlorobutane. The hydrogens at C-2 of butane are enantiotopic; replacing one of them by some different atom or group gives the enantiomer of the structure obtained by replacing the other. Enantiotopic hydrogens are equally reactive toward an achiral reagent, and a racemic product results.

Problem 7.16

Citric acid has three CO_2H groups. Which, if any, of them are enantiotopic?



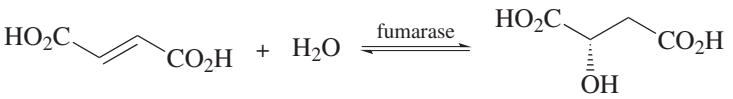
Citric acid

When a reactant is chiral but optically inactive because it is *racemic,* any products derived from its reactions with optically inactive reagents will be *optically inactive.* For

example, 2-butanol is chiral and may be converted with hydrogen bromide to 2-bromobutane, which is also chiral. If racemic 2-butanol is used, each enantiomer will react at the same rate with the achiral reagent. Whatever happens to (*R*)-(−)-2-butanol is mirrored in a corresponding reaction of (*S*)-(+)-2-butanol, and a racemic, optically inactive product results.

2-Butanol (chiral but racemic) — 2-Bromobutane (chiral but racemic)

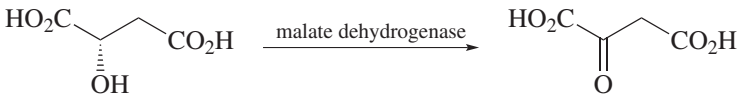
Optically inactive starting materials can give optically active products only if they are treated with an optically active reagent or if the reaction is catalyzed by an optically active substance. The best examples are found in biochemical processes. Most biochemical reactions are catalyzed by enzymes. Enzymes are chiral and enantiomerically homogeneous; they provide an asymmetric environment in which chemical reaction can take place. Ordinarily, enzyme-catalyzed reactions are **enantioselective;** they occur with such a high level of stereoselectivity that one enantiomer of a substance is formed exclusively even when the substrate is achiral. The enzyme *fumarase,* for example, catalyzes hydration of the double bond of fumaric acid to malic acid in apples and other fruits. Only the *S* enantiomer of malic acid is formed in this reaction.



Fumaric acid — (*S*)-(−)-Malic acid

The reaction is reversible, and its stereochemical requirements are so pronounced that neither the cis isomer of fumaric acid (maleic acid) nor the *R* enantiomer of malic acid can serve as a substrate for the fumarase-catalyzed hydration–dehydration equilibrium.

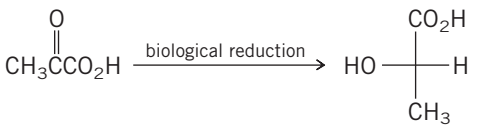
The stereospecific formation of the *S* enantiomer of malic acid from fumaric acid also occurs in the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle where it is subsequently converted to oxaloacetic acid by the enzyme *malate dehydrogenase*.



(*S*)-(−)-Malic acid — Oxaloacetic acid

Problem 7.17

Biological reduction of pyruvic acid, catalyzed by the enzyme *lactate dehydrogenase,* gives (+)-lactic acid, represented by the Fischer projection shown. What is the configuration of (+)-lactic acid according to the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R*–*S* notational system?

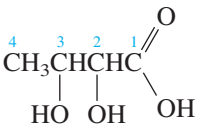


Pyruvic acid — (+)-Lactic acid

We'll continue with the three-dimensional details of chemical reactions later in this chapter. First though, we need to develop some additional stereochemical principles concerning structures with more than one chirality center.

7.11 Chiral Molecules with Two Chirality Centers

When a molecule contains two chirality centers, as does 2,3-dihydroxybutanoic acid, how many stereoisomers are possible?



2,3-Dihydroxybutanoic acid

We can use straightforward reasoning to come up with the answer. The absolute configuration at C-2 may be *R* or *S*. Likewise, C-3 may have either the *R* or the *S* configuration. The four possible combinations of these two chirality centers are

(2*R*,3*R*) (stereoisomer I) (2*S*,3*S*) (stereoisomer II)
(2*R*,3*S*) (stereoisomer III) (2*S*,3*R*) (stereoisomer IV)

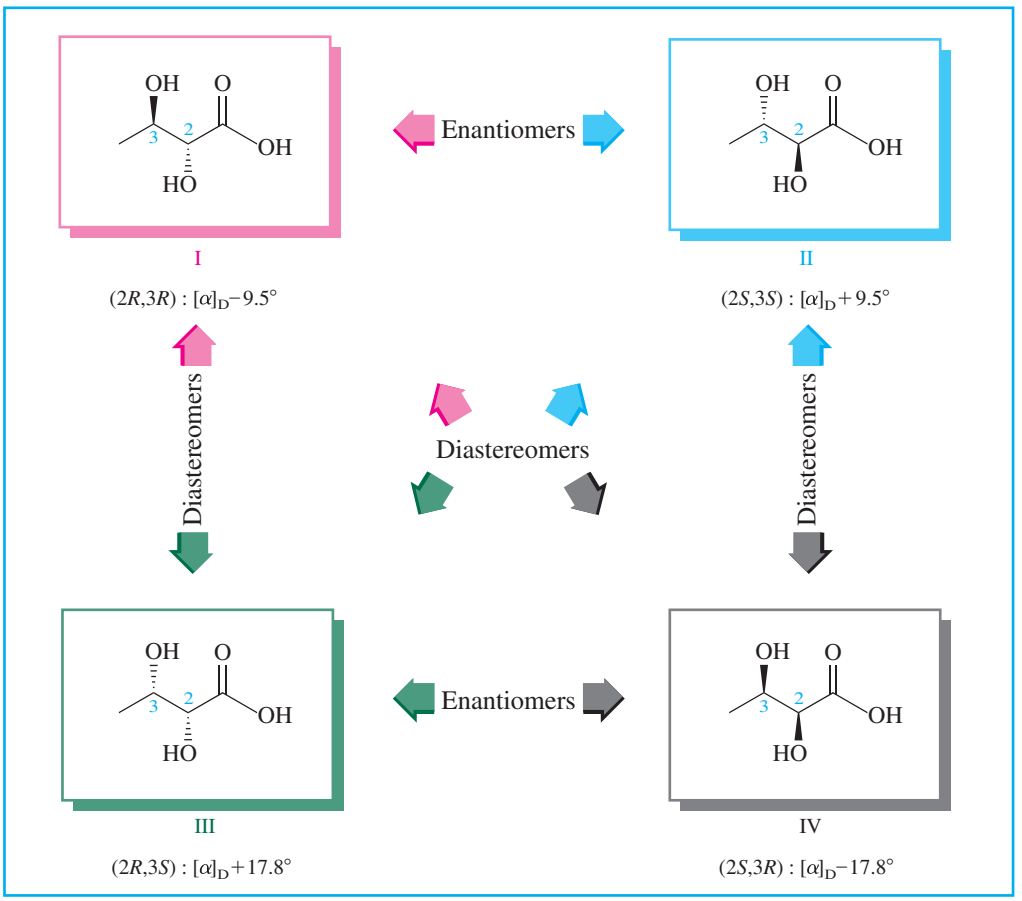
Figure 7.7 presents structural formulas for these four stereoisomers. Stereoisomers I and II are enantiomers of each other; the enantiomer of (*R*,*R*) is (*S*,*S*). Likewise stereoisomers III and IV are enantiomers of each other, the enantiomer of (*R*,*S*) being (*S*,*R*).

Stereoisomer I is not a mirror image of III or IV, so it is not an enantiomer of either one. Stereoisomers that are not related as an object and its mirror image are called diastereomers; ***diastereomers*** *are stereoisomers that are not mirror images.* Thus, stereoisomer I is a diastereomer of III and a diastereomer of IV. Similarly, II is a diastereomer of III and IV.

To convert a molecule with two chirality centers to its enantiomer, the configuration at *both* centers must be changed. Reversing the configuration at only one chirality center converts it to a diastereomer.

Figure 7.7

Stereoisomeric 2,3-dihydroxybutanoic acids. Stereoisomers I and II are enantiomers. Stereoisomers III and IV are enantiomers. All other relationships are diastereomeric (see text).



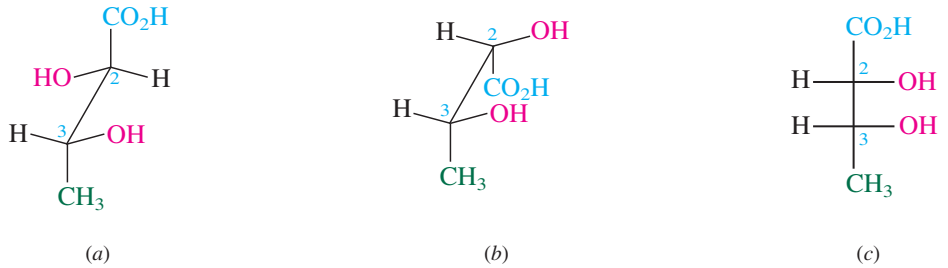


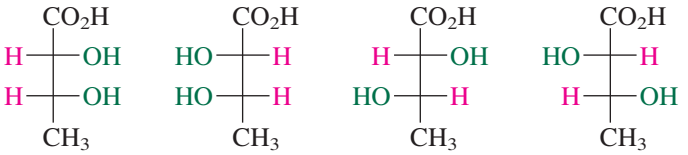
Figure 7.8

Representations of (2*R*,3*R*)-dihydroxybutanoic acid. (*a*) The staggered conformation is the most stable, but is not properly arranged to show stereochemistry as a Fischer projection. (*b*) Rotation about the C-2–C-3 bond gives the eclipsed conformation, and projection of the eclipsed conformation onto the page gives (*c*) a correct Fischer projection.

Enantiomers must have equal and opposite specific rotations. Diastereomers can have different rotations, with respect to both sign and magnitude. Thus, as Figure 7.7 shows, the (2*R*,3*R*) and (2*S*,3*S*) enantiomers (I and II) have specific rotations that are equal in magnitude but opposite in sign. The (2*R*,3*S*) and (2*S*,3*R*) enantiomers (III and IV) likewise have specific rotations that are equal to each other but opposite in sign. The magnitudes of rotation of I and II are different, however, from those of their diastereomers III and IV.

In writing Fischer projections of molecules with two chirality centers, the molecule is arranged in an *eclipsed* conformation for projection onto the page, as shown in Figure 7.8. Again, horizontal lines in the projection represent bonds coming toward you; vertical lines represent bonds pointing away.

Organic chemists use an informal nomenclature system based on Fischer projections to distinguish between diastereomers. When the carbon chain is vertical and like substituents are on the same side of the Fischer projection, the molecule is described as the **erythro** diastereomer. When like substituents are on opposite sides of the Fischer projection, the molecule is described as the **threo** diastereomer. Thus, as seen in the Fischer projections of the stereoisomeric 2,3-dihydroxybutanoic acids, compounds I and II are erythro stereoisomers and III and IV are threo.



Problem 7.18

Assign the *R* or *S* configuration to the chirality centers in the four isomeric 2,3-dihydroxybutanoic acids shown in Fischer projections. Consult Figure 7.7 to check your answers.

Because diastereomers are not mirror images of each other, they can have quite different physical and chemical properties. For example, the (2*R*,3*R*) stereoisomer of 3-amino-2-butanol is a liquid, but the (2*R*,3*S*) diastereomer is a crystalline solid.

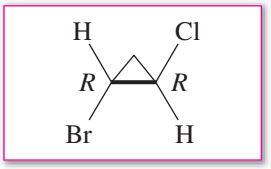
Problem 7.19

Draw Fischer projections of the four stereoisomeric 3-amino-2-butanols, and label each erythro or threo as appropriate.

Problem 7.20

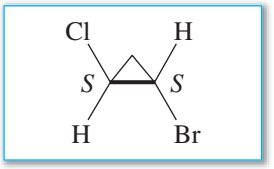
One other stereoisomer of 3-amino-2-butanol is a crystalline solid. Which one?

The situation is the same when the two chirality centers are present in a ring. There are four stereoisomeric 1-bromo-2-chlorocyclopropanes: a pair of enantiomers in which the halogens are trans and a pair in which they are cis. The cis compounds are diastereomers of the trans.

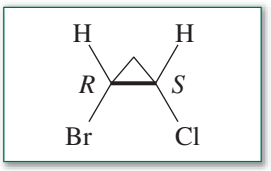


(1*R*,2*R*)-1-Bromo-2-chlorocyclopropane

Enantiomers

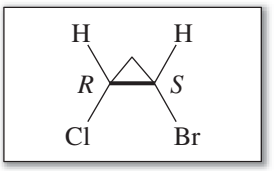


(1*S*,2*S*)-1-Bromo-2-chlorocyclopropane



(1*R*,2*S*)-1-Bromo-2-chlorocyclopropane

Enantiomers



(1*S*,2*R*)-1-Bromo-2-chlorocyclopropane

A good thing to remember is that the cis and trans isomers of a particular compound are diastereomers of each other.

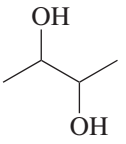
In Section 7.5, the term "relative configuration" was used to describe the stereochemical relationship between a single chirality center in one molecule to a chirality center in a different molecule. Relative configuration is also used to describe the way multiple chirality centers within the same molecule are related. The two erythro stereoisomers of 2,3-dihydroxybutanoic acid possess the same relative configuration. The relationship of one chirality center to the other is the same in both, but different from that in the threo stereoisomer.

Problem 7.21

Which stereoisomers of 1-bromo-2-chlorocyclopropane possess the same relative configuration?

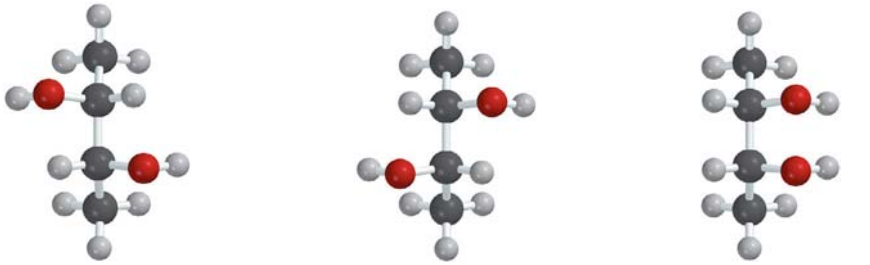
7.12 Achiral Molecules with Two Chirality Centers

Now think about a molecule, such as 2,3-butanediol, which has two chirality centers that are equivalently substituted.



2,3-Butanediol

Only *three,* not four, stereoisomeric 2,3-butanediols are possible. These three are shown in Figure 7.9. The (2*R*,3*R*) and (2*S*,3*S*) forms are enantiomers and have equal and opposite

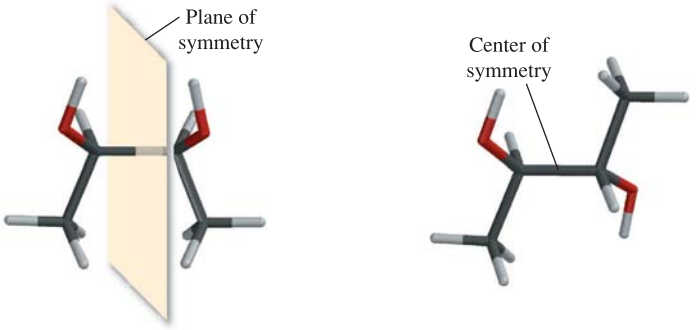


(2*R*,3*R*)-2,3-Butanediol (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-Butanediol *meso*-2,3-Butanediol

(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Figure 7.9

Stereoisomeric 2,3-butanediols shown in their eclipsed conformations for convenience. Stereoisomers (*a*) and (*b*) are enantiomers. Structure (*c*) is a diastereomer of (*a*) and (*b*), and is achiral. It is called *meso*-2,3-butanediol.



(*a*) (*b*)

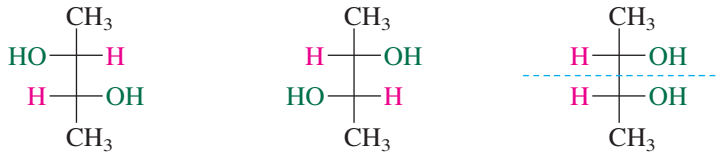
Figure 7.10

(*a*) The eclipsed conformation of *meso*-2,3-butanediol has a plane of symmetry. (*b*) The anti conformation of *meso*-2,3-butanediol has a center of symmetry.

optical rotations. A third combination of chirality centers, (2*R*,3*S*), however, gives an *achiral* structure that is superimposable on its (2*S*,3*R*) mirror image. Because it is achiral, this third stereoisomer is *optically inactive.* We call achiral molecules that have chirality centers **meso forms.** The meso form in Figure 7.9 is known as *meso*-2,3-butanediol.

One way to demonstrate that *meso*-2,3-butanediol is achiral is to recognize that its eclipsed conformation has a plane of symmetry that passes through and is perpendicular to the C-2—C-3 bond, as illustrated in Figure 7.10*a*. The anti conformation is achiral as well. As Figure 7.10*b* shows, this conformation is characterized by a center of symmetry at the midpoint of the C-2—C-3 bond.

Fischer projections can help us identify meso forms. Of the three stereoisomeric 2,3-butanediols, notice that only in the meso stereoisomer does a dashed line through the center of the Fischer projection divide the molecule into two mirror-image halves.



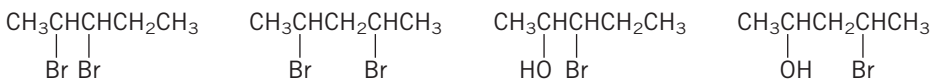
(2*R*,3*R*)-2,3-Butanediol (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-Butanediol *meso*-2,3-Butanediol

In the same way that a Fischer formula is a projection of the eclipsed conformation onto the page, the line drawn through its center is a projection of the plane of symmetry that is present in the eclipsed conformation of *meso*-2,3-butanediol.

When using Fischer projections for this purpose, however, be sure to remember what three-dimensional objects they stand for. One should not, for example, test for superimposition of the two chiral stereoisomers by a procedure that involves moving any part of a Fischer projection out of the plane of the paper in any step.

Problem 7.22

A meso stereoisomer is possible for one of the following compounds. Which one?

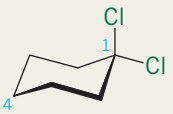


Chirality of Disubstituted Cyclohexanes

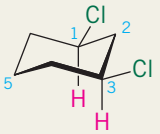
Disubstituted cyclohexanes present us with a challenging exercise in stereochemistry. Consider the seven possible dichlorocyclohexanes: 1,1-; *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-; *cis*- and *trans*-1,3-; and *cis*- and *trans*-1,4-. Which are chiral? Which are achiral?

Four isomers—the ones that are achiral because they have a plane of symmetry—are relatively easy to identify:

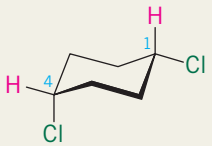
Achiral Dichlorocyclohexanes



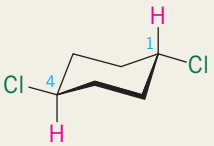
1,1
(plane of symmetry through C-1 and C-4)



cis-1,3
(plane of symmetry through C-2 and C-5)



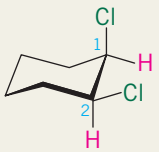
cis-1,4
(plane of symmetry through C-1 and C-4)



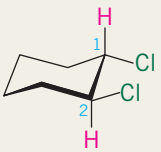
trans-1,4
(plane of symmetry through C-1 and C-4)

The remaining three isomers are chiral:

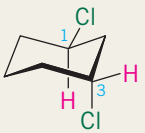
Chiral Dichlorocyclohexanes



cis-1,2

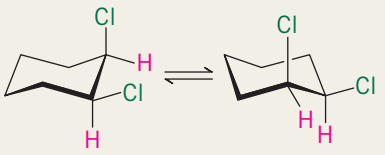


trans-1,2



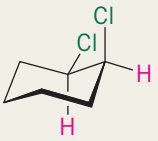
trans-1,3

Among all the isomers, *cis*-1,2-dichlorocyclohexane is unique in that the ring-inverting process typical of cyclohexane derivatives converts it to its enantiomer.



A ⇌ A′

which is equivalent to

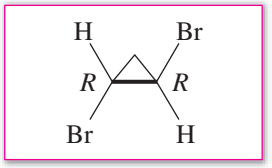


A′

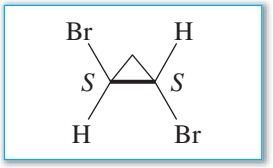
Structures A and A′ are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other. Thus although *cis*-1,2-dichlorocyclohexane is chiral, it is optically inactive when chair–chair interconversion occurs. Such interconversion is rapid at room temperature and converts optically active A to a racemic mixture of A and A′. Because A and A′ are enantiomers interconvertible by a conformational change, they are sometimes referred to as **conformational enantiomers.**

The same kind of spontaneous racemization occurs for any *cis*-1,2 disubstituted cyclohexane in which both substituents are the same. Because such compounds are chiral, it is incorrect to speak of them as meso compounds, which are achiral molecules that have chirality centers. Rapid chair–chair interconversion, however, converts them to a 1:1 mixture of enantiomers, and this mixture is optically inactive.

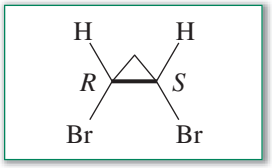
Turning to cyclic compounds, we see that there are only three, not four, stereoisomeric 1,2-dibromocyclopropanes. Of these, two are enantiomeric *trans*-1,2-dibromocyclopropanes. The cis diastereomer is a meso form; it has a plane of symmetry.



(1*R*,2*R*)-1,2-Dibromocyclopropane



(1*S*,2*S*)-1,2-Dibromocyclopropane



cis-1,2-Dibromocyclopropane

Problem 7.23

One of the stereoisomers of 1,3-dimethylcyclohexane is a meso form. Which one?

7.13 Molecules with Multiple Chirality Centers

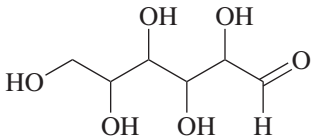
Many naturally occurring compounds contain several chirality centers. By an analysis similar to that described for the case of two chirality centers, it can be shown that the maximum number of stereoisomers for a particular constitution is 2^n, where n is equal to the number of chirality centers.

Problem 7.24

Using *R* and *S* descriptors, write all the possible combinations for a molecule with three chirality centers.

When two or more of a molecule's chirality centers are equivalently substituted, meso forms are possible, and the number of stereoisomers is then less than 2^n. Thus, 2^n represents the *maximum* number of stereoisomers for a molecule containing n chirality centers.

The best examples of substances with multiple chirality centers are the *carbohydrates*. One class of carbohydrates, called *aldohexoses,* has the constitution:

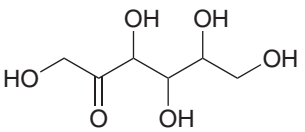


An aldohexose

Because there are four chirality centers and no possibility of meso forms, there are 2^4, or 16, stereoisomeric aldohexoses. All 16 are known, having been isolated either as natural products or as the products of chemical synthesis.

Problem 7.25

A second category of six-carbon carbohydrates, called *ketohexoses,* has the constitution shown. How many stereoisomeric 2-ketohexoses are possible?



A 2-ketohexose

Steroids are another class of natural products with multiple chirality centers. One such compound is *cholic acid,* which can be obtained from bile. Its structural formula is given in Figure 7.11. Cholic acid has 11 chirality centers, and so a total (including cholic

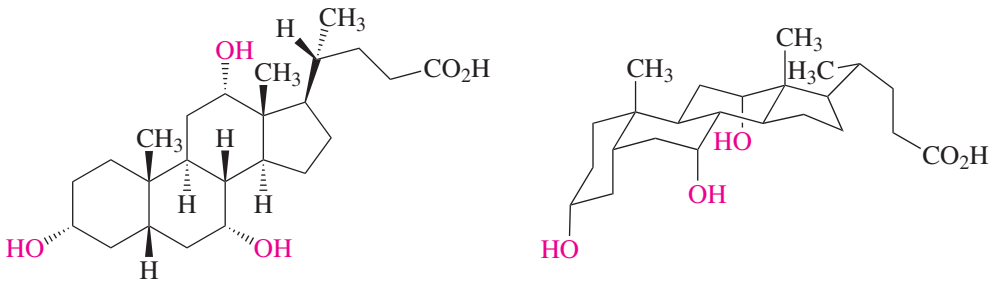


Figure 7.11

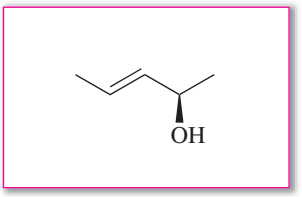
Cholic acid. Its 11 chirality centers are those carbons at which stereochemistry is indicated in the structural drawing at the left. The drawing at the right more clearly shows the overall shape of the molecule.

acid) of 2^{11}, or 2048, stereoisomers have this constitution. Of these 2048 stereoisomers, how many are diastereomers of cholic acid? Remember! Diastereomers are stereoisomers that are not enantiomers, and any object can have only one mirror image. Therefore, of the 2048 stereoisomers, one is cholic acid, one is its enantiomer, and the other 2046 are diastereomers of cholic acid. Only a small fraction of these compounds are known, and (+)-cholic acid is the only one ever isolated from natural sources.

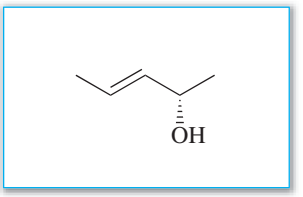
Eleven chirality centers may seem like a lot, but it is nowhere close to a world record. It is a modest number when compared with the more than 100 chirality centers typical for most small proteins and the billions of chirality centers present in human DNA.

A molecule that contains both chirality centers and double bonds has additional opportunities for stereoisomerism. For example, the configuration of the chirality center in 3-penten-2-ol may be either *R* or *S,* and the double bond may be either *E* or *Z.* Therefore 3-penten-2-ol has four stereoisomers even though it has only one chirality center.

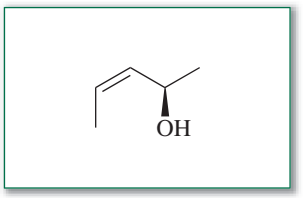
n in 2^n includes double bonds capable of stereochemical variation (*E*, *Z*) as well as chirality centers.



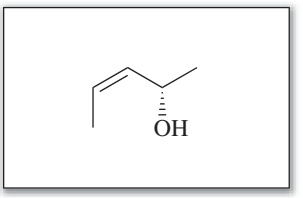
(2*R*,3*E*)-3-Penten-2-ol



(2*S*,3*E*)-3-Penten-2-ol



(2*R*,3*Z*)-3-Penten-2-ol



(2*S*,3*Z*)-3-Penten-2-ol

The relationship of the (2*R*,3*E*) stereoisomer to the others is that it is the enantiomer of (2*S*,3*E*)-3-penten-2-ol and is a diastereomer of the (2*R*,3*Z*) and (2*S*,3*Z*) isomers.

7.14 Reactions That Produce Diastereomers

Once we grasp the idea of stereoisomerism in molecules with two or more chirality centers, we can explore further details of addition reactions of alkenes.

When bromine adds to (*Z*)- or (*E*)-2-butene, the product 2,3-dibromobutane contains two equivalently substituted chirality centers:

$$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3 \xrightarrow{Br_2} CH_3\underset{\displaystyle Br}{\underset{|}{C}}H\underset{\displaystyle Br}{\underset{|}{C}}HCH_3$$

(*Z*)- or (*E*)-2-butene — 2,3-Dibromobutane

Three stereoisomers are possible: a pair of enantiomers and a meso form.

Two factors combine to determine which stereoisomers are actually formed in the reaction.

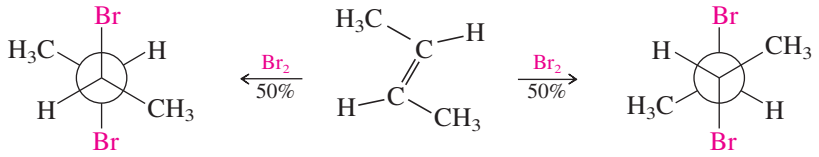
1. The (*E*)- or (*Z*)-configuration of the starting alkene
2. The anti stereochemistry of addition (Section 6.10)

Figure 7.12 shows the stereochemical differences associated with anti addition of bromine to (*E*)- and (*Z*)-2-butene, respectively. The trans alkene (*E*)-2-butene yields only *meso*-2,3-dibromobutane, but the cis alkene (*Z*)-2-butene gives a racemic mixture of (2*R*,3*R*)- and (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-dibromobutane.

Stereospecific reactions were introduced in connection with syn and anti additions to alkenes in Section 6.2.

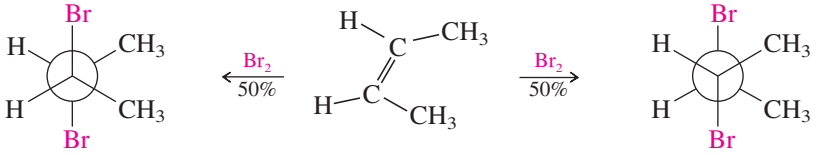
Bromine addition to alkenes is a **stereospecific reaction,** a reaction in which stereoisomeric starting materials yield products that are stereoisomers of each other. In this case the starting materials, in separate reactions, are the *E* and *Z* stereoisomers of 2-butene. The

(*a*) Anti addition of Br_2 to (*E*)-2-butene gives *meso*-2,3-dibromobutane.



meso-2,3-Dibromobutane (*E*)-2-Butene *meso*-2,3-Dibromobutane

(*b*) Anti addition of Br_2 to (*Z*)-2-butene gives equal amounts of (2*R*,3*R*)- and (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-dibromobutane.



(2*R*,3*R*)-2,3-Dibromobutane (*Z*)-2-Butene (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-Dibromobutane

Figure 7.12

Addition of Br_2 to (*E*)- and (*Z*)-2-butene is stereospecific. Stereoisomeric products are formed from stereoisomeric reactants.

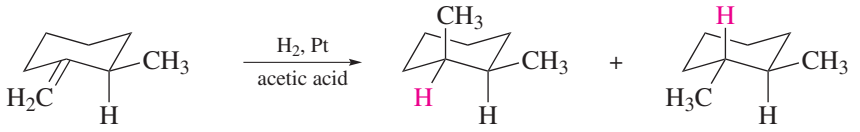
chiral dibromides formed from (*Z*)-2-butene are stereoisomers (diastereomers) of the meso dibromide from (*E*)-2-butene.

Problem 7.26

Epoxidation of alkenes is a stereospecific syn addition. Which stereoisomer of 2-butene reacts with peroxyacetic acid to give *meso*-2,3-epoxybutane? Which one gives a racemic mixture of (2*R*,3*R*)- and (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-epoxybutane?

Notice too that, consistent with the principle developed in Section 7.10, optically inactive starting materials (achiral alkenes and bromine) yield optically inactive products (a racemic mixture or a meso structure) in these reactions.

A reaction that introduces a second chirality center into a starting material that already has one need not produce equal quantities of two possible diastereomers. Consider catalytic hydrogenation of 2-methyl(methylene)cyclohexane. As you might expect, both *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane are formed.



2-Methyl(methylene)cyclohexane *cis*-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane (68%) *trans*-1,2-Dimethylcyclohexane (32%)

The relative amounts of the two products, however, are not equal; more *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane is formed than *trans*-. The reason for this is that it is the less hindered face of the double bond that approaches the catalyst surface and is the face to which hydrogen is transferred. Hydrogenation of 2-methyl(methylene)cyclohexane occurs preferentially at the side of the double bond opposite that of the methyl group and leads to a faster rate of formation of the cis stereoisomer of the product.

Problem 7.27

Could the fact that hydrogenation of 2-methyl(methylene)cyclohexane gives more *cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane than *trans*- be explained on the basis of the relative stabilities of the two stereoisomeric products?

The two faces of the double bond in 2-methyl(methylene)cyclohexane are prochiral. They are not, however, enantiotopic as in the alkenes we discussed in Section 7.10. In those earlier examples, when addition to the double bond created a new chirality center, attack at one face gave one enantiomer; attack at the other gave the other enantiomer. In the case of 2-methyl(methylene)cyclohexane, which already has one chirality center, attack at opposite faces of the double bond gives two products that are diastereomers of each other. Prochiral faces of this type are called **diastereotopic.**

The hydrogenation of 2-methyl(methylene)cyclohexane is an example of a *stereoselective reaction,* meaning one in which stereoisomeric products are formed in unequal amounts from a single starting material.

A common misconception is that a stereospecific reaction is simply one that is 100% stereoselective. The two terms are not synonymous, however. A stereospecific reaction is one which, when carried out with stereoisomeric starting materials, gives a product from one reactant that is a stereoisomer of the product from the other. A stereoselective reaction is one in which a single starting material gives a predominance of a single stereoisomer when two or more are possible. *Stereospecific* is more closely connected with features of the reaction than with the reactant. Thus terms such as syn *addition* and anti *elimination* describe the stereospecificity of reactions. *Stereoselective* is more closely connected with structural effects in the reactant as expressed in terms such as *addition to the less hindered side.* For example, syn addition describes stereospecificity in the catalytic hydrogenation of alkenes, whereas the preference for addition to the less hindered face of the double bond describes stereoselectivity.

Note that the terms *regioselective* and *regiospecific*, however, are defined in terms of each other. A regiospecific reaction is one that is 100% regioselective.

7.15 Resolution of Enantiomers

The separation of a racemic mixture into its enantiomeric components is termed **resolution.** The first resolution, that of tartaric acid, was carried out by Louis Pasteur in 1848. Tartaric acid is a byproduct of wine making and is almost always found as its dextrorotatory 2*R*,3*R* stereoisomer, shown here in a perspective drawing and in a Fischer projection.

(2*R*,3*R*)-Tartaric acid (mp 170°C, $[\alpha]_D$ +12°)

Problem 7.28

There are two other stereoisomeric tartaric acids. Write their Fischer projections, and specify the configuration at their chirality centers.

Occasionally, an optically inactive sample of tartaric acid was obtained. Pasteur noticed that the sodium ammonium salt of optically inactive tartaric acid was a mixture of two mirror-image crystal forms. With microscope and tweezers, Pasteur carefully separated the two. He found that one kind of crystal (in aqueous solution) was dextrorotatory, whereas the mirror-image crystals rotated the plane of polarized light an equal amount but were levorotatory.

Although Pasteur was unable to provide a structural explanation—that had to wait for van't Hoff and Le Bel a quarter of a century later—he correctly deduced that the enantiomeric quality of the crystals was the result of enantiomeric molecules. The rare form of tartaric acid was optically inactive because it contained equal amounts of (+)-tartaric acid and (−)-tartaric acid. It had earlier been called *racemic acid* (from Latin *racemus,* meaning "a bunch of grapes"), a name that subsequently gave rise to our present term for an equal mixture of enantiomers.

Problem 7.29

Could the unusual, optically inactive form of tartaric acid studied by Pasteur have been *meso*-tartaric acid?

Pasteur's technique of separating enantiomers not only is laborious but requires that the crystals of the enantiomers be distinguishable. This happens very rarely. Consequently, alternative and more general approaches for resolving enantiomers have been developed. Most are based on a strategy of temporarily converting the enantiomers of a racemic mixture to diastereomeric derivatives, separating these diastereomers, then regenerating the enantiomeric starting materials.

Figure 7.13 illustrates this strategy. Say we have a mixture of enantiomers, which, for simplicity, we label as C(+) and C(−). Assume that C(+) and C(−) bear some functional group that can combine with a reagent P to yield adducts C(+)-P and C(−)-P. Now, if reagent P is chiral, and if only a single enantiomer of P, say, P(+), is added to a racemic mixture of C(+) and C(−), as shown in the first step of Figure 7.13, then the products of the reaction are C(+)-P(+) and C(−)-P(+). These products are not mirror images; they are diastereomers. Diastereomers can have different physical properties, which can serve as a means of separating them. The mixture of diastereomers is separated, usually by recrystallization from a suitable solvent. In the last step, an appropriate chemical transformation liberates the enantiomers and restores the resolving agent.

Whenever possible, the chemical reactions involved in the formation of diastereomers and their conversion to separate enantiomers are simple acid–base reactions. For example, naturally occurring (*S*)-(−)-malic acid is often used to resolve amines such as 1-phenylethylamine. Amines are bases, and malic acid is an acid. Proton transfer from

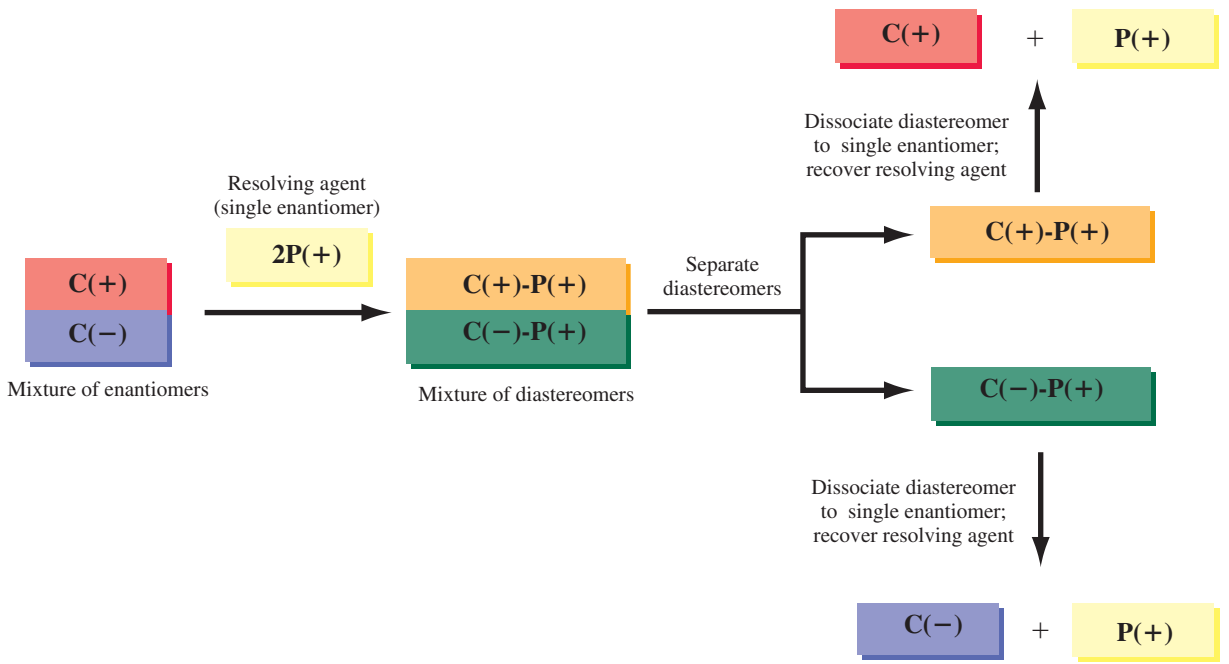
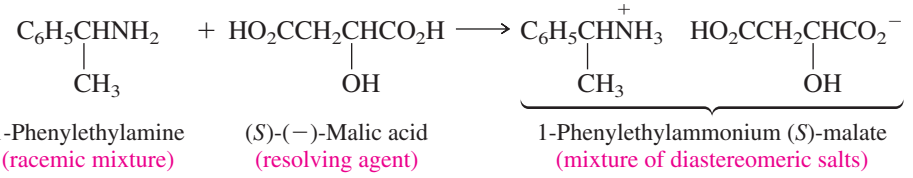


Figure 7.13

The general procedure for resolving a chiral substance into its enantiomers. Reaction with a single enantiomer of a chiral resolving agent P(+) converts the racemic mixture of enantiomers C(+) and C(−) to a mixture of diastereomers C(+)-P(+) and C(−)-P(+). The mixture of diastereomers is separated—by fractional crystallization, for example. A chemical reaction is then carried out to convert diastereomer C(+)-P(+) to C(+) and the resolving agent P(+). Likewise, diastereomer C(−)-P(+) is converted to C(−) and P(+). C(+) has been separated from C(−), and the resolving agent P(+) can be recovered for further use.

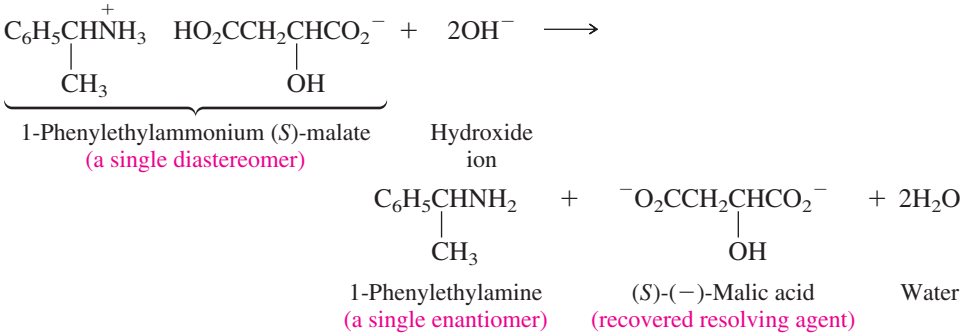
Most resolving agents are isolated as single enantiomers from natural sources. *S*-(−)-Malic acid is obtained from apples.

(*S*)-(−)-malic acid to a racemic mixture of (*R*)- and (*S*)-1-phenylethylamine gives a mixture of diastereomeric salts.



1-Phenylethylamine (racemic mixture) | (*S*)-(−)-Malic acid (resolving agent) | 1-Phenylethylammonium (*S*)-malate (mixture of diastereomeric salts)

The diastereomeric salts are separated and the individual enantiomers of the amine liberated by treatment with a base:



1-Phenylethylammonium (*S*)-malate (a single diastereomer) | Hydroxide ion

1-Phenylethylamine (a single enantiomer) | (*S*)-(−)-Malic acid (recovered resolving agent) | Water

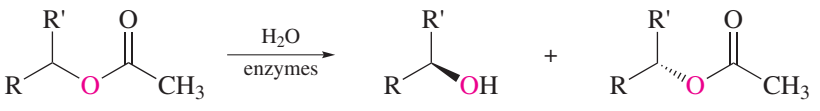
Problem 7.30

In the resolution of 1-phenylethylamine using (*S*)-(−)-malic acid, the compound obtained by recrystallization of the mixture of diastereomeric salts is (*R*)-1-phenylethylammonium (*S*)-malate. The other component of the mixture is more soluble and remains in solution. What is the configuration of the more soluble salt?

This method is widely used for the resolution of chiral amines and carboxylic acids. Analogous methods based on the formation and separation of diastereomers have been developed for other functional groups; the precise approach depends on the kind of chemical reactivity associated with the functional groups present in the molecule.

As the experimental tools for biochemical transformations have become more powerful and procedures for carrying out these transformations in the laboratory more routine, the application of biochemical processes to mainstream organic chemical tasks including the production of enantiomerically pure chiral molecules has grown.

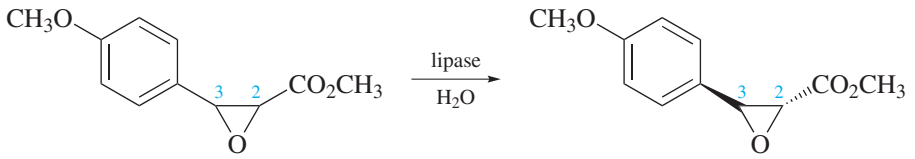
Another approach, called **kinetic resolution,** depends on the different rates of reaction of two enantiomers with a chiral reagent. A very effective form of kinetic resolution uses enzymes as chiral biocatalysts to selectively bring about the reaction of one enantiomer of a racemic mixture **(enzymatic resolution).** *Lipases*, or *esterases*—enzymes that catalyze ester hydrolysis and formation—have been successfully used in many kinetic resolutions. In a representative procedure, one enantiomer of an ester undergoes hydrolysis and the other is left unchanged.



Acetate ester of racemic alcohol | Enantiomerically enriched alcohol | Enantiomerically enriched acetate ester (unhydrolyzed)

This procedure has been applied to the preparation of a key intermediate in the industrial synthesis of *diltiazem*, a drug used to treat hypertension, angina, and arrythmia. In this case, the racemic reactant is a methyl ester, and lipase-catalyzed hydrolysis selectively

converts the undesired enantiomer to its corresponding carboxylic acid, leaving behind the unhydrolyzed ester in greater than 99% enantiomeric excess.

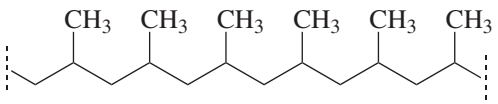


Racemic mixture of 2*R*,3*S* and 2*S*,3*R* Only 2*R*,3*S*

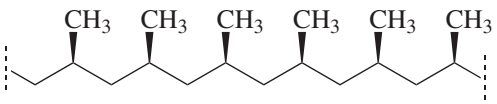
Enzymatic resolution, like other methods based on biocatalysis, may lead to more environmentally benign, or "green," processes for preparing useful intermediates on a commercial scale.

7.16 Stereoregular Polymers

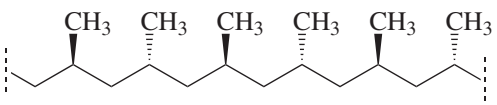
Before the development of the Ziegler–Natta catalyst systems (Section 6.14), polymerization of propene was not a reaction of much value. The reason for this has a stereochemical basis. Consider a section of *polypropylene:*



Three distinct structural possibilities that differ with respect to the relative configurations of the carbons that bear the methyl groups are apparent. In one, called **isotactic,** all the methyl groups are oriented in the same direction with respect to the polymer chain.



A second, called **syndiotactic,** has its methyl groups alternating front and back along the chain.



Both isotactic and syndiotactic polypropylene are **stereoregular** polymers; each is characterized by a precise stereochemistry at the carbon atom that bears the methyl group. The third possibility, called **atactic,** has a random orientation of its methyl groups; it is not stereoregular.

Most polypropylene products are made from isotactic polypropylene.

Polypropylene chains associate with one another because of attractive van der Waals forces. The extent of this association is relatively large for isotactic and syndiotactic polymers, because their stereoregularity permits efficient packing of the chains. Atactic polypropylene, on the other hand, does not associate as strongly and has a lower density and lower melting point than the stereoregular forms. The physical properties of stereoregular polypropylene are more useful for most purposes than those of atactic polypropylene.

When propene is polymerized under free-radical conditions, the polypropylene that results is atactic. Catalysts of the Ziegler–Natta type, however, permit the preparation of either isotactic or syndiotactic polypropylene. We see here an example of how proper choice of experimental conditions can affect the stereochemical course of a chemical reaction to the extent that entirely new materials with unique properties result.

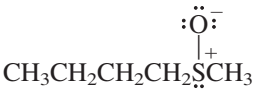
7.17 Chirality Centers Other Than Carbon

Atoms other than carbon may also be chirality centers. Silicon, like carbon, has a tetrahedral arrangement of bonds when it bears four substituents. A large number of organosilicon compounds in which silicon bears four different groups have been resolved into their enantiomers.

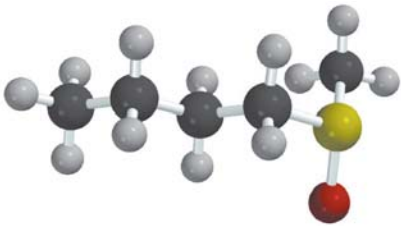
Trigonal pyramidal molecules are chiral if the central atom bears three different groups. If one is to resolve substances of this type, however, the pyramidal inversion that interconverts enantiomers must be slow at room temperature. Pyramidal inversion at nitrogen is so fast that attempts to resolve chiral amines fail because of their rapid racemization.

Phosphorus is in the same group of the periodic table as nitrogen, and tricoordinate phosphorus compounds (phosphines), like amines, are trigonal pyramidal. Phosphines, however, undergo pyramidal inversion much more slowly than amines, and a number of optically active phosphines have been prepared.

Tricoordinate sulfur compounds are chiral when sulfur bears three different groups. The rate of pyramidal inversion at sulfur is rather slow. The most common compounds in which sulfur is a chirality center are sulfoxides such as:

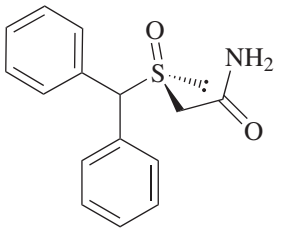


Butyl methyl sulfoxide



(*S*)-(+)-Butyl methyl sulfoxide

The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R,S* convention is used to specify the configuration at sulfur, with the unshared electron pair considered to be the lowest ranking substituent on sulfur. *Armodafinil*, a drug used to treat sleep disorders, for example, has the *R* configuration.

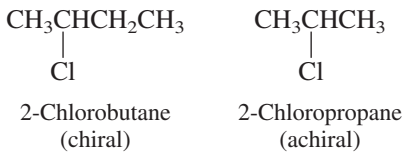


Armodafinil

7.18 SUMMARY

Chemistry in three dimensions is known as **stereochemistry.** At its most fundamental level, stereochemistry deals with molecular structure; at another level, it is concerned with chemical reactivity. Table 7.2 summarizes some basic definitions relating to molecular structure and stereochemistry.

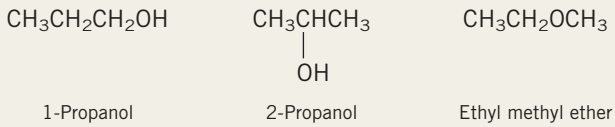
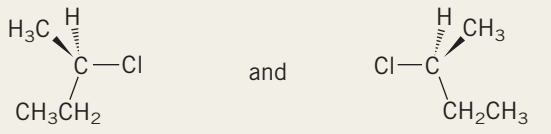
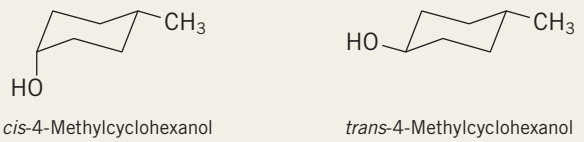
Section 7.1 A molecule is **chiral** if it cannot be superimposed on its mirror image. *Nonsuperimposable mirror images* are **enantiomers** of one another. Molecules in which mirror images are superimposable are achiral.



Section 7.2 The most common kind of chiral molecule contains a carbon atom that bears four different atoms or groups. Such an atom is called a **chirality center.** Table 7.2 shows the enantiomers of 2-chlorobutane. C-2 is a chirality center in 2-chlorobutane.

Section 7.3 A molecule that has a plane of symmetry or a center of symmetry is achiral. *cis*-4-Methylcyclohexanol (Table 7.2) has a plane of symmetry that bisects the molecule into two mirror-image halves and is achiral. The same can be said for *trans*-4-methylcyclohexanol.

TABLE 7.2 Classification of Isomers

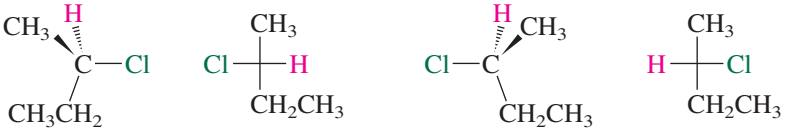
Definition	Example
Isomers are different compounds that have the same molecular formula. They may be either constitutional isomers or stereoisomers.	
1. *Constitutional isomers* are isomers that differ in the order in which their atoms are connected.	Three constitutionally isomeric compounds have the molecular formula C_3H_8O: 
2. *Stereoisomers* are isomers that have the same constitution but differ in the arrangement of their atoms in space. (a) *Enantiomers* are stereoisomers that are related as an object and its nonsuperimposable mirror image.	The two enantiomeric forms of 2-chlorobutane are 
(b) *Diastereomers* are stereoisomers that are not mirror images.	The cis and trans isomers of 4-methylcyclohexanol are stereoisomers, but they are not related as an object and its mirror image; they are diastereomers. 

Section 7.4 **Optical activity,** or the degree to which a substance rotates the plane of polarized light, is a physical property used to characterize chiral substances. Enantiomers have equal and opposite optical rotations. To be optically active a substance must be chiral, and one enantiomer must be present in excess of the other. A **racemic mixture** is optically inactive and contains equal quantities of enantiomers.

Section 7.5 **Relative configuration** compares the arrangement of atoms in space to some reference. The prefix *cis* in *cis*-4-methylcyclohexanol, for example, describes relative configuration by referencing the orientation of the CH_3 group to the OH. **Absolute configuration** is an exact description of the arrangement of atoms in space.

Section 7.6 Absolute configuration in chiral molecules is best specified using the prefixes *R* and *S* of the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog notational system. Substituents at a chirality center are ranked in order of decreasing precedence. If the three highest ranked substituents trace a clockwise path (highest→second highest→third highest) when the lowest ranked substituent is held away from you, the configuration is *R*. If the path is counterclockwise, the configuration is *S*. Table 7.2 shows the *R* and *S* enantiomers of 2-chlorobutane.

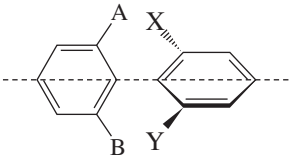
Section 7.7 A **Fischer projection** shows how a molecule would look if its bonds were projected onto a flat surface. Horizontal lines represent bonds pointing toward you; vertical lines represent bonds pointing away from you. The projection is normally drawn so that the carbon chain is vertical, with the lowest numbered carbon at the top.



(*R*)-2-Chlorobutane (*S*)-2-Chlorobutane

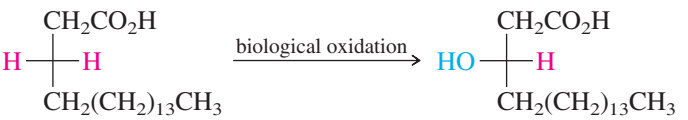
Section 7.8 Both enantiomers of the same substance are identical in most of their physical properties. The most prominent differences are biological ones, such as taste and odor, in which the substance interacts with a chiral receptor site. Enantiomers also have important consequences in medicine, in which the two enantiomeric forms of a drug can have much different effects on a patient.

Section 7.9 Molecules without chirality centers can be chiral. Biphenyls that are substituted can exhibit an **axis of chirality.** When A ≠ B, and X ≠ Y, the two conformations are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other; that is, they are enantiomers. The bond connecting the two rings lies along a chirality axis.



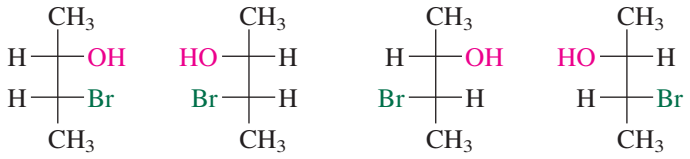
Chirality axis when A ≠ B and X ≠ Y

Section 7.10 A chemical reaction can convert an achiral substance to a chiral one. If the product contains a single chirality center, it is formed as a racemic mixture. Optically active products can be formed from optically inactive starting materials only if some optically active agent is present. The best examples are biological processes in which enzymes catalyze the formation of only a single enantiomer.



Stearic acid (*S*)-3-Hydroxystearic acid

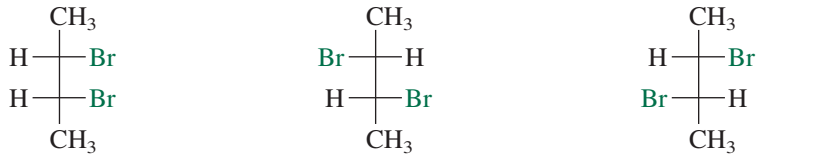
Section 7.11 When a molecule has two chirality centers and these two chirality centers are not equivalent, four stereoisomers are possible.



Enantiomers of *erythro*-3-bromo-2-butanol | Enantiomers of *threo*-3-bromo-2-butanol

Stereoisomers that are not mirror images are classified as **diastereomers.** Each enantiomer of *erythro*-3-bromo-2-butanol is a diastereomer of each enantiomer of *threo*-3-bromo-2-butanol.

Section 7.12 Achiral molecules that contain chirality centers are called **meso forms.** Meso forms typically contain (but are not limited to) two equivalently substituted chirality centers. They are optically inactive.



meso-2,3-Dibromobutane | (2*R*,3*R*)-2,3-Dibromobutane | (2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-Dibromobutane

Section 7.13 For a particular constitution, the maximum number of stereoisomers is 2^n, where n is the number of structural units capable of stereochemical variation—usually this is the number of chirality centers, but can include *E* and *Z* double bonds as well. The number of stereoisomers is reduced to less than 2^n when there are meso forms.

Section 7.14 Addition reactions of alkenes may generate one (Section 7.10) or two (Section 7.14) chirality centers. When two chirality centers are produced, their relative stereochemistry depends on the configuration (*E* or *Z*) of the alkene and whether the addition is syn or anti.

Section 7.15 **Resolution** is the separation of a racemic mixture into its enantiomers. It is normally carried out by converting the mixture of enantiomers to a mixture of diastereomers, separating the diastereomers, then regenerating the enantiomers.

Section 7.16 Certain polymers such as polypropylene contain chirality centers, and the relative configurations of these centers affect the physical properties of the polymers. Like substituents appear on the same side of a zigzag carbon chain in an **isotactic** polymer, alternate along the chain in a **syndiotactic** polymer, and appear in a random manner in an **atactic** polymer. Isotactic and syndiotactic polymers are referred to as **stereoregular** polymers.

Section 7.17 Atoms other than carbon can be chirality centers. Examples include those based on tetracoordinate silicon and tricoordinate sulfur as the chirality center. In principle, tricoordinate nitrogen can be a chirality center in compounds of the type N(*x, y, z*), where *x, y,* and *z* are different, but inversion of the nitrogen pyramid is so fast that racemization occurs virtually instantly at room temperature.

PROBLEMS

7.31 Which of the isomeric alcohols having the molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$ are chiral? Which are achiral?

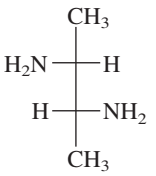
7.32 Write structural formulas for all the compounds that are trichloro derivatives of cyclopropane. (Don't forget to include stereoisomers.) Which are chiral? Which are achiral?

7.33 In each of the following pairs of compounds one is chiral and the other is achiral. Identify each compound as chiral or achiral, as appropriate.

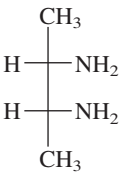
(a) $ClCH_2CHCH_2OH$ (OH) and $HOCH_2CHCH_2OH$ (Cl)

(b) $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2Br$ and $CH_3CHCH{=}CH_2$ (Br)

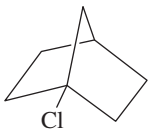
(c)



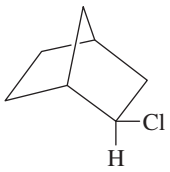
and



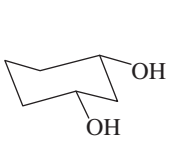
(d)

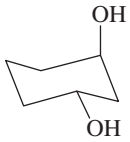


and

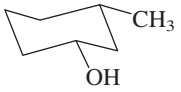


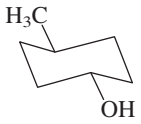
(e)





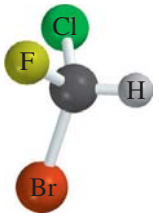
(f)

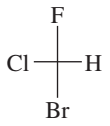


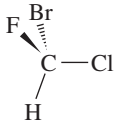


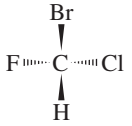
7.34 Compare 2,3-pentanediol and 2,4-pentanediol with respect to the number of stereoisomers possible for each constitution. Which stereoisomers are chiral? Which are achiral?

7.35 The absolute configuration of (−)-bromochlorofluoromethane is *R*. Which of the following is (are) (−)-BrClFCH?



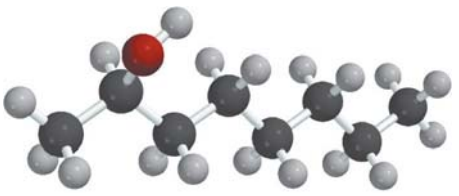




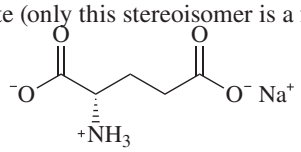


7.36 Specify the configuration of the chirality center as *R* or *S* in each of the following.

(a) (−)-2-Octanol

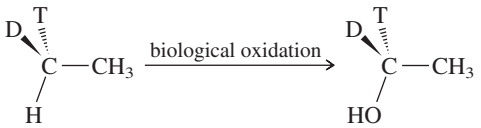


(b) Monosodium L-glutamate (only this stereoisomer is a flavor-enhancing agent)



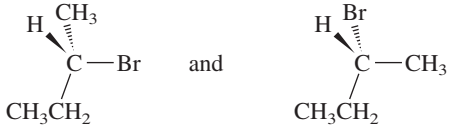
7.37 A subrule of the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system specifies that higher mass number takes precedence over lower when distinguishing between isotopes.

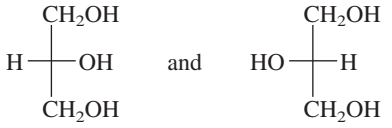
(a) Determine the absolute configurations of the reactant and product in the biological oxidation of isotopically labeled ethane described in Section 7.2.

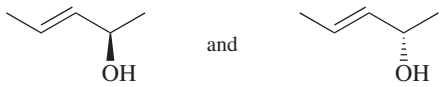


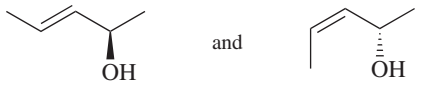
(b) Because OH becomes bonded to carbon at the same side from which H is lost, the oxidation proceeds with retention of configuration. Compare this fact with the *R* and *S* configurations you determined in part (a) and reconcile any apparent conflicts.

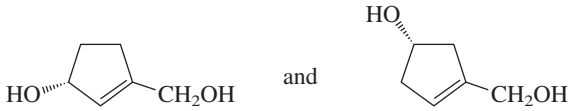
7.38 Identify the relationship in each of the following pairs. Do the drawings represent constitutional isomers or stereoisomers, or are they just different ways of drawing the same compound? If they are stereoisomers, are they enantiomers or diastereomers?

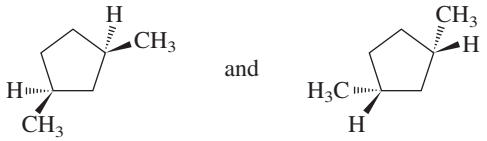
(a) 

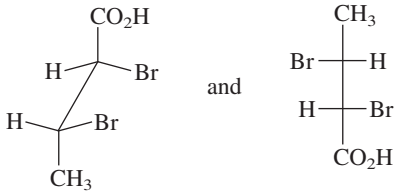
(b) 

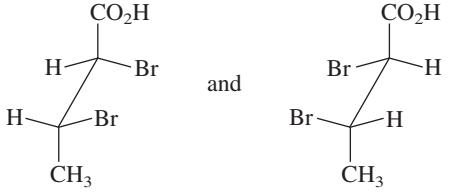
(c) 

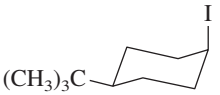
(d) 

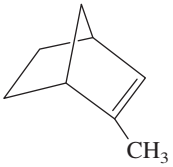
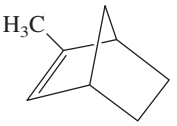
(e) 

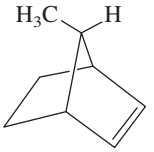
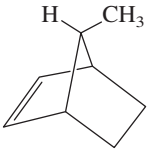
(f) 

(g) 

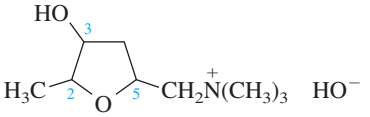
(h) 

(i) and 

(j)  and 

(k)  and 

7.39 *Muscarine* is a poisonous substance present in the mushroom *Amanita muscaria.* Its structure is represented by the constitution shown here.

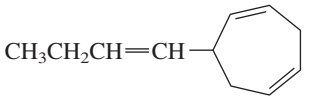


(a) Including muscarine, how many stereoisomers have this constitution?

(b) One of the substituents on the ring of muscarine is trans to the other two. How many of the stereoisomers satisfy this requirement?

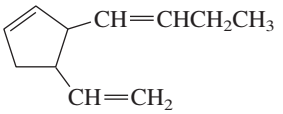
(c) Muscarine has the configuration 2*S*,3*R*,5*S*. Write a structural formula of muscarine showing its correct stereochemistry.

7.40 *Ectocarpene* is a volatile, sperm cell-attracting material released by the eggs of the seaweed *Ectocarpus siliculosus.* Its constitution is



All the double bonds are cis, and the absolute configuration of the chirality center is *S*. Write a stereochemically accurate representation of ectocarpene.

7.41 *Multifidene* is a sperm cell-attracting substance released by the female of a species of brown algae *(Cutleria multifida)*. The constitution of multifidene is



(a) How many stereoisomers are represented by this constitution?

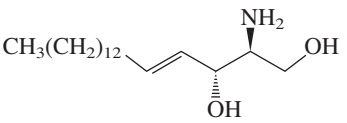
(b) Multifidene has a cis relationship between its alkenyl substituents. Given this information, how many stereoisomers are possible?

(c) The butenyl side chain has the *Z* configuration of its double bond. On the basis of all the data, how many stereoisomers are possible?

(d) Draw stereochemically accurate representations of all the stereoisomers that satisfy the structural requirements of multifidene.

(e) How are these stereoisomeric multifidenes related (enantiomers or diastereomers)?

7.42 Sphingosine is a component of membrane lipids, including those found in nerve and muscle cells. How many stereoisomers are possible?

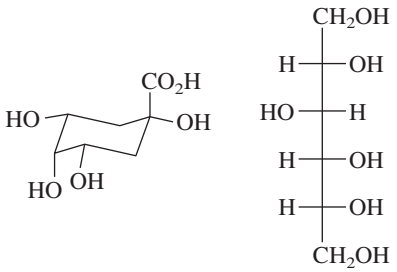


7.43 (−)-Menthol is the most stable stereoisomer of 2-isopropyl-5-methylcyclohexanol and has the *R* configuration at the hydroxyl-substituted carbon.

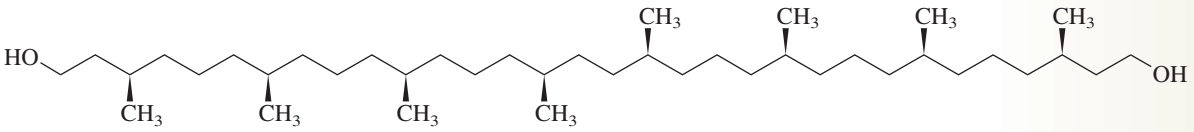
(a) Draw the preferred conformation of (−)-menthol.

(b) (+)-Isomenthol has the same constitution as (−)-menthol. The configurations at C-1 and C-2 of (+)-isomenthol are the opposite of the corresponding chirality centers of (−)-menthol. Write the preferred conformation of (+)-isomenthol.

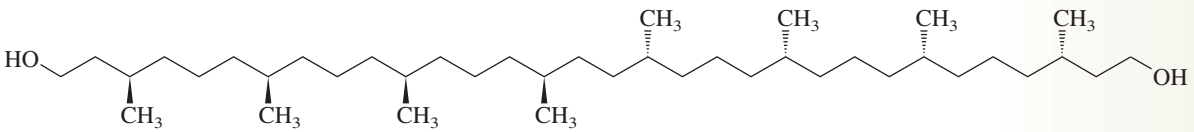
7.44 A certain natural product having $[\alpha]_D$ + 40.3° was isolated. Two very different structures were independently proposed for this compound. Which one do you think is more likely to be correct? Why?



7.45 One of the principal substances obtained from archaea (one of the oldest forms of life on Earth) is derived from a 40-carbon diol. Given the fact that this diol is optically active, is it compound A or is it compound B?



Compound A

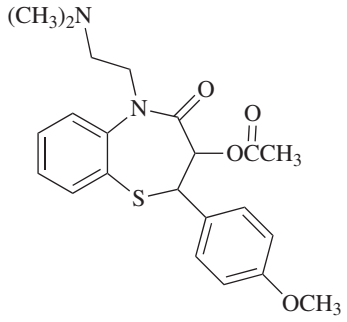


Compound B

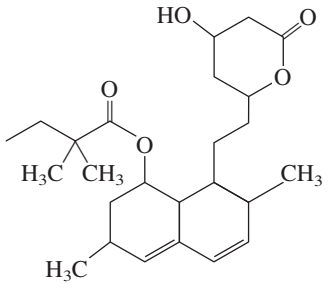
7.46 (a) An aqueous solution containing 10 g of optically pure fructose was diluted to 500 mL with water and placed in a polarimeter tube 20 cm long. The measured rotation was −5.20°. Calculate the specific rotation of fructose.

(b) If this solution were mixed with 500 mL of a solution containing 5 g of racemic fructose, what would be the specific rotation of the resulting fructose mixture? What would be its optical purity?

7.47 The compounds shown here are widely used in medicine. Diltiazem is prescribed to treat hypertension, and simvastatin is a cholesterol-lowering drug. Locate the chirality centers in each.

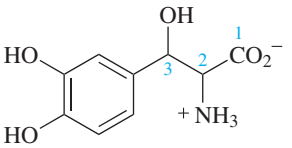


Diltiazem



Simvastatin

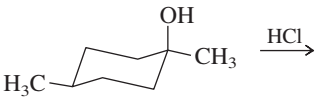
7.48 The antiparkinson drug *droxidopa* has the structural formula shown with configurations at C-2 and C-3 of *S* and *R,* respectively. Add appropriate wedges and/or dashes to show the stereochemistry.



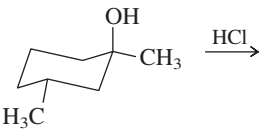
7.49 Each of the following reactions gives a mixture of two stereoisomers. Write their structures. Are they enantiomers or diastereomers? Are they chiral or achiral? Are they formed in equal amounts?

(a) $BrCH_2CH_2Br + Cl_2 \xrightarrow{light} C_2H_3Br_2Cl + HCl$

(b)



(c)



7.50 Write the organic products of each of the following reactions. If two stereoisomers are formed, show both. Label all chirality centers *R* or *S* as appropriate.

(a) 1-Butene and hydrogen iodide

(b) (*E*)-2-Pentene and bromine in carbon tetrachloride

(c) (*Z*)-2-Pentene and bromine in carbon tetrachloride

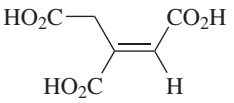
(d) 1-Butene and peroxyacetic acid in dichloromethane

(e) (*Z*)-2-Pentene and peroxyacetic acid in dichloromethane

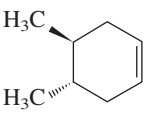
(f) 1,5,5-Trimethylcyclopentene and hydrogen in the presence of platinum

(g) 1,5,5-Trimethylcyclopentene and diborane in tetrahydrofuran followed by oxidation with hydrogen peroxide

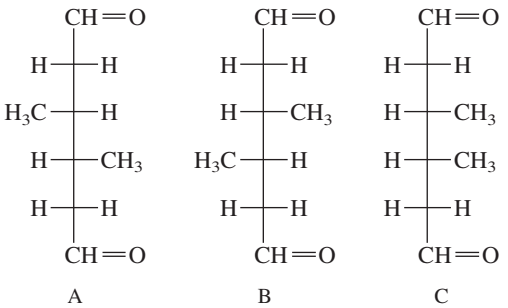
7.51 The enzyme *aconitase* catalyzes the hydration of aconitic acid to two products: citric acid and isocitric acid. Isocitric acid is optically active; citric acid is not. What are the respective constitutions of citric acid and isocitric acid?



7.52 Consider the ozonolysis of *trans*-4,5-dimethylcyclohexene having the configuration shown.



Structures A, B, and C are three stereoisomeric forms of the reaction product.

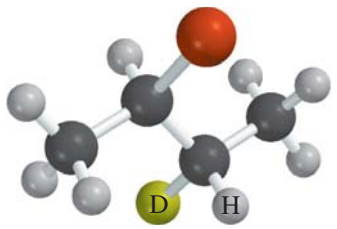


(a) Which, if any, of the compounds A, B, and C are chiral?

(b) What product is formed in the reaction?

(c) What product would be formed if the methyl groups were cis to each other in the starting alkene?

7.53 (a) On being heated with potassium ethoxide in ethanol (70°C), the deuterium-labeled alkyl bromide shown gave a mixture of 1-butene, *cis*-2-butene, and *trans*-2-butene. On the basis of your knowledge of the E2 mechanism, predict which alkene(s), if any, contained deuterium.

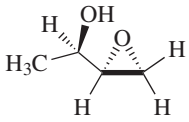


(b) The bromide shown in part (a) is the erythro diastereomer. How would the deuterium content of the alkenes formed by dehydrohalogenation of the threo diastereomer differ from those produced in part (a)?

7.54 A compound (C_6H_{10}) contains a five-membered ring. When Br_2 adds to it, two diastereomeric dibromides are formed. Suggest reasonable structures for the compound and the two dibromides.

7.55 When enantiopure 2,3-dimethyl-2-pentanol was subjected to dehydration, a mixture of two alkenes was obtained. Hydrogenation of this alkene mixture gave 2,3-dimethylpentane, which was 50% optically pure. What were the two alkenes formed in the elimination reaction, and what were the relative amounts of each?

7.56 When (*R*)-3-buten-2-ol is treated with a peroxy acid, two stereoisomeric epoxides are formed in a 60:40 ratio. The minor stereoisomer has the structure shown.

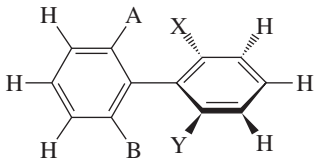


(a) Write the structure of the major stereoisomer.

(b) What is the relationship between the two epoxides? Are they enantiomers or diastereomers?

(c) What four stereoisomeric products are formed when racemic 3-buten-2-ol is epoxidized under the same conditions? How much of each stereoisomer is formed?

7.57 Among compounds (a)–(d), identify those that have a chirality axis.

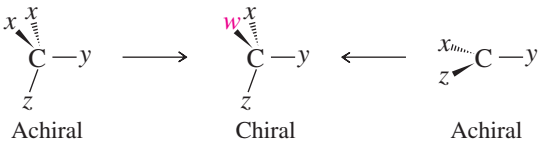


	A	B	X	Y
(a)	$(CH_3)_3C$—	H—	H—	H—
(b)	$(CH_3)_3C$—	$(CH_3)_3C$—	H—	H—
(c)	$(CH_3)_3C$—	H—	$(CH_3)_3C$—	H—
(d)	$(CH_3)_3C$—	$(CH_3)_3C$—	$(CH_3)_3C$—	$(CH_3)_3C$—

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 7

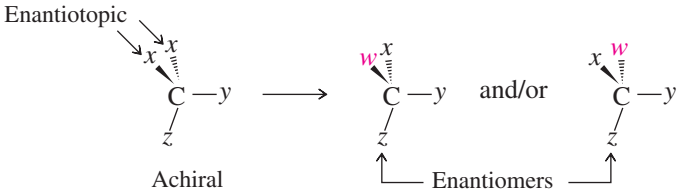
Prochirality

Consider two chemical changes: one occurring at a tetrahedral sp^3 carbon C(*x,x,y,z*), the other at a trigonal sp^2 carbon C(*x,y,z*), where *x, y,* and *z* are different atoms or groups attached to C. Each reactant is achiral; both are converted to the chiral product C(*w,x,y,z*). In the first case *w* replaces one of the *x* atoms or groups, in the other *w* adds to the trigonal carbon.

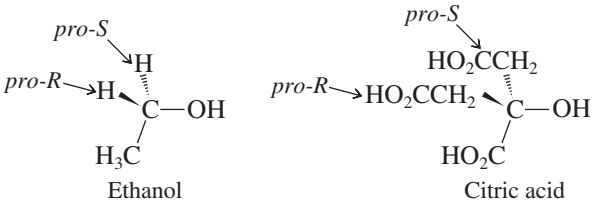


Both transformations convert C in each achiral reactant to a chirality center in the product. The two achiral reactants are classified as **prochiral.** C is a **prochirality center** in C(*x,x,y,z*) and has two **prochiral faces** in C(*x,y,z*).

In achiral molecules with tetrahedral prochirality centers, substitution of one of the two *x* groups by *w* gives the enantiomer of the product that results from substitution of the other. The two *x* groups occupy mirror-images sites and are **enantiotopic.**

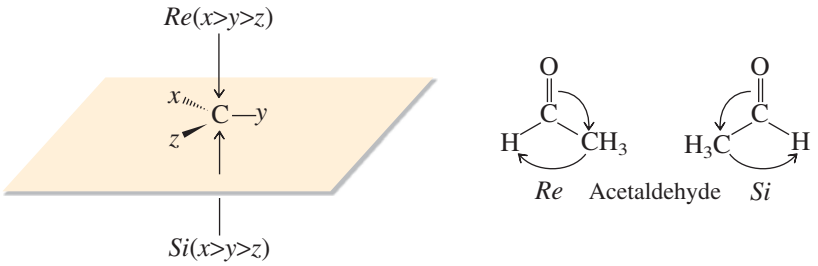


Enantiotopic groups are designated as *pro-R* or *pro-S* by a modification of Cahn–Ingold–Prelog notation. One is assigned a higher priority than the other without disturbing the priorities of the remaining groups, and the *R,S* configuration of the resulting chirality center is determined in the usual way. If it is *R,* the group assigned the higher rank is *pro-R*. If *S,* this group is *pro-S*. Ethanol and citric acid illustrate the application of this notation to two prochiral molecules.

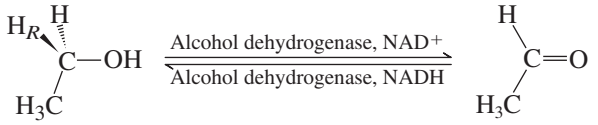


Citric acid played a major role in the development of the concept of prochirality. Its two CH_2CO_2H chains groups behave differently in a key step of the Krebs cycle, so differently that some wondered whether citric acid itself were really involved. Alexander Ogston (Oxford) provided the answer in 1948 when he pointed out that the two CH_2CO_2H groups are differentiated when citric acid interacts with the chiral environment of an enzyme.

The two prochiral faces of a trigonal atom C(*x,y,z*) are enantiotopic and designated *Re* and *Si* according to whether *x, y,* and *z* trace a clockwise (*Re*) or counterclockwise (*Si*) path in order of decreasing Cahn–Ingold–Prelog precedence. An acetaldehyde molecule that lies in the plane of the paper, for example, presents either the *Re* or *Si* face according to how it is oriented.



The stereochemical aspects of many enzyme-catalyzed reactions have been determined. The enzyme *alcohol dehydrogenase* catalyzes the oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde by removing the *pro-R* hydrogen (abbreviated as H_R). When the same enzyme catalyzes the reduction of acetaldehyde to ethanol, hydrogen is transferred to the *Re* face.



Ethanol Acetaldehyde

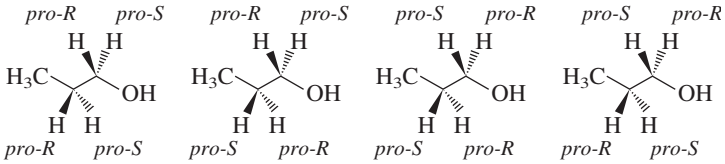
7.58 Which molecule is prochiral?

A. Ethane C. Butane
B. Propane D. Cyclopropane

7.59 How many of the carbons in 2-methylpentane [$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2CH_3$] are prochirality centers?

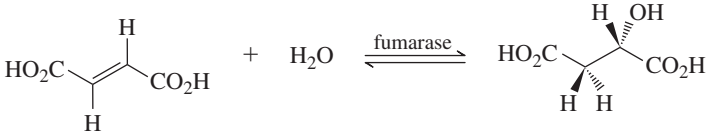
A. One C. Three
B. Two D. Four

7.60 What are the *pro-R* and *pro-S* designations for the enantiotopic hydrogens in 1-propanol?



A. B. C. D.

7.61 The enzyme fumarase catalyzes the addition of water to the double bond of fumaric acid.



Fumaric acid Water (*S*)-Malic acid

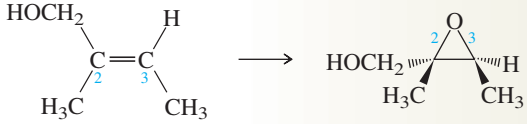
The —OH group and the *pro-R* hydrogen of the CH_2 group of (*S*)-(−)malic acid come from water. What stereochemical pathway describes the addition of water to the double bond?

A. syn Addition B. anti Addition

7.62 To which prochiral face of the double bond of fumaric acid does the —OH group add to in the fumarase-catalyzed hydration of fumaric acid described in the preceding problem?

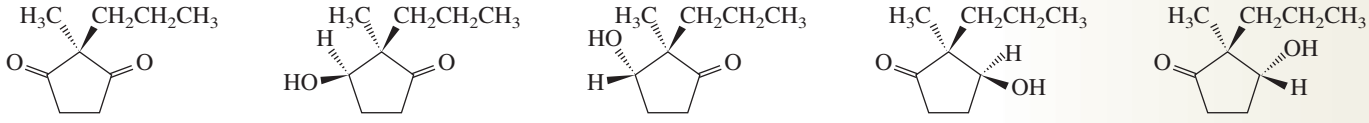
A. *Re* B. *Si*

7.63 A method for the stereoselective synthesis of chiral epoxides gave the product shown in high enantiomeric excess. To which faces of the doubly bonded carbons is oxygen transferred?



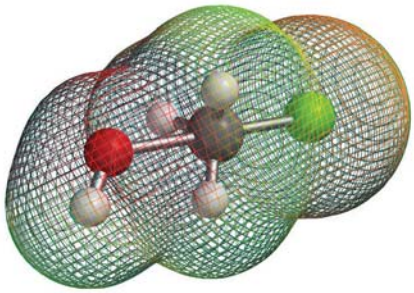
A. *Re Re* C. *Si Si*
B. *Re Si* D. *Si Re*

7.64 When the achiral dione shown (below left) was incubated in water with baker's yeast, reduction of one of the C=O groups occurred to give a single stereoisomer of the product. This product corresponded to hydrogen transfer to the *Re* face of the *pro-R* carbonyl group. Which product is this?



Achiral dione A. B. C. D.

8



CHAPTER OUTLINE

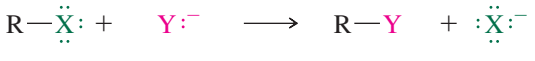
8.1 Functional Group Transformation by Nucleophilic Substitution 307
8.2 Relative Reactivity of Halide Leaving Groups 309
8.3 The S_N2 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution 310
8.4 Steric Effects and S_N2 Reaction Rates 313
8.5 Nucleophiles and Nucleophilicity 315
- Enzyme-Catalyzed Nucleophilic Substitutions of Alkyl Halides 317

8.6 The S_N1 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution 317
8.7 Stereochemistry of S_N1 Reactions 320
8.8 Carbocation Rearrangements in S_N1 Reactions 321
8.9 Effect of Solvent on the Rate of Nucleophilic Substitution 322
8.10 Substitution and Elimination as Competing Reactions 326
8.11 Nucleophilic Substitution of Alkyl Sulfonates 329
8.12 Nucleophilic Substitution and Retrosynthetic Analysis 332
8.13 Summary 333
Problems 335
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 8: Nucleophilic Substitution 340

This electrostatic potential map is of the transition state for the reaction of hydroxide ion with chloromethane. The tetrahedral arrangement of bonds inverts like an umbrella in a storm during the reaction.

Nucleophilic Substitution

When we discussed elimination reactions in Chapter 5, we learned that a Lewis base can react with an alkyl halide to form an alkene. In the present chapter, you will find that the same kinds of reactants can also undergo a different reaction, one in which the Lewis base acts as a **nucleophile** to substitute for the halogen substituent on carbon.



Alkyl halide — Lewis base — Product of nucleophilic substitution — Halide anion

We first encountered nucleophilic substitution in Chapter 4, in the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides to form alkyl halides. Now we'll see how alkyl halides can themselves be converted to other classes of organic compounds by nucleophilic substitution.

This chapter has a mechanistic emphasis designed to achieve a practical result. By understanding the mechanisms by which alkyl halides undergo nucleophilic substitution, we can choose experimental conditions best suited to carrying out a particular functional group transformation. The difference between a successful reaction that leads cleanly to a desired product and one that fails is often a subtle one. Mechanistic analysis helps us to appreciate these subtleties and use them to our advantage.

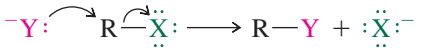
8.1 Functional Group Transformation by Nucleophilic Substitution

Nucleophilic substitution reactions of alkyl halides are related to elimination reactions in that the halogen acts as a leaving group on carbon and is lost as an anion. The carbon–halogen bond of the alkyl halide is broken **heterolytically:** the two electrons in that bond are lost with the leaving group.

The carbon–halogen bond in an alkyl halide is polar

X = I, Br, Cl, F

and is cleaved on attack by a nucleophile so that the two electrons in the bond are retained by the halogen



The most frequently encountered nucleophiles are anions, which are used as their lithium, sodium, or potassium salts. If we use M to represent lithium, sodium, or potassium, some representative nucleophilic reagents are

MOR (a metal *alkoxide,* a source of the nucleophilic anion $RO:^-$)

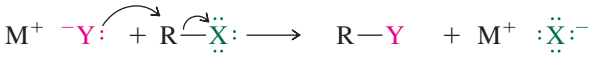
MOCR (a metal *carboxylate,* a source of the nucleophilic anion $RC(=O)—O:^-$)

MSH (a metal *hydrogen sulfide,* a source of the nucleophilic anion $HS:^-$)

MCN (a metal *cyanide,* a source of the nucleophilic anion $:C\equiv N:^-$)

MN_3 (a metal *azide,* a source of the nucleophilic anion $:N=N^+=N:^-$)

Table 8.1 illustrates an application of each of these to a functional group transformation. The anionic portion of the salt substitutes for the halogen of an alkyl halide. The metal cation portion becomes a lithium, sodium, or potassium halide.

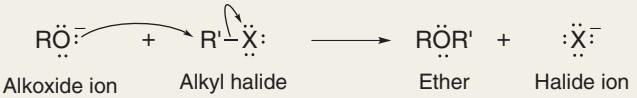
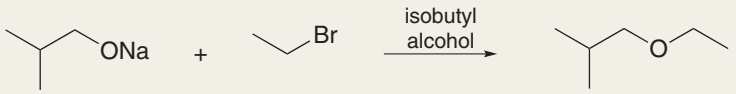


Nucleophilic reagent | Alkyl halide | Product of nucleophilic substitution | Metal halide

Notice that all the examples in Table 8.1 involve *alkyl* halides, that is, compounds in which the halogen is attached to an sp^3-hybridized carbon. Alkenyl halides and aryl halides, compounds in which the halogen is attached to sp^2-hybridized carbons, are essentially

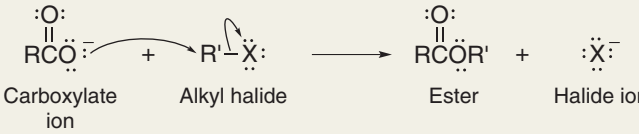
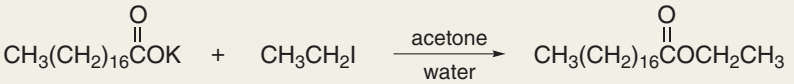
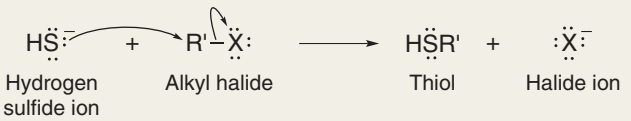
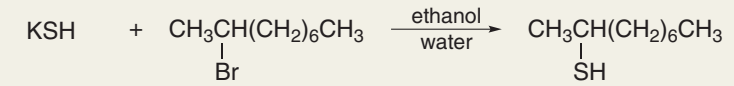
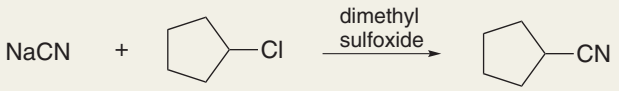
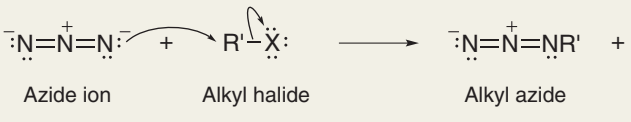
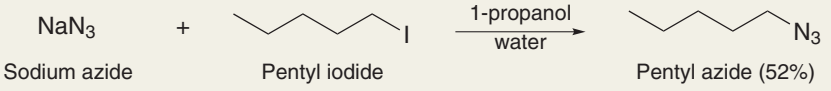
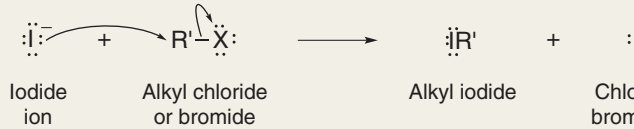
Alkenyl halides are also referred to as *vinylic halides*.

TABLE 8.1 Functional Group Transformation via Nucleophilic Substitution

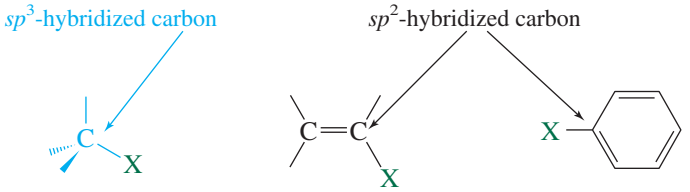
Nucleophile and comments	General equation and specific example
Alkoxide ion: The oxygen atom of a metal alkoxide is nucleophilic and replaces the halogen of an alkyl halide. The product is an *ether.*	 Alkoxide ion | Alkyl halide | Ether | Halide ion  Sodium isobutoxide | Ethyl bromide | Ethyl isobutyl ether (66%)

Continued

TABLE 8.1 Functional Group Transformation via Nucleophilic Substitution (*Continued*)

Nucleophile and comments	General equation and specific example
Carboxylate ion: An *ester* is formed when the negatively charged oxygen of a carboxylate replaces the halogen of an alkyl halide.	  Potassium octadecanoate Ethyl iodide Ethyl octadecanoate (95%)
Hydrogen sulfide ion: Using hydrogen sulfide as a nucleophile permits the conversion of alkyl halides to *thiols.*	  Potassium hydrogen sulfide 2-Bromononane 2-Nonanethiol (74%)
Cyanide ion: The negatively charged carbon of cyanide is the site of its nucleophilic character. Cyanide reacts with alkyl halides to extend a carbon chain by forming an *alkyl cyanide* or *nitrile.*	  Sodium cyanide Cyclopentyl chloride Cyclopentyl cyanide (70%)
Azide ion: Sodium azide makes carbon-nitrogen bonds by converting an alkyl halide to an *alkyl azide.*	  Sodium azide Pentyl iodide Pentyl azide (52%)
Iodide ion: Alkyl chlorides and bromides are converted to *alkyl iodides* by treatment with sodium iodide in acetone. NaI is soluble in acetone, but the NaCl or NaBr that is formed is not and crystallizes from the reaction mixture, making the reaction irreversible.	 Sodium iodide 2-Bromopropane 2-Iodopropane (63%)

unreactive under these conditions, and the principles to be developed in this chapter do not apply to them.



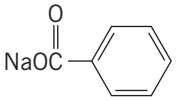
Alkyl halide Alkenyl halide Aryl halide

To ensure that reaction occurs in homogeneous solution, solvents are chosen that dissolve both the alkyl halide and the ionic salt. Alkyl halides are soluble in organic solvents, but the salts often are not. Inorganic salts are soluble in water, but alkyl halides are not. Mixed solvents such as ethanol–water mixtures that can dissolve both the alkyl halide and the nucleophile are frequently used. Many salts, as well as most alkyl halides, possess significant solubility in dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) or *N, N*-dimethylformamide (DMF), which makes them good solvents for carrying out nucleophilic substitution reactions (Section 8.9).

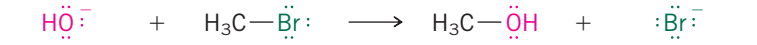
The use of DMSO as a solvent in *elimination* reactions was mentioned earlier, in Section 5.14.

Problem 8.1

Write a structural formula for the principal organic product formed in the reaction of methyl bromide with each of the following compounds:

(a) NaOH (sodium hydroxide)
(b) $KOCH_2CH_3$ (potassium ethoxide)
(c)  (sodium benzoate)
(d) LiN_3 (lithium azide)
(e) KCN (potassium cyanide)
(f) NaSH (sodium hydrogen sulfide)
(g) NaI (sodium iodide)

Sample Solution (a) The nucleophile in sodium hydroxide is the negatively charged hydroxide ion. The reaction that occurs is nucleophilic substitution of bromide by hydroxide. The product is methyl alcohol.

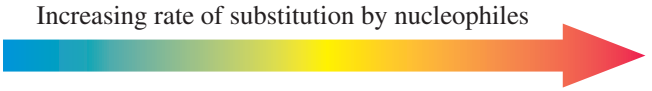


Hydroxide ion (nucleophile) Methyl bromide (substrate) Methyl alcohol (product) Bromide ion (leaving group)

With Table 8.1 as background, you can begin to see how useful alkyl halides are in synthetic organic chemistry. Alkyl halides may be prepared from alcohols by nucleophilic substitution, from alkanes by free-radical halogenation, and from alkenes by addition of hydrogen halides. They then become available as starting materials for the preparation of other functionally substituted organic compounds by replacement of the halide leaving group with a nucleophile. The range of compounds that can be prepared by nucleophilic substitution reactions of alkyl halides is quite large; the examples shown in Table 8.1 illustrate only a few of them. Numerous other examples will be added to the list in this and subsequent chapters.

8.2 Relative Reactivity of Halide Leaving Groups

Among alkyl halides, alkyl iodides undergo nucleophilic substitution at the fastest rate, alkyl fluorides the slowest.



RF << RCl < RBr < RI

Least reactive Most reactive

Alkyl iodides are several times more reactive than alkyl bromides and from 50 to 100 times more reactive than alkyl chlorides. Alkyl fluorides are several thousand times less reactive than alkyl chlorides and are rarely used in nucleophilic substitutions. These reactivity differences can be related to the (1) the carbon–halogen bond strength and (2) the basicity of the halide anion. Alkyl iodides have the weakest carbon–halogen bond and require the lowest activation energy to break; alkyl fluorides have the strongest carbon–halogen bond and require the highest activation energy. Regarding basicity of the halide leaving group, iodide is the weakest base, fluoride the strongest. It is generally true that the less basic the leaving group, the smaller the energy requirement for cleaving its bond to carbon and the faster the rate.

The relationship between leaving-group ability and basicity is explored in more detail in Section 8.11

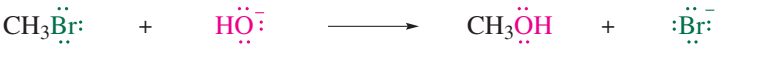
Problem 8.2

A single organic product was obtained when 1-bromo-3-chloropropane was allowed to react with one molar equivalent of sodium cyanide in aqueous ethanol. What was this product?

8.3 The S_N2 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution

At about the same time as his studies of the mechanisms of elimination reactions, Sir Christopher Ingold and his collaborator Edward D. Hughes applied the tools of kinetics and stereochemistry to nucleophilic substitution.

Kinetics: Having already seen that the rate of nucleophilic substitution depends on the leaving group (I > Br > Cl > F), we know that the carbon–halogen bond must break in the slow step of the reaction and, therefore, expect the concentration of the alkyl halide to appear in the rate law. What about the nucleophile? Hughes and Ingold found that many nucleophilic substitutions, such as the hydrolysis of methyl bromide in base:



Methyl bromide Hydroxide ion Methyl alcohol Bromide ion

obey a *second-order* rate law, first order in the alkyl halide and first order in the nucleophile.

$$\text{Rate} = k[CH_3Br][HO^-]$$

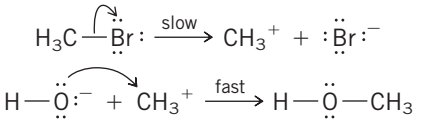
The most reasonable conclusion is that both hydroxide ion and methyl bromide react together in a *bimolecular* elementary step and that this step is rate-determining. The mechanism proposed by Hughes and Ingold, called by them **substitution nucleophilic bimolecular (S_N2)** is shown as an equation in Mechanism 8.1 and as a potential energy diagram in Figure 8.1.

The S_N2 mechanism was introduced earlier in Section 4.11.

It is a one-step concerted process in which both the alkyl halide and the nucleophile are involved at the transition state. Cleavage of the bond between carbon and the leaving group is assisted by formation of a bond between carbon and the nucleophile. In effect, the nucleophile "pushes off" the leaving group from its point of attachment to carbon. Carbon is partially bonded to both the incoming nucleophile and the departing halide at the transition state. Progress is made toward the transition state as the nucleophile begins to share a pair of its electrons with carbon and the halide ion leaves, taking with it the pair of electrons in its bond to carbon.

Problem 8.3

Is the two-step sequence depicted in the following equations consistent with the second-order kinetic behavior observed for the hydrolysis of methyl bromide?

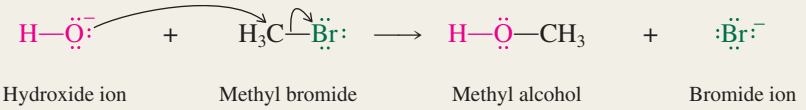


Mechanism 8.1

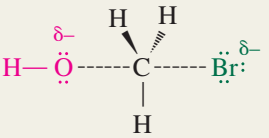
The S_N2 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution

THE OVERALL REACTION:

THE MECHANISM: The reaction proceeds in a single step. Hydroxide ion acts as a nucleophile. While the C—Br bond is breaking, the C—O bond is forming.



THE TRANSITION STATE: Hydroxide ion attacks carbon from the side opposite the C—Br bond.



Carbon is partially bonded to both hydroxide and bromide. The arrangement of bonds undergoes tetrahedral inversion from to as the reaction progresses.

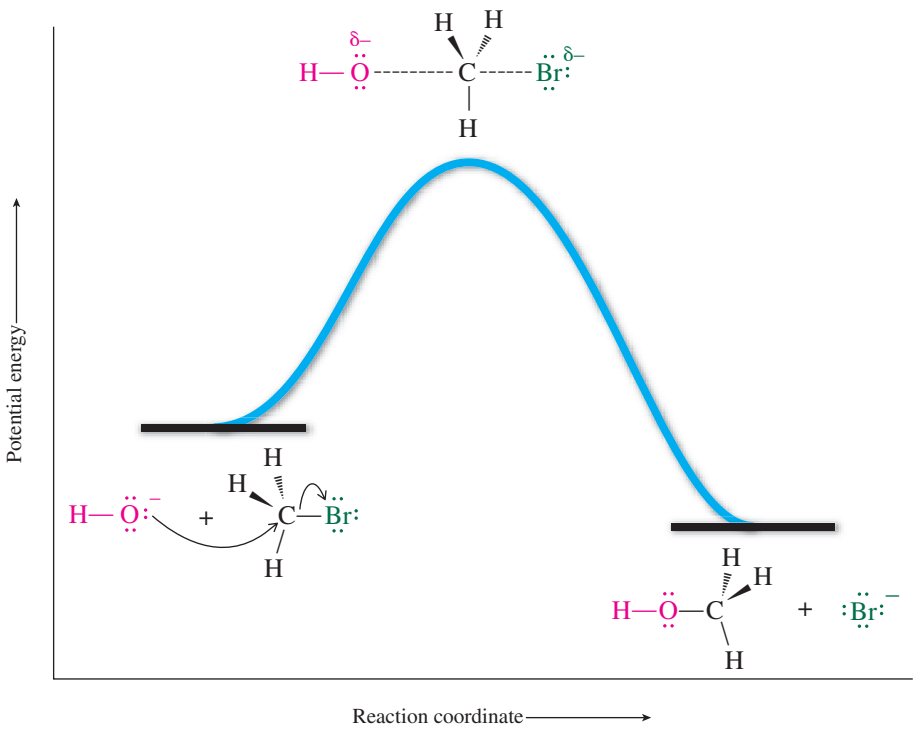
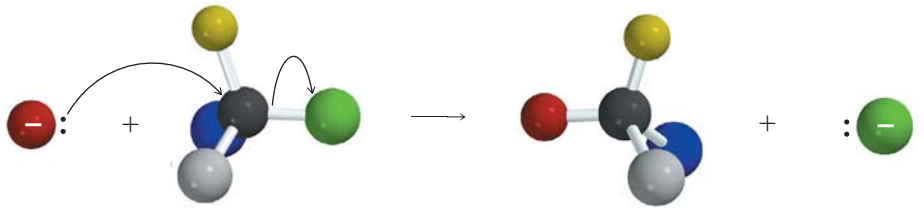


Figure 8.1

Potential energy diagram for the reaction of methyl bromide with hydroxide ion by the S_N2 mechanism.

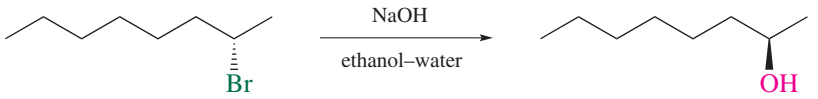
Stereochemistry. The diagram for the transition state in Mechanism 8.1 and Figure 8.1 for the reaction of methyl bromide with hydroxide anticipates a key stereochemical feature of the S_N2 mechanism. *The nucleophile attacks carbon from the side opposite the bond to the leaving group.* Another way of expressing the same point, especially when substitution occurs at a chirality center, is that *S_N2 reactions proceed with* ***inversion of configuration*** *at*

the carbon that bears the leaving group. The tetrahedral arrangement of bonds in the reactant is converted to an inverted tetrahedral arrangement in the product.



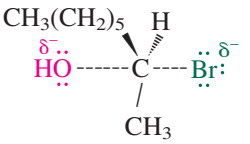
This stereochemical fact comes from studies of nucleophilic substitutions of optically active alkyl halides. In one such experiment, Hughes and Ingold determined that the reaction of optically active 2-bromooctane with hydroxide ion gave 2-octanol, having the opposite configuration at its chirality center.

Although the alkyl halide and alcohol given in this example have opposite configurations when they have opposite signs of rotation, it cannot be assumed that this will be true for all alkyl halide/alcohol pairs.



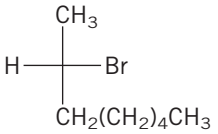
S-(+)-2-Bromooctane *R*-(–)-2-Octanol

Nucleophilic substitution had occurred with inversion of configuration, consistent with the following transition state:



Problem 8.4

The Fischer projection for (+)-2-bromooctane is shown. Write the Fischer projection of the (–)-2-octanol formed from it by the S_N2 mechanism.



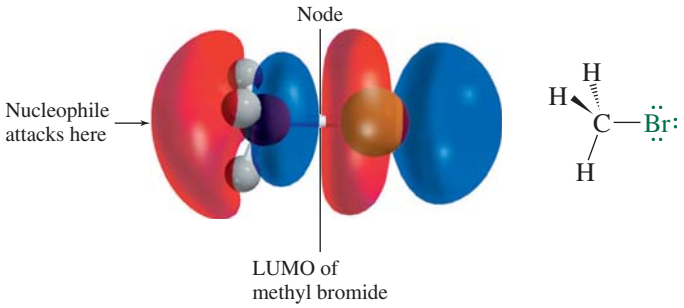
Problem 8.5

Would you expect the 2-octanol formed by S_N2 hydrolysis of (–)-2-bromooctane to be optically active? If so, what will be its absolute configuration and sign of rotation? What about the 2-octanol formed by hydrolysis of racemic 2-bromooctane?

The first example of a stereoelectronic effect in this text concerned anti elimination in E2 reactions of alkyl halides (Section 5.16).

Countless experiments have confirmed that substitution by the S_N2 mechanism is stereospecific and suggests that there exists a *stereoelectronic* requirement for the nucleophile to approach carbon from the side opposite the bond to the leaving group. The results of molecular orbital calculations help us understand why.

When a nucleophile such as hydroxide ion reacts with methyl bromide, electrons flow from the highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) of HO^- to the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO) of CH_3Br. Directing our attention to the LUMO of CH_3Br, we find three main regions where the HOMO of the nucleophile can overlap with the LUMO. One of these—the blue region shown at the right—can be ignored because it is associated only with Br, and nucleophilic attack from that direction does not produce a C—O bond.



The region between carbon and bromine contains a nodal surface; therefore, no net bonding results from its overlap with the HOMO of HO^-. The remaining possibility, *which is also the one that coincides with experimental observation,* is overlap of the HOMO of HO^- with the LUMO of CH_3Br in the region opposite the C—Br bond. It involves a major region of the LUMO, avoids a node, and gives a C—O bond with inversion of configuration at carbon.

The S_N2 mechanism is believed to describe most substitutions in which simple primary and secondary alkyl halides react with negatively charged nucleophiles. All the examples that introduced nucleophilic substitution in Table 8.1 proceed by the S_N2 mechanism (or a mechanism very much like S_N2—remember, mechanisms can never be established with certainty but represent only our best present explanations of experimental observations).

Problem 8.6

Sketch the structure of the S_N2 transition state for the following reaction taken from Table 8.1. Na^+ is a spectator ion and can be omitted from the transition state.

$$(CH_3)_2CHBr + NaI \xrightarrow{\text{acetone}} (CH_3)_2CHI + NaBr$$

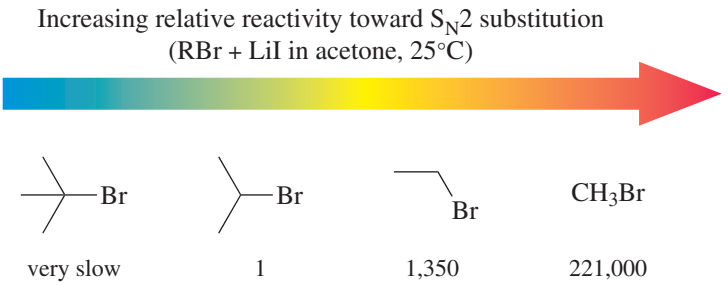
We saw in Section 8.2 that the rate of nucleophilic substitution depends strongly on the leaving group—alkyl iodides are the most reactive, alkyl fluorides the least. In the next section, we'll see that the structure of the alkyl group can have an even larger effect.

8.4 Steric Effects and S_N2 Reaction Rates

There are very large differences in the rates at which the various kinds of alkyl halides—methyl, primary, secondary, or tertiary—undergo nucleophilic substitution. For the reaction:

$$\underset{\text{Alkyl bromide}}{RBr} + \underset{\text{Lithium iodide}}{LiI} \xrightarrow{\text{acetone}} \underset{\text{Alkyl iodide}}{RI} + \underset{\text{Lithium bromide}}{LiBr}$$

the rates of nucleophilic substitution of a series of alkyl bromides differ by a factor of over 10^6.



The large rate difference between methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, and *tert*-butyl bromides reflects the **steric hindrance** each offers to nucleophilic attack. The nucleophile must approach the alkyl halide from the side opposite the bond to the leaving group, and, as illustrated in Figure 8.2, this approach is hindered by alkyl substituents on the carbon that is being attacked. The three hydrogens of methyl bromide offer little resistance to approach of the nucleophile, and a rapid reaction occurs. Replacing one of the hydrogens by a methyl group somewhat shields the carbon from approach of the nucleophile and causes ethyl bromide to be less reactive than methyl bromide. Replacing all three hydrogens by methyl

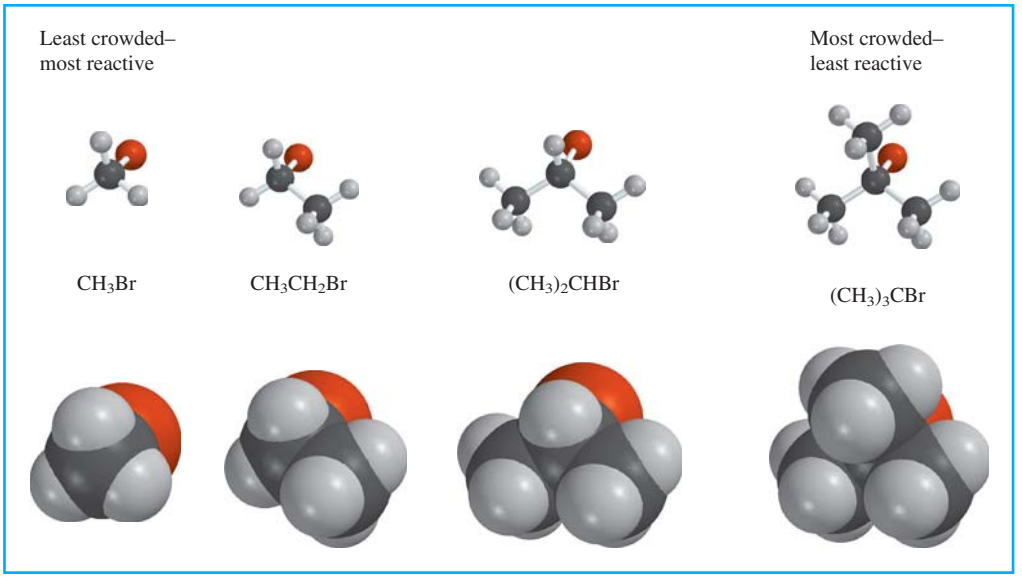


Figure 8.2

Ball-and-spoke (top) and space-filling (bottom) models of alkyl bromides, showing how substituents shield the carbon atom that bears the leaving group from attack by a nucleophile. The nucleophile must attack from the side opposite the bond to the leaving group.

groups almost completely blocks approach to the tertiary carbon of $(CH_3)_3CBr$ and shuts down bimolecular nucleophilic substitution.

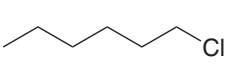
In general, S_N2 reactions of alkyl halides show the following dependence of rate on structure: CH_3X > primary > secondary > tertiary.

Problem 8.7

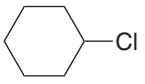
Identify the compound in each of the following pairs that reacts with sodium iodide in acetone at the faster rate:

(a) 1-Chlorohexane or cyclohexyl chloride
(b) 1-Bromopentane or 3-bromopentane
(c) 2-Chloropentane or 2-fluoropentane
(d) 2-Bromo-2-methylhexane or 2-bromo-5-methylhexane
(e) 2-Bromopropane or 1-bromodecane

Sample Solution (a) Compare the structures of the two chlorides. 1-Chlorohexane is a primary alkyl chloride; cyclohexyl chloride is secondary. Primary alkyl halides are less crowded at the site of substitution than secondary ones and react faster in substitution by the S_N2 mechanism. 1-Chlorohexane is more reactive.

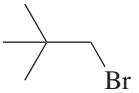


1-Chlorohexane
(primary, more reactive)

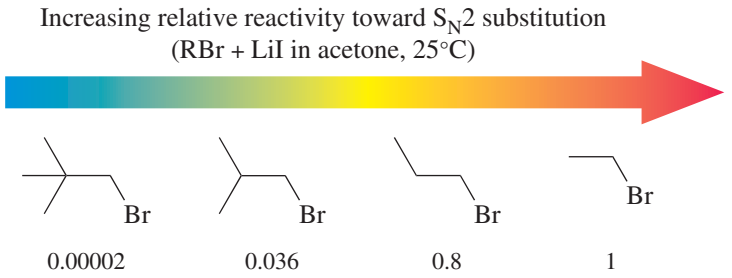


Cyclohexyl chloride
(secondary, less reactive)

Alkyl groups at the carbon atom *adjacent* to the point of nucleophilic attack also decrease the rate of the S_N2 reaction. Taking ethyl bromide as the standard and successively replacing its C-2 hydrogens by methyl groups, we see that each additional methyl group decreases the rate of displacement of bromide by iodide. When C-2 is completely substituted by methyl groups, as it is in neopentyl bromide $[(CH_3)_3CCH_2Br]$, we see the unusual case of a primary alkyl halide that is practically inert to substitution by the S_N2 mechanism because of steric hindrance.

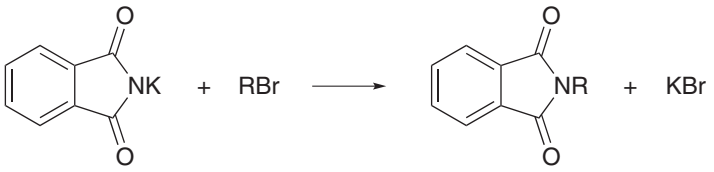


Neopentyl bromide
(1-Bromo-2,2-dimethylpropane)



Problem 8.8

The reaction shown, when carried out with 1,4-dibromopentane, is the first step in the synthesis of the antimalarial drug *primaquine*. It proceeds by an S_N2 mechanism and gives a compound having the molecular formula $C_{13}H_{14}BrNO_2$. What is this compound?



8.5 Nucleophiles and Nucleophilicity

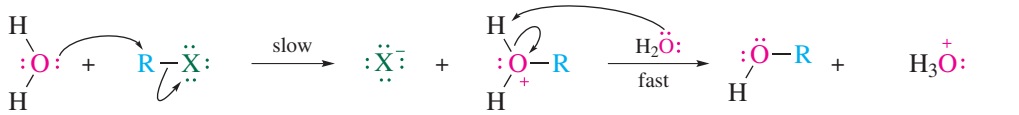
The Lewis base that acts as the nucleophile often is, but need not always be, an anion. Neutral Lewis bases such as amines (R_3N:), phosphines (R_3P:), and sulfides ($R_2\ddot{S}$:) can also serve as nucleophiles.

Dimethyl sulfide Methyl iodide Trimethylsulfonium iodide

Other common examples of substitutions involving neutral nucleophiles include **solvolysis** reactions—substitutions where the nucleophile is the solvent in which the reaction is carried out. Solvolysis in water *(hydrolysis)* converts an alkyl halide to an alcohol.

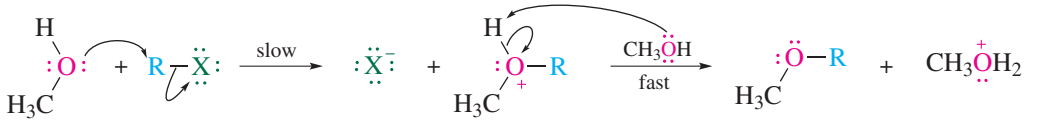
Alkyl halide Water Alcohol Hydronium ion Halide ion

The reaction occurs in two steps. The first yields an alkyloxonium ion by nucleophilic substitution and is rate-determining. The second gives the alcohol by proton transfer—a rapid Brønsted acid–base reaction.



Water Alkyl halide Halide ion Alkoxonium ion Alcohol Hydronium ion

Analogous reactions take place in other solvents that, like water, contain an —OH group. Solvolysis in methanol (*methanolysis*) gives a methyl ether.



Methanol Alkyl halide Halide ion Alkylmethyl-oxonium ion Alkyl methyl ether Methyl-oxonium ion

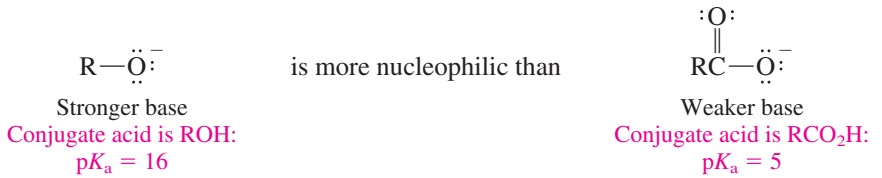
TABLE 8.2 Nucleophilicity of Some Common Nucleophiles

Reactivity class	Nucleophile	Relative reactivity*
Very good nucleophiles	I^-, HS^-, RS^-	$>10^5$
Good nucleophiles	Br^-, HO^-, RO^-, CN^-, N_3^-	10^4
Fair nucleophiles	NH_3, Cl^-, F^-, RCO_2^-	10^3
Weak nucleophiles	H_2O, ROH	1
Very weak nucleophiles	RCO_2H	10^{-2}

*Relative reactivity is k(nucleophile)/k(methanol) for typical S_N2 reactions and is approximate. Data pertain to methanol as the solvent.

Because attack by the nucleophile is the rate-determining step of the S_N2 mechanism, the rate of substitution varies from nucleophile to nucleophile. Nucleophilic strength, or **nucleophilicity,** is a measure of how fast a Lewis base displaces a leaving group from a suitable substrate. Table 8.2 compares the rate at which various Lewis bases react with methyl iodide in methanol, relative to methanol as the standard nucleophile.

As long as the nucleophilic atom is the same, the more basic the nucleophile, the more reactive it is. An alkoxide ion (RO^-) is more basic and more nucleophilic than a carboxylate ion (RCO_2^-).



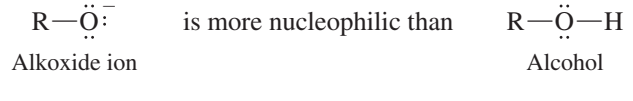
Stronger base
Conjugate acid is ROH:
$pK_a = 16$

Weaker base
Conjugate acid is RCO_2H:
$pK_a = 5$

The connection between basicity and nucleophilicity holds when comparing atoms in the *same row* of the periodic table. Thus, HO^- is more basic and more nucleophilic than F^-, and H_3N is more basic and more nucleophilic than H_2O. *It does not hold when proceeding down a column in the periodic table.* For example, I^- is the least basic of the halide ions but is the most nucleophilic. F^- is the most basic halide ion but the least nucleophilic.

The factor that seems most responsible for the inverse relationship between basicity and nucleophilicity among the halide ions is the degree to which they are *solvated* by ion–dipole forces of the type illustrated in Figure 8.3. Smaller anions, because of their high charge-to-size ratio, are more strongly solvated than larger ones. In order to act as a nucleophile, the halide must shed some of the solvent molecules that surround it. Among the halide anions, ion–dipole forces are strongest for F^- and weakest for I^-. Thus, the nucleophilicity of F^- is suppressed more than that of Cl^-, Cl^- more than Br^-, and Br^- more than I^-. Similarly, HO^- is smaller, more solvated, and less nucleophilic than HS^-. The importance of solvation in reducing the nucleophilicity of small anions more than larger ones can be seen in the fact that, when measured in the gas phase where solvation forces don't exist, the order of halide nucleophilicity reverses and tracks basicity: $F^- > Cl^- > Br^- > I^-$.

When comparing species that have the same nucleophilic atom, a negatively charged nucleophile is more reactive than a neutral one.



Alkoxide ion — Alcohol

Carboxylate ion — Carboxylic acid

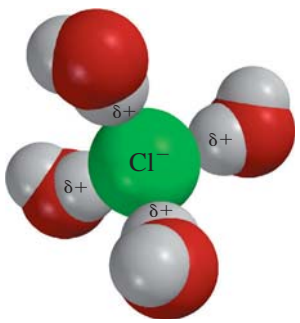
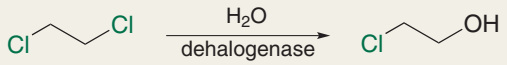


Figure 8.3

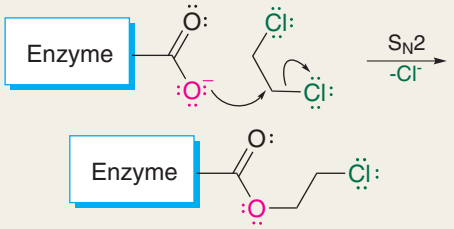
Solvation of a chloride ion by water.

Enzyme-Catalyzed Nucleophilic Substitutions of Alkyl Halides

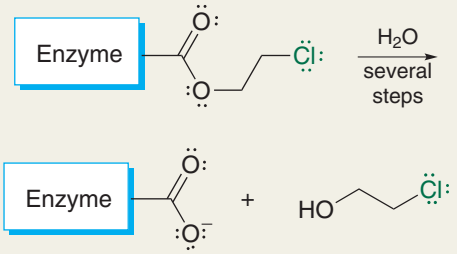
Nucleophilic substitution is one of a variety of mechanisms by which living systems detoxify halogenated organic compounds introduced into the environment. Enzymes that catalyze these reactions are known as *haloalkane dehalogenases.* The hydrolysis of 1,2-dichloroethane to 2-chloroethanol, for example, is a biological nucleophilic substitution catalyzed by the dehalogenase shown in Figure 8.4.



This haloalkane dehalogenase is believed to act by *covalent catalysis* using one of its side-chain carboxylates to displace chloride by an S_N2 mechanism.

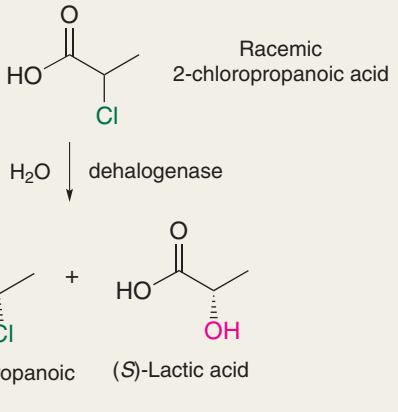


The product of nucleophilic substitution then reacts with water, restoring the enzyme to its original state and giving the observed products of the reaction.



Both stages of the mechanism are faster than the hydrolysis of 1,2-dichloroethane in the absence of the enzyme.

Enzyme-catalyzed hydrolysis of racemic 2-chloropropanoic acid is a key step in the large-scale preparation (2000 tons per year!) of (*S*)-2-chloropropanoic acid used in the production of agricultural chemicals.



In this enzymatic resolution, the dehalogenase enzyme catalyzes the hydrolysis of the *R*-enantiomer of 2-chloropropanoic acid to (*S*)-lactic acid. The desired (*S*)-2-chloropropanoic acid is unaffected and recovered in a nearly enantiomerically pure state.

Some of the most common biological S_N2 reactions involve attack at methyl groups, especially the methyl group of *S*-adenosylmethionine. Examples of these will be given in Chapter 16.

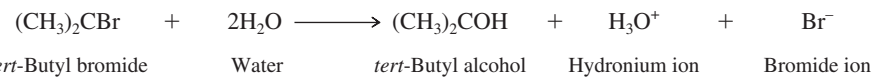
Figure 8.4

A ribbon diagram of the dehalogenase enzyme that catalyzes the hydrolysis of 1,2-dichloroethane. The progression of amino acids along the chain is indicated by a color change. The nucleophilic carboxylate group is near the center of the diagram.

8.6 The S_N1 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution

Having seen that tertiary alkyl halides are practically inert to substitution by the S_N2 mechanism because of steric hindrance, we might wonder whether they undergo nucleophilic substitution at all. They do, but by a different mechanism.

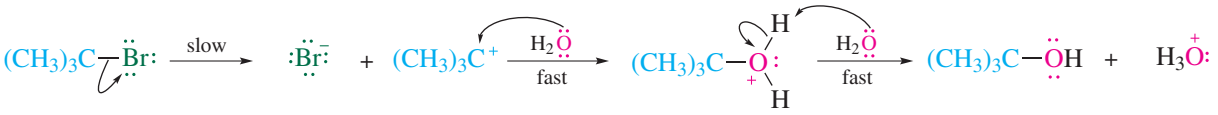
In their studies of reaction kinetics, Hughes and Ingold observed that the hydrolysis of *tert*-butyl bromide follows a *first-order* rate law:



$$\text{Rate} = k[(CH_3)_3Br]$$

The reaction rate depends only on the concentration of *tert*-butyl bromide. Just as Hughes and Ingold interpreted a second-order rate law in terms of a bimolecular rate-determining step, they saw first-order kinetics as evidence for a *unimolecular* rate-determining step—one that involves only the alkyl halide and is independent of both the concentration and identity of the nucleophile. Like the mechanism for the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides (Section 4.8), this pathway is classified as **S_N1** (substitution-nucleophilic-unimolecular) and is characterized by the formation of a carbocation in the rate-determining step.

The S_N1 mechanism for the hydrolysis of *tert*-butyl bromide is presented as a series of elementary steps in Mechanism 8.2, as a potential energy diagram in Figure 8.5, and in abbreviated form as:



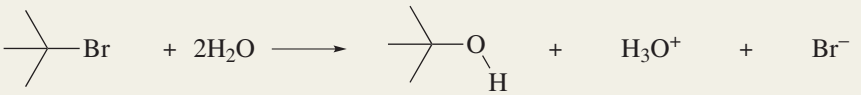
tert-Butyl bromide | Bromide ion | *tert*-Butyl cation | *tert*-Butyloxonium ion | *tert*-Butyl alcohol | Hydronium ion

The key step is the first: a rate-determining unimolecular ionization of the alkyl halide to give a carbocation and a halide ion. Following this, capture of the carbocation by a water molecule acting as a nucleophile gives an alkyloxonium ion, which is then deprotonated by a second water molecule acting as a Brønsted base to complete the process.

Mechanism 8.2

The S_N1 Mechanism of Nucleophilic Substitution

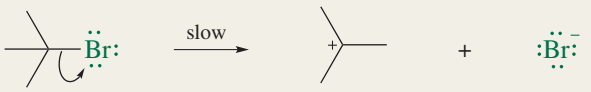
THE OVERALL REACTION:



tert-Butyl bromide | Water | *tert*-Butyl alcohol | Hydronium ion | Bromide ion

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The alkyl halide dissociates to a carbocation and a halide ion.

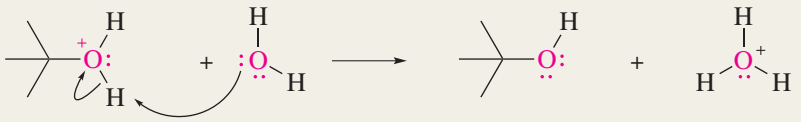


tert-Butyl bromide | *tert*-Butyl cation | Bromide ion

Step 2: The carbocation formed in step 1 reacts rapidly with water, which acts as a nucleophile. This step completes the nucleophilic substitution stage of the mechanism and yields an alkyloxonium ion.

tert-Butyl cation | Water | *tert*-Butyloxonium ion

Step 3: This step is a fast acid–base reaction that follows the nucleophilic substitution. Water acts as a base to remove a proton from the alkyloxonium ion to give the observed product of the reaction, *tert*-butyl alcohol.



tert-Butyloxonium ion | Water | *tert*-Butyl alcohol | Hydronium ion

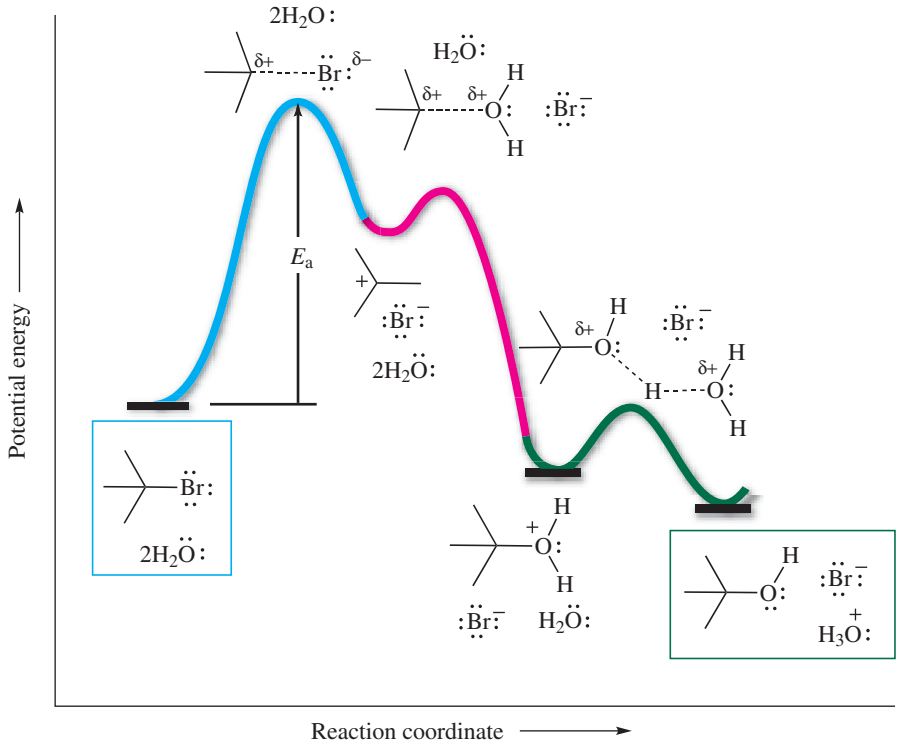
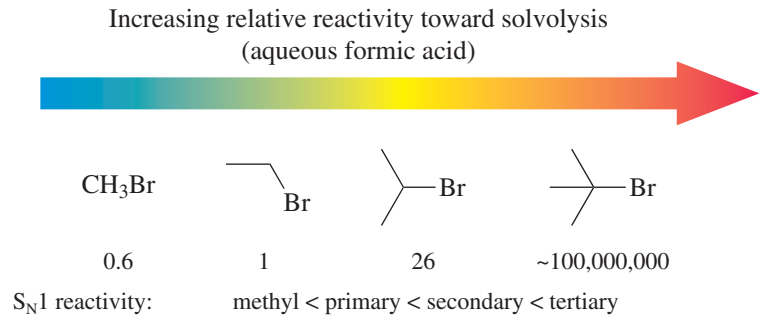


Figure 8.5

Energy diagram illustrating the S_N1 mechanism for hydrolysis of *tert*-butyl bromide.

In order to compare S_N1 rates in a range of alkyl halides, experimental conditions of low nucleophilicity such as solvolysis are chosen so as to suppress competition from S_N2. Under these conditions, the structure/reactivity trend among alkyl halides is exactly opposite to the S_N2 profile.



We have seen a similar trend in the reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides (Section 4.10), in the acid-catalyzed dehydration of alcohols (Section 5.12), and in the conversion of alkyl halides to alkenes by the E1 mechanism (Section 5.18). As in these other reactions, the more stable the carbocation, the faster it is formed, and the faster the reaction rate. Methyl and primary carbocations are so high in energy that they are unlikely intermediates in nucleophilic substitutions. Although methyl and ethyl bromide undergo hydrolysis under the conditions just described, substitution probably takes place by an S_N2 process in which water is the nucleophile.

In general, methyl and primary alkyl halides never react by the S_N1 mechanism; tertiary alkyl halides never react by S_N2.

Secondary alkyl halides occupy a borderline region in which the nature of the nucleophile is the main determining factor in respect to the mechanism. Secondary alkyl halides usually react with good nucleophiles by the S_N2 mechanism, and with weak nucleophiles by S_N1.

Problem 8.9

Identify the compound in each of the following pairs that reacts at the faster rate in an S_N1 reaction:

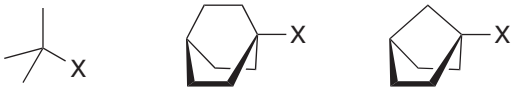
(a) Isopropyl bromide or isobutyl bromide
(b) Cyclopentyl iodide or 1-methylcyclopentyl iodide
(c) Cyclopentyl bromide or 1-bromo-2,2-dimethylpropane
(d) *tert*-Butyl chloride or *tert*-butyl iodide

Continued

Sample Solution (a) Isopropyl bromide, $(CH_3)_2CHBr$, is a secondary alkyl halide, whereas isobutyl bromide, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2Br$, is primary. Because the rate-determining step in an S_N1 reaction is carbocation formation and secondary carbocations are more stable than primary ones, isopropyl bromide is more reactive than isobutyl bromide in nucleophilic substitution by the S_N1 mechanism.

Problem 8.10

Numerous studies of their solvolysis reactions (S_N1) have established the approximate rates of nucleophilic substitution in bicyclic compounds A and B relative to their *tert*-butyl counterpart, where X is a halide or sulfonate leaving group.

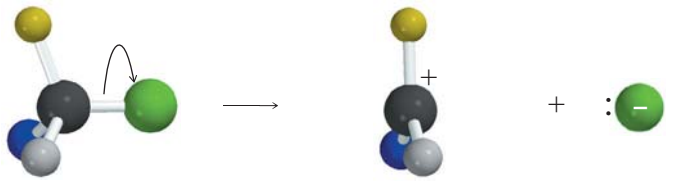


tert-Butyl: 1 A: 10^{-6} B: 10^{-14}

Suggest a reasonable explanation for the very large spread in reaction rates.

8.7 Stereochemistry of S_N1 Reactions

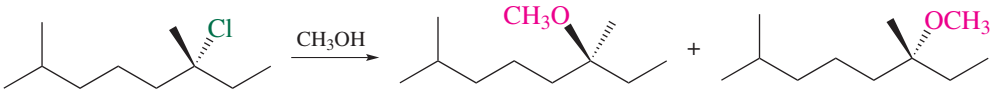
Although S_N2 reactions are stereospecific and proceed with inversion of configuration at carbon, the situation is not as clear-cut for S_N1. When the leaving group departs from a chirality center of an optically active halide, the positively charged carbon that results is sp^2-hybridized and cannot be a chirality center. The three bonds to that carbon define a plane of symmetry.



Alkyl halide is chiral Carbocation is achiral

If a nucleophile can approach each face of the carbocation equally well, substitution by the S_N1 mechanism should give a 1:1 mixture of enantiomers irrespective of whether the starting alkyl halide is *R, S,* or racemic. S_N1 reactions should give racemic products from optically active starting materials.

But they rarely do. Methanolysis of the tertiary alkyl halide (*R*)-3-chloro-3,7-dimethyloctane, which almost certainly proceeds by an S_N1 mechanism, takes place with a high degree of inversion of configuration.



(*R*)-3-Chloro-3,7-dimethyloctane (*S*)-3,7-Dimethyl-3-methoxyoctane (89%) (*R*)-3,7-Dimethyl-3-methoxyoctane (11%)

Similarly, hydrolysis of (*R*)-2-bromooctane follows a first-order rate law and yields 2-octanol with 66% net inversion of configuration.

Partial but not complete loss of optical activity in S_N1 reactions is explained as shown in Figure 8.6. The key feature of this mechanism is that when the carbocation is formed, it is not completely free of the leaving group. Although ionization is complete, the leaving group has not yet diffused very far away from the carbon to which it was attached and partially blocks approach of the nucleophile from that direction. Nucleophilic attack on this species, called an *ion pair,* occurs faster from the side opposite the leaving group. Once the leaving group has diffused away, however, both faces of the carbocation are equally accessible to nucleophiles and equal quantities of enantiomeric products result.

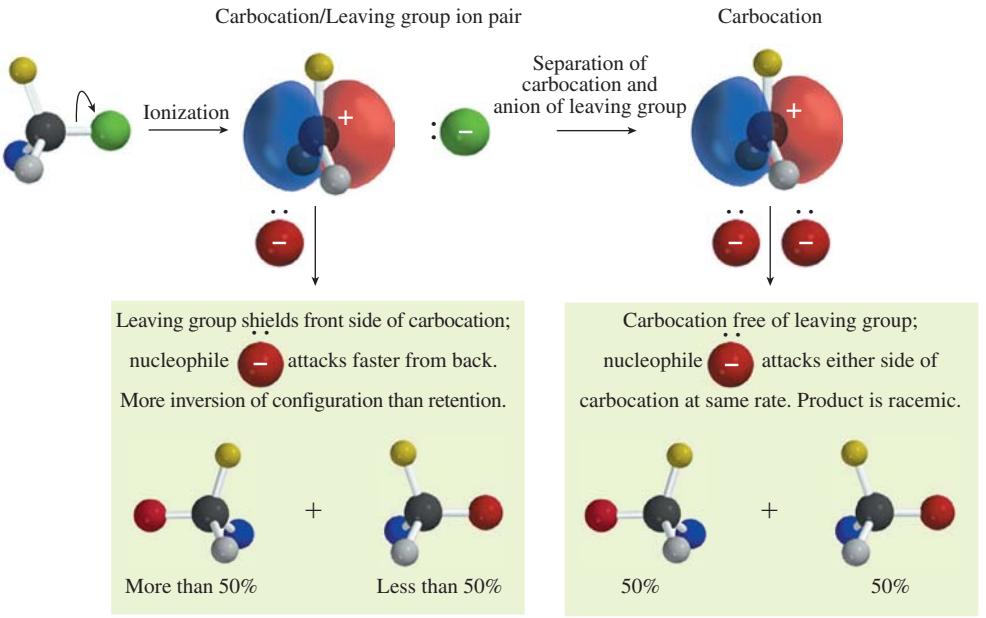


Figure 8.6

S_N1 stereochemistry. The carbocation formed by ionization of an alkyl halide is shielded on its "front" side by the leaving group. The nucleophile attacks this carbocation-halide ion pair faster from the less shielded "back" side and the product is formed with net inversion of configuration. In a process that competes with nucleophilic attack on the ion pair, the leaving group diffuses away from the carbocation. The nucleophile attacks the carbocation at the same rate from either side to give equal amounts of enantiomers.

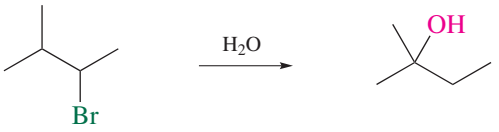
The stereochemistry of S_N1 substitution depends on the relative rates of competing processes—attack by the nucleophile on the ion pair versus separation of the ions. Consequently, the observed stereochemistry varies considerably according to the alkyl halide, nucleophile, and experimental conditions. Some give predominant, but incomplete, inversion of configuration. Others give products that are almost entirely racemic.

Problem 8.11

What two stereoisomeric substitution products would you expect to isolate from the hydrolysis of *cis*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexyl bromide? From hydrolysis of *trans*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexyl bromide?

8.8 Carbocation Rearrangements in S_N1 Reactions

Additional evidence for carbocation intermediates in certain nucleophilic substitutions comes from observing rearrangements of the kind normally associated with such species. For example, hydrolysis of the secondary alkyl bromide 2-bromo-3-methylbutane yields the rearranged tertiary alcohol 2-methyl-2-butanol as the only substitution product.



2-Bromo-3-methylbutane 2-Methyl-2-butanol (93%)

Mechanism 8.3 for this reaction assumes rate-determining ionization of the alkyl halide (step 1), followed by a hydride shift that converts a secondary carbocation to a more stable tertiary one (step 2). The tertiary carbocation then reacts with water to yield the observed product (steps 3 and 4).

Problem 8.12

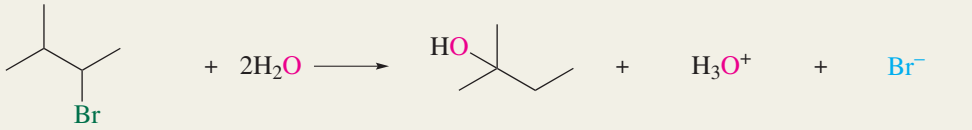
Why does the carbocation intermediate in the hydrolysis of 2-bromo-3-methylbutane rearrange by way of a hydride shift rather than a methyl shift?

Rearrangements, when they do occur, are taken as evidence for carbocation intermediates and point to the S_N1 mechanism as the reaction pathway. Rearrangements are never observed in S_N2 reactions of alkyl halides.

Mechanism 8.3

Carbocation Rearrangement in the S_N1 Hydrolysis of 2-Bromo-3-methylbutane

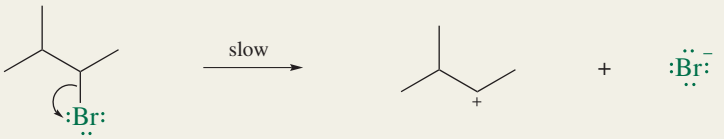
THE OVERALL REACTION:



2-Bromo-3-methylbutane | Water | 2-Methyl-2-butanol | Hydronium ion | Bromide ion

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The alkyl halide ionizes to give a carbocation and bromide ion. This is the rate-determining step.

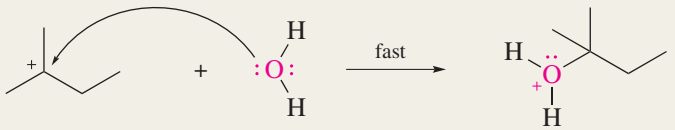


2-Bromo-3-methylbutane | 1,2-Dimethylpropyl cation | Bromide ion

Step 2: The carbocation formed in step 1 is secondary; it rearranges by a hydride shift to form a more stable tertiary carbocation.

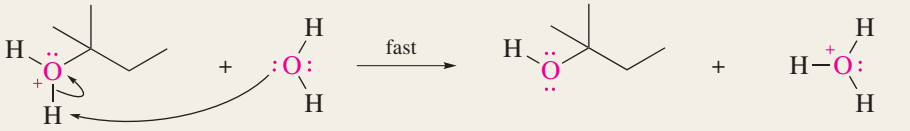
1,2-Dimethylpropyl cation | 1,1-Dimethylpropyl cation

Step 3: The tertiary carbocation is attacked by water acting as a nucleophile.



1,1-Dimethylpropyl cation | Water | 1,1-Dimethylpropyl-oxonium ion

Step 4: Proton transfer from the alkyloxonium ion to water completes the process.



1,1-Dimethylpropyl-oxonium ion | Water | 2-Methyl-2-butanol | Hydronium ion

8.9 Effect of Solvent on the Rate of Nucleophilic Substitution

The major effect of the solvent is on the *rate* of nucleophilic substitution, not on what the products are. Thus we need to consider two related questions:

1. What properties of the *solvent* influence the rate most?
2. How does the rate-determining step of the *mechanism* respond to the properties of the solvent?

TABLE 8.3 Properties of Some Solvents Used in Nucleophilic Substitution

Solvent	Structural formula	Protic or Aprotic	Dielectric constant ε*	Polarity
Water	H_2O	Protic	78	Most polar
Formic acid	$\begin{matrix}O\\\|\\HCOH\end{matrix}$	Protic	58	
Dimethyl sulfoxide	$(CH_3)_2\overset{+}{S}—O^-$	Aprotic	49	
Acetonitrile	$CH_3C{\equiv}N$	Aprotic	37	
N,N-Dimethylformamide	$\begin{matrix}O\\\|\\(CH_3)_2NCH\end{matrix}$	Aprotic	37	
Methanol	CH_3OH	Protic	33	
Acetic acid	$\begin{matrix}O\\\|\\CH_3COH\end{matrix}$	Protic	6	Least polar

*Dielectric constants are approximate and temperature-dependent.

We begin by looking at the solvents commonly employed in nucleophilic substitutions, then proceed to examine how these properties affect the S_N1 and S_N2 mechanisms. Because these mechanisms are so different from each other, we discuss each one separately.

Classes of Solvents. Table 8.3 lists a number of solvents in which nucleophilic substitutions are carried out and classifies them according to two criteria: whether they are *protic* or *aprotic,* and *polar* or *nonpolar.*

Protic solvents are those that are capable of hydrogen-bonding interactions. Most have —OH groups, as do the examples in Table 8.3 (water, formic acid, methanol, and acetic acid). The **aprotic** solvents in the table (dimethyl sulfoxide, *N,N*-dimethylformamide, and acetonitrile) lack —OH groups.

Unlike protic and aprotic, which constitute an "either-or" pair, polar and nonpolar belong to a continuous gradation with no sharply defined boundary separating them.

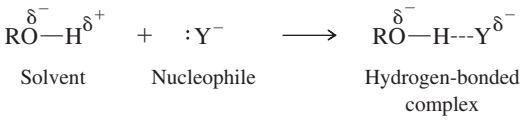
The polarity of a solvent is related to its **dielectric constant (ε),** which is a measure of the ability of a material to moderate the force of attraction between oppositely charged particles. The standard dielectric is a vacuum, assigned a value ε of exactly 1, to which the polarities of other materials are then compared. The higher the dielectric constant ε, the better the medium is able to support separated positively and negatively charged species. Solvents with high dielectric constants are classified as **polar** solvents; those with low dielectric constants are **nonpolar.**

Problem 8.13

Diethyl ether ($CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$) has a dielectric constant of 4. What best describes its solvent properties: polar protic, nonpolar protic, polar aprotic, or nonpolar aprotic?

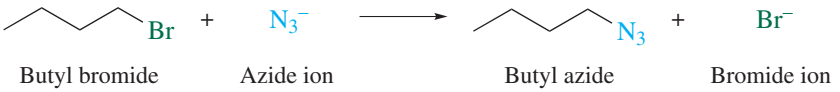
Solvent Effects on the Rate of Substitution by the S_N2 Mechanism. Polar solvents are required in typical bimolecular substitutions because ionic substances, such as the sodium and potassium salts cited earlier in Table 8.1, are not sufficiently soluble in nonpolar solvents to give a high enough concentration of the nucleophile to allow the reaction to occur at a rapid rate. Other than the requirement that the solvent be polar enough to dissolve ionic compounds, however, the effect of solvent polarity on the rate of S_N2 reactions is small. What is more important is whether the polar solvent is protic or aprotic. Protic

solvents such as water, formic acid, methanol, and acetic acid all have —OH groups that allow them to form hydrogen bonds to anionic nucleophiles.



This clustering of *protic* solvent molecules *(solvation)* around an anion supresses its nucleophilicity and retards the rate of bimolecular substitution.

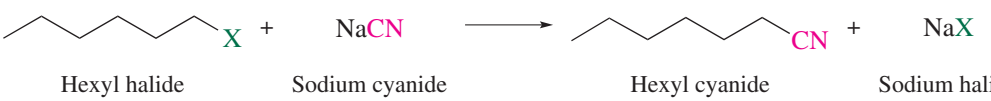
Aprotic solvents, on the other hand, lack —OH groups and do not solvate anions very strongly, leaving the anions much more able to express their nucleophilic character. Table 8.4 compares the second-order rate constants k for S_N2 substitution of 1-bromobutane by azide ion (a good nucleophile) in several polar aprotic solvents with the corresponding k's for the much slower reactions in polar protic solvents.



Problem 8.14

Unlike protic solvents, which solvate anions, polar aprotic solvents form complexes with cations better than with anions. Use a dashed line to show the interaction between dimethyl sulfoxide [$(CH_3)_2\overset{+}{S}—\ddot{O}:^-$] with a cation, using sodium azide (NaN_3) as the source of the cation.

The large rate enhancements observed for bimolecular nucleophilic substitutions in polar aprotic solvents offer advantages in synthesis. One example is the preparation of alkyl cyanides (nitriles) by the reaction of sodium cyanide with alkyl halides:



When the reaction was carried out in aqueous methanol as the solvent, hexyl bromide was converted to hexyl cyanide in 71% yield. Although this is perfectly acceptable for a synthetic reaction, it required heating for a period of over *20 hours*. Changing the solvent to dimethyl sulfoxide increased the reaction rate to the extent that the less reactive (and less expensive) hexyl chloride could be used and the reaction was complete (91% yield) in only *20 minutes!*

TABLE 8.4 Relative Rate of S_N2 Displacement of 1-Bromobutane by Azide in Various Solvents*

Solvent	Structural formula	Dielectric constant ε	Type of solvent	Relative rate
Methanol	CH_3OH	33	Polar protic	1
Water	H_2O	78	Polar protic	7
Dimethyl sulfoxide	$(CH_3)_2\overset{+}{S}—O^-$	49	Polar aprotic	1300
N,N-Dimethylformamide	$(CH_3)_2NC(=O)H$	37	Polar aprotic	2800
Acetonitrile	$CH_3C{\equiv}N$	37	Polar aprotic	5000

*Ratio of second-order rate constant for substitution in indicated solvent to that for substitution in methanol at 25°C.

The *rate* at which reactions occur can be important in the laboratory, and understanding how solvents affect rate is of practical value. As we proceed through the text, however, and see how nucleophilic substitution is applied to a variety of functional group transformations, be aware that the nature of both the substrate and the nucleophile, more than anything else, determines what *product* is formed.

Solvent Effects on the Rate of Substitution by the S_N1 Mechanism. Table 8.5 gives the relative rate of solvolysis of *tert*-butyl chloride in several protic solvents listed in order of increasing dielectric constant. As the table illustrates, the rate of solvolysis of *tert*-butyl chloride (which is equal to its rate of ionization) increases dramatically as the solvent becomes more polar.

According to the S_N1 mechanism, a molecule of an alkyl halide ionizes to a positively charged carbocation and a negatively charged halide ion in the rate-determining step. As the alkyl halide approaches the transition state for this step, positive charge develops on the carbon and negative charge on the halogen. The effects of a nonpolar and a polar solvent on the energy of the transition state are contrasted in Figure 8.7. Polar and nonpolar solvents are similar in their interaction with the starting alkyl halide, but differ markedly in how they stabilize the transition state. A solvent with a low dielectric constant has little effect on the energy of

TABLE 8.5 Relative Rate of S_N1 Solvolysis of *tert*-Butyl Chloride as a Function of Solvent Polarity*

Solvent	Dielectric constant ε	Relative rate
Acetic acid	6	1
Methanol	33	4
Formic acid	58	5,000
Water	78	150,000

*Ratio of first-order rate constant for solvolysis in indicated solvent to that for solvolysis in acetic acid at 25°C.

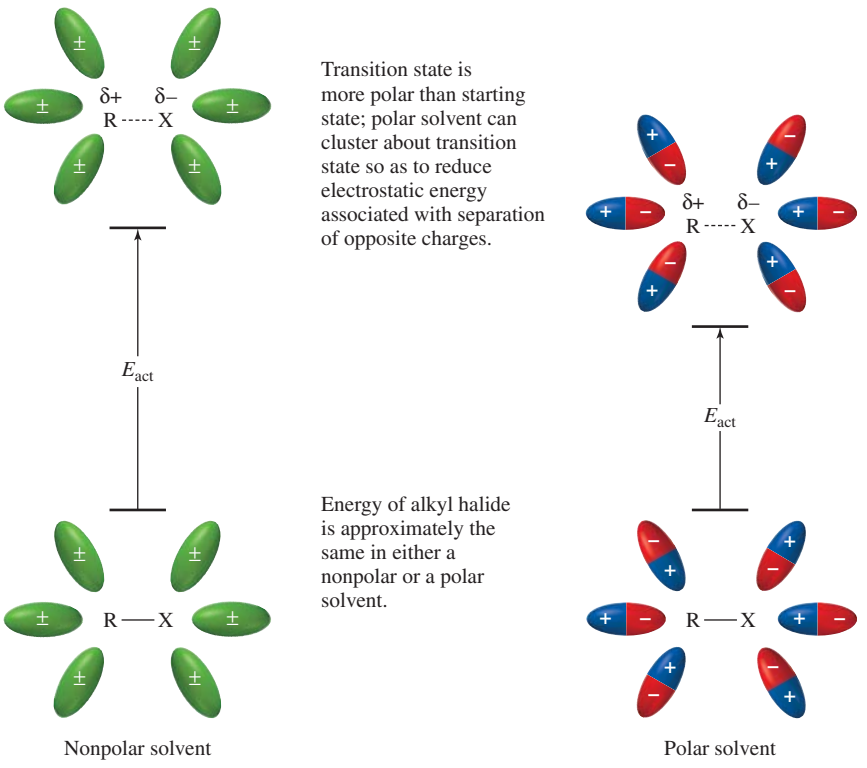


Figure 8.7

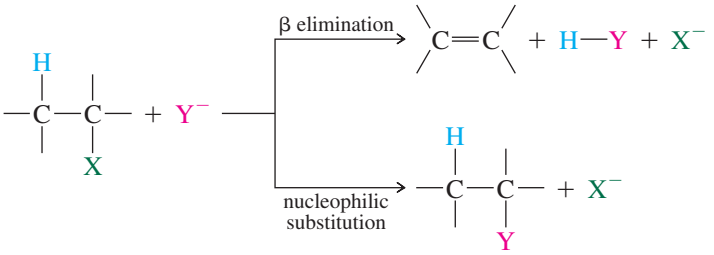
A polar solvent stabilizes the transition state of an S_N1 reaction and increases its rate.

the transition state, whereas one with a high dielectric constant stabilizes the charge-separated transition state, lowers the activation energy, and increases the rate of the reaction.

If the solvent, like those listed in Table 8.4, is protic, stabilization of the transition state is even more pronounced because of the hydrogen bonding that develops as the leaving group becomes negatively charged.

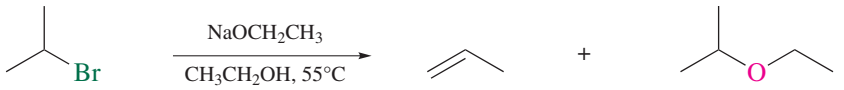
8.10 Substitution and Elimination as Competing Reactions

We have seen that a Lewis base can react with an alkyl halide by either substitution or elimination.



Substitution can take place by the S_N1 or the S_N2 mechanism, elimination by E1 or E2.

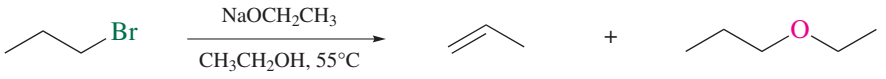
How can we predict whether substitution or elimination will predominate? The two most important factors are the *structure of the alkyl halide* and the *basicity of the anion.* It is useful to approach the question from the premise that the characteristic reaction of alkyl halides with Lewis bases is *elimination,* and that substitution predominates only under certain special circumstances. In a typical reaction, a secondary alkyl halide such as isopropyl bromide reacts with a Lewis base such as sodium ethoxide mainly by elimination:



Isopropyl bromide — Propene (87%) — Ethyl isopropyl ether (13%)

Figure 8.8 illustrates the close relationship between the E2 and S_N2 pathways for this case, and the results cited in the preceding equation clearly show that E2 is faster than S_N2 when a secondary alkyl halide reacts with a strong base.

As crowding at the carbon that bears the leaving group decreases, the rate of nucleophilic substitution becomes faster than the rate of elimination. A low level of steric hindrance to approach of the nucleophile is one of the special circumstances that permit substitution to predominate, and primary alkyl halides react with alkoxide bases by an S_N2 mechanism in preference to E2:



Propyl bromide — Propene (9%) — Ethyl propyl ether (91%)

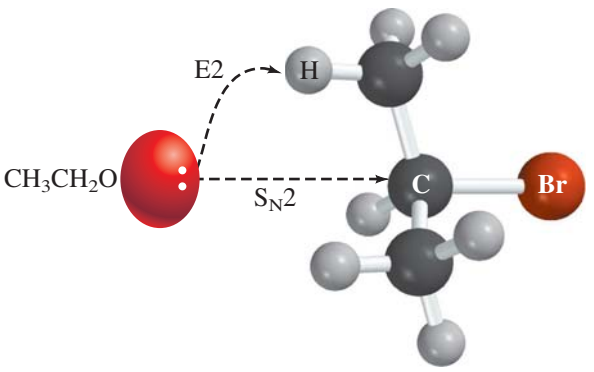


Figure 8.8

When a Lewis base reacts with an alkyl halide, either substitution or elimination can occur. Substitution (S_N2) occurs when the Lewis base acts as a nucleophile and attacks carbon to displace bromide. Elimination (E2) occurs when the Lewis base abstracts a proton from the β carbon. The alkyl halide shown is isopropyl bromide, and elimination (E2) predominates over substitution with alkoxide bases.

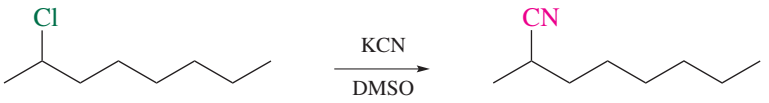
If, however, the base itself is crowded, such as potassium *tert*-butoxide, even primary alkyl halides undergo elimination rather than substitution:

$$CH_3(CH_2)_{15}CH_2CH_2Br \xrightarrow[(CH_3)_3COH,\ 40°C]{KOC(CH_3)_3} CH_3(CH_2)_{15}CH{=}CH_2 + CH_3(CH_2)_{15}CH_2CH_2OC(CH_3)_3$$

1-Bromooctadecane — 1-Octadecene (87%) — *tert*-Butyl octadecyl ether (13%)

A second factor that can tip the balance in favor of substitution is weak basicity of the nucleophile. Nucleophiles that are less basic than hydroxide react with both primary and secondary alkyl halides to give the product of nucleophilic substitution in high yield. To illustrate, cyanide ion is much less basic than hydroxide and reacts with 2-chlorooctane to give the corresponding alkyl cyanide as the major product.

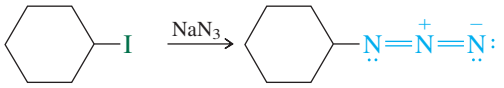
Cyanide is a weaker base than hydroxide because its conjugate acid HCN (pK_a 9.1) is a stronger acid than water (pK_a 15.7).



2-Chlorooctane — 2-Cyanooctane (70%)

Azide ion $:\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{N}}{=}\overset{+}{N}{=}\ddot{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{N}}:$ is an even weaker base than cyanide. It is a good nucleophile and reacts with secondary alkyl halides mainly by substitution:

The conjugate acid of azide ion is called *hydrazoic acid* (HN_3). It has a pK_a of 4.6, and so is similar to acetic acid in its acidity.

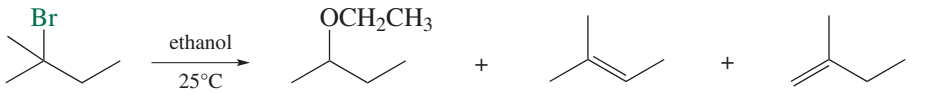


Cyclohexyl iodide — Cyclohexyl azide (75%)

Hydrogen sulfide ion HS^-, and anions of the type RS^-, are substantially less basic than hydroxide ion and react with both primary and secondary alkyl halides to give mainly substitution products.

Hydrogen sulfide (pK_a 7.0) is a stronger acid than water (pK_a 15.7). Therefore HS^- is a much weaker base than HO^-.

Tertiary alkyl halides are so sterically hindered to nucleophilic attack that the presence of any anionic Lewis base favors elimination. Usually substitution predominates over elimination in tertiary alkyl halides only when anionic Lewis bases are absent. In the solvolysis of the tertiary bromide 2-bromo-2-methylbutane, for example, the ratio of substitution to elimination is 64:36 in pure ethanol but falls to 1:99 in the presence of 2 M sodium ethoxide.



2-Bromo-2-methylbutane

2-Ethoxy-2-methylbutane (Major product in absence of sodium ethoxide)

2-Methyl-2-butene — 2-Methyl-1-butene (Alkene mixture is major product in presence of sodium ethoxide)

The substitution product in this case is formed by an S_N1 mechanism both in the presence and absence of sodium ethoxide. The alkenes are formed by an E1 mechanism in the absence of sodium ethoxide and by a combination of E2 (major) and E1 (minor) in its presence.

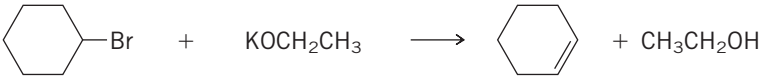
Problem 8.15

Predict the major organic product of each of the following reactions:

(a) Cyclohexyl bromide and potassium ethoxide
(b) Ethyl bromide and potassium cyclohexanolate
(c) *sec*-Butyl bromide solvolysis in methanol
(d) *sec*-Butyl bromide solvolysis in methanol containing 2 M sodium methoxide

Continued

Sample Solution (a) Cyclohexyl bromide is a secondary halide and reacts with alkoxide bases by elimination rather than substitution. The major organic products are cyclohexene and ethanol.



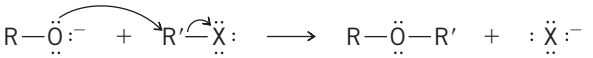
Cyclohexyl bromide Potassium ethoxide Cyclohexene Ethanol

Regardless of the alkyl halide, raising the temperature increases the rate of both substitution and elimination. The rate of elimination, however, usually increases faster than substitution, so that at higher temperatures the proportion of elimination products increases at the expense of substitution products.

As a practical matter, elimination can always be made to occur quantitatively. Strong bases, especially bulky ones such as *tert*-butoxide ion, react even with primary alkyl halides by an E2 process at elevated temperatures. The more difficult task is to find conditions that promote substitution. In general, the best approach is to choose conditions that favor the S_N2 mechanism—an unhindered substrate, a good nucleophile that is not strongly basic, and the lowest practical temperature consistent with reasonable reaction rates.

Problem 8.16

A standard method for the synthesis of ethers is an S_N2 reaction between an alkoxide and an alkyl halide.



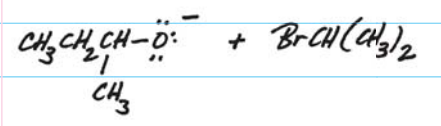
Show possible combinations of alkoxide and alkyl halide for the preparation of the following ethers. Which of these ethers can be prepared effectively by this method?

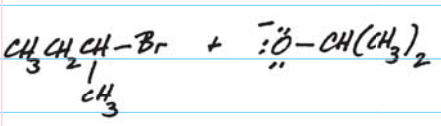
(a) $CH_3CH_2CHOCH(CH_3)_2$ (with CH_3 branch)

(b) $CH_3CH_2CH_2OCH(CH_3)_2$

Sample Solution

(a) • There are two possible combinations of alkoxide and alkyl halide (shown as bromide).





• In both cases the alkyl halide is secondary. Secondary alkyl halides undergo elimination (E2) rather than substitution (S_N2) with alkoxide bases.

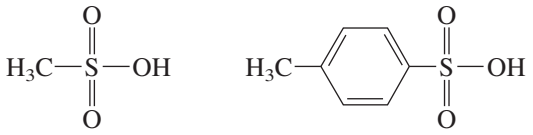
Functional group transformations that rely on substitution by the S_N1 mechanism are not as generally applicable as those of the S_N2 type. Hindered substrates are prone to elimination,

and rearrangement is possible when carbocation intermediates are involved. Only in cases in which elimination is impossible are S_N1 reactions used for functional group transformations.

8.11 Nucleophilic Substitution of Alkyl Sulfonates

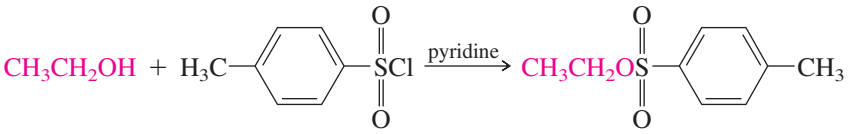
A few other classes of organic compounds undergo nucleophilic substitution reactions analogous to those of alkyl halides; the most important of these are sulfonates.

Sulfonic acids such as methanesulfonic acid and *p*-toluenesulfonic acid are strong acids, comparable in acidity with sulfuric acid.



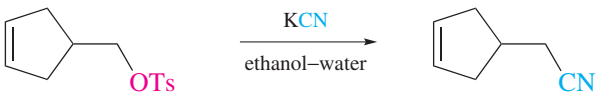
Methanesulfonic acid *p*-Toluenesulfonic acid

Alkyl sulfonates are derivatives of sulfonic acids in which the proton of the —OH group is replaced by an alkyl group. They are prepared by treating an alcohol with the appropriate sulfonyl chloride, usually in the presence of pyridine.



Ethanol *p*-Toluenesulfonyl chloride Ethyl *p*-toluenesulfonate (72%)

Alkyl sulfonates resemble alkyl halides in their ability to undergo elimination and nucleophilic substitution. Those used most frequently are the *p*-toluenesulfonates, commonly known as *tosylates* and abbreviated as ROTs.



(3-Cyclopentenyl)methyl *p*-toluenesulfonate (4-Cyanomethyl)cyclopentene (86%)

As shown in Table 8.6, alkyl tosylates undergo nucleophilic substitution at rates that are even faster than those of the corresponding iodides. Iodide is the weakest base and the best leaving

TABLE 8.6 Approximate Relative Leaving-Group Abilities*

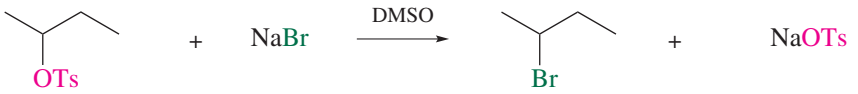
Leaving group	Relative rate	Conjugate acid of leaving group	pK_a of conjugate acid
F^-	10^{-5}	HF	3.1
Cl^-	10^0	HCl	–3.9
Br^-	10^1	HBr	–5.8
I^-	10^2	HI	–10.4
H_2O	10^1	H_3O^+	–1.7
$CH_3SO_2O^-$	10^4	CH_3SO_2OH	–2.6
TsO^-	10^5	TsOH	–2.8
$CF_3SO_2O^-$	10^8	CF_3SO_2OH	–6.0

*Values are approximate and vary according to substrate.

group among the halide anions. Similarly, sulfonate ions rank among the least basic of the oxygen-containing leaving groups. The weaker the base, the better the leaving group. Trifluoromethanesulfonate (*triflate,* $CF_3SO_2O^-$) is a much weaker base than *p*-toluenesulfonate and is the best leaving group in the table.

Notice that strongly basic leaving groups are absent from Table 8.6. In general, any species that has pK_a greater than about 2 for its conjugate acid cannot be a leaving group in a nucleophilic substitution. Thus, hydroxide (HO^-) is far too strong a base to be displaced from an alcohol (ROH), and alcohols do not undergo nucleophilic substitution. In strongly acidic media, alcohols are protonated to give alkyloxonium ions, and these do undergo nucleophilic substitution, because the leaving group is a weakly basic water molecule. S_N2 reactions are most favorable when a more basic nucleophile displaces a less basic leaving group.

Because halides are poorer leaving groups than *p*-toluenesulfonate, alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonates can be converted to alkyl halides by S_N2 reactions involving chloride, bromide, or iodide as the nucleophile.



sec-Butyl *p*-toluenesulfonate | Sodium bromide | *sec*-Butyl bromide (82%) | Sodium *p*-toluenesulfonate

Problem 8.17

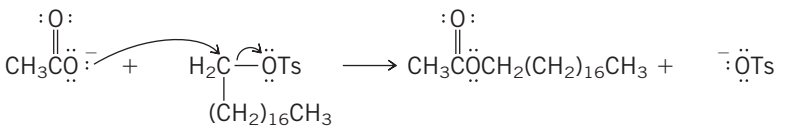
Write a chemical equation showing the preparation of octadecyl *p*-toluenesulfonate.

Problem 8.18

Write equations showing the reaction of octadecyl *p*-toluenesulfonate with each of the following reagents:

(a) Potassium acetate ($KOCCH_3$, with O double-bonded to the carbonyl carbon)
(b) Potassium iodide (KI)
(c) Potassium cyanide (KCN)
(d) Potassium hydrogen sulfide (KSH)
(e) Sodium butanethiolate ($NaSCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$)

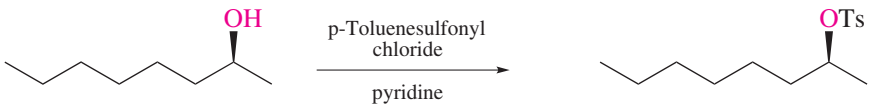
Sample Solution All these reactions of octadecyl *p*-toluenesulfonate have been reported in the chemical literature, and all proceed in synthetically useful yield. You should begin by identifying the nucleophile in each of the parts to this problem. The nucleophile replaces the *p*-toluenesulfonate leaving group in an S_N2 reaction. In part (a) the nucleophile is acetate ion, and the product of nucleophilic substitution is octadecyl acetate.



Acetate ion | Octadecyl tosylate | Octadecyl acetate | Tosylate ion

An advantage that sulfonates have over alkyl halides is that their preparation from alcohols does not involve any of the bonds to carbon. The alcohol oxygen becomes the oxygen that connects the alkyl group to the sulfonyl group. Thus, the configuration of a

sulfonate is the same as that of the alcohol from which it was prepared. If we wish to study the stereochemistry of nucleophilic substitution in an optically active substrate, for example, we know that a tosylate will have the same configuration and the same optical purity as the alcohol from which it was prepared.



(*S*)-(+)-2-Octanol
$[\alpha]_D^{25}$ +9.9°
(optically pure)

(*S*)-(+)-1-Methylheptyl *p*-toluenesulfonate
$[\alpha]_D^{25}$ +7.9°
(optically pure)

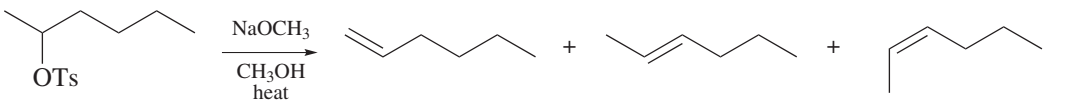
The same cannot be said about reactions with alkyl halides. The conversion of optically active 2-octanol to the corresponding halide *does* involve a bond to the chirality center, and so the optical purity and absolute configuration of the alkyl halide need to be independently established.

The mechanisms by which sulfonates undergo nucleophilic substitution are the same as those of alkyl halides. Inversion of configuration is observed in S_N2 reactions of alkyl sulfonates and predominant inversion accompanied by racemization in S_N1 processes.

Problem 8.19

The hydrolysis of sulfonates of 2-octanol is stereospecific and proceeds with complete inversion of configuration. Write a structural formula that shows the stereochemistry of the 2-octanol formed by hydrolysis of an optically pure sample of (*S*)-(+)-1-methylheptyl *p*-toluenesulfonate, identify the product as *R* or *S*, and deduce its specific rotation.

Sulfonates are subject to the same limitations as alkyl halides. Competition from elimination needs to be considered when planning a functional group transformation that requires an anionic nucleophile, because tosylates undergo elimination reactions, just as alkyl halides do. For example:



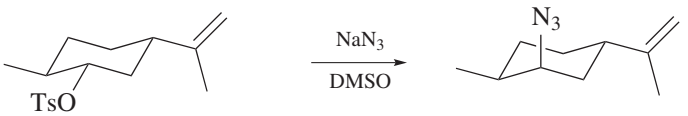
1-Methylpentyl *p*-toluenesulfonate

1-Hexene (33%)

(*E*)-2-Hexene (44%)

(*Z*)-2-Hexene (23%)

Because the leaving group is attached to a secondary carbon and methoxide is strongly basic, elimination predominates. However, note that the weakly basic azide ion reacts with the secondary *p*-toluenesulfonate shown by substitution and with inversion of configuration.



(1*S*, 2*S*, 5*S*)-5-Isopropenyl-2-methylcyclohexyl *p*-toluenesulfonate

(1*R*, 2*S*, 5*S*)-5-Isopropenyl-2-methylcyclohexyl azide (76%)

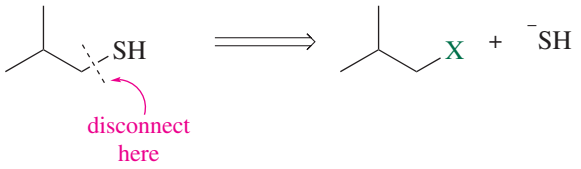
Alcohols are often central intermediates in the synthesis of complex molecules, because they are available from other materials and can be converted to other types of compounds. The ability to convert alcohols to alkyl halides and sulfonates for use in nucleophilic substitutions opens up a wide range of possibilities for the synthesis of valuable organic compounds.

8.12 Nucleophilic Substitution and Retrosynthetic Analysis

Section 6.15 introduced retrosynthetic analysis as a tool for planning the synthesis of a target molecule from appropriate starting materials using reactions that we are confident will work. This section continues developing retrosynthetic principles while incorporating methods based on nucleophilic substitution. In addition, we'll introduce using *bond-disconnection* as a helpful aid.

> **Example:** Prepare $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2SH$ from any hydrocarbon and inorganic materials of your choice.

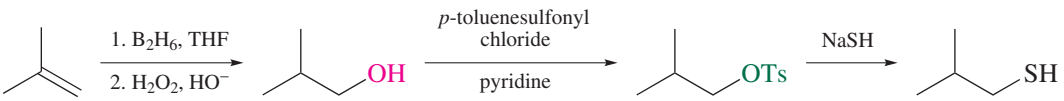
Begin by writing a structural formula for the desired compound and select a bond that must be made, then disconnect that bond in a way related to a synthetic transformation. One possibility is:



where X is a leaving group such as halide or tosylate. Consider each of these possibilities independently. Tosylates are made from alcohols, so the next retrosynthesis is:

The problem specifies that a hydrocarbon be the starting material, so hydroboration-oxidation of an alkene is a reasonable possibility for completing the retrosynthesis.

With the retrosynthesis as a guide, we write the sequence of reactions in the forward direction and show the necessary reagents.

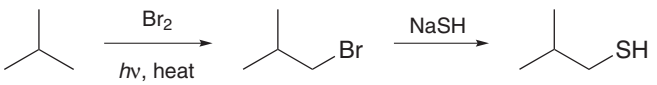


Many different syntheses can often be devised, so it is important that each be evaluated critically to ensure that they meet the standards of regio- and stereoselectivity the target requires.

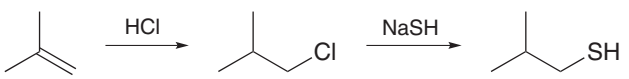
Problem 8.20

All of the following syntheses have flaws. Describe what is wrong with each.

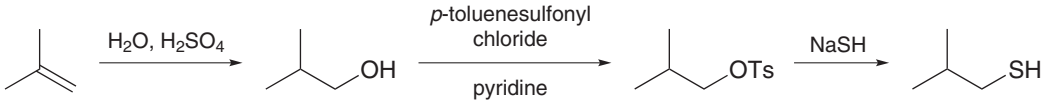
(a)



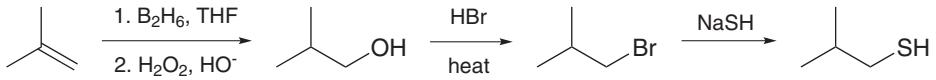
(b)



(c)



(d)



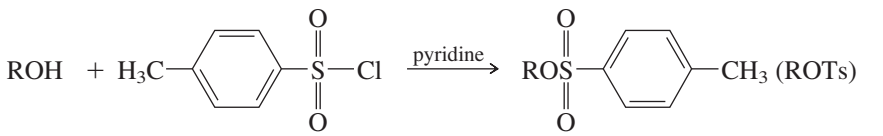
8.13 Summary

Section 8.1 Nucleophilic substitution is one of the main methods for functional group transformations. Examples of synthetically useful nucleophilic substitutions were given in Table 8.1. It is a good idea to return to that table and review its entries now that the details of nucleophilic substitution have been covered.

Sections 8.2–8.9 These sections show how a variety of experimental observations led to the proposal of the S_N1 and the S_N2 mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution. Summary Table 8.7 integrates the material in these sections.

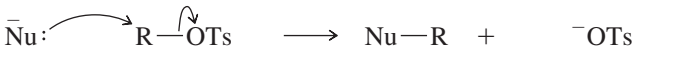
Section 8.10 When nucleophilic substitution is used for synthesis, the competition between substitution and elimination must favor substitution. However, *the normal reaction of a secondary alkyl halide with a base as strong or stronger than hydroxide is elimination (E2).* Substitution by the S_N2 mechanism predominates only when the base is weaker than hydroxide or the alkyl halide is primary. Elimination predominates when tertiary alkyl halides react with any anion.

Section 8.11 Nucleophilic substitution can occur with leaving groups other than halide. Alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonates *(tosylates),* which are prepared from alcohols by reaction with *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride, are often used.



Alcohol *p*-Toluenesulfonyl chloride Alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonate (alkyl tosylate)

In its ability to act as a leaving group, *p*-toluenesulfonate is even more reactive than iodide.



Nucleophile Alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonate Substitution product *p*-Toluenesulfonate ion

Section 8.12 Retrosynthetic analysis can suggest a synthetic transformation by disconnecting a bond to a functional group and considering how that group can be introduced into the carbon chain by nucleophilic substitution.

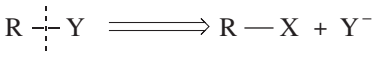


TABLE 8.7 Comparison of S_N1 and S_N2 Mechanisms of Nucleophilic Substitution in Alkyl Halides

	S_N1	S_N2
Characteristics of mechanism	Two elementary steps: Step 1: Step 2: Ionization of alkyl halide (step 1) is rate-determining. (Section 8.6)	Single step: Nucleophile displaces leaving group; bonding to the incoming nucleophile accompanies cleavage of the bond to the leaving group. (Section 8.3)
Rate-determining transition state	 (Section 8.6)	 (Section 8.3)
Molecularity	Unimolecular (Section 8.6)	Bimolecular (Section 8.3)
Kinetics and rate law	First order: Rate = k[alkyl halide] (Section 8.6)	Second order: Rate = k[alkyl halide][nucleophile] (Section 8.3)
Relative reactivity of halide leaving groups	RI > RBr > RCl >> RF (Section 8.2)	RI > RBr > RCl >> RF (Section 8.2)
Effect of structure on rate	$R_3CX > R_2CHX > RCH_2X > CH_3X$ Rate is governed by stability of carbocation that is formed in ionization step. Tertiary alkyl halides can react only by the S_N1 mechanism; they never react by the S_N2 mechanism. (Section 8.6)	$CH_3X > RCH_2X > R_2CHX > R_3CX$ Rate is governed by steric effects (crowding in transition state). Methyl and primary alkyl halides can react only by the S_N2 mechanism; they never react by the S_N1 mechanism. (Section 8.4)
Effect of nucleophile on rate	Rate of substitution is independent of both concentration and nature of nucleophile. Nucleophile does not participate until after rate-determining step. (Section 8.6)	Rate depends on both nature of nucleophile and its concentration. (Sections 8.3 and 8.5)
Effect of solvent on rate	Rate increases with increasing polarity of solvent as measured by its dielectric constant ε. (Section 8.9)	Polar aprotic solvents give fastest rates of substitution; solvation of $Nu:^-$ is minimal and nucleophilicity is greatest. (Section 8.9)
Stereochemistry	Not stereospecific: racemization accompanies inversion when leaving group is located at a chirality center. (Section 8.7)	Stereospecific: 100% inversion of configuration at reaction site. Nucleophile attacks carbon from side opposite bond to leaving group. (Section 8.3)
Potential for rearrangements	Carbocation intermediate capable of rearrangement. (Section 8.8)	No carbocation intermediate; no rearrangement.

PROBLEMS

8.21 Write the structure of the major organic product from the reaction of 1-bromopropane with each of the following:

(a) Sodium iodide in acetone

(b) Sodium acetate ($CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}ONa$) in acetic acid

(c) Sodium ethoxide in ethanol

(d) Sodium cyanide in dimethyl sulfoxide

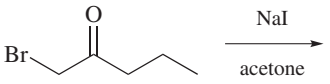
(e) Sodium azide in aqueous ethanol

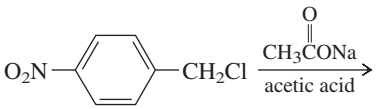
(f) Sodium hydrogen sulfide in ethanol

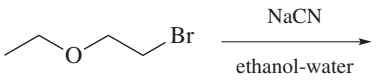
(g) Sodium methanethiolate ($NaSCH_3$) in ethanol

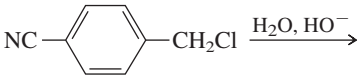
8.22 All the reactions of 1-bromopropane in the preceding problem give the product of nucleophilic substitution in high yield. High yields of substitution products are also obtained in all but one of the analogous reactions of 2-bromopropane. In one case, however, 2-bromopropane is converted to propene, especially when the reaction is carried out at elevated temperature (about 55°C). Which reactant is most effective in converting 2-bromopropane to propene?

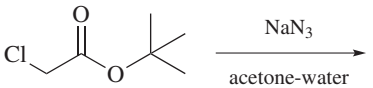
8.23 Each of the following nucleophilic substitution reactions has been reported in the chemical literature. Many of them involve reactants that are somewhat more complex than those we have dealt with to this point. Nevertheless, you should be able to predict the product by analogy to what you know about nucleophilic substitution in simple systems.

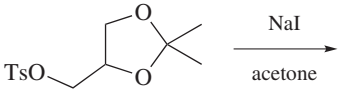
(a) 

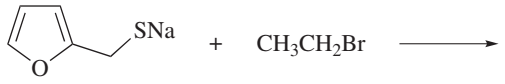
(b) 

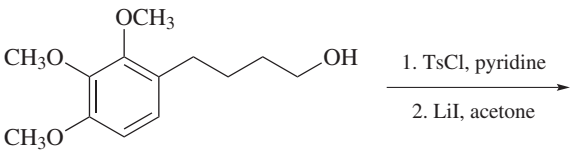
(c) 

(d) 

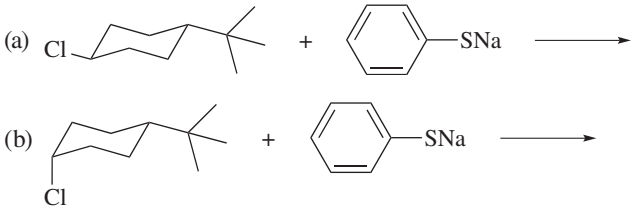
(e) 

(f) 

(g) 

(h) 

8.24 Each of the reactions shown involves nucleophilic substitution. The product of reaction (a) is an isomer of the product of reaction (b). What kind of isomer? By what mechanism does nucleophilic substitution occur? Write the structural formula of the product of each reaction.



8.25 There is an overall 29-fold difference in reactivity of 1-chlorohexane, 2-chlorohexane, and 3-chlorohexane toward potassium iodide in acetone.

(a) Which one is the most reactive? Why?

(b) Two of the isomers differ by only a factor of 2 in reactivity. Which two are these? Which one is the more reactive? Why?

8.26 In each of the following indicate which reaction will occur faster. Explain your reasoning.

(a) $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Br$ or $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2I$ with sodium cyanide in dimethyl sulfoxide

(b) 1-Chloro-2-methylbutane or 1-chloropentane with sodium iodide in acetone

(c) Hexyl chloride or cyclohexyl chloride with sodium azide in aqueous ethanol

(d) Solvolysis of 1-bromo-2,2-dimethylpropane or *tert*-butyl bromide in ethanol

(e) Solvolysis of isobutyl bromide or *sec*-butyl bromide in aqueous formic acid

(f) Reaction of 1-chlorobutane with sodium acetate in acetic acid or with sodium methoxide in methanol

(g) Reaction of 1-chlorobutane with sodium azide or sodium *p*-toluenesulfonate in aqueous ethanol

8.27 Photochemical chlorination of $(CH_3)_3CCH_2C(CH_3)_3$ gave a mixture of two monochlorides in a 4:1 ratio. The structures of these two products were assigned on the basis of their S_N1 hydrolysis rates in aqueous ethanol. The major product (compound A) underwent hydrolysis much more slowly than the minor one (compound B). Deduce the structures of compounds A and B.

8.28 The compound KSCN is a source of *thiocyanate* ion.

(a) Write the two most stable Lewis structures for thiocyanate ion and identify the atom in each that bears a formal charge of −1.

(b) Two constitutionally isomeric products of molecular formula C_5H_9NS were isolated in a combined yield of 87% in the reaction shown. (DMF stands for *N,N*-dimethylformamide, a polar aprotic solvent.) Suggest reasonable structures for these two compounds.

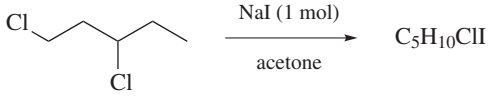
$$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Br \xrightarrow[DMF]{KSCN}$$

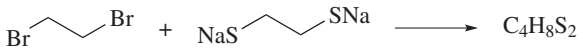
8.29 Sodium nitrite ($NaNO_2$) reacted with 2-iodooctane to give a mixture of two constitutionally isomeric compounds of molecular formula $C_8H_{17}NO_2$ in a combined yield of 88%. Suggest reasonable structures for these two isomers.

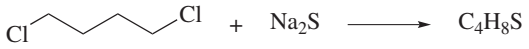
8.30 Reaction of ethyl iodide with triethylamine [$(CH_3CH_2)_3N$:] yields a crystalline compound $C_8H_{20}NI$ in high yield. This compound is soluble in polar solvents such as water but insoluble in nonpolar ones such as diethyl ether. It does not melt below about 200°C. Suggest a reasonable structure for this product.

8.31 Write an equation, clearly showing the stereochemistry of the starting material and the product, for the reaction of (*S*)-1-bromo-2-methylbutane with sodium iodide in acetone. What is the configuration (*R* or *S*) of the product?

8.32 Identify the product in each of the following reactions:

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

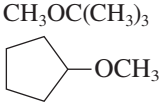
8.33 Give the mechanistic symbols (S_N1, S_N2, E1, E2) that are most consistent with each of the following statements:

(a) Methyl halides react with sodium ethoxide in ethanol only by this mechanism.
(b) Unhindered primary halides react with sodium ethoxide in ethanol mainly by this mechanism.
(c) When cyclohexyl bromide is treated with sodium ethoxide in ethanol, the major product is formed by this mechanism.
(d) The substitution product obtained by solvolysis of *tert*-butyl bromide in ethanol arises by this mechanism.
(e) In ethanol that contains sodium ethoxide, *tert*-butyl bromide reacts mainly by this mechanism.
(f) These reaction mechanisms represent concerted processes.
(g) Reactions proceeding by these mechanisms are stereospecific.
(h) These reaction mechanisms involve carbocation intermediates.
(i) These reaction mechanisms are the ones most likely to have been involved when the products are found to have a different carbon skeleton from the substrate.
(j) Alkyl iodides react faster than alkyl bromides in reactions that proceed by these mechanisms.

8.34 Outline an efficient synthesis of each of the following compounds from the indicated starting material and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents:

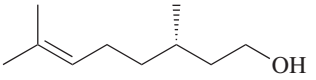
(a) Cyclopentyl cyanide from cyclopentane
(b) Cyclopentyl cyanide from cyclopentene
(c) Cyclopentyl cyanide from cyclopentanol
(d) $NCCH_2CH_2CN$ from ethyl alcohol
(e) Isobutyl iodide from isobutyl chloride
(f) Isobutyl iodide from *tert*-butyl chloride
(g) Isopropyl azide from isopropyl alcohol
(h) Isopropyl azide from 1-propanol
(i) (*S*)-*sec*-Butyl azide from (*R*)-*sec*-butyl alcohol
(j) (*S*)-$CH_3CH_2\underset{\displaystyle SH}{\underset{|}{C}}HCH_3$ from (*R*)-*sec*-butyl alcohol

8.35 Use retrosynthetic notation to show the combination of alkyl bromide and potassium alkoxide that would be the most effective in the syntheses of the following ethers.

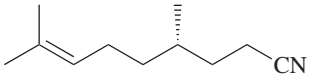
(a) $CH_3OC(CH_3)_3$
(b) 

(c) $(CH_3)_3CCH_2OCH_2CH_3$

8.36 The sex pheromone (*matsuone*) of a parasitic insect (*Matsucoccus*) that infests pine trees was prepared in a multistep synthesis from (−)-citronellol by way of the nitrile shown.



(*S*)-(–)-Citronellol



(*S*)-4,8-Dimethyl-7-nonenenitrile

(a) Relate the nitrile to (–)-citronellol by a retrosynthetic analysis.

(b) Convert your retrosynthesis to a synthesis, showing appropriate reagents for each step.

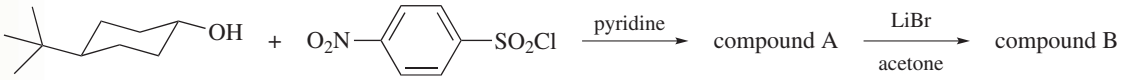
8.37 (*Note to the student:* This problem previews an important aspect of Chapter 9 and is well worth attempting in order to get a head start on the material presented there.)

Alkynes of the type RC≡CH may be prepared by nucleophilic substitution reactions in which one of the starting materials is sodium acetylide ($Na^+ \ :\bar{C}{\equiv}CH$).

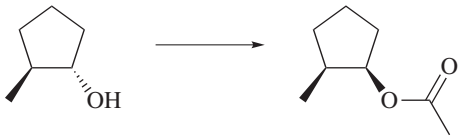
(a) Devise a method for the preparation of $CH_3CH_2C{\equiv}CH$ from sodium acetylide and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

(b) Given the information that the pK_a for acetylene (HC≡CH) is 26, comment on the scope of this preparative procedure with respect to R in RC≡CH. Could you prepare $(CH_3)_2CHC{\equiv}CH$ or $(CH_3)_3CC{\equiv}CH$ in good yield by this method?

8.38 Give the structures, including stereochemistry, of compounds A and B in the following sequence of reactions:

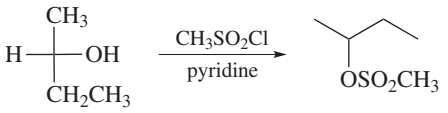


8.39 (a) Suggest a reasonable series of synthetic transformations for converting *trans*-2-methylcyclopentanol to *cis*-2-methylcyclopentyl acetate.



(b) How could you prepare *cis*-2-methylcyclopentyl acetate from 1-methylcyclopentanol?

8.40 Optically pure (*S*)-(+)-2-butanol was converted to its methanesulfonate according to the reaction shown.



(a) Write the Fischer projection of the *sec*-butyl methanesulfonate formed in this reaction.

(b) The *sec*-butyl methanesulfonate in part (a) was treated with $NaSCH_2CH_3$ to give a product having an optical rotation α_D of −25°. Write the Fischer projection of this product. By what mechanism is it formed? What is its absolute configuration (*R* or *S*)?

(c) When treated with PBr_3, optically pure (*S*)-(+)-2-butanol gave 2-bromobutane having an optical rotation $\alpha_D = -38°$. This bromide was then allowed to react with $NaSCH_2CH_3$ to give a product having an optical rotation α_D of +23°. Write the Fischer projection for (−)-2-bromobutane and specify its configuration as *R* or *S*. Does the reaction of 2-butanol with PBr_3 proceed with predominant inversion or retention of configuration?

(d) What is the optical rotation of optically pure 2-bromobutane?

8.41 The ratio of elimination to substitution is exactly the same (26% elimination) for 2-bromo-2-methylbutane and 2-iodo-2-methylbutane in 80% ethanol/20% water at 25°C.

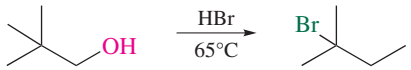
(a) By what mechanism does substitution most likely occur in these compounds under these conditions?

(b) By what mechanism does elimination most likely occur in these compounds under these conditions?

(c) Which substrate undergoes substitution faster?

(d) Which substrate undergoes elimination faster?
(e) What two substitution products are formed from each substrate?
(f) What two elimination products are formed from each substrate?
(g) Why do you suppose the ratio of elimination to substitution is the same for the two substrates?

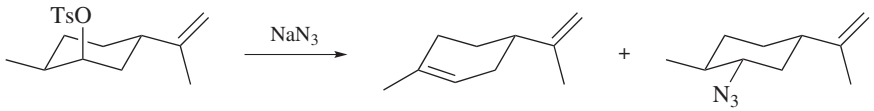
8.42 The reaction of 2,2-dimethyl-1-propanol with HBr is very slow and gives 2-bromo-2-methylbutane as the major product.



Give a mechanistic explanation for these observations.

8.43 Solvolysis of 2-bromo-2-methylbutane in acetic acid containing potassium acetate gave three products. Identify them.

8.44 In contrast to the displacement by azide shown in Section 8.11, the sulfonate shown here gives significant amounts of elimination product. Suggest an explanation for this difference in reactivity.



8.45 If the temperature is not kept below 25°C during the reaction of primary alcohols with *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride in pyridine, it is sometimes observed that the isolated product is not the desired alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonate but is instead the corresponding alkyl chloride. Suggest a mechanistic explanation for this observation.

8.46 In a classic experiment, Edward Hughes (a colleague of Ingold's at University College, London) studied the rate of racemization of 2-iodooctane by sodium iodide in acetone and compared it with the rate of incorporation of radioactive iodine into 2-iodooctane.

$$RI + [I^*]^- \longrightarrow RI^* + I^-$$

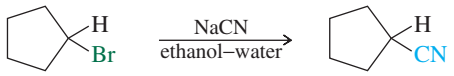
(I* = radioactive iodine)

How will the rate of racemization compare with the rate of incorporation of radioactivity if

(a) Each act of exchange proceeds stereospecifically with retention of configuration?
(b) Each act of exchange proceeds stereospecifically with inversion of configuration?
(c) Each act of exchange proceeds in a stereorandom manner, in which retention and inversion of configuration are equally likely?

8.47 Based on what we know about nucleophiles and leaving groups, we suspect that the reaction of (*R*)-2-chlorobutane with sodium iodide in acetone would not be useful as a synthesis of (*S*)-2-iodobutane. Explain.

8.48 The reaction of cyclopentyl bromide with sodium cyanide to give cyclopentyl cyanide



Cyclopentyl bromide Cyclopentyl cyanide

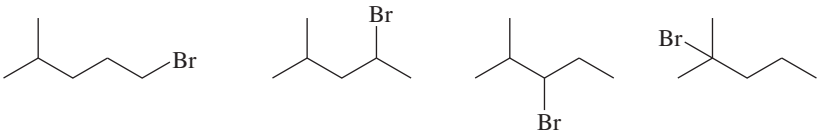
proceeds faster if a small amount of sodium iodide is added to the reaction mixture. Can you suggest a reasonable mechanism to explain the catalytic function of sodium iodide?

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 8

Nucleophilic Substitution

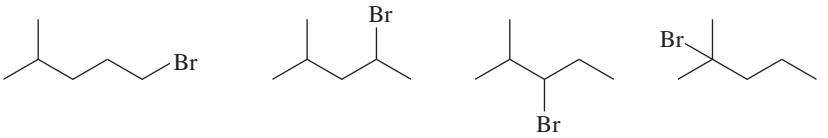
These problems differ from those in earlier chapters in that they directly test your knowledge of core material rather than using a descriptive passage to extend the material or introduce new ideas. The number of factors that contribute to nucleophilic substitution can be daunting. The really major ones, though, are few and readily applied to specific reactions by using the S_N1 and S_N2 mechanisms to guide your analysis.

8.49 Which compound undergoes substitution by the S_N1 mechanism at the fastest rate?



A. B. C. D.

8.50 Which compound undergoes substitution by the S_N2 mechanism at the fastest rate?



A. B. C. D.

8.51 Which reaction takes place at the fastest rate?

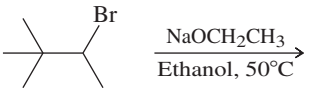
A. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl + NaSH \xrightarrow{\text{Ethanol, 25°C}} CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2SH + NaCl$

B. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl + NaSH \xrightarrow{\text{Ethanol, 25°C}} CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2 + NaCl + H_2S$

C. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Br + NaSH \xrightarrow{\text{Ethanol, 25°C}} CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2SH + NaBr$

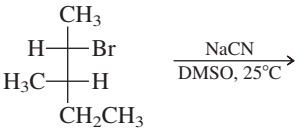
D. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Br + NaSH \xrightarrow{\text{Ethanol, 25°C}} CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2 + NaBr + H_2S$

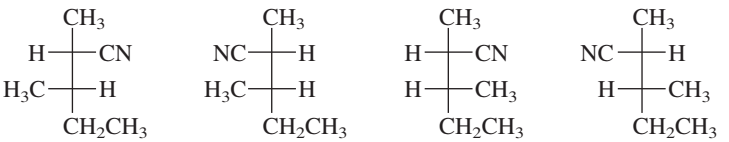
8.52 Identify the mechanism most responsible for the major product in the following reaction.



A. S_N1
B. S_N2
C. E1
D. E2

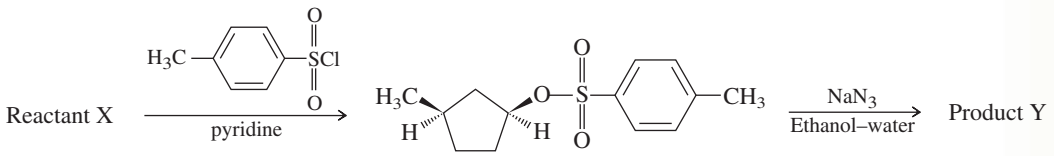
8.53 What is the major product of the reaction shown?

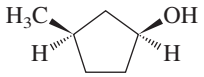
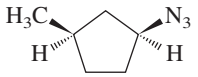
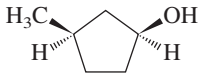
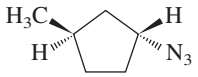
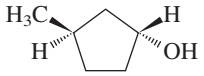
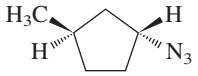
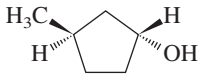
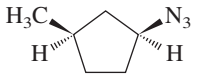




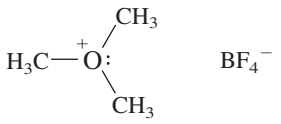
A. B. C. D.

8.54 What are reactant X and product Y in the following sequence of reactions?

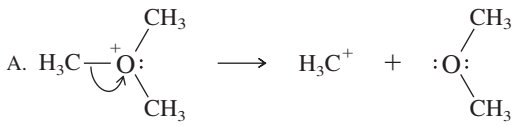


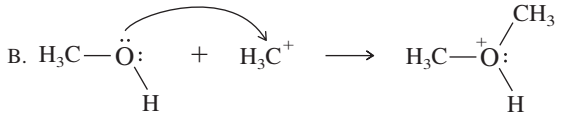
	Reactant X	Product Y
A.		
B.		
C.		
D.		

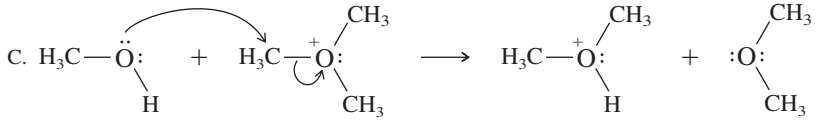
8.55 Trimethyloxonium tetrafluoroborate reacts with methanol (CH_3OH) to give dimethyl ether (CH_3OCH_3). Which equation, including the curved arrows, best represents the rate-determining step in the mechanism?

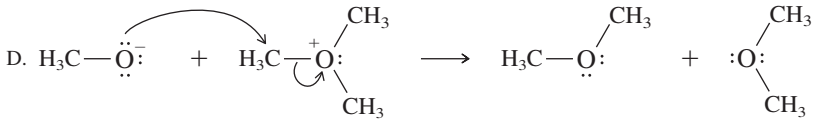


Trimethyloxonium tetrafluoroborate

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

9

CHAPTER OUTLINE

9.1 Sources of Alkynes 342
9.2 Nomenclature 344
9.3 Physical Properties of Alkynes 344
9.4 Structure and Bonding in Alkynes: *sp* Hybridization 344
9.5 Acidity of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes 347
9.6 Preparation of Alkynes by Alkylation of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes 348
9.7 Preparation of Alkynes by Elimination Reactions 350
9.8 Reactions of Alkynes 352
9.9 Hydrogenation of Alkynes 352
9.10 Metal–Ammonia Reduction of Alkynes 354
9.11 Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Alkynes 354
9.12 Hydration of Alkynes 357
9.13 Addition of Halogens to Alkynes 358
■ Some Things That Can Be Made from Acetylene . . . But Aren't 359
9.14 Ozonolysis of Alkynes 359
9.15 Alkynes in Synthesis and Retrosynthesis 360
9.16 Summary 361
Problems 363
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 9: Thinking Mechanistically About Alkynes 368

The brightly colored poison dart frogs of Central and South America store toxic substances such as the acetylenic alkaloid histrionicotoxin within their bodies to deter attacks by other animals.

Alkynes

Hydrocarbons that contain a carbon–carbon triple bond are called **alkynes.** Noncyclic alkynes have the molecular formula C_nH_{2n-2}. *Acetylene* (HC≡CH) is the simplest alkyne. We call compounds that have their triple bond at the end of a carbon chain (RC≡CH) *monosubstituted,* or **terminal, alkynes.** Disubstituted alkynes (RC≡CR′) have *internal* triple bonds. You will see in this chapter that a carbon–carbon triple bond is a functional group, reacting with many of the same reagents that react with the double bonds of alkenes.

The most distinctive aspect of the chemistry of acetylene and terminal alkynes is their acidity. As a class, compounds of the type RC≡CH are the most acidic of all hydrocarbons. The structural reasons for this property, as well as the ways in which it is used to advantage in chemical synthesis, are important elements of this chapter.

9.1 Sources of Alkynes

Acetylene was discovered in 1836 but did not command much attention until its large-scale preparation from calcium carbide near the end of the nineteenth century stimulated interest in

industrial applications. In the first stage of that synthesis, limestone and coke, a material rich in elemental carbon obtained from coal, are heated in an electric furnace to form calcium carbide.

This reaction was accidentally discovered in 1892 by the Canadian inventor Thomas L. Willson while looking for a method to make aluminum.

$$\underset{\text{Calcium oxide (from limestone)}}{CaO} + \underset{\text{Carbon (from coke)}}{3C} \xrightarrow{1800\text{–}2100^\circ C} \underset{\text{Calcium carbide}}{CaC_2} + \underset{\text{Carbon monoxide}}{CO}$$

Calcium carbide is the calcium salt of the doubly negative carbide ion ($:\bar{C}\equiv\bar{C}:$). Carbide ion is strongly basic and reacts with water to form acetylene:

$$\underset{\text{Calcium carbide}}{Ca^{2+}\left[:C\equiv C:\right]^{2-}} + \underset{\text{Water}}{2H_2O} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Calcium hydroxide}}{Ca(OH)_2} + \underset{\text{Acetylene}}{HC\equiv CH}$$

Problem 9.1

Use curved arrows to show how calcium carbide reacts with water to give acetylene.

Beginning in the middle of the twentieth century, alternative methods of acetylene production became practical. One is the dehydrogenation of ethylene.

$$\underset{\text{Ethylene}}{H_2C{=}CH_2} \overset{\text{heat}}{\rightleftharpoons} \underset{\text{Acetylene}}{HC\equiv CH} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{H_2}$$

The reaction is endothermic, and the equilibrium favors ethylene at low temperatures but shifts to favor acetylene above 1150°C. Indeed, at very high temperatures most hydrocarbons, even methane, are converted to acetylene. Acetylene has value not only by itself but also as a starting material from which higher alkynes are prepared.

More than 1000 natural products contain carbon–carbon triple bonds. Many, such as stearolic acid and tariric acid are **fatty acids**—carboxylic acids with unbranched chains of 12–20 carbon atoms—or are derived from them.

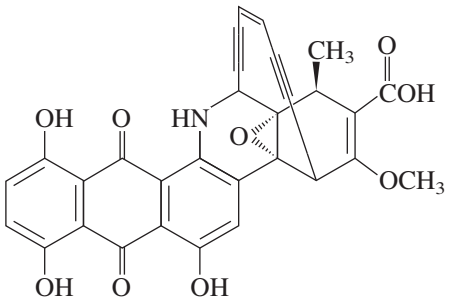
$$\underset{\text{Stearolic acid}}{CH_3(CH_2)_7C\equiv C(CH_2)_7\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}OH} \qquad \underset{\text{Tariric acid}}{CH_3(CH_2)_{10}C\equiv C(CH_2)_4\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}OH}$$

The main biosynthetic route to acetylenic fatty acids in plants appears to be by enzyme-catalyzed oxidation of analogous compounds with carbon–carbon double bonds. The enzymes responsible *(acetylenases)* belong to a class called *desaturases.*

$$\underset{\text{Linoleic acid}}{(Z,Z)\text{-}CH_3(CH_2)_4CH{=}CHCH_2CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}OH} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Crepenynic acid}}{(Z)\text{-}CH_3(CH_2)_4C\equiv CCH_2CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}OH}$$

Cultures of the bacterium *Micromonospora chersina* produce dynemicin A, a novel substance containing a double bond and two triple bonds in a ten-membered ring (an *enediyne*). Dynemicin A has attracted interest because of its unusual structure as well as its interesting biological activity. It has the ability to cleave DNA by a novel mechanism,

which may lead to the development of anticancer drugs that are based on the enediyne structure.



Dynemicin A

Diacetylene (HC≡C—C≡CH) has been identified as a component of the hydrocarbon-rich atmospheres of Uranus, Neptune, and Pluto. It is also present in the atmospheres of Titan and Triton, satellites of Saturn and Neptune, respectively.

9.2 Nomenclature

In naming alkynes the usual IUPAC rules for hydrocarbons are followed, and the suffix *-ane* is replaced by *-yne.* Both acetylene and ethyne are acceptable IUPAC names for HC≡CH. The position of the triple bond along the chain is specified by number in a manner analogous to alkene nomenclature.

$HC{\equiv}CCH_3$	$HC{\equiv}CCH_2CH_3$	$CH_3C{\equiv}CCH_3$	$(CH_3)_3CC{\equiv}CCH_3$
Propyne or Prop-1-yne	1-Butyne or But-1-yne	2-Butyne or But-2-yne	4,4-Dimethyl-2-pentyne or 4,4-Dimethylpent-2-yne

Problem 9.2

Write structural formulas and give the IUPAC names for all the alkynes of molecular formula C_5H_8.

If a compound contains both a double bond and a triple bond, the chain is numbered so as to give the first multiple bond the lowest number, irrespective of whether it is a double bond or a triple bond. Ties are broken in favor of the double bond. An *en* suffix for the double bond precedes *yne* and is separated from it by the *yne* locant. Thus, the compound vinylacetylene $H_2C{=}CH{-}C{\equiv}CH$ is named but-1-en-3-yne according to the latest IUPAC rules.

Vinylacetylene is a high-volume industrial chemical used in the preparation of neoprene.

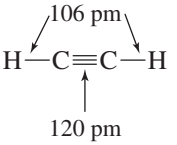
When the —C≡CH group is named as a substituent, it is designated as an *ethynyl* group.

9.3 Physical Properties of Alkynes

Alkynes resemble alkanes and alkenes in their physical properties. They share with these other hydrocarbons the properties of low density and low water-solubility and have boiling points similar to those of alkanes.

9.4 Structure and Bonding in Alkynes: *sp* Hybridization

Acetylene is linear, with a carbon–carbon bond distance of 120 pm and carbon–hydrogen bond distances of 106 pm.



Acetylene

Linear geometries characterize the H—C≡C—C and C—C≡C—C units of terminal and internal triple bonds, respectively, as well. This linear geometry is responsible for the relatively small number of known *cycloalkynes*. Figure 9.1 shows a molecular model of cyclononyne in which the bending of the C—C≡C—C unit is clearly evident. Angle strain destabilizes cycloalkynes to the extent that cyclononyne is the smallest one that is stable enough to be stored for long periods. The next smaller one, cyclooctyne, has been isolated, but is relatively reactive and polymerizes on standing.

An *sp* hybridization model for the carbon–carbon triple bond was developed in Section 2.9 and is reviewed for acetylene in Figure 9.2. Figure 9.3 compares the electrostatic potential maps of ethylene and acetylene and shows how the two π bonds in acetylene cause a band of high electron density to encircle the molecule.

Table 9.1 compares some structural features of alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes. As we progress through the series in the order ethane → ethylene → acetylene:

1. The geometry at carbon changes from tetrahedral → trigonal planar → linear.
2. The C—C and C—H bonds become shorter and stronger.
3. The acidity of the C—H bonds increases.

All of these trends can be accommodated by the orbital hybridization model. The bond angles are characteristic for the sp^3, sp^2, and *sp* hybridization states of carbon and don't require additional comment. The bond distances, bond strengths, and acidities are related to the *s* character in the orbitals used for bonding. *s* Character is the fraction of the hybrid orbital contributed by an *s* orbital. Thus, an sp^3 orbital has one quarter *s* character and three quarters *p,* an sp^2 orbital has one third *s* and two thirds *p,* and an *sp* orbital one half *s* and one half *p*. We then use this information to analyze how various qualities of the hybrid orbital reflect those of its *s* and *p* contributors.

Take C—H bond distance and bond strength, for example. Recalling that an electron in a 2*s* orbital is, on average, closer to the nucleus and more strongly held than an electron in a 2*p* orbital, it follows that an electron in an orbital with more *s* character will be more

Figure 9.1

Molecular model of cyclononyne showing bending of the bond angles associated with the triply bonded carbons. This model closely matches the structure determined experimentally. Notice how the staggering of bonds on adjacent atoms governs the overall shape of the ring.

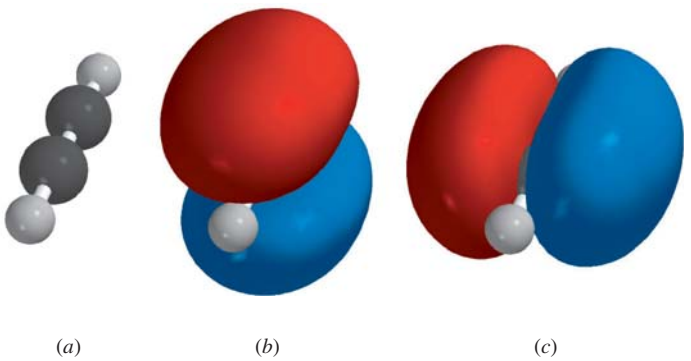


Figure 9.2

The carbon atoms of acetylene are connected by a σ + π + π triple bond. (*a*) Both carbon atoms are *sp*-hybridized, and each is bonded to a hydrogen by a σ bond. The two π bonds are perpendicular to each other and are shown separately in (*b*) and (*c*).

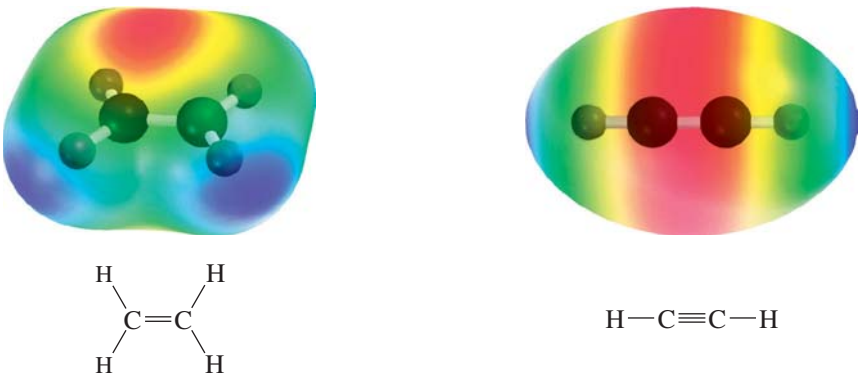


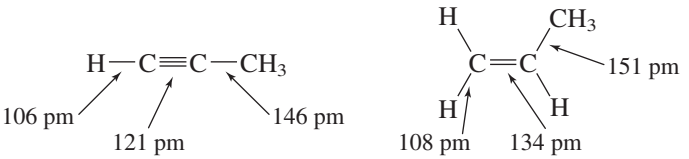
Figure 9.3

Electrostatic potential maps of ethylene and acetylene. The region of highest negative charge (red) is associated with the π bonds and lies between the two carbons in both. This electron-rich region is above and below the plane of the molecule in ethylene. Because acetylene has two π bonds, a band of high electron density encircles the molecule.

The hybridization model for bonding in acetylene is depicted in Figure 2.18.

strongly held than an electron in an orbital with less *s* character. Thus, when an *sp* orbital of carbon overlaps with a hydrogen 1*s* orbital to give a C—H σ bond, the bond is stronger and shorter than one between hydrogen and sp^2-hybridized carbon. Similar reasoning holds for the shorter C—C bond distance of acetylene compared with ethylene, although here the additional π bond in acetylene is also a factor.

The pattern is repeated in higher alkynes as shown when comparing propyne and propene. The bonds to the *sp*-hybridized carbons of propyne are shorter than the corresponding bonds to the sp^2-hybridized carbons of propene.



Propyne Propene

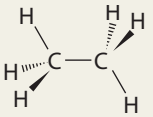
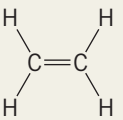
A good way to think about the effect of the *s* character is to associate it with electronegativity. As its *s* character increases, so does a carbon's electronegativity (the electrons in the bond involving that orbital are closer to carbon). The hydrogens in C—H bonds behave as if they are attached to an increasingly more electronegative carbon in the series ethane → ethylene → acetylene.

Problem 9.3

How do bond distances and bond strengths change with electronegativity in the series NH_3, H_2O, and HF?

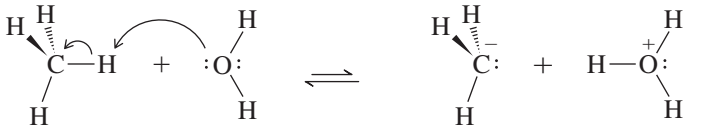
The property that most separates acetylene from ethane and ethylene is its acidity. It, too, can be explained on the basis of the greater electronegativity of *sp*-hybridized carbon compared with sp^3 and sp^2.

TABLE 9.1 Structural Features of Ethane, Ethylene, and Acetylene

Feature	Ethane	Ethylene	Acetylene
Systematic name	Ethane	Ethene	Ethyne
Molecular formula	C_2H_6	C_2H_4	C_2H_2
Structural formula			H—C≡C—H
C—C bond distance, pm	153	134	120
C—H bond distance, pm	111	110	106
H—C—C bond angles	111.0°	121.4°	180°
C—C bond dissociation enthalpy kJ/mol (kcal/mol)	375 (90)	720 (172)	961 (230)
C—H bond dissociation enthalpy, kJ/mol (kcal/mol)	421 (100.5)	464 (111)	547 (131)
Hybridization of carbon	sp^3	sp^2	*sp*
s character in C—H bonds	25%	33%	50%
Approximate pK_a	62	45	26

9.5 Acidity of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes

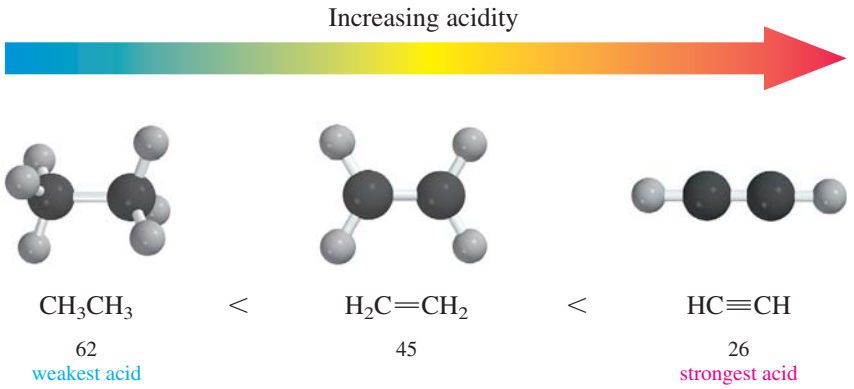
The C—H bonds of hydrocarbons show little tendency to ionize, and alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes are all very weak acids. The acid-dissociation constant K_a for methane, for example, is too small to be measured directly but is estimated to be about 10^{-60} (pK_a 60).



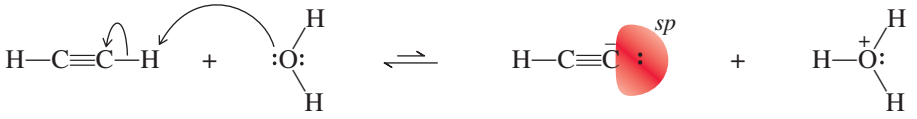
Methane ($pK_a = 60$) Water Methanide ion (a *carbanion*) Hydronium ion ($pK_a = -1.7$)

The conjugate base of a hydrocarbon is called a **carbanion.** It is an anion in which the negative charge is borne by carbon. Because it is derived from a very weak acid, a carbanion such as $^{-}{:}CH_3$ is an exceptionally strong base.

Using the relationship from the preceding section that the electronegativity of carbon increases with its *s* character ($sp^3 < sp^2 < sp$), the order of hydrocarbon acidity is seen to increase with increasing *s* character of carbon.



Ionization of acetylene gives acetylide ion in which the unshared electron pair occupies an orbital with 50% *s* character.



Acetylene ($pK_a = 26$) Water Acetylide ion Hydronium ion ($pK_a = -1.7$)

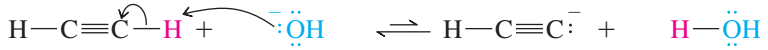
In the corresponding ionizations of ethylene and ethane, the unshared pair occupies an orbital with 33% (sp^2) and 25% (sp^3) *s* character, respectively.

Terminal alkynes (RC≡CH) resemble acetylene in acidity.

$(CH_3)_3CC{\equiv}CH$ $pK_a = 25.5$

3,3-Dimethyl-1-butyne

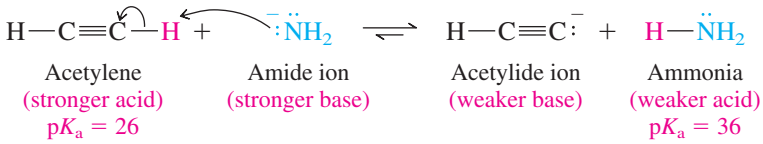
Although acetylene and terminal alkynes are far stronger acids than other hydrocarbons, we must remember that they are, nevertheless, very weak acids—much weaker than water and alcohols, for example. Hydroxide ion is too weak a base to convert acetylene to its anion in meaningful amounts. The position of the equilibrium described by the following equation lies overwhelmingly to the left:



Acetylene (weaker acid) $pK_a = 26$ Hydroxide ion (weaker base) Acetylide ion (stronger base) Water (stronger acid) $pK_a = 15.7$

Because acetylene is a far weaker acid than water and alcohols, these substances are not suitable solvents for reactions involving acetylide ions. Acetylide is instantly converted to acetylene by proton transfer from compounds that contain —OH groups.

Amide ion is a much stronger base than acetylide ion and converts acetylene to its conjugate base quantitatively.



Solutions of sodium acetylide ($HC{\equiv}CNa$) may be prepared by adding *sodium amide* ($NaNH_2$) to acetylene in liquid ammonia as the solvent. Terminal alkynes react similarly to give species of the type $RC{\equiv}CNa$.

Problem 9.4

Complete each of the following equations to show the conjugate acid and the conjugate base formed by proton transfer between the indicated species. Use curved arrows to show the flow of electrons, and specify whether the position of equilibrium lies to the side of reactants or products.

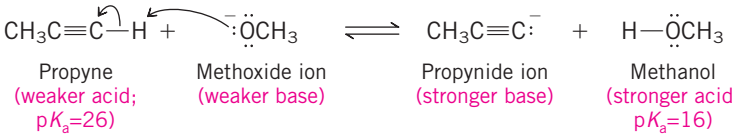
(a) $CH_3C{\equiv}CH + {:}\ddot{O}CH_3 \rightleftharpoons$

(b) $HC{\equiv}CH + H_2\ddot{C}CH_3 \rightleftharpoons$

(c) $H_2C{=}CH_2 + {:}\ddot{N}H_2 \rightleftharpoons$

(d) $CH_3C{\equiv}CCH_2OH + {:}\ddot{N}H_2 \rightleftharpoons$

Sample Solution (a) The equation representing the acid–base reaction between propyne and methoxide ion is:



Alcohols are stronger acids than acetylene, and so the position of equilibrium lies to the left. Methoxide ion is not a strong enough base to remove a proton from acetylene.

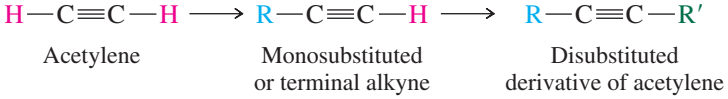
Anions of acetylene and terminal alkynes are nucleophilic and react with methyl and primary alkyl halides to form carbon–carbon bonds by nucleophilic substitution. They are such strong bases, however, that they react with secondary alkyl halides by elimination.

9.6 Preparation of Alkynes by Alkylation of Acetylene and Terminal Alkynes

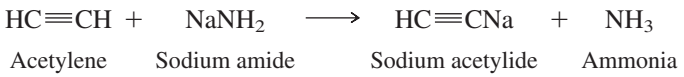
Organic synthesis makes use of two major reaction types:

1. Carbon–carbon bond-forming reactions
2. Functional group transformations

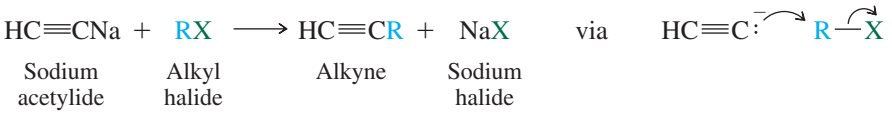
Both strategies are applied to the preparation of alkynes. In this section we shall see how to prepare alkynes by carbon–carbon bond-forming reactions. By attaching alkyl groups to acetylene **(alkylation),** more complex alkynes can be prepared.



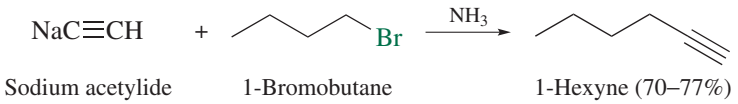
Alkylation of acetylene involves a sequence of two separate operations. In the first, acetylene is converted to its conjugate base by treatment with sodium amide.



Next, an alkyl halide (the *alkylating agent*) is added to the solution of sodium acetylide. Acetylide ion acts as a nucleophile, displacing halide from carbon and forming a new carbon–carbon bond. Substitution occurs by an S_N2 mechanism.

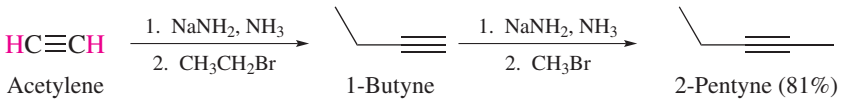


The synthetic sequence is normally carried out in liquid ammonia, diethyl ether, or tetrahydrofuran as the solvent.



An analogous sequence starting with terminal alkynes (RC≡CH) yields alkynes of the type RC≡CR′.

Dialkylation of acetylene can be achieved by carrying out the sequence twice.



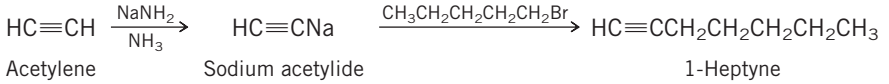
As in other nucleophilic substitution reactions, alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonates may be used in place of alkyl halides.

Problem 9.5

Outline efficient syntheses of each of the following alkynes from acetylene and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents:

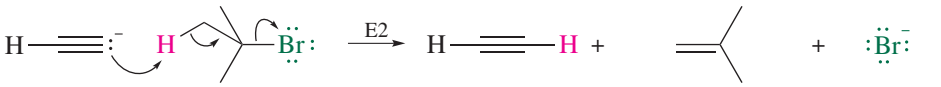
(a) 1-Heptyne (b) 2-Heptyne (c) 3-Heptyne

Sample Solution (a) An examination of the structural formula of 1-heptyne reveals it to have a pentyl group attached to an acetylene unit. Alkylation of acetylene, by way of its anion, with a pentyl halide is a suitable synthetic route to 1-heptyne.



The major limitation to this reaction is that synthetically acceptable yields are obtained only with methyl halides and primary alkyl halides. Acetylide anions are very

basic, much more basic than hydroxide, for example, and react with secondary and tertiary alkyl halides by elimination.



Acetylide | *tert*-Butyl bromide | Acetylene | 2-Methylpropene | Bromide

The desired S_N2 substitution pathway is observed only with methyl and primary alkyl halides.

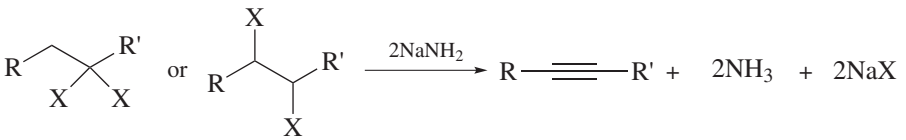
Problem 9.6

Which of the alkynes of molecular formula C_5H_8 can be prepared in good yield by alkylation or dialkylation of acetylene? Explain why the preparation of the other C_5H_8 isomers would not be practical.

A second strategy for alkyne synthesis, involving functional group transformation reactions, is described in the following section.

9.7 Preparation of Alkynes by Elimination Reactions

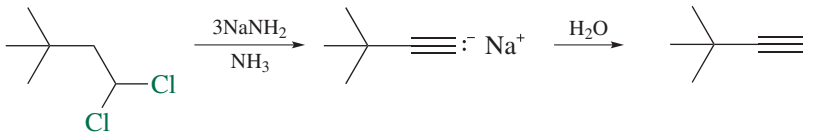
Just as it is possible to prepare alkenes by dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides, so may alkynes be prepared by a *double dehydrohalogenation* of dihaloalkanes. The dihalide may be a **geminal dihalide,** one in which both halogens are on the same carbon, or it may be a **vicinal dihalide,** one in which the halogens are on adjacent carbons.



Geminal dihalide | Vicinal dihalide | Alkyne | Ammonia | Sodium halide

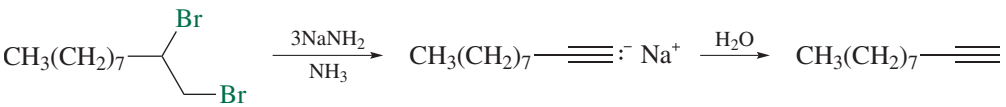
The most frequent applications of these procedures lie in the preparation of terminal alkynes. Because the terminal alkyne product is acidic enough to transfer a proton to amide anion, one equivalent of base in addition to the two equivalents required for double dehydrohalogenation is needed. Adding water or acid after the reaction is complete converts the sodium salt to the corresponding alkyne.

Double dehydrohalogenation of a geminal dihalide



1,1-Dichloro-3,3-dimethylbutane | Sodium salt of alkyne product (not isolated) | 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butyne (56–60%)

Double dehydrohalogenation of a vicinal dihalide

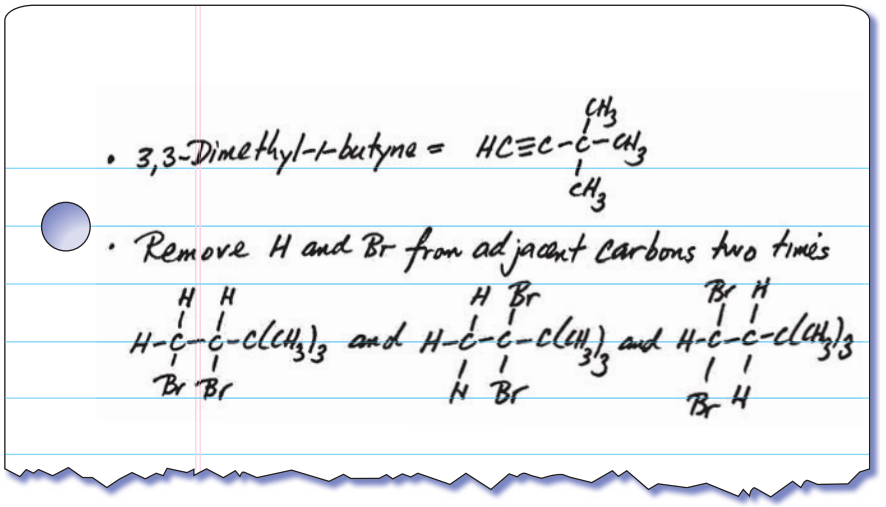


1,2-Dibromodecane | Sodium salt of alkyne product (not isolated) | 1-Decyne (54%)

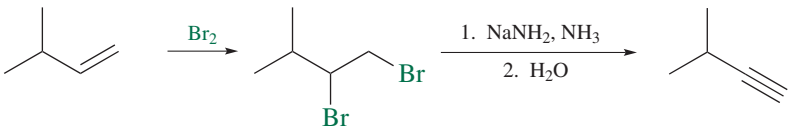
Double dehydrohalogenation to form terminal alkynes may also be carried out by heating geminal and vicinal dihalides with potassium *tert*-butoxide in dimethyl sulfoxide.

Problem 9.7

Give the structures of three isomeric dibromides that could be used as starting materials for the preparation of 3,3-dimethyl-1-butyne.



Because vicinal dihalides are prepared by addition of chlorine or bromine to alkenes (Section 6.10), alkenes, especially terminal alkenes, can serve as starting materials for the preparation of alkynes as shown in the following example:



3-Methyl-1-butene | 1,2-Dibromo-3-methylbutane | 3-Methyl-1-butyne (52%)

Problem 9.8

Show, by writing an appropriate series of equations, how you could prepare propyne from each of the following compounds as starting materials. You may use any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

(a) 2-Propanol
(b) 1-Propanol
(c) Isopropyl bromide
(d) 1,1-Dichloroethane
(e) Ethyl alcohol

Sample Solution (a) Because we know that we can convert propene to propyne by the sequence of reactions

$$CH_3CH{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow{Br_2} CH_3CHCH_2Br \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ NaNH_2,\ NH_3} CH_3C{\equiv}CH$$

Propene | 1,2-Dibromopropane | Propyne

all that remains to completely describe the synthesis is to show the preparation of propene from 2-propanol. Acid-catalyzed dehydration is suitable.

$$(CH_3)_2CHOH \xrightarrow[heat]{H_2SO_4} CH_3CH{=}CH_2$$

2-Propanol | Propene

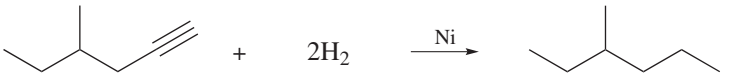
9.8 Reactions of Alkynes

We have already discussed one important chemical property of alkynes, the acidity of acetylene and terminal alkynes. In the remaining sections of this chapter several other reactions of alkynes will be explored. Most of them will be similar to reactions of alkenes. Like alkenes, alkynes undergo addition reactions. We'll begin with a reaction familiar to us from our study of alkenes, namely, catalytic hydrogenation.

9.9 Hydrogenation of Alkynes

The conditions for hydrogenation of alkynes are similar to those employed for alkenes. In the presence of finely divided platinum, palladium, nickel, or rhodium, two molar equivalents of hydrogen add to the triple bond of an alkyne to yield an alkane.

$$\underset{\text{Alkyne}}{RC{\equiv}CR'} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{2H_2} \xrightarrow{\text{Pt, Pd, Ni, or Rh}} \underset{\text{Alkane}}{RCH_2CH_2R'}$$



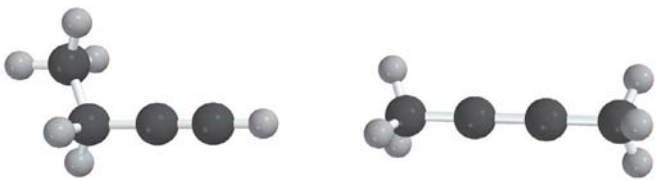
4-Methyl-1-hexyne — Hydrogen — 3-Methylhexane (77%)

Problem 9.9

Write a series of equations showing how you could prepare octane from acetylene and any necessary organic and inorganic reagents.

The heat of hydrogenation of an alkyne is greater than twice the heat of hydrogenation of an alkene. When two moles of hydrogen add to an alkyne, addition of the first mole (triple bond → double bond) is more exothermic than the second (double bond → single bond).

Substituents affect the heats of hydrogenation of alkynes in the same way they affect alkenes. Compare the heats of hydrogenation of 1-butyne and 2-butyne, both of which give butane on taking up two moles of H_2.



	$CH_3CH_2C{\equiv}CH$	$CH_3C{\equiv}CCH_3$
	1-Butyne	2-Butyne
Heat of hydrogenation:	292 kJ/mol (69.9 kcal/mol)	275 kJ/mol (65.6 kcal/mol)

The internal triple bond of 2-butyne is stabilized relative to the terminal triple bond of 1-butyne. Alkyl groups release electrons to *sp*-hybridized carbon, stabilizing the alkyne and decreasing the heat of hydrogenation.

Like the hydrogenation of alkenes, hydrogenation of alkynes is a syn addition; cis alkenes are intermediates in the hydrogenation of alkynes to alkanes.

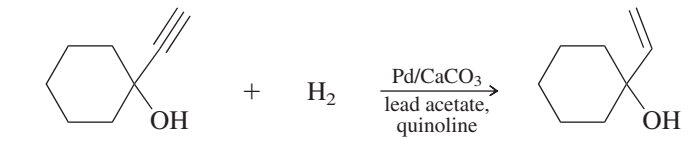
$$\underset{\text{Alkyne}}{RC{\equiv}CR'} \xrightarrow[\text{catalyst}]{H_2} \underset{\text{cis Alkene}}{\begin{matrix} R & & R' \\ & C{=}C & \\ H & & H \end{matrix}} \xrightarrow[\text{catalyst}]{H_2} \underset{\text{Alkane}}{RCH_2CH_2R'}$$

The fact that cis alkenes are intermediates in the hydrogenation of alkynes suggests that partial hydrogenation of an alkyne would provide a method for preparing:

1. Alkenes from alkynes, and
2. cis Alkenes free of their trans stereoisomers

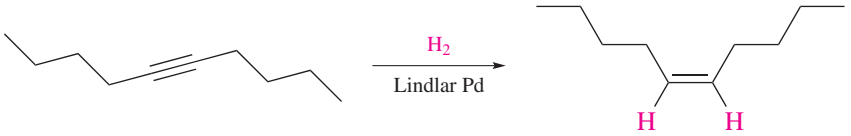
Both objectives are met with special hydrogenation catalysts. The most frequently used one is the **Lindlar catalyst,** a palladium on calcium carbonate combination to which lead acetate and quinoline have been added. Lead acetate and quinoline partially deactivate ("poison") the catalyst, making it a poor catalyst for alkene hydrogenation while retaining its ability to catalyze the addition of H_2 to the triple bond.

The structure of quinoline is shown on page 440. In subsequent equations, we will simply use the term *Lindlar Pd* to stand for all of the components of the Lindlar catalyst.



1-Ethynylcyclohexanol Hydrogen 1-Vinylcyclohexanol (90–95%)

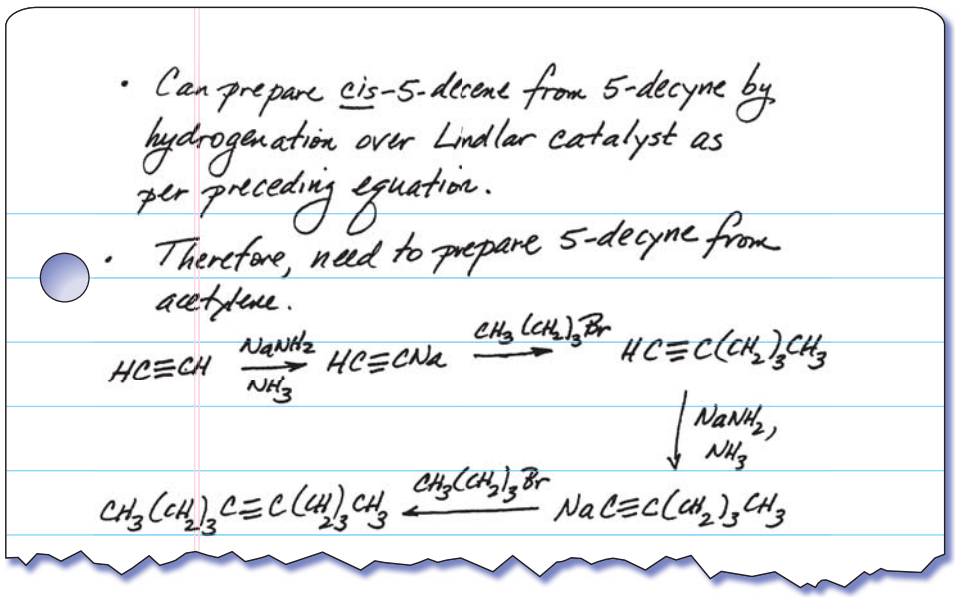
Hydrogenation of alkynes with internal triple bonds gives cis alkenes.



5-Decyne *cis*-5-Decene (87%)

Problem 9.10

Write a series of equations showing how to prepare *cis*-5-decene from acetylene and 1–bromobutane as the source of all its carbons, using any necessary organic or inorganic reagents. (*Hint:* You may find it helpful to review Section 9.6.)

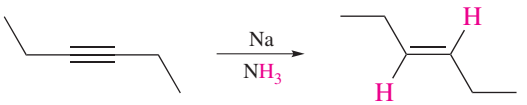


Hydrogenation of alkynes to alkenes using the Lindlar catalyst is attractive because it sidesteps the regioselectivity and stereoselectivity issues that accompany the dehydration of alcohols and dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides. In terms of regioselectivity, the position of the double bond is never in doubt—it appears in the carbon chain at exactly the same place where the triple bond was. In terms of stereoselectivity, only the cis alkene forms. Recall that dehydration and dehydrohalogenation normally give a cis–trans mixture in which the cis isomer is the minor product.

In the following section, we'll see another method for converting alkynes to alkenes. The reaction conditions are very different from those of Lindlar hydrogenation. So is the stereochemistry.

9.10 Metal–Ammonia Reduction of Alkynes

A useful alternative to catalytic partial hydrogenation for converting alkynes to alkenes is reduction by a Group 1 metal (lithium, sodium, or potassium) in liquid ammonia. The unique feature of metal–ammonia reduction is that it converts alkynes to trans alkenes, whereas catalytic hydrogenation yields cis alkenes. Thus, from the same alkyne one can prepare either a cis or a trans alkene by choosing the appropriate reaction conditions.



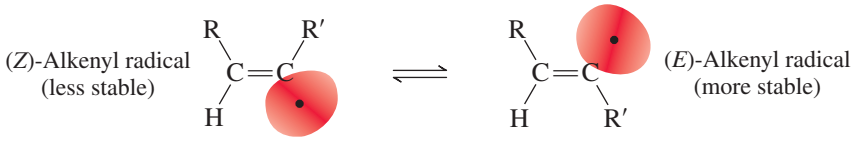
3-Hexyne *trans*-3-Hexene (82%)

Problem 9.11

Suggest an efficient synthesis of *trans*-2-heptene from propyne and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

The stereochemistry of metal–ammonia reduction of alkynes differs from that of catalytic hydrogenation because the mechanisms of the two reactions are different. The mechanism of hydrogenation of alkynes is similar to that of catalytic hydrogenation of alkenes (Sections 6.1–6.3). Metal–ammonia reduction of alkynes is outlined in Mechanism 9.1.

The mechanism includes two single-electron transfers (steps 1 and 3) and two proton transfers (steps 2 and 4). Experimental evidence indicates that step 2 is rate-determining, and that the (*E*)-and (*Z*)-alkenyl radicals formed in this step interconvert rapidly.



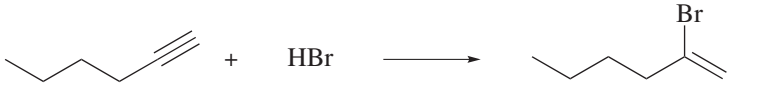
Reduction of these alkenyl radicals (step 3) gives a mixture of the (*E*)- and (*Z*)-alkenyl anions in which the more stable *E* stereoisomer predominates. Unlike the corresponding alkenyl radicals, the (*E*)- and (*Z*)-alkenyl anions are configurationally stable under the reaction conditions and yield an *E*/*Z* ratio of alkenes in step 4 that reflects the *E*/*Z* ratio of the alkenyl anions formed in step 3.

9.11 Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Alkynes

Alkynes react with many of the same electrophilic reagents that add to the carbon–carbon double bond of alkenes. Hydrogen halides, for example, add to alkynes to form alkenyl halides.

Alkyne Hydrogen halide Alkenyl halide

The regioselectivity of addition follows Markovnikov's rule. A proton adds to the carbon that has the greater number of hydrogens, and halide adds to the carbon with the fewer hydrogens.



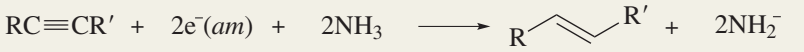
1-Hexyne Hydrogen bromide 2-Bromo-1-hexene (60%)

Mechanism 9.1

Sodium–Ammonia Reduction of an Alkyne

THE OVERALL REACTION:

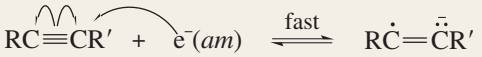
On dissolving in liquid ammonia, sodium atoms dissociate into sodium ions and electrons, both of which are solvated by ammonia. To reflect this, the solvated electrons are represented in the equation as $e^-(am)$.



Alkyne · Electrons · Ammonia · (*E*)-Alkene · Amide ion

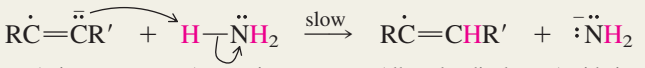
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: *Electron transfer.* An electron adds to one of the triply bonded carbons to give an anion radical.



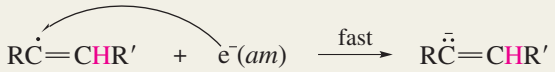
Alkyne · Electron · Anion radical

Step 2: *Proton transfer.* The anion radical formed in the first step is strongly basic and abstracts a proton from ammonia. This is believed to be the rate-determining step. The alkenyl radical that results is a mixture of rapidly equilibrating *E* and *Z* stereoisomers.



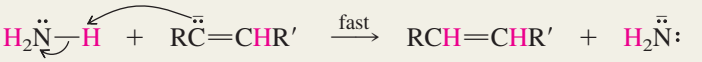
Anion radical · Ammonia · Alkenyl radical (*E*/*Z* mixture) · Amide ion

Step 3: *Electron transfer.* The alkenyl radical reacts with a solvated electron to give a vinyl anion. The more stable *E*-alkenyl anion predominates and *E*–*Z* equilibration is slow.



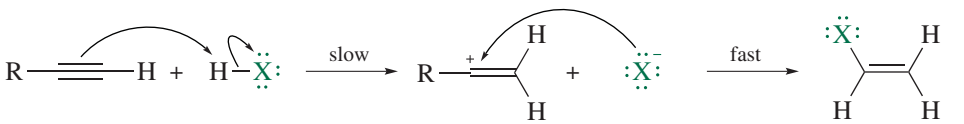
Alkenyl radical (*E*/*Z* mixture) · Electron · Alkenyl anion (mainly *E*)

Step 4: *Proton transfer.* The alkenyl anion abstracts a proton from ammonia to form the alkene. The *E*/*Z* ratio of the product reflects the *E*/*Z* ratio of the alkenyl anion.



Ammonia · Alkenyl anion (mainly *E*) · Alkene (mainly *E*) · Amide ion

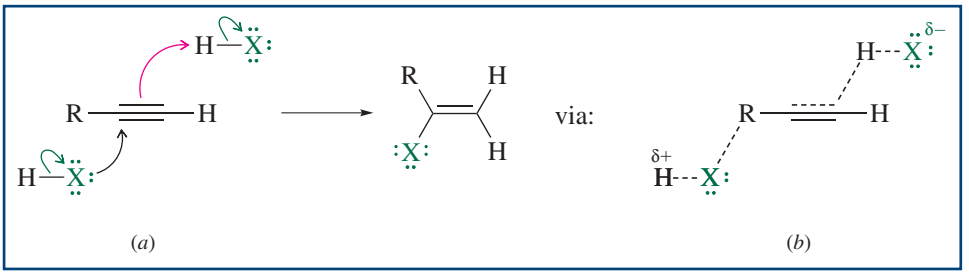
When formulating a mechanism for the reaction of alkynes with hydrogen halides, we could propose a process analogous to that of electrophilic addition to alkenes in which the first step is formation of a carbocation and is rate-determining. According to such a mechanism, the second step would be nucleophilic capture of the carbocation by a halide ion.



Alkyne · Hydrogen halide · Alkenyl cation · Halide ion · Alkenyl halide

Figure 9.4

(*a*) Curved arrow notation, and (*b*) transition-state for electrophilic addition of a hydrogen halide HX to an alkyne by the Ad_E3 mechanism.



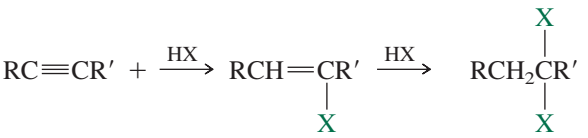
Evidence from a variety of sources, however, indicates that alkenyl cations (also called *vinylic cations*) are much less stable than simple alkyl cations, and their involvement in these additions has been questioned. For example, although electrophilic addition of hydrogen halides to alkynes occurs more slowly than the corresponding additions to alkenes, the difference is not nearly as great as the difference in carbocation stabilities would suggest.

Furthermore, kinetic studies reveal that electrophilic addition of hydrogen halides to alkynes follows a rate law that is third-order overall and second-order in hydrogen halide.

$$\text{Rate} = k[\text{alkyne}][\text{HX}]^2$$

This third-order rate dependence suggests a transition state involving two molecules of the hydrogen halide and one of the alkyne. Figure 9.4 depicts a one-step termolecular process, called Ad_E3 for *addition-electrophilic-termolecular,* that avoids the formation of a very unstable alkenyl cation intermediate by invoking nucleophilic participation by the halogen at an early stage. Nevertheless, because Markovnikov's rule is observed, it seems likely that some degree of positive character develops at carbon and controls the regioselectivity of addition.

In the presence of excess hydrogen halide, geminal dihalides are formed by sequential addition of two molecules of hydrogen halide to the carbon–carbon triple bond.



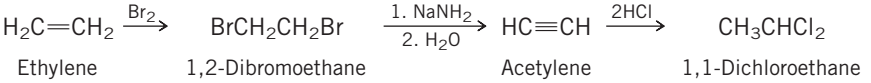
The second mole of hydrogen halide adds to the initially formed alkenyl halide in accordance with Markovnikov's rule. Overall, both protons become bonded to the same carbon and both halogens to the adjacent carbon.

Problem 9.12

Design a synthesis of 1,1-dichloroethane from each of the following. Write a series of equations, showing reactants and products, as illustrated in the Sample Solution.

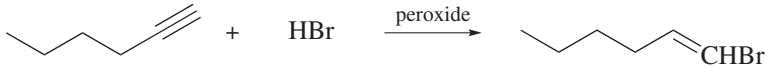
(a) Ethylene (b) Vinyl chloride ($H_2C{=}CHCl$) (c) 1,1-Dibromoethane

Sample Solution (a) Reasoning backward, we recognize 1,1-dichloroethane as the product of addition of two molecules of hydrogen chloride to acetylene. Thus, the synthesis requires converting ethylene to acetylene as a key feature. As described in Section 9.7, this may be accomplished by conversion of ethylene to a vicinal dihalide, followed by double dehydrohalogenation. A suitable synthesis based on this analysis is as shown:



Hydrogen bromide (but not hydrogen chloride or hydrogen iodide) adds to alkynes by a free-radical mechanism when peroxides are present in the reaction mixture. As in

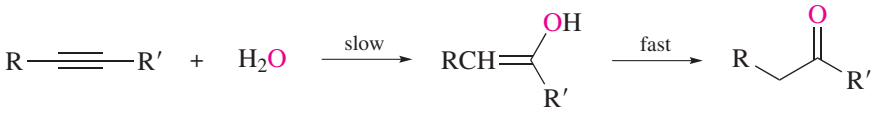
the free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide to alkenes (Section 6.13), a regioselectivity opposite to Markovnikov's rule is observed.



1-Hexyne | Hydrogen bromide | 1-Bromo-1-hexene (79%)

9.12 Hydration of Alkynes

By analogy to the hydration of alkenes, hydration of an alkyne would be expected to yield an alcohol. This alcohol, however, would be a special kind, called an **enol,** one in which the —OH group is attached to a carbon–carbon double bond. Except for the enol of acetylene itself, the enols formed by hydration of alkynes rapidly isomerize to ketones under conditions of their formation.



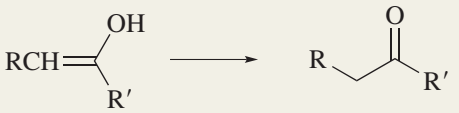
Alkyne | Water | Enol (not isolated) | Ketone

The aldehyde or ketone is called the **keto** form, and the keto ⇆ enol equilibration is referred to as *keto–enol isomerism* or *keto–enol tautomerism*. **Tautomers** are constitutional isomers that equilibrate by migration of an atom or group, and their equilibration is called **tautomerism.** Keto–enol isomerism involves the sequence of proton transfers shown in Mechanism 9.2.

Mechanism 9.2

Conversion of an Enol to a Ketone

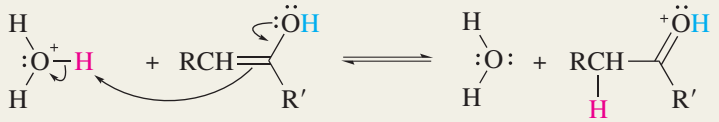
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Enol | Ketone (aldehyde if R′ = H)

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: In aqueous acid, the first step is proton transfer to the carbon-carbon double bond.

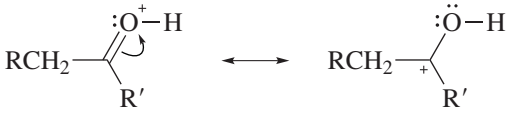


Hydronium ion | Enol | Water | Conjugate acid of ketone

Step 2: The conjugate acid of the ketone transfers a proton from oxygen to a water molecule, yielding a ketone.

Conjugate acid of ketone | Water | Ketone | Hydronium ion

The first step, protonation of the double bond of the enol, is analogous to the protonation of the double bond of an alkene. It takes place more readily, however, because the carbocation formed in this step is stabilized by resonance involving delocalization of a lone pair of oxygen.



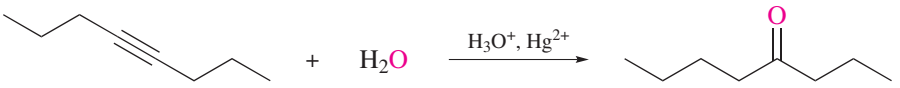
A B

Of the two contributing structures, A satisfies the octet rule for both carbon and oxygen but B has only six electrons around its positively charged carbon.

Problem 9.13

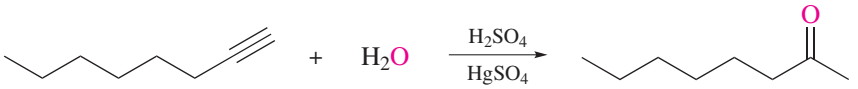
Give the structure of the enol formed by hydration of 2-butyne, and write a series of equations showing its conversion to its corresponding ketone isomer.

In general, ketones are more stable than their enol precursors and are the products actually isolated when alkynes undergo acid-catalyzed hydration. The standard method for alkyne hydration employs aqueous sulfuric acid as the reaction medium and mercury(II) sulfate or mercury(II) oxide as a catalyst.



4-Octyne Water 4-Octanone (89%)

Hydration of alkynes follows Markovnikov's rule; terminal alkynes yield methyl-substituted ketones.



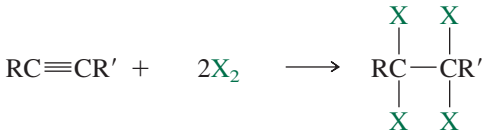
1-Octyne Water 2-Octanone (91%)

Problem 9.14

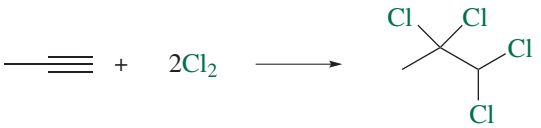
Show by a series of equations how you could prepare 2-octanone from acetylene and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents. How could you prepare 4-octanone?

9.13 Addition of Halogens to Alkynes

Alkynes react with chlorine and bromine to yield tetrahaloalkanes. Two molecules of the halogen add to the triple bond.



Alkyne Halogen (chlorine or bromine) Tetrahaloalkane



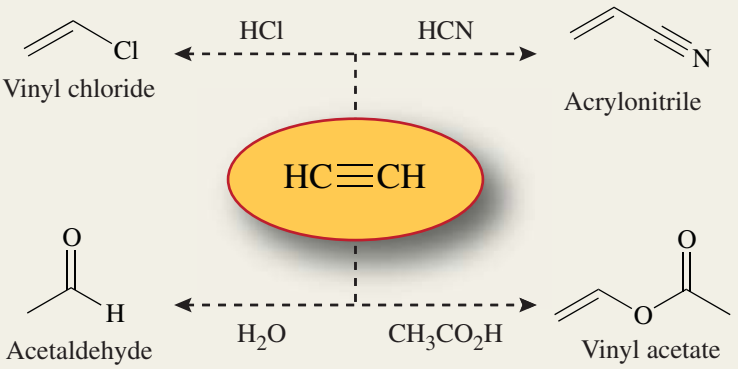
Propyne Chlorine 1,1,2,2-Tetrachloropropane (63%)

Some Things That Can Be Made from Acetylene . . . But Aren't

Acetylene had several uses around the time of World War I, primarily because it burned with a hot, luminous flame. The oxyacetylene torch and automobile and bicycle headlamps made by the Prest-O-Lite Company are representative of this period.

In an attempt to find a route to acetylene other than from calcium carbide, Prest-O-Lite sponsored research carried out by George O. Curme at Pittsburgh's Mellon Institute. Curme's research, which was directed toward converting the gases produced during petroleum refining to acetylene, led to methods better suited for making ethylene than acetylene. Viewed from our present perspective, Curme's petroleum-based route to ethylene ranks as a major discovery. It wasn't at the time though, because ethylene had virtually no uses before the 1920s. Curme's second great contribution was the research he carried out to see what useful products he could make from ethylene. The first was ethylene glycol, which became Prestone antifreeze. Others followed, and now ethylene is clearly the most important industrial organic chemical—perhaps the most important of all industrial chemicals.

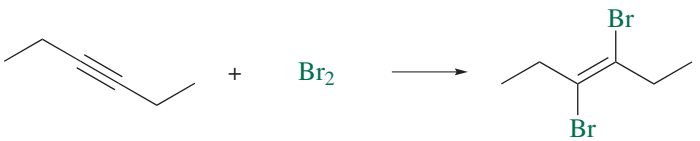
What about acetylene? Based on the reactions described in this chapter we can write the following equations, all of which lead to useful compounds.



In fact, very little of each of these products is made from acetylene. Ethylene is the starting material for the preparation of vinyl chloride, vinyl acetate, and acetaldehyde. Propene is the starting material for acrylonitrile.

Economics dictate the choice of alkene in each case. Acetylene, because of the high energy cost of preparing it, is much more expensive than ethylene and propene. At present, acetylene is used as a starting material only in those few countries where local coal versus petroleum prices favor it. Ethylene comes from petroleum, acetylene can be made from coal. In time, as petroleum becomes increasingly expensive, acetylene-based syntheses may become competitive with ethylene-based ones.

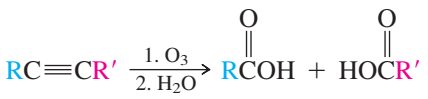
A dihaloalkene is an intermediate and is the isolated product when the alkyne and the halogen are present in equimolar amounts. The stereochemistry of addition is anti.

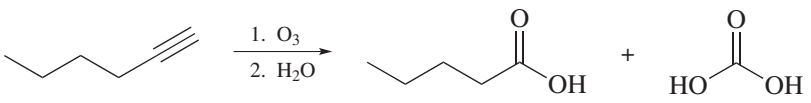


3-Hexyne Bromine (*E*)-3,4-Dibromo-3-hexene (90%)

9.14 Ozonolysis of Alkynes

Carboxylic acids are produced when alkynes are subjected to ozonolysis.





1-Hexyne Pentanoic acid (51%) Carbonic acid

Recall that when carbonic acid is formed as a reaction product, it dissociates to carbon dioxide and water.

Ozonolysis is sometimes used as a tool in structure determination. By identifying the carboxylic acids produced, we can deduce the structure of the alkyne. As with many other chemical methods of structure determination, however, it has been superseded by spectroscopic methods.

Problem 9.15

A certain hydrocarbon had the molecular formula $C_{16}H_{26}$ and contained two triple bonds. Ozonolysis gave $CH_3(CH_2)_4CO_2H$ and $HO_2CCH_2CH_2CO_2H$ as the only products. Suggest a reasonable structure for this hydrocarbon.

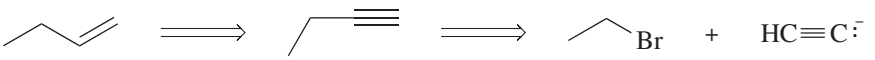
9.15 Alkynes in Synthesis and Retrosynthesis

Acetylene occupies a useful position in organic synthesis in that it can be applied to C—C bond formation by reaction of its conjugate base with alkylating agents such as alkyl halides and sulfonates. The chain-extended product retains the triple bond and can undergo subsequent addition reactions to give other classes of organic compounds or subjected to a second alkylation. The following illustrates the retrosynthetic approach and incorporates a chain extension plus two functional group transformations.

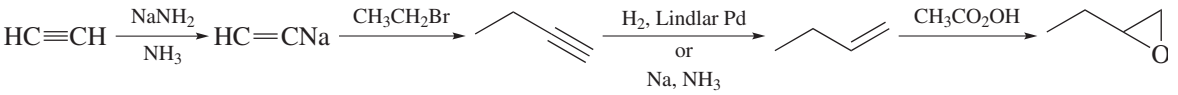
Example: Outline a synthesis of 1,2-epoxybutane using ethyl bromide and acetylene as sources for all the carbon atoms.

We determine the last step in the synthesis by recognizing that the most common route to epoxides is via the reaction of alkenes with peroxy acids.

The problem now is to prepare 1-butene from ethyl bromide and acetylene, a process that clearly requires C—C bond formation. We can do this in two operations, shown retrosynthetically as:



Based on this analysis, the synthesis becomes:



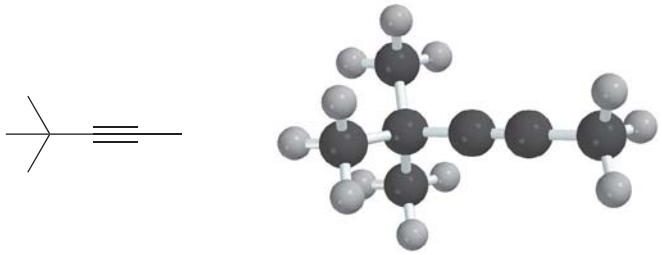
Problem 9.16

Outline a synthesis of (*E*)-$H_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_2CH{=}CHCH_3$ from propyne, organic compounds with four carbons or fewer, and any necessary inorganic reagents.

9.16 SUMMARY

Section 9.1 **Alkynes** are hydrocarbons that contain a carbon–carbon *triple bond.* Simple alkynes having no other functional groups or rings have the general formula C_nH_{2n-2}. Acetylene is the simplest alkyne.

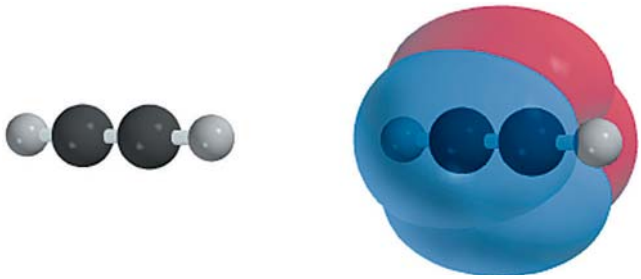
Section 9.2 Alkynes are named in much the same way as alkenes, using the suffix *-yne* instead of *-ene.*



4,4-Dimethyl-2-pentyne

Section 9.3 The physical properties (boiling point, solubility in water, dipole moment) of alkynes resemble those of alkanes and alkenes.

Section 9.4 Acetylene is linear and alkynes have a linear geometry of their X—C≡C—Y units. The carbon–carbon triple bond in alkynes is composed of a σ and two π components.



The triple-bonded carbons are *sp*-hybridized. The σ component of the triple bond contains two electrons in an orbital generated by the overlap of *sp*-hybridized orbitals on adjacent carbons. Each of these carbons also has two 2*p* orbitals, which overlap in pairs so as to give two π orbitals, each of which contains two electrons.

Section 9.5 Acetylene and terminal alkynes are more *acidic* than other hydrocarbons. They have pK_a's of approximately 26, compared with about 45 for alkenes and about 60 for alkanes. Sodium amide is a strong enough base to remove a proton from acetylene or a terminal alkyne, but sodium hydroxide is not.

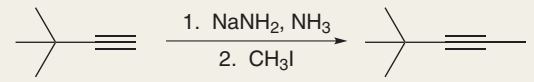
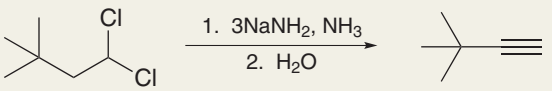
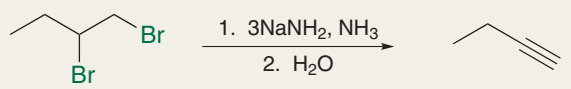
$$\underset{\text{1-Butyne}}{CH_3CH_2C{\equiv}CH} + \underset{\text{Sodium amide}}{NaNH_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Sodium 1-butynide}}{CH_3CH_2C{\equiv}CNa} + \underset{\text{Ammonia}}{NH_3}$$

Sections 9.6–9.7 Table 9.2 summarizes the methods for preparing alkynes.

Section 9.8 Like alkenes, alkynes undergo addition reactions.

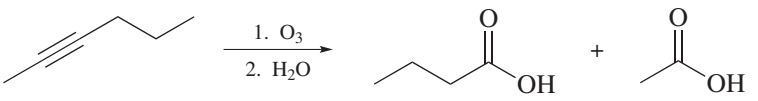
Sections 9.9–9.10 Table 9.3 summarizes reactions that reduce alkynes to alkenes and alkanes.

TABLE 9.2 Preparation of Alkynes

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Alkylation of acetylene and terminal alkynes (Section 9.6) The acidity of acetylene and terminal alkynes permits them to be converted to their conjugate bases on treatment with sodium amide. These anions are good nucleophiles and react with methyl and primary alkyl halides to form carbon–carbon bonds. Secondary and tertiary alkyl halides cannot be used, because they yield only elimination products under these conditions.	$RC{\equiv}CH + NaNH_2 \longrightarrow RC{\equiv}CNa + NH_3$ Alkyne; Sodium amide; Sodium alkynide; Ammonia $RC{\equiv}CNa + R'CH_2X \longrightarrow RC{\equiv}CCH_2R' + NaX$ Sodium alkynide; Primary alkyl halide; Alkyne; Sodium halide  1. $NaNH_2$, NH_3 2. CH_3I 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butyne → 4,4-Dimethyl-2-pentyne (96%)
Double dehydrohalogenation of geminal dihalides (Section 9.7) An E2 elimination reaction of a geminal dihalide yields an alkenyl halide. If a strong enough base is used, sodium amide, for example, a second elimination step follows the first and the alkenyl halide is converted to an alkyne.	$RCH(X)CHR'(X) + 2NaNH_2 \longrightarrow RC{\equiv}CR' + 2NaX + 2NH_3$ Geminal dihalide; Sodium amide; Alkyne; Sodium halide; Ammonia  1. $3NaNH_2$, NH_3 2. H_2O 1,1-Dichloro-3,3-dimethylbutane → 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butyne (56-60%)
Double dehydrohalogenation of vicinal dihalides (Section 9.7) Dihalides in which the halogens are on adjacent carbons undergo two elimination processes analogous to those of geminal dihalides.	$RCH(X)CHR'(X) + 2NaNH_2 \longrightarrow RC{\equiv}CR' + 2NaX + 2NH_3$ Vicinal dihalide; Sodium amide; Alkyne; Sodium halide; Ammonia  1. $3NaNH_2$, NH_3 2. H_2O 1,2-Dibromobutane → 1-Butyne (78-85%)

Sections 9.11–9.13 Table 9.4 summarizes electrophilic addition to alkynes.

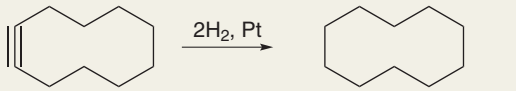
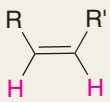
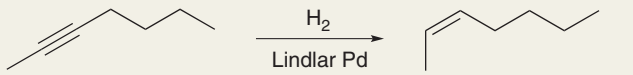
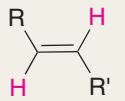
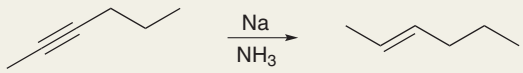
Section 9.14 Carbon–carbon triple bonds can be cleaved by ozonolysis. The cleavage products are carboxylic acids.



2-Hexyne; Butanoic acid; Acetic acid

Section 9.15 Alkylation of acetylene followed by functional group transformations involving the triple bond of the resulting alkyne can be applied to the synthesis of a wide range of organic compounds.

TABLE 9.3 Conversion of Alkynes to Alkenes and Alkanes

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Hydrogenation of alkynes to alkanes (Section 9.9) Alkynes are completely hydrogenated, yielding alkanes, in the presence of the customary metal hydrogenation catalysts.	$RC{\equiv}CR' + 2H_2 \xrightarrow{\text{catalyst}} RCH_2CH_2R'$ Alkyne Hydrogen Alkane  Cyclodecyne Cyclodecane (71%)
Hydrogenation of alkynes to alkenes (Section 9.9) Hydrogenation of alkynes may be halted at the alkene stage by using special catalysts. Lindlar palladium is the metal catalyst employed most often. Hydrogenation occurs with syn stereochemistry and yields a cis alkene.	$RC{\equiv}CR' + H_2 \xrightarrow[\text{Pd}]{\text{Lindlar}}$  Alkyne Hydrogen Cis alkene  2-Heptyne *cis*-2-Heptene (59%)
Metal–ammonia reduction (Section 9.10) Group 1 metals—sodium is the one usually employed—in liquid ammonia as the solvent convert alkynes to trans alkenes. The reaction proceeds by a four-step sequence in which electron-transfer and proton-transfer steps alternate.	$RC{\equiv}CR' + 2Na + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow$  $+ 2NaNH_2$ Alkyne Sodium Ammonia Trans alkene Sodium amide  2-Hexyne *trans*2-Hexene (69%)

PROBLEMS

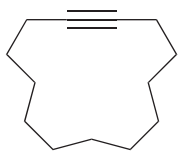
9.17 Provide the IUPAC name for each of the following alkynes:

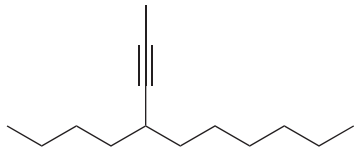
(a) $CH_3CH_2CH_2C{\equiv}CH$

(b) $CH_3CH_2C{\equiv}CCH_3$

(c) $CH_3C{\equiv}CCHCH(CH_3)_2$ (with CH_3 branch)

(d)

(e) 

(f) 

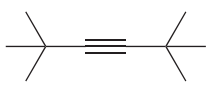
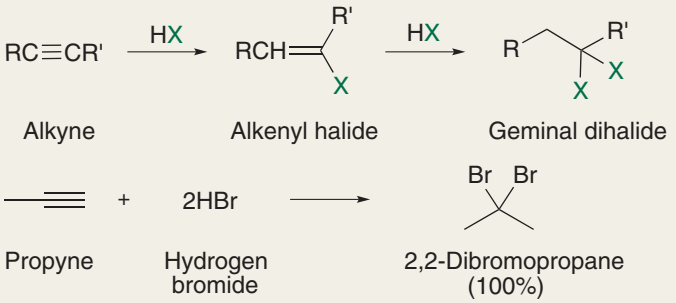
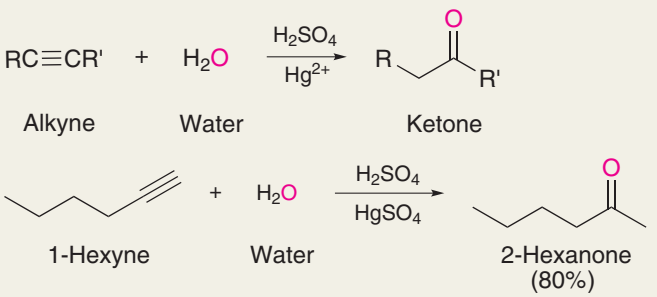
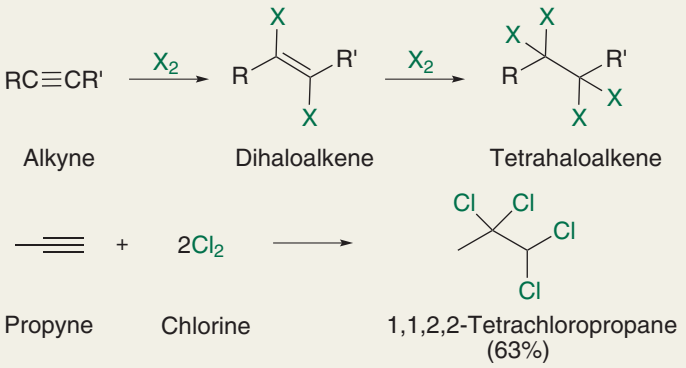
(g) 

TABLE 9.4 Electrophilic Addition to Alkynes

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Addition of hydrogen halides (Section 9.11) Hydrogen halides add to alkynes in accordance with Markovnikov's rule to give alkenyl halides. In the presence of 2 mol of hydrogen halide, a second addition occurs to give a geminal dihalide.	
Acid-catalyzed hydration (Section 9.12) Water adds to the triple bond of alkynes to yield ketones by way of an unstable enol intermediate. The enol arises by Markovnikov hydration of the alkyne. Enol formation is followed by rapid isomerization of the enol to a ketone.	
Halogenation (Section 9.13) Addition of 1 mol of chlorine or bromine to an alkyne yields a trans dihaloalkene. A tetrahalide is formed on addition of a second equivalent of the halogen.	

9.18 Write a structural formula for each of the following:

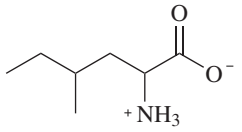
(a) 1-Octyne
(b) 2-Octyne
(c) 3-Octyne
(d) 4-Octyne
(e) 2,5-Dimethyl-3-hexyne
(f) 4-Ethyl-1-hexyne
(g) Ethynylcyclohexane
(h) 3-Ethyl-3-methyl-1-pentyne

9.19 All the compounds in Problem 9.18 are isomers except one. Which one?

9.20 Write structural formulas for all the alkynes of molecular formula C_8H_{14} that yield 3-ethylhexane on catalytic hydrogenation.

9.21 An unknown acetylenic amino acid obtained from the seed of a tropical fruit has the molecular formula $C_7H_{11}NO_2$. On catalytic hydrogenation over platinum, this amino acid

yielded homoleucine (an amino acid of known structure shown here) as the only product. What is the structure of the unknown amino acid?



Homoleucine

9.22 Show by writing appropriate chemical equations how each of the following compounds could be converted to 1-hexyne:

(a) 1,1-Dichlorohexane
(b) 1-Hexene
(c) Acetylene
(d) 1-Iodohexane

9.23 Show by writing appropriate chemical equations how each of the following compounds could be converted to 3-hexyne:

(a) 1-Butene (b) 1,1-Dichlorobutane (c) Acetylene

9.24 When 1,2-dibromodecane was treated with potassium hydroxide in aqueous ethanol, it yielded a mixture of three isomeric compounds of molecular formula $C_{10}H_{19}Br$. Each of these compounds was converted to 1-decyne on reaction with sodium amide in dimethyl sulfoxide. Identify these three compounds.

9.25 Write the structure of the major organic product isolated from the reaction of 1-hexyne with

(a) Hydrogen (2 mol), platinum
(b) Hydrogen (1 mol), Lindlar palladium
(c) Lithium in liquid ammonia
(d) Sodium amide in liquid ammonia
(e) Product in part (d) treated with 1-bromobutane
(f) Product in part (d) treated with *tert*-butyl bromide
(g) Hydrogen chloride (1 mol)
(h) Hydrogen chloride (2 mol)
(i) Chlorine (1 mol)
(j) Chlorine (2 mol)
(k) Aqueous sulfuric acid, mercury(II) sulfate
(l) Ozone followed by hydrolysis

9.26 Write the structure of the major organic product isolated from the reaction of 3-hexyne with

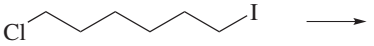
(a) Hydrogen (2 mol), platinum
(b) Hydrogen (1 mol), Lindlar palladium
(c) Lithium in liquid ammonia
(d) Hydrogen chloride (1 mol)
(e) Hydrogen chloride (2 mol)
(f) Chlorine (1 mol)
(g) Chlorine (2 mol)
(h) Aqueous sulfuric acid, mercury(II) sulfate
(i) Ozone followed by hydrolysis

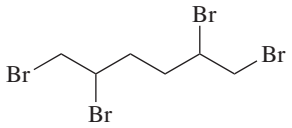
9.27 When 2-heptyne was treated with aqueous sulfuric acid containing mercury(II) sulfate, two products, each having the molecular formula $C_7H_{14}O$, were obtained in approximately equal amounts. What are these two compounds?

9.28 The alkane formed by hydrogenation of (*S*)-4-methyl-1-hexyne is optically active, but the one formed by hydrogenation of (*S*)-3-methyl-1-pentyne is not. Explain. Would you expect the products of hydrogenation of these two compounds in the presence of Lindlar palladium to be optically active?

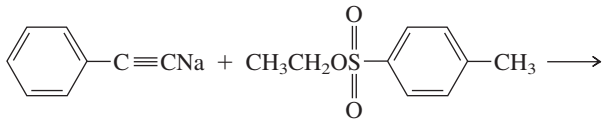
9.29 All the following reactions have been described in the chemical literature and proceed in good yield. In some cases the reactants are more complicated than those we have so far

encountered. Nevertheless, on the basis of what you have already learned, you should be able to predict the principal product in each case.

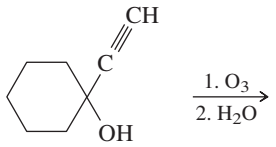
(a) $NaC{\equiv}CH$ + 

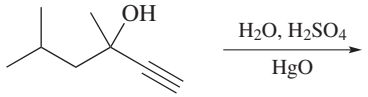
(b) 

(c)

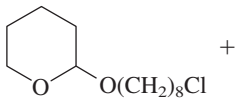
(d) 

(e) Cyclodecyne $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ O_3}$

(f) 

(g) 

(h) $(Z)\text{-}CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2(CH_2)_7C{\equiv}CCH_2CH_2OH \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ Na,\ NH_3}$

(i) 

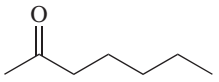
+ $NaC{\equiv}CCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ ⟶

(j) Product of part (i) $\xrightarrow[\text{Lindlar Pd}]{H_2}$

9.30 (a) Oleic acid and stearic acid are naturally occurring compounds, which can be isolated from various fats and oils. In the laboratory, each can be prepared by hydrogenation of a compound known as *stearolic acid,* which has the formula $CH_3(CH_2)_7C{\equiv}C(CH_2)_7CO_2H$. Oleic acid is obtained by hydrogenation of stearolic acid over Lindlar palladium; stearic acid is obtained by hydrogenation over platinum. What are the structures of oleic acid and stearic acid?

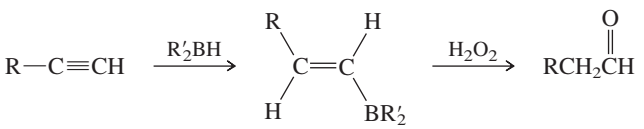
(b) Sodium–ammonia reduction of stearolic acid yields a compound known as *elaidic acid.* What is the structure of elaidic acid?

9.31 The ketone 2-heptanone has been identified as contributing to the odor of a number of dairy products, including condensed milk and cheddar cheese. Describe a synthesis of 2-heptanone from acetylene and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.



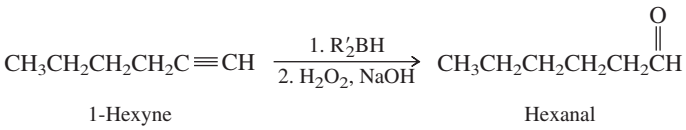
2-Heptanone

9.32 Alkynes undergo hydroboration to give alkenylboranes, which can be oxidized to give carbonyl compounds with hydrogen peroxide. The net result of the two-step sequence is hydration, which gives aldehydes from terminal alkynes.



Alkenylborane

The oxidation step involves an enol intermediate. Using Mechanism 9.2 as a guide, write the structure of the enol that is formed in the conversion of 1-hexyne to hexanal.



9.33 (*Z*)-9-Tricosene [(*Z*)-$CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH(CH_2)_{12}CH_3$] is the sex pheromone of the female housefly. Synthetic (*Z*)-9-tricosene is used as bait to lure male flies to traps that contain insecticide. Using acetylene and alcohols of your choice as starting materials, along with any necessary inorganic reagents, show how you could prepare (*Z*)-9-tricosene.

9.34 Show by writing a suitable series of equations how you could prepare each of the following compounds from the designated starting materials and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents:

(a) 2,2-Dibromopropane from 1,1-dibromopropane

(b) 2,2-Dibromopropane from 1,2-dibromopropane

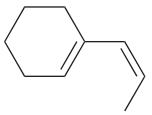
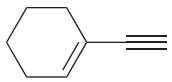
(c) 1,1,2,2-Tetrachloropropane from 1,2-dichloropropane

(d) 2,2-Diiodobutane from acetylene and ethyl bromide

(e) 1-Hexene from 1-butene and acetylene

(f) Decane from 1-butene and acetylene

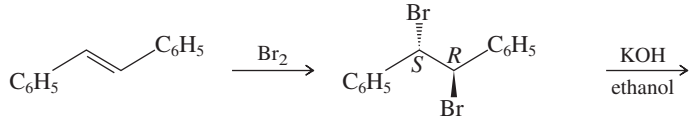
(g) Cyclopentadecyne from cyclopentadecene

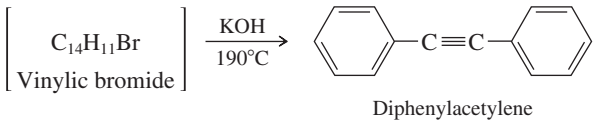
(h)  from 

(i) *meso*-2,3-Dibromobutane from 2-butyne

9.35 Assume that you need to prepare 4-methyl-2-pentyne and discover that the only alkynes on hand are acetylene and propyne. You also have available methyl iodide, isopropyl bromide, and 1,1-dichloro-3-methylbutane. Which of these compounds would you choose in order to perform your synthesis, and how would you carry it out?

9.36 Diphenylacetylene can be synthesized by the double dehydrohalogenation of 1,2-dibromo-1,2-diphenylethene. The sequence starting from (*E*)-1,2-diphenylethene consists of bromination to give the dibromide, followed by dehydrohalogenation to give a vinylic bromide, then a second dehydrohalogenation to give diphenylacetylene.





(a) What is the structure, including stereochemistry, of the vinylic bromide?

(b) If the sequence starts with (*Z*)-1,2-dibromo-1,2-diphenylethene, what is (are) the structure(s) of the intermediate dibromide(s)? What is the structure of the vinylic bromide?

9.37 Compound A has the molecular formula $C_{14}H_{25}Br$ and was obtained by reaction of sodium acetylide with 1,12-dibromododecane. On treatment of compound A with sodium amide, it was converted to compound B ($C_{14}H_{24}$). Ozonolysis of compound B gave the diacid $HO_2C(CH_2)_{12}CO_2H$. Catalytic hydrogenation of compound B over Lindlar palladium gave compound C ($C_{14}H_{26}$), and hydrogenation over platinum gave compound D ($C_{14}H_{28}$). Sodium–ammonia reduction of compound B gave compound E ($C_{14}H_{26}$). Both C and E yielded $O{=}CH(CH_2)_{12}CH{=}O$ on ozonolysis. Assign structures to compounds A through E so as to be consistent with the observed transformations.

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 9

Thinking Mechanistically About Alkynes

The preparation and properties of alkynes extend some topics explored in earlier chapters:

- Alkynes can be prepared by elimination reactions related to the E2 dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides used to prepare alkenes.
- Alkynes can be prepared by S_N2 reactions in which a nucleophile of the type $RC{\equiv}C{:}^-$ reacts with a primary alkyl halide.
- Alkynes undergo addition reactions, especially electrophilic addition, with many of the same compounds that add to alkenes.

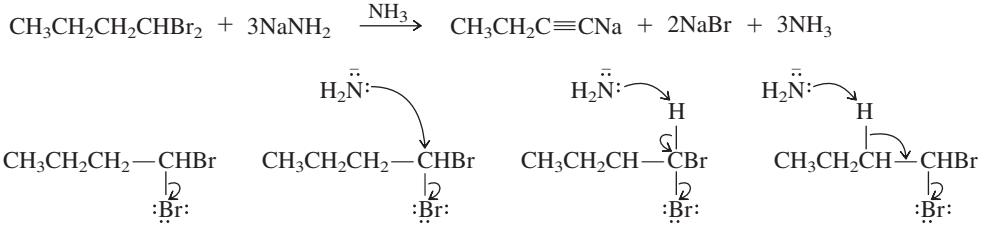
The greater *s* character of *sp* hybrid orbitals compared with sp^3 and sp^2 gives alkynes certain properties beyond those seen in alkanes and alkenes. It is convenient to think of *sp*-hybridized carbon as more electronegative than its sp^2 or sp^3 counterparts.

- The ≡C—H unit of an alkyne is more acidic than a C—H unit of an alkene or alkane, allowing acetylene and terminal alkynes to be converted to their conjugate bases $\equiv C{:}^-$ by $NaNH_2$.
- Unlike alkenes, alkynes are reduced by metals, especially Li, Na, and K.
- Unlike alkenes, alkynes can undergo nucleophilic as well as electrophilic addition.

E^+ is an electrophile $Nu{:}^-$ is a nucleophile

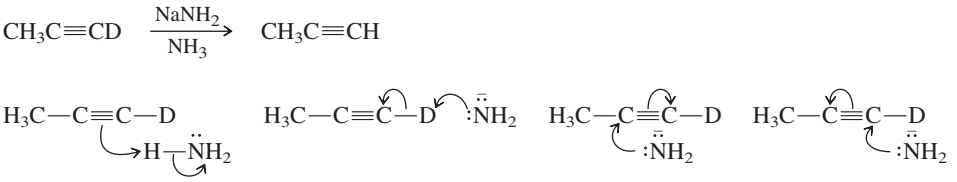
Problems 9.38–9.42 emphasize mechanistic reasoning. By thinking mechanistically you reduce the need to memorize facts while increasing your ability to analyze and understand new material. Nucleophilic addition to alkynes, for example, is not covered in this chapter but is the focus of problem 9.42, which can be solved by thinking mechanistically.

9.38 Which of the following best describes what happens in the first step in the mechanism of the reaction shown?



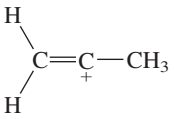
A. B. C. D.

9.39 Which of the following best describes what happens in the first step in the mechanism of the hydrogen–deuterium exchange reaction shown?

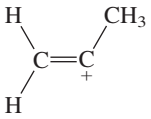


A. B. C. D.

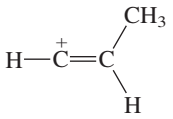
9.40 Electrophilic addition of fluorosulfonic acid (FSO_2OH) to propyne proceeds by way of a very unstable vinyl cation intermediate. What is the most reasonable structure, including geometry, of this intermediate? (*Hint:* Use VSEPR to deduce the geometry.)



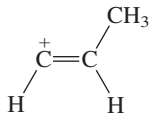
A.



B.

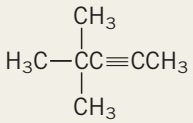


C.



D.

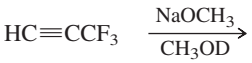
9.41 Rates of Br_2 addition were measured for a series of alkynes, giving the data shown.

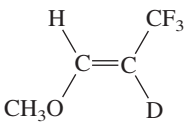
Alkyne	Relative rate
$HC{\equiv}CH$	1.0
$HC{\equiv}CCH_3$	13.4
$H_3CC{\equiv}CCH_3$	120
	558

Assuming that Br_2 addition to alkynes proceeds through rate-determining formation of a cyclic bromonium ion, what generalizations can you make about the structure of the rate-determining transition state?

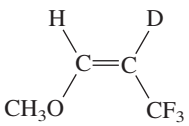
Positive charge development at carbons in original triple bond	More important effect of substituents on triple bond
A. One carbon only	Electron donation
B. One carbon only	Steric hindrance
C. Both carbons	Electron donation
D. Both carbons	Steric hindrance

9.42 Nucleophilic addition can occur with alkynes that bear strong electron-attracting substituents such as CF_3 on the triple bond. Predict the product of nucleophilic addition of CH_3OD to 3,3,3-trifluoropropyne. The stereochemistry of addition is anti, and the first step in the mechanism is bond formation between CH_3O^- and one of the carbons of the triple bond.

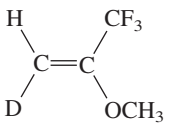




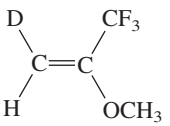
A.



B.



C.



D.

10

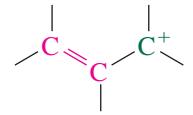
CHAPTER OUTLINE

10.1 The Allyl Group 371
10.2 S_N1 and S_N2 Reactions of Allylic Halides 374
10.3 Allylic Free-Radical Halogenation 377
10.4 Allylic Anions 380
10.5 Classes of Dienes: Conjugated and Otherwise 381
10.6 Relative Stabilities of Dienes 382
10.7 Bonding in Conjugated Dienes 383
10.8 Bonding in Allenes 385
10.9 Preparation of Dienes 386
■ Diene Polymers 387
10.10 Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Conjugated Dienes 388
10.11 Halogen Addition to Dienes 390
10.12 The Diels–Alder Reaction 391
10.13 Retrosynthetic Analysis and the Diels–Alder Reaction 394
10.14 Molecular Orbital Analysis of the Diels–Alder Reaction 395
10.15 Summary 396
Problems 398
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 10: Intramolecular and Retro Diels–Alder Reactions 402

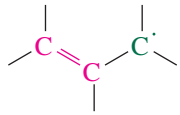
Allyl is derived from the botanical name for garlic (*Allium sativum*). Over a century ago it was found that the major component obtained by distilling garlic oil is $H_2C{=}CHCH_2SSCH_2CH{=}CH_2$, and the word, *allyl* was coined for the $H_2C{=}CHCH_2$ group on the basis of this origin.

Conjugation in Alkadienes and Allylic Systems

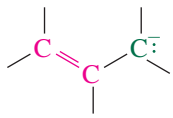
Not all the properties of alkenes are revealed by focusing exclusively on the functional group behavior of the double bond. A double bond can affect the properties of a second functional unit to which it is directly attached. It can be a substituent, for example, on a positively charged carbon in an **allylic carbocation,** on a carbon that bears an unpaired electron in an **allylic free radical,** on a negatively charged carbon in an **allylic anion,** or it can be a substituent on a second double bond in a **conjugated diene.**



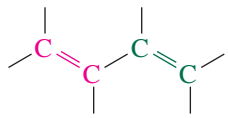
Allylic carbocation



Allylic free radical



Allylic anion

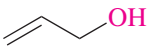


Conjugated diene

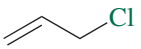
Conjugare is a Latin verb meaning "to link or yoke together," and allylic carbocations, allylic free radicals, allylic anions, and conjugated dienes are all examples of **conjugated systems.** In this chapter we'll see how conjugation permits two functional units within a molecule to display a kind of reactivity that is qualitatively different from that of either unit alone.

10.1 The Allyl Group

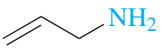
Allyl is both a common name and a permissible IUPAC name for the $H_2C{=}CHCH_2$ group, and its derivatives are better known by their functional class IUPAC names than by their substitutive ones:



Allyl alcohol
(2-propen-1-ol)



Allyl chloride
(3-chloro-1-propene)

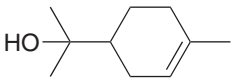


Allylamine
(2-propen-1-amine)

The sp^3-hybridized carbon of an allyl group is termed an **allylic carbon,** and atoms or groups attached to it are allylic substituents.

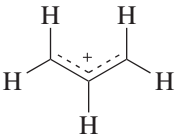
Problem 10.1

α-Terpineol is a pleasant-smelling oil obtained from pine. How many allylic hydrogens does it have? Is the hydroxyl group allylic?

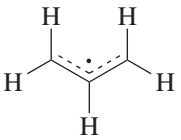


According to the number of its electrons, an allyl unit can be a positively charged carbocation ($H_2C{=}CHCH_2^+$), a neutral free radical ($H_2C{=}CHCH_2\cdot$), or a negatively charged carbanion ($H_2C{=}CHCH_2{:}^-$). Each is stabilized by delocalization involving the π electrons in the double bond. The positive charge, negative charge, or unpaired electron is shared by the two carbons at opposite ends of the allyl group.

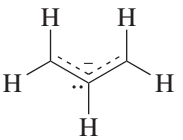
Allyl cation: $H_2C{=}CH{-}\overset{+}{C}H_2 \longleftrightarrow H_2\overset{+}{C}{-}CH{=}CH_2$ or



Allyl radical: $H_2C{=}CH{-}\dot{C}H_2 \longleftrightarrow H_2\dot{C}{-}CH{=}CH_2$ or

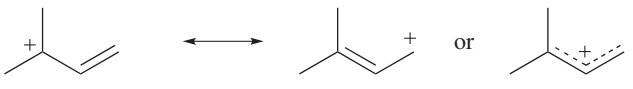


Allyl anion: $H_2C{=}CH{-}\overset{-}{C}H_2 \longleftrightarrow H_2\overset{-}{C}{-}CH{=}CH_2$ or



Another way to indicate this electron delocalization is via the dotted-line structures shown. It is important, however, to recognize that the +, −, or · above the middle of the dashed line applies to the unit as a whole and is shared only by the end carbons.

In allylic species that are not symmetrically substituted, the two resonance structures are not equivalent and do not contribute equally to the hybrid.

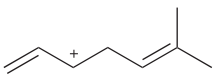


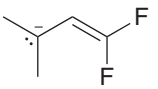
Major contributor

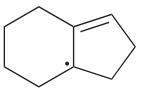
Such an allylic carbocation has more of the character of a tertiary carbocation than of a primary carbocation.

Problem 10.2

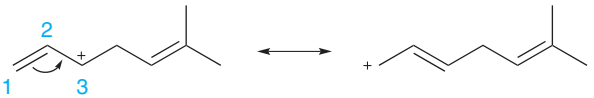
Write a second resonance contributor for each of the following. Is the charge or unpaired electron shared equally by both allylic carbons? If not, which one bears more of the charge or unpaired electron?

(*a*) 

(*b*) 

(*c*) 

Sample Solution (a) First, identify the allylic unit by picking out the C═C—C$^+$ sequence. Of the two double bonds in this structure, only the one at the left is part of C═C—C$^+$. The double bond at the right is separated from the positively charged carbon by a CH_2 group, so is not conjugated to it. Move electrons in pairs from the double bond toward the positively charged carbon to generate a second resonance structure.



The two contributing structures are not equivalent; therefore, the positive charge is not shared equally between C-1 and C-3. C-1 is a primary carbon, C-3 is secondary. More of the positive charge resides on C-3 than on C-1. The original structure (left) contributes more to the resonance hybrid than the other (right).

Figure 10.1 displays a valence-bond description of bonding in allyl cation. The planar structure of $H_2C{=}CHCH_2^+$ (*a*) provides a framework of σ bonds that allows for continuous overlap of the 2*p* orbitals of three adjacent sp^2-hybridized carbons (*b* and *c*). Until now, we have only seen π orbitals involving two carbons. Conjugated systems are characterized by extended π orbitals that encompass three or more atoms.

Although satisfactory for allyl cation, Figure 10.1 is insufficient for species with more than two π electrons because the π orbital in (*c*) can accommodate only two electrons. Molecular orbital (MO) theory, however, offers an alternative to resonance and valence-bond theory for understanding the structure and reactions of not only allylic cations, but radicals (three π electrons) and anions (four π electrons) as well. In a simplification known as the **Hückel,** or **π-electron, approximation** the π MOs are considered as separate from

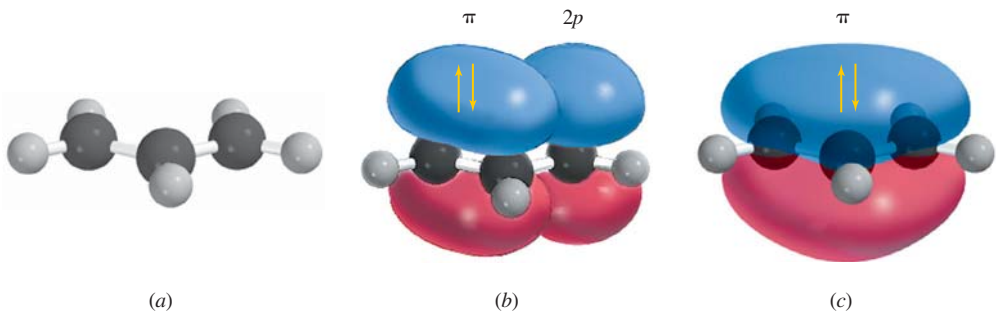


Figure 10.1

Bonding in allyl cation. (*a*) All of the atoms of $H_2C{=}CHCH_2^+$ lie in the same plane and each carbon is sp^2-hybridized. (*b*) The alignment of the π component of the double bond and the vacant *p* orbital permits overlap between them. (*c*) A π orbital encompasses all three carbons of $H_2C{=}CHCH_2^+$. The two electrons in this orbital are delocalized over three carbons.

the framework of σ bonds. Recalling from Section 2.4 that the number of orbitals is equal to the number of atomic orbitals (AOs) that combine to form them, we combine the three 2*p* AOs, one from each of the three sp^2-hybridized carbons of allyl, into the system of three π MOs shown in Figure 10.2.

The lowest energy orbital π_1 is doubly occupied in all three species; whereas π_2 is vacant in allyl cation, singly occupied in allyl radical, and doubly occupied in allyl anion. When $H_2C{=}CHCH_2^+$ reacts with a nucleophile, electrons flow from the nucleophile to the **lowest unoccupied molecular orbital,** or **LUMO,** which in this case is π_2. Because π_2 is characterized by a node at C-2, only C-1 and C-3 are available for bonding of a nucleophile to allyl cation. At the other extreme, electrons flow *from* the **highest occupied molecular orbital,** or **HOMO** (π_2), of allyl anion when it bonds to an electrophile. Again, only C-1 or C-3 can participate in bond formation because of the node at C-2. The results are similar for bond formation in allyl radical.

Erich Hückel was a German physical chemist first known for his collaboration with Peter Debye in developing what remains the most widely accepted theory of electrolyte solutions, then later for his application of molecular orbital theory to conjugated hydrocarbons, especially aromatic hydrocarbons (Chapter 11).

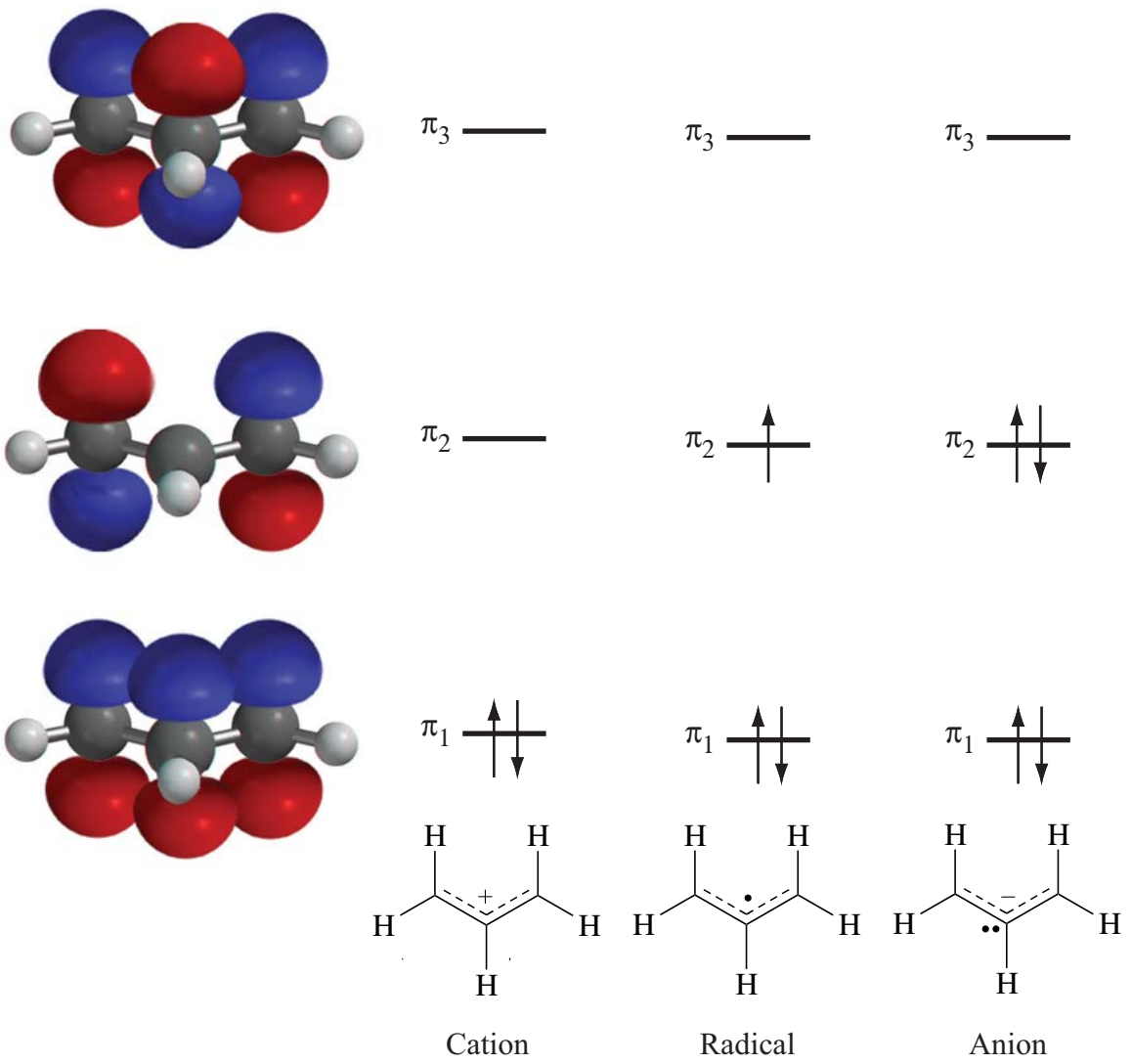


Figure 10.2

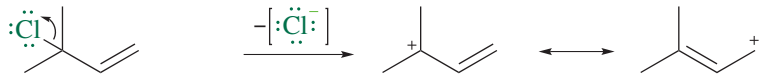
The π molecular orbitals of allyl cation, radical, and anion. Allyl cation has two π electrons, allyl radical has three, and allyl anion has four.

10.2 S_N1 and S_N2 Reactions of Allylic Halides

Much of our understanding about conjugation effects in allylic systems comes from rate and product studies of nucleophilic substitution, especially those that take place by the S_N1 mechanism. Allylic halides react faster than their nonallylic counterparts in both S_N1 and S_N2 reactions, but for different reasons. S_N1 reactions will be described first, followed later in this section by S_N2.

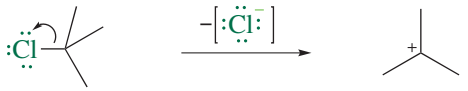
Relative S_N1 Rates Under S_N1 conditions such as solvolysis in ethanol, the tertiary allylic chloride 3-chloro-3-methyl-1-butene reacts over 100 times faster than *tert*-butyl chloride. Both reactions follow a first-order rate law, and their relative rates reflect the greater stability of $[(CH_3)_2C{=}CH{=}CH_2]^+$ compared with $(CH_3)_3C^+$.

Faster rate: $k_{rel} = 123$



3-Chloro-3-methyl-1-butene — 1,1-Dimethylallyl cation

Slower rate: $k_{rel} = 1.0$



tert-Butyl chloride — *tert*-Butyl cation

Allylic carbocations are more stable than simple alkyl cations and a vinyl group ($H_2C{=}CH$) is a better carbocation-stabilizing substituent than methyl (CH_3). Although $H_2C{=}CHCH_2^+$, for example, is a primary carbocation, it is about as stable as a typical secondary carbocation such as $(CH_3)_2CH^+$.

Problem 10.3

The two compounds shown differ by a factor of 60 in their first-order rate constants for hydrolysis in 50% ethanol water at 45°C. Which is more reactive? Why?

trans-1-Chloro-2-butene — 3-Chloro-2-methylpropene

S_N1 Reaction Products According to the resonance picture for 1,1-dimethylallyl cation, the positive charge is shared by a tertiary and a primary carbon. If this carbocation reacts with a nucleophile, to which carbon does the nucleophile bond? The answer is *both,* but with a regioselective preference for the tertiary carbon.

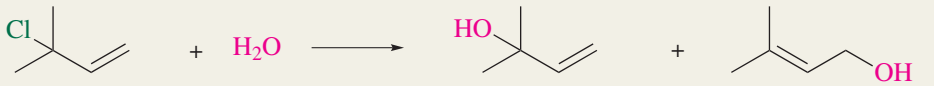
3-Chloro-3-methyl-1-butene — 2-Methyl-3-buten-2-ol (85%) — 3-Methyl-2-buten-1-ol (15%) — via 1,1-Dimethylallyl cation

Mechanism 10.1 applies the S_N1 mechanism to this hydrolysis. Its key features are carbocation formation in step 1 and bonding of the nucleophile (water) to the carbocation in step 2. The oxygen of water can bond to either end of the allylic unit, but does so at different rates. The oxygen of water bonds to the carbon that carries more of the positive charge, giving the tertiary alcohol as the major product. The minor product, a primary alcohol, results when the oxygen of water bonds to the primary carbon.

Mechanism 10.1

S_N1 Hydrolysis of an Allylic Halide

THE OVERALL REACTION:



3-Chloro-3-methyl-1-butene | Water | 2-Methyl-3-buten-2-ol | 3-Methyl-2-buten-1-ol

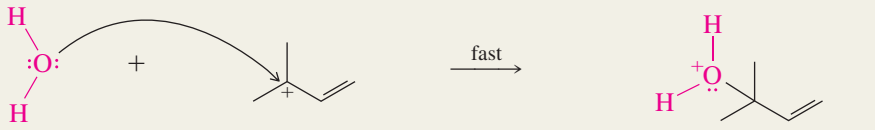
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The alkyl halide ionizes to give a carbocation. This step is rate-determining and gives a delocalized carbocation.

3-Chloro-3-methyl-1-butene | Chloride ion | 1,1-Dimethylallyl cation

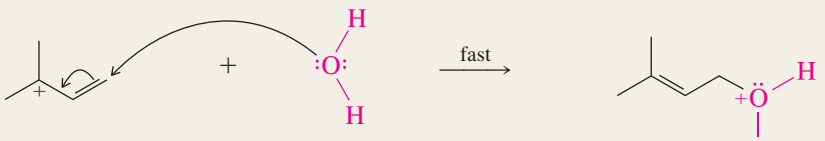
Step 2: The carbocation (shown as its major contributor) reacts with water. Water acts as a nucleophile; its oxygen can bond to either the tertiary carbon (a) or the primary carbon (b).

(a)



Water | 1,1-Dimethylallyl cation (major contributor) | 1,1-Dimethylallyloxonium ion

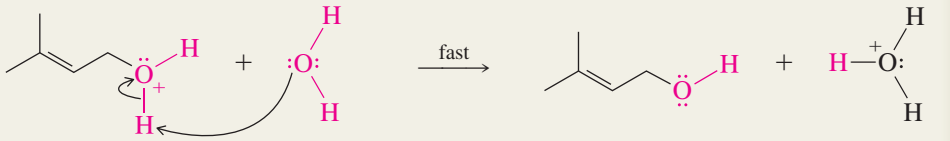
(b)



1,1-Dimethylallyl cation (major contributor) | Water | 3,3-Dimethylallyloxonium ion

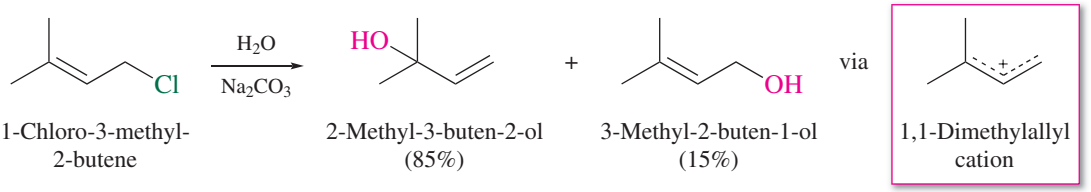
Step 3: The alkyloxonium ions formed in step 2 are converted to the corresponding alcohols by proton transfer. Water is the proton acceptor.

Water | 1,1-Dimethylallyloxonium ion | Hydronium ion | 2-Methyl-3-buten-2-ol (major product)



3,3-Dimethylallyloxonium ion | Water | 3-Methyl-2-buten-1-ol (minor product) | Hydronium ion

In a parallel experiment, hydrolysis of the isomeric primary allylic chloride 1-chloro-3-methyl-2-butene gave the same two alcohols as 3-chloro-3-methyl-1-butene and in the same proportion.



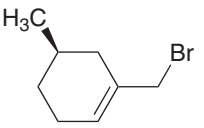
1-Chloro-3-methyl-2-butene | 2-Methyl-3-buten-2-ol (85%) | 3-Methyl-2-buten-1-ol (15%) | 1,1-Dimethylallyl cation

The mechanism of this reaction is exactly the same as that shown for 3-chloro-3-methyl-1-butene in Mechanism 10.1; only the structure of the starting allylic halide is different. The same carbocation is the key intermediate in both cases.

Reactions such as these are described as proceeding with **allylic rearrangement.** They differ from the carbocation rearrangements of earlier chapters in that the latter involve structural changes resulting from atom or group migrations. Changes in *electron* positions are responsible for allylic rearrangements.

Problem 10.4

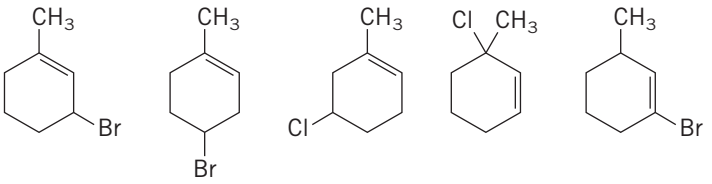
What three alcohols are the expected products of the S_N1 hydrolysis of the compound shown?



Be sure you understand that we are not dealing with an equilibrium between two isomeric carbocations. *There is only one allylic carbocation*. It has a delocalized structure, so is not adequately represented by a single Lewis formula but by contributing resonance structures that differ in their distribution of positive charge. The π-electron approximation of MO theory is also consistent with the fact that the terminal carbons of the allyl unit are the main sites of interaction with an incoming nucleophile because these are the only ones that contribute a *p* orbital to the LUMO.

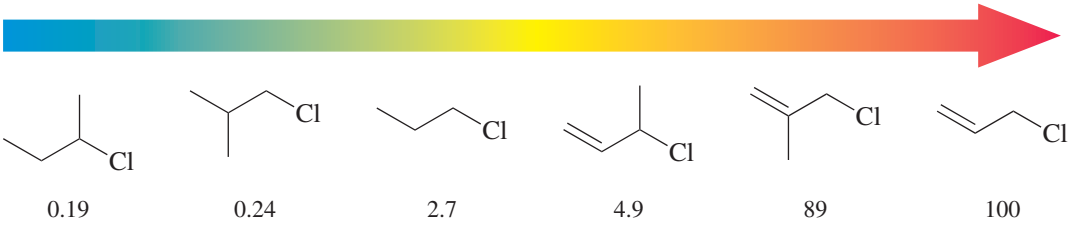
Problem 10.5

From among the following compounds, choose the two that yield the same carbocation on ionization.



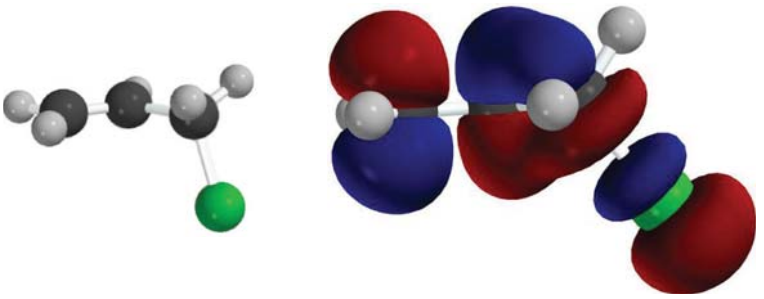
Relative S_N2 Rates Like their S_N1 counterparts, S_N2 reactions of allylic halides take place more rapidly than the corresponding reactions of similar alkyl halides. The relative rate profile for a group of alkyl and allylic halides shows two significant trends.

Relative second-order rate constants for reaction with sodium ethoxide in ethanol; 45°C



The three halides that react at the fastest rates are all allylic; the three slowest are not. Within each group, the typical S_N2 order (primary faster than secondary) is observed.

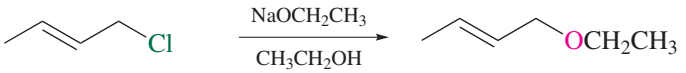
The greater S_N2 reactivity of allylic halides results from a combination of two effects: steric and electronic. Sterically, a CH_2Cl group is less crowded and more reactive when it is attached to the sp^2-hybridized carbon of an allylic halide compared with the sp^3-hybridized carbon of an alkyl halide. Electronically, the π-electron MO approximation doesn't apply because the reactant is allyl chloride, not an allyl cation, radical, or anion. Higher level MO treatments such as seen earlier for the S_N2 mechanism in Section 8.3 are readily adapted to allyl chloride, however. According to that picture, electrons flow from the nucleophile to the LUMO of the alkyl halide.



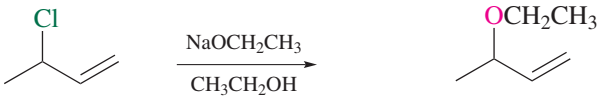
Allyl chloride LUMO of allyl chloride

Because the LUMO of allyl chloride extends over all three carbons of the allyl group, it allows for greater electron delocalization than the corresponding LUMO of 1-chloropropane, a lower activation energy, and a faster rate of reaction.

S_N2 Reaction Products Typical S_N2 displacements occur when primary and unhindered secondary allylic halides react with good nucleophiles.



trans-1-Chloro-2-butene *trans*-1-Ethoxy-2-butene (only product; 82% yield)



3-Chloro-1-butene 3-Ethoxy-1-butene (only substitution product; 53% yield)

At low concentrations of sodium ethoxide, S_N1 reactions compete with S_N2, and a mixture of direct displacement and allylic rearrangement products results.

Problem 10.6

As indicated in the preceding equations, the yield of the substitution product was much better in the reaction of *trans*-1-chloro-2-butene than 3-chloro-1-butene. Can you suggest a reason why?

10.3 Allylic Free-Radical Halogenation

As we have seen in Section 10.1, allyl radical is stabilized by electron delocalization expressed as resonance between contributing Lewis structures

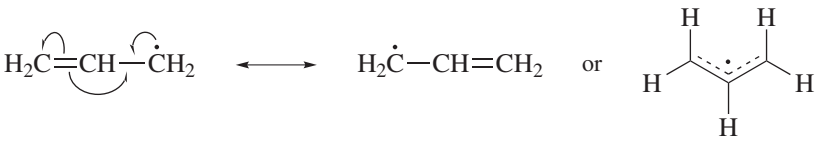
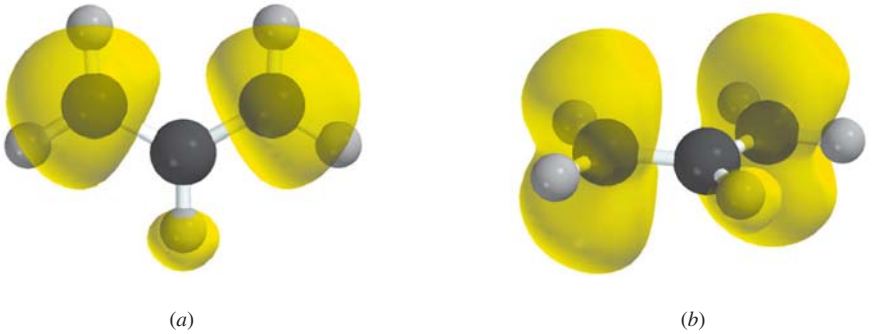


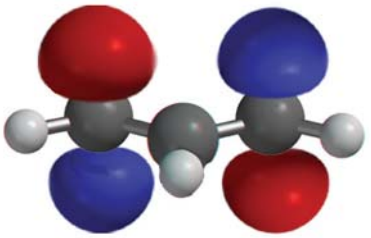
Figure 10.3

(*a*) The spin density (yellow) in allyl radical is equally divided between the two allylic carbons. There is a much smaller spin density at the C-2 hydrogen. (*b*) The odd electron is in an orbital that is part of the allylic π system.



(*a*) (*b*)

or by the π-electron molecular orbital approximation. Both show the unpaired electron equally distributed between C-1 and C-3. In the π-electron approximation this unpaired electron singly occupies π_2, which is characterized by a node at C-2.



π_2 of allyl radical

Spin density is a measure of the unpaired electron density at an atom and was introduced earlier in Section 4.15.

Bond formation of allyl radical with some other species can occur only at either end of the allyl unit because these are the sites of the greatest unpaired electron probability. A molecular orbital calculation of the spin density of allyl radical reinforces these interpretations (Figure 10.3).

Delocalization of the unpaired electron stabilizes allylic radicals and causes reactions that generate them to proceed more readily than those that give simple alkyl radicals. Compare, for example, the bond dissociation enthalpies of the primary C—H bonds of propane and propene:

Propane — Propyl radical — Hydrogen atom

Propene — Allyl radical — Hydrogen atom

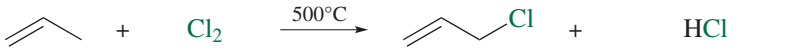
Breaking an allylic C—H bond in propene requires 55 kJ/mol less energy than a bond to a primary hydrogen in propane. Allyl radical is stabilized by π-electron delocalization; propyl radical is not.

Problem 10.7

Rank the C—H bonds of *trans*-3-hexene in order of decreasing bond dissociation enthalpy.

The greater stability of allylic radicals relative to their alkyl counterparts suggests that free-radical halogenation of alkenes should be both feasible and regioselective for the allylic position. Although, as we have already seen, the typical reaction of alkenes with halogens at room temperature and below is *electrophilic addition* to the double bond,

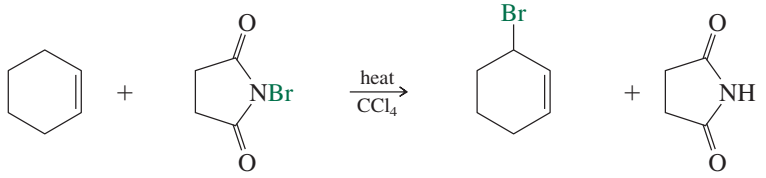
free-radical substitution is favored at high temperature. The industrial-scale preparation of allyl chloride involves heating propene and chlorine at 300–500°C.



Propene — Chlorine — Allyl chloride (80–85%) — Hydrogen chloride

The reaction proceeds by the free-radical chain mechanism shown in Mechanism 10.2.

In the laboratory, allylic brominations are normally carried out using one of a number of specialized reagents such as *N*-bromosuccinimide. Small amounts of peroxides are sometimes added as free-radical initiators.



Cyclohexene — *N*-Bromosuccinimide (NBS) — 3-Bromocyclohexene (82–87%) — Succinimide

N-Bromosuccinimide will be seen again as a reagent for selective bromination in Section 11.10.

N-Bromosuccinimide provides a low concentration of molecular bromine, which reacts with alkenes by a mechanism analogous to that of other free-radical halogenations.

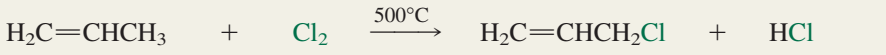
Problem 10.8

Assume that *N*-bromosuccinimide serves as a source of Br_2, and write equations for the propagation steps in the formation of 3-bromocyclohexene by allylic bromination of cyclohexene.

Mechanism 10.2

Allylic Chlorination of Propene

THE OVERALL REACTION:



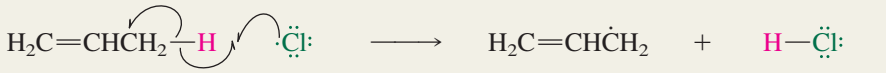
Propene — Chlorine — Allyl chloride — Hydrogen chloride

THE MECHANISM:

Initiation step: A chlorine molecule dissociates to two atoms.

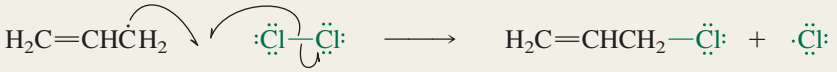
Chlorine — Chlorine atoms

Propagation steps: In the first propagation step a chlorine atom abstracts a hydrogen atom from the allylic carbon of propene forming allyl radical.



Propene — Chlorine atom — Allyl radical — Hydrogen chloride

The allyl radical formed in the first propagation step reacts with Cl_2 to form allyl chloride.



Allyl radical — Chlorine — Allyl chloride — Chlorine atom

The chlorine atom generated in this propagation step then abstracts a hydrogen atom from another molecule of propene and the two propagation steps repeat over and over again.

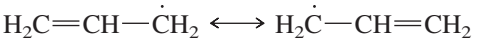
Although allylic bromination and chlorination offer methods for attaching a reactive functional group to a hydrocarbon framework, we need to be aware of two important limitations. For allylic halogenation to be effective in a particular synthesis:

1. All the allylic hydrogens in the starting alkene must be equivalent, and
2. Both resonance forms of the allylic radical must be equivalent.

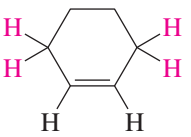
In the two examples cited so far, the chlorination of propene and the bromination of cyclohexene, both requirements are met.

All the allylic hydrogens of propene are equivalent.

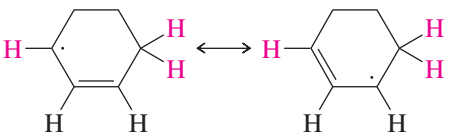
The two resonance forms of allyl radical are equivalent.



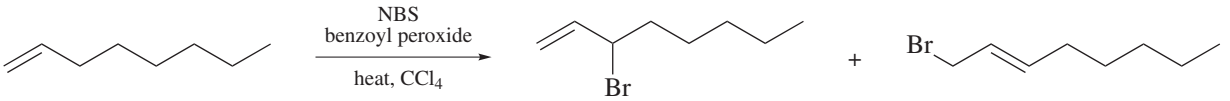
All the allylic hydrogens of cyclohexene are equivalent.



The two resonance forms of 2-cyclohexenyl radical are equivalent.



Unless both criteria are met, mixtures of constitutionally isomeric allylic halides result. The resonance forms of the allylic radical intermediate in the bromination of 1-octene, for example, are not equivalent and give both 3-bromo-1-octene and 1-bromo-2-octene, the latter as a mixture of cis and trans isomers.



1-Octene — 3-Bromo-1-octene (17%) — 1-Bromo-2-octene (83%) (*cis* + *trans*)

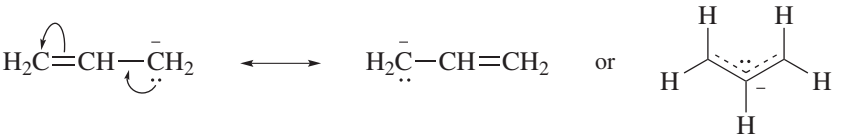
via:

Problem 10.9

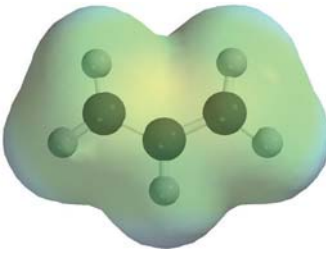
Evaluate 2,3,3-trimethyl-1-butene as a candidate for free-radical bromination. How many allylic bromides would you expect to result from its treatment with *N*-bromosuccinimide?

10.4 Allylic Anions

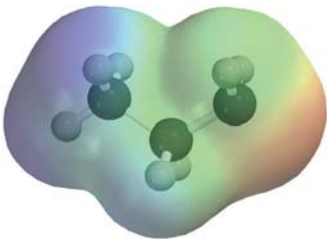
Like allyl cation and allyl radical, allyl anion is planar and stabilized by electron delocalization. The unshared pair plus the two π electrons of the double bond are shared by the three carbons of the allyl unit. This delocalization can be expressed in resonance terms



or by molecular orbital methods. According to the π-electron approximation, the four π electrons of allyl anion are distributed in pairs between the two bonding orbitals π_1 and π_2 as shown earlier in Figure 10.2 (p. 373). The electrons in the HOMO π_2 interact equally



Allyl anion



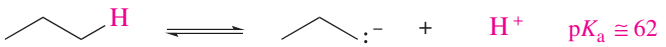
Propyl anion

Figure 10.4

Electrostatic potential maps for allyl and propyl anion. The charge is dispersed in allyl and shared equally by C-1 and C-3. The charge is localized at C-1 in propyl. The color scale is the same for both maps.

with C-1 and C-3. Thus, the negative charge is shared equally by these two carbons, and both are equivalent reactive sites.

The extent to which electron delocalization stabilizes allyl anion can be assessed by comparing the pK_as of propane and propene.



Propane — Propyl anion — Proton

Propene — Allyl anion — Proton

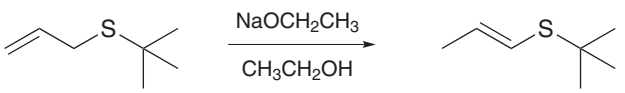
Although the pK_a values of hydrocarbons are subject to a fair degree of uncertainty and vary according to how they are measured, all of the methods agree that allyl anion is a much weaker base than propyl anion.

The electrostatic potential maps in Figure 10.4 illustrate the greater dispersal of negative charge in allyl anion versus propyl anion. In addition to the stabilization that results from electron delocalization of the π electrons, C-2 of propene is sp^2 hybridized, which increases the acidity of the allylic hydrogens by an electron-withdrawing inductive effect.

Recall from Section 9.5 that the electronegativity of carbon increases with increasing *s* character. *sp*-Hybridized carbon is more electronegative than sp^2, which is more electronegative than sp^3.

Problem 10.10

After heating a solution of allyl *tert*-butyl sulfide and sodium ethoxide in ethanol for several hours, *tert*-butyl propenyl sulfide was isolated in 66% yield. Suggest a stepwise mechanism for this isomerization. Which has the smaller pK_a (is the stronger acid), the reactant or the product?

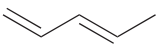


Allyl *tert*-butyl sulfide — *tert*-Butyl propenyl sulfide

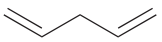
10.5 Classes of Dienes: Conjugated and Otherwise

As described in Sections 10.1–10.4, allylic carbocations, radicals, and anions are conjugated π-electron systems involved as intermediates in chemical reactions. The remaining sections of this chapter focus on stable molecules, especially hydrocarbons called **conjugated dienes,** which contain two C═C units joined by a single bond as in C═C—C═C. It begins by comparing their structure and stability to **isolated dienes,** in which the two

C═C units are separated from each other by one or more sp^3-hybridized carbons, and to **cumulated dienes,** or **cumulenes** (also called **allenes**), in which two C═C units share a single carbon (C═C═C).



(*E*)-1,3-Pentadiene (conjugated)



1,4-Pentadiene (isolated)

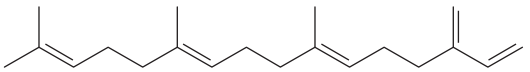
$H_2C{=}C{=}CHCH_2CH_3$

1,2-Pentadiene (cumulated)

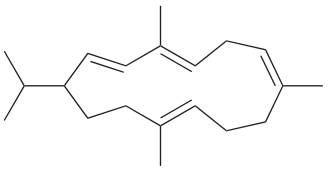
Problem 10.11

Many naturally occurring substances contain several carbon–carbon double bonds: some isolated, some conjugated, and some cumulated. Identify the types of carbon–carbon double bonds found in each of the following substances:

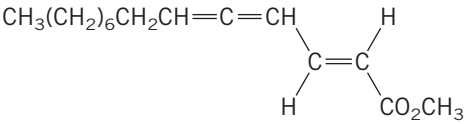
(a) β-Springene (a scent substance from the dorsal gland of springboks)



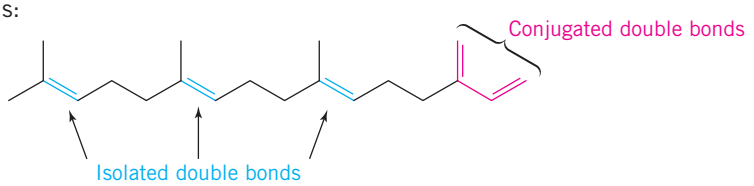
(b) Cembrene (occurs in pine resin)



(c) The sex attractant of the male dried-bean beetle



Sample Solution (a) β-Springene has three isolated double bonds and a pair of conjugated double bonds:



Isolated double bonds are separated from other double bonds by at least one sp^3-hybridized carbon. Conjugated double bonds are joined by a single bond.

Alkadienes are named according to the IUPAC rules by replacing the *-ane* ending of an alkane with *-adiene* and locating the position of each double bond by number. Compounds with three carbon–carbon double bonds are called *alkatrienes* and named accordingly, those with four double bonds are *alkatetraenes,* and so on.

10.6 Relative Stabilities of Dienes

Which is the most stable arrangement of double bonds in an alkadiene: isolated, conjugated, or cumulated?

As we have seen before (Section 6.3), the relative stabilities of alkenes can be assessed from their heats of hydrogenation. Figure 10.5 compares these values for the isolated diene 1,4-pentadiene and its conjugated isomer (*E*)-1,3-pentadiene. The figure shows that an isolated pair of double bonds behaves much like two independent alkene units. The measured heat of hydrogenation of the two double bonds in 1,4-pentadiene is 252 kJ/mol (60.2 kcal/mol), exactly twice the heat of hydrogenation of 1-pentene. Furthermore, the heat evolved on hydrogenation of each double bond must be 126 kJ/mol (30.1 kcal/mol) because 1-pentene is an intermediate in the hydrogenation of 1,4-pentadiene to pentane.

By the same reasoning, hydrogenation of the terminal double bond in the conjugated diene (*E*)-1,3-pentadiene releases only 111 kJ/mol (26.5 kcal/mol) when it is hydrogenated to (*E*)-2-pentene. Hydrogenation of the terminal double bond in the conjugated diene

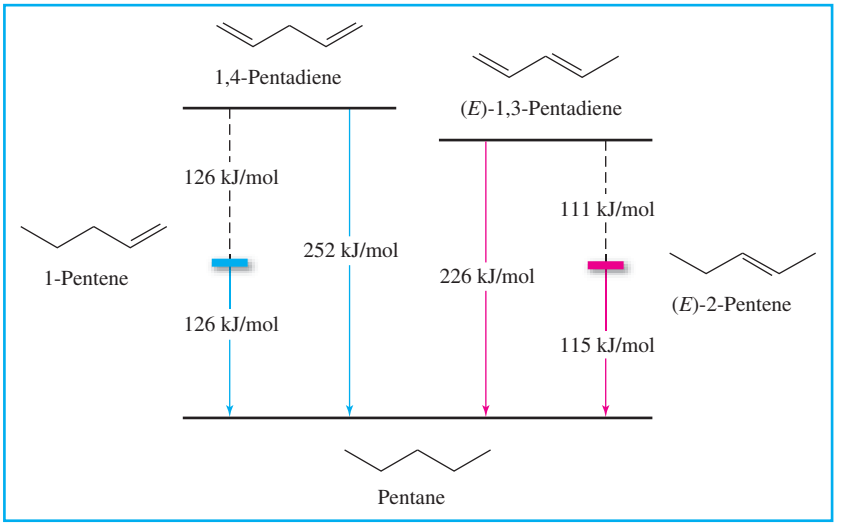


Figure 10.5

Heats of hydrogenation are used to assess the stabilities of isolated versus conjugated double bonds. Comparing the measured heats of hydrogenation (solid lines) of the four compounds shown gives the values shown by the dashed lines for the heats of hydrogenation of the terminal double bond of 1,4-pentadiene and (*E*)-1,3-pentadiene. A conjugated double bond is approximately 15 kJ/mol more stable than an isolated double bond.

evolves 15 kJ/mol (3.6 kcal/mol) less heat than hydrogenation of a terminal double bond in the diene with isolated double bonds. *A conjugated double bond is 15 kJ/mol (3.6 kcal/mol) more stable than an isolated double bond.* This increased stability due to conjugation is the **delocalization energy, resonance energy,** or **conjugation energy.**

The cumulated double bonds of an allenic system are of relatively high energy. The heat of hydrogenation of allene is more than twice that of propene.

$$\underset{\text{Allene}}{H_2C{=}C{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{2H_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Propane}}{CH_3CH_2CH_3} \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -295 \text{ kJ } (-70.5 \text{ kcal})$$

$$\underset{\text{Propene}}{CH_3CH{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{H_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Propane}}{CH_3CH_2CH_3} \qquad \Delta H^\circ = -125 \text{ kJ } (-29.9 \text{ kcal})$$

Problem 10.12

Another way in which energies of isomers may be compared is by their heats of combustion. Match the heat of combustion with the appropriate diene.

Dienes:	1,2-Pentadiene, (*E*)-1,3-pentadiene, 1,4-pentadiene
Heats of combustion:	3186 kJ/mol, 3217 kJ/mol, 3251 kJ/mol

Thus, the order of alkadiene stability decreases in the order: conjugated diene (most stable) → isolated diene → cumulated diene (least stable). To understand this ranking, we need to look at structure and bonding in alkadienes in more detail.

10.7 Bonding in Conjugated Dienes

At 146 pm the C-2—C-3 distance in 1,3-butadiene is relatively short for a carbon–carbon single bond. This is most reasonably seen as a hybridization effect. In ethane both carbons are sp^3-hybridized and are separated by a distance of 153 pm. The carbon–carbon single bond in propene unites sp^3- and sp^2-hybridized carbons and is shorter than that of ethane. Both C-2 and C-3 are sp^2-hybridized in 1,3-butadiene, and a decrease in bond distance between them reflects the tendency of carbon to attract electrons more strongly as its *s* character increases.

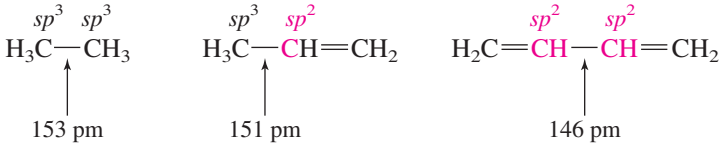
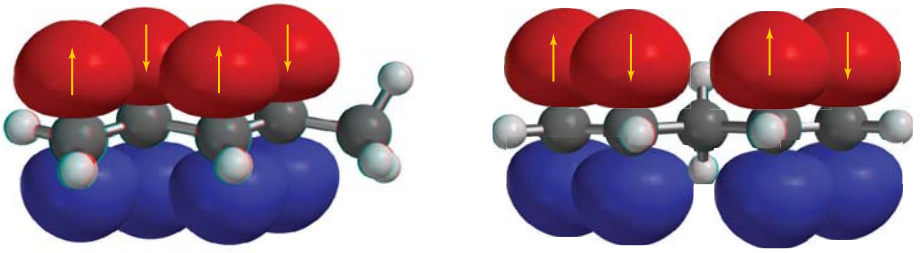


Figure 10.6

(*a*) In a conjugated diene, overlap of adjacent *p* orbitals gives an extended π system encompassing four carbons. (*b*) Isolated double bonds are separated from one another by one or more sp^3-hybridized carbons and cannot overlap to give an extended π orbital.

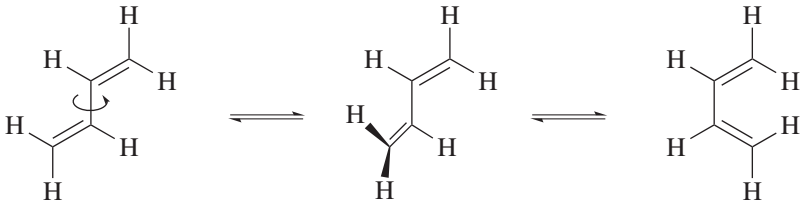


(*a*) Conjugated double bonds in 1,3-pentadiene (*b*) Isolated double bonds in 1,4-pentadiene

The factor most responsible for the increased stability of conjugated double bonds is the greater delocalization of their π electrons compared with the π electrons of isolated double bonds. As shown in Figure 10.6*a*, the four *p* orbitals of the conjugated diene 1,3-pentadiene combine to give a continuous π system, which allows each of the π electrons to interact with all four carbons. Continuous overlap of all four *p* orbitals of 1,4-pentadiene (Figure 10.6*b*) is not possible because a CH_2 group separates the two alkene units and their π electrons are no more delocalized than they are in ethylene.

A more detailed molecular orbital picture of electron delocalization is shown for the case of 1,3-butadiene in Figure 10.7. The four *p* AOs combine to give four π MOs, two of which (π_1 and π_2) are bonding; each of these π orbitals contains two electrons. The two antibonding orbitals are unoccupied and are not shown.

Electron delocalization in 1,3-butadiene is most effective when all four carbons lie in the same plane. Two conformations, called *s*-cis and *s*-trans, permit this coplanarity.

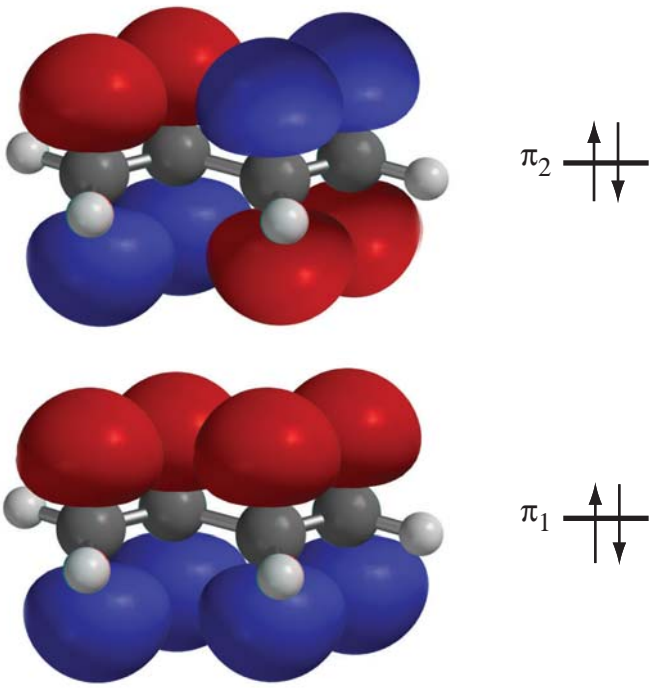


s-Trans conformation of 1,3-butadiene — Transition state — *s*-Cis conformation of 1,3-butadiene

(The letter *s* in *s*-cis and *s*-trans refers to conformations around the single bond.)

Figure 10.7

The two lowest energy π orbitals of 1,3-butadiene are both bonding, and each is doubly occupied. The electrons in each π orbital are delocalized over all four sp^2-hybridized carbons.



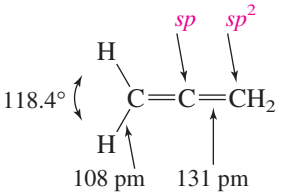
The *s*-trans conformation is 12 kJ/mol (2.8 kcal/mol) more stable than *s*-cis, with van der Waals strain between the C(1) and C(4) "interior" hydrogens contributing to the decreased stability of the *s*-cis conformation. The two conformations are interconvertible by rotation about the C(2)–C(3) single bond with an activation energy for the *s*-trans → *s*-cis conversion of 25 kJ/mol (6 kcal/mol). This energy cost reflects the loss of π-electron delocalization in going from a coplanar C═C—C═C arrangement to a nonplanar one at the transition state.

Problem 10.13

Use Hammond's postulate (Section 4.8) to estimate the angle between the two C═C units at the transition state for rotation about the C(2)–C(3) bond in 1,3-butadiene. Is it 90°, less than 90°, or more than 90°?

10.8 Bonding in Allenes

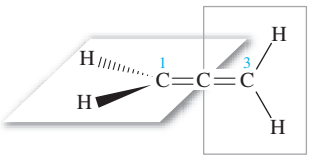
The three carbons of allene lie in a straight line, with relatively short carbon–carbon bond distances of 131 pm. The middle carbon, because it has two π bonds, is *sp*-hybridized. The end carbons of allene are sp^2-hybridized.



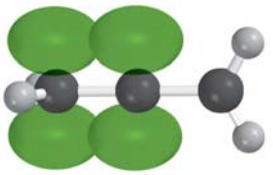
Allene

As Figure 10.8 illustrates, allene is nonplanar; the plane of one HCH unit is perpendicular to the plane of the other. Figure 10.8 also shows the reason for this unusual geometry. The

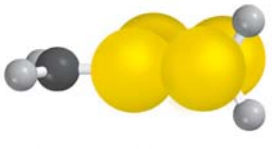
(*a*) Planes defined by H(C-1)H and H(C-3)H are mutually perpendicular.



(*b*) The *p* orbital of C-1 and one of the *p* orbitals of C-2 can overlap so as to participate in π bonding.



(*c*) The *p* orbital of C-3 and one of the *p* orbitals of C-2 can overlap so as to participate in a second π orbital perpendicular to the one in (*b*).



(*d*) Allene is a nonplanar molecule characterized by a linear carbon chain and two mutually perpendicular π bonds.

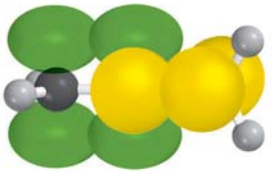
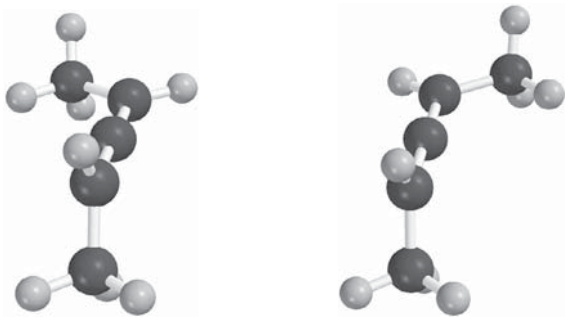


Figure 10.8

Bonding and geometry in 1,2-propadiene (allene). The green and yellow colors are meant to differentiate the orbitals and do not indicate their phases.

2*p* orbital of each of the terminal carbons overlaps with a different 2*p* orbital of the central carbon. Because the 2*p* orbitals of the central carbon are perpendicular to each other, the perpendicular nature of the two HCH units follows naturally.

The nonplanarity of allenes has an interesting stereochemical consequence. 1,3-Disubstituted allenes are chiral; they are not superimposable on their mirror images. Even an allene as simple as 2,3-pentadiene ($CH_3CH{=}C{=}CHCH_3$) has been obtained as separate enantiomers.



(+)-2,3-Pentadiene (−)-2,3-Pentadiene

The enantiomers shown are related as a right-hand and left-hand screw, respectively.

The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R*–*S* notation has been extended to include molecules with a chirality axis. See the article by Mak in the November 2004 issue of the *Journal of Chemical Education* for a brief discussion of assigning *R* or *S* to chiral molecules that do not contain a chirality center.

Chiral allenes are another example of molecules that are chiral, but do not contain a chirality center. Like the chiral biaryl derivatives that were described in Section 7.9, chiral allenes contain an axis of chirality. The axis of chirality in 2,3-pentadiene is a line passing through the three carbons of the allene unit (carbons 2, 3, and 4).

Problem 10.14

Is 2-methyl-2,3-pentadiene chiral? What about 2-chloro-2,3-pentadiene?

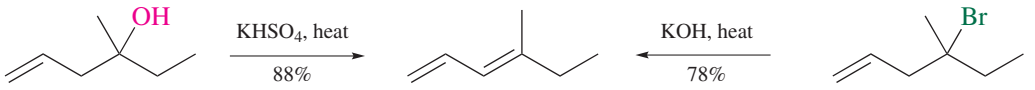
10.9 Preparation of Dienes

The conjugated diene 1,3-butadiene is used in the manufacture of synthetic rubber for automobile tires and is prepared on an industrial scale in vast quantities. In the presence of a suitable catalyst, butane undergoes thermal dehydrogenation to yield 1,3-butadiene.

The use of 1,3-butadiene in the preparation of synthetic rubber is discussed in the boxed essay *Diene Polymers* that appears on page 387.

$$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3 \xrightarrow[\text{chromia–alumina}]{590\text{–}675^\circ C} H_2C{=}CHCH{=}CH_2 + 2H_2$$

Laboratory syntheses of conjugated dienes involve elimination reactions of unsaturated alcohols and alkyl halides. In the two examples that follow, the conjugated diene is produced in high yield even though an isolated diene is also possible.



3-Methyl-5-hexen-3-ol 4-Methyl-1,3-hexadiene 4-Bromo-4-methyl-1-hexene

As we saw in Chapter 5, dehydrations and dehydrohalogenations are typically regioselective in the direction that leads to the most stable double bond. Conjugated dienes are more stable than isolated dienes and are formed faster via a lower energy transition state.

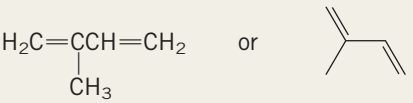
Problem 10.15

What dienes containing isolated double bonds are capable of being formed, but are not observed, in the two preceding equations describing elimination in 3-methyl-5-hexen-3-ol and 4-bromo-4-methyl-1-hexene?

Diene Polymers

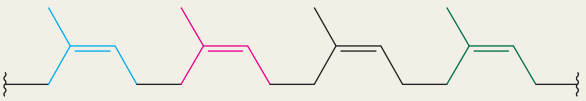
We begin with two trees, both cultivated on plantations in Southeast Asia. One, *Hevea brasiliensis,* is a source of natural rubber and was imported from Brazil in the nineteenth century. The other, *Isonandra gutta,* is native to Sumatra, Java, and Borneo and gives a latex from which gutta-percha is obtained.

Some 500 years ago during Columbus's second voyage to what are now the Americas, he and his crew saw children playing with balls made from the latex of trees that grew there. Later, Joseph Priestley called this material "rubber" to describe its ability to erase pencil marks by rubbing, and in 1823 Charles Macintosh demonstrated how rubber could be used to make waterproof coats and shoes. Shortly thereafter Michael Faraday determined an empirical formula of C_5H_8 for rubber. It was eventually determined that rubber is a polymer of 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene.



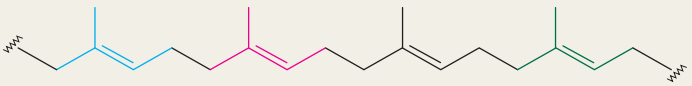
2-Methyl-1,3-butadiene (common name: *isoprene*)

The structure of rubber corresponds to 1,4 addition of several thousand isoprene units to one another:



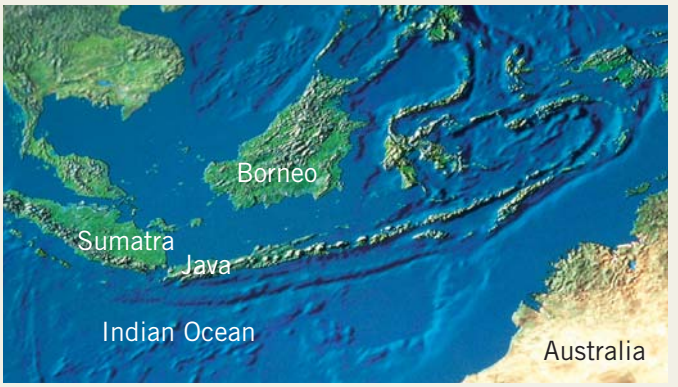
All the double bonds in rubber have the *Z* configuration.

Gutta-percha is a different polymer of isoprene. Its chains are shorter than those of natural rubber and have *E* double bonds.

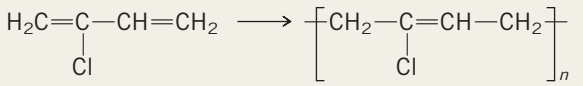


Gutta-percha is flexible when heated, but is harder and more durable than rubber at room temperature. It was, at one time, the material of choice for golf ball covers. Gutta-percha's main claim to fame though lies out of sight on the floors of the world's oceans. The first global communication network—the telegraph—relied on insulated copper wire to connect senders and receivers. Gutta-percha proved so superior to natural rubber in resisting deterioration, especially underwater, that it coated the thousands of miles of insulated telegraph cable that connected most of the countries of the world by the close of the nineteenth century.

In natural rubber the attractive forces between neighboring polymer chains are relatively weak, and there is little overall structural order. The chains slide easily past one another when stretched and return, in time, to their disordered state when the distorting force is removed. The ability of a substance to recover its original shape after distortion is its *elasticity.* The elasticity of natural rubber is satisfactory only within a limited temperature range; it is too rigid when cold and too sticky when warm to be very useful. Rubber's elasticity is improved by *vulcanization,* a process discovered by Charles Goodyear in 1839. When natural rubber is heated with sulfur, a chemical reaction occurs in which neighboring polyisoprene chains become connected through covalent bonds to sulfur. Although these sulfur "bridges" permit only limited movement of one chain with respect to another, their presence ensures that the rubber will snap back to its original shape once the distorting force is removed.

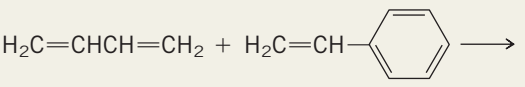


As the demand for rubber increased, so did the chemical industry's efforts to prepare a synthetic substitute. One of the first **elastomers** (a synthetic polymer that possesses elasticity) to find a commercial niche was *neoprene,* discovered by chemists at Du Pont in 1931. Neoprene is produced by free-radical polymerization of 2-chloro-1,3-butadiene and has the greatest variety of applications of any elastomer. Some uses include electrical insulation, conveyer belts, hoses, and weather balloons.

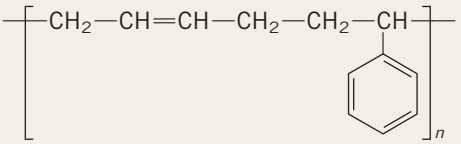


2-Chloro-1,3-butadiene Neoprene

The elastomer produced in greatest amount is *styrene-butadiene rubber* (SBR). Annually, just under 10^9 lb of SBR is produced in the United States, most of which is used in automobile tires. As its name suggests, SBR is prepared from styrene and 1,3-butadiene. It is an example of a **copolymer,** a polymer assembled from two or more different monomers. Free-radical polymerization of a mixture of styrene and 1,3-butadiene gives SBR.



1,3-Butadiene Styrene

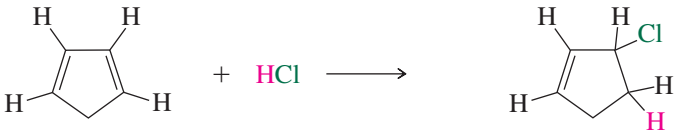


Styrene-butadiene rubber

Coordination polymerization of isoprene using Ziegler–Natta catalyst systems (Section 6.14) gives a material similar in properties to natural rubber, as does polymerization of 1,3-butadiene. Poly(1,3-butadiene) is produced in about two thirds the quantity of SBR each year. It, too, finds its principal use in tires.

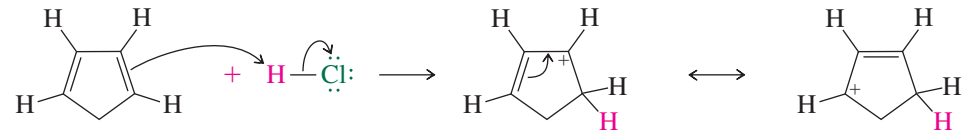
10.10 Addition of Hydrogen Halides to Conjugated Dienes

Electrophilic addition is the characteristic reaction of alkenes, and conjugated dienes undergo addition with the same electrophiles that react with alkenes, and by similar mechanisms. Hydrogen chloride, for example, adds to the diene unit of 1,3-cyclopentadiene to give 3-chlorocyclopentene. Mechanism 10.3 is analogous to the electrophilic addition of HCl to alkenes.



1,3-Cyclopentadiene 3-Chlorocyclopentene (70–90%)

As with alkenes, the regioselectivity of electrophilic addition to conjugated dienes is governed by the stability of the resulting carbocation. Protonation of a conjugated diene always occurs at the end of the diene unit because an allylic carbocation results.

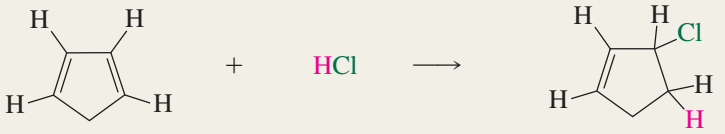


1,3-Cyclopentadiene Resonance contributors of 2-cyclopentenyl cation

Mechanism 10.3

Addition of Hydrogen Chloride to 1,3-Cyclopentadiene

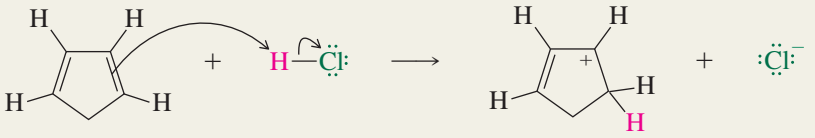
THE OVERALL REACTION:



1,3-Cyclopentadiene Hydrogen chloride 3-Chlorocyclopentene

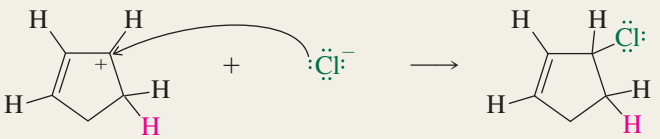
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: A proton is transferred from HCl to a carbon at the end of the diene system to give an allylic carbocation.



1,3-Cyclopentadiene Hydrogen chloride 2-Cyclopentenyl cation Chloride ion

Step 2: Chloride ion acts as a nucleophile and bonds to the positively charged carbon of the carbocation.



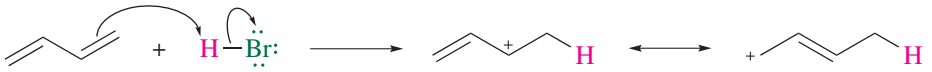
2-Cyclopentenyl cation Chloride ion 3-Chlorocyclopentene

Problem 10.16

Carbons 1 and 4 of 1,3-cyclopentadiene are equivalent and give the same carbocation on protonation. Likewise, carbons 2 and 3 are equivalent. Write the structure of the carbocation formed by protonation of C-2 or C-3 to verify that it is not allylic and therefore not as stable as the one formed by protonation of C-1 or C-4.

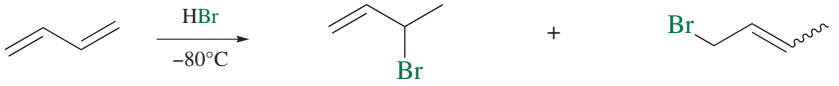
Both resonance contributors of the allylic carbocation from 1,3-cyclopentadiene are equivalent and attack by chloride at either of the carbons that share the positive charge gives the same product, 3-chlorocyclopentene.

Such is not the case with 1,3-butadiene. Protonation of the diene is still regiospecific for the end carbon, but the two resonance forms of the resulting allylic carbocation are not equivalent.



1,3-Butadiene | Hydrogen bromide | 1-Methylallyl cation

Consequently, a mixture of two regioisomeric allylic bromides is formed when HBr adds to 1,3-butadiene.

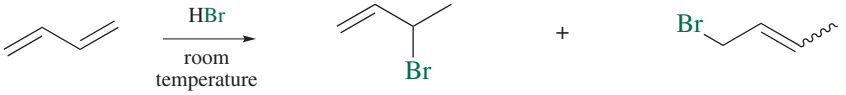


1,3-Butadiene | 3-Bromo-1-butene (81%) | (*E* + *Z*)-1-Bromo-2-butene (19%)

Both products are formed from the same allylic carbocation. The major product corresponds to addition of a proton to C-1 of 1,3-butadiene and bromine to C-2. This mode of addition is called **1,2 addition.** The minor product has its proton and bromide at C-1 and C-4, respectively, and is formed by **1,4 addition.**

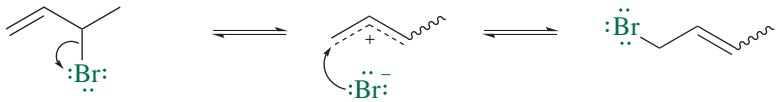
At −80°C the product from 1,2 addition predominates because it is formed faster than the 1,4-addition product. The product distribution is governed by **kinetic control.**

At room temperature, a much different product ratio is observed. Under these conditions the 1,4-addition product predominates.



1,3-Butadiene | 3-Bromo-1-butene (44%) (1,2-addition) | (*E* + *Z*)-1-Bromo-2-butene (56%) (1,4-addition)

To understand why temperature affects the product composition, an important fact must be added. *The 1,2- and 1,4-addition products interconvert at elevated temperature in the presence of hydrogen bromide.*



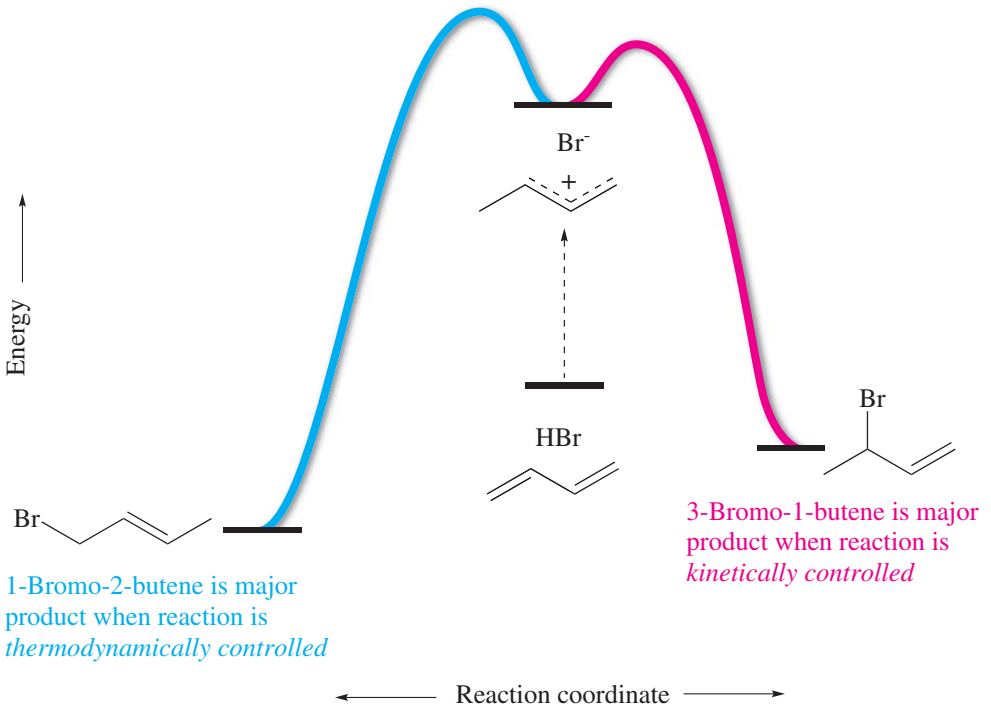
1,2-Addition product formed faster | 1,4-Addition product more stable

At 45°C, for example, interconversion is rapid and gives an equilibrium mixture containing 85% of the 1,4-addition product and 15% of the 1,2 product. This demonstrates that the 1,4 product is more stable, presumably because it has a disubstituted double bond, whereas the double bond in the 1,2 product is monosubstituted.

When addition occurs under conditions in which the products can equilibrate, the composition of the reaction mixture no longer reflects their relative rates of formation but tends to reflect their *relative stabilities.* Reactions of this type are governed by **thermodynamic control.**

Figure 10.9

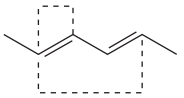
3-Bromo-1-butene (red) is formed faster than 1-bromo-2-butene (blue) through a lower energy transition state in the reaction of 1,3-butadiene with hydrogen bromide. At equilibrium, 1-bromo-2-butene predominates because it is the more stable isomer.



The energy diagram of Figure 10.9 illustrates kinetic and thermodynamic control in the addition of hydrogen bromide to 1,3-butadiene. At low temperature, addition takes place irreversibly. Isomerization is slow because insufficient thermal energy is available to permit the products to surmount the energy barrier for ionization. At higher temperatures isomerization is possible, and the more stable product predominates.

Before leaving this section, we should point out that the numbers in the terms 1,2 and 1,4 addition refer to carbons within the C═C—C═C structural unit wherever it may be in the molecule and not to the IUPAC numbering. For example, 1,2 and 1,4 addition to 2,4-hexadiene would involve the carbons shown.

1,2 addition



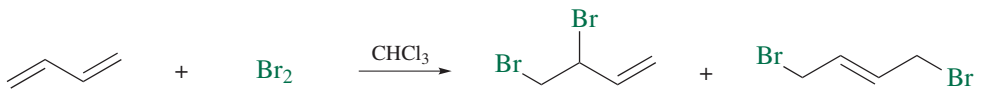
1,4 addition

Problem 10.17

Write structural formulas for the products of 1,2 and 1,4 addition of hydrogen chloride to 2,4-hexadiene.

10.11 Halogen Addition to Dienes

Mixtures of 1,2- and 1,4-addition products are obtained when 1,3-butadiene reacts with chlorine or bromine.



1,3-Butadiene | Bromine | 3,4-Dibromo-1-butene (37%) | (*E*)-1,4-Dibromo-2-butene (63%)

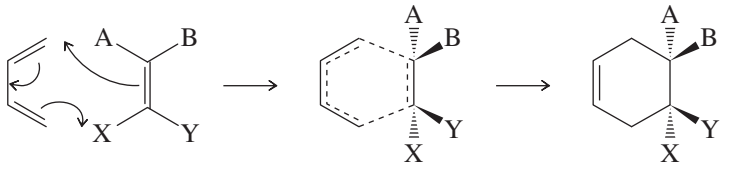
The tendency for 1,4 addition is pronounced, and *E* double bonds are generated almost exclusively.

Problem 10.18

Exclusive of stereoisomers, how many products are possible in the electrophilic addition of 1 mol of bromine to 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene?

10.12 The Diels–Alder Reaction

We've already mentioned the value of carbon–carbon bond-forming reactions in organic synthesis. Imagine how useful it would be to have a reaction in which *two* carbon–carbon bonds are formed in a single operation simply by combining two compounds without having to add acids, bases, or other catalysts. For developing such a reaction, Otto Diels and Kurt Alder of the University of Kiel (Germany) shared the 1950 Nobel Prize in Chemistry. The **Diels–Alder reaction** is the conjugate addition of an alkene to a diene.

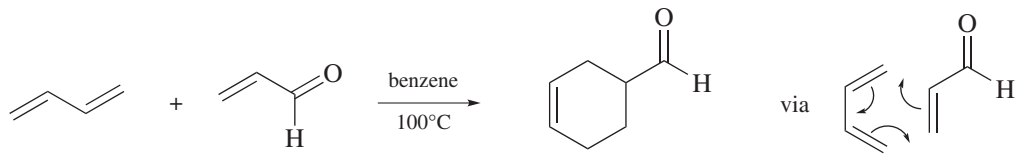


Diene + dienophile | Transition state for cycloaddition | Diels–Alder adduct

The alkene that adds to the diene is called the **dienophile** ("diene seeker"). The reaction is classified as a **cycloaddition,** and the product contains a cyclohexene ring.

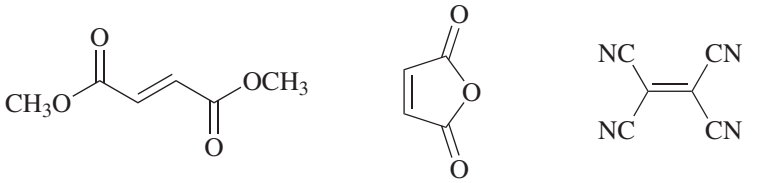
The reaction occurs in a single step, without an intermediate, by a mechanism in which six atoms undergo bonding changes in the same transition state by way of cyclic reorganization of their π electrons. Concerted (one-step) reactions such as the Diels–Alder cycloaddition that proceed through a cyclic transition state are called **pericyclic reactions.**

Effect of Substituents on the Reactivity of the Dienophile The simplest of all Diels–Alder reactions, cycloaddition of ethylene to 1,3-butadiene, has a high activation energy and a low reaction rate, so does not proceed readily. However, electron-attracting substituents such as C═O and C≡N, when attached directly to the double bond, activate the dienophile toward cycloaddition. Acrolein ($H_2C{=}CHCH{=}O$), for example, reacts with 1,3-butadiene to give a high yield of the Diels–Alder adduct at a modest temperature.



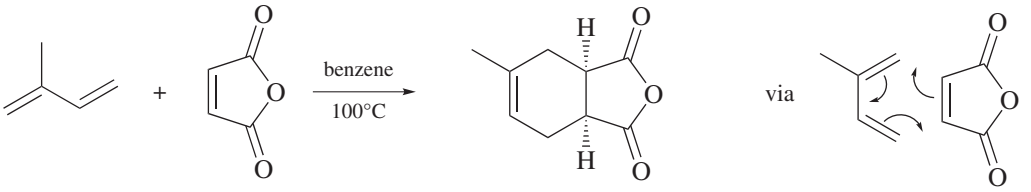
1,3-Butadiene | Acrolein | Cyclohexene-4-carboxaldehyde (100%)

Diethyl fumarate and maleic anhydride have two C═O functions on their double bond and are more reactive than acrolein; tetracyanoethylene is even more reactive.



Dimethyl fumarate | Maleic anhydride | Tetracyanoethylene

The product of a Diels–Alder reaction always contains one more ring than the reactants. Maleic anhydride contains one ring, so the product of its addition to 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene contains two.



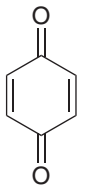
2-Methyl-1,3-butadiene + Maleic anhydride → 1-Methylcyclohexene-4,5-dicarboxylic anhydride (100%)

Problem 10.19

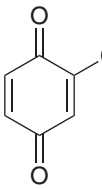
Dicarbonyl compounds such as quinones are reactive dienophiles.

(a) 1,4-Benzoquinone reacts with 2-chloro-1,3-butadiene to give a single product $C_{10}H_9ClO_2$ in 95% yield. Write a structural formula for this product.

(b) 2-Cyano-1,4-benzoquinone undergoes a Diels–Alder reaction with 1,3-butadiene to give a single product $C_{11}H_9NO_2$ in 84% yield. What is its structure?



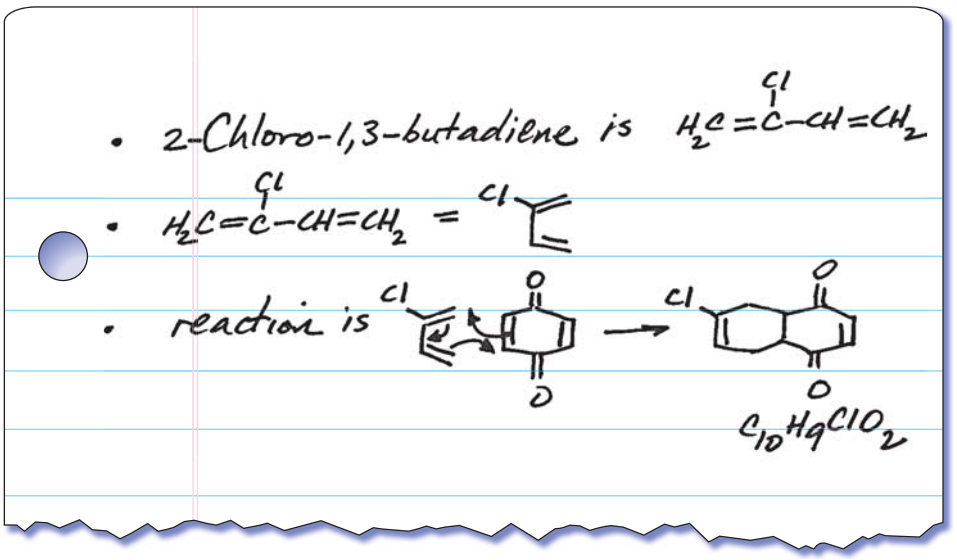
1,4-Benzoquinone



2-Cyano-1,4-benzoquinone

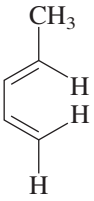
Sample Solution

(a)

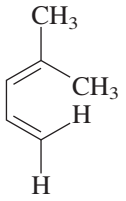


Conformational Effects on the Reactivity of the Diene The diene must be able to adopt the *s*-cis conformation in order for cycloaddition to occur. We saw in Section 10.7 that the *s*-cis conformation of 1,3-butadiene is 12 kJ/mol (2.8 kcal/mol) less stable than the *s*-trans form. This is a relatively small energy difference, so 1,3-butadiene is reactive in the Diels–Alder reaction. Dienes that cannot readily adopt the *s*-cis conformation are less reactive. For example, 4-methyl-1,3-pentadiene is a thousand times less reactive in the

Diels–Alder reaction than *trans*-1,3-pentadiene because its *s*-cis conformation is destabilized by the steric effect imposed by the additional methyl group.



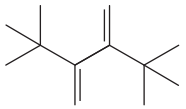
trans-1,3-Pentadiene



4-Methyl-1,3-pentadiene

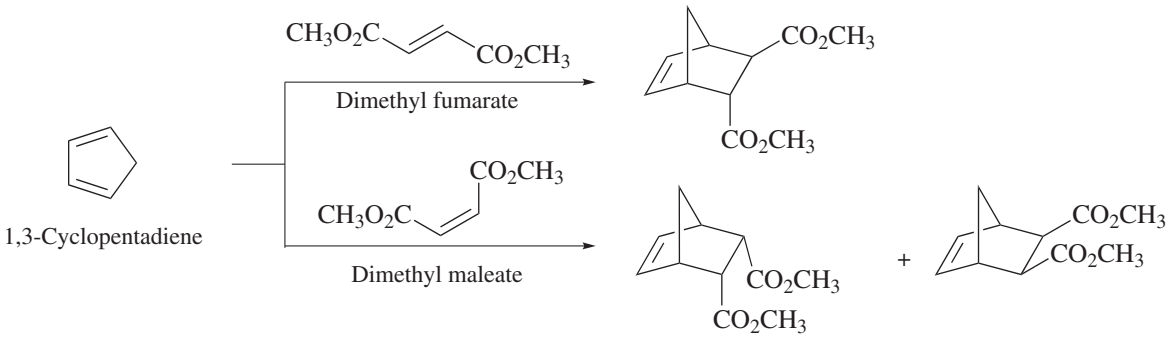
Problem 10.20

2,3-Di-*tert*-butyl-1,3-butadiene is extremely unreactive in Diels–Alder reactions. Explain.



Cyclic conjugated dienes such as 1,3-cyclopentadiene are often used as the diene component in Diels–Alder reactions and are relatively reactive because the *s*-cis geometry is built into their structure.

Diels-Alder Reactions Are Stereospecific and Stereoselective The following pair of related cycloadditions combine to illustrate two important aspects of Diels–Alder reactions. First, recall that a stereospecific reaction is one in which stereoisomeric starting materials yield stereoisomeric products. In the example, 1,3-cyclopentadiene reacts with the two stereoisomeric dienophiles, dimethyl fumarate and dimethyl maleate. Dimethyl fumarate has a trans double bond; dimethyl maleate's double bond is cis.



endo (67% yield) *exo* (23% yield)

Both reactions are stereospecific. The trans relationship between the $—CO_2CH_3$ substituents in dimethyl fumarate is retained in the cycloaddition product; one substituent is exo, the other endo. Similarly, the cis relationship between the two substituents is retained in the reaction of dimethyl maleate and 1,3-cyclopentadiene; they are either both endo or both exo in the two Diels–Alder adducts that are formed.

Nonbridgehead substituents in a bicyclo[2.2.1] system are exo if they are oriented toward the one-carbon bridge, endo if they are oriented away from it.

Problem 10.21

The two stereoisomers of cinnamic acid ($C_6H_5CH{=}CHCO_2H$) each give a different product on reaction with 1,3-butadiene. Write an equation for each reaction.

In addition to being stereospecific, there is a stereoselective preference favoring the formation of endo-Diels–Alder adducts from cyclic dienes as is evident in the observed 3:1

The endo rule is also often called the Alder rule.

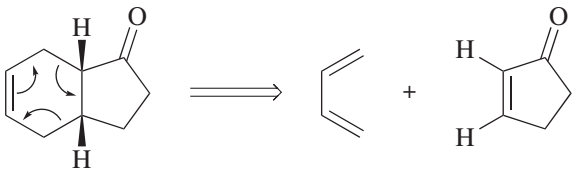
endo–exo ratio in the reaction of dimethyl maleate with 1,3-cyclopentadiene shown in the preceding equation. Such results are common and are the basis of the **endo rule,** which holds that when a particular dienophile can yield two stereoisomeric Diels–Alder adducts, the major stereoisomer will be the one with an endo orientation of the electronegative substituent.

Problem 10.22

Methyl acrylate ($H_2C{=}CHCO_2CH_3$) reacts with 1,3-cyclopentadiene to give a mixture of two products. Write structural formulas for both and predict which one predominates.

10.13 Retrosynthetic Analysis and the Diels–Alder Reaction

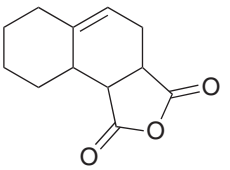
Diels–Alder reactions are widely used for making carbon–carbon bonds, and retrosynthetic analysis can reveal opportunities for their application. If a synthetic target contains a cyclohexene ring, start with the double bond and use curved arrows to disconnect the bonds to be formed in the sought-for cycloaddition. For example:



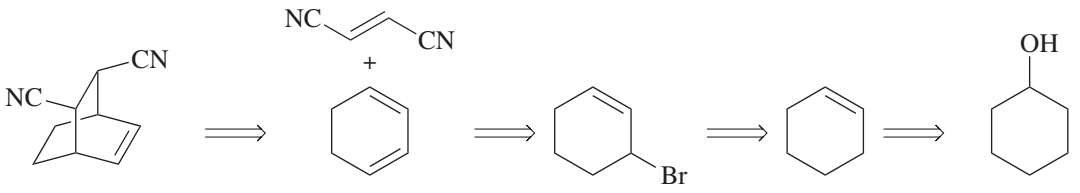
In deciding whether the cycloaddition revealed by the disconnection is feasible or not, examine the alkene to make sure that it is a reactive dienophile. Usually this means that the double bond bears an electron-attracting group, especially C═O or C≡N.

Problem 10.23

What diene and dienophile could you use to prepare the compound shown?



The number of reaction types that we have covered to this point is extensive enough to allow the construction of relatively complicated products from simple, readily available starting materials. Thus, recognizing that the bicyclo[2.2.2]octene derivative shown is accessible by a Diels–Alder reaction leads us back to cyclohexanol as the source of six of its carbons.



5,6-Dicyanobicyclo-[2.2.2]oct-2-ene

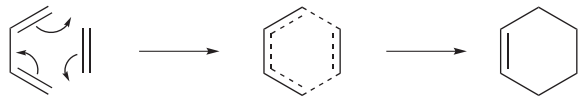
Cyclohexanol

Problem 10.24

Write equations in the synthetic direction for the preparation of 5,6-dicyanobicyclo[2.2.2]oct-2-ene from cyclohexanol and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

10.14 Molecular Orbital Analysis of the Diels–Alder Reaction

The conventional curved-arrow description of the Diels–Alder reaction shows a one-step mechanism involving a cyclic reorganization of six electrons—four from the diene plus two from the dienophile—in the transition state.



Diene + alkene Transition state Cyclohexene

Such a concerted process is more consistent with the stereochemical observations than one in which the two new σ bonds are formed in separate steps. Substituents that are cis in the dienophile remain cis in the product; those that are trans in the dienophile remain trans in the product.

Assuming that all of the bonds are formed in the same step and only π electrons are involved, we can use the Hückel π-electron approximation to explore the process from a molecular orbital perspective and need examine only those orbitals of the reactants that are directly involved in bond formation. These are called the **frontier orbitals** and are usually the HOMO of one reactant and the LUMO of another. For the Diels–Alder reaction they are the HOMO of the diene and the LUMO of the dienophile and are as shown in Figure 10.10. The choice of this HOMO–LUMO combination is made to be consistent with the experimental fact that electron-withdrawing groups on the dienophile increase its reactivity and suggest that electrons flow from the diene to the dienophile. Notice that the symmetry properties of these two orbitals are such as to permit the in-phase overlap necessary for σ bond formation between the diene and dienophile. In MO terms, the Diels–Alder reaction is classified as **symmetry-allowed.**

Contrast the Diels–Alder reaction with one that looks similar, the cycloaddition of one ethylene molecule to another to give cyclobutane.

Ethylene + ethylene Transition state Cyclobutane

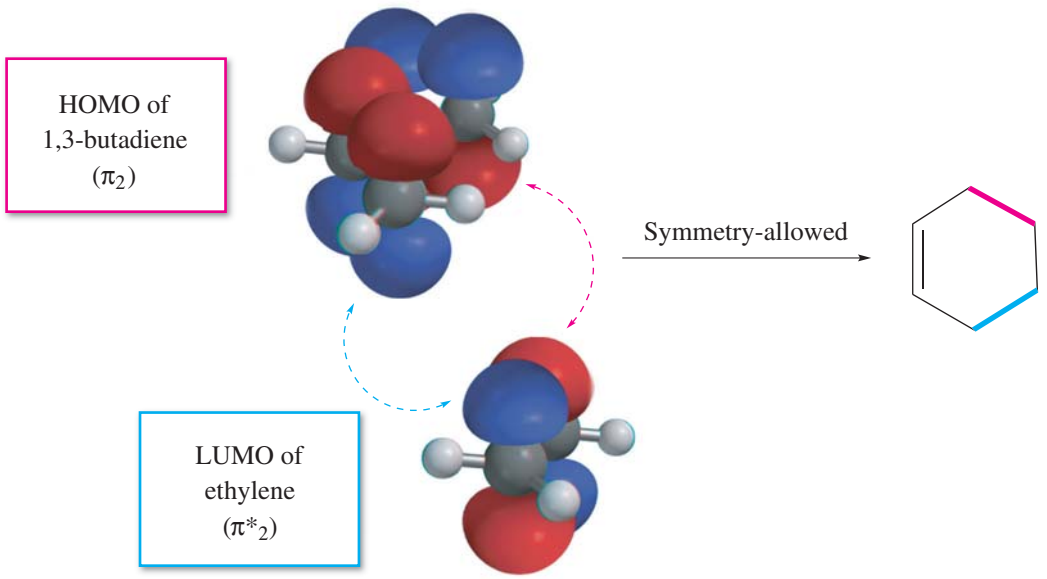
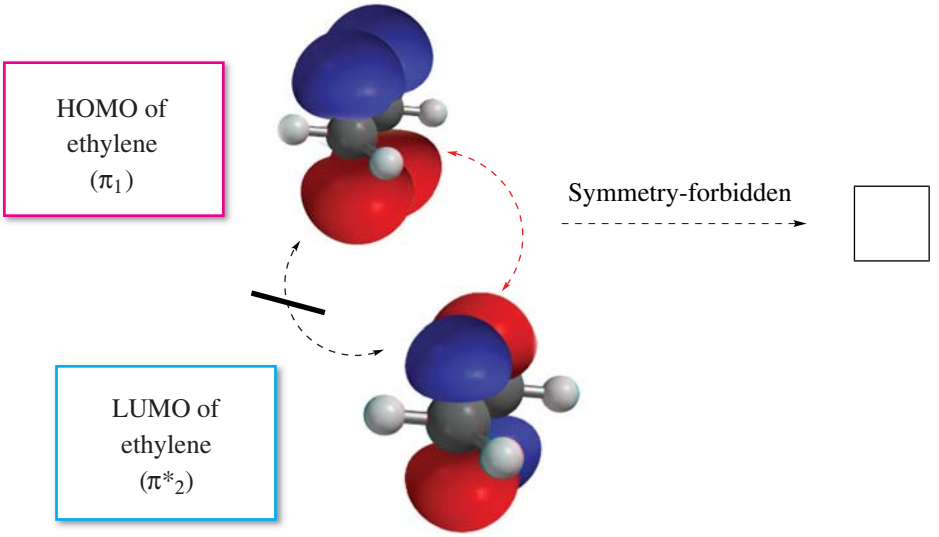


Figure 10.10

The LUMO of ethylene and the HOMO of 1,3-butadiene have the proper symmetry to allow cycloaddition. The two molecules approach each other in parallel planes, and electrons flow from the HOMO of 1,3-butadiene to the LUMO of ethylene. σ Bonds form when orbitals of the same symmetry (blue-to-blue and red-to-red) overlap.

Figure 10.11

The HOMO and the LUMO lack the proper symmetry to allow for concerted cycloaddition of two ethylene molecules. The orbital mismatch precludes σ bond formation between the carbon of one and the carbon of the other.



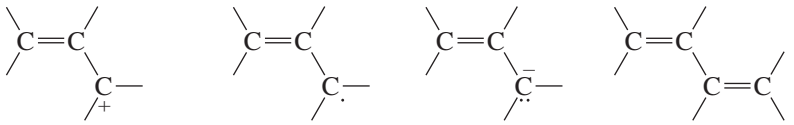
Cycloadditions of alkenes are rare and likely proceed in a stepwise fashion rather than by the concerted process implied in the equation. Figure 10.11 shows the interaction between the HOMO of one ethylene molecule and the LUMO of another. The carbons that are to become σ-bonded to each other experience an antibonding interaction during cycloaddition, which raises the activation energy. The reaction is **symmetry-forbidden.** Reaction, were it to occur, would take place slowly and by a mechanism in which the two new σ bonds are formed in separate steps rather than one involving a single transition state.

Focusing on HOMO–LUMO interactions can aid our understanding of many organic reactions. Its early development is attributed to Professor Kenichi Fukui (Kyoto), and its application to Diels–Alder reactions constitutes but one part of the *Woodward–Hoffmann rules* proposed by Professors R. B. Woodward (Harvard) and Roald Hoffmann (Cornell).

Fukui and Hoffmann shared the 1981 Nobel Prize in Chemistry. Woodward had already won a Nobel Prize in 1965 for his achievements in the synthesis of complex organic compounds, and only his death in 1979 prevented him from being recognized a second time.

10.15 SUMMARY

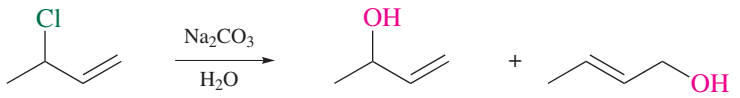
This chapter focused on the effect of a carbon–carbon double bond as a stabilizing substituent on a positively charged carbon in an **allylic carbocation,** on a carbon bearing an odd electron in an **allylic free radical,** on a negatively charged carbon in an **allylic anion,** and on a second double bond in a **conjugated diene.**



Allylic carbocation | Allylic radical | Allylic anion | Conjugated diene

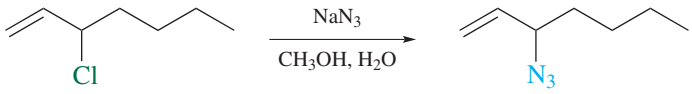
Section 10.1 **Allyl** is the common name of the parent group $H_2C{=}CHCH_2{-}$ and is an acceptable name in IUPAC nomenclature.

Section 10.2 Allylic halides are more reactive than simple alkyl halides in both S_N1 and S_N2 reactions. The allylic carbocation intermediates in S_N1 reactions have their positive charge shared between the two end carbons of the allylic system. The products of nucleophilic substitution may be formed with the same pattern of bonds as the starting allylic halide or with *allylic rearrangement.*



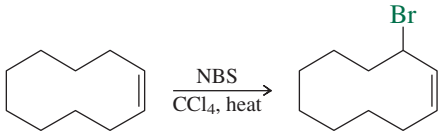
3-Chloro-1-butene | 3-Buten-2-ol (65%) | 2-Buten-1-ol (35%)

Substitution by the S_N2 mechanism does not involve allylic rearrangement.



3-Chloro-1-heptene 3-Azido-1-heptene (78%)

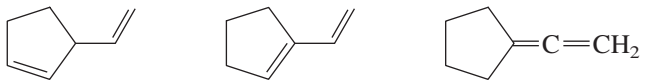
Section 10.3 Alkenes react with *N*-bromosuccinimide (NBS) to give allylic bromides by a free-radical mechanism. The reaction is used for synthetic purposes only when the two resonance forms of the allylic radical are equivalent. Otherwise a mixture of isomeric allylic bromides is produced.



Cyclodecene 3-Bromocyclodecene (56%)

Section 10.4 Stabilization of allylic anions by electron delocalization causes an allylic hydrogen to be more acidic ($pK_a \sim 43$) than a hydrogen in an alkane ($pK_a \sim 62$).

Section 10.5 Dienes are classified as having **isolated, conjugated,** or **cumulated** double bonds.

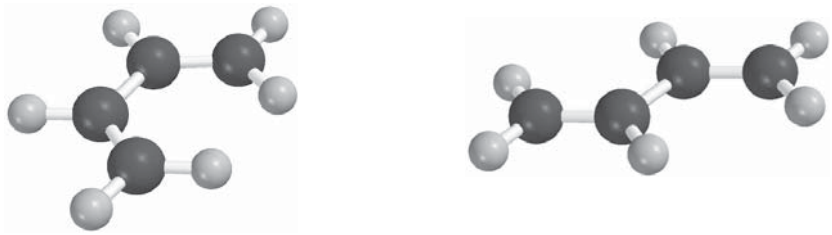


Isolated Conjugated Cumulated

Section 10.6 Conjugated dienes are more stable than isolated dienes, and cumulated dienes are the least stable of all.

Section 10.7 Conjugated dienes are stabilized by electron delocalization to the extent of 12–16 kJ/mol (3–4 kcal/mol). Overlap of the *p* orbitals of four adjacent sp^2-hybridized carbons in a conjugated diene gives an extended π system through which the electrons are delocalized.

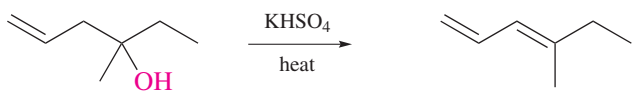
The two most stable conformations of conjugated dienes are the *s*-cis and *s*-trans. The *s*-trans conformation is normally more stable than the *s*-cis. Both conformations are planar, which allows the *p* orbitals to overlap to give an extended π system.



s-cis *s*-trans

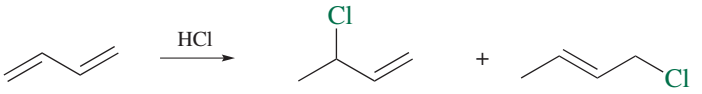
Section 10.8 1,2-Propadiene ($H_2C{=}C{=}CH_2$), also called **allene,** is the simplest cumulated diene. The two π bonds in an allene share an *sp*-hybridized carbon and are at right angles to each other. Certain allenes such as 2,3-pentadiene ($CH_3CH{=}C{=}CHCH_3$) possess a *chirality axis* and are chiral.

Section 10.9 Dehydration and dehydrohalogenation are commonly used methods for preparing dienes. Elimination is regioselective and gives a conjugated diene rather than an isolated or cumulated one.



3-Methyl-5-hexen-3-ol 4-Methyl-1,3-hexadiene (88%)

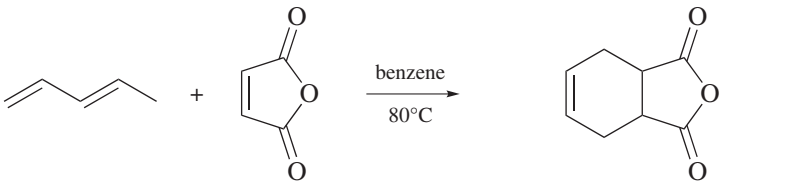
Section 10.10 Protonation at the terminal carbon of a conjugated diene system gives an allylic carbocation that can be captured by the halide nucleophile at either of the two sites that share the positive charge. Nucleophilic attack at the carbon adjacent to the one that is protonated gives the product of *1,2 addition*. Capture at the other site gives the product of *1,4 addition*.



1,3-Butadiene — 3-Chloro-1-butene (78%) — 1-Chloro-2-butene (22%)

Section 10.11 1,4-Addition predominates when Cl_2 and Br_2 add to conjugated dienes.

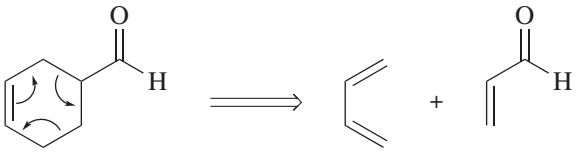
Section 10.12 The *Diels–Alder* reaction is the conjugate addition of an alkene (the *dienophile*) to a conjugated diene. It is concerted and stereospecific; substituents that are cis to each other on the dienophile remain cis in the product.



trans-1,3-Pentadiene — Maleic anhydride — 3-Methylcyclohexene-4,5-dicarboxylic anhydride (81%)

When endo and exo stereoisomers are possible, cycloaddition is stereoselective and favors formation of the endo isomer.

Section 10.13 Diels–Alder routes to cyclohexene derivatives can be found by retrosynthetic analysis using an approach in which the diene and dienophile are revealed by a disconnection of the type:



Section 10.14 The Diels–Alder reaction is believed to proceed in a single step. Bonding changes in the transition state can be understood by examining the nodal properties of the highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) of the diene and the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO) of the dienophile.

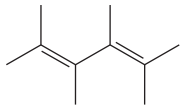
PROBLEMS

10.25 Write structural formulas for each of the following:

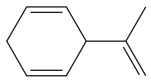
(a) 3,4-Octadiene
(b) (*E,E*)-3,5-Octadiene
(c) (*Z,Z*)-1,3-Cyclooctadiene
(d) (*Z,Z*)-1,4-Cyclooctadiene
(e) (*E,E*)-1,5-Cyclooctadiene
(f) (2*E*,4*Z*,6*E*)-2,4,6-Octatriene
(g) 5-Allyl-1,3-cyclopentadiene
(h) *trans*-1,2-Divinylcyclopropane
(i) 2,4-Dimethyl-1,3-pentadiene

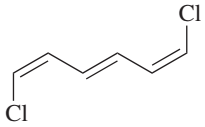
10.26 Give an acceptable IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

(a) $H_2C{=}CH(CH_2)_5CH{=}CH_2$

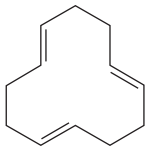
(b) 

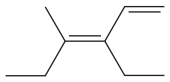
(c) $(H_2C{=}CH)_3CH$

(d) 

(e) 

(f) $H_2C{=}C{=}CHCH{=}CHCH_3$

(g) 

(h) 

10.27 (a) What compound of molecular formula C_6H_{10} gives 2,3-dimethylbutane on catalytic hydrogenation over platinum?

(b) What two compounds of molecular formula $C_{11}H_{20}$ give 2,2,6,6-tetramethylheptane on catalytic hydrogenation over platinum?

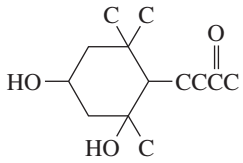
10.28 Write structural formulas for all the

(a) Conjugated dienes (b) Isolated dienes (c) Cumulated dienes

that give 2,4-dimethylpentane on catalytic hydrogenation.

10.29 The pK_a of $CH_3CH{=}CHCH{=}CH_2$ has been estimated to be about 35. Give the structure of its conjugate base and use resonance to show the sharing of negative charge among the various carbons.

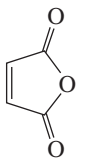
10.30 A certain species of grasshopper secretes an allenic substance of molecular formula $C_{13}H_{20}O_3$ that acts as an ant repellent. The carbon skeleton and location of various substituents in this substance are indicated in the partial structure shown. Complete the structure, adding double bonds where appropriate.



10.31 Show how to prepare each of the following compounds from propene and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents:

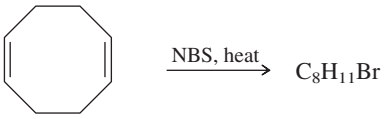
(a) Allyl bromide
(b) 1,2-Dibromopropane
(c) 1,3-Dibromopropane
(d) 1-Bromo-2-chloropropane
(e) 1,2,3-Tribromopropane
(f) Allyl alcohol
(g) Pent-1-en-4-yne ($H_2C{=}CHCH_2C{\equiv}CH$)
(h) 1,4-Pentadiene

10.32 Give the structure, exclusive of stereochemistry, of the principal organic product formed on reaction of 2,3-dimethyl-1,3-butadiene with each of the following:

(a) 2 mol H_2, platinum catalyst
(b) 1 mol HCl (product of 1,2-addition)
(c) 1 mol HCl (product of 1,4-addition)
(d) 1 mol Br_2 (product of 1,2-addition)
(e) 1 mol Br_2 (product of 1,4-addition)
(f) 2 mol Br_2
(g) 

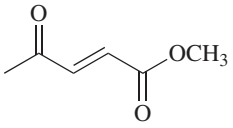
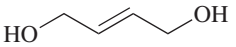
10.33 Repeat the previous problem for the reactions of 1,3-cyclohexadiene.

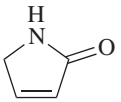
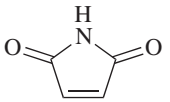
10.34 Bromination of 1,5-cyclooctadiene with *N*-bromosuccinimide (NBS) gives a mixture of two constitutional isomers of $C_8H_{11}Br$. Suggest reasonable structures for these two isomers.

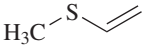
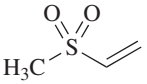


1,5-Cyclooctadiene

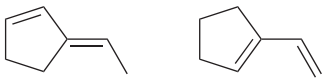
10.35 Identify the more reactive dienophile in each of the following pairs.

(a)  or 

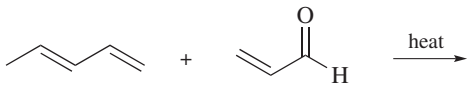
(b)  or 

(c)  or 

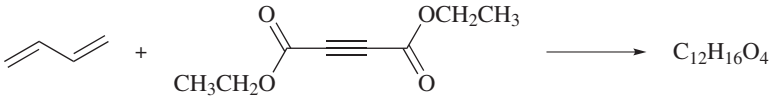
10.36 Which of the following two dienes can undergo the Diels–Alder reaction? Explain.



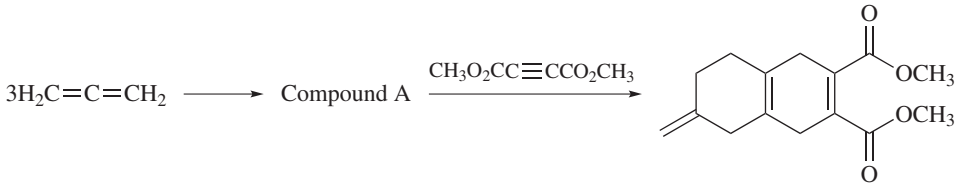
10.37 Two constitutional isomers of molecular formula $C_8H_{12}O$ are formed in the following reaction. Ignoring stereochemistry, suggest reasonable structures for these Diels–Alder adducts.



10.38 Acetylene resembles ethylene in that, although being a poor dienophile itself, it adds to dienes when its triple bond bears electron-attracting substituents. The reaction of 1,3-butadiene with diethyl acetylenedicarboxylate gives a Diels–Alder adduct in 98% yield. What is that product?

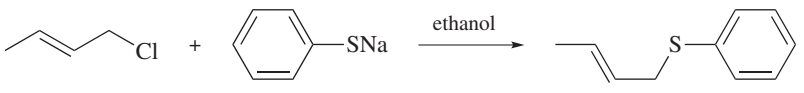


10.39 Allene can be converted to a trimer (compound A) of molecular formula C_9H_{12}. Compound A reacts with dimethyl acetylenedicarboxylate to give compound B. Deduce the structure of compound A.

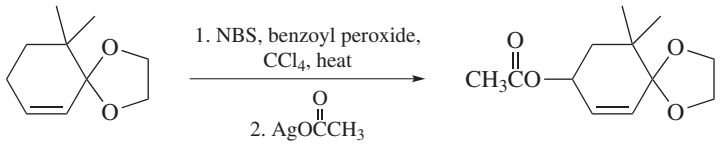


Compound B

10.40 The following reaction gives only the product indicated. By what mechanism does this reaction most likely occur?



10.41 Compound A was converted to compound B by the sequence shown. It is likely that the first step in this sequence gives two isomeric products having the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{15}BrO_2$, and both of these give compound B in the second step.



Compound A Compound B

(a) Suggest reasonable structures for the two isomers of $C_{10}H_{15}BrO_2$ formed in the first step.

(b) Give a mechanistic explanation why both isomers give the same product in the second step.

10.42 Suggest reasonable explanations for each of the following observations:

(a) The first-order rate constant for the solvolysis of $(CH_3)_2C{=}CHCH_2Cl$ in ethanol is over 6000 times greater than that of allyl chloride (25°C).

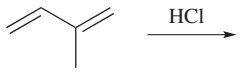
(b) After a solution of 3-buten-2-ol in aqueous sulfuric acid had been allowed to stand for 1 week, it was found to contain both 3-buten-2-ol and 2-buten-1-ol.

(c) Treatment of $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2OH$ with hydrogen bromide gave a mixture of 1-bromo-2-butene and 3-bromo-1-butene.

(d) Treatment of 3-buten-2-ol with hydrogen bromide gave the same mixture of bromides as in part (c).

(e) The major product in parts (c) and (d) was 1-bromo-2-butene.

10.43 What is the 1,2-addition product of the reaction shown?



10.44 2-Chloro-1,3-butadiene (chloroprene) is the monomer from which the elastomer *neoprene* is prepared. 2-Chloro-1,3-butadiene is the thermodynamically controlled product formed by addition of hydrogen chloride to vinylacetylene ($H_2C{=}CHC{\equiv}CH$). The principal product under conditions of kinetic control is the allenic chloride 4-chloro-1,2-butadiene. Suggest a mechanism to account for the formation of each product.

10.45 Which of the following are chiral?

(a) 2-Methyl-2,3-hexadiene

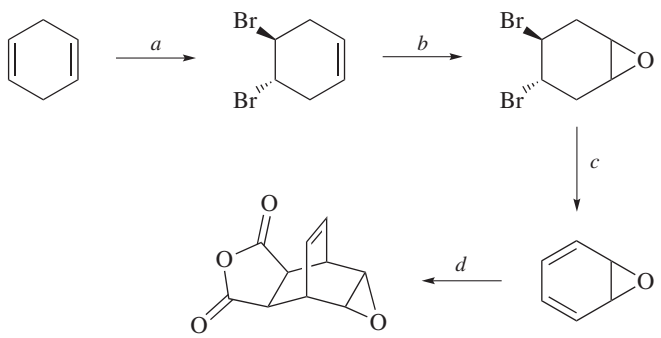
(b) 4-Methyl-2,3-hexadiene

(c) 2,4-Dimethyl-2,3-pentadiene

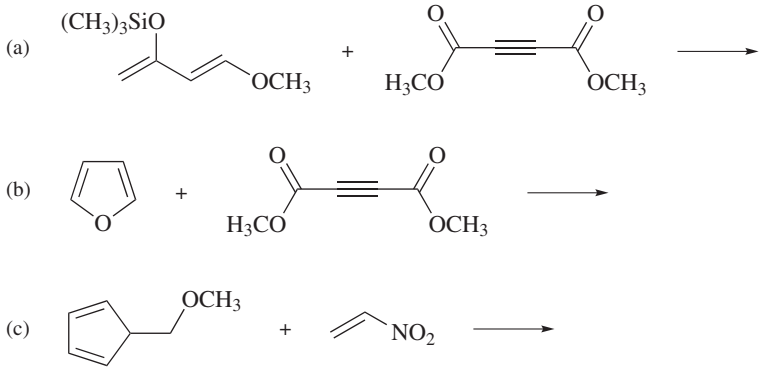
10.46 (a) Describe the molecular geometry expected for 1,2,3-butatriene ($H_2C{=}C{=}C{=}CH_2$).

(b) Two stereoisomers are expected for 2,3,4-hexatriene ($CH_3CH{=}C{=}C{=}CHCH_3$). What should be the relationship between these two stereoisomers?

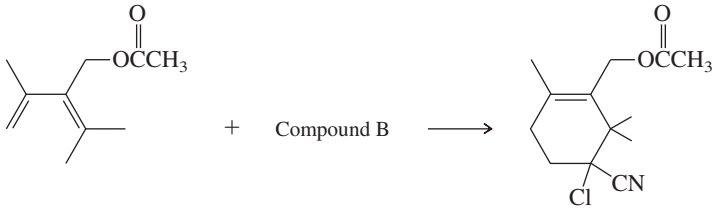
10.47 Suggest reagents suitable for carrying out each step in the following synthetic sequence:



10.48 Predict the constitution of the expected Diels–Alder adduct formed from the following combinations of dienes and dienophiles.

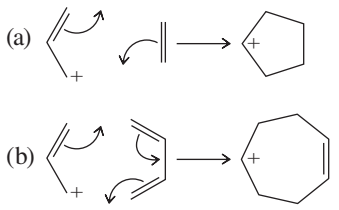


10.49 Compound C is a key intermediate in a chemical synthesis of paclitaxel, a drug used to treat breast, ovarian, and lung cancer. It is prepared by a reaction between compounds A and B. What is the structure of compound B?



Compound A Compound C

10.50 Refer to the molecular orbital diagrams of allyl cation (Figure 10.2), ethylene, and 1,3-butadiene (Figure 10.10) to decide which of the following cycloaddition reactions are allowed and which are forbidden according to the Woodward–Hoffmann rules.

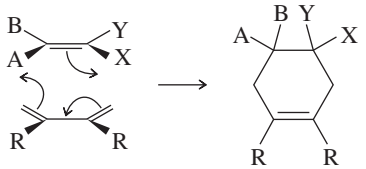


Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 10

Intramolecular and Retro Diels–Alder Reactions

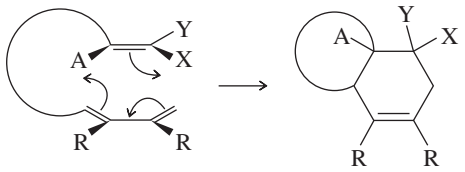
Not only is the Diels–Alder reaction useful in its own right, but variations on the general theme of cycloaddition have enhanced its versatility as a synthetic tool. In a customary Diels–Alder cycloaddition, the diene and the dienophile are functional groups in separate molecules. The reaction is **intermolecular** (between two molecules).

Intermolecular Diels–Alder reaction:



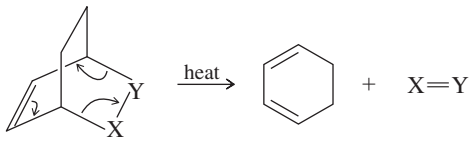
Cycloaddition can also be **intramolecular** (within a single molecule) when a conjugated diene and an isolated C═C double bond are both present in the same molecule.

Intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction:



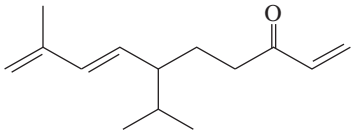
An intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction generates *two* new rings in a single operation. One of the new rings is, as in the intermolecular reaction, a cyclohexene. The other new ring is typically five- or six-membered.

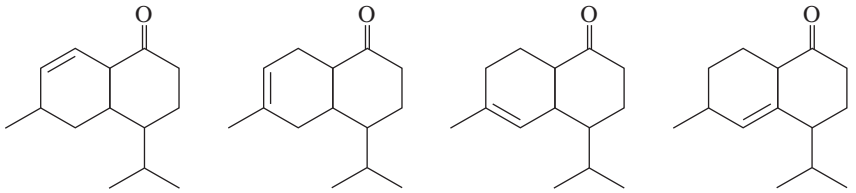
Diels–Alder reactions are reversible; cyclohexenes can dissociate to a diene and an alkene by a **retro Diels–Alder reaction.**



When applied to synthesis, the product X═Y of this *cycloelimination* is typically ethylene or carbon dioxide or can contain a triple bond as in acetylene or N_2. The bicyclic reactant can itself be prepared by a Diels–Alder cycloaddition or by some indirect method.

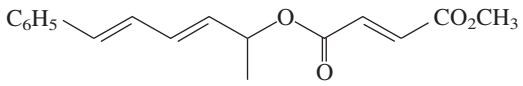
10.51 The compound shown undergoes an intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction at room temperature. What is the structure of the product? (No need to show stereochemistry.)

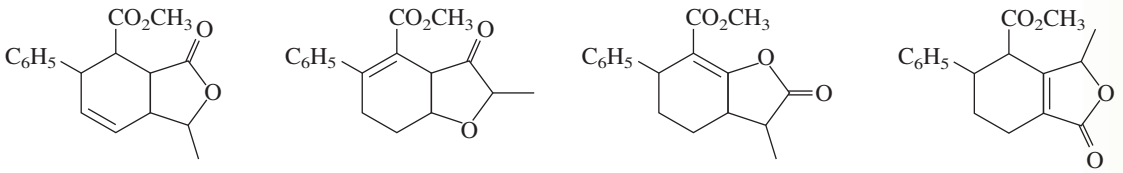




A. B. C. D.

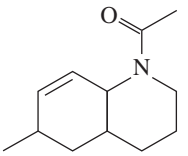
10.52 What is the structure of the intramolecular Diels–Alder product of the compound shown? (No need to show stereochemistry.)

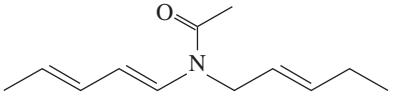


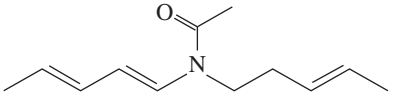


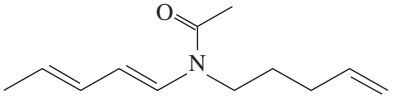
A. B. C. D.

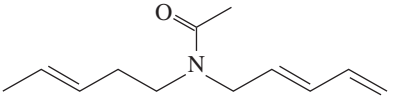
10.53 What compound would you use to prepare the compound shown by an intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction?



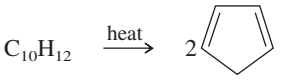
A. 

C. 

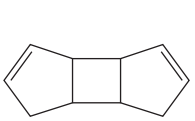
B. 

D. 

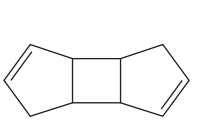
10.54 The customary laboratory source of 1,3-cyclopentadiene is a compound called "dicyclopentadiene" ($C_{10}H_{12}$). Dicyclopentadiene is the Diels–Alder cycloaddition product of two molecules of 1,3-cyclopentadiene. One molecule acts as diene, the other as a dienophile. Heating dicyclopentadiene causes it to undergo a retro Diels–Alder reaction to give 1,3-cyclopentadiene.



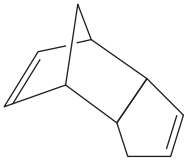
What is the structure of dicyclopentadiene?



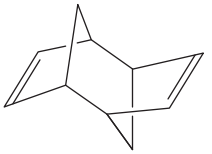
A.



B.

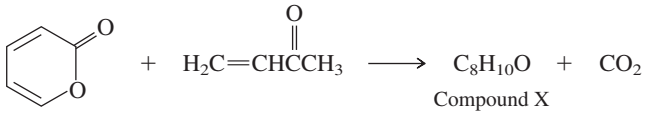


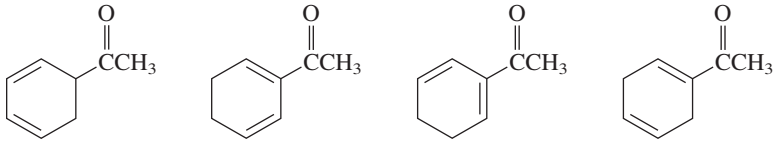
C.



D.

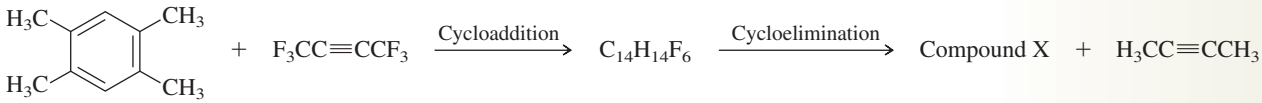
10.55 Compound X is formed by way of a cycloaddition followed by a cycloelimination. What is its structure?

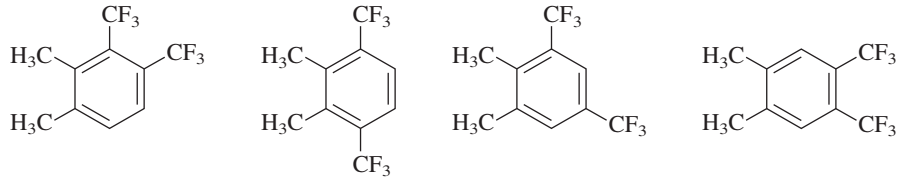




A. B. C. D.

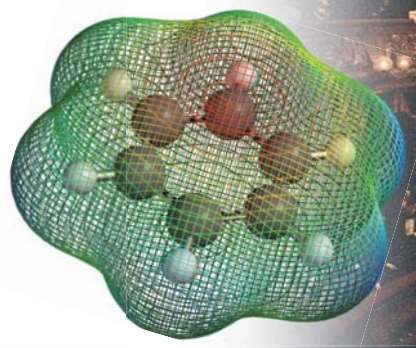
10.56 What is compound X?

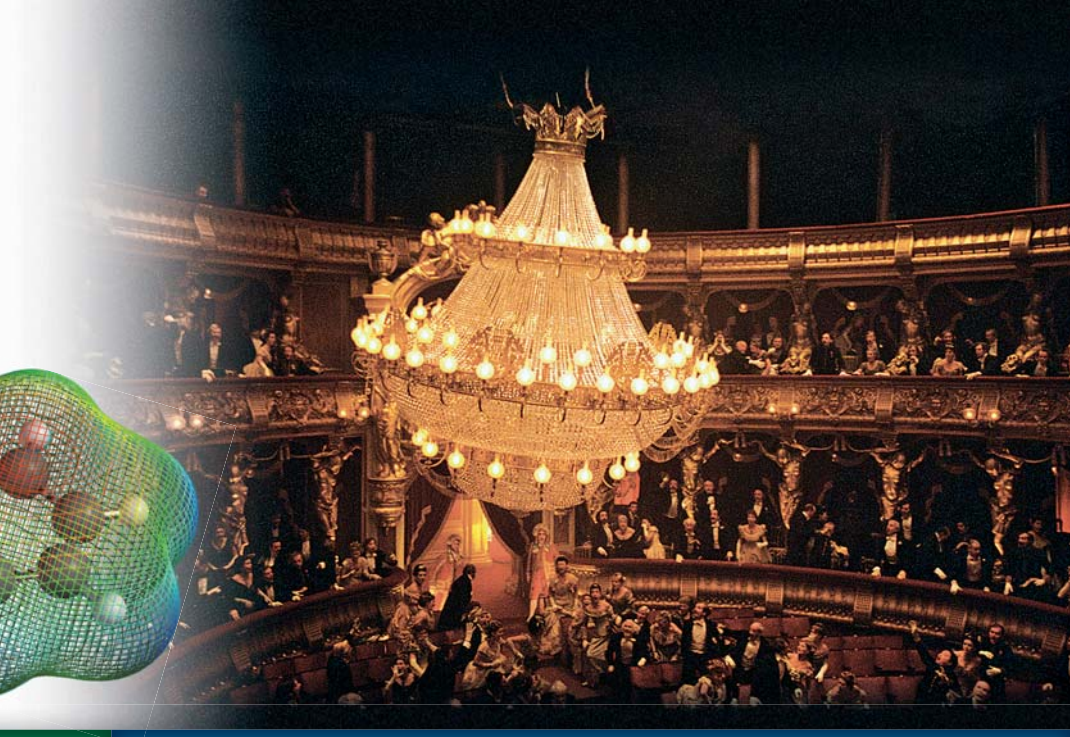




A. B. C. D.

11





CHAPTER OUTLINE

11.1 Benzene 407
11.2 The Structure of Benzene 407
11.3 The Stability of Benzene 409
11.4 Bonding in Benzene 410
11.5 Substituted Derivatives of Benzene and Their Nomenclature 412
11.6 Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons 414
- Fullerenes, Nanotubes, and Graphene 416–417

11.7 Physical Properties of Arenes 416
11.8 The Benzyl Group 418
11.9 Nucleophilic Substitution in Benzylic Halides 420
11.10 Benzylic Free-Radical Halogenation 422
11.11 Benzylic Anions 423
11.12 Oxidation of Alkylbenzenes 424
11.13 Alkenylbenzenes 426
11.14 Polymerization of Styrene 428
11.15 The Birch Reduction 429
11.16 Benzylic Side Chains and Retrosynthetic Analysis 431
11.17 Cyclobutadiene and Cyclooctatetraene 431
11.18 Hückel's Rule 433
11.19 Annulenes 435
11.20 Aromatic Ions 437
11.21 Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds 440
11.22 Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds and Hückel's Rule 442
11.23 Summary 444

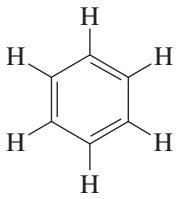
Problems 448

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 11: The Hammett Equation 453

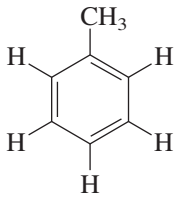
Illuminating gas was used for lighting in nineteenth-century Europe, including the infamous chandelier in the Opéra de Paris, the setting for the *Phantom of the Opera*. Methane, ethylene, and hydrogen are the main components of illuminating gas, but other hydrocarbons are present in small amounts. One of these is benzene.

Arenes and Aromaticity

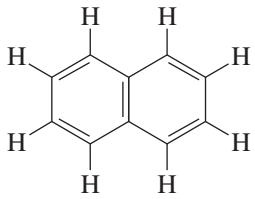
In this chapter and the next we extend our coverage of conjugated systems to include **arenes.** Arenes are hydrocarbons based on the benzene ring as a structural unit. Benzene, toluene, and naphthalene, for example, are arenes.



Benzene



Toluene



Naphthalene

One factor that makes conjugation in arenes special is its cyclic nature. A conjugated system that closes on itself can have properties that are much different from those of open-chain polyenes. Arenes are also referred to as aromatic hydrocarbons. Used in this sense, the word *aromatic* has nothing to do with odor but means instead that arenes are much more stable than we expect them to be based on their formulation as conjugated trienes. Our goal in this chapter is to develop an appreciation for the concept of **aromaticity**—to see what properties of benzene and its derivatives reflect its special stability and to explore the reasons for it. This chapter also examines the effect of a benzene ring as a substituent. The chapter following this one describes reactions that involve the ring itself.

Let's begin by tracing the history of benzene, its origin, and its structure. Many of the terms we use, including *aromaticity* itself, are of historical origin. We'll begin with the discovery of benzene.

11.1 Benzene

In 1825, Michael Faraday isolated a new hydrocarbon from illuminating gas, which he called "bicarburet of hydrogen." Nine years later Eilhardt Mitscherlich of the University of Berlin prepared the same substance by heating benzoic acid with lime and found it to be a hydrocarbon having the empirical formula C_nH_n.

Faraday is better known in chemistry for his laws of electrolysis and in physics for proposing the relationship between electric and magnetic fields and for demonstrating the principle of electromagnetic induction.

$$\underset{\text{Benzoic acid}}{C_6H_5CO_2H} + \underset{\text{Calcium oxide}}{CaO} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \underset{\text{Benzene}}{C_6H_6} + \underset{\text{Calcium carbonate}}{CaCO_3}$$

Eventually, because of its relationship to benzoic acid, this hydrocarbon came to be named *benzin,* then later *benzene,* the name by which it is known today.

Benzoic acid had been known for several hundred years by the time of Mitscherlich's experiment, having been prepared from *gum benzoin,* a pleasant-smelling resin used as incense and obtained from a tree native to Java. Similarly, toluene, the methyl derivative of benzene, takes its name from the South American *tolu* tree from which derivatives of it can be obtained.

Although benzene and toluene are not particularly fragrant compounds themselves, their origins in aromatic plant extracts led them and compounds related to them to be classified as *aromatic hydrocarbons.* Alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes belong to another class, the **aliphatic hydrocarbons.** The word *aliphatic* comes from the Greek *aleiphar* (meaning "oil" or "unguent") and was given to hydrocarbons that were obtained by the chemical degradation of fats.

Benzene was isolated from coal tar by August W. von Hofmann in 1845. Coal tar remained the primary source for the industrial production of benzene for many years, until petroleum-based technologies became competitive about 1950. Current production is about 6 million tons per year in the United States. A substantial portion of this benzene is converted to styrene for use in the preparation of polystyrene plastics and films.

Toluene is also an important organic chemical. Like benzene, its early industrial production was from coal tar, but most of it now comes from petroleum.

11.2 The Structure of Benzene

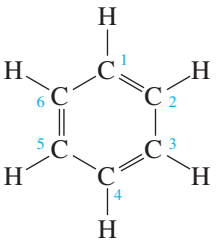
Benzene puzzled the mid-nineteenth-century scientists who attempted to connect chemical properties to the still-novel concept of molecular structure. In spite of its C_6H_6 formula, benzene either failed to react with the compounds that added readily to alkenes and alkynes or, when it did, reacted by substitution instead. Reactions could be carried out that replaced one or more of its hydrogens, but benzene's six-carbon core remained, prompting early chemists to regard it as a unit. What was this unit and why was it "special"?

In 1866, only a few years after publishing his ideas concerning what we now recognize as the structural theory of organic chemistry, August Kekulé applied it to the structure of benzene. He based his reasoning on three premises:

1. Benzene is C_6H_6.
2. All the hydrogens of benzene are equivalent.
3. The structural theory requires that there be four bonds to each carbon.

Kekulé proposed that the six carbon atoms of benzene were joined together in a ring. Four bonds to each carbon could be accommodated by a system of alternating single and double bonds with one hydrogen on each carbon.

In 1861, Johann Josef Loschmidt, who was later to become a professor at the University of Vienna, privately published a book containing a structural formula for benzene similar to the one Kekulé would propose five years later. Loschmidt's book reached few readers, and his ideas were not well known.



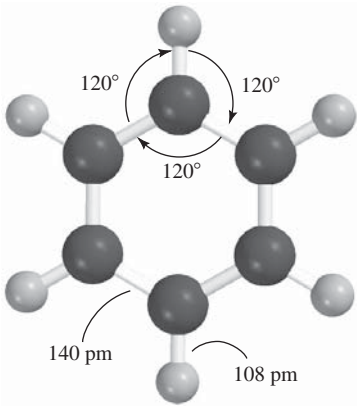
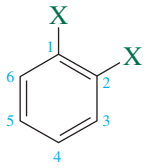


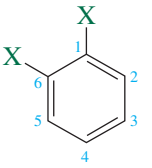
Figure 11.1

Bond distances and bond angles of benzene.

A flaw in the **Kekulé structure** for benzene was soon discovered. Kekulé's structure requires that 1,2- and 1,6-disubstitution create different compounds (isomers).

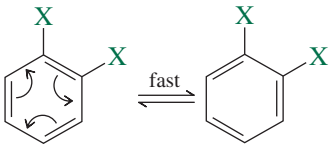


1,2-Disubstituted derivative of benzene



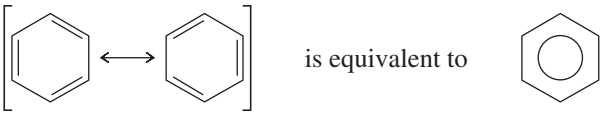
1,6-Disubstituted derivative of benzene

The two substituted carbons are connected by a double bond in one structure but by a single bond in the other. Because no such cases of isomerism in benzene derivatives were known, and none could be found, Kekulé suggested that two isomeric cyclohexatrienes could exist but interconverted too rapidly to be separated.



We now know that benzene is not cyclohexatriene, nor is it a pair of rapidly equilibrating isomers. Benzene is planar and its carbon skeleton has the shape of a regular hexagon. There is no evidence that it has alternating single and double bonds. As shown in Figure 11.1, all of the carbon–carbon bonds are the same length (140 pm) and the 120° bond angles correspond to perfect sp^2 hybridization. Interestingly, the 140-pm bond distances in benzene are exactly midway between the typical sp^3–sp^3 single-bond distance of 146 pm and the sp^2–sp^2 double-bond distance of 134 pm.

The two Kekulé structures for benzene have the same arrangement of atoms, but differ in the placement of electrons. Thus they are resonance forms, and neither one by itself correctly describes the bonding in the actual molecule. As a hybrid of the two Kekulé structures, benzene is often represented by a hexagon containing an inscribed circle.



Robinson won the 1947 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his studies of natural products. He may also have been the first to use curved arrows to track electron movement.

The circle-in-a-hexagon symbol was first suggested by the British chemist Sir Robert Robinson to represent the six delocalized π electrons of the three double bonds. Robinson's symbol is a convenient shorthand device, but Kekulé-type formulas are better for counting and keeping track of electrons, especially in chemical reactions.

Problem 11.1

Write structural formulas for toluene ($C_6H_5CH_3$) and for benzoic acid ($C_6H_5CO_2H$) (a) as resonance hybrids of two Kekulé forms and (b) with the Robinson symbol.

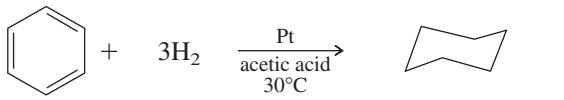
Because the carbons that are singly bonded in one resonance form are doubly bonded in the other, the resonance description is consistent with the observed carbon–carbon bond distances in benzene. These distances not only are all identical but also are intermediate between typical single-bond and double-bond lengths.

We have come to associate electron delocalization with increased stability. On that basis alone, benzene ought to be stabilized. It differs from other conjugated systems that we have seen, however, in that its π electrons are delocalized over a *cyclic conjugated* system. Both Kekulé structures of benzene are of equal energy, and one of the principles of resonance theory is that stabilization is greatest when the contributing structures are of

similar energy. Cyclic conjugation in benzene, then, leads to a greater stabilization than is observed in noncyclic conjugated trienes. How much greater can be estimated from heats of hydrogenation.

11.3 The Stability of Benzene

Hydrogenation of benzene and other arenes is more difficult than hydrogenation of alkenes and alkynes. Two of the more active catalysts are rhodium and platinum, and it is possible to hydrogenate arenes in the presence of these catalysts at room temperature and modest pressure. Benzene consumes three molar equivalents of hydrogen to give cyclohexane.



Benzene — Hydrogen (2–3 atm pressure) — Cyclohexane (100%)

Nickel catalysts, although less expensive than rhodium and platinum, are also less active. Hydrogenation of arenes in the presence of nickel requires high temperatures (100–200°C) and pressures (100 atm).

The measured heat of hydrogenation of benzene to cyclohexane is, of course, the same regardless of the catalyst and is 208 kJ/mol (49.8 kcal/mol). To put this value into perspective, compare it with the heats of hydrogenation of cyclohexene and 1,3-cyclohexadiene, as shown in Figure 11.2. The most striking feature of Figure 11.2 is that *the heat of hydrogenation of benzene, with three "double bonds," is less than the heat of hydrogenation of the two double bonds of 1,3-cyclohexadiene.* The heat of hydrogenation of benzene is 152 kJ/mol (36 kcal/mol) *less* than expected for a hypothetical 1,3,5-cyclohexatriene with noninteracting double bonds. This is the **resonance energy** of benzene. It is a measure of how much more stable benzene is than would be predicted on the basis of its formulation as a pair of rapidly interconverting 1,3,5-cyclohexatrienes.

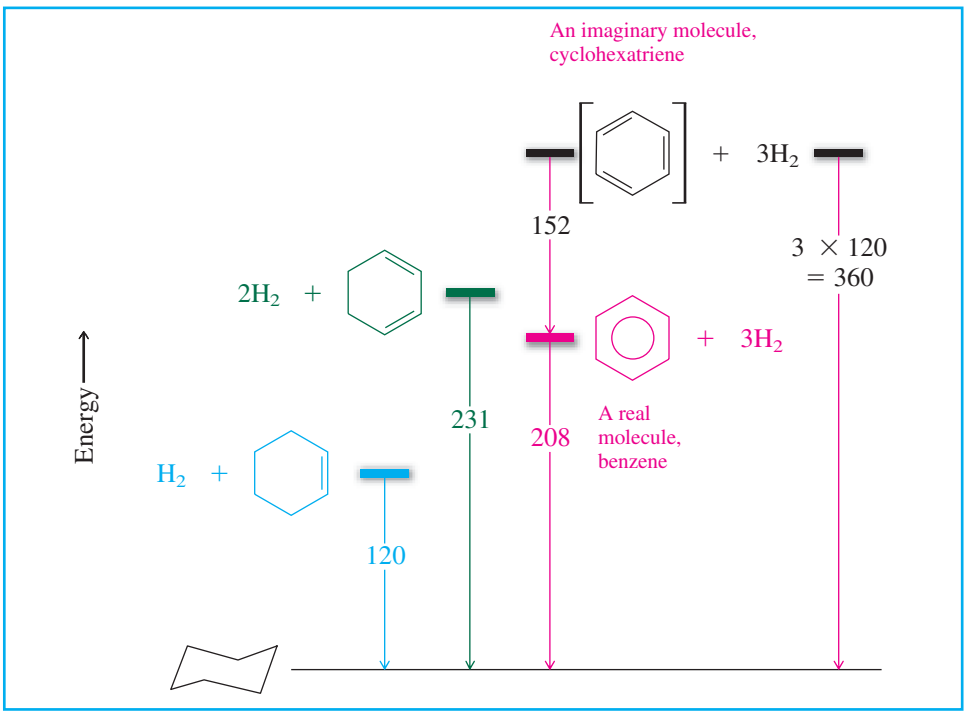
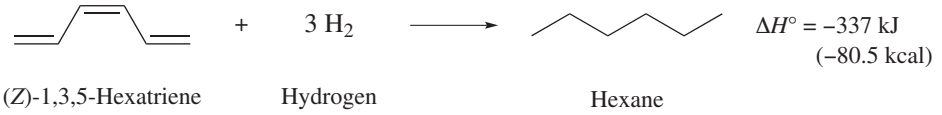


Figure 11.2

Heats of hydrogenation of cyclohexene, 1,3-cyclohexadiene, a hypothetical 1,3,5-cyclohexatriene, and benzene. All heats of hydrogenation are in kilojoules per mole.

We reach a similar conclusion when comparing benzene with the noncyclic conjugated triene (*Z*)-1,3,5-hexatriene. Here we compare two real molecules, both conjugated trienes, but one is cyclic and the other is not. The heat of hydrogenation of (*Z*)-1,3,5-hexatriene is 337 kJ/mol (80.5 kcal/mol), a value which is 129 kJ/mol (30.7 kcal/mol) greater than that of benzene.



The precise value of the resonance energy of benzene depends, as comparisons with 1,3,5-cyclohexatriene and (*Z*)-1,3,5-hexatriene illustrate, on the compound chosen as the reference. What is important is that the resonance energy of benzene is quite large, six to ten times that of a conjugated triene. It is this very large increment of resonance energy that places benzene and related compounds in a separate category that we call *aromatic*.

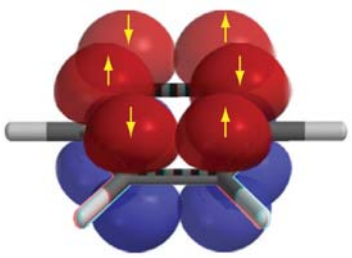
Problem 11.2

The heats of hydrogenation of cycloheptene and 1,3,5-cycloheptatriene are 110 kJ/mol (26.3 kcal/mol) and 305 kJ/mol (73.0 kcal/mol), respectively. In both cases cycloheptane is the product. What is the resonance energy of 1,3,5-cycloheptatriene? How does it compare with the resonance energy of benzene?

11.4 Bonding in Benzene

In the valence-bond approach, the planar structure of benzene suggests sp^2 hybridization of carbon and the framework of σ bonds shown in Figure 11.3*a*. In addition to its three sp^2 orbitals, each carbon has a half-filled 2*p* orbital that can participate in π bonding by overlap with its counterpart on each of two adjacent carbons. Figure 11.3*b* shows the continuous π system that results from overlap of these orbitals and provides for delocalization of the π electrons over all six carbons.

(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 11.3

(*a*) The framework of bonds shown in the tube model of benzene are σ bonds. (*b*) Each carbon is sp^2-hybridized and has a half-filled 2*p* orbital perpendicular to the σ framework. Overlap of the 2*p* orbitals generates a π system encompassing the entire ring.

The valence-bond picture of benzene with six electrons in a delocalized π orbital is a useful, but superficial, one. Only two electrons can occupy a single orbital, be it an atomic orbital or a molecular orbital. The molecular orbital picture shown in Figure 11.4 does not suffer from this defect. We learned in Section 2.4 that when AOs combine to give MOs, the final number of MOs must equal the original number of AOs. Thus, the six 2*p* AOs of benzene combine to give six π MOs.

The orbitals in Figure 11.4 are arranged in order of increasing energy. Three orbitals are bonding; three are antibonding. Each of the three bonding MOs contains two electrons, accounting for the six π electrons of benzene. There are no electrons in the antibonding MOs. Benzene is said to have a **closed-shell** π-electron configuration.

Recall that a wave function changes sign on passing through a nodal plane and is zero at a node (Section 1.1). In addition to the molecular plane, which is a nodal surface common to all of them, five of the six π orbitals of benzene are characterized by nodal planes perpendicular to the molecule. The lowest energy orbital π_1 has no such additional nodal surface; all of its *p* orbital interactions are bonding. The two other bonding orbitals π_2 and π_3 each have one nodal surface perpendicular to the molecule. The next three orbitals π_4^*, π_5^*, and π_6^* are antibonding and have, respectively, 2, 2, and 3 nodal planes in addition to the molecular plane. In the highest energy orbital π_6^*, all interactions between adjacent *p* orbitals are antibonding.

The pattern of orbital energies is different for benzene from the pattern it would have if the six π electrons were confined to three noninteracting double bonds. The delocalization provided by cyclic conjugation in benzene causes its π electrons to be held more strongly than they would be in the absence of cyclic conjugation. Stronger binding of its π electrons is the factor most responsible for the special stability—the aromaticity—of benzene.

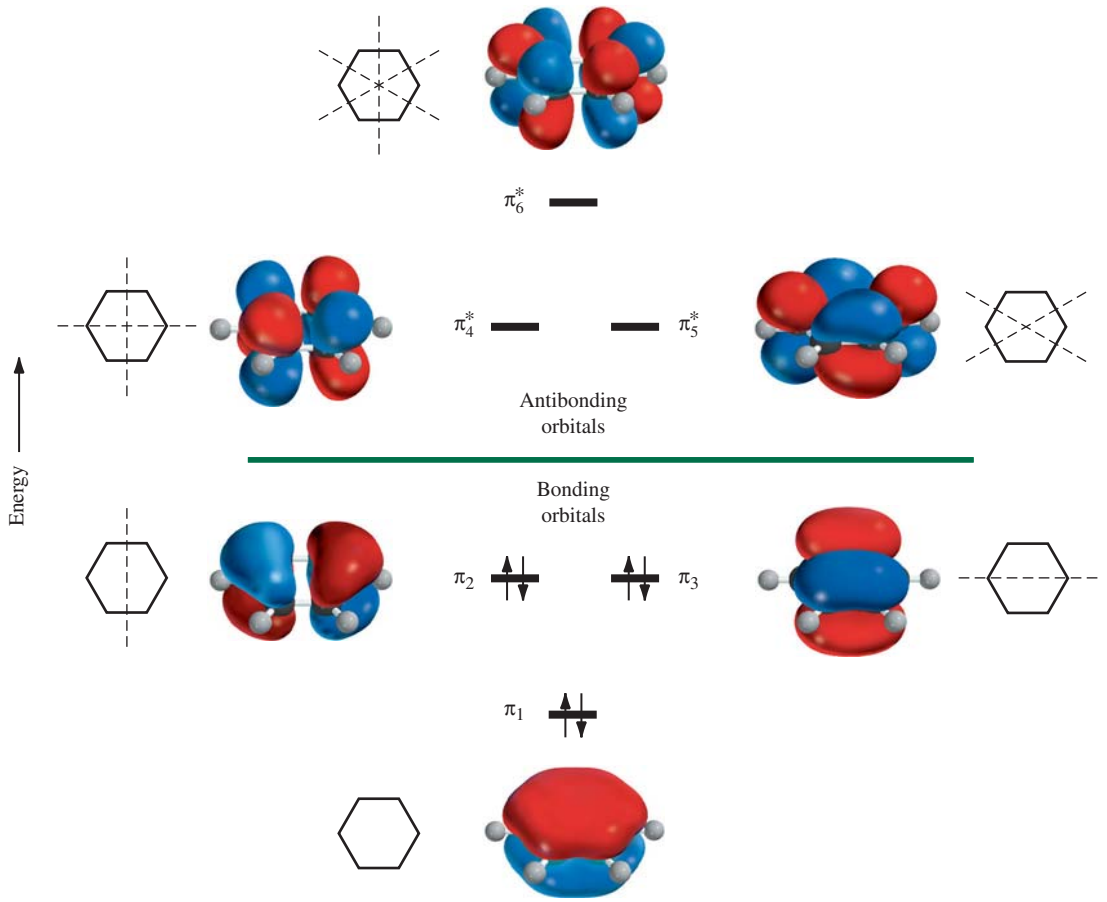


Figure 11.4

The π molecular orbitals of benzene arranged in order of increasing energy and showing nodal surfaces. The six π electrons of benzene occupy the three lowest energy orbitals, all of which are bonding.

But as the regions of high electron density above and below the plane of the ring in the electrostatic potential map (Figure 11.5) show, the π electrons are less strongly held than the electrons in the C—H bonds. In Chapter 12 we will see how this fact governs the characteristic chemical reactivity of benzene and its relatives.

Later in this chapter we'll explore the criteria for aromaticity in more detail to see how they apply to cyclic polyenes of different ring sizes. The next several sections introduce us to the chemistry of compounds that contain a benzene ring as a structural unit. We'll start with how we name them.

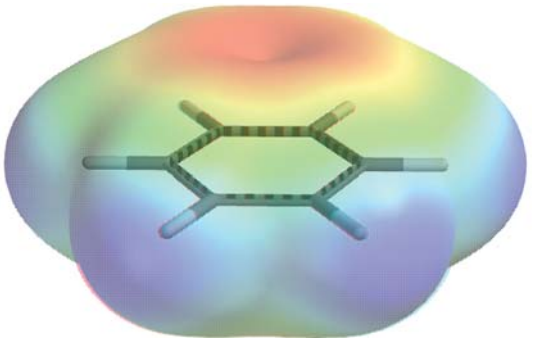
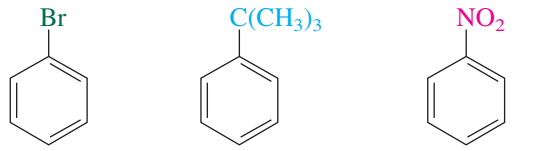


Figure 11.5

Electrostatic potential map of benzene. The red area in the center corresponds to the region above and below the plane of the ring where the π electrons are concentrated.

11.5 Substituted Derivatives of Benzene and Their Nomenclature

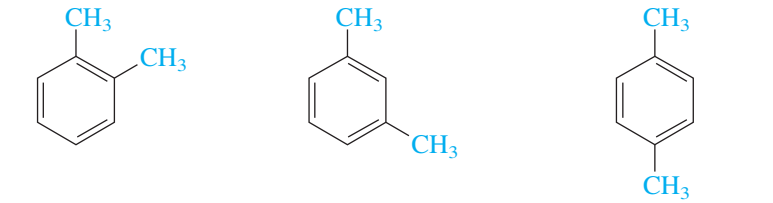
All compounds that contain a benzene ring are aromatic, and substituted derivatives of benzene make up the largest class of aromatic compounds. Many such compounds are named by attaching the name of the substituent as a prefix to *benzene*.



Bromobenzene *tert*-Butylbenzene Nitrobenzene

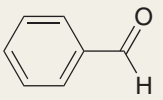
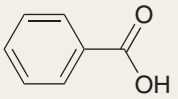
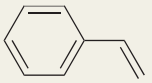
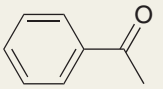
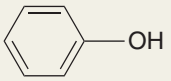
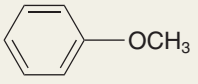
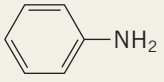
Many simple monosubstituted derivatives of benzene have common names of long standing that have been retained in the IUPAC system. Table 11.1 lists some of the most important ones.

Dimethyl derivatives of benzene are called *xylenes*. There are three xylene isomers, the *ortho* (*o*)-, *meta* (*m*)-, and *para* (*p*)- substituted derivatives.



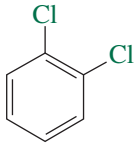
o-Xylene (1,2-dimethylbenzene) *m*-Xylene (1,3-dimethylbenzene) *p*-Xylene (1,4-dimethylbenzene)

TABLE 11.1 Names of Some Frequently Encountered Derivatives of Benzene

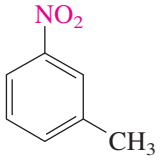
Structure	Systematic name	Common name*
	Benzenecarbaldehyde	Benzaldehyde
	Benzenecarboxylic acid	Benzoic acid
	Vinylbenzene	Styrene
	Methyl phenyl ketone	Acetophenone
	Benzenol	Phenol
	Methoxybenzene	Anisole
	Benzenamine	Aniline

*These common names are acceptable in IUPAC nomenclature and are the names that will be used in this text.

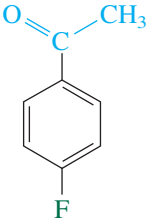
The prefix **ortho** signifies a 1,2-disubstituted benzene ring, **meta** signifies 1,3 disubstitution, and **para** signifies 1,4 disubstitution. The prefixes *o, m,* and *p* can be used when a substance is named as a derivative of benzene or other parent, such as those in Table 11.1.



o-Dichlorobenzene
(1,2-dichlorobenzene)



m-Nitrotoluene
(3-nitrotoluene)



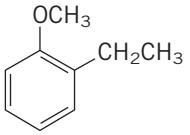
p-Fluoroacetophenone
(4-fluoroacetophenone)

Problem 11.3

Write a structural formula for each of the following compounds:

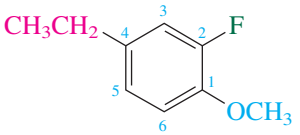
(a) *o*-Ethylanisole (b) *m*-Chlorostyrene (c) *p*-Nitroaniline

Sample Solution (a) The parent compound in *o*-ethylanisole is anisole. Anisole, as shown in Table 11.1, has a methoxy (CH_3O—) substituent on the benzene ring. The ethyl group in *o*-ethylanisole is attached to the carbon adjacent to the one that bears the methoxy substituent.

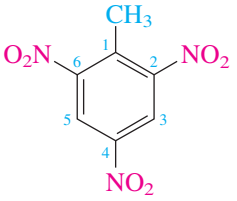


o-Ethylanisole

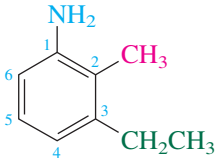
The *o, m,* and *p* prefixes are *not* used when three or more substituents are present on benzene; numerical locants must be used instead.



4-Ethyl-2-fluoroanisole



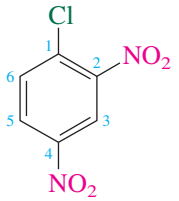
2,4,6-Trinitrotoluene



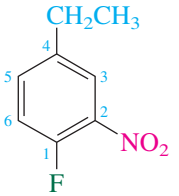
3-Ethyl-2-methylaniline

In these examples the name of the parent benzene derivative determines the carbon at which numbering begins: anisole has its methoxy group at C-1, toluene its methyl group at C-1, and aniline its amino group at C-1. The direction of numbering is chosen to give the next substituted position the lowest number irrespective of what substituent it bears. *The order of appearance of substituents in the name is alphabetical.* When no simple parent other than benzene is appropriate, positions are numbered so as to give the lowest locant at the first point of difference. Thus, each of the following examples is named as a 1,2,4-trisubstituted derivative of benzene rather than as a 1,3,4-derivative:

The "first point of difference" rule was introduced in Section 2.17.



1-Chloro-2,4-dinitrobenzene

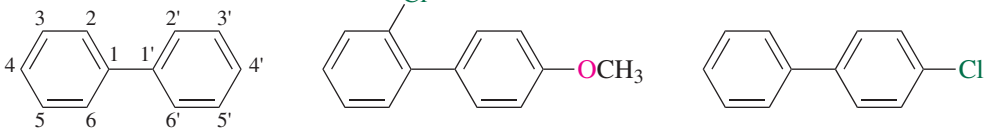


4-Ethyl-1-fluoro-2-nitrobenzene

When the benzene ring is named as a substituent, the word **phenyl** stands for C_6H_5—. Similarly, an arene named as a substituent is called an *aryl* group. A **benzyl group** is $C_6H_5CH_2$—.

2-Phenylethanol Benzyl bromide

Biphenyl is the accepted IUPAC name for the compound in which two benzene rings are connected by a single bond. In substituted biphenyls, each ring is numbered separately using primed and nonprimed numbers, beginning at the connection between the rings. If only one substituent is present, its position can be designated as being ortho, meta, or para to the other ring.



Biphenyl 2-Chloro-4'-methoxybiphenyl 4-Chlorobiphenyl (*p*-Chlorobiphenyl)

Problem 11.4

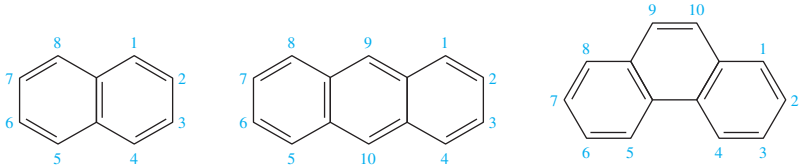
Biphenyl is used as a fungicide, but some fungi are resistant and convert biphenyl to hydroxylated derivatives, one of which is 3,4,4′-trihydroxybiphenyl. Write a structural formula for this compound.

11.6 Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons

Members of a class of arenes called **polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons** possess substantial resonance energies because each is a collection of benzene rings fused together.

Naphthalene is a white crystalline solid melting at 80°C that sublimes readily. It has a characteristic odor and was formerly used as a moth repellent.

Naphthalene, anthracene, and phenanthrene are the three simplest members of this class. They are all present in coal tar, a mixture of organic substances formed by heating coal at about 1000°C in the absence of air. Naphthalene is bicyclic and its two benzene rings share a common side. Anthracene and phenanthrene are both tricyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. Anthracene has three rings fused in a "linear" fashion; an "angular" fusion characterizes phenanthrene. The structural formulas of naphthalene, anthracene, and phenanthrene are shown along with the numbering system used to name their substituted derivatives:

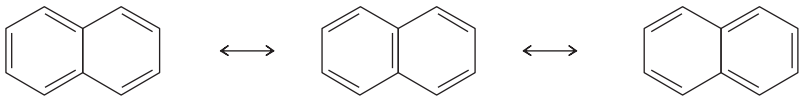


Arene:	Naphthalene	Anthracene	Phenanthrene
Resonance energy:	255 kJ/mol (61 kcal/mol)	347 kJ/mol (83 kcal/mol)	381 kJ/mol (91 kcal/mol)

Problem 11.5

How many monochloro derivatives of anthracene are possible? Write their structural formulas and give their IUPAC names.

In general, the most stable resonance contributor for a polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon is the one with the greatest number of rings that correspond to Kekulé formulations of benzene. Naphthalene provides a fairly typical example:



Most stable resonance form; major contributor

Only left ring corresponds to Kekulé benzene.

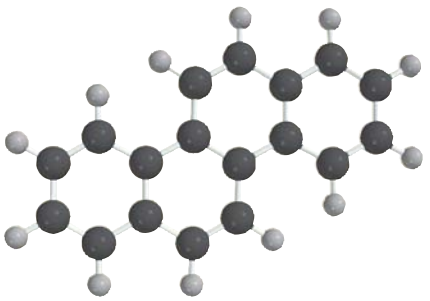
Both rings correspond to Kekulé benzene.

Only right ring corresponds to Kekulé benzene.

Notice that anthracene cannot be represented by any single Lewis structure in which all three rings correspond to Kekulé formulations of benzene, but phenanthrene can.

Problem 11.6

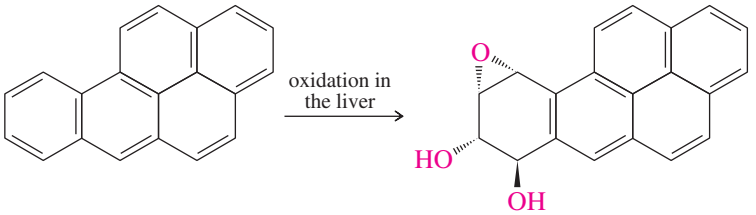
Chrysene is an aromatic hydrocarbon found in coal tar. Convert the molecular model to a Lewis structure in which all of the rings correspond to Kekulé formulas of benzene.



Chrysene

A large number of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons are known. Many have been synthesized in the laboratory, and several of the others are products of combustion. Benzo[a]pyrene, for example, is present in tobacco smoke, contaminates food cooked on barbecue grills, and collects in the soot of chimneys. Benzo[a]pyrene is a **carcinogen** (a cancer-causing substance). It is converted in the liver to an epoxy diol that can induce mutations leading to the uncontrolled growth of certain cells.

In 1775, the British surgeon Sir Percivall Pott suggested that scrotal cancer in chimney sweeps was caused by soot. This was the first proposal that cancer could be caused by chemicals present in the workplace.



Benzo[a]pyrene

7,8-Dihydroxy-9,10-epoxy-7,8,9,10-tetrahydrobenzo[a]pyrene

Fullerenes, Nanotubes, and Graphene

In general, the term *nanoscale* applies to dimensions on the order of 1–100 nanometers (1 nm = 10^{-9} m), and one goal of *nanotechnology* is to develop useful nanoscale devices (*nanodevices*). Because typical covalent bonds range from 0.1–0.2 nm, chemical structures hold promise as candidates upon which to base nanodevices. Among them, much recent attention has been given to carbon-containing materials and even elemental carbon itself.

Until 1985, chemists recognized two elementary forms (*allotropes*) of carbon: diamond and graphite (Figure 11.6). Then, Professors Harold W. Kroto (University of Sussex), Robert F. Curl, and Richard E. Smalley (both of Rice University) reported that laser-induced evaporation of graphite gave a species with a molecular formula of C_{60} and proposed the spherical cluster of carbon atoms now called **buckminsterfullerene** (Figure 11.7) for it. Other closed carbon clusters, some larger than C_{60} and some smaller, were also formed in the experiment. These forms of carbon are now known as *fullerenes,* and Kroto, Smalley, and Curl were awarded the 1996 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for discovering them.

Continued

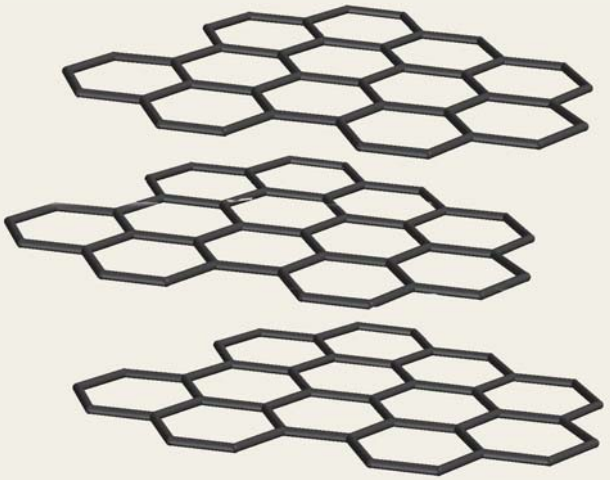


Figure 11.6

Graphite is a form of elemental carbon composed of parallel layers of graphene.

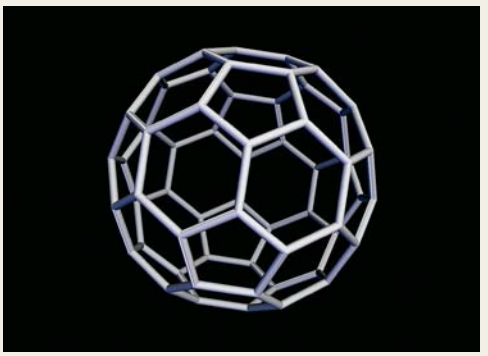
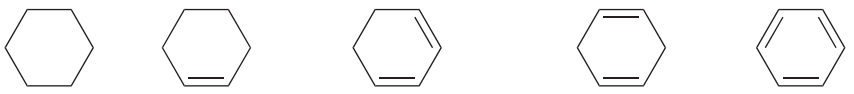


Figure 11.7

Buckminsterfullerene (C_{60}). All of the carbon atoms are equivalent and are sp^2-hybridized; each one simultaneously belongs to one five-membered ring and two benzene-like six-membered rings. Courtesy of Dimitry Kazachkin, Temple University.

11.7 Physical Properties of Arenes

In general, arenes resemble other hydrocarbons in their physical properties. They are nonpolar, insoluble in water, and less dense than water. The boiling point of benzene is not much different from that of similar hydrocarbons and suggests that the aggregate intermolecular forces in the liquid phase are about equal for all of them.



Cyclohexane (bp: 81°C)	Cyclohexene (bp: 83°C)	1,3-Cyclohexadiene (bp: 80°C)	1,4-Cyclohexadiene (bp: 88°C)	Benzene (bp: 80°C)

The intermolecular attractive forces in benzene have received considerable attention and prompted experimental and computational studies of *benzene dimer*, formed by noncovalent association between two benzene molecules. Figure 11.10 shows four geometries for this species. In (*a*) and *b*) the rings are parallel to each other; in (*c*) and (*d*) they are perpendicular.

Research on fullerenes carried out at NEC Corporation (Japan) and at IBM (United States) led in 1991 to the isolation of fibrous clusters of *single-walled carbon nanotubes* (SWCNTs) (Figure 11.8). SWCNTs have since been joined by *multiwalled carbon nanotubes* (MWCNTs) (Figure 11.9) as well as nanotubes containing elements other than carbon.

CNTs are of interest because of their electrical and mechanical properties, and functionally modified ones are being examined in applications ranging from medical diagnosis and therapy to photovoltaic systems. Methods for adding functionality to CNTs include both covalent attachment of a reactive group and noncovalent coating of the outer surface of the CNT with a substance that itself bears a functional substituent.

The cover of this edition displays the most recent nanomaterial to create interest: a single sheet, one atom thick, of six-membered rings or carbon atoms called *graphene.* As its name suggests, graphene is related to graphite in that graphite is an assembly of many graphene layers held together by van der Waals forces. The successful separation of single sheets of graphene was recognized with the award of the 2010 Nobel Prize in Physics to Andre Geim and Konstantin Noroselov of the University of Manchester. Much attention is being directed toward producing it on a scale that would make it available for use in novel materials and as a superior substitute for silicon in electronic devices.

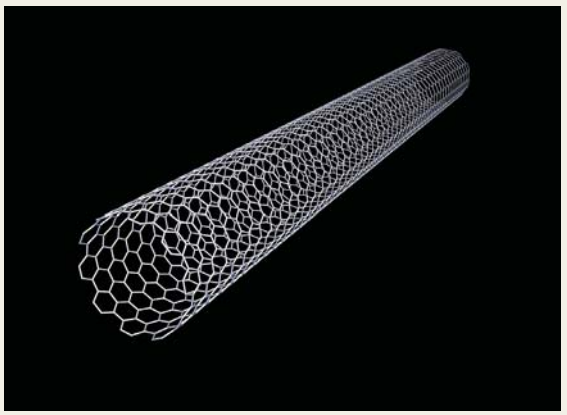


Figure 11.8

A single-walled carbon nanotube (SWCNT). SWCNTs can be regarded as a graphite sheet rolled into a cylinder. Courtesy of Dimitry Kazachkin, Temple University.

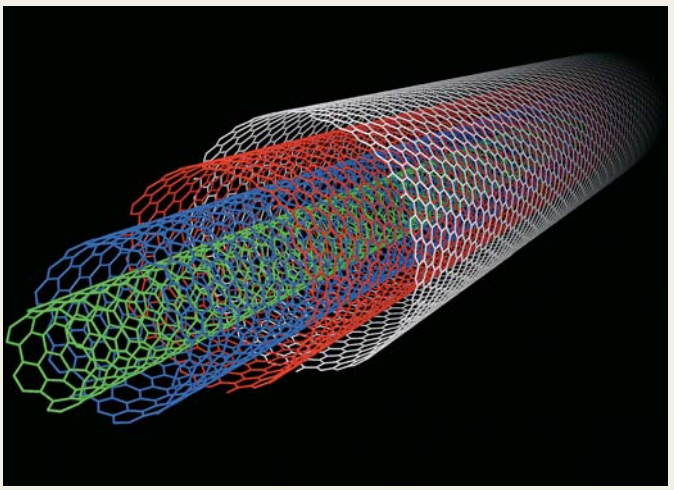
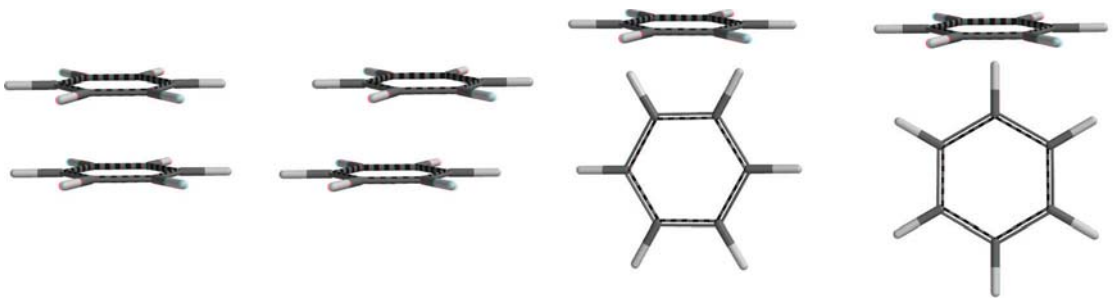


Figure 11.9

A multiwalled carbon nanotube (MWCNT). Courtesy of Dimitry Kazachkin, Temple University.



(*a*) Parallel (*b*) Parallel displaced (*c*) Y-Perpendicular (*d*) T-Perpendicular

Figure 11.10

Arrangement of benzene molecules in the dimer. All are close in energy, with (*c*) being the most stable according to electron diffraction studies.

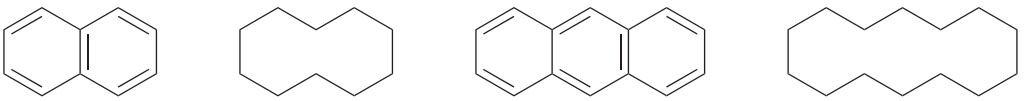
Figure 11.11

Packing of benzene molecules in the crystal.

The parallel alignment of the rings in (*a*) and (*b*), referred to as π–π stacking, is destabilizing due to repulsion between the π-electron systems of the two benzenes and subtracts from various stabilizing interactions such as intermolecular van der Waals attractive forces. Displacement of one ring versus the other reduces this electron–electron repulsion, making (*b*) more stable than (*a*). Both perpendicular geometries (*c*) and (*d*) avoid the repulsive π–π interaction and are more stable than the parallel dimers, with (*c*) slightly more stable than (*d*). The spread in energies among the four benzene dimers, however, is only a few kilojoules per mole, and other factors can tip the balance in favor of parallel versus perpendicular geometries when substituents are present.

In the solid phase, benzene molecules pack together in what is known as a "herringbone" pattern characterized by a combination of stacked, side-by-side, and perpendicular arrangements between molecules (Figure 11.11).

Polycyclic aromatic compounds have significantly higher melting points than other hydrocarbons of similar size. The melting point of naphthalene is much higher than that of cyclodecane, and anthracene's is much higher than cyclotetradecane's.



Napthalene (mp: 80°C) | Cyclodecane (mp: 10°C) | Anthracene (mp: 218°C) | Cyclotetradecane (mp: 56°C)

This reflects the increasing preference for parallel arrangements in the solid state of aromatic hydrocarbons larger than benzene. Intermolecular attractive forces like those in the perpendicular herringbone arrangement of benzene are outnumbered by van der Waals attractions in parallel displaced arrangements of polycyclic aromatics.

The stacking of graphene layers in graphite (see Figure 11.6 in the boxed essay *Fullerenes, Nanotubes, and Graphene*) is an example of such packing on a grand scale.

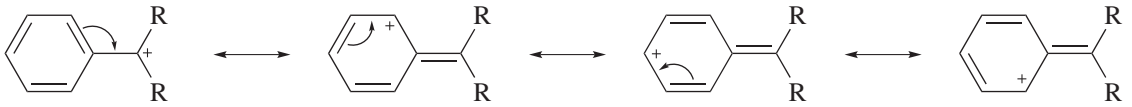
The three-dimensional shapes of proteins and nucleic acids can bring remote aromatic rings close enough in space so that interactions between them can contribute to the overall shape of the molecule. In general though, more familiar forces exert a greater influence than π–π stacking. We explore these forces in more detail in Chapters 25 and 26.

11.8 The Benzyl Group

A benzene ring can behave in two different ways in a chemical reaction; it can be a functional group in its own right or it can be a substituent that affects a reaction elsewhere in the molecule. In the most common case, this "elsewhere" is the carbon directly attached to the ring—the *benzylic* carbon.

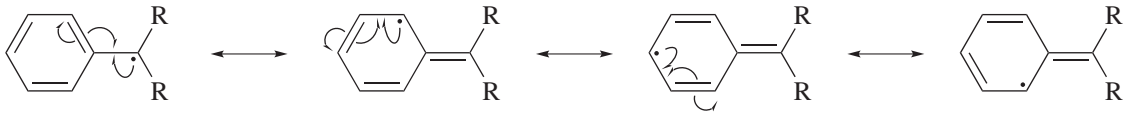
Benzylic carbocations, radicals, and anions resemble their allylic counterparts in being conjugated systems stabilized by electron delocalization. This delocalization is describable in resonance, valence bond, and molecular orbital terms.

Resonance in benzylic carbocations:



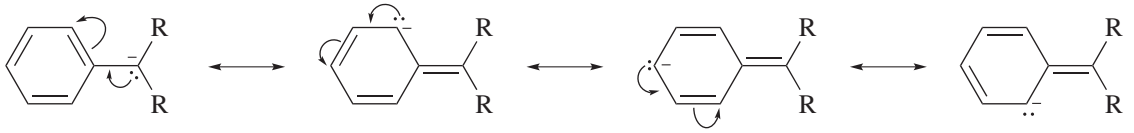
Major contributor

Resonance in benzylic radicals:



Major contributor

Resonance in benzylic anions:

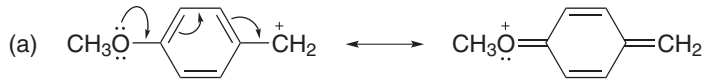


Major contributor

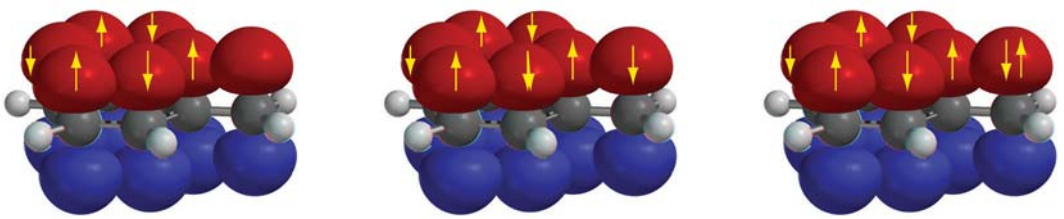
Problem 11.7

Write a resonance contributor for each of the following in which the octet rule is followed for each atom other than hydrogen.

Sample Solution (a) Start at an atom with only six electrons (the positively charged carbon) and move electrons in pairs toward it until the octet rule is satisfied. Add formal charges.



Valence-Bond Description of Benzyl Cation, Radical, and Anion Figure 11.12 shows the valence-bond approach to electron delocalization in benzyl cation, radical, and anion as the overlap of the π system of a benzene ring with, respectively, a vacant, half-filled, and filled 2*p* orbital of the benzylic carbon. According to this approach, benzyl cation (*a*) is stabilized by electron donation from the π system of the ring to the vacant 2*p* orbital of the benzylic carbon, thereby dispersing the positive charge and increasing the delocalization of the ring's π electrons. The charge dispersal contribution is absent in benzyl radical (*b*), but the stabilization due to electron delocalization remains and governs the rates of free-radical reactions of alkylbenzenes. Charge dispersal returns to join electron delocalization in stabilizing benzyl anion (*c*). In this case, the benzene ring acts as an electron-withdrawing group.



(*a*) $C_6H_5\overset{+}{C}H_2$ (*b*) $C_6H_5\dot{C}H_2$ (*c*) $C_6H_5\ddot{\ddot{C}}H_2$

Figure 11.12

Valence-bond models of bonding in (*a*) benzyl cation, (*b*) benzyl radical, and (*c*) benzyl anion. Overlap of the 2*p* orbital of the benzylic carbon with the π system of the benzene ring creates an extended π system that stabilizes each one by electron delocalization.

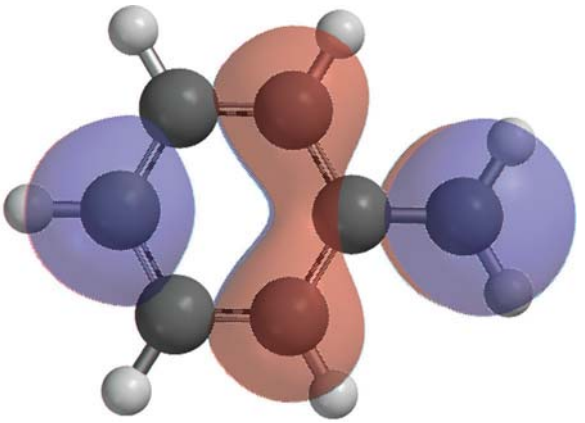


Figure 11.13

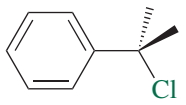
The lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO) of benzyl cation. The red and blue regions are associated with the atoms that contribute the largest share of the atomic orbitals that make up the LUMO. These atoms are the benzylic carbon and the carbons ortho and para to it.

Frontier Molecular Orbitals of Benzyl Cation, Radical, and Anion At the molecular orbital level, the most important MO for benzyl cation is the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO), for benzyl radical it is the singly occupied molecular orbital (SOMO), and for benzyl anion the highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO). Figure 11.13 shows the LUMO for benzyl cation where it is clear that the carbon 2*p* atomic orbitals that contribute the most are those of the benzylic carbon and the ring carbons that are ortho and para to it. These are the same carbons that, according to resonance, share the positive charge. The SOMO of benzyl radical and HOMO of benzyl anion are not shown, but are virtually identical to the LUMO of benzyl cation, in keeping with their respective resonance descriptions.

11.9 Nucleophilic Substitution in Benzylic Halides

Like allylic halides, benzylic halides undergo nucleophilic substitution, both S_N1 and S_N2, faster than simple alkyl halides and for similar reasons.

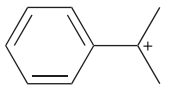
Relative S_N1 Rates Hydrolysis of the tertiary benzylic halide 2-chloro-2-phenylpropane occurs 620 times faster than hydrolysis of *tert*-butyl chloride under the same conditions (90% acetone–10% water at 25°C).



2-Chloro-2-phenylpropane
More reactive: *k*(rel) 620

tert-Butyl chloride
Less reactive: *k*(rel) 1

Because S_N1 rates reflect the activation energy for carbocation formation, we conclude that a phenyl substituent stabilizes a carbocation more than a methyl group does.



1-Methyl-1-phenylethyl cation

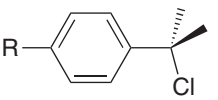
is more stable than

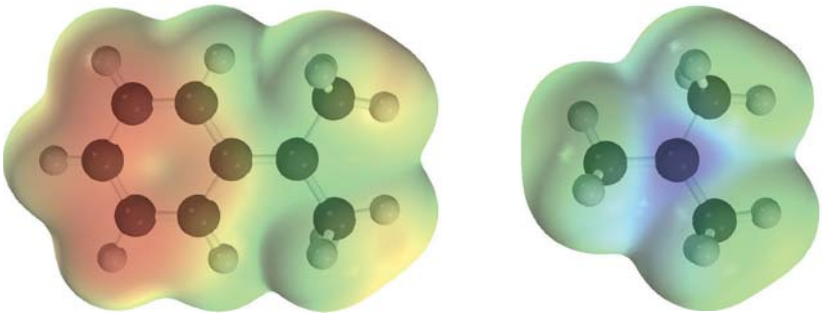
tert-Butyl cation

The electrostatic potential maps for the two carbocations (Figure 11.14) show the greater dispersal of positive charge in 1-methyl-1-phenylethyl cation compared with *tert*-butyl cation.

Problem 11.8

As measured by their first-order rate constants, the compound shown (R = CH_3) undergoes hydrolysis 26 times faster than 2-chloro-2-phenylpropane (R = H) in 90% acetone–10% water at 25°C. Offer a resonance explanation for this rate difference.





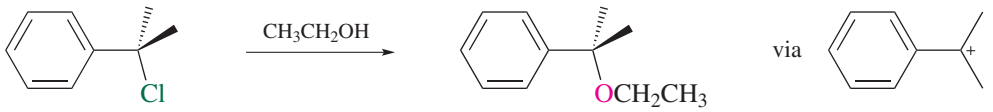
(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 11.14

The electrostatic potential maps show the positive charge is more dispersed in 1-methyl-1-phenylethyl cation (*a*) than in *tert*-butyl cation (*b*), where the blue color is concentrated at the tertiary carbon. The color range is the same for both models.

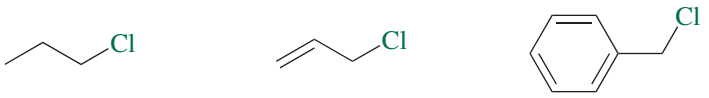
The rate-enhancing effect of phenyl substituents is cumulative; $(C_6H_5)_2CHCl$ undergoes S_N1 substitution faster than $C_6H_5CH_2Cl$, and triphenylmethyl perchlorate $[(C_6H_5)_3C^+\ ClO_4^-]$ is a stable ionic compound that can be stored indefinitely.

S_N1 Reaction Products Unlike S_N1 reactions of allylic halides, dispersal of the charge in benzylic halides does not result in the nucleophile bonding to a carbon other than the one that had the leaving group. The ring's aromaticity is retained only if the nucleophile bonds to the benzylic carbon.



2-Chloro-2-phenylpropane 2-Ethoxy-2-phenylpropane (87%)

Relative S_N2 Rates Benzyl chloride undergoes S_N2 substitution with potassium iodide in acetone almost 200 times faster than propyl chloride and more than twice as fast as allyl chloride.

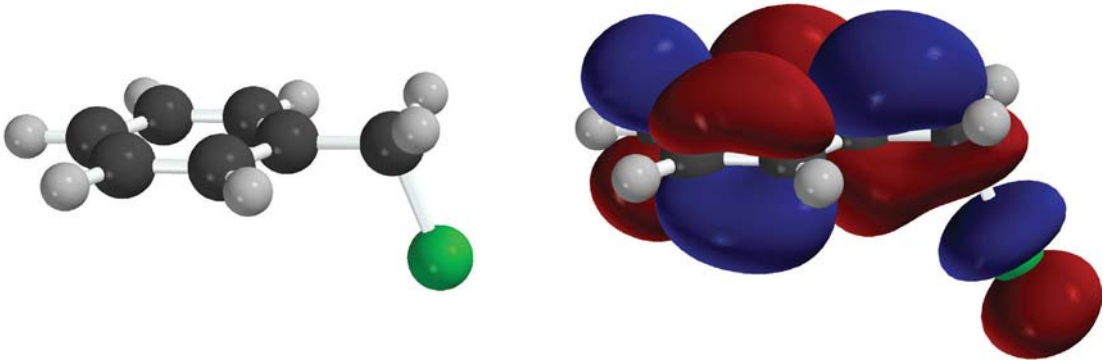


Propyl chloride
Least reactive: *k*(rel) 1.0

Allyl chloride
k(rel) 80

Benzyl chloride
Most reactive: *k*(rel) 197

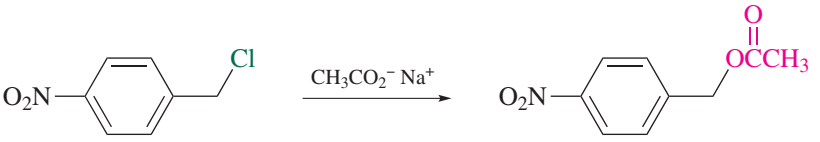
As we saw for S_N2 reactions of allylic halides (Section 10.2), the key interaction is between the HOMO of the nucleophile and the LUMO of the organic halide. In a benzylic halide, the LUMO encompasses both the CH_2Cl unit and the π system of the aromatic ring.



Benzyl chloride LUMO of benzyl chloride

As electrons flow into the LUMO, they feel the attractive force not only of the benzylic carbon but of the ring carbons as well, which lowers the energy of the transition state and increases the reaction rate compared to allyl and propyl chloride.

S_N2 Reaction Products Primary benzylic halides are ideal substrates for S_N2 reactions. In addition to being very reactive, they are unable to undergo competing E2 elimination.



p-Nitrobenzyl chloride *p*-Nitrobenzyl acetate (78–82%)

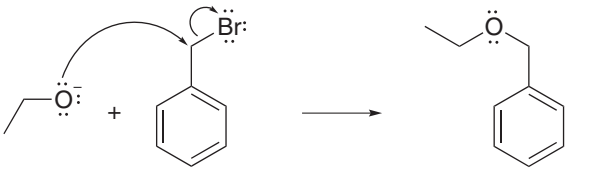
Secondary and tertiary benzylic halides resemble secondary and tertiary alkyl halides in that they undergo substitution only when the nucleophile is weakly basic. If the nucleophile is a strong base such as sodium ethoxide, elimination by the E2 mechanism is faster than substitution.

Problem 11.9

Give the structure of the principal organic product formed on reaction of benzyl bromide with each of the following reagents:

(a) Sodium ethoxide
(b) Potassium *tert*-butoxide
(c) Sodium azide
(d) Sodium hydrogen sulfide
(e) Sodium iodide (in acetone)

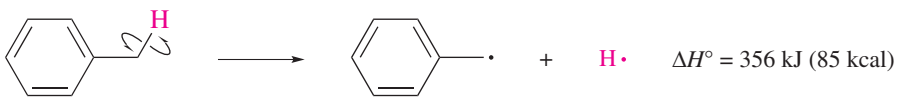
Sample Solution (a) Benzyl bromide is a primary bromide and undergoes S_N2 reactions readily. It has no hydrogens β to the leaving group and so cannot undergo elimination. Ethoxide ion acts as a nucleophile, displacing bromide and forming benzyl ethyl ether.



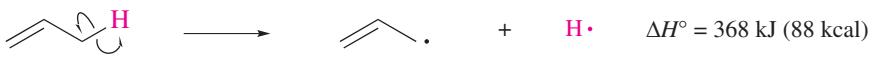
Ethoxide ion + benzyl bromide Benzyl ethyl ether

11.10 Benzylic Free-Radical Halogenation

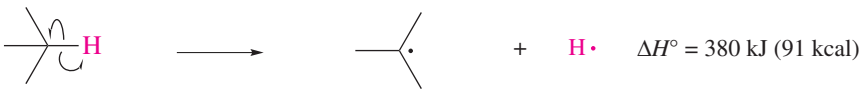
As measured by their bond-dissociation energies, benzylic C—H bonds are much weaker than allylic and alkyl C—H bonds.



Toluene Benzyl radical



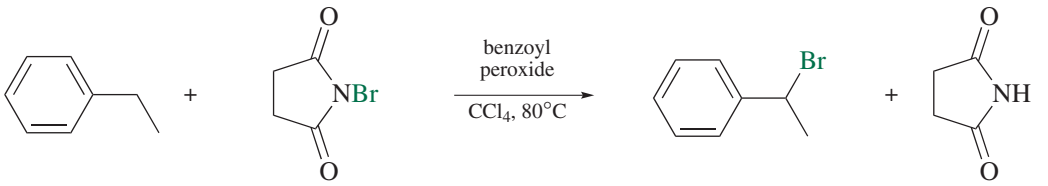
Propene Allyl radical



2-Methylpropane *tert*-Butyl radical

As in Section 10.3 where we counted the decreased bond-dissociation enthalpy in propene compared with 2-methylpropane as evidence for stabilization of allyl radical by delocalization of the unpaired electron, we attribute the decreased C—H bond strength in toluene versus propene as reflecting better electron delocalization in benzyl radical versus allyl.

The comparative ease with which a benzylic hydrogen is abstracted leads to a regioselective preference for substitution at the benzylic carbon in free-radical halogenations of alkylbenzenes. Bromination of alkylbenzenes using *N*-bromosuccinimide (see Section 10.3) offers a convenient synthesis of benzylic bromides.



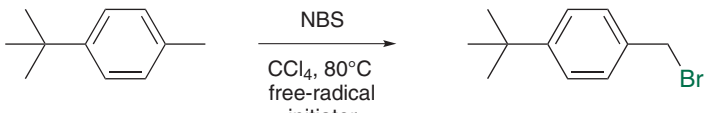
Ethylbenzene | *N*-Bromosuccinimide (NBS) | 1-Bromo-1-phenylethane (87%) | Succinimide

Problem 11.10

The reaction of *N*-bromosuccinimide with the following compounds has been reported in the chemical literature. Each compound yields a single product in 95% yield. Identify the product formed from each starting material.

(a) *p-tert*-Butyltoluene (b) 4-Methyl-3-nitroanisole

Sample Solution (a) The only benzylic hydrogens in *p-tert*-butyltoluene are those of the methyl group that is attached directly to the ring. Substitution occurs there to give *p-tert*-butylbenzyl bromide.



p-tert-Butyltoluene | *p-tert*-Butylbenzyl bromide

11.11 Benzylic Anions

A benzylic *cation* is stabilized by delocalization of the π electrons of the ring into the vacant 2*p* orbital of the benzylic carbon. Similarly, the half-filled 2*p* orbital of a benzylic *radical* interacts with the π system of the ring to both increase the delocalization of the ring's electrons and allow delocalization of the unpaired electron. What about a benzylic *anion*?

One way to assess the stabilization of an anion is to regard it as the conjugate base of an acid and to compare the acid's pK_a with other substances. The weaker the conjugate base, the more strongly held is the unshared electron pair. For the case of benzyl anion, we compare toluene with other hydrocarbons—methane, diphenylmethane, and triphenylmethane.

	CH_4	$C_6H_5CH_3$	$(C_6H_5)_2CH_2$	$(C_6H_5)_3CH$
pK_a:	55-60	42	32	31

All four are very weak acids, but toluene is 13–18 pK_a units stronger than methane and its conjugate base is correspondingly that much weaker. Additional substitution of hydrogens by phenyl groups stabilizes the conjugate base and increases the acidity further.

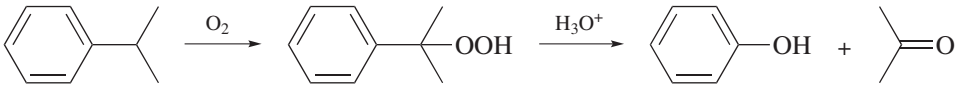
Problem 11.11

Although we won't discuss amine basicity until Chapter 21, see if you can figure out which is the stronger base: *N*-methylaniline ($C_6H_5NHCH_3$) or benzylamine ($C_6H_5CH_2NH_2$). Explain your reasoning, supporting it with appropriate resonance contributors.

11.12 Oxidation of Alkylbenzenes

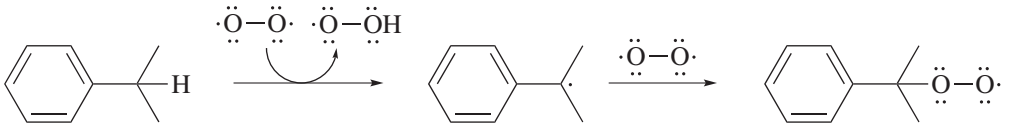
The term *oxidation* includes so many reaction types that space allows only a few to be included here, and those only briefly. Of these, one is a large-scale industrial synthesis, a second is a laboratory method, the third is biological.

Cumene is the common name for isopropylbenzene; its oxidation provides two high-volume industrial chemicals, phenol and acetone, by the reaction sequence shown.



Cumene — Cumene hydroperoxide — Phenol — Acetone

In the first step, oxygen abstracts a hydrogen atom from the benzylic carbon, setting the stage for a chain reaction that begins when the cumene hydroperoxy radical shown abstracts a benzylic hydrogen from a second molecule of cumene.



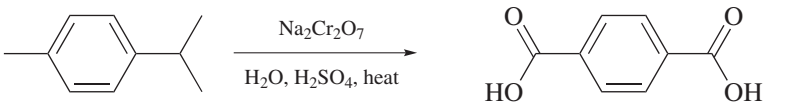
Cumene — Cumyl radical — Cumene hydroperoxy radical

Problem 11.12

The reaction of cumyl radical with oxygen is a propagation step in the free-radical chain reaction that converts cumene to cumene hydroperoxide. Write an equation for the next step in the chain. (*Hint:* What is the hydrogen atom donor?)

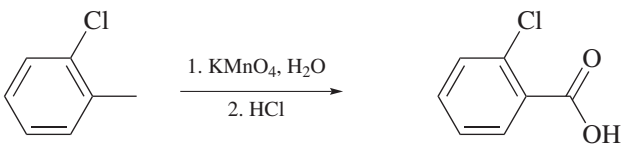
Laboratory oxidations of alkylbenzenes typically employ inorganic oxidizing agents such as chromic acid (H_2CrO_4) or potassium permanganate ($KMnO_4$). Neither of these substances oxidize benzene or alkanes, but do oxidize alkylbenzenes containing at least one benzylic hydrogen to benzoic acid.

The combination of sodium dichromate and sulfuric acid is equivalent to chromic acid.



p-Isopropyltoluene — 1,4-Benzenedicarboxylic acid (45%)

The product of permanganate oxidation in step 1 is a carboxylate ion, so an acidification step follows in order to isolate the carboxylic acid.

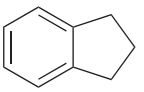


o-Chlorotoluene — *o*-Chlorobenzoic acid (76–78%)

Problem 11.13

(a) Chromic acid oxidation of 4-*tert*-butyl-1,2-dimethylbenzene yielded a single compound having the molecular formula $C_{12}H_{14}O_4$. What was this compound?

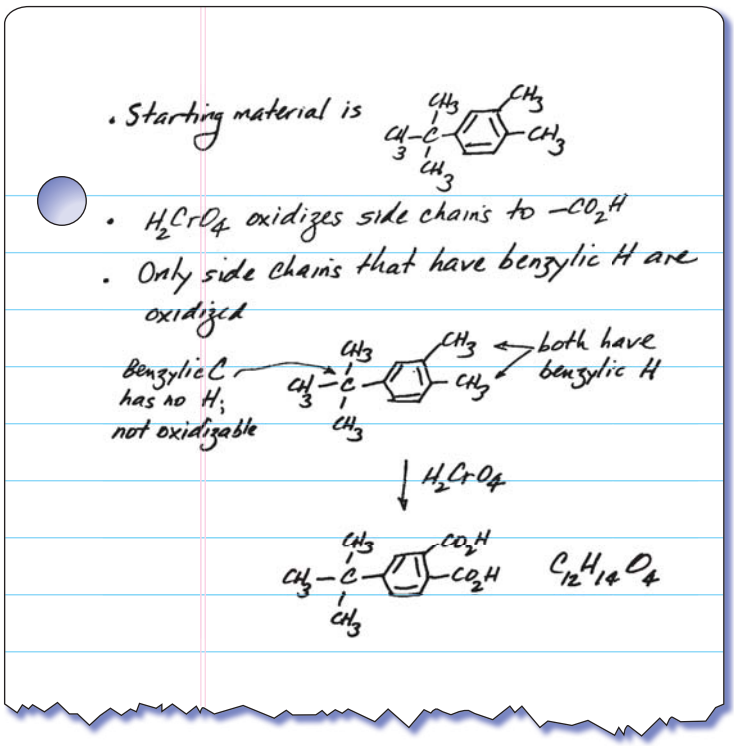
(b) What product is expected from chromic acid oxidation of 2,3-dihydroindene?



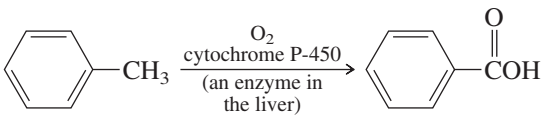
2,3-Dihydroindene

Sample Solution

(a)

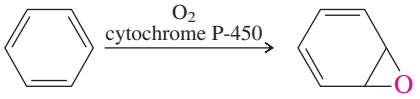


Side-chain oxidation of alkylbenzenes is important in certain metabolic processes. One way in which the body rids itself of foreign substances is by oxidation in the liver to compounds that are more easily excreted in the urine. Toluene, for example, is oxidized to benzoic acid and is eliminated rather readily.



Toluene Benzoic acid

Benzene, with no alkyl side chain and no benzylic hydrogens, undergoes a different reaction under these conditions. Oxidation of the ring occurs to convert benzene to its epoxide.



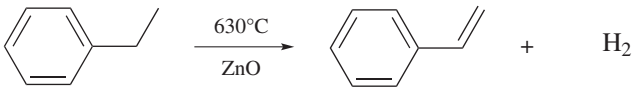
Benzene Benzene oxide

Benzene oxide and compounds derived from it are carcinogenic and can react with DNA to induce mutations. This difference in the site of biological oxidation—ring versus side-chain—seems to be responsible for the fact that benzene is carcinogenic but toluene is not.

11.13 Alkenylbenzenes

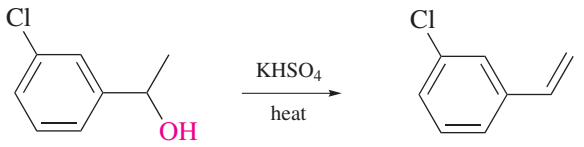
Alkenylbenzenes are prepared by the various methods described in Chapter 5 for the preparation of alkenes: *dehydrogenation, dehydration,* and *dehydrohalogenation.*

Dehydrogenation of alkylbenzenes is not a convenient laboratory method but is used industrially to convert ethylbenzene to styrene for the preparation of polystyrene.

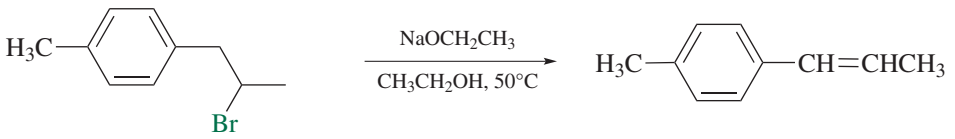


Ethylbenzene Styrene Hydrogen

Laboratory methods for preparing alkenylbenzenes include dehydration and dehydrohalogenation.



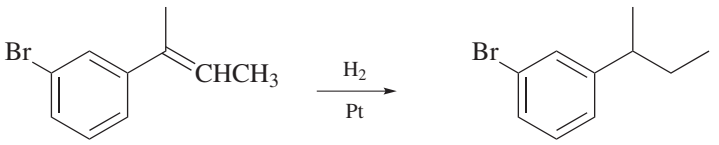
1-(*m*-Chlorophenyl)ethanol *m*-Chlorostyrene (80–82%)



2-Bromo-1-(*p*-methylphenyl)propane 1-*p*-Methylphenyl-1-propene (99%) (*cis* + *trans*)

The second of these two examples illustrates the regioselective preference for formation of the isomer in which the double bond is conjugated with the benzene ring. A hydrocarbon in which a C═C unit is conjugated with an aromatic ring is stabilized to about the same extent as a double bond in a conjugated diene.

The side-chain double bond is more reactive than the aromatic ring toward most electrophilic reagents. Many of the reactions of alkenes that were discussed in Chapter 6 find a parallel in the reactions of alkenylbenzenes. Thus, hydrogenation and halogen addition to a side-chain double bond can be achieved while leaving the ring unchanged.



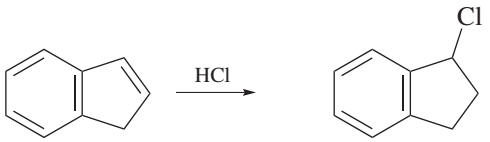
2-(*m*-Bromophenyl)-2-butene (*cis* + *trans*) 2-(*m*-Bromophenyl)butane (92%)

Styrene 1,2-Dibromo-1-phenylethane (82%)

Problem 11.14

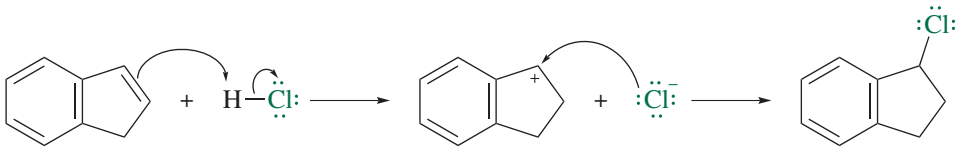
The cis and trans stereoisomers of 1,2-diphenylethylene give stereoisomeric products on addition of bromine. Draw a structural formula of each product. Which stereoisomer of 1,2-diphenylethylene gives a meso dibromide? Which one gives a chiral dibromide?

The regioselectivity of electrophilic addition is governed by the ability of an aromatic ring to stabilize an adjacent carbocation. This is clearly seen in the addition of hydrogen chloride to indene.



Indene 1-Chloroindane (75–84%)

Only the benzylic chloride is formed because protonation of the double bond occurs in the direction that gives a carbocation that is both secondary and benzylic.



Protonation in the opposite direction also gives a secondary carbocation, but that carbocation is not benzylic and does not receive the extra increment of stabilization that its benzylic isomer does. The more stable benzylic carbocation is formed faster and is the one that determines the reaction product.

Problem 11.15

Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature and gives a single organic product in high yield. Write the structure of the product for each reaction.

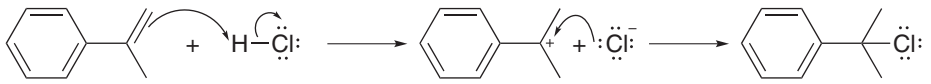
(a) 2-Phenylpropene + hydrogen chloride

(b) 2-Phenylpropene treated with diborane in tetrahydrofuran followed by oxidation with basic hydrogen peroxide

(c) Styrene + bromine in aqueous solution

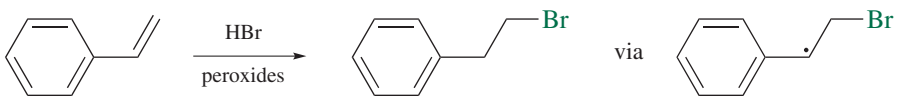
(d) Styrene + peroxybenzoic acid (two organic products in this reaction; identify both by writing a balanced equation)

Sample Solution (a) Addition of hydrogen chloride to the double bond takes place by way of a tertiary benzylic carbocation.



2-Phenylpropene Hydrogen chloride 2-Chloro-2-phenylpropane

In the presence of peroxides, hydrogen bromide adds to the double bond of styrene with a regioselectivity opposite to Markovnikov's rule. The reaction is a free-radical addition, and the regiochemistry is governed by preferential formation of the more stable radical.



Styrene 1-Bromo-2-phenylethane (only product)

11.14 Polymerization of Styrene

As described in the boxed essay *Diene Polymers* in Chapter 10, most synthetic rubber is a copolymer of styrene and 1,3-butadiene.

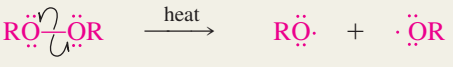
The annual production of styrene in the United States is approximately 1.1×10^{10} lb, with about 65% of this output used to prepare polystyrene plastics and films. Styrofoam coffee cups are made from polystyrene. Polystyrene can also be produced in a form that is very strong and impact-resistant and is used widely in luggage, television and radio cabinets, and furniture.

Polymerization of styrene can be carried out under free-radical (Mechanism 11.1), cationic, anionic, or Ziegler–Natta conditions (see Section 14.14).

Mechanism 11.1

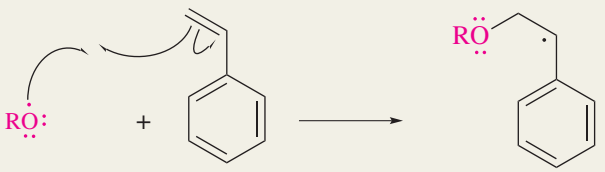
Free-Radical Polymerization of Styrene

Step 1: Polymerization of styrene usually employs a peroxide as an initiator. The peroxide dissociates on heating to produce two alkoxy radicals.



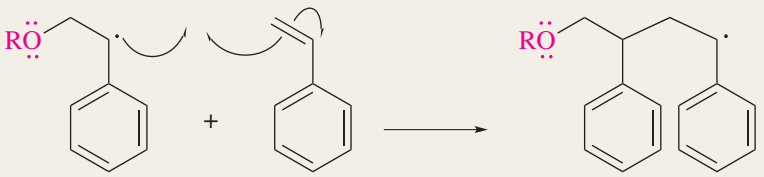
Peroxide — Two alkoxy radicals

Step 2: The free radical produced in step 1 adds to the double bond of styrene. Addition occurs in the direction that produces a benzylic radical.



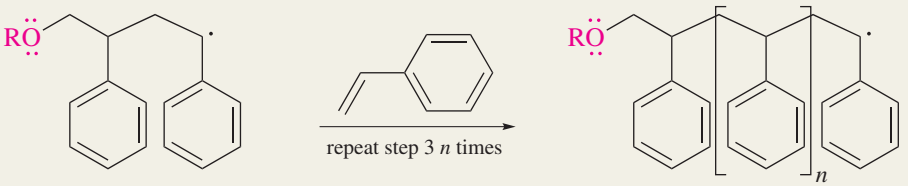
Alkoxy radical — Styrene — A benzylic radical

Step 3: The benzylic radical produced in step 2 adds to a molecule of styrene. Again addition occurs in the direction that produces a benzylic radical.



Benzylic radical from step 2 — Styrene — Chain-extended benzylic radical

Step 4: The radical produced in step 3 reacts with another styrene molecule, and the process repeats over and over to produce a long-chain polymer having phenyl substituents at every other carbon in the chain.

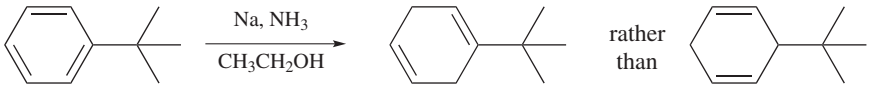


Benzylic radical from step 3 — Growing polystyrene chain

11.15 The Birch Reduction

We saw in Section 9.10 that the combination of a Group 1 metal and liquid ammonia is a powerful reducing system capable of reducing alkynes to trans alkenes. In the presence of an alcohol, this same combination reduces arenes to *nonconjugated dienes.* Thus, treatment of benzene with sodium and methanol or ethanol in liquid ammonia converts it to 1,4-cyclohexadiene. Alkyl-substituted benzenes give 1,4-cyclohexadienes in which the alkyl group is a substituent on the double bond.

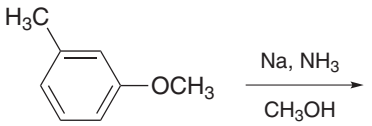
Metal–ammonia–alcohol reductions of aromatic rings are known as **Birch reductions,** after the Australian chemist Arthur J. Birch, who demonstrated their usefulness in organic synthesis.



tert-Butylbenzene — 1-*tert*-Butyl-1,4-cyclohexadiene (86%) — 3-*tert*-Butyl-1,4-cyclohexadiene

Problem 11.16

The regioselectivity of Birch reduction of alkoxy-substituted benzenes is the same as for alkylbenzenes. What did Arthur Birch isolate when he carried out the following reaction over 60 years ago?



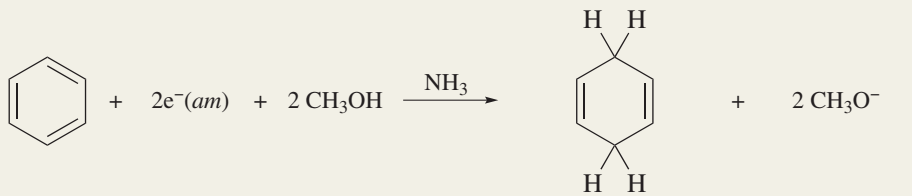
The mechanism by which the Birch reduction of benzene takes place (Mechanism 11.2) is analogous to the mechanism for the metal–ammonia reduction of alkynes. It involves a sequence of four steps in which steps 1 and 3 are one-electron reductions and steps 2 and 4 are proton transfers from the alcohol.

Mechanism 11.2

The Birch Reduction

THE OVERALL REACTION:

As in Mechanism 9.1 for the reduction of alkynes by Group 1 metals, the sodium dissociates in liquid ammonia to its Na^+ ion and an electron, both of which are solvated by ammonia. These solvated electrons are represented in the equation as $e^-(am)$.



Benzene — Electrons — Methanol — 1,4-Cyclohexadiene — Methoxide ion

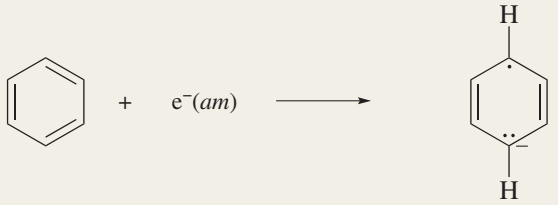
continued

Mechanism 11.2

The Birch Reduction *continued*

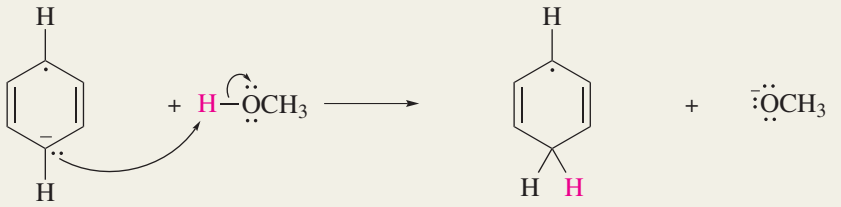
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: *Electron transfer:* An electron adds to the LUMO of benzene to give an anion radical.



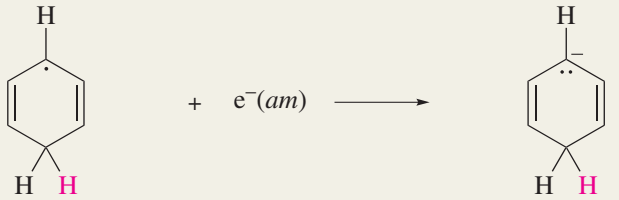
Benzene Electron Benzene anion radical

Step 2: *Proton transfer:* The anion radical formed is strongly basic and abstracts a proton from methanol. As in the reduction of alkynes, this is believed to be the rate-determining step.



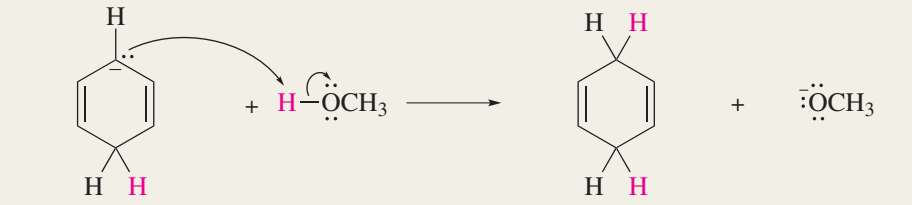
Benzene anion radical Methanol Cyclohexadienyl radical Methoxide ion

Step 3: *Electron transfer:* The cyclohexadienyl radical produced in step 2 is converted to an anion by reaction with the solvated electron.



Cyclohexadienyl radical Electron Cyclohexadienyl anion

Step 4: *Proton transfer:* Proton transfer from methanol to the anion gives 1,4-cyclohexadiene.

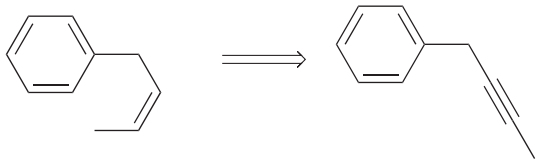


Cyclohexadienyl anion Methanol 1,4-Cyclohexadiene Methoxide ion

11.16 Benzylic Side Chains and Retrosynthetic Analysis

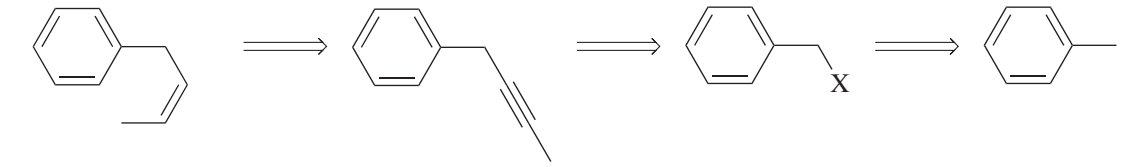
The relative stability of benzylic carbocations, radicals, and carbanions makes it possible to manipulate the side chains of aromatic rings. Functionalization at the benzylic position, for example, is readily accomplished by free-radical halogenation and provides access to the usual reactions (substitution, elimination) that we associate with alkyl halides.

To illustrate, consider the synthesis of (*Z*)-1-phenyl-2-butene. A major consideration—controlling the stereochemistry of the double bond—can be achieved by catalytic hydrogenation of the corresponding alkyne.



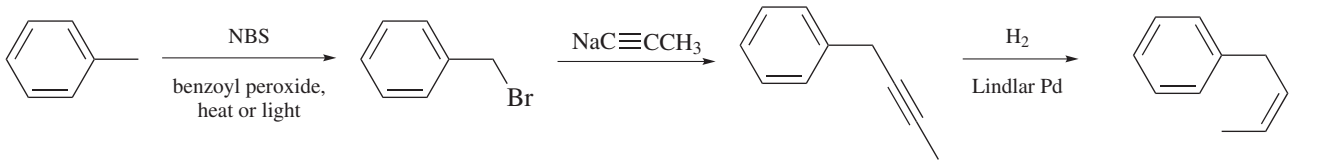
(*Z*)-1-Phenyl-2-butene 1-Phenyl-2-butyne

The question then becomes one of preparing 1-phenyl-2-butyne. A standard method for the preparation of alkynes is the alkylation of acetylene and other alkynes. In the present case, a suitable combination is propyne and a benzylic halide. The benzylic halide can be prepared from toluene.



(*Z*)-1-Phenyl-2-butene 1-Phenyl-2-butyne A benzyl halide Toluene

This retrosynthesis suggests the following synthesis:



Toluene Benzyl bromide 1-Phenyl-2-butyne (*Z*)-1-Phenyl-2-butene

Problem 11.17

Use retrosynthetic analysis to describe the preparation of *trans*-2-phenylcyclopentanol from cyclopentylbenzene and write equations showing suitable reagents for the synthesis.

11.17 Cyclobutadiene and Cyclooctatetraene

During our discussion of benzene and its derivatives, it may have occurred to you that cyclobutadiene and cyclooctatetraene might be stabilized by cyclic π electron delocalization in a manner analogous to that of benzene.

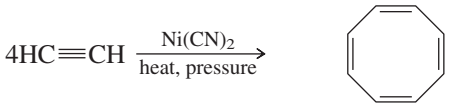
Cyclobutadiene Cyclooctatetraene

The same thought occurred to early chemists. However, the complete absence of naturally occurring compounds based on cyclobutadiene and cyclooctatetraene contrasted starkly with the abundance of compounds containing a benzene unit. Attempts to synthesize cyclobutadiene and cyclooctatetraene met with failure until 1911 when Richard Willstätter

Willstätter's most important work, for which he won the 1915 Nobel Prize in Chemistry, was directed toward determining the structure of chlorophyll.

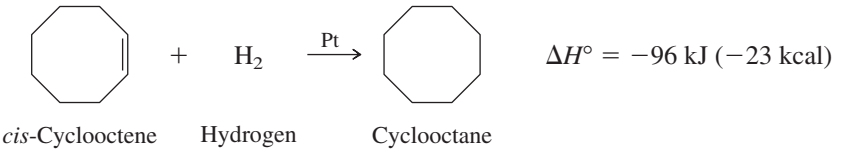
Pomegranate trees are best known for their large, juicy, seed-laden fruit.

prepared cyclooctatetraene by a lengthy degradation of *pseudopelletierine,* a natural product obtained from the bark of the pomegranate tree. Today, cyclooctatetraene is prepared from acetylene in a reaction catalyzed by nickel cyanide.

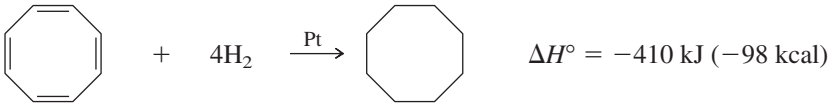


Acetylene Cyclooctatetraene (70%)

Cyclooctatetraene is relatively stable, but lacks the "special stability" of benzene. Unlike benzene, which we saw has a heat of hydrogenation that is 152 kJ/mol (36 kcal/mol) *less* than three times the heat of hydrogenation of cyclohexene, cyclooctatetraene's heat of hydrogenation is 26 kJ/mol (6 kcal/mol) *more* than four times that of *cis*-cyclooctene.



cis-Cyclooctene Hydrogen Cyclooctane



Cyclooctatetraene Hydrogen Cyclooctane

Problem 11.18

Both cyclooctatetraene and styrene have the molecular formula C_8H_8 and undergo combustion according to the equation

$$C_8H_8 + 10O_2 \rightarrow 8CO_2 + 4H_2O$$

The measured heats of combustion are 4393 and 4543 kJ/mol (1050 and 1086 kcal/mol). Which heat of combustion belongs to which compound?

Thermodynamically, cyclooctatetraene does not qualify as aromatic. Nor does its structure offer any possibility of the π electron delocalization responsible for aromaticity. As shown in Figure 11.15, cyclooctatetraene is *nonplanar* with four short and four long carbon–carbon bond distances. Cyclooctatetraene is satisfactorily represented by a single Lewis structure having alternating single and double bonds in a tub-shaped eight-membered ring. Experimental studies and theoretical calculations indicate that the structure of cyclooctatetraene shown in Figure 11.15 is about 75 kJ/mol (18 kcal/mol) more stable than the planar delocalized alternative. Cyclooctatetraene is not aromatic.

What about cyclobutadiene?

Cyclobutadiene escaped chemical characterization until the 1950s, when a variety of novel techniques succeeded in generating cyclobutadiene as a transient, reactive intermediate.

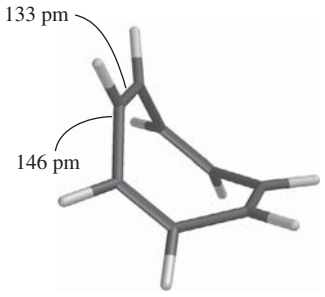


Figure 11.15

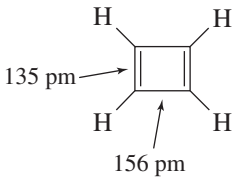
Molecular geometry of cyclooctatetraene. The ring is not planar, and the bond distances alternate between short double bonds and long single bonds.

Problem 11.19

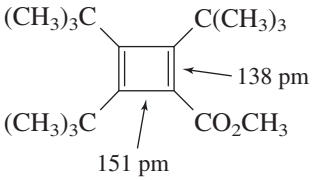
One of the chemical properties that makes cyclobutadiene difficult to isolate is that it reacts readily with itself to give a dimer:

What reaction of dienes does this resemble?

Molecular orbital calculations of cyclobutadiene itself and experimentally measured bond distances of a stable, highly substituted derivative both reveal a pattern of alternating short and long bonds characteristic of a rectangular, rather than square, geometry.



Cyclobutadiene



Sterically hindered cyclobutadiene derivative

Experimental measurements place delocalized cyclobutadiene approximately 150 kJ/mol (36 kcal/mol) higher in energy than a structure with noninteracting double bonds; both square cyclobutadiene and planar cyclooctatetraene are *antiaromatic*. **Anti-aromatic** molecules are *destabilized by delocalization of their π electrons* and cyclobutadiene and cyclooctatetraene adopt structures that minimize the delocalization of these electrons.

Cyclic conjugation, although necessary for aromaticity, is not sufficient for it. Some other factor or factors must contribute to the special stability of benzene and compounds based on the benzene ring. To understand these factors, let's return to the molecular orbital description of benzene.

11.18 Hückel's Rule

One of molecular orbital theory's early successes came in 1931 when Erich Hückel discovered an interesting pattern in the π orbital energy levels of benzene, cyclobutadiene, and cyclooctatetraene. By limiting his analysis to monocyclic conjugated polyenes and restricting the structures to planar geometries, Hückel found that whether a hydrocarbon of this type was aromatic depended on its number of π electrons. He set forth what we now call **Hückel's rule:**

Hückel was a German physical chemist. Before his theoretical studies of aromaticity, Hückel collaborated with Peter Debye in developing what remains the most widely accepted theory of electrolyte solutions.

> *Among planar, monocyclic, fully conjugated polyenes, only those possessing* $(4n + 2)$ π *electrons, where* n *is a whole number, will have special stability; that is, be aromatic.*

Thus for this group of hydrocarbons, those with $(4n + 2) = 2, 6, 10, 14, \ldots$ π electrons will be aromatic. These values correspond to $(4n + 2)$ when $n = 0, 1, 2, 3. \ldots$

Hückel proposed his theory before ideas of antiaromaticity emerged. We can amplify his generalization by noting that among the hydrocarbons covered by Hückel's rule, those with $(4n)$ π electrons not only are not aromatic, they are antiaromatic.

Benzene, cyclobutadiene, and cyclooctatetraene provide clear examples of Hückel's rule. Benzene, with six π electrons is a $(4n + 2)$ system and is predicted to be aromatic by the rule. Square cyclobutadiene and planar cyclooctatetraene are $4n$ systems with four and eight π electrons, respectively, and are antiaromatic.

The $(4n + 2)$ π electron standard follows from the pattern of orbital energies in monocyclic, completely conjugated polyenes. The π energy levels were shown for benzene earlier in Figure 11.4 and are repeated in Figure 11.16*b*. Figure 11.16*a* and 11.16*c* show the π energy levels for square cyclobutadiene and planar cyclooctatetraene, respectively.

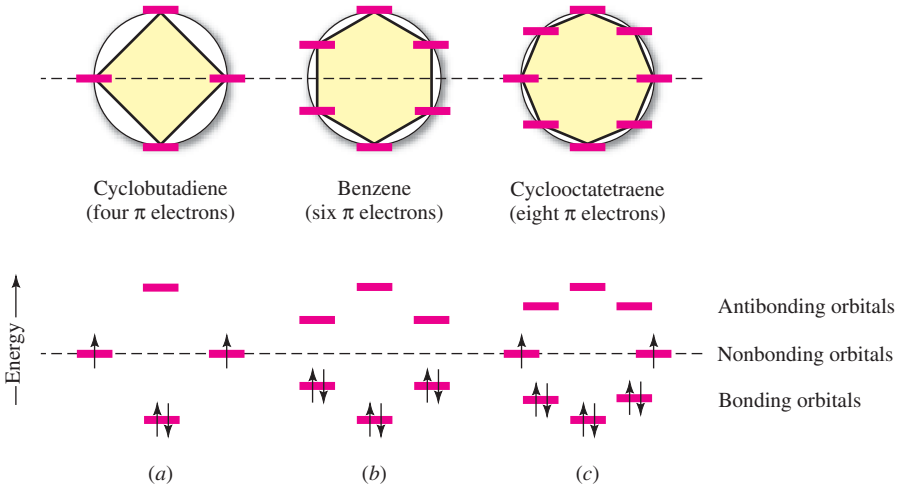
The circle mnemonic was devised by Arthur A. Frost, a theoretical chemist at Northwestern University.

The diagrams in Figure 11.16 illustrate a simple method, called the **Frost circle** for setting out the Hückel MOs of "planar, monocyclic, completely conjugated polyenes." By inscribing a polygon having the appropriate number of sides within a circle so that one of its vertices lies at the bottom, the location of each of the polygon's corners defines a π electron energy level. Their vertical separation is proportional to the energy difference between the MOs. A horizontal line drawn through the center of the circle separates the bonding and antibonding MOs; an orbital that lies directly on the line is nonbonding.

The pattern of orbital energies in Figure 11.16 provides a convincing explanation for why benzene is aromatic while square cyclobutadiene and planar cyclooctatetraene are not. We start by counting π electrons; cyclobutadiene has four, benzene six, and cyclooctatetraene has eight. These π electrons are assigned to MOs in accordance with the usual rules—lowest

Figure 11.16

Frost's circle and the π molecular orbitals of (*a*) square cyclobutadiene, (*b*) benzene, and (*c*) planar cyclooctatetraene.



energy orbitals first, a maximum of two electrons per orbital, and when two orbitals are of equal energy, each gets one electron before either orbital gets two (Hund's rule).

Benzene — As seen earlier in Figure 11.4 (Section 11.4), the six π electrons of benzene are distributed in pairs among its three bonding π MOs, giving a closed-shell electron configuration. All the bonding orbitals are filled, and all the electron spins are paired.

Cyclobutadiene — Square cyclobutadiene has one bonding π MO, two equal-energy nonbonding π MOs and one antibonding π* MO. After the bonding MO is filled, the remaining two electrons are assigned to different nonbonding MOs in accordance with Hund's rule. This results in a species with two unpaired electrons—a diradical. In a square geometry, cyclobutadiene lacks a closed-shell electron configuration. It is not stabilized and, with two unpaired electrons, should be very reactive.

Cyclooctatetraene — Six of the eight π electrons of planar cyclooctatetraene occupy three bonding orbitals. The remaining two π electrons occupy, one each, the two equal-energy nonbonding orbitals. Planar cyclooctatetraene should, like square cyclobutadiene, be a diradical.

An important conclusion to draw from the qualitative MO diagrams is that the customary geometry required for maximum π electron delocalization gives relatively unstable electron configurations for cyclobutadiene and cyclooctatetraene. Both escape to alternative geometries that have electron configurations which, although not aromatic, at least have all their electron spins paired. For cyclobutadiene the stable geometry is rectangular; for cyclooctatetraene it is tub-shaped.

Benzene's structure allows effective π electron conjugation and gives a closed-shell electron configuration. To understand why it also conveys special stability, we need to go one step further and compare the Hückel π MOs of benzene to those of a hypothetical "cyclohexatriene" with alternating single and double bonds. Without going into quantitative detail, we'll simply note that the occupied orbitals of a structure in which the π electrons are restricted to three noninteracting double bonds are of higher energy (less stable) than the occupied Hückel MOs of benzene.

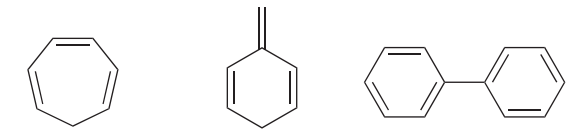
Before looking at other applications of Hückel's rule, it is worth pointing out that its opening phrase: "Among planar, monocyclic, fully conjugated polyenes" does *not* mean that *only* "planar, monocyclic, fully conjugated polyenes" can be aromatic. It merely limits the rule to compounds of this type. There are thousands of aromatic compounds that are not monocyclic—naphthalene and related polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (Section 11.6), for example. All compounds based on benzene rings are aromatic. Cyclic conjugation *is* a requirement for aromaticity, however, and in those cases the conjugated system

must contain $(4n + 2)$ π electrons. Cyclic conjugated systems with $4n$ π electrons are antiaromatic.

Problem 11.20

Give an explanation for each of the following observations:

(a) Compound A has six π electrons but is not aromatic.
(b) Compound B has six π electrons but is not aromatic.
(c) Compound C has 12 π electrons and is aromatic.



Compound A (C_7H_8) Compound B (C_7H_8) Compound C ($C_{12}H_{10}$)

Sample Solution (a) Cycloheptatriene (compound A) is not aromatic because, although it does contain six π electrons, its conjugated system of three double bonds does not close on itself—it lacks cyclic conjugation. The CH_2 group prevents cyclic delocalization of the π electrons.

In the next section we'll explore Hückel's rule for values of n greater than 1 to see how it can be extended beyond cyclobutadiene, benzene, and cyclooctatetraene.

11.19 Annulenes

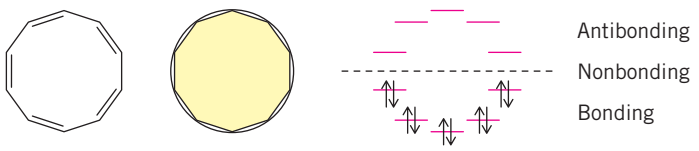
Most of the synthetic work directed toward the higher annulenes was carried out by Franz Sondheimer and his students, first at Israel's Weizmann Institute and later at the University of London.

The general term **annulene** refers to completely conjugated monocyclic hydrocarbons with more than six carbons. Cyclobutadiene and benzene retain their names, but higher members of the group are named **[*x*]annulene,** where x is the number of carbons in the ring. Thus, cyclooctatetraene becomes [8]annulene, cyclodecapentaene becomes [10]annulene and so on.

Problem 11.21

Use Frost's circle to construct orbital energy diagrams for (a) [10]annulene and (b) [12]annulene. Is either aromatic according to Hückel's rule?

Sample Solution (a) [10]Annulene is a ten-membered ring with five conjugated double bonds. Drawing a polygon with ten sides with its vertex pointing downward within a circle gives the orbital template. Place the orbitals at the positions where each vertex contacts the circle. The ten π electrons of [10]annulene satisfy the $(4n + 2)$ rule for $n = 2$ and occupy the five bonding orbitals in pairs. [10]Annulene is aromatic according to Hückel's rule.



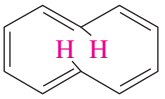
[10] Annulene Frost's circle π-Electron configuration

The prospect of observing aromatic character in conjugated polyenes having 10, 14, 18, and so on π electrons spurred efforts toward the synthesis of higher annulenes. A problem immediately arises in the case of the all-cis isomer of [10]annulene, the structure of which is shown in the preceding problem. Geometry requires a ten-sided regular polygon to have 144° bond angles; sp^2 hybridization at carbon requires 120° bond angles. Therefore, aromatic stabilization due to conjugation in all-*cis*-[10]annulene is opposed by the destabilizing angle strain at each of its carbon atoms. All-*cis*-[10]annulene has been prepared. It is not very stable and is highly reactive.

The size of each angle of a regular polygon is given by the expression

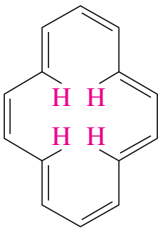
$$180° \times \frac{(\text{number of sides}) - 2}{(\text{number of sides})}$$

A second isomer of [10]annulene (the cis, trans, cis, cis, trans stereoisomer) can have bond angles close to 120° but is destabilized by a close contact between two hydrogens directed toward the interior of the ring. To minimize the van der Waals strain between these hydrogens, the ring adopts a nonplanar geometry, which limits its ability to be stabilized by π electron delocalization. It, too, has been prepared and is not very stable. Similarly, the next higher $(4n + 2)$ system, [14]annulene, is also somewhat destabilized by van der Waals strain and is nonplanar.



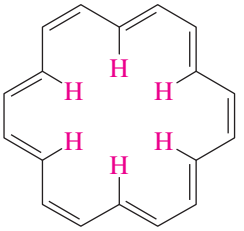
cis,trans,cis,cis,trans-[10]Annulene

Planar geometry required for aromaticity destabilized by van der Waals repulsions between indicated hydrogens



[14]Annulene

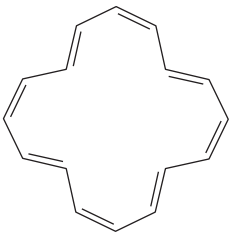
When the ring contains 18 carbon atoms, it is large enough to be planar while still allowing its interior hydrogens to be far enough apart so as to not interfere with one another. The [18]annulene shown is planar, or nearly so, and has all its carbon–carbon bond distances in the range 137–143 pm, very much like those of benzene. Its resonance energy is estimated to be about 418 kJ/mol (100 kcal/mol). Although its structure and resonance energy attest to the validity of Hückel's rule, which predicts "special stability" for [18]annulene, its chemical reactivity does not. [18]Annulene behaves more like a polyene than like benzene in that it undergoes addition rather than substitution with bromine and forms a Diels–Alder adduct with maleic anhydride.



[18]Annulene

No serious repulsions among six interior hydrogens; molecule is planar and aromatic.

As noted earlier, planar annulenes with $4n$ π electrons are antiaromatic. A member of this group, [16]annulene, has been prepared. It is nonplanar and shows a pattern of alternating short (average 134 pm) and long (average 146 pm) bonds typical of a nonaromatic cyclic polyene.



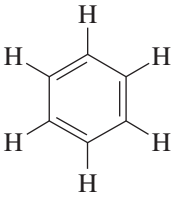
[16]Annulene

Problem 11.22

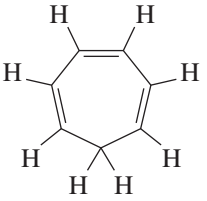
What does a comparison of the heats of combustion of benzene (3265 kJ/mol; 781 kcal/mol), cyclooctatetraene (4543 kJ/mol; 1086 kcal/mol), [16]annulene (9121 kJ/mol; 2182 kcal/mol), and [18]annulene (9806 kJ/mol; 2346 kcal/mol) reveal?

11.20 Aromatic Ions

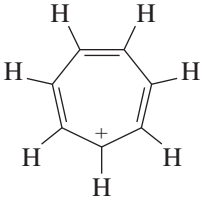
Hückel realized that his molecular orbital analysis of conjugated systems could be extended beyond neutral hydrocarbons. He pointed out that cycloheptatrienyl cation, also called *tropylium ion,* contained a completely conjugated closed-shell six-π electron system analogous to that of benzene.



Benzene: completely conjugated, six π electrons delocalized over six carbons



Cycloheptatriene: lacks cyclic conjugation, interrupted by CH_2 group



Cycloheptatrienyl cation: completely conjugated, six π electrons delocalized over seven carbons

It is important to recognize the difference between the hydrocarbon cycloheptatriene and cycloheptatrienyl cation. The carbocation is aromatic; the hydrocarbon is not. Although cycloheptatriene has six π electrons in a conjugated system, the ends of the triene system are separated by an sp^3-hybridized carbon, which prevents continuous cyclic π electron delocalization.

Figure 11.17 shows a molecular orbital diagram for cycloheptatrienyl cation. There are seven π MOs, three of which are bonding and contain the six π electrons of the cation. Cycloheptatrienyl cation is a Hückel $(4n + 2)$ system and is an aromatic ion.

Problem 11.23

Show how you could adapt Frost's circle to generate the orbital energy level diagram shown in Figure 11.17 for cycloheptatrienyl cation.

Problem 11.24

Cycloheptatrienyl radical ($C_7H_7\cdot$) contains a cyclic, completely conjugated system of π electrons. Is it aromatic? Is it antiaromatic? Explain.

When we say cycloheptatriene is not aromatic but cycloheptatrienyl cation is, we are not comparing the stability of the two to each other. Cycloheptatriene is a stable hydrocarbon but does not possess the *special stability* required to be called *aromatic.* Cycloheptatrienyl cation, although aromatic, is still a carbocation and reasonably reactive toward

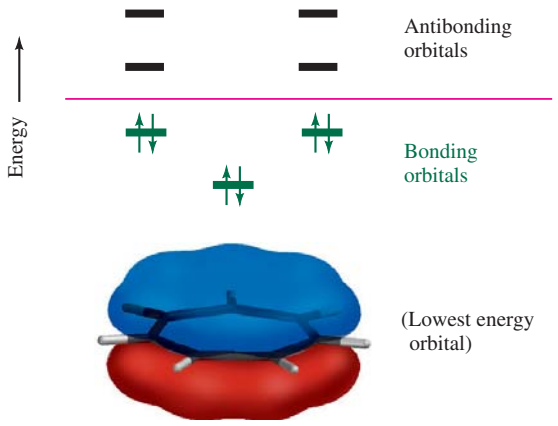
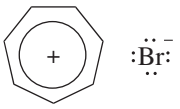


Figure 11.17

The π molecular orbitals of cycloheptatrienyl cation.

nucleophiles. Its special stability does not imply a rock-like passivity, but rather a much greater ease of formation than expected on the basis of the Lewis structure drawn for it. A number of observations indicate that cycloheptatrienyl cation is far more stable than most other carbocations. To emphasize its aromatic nature, chemists often write the structure of cycloheptatrienyl cation in the Robinson circle-in-a-ring style.



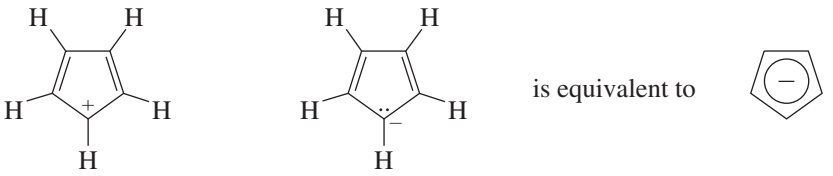
Tropylium bromide

Tropylium bromide was first prepared, but not recognized as such, in 1891. The work was repeated in 1954, and the ionic properties of tropylium bromide were demonstrated. The ionic properties of tropylium bromide are apparent in its unusually high melting point (203°C), its solubility in water, and its complete lack of solubility in diethyl ether.

Problem 11.25

Write resonance structures for tropylium cation sufficient to show the delocalization of the positive charge over all seven carbons.

The five-membered cyclopentadienyl system contrasts with cycloheptatrienyl. Cyclopentadienyl cation has four π electrons, is antiaromatic, very unstable, and very difficult to generate. Cyclopentadienyl anion, however, has six π electrons delocalized over five carbons and is aromatic.



Cyclopentadienyl cation Cyclopentadienyl anion

Figure 11.18 shows the MOs of cyclopentadienyl anion. Like benzene and cycloheptatrienyl cation, cyclopentadienyl anion has six π electrons and a closed-shell electron configuration.

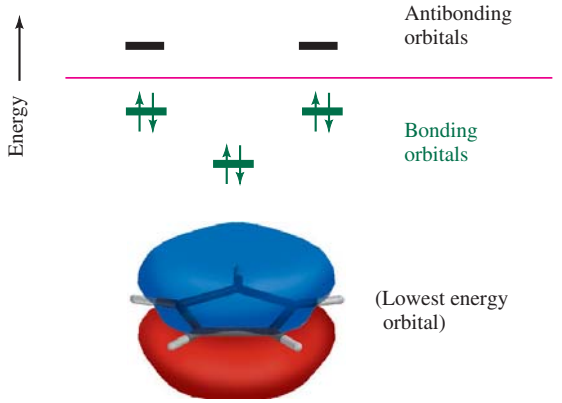


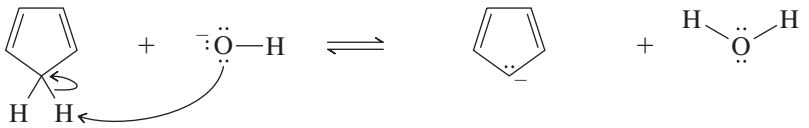
Figure 11.18

The π molecular orbitals of cyclopentadienyl anion.

Problem 11.26

Show how you could adapt Frost's circle to generate the orbital energy level diagram shown in Figure 11.18 for cyclopentadienyl anion.

The acidity of cyclopentadiene provides convincing evidence for the special stability of cyclopentadienyl anion.



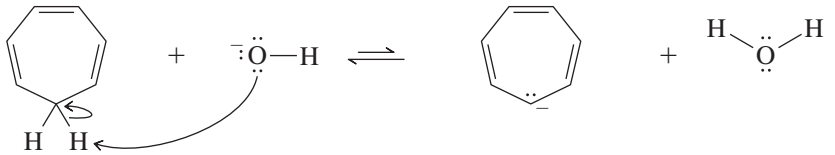
Cyclopentadiene $pK_a = 16$ | Hydroxide ion | Cyclopentadienyl anion | Water $pK_a = 15.7$

With a pK_a of 16, cyclopentadiene is only a slightly weaker acid than water ($pK_a = 15.7$). It is much more acidic than other hydrocarbons—its K_a for ionization is 10^{10} times greater than acetylene, for example—because its conjugate base is aromatic and stabilized by electron delocalization.

Problem 11.27

Write resonance structures for cyclopentadienyl anion sufficient to show the delocalization of the negative charge over all five carbons.

There is a striking difference in the acidity of cyclopentadiene compared with cycloheptatriene. Cycloheptatriene has a pK_a of 36, which makes it 10^{20} times weaker in acid strength than cyclopentadiene.



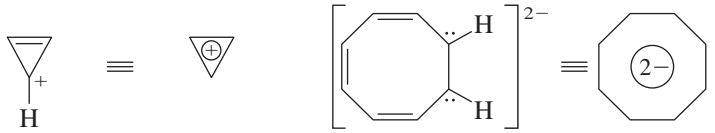
Cycloheptatriene $pK_a = 36$ | Hydroxide ion | Cycloheptatrienyl anion | Water $pK_a = 15.7$

Even though resonance tells us that the negative charge in cycloheptatrienyl anion can be shared by all seven of its carbons, this delocalization offers little in the way of stabilization. Indeed with eight π electrons, cycloheptatrienyl anion is antiaromatic and relatively unstable.

Hückel's rule is now taken to apply to planar, monocyclic, completely conjugated systems generally, not just to neutral hydrocarbons.

> *A planar, monocyclic, continuous system of* p *orbitals possesses aromatic stability when it contains (4*n + 2*) π electrons.*

Other aromatic ions include cyclopropenyl cation (two π electrons) and cyclooctatetraene dianion (ten π electrons).



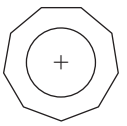
Cyclopropenyl cation | Cyclooctatetraene dianion

Here, we've taken liberties with the Robinson symbol. Instead of restricting it to a sextet of electrons, organic chemists use it as an all-purpose symbol for cyclic electron delocalization.

Problem 11.28

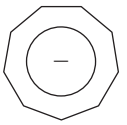
Is either of the following ions aromatic? Is either antiaromatic?

(a)



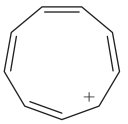
Cyclononatetraenyl cation

(b)



Cyclononatetraenide anion

Sample Solution (a) The crucial point is the number of π electrons in a cyclic conjugated system. If there are $(4n + 2)$ π electrons, the ion is aromatic. Electron counting is easiest if we write the ion as a single Lewis structure and remember that each double bond contributes two π electrons, a negatively charged carbon contributes two, and a positively charged carbon contributes none.

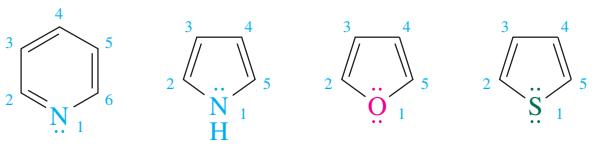


Cyclononatetraenyl cation has eight π electrons; it is *not aromatic.* It is antiaromatic ($4n = 8$; $n = 2$) if planar.

11.21 Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds

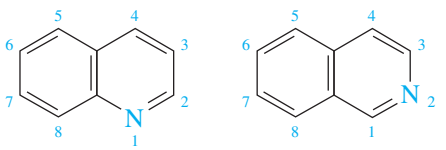
Cyclic compounds that contain at least one atom other than carbon within their ring are called **heterocyclic compounds,** and those that possess aromatic stability are called **heterocyclic aromatic compounds.** Some representative heterocyclic aromatic compounds are *pyridine, pyrrole, furan,* and *thiophene.* The structures and the IUPAC numbering system used in naming their derivatives are shown. In their stability and chemical behavior, all these compounds resemble benzene more than they resemble alkenes.

Pyridine, pyrrole, and thiophene are present in coal tar. Furan is prepared from a substance called *furfural* obtained from corncobs.



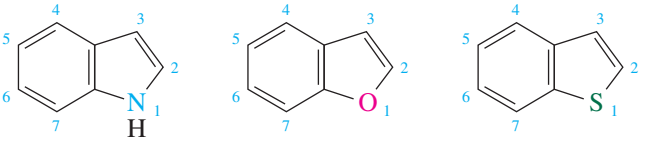
Pyridine Pyrrole Furan Thiophene

Heterocyclic aromatic compounds can be polycyclic as well. A benzene ring and a pyridine ring, for example, can share a common side in two different ways. One way gives a compound called *quinoline;* the other gives *isoquinoline.*



Quinoline Isoquinoline

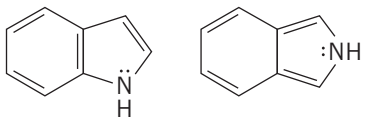
Analogous compounds derived by fusion of a benzene ring to a pyrrole, furan, or thiophene nucleus are called *indole, benzofuran,* and *benzothiophene.*



Indole Benzofuran Benzothiophene

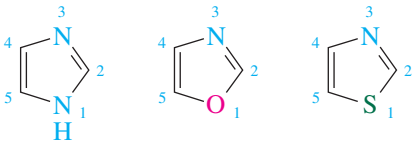
Problem 11.29

Unlike quinoline and isoquinoline, which are of comparable stability, the compounds indole and isoindole are quite different from each other. Which one is more stable? Explain the reason for your choice.



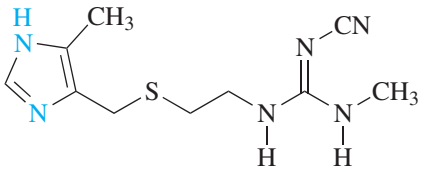
Indole Isoindole

A large group of heterocyclic aromatic compounds are related to pyrrole by replacement of one of the ring carbons β to nitrogen by a second heteroatom. Compounds of this type are called *azoles.*

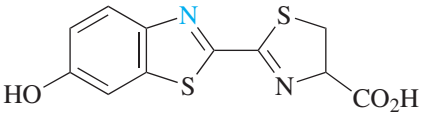


Imidazole Oxazole Thiazole

A widely prescribed drug for the treatment of gastric ulcers with the generic name *cimetidine* is a synthetic imidazole derivative. *Firefly luciferin* is a thiazole derivative that is the naturally occurring light-emitting substance present in fireflies.

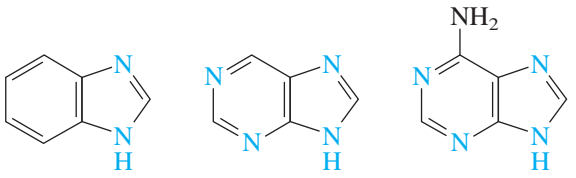


Cimetidine



Firefly luciferin

Firefly luciferin is an example of an azole that contains a benzene ring fused to the five-membered ring. Such structures are fairly common. Another example is *benzimidazole,* present as a structural unit in vitamin B_{12}. Some compounds related to benzimidazole include *purine* and its amino-substituted derivative *adenine,* one of the heterocyclic bases found in DNA and RNA (Chapter 26).



Benzimidazole Purine Adenine

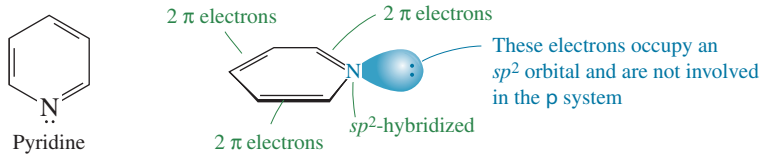
Problem 11.30

Can you deduce the structural formulas of *benzoxazole* and *benzothiazole?*

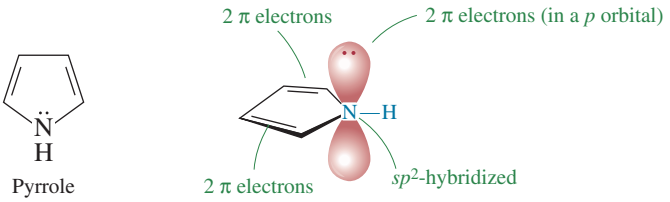
11.22 Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds and Hückel's Rule

Hückel's rule can be extended to heterocyclic aromatic compounds. A heteroatom such as oxygen or nitrogen can contribute either zero or two of its unshared electrons as needed to the π system so as to satisfy the $(4n + 2)$ π electron requirement.

The unshared pair in pyridine, for example, is not needed to satisfy the six π electron requirement for aromaticity, so is associated entirely with nitrogen and is not delocalized into the aromatic π system.



The unshared pair in the Lewis structure for pyrrole, on the other hand, must be added to the four π electrons of the two double bonds in order to meet the six π electron requirement.



In both pyridine and pyrrole the unshared electron pair occupies that orbital which provides the most stable structure. It is a different orbital in each case. In pyridine it is an sp^2-hybridized orbital localized on nitrogen. In pyrrole it is a *p* orbital of nitrogen that overlaps with the *p* orbitals of the ring carbons to give a delocalized π system.

The electrostatic potential maps in Figure 11.19 show how pyridine and pyrrole differ with respect to their charge distribution. The unshared electron pair in pyridine gives rise to a region of high electron density (red) near nitrogen. A similar concentration of charge is absent in pyrrole because the corresponding electrons are delocalized among the five ring atoms.

The difference in bonding in pyridine and pyrrole is reflected in their properties. Although both are weak bases, pyridine is 10^7–10^9 times more basic than pyrrole. When

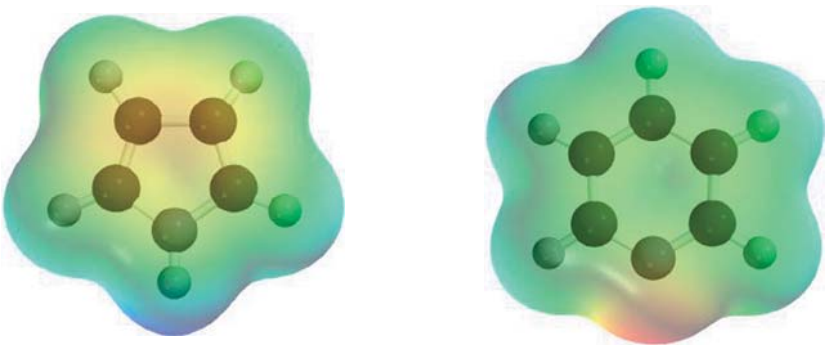
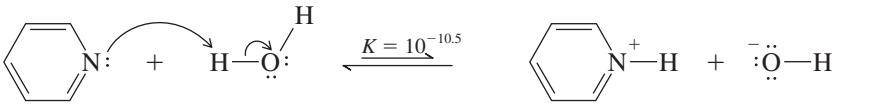


Figure 11.19

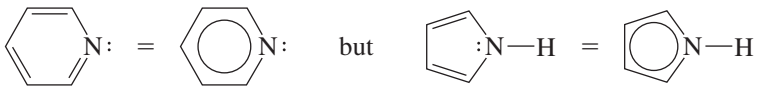
Electrostatic potential maps of pyridine and pyrrole. The color range is the same for both. In pyrrole the electron pair is delocalized into the π system of the ring. In pyridine the unshared electron pair is responsible for the concentration of electron density near nitrogen.

pyridine acts as a Brønsted base, protonation of nitrogen converts an unshared pair (N:) to a bonded pair (N—H) while leaving the aromatic π system intact.



Pyridine — Water (Weaker acid (pK_a = 15.7)) — Pyridinium ion (Stronger acid (pK_a = 5.2)) — Hydroxide ion

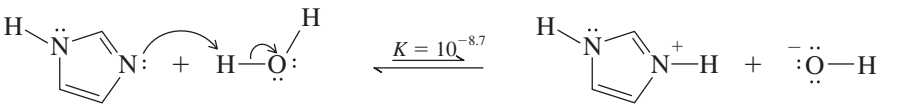
With pyrrole, however, the pair of electrons shown as an unshared pair in its Lewis formula is actually part of the aromatic π system. Were these two electrons to be involved in covalent bonding to a proton, all of the stabilization associated with aromaticity would be lost.



Problem 11.31

Estimate the pK_a of the conjugate acid of pyrrole given that pyrrole is about 10^7–10^9 times less basic than pyridine and that the pK_a of the conjugate acid of pyridine is 5.2. Is the conjugate acid of pyridine strong or weak? What about the conjugate acid of pyrrole?

Imidazole is a heterocyclic aromatic compound with two nitrogens in a five-membered ring. One nitrogen has a pyridine-like unshared pair; the other has a pyrrole-like pair that is incorporated into the aromatic π system. Imidazole is somewhat more basic than pyridine. When imidazole acts as a Brønsted base, protonation of its pyridine-like nitrogen permits aromaticity to be retained by leaving the pyrrole-like nitrogen untouched.

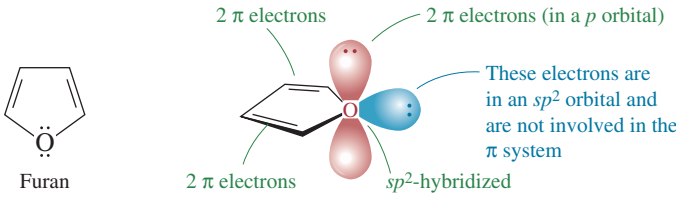


Imidazole — Water (Weaker acid (pK_a = 15.7)) — Imidazolium ion (Stronger acid (pK_a = 7)) — Hydroxide ion

Problem 11.32

Refer to the structure of imidazolium ion in the preceding equation and write a second resonance contributor that obeys the octet rule and has its positive charge on the other nitrogen. Use curved arrows to show how you reorganized the electrons.

Turning to oxygen as a heteroatom, the question of two unshared pairs on the same atom arises.



Furan

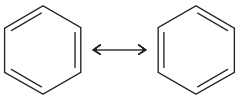
One pair is like the pair in pyrrole, occupying a *p* orbital and contributing two electrons to complete the six-π electron requirement for aromatic stabilization. The other electron pair in furan is an "extra" pair, not needed to satisfy the $4n + 2$ rule for aromaticity, and occupies an sp^2-hybridized orbital like the unshared pair in pyridine.

11.23 SUMMARY

Section 11.1 Benzene is the parent of a class of compounds called **arenes,** which are aromatic hydrocarbons.

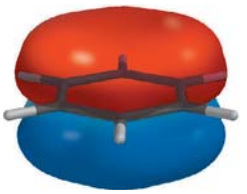
Section 11.2 An important property of aromatic hydrocarbons is that they are much more stable and less reactive than other unsaturated compounds. The Kekulé formulas for benzene seem inconsistent with its low reactivity and with the fact that all of the C—C bonds in benzene are the same length (140 pm).

One explanation for the structure and stability of benzene and other arenes is based on resonance, according to which benzene is regarded as a hybrid of the two Kekulé structures.



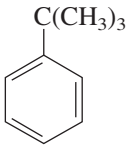
Section 11.3 The extent to which benzene is more stable than either of the Kekulé structures is its **resonance energy,** which is estimated to be 152 kJ/mol (36 kcal/mol) from heats of hydrogenation data.

Section 11.4 According to the valence bond model, benzene has six π electrons, which are shared by all six sp^2-hybridized carbons. Regions of high π electron density are located above and below the plane of the ring.

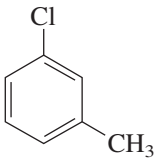


A molecular orbital description of benzene has three π orbitals that are bonding and three that are antibonding. Each of the bonding orbitals is fully occupied (two electrons each), and the antibonding orbitals are vacant.

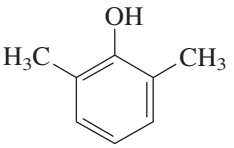
Section 11.5 Many aromatic compounds are substituted derivatives of benzene and are named accordingly. Many others have names based on some other parent aromatic compound.



tert-Butylbenzene

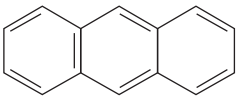


m-Chlorotoluene



2,6-Dimethylphenol

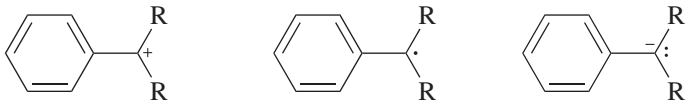
Section 11.6 **Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons,** of which anthracene is an example, contain two or more fused benzene rings.



Anthracene

Section 11.7 The physical properties of arenes resemble those of other hydrocarbons. Although weak, intermolecular attractive forces are somewhat stronger than those of other hydrocarbons of similar size.

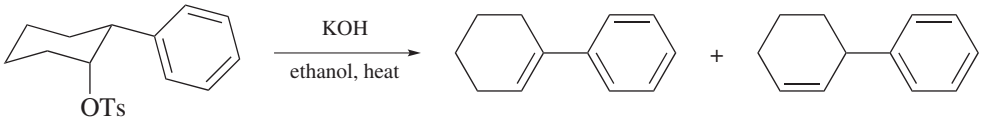
Section 11.8 Chemical reactions of arenes can take place involving either the ring itself or a side chain. The most characteristic reactions proceed via benzylic carbocations, radicals, or anions.



Benzylic carbocation | Benzylic radical | Benzylic anion

Sections 11.9–11.12 See Table 11.2.

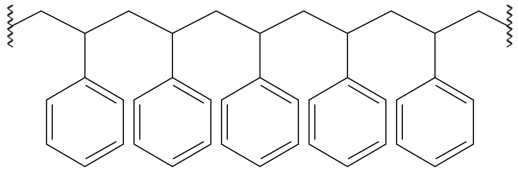
Section 11.13 β eliminations that introduce double bonds that are conjugated to an aromatic ring occur readily.



cis-2-Phenylcyclohexyl *p*-toluenesulfonate | 1-Phenylcyclohexane (87%) | 3-Phenylcyclohexane (7%)

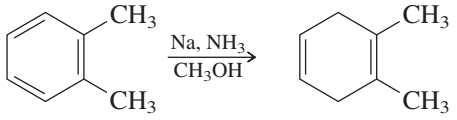
Examples of addition to these types of conjugated double bonds are shown in Table 11.2

Section 11.14 Polystyrene is a widely used vinyl polymer prepared by the free-radical polymerization of styrene.



Polystyrene

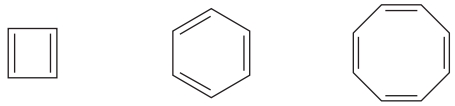
Section 11.15 An example of a reaction in which the ring itself reacts is the **Birch reduction.** The ring of an arene is reduced to a nonconjugated diene by treatment with a Group 1 metal (usually sodium) in liquid ammonia in the presence of an alcohol.



o-Xylene | 1,2-Dimethyl-1,4-cyclohexadiene (92%)

Section 11.16 The choice of synthetic routes to aromatic compounds is strongly influenced by considerations of the effect of the benzylic carbon on rate and regioselectivity.

Section 11.17 Although cyclic conjugation is a necessary requirement for aromaticity, this alone is not sufficient. If it were, cyclobutadiene and cyclooctatetraene would be aromatic. They are not.

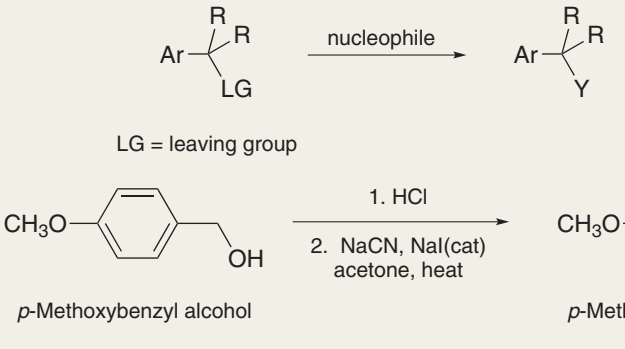
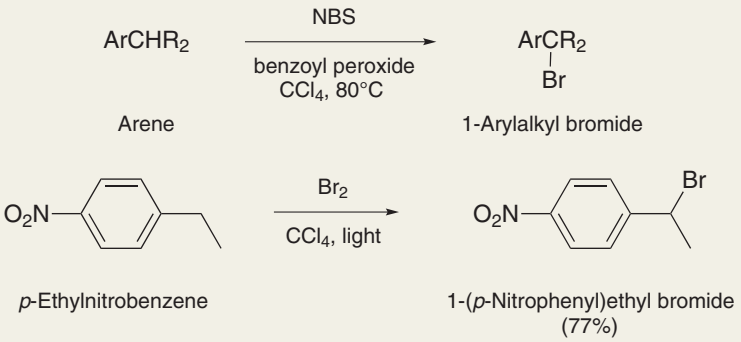
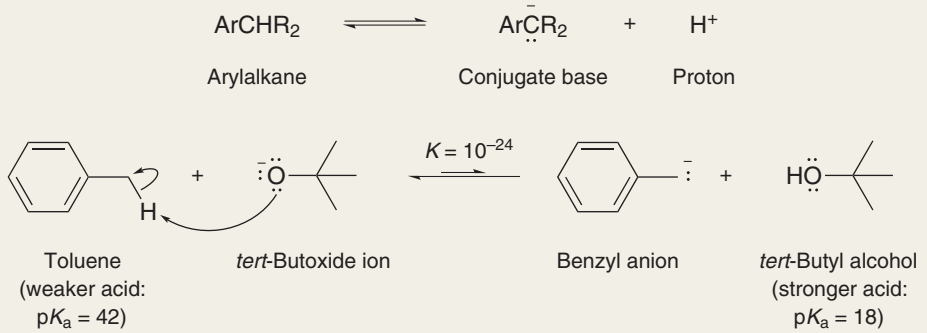


Cyclobutadiene (not aromatic) | Benzene (aromatic) | Cyclooctatetraene (not aromatic)

Section 11.18 An additional requirement for aromaticity is that the number of π electrons in conjugated, planar, monocyclic species must be equal to $4n + 2$, where n is an integer. This is called **Hückel's rule.** Benzene, with six π electrons, satisfies Hückel's rule for $n = 1$. Square cyclobutadiene (four π electrons) and planar cyclooctatetraene (eight π electrons) do not. Both are examples of systems with $4n$ π electrons and are **antiaromatic.**

Section 11.19 **Annulenes** are monocyclic, completely conjugated polyenes synthesized for the purpose of testing Hückel's rule. They are named by using a bracketed numerical prefix to indicate the number of carbons, followed by the word

TABLE 11.2 Reactions Involving Alkyl and Alkenyl Side Chains in Arenes and Arene Derivatives

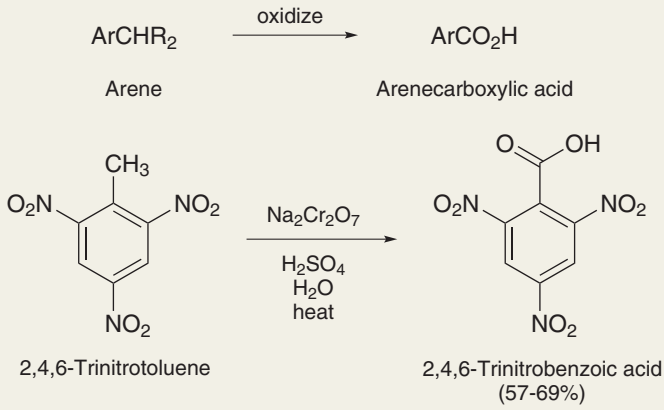
Reaction (Section) and Comments	General Equation and Specific Example
Nucleophilic substitution (Section 11.9) S_N1 and S_N2 reactions of benzylic halides occur faster than the corresponding reactions of alkyl halides. Three nucleophilic substitutions are involved in the synthesis shown. The benzylic alcohol is converted to the corresponding chloride with HCl, then to the corresponding cyanide. Sodium iodide catalyzes the second reaction by converting the benzylic chloride to the more reactive iodide.	
Free-radical halogenation (Section 11.10) Side-chain halogenation of alkylbenzenes is regiospecific for substitution at the benzylic carbon. Suitable reagents include elemental bromine and *N*-bromosuccinimide (NBS).	
Acidity (Section 11.11) Alkylbenzenes are very weak acids but much stronger than alkanes. The pK_a of toluene, for example, is 42.	

annulene. [4*n*]-Annulenes are characterized by rings with alternating short (double) and long (single) bonds and are *antiaromatic*. The expected aromaticity of [4*n* + 2]-annulenes is diminished by angle and van der Waals strain unless the ring contains 18 or more carbons.

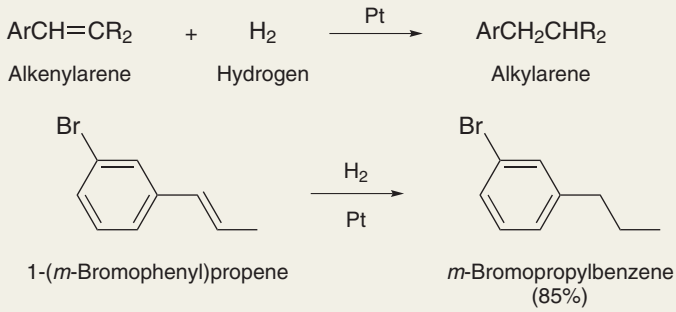
Section 11.20 Species with six π electrons that possess "special stability" include certain ions, such as *cyclopentadienide* anion and *cycloheptatrienyl* cation.

Cyclopentadienide anion (six π electrons) Cycloheptatrienyl cation (six π electrons)

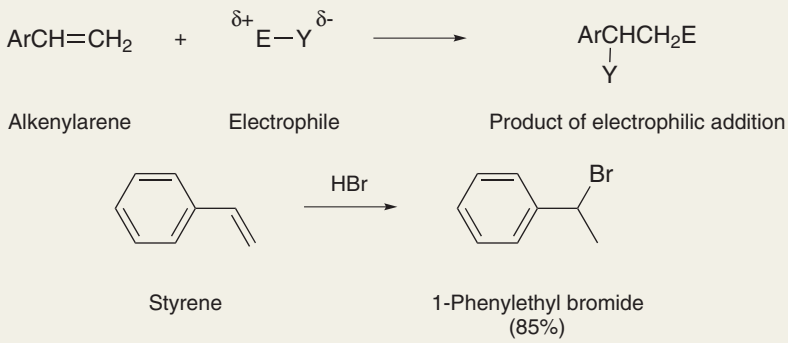
Oxidation (Section 11.12) Oxidation of alkylbenzenes occurs at the benzylic carbon of the alkyl group and gives a benzoic acid derivative. Oxidizing agents include sodium or potassium dichromate in aqueous sulfuric acid. Potassium permanganate ($KMnO_4$) is also effective.



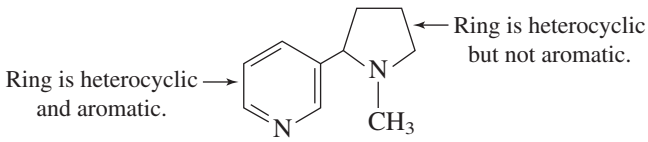
Hydrogenation (Section 11.13) Hydrogenation of aromatic rings is somewhat slower than hydrogenation of alkenes, and it is a simple matter to reduce the double bond of an unsaturated side chain in an arene while leaving the ring intact.



Electrophilic addition (Section 11.13) An aryl group stabilizes a benzylic carbocation and controls the regioselectivity of addition to a double bond involving the benzylic carbon. Markovnikov's rule is followed.



Section 11.21 **Heterocyclic aromatic compounds** are compounds that contain at least one atom other than carbon within an aromatic ring.



Nicotine

Section 11.22 Hückel's rule can be extended to heterocyclic aromatic compounds. Unshared electron pairs of the heteroatom may be used as π electrons as necessary to satisfy the $4n + 2$ rule.

PROBLEMS

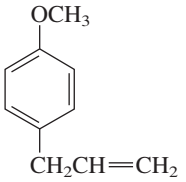
11.33 Write structural formulas and give the IUPAC names for all the isomers of $C_6H_5C_4H_9$ that contain a monosubstituted benzene ring.

11.34 Write a structural formula corresponding to each of the following:

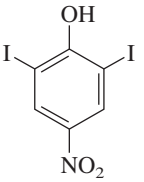
(a) Allylbenzene
(b) (*E*)-1-Phenyl-1-butene
(c) (*Z*)-2-Phenyl-2-butene
(d) (*R*)-1-Phenylethanol
(e) *o*-Chlorobenzyl alcohol
(f) *p*-Chlorophenol
(g) 2-Nitrobenzenecarboxylic acid
(h) *p*-Diisopropylbenzene
(i) 2,4,6-Tribromoaniline
(j) *m*-Nitroacetophenone
(k) 4-Bromo-3-ethylstyrene

11.35 Using numerical locants and the names in Table 11.1 as a guide, give an acceptable IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

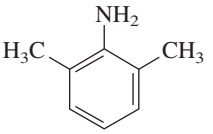
(a) Estragole (principal component of wormwood oil)



(b) Diosphenol (used in veterinary medicine to control parasites in animals)



(c) *m*-Xylidine (used in synthesis of lidocaine, a local anesthetic)

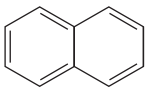


11.36 Write structural formulas and give acceptable names for all the isomeric

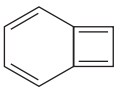
(a) Nitrotoluenes
(b) Dichlorobenzoic acids
(c) Tribromophenols
(d) Tetrafluorobenzenes
(e) Naphthalenecarboxylic acids

11.37 Each of the following may be represented by at least one alternative resonance structure in which all the six-membered rings correspond to Kekulé forms of benzene. Write such a resonance form for each.

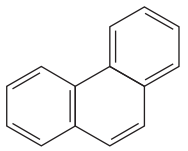
(a)



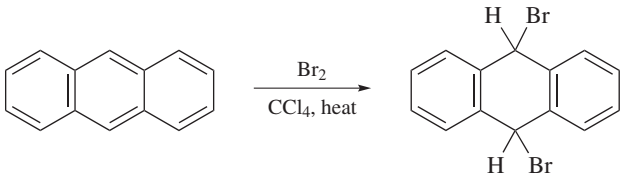
(b)



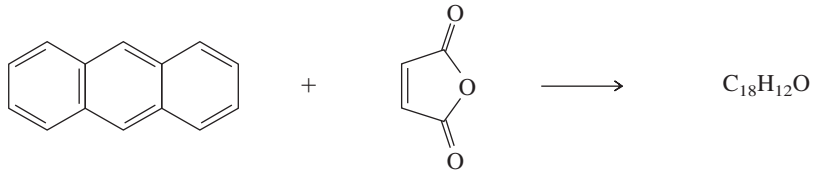
(c)



11.38 Bromine adds to the central ring of anthracene to give a 1,4-addition product. Write the structure of the product that would be formed if addition took place on one of the outer rings. By writing resonance structures for the product shown here and the one formed by addition to the outer ring, can you suggest why addition to the central ring is preferred?



11.39 Anthracene undergoes a Diels–Alder reaction with maleic anhydride to give a cycloadduct with the formula $C_{18}H_{12}O_3$. What is its structure?



11.40 Give the structure of the expected product from the reaction of isopropylbenzene with

(a) Hydrogen (3 mol), Pt

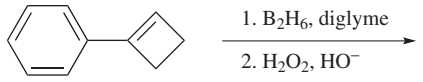
(b) Sodium and ethanol in liquid ammonia

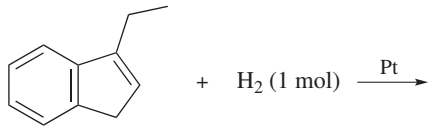
(c) Sodium dichromate, water, sulfuric acid, heat

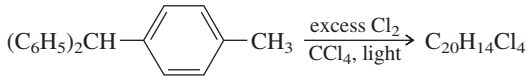
(d) *N*-Bromosuccinimide in CCl_4, heat, benzoyl peroxide

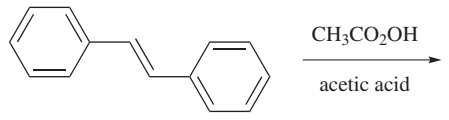
(e) The product of part (d) treated with sodium ethoxide in ethanol

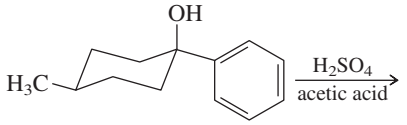
11.41 Each of the following reactions has been described in the chemical literature and gives a single organic product in good yield. Identify the product of each reaction.

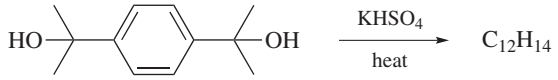
(a) 

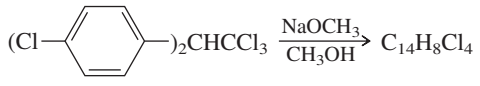
(b) 

(c) 

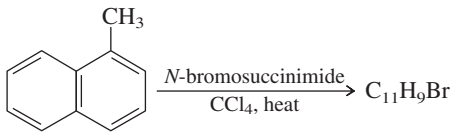
(d) 

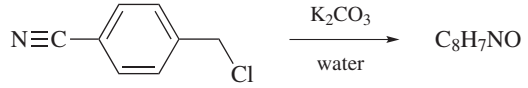
(e) 

(f) 

(g) 

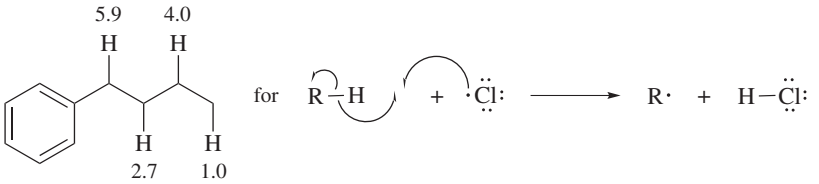
(DDT)

(h) 

(i) 

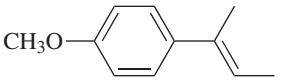
11.42 A certain compound A, when treated with *N*-bromosuccinimide and benzoyl peroxide under photochemical conditions in refluxing carbon tetrachloride, gave 3,4,5-tribromobenzyl bromide in excellent yield. Deduce the structure of compound A.

11.43 As in the free-radical halogenation of alkanes, chlorination of alkylbenzenes is less selective than bromination. Given the relative rates per hydrogen for hydrogen atom abstraction from 1-phenylbutane by chlorine for the elementary step shown, calculate the percentage of 1-chloro-1-phenylbutane in the $C_{10}H_{13}Cl$ product.



11.44 A compound was obtained from a natural product and had the molecular formula $C_{14}H_{20}O_3$. It contained three methoxy (—OCH_3) groups and a —$CH_2CH{=}C(CH_3)_2$ substituent. Oxidation with either chromic acid or potassium permanganate gave 2,3,5-trimethoxybenzoic acid. What is the structure of the compound?

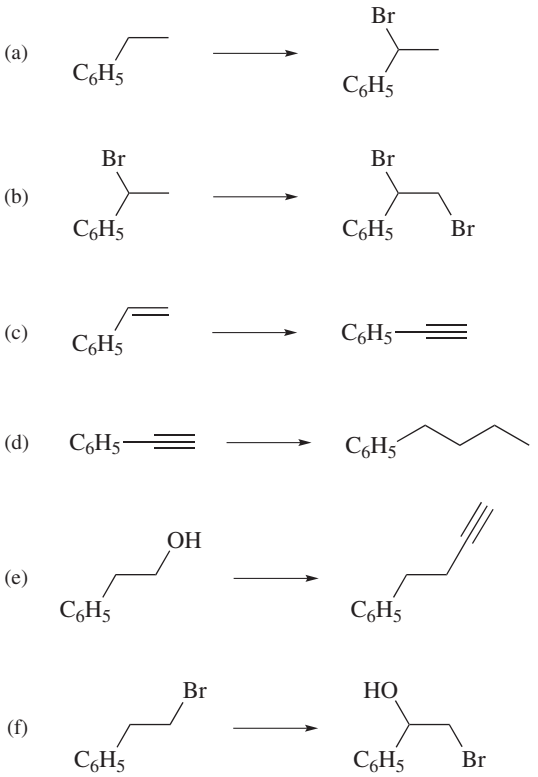
11.45 Hydroboration–oxidation of (*E*)-2-(*p*-anisyl)-2-butene yielded an alcohol A, mp 60°C, in 72% yield. When the same reaction was performed on the *Z* alkene, an isomeric liquid alcohol B was obtained in 77% yield. Suggest reasonable structures for A and B, and describe the relationship between them.



(*E*)-2-(*p*-Anisyl)-2-butene

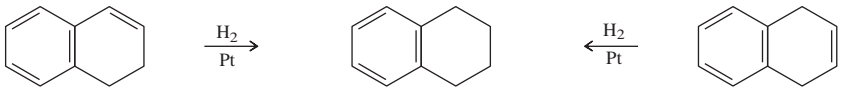
11.46 Birch reduction of 2-methoxynaphthalene gave a mixture of two isomeric compounds, each having the molecular formula $C_{11}H_{14}O$. Suggest reasonable structures for these compounds.

11.47 Suggest reagents suitable for carrying out each of the following conversions. In most cases more than one synthetic operation will be necessary.



11.48 The relative rates of reaction of ethane, toluene, and ethylbenzene with bromine atoms have been measured. The most reactive hydrocarbon undergoes hydrogen atom abstraction a million times faster than does the least reactive one. Arrange these hydrocarbons in order of decreasing reactivity.

11.49 Both 1,2-dihydronaphthalene and 1,4-dihydronaphthalene may be selectively hydrogenated to 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene.



1,2-Dihydronaphthalene 1,2,3,4-Tetrahydronaphthalene 1,4-Dihydronaphthalene

One of these isomers has a heat of hydrogenation of 101 kJ/mol (24.1 kcal/mol), and the heat of hydrogenation of the other is 113 kJ/mol (27.1 kcal/mol). Match the heat of hydrogenation with the appropriate dihydronaphthalene.

11.50 Suggest an explanation for the observed order of S_N1 reactivity of the following compounds.

Least reactive Most reactive

11.51 A standard method for preparing sodium cyclopentadienide (C_5H_5Na) is by the reaction of cyclopentadiene with a solution of $NaNH_2$ in liquid ammonia. Write a net ionic equation for this reaction, identify the acid and the base, and use curved arrows to track the flow of electrons.

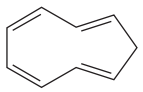
11.52 The same anion is formed by loss of the most acidic proton from 1-methyl-1,3-cyclopentadiene as from 5-methyl-1,3-cyclopentadiene. Explain.

11.53 Cyclooctatetraene has two different tetramethyl derivatives with methyl groups on four adjacent carbon atoms. They are both completely conjugated and are not stereoisomers. Write their structures.

11.54 Evaluate each of the following processes applied to cyclooctatetraene, and decide whether the species formed is aromatic or not.

(a) Addition of one more π electron, to give $C_8H_8^-$
(b) Addition of two more π electrons, to give $C_8H_8^{2-}$
(c) Removal of one π electron, to give $C_8H_8^+$
(d) Removal of two π electrons, to give $C_8H_8^{2+}$

11.55 Evaluate each of the following processes applied to cyclononatetraene, and decide whether the species formed is aromatic or not:



Cyclononatetraene

(a) Addition of one more π electron, to give $C_9H_{10}^-$
(b) Addition of two more π electrons, to give $C_9H_{10}^{2-}$
(c) Loss of H^+ from the sp^3-hybridized carbon
(d) Loss of H^+ from one of the sp^2-hybridized carbons

11.56 (a) Figure 11.20 is an electrostatic potential map of *calicene,* so named because its shape resembles a chalice (*calix* is the Latin word for "cup"). Both the electrostatic potential map and its calculated dipole moment (μ = 4.3 D) indicate that calicene is an unusually polar hydrocarbon. Which of the dipolar resonance forms, A or B, better corresponds to the electron distribution in the molecule? Why is this resonance form more important than the other?

Calicene A B

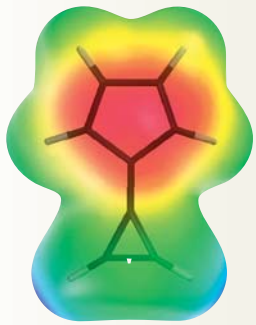
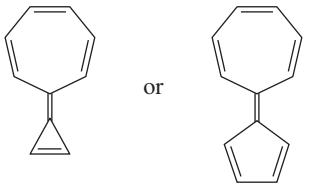


Figure 11.20

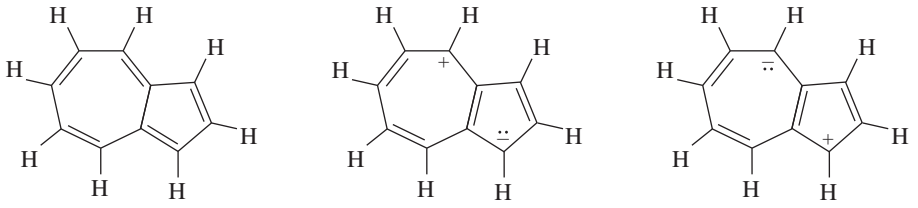
Electrostatic potential map of calicene (Problem 11.56).

(b) Which one of the following should be stabilized by resonance to a greater extent? (*Hint:* Consider the reasonableness of dipolar resonance forms.)



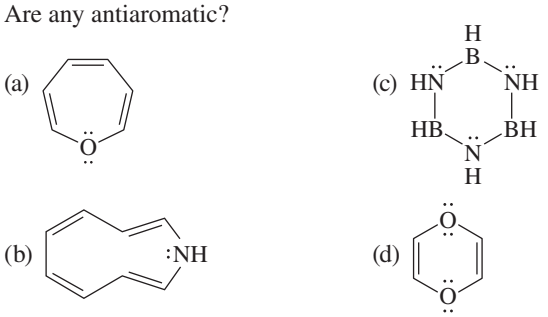
C D

11.57 Like calicene (Problem 11.56), the hydrocarbon azulene is planar and its electron distribution can be represented by a resonance contributor in which both rings satisfy Huckel's rule. Which is the major contributor, A or B?

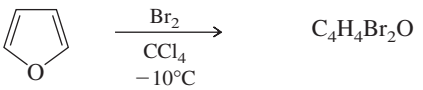


Azulene A B

11.58 Classify each of the following molecules as aromatic or not, according to Hückel's rule. Are any antiaromatic?



11.59 Furan is less stabilized by resonance than benzene and undergoes a 1,4 addition of bromine to give an unstable dibromide $C_4H_4Br_2O$. What is the structure of this compound?



Furan

11.60 Pellagra is a disease caused by a deficiency of *niacin* ($C_6H_5NO_2$) in the diet. Niacin can be synthesized in the laboratory by the side-chain oxidation of 3-methylpyridine with chromic acid or potassium permanganate. Suggest a reasonable structure for niacin.

11.61 *Nitroxoline* is the generic name by which 5-nitro-8-hydroxyquinoline is sold as an antibacterial drug. Write its structural formula.

11.62 *Acridine* is a heterocyclic aromatic compound obtained from coal tar that is used in the synthesis of dyes. The molecular formula of acridine is $C_{13}H_9N$, and its ring system is analogous to that of anthracene except that one CH group has been replaced by N. The two most stable resonance structures of acridine are equivalent to each other, and both contain a pyridine-like structural unit. Write a structural formula for acridine.

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 11

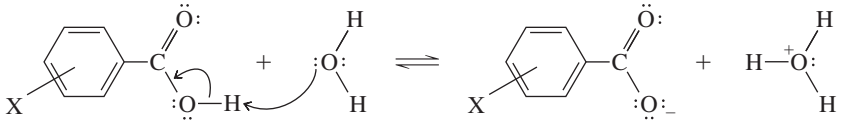
The Hammett Equation

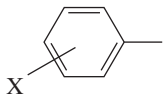
We have seen numerous examples of substituent effects on rates and equilibria of organic reactions and have developed a *qualitative* feel for various groups as electron-donating or electron-withdrawing. Beginning in the 1930s, Lewis P. Hammett of Columbia University developed a *quantitative* treatment of substituent effects represented in the equations:

$$\log \frac{k}{k_0} = \sigma\rho \qquad \text{and} \qquad \log \frac{K}{K_0} = \sigma\rho$$

where k and k_0 are rate constants and K and K_0 are equilibrium constants. σ and ρ are experimentally determined constants characteristic of a substituent (σ) and a reaction (ρ).

k_0 and K_0 are, respectively, the rate and equilibrium constants for the unsubstituted parent compound; that is, the substituent is H. The standard substituent H is assigned a σ value of 0. The standard reaction, assigned a value of $\rho = 1.0$, is the ionization of substituted benzoic acids.





is a meta- or para-substituted aryl group

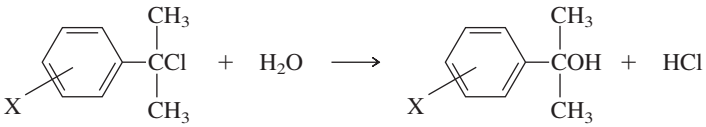
Defining ρ as 1.0 and inserting the measured K_a values for benzoic acid and its substituted derivative in the Hammett equation gives the value of σ for the substituent. When X is electron-withdrawing, the acid is stronger than benzoic acid and the sign of σ is +. Conversely, σ has a – sign for electron-releasing, acid-weakening groups. For individual substituents, σ differs according to whether it is meta or para to the reaction site. Table 11.3 gives σ values for the atoms and groups needed for Problems 11.63–11.69.

TABLE 11.3 Substituent Constants (σ)

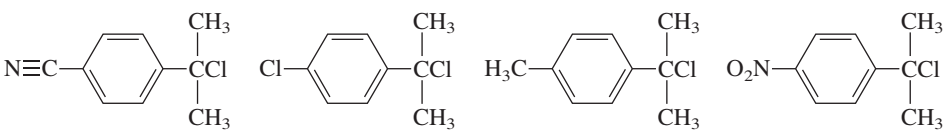
Substituent X	σ_{meta}	σ_{para}
CH_3	−0.06	−0.14
CF_3	0.46	0.53
CN	0.62	0.70
CH_3O	0.10	−0.12
Cl	0.37	0.24
F	0.34	0.15
NO_2	0.71	0.81

Source: O. Exner, *Correlation Analysis in Chemistry,* N.B. Chapman and J. Shorter, eds. Plenum Press, New York, 1978, Chapter 10.

11.63 ρ for the hydrolysis of a series of tertiary benzylic chlorides is –4.5.



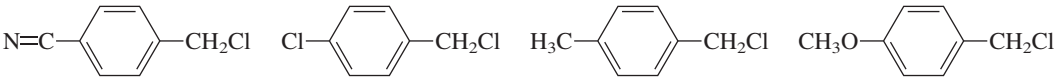
Which compound undergoes this reaction at the fastest rate?



A. B. C. D.

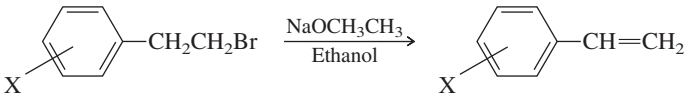
11.64 ρ for the reaction of a series of benzylic chlorides with potassium iodide in acetone is +0.8.

Which compound undergoes this reaction at the fastest rate?

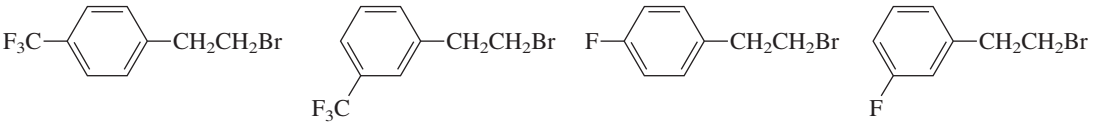


A. B. C. D.

11.65 ρ for the E2 elimination of a series of 2-arylethyl bromides with sodium ethoxide in ethanol is +2.1.



Which compound undergoes this reaction at the fastest rate?

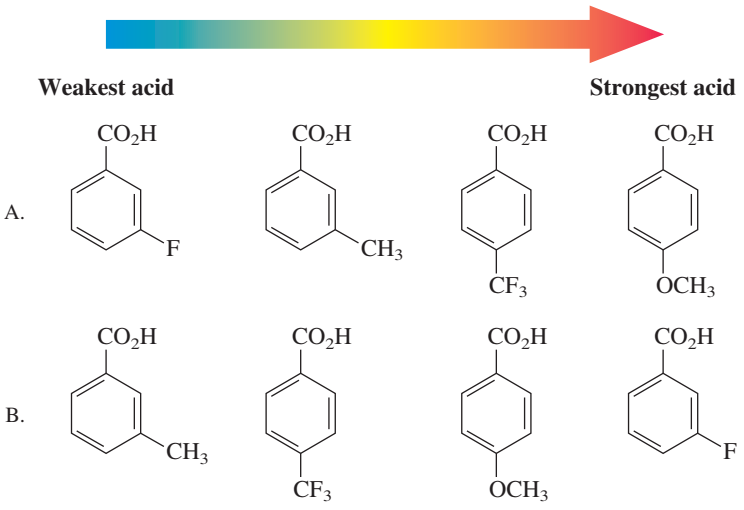


A. B. C. D.

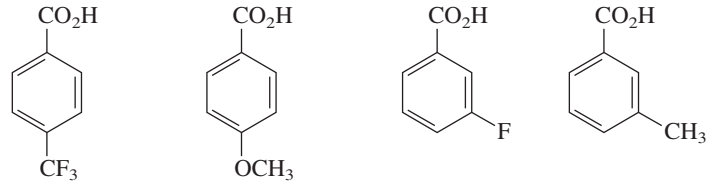
11.66 The pK_a of benzoic acid is 4.2. Use the Hammett equation and Table 11.3 to calculate the pK_a of *m*-nitrobenzoic acid. (*Hint:* A calculator isn't required if you think carefully about the Hammett equation and the definition of pK_a.)

A. 3.0
B. 3.5
C. 4.9
D. 6.0

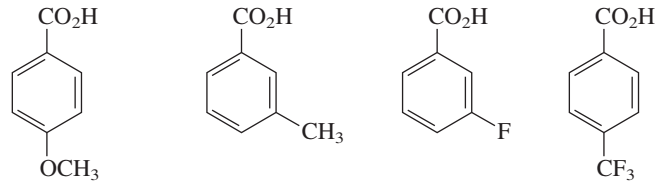
11.67 Use the table of σ values to rank the following substituted benzoic acids in order of *increasing* acidity. (Lowest pK_a = strongest acid)



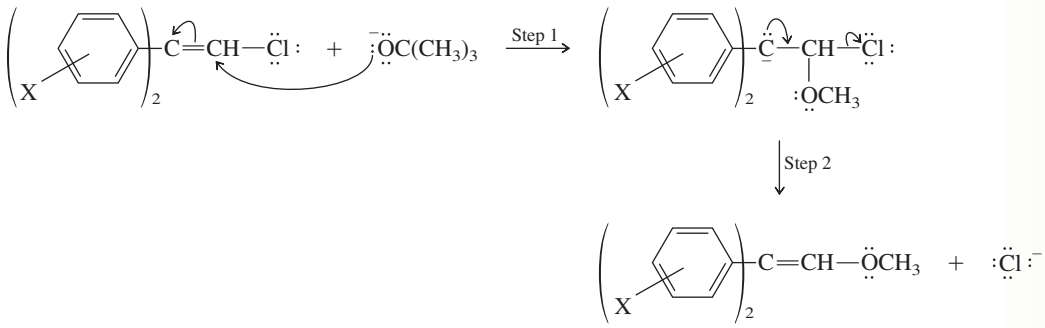
C.



D.



11.68 Nucleophilic substitution of the vinylic chloride shown follows an unusual two-step mechanism. The nucleophile adds to the double bond in the first step; chloride ion is expelled in the second.

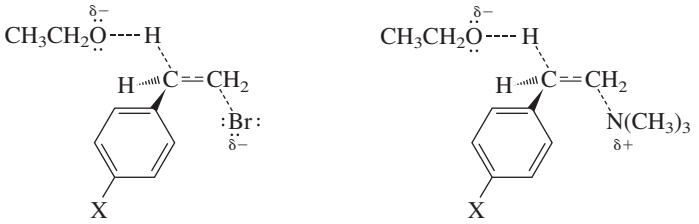


The measured value of ρ for the overall reaction is reported to be at least +4.5. Which is the most reasonable choice for the rate-determining step based on this information?

A. Step 1

B. Step 2

11.69 Transition states and ρ values are shown for E2 elimination in two series of compounds that differ in their leaving group. Based on their ρ values, in which series of reactants is there a greater degree of C—H bond breaking at the transition state?



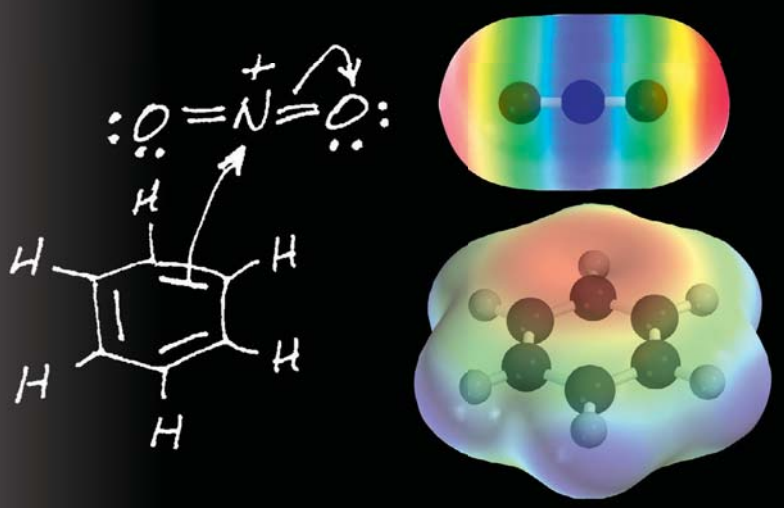
Reactant is $ArCH_2CH_2Br$; ρ = +2.1

Reactant is $ArCH_2CH_2\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3$; ρ = +3.8

A. $ArCH_2CH_2Br$

B. $ArCH_2CH_2\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3$

12



CHAPTER OUTLINE

12.1 Representative Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions of Benzene 457
12.2 Mechanistic Principles of Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution 458
12.3 Nitration of Benzene 459
12.4 Sulfonation of Benzene 461
12.5 Halogenation of Benzene 462
■ Biosynthetic Halogenation 464
12.6 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation of Benzene 465
12.7 Friedel–Crafts Acylation of Benzene 467
12.8 Synthesis of Alkylbenzenes by Acylation–Reduction 469
12.9 Rate and Regioselectivity in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution 470
12.10 Rate and Regioselectivity in the Nitration of Toluene 472
12.11 Rate and Regioselectivity in the Nitration of (Trifluoromethyl)benzene 474
12.12 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Activating Substituents 476
12.13 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Strongly Deactivating Substituents 480
12.14 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Halogens 482
12.15 Multiple Substituent Effects 484
12.16 Retrosynthetic Analysis and the Synthesis of Substituted Benzenes 486
12.17 Substitution in Naphthalene 488
12.18 Substitution in Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds 489
12.19 Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution 490
12.20 The Addition–Elimination Mechanism of Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution 492
12.21 Related Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitutions 494
12.22 **Summary** 496
Problems 500
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 12: Benzyne 507

The blackboard shows the flow of electrons in the reaction of benzene with nitronium ion. The electrostatic potential maps show the complementarity between the π-electron system of benzene and the nitrogen of nitronium ion.

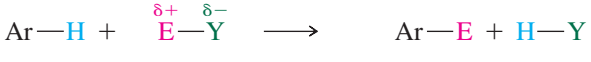
Electrophilic and Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution

In the preceding chapter the special stability of benzene was described, along with reactions in which an aromatic ring was present as a substituent. What about reactions that occur on the ring itself? What sort of reagents react with benzene and its derivatives, what products are formed, and by what mechanisms?

The largest and most important class of such reactions involve *electrophilic* reagents. We already have some experience with electrophiles, particularly with respect to their reaction with alkenes. Electrophilic reagents *add* to alkenes.

Alkene | Electrophilic reagent | Product of electrophilic addition

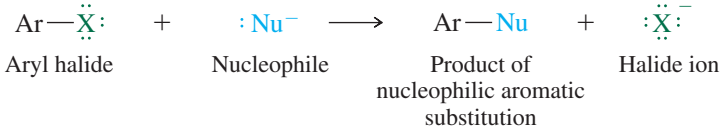
A different reaction occurs with arenes. *Substitution is observed instead of addition.* The electrophilic portion of the reagent replaces one of the hydrogens on the ring:



Arene | Electrophilic reagent | Product of electrophilic aromatic substitution

This reaction is known as **electrophilic aromatic substitution.** It is one of the fundamental processes of organic chemistry and the major concern of this chapter.

What about nucleophilic substitution in aryl halides?



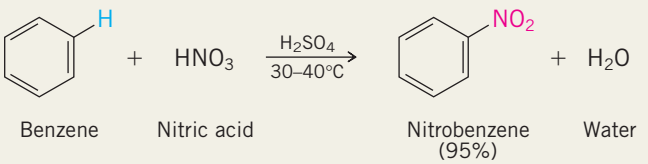
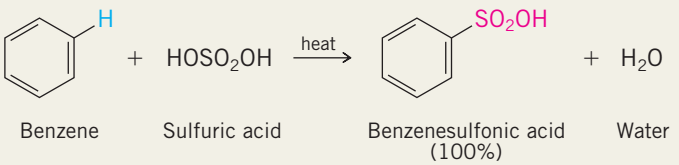
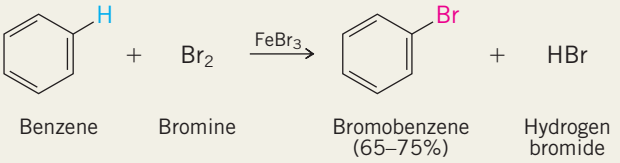
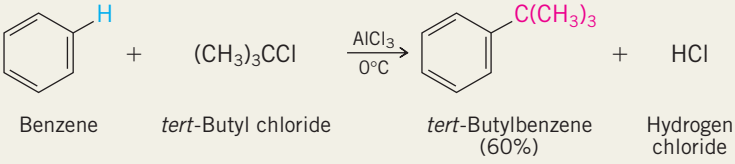
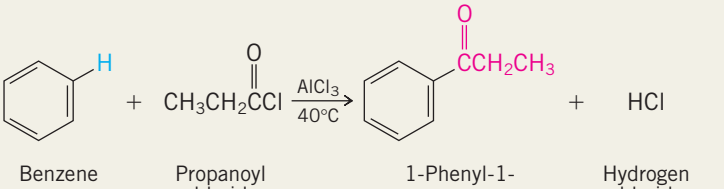
Aryl halide | Nucleophile | Product of nucleophilic aromatic substitution | Halide ion

In Chapter 8, we noted that aryl halides are normally much less reactive toward nucleophilic substitution than alkyl halides. In the present chapter we'll see examples of novel, useful, and mechanistically interesting **nucleophilic aromatic substitutions** and explore the structural features responsible for these reactions.

12.1 Representative Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions of Benzene

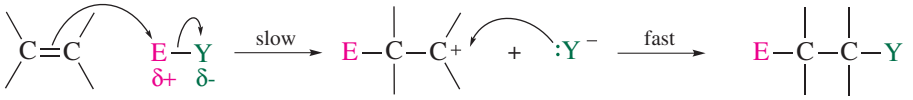
The scope of electrophilic aromatic substitution is quite large; both the aromatic compound and the electrophilic reagent are capable of wide variation. Indeed, it is this breadth of scope that makes electrophilic aromatic substitution so important. Electrophilic aromatic substitution is the method by which substituted derivatives of benzene are prepared. We can gain a feeling for these reactions by examining a few typical examples in which benzene is the substrate. These examples are listed in Table 12.1, and each will be discussed in more detail in Sections 12.3 through 12.7. First, however, let us look at the general mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution.

TABLE 12.1 Representative Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions of Benzene

Reaction and comments	Equation
1. Nitration Warming benzene with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid gives nitrobenzene. A nitro group (—NO_2) replaces one of the ring hydrogens.	 Benzene · Nitric acid · Nitrobenzene (95%) · Water
2. Sulfonation Treatment of benzene with hot concentrated sulfuric acid gives benzenesulfonic acid. A sulfonic acid group (—SO_2OH) replaces one of the ring hydrogens.	 Benzene · Sulfuric acid · Benzenesulfonic acid (100%) · Water
3. Halogenation Bromine reacts with benzene in the presence of iron(III) bromide as a catalyst to give bromobenzene. Chlorine reacts similarly in the presence of iron(III) chloride to give chlorobenzene.	 Benzene · Bromine · Bromobenzene (65–75%) · Hydrogen bromide
4. Friedel–Crafts alkylation Alkyl halides react with benzene in the presence of aluminum chloride to yield alkylbenzenes.	 Benzene · *tert*-Butyl chloride · *tert*-Butylbenzene (60%) · Hydrogen chloride
5. Friedel–Crafts acylation An analogous reaction occurs when acyl halides react with benzene in the presence of aluminum chloride. The products are aryl ketones.	 Benzene · Propanoyl chloride · 1-Phenyl-1-propanone (88%) · Hydrogen chloride

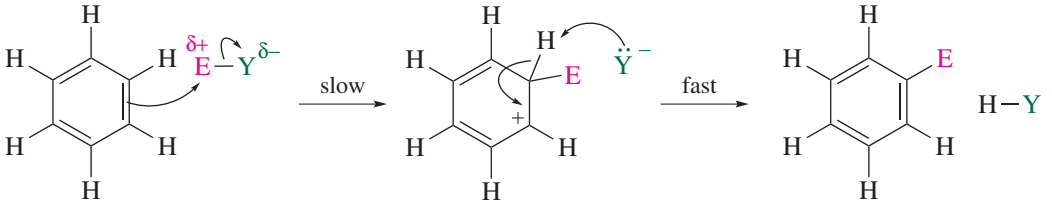
12.2 Mechanistic Principles of Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution

Recall the general mechanism for electrophilic addition to alkenes:



The first step is rate-determining. In it a carbocation forms when the pair of π electrons of the alkene is used to form a bond with the electrophile. The carbocation then undergoes rapid capture by some Lewis base present in the medium.

The first step in the reaction of electrophilic reagents with benzene is similar. An electrophile accepts an electron pair from the π system of benzene to form a carbocation.

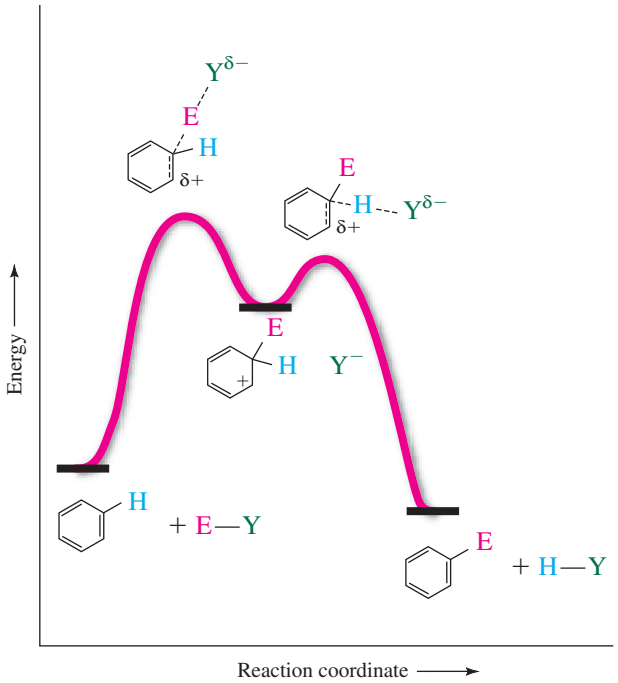


This carbocation, called a **cyclohexadienyl cation, arenium ion,** or **σ-complex,** then undergoes deprotonation to restore the aromaticity of the ring. If the Lewis base ($:Y^-$) had acted as a nucleophile and bonded to carbon, the product would have been a nonaromatic cyclohexadiene derivative. Substitution occurs preferentially because a substantial driving force is present that favors rearomatization.

Figure 12.1 is a potential energy diagram describing the general mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution. For electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions to

Figure 12.1

Potential energy diagram for electrophilic aromatic substitution.



overcome the high activation energy that characterizes the first step, the electrophile must be a reactive one. Many of the electrophilic reagents that react rapidly with alkenes do not react at all with benzene. Peroxy acids and diborane, for example, fall into this category. Others, such as bromine, react with benzene only in the presence of catalysts that increase their electrophilicity. The low level of reactivity of benzene toward electrophiles stems from the loss of aromaticity in the transition state for the rate-determining step.

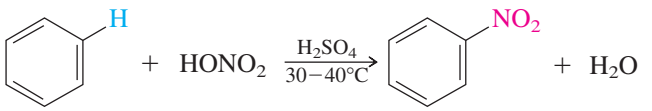
Problem 12.1

Based on Hammond's postulate, does the structure of the transition state for formation of the carbocation intermediate more closely resemble benzene or cyclohexadienyl cation?

With this as background, we'll examine each of the electrophilic aromatic substitutions presented in Table 12.1 in more detail, especially with respect to the electrophile that reacts with benzene.

12.3 Nitration of Benzene

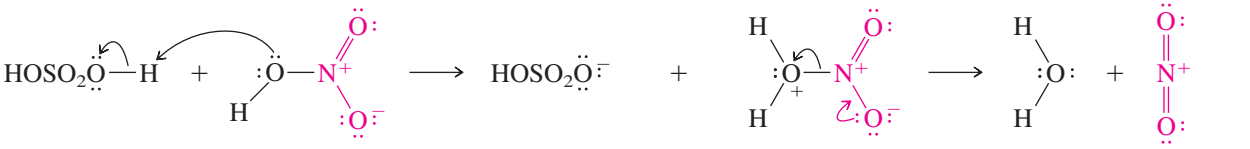
Having outlined the general mechanism for electrophilic aromatic substitution, we need only identify the specific electrophile in the nitration of benzene to have a fairly clear idea of how the reaction occurs.



Benzene — Nitric acid — Nitrobenzene (95%) — Water

The role of nitronium ion in the nitration of benzene was demonstrated by Sir Christopher Ingold—the same person who suggested the S_N1 and S_N2 mechanisms of nucleophilic substitution and who collaborated with Cahn and Prelog on the *R* and *S* notational system.

The electrophile (E^+) in this reaction is *nitronium ion* ($:\ddot{O}{=}\overset{+}{N}{=}\ddot{O}:$). The charge distribution in nitronium ion is evident both in its Lewis structure and in the electrostatic potential map of Figure 12.2. Nitronium ion is generated by the reaction of nitric acid with sulfuric acid, resulting in the protonation of nitric acid and loss of water:



Sulfuric acid — Nitric acid — Hydrogen sulfate ion — Protonated nitric acid — Water — Nitronium ion

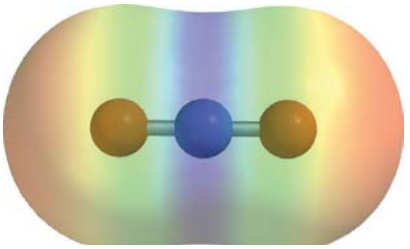


Figure 12.2

Electrostatic potential map of nitronium ion (NO_2^+). The positive charge is concentrated on nitrogen.

Mechanism 12.1

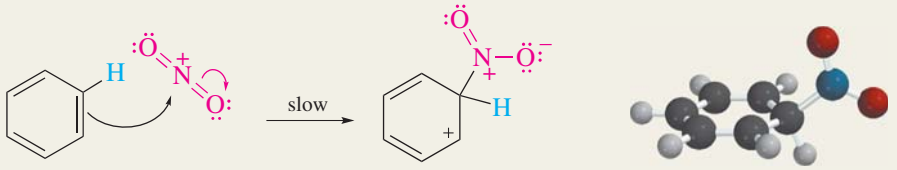
Nitration of Benzene

THE OVERALL REACTION:

Benzene Nitric acid Nitrobenzene Water

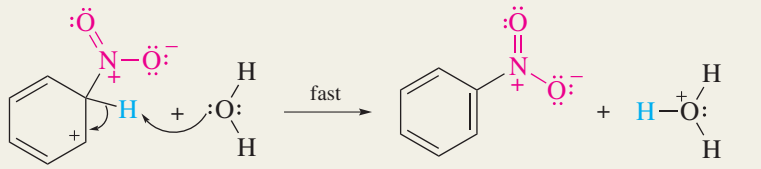
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Nitronium ion is the active electrophile and reacts with the π system of the aromatic ring. This step is rate-determining. (The molecular model depicts the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate.)



Benzene + nitronium ion Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate

Step 2: Deprotonation of the cyclohexadienyl cation restores the aromaticity of the ring.



Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate Water Nitrobenzene Hydronium ion

Mechanism 12.1 adapts the general mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution to the nitration of benzene. The first step is rate-determining; in it benzene reacts with nitronium ion to give the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate. In the second step, the aromaticity of the ring is restored by loss of a proton from the cyclohexadienyl cation.

One way we know that step 1 is rate-determining is that nitration of benzene does not exhibit a deuterium isotope effect (Section 5.17). Loss of deuterium (D=^{2}H) during nitration of C_6H_5D occurs at the same rate as loss of a single ^{1}H, which tells us that the C—D bond must break *after* the rate-determining step, not during it.

Nitration by electrophilic aromatic substitution is not limited to benzene alone, but is a general reaction of compounds that contain a benzene ring. It would be a good idea to write out the answers to the following two problems to ensure that you understand the relationship of starting materials to products and the mechanism of aromatic nitration before continuing to the next section.

Problem 12.2

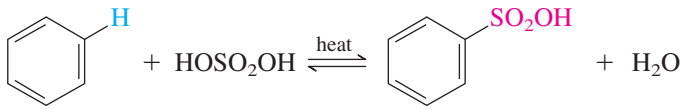
Nitration of 1,4-dimethylbenzene (*p*-xylene) gives a single product having the molecular formula $C_8H_9NO_2$ in high yield. What is this product?

Problem 12.3

Using $:\ddot{O}{=}\overset{+}{N}{=}\ddot{O}:$ as the electrophile, write a reasonable mechanism for the reaction given in Problem 12.2. Use curved arrows to show the flow of electrons.

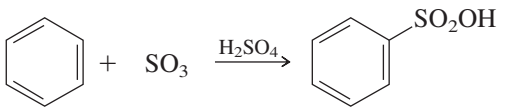
12.4 Sulfonation of Benzene

The reaction of benzene with sulfuric acid to produce benzenesulfonic acid is reversible and can be driven to completion by several techniques. Removing the water formed in the reaction, for example, allows benzenesulfonic acid to be obtained in virtually quantitative yield.



Benzene | Sulfuric acid | Benzenesulfonic acid | Water

When a solution of sulfur trioxide in sulfuric acid is used as the sulfonating agent, the rate of sulfonation is much faster and the equilibrium is displaced entirely to the side of products.



Benzene | Sulfur trioxide | Benzenesulfonic acid

Among the variety of electrophilic species present in concentrated sulfuric acid, sulfur trioxide (Figure 12.3) is probably the actual electrophile in aromatic sulfonation as shown in Mechanism 12.2.

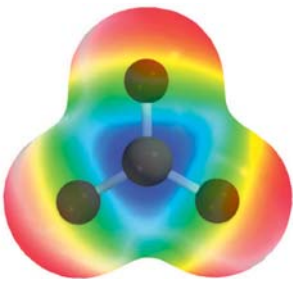


Figure 12.3

Electrostatic potential map of sulfur trioxide. The region of greatest positive charge surrounds sulfur.

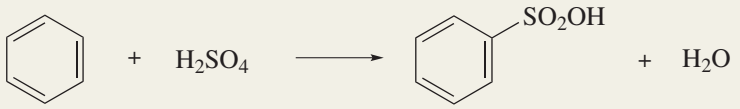
Problem 12.4

On being heated with sulfur trioxide in sulfuric acid, 1,2,4,5-tetramethylbenzene was converted to a product of molecular formula $C_{10}H_{14}O_3S$ in 94% yield. Suggest a reasonable structure for this product.

Mechanism 12.2

Sulfonation of Benzene

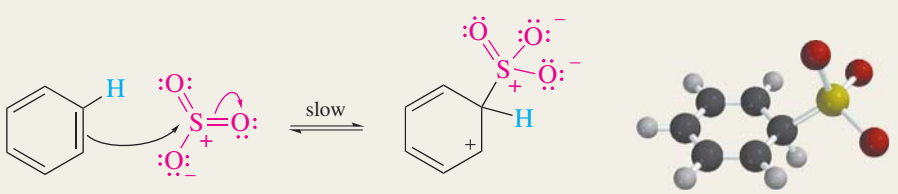
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Benzene | Sulfuric acid | Benzenesulfonic acid | Water

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The active electrophile in the sulfonation of aromatic compounds is sulfur trioxide and reacts with benzene in the rate-determining step.



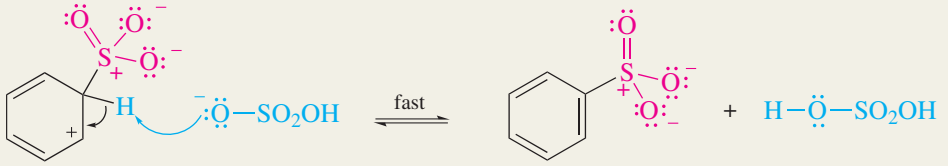
Benzene + sulfur trioxide | Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate

continued

Mechanism 12.2

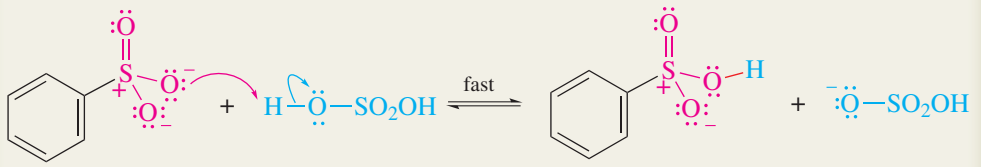
Sulfonation of Benzene *continued*

Step 2: A proton is abstracted from the sp^3-hybridized carbon of the intermediate to restore the aromaticity of the ring. The species shown that abstracts the proton is a hydrogen sulfate ion formed by ionization of sulfuric acid.



Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate | Hydrogen sulfate ion | Benzenesulfonate ion | Sulfuric acid

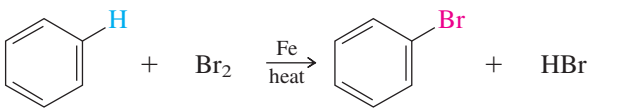
Step 3: A rapid proton transfer from the oxygen of sulfuric acid to the oxygen of benzenesulfonate completes the process.



Benzenesulfonate ion | Sulfuric acid | Benzenesulfonic acid | Hydrogen sulfate ion

12.5 Halogenation of Benzene

According to the usual procedure for preparing bromobenzene, bromine is added to benzene in the presence of metallic iron (customarily a few carpet tacks) and the reaction mixture is heated.



Benzene | Bromine | Bromobenzene (65–75%) | Hydrogen bromide

Bromine, although it adds rapidly to alkenes, is too weak an electrophile to react at an appreciable rate with benzene. A catalyst that increases the electrophilic properties of bromine must be present. Somehow carpet tacks can do this. How?

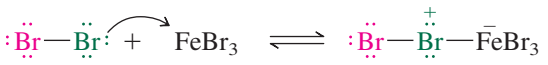
Iron(III) bromide ($FeBr_3$) is also called *ferric bromide.*

The active catalyst is not iron itself but iron(III) bromide, formed by reaction of iron and bromine.

$$2Fe + 3Br_2 \longrightarrow 2FeBr_3$$

Iron | Bromine | Iron(III) bromide

Iron(III) bromide, a weak Lewis acid, combines with bromine to form a Lewis acid/Lewis base complex.

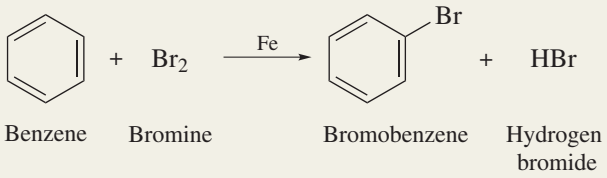


Lewis base | Lewis acid | Lewis acid/Lewis base complex

Mechanism 12.3

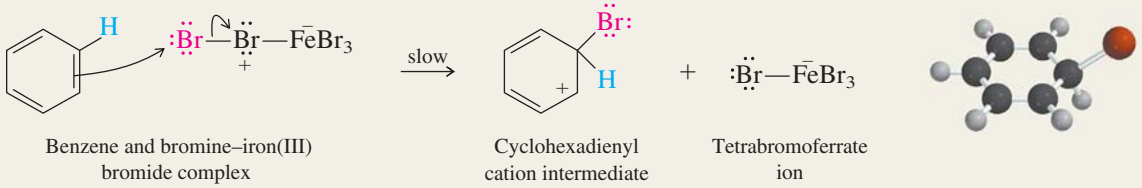
Bromination of Benzene

THE OVERALL REACTION:

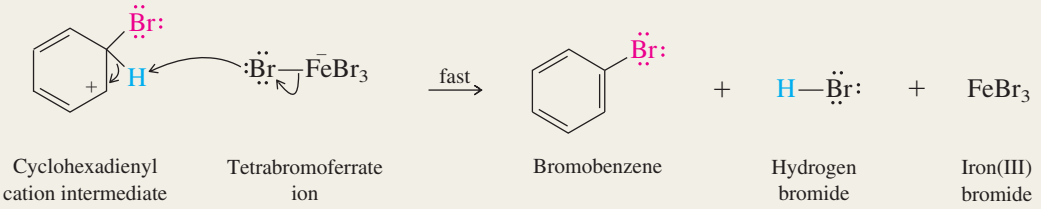


THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The bromine–iron(III) bromide complex is the active electrophile that reacts with benzene. Two of the π electrons of benzene are used to form a bond to bromine and give a cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate. (The molecular model depicts the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate.)



Step 2: Loss of a proton from the cyclohexadienyl cation yields bromobenzene.

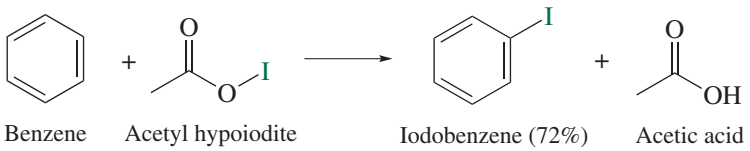


Complexation of bromine with iron(III) bromide makes bromine more electrophilic, and it reacts with benzene to give a cyclohexadienyl intermediate as shown in step 1 of Mechanism 12.3. In step 2, as in nitration and sulfonation, loss of a proton from the cyclohexadienyl cation is rapid and gives the product of electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Only small quantities of iron(III) bromide are required. It is a catalyst for the bromination and, as Mechanism 12.3 indicates, is regenerated in the course of the reaction. We'll see later in this chapter that some aromatic substrates are much more reactive than benzene and react rapidly with bromine even in the absence of a catalyst.

Chlorination is carried out in a manner similar to bromination and follows an analagous mechanism to give aryl chlorides.

Iodination with I_2 is not very effective, but specialized reagents such as acetyl hypoiodite have been developed that provide a useful synthesis of aryl iodides.

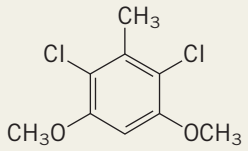


Problem 12.5

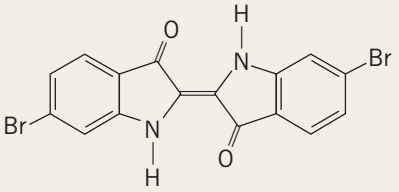
Given the fact that iodine in acetyl hypoiodite is much more electrophilic than I_2, suggest a reasonable mechanism for the preceding reaction.

Biosynthetic Halogenation

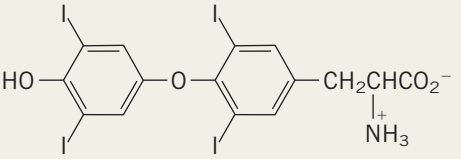
Over 4000 natural products contain halogens. Some naturally occurring aryl halides include:



2,6-Dichloro-3,5-dimethoxytoluene: an antifungal compound isolated from lily plants



Dibromoindigo: principal constituent of a dye known as Tyrian purple and prized by ancient cultures, isolated from a species of Mediterranean sea snail

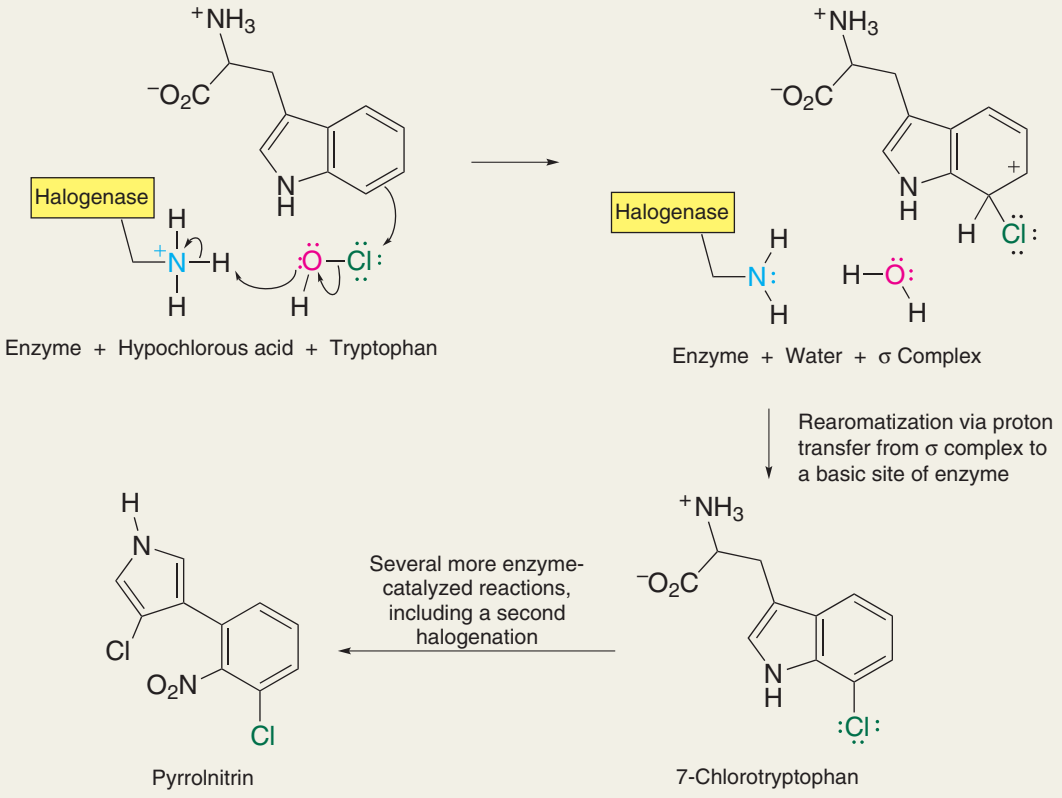


Thyroxine: a hormone of the thyroid gland; the (*S*)-enantiomer is a widely used drug prescribed to increase metabolic rate

The presence of the halogen in these and in other halogenated natural products has a strong effect on their properties, and their biosynthetic origin was a scientific puzzle of longstanding. What are the biological halogenating agents, what enzymes catalyze the halogenation, and how do they do it? Recent studies have unlocked the answers to some of these questions.

Biosynthetic halogenation can occur through multiple pathways, but many halogenase enzymes use *electrophilic* halogenating species that are produced by oxidation of halide ions.

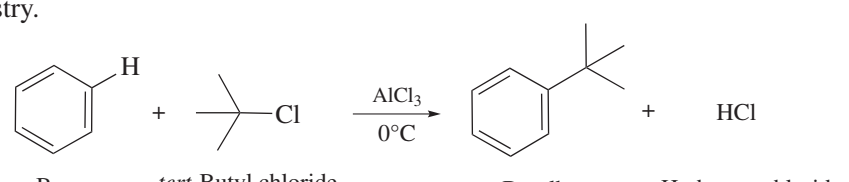
The biosynthesis of the antifungal antibiotic pyrrolnitrin begins with enzyme-catalyzed chlorination of the benzene ring of the amino acid tryptophan. The enzyme is a *halogenase,* and the electrophilic chlorinating agent is thought to be hypochlorous acid (HOCl), which is generated in a separate step. Although the oxidation state of chlorine in HOCl is +1, it alone is not electrophilic enough to chlorinate tryptophan but can be activated through hydrogen bonding with a nearby amino group found in the catalytic site of the enzyme. Loss of a proton to rearomatize the ring occurs from the σ complex and gives 7-chlorotryptophan, which undergoes subsequent conversion to pyrrolnitrin by way of additional enzyme-catalyzed processes, including a second biochemical chlorination.



12.6 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation of Benzene

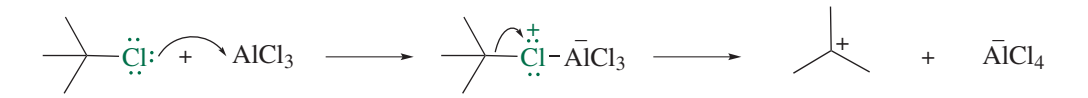
In a **Friedel–Crafts reaction,** alkyl halides react with benzene in the presence of aluminum chloride to give an alkylbenzene. It is one of the most useful synthetic methods in organic chemistry.

The reaction that bears their name was discovered in 1877 by Charles Friedel and James M. Crafts at the Sorbonne in Paris. Crafts later became president at M.I.T.



Benzene — *tert*-Butyl chloride — *tert*-Butylbenzene (60%) — Hydrogen chloride

Although alkyl halides by themselves are insufficiently electrophilic to react with benzene, alkylation is catalyzed by aluminum chloride, which acts as a Lewis acid to convert secondary and tertiary alkyl halides to carbocations, which then alkylate the aromatic ring.



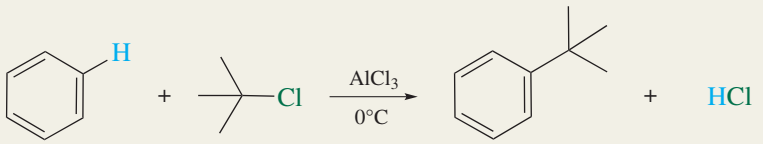
tert-Butyl chloride — Aluminum chlroide — Lewis acid/Lewis base complex — *tert*-Butyl cation — Tetrachloro-aluminate ion

Mechanism 12.4 illustrates the reaction of benzene with *tert*-butyl cation (step 1) followed by formation of *tert*-butylbenzene by abstraction of a proton from the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate (step 2).

Mechanism 12.4

Friedel–Crafts Alkylation

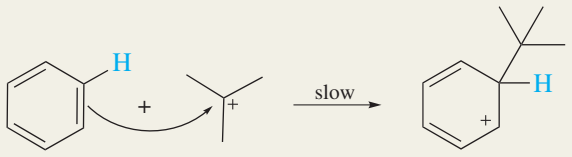
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Benzene — *tert*-Butyl chloride — *tert*-Butylbenzene — Hydrogen chloride

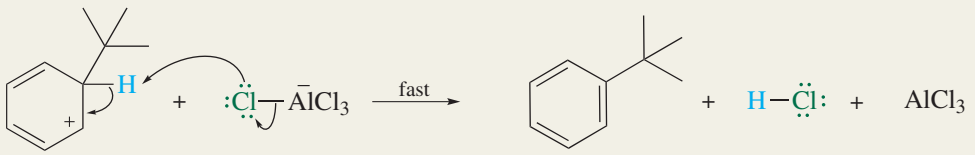
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Once generated by the reaction of *tert*-butyl chloride and aluminum chloride, *tert*-butyl cation is attacked by the π electrons of benzene, and a carbon-carbon bond is formed. (The molecular model depicts the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate.)



Benzene — *tert*-Butyl cation — Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate

Step 2: Loss of a proton from the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate yields *tert*-butylbenzene.



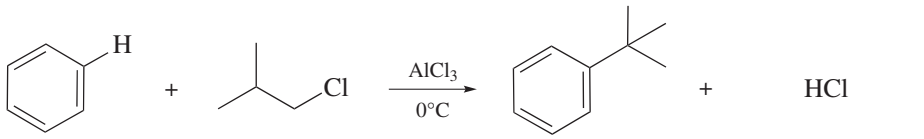
Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate — Tetrachloroaluminate ion — *tert*-Butylbenzene — Hydrogen chloride — Aluminum chloride

Secondary alkyl halides react by a similar mechanism. Methyl and ethyl halides do not form carbocations under Friedel–Crafts conditions, but their aluminum chloride complexes contain highly polarized carbon–halogen bonds and these complexes do alkylate benzene.

Methyl halide/aluminum halide complex | Ethyl halide/aluminum halide complex

A drawback to Friedel–Crafts alkylation is that rearrangements can occur, especially with primary alkyl halides. For example, Friedel–Crafts alkylation of benzene with isobutyl chloride yields only *tert*-butylbenzene.

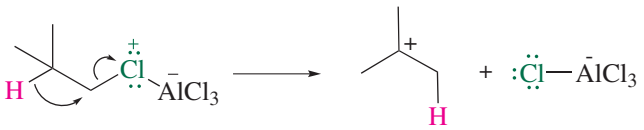
Other limitations to Friedel–Crafts reactions will be encountered in this chapter and are summarized in Table 12.4 (page 498).



Benzene | Isobutyl chloride | *tert*-Butylbenzene | Hydrogen chloride

Here, the electrophile is *tert*-butyl cation formed by a hydride migration that accompanies ionization of the carbon–chlorine bond.

We saw rearrangements involving hydride shifts earlier in Sections 5.13 and 6.5.

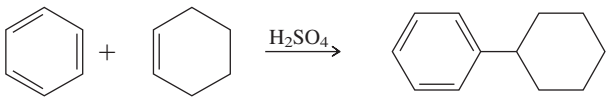


Isobutyl chloride/aluminum chloride complex | *tert*-Butyl cation | Tetrachloroaluminate ion

Problem 12.6

In an attempt to prepare propylbenzene, a chemist alkylated benzene with 1-chloropropane and aluminum chloride. However, two isomeric hydrocarbons were obtained in a ratio of 2:1, the desired propylbenzene being the minor component. What do you think was the major product? How did it arise?

Because electrophilic aromatic substitution is simply another reaction available to a carbocation, other carbocation precursors can be used in place of alkyl halides. For example, alkenes, which are converted to carbocations by protonation, can be used to alkylate benzene.



Benzene | Cyclohexene | Cyclohexylbenzene (65–68%)

Problem 12.7

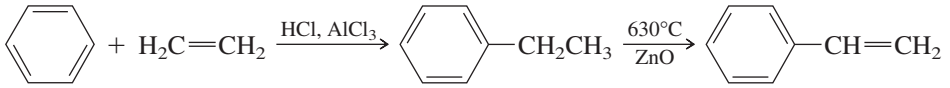
Write a reasonable mechanism for the formation of cyclohexylbenzene from the reaction of benzene, cyclohexene, and sulfuric acid.

Problem 12.8

tert-Butylbenzene can be prepared by alkylation of benzene using an alkene or an alcohol as the carbocation source. What alkene? What alcohol?

Alkenyl halides such as vinyl chloride ($H_2C{=}CHCl$) do *not* form carbocations on treatment with aluminum chloride and so cannot be used in Friedel–Crafts reactions. Thus,

the industrial preparation of styrene from benzene and ethylene does not involve vinyl chloride but proceeds by way of ethylbenzene.



Benzene Ethylene Ethylbenzene Styrene

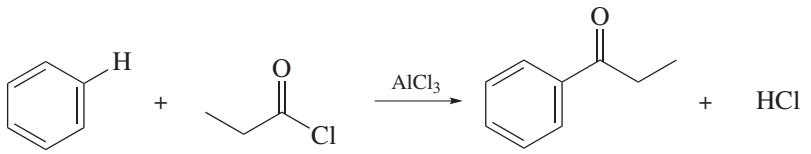
Dehydrogenation of alkylbenzenes, although useful in the industrial preparation of styrene, is not a general procedure and is not well suited to the laboratory preparation of alkenylbenzenes. In such cases an alkylbenzene is subjected to benzylic bromination (Section 11.10), and the resulting benzylic bromide is treated with base to effect dehydrohalogenation.

Problem 12.9

Outline a synthesis of 1-phenylcyclohexene from benzene and cyclohexene.

12.7 Friedel–Crafts Acylation of Benzene

Another version of the Friedel–Crafts reaction uses **acyl halides** instead of alkyl halides and yields aryl ketones.



Benzene Propanoyl chloride 1-Phenyl-1-propanone (88%) Hydrogen chloride

The electrophile in a Friedel–Crafts acylation is an **acyl cation** (also referred to as an **acylium ion**) and is formed on reaction of acyl chlorides with aluminum chloride in much the same way as alkyl cations are formed from alkyl halides.

An acyl group has the general formula

Electron delocalization in the acyl cation derived from propanoyl chloride is represented by the following two resonance contributors. Note that electron release from oxygen generates a contributing structure that satisfies the octet rule and disperses the positive charge.

Propanoyl cation

Unlike alkyl carbocations, *acyl cations do not rearrange.* An acyl cation is so strongly stabilized by electron delocalization that it is more stable than any other ion that would arise from it by a hydride or alkyl group shift.

The electrostatic potential map of propanoyl cation in Figure 12.4 illustrates the positive character of the acyl carbon, and it is this carbon that is the reactive site in electrophilic aromatic substitution (Mechanism 12.5).

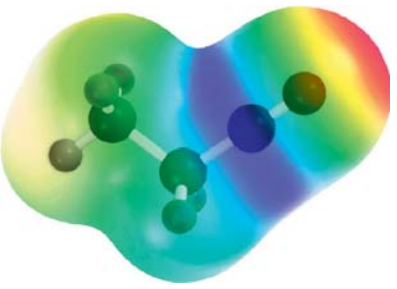
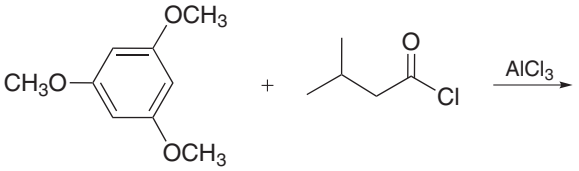


Figure 12.4

Electrostatic potential map of propanoyl cation. The region of greatest positive charge is associated with the carbon of the C=O group.

Problem 12.10

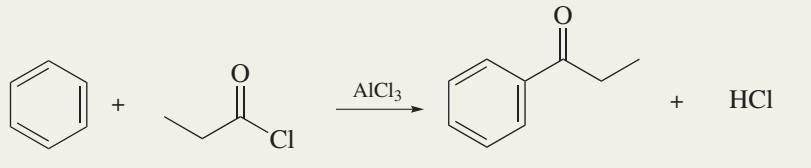
The reaction shown gives a single product in 88% yield. What is that product?



Mechanism 12.5

Friedel–Crafts Acylation

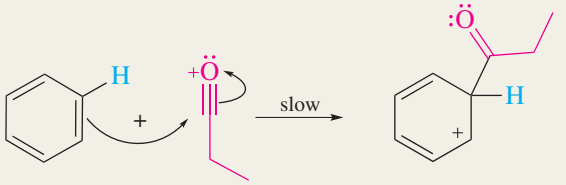
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Benzene | Propanoyl chloride | 1-Phenyl-1-propanone | Hydrogen chloride

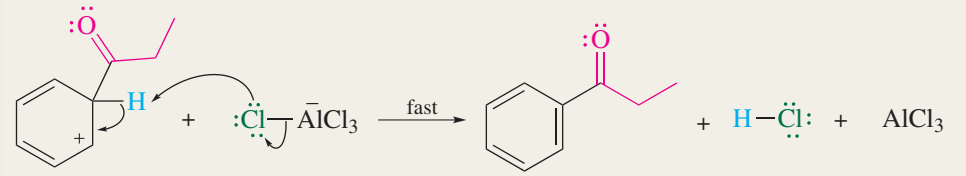
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The acyl cation reacts with benzene. A pair of π electrons of benzene is used to form a covalent bond to the carbon of the acyl cation. (The molecular model depicts the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate.)



Benzene | Propanoyl cation | Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate

Step 2: Aromaticity of the ring is restored when it loses a proton to give the aryl ketone.



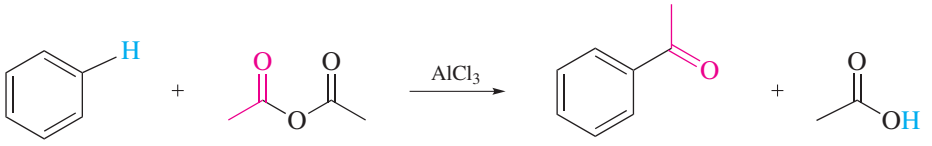
Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate | Tetrachloro-aluminate ion | 1-Phenyl-1-propanone | Hydrogen chloride | Aluminum chloride

Acyl chlorides are readily prepared from carboxylic acids by reaction with thionyl chloride.

Carboxylic acid | Thionyl chloride | Acyl chloride | Sulfur dioxide | Hydrogen chloride

Carboxylic acid anhydrides, compounds of the type $RCOCR$ (O O), are also sources of acyl cations and, in the presence of aluminum chloride, acylate benzene. One acyl unit of an acid anhydride becomes attached to the benzene ring, and the other becomes part of a carboxylic acid.

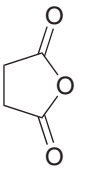
Acetophenone is one of the commonly encountered benzene derivatives listed in Table 11.1.



Benzene | Acetic anhydride | Acetophenone (76%) | Acetic acid

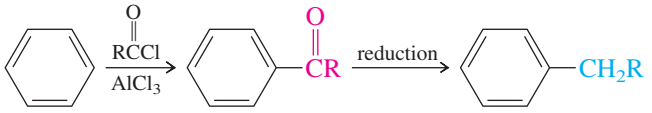
Problem 12.11

Succinic anhydride, the structure of which is shown, is a cyclic anhydride often used in Friedel–Crafts acylations. Give the structure of the product obtained when benzene is acylated with succinic anhydride in the presence of aluminum chloride.



12.8 Synthesis of Alkylbenzenes by Acylation–Reduction

Because acylation of an aromatic ring can be accomplished without rearrangement, it is frequently used as the first step in a procedure for the *alkylation* of aromatic compounds by *acylation–reduction.* As we saw in Section 12.6, Friedel–Crafts alkylation of benzene with primary alkyl halides normally yields products having rearranged alkyl groups. When preparing a compound of the type $ArCH_2R$, a two-step sequence is used in which the first step is a Friedel–Crafts acylation.



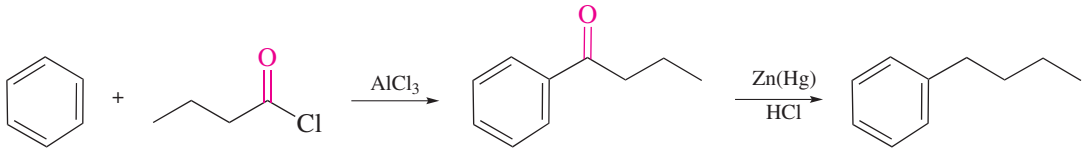
Benzene Aryl ketone Alkylbenzene

The second step is a reduction of the carbonyl group (C═O) to a methylene group (CH_2).

The most commonly used method for reducing an aryl ketone to an alkylbenzene employs a zinc–mercury amalgam in concentrated hydrochloric acid and is called the **Clemmensen reduction.** Zinc is the reducing agent.

An amalgam is a mixture or alloy of mercury with another metal. For many years silver amalgams were used in dental fillings.

The synthesis of butylbenzene illustrates the acylation–reduction sequence.



Benzene Butanoyl chloride 1-Phenyl-1-butanone (86%) Butylbenzene (73%)

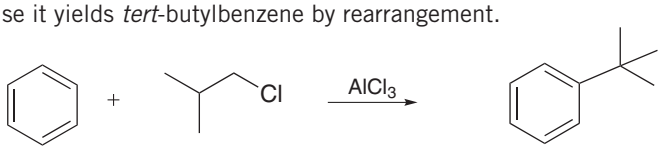
Direct alkylation of benzene using 1-chlorobutane and aluminum chloride would yield *sec*-butylbenzene by rearrangement and so could not be used.

Problem 12.12

Using benzene and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents, suggest efficient syntheses of

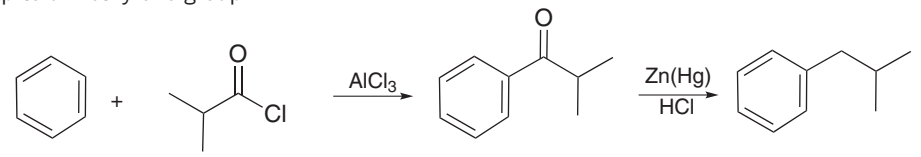
(a) Isobutylbenzene, $C_6H_5CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$ (b) (2,2-Dimethylpropyl)benzene, $C_6H_5CH_2C(CH_3)_3$

Sample Solution (a) Friedel–Crafts alkylation of benzene with isobutyl chloride is not suitable, because it yields *tert*-butylbenzene by rearrangement.



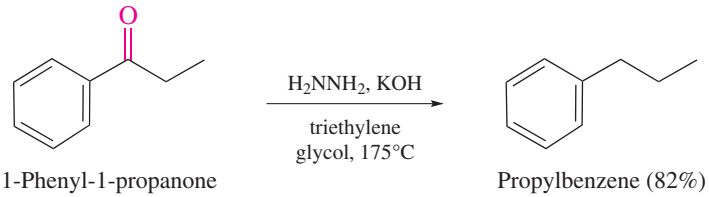
Benzene Isobutyl chloride *tert*-Butylbenzene (66%)

The two-step acylation–reduction sequence is required. Acylation of benzene puts the side chain on the ring with the correct carbon skeleton. Clemmensen reduction converts the carbonyl group to a methylene group.



Benzene 2-Methylpropanoyl chloride 2-Methyl-1-phenyl-propan-1-one (84%) Isobutylbenzene (80%)

Another way to reduce aldehyde and ketone carbonyl groups is by **Wolff–Kishner reduction.** Heating an aldehyde or a ketone with hydrazine (H_2NNH_2) and sodium or potassium hydroxide in a high-boiling alcohol such as triethylene glycol (bp 287°C) converts the carbonyl to a CH_2 group.



1-Phenyl-1-propanone — Propylbenzene (82%)

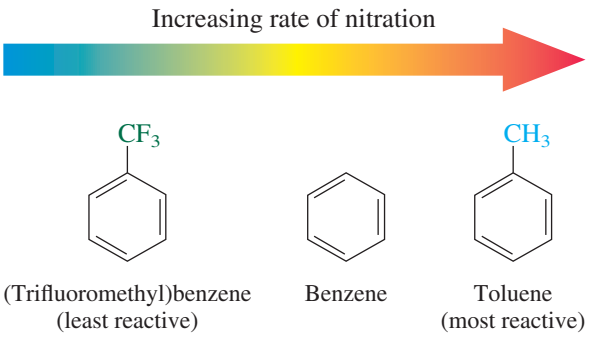
Both the Clemmensen and the Wolff–Kishner reductions convert an aldehyde or ketone carbonyl to a methylene group. Neither will reduce the carbonyl group of a carboxylic acid, nor are carbon–carbon double or triple bonds affected by these methods.

12.9 Rate and Regioselectivity in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution

So far we've been concerned only with electrophilic substitution of benzene. Two important questions arise when we turn to substitution on rings that already bear at least one substituent:

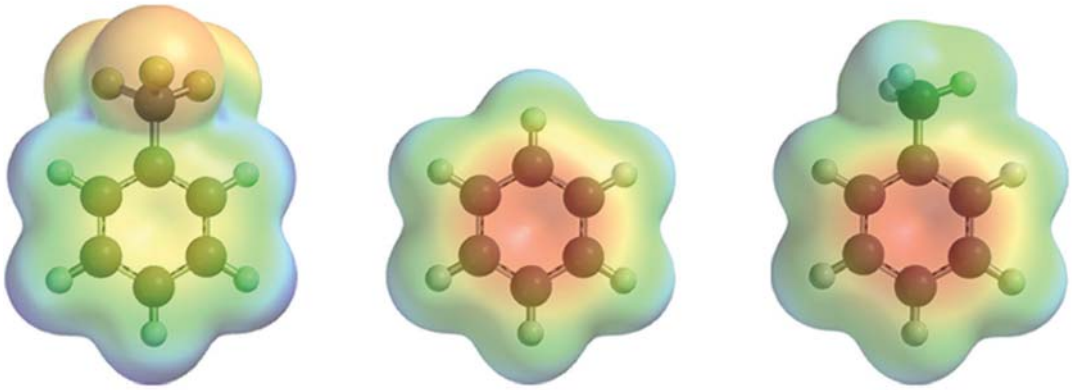
1. What is the effect of a substituent on the *rate* of electrophilic aromatic substitution?
2. What is the effect of a substituent on the *regioselectivity* of electrophilic aromatic substitution?

To illustrate substituent effects on rate, consider the nitration of benzene, toluene, and (trifluoromethyl)benzene.



The range of nitration rates among these three compounds is quite large; it covers a spread of approximately 1-millionfold. Toluene undergoes nitration some 20–25 times faster than benzene. Because toluene is more reactive than benzene, we say that a methyl group *activates* the ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution. (Trifluoromethyl)benzene, on the other hand, undergoes nitration about 40,000 times more slowly than benzene. A trifluoromethyl group *deactivates* the ring toward electrophilic aromatic substitution. The structural factors responsible for these rate differences will be discussed in more detail beginning in the next section, but we can gain a clue in advance of that material from the three electrostatic potential maps in Figure 12.5, which illustrate how the aromatic rings of benzene and toluene are more "electron-rich" than the ring of (trifluoromethyl)benzene.

Just as there is a marked difference in how methyl and trifluoromethyl substituents affect the rate of electrophilic aromatic substitution, so too is there a marked difference in how they affect its regioselectivity.

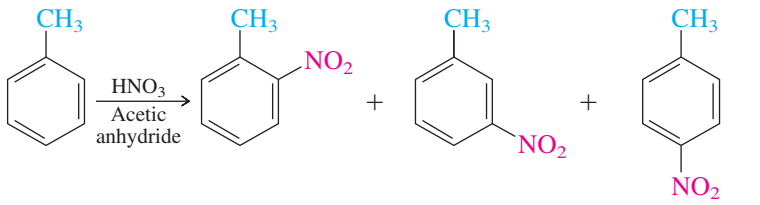


(Trifluoromethyl)benzene Benzene Toluene

Figure 12.5

Electrostatic potential maps of (trifluoromethyl) benzene, benzene, and toluene illustrating the decrease in π-electron density in the ring of (trifluoromethyl) benzene compared with benzene and toluene. The color range is the same for all three maps.

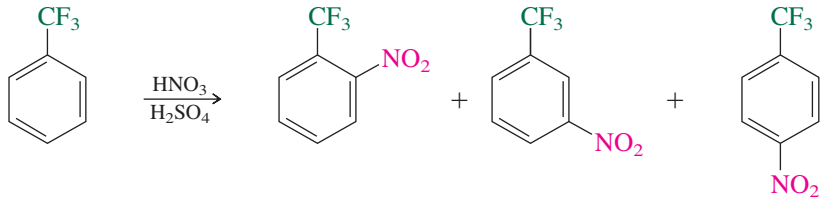
Three products are possible from nitration of toluene: *o*-nitrotoluene, *m*-nitrotoluene, and *p*-nitrotoluene. All are formed, but not in equal amounts. Together, the ortho- and para-substituted isomers make up 97% of the product mixture; the meta only 3%.



Toluene *o*-Nitrotoluene (63%) *m*-Nitrotoluene (3%) *p*-Nitrotoluene (34%)

Because substitution in toluene occurs primarily at positions ortho and para to methyl, we say that *a methyl substituent is an* **ortho, para director.**

Nitration of (trifluoromethyl)benzene, on the other hand, yields almost exclusively *m*-nitro(trifluoromethyl)benzene (91%). The ortho- and para-substituted isomers are minor components of the reaction mixture.



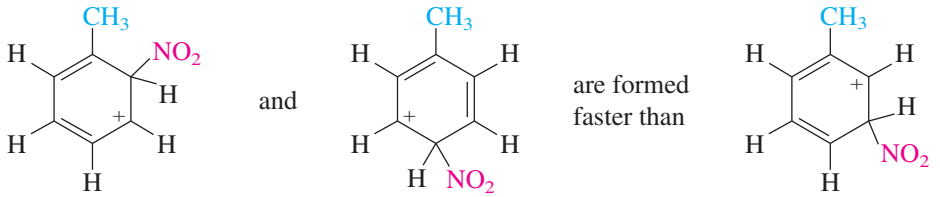
(Trifluoromethyl)benzene *o*-Nitro(trifluoromethyl)benzene (6%) *m*-Nitro(trifluoromethyl)benzene (91%) *p*-Nitro(trifluoromethyl)benzene (3%)

Because substitution in (trifluoromethyl)benzene occurs primarily at positions meta to the substituent, *a trifluoromethyl group is a* **meta director.**

The regioselectivity of substitution, like the rate, is strongly affected by the substituent. In the following several sections we will examine the relationship between the structure of the substituent and its effect on rate and regioselectivity of electrophilic aromatic substitution.

12.10 Rate and Regioselectivity in the Nitration of Toluene

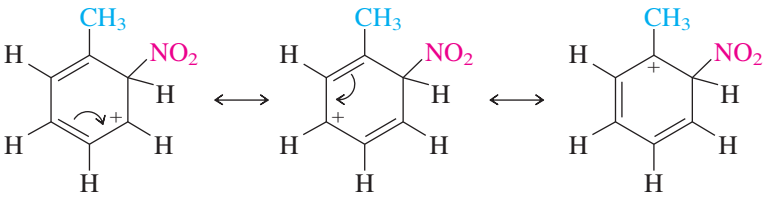
Why is there such a marked difference between methyl and trifluoromethyl substituents in their influence on electrophilic aromatic substitution? Methyl is **activating** and ortho, para-directing; trifluoromethyl is **deactivating** and meta-directing. The first point to remember is that the regioselectivity of substitution is set once the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate is formed. If we can explain why



in the rate-determining step, we will understand the reasons for the regioselectivity. A principle we have used before serves us well here: *a more stable carbocation is formed faster than a less stable one.* The most likely reason for the directing effect of a CH_3 group must be that the carbocations that give *o*- and *p*-nitrotoluene are more stable than the one that gives *m*-nitrotoluene.

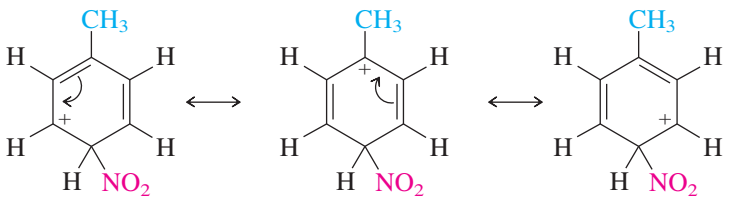
One way to assess the relative stabilities of these carbocations is to examine electron delocalization in them using a resonance description. The cyclohexadienyl cations leading to *o*- and *p*-nitrotoluene have tertiary carbocation character. Each has a contributing structure in which the positive charge resides on the carbon that bears the methyl group.

Ortho nitration



This resonance contributor is a tertiary carbocation

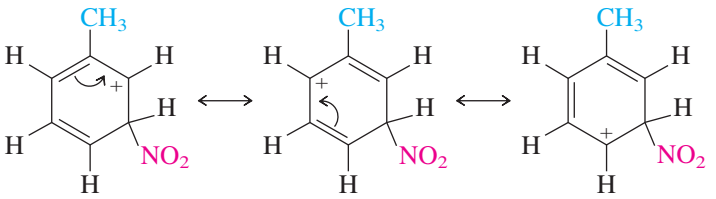
Para nitration



This resonance contributor is a tertiary carbocation

The three contributing resonance forms of the intermediate leading to meta substitution are all secondary carbocations.

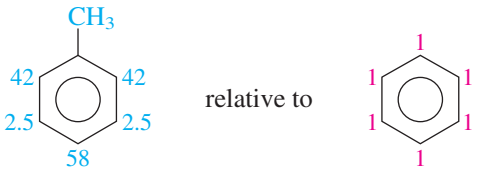
Meta nitration



A methyl group is ortho, para-directing because the carbocations leading to *o*- and *p*-nitrotoluene are more stable and formed faster than the one leading to *m*-nitrotoluene. The greater stability of the carbocations for ortho and para substitution comes from their tertiary carbocation character. All of the contributing carbocation structures for meta substitution are secondary.

A methyl group is an activating substituent because it stabilizes the carbocation intermediate formed in the rate-determining step more than hydrogen does. Figure 12.6 compares the energies of activation for nitration at the various positions of toluene with each other and with benzene. Nitration of benzene has the highest activation energy, para-nitration of toluene the lowest.

Methyl is an **electron-releasing group** and activates *all* the available ring carbons toward electrophilic substitution. The ortho and para positions are activated more than meta. At 25°C, the relative rates of nitration at the various positions of toluene compared with a single carbon of benzene are:



These relative rate data per position are experimentally determined and are known as **partial rate factors.** They offer a convenient way to express substituent effects in electrophilic aromatic substitutions.

The major influence of the methyl group is its *electronic* effect on carbocation stability. To a small extent, the methyl group sterically hinders the approach of the electrophile to the ortho positions, making substitution slightly slower at a single ortho carbon than at the para carbon. However, para substitution is at a statistical disadvantage because there are two equivalent ortho positions but only one para position.

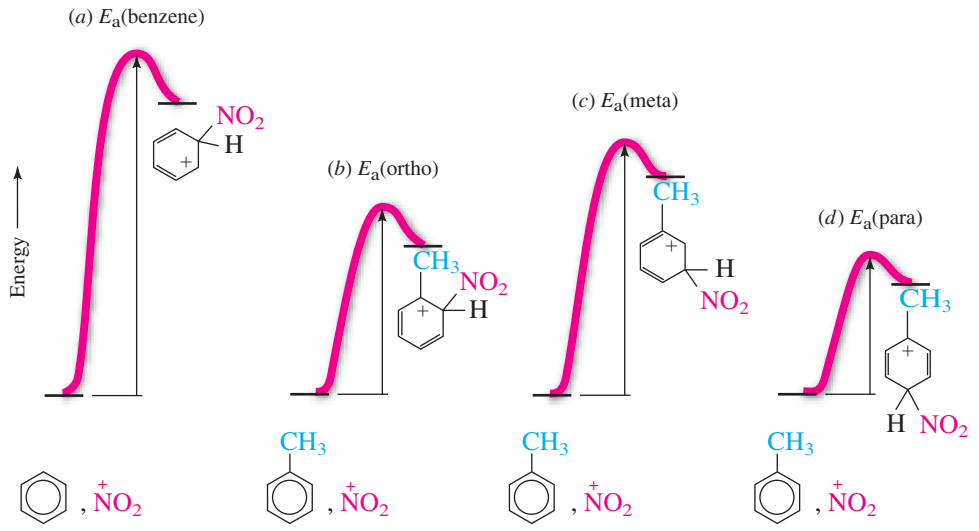
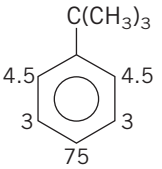


Figure 12.6

Comparative energy diagrams for reaction of nitronium ion with (*a*) benzene and at the (*b*) ortho, (*c*) meta, and (*d*) para positions of toluene. E_a (benzene) > E_a (meta) > E_a (ortho) > E_a (para).

Problem 12.13

The partial rate factors for nitration of *tert*-butylbenzene are as shown.



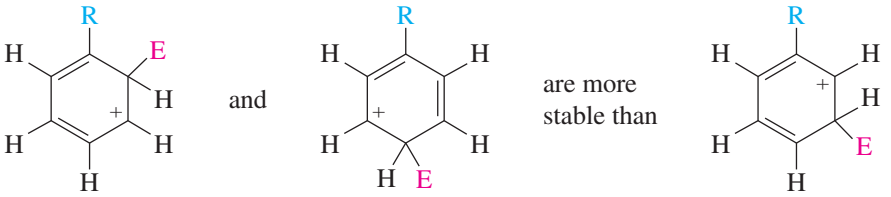
(a) How reactive is *tert*-butylbenzene toward nitration compared with benzene?
(b) How reactive is *tert*-butylbenzene toward nitration compared with toluene?
(c) Predict the distribution among the various mononitration products of *tert*-butylbenzene.

Sample Solution (a) Benzene has six equivalent sites at which nitration can occur. Summing the individual relative rates of nitration at each position in *tert*-butylbenzene compared with benzene, we obtain

$$\frac{\textit{tert}\text{-Butylbenzene}}{\text{Benzene}} = \frac{2(4.5) + 2(3) + 75}{6(1)} = \frac{90}{6} = 15$$

tert-Butylbenzene undergoes nitration 15 times faster than benzene.

All alkyl groups, not just methyl, are electron-releasing, activating substituents and ortho, para directors. This is because any alkyl group, be it methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, *tert*-butyl, or any other, stabilizes a carbocation site to which it is directly attached. When R = alkyl,

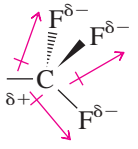


where E^+ is any electrophile. All three structures are more stable for R = alkyl than for R = H and are formed faster.

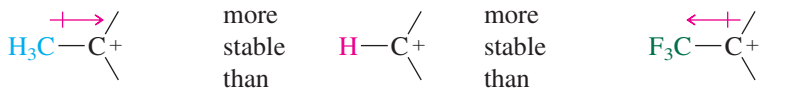
12.11 Rate and Regioselectivity in the Nitration of (Trifluoromethyl)benzene

Recall from Section 1.14 that effects that are transmitted by the polarization of σ bonds are called *inductive effects*.

Turning now to electrophilic aromatic substitution in (trifluoromethyl)benzene, we consider the electronic properties of a trifluoromethyl group. Because of their high electronegativity the three fluorine atoms polarize the electron distribution in their σ bonds to carbon, so that carbon bears a partial positive charge.



Unlike a methyl group, which is slightly electron-releasing, trifluoromethyl is a powerful **electron-withdrawing group.** Consequently, CF_3 *destabilizes* a carbocation site to which it is attached.

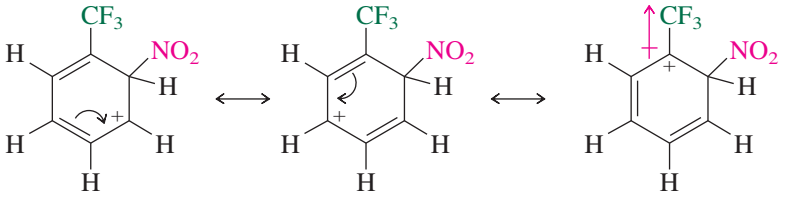


Methyl group releases electrons, stabilizes carbocation

Trifluoromethyl group withdraws electrons, destabilizes carbocation

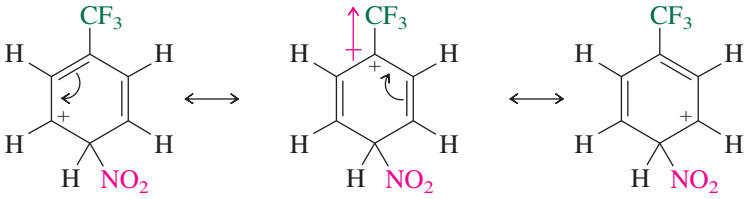
When we examine the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediates involved in the nitration of (trifluoromethyl)benzene, we find that those leading to ortho and para substitution are strongly *destabilized*.

Ortho nitration



Positive charge on carbon bearing CF_3 group (very unstable)

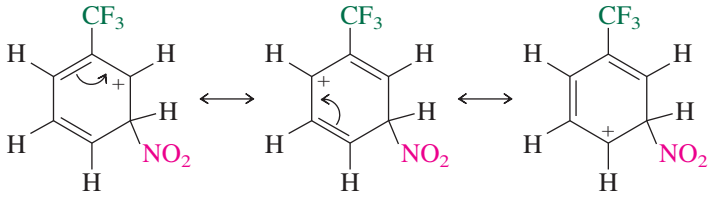
Para nitration



Positive charge on carbon bearing CF_3 group (very unstable)

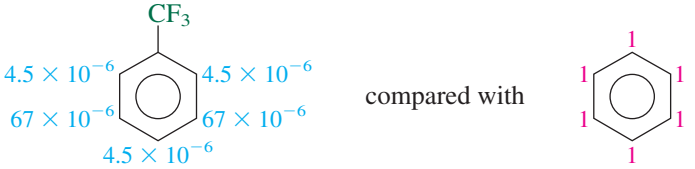
None of the three major resonance contributors to the carbocation formed when the electrophile bonds to the meta position has a positive charge on the carbon bearing the —CF_3 group.

Meta nitration



Bonding of NO_2^+ to the meta position gives a more stable intermediate than bonding at either the ortho or the para position, and so meta substitution predominates. Even the carbocation intermediate corresponding to meta nitration, however, is very unstable and is formed with difficulty. The trifluoromethyl group is only one bond farther removed from the positive charge here than it is in the ortho and para intermediates and so still exerts a significant, although somewhat diminished, destabilizing inductive effect.

All the ring positions of (trifluoromethyl)benzene are deactivated compared with benzene. The meta position is simply deactivated *less* than the ortho and para positions. The partial rate factors for nitration of (trifluoromethyl)benzene are



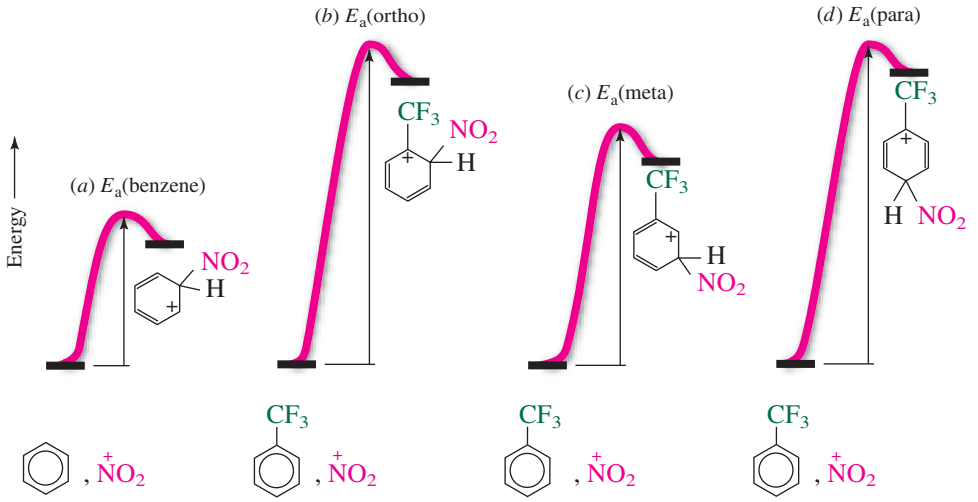


Figure 12.7

Comparative energy diagrams for nitronium ion attachment to (*a*) benzene and at the (*b*) ortho, (*c*) meta, and (*d*) para positions of (trifluoromethyl)benzene. E_a (ortho) > E_a (para) > E_a (meta) > E_a (benzene).

Figure 12.7 compares the energy profile for nitration of benzene with those for the ortho, meta, and para positions of (trifluoromethyl)benzene. The presence of the electron-withdrawing trifluoromethyl group raises the activation energy at all the ring positions, but the increase is least for the meta position.

Problem 12.14

The compounds benzyl chloride ($C_6H_5CH_2Cl$), (dichloromethyl)benzene ($C_6H_5CHCl_2$), and (trichloromethyl)benzene ($C_6H_5CCl_3$) all undergo nitration more slowly than benzene. The proportion of *m*-nitro-substituted product is 4% in one, 34% in another, and 64% in another. Classify the substituents —CH_2Cl, —$CHCl_2$, and —CCl_3 according to each one's effect on rate and regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution.

12.12 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Activating Substituents

Our analysis of substituent effects has so far centered on two groups: methyl and trifluoromethyl. We have seen that a methyl substituent is electron-releasing, activating, and ortho, para-directing. A trifluoromethyl group is strongly electron-withdrawing, deactivating, and meta-directing. What about other substituents?

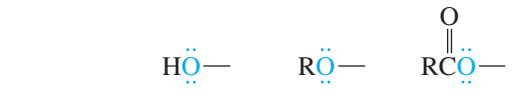
Table 12.2 summarizes orientation and rate effects in electrophilic aromatic substitution for some frequently encountered substituents. It is arranged in order of decreasing activating power: the most strongly *activating* substituents are at the top, the most strongly *deactivating* substituents are at the bottom. The main features of the table can be summarized as follows:

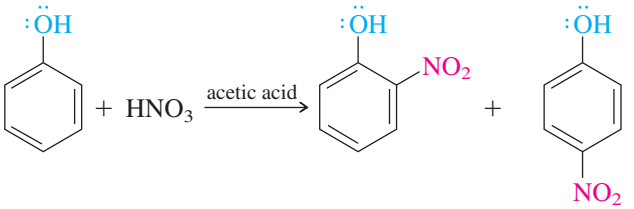
1. All activating substituents are ortho, para directors.
2. Halogen substituents are slightly deactivating but are ortho, para-directing.
3. Strongly deactivating substituents are meta directors.

Some of the most powerful activating substituents are those in which an oxygen atom is attached directly to the ring. These substituents include the hydroxyl group as well as alkoxy and acyloxy groups. All are ortho, para directors.

TABLE 12.2 Classification of Substituents in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions

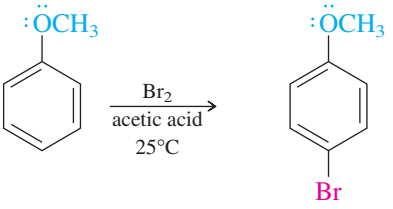
Effect on rate	Substituent		Effect on orientation
Very strongly activating	—$\ddot{N}H_2$	(amino)	Ortho, para-directing
	—$\ddot{N}HR$	(alkylamino)	
	—$\ddot{N}R_2$	(dialkylamino)	
	—$\ddot{O}H$	(hydroxyl)	
Strongly activating	—$\ddot{N}HCR$ (O)	(acylamino)	Ortho, para-directing
	—$\ddot{O}R$	(alkoxy)	
	—$\ddot{O}CR$ (O)	(acyloxy)	
Activating	—R	(alkyl)	Ortho, para-directing
	—Ar	(aryl)	
	—CH=CR_2	(alkenyl)	
Standard of comparison	—H	(hydrogen)	
Deactivating	—X (X = F, Cl, Br, I)	(halogen)	Ortho, para-directing
	—CH_2X	(halomethyl)	
Strongly deactivating	—CH (O)	(formyl)	Meta-directing
	—CR (O)	(acyl)	
	—COH (O)	(carboxylic acid)	
	—COR (O)	(ester)	
	—CCl (O)	(acyl chloride)	
	—C≡N	(cyano)	
	—SO_2OH	(sulfonic acid)	
Very strongly deactivating	—CF_3	(trifluoromethyl)	Meta-directing
	—NO_2	(nitro)	





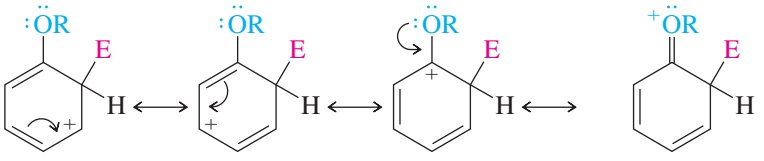
Phenol and *anisole* are among the commonly encountered benzene derivatives listed in Table 11.1. Electrophilic aromatic substitution in phenol is discussed in more detail in Section 22.8.

Hydroxyl, alkoxy, and acyloxy groups activate the ring to such an extent that bromination occurs rapidly even in the absence of a catalyst.

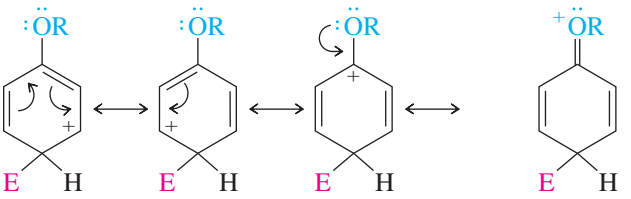


The *inductive* effect of hydroxyl and alkoxy groups, because of the electronegativity of oxygen, is to withdraw electrons and would seem to require that such substituents be deactivating. This electron-withdrawing inductive effect, however, is overcome by a much larger electron-releasing *resonance* effect involving the unshared electron pairs of oxygen. Bonding of the electrophile at positions ortho and para to a substituent of the type —$\ddot{O}$R gives a cation stabilized by delocalization of an unshared electron pair of oxygen into the π system of the ring.

Ortho attachment of E^+



Para attachment of E^+

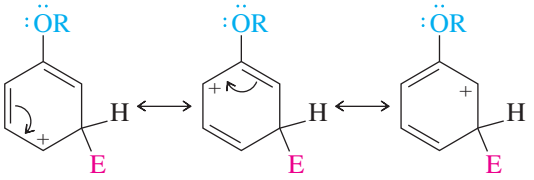


Oxygen-stabilized carbocations of this type are far more stable than tertiary carbocations. They are best represented by structures in which the positive charge is on oxygen because

all the atoms then have octets of electrons. Their stability permits them to be formed rapidly, resulting in rates of electrophilic aromatic substitution that are much faster than that of benzene.

Meta attachment of E^+

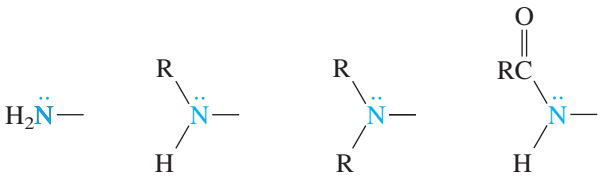
The lone pair on oxygen cannot be directly involved in carbocation stabilization when the electrophile bonds to the meta carbon.



Oxygen lone pair cannot be used to stabilize positive charge in any of these structures; all have six electrons around positively charged carbon.

The greater stability of the carbocation intermediates arising from bonding of the electrophile to the ortho and para carbons compared with those at the carbon meta to oxygen explains the ortho, para-directing property of —ÖH, —ÖR, and —ÖC(O)R groups.

Nitrogen-containing substituents related to the amino group are even better electron-releasing groups and more strongly activating than the corresponding oxygen-containing substituents.



Amino Alkylamino Dialkylamino Acylamino

The nitrogen atom in each of these groups bears an electron pair that, like the unshared pairs of oxygen, stabilizes a carbocation to which it is attached. Nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen, so is a better electron pair donor and stabilizes the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediates in electrophilic aromatic substitution to an even greater degree.

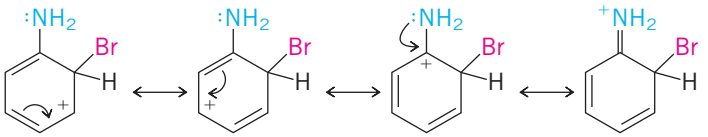
Problem 12.15

Write structural formulas for the cyclohexadienyl cations formed from aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) during

(a) Ortho bromination (four resonance structures)
(b) Meta bromination (three resonance structures)
(c) Para bromination (four resonance structures)

Aniline and its derivatives are so reactive in electrophilic aromatic substitution that special strategies are usually necessary to carry out these reactions effectively. This topic is discussed in Section 21.14.

Sample Solution (a) There are the customary three resonance contributors for the cyclohexadienyl cation plus a contributor (the most stable one) derived by delocalization of the nitrogen lone pair into the ring.



Most stable contributing structure

Alkyl groups are, as we saw when we discussed the nitration of toluene in Section 12.10, activating and ortho, para-directing substituents. Aryl and alkenyl substituents resemble alkyl groups in this respect; they too are activating and ortho, para-directing.

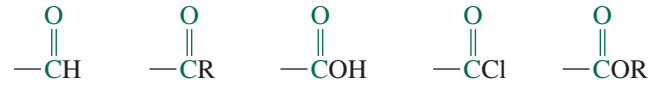
Problem 12.16

Treatment of biphenyl (see Section 11.5 to remind yourself of its structure) with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid gave two principal products both having the molecular formula $C_{12}H_9NO_2$. What are these two products?

The next group of substituents in Table 12.2 that we'll discuss are the ones near the bottom of the table, those that are meta-directing and strongly deactivating.

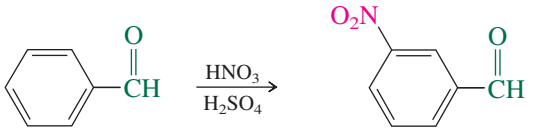
12.13 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Strongly Deactivating Substituents

As Table 12.2 indicates, a number of substituents are *meta-directing and strongly deactivating*. We have already discussed one of these, the trifluoromethyl group. Several others have a carbonyl group attached directly to the aromatic ring.



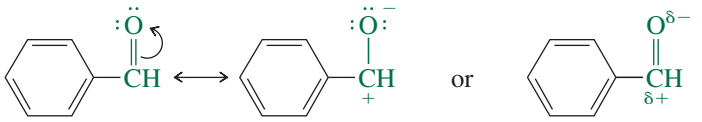
Aldehyde | Ketone | Carboxylic acid | Acyl chloride | Ester

The behavior of aromatic aldehydes is typical. Nitration of benzaldehyde takes place several thousand times more slowly than that of benzene and yields *m*-nitrobenzaldehyde as the major product.



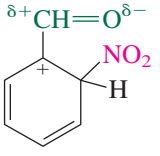
Benzaldehyde | *m*-Nitrobenzaldehyde (75–84%)

To understand the effect of a carbonyl group attached directly to the ring, consider its polarization. The electrons in the carbon–oxygen double bond are drawn toward oxygen and away from carbon, leaving the carbon attached to the ring with a partial positive charge. Using benzaldehyde as an example,



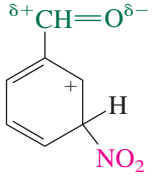
Because the carbon atom attached to the ring is positively polarized, a carbonyl group is *strongly electron-withdrawing* and behaves in much the same way as a trifluoromethyl group to destabilize all the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediates in electrophilic aromatic substitution. Reaction at any ring position in benzaldehyde is slower than in benzene. The intermediates for ortho and para substitution are particularly unstable because each has a resonance contributor in which there is a positive charge on the carbon that bears the electron-withdrawing group. The intermediate for meta substitution avoids this unfavorable juxtaposition of positive charges, is not as unstable, and gives rise to most of the product. For the nitration of benzaldehyde:

Ortho nitration



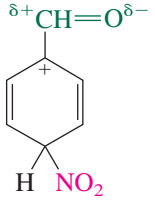
Unstable because of adjacent positively polarized atoms

Meta nitration



Positively polarized atoms not adjacent; most stable intermediate

Para nitration



Unstable because of adjacent positively polarized atoms

Problem 12.17

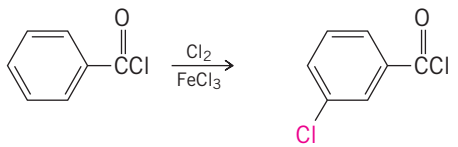
Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature, and the major organic product has been isolated in good yield. Write a structural formula for the product of each reaction.

(a) Treatment of benzoyl chloride ($C_6H_5\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}Cl$) with chlorine and iron(III) chloride

(b) Treatment of methyl benzoate ($C_6H_5\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}OCH_3$) with nitric acid and sulfuric acid

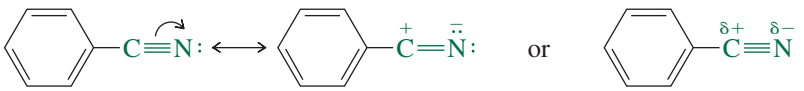
(c) Nitration of 1-phenyl-1-propanone ($C_6H_5\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}CH_2CH_3$)

Sample Solution (a) Benzoyl chloride has a carbonyl group attached directly to the ring. A $-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}Cl$ substituent is meta-directing. The combination of chlorine and iron(III) chloride introduces a chlorine onto the ring. The product is *m*-chlorobenzoyl chloride.



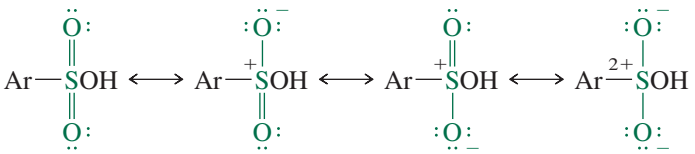
Benzoyl chloride — *m*-Chlorobenzoyl chloride (isolated in 62% yield)

A cyano group is similar to a carbonyl for analogous reasons involving contributing resonance structures of the type shown for benzonitrile.

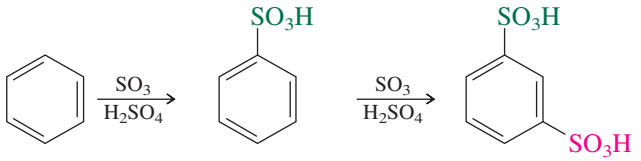


Cyano groups are electron-withdrawing, deactivating, and meta-directing.

Sulfonic acid groups are electron-withdrawing because sulfur has a formal positive charge in several of the contributing forms of $-SO_3H$.

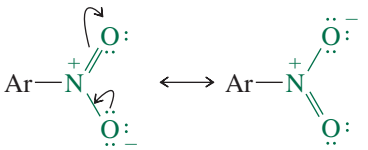


When benzene undergoes disulfonation, *m*-benzenedisulfonic acid is formed. The first sulfonic acid group to go on directs the second one meta to itself.

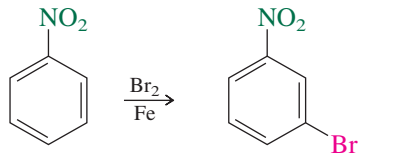


Benzene — Benzenesulfonic acid — *m*-Benzenedisulfonic acid (90%)

The nitrogen atom of a nitro group bears a full positive charge in its two most stable contributing structures.



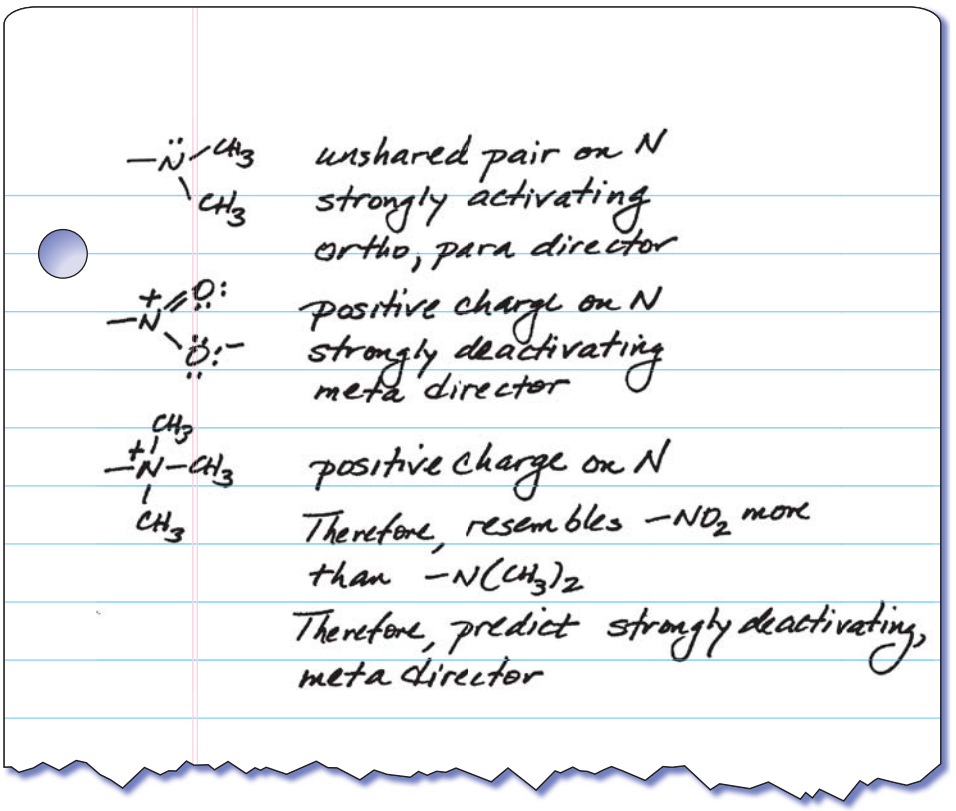
This makes the nitro group a powerful electron-withdrawing, deactivating substituent and a meta director.



Nitrobenzene *m*-Bromonitrobenzene (60–75%)

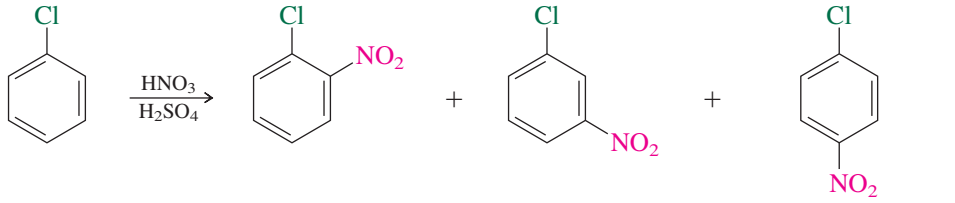
Problem 12.18

Would you expect the substituent $-\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3$ to more closely resemble $-\ddot{N}(CH_3)_2$ or $-NO_2$ in its effect on rate and regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution? Why?



12.14 Substituent Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution: Halogens

Returning to Table 12.2, notice that *halogen substituents direct an incoming electrophile to the ortho and para positions but deactivate the ring toward substitution.* Nitration of chlorobenzene is a typical example; its rate is some 30 times slower than the corresponding nitration of benzene, and the major products are *o*-chloronitrobenzene and *p*-chloronitrobenzene.

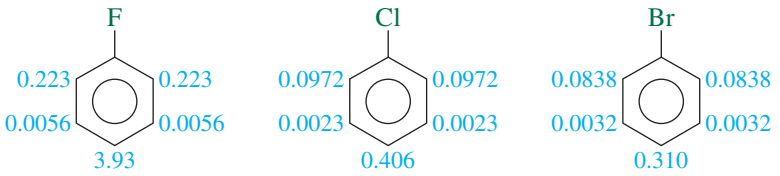


Chlorobenzene *o*-Chloronitrobenzene (30%) *m*-Chloronitrobenzene (1%) *p*-Chloronitrobenzene (69%)

Problem 12.19

Reaction of chlorobenzene with *p*-chlorobenzyl chloride and aluminum chloride gave a mixture of two products in good yield (76%). What were these two products?

Rate and product studies of electrophilic aromatic substitution in halobenzenes reveal a fairly consistent pattern of reactivity. The partial rate factors for chlorination show that, with one exception, all the ring positions of fluoro-, chloro-, and bromobenzene are deactivated. The exception is the para position of fluorobenzene, which is slightly more reactive than a single position of benzene.

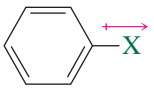


The range of reactivity is not large. Benzene undergoes chlorination only about 1.4 times faster than the most reactive of the group (fluorobenzene) and 14 times faster than the least reactive (bromobenzene). In each halobenzene the para position is the most reactive, followed by ortho.

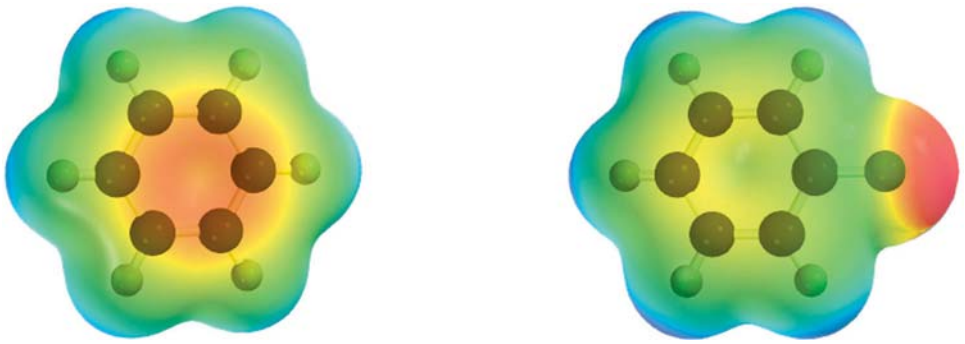
Because we have come to associate activating substituents with ortho, para-directing effects and deactivating substituents with meta, the properties of halogen substituents appear on initial inspection to be unusual. The seeming inconsistency between regioselectivity and rate can be understood by analyzing the inductive and resonance effects of a halogen substituent.

Through its inductive effect, a halogen (X) withdraws electrons from the ring by polarization of the σ framework. The effect is greatest for fluorine, least for iodine.

Inductive effect of halogen attracts electrons from ring



This polarization, in turn, causes the ring carbons to bind the π electrons more tightly, decreases their "availability" to an approaching electrophile, raises the activation energy for electrophilic aromatic substitution, and decreases the reaction rate. Figure 12.8 illustrates this effect by comparing the electrostatic potential maps of fluorobenzene and benzene.

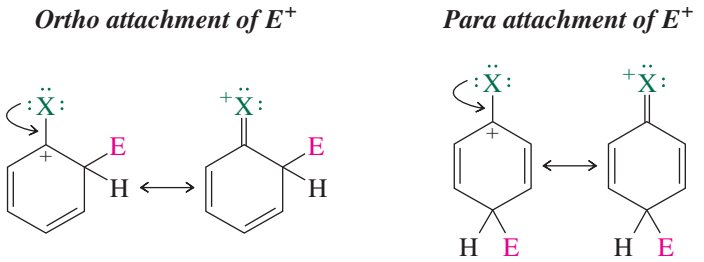


Benzene Fluorobenzene

Figure 12.8

Electrostatic potential maps of benzene and fluorobenzene. The high electronegativity of fluorine causes the π electrons of fluorobenzene to be more strongly held than those of benzene. This difference is reflected in the more pronounced red color associated with the π electrons of benzene. The color scale is the same for both models.

Like —$\ddot{\text{O}}$H and —$\ddot{\text{N}}$H$_2$ groups, however, halogen substituents possess unshared electron pairs that can be donated to a positively charged carbon. This electron donation into the π system stabilizes the intermediates for ortho and para substitution.



Comparable stabilization of the intermediate for meta substitution is not possible. Thus, resonance involving their lone pairs causes halogens to be ortho, para-directing substituents.

The resonance effect is greatest for fluorine and much smaller for the other halogens. For resonance stabilization to be effective, the lone-pair *p* orbital of the substituent must overlap with the π system of the ring. The 2*p* orbital of fluorine is well suited for such overlap, but the 3*p* orbital of chlorine is not because of its more diffuse character and the longer C—Cl bond distance. The situation is even worse for Br and I.

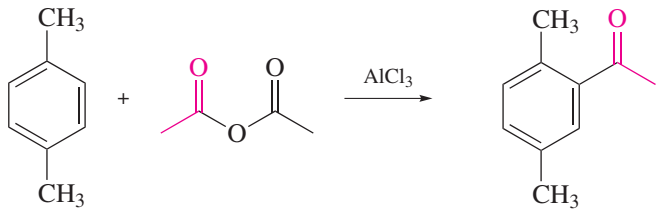
By stabilizing the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate, lone-pair donation from fluorine counteracts the inductive effect to the extent that the rate of electrophilic aromatic substitution in fluorobenzene is, in most cases, only slightly less than that of benzene. With the other halogens, lone-pair donation is sufficient to make them ortho, para directors, but is less than that of fluorine.

12.15 Multiple Substituent Effects

When a benzene ring bears two or more substituents, both its reactivity and the site of further substitution can usually be predicted from the cumulative effects of its substituents.

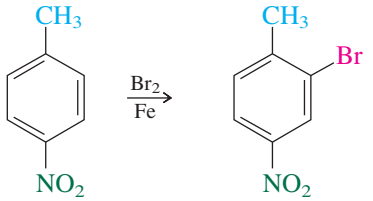
Problems 12.2, 12.4, and 12.10 offer additional examples of reactions in which only a single product of electrophilic aromatic substitution is possible.

In the simplest cases all the available sites are equivalent, and substitution at any one of them gives the same product.



p-Xylene Acetic anhydride 2,5-Dimethylacetophenone (99%)

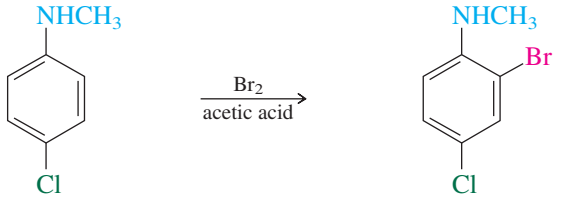
Often the directing effects of substituents reinforce each other. Bromination of *p*–nitrotoluene, for example, takes place at the position that is ortho to the ortho, para-directing methyl group and meta to the meta-directing nitro group.



p-Nitrotoluene 2-Bromo-4-nitrotoluene (86–90%)

In almost all cases, including most of those in which the directing effects of individual substituents oppose each other, *it is the more activating substituent that controls the regioselectivity of electrophilic aromatic substitution.* Thus, bromination occurs ortho to the

N-methylamino group in 4-chloro-*N*-methylaniline because this group is a very powerful activating substituent while the chlorine is weakly deactivating.



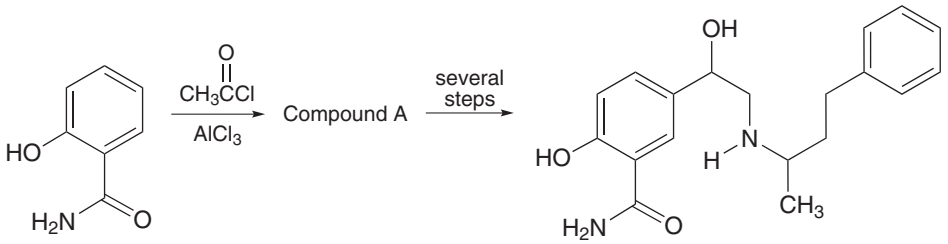
4-Chloro-*N*-methylaniline — 2-Bromo-4-chloro-*N*-methylaniline (87%)

Problem 12.20

The reactant in the preceding equation (4-chloro-*N*-methylaniline) is so reactive toward electrophilic aromatic substitution that no catalyst is necessary to bring about its bromination. Write a reasonable mechanism for the preceding reaction based on Br_2 as the electrophile.

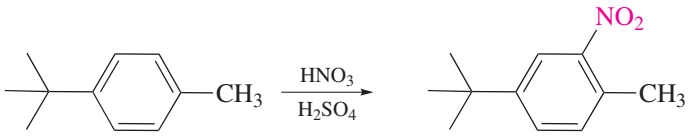
Problem 12.21

Compound A is an intermediate in the synthesis of labetelol, a drug known as a "β-blocker" used to treat hypertension. What is the structure of compound A?



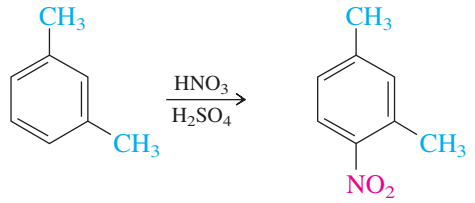
Labetelol (a β-blocker)

When two positions are comparably activated by alkyl groups, substitution usually occurs at the less hindered site. Nitration of *p-tert*-butyltoluene takes place at positions ortho to the methyl group in preference to those ortho to the larger *tert*-butyl group. This is an example of a *steric effect.*



p-tert-Butyltoluene — 4-*tert*-Butyl-2-nitrotoluene (88%)

Nitration of *m*-xylene is directed ortho to one methyl group and para to the other.



m-Xylene — 2,4-Dimethyl-1-nitrobenzene (98%)

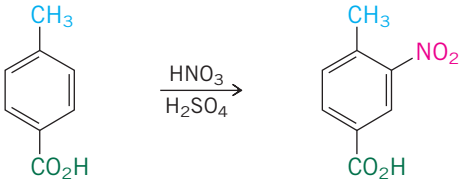
The ortho position between the two methyl groups is less reactive because it is more sterically hindered.

Problem 12.22

Write the structure of the principal organic product obtained on nitration of each of the following:

(a) *p*-Methylbenzoic acid
(b) *m*-Dichlorobenzene
(c) *m*-Dinitrobenzene
(d) *p*-Methoxyacetophenone
(e) *p*-Methylanisole
(f) 2,6-Dibromoanisole

Sample Solution (a) Of the two substituents in *p*-methylbenzoic acid, the methyl group is more activating and so controls the regioselectivity of electrophilic aromatic substitution. The position para to the ortho, para-directing methyl group already bears a substituent (the carboxyl group), and so substitution occurs ortho to the methyl group. This position is meta to the *m*-directing carboxyl group, and the orienting properties of the two substituents reinforce each other. The product is 4-methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid.



p-Methylbenzoic acid 4-Methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid

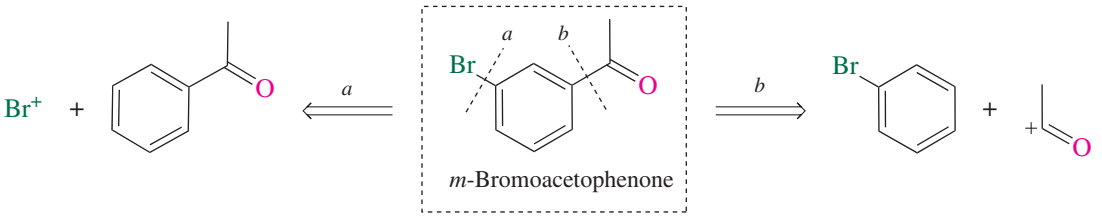
Problem 12.45 illustrates how partial rate factor data may be applied to such cases.

An exception to the rule that regioselectivity is controlled by the most activating substituent occurs when the directing effects of alkyl groups and halogen substituents oppose each other. Alkyl groups and halogen substituents are weakly activating and weakly deactivating, respectively, and the difference between them is too small to allow a simple generalization.

12.16 Retrosynthetic Analysis and the Synthesis of Substituted Benzenes

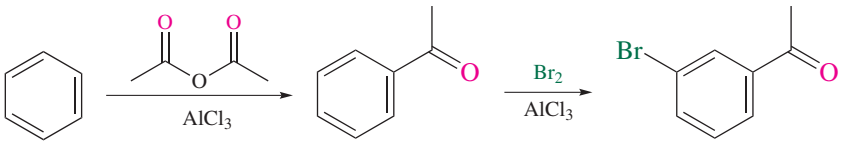
Because the regioselectivity of electrophilic aromatic substitution is controlled by the directing effects of substituents already present on the ring, the synthesis of more highly substituted derivatives requires that careful thought be given to the *order* in which the reactions are performed. Retrosynthetic analysis provides a useful guide.

The analysis is often straightforward; one simply disconnects one of the substituents from the ring of the target molecule and examines the ring with respect to the directing properties of the remaining substituent. Consider *m*-bromoacetophenone:



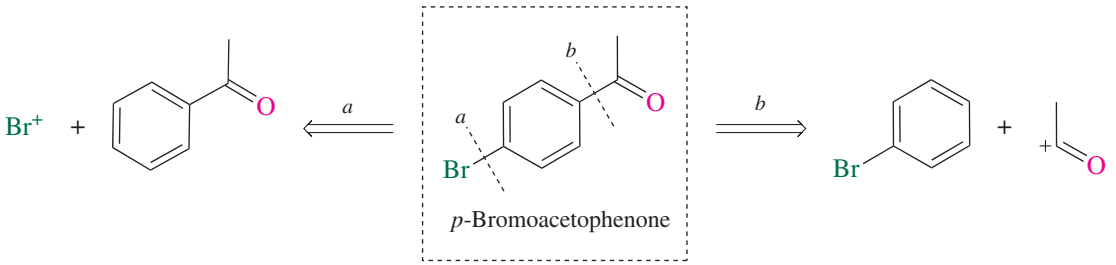
Bromine is an ortho, para director, acetyl a meta director. Reasoning backward from the target, disconnection *a* makes electrophilic bromination of acetophenone the last synthetic step; disconnection *b* makes Friedel–Crafts acylation of bromobenzene the last step. Of the two approaches, only bromination of acetophenone delivers the desired meta relationship of the two substituents and suggests the following synthesis.

Aluminum chloride is a stronger Lewis acid than iron(III) bromide and has been used as a catalyst in electrophilic bromination when, as in the example shown, the aromatic ring bears a strongly deactivating substituent.

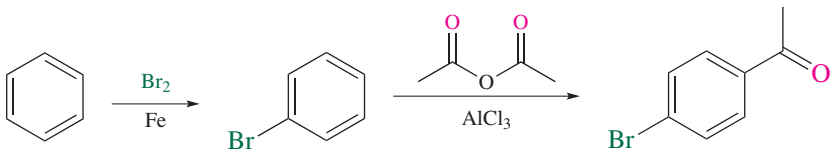


Benzene Acetophenone (76-83%) *m*-Bromoacetophenone (59%)

Conversely, when *p*-bromoacetophenone is the target, Friedel–Crafts acylation of bromobenzene is the last step (disconnection *b*)

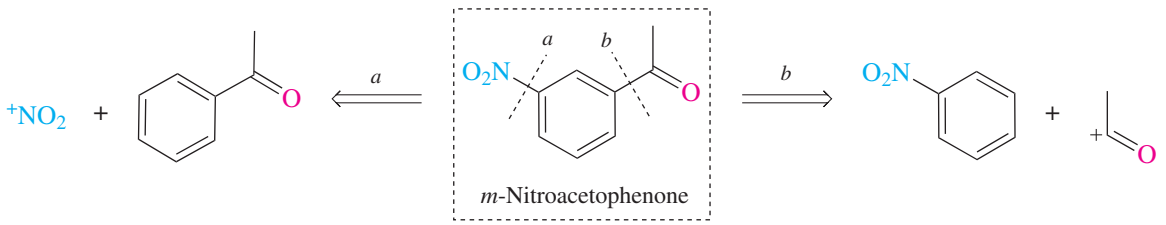


and the synthesis becomes:

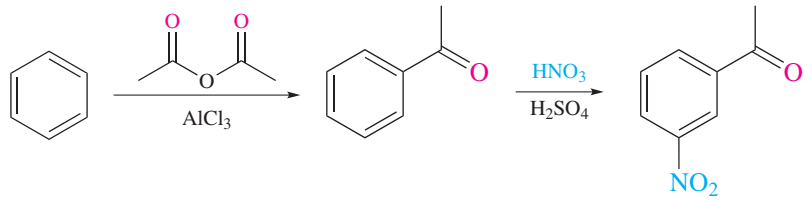


Benzene — Bromobenzene (65–75%) — *p*-Bromoacetophenone (69–79%)

A less obvious example in which the success of a synthesis depends on the order of substituent placement on the ring is illustrated by the preparation of *m*-nitroacetophenone. Although both substituents are meta-directing, the only practical synthesis involves nitration of acetophenone (disconnection *a*).



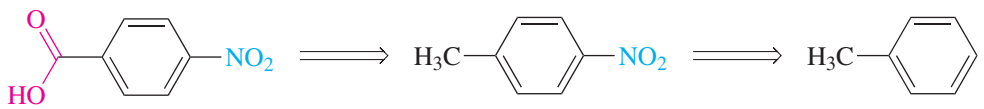
Acylation must precede nitration because neither Friedel–Crafts acylation nor alkylation can be carried out successfully on strongly deactivated aromatics such as nitrobenzene.



Benzene — Acetophenone (76–83%) — *m*-Nitroacetophenone (55%)

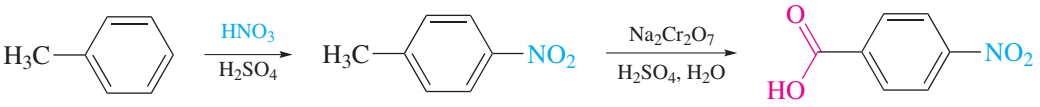
An aromatic ring more deactivated than a monohalobenzene cannot be alkylated or acylated under Friedel–Crafts conditions.

When the orientation of substituents in an aromatic compound precludes a synthesis as straightforward as the preceding ones, functional group manipulation can be useful. *p*-Nitrobenzoic acid, for example, can't be prepared directly from either nitrobenzene or benzoic acid because each subsituent is a meta director. However, by recognizing that the carboxyl group is accessible via oxidation of a methyl group, we can use nitration of toluene to gain the correct regiochemistry.



p-Nitrobenzoic acid — *p*-Nitrotoluene — Toluene

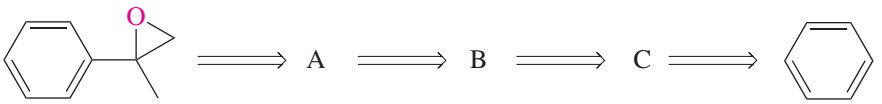
With the strategy determined, we transform the retrosynthesis to a synthetic plan and include the appropriate reagents.



Toluene — *p*-Nitrotoluene (separate from ortho isomer) — *p*-Nitrobenzoic acid

Problem 12.23

Many syntheses can involve several functional group transformations. Identify compounds A–C in the retrosynthesis shown and suggest reagents for each synthetic step.



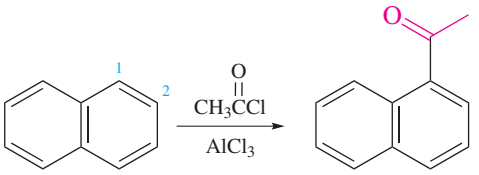
Problem 12.24

Use retrosynthetic analysis to devise a synthesis of *m*-chloroethylbenzene from benzene. Convert your retrosynthesis to a synthesis and show the necessary reagents for each step. (*Hint:* A Clemmensen or Wolff–Kishner reduction is necessary.)

12.17 Substitution in Naphthalene

Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons undergo electrophilic aromatic substitution when treated with the same reagents that react with benzene. In general, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons are more reactive than benzene. Most lack the symmetry of benzene, however, and mixtures of products may be formed even on monosubstitution. Among polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, we will discuss only naphthalene, and that only briefly.

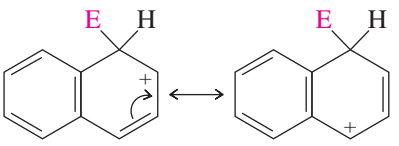
Two sites are available for substitution in naphthalene: C-1 and C-2. The more reactive site of electrophilic attack is normally C-1.



Naphthalene — 1-Acetylnaphthalene (90%)

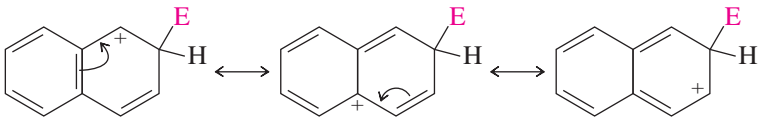
C-1 is more reactive because the intermediate formed when the electrophile bonds there is a relatively stable carbocation. A benzene-type pattern of bonds is retained in one ring, and the positive charge is delocalized by allylic resonance.

Attachment of E^+ to C-1



To involve allylic resonance in stabilizing the carbocation intermediate formed when the electrophile bonds to C-2, the benzene-like character of the other ring is sacrificed.

Attachment of E^+ to C-2



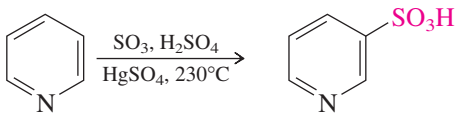
Problem 12.25

Sulfonation of naphthalene is reversible at elevated temperature. A different isomer of naphthalenesulfonic acid is the major product at 160°C than is the case at 0°C. Which isomer is the product of kinetic control? Which one is formed under conditions of thermodynamic control? Can you think of a reason why one isomer is more stable than the other?

12.18 Substitution in Heterocyclic Aromatic Compounds

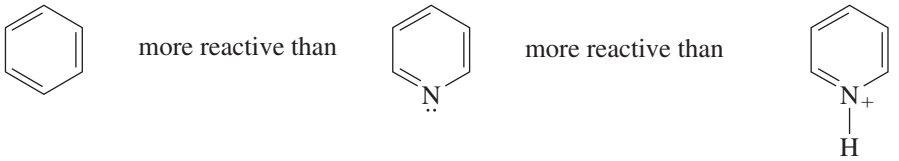
Their great variety of structural types causes heterocyclic aromatic compounds to range from exceedingly reactive to practically inert toward electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Pyridine lies near one extreme in being far less reactive than benzene toward substitution by electrophilic reagents. In this respect it resembles strongly deactivated aromatic compounds such as nitrobenzene. It is incapable of being acylated or alkylated under Friedel–Crafts conditions, but can be sulfonated at high temperature. Electrophilic substitution in pyridine, when it does occur, takes place at C-3.



Pyridine — Pyridine-3-sulfonic acid (71%)

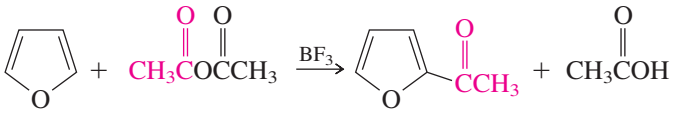
One reason for the low reactivity of pyridine is that nitrogen is more electronegative than carbon, which causes the π electrons of pyridine to be held more tightly and raises the activation energy for bonding to an electrophile. Another is that the nitrogen of pyridine is protonated in sulfuric acid and the resulting pyridinium ion is even more deactivated than pyridine itself.



Benzene — Pyridine — Pyridinium ion

Lewis acid catalysts such as aluminum chloride and iron(III) halides also bond to nitrogen to strongly deactivate the ring toward Friedel–Crafts reactions and halogenation.

Pyrrole, furan, and thiophene, on the other hand, have electron-rich aromatic rings and are extremely reactive toward electrophilic aromatic substitution—more like phenol and aniline than benzene. Like benzene they have six π electrons, but these π electrons are delocalized over *five* atoms, not six, and are not held as strongly as those of benzene. Even when the ring atom is as electronegative as oxygen, substitution takes place readily.

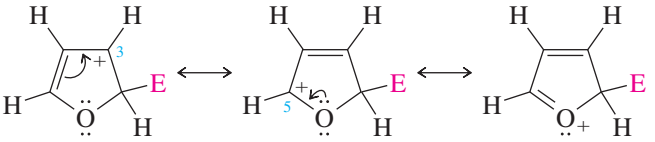


Furan — Acetic anhydride — 2-Acetylfuran (75–92%) — Acetic acid

The regioselectivity of substitution in furan is explained using a resonance description. When the electrophile bonds to C-2, the positive charge is shared by three atoms: C-3, C-5, and O.

Attachment of E^+ to C-2

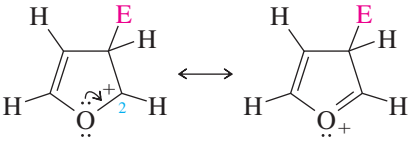
Carbocation *more stable;* positive charge shared by C-3, C-5, and O.



When the electrophile bonds to C-3, the positive charge is shared by only two atoms, C-2 and O, and the carbocation intermediate is less stable and formed more slowly.

Attachment of E^+ to C-3

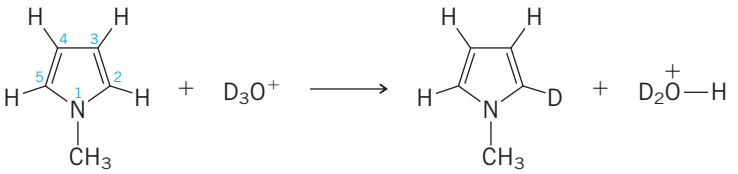
Carbocation *less stable;* positive charge shared by C-2 and O.



The regioselectivity of substitution in pyrrole and thiophene is like that of furan and for similar reasons.

Problem 12.26

Under acid-catalyzed conditions, the C-2 hydrogen of *N*-methylpyrrole is replaced by deuterium faster than the one at C-3 according to the equation:

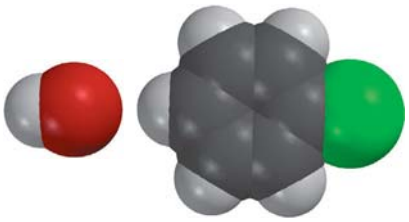


Suggest a reasonable mechanism for this reaction.

(*a*) Hydroxide ion + methyl chloride

The nucleophile approaches carbon from the side opposite the bond to the leaving group.

(*b*) Hydroxide ion + chlorobenzene



Approach of the nucleophile from opposite the leaving group is blocked by the ring.

Figure 12.9

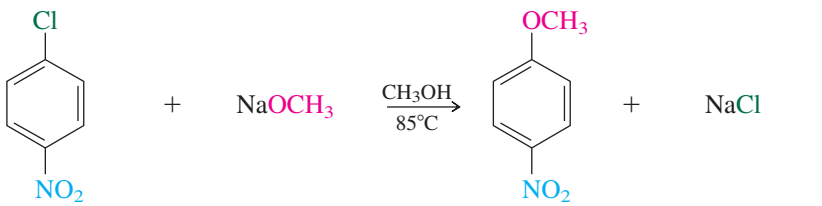
Nucleophilic substitution by the S_N2 mechanism in aryl halides is blocked by the benzene ring.

12.19 Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution

We have seen numerous examples of *electrophilic* aromatic substitution in this chapter. What about *nucleophilic* aromatic substitutions: reactions in which a nucleophile displaces a halogen substituent from the ring?

In general, aryl halides are much less reactive than alkyl halides toward nucleophilic substitution. One reason for this is that breaking of the carbon–halogen bond is rate determining in both the S_N1 and S_N2 mechanisms and the carbon–halogen bonds of aryl halides are stronger than those of alkyl halides. A second reason, illustrated in Figure 12.9, is that the optimal transition state geometry for S_N2 processes is inaccessible in aryl halides because the ring itself blocks approach of the nucleophile from the side opposite the carbon–halogen bond.

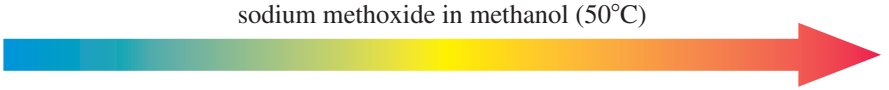
Aryl halides that bear electronegative substituents, most notably nitro, are an exception. These compounds do undergo nucleophilic substitution relatively readily. For example:

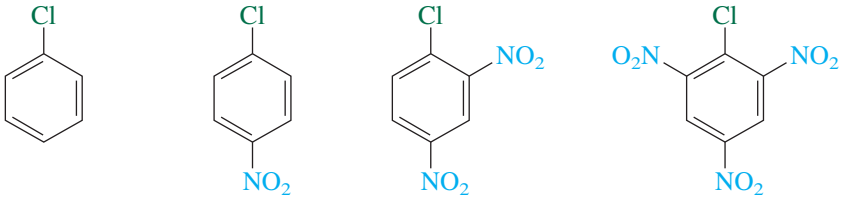


p-Chloronitrobenzene — Sodium methoxide — *p*-Nitroanisole (92%) — Sodium chloride

The position of the nitro group on the ring is important. Both *o*- and *p*-chloronitrobenzene react at similar rates, but *m*-chloronitrobenzene reacts thousands of times slower. The effect is cumulative; the more *o*- and *p*-nitro groups, the faster the rate.

Increasing rate of reaction with sodium methoxide in methanol (50°C)





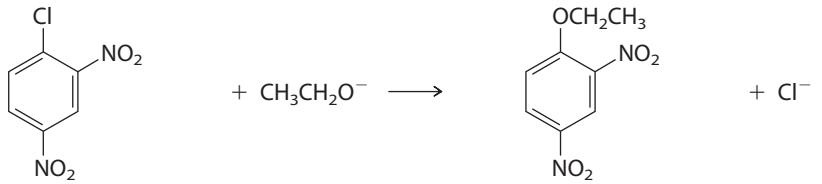
Chlorobenzene	1-Chloro-4-nitrobenzene	1-Chloro-2,4-dinitrobenzene	2-Chloro-1,3,5-trinitrobenzene
Relative rate: 1.0	7×10^{10}	2.4×10^{15}	(too fast to measure)

Problem 12.27

Write the structure of the expected product from the reaction of 1-chloro-2,4-dinitrobenzene with each of the following reagents:

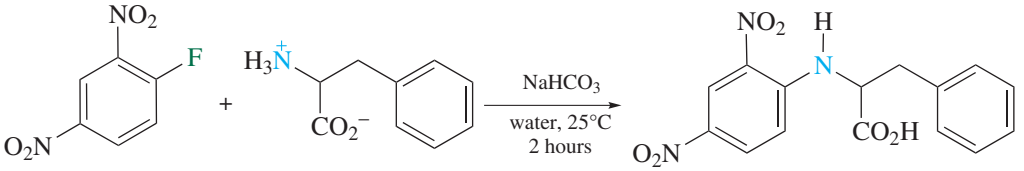
(a) CH_3CH_2ONa (b) $C_6H_5CH_2SNa$ (c) CH_3NH_2

Sample Solution (a) Sodium ethoxide is a source of the nucleophile $CH_3CH_2O^-$, which displaces chloride from 1-chloro-2,4-dinitrobenzene.



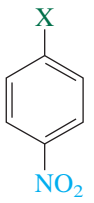
1-Chloro-2,4-dinitrobenzene Ethoxide anion 1-Ethoxy-2,4-dinitrobenzene

In contrast to nucleophilic substitution in alkyl halides, where *alkyl* fluorides are exceedingly unreactive, *aryl* fluorides undergo nucleophilic substitution when the ring bears an *o*- or *p*-nitro group. The reaction of 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene, known as *Sanger's reagent,* with amino acids takes place readily at room temperature and is the basis of a method used in protein structure determination.



1-Fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene Phenylalanine *N*-(2,4-Dinitrophenyl)phenylalanine (67%)

Indeed, the order of leaving-group reactivity in nucleophilic aromatic substitution is the opposite of that seen in aliphatic substitution. *Fluoride is the most reactive leaving group in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, iodide the least reactive.*



Relative reactivity toward sodium methoxide in methanol (50°C):	
X = F	312
X = Cl	1.0
X = Br	0.8
X = I	0.4

12.20 The Addition–Elimination Mechanism of Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution

Kinietic studies of nucleophilic aromatic substitutions reveal that they follow a second-order rate law:

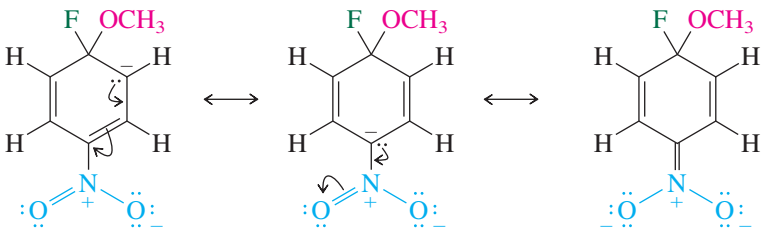
$$\text{Rate} = k[\text{Aryl halide}][\text{Nucleophile}]$$

which suggests a biomolecular rate-determining step. In this case, then, we look for a mechanism in which both the aryl halide and the nucleophile are involved in the slowest step.

This mechanism is sometimes called S_NAr (*substitution-nucleophilic-aromatic*).

The generally accepted mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution in nitro-substituted aryl halides, illustrated for the reaction of *p*-fluoronitrobenzene with sodium methoxide, is outlined in Mechanism 12.6. It is a two-step **addition–elimination mechanism,** in which addition of the nucleophile to the aryl halide is followed by elimination of the halide leaving group. The mechanism is consistent with the following experimental observations:

1. *Kinetics:* Consistent with the observed second-order rate law, the rate-determining step (step 1) involves both the aryl halide and the nucleophile.
2. *Rate-enhancing effect of the nitro group:* The nucleophilic addition step is rate-determining because the aromatic character of the ring must be sacrificed to form the cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate. Only when the anionic intermediate is stabilized by the presence of a strong electron-withdrawing substituent ortho or para to the leaving group will the activation energy for its formation be low enough to provide a reasonable reaction rate. We can illustrate the stabilization that a *p*-nitro group provides by examining the resonance structures for the cyclohexadienyl anion formed from methoxide and *p*-fluoronitrobenzene:

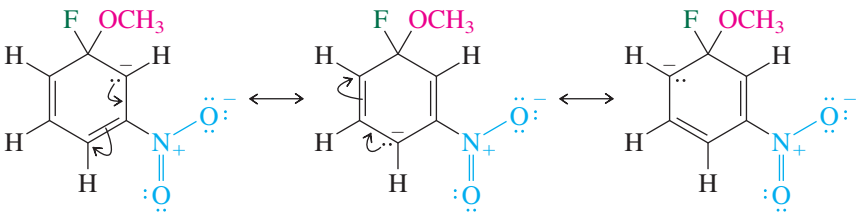


Most stable contributing structure; negative charge is on oxygen

Problem 12.28

Write the most stable contributing structure for the cyclohexadienyl anion formed by reaction of methoxide ion with *o*-fluoronitrobenzene.

m-Fluoronitrobenzene reacts with sodium methoxide 10^5 times more slowly than its ortho and para isomers. According to the resonance description, direct conjugation of the negatively charged carbon with the nitro group is not possible in the cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate from *m*-fluoronitrobenzene, and the decreased reaction rate reflects the decreased stabilization afforded this intermediate.



(Negative charge is restricted to carbon in all resonance contributors)

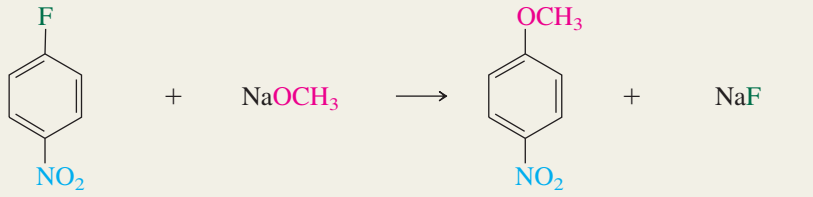
Problem 12.29

Reaction of 1,2,3-tribromo-5-nitrobenzene with sodium ethoxide in ethanol gave a single product, $C_8H_7Br_2NO_3$, in quantitative yield. Suggest a reasonable structure for this compound.

Mechanism 12.6

Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution in *p*-Fluoronitrobenzene by the Addition–Elimination Mechanism

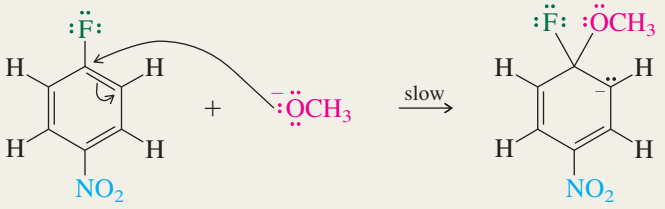
THE OVERALL REACTION:

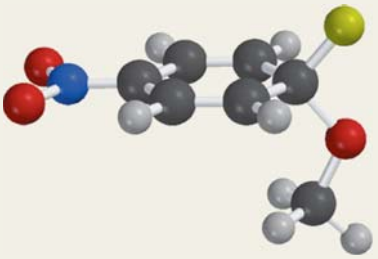


p-Fluoronitrobenzene — Sodium methoxide — *p*-Nitroanisole — Sodium fluoride

THE MECHANISM:

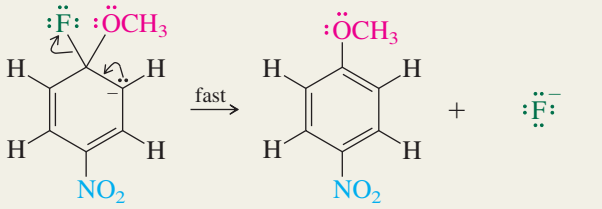
Step 1: Addition stage. The nucleophile, in this case methoxide ion, adds to the carbon atom that bears the leaving group to give a cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate.





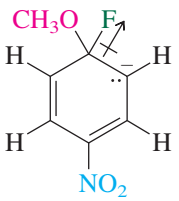
p-Fluoronitrobenzene — Methoxide ion — Cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate

Step 2: Elimination stage. Loss of halide from the cyclohexadienyl intermediate restores the aromaticity of the ring and gives the product of nucleophilic aromatic substitution.



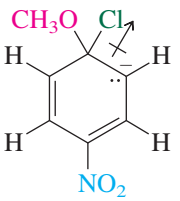
Cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate — *p*-Nitroanisole — Fluoride ion

3. *Leaving-group effects:* Because aryl fluorides have the strongest carbon–halogen bond yet react fastest, the rate-determining step cannot involve carbon–halogen bond cleavage. According to Mechanism 12.6 the carbon–halogen bond breaks in the rapid elimination step that follows the rate-determining addition step. The unusually high reactivity of aryl fluorides arises because fluorine is the most electronegative of the halogens, and its greater ability to attract electrons increases the rate of formation of the cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate in the first step of the mechanism.



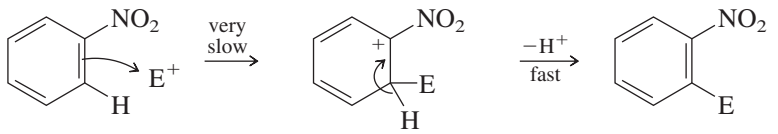
Fluorine stabilizes cyclohexadienyl anion by withdrawing electrons.

is more stable than



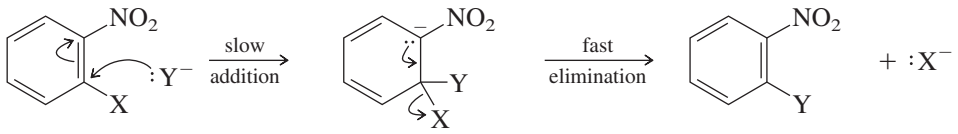
Chlorine is less electronegative than fluorine and does not stabilize cyclohexadienyl anion to as great an extent.

Before leaving this mechanistic discussion, we should mention that the addition–elimination mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution illustrates a principle worth remembering. The words *activating* and *deactivating* as applied to substituent effects in organic chemistry are without meaning when they stand alone. When we say that a group is activating or deactivating, we need to specify the reaction type that is being considered. A nitro group is a strongly *deactivating* substituent in *electrophilic* aromatic substitution, where it markedly destabilizes the key cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate:



Nitrobenzene and an electrophile | Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate; nitro group is destabilizing | Product of electrophilic aromatic substitution

A nitro group is a strongly *activating* substituent in *nucleophilic* aromatic substitution, where it stabilizes the key cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate:

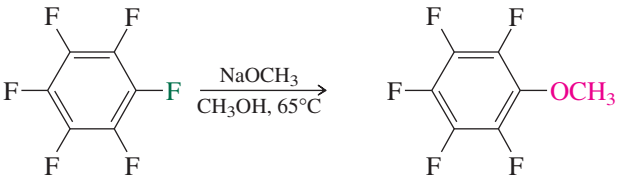


o-Halonitrobenzene (X = F, Cl, Br, or I) and a nucleophile | Cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate; nitro group is stabilizing | Product of nucleophilic aromatic substitution

A nitro group behaves the same way in both reactions: it attracts electrons. Reaction is retarded when electrons flow from the aromatic ring to the attacking species (electrophilic aromatic substitution). Reaction is facilitated when electrons flow from the attacking species to the aromatic ring (nucleophilic aromatic substitution). By being aware of the connection between reactivity and substituent effects, you will sharpen your appreciation of how chemical reactions occur.

12.21 Related Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitutions

The most common types of aryl halides in nucleophilic aromatic substitutions are those that bear *o*- or *p*-nitro substituents. Among other classes of reactive aryl halides, a few merit special consideration. One class includes highly fluorinated aromatic compounds such as hexafluorobenzene, which undergoes substitution of one of its fluorines on reaction with nucleophiles such as sodium methoxide.



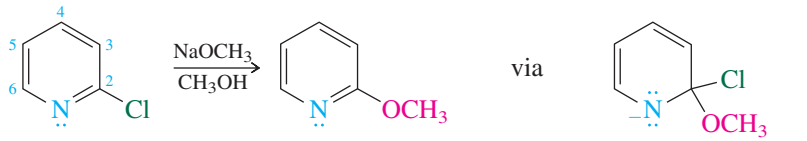
Hexafluorobenzene | 2,3,4,5,6-Pentafluoroanisole (72%)

Here it is the combined electron-attracting inductive effects of the six fluorine substituents that stabilize the cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate and permit the reaction to proceed so readily.

Problem 12.30

Write equations describing the addition–elimination mechanism for the reaction of hexafluorobenzene with sodium methoxide, clearly showing the structure of the rate-determining intermediate.

Halides derived from certain heterocyclic aromatic compounds are often quite reactive toward nucleophiles. 2-Chloropyridine, for example, reacts with sodium methoxide some 230 million times faster than chlorobenzene at 50°C.



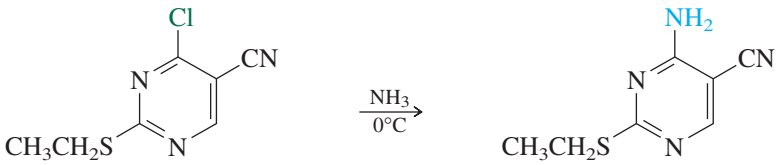
2-Chloropyridine 2-Methoxypyridine Anionic intermediate

Again, rapid reaction is attributed to the stability of the intermediate formed in the addition step. In contrast to chlorobenzene, where the negative charge of the intermediate must be borne by carbon, the anionic intermediate in the case of 2-chloropyridine has its negative charge on nitrogen. Because nitrogen is more electronegative than carbon, the intermediate is more stable and is formed faster than the one from chlorobenzene.

Problem 12.31

Offer an explanation for the observation that 4-chloropyridine is more reactive toward nucleophiles than 3-chloropyridine.

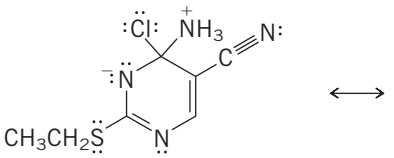
The reactivity of 2-chloropyridines and analogous compounds can be enhanced by the presence of strongly electron-withdrawing groups. In the following example, the chlorine leaving group is activated toward nucleophilic aromatic substitution by both of the ring nitrogens and is ortho to the electron-withdrawing cyano group as well. Substitution by ammonia takes place at 0°C to give a 96% yield of product.



4-Chloro-5-cyano-2-(thioethyl)pyrimidine 4-Amino-5-cyano-2-(thioethyl)pyrimidine (96%)

Problem 12.32

Write contributing resonance structures to show how the negative charge in the intermediate in the preceding reaction is shared by three ring atoms and the nitrogen of the cyano group. Here is one of the contributing structures to get you started.

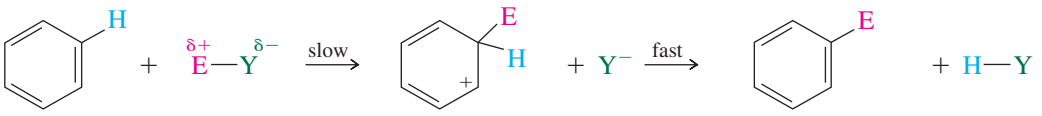


Very strong bases can bring about nucleophilic aromatic substitution by a mechanism other than the one we have been discussing. The intermediate in this other mechanism, outlined in the Descriptive Passage at the end of this chapter, may surprise you.

12.22 SUMMARY

Section 12.1 On reaction with electrophilic reagents, compounds that contain a benzene ring undergo **electrophilic aromatic substitution.** Table 12.1 in Section 12.1 and Table 12.3 in this summary give examples.

Section 12.2 The mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution involves two stages: bonding of the electrophile by the π electrons of the ring (slow, rate-determining), followed by rapid loss of a proton to restore the aromaticity of the ring.

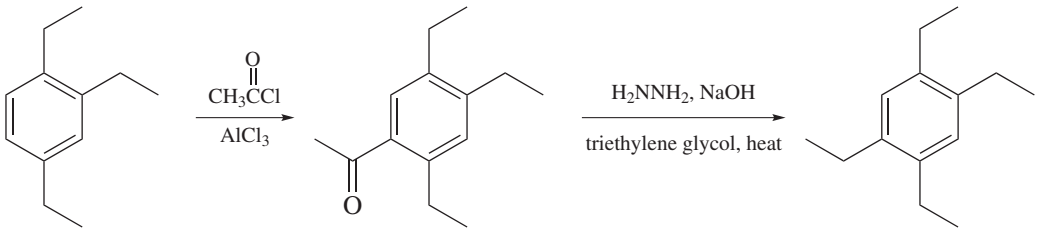


Benzene | Electrophilic reagent | Cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate | Product of electrophilic aromatic substitution

Sections 12.3–12.5 See Table 12.3.

Sections 12.6–12.7 See Tables 12.3 and 12.4.

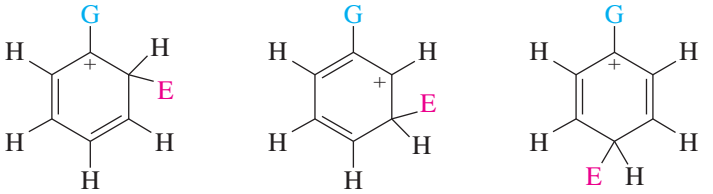
Section 12.8 Friedel–Crafts acylation, followed by Clemmensen or Wolff–Kishner reduction is a standard sequence used to introduce a primary alkyl group onto an aromatic ring.



1,2,4-Triethylbenzene | 2,4,5-Triethylacetophenone (80%) | 1,2,4,5-Tetraethylbenzene (73%)

Section 12.9 Substituents on an aromatic ring can influence both the *rate* and *regioselectivity* of electrophilic aromatic substitution. Substituents are classified as *activating* or *deactivating* according to whether they cause electrophilic aromatic substitution to occur more rapidly or less rapidly than benzene. With respect to regioselectivity, substituents are either *ortho, para-directing* or *meta-directing.* A methyl group is activating and ortho, para-directing. A trifluoromethyl group is deactivating and meta-directing.

Sections 12.10–12.14 How substituents control rate and regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution results from their effect on carbocation stability. An electron-releasing substituent stabilizes the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediates leading to ortho and para substitution more than meta.



Stabilized when G is electron-releasing | Less stabilized when G is electron-releasing | Stabilized when G is electron-releasing

TABLE 12.3 Representative Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions

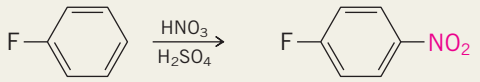
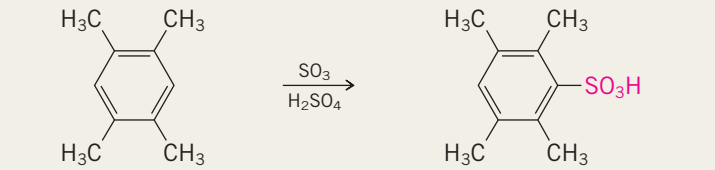
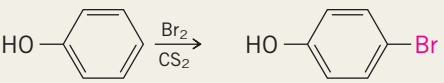
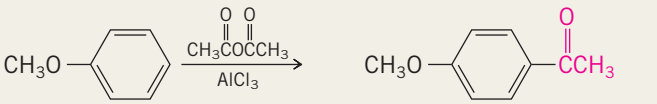
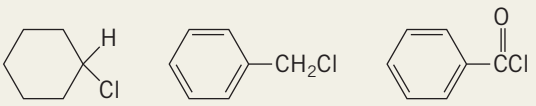
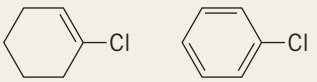
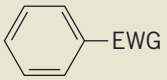
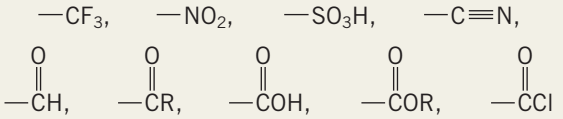
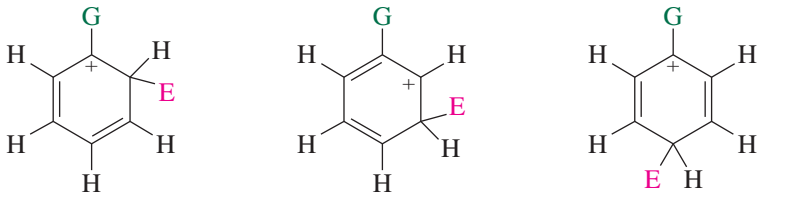
Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Nitration (Section 12.3) The active electrophile in the nitration of benzene and its derivatives is nitronium cation ($:\ddot{O}{=}\overset{+}{N}{=}\ddot{O}:$). It is generated by reaction of nitric acid and sulfuric acid. Very reactive arenes—those that bear strongly activating substituents—undergo nitration in nitric acid alone.	$ArH + HNO_3 \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} ArNO_2 + H_2O$ Arene — Nitric acid — Nitroarene — Water  Fluorobenzene — *p*-Fluoronitrobenzene (80%)
Sulfonation (Section 12.4) Sulfonic acids are formed when aromatic compounds are treated with sources of sulfur trioxide. These sources can be concentrated sulfuric acid (for very reactive arenes) or solutions of sulfur trioxide in sulfuric acid (for benzene and arenes less reactive than benzene).	$ArH + SO_3 \longrightarrow ArSO_3H$ Arene — Sulfur trioxide — Arenesulfonic acid  1,2,4,5-Tetramethylbenzene — 2,3,5,6-Tetramethylbenzenesulfonic acid (94%)
Halogenation (Section 12.5) Chlorination and bromination of arenes are carried out by treatment with the appropriate halogen in the presence of a Lewis acid catalyst. Very reactive arenes undergo halogenation in the absence of a catalyst.	$ArH + X_2 \xrightarrow{FeX_3} ArX + HX$ Arene — Halogen — Aryl halide — Hydrogen halide  Phenol — *p*-Bromophenol (80–84%)
Friedel–Crafts alkylation (Section 12.6) Carbocations, usually generated from an alkyl halide and aluminum chloride, alkylate the aromatic ring. The arene must be at least as reactive as a halobenzene. Rearrangements can occur, especially with primary alkyl halides.	$ArH + RX \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} ArR + HX$ Arene — Alkyl halide — Alkylarene — Hydrogen halide Benzene — Cyclopentyl bromide — Cyclopentylbenzene (54%)
Friedel–Crafts acylation (Section 12.7) Acyl cations (acylium ions) generated by treating an acyl chloride or acid anhydride with aluminum chloride acylate aromatic rings to yield ketones. The arene must be at least as reactive as a halobenzene. Acyl cations are relatively stable, and do not rearrange.	$ArH + RCCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} ArCR + HCl$ Arene — Acyl chloride — Ketone — Hydrogen chloride $ArH + RCOCR \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} ArCR + RCOH$ Arene — Acid anhydride — Ketone — Carboxylic acid  Anisole — *p*-Methoxyacetophenone (90–94%)

TABLE 12.4 Limitations on Friedel–Crafts Reactions

1. The organic halide that reacts with the arene must be an alkyl halide (Section 12.6) or an acyl halide (Section 12.7). Vinylic halides and aryl halides do not form carbocations under conditions of the Friedel–Crafts reaction and so cannot be used in place of an alkyl halide or an acyl halide.	*These will react with benzene under Friedel–Crafts conditions:*  Alkyl halide Benzylic halide Acyl halide *These will not react with benzene under Friedel–Crafts conditions:*  Vinylic halide Aryl halide
2. Rearrangement of alkyl groups can occur (Section 12.6).	Rearrangement is especially prevalent with primary alkyl halides of the type RCH_2CH_2X and R_2CHCH_2X. Aluminum chloride induces ionization with rearrangement to give a more stable carbocation. Benzylic halides and acyl halides do not rearrange.
3. Strongly deactivated aromatic rings do not undergo Friedel–Crafts alkylation or acylation (Section 12.16). Friedel–Crafts alkylations and acylations fail when applied to compounds of the following type, where EWG is a strongly electron-withdrawing group: 	*EWG:* 
4. It is sometimes difficult to limit Friedel–Crafts alkylation to monoalkylation. Only monoacylation occurs during Friedel–Crafts acylation.	The first *alkyl* group that goes on makes the ring more reactive toward further substitution because alkyl groups are activating substituents. Monoacylation is possible because the first *acyl* group to go on is strongly electron-withdrawing and deactivates the ring toward further substitution.

Conversely, an electron-withdrawing substituent destabilizes the cyclohexadienyl cations leading to ortho and para substitution more than meta. Thus, meta substitution predominates.

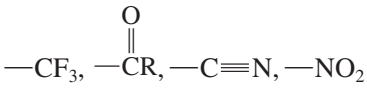


Destabilized when G is electron-withdrawing | Less destabilized when G is electron-withdrawing | Destabilized when G is electron-withdrawing

Substituents can be arranged into three major categories:

1. **Activating and ortho, para-directing:** These substituents stabilize the cyclohexadienyl cation formed in the rate-determining step. They include $-\ddot{N}R_2$, $-\ddot{O}R$, —R, —Ar, and related species. The most strongly activating members of this group are bonded to the ring by a nitrogen or oxygen atom that bears an unshared pair of electrons.
2. **Deactivating and ortho, para-directing:** The halogens are the most prominent members of this class. They withdraw electron density from all the ring positions by an inductive effect, making halobenzenes less reactive than benzene. Lone-pair electron donation stabilizes the cyclohexadienyl cation intermediates for ortho and para substitution more than those for meta substitution.

3. **Deactivating and meta-directing:** These substituents are strongly electron-withdrawing and destabilize carbocations. They include



and related species. All the ring positions are deactivated, but because the *meta* positions are deactivated less than the ortho and para, meta substitution is favored.

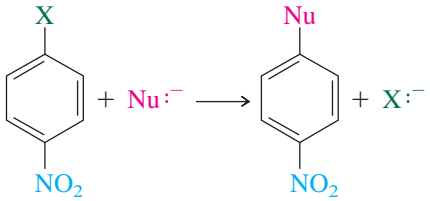
Section 12.15 When two or more substituents are present on a ring, the regioselectivity of electrophilic aromatic substitution is generally controlled by the directing effect of the more powerful *activating* substituent.

Section 12.16 The order in which substituents are introduced onto a benzene ring needs to be considered in order to prepare the desired isomer in a multistep synthesis.

Section 12.17 Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons undergo the same kind of electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions as benzene.

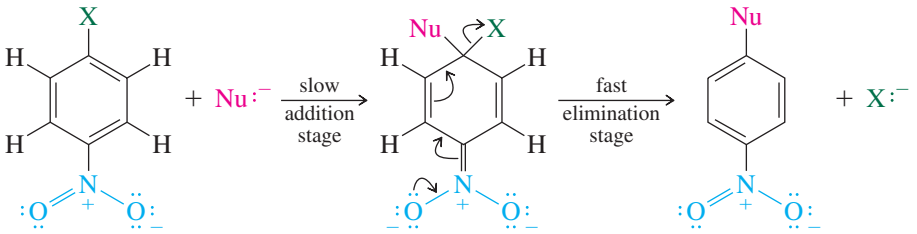
Section 12.18 Heterocyclic aromatic compounds may be more reactive or less reactive than benzene. Pyridine is much less reactive than benzene, but pyrrole, furan, and thiophene are more reactive. Pyridine undergoes substitution at the carbon-3 position, whereas pyrrole, furan, and thiophene give mainly carbon-2-substituted products.

Section 12.19 Aryl halides are less reactive than alkyl halides in nucleophilic substitution reactions. Nucleophilic substitution in aryl halides is facilitated by the presence of a strong electron-withdrawing group, such as NO_2, ortho or para to the halogen.



In reactions of this type, fluoride is the best leaving group of the halogens and iodide the poorest.

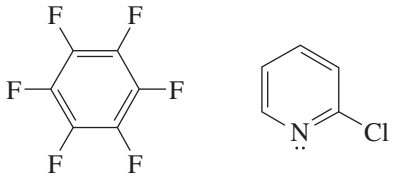
Section 12.20 Nucleophilic aromatic substitutions of the type just shown follow an **addition–elimination mechanism.**



Nitro-substituted aryl halide | Cyclohexadienyl anion intermediate | Product of nucleophilic aromatic substitution

The rate-determining intermediate is a cyclohexadienyl anion and is stabilized by electron-withdrawing substituents.

Section 12.21 Other aryl halides that give stabilized anions can undergo nucleophilic aromatic substitution by the addition–elimination mechanism. Two examples are hexafluorobenzene and 2-chloropyridine.



Hexafluorobenzene | 2-Chloropyridine

PROBLEMS

12.33 Give reagents suitable for carrying out each of the following reactions, and write the major organic products. If an ortho, para mixture is expected, show both. If the meta isomer is the expected major product, write only that isomer.

(a) Nitration of nitrobenzene

(b) Bromination of toluene

(c) Bromination of (trifluoromethyl)benzene

(d) Sulfonation of anisole

(e) Sulfonation of acetanilide ($C_6H_5NHCCH_3$, with O double-bonded to the carbonyl C)

(f) Chlorination of bromobenzene

(g) Friedel–Crafts alkylation of anisole with benzyl chloride

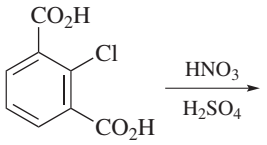
(h) Friedel–Crafts acylation of benzene with benzoyl chloride (C_6H_5CCl, with O double-bonded to the carbonyl C)

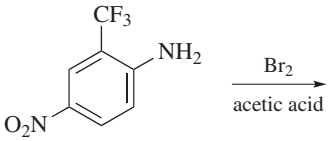
(i) Nitration of the product from part (h)

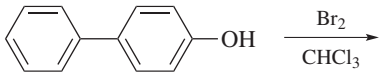
(j) Clemmensen reduction of the product from part (h)

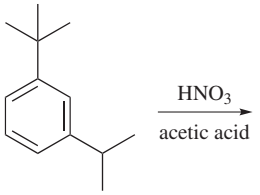
(k) Wolff–Kishner reduction of the product from part (h)

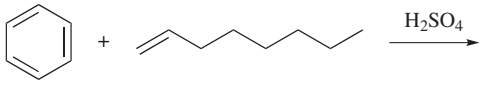
12.34 Write the structure of the organic product in each of the following reactions. If electrophilic aromatic substitution occurs, assume only monosubstitution.

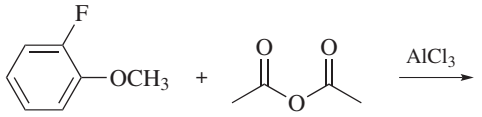
(a) 

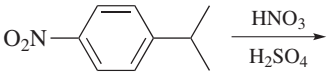
(b) 

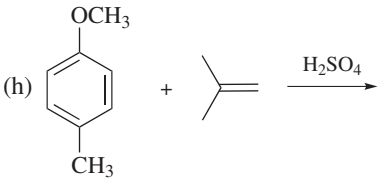
(c) 

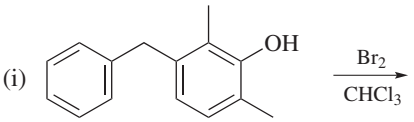
(d) 

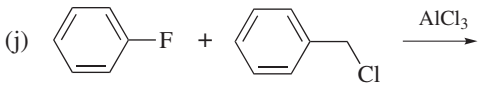
(e) 

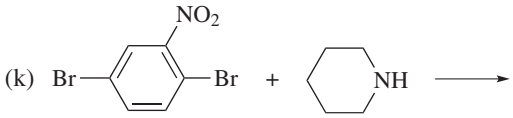
(f) 

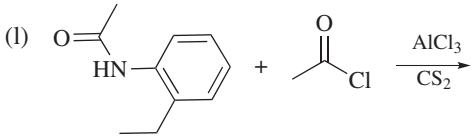
(g) 

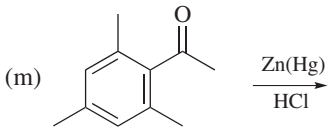
(h) 

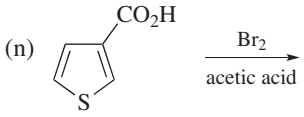
(i) 

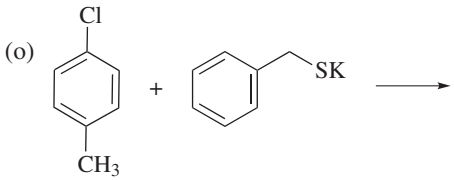
(j) 

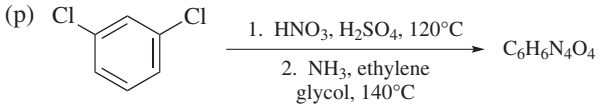
(k) 

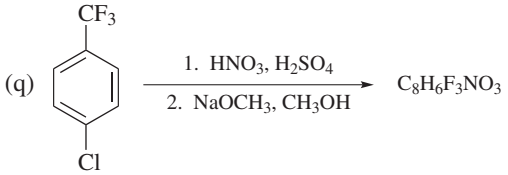
(l) 

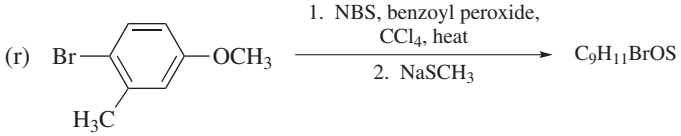
(m) 

(n) 

(o) 

(p) 

(q) 

(r) 

12.35 Friedel–Crafts acylation of the individual isomers of xylene with acetyl chloride and aluminum chloride yields a single product, different for each xylene isomer, in high yield in each case. Write the structures of the products of acetylation of *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-xylene.

12.36 Reaction of benzanilide ($C_6H_5NHCC_6H_5$, with O) with chlorine in acetic acid yields a mixture of two monochloro derivatives. Suggest reasonable structures for these two isomers.

12.37 1,2,3,4,5-Pentafluoro-6-nitrobenzene reacts readily with sodium methoxide in methanol at room temperature to yield two major products, each having the molecular formula $C_7H_3F_4NO_3$. Suggest reasonable structures for these two compounds.

12.38 Each of the following reactions has been carried out under conditions such that disubstitution or trisubstitution occurred. Identify the principal organic product in each case.

(a) Nitration of *p*-chlorobenzoic acid (dinitration)
(b) Bromination of aniline (tribromination)
(c) Bromination of *o*-aminoacetophenone (dibromination)
(d) Bromination of *p*-nitrophenol (dibromination)
(e) Reaction of biphenyl with *tert*-butyl chloride and iron(III) chloride (dialkylation)
(f) Sulfonation of phenol (disulfonation)

12.39 Write a structural formula for the most stable cyclohexadienyl cation intermediate formed in each of the following reactions. Is this intermediate more or less stable than the one formed from benzene?

(a) Bromination of *p*-xylene
(b) Chlorination of *m*-xylene
(c) Nitration of acetophenone
(d) Friedel–Crafts acylation of anisole with acetyl chloride (CH_3CCl, with O)
(e) Nitration of isopropylbenzene
(f) Bromination of nitrobenzene
(g) Sulfonation of furan
(h) Bromination of pyridine

12.40 In each of the following pairs of compounds choose which one will react faster with the indicated reagent, and write a chemical equation for the faster reaction:

(a) Toluene or chlorobenzene with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid
(b) Fluorobenzene or (trifluoromethyl)benzene with benzyl chloride and aluminum chloride
(c) Methyl benzoate ($C_6H_5COCH_3$, with O) or phenyl acetate ($C_6H_5OCCH_3$, with O) with bromine in acetic acid
(d) Acetanilide ($C_6H_5NHCCH_3$, with O) or nitrobenzene with sulfur trioxide in sulfuric acid
(e) *p*-Dimethylbenzene (*p*-xylene) or *p*-di-*tert*-butylbenzene with acetyl chloride and aluminum chloride

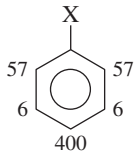
12.41 Choose the compound in each of the following pairs that reacts faster with sodium methoxide in methanol, and write a chemical equation for the faster reaction.

(a) Chlorobenzene or *o*-chloronitrobenzene
(b) *o*-Chloronitrobenzene or *m*-chloronitrobenzene
(c) 4-Chloro-3-nitroacetophenone or 4-chloro-3-nitrotoluene
(d) 2-Fluoro-1,3-dinitrobenzene or 1-fluoro-3,5-dinitrobenzene
(e) 1,4-Dibromo-2-nitrobenzene or 1-bromo-2,4-dinitrobenzene

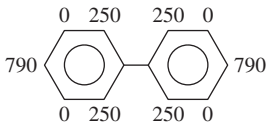
12.42 Arrange the following five compounds in order of decreasing rate of bromination: benzene, toluene, *o*-xylene, *m*-xylene, 1,3,5-trimethylbenzene (the relative rates are 2×10^7, 5×10^4, 5×10^2, 60, and 1).

12.43 Of the groups shown, which is the most likely candidate for substituent X based on the partial rate factors for chlorination?

$-CF_3$ $-C(CH_3)_3$ $-Br$ $-SO_3H$ $-CH{=}O$



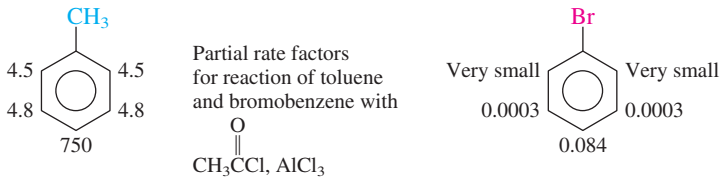
12.44 The partial rate factors for chlorination of biphenyl are as shown.



(a) What is the relative rate of chlorination of biphenyl compared with benzene?

(b) If, in a particular chlorination reaction, 10 g of *o*-chlorobiphenyl was formed, how much *p*-chlorobiphenyl would you expect to find?

12.45 Partial rate factors may be used to estimate product distributions in disubstituted benzene derivatives. The reactivity of a particular position in *o*-bromotoluene, for example, is given by the product of the partial rate factors for the corresponding position in toluene and bromobenzene. On the basis of the partial rate factor data given here for Friedel–Crafts acylation, predict the major product of the reaction of *o*-bromotoluene with acetyl chloride and aluminum chloride.



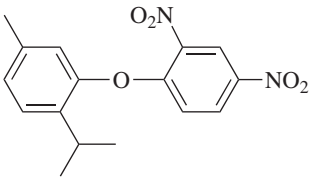
12.46 Write equations showing how to prepare each of the following from benzene or toluene and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents. If an ortho, para mixture is formed in any step of your synthesis, assume that you can separate the two isomers.

(a) Isopropylbenzene
(b) *p*-Isopropylbenzenesulfonic acid
(c) 2-Bromo-2-phenylpropane
(d) 4-*tert*-Butyl-2-nitrotoluene
(e) *m*-Chloroacetophenone
(f) *p*-Chloroacetophenone
(g) 3-Bromo-4-methylacetophenone
(h) 2-Bromo-4-ethyltoluene
(i) 3-Bromo-5-nitrobenzoic acid
(j) 2-Bromo-4-nitrobenzoic acid
(k) 1-Phenyloctane
(l) 1-Phenyl-1-octene
(m) 1-Phenyl-1-octyne
(n) 1,4-Di-*tert*-butyl-1,4-cyclohexadiene

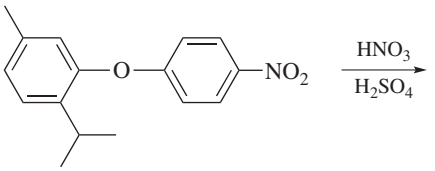
12.47 Write equations showing how you could prepare each of the following from anisole and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents. If an ortho, para mixture is formed in any step of your synthesis, assume that you can separate the two isomers.

(a) *p*-Methoxybenzenesulfonic acid
(b) 2-Bromo-4-nitroanisole
(c) 4-Bromo-2-nitroanisole
(d) *p*-Methoxystyrene

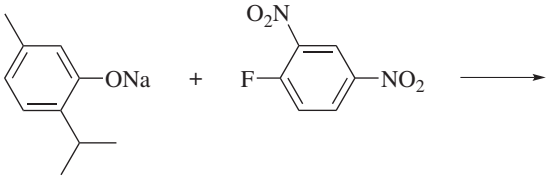
12.48 Which is the best synthesis of the compound shown?



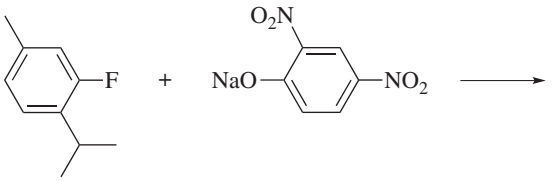
(a)



(b)

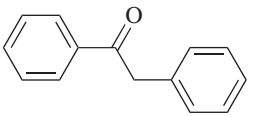


(c)

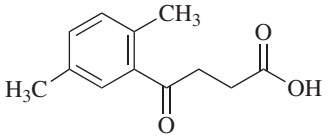


12.49 What combination of acyl chloride or acid anhydride and arene would you choose to prepare each of the following compounds by Friedel–Crafts acylation?

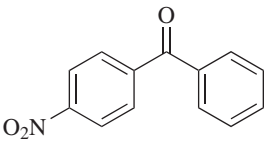
(a)



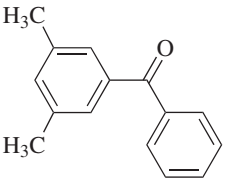
(b)



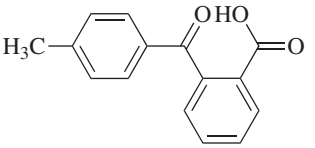
(c)



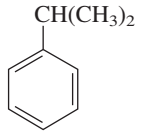
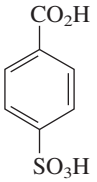
(d)

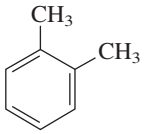
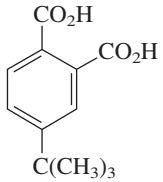


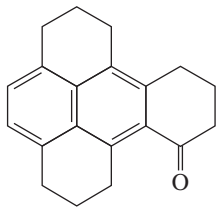
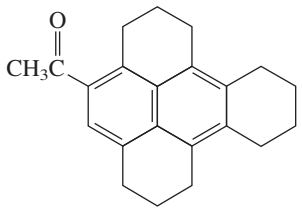
(e)

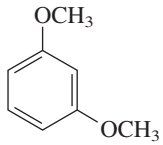
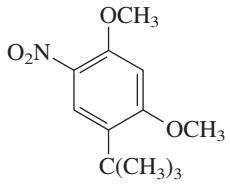


12.50 Suggest a suitable series of reactions for carrying out each of the following synthetic transformations:

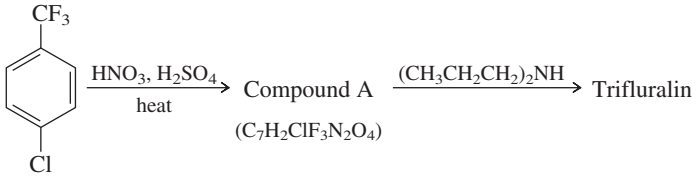
(a)  to 

(b)  to 

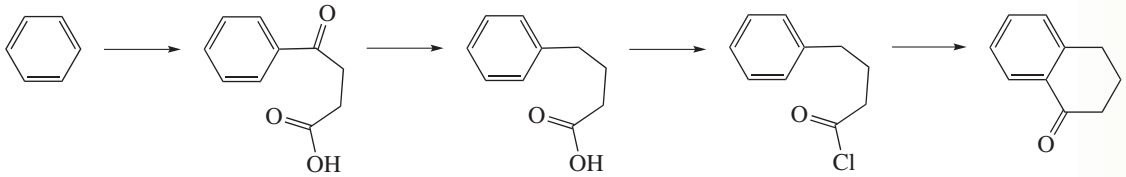
(c)  to 

(d)  to 

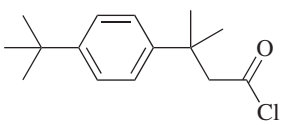
12.51 The herbicide *trifluralin* is prepared by the following sequence of reactions. Identify compound A and deduce the structure of trifluralin.

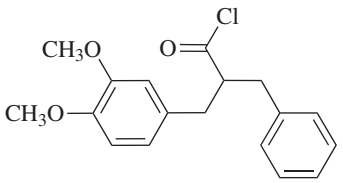


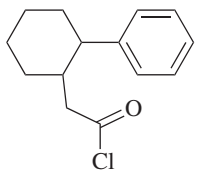
12.52 A standard synthetic sequence for building a six-membered cyclic ketone onto an existing aromatic ring is shown in outline as follows. Specify the reagents necessary for each step.



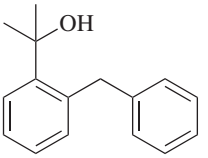
12.53 Each of the compounds indicated undergoes an intramolecular Friedel–Crafts acylation reaction to yield a cyclic ketone. Write the structure of the expected product in each case.

(a) 

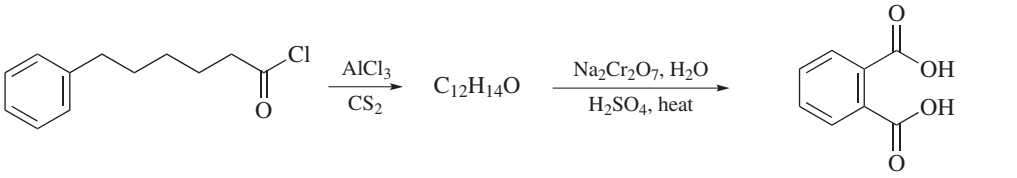
(c) 

(b) 

12.54 Treatment of the alcohol shown with sulfuric acid gave a tricyclic hydrocarbon of molecular formula $C_{16}H_{16}$ as the major organic product. Suggest a reasonable structure for this hydrocarbon.



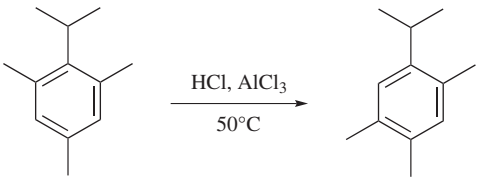
12.55 When a dilute solution of 6-phenylhexanoyl chloride in carbon disulfide was slowly added (over a period of eight days!) to a suspension of aluminum chloride in the same solvent, it yielded a product A ($C_{12}H_{14}O$) in 67% yield. Oxidation of A gave benzene-1,2-dicarboxylic acid.



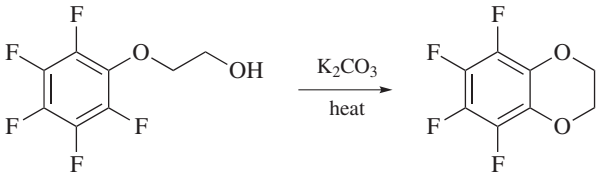
6-Phenylhexanoyl chloride Compound A Benzene-1,2-dicarboxylic acid

Formulate a reasonable structure for compound A.

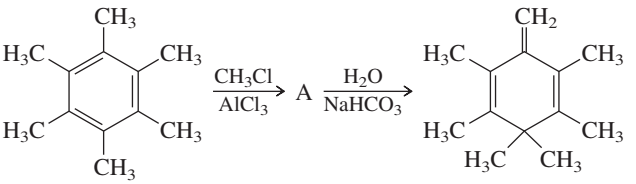
12.56 When 2-isopropyl-1,3,5-trimethylbenzene is heated with aluminum chloride (trace of HCl present) at 50°C, the major material present after 4 h is 1-isopropyl-2,4,5-trimethylbenzene. Suggest a reasonable mechanism for this isomerization.



12.57 Suggest a reasonable mechanism for the following reaction:

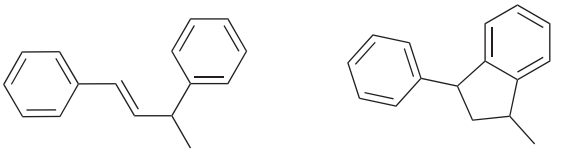


12.58 Reaction of hexamethylbenzene with methyl chloride and aluminum chloride gave a salt A, which, on being treated with aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, yielded compound B. Suggest a mechanism for the conversion of hexamethylbenzene to B by correctly inferring the structure of A.



Hexamethylbenzene Compound B

12.59 When styrene is heated with aqueous sulfuric acid, the two "styrene dimers" shown are the major products. Ignoring stereochemistry, suggest a reasonable mechanism for the formation of each isomer. Assume the proton donor in your mechanism is H_3O^+.

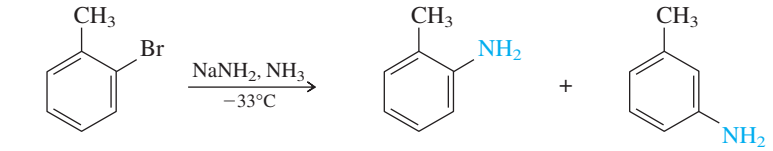


1,3-Diphenyl-1-butene 1-Methyl-3-phenylindan

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 12

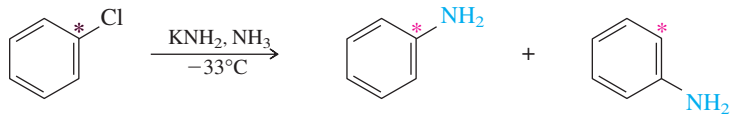
Benzyne

Very strong bases such as sodium or potassium amide react readily with aryl halides, even those without electron-withdrawing substituents, to give products of nucleophilic substitution by the base. Substitution does not occur exclusively at the carbon with the halide, as shown for the following reaction of *o*-bromotoluene with sodium amide.



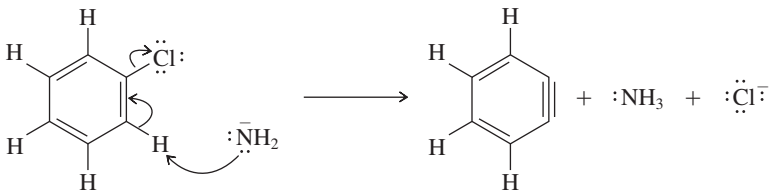
o-Bromotoluene — *o*-Methylaniline — *m*-Methylaniline

This reaction is inconsistent with substitution by an addition–elimination mechanism, because the nucleophile is not attached solely to the carbon from which the halide leaving group departed. An alternative mechanism was proposed on the basis of isotope experiments with ^{14}C-labeled chlorobenzene, in which the substitution product retained half of its label at C-1 and half at C-2.



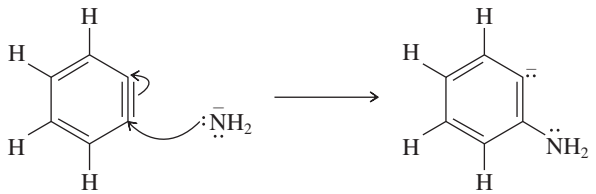
Chlorobenzene-1-^{14}C — Aniline-1-^{14}C (48%) — Aniline-2-^{14}C (52%)

On the basis of the labeling experiment, an alternative mechanism was proposed for the substitution reaction of aryl halides with strong base-the elimination-addition mechanism. In the first step, the elimination stage, amide anion removes a proton from the carbon on the ring adjacent to the one with the halogen. The product is an unstable intermediate known as *benzyne*.



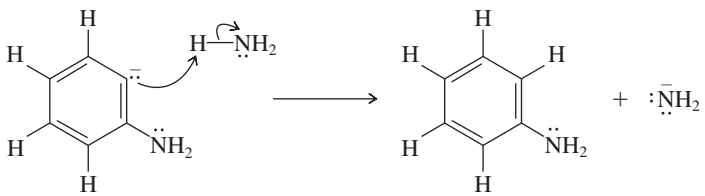
Chlorobenzene — Benzyne

In the second step, amide anion now acts as a nucleophile, adding to one of the carbons of the triple bond. This addition step gives an aryl anion.



Benzyne — Aryl anion

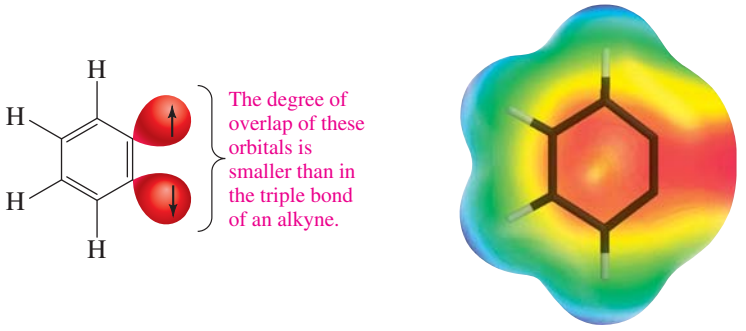
In the final step, the aryl anion abstracts a proton from ammonia to give aniline.



Aryl anion — Aniline

Figure 12.10

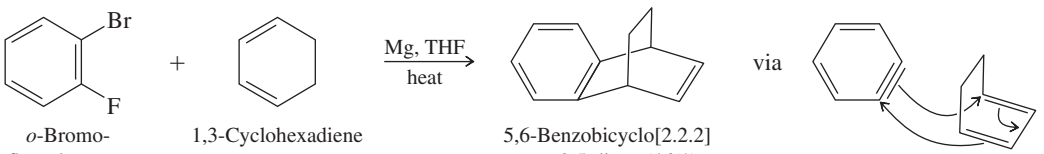
(*a*) The sp^2 orbitals in the plane of the ring in benzyne are not properly aligned for good overlap, and π bonding is weak. (*b*) The electrostatic potential map shows a region of high electron density associated with the "triple bond."



The triple bond in benzyne is different from the usual triple bond of an alkyne. In benzyne, one of the π components of the triple bond results from *p*–*p* overlap and is part of the delocalized π system of the aromatic ring. The second π component, which results from overlapping adjacent sp^2-hybridized orbitals, lies in the plane of the ring and is not part of the aromatic π system, as shown in Figure 12.10 and the electrostatic potential map.

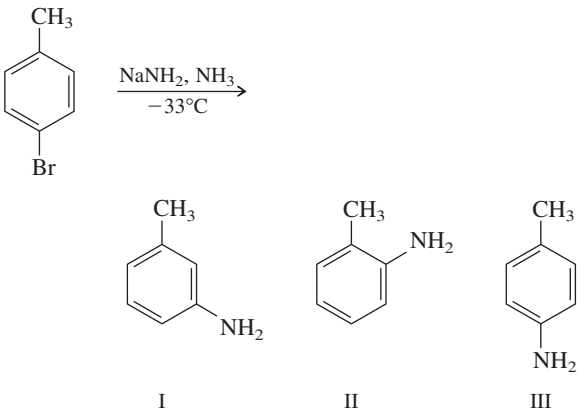
The intermediacy of benzyne in the elimination–addition mechanism for aryl halides accounts for the regioselectivity observed in the substitution reactions of labeled chlorobenzene and *o*-bromotoluene because both can give only a single aryne intermediate. Attack at either of the aryne carbons gives rise to the products.

The triple bond in benzyne is strained and is a dienophile in Diels–Alder reactions. Alternative methods exist for the generation of benzyne in cycloadditions and other synthetic applications. In the following example, *o*-bromofluorobenzene is treated with magnesium in tetrahydrofuran (THF). When carried out in the presence of cyclohexadiene, a Diels–Alder reaction occurs.



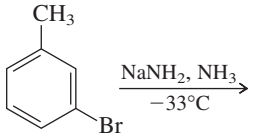
o-Bromofluorobenzene + 1,3-Cyclohexadiene → 5,6-Benzobicyclo[2.2.2]octa-2,5-diene (46%) via

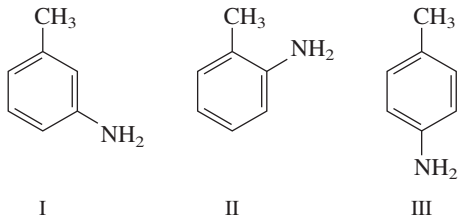
12.60 Which of the following methylanilines can be formed by the reaction of *p*-bromotoluene with sodium amide in ammonia at −33°C?



A. I and II
B. II and III
C. I and III
D. I, II, and III

12.61 Which of the following methylanilines can be formed by the reaction of *m*-bromotoluene with sodium amide in ammonia at −33°C?

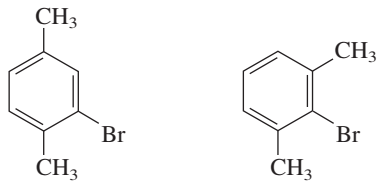




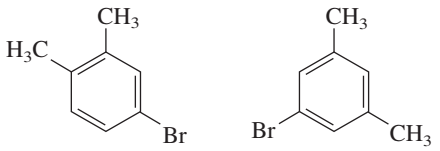
I II III

A. I and II
B. II and III
C. I and III
D. I, II, and III

12.62 Which one of the following isomers of bromodimethylbenzene *cannot* undergo nucleophilic aromatic substitution by treatment with sodium amide in liquid ammonia?

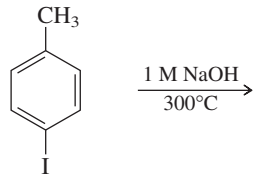


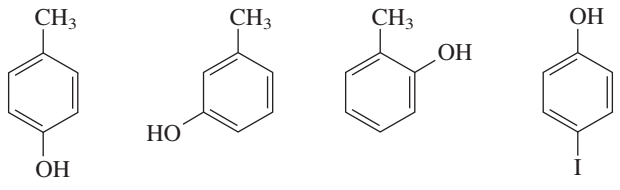
A. B.



C. D.

12.63 Two isomeric phenols are obtained in comparable amounts on hydrolysis of *p*-iodotoluene with 1 M sodium hydroxide at 300°C. What are the structures of each?





I II III IV

A. I and II
B. I and III
C. II and III
D. III and IV

13

CHAPTER OUTLINE

13.1 Principles of Molecular Spectroscopy: Electromagnetic Radiation 511
13.2 Principles of Molecular Spectroscopy: Quantized Energy States 512
13.3 Introduction to ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy 512
13.4 Nuclear Shielding and ^{1}H Chemical Shifts 514
13.5 Effects of Molecular Structure on ^{1}H Chemical Shifts 517
- Ring Currents: Aromatic and Antiaromatic 522

13.6 Interpreting ^{1}H NMR Spectra 523
13.7 Spin–Spin Splitting in ^{1}H NMR 525
13.8 Splitting Patterns: The Ethyl Group 528
13.9 Splitting Patterns: The Isopropyl Group 529
13.10 Splitting Patterns: Pairs of Doublets 530
13.11 Complex Splitting Patterns 531
13.12 ^{1}H NMR Spectra of Alcohols 534
- Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) 535

13.13 NMR and Conformations 535
13.14 ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy 536
13.15 ^{13}C Chemical Shifts 537
13.16 ^{13}C NMR and Peak Intensities 539
13.17 ^{13}C—^{1}H Coupling 541
13.18 Using DEPT to Count Hydrogens 541
13.19 2D NMR: COSY and HETCOR 543
13.20 Introduction to Infrared Spectroscopy 545
- Spectra by the Thousands 546

13.21 Infrared Spectra 547
13.22 Characteristic Absorption Frequencies 549
13.23 Ultraviolet-Visible Spectroscopy 553
13.24 Mass Spectrometry 555
13.25 Molecular Formula as a Clue to Structure 560
13.26 **Summary** 561

Problems 564
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 13: More on Coupling Constants 575

Many organosilicon compounds such as tetramethylsilane [$(CH_3)_4Si$] are made from SiO_2, which occurs naturally in many forms, including quartz. The hydrogens and carbons of tetramethylsilane are the references to which other hydrogens and carbons are compared in nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy.

Spectroscopy

Until the second half of the twentieth century, the structure of a substance—a newly discovered natural product, for example—was determined using information obtained from chemical reactions. This information included the identification of functional groups by chemical tests, along with the results of experiments in which the substance was broken down into smaller, more readily identifiable fragments. Typical of this approach is the demonstration of the presence of a double bond in an alkene by catalytic hydrogenation and determination of its location by ozonolysis. After considering all the available chemical evidence, the chemist proposed a candidate structure (or structures) consistent with the observations. Proof of structure was provided either by converting the substance to some already known compound or by an independent synthesis.

Qualitative tests and chemical degradation have given way to instrumental methods of structure determination. The main methods and the structural clues they provide are:

- **Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy,** which tells us about the carbon skeleton and the environments of the hydrogens attached to it.
- **Infrared (IR) spectroscopy,** which reveals the presence or signals the absence of key functional groups.

- **Ultraviolet-visible (UV-VIS) spectroscopy,** which probes the electron distribution, especially in molecules that have conjugated π electron systems.
- **Mass spectrometry (MS),** which gives the molecular weight and formula, both of the molecule itself and various structural units within it.

As diverse as these techniques are, all of them are based on the absorption of energy by a molecule, and all measure how a molecule responds to that absorption. In describing these techniques our emphasis will be on their application to structure determination. We'll start with a brief discussion of electromagnetic radiation, which is the source of the energy that a molecule absorbs in NMR, IR, and UV-VIS spectroscopy. Mass spectrometry is unique in that, instead of electromagnetic radiation, its energy source is a stream of charged particles such as electrons.

13.1 Principles of Molecular Spectroscopy: Electromagnetic Radiation

Electromagnetic radiation, of which visible light is but one example, has the properties of both particles and waves. The particles are called **photons,** and each possesses an amount of energy referred to as a **quantum.** In 1900, the German physicist Max Planck proposed that the energy of a photon (E) is directly proportional to its **frequency** (ν).

"Modern" physics dates from Planck's proposal that energy is quantized, which set the stage for the development of quantum mechanics. Planck received the 1918 Nobel Prize in Physics.

$$E = h\nu$$

The SI units of frequency are reciprocal seconds (s^{-1}), given the name *hertz* and the symbol Hz in honor of the nineteenth-century physicist Heinrich R. Hertz. The constant of proportionality h is called **Planck's constant** and has the value

$$h = 6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}$$

Electromagnetic radiation travels at the speed of light ($c = 3.0 \times 10^8$ m/s), which is equal to the product of its frequency ν and its wavelength λ:

$$c = \nu\lambda$$

The range of photon energies is called the *electromagnetic spectrum* and is shown in Figure 13.1. Visible light occupies a very small region of the electromagnetic spectrum. It is

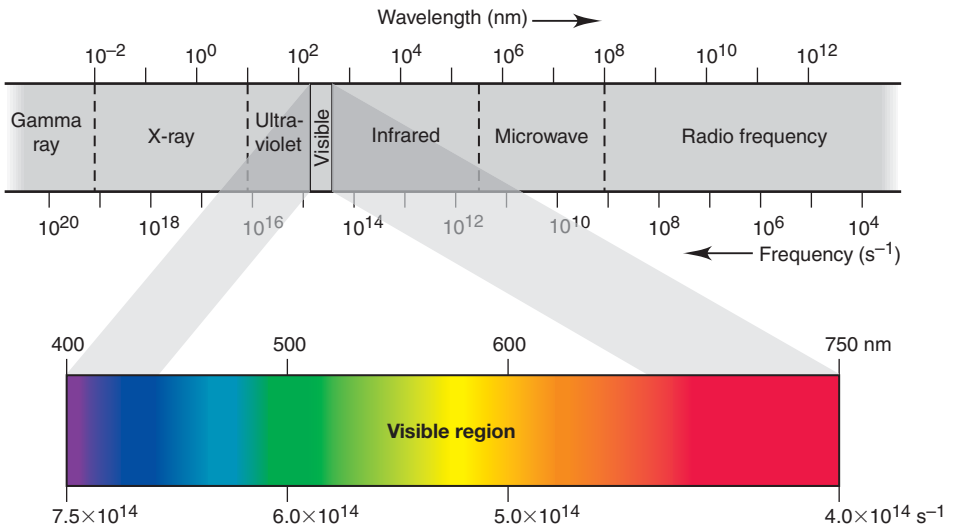


Figure 13.1

The electromagnetic spectrum. (Reprinted, with permission, from M. Silberberg, *Chemistry,* 6th ed., McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2009, p. 271.)

1 nm = 10^{-9} m

characterized by wavelengths of 400 nm (violet) to 800 nm (red). When examining Figure 13.1 be sure to keep the following two relationships in mind:

1. *Frequency is inversely proportional to wavelength;* the greater the frequency, the shorter the wavelength.
2. *Energy is directly proportional to frequency;* electromagnetic radiation of higher frequency possesses more energy than radiation of lower frequency.

Gamma rays and X-rays are streams of very high energy photons. Radio waves are of relatively low energy. Ultraviolet radiation is of higher energy than the violet end of visible light. Infrared radiation is of lower energy than the red end of visible light. When a molecule is exposed to electromagnetic radiation, it may absorb a photon, increasing its energy by an amount equal to the energy of the photon. Molecules are highly selective with respect to the frequencies they absorb. Only photons of certain specific frequencies are absorbed by a molecule. The particular photon energies absorbed by a molecule depend on molecular structure and are measured with instruments called **spectrometers.** The data obtained are very sensitive indicators of molecular structure.

13.2 Principles of Molecular Spectroscopy: Quantized Energy States

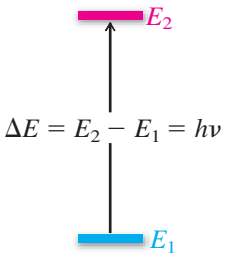


Figure 13.2

Two energy states of a molecule. Absorption of energy equal to $E_2 - E_1$ excites a molecule from its lower energy state to the next higher state.

What determines whether electromagnetic radiation is absorbed by a molecule? The most important requirement is that the energy of the photon must equal the energy difference between two states, such as two nuclear spin states (NMR), two vibrational states (IR), or two electronic states (UV-VIS). In physics, the term for this is *resonance*—the transfer of energy between two objects that occurs when their frequencies are matched. In molecular spectroscopy, we are concerned with the transfer of energy from a photon to a molecule. Consider, for example, two energy states of a molecule designated E_1 and E_2 in Figure 13.2. The energy difference between them is $E_2 - E_1$, or ΔE. Unlike kinetic energy, which is continuous, meaning that all values of kinetic energy are available to a molecule, only certain energies are possible for electronic, vibrational, and nuclear spin states. These energy states are said to be **quantized.** More of the molecules exist in the lower energy state E_1 than in the higher energy state E_2. Excitation of a molecule from a lower state to a higher one requires the addition of an increment of energy equal to ΔE. Thus, when electromagnetic radiation strikes a molecule, only the frequency with energy equal to ΔE is absorbed.

Spectrometers are designed to measure the absorption of electromagnetic radiation by a sample. Basically, a spectrometer consists of a source of radiation, a compartment containing the sample through which the radiation passes, and a detector. The frequency of radiation is continuously varied, and its intensity at the detector is compared with that at the source. When the frequency is reached at which the sample absorbs radiation, the detector senses a decrease in intensity. The relation between frequency and absorption is plotted as a **spectrum,** which consists of a series of peaks at characteristic frequencies. Its interpretation can furnish structural information. Each type of spectroscopy developed independently of the others, and so the data format is different for each one. An NMR spectrum looks different from an IR spectrum, and both look different from a UV-VIS spectrum.

With this as background, we will now discuss spectroscopic techniques individually. NMR, IR, and UV-VIS spectroscopy provide complementary information, and all are useful. Among them, NMR provides the information that is most directly related to molecular structure and is the one we'll examine first.

13.3 Introduction to ^{1}H NMR Spectroscopy

Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy depends on the absorption of energy when the nucleus of an atom is excited from its lowest energy spin state to the next higher one. The nuclei of many elements can be studied by NMR, and the two elements that are the most common in organic molecules (carbon and hydrogen) have isotopes (^{1}H and ^{13}C) capable

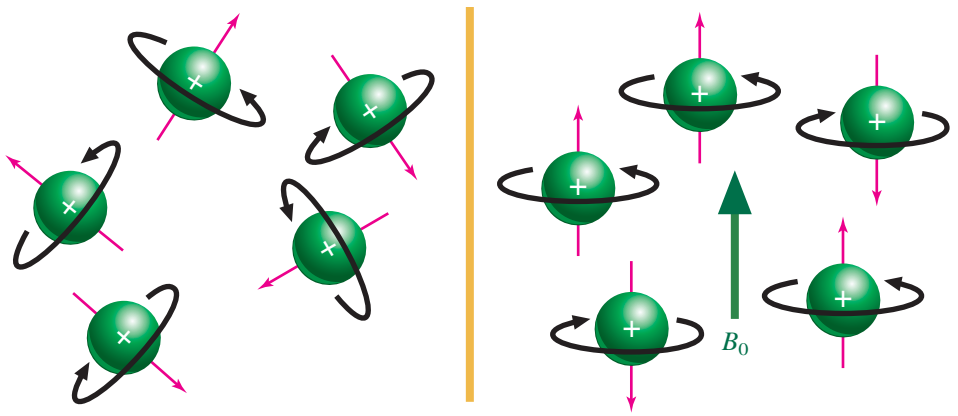
of giving NMR spectra that are rich in structural information. A proton nuclear magnetic resonance (^{1}H NMR) spectrum tells us about the environments of the various hydrogens in a molecule; a carbon-13 nuclear magnetic resonance (^{13}C NMR) spectrum does the same for the carbon atoms. Separately and together ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR take us a long way toward determining a substance's molecular structure. We'll develop most of the general principles of NMR by discussing ^{1}H NMR, then extend them to ^{13}C NMR. The ^{13}C NMR discussion is shorter, not because it is less important than ^{1}H NMR, but because many of the same principles apply to both techniques.

Nuclear magnetic resonance of protons was first detected in 1946 by Edward Purcell (Harvard) and by Felix Bloch (Stanford). Purcell and Bloch shared the 1952 Nobel Prize in Physics.

Like an electron, a proton has two spin states with quantum numbers of $+\frac{1}{2}$ and $-\frac{1}{2}$. There is no difference in energy between these two nuclear spin states; a proton is just as likely to have a spin of $+\frac{1}{2}$ as $-\frac{1}{2}$. Absorption of electromagnetic radiation can only occur when the two spin states have different energies. A way to make them different is to place the sample in a magnetic field. A spinning proton behaves like a tiny bar magnet and has a magnetic moment associated with it (Figure 13.3). In the presence of an external magnetic field B_0, the spin state in which the magnetic moment of the nucleus is aligned with B_0 is lower in energy than the one in which it opposes B_0.

As shown in Figure 13.4, the energy difference between the two states is directly proportional to the strength of the applied field. Net absorption of electromagnetic radiation requires that the lower state be more highly populated than the higher one, and quite strong magnetic fields are required to achieve the separation necessary to give a detectable signal. A magnetic field of 4.7 T, which is about 100,000 times stronger than Earth's magnetic field, separates the two spin states of a proton by only 8×10^{-5} kJ/mol (1.9×10^{-5} kcal/mol). From Planck's equation $\Delta E = h\nu$, this energy gap corresponds to radiation having a

The SI unit for magnetic field strength is the tesla (T), named after Nikola Tesla, a contemporary of Thomas Edison and who, like Edison, was an inventor of electrical devices.



(*a*) No external magnetic field (*b*) Apply external magnetic field B_0

Figure 13.3

(*a*) In the absence of an external magnetic field, the nuclear spins of the protons are randomly oriented. (*b*) In the presence of an external magnetic field B_0, the nuclear spins are oriented so that the resulting nuclear magnetic moments are aligned either parallel or antiparallel to B_0. The lower energy orientation is the one parallel to B_0, and more nuclei have this orientation.

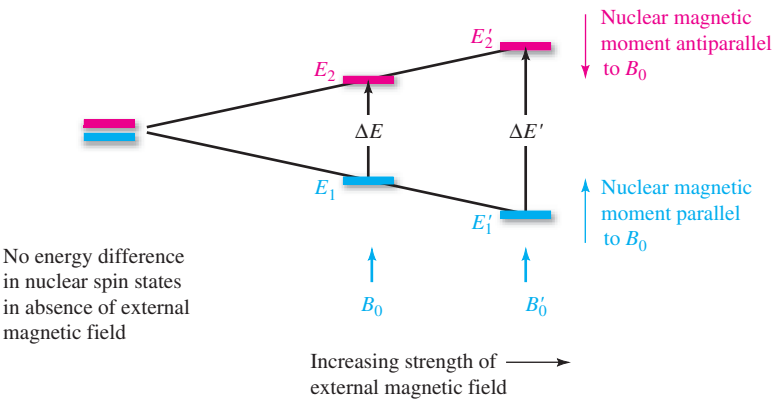


Figure 13.4

An external magnetic field causes the two nuclear spin states to have different energies. The difference in energy ΔE is proportional to the strength of the applied field.

frequency of 2×10^8 Hz (200 MHz), which lies in the radio-frequency (rf) region of the electromagnetic spectrum (see Figure 13.1).

Frequency of electromagnetic radiation (s^{-1} or Hz) → is proportional to → Energy difference between nuclear spin states (kJ/mol or kcal/mol) → is proportional to → Magnetic field (T)

Problem 13.1

Most of the NMR spectra in this text were recorded on a spectrometer having a field strength of 7 T (300 MHz for ^{1}H). The first generation of widely used NMR spectrometers were 60-MHz instruments. What was the magnetic field strength of these earlier spectrometers? What is the field strength of the 920-MHz instruments now commercially available?

The response of an atom to the strength of the external magnetic field is different for different elements, and for different isotopes of the same element. The resonance frequencies of most nuclei are sufficiently different that an NMR experiment is sensitive only to a particular isotope of a single element. The frequency for ^{1}H is 300 MHz at 7 T, but that of ^{13}C is 75.6 MHz. Thus, when recording the NMR spectrum of an organic compound, we see signals only for ^{1}H or ^{13}C, but not both; ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra are recorded in separate experiments with different instrument settings.

Problem 13.2

What will be the ^{13}C frequency of an NMR spectrometer that operates at 100 MHz for protons?

The essential features of an NMR spectrometer consist of a powerful magnet to align the nuclear spins, a radiofrequency (rf) transmitter as a source of energy to excite a nucleus from its lowest energy state to the next higher one, and a way to monitor the absorption of rf radiation and display the spectrum.

NMR spectra are acquired using *pulsed Fourier-transform* nuclear magnetic resonance (FT-NMR) spectrometers (Figure 13.5). The sample is placed in a magnetic field and irradiated with a short, intense burst of rf radiation (the *pulse*), which excites *all* of the protons in the molecule at the same time. The magnetic field associated with the new orientation of nuclear spins induces an electrical signal in the receiver that decreases as the nuclei return to their original orientation. The resulting *free-induction decay* (FID) is a composite of the decay patterns of all of the protons in the molecule. The FID pattern is stored in a computer and converted into a spectrum by a mathematical process known as a *Fourier transform.* The pulse-relaxation sequence takes only about a second. The signal-to-noise ratio is enhanced by repeating the sequence many times, then averaging the data. Noise is random and averaging causes it to vanish; signals always appear at the same frequency and accumulate. All of the operations—the interval between pulses, collecting, storing, and averaging the data and converting it to a spectrum by a Fourier transform—are under computer control, which makes the actual recording of an FT-NMR spectrum a routine operation.

Richard R. Ernst of the Swiss Federal Institute of Technology won the 1991 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for devising pulse-relaxation NMR techniques.

13.4 Nuclear Shielding and ^{1}H Chemical Shifts

Our discussion so far has concerned ^{1}H nuclei in general without regard for the environments of individual protons in a molecule. Protons in a molecule are connected to other atoms—carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, and so on—by covalent bonds. The electrons in these bonds, indeed all the electrons in a molecule, affect the magnetic environment of the protons. Alone, a proton would feel the full strength of the external field, but a proton in an organic molecule responds to both the external field plus any local fields within the molecule. An external magnetic field affects the motion of the electrons in a molecule, inducing

1. Dissolve sample in deuterated chloroform ($CDCl_3$) and place in NMR tube.
2. Insert NMR tube into vertical cavity (bore) of the magnet.
3. Bore of magnet contains a probe that acts as a transmitter of radiofrequency (RF) pulses and receiver of signals from the sample. The transmitter is housed in a console along with other electronic equipment.
4. A short (5 μs), intense RF pulse is sent from the RF transmitter in the console to the probe. Absorption of RF energy tips the magnetic vector of the nuclei in the sample.
5. The magnetic field associated with the new orientation of the nuclei returns (relaxes) to the original state. Nuclei relax rapidly but at different rates that depend on their chemical environment. As the magnetic field changes, it generates an electrical impulse that is transmitted from the probe to a receiver in the console as a "free induction decay."
6. The pulse–relax sequence is repeated many times and the free-induction decay data stored in a computer in the console.
7. A mathematical operation called a Fourier transform carried out by the computer converts the amplitude-versus-time data of the free-induction decay to amplitude versus frequency and displays the resulting spectrum on the screen or prints it.

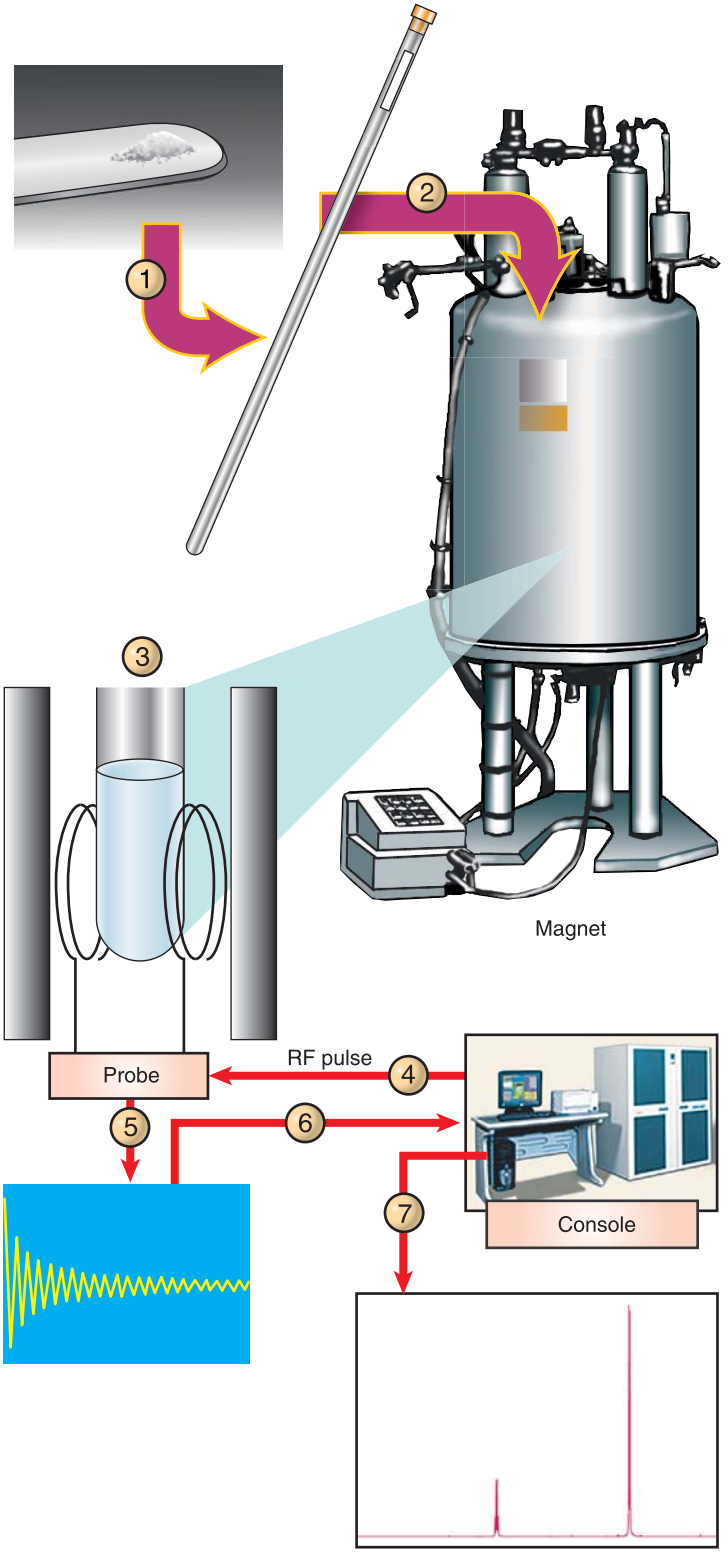


Figure 13.5

How an NMR spectrum is acquired using a pulse-Fourier transform (FT) NMR spectrometer.

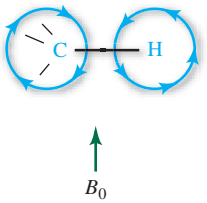


Figure 13.6

The induced magnetic field of the electrons in the carbon–hydrogen bond opposes the external magnetic field. The resulting magnetic field experienced by the proton and the carbon is slightly less than B_0.

local fields characterized by lines of force that circulate in the *opposite* direction from the applied field (Figure 13.6). Thus, the net field felt by a proton in a molecule will always be less than the applied field, and the proton is said to be **shielded.** All of the protons of a molecule are shielded from the applied field by the electrons, but some are less shielded than others. The term *deshielded* is often used to describe this decreased shielding of one proton relative to another.

The more shielded a proton is, the greater must be the strength of the applied field in order to achieve resonance and produce a signal. A more shielded proton absorbs rf radiation at higher field strength **(upfield)** compared with one at lower field strength **(downfield).** Different protons give signals at different field strengths. *The dependence of the resonance position of a nucleus that results from its molecular environment is called its* **chemical shift.** This is where the real power of NMR lies. The chemical shifts of various protons in a molecule can be different and are characteristic of particular structural features.

Figure 13.7 shows the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of chloroform ($CHCl_3$) to illustrate how the terminology just developed applies to a real spectrum.

Instead of measuring chemical shifts in absolute terms, we measure them with respect to a standard—*tetramethylsilane* $(CH_3)_4Si$, abbreviated *TMS*. The protons of TMS are more shielded than those of most organic compounds, so all of the signals in a sample ordinarily appear at lower field than those of the TMS reference. When measured using a 100-MHz instrument, the signal for the proton in chloroform ($CHCl_3$), for example, appears 728 Hz downfield from the TMS signal. But because frequency is proportional to magnetic field strength, the same signal would appear 2184 Hz downfield from TMS on a 300-MHz instrument. We simplify the reporting of chemical shifts by converting them to parts per million (ppm) downfield from TMS, which is assigned a value of 0. The TMS need not actually be present in the sample, nor even appear in the spectrum in order to serve as a reference. When chemical shifts are reported this way, they are identified by the symbol δ and are independent of the magnetic field strength.

$$\text{Chemical shift } (\delta) = \frac{\text{position of signal} - \text{position of TMS peak}}{\text{spectrometer frequency}} \times 10^6$$

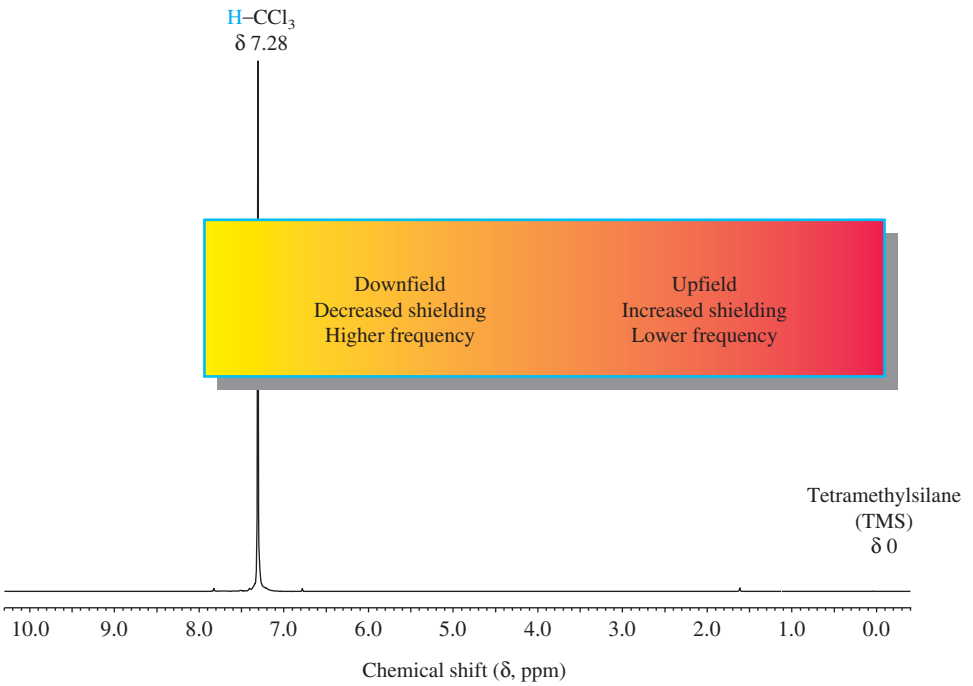


Figure 13.7

A ^{1}H NMR spectrum of chloroform ($CHCl_3$). Chemical shifts are measured along the *x*-axis in parts per million (ppm) from tetramethylsilane as the reference, which is assigned a value of zero.

At 300 MHz the chemical shift for the proton in chloroform is:

$$\delta = \frac{2184 \text{ Hz} - 0 \text{ Hz}}{300 \times 10^6 \text{ Hz}} \times 10^6 = 7.28$$

Problem 13.3

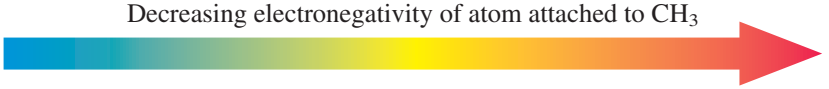
The ^{1}H NMR signal for bromoform ($CHBr_3$) appears at 2065 Hz when recorded on a 300-MHz NMR spectrometer. (a) What is the chemical shift of this proton? (b) If the spectrum was recorded on a 400-MHz instrument, what would be the chemical shift of the $CHBr_3$ proton? (c) How many hertz downfield from TMS is the signal when recorded on a 400-MHz instrument?

NMR spectra are usually run in solution and, although chloroform is a good solvent for most organic compounds, it's rarely used because its own signal at δ 7.28 would be so intense that it would obscure signals in the sample. Because the magnetic properties of deuterium (D = ^{2}H) are different from those of ^{1}H, $CDCl_3$ gives no signals at all in a ^{1}H NMR spectrum and is the most commonly used solvent in ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy. Likewise, D_2O is used instead of H_2O for water-soluble substances such as carbohydrates.

13.5 Effects of Molecular Structure on ^{1}H Chemical Shifts

Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy is such a powerful tool for structure determination because *protons in different environments experience different degrees of shielding and have different chemical shifts.* In compounds of the type CH_3X, for example, the shielding of the methyl protons increases as X becomes less electronegative.

Increased shielding of methyl protons
Decreasing electronegativity of atom attached to CH_3



CH_3F	CH_3OCH_3	$(CH_3)_3N$	CH_3CH_3	$(CH_3)_4Si$
Methyl fluoride	Dimethyl ether	Trimethylamine	Ethane	Tetramethylsilane
Chemical shift of methyl protons (δ):				
4.3	3.2	2.2	0.9	0.0

Problem 13.3 in the preceding section was based on the chemical-shift difference between the proton in $CHCl_3$ and the proton in $CHBr_3$ and its relation to shielding.

Inasmuch as the shielding is due to the electrons, it isn't surprising to find that the chemical shift depends on the degree to which X draws electrons away from the methyl group. A similar trend is seen in the methyl halides, in which the protons in CH_3F are the least shielded (δ 4.3) and those of CH_3I (δ 2.2) are the most.

The decreased shielding caused by electronegative substituents is primarily an inductive effect and, like other inductive effects, falls off rapidly as the number of bonds between the substituent and the proton increases. Compare the chemical shifts of the protons in propane and 1-nitropropane.

δ 0.9 δ 1.3 δ 0.9	δ 4.3 δ 2.0 δ 1.0
$H_3C—CH_2—CH_3$	$O_2N—CH_2—CH_2—CH_3$
Propane	1-Nitropropane

The strongly electron-withdrawing nitro group deshields the protons on C-1 by 3.4 ppm (δ 4.3 − 0.9). The effect is smaller on the protons at C-2 (0.7 ppm), and almost completely absent at C-3.

The deshielding effects of electronegative substituents are cumulative, as the chemical shifts for various chlorinated derivatives of methane indicate.

	CH_3Cl	CH_2Cl_2	$CHCl_3$
	Chloromethane	Dichloromethane	Trichloromethane
Chemical shift (δ):	3.1	5.3	7.3

Problem 13.4

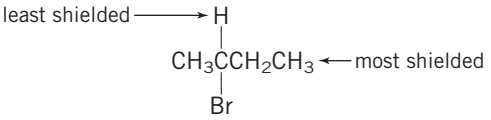
Identify the most shielded and least shielded protons in

(a) 2-Bromobutane

(b) 1,1,2-Trichloropropane

(c) Tetrahydrofuran:

Sample Solution (a) Bromine is electronegative and will have its greatest electron-withdrawing effect on protons that are separated from it by the fewest bonds. Therefore, the proton at C-2 will be the least shielded, and those at C-4 the most shielded.



The observed chemical shifts are δ 4.1 for the proton at C-2 and δ 1.1 for the protons at C-4. The protons at C-1 and C-3 appear in the range δ 1.7–2.0.

Figure 13.8 collects chemical-shift information for protons of various types. The major portion of the table concerns protons bonded to carbon. Within each type, methyl

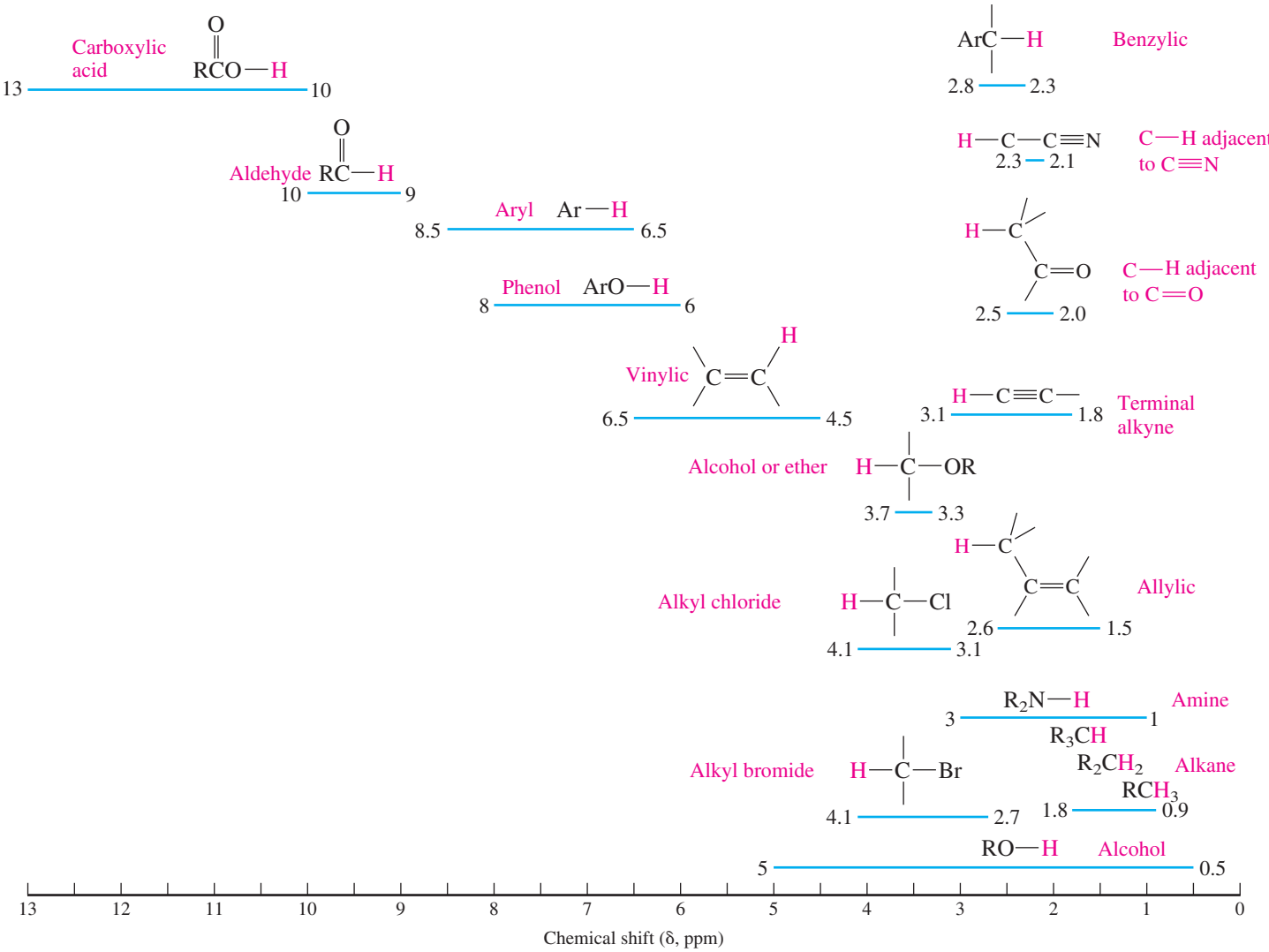
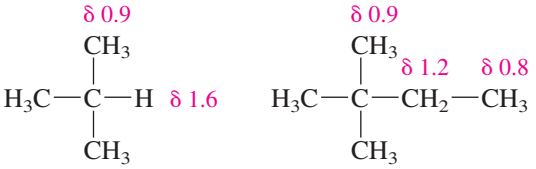


Figure 13.8

Approximate chemical-shift ranges for protons of various structural types in parts per million (δ) from tetramethylsilane. Protons in specific compounds may appear outside of the cited range depending on the shielding or deshielding effect of substituents. The chemical shifts of O—H and N—H protons depend on the conditions (solvent, temperature, concentration) under which the spectrum is recorded.

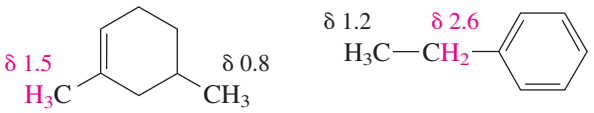
(CH_3) protons are more shielded than methylene (CH_2), and methylene protons are more shielded than methine (CH). The differences, however, are small.



2-Methylpropane 2,2-Dimethylbutane

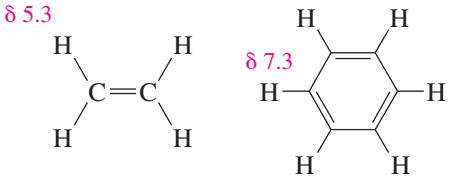
Given that the chemical shift of methane is δ 0.2, we attribute the decreased shielding of the protons of RCH_3, R_2CH_2, and R_3CH to the number of carbons attached to primary, secondary, and tertiary carbons, respectively. Carbon is more electronegative than hydrogen, so replacing the hydrogens of CH_4 by one, then two, then three carbons decreases the shielding of the remaining protons.

Likewise, the generalization that sp^2-hybridized carbon is more electronegative than sp^3-hybridized carbon is consistent with the decreased shielding of allylic and benzylic protons.



1,5-Dimethylcyclohexene Ethylbenzene

Hydrogens that are directly attached to double bonds (vinylic protons) or to aromatic rings (aryl protons) are especially deshielded.



Ethylene Benzene

The main contributor to the deshielding of vinylic and aryl protons is the induced magnetic field associated with π electrons. We saw earlier in Section 13.4 that the local field resulting from electrons in a C—H σ bond opposes the applied field and shields a molecule's protons. The hydrogens of ethylene and benzene, however, lie in a region of the molecule where the induced magnetic field of the π electrons reinforces the applied field, *deshielding* the protons (Figure 13.9). In the case of benzene, this is described as a **ring current** effect that originates in the circulating π electrons. It has interesting consequences, some of which are described in the boxed essay *Ring Currents*: *Aromatic and Antiaromatic* on page 522.

The induced field of C═C and aryl groups contributes to the deshielding of allylic and benzylic hydrogens.

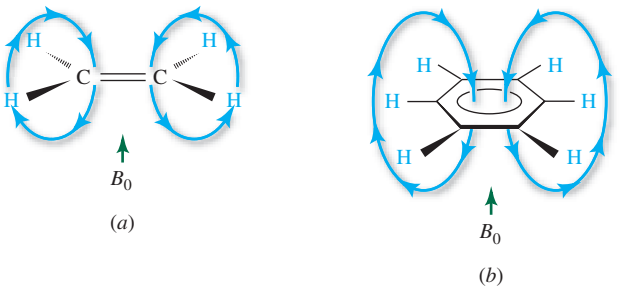
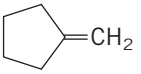


Figure 13.9

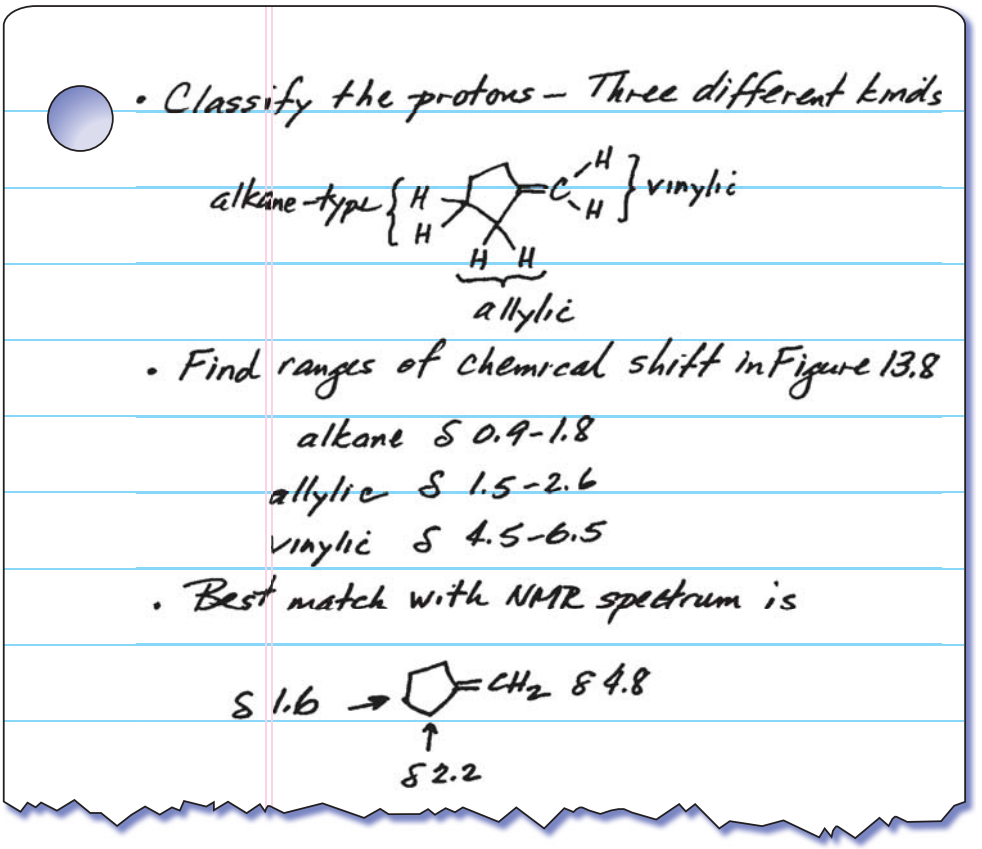
The induced magnetic field of the π electrons of (*a*) ethylene and (*b*) benzene reinforces the applied field in the regions near vinyl and aryl protons and deshields them.

Problem 13.5

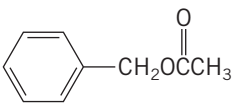
(a) Assign the chemical shifts δ 1.6, δ 2.2, and δ 4.8 to the appropriate protons of methylenecyclopentane



Sample Solution



(b) Do the same for the chemical shifts δ 2.0, 5.1, and 7.2 of benzyl acetate.



Acetylenic hydrogens are unusual in that they are more shielded than we would expect for protons bonded to *sp*-hybridized carbon. This is because the π electrons circulate around the triple bond, not along it (Figure 13.10*a*). Therefore, the induced magnetic field is parallel to the long axis of the triple bond and shields the acetylenic proton (Figure 13.10*b*). Acetylenic protons typically have chemical shifts in the range δ 1.8–3.1.

δ 1.9

$$H{-}C{\equiv}C{-}CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$$

1-Hexyne

The induced field of a carbonyl group (C═O) deshields protons in much the same way that C═C does, and its oxygen makes it even more electron withdrawing. Thus,

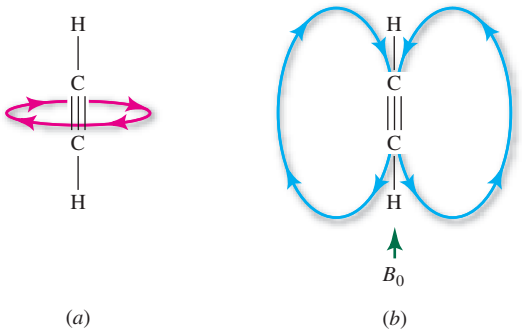
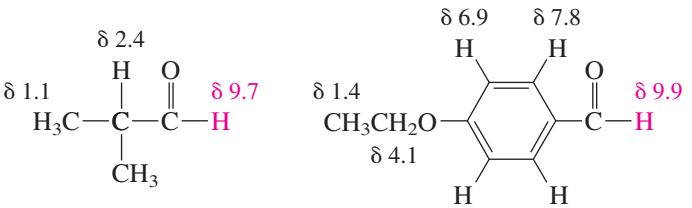


Figure 13.10

(*a*) The π electrons of acetylene circulate in a region surrounding the long axis of the molecule. (*b*) The induced magnetic field associated with the π electrons opposes the applied field and shields the protons.

protons attached to C═O in aldehydes are the least shielded of any protons bonded to carbon. They have chemical shifts in the range δ 9–10.

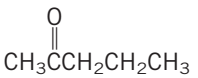


2-Methylpropanal *p*-Ethoxybenzaldehyde

Protons on carbons adjacent to a carbonyl group are deshielded slightly more than allylic hydrogens.

Problem 13.6

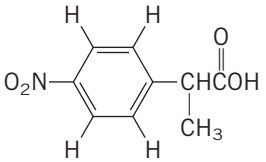
Assign the chemical shifts δ 1.1, δ 1.7, δ 2.0, and δ 2.3 to the appropriate protons of 2-pentanone.



The chemical shifts of O—H and N—H protons vary much more than those of protons bonded to carbon. This is because O—H and N—H groups can be involved in intermolecular hydrogen bonding, the extent of which depends on molecular structure, temperature, concentration, and solvent. Generally, an increase in hydrogen bonding decreases the shielding. This is especially evident in carboxylic acids. With δ values in the 10–12 ppm range, O—H protons of carboxylic acids are the least shielded of all of the protons in Figure 13.8. Hydrogen bonding in carboxylic acids is stronger than in most other classes of compounds that contain O—H groups.

Problem 13.7

Assign the chemical shifts δ 1.6, δ 4.0, δ 7.5, δ 8.2, and δ 12.0 to the appropriate protons of 2-(*p*-nitrophenyl)propanoic acid.



Ring Currents: Aromatic and Antiaromatic

We saw in Chapter 11 that aromaticity reveals itself in various ways. Qualitatively, aromatic compounds are more stable and less reactive than alkenes. Quantitatively, their heats of hydrogenation are smaller than expected. Theory, especially Hückel's rule, furnishes a structural basis for aromaticity. Now let's examine some novel features of the NMR spectra of aromatic compounds.

We have mentioned that the protons in benzene appear at relatively low field because of deshielding by the magnetic field associated with the circulating π electrons. The amount of deshielding is sufficiently large—on the order of 2 ppm more than the corresponding effect in alkenes—that its presence is generally accepted as evidence for aromaticity. We speak of this deshielding as resulting from an *aromatic ring current*.

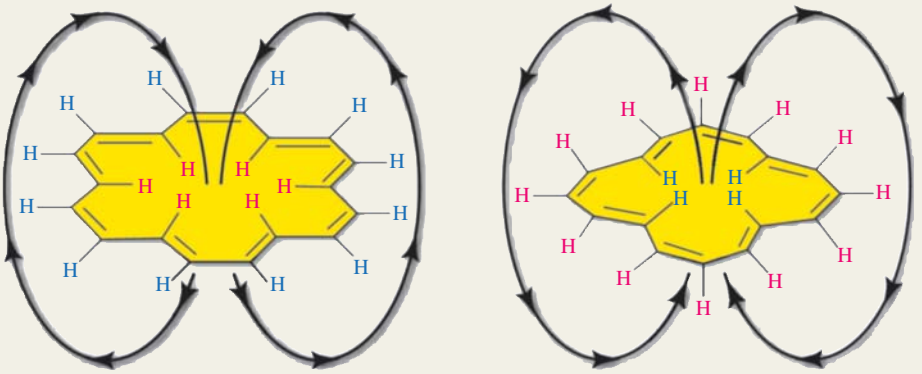
Something interesting happens when we go beyond benzene to apply the aromatic ring current test to annulenes.

[18]Annulene satisfies the Hückel ($4n + 2$) π electron rule for aromaticity, and many of its properties indicate aromaticity (Section 11.19). As shown in Figure 13.11*a*, [18]annulene contains two different kinds of protons; 12 lie on the ring's periphery ("outside"), and 6 reside near the middle of the molecule ("inside"). The 2:1 ratio of outside/inside protons makes it easy to assign the signals in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum. The outside protons have a chemical shift δ of 9.3 ppm, which makes them even less shielded than those of benzene. The six inside protons, on the other hand, have a *negative* chemical shift (δ –3.0), meaning that the signal for these protons appears at *higher field* (to the right) of the TMS peak. *The inside protons of [18]annulene are more than 12 ppm more shielded than the outside protons.*

As shown in Figure 13.11*a*, both the shielding of the inside protons and the deshielding of the outside ones result from the same aromatic ring current. When the molecule is placed in an external magnetic field B_0, its circulating π electrons produce their own magnetic field. This induced field opposes the applied field B_0 in the center of the molecule, shielding the inside protons. Because the induced magnetic field closes on itself, the outside protons lie in a region where the induced field reinforces B_0. The aromatic ring current in [18]annulene shields the 6 inside protons and deshields the 12 outside ones.

Exactly the opposite happens in [16]annulene (Figure 13.11*b*). Now it is the outside protons (δ 5.3) that are more shielded. The inside protons (δ 10.6) are less shielded than the outside ones and less shielded than the protons of both benzene and [18]annulene. This reversal of the shielding and deshielding regions in going from [18] to [16]annulene can only mean that the directions of their induced magnetic fields are reversed. Thus [16]annulene, which has $4n$ π electrons and is antiaromatic, not only lacks an aromatic ring current, its π electrons produce exactly the opposite effect when placed in a magnetic field.

Score one for Hückel.



12 "outside" hydrogens: δ 9.3
6 "inside" hydrogens: δ −3.0
[18]Annulene

(*a*)

12 "outside" hydrogens: δ 5.3
4 "inside" hydrogens: δ 10.6
[16]Annulene

(*b*)

Figure 13.11

More shielded (red) and less shielded (blue) protons in (*a*) [18]annulene and (*b*) [16]annulene. The induced magnetic field associated with the aromatic ring current in [18]annulene shields the inside protons and deshields the outside protons. The opposite occurs in [16]annulene, which is antiaromatic.

It is common for several different kinds of protons to have similar chemical shifts. The range covered for ^{1}H chemical shifts is only 12 ppm, which is relatively small compared with (as we'll see) the 200-ppm range for ^{13}C chemical shifts. The ability of an NMR spectrometer to separate signals that have similar chemical shifts is termed its *resolving power* and is directly related to the magnetic field strength of the instrument. Even though the δ values of their chemical shifts in parts per million don't change, two signals that are closely spaced at 60 MHz become well separated at 300 MHz.

13.6 Interpreting ^{1}H NMR Spectra

In addition to suggesting what structural units might be present from the chemical shifts, an NMR spectrum also provides other useful information.

1. *The number of signals,* which tells us how many different kinds of protons there are.
2. *The intensity of the signals* as measured by the area under each peak, which tells us the relative ratios of the different kinds of protons.
3. *The multiplicity, or splitting, of each signal,* which tells us how many protons are vicinal to the one giving the signal.

Protons that have different chemical shifts are said to be **chemical-shift-nonequivalent** (or **chemically nonequivalent**). A separate NMR signal is given for each chemical-shift-nonequivalent proton in a substance. Figure 13.12 shows the 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of methoxyacetonitrile (CH_3OCH_2CN), a molecule with protons in two different environments. The three protons in the CH_3O group constitute one set, the two protons in the OCH_2CN group the other, and both can be assigned on the basis of their chemical shifts. The protons in the OCH_2CN group are connected to a carbon that bears two electronegative substituents (O and C≡N), are less shielded, and have a larger chemical shift (δ 4.2) than those of the CH_3O group (δ 3.4), which are attached to a carbon that bears only one electronegative atom (O).

Another way to assign the peaks is by comparing their intensities. The three equivalent protons of the CH_3O group give rise to a more intense peak than the two equivalent protons of the OCH_2CN group. This is clear by comparing the heights of the peaks in the spectrum in this case, but in general it is better to compare peak areas. This is done electronically at the time the NMR spectrum is recorded, and the **integrated areas** are displayed on the computer screen or printed out. Peak areas are proportional to the number of equivalent protons responsible for that signal.

It is important to remember that integration of peak areas gives relative, not absolute, proton counts. Thus, a 3:2 ratio of areas can, as in the case of CH_3OCH_2CN, correspond to a 3:2 ratio of protons. But in some other compound a 3:2 ratio of areas might correspond to a 6:4 or 9:6 ratio of protons.

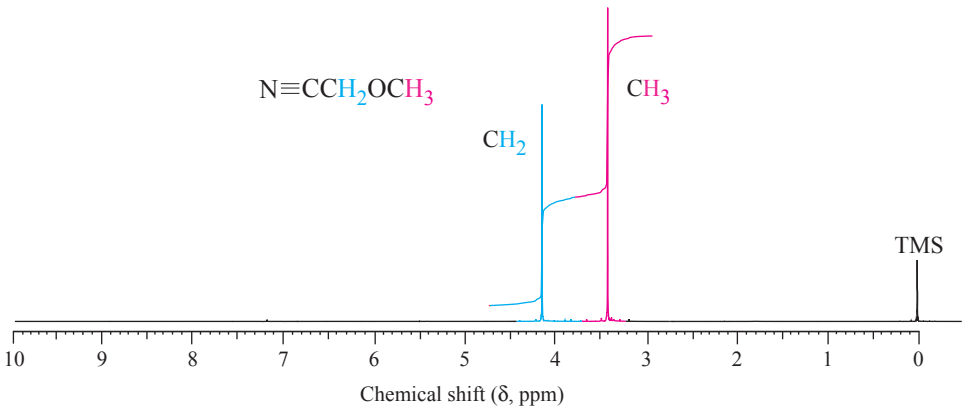


Figure 13.12

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of methoxyacetonitrile (CH_3OCH_2CN).

Problem 13.8

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 1,4-dimethylbenzene looks exactly like that of CH_3OCH_2CN except the chemical shifts of the two peaks are δ 2.2 and δ 7.0. Assign the peaks to the appropriate protons of 1,4-dimethylbenzene.

Protons in equivalent environments have the same chemical shift. Often it is an easy matter to decide, simply by inspection, whether protons are equivalent or not. In more difficult cases, mentally replacing a proton in a molecule by a "test group" can help. We'll illustrate the procedure for a simple case—the protons of propane. To see if they have the same chemical shift, replace one of the methyl protons at C-1 by chlorine, then do the same thing for a proton at C-3. Both replacements give the same molecule, 1-chloropropane. Therefore the methyl protons at C-1 are equivalent to those at C-3.

$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	$ClCH_2CH_2CH_3$	$CH_3CH_2CH_2Cl$
Propane	1-Chloropropane	1-Chloropropane

If the two structures produced by replacement of two different hydrogens in a molecule by a test group are the same, the hydrogens are chemically equivalent. Thus, the six methyl protons of propane are all chemically equivalent to one another and have the same chemical shift.

Replacement of either one of the methylene protons of propane generates 2-chloropropane. Both methylene protons are equivalent. Neither of them is equivalent to any of the methyl protons.

The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of propane contains two signals: one for the six equivalent methyl protons, the other for the pair of equivalent methylene protons.

Problem 13.9

How many signals would you expect to find in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds?

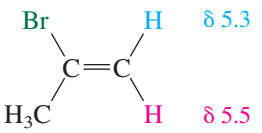
(a) 1-Bromobutane
(b) 1-Butanol
(c) Butane
(d) 1,4-Dibromobutane
(e) 2,2-Dibromobutane
(f) 2,2,3,3-Tetrabromobutane
(g) 1,1,4-Tribromobutane
(h) 1,1,1-Tribromobutane

Sample Solution (a) To test for chemical-shift equivalence, replace the protons at C-1, C-2, C-3, and C-4 of 1-bromobutane by some test group such as chlorine. Four constitutional isomers result:

$CH_3CH_2CH_2CHBr$ (Cl)	$CH_3CH_2CHCH_2Br$ (Cl)	$CH_3CHCH_2CH_2Br$ (Cl)	$ClCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2Br$
1-Bromo-1-chlorobutane	1-Bromo-2-chlorobutane	1-Bromo-3-chlorobutane	1-Bromo-4-chlorobutane

Thus, separate signals will be seen for the protons at C-1, C-2, C-3, and C-4. Barring any accidental overlap, we expect to find four signals in the NMR spectrum of 1-bromobutane.

Chemical-shift nonequivalence can occur when two environments are stereochemically different. The two vinyl protons of 2-bromopropene have different chemical shifts.



2-Bromopropene

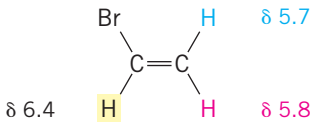
One of the vinyl protons is cis to bromine; the other trans. Replacing one of the vinyl protons by some test group, say, chlorine, gives the *Z* isomer of 2-bromo-1-chloropropene; replacing the other gives the *E* stereoisomer. The *E* and *Z* forms of 2-bromo-1-chloropropene are diastereomers. Protons that yield diastereomers on being replaced by some test group are *diastereotopic* (Section 7.11) and can have different chemical shifts. Because their environments are similar, however, the chemical shift difference is usually small, and it sometimes happens that two diastereotopic protons accidentally have the same chemical shift. Recording the spectrum on a higher field NMR spectrometer is often helpful in resolving signals with similar chemical shifts.

Problem 13.10

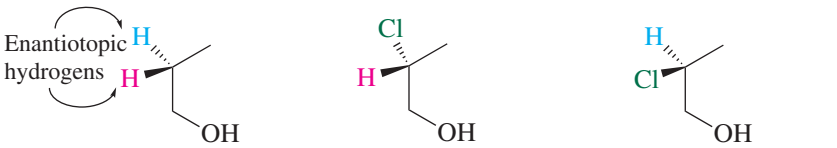
How many signals would you expect to find in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds?

(a) Vinyl bromide
(b) 1,1-Dibromoethene
(c) *cis*-1,2-Dibromoethene
(d) *trans*-1,2-Dibromoethene
(e) Allyl bromide
(f) 2-Methyl-2-butene

Sample Solution (a) Each proton of vinyl bromide is unique and has a chemical shift different from the other two. The least shielded proton is attached to the carbon that bears the bromine. The pair of protons at C-2 are diastereotopic with respect to each other; one is cis to bromine and the other is trans to bromine. There are three proton signals in the NMR spectrum of vinyl bromide. Their observed chemical shifts are as indicated.



When enantiomers are generated by replacing first one proton and then another by a test group, the pair of protons are *enantiotopic* (Section 7.10). The methylene protons at C-2 of 1-propanol, for example, are enantiotopic.



1-Propanol (*R*)-2-Chloro-1-propanol (*S*)-2-Chloro-1-propanol

Replacing one of these protons by chlorine as a test group gives (*R*)-2-chloro-1-propanol; replacing the other gives (*S*)-2-chloro-1-propanol. Enantiotopic protons have the same chemical shift, regardless of the field strength of the NMR spectrometer.

Enantiotopic protons can have different chemical shifts in an enantiomerically enriched chiral solvent. Because the customary solvent ($CDCl_3$) used in NMR measurements is achiral, this phenomenon is not observed in routine work.

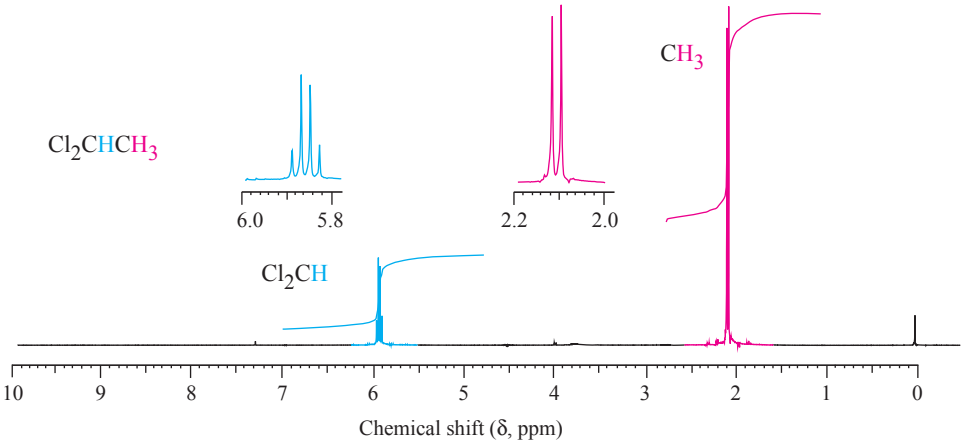
At the beginning of this section we noted that an NMR spectrum provides structural information based on chemical shift, the number of peaks, their relative areas, and the multiplicity, or splitting, of the peaks. We have discussed the first three of these features of ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy. Let's now turn our attention to peak splitting to see what kind of information it offers.

13.7 Spin–Spin Splitting and ^{1}H NMR

The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of CH_3OCH_2CN (Figure 13.12) displayed in the preceding section is relatively simple because both signals are singlets; that is, each one consists of a single peak. It is quite common though to see a signal for a particular proton appear not as a singlet, but as a collection of peaks. The signal may be split into two peaks (a doublet), three

Figure 13.13

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 1,1-dichloroethane (Cl_2CHCH_3), showing the methine proton as a quartet and the methyl protons as a doublet. The peak multiplicities are seen more clearly in the scale-expanded insets.



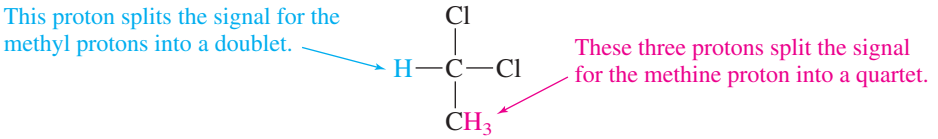
peaks (a triplet), four peaks (a quartet), or even more. Figure 13.13 shows the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 1,1-dichloroethane (CH_3CHCl_2), which is characterized by a doublet centered at δ 2.1 for the methyl protons and a quartet at δ 5.9 for the methine proton.

The number of peaks into which the signal for a particular proton is split is called its **multiplicity.** For simple cases the rule that allows us to predict splitting in ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy is

More complicated splitting patterns conform to an extension of the "$n + 1$" rule and will be discussed in Section 13.11.

$$\text{Multiplicity of signal for } H_a = n + 1$$

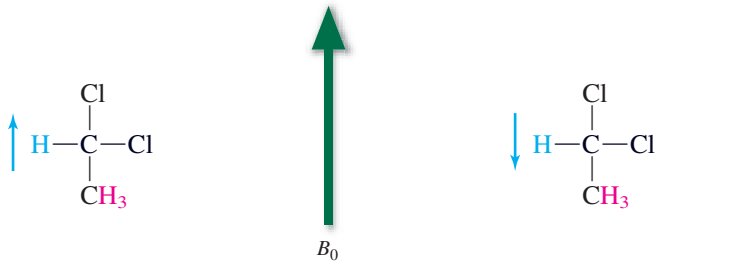
where n is equal to the number of equivalent protons that are vicinal to H_a. Two protons are vicinal to each other when they are bonded to adjacent atoms. Protons vicinal to H_a are separated from H_a by three bonds. The three methyl protons of 1,1-dichloroethane are equivalent and vicinal to the methine proton and split its signal into a quartet. The single methine proton, in turn, splits the methyl protons' signal into a doublet.



The physical basis for peak splitting in 1,1-dichloroethane can be explained with the aid of Figure 13.14, which examines how the chemical shift of the methyl protons is affected by the spin of the methine proton. There are two magnetic environments for the methyl protons: one in which the magnetic moment of the methine proton is parallel to the applied field, and the other in which it is antiparallel to it. When the magnetic moment of the

Figure 13.14

The magnetic moments (blue arrows) of the two possible spin states of the methine proton affect the chemical shift of the methyl protons in 1,1-dichloroethane. When the magnetic moment is parallel to the external field B_0 (green arrow), it adds to the external field and a smaller B_0 is needed for resonance. When it is antiparallel to the external field, it subtracts from it and shields the methyl protons.



Spin of methine proton reinforces B_0. Methyl signal appears at lower field (higher frequency).

Spin of methine proton shields methyl protons from B_0. Methyl signal appears at higher field (lower frequency).

methine proton is parallel to the applied field, it reinforces it. This decreases the shielding of the methyl protons and causes their signal to appear at slightly lower field strength (higher frequency). Conversely, when the magnetic moment of the methine proton is antiparallel to the applied field, it opposes it and increases the shielding of the methyl protons. Instead of a single peak for the methyl protons, there are two of approximately equal intensity: one at slightly higher field than the "true" chemical shift, the other at slightly lower field.

Turning now to the methine proton, its signal is split by the methyl protons into a quartet. The same kind of analysis applies here and is outlined in Figure 13.15. The methine proton "sees" eight different combinations of nuclear spins for the methyl protons. In one combination, the magnetic moments of all three methyl protons reinforce the applied field. At the other extreme, the magnetic moments of all three methyl protons oppose the applied field. There are three combinations in which the magnetic moments of two methyl protons reinforce the applied field, whereas one opposes it. Finally, there are three combinations in which the magnetic moments of two methyl protons oppose the applied field and one reinforces it. These eight possible combinations give rise to four distinct peaks for the methine proton, with a ratio of intensities of 1:3:3:1.

We describe the observed splitting of NMR signals as **spin–spin splitting** and the physical basis for it as **spin–spin coupling.** It has its origin in the communication of nuclear spin information via the electrons in the bonds that intervene between the nuclei. Its effect is greatest when the number of bonds is small. Vicinal protons are separated by three bonds, and coupling between vicinal protons, as in 1,1-dichloroethane, is called **three-bond coupling,** or **vicinal coupling.** Four-bond couplings are weaker and not normally observable.

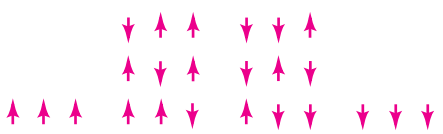
A very important characteristic of spin–spin splitting is that protons that have the same chemical shift do not split each other's signal. Ethane, for example, shows only a single sharp peak in its NMR spectrum. Even though there is a vicinal relationship between the protons of one methyl group and those of the other, they do not split each other's signal because they are equivalent.

Problem 13.11

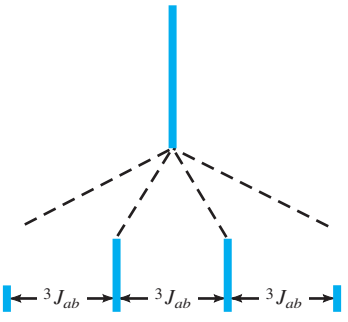
Describe the appearance of the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds. How many signals would you expect to find, and into how many peaks will each signal be split?

(a) 1,2-Dichloroethane
(b) 1,1,1-Trichloroethane
(c) 1,1,2-Trichloroethane
(d) 1,2,2-Trichloropropane
(e) 1,1,1,2-Tetrachloropropane

Sample Solution (a) All the protons of 1,2-dichloroethane ($ClCH_2CH_2Cl$) are chemically equivalent and have the same chemical shift. Protons that have the same chemical shift do not split each other's signal, and so the NMR spectrum of 1,2-dichloroethane consists of a single sharp peak.



There are eight possible combinations of the nuclear spins of the three methyl protons in CH_3CHCl_2.



These eight combinations cause the signal of the $CHCl_2$ proton to be split into a quartet, in which the intensities of the peaks are in the ratio 1:3:3:1.

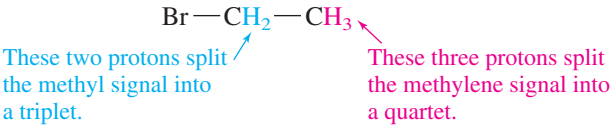
Figure 13.15

The methyl protons of 1,1-dichloroethane split the signal of the methine proton into a quartet.

Coupling of nuclear spins requires that the nuclei split each other's signal equally. The separation between the two halves of the methyl doublet in 1,1-dichloroethane is equal to the separation between any two adjacent peaks of the methine quartet. The extent to which two nuclei are coupled is given by the **coupling constant *J*** and in simple cases is equal to the separation between adjacent lines of the signal of a particular proton. The three-bond coupling constant $^3J_{ab}$ in 1,1-dichloroethane has a value of 7 Hz. *The size of the coupling constant is independent of the field strength;* the separation between adjacent peaks in 1,1-dichloroethane is 7 Hz, irrespective of whether the spectrum is recorded at 300 MHz or 500 MHz.

13.8 Splitting Patterns: The Ethyl Group

One of the most characteristic patterns of peaks is that of the ethyl group, represented in the NMR spectrum of ethyl bromide in Figure 13.16. In compounds of the type CH_3CH_2X, especially where X is an electronegative atom or group, such as bromine in ethyl bromide, the ethyl group appears as a *triplet–quartet pattern.* The signal for the methylene protons is split into a quartet by coupling with the three methyl protons. The signal for the methyl protons is a triplet because of vicinal coupling to the two protons of the adjacent methylene group.



We have discussed in the preceding section why methyl groups split the signals due to vicinal protons into a quartet. Splitting by a methylene group gives a triplet corresponding to the spin combinations shown in Figure 13.17 for ethyl bromide. The relative intensities of the peaks of this triplet are 1:2:1.

Table 13.1 summarizes the splitting patterns and peak intensities expected for coupling to various numbers of protons.

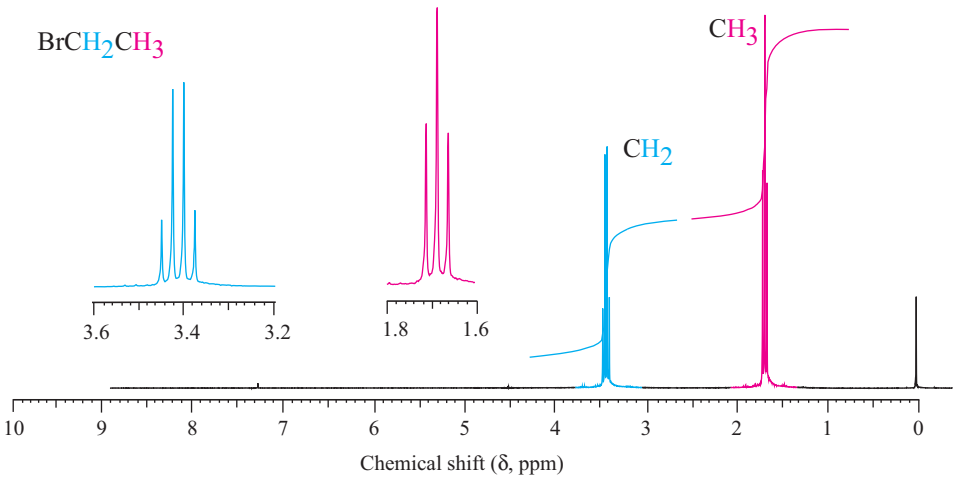


Figure 13.16

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of ethyl bromide ($BrCH_2CH_3$), showing the characteristic triplet–quartet pattern of an ethyl group.

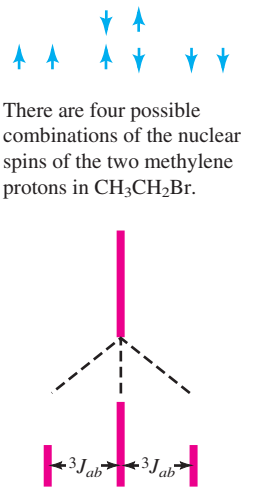


Figure 13.17

The methylene protons of ethyl bromide split the signal of the methyl protons into a triplet.

TABLE 13.1 Splitting Patterns of Common Multiplets

Number of protons to which nucleus is equally coupled	Appearance of multiplet	Intensities of lines in multiplet
1	Doublet	1:1
2	Triplet	1:2:1
3	Quartet	1:3:3:1
4	Quintet	1:4:6:4:1
5	Sextet	1:5:10:10:5:1
6	Septet	1:6:15:20:15:6:1

The intensities correspond to the coefficients of a binomial expansion (Pascal's triangle).

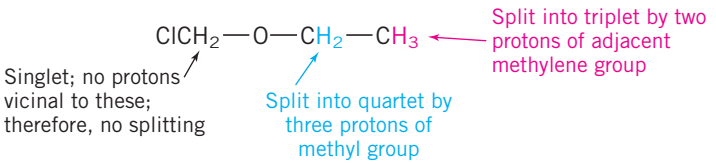
Problem 13.12

Describe the appearance of the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds. How many signals would you expect to find, and into how many peaks will each signal be split?

(a) $ClCH_2OCH_2CH_3$ (c) $CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$ (e) $ClCH_2CH_2OCH_2CH_3$

(b) $CH_3CH_2OCH_3$ (d) *p*-Diethylbenzene

Sample Solution (a) Along with the triplet–quartet pattern of the ethyl group, the NMR spectrum of this compound will contain a singlet for the two protons of the chloromethyl group.



13.9 Splitting Patterns: The Isopropyl Group

The NMR spectrum of isopropyl chloride (Figure 13.18) illustrates the appearance of an isopropyl group. The signal for the six equivalent methyl protons at δ 1.5 is split into a doublet by the proton of the H—C—Cl unit. In turn, the H—C—Cl proton signal at δ

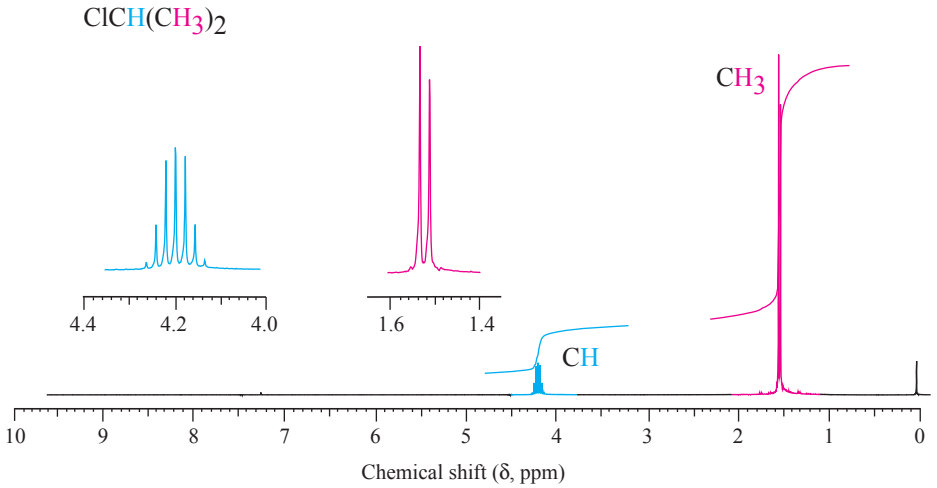
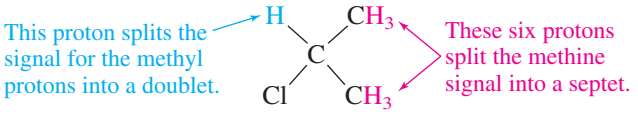


Figure 13.18

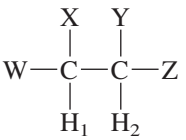
The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of isopropyl chloride, showing the doublet–septet pattern of an isopropyl group.

4.2 is split into a septet by the six methyl protons. A *doublet–septet* pattern is characteristic of an isopropyl group.



13.10 Splitting Patterns: Pairs of Doublets

We often see splitting patterns in which the intensities of the individual peaks do not match those given in Table 13.1, but are distorted in that the signals for coupled protons "lean" toward each other. This leaning is a general phenomenon, but is most easily illustrated for the case of two nonequivalent vicinal protons as shown in Figure 13.19.



The appearance of the splitting pattern of protons 1 and 2 depends on their coupling constant J and the chemical shift difference $\Delta\nu$ between them. When the ratio $\Delta\nu/J$ is large, two symmetrical 1:1 doublets are observed. We refer to this as the "AX" case, using two letters that are remote in the alphabet to stand for signals well removed from each other on the spectrum. Keeping the coupling constant the same while reducing $\Delta\nu$ leads to a steady decrease in the intensity of the outer two peaks with a simultaneous increase in the inner two as we progress from AX through AM to AB. At the extreme (A_2), the two protons have the same chemical shift, the outermost lines have disappeared, and no splitting is observed. Because of its appearance, it is easy to misinterpret an AB or AM pattern as a quartet, rather than the pair of skewed doublets it really is.

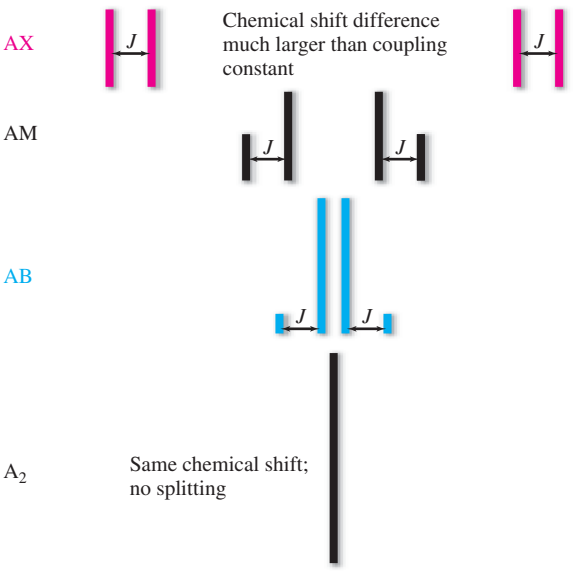


Figure 13.19

The appearance of the splitting pattern of two coupled protons depends on their coupling constant J and the chemical shift difference $\Delta\nu$ between them. As the ratio $\Delta\nu/J$ decreases, the doublets become increasingly distorted. When the two protons have the same chemical shift, no splitting is observed.

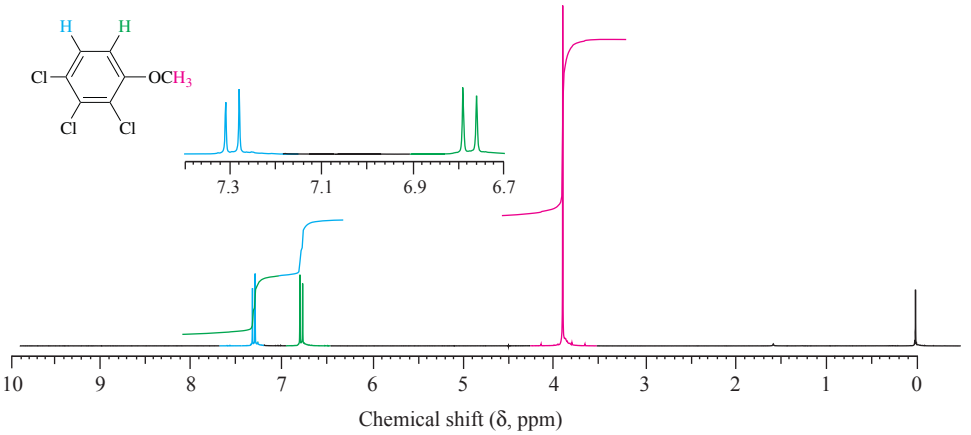
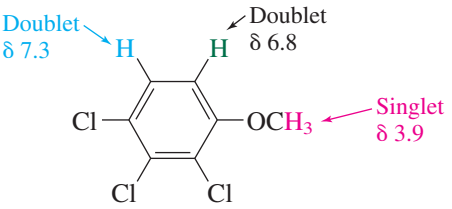


Figure 13.20

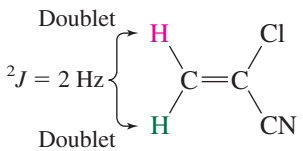
The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2,3,4-trichloroanisole, showing the splitting of the ring protons into a pair of doublets that "lean" toward each other.

A skewed pair of doublets is clearly visible in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2,3,4-trichloroanisole (Figure 13.20). In addition to the singlet at δ 3.9 for the protons of the —OCH_3 group, we see doublets at δ 6.8 and δ 7.3 for the two protons of the aromatic ring.



2,3,4-Trichloroanisole

A pair of doublets frequently occurs with *geminal* protons (protons bonded to the same carbon). Geminal protons are separated by two bonds, and geminal coupling is referred to as *two-bond coupling* (^{2}J) in the same way that vicinal coupling is referred to as *three-bond coupling* (^{3}J). An example of geminal coupling is provided by the compound 1-chloro-1-cyanoethene, in which the two hydrogens appear as a pair of doublets. The splitting in each doublet is 2 Hz.



1-Chloro-1-cyanoethene

The protons in 1-chloro-1-cyanoethene are *diastereotopic* (Section 13.6). They are nonequivalent and have different chemical shifts. Remember, splitting can only occur between protons that have different chemical shifts.

Splitting due to geminal coupling is seen only in CH_2 groups and only when the two protons have different chemical shifts. All three protons of a methyl (CH_3) group are equivalent and cannot split one another's signal.

13.11 Complex Splitting Patterns

All the cases we've discussed so far have involved splitting of a proton signal by coupling to other protons that were equivalent to one another. Indeed, we have stated the splitting rule in terms of the multiplicity of a signal as being equal to $n + 1$, where n is equal to the number of equivalent protons to which the proton that gives the signal is coupled. What if all the vicinal protons are *not* equivalent?

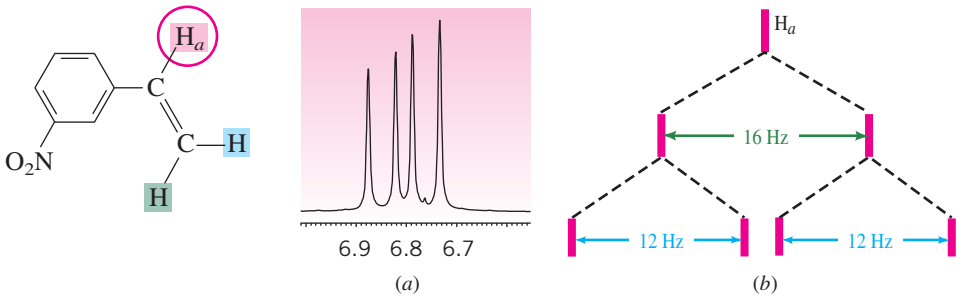


Figure 13.21

Splitting of a signal into a doublet of doublets by unequal coupling to two vicinal protons. (*a*) Appearance of the signal for the proton marked H_a in *m*-nitrostyrene as a set of four peaks. (*b*) Origin of these four peaks through successive splitting of the signal for H_a.

You will find it revealing to construct a splitting diagram similar to that of Figure 13.21 for the case in which the cis and trans H—C═C—H coupling constants are equal. Under those circumstances the four-line pattern simplifies to a triplet, as it should for a proton equally coupled to two vicinal protons.

Figure 13.21*a* shows the signal for the proton marked ArCH_a═CH_2 in *m*-nitrostyrene, which appears as a set of four peaks in the range δ 6.7–6.9. These four peaks are in fact a "doublet of doublets." The proton in question is *unequally coupled* to the two protons at the end of the vinyl side chain. The size of the vicinal coupling constant between protons trans to each other on a double bond is normally larger than that between cis protons. In this case the trans coupling constant is 16 Hz and the cis coupling constant is 12 Hz. Thus, as shown in Figure 13.21*b,* the signal for H_a is split into a doublet with a spacing of 16 Hz by one vicinal proton, and each line of this doublet is then split into another doublet with a spacing of 12 Hz.

The "$n + 1$ rule" should be amended to read: *When a proton* H_a *is coupled to* H_b, H_c, H_d, *etc., and* $J_{ab} \neq J_{ac}$, $\neq J_{ad}$, *etc., the original signal for* H_a is split into $n + 1$ *peaks by n* H_b *protons, each of these lines is further split into* $n + 1$ *peaks by n* H_c *protons, and each of these into* $n + 1$ *lines by n* H_d *protons, and so on.* Bear in mind that because of overlapping peaks, the number of lines actually observed can be less than that expected on the basis of the splitting rule.

Diastereotopic hydrogens can complicate the NMR spectra of chiral molecules, especially those in which there is a CH_2 group adjacent to a chirality center. Consider H_a and H_b in (*S*)-1,2-diphenyl-2-propanol, which has a chirality center at C-2 (Figure 13.22).

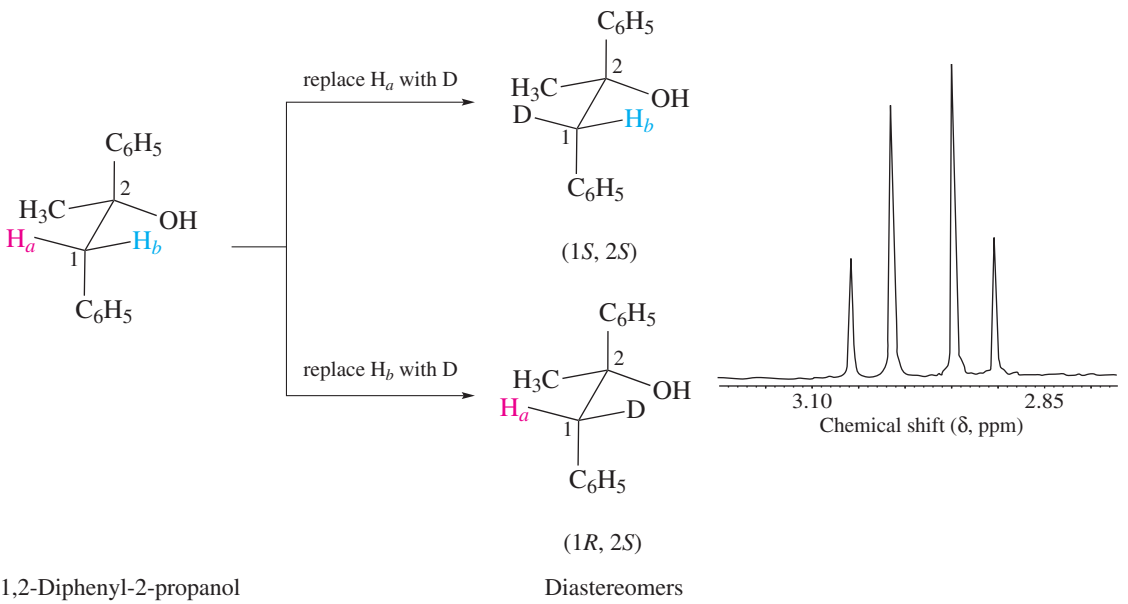


Figure 13.22

The methylene protons H_a and H_b of (*S*)-1,2-diphenyl-2-propanol are diastereotopic and appear as a pair of doublets in the 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum.

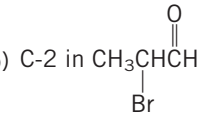
Replacement of H_a with a test group, for example, deuterium, gives a compound that is diastereomeric to the one that is generated by replacement of H_b. Recall that when diastereomers are produced by replacement of protons with test groups, the protons are diastereotopic and may have different chemical shifts (Section 13.6). In 1,2-diphenyl-2-propanol, H_a and H_b are diastereotopic, have different chemical shifts, and appear as a pair of doublets. The pair of doublets appears as an AM splitting pattern (Figure 13.19) because the chemical-shift differences between H_a and H_b are not much larger than the coupling constant.

The enantiomeric (*R*)-1,2-diphenyl-2-propanol, as well as a racemic mixture containing both *R* and *S* forms would produce NMR spectra identical to the one shown in Figure 13.22. As noted earlier, diastereotopic hydrogens can have very small, or even coincidental chemical shifts. In such cases, splitting would not normally be observed.

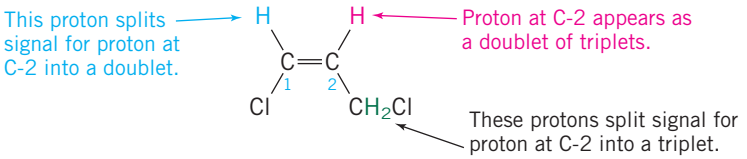
Problem 13.13

Describe the splitting pattern expected for the proton at

(a) C-2 in (*Z*)-1,3-dichloropropene

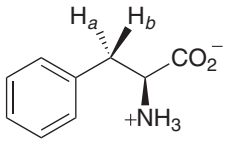
(b) C-2 in 

Sample Solution (a) The signal of the proton at C-2 is split into a doublet by coupling to the proton cis to it on the double bond, and each line of this doublet is split into a triplet by the two protons of the CH_2Cl group.



Problem 13.14

A portion of the ^1H NMR spectrum of the amino acid phenylalanine is shown in Figure 13.23. Why are eight lines observed for H_a and H_b?



(*S*)-Phenylalanine

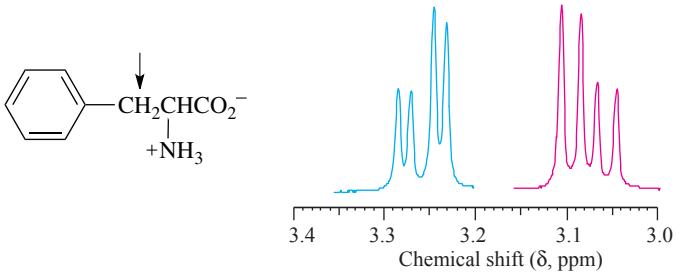


Figure 13.23

A portion of the 300-MHz ^1H NMR spectrum of phenylalanine for Problem 13.14 showing H_a and H_b.

13.12 ^{1}H NMR Spectra of Alcohols

We expect the hydroxyl proton of a primary alcohol RCH_2OH to be split into a triplet by vicinal coupling to the two protons of the CH_2 group. This is, in fact, exactly what we observe in the 300 MHz spectrum of benzyl alcohol shown in Figure 13.24. In reciprocal fashion, the OH proton splits the signal for the protons of the CH_2 group into a doublet. Often, however, splitting due to H—C—O—H coupling is not observed because of rapid exchange of OH protons between alcohol molecules, the rate of which increases with concentration and temperature and is subject to catalysis by acids and bases. Because higher field strength instruments allow more dilute solutions to be used, H—C—O—H splitting is more commonly seen in 300 MHz spectra than in earlier spectra run at 200 MHz and below.

Problem 13.15

Hydrogen bonding between the oxygen of dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and the proton of an OH group is relatively strong. How could recording an NMR spectrum in DMSO instead of $CDCl_3$ be helpful in distinguishing between primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols?

The chemical shift of the hydroxyl proton is variable, with a range of δ 0.5–5, depending on the solvent, the temperature at which the spectrum is recorded, and the concentration of the solution. The alcohol proton shifts to lower field in more concentrated solutions.

An easy way to verify that a particular signal belongs to a hydroxyl proton is to add D_2O. The hydroxyl proton is replaced by deuterium according to the equation:

$$RCH_2OH + D_2O \rightleftharpoons RCH_2OD + DOH$$

Deuterium does not give a signal under the conditions of ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy. Thus, replacement of a hydroxyl proton by deuterium leads to the disappearance of the OH peak of the alcohol. Protons bonded to nitrogen and sulfur also undergo exchange with D_2O. Those bound to carbon normally do not, which makes this a useful technique for assigning the proton resonances of OH, NH, and SH groups.

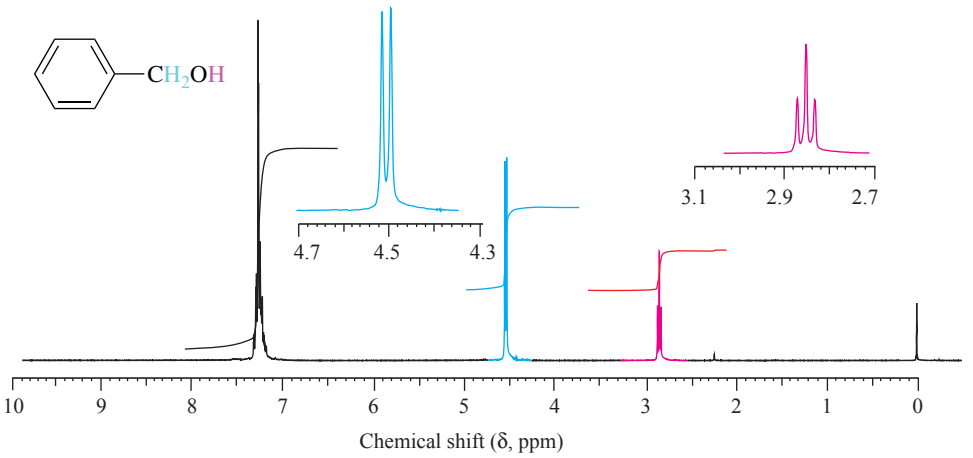


Figure 13.24

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of benzyl alcohol. The hydroxyl proton and the methylene protons are vicinal and split each other's signal.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

It isn't often that someone goes to the emergency room because of a headache, and when the staff discovered that the man who did was due in court for sentencing the next day, some of them felt that there might not be anything wrong with him at all. There was.

The man's behavior toward the staff soon convinced them that he should be admitted, kept overnight, and seen by a neurologist the next day. After a preliminary examination, a magnetic resonance image, or MRI, was ordered which revealed a brain tumor. The tumor was located in the right frontal cortex, a portion of the brain known to be involved in controlling impulsive behavior.

The man had behaved normally until middle age; then his personality underwent significant changes, involving certain impulsive behaviors and criminal tendencies. These, as well as other behaviors, had not responded to drugs or counseling. Even though he had earned a master's degree, the man performed poorly on some simple mental tests and was unable to sketch the face of a clock or write a legible, coherent sentence.

Once the tumor was found, it was surgically removed. The man's ability to curb his impulses was restored, his mental, graphical, and writing skills improved to the normal range, and he successfully completed a rehabilitation program. About a year later though, the headaches and some of the earlier behaviors returned. When a new MRI showed that the tumor had regrown, it was removed and again the symptoms disappeared.

At a turning point in this man's life, an MRI made all the difference. MRI is NMR. The word *nuclear* is absent from the name to avoid confusion with nuclear medicine, which involves radioactive isotopes. MRI is noninvasive, requires no imaging or contrast agents, and is less damaging than X-rays. In the time since the first MRI of a living creature—a clam—was successfully obtained in the early 1970s, MRI has become a standard diagnostic tool. Two of its early developers, Paul Lauterbur (University of Illinois) and Peter Mansfield (University of Nottingham) were recognized with the 2003 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.

An MRI scanner is an NMR machine large enough to accommodate a human being, has a powerful magnet, operates in the pulse-FT mode, and detects protons—usually the protons in water and, to a lesser extent, lipids. The principles are the same as those of conventional FT-NMR spectroscopy but, because the goal is different, the way the data are collected and analyzed differs too. Some key features of MRI include:

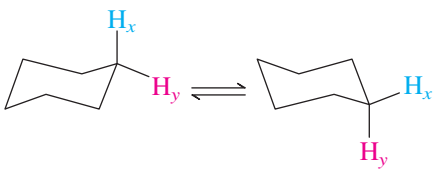
1. A selective pulse is used in order to excite protons in a particular slice of the object to be imaged.
2. Unlike conventional NMR, the magnetic field in MRI is not uniform. A linear gradient is applied in addition to the static field so that the field strength varies as a function of position in the object but is precisely known. Because the frequency of a proton signal is directly proportional to the strength of the applied magnetic field, the measured resonance frequency is linearly related to the position in the magnetic field gradient.
3. Computer software carries out the essential task of reconstructing the 2D or 3D image from the NMR signals. The data are generally presented as a series of slices through the imaged object.
4. The intensity of the signal—its relative lightness or darkness in the image—depends on the concentration and spin relaxation times of the various protons. Spin relaxation time is the time it takes for the perturbed magnetization associated with a proton to return to its equilibrium value. The relaxation time is quite sensitive to the environment and is different for water in blood and various tissues.

New applications of nuclear magnetic resonance in biomedical science continue to appear. Functional MRI (fMRI) is an offshoot of MRI. Unlike MRI, which is used for diagnosis in a clinical setting, fMRI is a research tool that detects regions of the brain that are actively responding to stimuli. Increased brain activity is accompanied by an increase in blood flow to the region involved. This alters the ratio of oxygenated hemoglobin to its nonoxygenated counterpart. Because the two hemoglobins have different magnetic properties, the nuclear spin relaxation times of the protons in water are affected and can be studied by MRI. In the short time since its development, fMRI has been used successfully to study memory and cognition in relation to brain activity.

13.13 NMR and Conformations

We know from Chapter 3 that the protons in cyclohexane exist in two different environments: axial and equatorial. The NMR spectrum of cyclohexane, however, shows only a single sharp peak at δ 1.4. All the protons of cyclohexane appear to be equivalent in the NMR spectrum. Why?

The answer is related to the very rapid rate of chair–chair interconversion in cyclohexane.



NMR is too slow to "see" the individual conformations of cyclohexane, but sees instead the *average* environment of the protons. Because chair–chair interconversion in cyclohexane converts each axial proton to an equatorial one and vice versa, the average environments of all the protons are the same. A single peak is observed that has a chemical shift midway between the true chemical shifts of the axial and the equatorial protons.

The rate of interconversion can be slowed down by lowering the temperature. At temperatures of about −100°C, separate signals are seen for the axial and equatorial protons of cyclohexane.

13.14 ^{13}C NMR Spectroscopy

We pointed out in Section 13.3 that both ^{1}H and ^{13}C are nuclei that can provide useful structural information when studied by NMR. Although a ^{1}H NMR spectrum helps us infer much about the carbon skeleton of a molecule, a ^{13}C NMR spectrum has the obvious advantage of probing the carbon skeleton directly. ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy is analogous to ^{1}H NMR in that the number of signals informs us about the number of different kinds of carbons, and their chemical shifts are related to particular chemical environments.

However, unlike ^{1}H, which is the most abundant of the hydrogen isotopes (99.985%), only 1.1% of the carbon atoms in a sample are ^{13}C. Moreover, the intensity of the signal produced by ^{13}C nuclei is far weaker than the signal produced by the same number of ^{1}H nuclei. In order for ^{13}C NMR to be a useful technique in structure determination, a vast increase in the signal-to-noise ratio is required. Pulsed FT-NMR provides for this, and its development was the critical breakthrough that led to ^{13}C NMR becoming the routine tool that it is today.

To orient ourselves in the information that ^{13}C NMR provides, let's compare the ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra of 1-chloropentane (Figures 13.25*a* and 13.25*b,* respectively). The ^{1}H NMR spectrum shows reasonably well-defined triplets for the protons of the CH_3 and CH_2Cl groups (δ 0.9 and 3.55, respectively). The signals for the six CH_2 protons at C-2, C-3, and C-4 of $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$, however, appear as two unresolved multiplets at δ 1.4 and 1.8.

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum, on the other hand, is very simple: *a separate, distinct peak is observed for each carbon.*

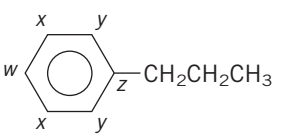
Notice, too, how well-separated these ^{13}C signals are: they cover a range of over 30 ppm, compared with less than 3 ppm for the proton signals of the same compound. In general, the window for proton signals in organic molecules is about 12 ppm; ^{13}C chemical shifts span a range of over 200 ppm. The greater spread of ^{13}C chemical shifts makes it easier to interpret the spectra.

Problem 13.16

How many signals would you expect to see in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of each of the following compounds?

(a) Propylbenzene
(b) Isopropylbenzene
(c) 1,2,3-Trimethylbenzene
(d) 1,2,4-Trimethylbenzene
(e) 1,3,5-Trimethylbenzene

Sample Solution (a) The two ring carbons that are ortho to the propyl substituent are equivalent and so must have the same chemical shift. Similarly, the two ring carbons that are meta to the propyl group are equivalent to each other. The carbon atom para to the substituent is unique, as is the carbon that bears the substituent. Thus, there will be four signals for the ring carbons, designated *w, x, y,* and *z* in the structural formula. These four signals for the ring carbons added to those for the three nonequivalent carbons of the propyl group yield a total of seven signals.



Propylbenzene

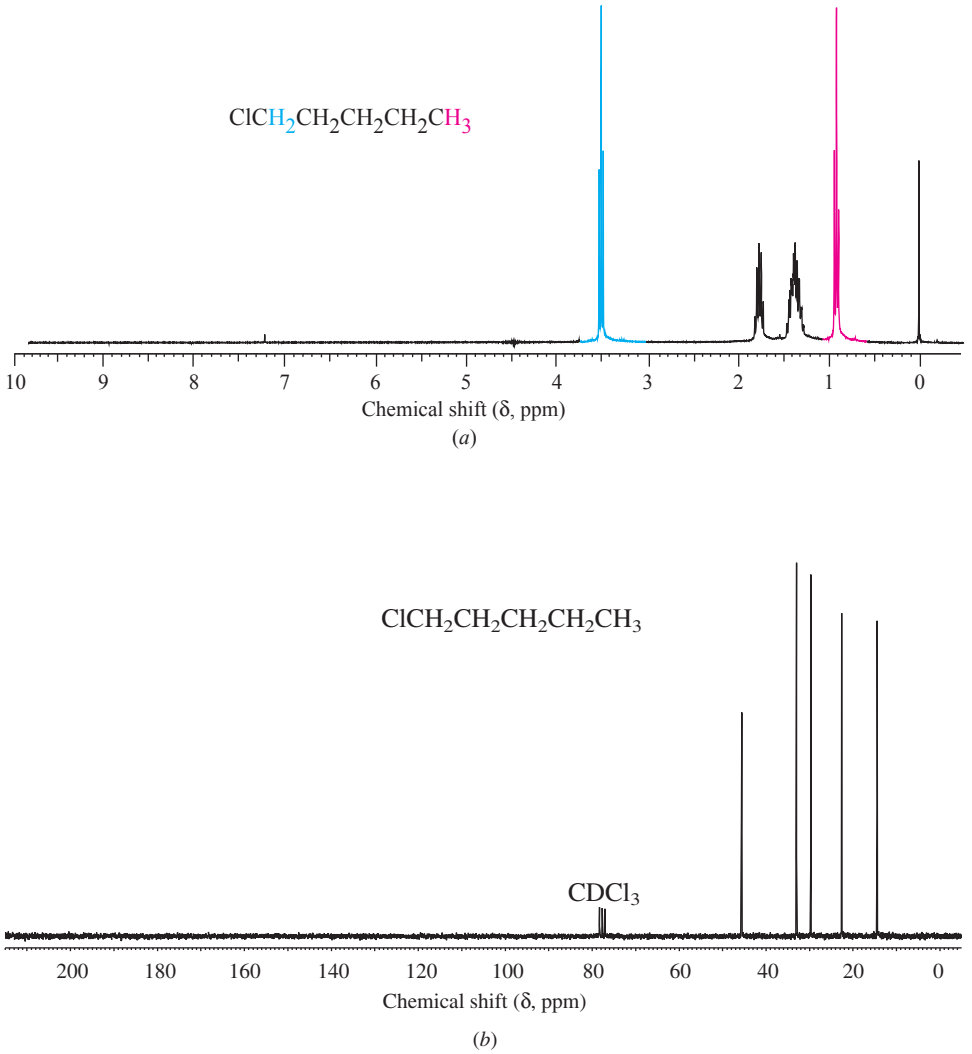


Figure 13.25

(*a*) The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum and (*b*) the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of 1-chloropentane.

13.15 ^{13}C Chemical Shifts

Just as chemical shifts in ^{1}H NMR are measured relative to the *protons* of tetramethylsilane, chemical shifts in ^{13}C NMR are measured relative to the *carbons* of tetramethylsilane. Table 13.2 lists typical chemical-shift ranges for some representative types of carbon atoms.

In general, the factors that most affect ^{13}C chemical shifts are

1. The electronegativity of the groups attached to carbon
2. The hybridization of carbon

Electronegativity Effects. Electronegative substituents affect ^{13}C chemical shifts in the same way as they affect ^{1}H chemical shifts, by withdrawing electrons. For ^{1}H NMR, recall that because carbon is more electronegative than hydrogen, the protons in methane (CH_4) are more shielded than primary hydrogens (RCH_3), primary hydrogens are more shielded

TABLE 13.2 Chemical Shifts of Representative Carbons

Type of carbon	Chemical shift (δ) ppm*	Type of carbon	Chemical shift (δ) ppm*
Hydrocarbons		**Functionally substituted carbons**	
RCH_3	0–35	RCH_2Br	20–40
R_2CH_2	15–40	RCH_2Cl	25–50
R_3CH	25–50	RCH_2NH_2	35–50
R_4C	30–40	RCH_2OH and RCH_2OR	50–65
$RC{\equiv}CR$	65–90	$RC{\equiv}N$	110–125
$R_2C{=}CR_2$	100–150	$RCOH$ and $RCOR$	160–185
	110–175	RCH and RCR	190–220

*Approximate values relative to tetramethylsilane.

than secondary (R_2CH_2), and secondary more shielded than tertiary (R_3CH). The same holds true for carbons in ^{13}C NMR, but the effects can be 10–20 times greater.

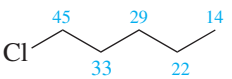
	$(CH_3)_4C$	$(CH_3)_3CH$	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	CH_3CH_3	CH_4
Classification:	Quaternary	Tertiary	Secondary	Primary	
Chemical shift (δ), ppm:					
H		1.7	1.3	0.9	0.2
C	28	25	16	8	−2

Likewise, for functionally substituted methyl groups:

	CH_3F	CH_3OH	CH_3NH_2	CH_4
Chemical shift (δ), ppm:				
H	4.3	3.4	2.5	0.2
C	75	50	27	−2

Figure 13.25 compared the appearance of the ^1H and ^{13}C NMR spectra of 1-chloropentane and drew attention to the fact each carbon gave a separate peak, well separated from the others. Let's now take a closer look at the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of 1-chloropentane with respect to assigning these peaks to individual carbons.

^{13}C chemical shift (δ), ppm:



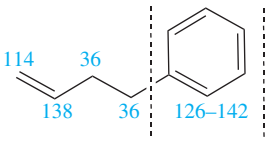
The most obvious feature of these ^{13}C chemical shifts is that the closer the carbon is to the electronegative chlorine, the more deshielded it is. Peak assignments will not always be this easy, but the correspondence with electronegativity is so pronounced that *spectrum simulators* are available that allow reliable prediction of ^{13}C chemical shifts from structural formulas. These simulators are based on arithmetic formulas that combine experimentally derived chemical shift increments for the various structural units within a molecule.

Problem 13.17

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of 1-bromo-3-chloropropane contains peaks at δ 30, δ 35, and δ 43. Assign these signals to the appropriate carbons.

Hybridization Effects. Here again, the effects are similar to those seen in ^{1}H NMR. As illustrated by 4-phenyl-1-butene, sp^3-hybridized carbons are more shielded than sp^2-hybridized ones.

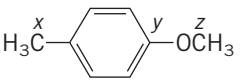
^{13}C chemical shift (δ), ppm:



Of the sp^2-hybridized carbons, C-1 is the most shielded because it is bonded to only one other carbon. The least shielded carbon is the ring carbon to which the side chain is attached. It is the only sp^2-hybridized carbon connected to three other carbons.

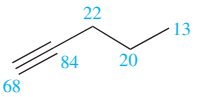
Problem 13.18

Consider carbons *x*, *y*, and *z* in *p*-methylanisole. One has a chemical shift of δ 20, another has δ 55, and the third δ 157. Match the chemical shifts with the appropriate carbons.



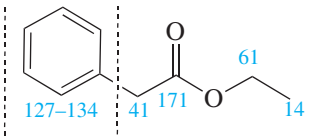
Acetylenes are anomalous in ^{13}C, as in ^{1}H NMR. *sp*-Hybridized carbons are less shielded than sp^3-hybridized ones, but more shielded than sp^2-hybridized ones.

^{13}C chemical shift (δ), ppm:



Electronegativity and hybridization effects combine to make the carbon of a carbonyl group especially deshielded. Normally, the carbon of C═O is the least shielded one in a ^{13}C NMR spectrum.

^{13}C chemical shift (δ), ppm:



Problem 13.19

Which would you expect to be more shielded, the carbonyl carbon of an aldehyde or a ketone? Why?

We will have more to say about ^{13}C chemical shifts in later chapters when various families of compounds, especially those that contain carbonyl groups, are discussed in more detail.

13.16 ^{13}C NMR and Peak Intensities

Two features that are fundamental to ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy—integrated areas and splitting patterns—are much less important in ^{13}C NMR.

Although it is a simple matter to integrate ^{13}C signals, it is rarely done because the observed ratios can be more misleading than helpful. The pulsed FT technique that is standard for ^{13}C NMR has the side effect of distorting the signal intensities, especially for carbons that lack attached hydrogens. Examine Figure 13.26, which shows the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of 3-methylphenol (*m*-cresol). Notice that, contrary to what we might expect for a compound with seven peaks for seven different carbons, the intensities of these peaks are not nearly the same. The two least intense signals, those at δ 140 and δ 157, correspond to carbons that lack attached hydrogens.

Problem 13.20

To which of the compounds of Problem 13.16 does the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of Figure 13.27 belong?

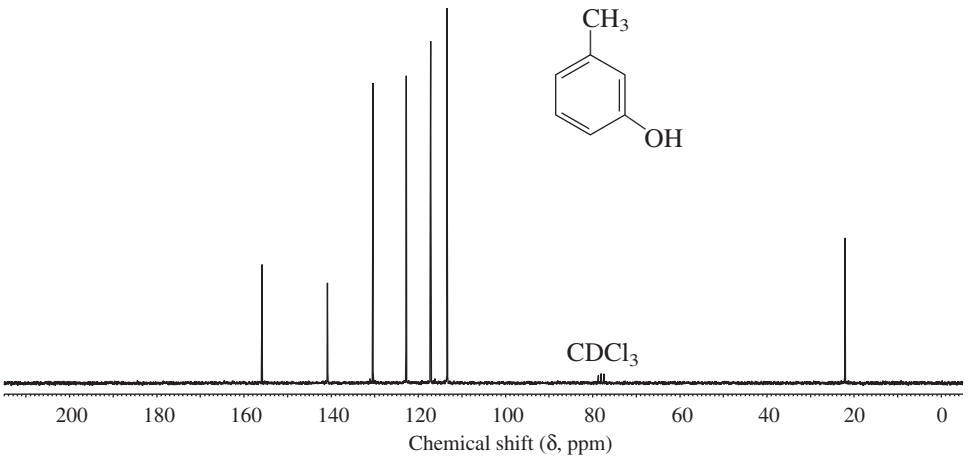


Figure 13.26

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of *m*-cresol. Each of the seven carbons gives a separate peak. Integrating the spectrum would not provide useful information because the intensities of the peaks are so different, even though each one corresponds to a single carbon.

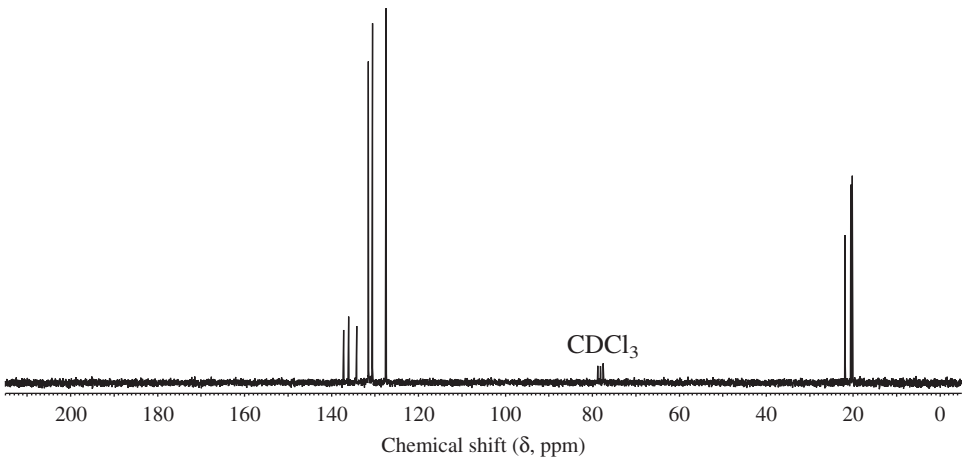


Figure 13.27

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of the unknown compound of Problem 13.20.

13.17 ^{13}C—^{1}H Coupling

You have probably noticed another characteristic of ^{13}C NMR spectra—all of the peaks are singlets. With a spin of $\pm\frac{1}{2}$, a ^{13}C nucleus is subject to the same splitting rules that apply to ^{1}H, and we might expect to see splittings due to ^{13}C—^{13}C and ^{13}C—^{1}H couplings. We don't. Why?

The lack of splitting due to ^{13}C—^{13}C coupling is easy to understand. ^{13}C NMR spectra are measured on samples that contain ^{13}C at the "natural abundance" level. Only 1% of all the carbons in the sample are ^{13}C, and the probability that any molecule contains more than one ^{13}C atom is quite small.

Splitting due to ^{13}C—^{1}H coupling is absent for a different reason, one that has to do with the way the spectrum is run. Because a ^{13}C signal can be split not only by the protons to which it is directly attached, but also by protons separated from it by two, three, or even more bonds, the number of splittings might be so large as to make the spectrum too complicated to interpret. Thus, the spectrum is measured under conditions, called **broadband decoupling,** that suppress such splitting.

What we gain from broadband decoupling in terms of a simple-looking spectrum comes at the expense of some useful information. For example, being able to see splitting corresponding to one-bond ^{13}C—^{1}H coupling would immediately tell us the number of hydrogens directly attached to each carbon. The signal for a carbon with no attached hydrogens (a *quaternary* carbon) would be a singlet, the hydrogen of a CH group would split the carbon signal into a doublet, and the signals for the carbons of a CH_2 and a CH_3 group would appear as a triplet and a quartet, respectively. Although it is possible, with a technique called *off-resonance decoupling,* to observe such one-bond couplings, identifying a signal as belonging to a quaternary carbon or to the carbon of a CH, CH_2, or CH_3 group is normally done by a method called DEPT, which is described in the next section.

13.18 Using DEPT to Count Hydrogens

In general, a simple pulse FT-NMR experiment involves the following stages:

1. Equilibration of the nuclei between the lower and higher spin states under the influence of a magnetic field
2. Application of a radiofrequency pulse to give an excess of nuclei in the higher spin state
3. Acquisition of free-induction decay data during the time interval in which the equilibrium distribution of nuclear spins is restored
4. Mathematical manipulation (Fourier transform) of the data to plot a spectrum

The pulse sequence (stages 2–3) can be repeated hundreds of times to enhance the signal-to-noise ratio. The duration of time for stage 2 is on the order of milliseconds, and that for stage 3 is about 1 second.

Major advances in NMR have been made by using a second rf transmitter to irradiate the sample at some point during the sequence. There are several such techniques, of which we'll describe just one, called **distortionless enhancement of polarization transfer,** abbreviated as **DEPT.**

In the DEPT routine, a second transmitter excites ^{1}H, which affects the appearance of the ^{13}C spectrum. A typical DEPT experiment is illustrated for the case of 1-phenyl-1-pentanone in Figure 13.28. In addition to the normal spectrum shown in Figure 13.28*a,* four more spectra are run using prescribed pulse sequences. In one (Figure 13.28*b*), the signals for carbons of CH_3 and CH groups appear normally, whereas those for CH_2 groups are inverted and those for C without any attached hydrogens are nulled. In the others (not shown) different pulse sequences produce combinations of normal, nulled, and inverted peaks that allow assignments to be made to the various types of carbons with confidence.

Problem 13.21

DEPT spectra for a compound with the formula $C_6H_{12}O$ are shown in Figure 13.29. Assign a structure. (More than one answer is possible.)

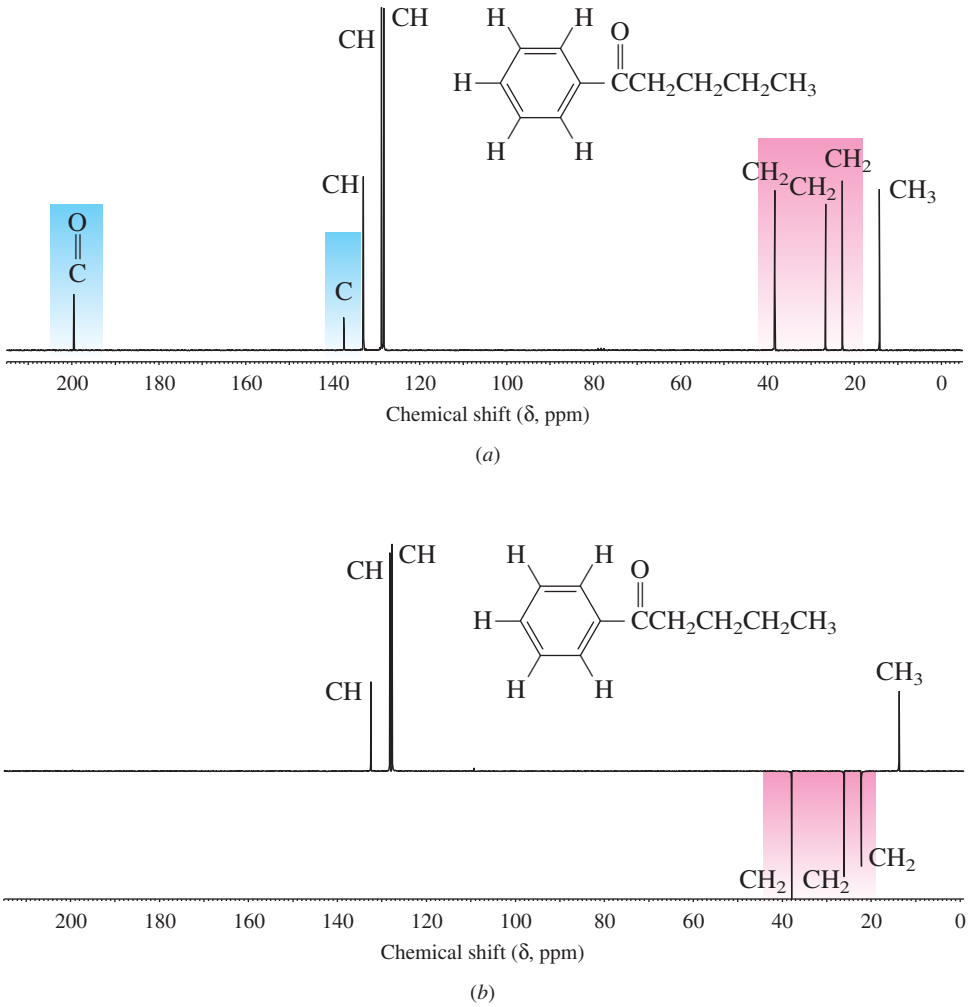


Figure 13.28

^{13}C NMR spectra of 1-phenyl-1-pentanone. (*a*) Normal spectrum. (*b*) DEPT spectrum recorded using a pulse sequence in which CH_3 and CH carbons appear as positive peaks, CH_2 carbons as negative peaks, and carbons without any attached hydrogens are nulled.

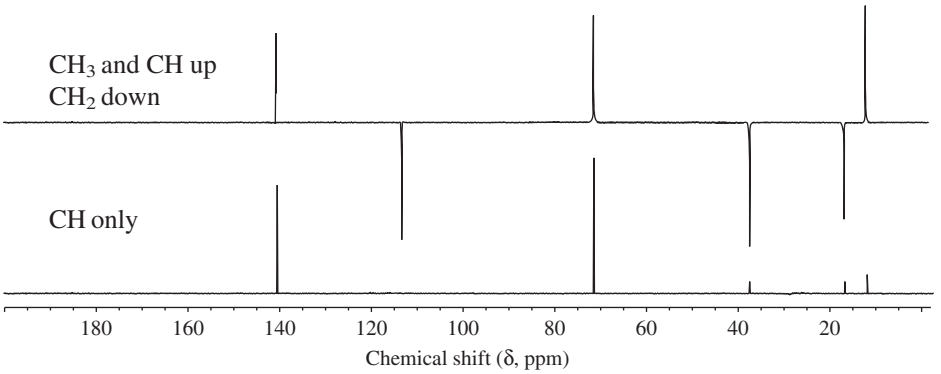


Figure 13.29

DEPT spectra for Problem 13.21

13.19 2D NMR: COSY and HETCOR

The more information you can extract from an NMR spectrum, the better your chances at arriving at a unique structure. Like spin–spin splitting, which complicates the appearance of an ^{1}H NMR spectrum but provides additional information, 2D NMR looks more complicated than it is while making structure determination easier.

The key dimension in NMR is the frequency axis. All of the spectra we have seen so far are 1D spectra because they have only one frequency axis. In 2D NMR a standard pulse sequence adds a second frequency axis.

One kind of 2D NMR is called **COSY,** which stands for **correlated spectroscopy.** With a COSY spectrum you can determine by inspection which signals correspond to spin-coupled protons. Identifying coupling relationships is a valuable aid to establishing a molecule's *connectivity*.

Figure 13.30 is the COSY spectrum of 2-hexanone. Both the *x*- and *y*-axes are frequency axes expressed as chemical shifts. Displaying the 1D ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2-hexanone along the *x*- and *y*-axes makes it easier to interpret the 2D information, which is the collection of contoured objects contained within the axes. To orient ourselves, first note that many of the contours lie along the diagonal that runs from the lower left to the upper right. This diagonal bisects the 2D NMR into two mirror-image halves. The off-diagonal contours are called *cross peaks* and contain the connectivity information we need.

Each cross peak has *x* and *y* coordinates. One coordinate corresponds to the chemical shift of a proton, the other to the chemical shift of a proton to which it is coupled. Because the diagonal splits the 2D spectrum in half, each cross peak is duplicated on the other side of the other diagonal with the same coordinates, except in reverse order. This redundancy means that we really need to examine only half of the cross peaks.

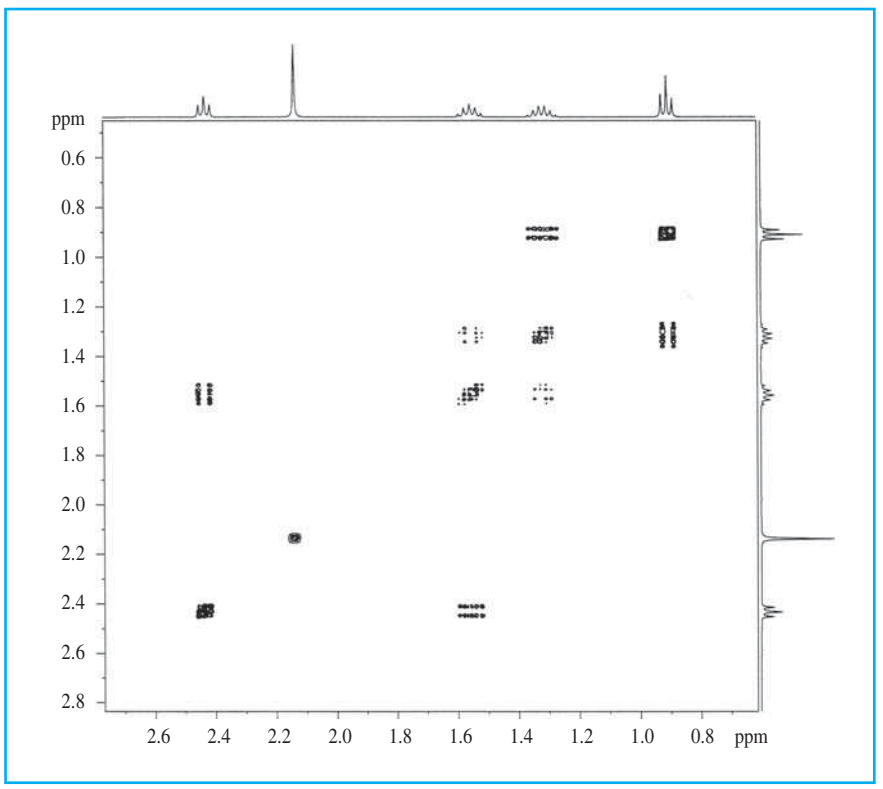
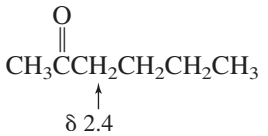


Figure 13.30

^{1}H-^{1}H COSY NMR spectrum of 2-hexanone.

To illustrate, start with the lowest field signal (δ 2.4) of 2-hexanone. We assign this signal, a triplet, to the protons at C-3 on the basis of its chemical shift and the splitting evident in the 1D spectrum.



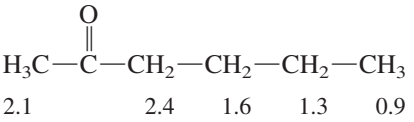
We look for cross peaks with the same *x* coordinate by drawing a vertical line from δ 2.4, finding a cross peak with a *y* coordinate of δ 1.6. *This means that the protons responsible for the signal at δ 2.4 are coupled to the ones at δ 1.6.* Therefore, the chemical shift of the C-4 protons is δ 1.6.

Now work from these C-4 protons. Drawing a vertical line from δ 1.6 on the *x*-axis finds two cross peaks. One cross peak simply confirms the coupling to the protons at C-3. The other has a *y* coordinate of δ 1.3 and, therefore, must correspond to the protons at C-5.

A vertical line drawn from δ 1.3 intersects the cross peaks at both δ 1.6 and δ 0.9. The former confirms the coupling of C-5 to C-4; the latter corresponds to the C-5 to C-6 coupling and identifies the signal at δ 0.9 as belonging to the protons at C-6.

Finally, a vertical line drawn from δ 2.1 intersects no cross peaks. The singlet at δ 2.1, as expected, is due to the protons at C-1, which are not coupled to any of the other protons in the molecule.

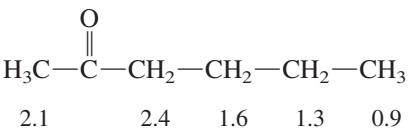
The complete connectivity and assignment of ^{1}H chemical shifts is



Although the 1D ^{1}H spectrum of 2-hexanone is simple enough to be interpreted directly, you can see that COSY offers one more tool we can call on in more complicated cases.

A second 2D NMR method called **HETCOR (heteronuclear chemical shift correlation)** is a type of COSY in which the two frequency axes are the chemical shifts for different nuclei, usually ^{1}H and ^{13}C. With HETCOR it is possible to relate a peak in a ^{13}C spectrum to the ^{1}H signal of the protons attached to that carbon. As we did with COSY, we'll use 2-hexanone to illustrate the technique.

The HETCOR spectrum of 2-hexanone is shown in Figure 13.31. It is considerably simpler than a COSY spectrum, lacking diagonal peaks and contoured cross peaks. Instead, we see objects that are approximately as tall as a ^{1}H signal is wide, and as wide as a ^{13}C signal. As with the COSY cross peaks, however, it is their coordinates that matter, not their size or shape. Interpreting the spectrum is straightforward. The ^{13}C peak at δ 30 correlates with the ^{1}H singlet at δ 2.1, which because of its multiplicity and chemical shift corresponds to the protons at C-1. Therefore, this ^{13}C peak can be assigned to C-1 of 2-hexanone. Repeating this procedure for the other carbons gives:



^{1}H chemical shift (δ), ppm:	2.1	2.4	1.6	1.3	0.9
^{13}C chemical shift (δ), ppm:	30	43	26	22	14

The chemical shift of the carbonyl carbon (δ 209) is not included because it has no attached hydrogens.

A number of 2D NMR techniques are available for a variety of purposes. They are especially valuable when attempting to determine the structure of complicated natural products and the conformations of biomolecules.

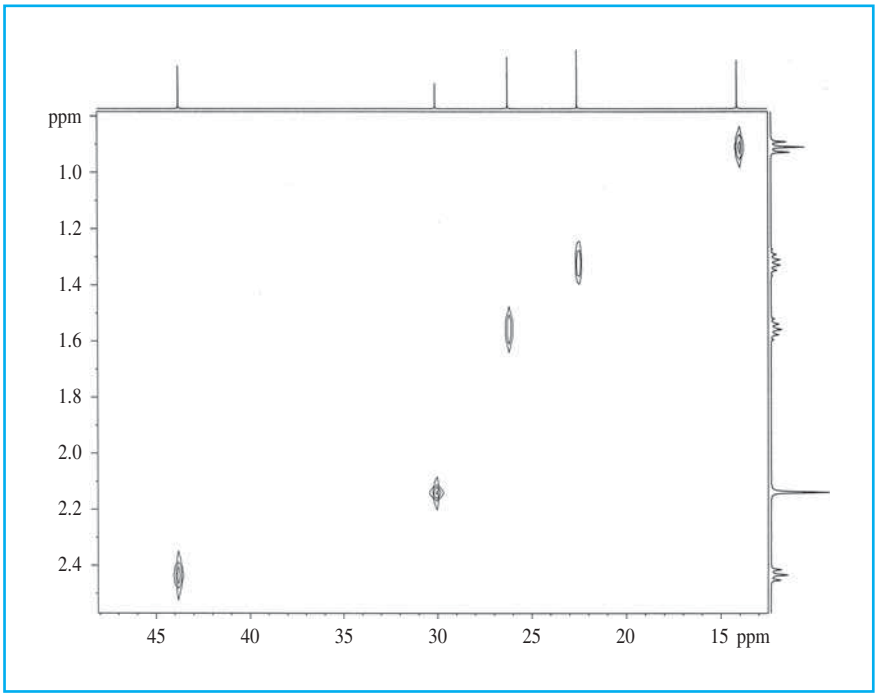


Figure 13.31

^{1}H-^{13}C HETCOR NMR spectrum of 2-hexanone.

13.20 Introduction to Infrared Spectroscopy

Before the advent of NMR spectroscopy, infrared (IR) spectroscopy was the instrumental method most often applied to organic structure determination. Although NMR, in general, tells us more about the structure of an unknown compound, IR remains an important tool because of its usefulness in identifying the presence of certain *functional groups* within a molecule. Structural units, including functional groups, vibrate in characteristic ways and it is this sensitivity to *group vibrations* that is the basis of IR spectroscopy.

IR's earliest recognition came during World War II when it provided a key clue to the unusual β-lactam structure of the "miracle drug" penicillin.

Among the ways a molecule responds to the absorption of energy is by vibrational motions such as the stretching and contracting of bonds and the opening and closing (bending) of bond angles. Vibrational motion and its energy are quantized. Only certain vibrational energy states are allowed.

We can visualize molecular vibrations by thinking of atoms and bonds as balls and springs.

Even at the absolute zero of temperature, atoms in a molecule vibrate with respect to the bonds that connect them. At room temperature, the molecules are distributed among various vibrational energy states. *Frequency* is a property of the vibration and is related to the difference between vibrational energy states by $\Delta E = h\nu$ (Section 13.1). Promoting a molecule from a lower to a higher vibrational energy state increases the *amplitude* of the vibration.

Zero-point energy is the term given to the energy of a molecule at absolute zero.

For a sense of the variety of vibrational modes available to a molecule, consider a CH_2 group. Stretching and contracting the pair of C—H bonds can occur in two different ways. In the *symmetric* stretch, both C—H bonds stretch at the same time and

Spectra by the Thousands

The best way to get good at interpreting spectra is by experience. Look at as many spectra and do as many spectroscopy problems as you can.

Among Web sites that offer spectroscopic problems, two stand out (Figure 13.32). One, called *WebSpectra,* was developed by Professor Craig A. Merlic (UCLA):

www.chem.ucla.edu/~webspectra

The other is the *Organic Structure Elucidation* workbook, created by Professor Bradley D. Smith (Notre Dame):

www.nd.edu/~smithgrp/structure/workbook.html

WebSpectra includes 75 problems. All the problems display the ^{1}H and ^{13}C spectra, several with DEPT or COSY enhancements. A number include IR spectra. *Organic Structure Elucidation* contains 64 problems, all with ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR, IR, and mass spectra. The exercises in both *WebSpectra* and *Organic Structure Elucidation* are graded according to difficulty. Give them a try.

Vast numbers of NMR, IR, and mass spectra are freely accessible via the *Spectral Data Base System* (SDBS) maintained by the Japanese National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology at:

http://riodb.ibase.aist.go.jp/riohomee.html

The SDBS contains 15,400 ^{1}H NMR, 13,600 ^{13}C NMR, 52,500 IR, and 24,700 mass spectra. Not only does the SDBS contain more spectra than anyone could possibly browse through, it incorporates some very useful search features. If you want spectra for a particular compound, entering the name of the compound calls up links to its spectra, which can then be displayed. If you don't know what the compound is, but know one or more of the following:

- Molecular formula
- ^{1}H or ^{13}C chemical shift of one or more peaks
- Mass number of mass spectra fragments

entering the values singly or in combination returns the names of the best matches in the database. You can then compare the spectra of these candidate compounds with the spectra of the sample to identify it.

As extensive as the SDBS is, don't be disappointed if the exact compound you are looking for is not there. There are, after all, millions of organic compounds. However, much of structure determination (and organic chemistry in general) is based on analogy. Finding the spectrum of a related compound can be almost as helpful as finding the one you really want.

These Web resources, in conjunction with the figures and problems in your text, afford a wealth of opportunities to gain practice and experience in modern techniques of structure determination.

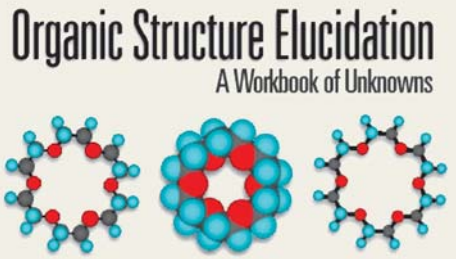
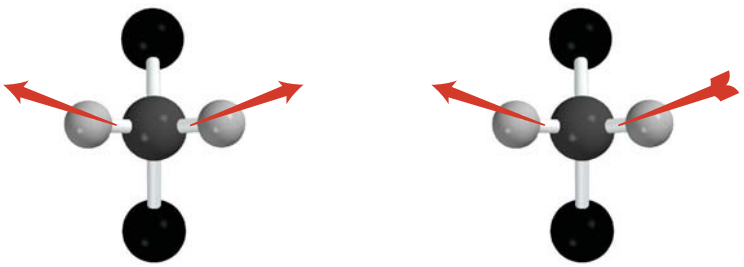


Figure 13.32

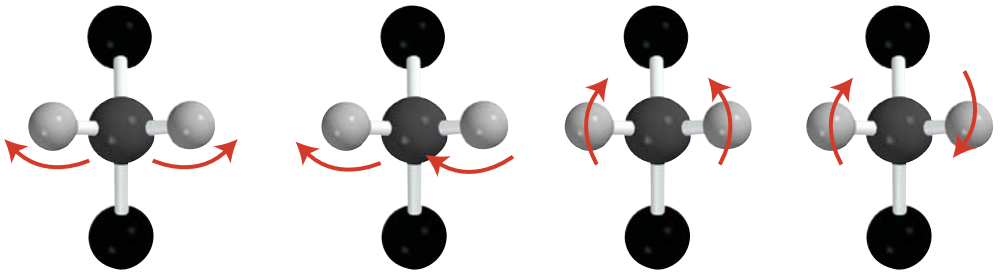
These two welcome screens open the door to almost 150 spectroscopy problems. The screens are used with permission of Professors Craig A. Merlic *(WebSpectra)* and Bradley D. Smith *(Organic Structure Elucidation).*

contract at the same time. In the *antisymmetric* stretch, one C—H bond stretches while the other contracts.



Stretching vibrations: Symmetric Antisymmetric

In addition to stretching vibrations, a CH_2 group can bend, and each bending mode has its own set of energy states.



Bending vibrations: Scissoring Rocking Wagging Twisting

A molecule absorbs that portion of electromagnetic radiation having a frequency that matches the energy difference between two vibrational energy levels. This radiation lies in the infrared region of the electromagnetic spectrum (Figure 13.1). The wavelength λ of the infrared region that is the most useful for structure determination is 2.5–16 μm, where 1 μm = 10^{-6} m. Instead of wavelengths or SI units of frequency (s^{-1}), IR spectroscopy uses **wavenumbers,** which are equal to λ^{-1} and expressed in units of reciprocal centimeters (cm^{-1}). Thus, the region 2.5–16 μm corresponds to 4000–625 cm^{-1}. Wavenumbers are directly proportional to energy; 4000 cm^{-1} is the high-energy end of the scale for IR spectra, and 625 cm^{-1} is the low-energy end.

The energy difference between adjacent vibrational states is tens of thousands of times larger than what we saw for nuclear spin states in NMR.

Problem 13.22

Vibrational frequencies are sensitive to isotopic replacement. The O—H stretching frequency is near 3600 cm^{-1}, but that of O—D is about 2630 cm^{-1}. Which are closer in energy, two adjacent O—H or two adjacent O—D vibrational states?

Most molecules have many more vibrational modes than the ones just shown for a single CH_2 group. Some involve relatively simple structural units, others a substantial fraction of the atoms in a molecule. Thus the infrared spectrum of each compound is unique, and superimposability of their IR spectra is convincing evidence that two substances are the same.

13.21 Infrared Spectra

IR spectra can be obtained regardless of the physical state of a sample—solid, liquid, gas, or dissolved in some solvent. If the sample is a liquid, a drop or two is placed between two sodium chloride disks, through which the IR beam is passed. Solids may be dissolved in a suitable solvent such as carbon tetrachloride or chloroform. More commonly, a solid sample is mixed with potassium bromide and the mixture pressed into a thin wafer, which is placed in the path of the IR beam. Newer instruments require little or no sample preparation. The present generation of IR spectrometers employs a technique known as attenuated total reflectance (ATR) coupled with FT data analysis. The whole range of vibrational states is sampled at once and transformed by Fourier analysis.

All IR spectra in this text were recorded without solvent using an ATR instrument.

Figure 13.33 orients us with respect to where we can expect to find IR absorptions for various structural units. Peaks in the range of 4000–1600 cm^{-1} are usually emphasized because this is the region in which the vibrations characteristic of particular functional groups are found. We'll look at some of these functional groups in more detail in Section 13.22. The region 1500–500 cm^{-1} is known as the **fingerprint region;** it is here that the pattern of peaks varies most from compound to compound.

An IR spectrum usually contains more peaks than we can assign, or even need to assign. We gain information by associating selected absorptions with particular structural units and functional groups, as well as noting what structural units can be excluded from consideration because a key peak that characterizes it is absent from the spectrum.

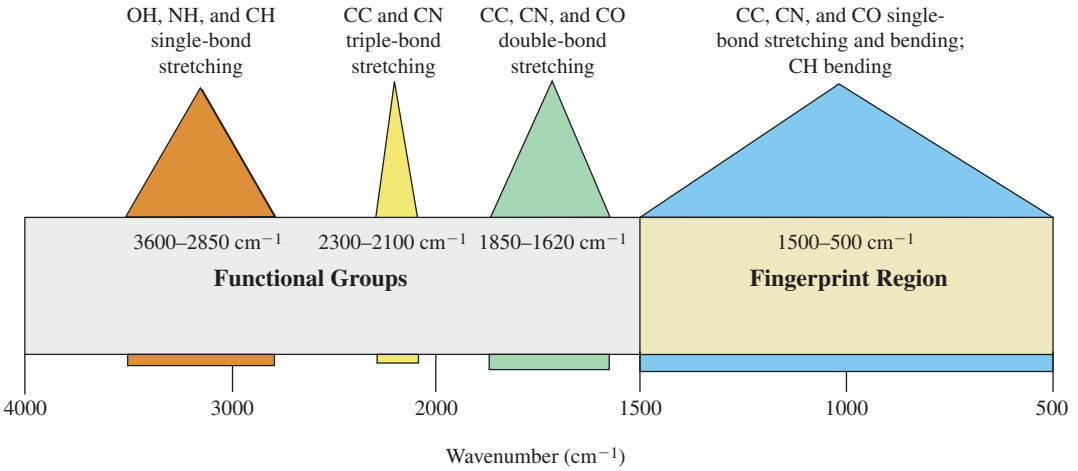


Figure 13.33

Structural units are commonly found in specific regions of the infrared spectrum.

Figure 13.34*a–d* shows the IR spectra of four hydrocarbons: hexane, 1-hexene, benzene, and hexylbenzene. Each spectrum consists of a series of absorption peaks of varying shape and intensity. Unlike NMR, in which intensities are related to the number of nuclei responsible for each signal, some IR vibrations give more intense peaks than others. To give an observable peak in the infrared, a vibration must produce a change in the molecular dipole moment, and peaks are usually more intense when they involve a bond between two atoms of different electronegativity. Consequently, C—C single-bond stretching vibrations normally give peaks of low intensity. The intensities of IR peaks are usually expressed in terms of percent transmittance (%T) and described as weak, medium, or strong.

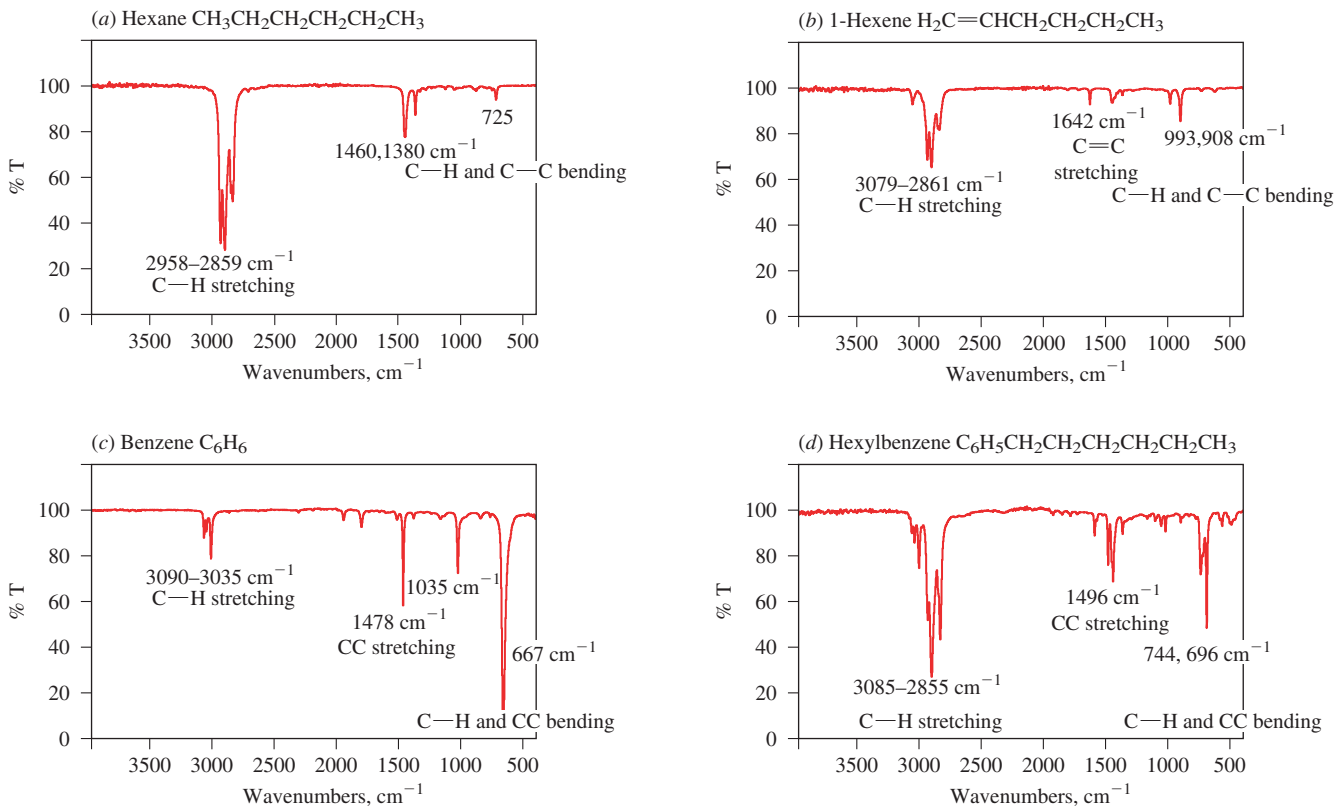


Figure 13.34

IR spectra of the hydrocarbons: (*a*) hexane, (*b*) 1-hexene, (*c*) benzene, and (*d*) hexylbenzene.

The IR spectrum of hexane (Figure 13.34*a*) is relatively simple, characterized by several peaks near 3000 cm^{-1} due to C—H stretching, along with weaker peaks at 1460, 1380, and 725 cm^{-1} from C—H and C—C bending.

Among the several ways in which the spectrum of the alkene 1-hexene (Figure 13.34*b*) differs from hexane, the most useful from the perspective of structure determination is found in the C—H stretching region. Although all the peaks for C—H stretching in *hexane* appear below 3000 cm^{-1}, *1-hexene* exhibits a peak at 3079 cm^{-1}. Peaks for C—H stretching above 3000 cm^{-1} are characteristic of hydrogens bonded to sp^2-hybridized carbon. The IR spectrum of 1-hexene also displays a weak peak at 1642 cm^{-1} corresponding to its C=C stretching vibration. The peaks at 993 and 908 cm^{-1} in the spectrum of 1-hexene, absent in the spectrum of hexane, are bending vibrations of the H_2C=C group.

All of the spectra in this and the next section are displayed on a common %T scale to better show how peak intensities differ among various groups.

Problem 13.23

Ethylene lacks a peak in its IR spectrum for C=C stretching. Why?

Benzene (Figure 13.34*c*) has *only* sp^2-hybridized carbons, and *all* of its peaks for C—H stretching lie above 3000 cm^{-1}. CC stretching gives a weak peak at 1478 cm^{-1}. The most intense peak in benzene (667 cm^{-1}) results from a vibration in which one of the C—H bonds bends out of the plane of the ring.

The hexylbenzene spectrum (Figure 13.34*d*) bears similarities to those of hexane and benzene. Peaks for C—H stretching are found both above and below 3000 cm^{-1} for sp^2 and sp^3 C—H stretching, respectively. The benzene ring is represented in the weak peak at 1496 cm^{-1}. The three peaks between 750 and 690 cm^{-1} include bending modes for the hexyl chain and the ring.

Rarely can the structure of a hydrocarbon ever be determined by IR alone. Figure 13.34 alerts us to the fact that most organic compounds give IR spectra in which many of the peaks are due to the carbon skeleton and its attached hydrogens. Chemists pay less attention to these peaks now that ^1H and ^{13}C NMR are available to gain the same information. What IR does best—identifying the presence or absence of functional groups—is described in the following section.

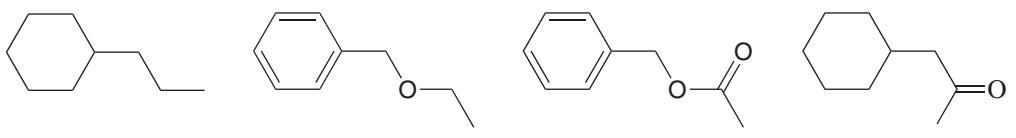
13.22 Characteristic Absorption Frequencies

Table 13.3 (page 552) lists the **characteristic absorption frequencies** (in wavenumbers) for a variety of structural units found in organic compounds. Generally, absorptions above 1500 cm^{-1} for functional groups such as OH, C=O, and C≡N are the easiest to assign and provide the most useful information.

Some of these characteristic absorptions are reflected in the IR spectra of eight functional-group classes in Figure 13.35: alcohol, nitrile, carboxylic acid, ketone, ester, ether, amine, and amide. None of the specific compounds represented contains hydrogens bonded to sp^2-hybridized carbon, so all of the C—H absorbances lie below 3000 cm^{-1}. The compounds are related in that all have an unbranched six-carbon chain and, except for the peaks associated with the functional group, their spectra are similar, though not identical.

Problem 13.24

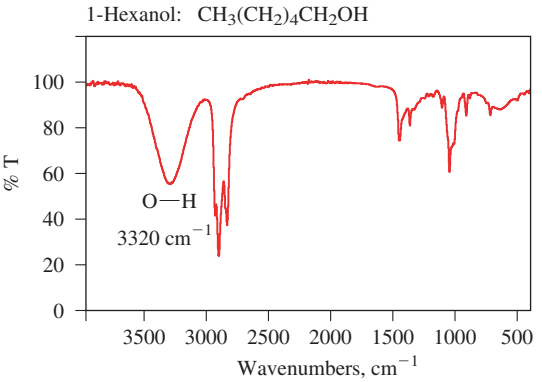
Which of the following is the most likely structure of the compound characterized by the IR spectrum shown in Figure 13.36?



In later chapters, when families of compounds are discussed in detail, the IR frequencies associated with each type of functional group will be revisited.

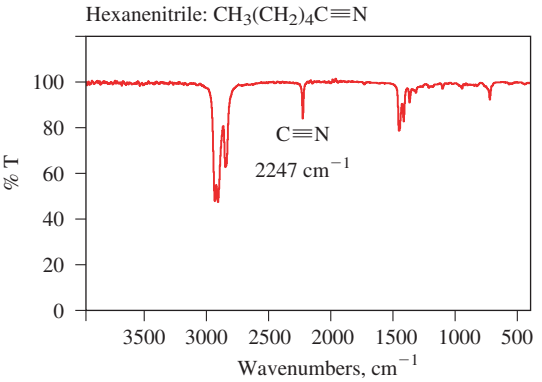
(*a*) **Alcohols:** A broad peak at 3200–3400 cm^{-1} is characteristic of hydrogen-bonded OH groups. In dilute solution, hydrogen bonding is less, and a sharp second peak for "free" OH groups appears near 3600 cm^{-1}.

The peak at 1070 cm^{-1} lies in the range given in Table 13.4 (1025–1200 cm^{-1}) for C—O stretching and can be assigned to it.

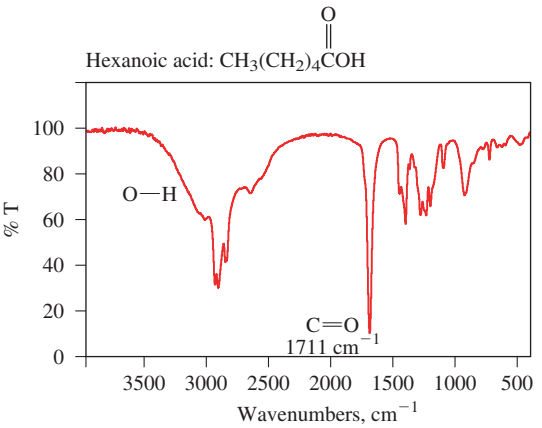


(*b*) **Nitriles:** The C≡N triple bond absorption is easily identifiable in the IR spectrum of a nitrile as a sharp peak of medium intensity at 2240–2280 cm^{-1}.

Very few other groups absorb in this region, the most notable being C≡C triple bonds (2100–2200 cm^{-1}).



(*c*) **Carboxylic acids:** Carboxylic acids have two characteristic absorptions: a broad peak for O—H stretching in the range 2500–3600 cm^{-1} and a strong peak for C=O stretching at 1700–1725 cm^{-1}.



(*d*) **Aldehydes and ketones:** As in other carbonyl-containing compounds, the C=O stretching vibration gives the strongest peak in the IR spectra of aldehydes and ketones.

The C=O stretching frequencies of aldehydes are similar to those of ketones.

The C—H stretch of the CH=O group in aldehydes appears as a pair of bands in the range 2700–2900 cm^{-1}.

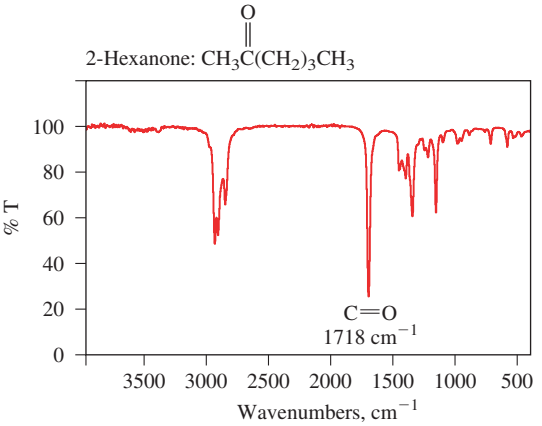
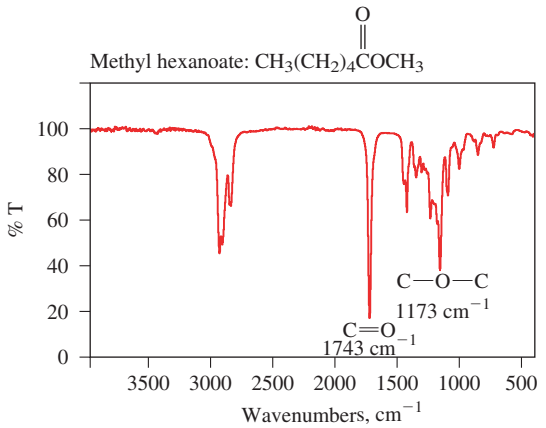


Figure 13.35

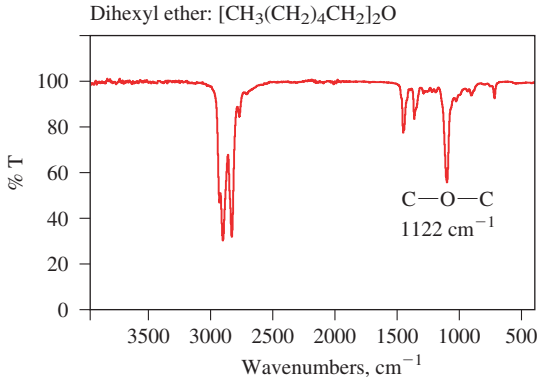
IR spectra of (*a*) 1-hexanol, (*b*) hexanenitrile, (*c*) hexanoic acid, (*d*) 2-hexanone, (*e*) methyl hexanoate, (*f*) dihexyl ether, (*g*) hexylamine, and (*h*) hexanamide.

(*Continued*)

(*e*) **Esters:** In addition to a strong C═O absorption (1730–1750 cm^{-1}), esters exhibit peaks for symmetric and antisymmetric C—O—C stretching at 1050–1300 cm^{-1}.



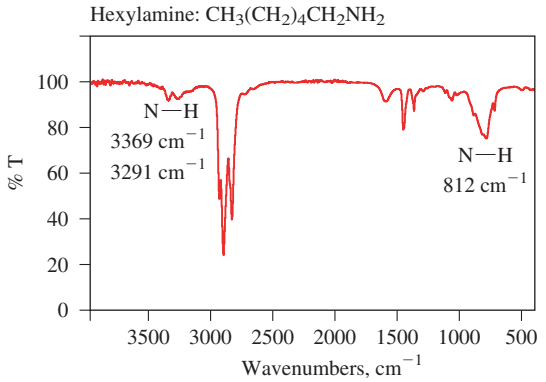
(*f*) **Ethers:** Peaks for C—O—C stretching in ethers appear in the range 1070–1150 cm^{-1}. Ethers of the type ROR′ where R and R′ are different have two peaks in this region.



(*g*) **Amines:** Primary amines (RNH_2) have two peaks for the NH_2 group in the 3300–3500 cm^{-1} region, one for symmetric and the other for antisymmetric N—H stretching. Secondary amines (RNHR′) have only one peak (3310–3350 cm^{-1}).

An NH bending peak at 650–900 cm^{-1} occurs in both RH_2 and RNHR′. Primary amines also have an NH bending absorption at 1580–1650 cm^{-1}.

C—N stretching peaks are found at 1020–1250 cm^{-1}.



(*h*) **Amides:** Amides of the type $RC(O)NH_2$ have peaks for both symmetric and antisymmetric N—H stretching in the 3400–3150 cm^{-1} region.

The C═O absorption for amides appears at slightly lower frequency (1650–1700 cm^{-1}) than for ketones. Amides have a peak for NH_2 bending at a slightly lower frequency (1600–1650 cm^{-1}) than C═O.

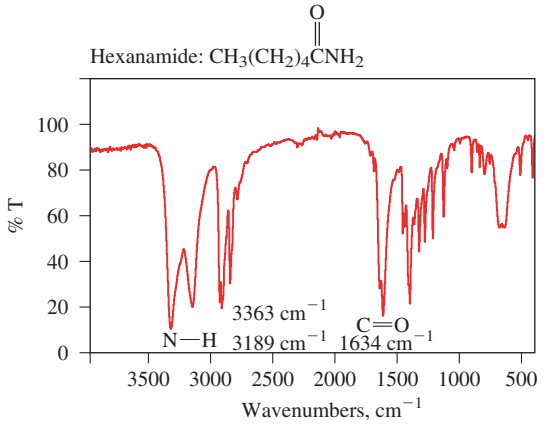
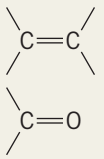


TABLE 13.3 Infrared Absorption Frequencies of Some Common Structural Units

Structural unit	Frequency, cm^{-1}	Structural unit	Frequency, cm^{-1}
Stretching vibrations			
Single bonds		**Double bonds**	
—O—H (alcohols)	3200–3600		1620–1680
—O—H (carboxylic acids)	2500–3600		
	3350–3500		
sp C—H	3310–3320	Aldehydes and ketones	1710–1750
sp^2 C—H	3000–3100	Carboxylic acids	1700–1725
sp^3 C—H	2850–2950	Acid anhydrides	1800–1850 and 1740–1790
sp^2 C—O	1200	Acyl halides	1770–1815
sp^3 C—O	1025–1200	Esters	1730–1750
		Amides	1680–1700
		Triple bonds	
		—C≡C—	2100–2200
		—C≡N	2240–2280
Bending vibrations of diagnostic value			
Alkenes:		***Substituted derivatives of benzene:***	
$RCH{=}CH_2$	910, 990	Monosubstituted	730–770 and 690–710
$R_2C{=}CH_2$	890	Ortho-disubstituted	735–770
cis-RCH=CHR′	665–730	Meta-disubstituted	750–810 and 680–730
trans-RCH=CHR′	960–980	Para-disubstituted	790–840
$R_2C{=}CHR'$	790–840		

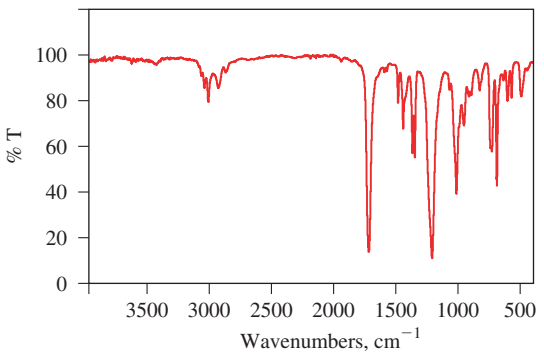


Figure 13.36

The IR spectrum of the unknown compound in Problem 13.24.

13.23 Ultraviolet-Visible Spectroscopy

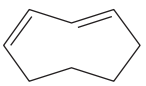
The main application of UV-VIS spectroscopy, which depends on transitions between electronic energy levels, is in identifying conjugated π electron systems.

Much greater energies separate electronic states than vibrational states. The energy required to promote an electron from one electronic state to the next lies in the visible and ultraviolet range of the electromagnetic spectrum (see Figure 13.1). We usually identify radiation in the UV-VIS range by its wavelength in nanometers. Thus, the visible region corresponds to 400–800 nm. Red light is the low-energy (long wavelength) end of the visible spectrum, violet light the high-energy (short wavelength) end. Ultraviolet light lies beyond the visible spectrum with wavelengths in the 200–400-nm range.

Figure 13.37 shows the UV spectrum of the conjugated diene *cis,trans*-1,3-cyclooctadiene, measured in ethanol as the solvent. As is typical of most UV spectra, the absorption is rather broad and is often spoken of as a "band" rather than a "peak." The wavelength at an absorption maximum is referred to as the λ_{max} of the band. For 1,3-cyclooctadiene, λ_{max} is 230 nm. In addition to λ_{max}, UV-VIS bands are characterized by their **absorbance** (*A*), which is a measure of how much of the radiation that passes through the sample is absorbed. To correct for concentration and path length effects, absorbance is converted to **molar absorptivity** (ϵ) by dividing it by the concentration *c* in moles per liter and the path length *l* in centimeters.

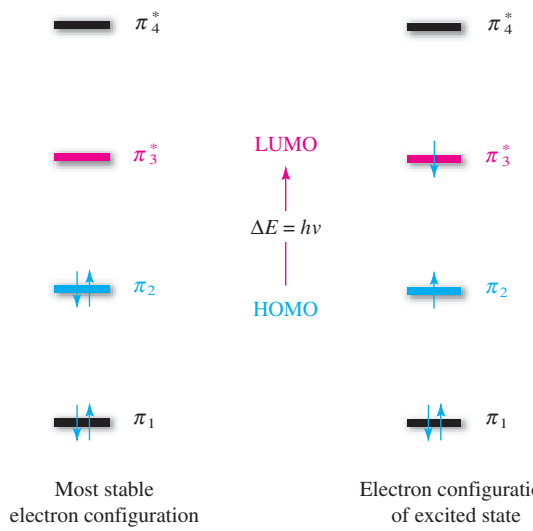
$$\epsilon = \frac{A}{c \cdot l}$$

Molar absorptivity, when measured at λ_{max}, is cited as ϵ_{max}. It is normally expressed without units. Both λ_{max} and ϵ_{max} are affected by the solvent, which is therefore included when reporting UV-VIS spectroscopic data. Thus, you might find a literature reference expressed in the form



cis,trans-1,3-Cyclooctadiene
$\lambda_{max}^{ethanol}$ 230 nm
$\epsilon_{max}^{ethanol}$ 2630

Figure 13.38 illustrates the transition between electronic energy states responsible for the 230-nm UV band of *cis,trans*-1,3-cyclooctadiene. Absorption of UV radiation excites an electron from the highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) to the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO). In alkenes and polyenes, both the HOMO and LUMO are π type orbitals (rather than σ); the HOMO is the highest energy π orbital and the LUMO is



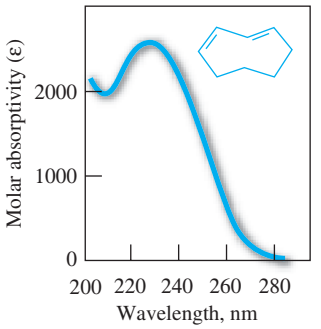


Figure 13.37

The UV spectrum of *cis,trans*-1,3-cyclooctadiene.

Figure 13.38

The π → π* transition in *cis,trans*-1,3-cyclooctadiene involves excitation of an electron from the highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) to the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO).

the lowest energy π* orbital. Exciting one of the π electrons from a bonding π orbital to an antibonding π* orbital is referred to as a π → π* transition.

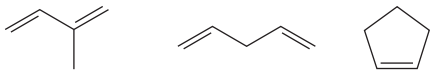
Problem 13.25

λ_{max} for the π → π* transition in ethylene is 170 nm. Is the HOMO–LUMO energy difference in ethylene greater than or less than that of *cis,trans*-1,3-cyclooctadiene (230 nm)?

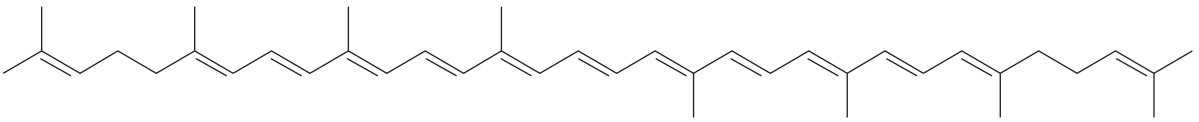
The HOMO–LUMO energy gap and, consequently, λ_{max} for the π → π* transition varies with the substituents on the double bonds. The data in Table 13.4 illustrate two substituent effects: adding methyl substituents to the double bond, and extending conjugation. Both cause λ_{max} to shift to longer wavelengths, but the effect of conjugation is the larger of the two. Based on data collected for many dienes it has been found that each methyl substituent on the double bonds causes a shift to longer wavelengths of about 5 nm, whereas extending the conjugation causes a shift of about 36 nm for each additional double bond.

Problem 13.26

Which one of the C_5H_8 isomers shown has its λ_{max} at the longest wavelength?



A striking example of the effect of conjugation on light absorption occurs in *lycopene,* one of the pigments in ripe tomatoes. Lycopene has a conjugated system of 11 double bonds and absorbs *visible light.* It has several UV-VIS bands, each characterized by a separate λ_{max}. Its longest wavelength absorption is at 505 nm. Note the inverse relationship between the color of a compound and the wavelength of light absorbed. Lycopene absorbs light in the blue region of the visible spectrum, yet appears red. The red color of lycopene is produced by the light that is not absorbed.



Lycopene

TABLE 13.4 Absorption Maxima of Some Representative Alkenes and Polyenes*

Compound	Structure	λ_{max} (nm)
Ethylene	$H_2C{=}CH_2$	170
2-Methylpropene	$H_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$	188
1, 3-Butadiene	$H_2C{=}CHCH{=}CH_2$	217
4-Methyl-1,3-pentadiene	$H_2C{=}CHCH{=}C(CH_3)_2$	234
2,5-Dimethyl-2,4-hexadiene	$(CH_3)_2C{=}CHCH{=}C(CH_3)_2$	241
(2*E*,4*E*,6*E*)-2,4,6-Octatriene	$CH_3CH{=}CHCH{=}CHCH{=}CHCH_3$	263
(2*E*,4*E*,6*E*,8*E*)-2,4,6,8-Decatetraene	$CH_3CH{=}CH(CH{=}CH)_2CH{=}CHCH_3$	299
(2*E*,4*E*,6*E*,8*E*,10*E*)-2,4,6,8,10-Dodecapentaene	$CH_3CH{=}CH(CH{=}CH)_3CH{=}CHCH_3$	326

The value of λ_{max} refers to the longest wavelength π → π transition.

Many organic compounds such as lycopene are colored because their HOMO–LUMO energy gap is small enough that λ_{max} appears in the visible range of the spectrum. All that is required for a compound to be colored, however, is that it possess some absorption in the visible range. It often happens that a compound will have its λ_{max} in the UV region but that the peak is broad and extends into the visible. Absorption of the blue-to-violet components of visible light occurs, and the compound appears yellow.

A second type of absorption that is important in UV-VIS examination of organic compounds is the $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ transition of the carbonyl (C═O) group. One of the electrons in a lone-pair orbital of oxygen is excited to an antibonding orbital of the carbonyl group. The n in $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ identifies the electron as one of the nonbonded electrons of oxygen. This transition gives rise to relatively weak absorption peaks ($\epsilon_{max} < 100$) in the region 270–300 nm. The structural unit associated with an electronic transition in UV-VIS spectroscopy is called a **chromophore.** UV-visible spectroscopy has applications in biochemistry, where chromophores such as the heterocyclic bases found in nucleic acids and certain coenzymes involved in biochemical reactions can be studied.

Don't confuse the n in $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ with the n of Hückel's rule.

An important enzyme in biological electron transport called *cytochrome P450* gets its name from its UV absorption. The "P" stands for "pigment" because it is colored, and the "450" corresponds to the 450-nm absorption of one of its derivatives.

13.24 Mass Spectrometry

Mass spectrometry differs from the other instrumental methods discussed in this chapter in a fundamental way. It does not depend on the absorption of electromagnetic radiation but rather examines ions produced from a molecule in the gas phase. Several techniques have been developed for ionization in mass spectrometry. In one method, the molecule is bombarded with high-energy electrons. If an electron having an energy of about 10 electronvolts (10 eV = 230.5 kcal/mol) collides with an organic molecule, the energy transferred as a result of that collision is sufficient to dislodge one of the molecule's electrons.

$$\underset{\text{Molecule}}{A{:}B} + \underset{\text{Electron}}{e^-} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Cation radical}}{A^{+}{\cdot}B} + \underset{\text{Two electrons}}{2e^-}$$

We say the molecule AB has been ionized by **electron impact.** The species that results, called the **molecular ion,** is positively charged and has an odd number of electrons—it is a **cation radical.** The molecular ion has the same mass (less the negligible mass of a single electron) as the molecule from which it is formed.

Although energies of about 10 eV are required, energies of about 70 eV are used. Electrons this energetic not only cause ionization of a molecule but also impart a large amount of energy to the molecular ion, enough energy to break chemical bonds. The molecular ion dissipates this excess energy by dissociating into smaller fragments. Dissociation of a cation radical produces a neutral fragment and a positively charged fragment.

$$\underset{\text{Cation radical}}{A{:}\overset{+}{B}} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Cation}}{A^+} + \underset{\text{Radical}}{B{\cdot}}$$

Ionization and fragmentation produce a mixture of particles, some neutral and some positively charged. To understand what follows, we need to examine the design of an electron-impact mass spectrometer, shown in Figure 13.39. The sample is bombarded with 70-eV electrons, and the resulting positively charged ions (the molecular ion as well as fragment ions) are directed into an analyzer tube surrounded by a magnet. This magnet deflects the ions from their original trajectory, causing them to adopt a circular path, the radius of which depends on their mass-to-charge ratio *(m/z).* Ions of small *m/z* are deflected more than those of larger *m/z.* By varying either the magnetic field strength or the degree to which the ions are accelerated on entering the analyzer, ions of a particular *m/z* can be selectively focused through a narrow slit onto a detector, where they are counted. Scanning all *m/z* values gives the distribution of positive ions, called a **mass spectrum,** characteristic of a particular compound.

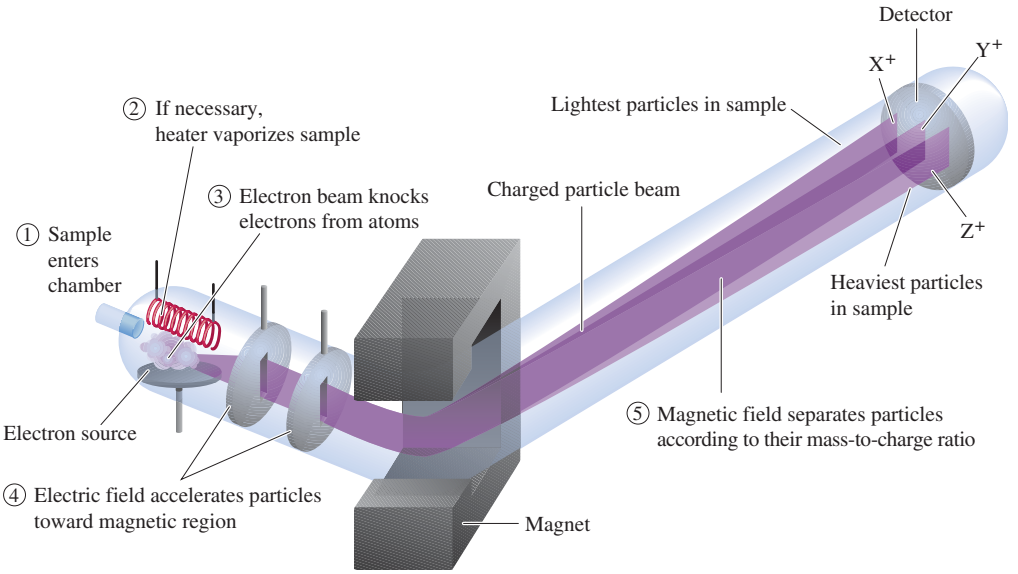
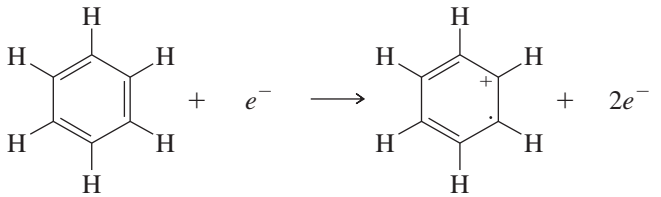


Figure 13.39

Diagram of a mass spectrometer. Only positive ions are detected. The cation X^+ has the lowest mass-to-charge ratio and its path is deflected most by the magnet. The cation Z^+ has the highest mass-to-charge ratio and its path is deflected least. (Adapted, with permission, from M. Silberberg, *Chemistry*, McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2009, p. 55.)

Most mass spectrometers are capable of displaying the mass spectrum according to a number of different formats. Bar graphs on which relative intensity is plotted versus *m/z* are the most common. Figure 13.40 shows the mass spectrum of benzene in bar graph form.

The mass spectrum of benzene is relatively simple and illustrates some of the information that mass spectrometry provides. The most intense peak in the mass spectrum is called the **base peak** and is assigned a relative intensity of 100. Ion abundances are proportional to peak intensities and are reported as intensities relative to the base peak. The base peak in the mass spectrum of benzene corresponds to the molecular ion (M^+) at $m/z = 78$.



Benzene does not undergo extensive fragmentation; none of the fragment ions in its mass spectrum are as abundant as the molecular ion.

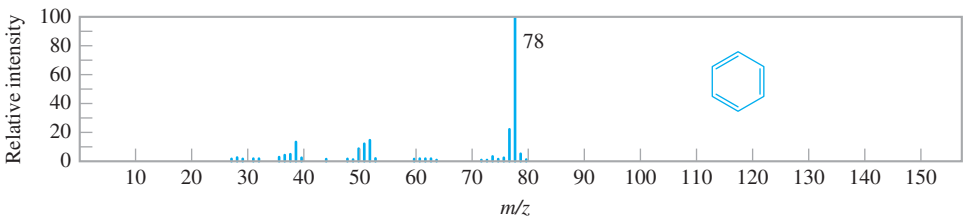
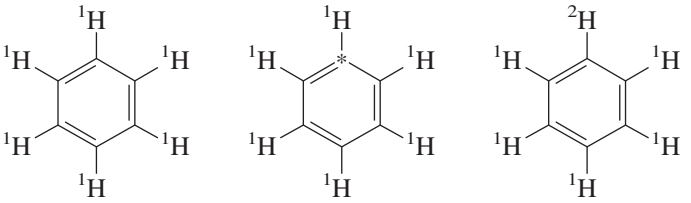


Figure 13.40

The mass spectrum of benzene. The peak at $m/z = 78$ corresponds to the C_6H_6 molecular ion.

There is a small peak one mass unit higher than M^+ in the mass spectrum of benzene. What is the origin of this peak? What we see in Figure 13.40 as a single mass spectrum is actually a superposition of the spectra of three isotopically distinct benzenes. Most of the benzene molecules contain only ^{12}C and ^{1}H and have a molecular mass of 78. Smaller proportions of benzene molecules contain ^{13}C in place of one of the ^{12}C atoms or ^{2}H in place of one of the protons. Both these species have a molecular mass of 79.



Not only the molecular ion peak but all the peaks in the mass spectrum of benzene are accompanied by a smaller peak one mass unit higher. Indeed, because all organic compounds contain carbon and most contain hydrogen, similar **isotopic clusters** will appear in the mass spectra of all organic compounds.

Isotopic clusters are especially apparent when atoms such as bromine and chlorine are present in an organic compound. The natural ratios of isotopes in these elements are

$$\frac{^{35}Cl}{^{37}Cl} = \frac{100}{32.7} \qquad \frac{^{79}Br}{^{81}Br} = \frac{100}{97.5}$$

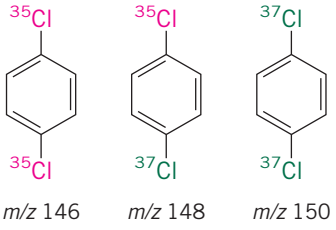
Figure 13.41 presents the mass spectrum of chlorobenzene. There are two prominent molecular ion peaks, one at *m/z* 112 for $C_6H_5{}^{35}Cl$ and the other at *m/z* 114 for $C_6H_5{}^{37}Cl$. The peak at *m/z* 112 is three times as intense as the one at *m/z* 114.

Problem 13.27

Knowing what to look for with respect to isotopic clusters can aid in interpreting mass spectra. How many peaks would you expect to see for the molecular ion in each of the following compounds? At what *m/z* values would these peaks appear? (Disregard the small peaks due to ^{13}C and ^{2}H.)

(a) *p*-Dichlorobenzene
(b) *o*-Dichlorobenzene
(c) *p*-Dibromobenzene
(d) *p*-Bromochlorobenzene

Sample Solution (a) The two isotopes of chlorine are ^{35}Cl and ^{37}Cl. There will be three isotopically different forms of *p*-dichlorobenzene present. They have the structures shown as follows. Each one will give an M^+ peak at a different value of *m/z*.



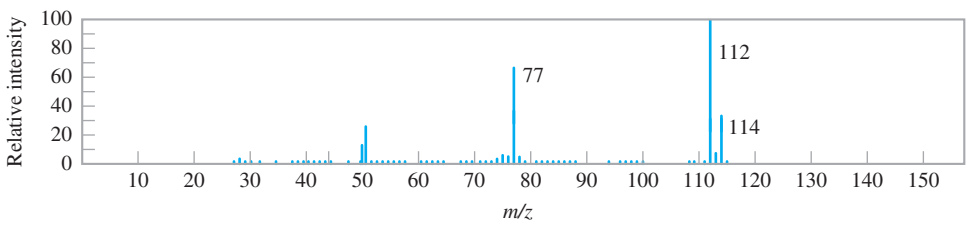
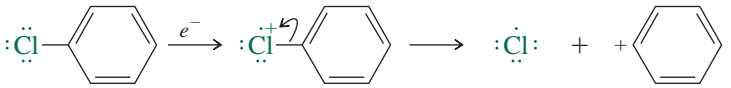


Figure 13.41
The mass spectrum of chlorobenzene.

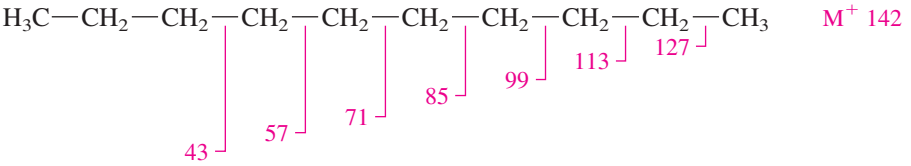
Unlike the case of benzene, in which ionization involves loss of a π electron from the ring, electron-impact-induced ionization of chlorobenzene involves loss of an electron from an unshared pair of chlorine. The molecular ion then fragments by carbon–chlorine bond cleavage.



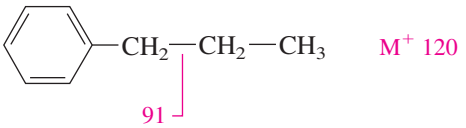
Chlorobenzene | Molecular ion of chlorobenzene | Chlorine atom | Phenyl cation *m/z* 77

The peak at *m/z* 77 in the mass spectrum of chlorobenzene in Figure 13.41 is attributed to this fragmentation. Because there is no peak of significant intensity two atomic mass units higher, we know that the cation responsible for the peak at *m/z* 77 cannot contain chlorine.

Some classes of compounds are so prone to fragmentation that the molecular ion peak is very weak. The base peak in most unbranched alkanes, for example, is *m/z* 43, which is followed by peaks of decreasing intensity at *m/z* values of 57, 71, 85, and so on. These peaks correspond to cleavage of each possible carbon–carbon bond in the molecule. This pattern is evident in the mass spectrum of decane, depicted in Figure 13.42. The points of cleavage are indicated in the following diagram:



Many fragmentations in mass spectrometry proceed so as to form a stable carbocation, and the principles that we have developed regarding carbocation stability apply. Alkylbenzenes of the type $C_6H_5CH_2R$ undergo cleavage of the bond to the benzylic carbon to give *m/z* 91 as the base peak. The mass spectrum in Figure 13.43 and the following fragmentation diagram illustrate this for propylbenzene.



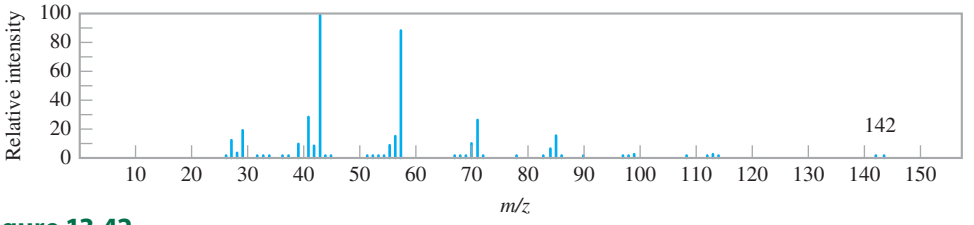


Figure 13.42

The mass spectrum of decane. The peak for the molecular ion is extremely small. The most prominent peaks arise by fragmentation.

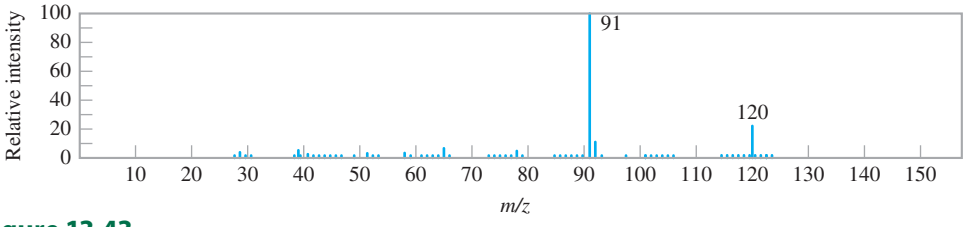


Figure 13.43

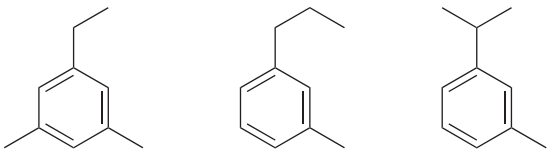
The mass spectrum of propylbenzene. The most intense peak is $C_7H_7^+$.

Although this cleavage is probably driven by the stability of benzyl cation, evidence has been obtained suggesting that tropylium cation, formed by rearrangement of benzyl cation, is actually the species responsible for the peak.

The structure of tropylium cation is given in Section 11.20.

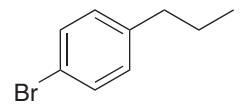
Problem 13.28

The base peak appears at *m/z* 105 for one of the following compounds and at *m/z* 119 for the other two. Match the compounds with the appropriate *m/z* values for their base peaks.

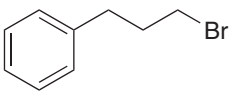


Problem 13.29

Mass spectra for 1-bromo-4-propylbenzene and (3-bromopropyl)benzene are shown in Figure 13.44. Match each spectrum to the appropriate compound. Write a structure for the ion that corresponds to the base peak in each spectrum.



1-Bromo-4-propylbenzene



(3-Bromopropyl)benzene

Understanding how molecules fragment upon electron impact permits a mass spectrum to be analyzed in sufficient detail to deduce the structure of an unknown compound. Thousands of compounds of known structure have been examined by mass spectrometry, and the fragmentation patterns that characterize different classes are well documented. As various groups are covered in subsequent chapters, aspects of their fragmentation behavior under conditions of electron impact will be described.

An alternate method of ionization is described in the boxed essay *Peptide Mapping and MALDI Mass Spectrometry* in Chapter 25.

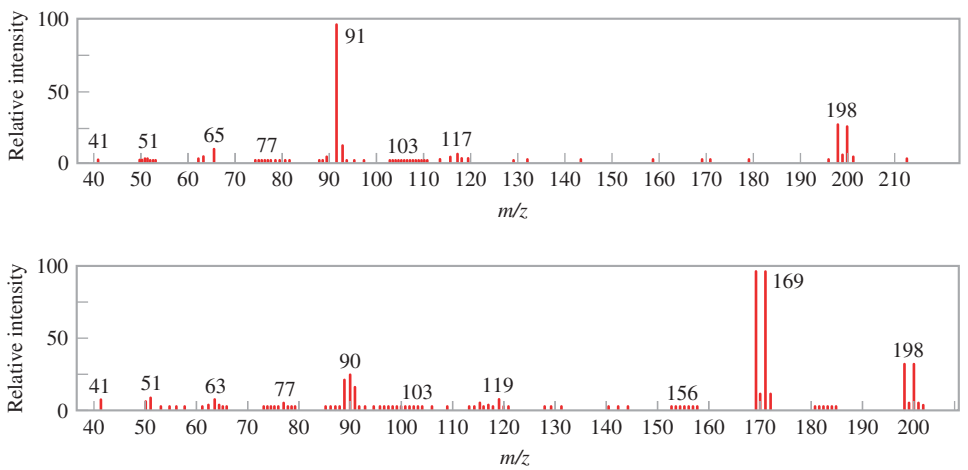


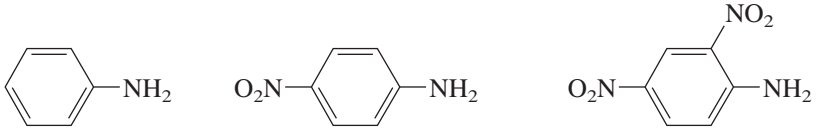
Figure 13.44

Mass spectra of 1-bromo-4-propylbenzene and (3-bromopropyl)benzene.

13.25 Molecular Formula as a Clue to Structure

As we have just seen, interpreting the fragmentation patterns in a mass spectrum in terms of a molecule's structural units makes mass spectrometry much more than just a tool for determining molecular weights. Nevertheless, even the molecular weight can provide more information than you might think.

A relatively simple example is the **nitrogen rule.** A molecule with an odd number of nitrogens has an odd molecular weight; a molecule with only C, H, and O or with an even number of nitrogens has an even molecular weight.



	Aniline (C_6H_7N)	*p*-Nitroaniline ($C_6H_6N_2O_2$)	2,4-Dinitroaniline ($C_6H_5N_3O_4$)
Molecular weight:	93	138	183

A second example concerns different compounds that have the same molecular weight, but different molecular formulas, such as heptane and cyclopropyl acetate.

Heptane (C_7H_{16}) Cyclopropyl acetate ($C_5H_8O_2$)

Because we normally round off molecular weights to whole numbers, both have a molecular weight of 100 and both have a peak for their molecular ion at *m/z* 100 in a typical mass spectrum. Recall, however, that mass spectra contain isotopic clusters that differ according to the isotopes present in each ion. Using the exact values for the major isotopes of C, H, and O, we calculate *exact masses* of *m/z* of 100.1253 and 100.0524 for the molecular ions of heptane (C_7H_{16}) and cyclopropyl acetate ($C_5H_8O_2$), respectively. As similar as these values are, it is possible to distinguish between them using a *high-resolution mass spectrometer.* This means that the exact mass of a molecular ion can usually be translated into a unique molecular formula.

You can't duplicate these molecular weights for C_7H_{16} and $C_5H_8O_2$ by using the atomic weights given in the periodic table. Those values are for the natural-abundance mixture of isotopes. The exact values are 12.00000 for ^{12}C, 1.00783 for ^{1}H, and 15.9949 for ^{16}O.

Once we have the molecular formula, it can provide information that limits the amount of trial-and-error structure writing we have to do. Consider, for example, heptane and its molecular formula of C_7H_{16}. We know immediately that the molecular formula belongs to an alkane because it corresponds to C_nH_{2n+2}.

What about a substance with the molecular formula C_7H_{14}? This compound cannot be an alkane but may be either a cycloalkane or an alkene, because both these classes of hydrocarbons correspond to the general molecular formula C_nH_{2n}. *Any time a ring or a double bond is present in an organic molecule, its molecular formula has two fewer hydrogen atoms than that of an alkane with the same number of carbons.*

The relationship between molecular formulas, multiple bonds, and rings is referred to as the **index of hydrogen deficiency** and can be expressed by the equation:

Other terms that mean the same thing as the index of hydrogen deficiency include *elements of unsaturation, sites of unsaturation,* and *the sum of double bonds and rings.*

$$\text{Index of hydrogen deficiency} = \tfrac{1}{2}(C_nH_{2n+2} - C_nH_x)$$

where C_nH_x is the molecular formula of the compound.

A molecule that has a molecular formula of C_7H_{14} has an index of hydrogen deficiency of 1:

$$\text{Index of hydrogen deficiency} = \tfrac{1}{2}(C_7H_{16} - C_7H_{14})$$

$$\text{Index of hydrogen deficiency} = \tfrac{1}{2}(2) = 1$$

Thus, the compound has one ring or one double bond. It can't have a triple bond.

A molecule of molecular formula C_7H_{12} has four fewer hydrogens than the corresponding alkane. It has an index of hydrogen deficiency of 2 and can have two rings, two double bonds, one ring and one double bond, or one triple bond.

What about substances other than hydrocarbons, 1-heptanol [$CH_3(CH_2)_5CH_2OH$], for example? Its molecular formula ($C_7H_{16}O$) contains the same carbon-to-hydrogen ratio as heptane and, like heptane, it has no double bonds or rings. Cyclopropyl acetate ($C_5H_8O_2$), the structure of which was given at the beginning of this section, has one ring and one double bond and an index of hydrogen deficiency of 2. *Oxygen atoms have no effect on the index of hydrogen deficiency.*

A halogen substituent, like hydrogen, is monovalent and when present in a molecular formula is treated as if it were hydrogen for counting purposes. If a nitrogen is present, one hydrogen is taken away from the formula. For example, $C_5H_{11}N$ is treated as C_5H_{10} when calculating the index of hydrogen deficiency.

How does one distinguish between rings and double bonds? This additional piece of information comes from catalytic hydrogenation experiments in which the amount of hydrogen consumed is measured exactly. Each of a molecule's double bonds consumes one molar equivalent of hydrogen, but rings are unaffected. For example, a substance with a hydrogen deficiency of 5 that takes up 3 mol of hydrogen must have two rings.

Problem 13.30

How many rings are present in each of the following compounds? Each consumes 2 mol of hydrogen on catalytic hydrogenation.

(a) $C_{10}H_{18}$ (d) C_8H_8O (g) C_3H_5N

(b) C_8H_8 (e) $C_8H_{10}O_2$ (h) C_4H_5N

(c) $C_8H_8Cl_2$ (f) C_8H_9ClO

Sample Solution (a) The molecular formula $C_{10}H_{18}$ contains four fewer hydrogens than the alkane having the same number of carbon atoms ($C_{10}H_{22}$). Therefore, the index of hydrogen deficiency of this compound is 2. Because it consumes two molar equivalents of hydrogen on catalytic hydrogenation, it must have either a triple bond or two double bonds and no rings.

13.26 SUMMARY

Section 13.1 Structure determination in modern organic chemistry relies heavily on instrumental methods. Several of the most widely used ones depend on the absorption of electromagnetic radiation.

Section 13.2 Absorption of electromagnetic radiation causes a molecule to be excited from its most stable state (the *ground* state) to a higher energy state (an *excited* state).

Spectroscopic method	*Transitions between*
Nuclear magnetic resonance	Spin states of an atom's nucleus
Infrared	Vibrational states
Ultraviolet-visible	Electronic states

Mass spectrometry is not based on absorption of electromagnetic radiation, but monitors what happens when a substance is ionized by collision with a high-energy electron.

^{1}H Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy

Section 13.3 In the presence of an external magnetic field, the $+\frac{1}{2}$ and $-\frac{1}{2}$ nuclear spin states of a proton have slightly different energies.

Section 13.4 The energy required to "flip" the spin of a proton from the lower energy spin state to the higher state depends on the extent to which a nucleus is shielded from the external magnetic field by the molecule's electrons.

Section 13.5 Protons in different environments within a molecule have different **chemical shifts;** that is, they experience different degrees of shielding. Chemical shifts (δ) are reported in parts per million (ppm) from tetramethylsilane (TMS). Table 13.1 lists characteristic chemical shifts for various types of protons.

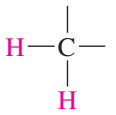
Section 13.6 In addition to *chemical shift,* a ^{1}H NMR spectrum provides structural information based on:

Number of signals, which tells how many different kinds of protons there are

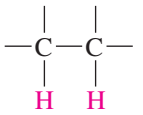
Integrated areas, which tells the ratios of the various kinds of protons

Splitting pattern, which gives information about the number of protons that are within two or three bonds of the one giving the signal

Section 13.7 **Spin–spin splitting** of NMR signals results from coupling of the nuclear spins that are separated by two bonds (*geminal coupling*) or three bonds (*vicinal coupling*).



Geminal hydrogens
are separated by two bonds



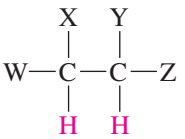
Vicinal hydrogens
are separated by three bonds

In the simplest cases, the number of peaks into which a signal is split is equal to $n + 1$, where n is the number of protons to which the proton in question is coupled. *Protons that have the same chemical shift do not split each other's signal.*

Section 13.8 The methyl protons of an ethyl group appear as a *triplet* and the methylene protons as a *quartet* in compounds of the type CH_3CH_2X.

Section 13.9 The methyl protons of an isopropyl group appear as a *doublet* and the methine proton as a *septet* in compounds of the type $(CH_3)_2CHX$.

Section 13.10 A *pair of doublets* characterizes the signals for the protons of the type shown (where W, X, Y, and Z are not H or atoms that split H themselves).



Section 13.11 Complicated splitting patterns can result when a proton is unequally coupled to two or more protons that are different from one another.

Section 13.12 Splitting resulting from coupling to the O—H proton of alcohols is sometimes not observed, because the hydroxyl proton undergoes rapid intermolecular exchange with other alcohol molecules, which "decouples" it from other protons in the molecule.

Section 13.13 Many processes such as conformational changes take place faster than they can be detected by NMR. Consequently, NMR provides information about the *average* environment of a proton. For example, cyclohexane gives a single peak for its 12 protons even though, at any instant, 6 are axial and 6 are equatorial.

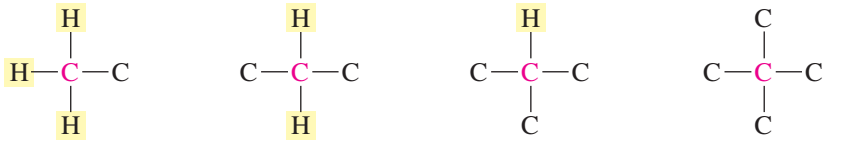
^{13}C Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy

Section 13.14 ^{13}C has a nuclear spin of $\pm\frac{1}{2}$ but only about 1% of all the carbons in a sample are ^{13}C. Nevertheless, high-quality ^{13}C NMR spectra can be obtained by pulse FT techniques and are a useful complement to ^{1}H NMR spectra.

Section 13.15 ^{13}C signals are more widely separated from one another than proton signals, and ^{13}C NMR spectra are relatively easy to interpret. Table 13.2 gives chemical shift values for carbon in various environments.

Section 13.16 ^{13}C NMR spectra are rarely integrated because the pulse FT technique distorts the signal intensities.

Section 13.17 Carbon signals normally appear as singlets, but several techniques are available that allow one to distinguish among the various kinds of carbons shown.



3 attached hydrogens (Primary carbon) | 2 attached hydrogens (Secondary carbon) | 1 attached hydrogen (Tertiary carbon) | no attached hydrogens (Quaternary carbon)

Section 13.18 One of the special techniques for distinguishing carbons according to the number of their attached hydrogens is called **DEPT.** A series of NMR measurements using different pulse sequences gives normal, nulled, and inverted peaks that allow assignment of primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary carbons.

Section 13.19 2D NMR techniques are enhancements that are sometimes useful in gaining additional structural information. A ^{1}H-^{1}H COSY spectrum reveals which protons are spin-coupled to other protons, which helps in determining connectivity. A HETCOR spectrum shows the C—H connections by correlating ^{13}C and ^{1}H chemical shifts.

Infrared Spectroscopy

Section 13.20 IR spectroscopy probes molecular structure by examining transitions between quantized vibrational energy levels using electromagnetic radiation in the 625–4000-cm^{-1}range, where cm^{-1} are units of **wavenumbers,** defined as λ^{-1}. Wavenumbers are proportional to frequency. The simplest vibration is the stretching of the bond between two atoms, but more complex vibrations can involve movement of many of a molecule's atoms.

Section 13.21 IR spectra are commonly regarded as consisting of a functional-group region (1500–4000 cm^{-1}) and a fingerprint region (500–1500 cm^{-1}). Included in the functional-group region are absorptions due to C—H stretching. In general, C—H stretching frequencies lie below 3000 cm^{-1} for sp^3-hybridized carbon and above 3000 cm^{-1} for sp^2. The fingerprint region is used less for determining structure than for verifying whether two compounds are identical or not.

Section 13.22 Functional-group identification is the main contribution of IR spectroscopy to organic chemistry. Various classes of compounds exhibit peaks at particular frequencies characteristic of the functional groups they contain. (Table 13.3).

Ultraviolet-Visible Spectroscopy

Section 13.23 Transitions between electronic energy levels involving electromagnetic radiation in the 200–800-nm range form the basis of UV-VIS spectroscopy. The absorption peaks tend to be broad but are often useful in indicating the presence of particular π electron systems within a molecule.

Mass Spectrometry

Section 13.24 Mass spectrometry exploits the information obtained when a molecule is ionized by electron impact and then dissociates to smaller fragments. Positive ions are separated and detected according to their mass-to-charge (m/z) ratio. By examining the fragments and by knowing how classes of molecules dissociate on electron impact, one can deduce the structure of a compound. Mass spectrometry is quite sensitive; as little as 10^{-9} g of compound is sufficient for analysis.

Section 13.25 A compound's molecular formula gives information about the number of double bonds and rings it contains and is a useful complement to spectroscopic methods of structure determination.

PROBLEMS

13.31 Each of the following compounds is characterized by a ^{1}H NMR spectrum that consists of only a single peak having the chemical shift indicated. Identify each compound.

(a) C_8H_{18}; δ 0.9
(b) C_5H_{10}; δ 1.5
(c) C_8H_8; δ 5.8
(d) C_4H_9Br; δ 1.8
(e) $C_2H_4Cl_2$; δ 3.7
(f) $C_2H_3Cl_3$; δ 2.7
(g) $C_5H_8Cl_4$; δ 3.7
(h) $C_{12}H_{18}$; δ 2.2
(i) $C_3H_6Br_2$; δ 2.6

13.32 Deduce the structure of each of the following compounds on the basis of their ^{1}H NMR spectra and molecular formulas:

(a) C_8H_{10}; δ 1.2 (triplet, 3H); δ 2.6 (quartet, 2H); δ 7.1 (broad singlet, 5H)
(b) $C_{10}H_{14}$; δ 1.3 (singlet, 9H); δ 7.0 to 7.5 (multiplet, 5H)
(c) C_6H_{14}; δ 0.8 (doublet, 12H); δ 1.4 (septet, 2H)
(d) C_6H_{12}; δ 0.9 (triplet, 3H); δ 1.6 (singlet, 3H); δ 1.7 (singlet, 3H); δ 2.0 (quintet, 2H); δ 5.1 (triplet, 1H)
(e) $C_4H_6Cl_4$; δ 3.9 (doublet, 4H); δ 4.6 (triplet, 2H)
(f) $C_4H_6Cl_2$; δ 2.2 (singlet, 3H); δ 4.1 (doublet, 2H); δ 5.7 (triplet, 1H)
(g) C_3H_7ClO; δ 2.0 (quintet, 2H); δ 2.8 (singlet, 1H); δ 3.7 (triplet, 2H); δ 3.8 (triplet, 2H)
(h) $C_{14}H_{14}$; δ 2.9 (singlet, 4H); δ 7.1 (broad singlet, 10H)

13.33 From among the isomeric compounds of molecular formula C_4H_9Cl, choose the one having a ^{1}H NMR spectrum that

(a) Contains only a single peak
(b) Has several peaks including a doublet at δ 3.4
(c) Has several peaks including a triplet at δ 3.5
(d) Has several peaks including two distinct three-proton signals, one of them a triplet at δ 1.0 and the other a doublet at δ 1.5

13.34 Identify the C_3H_5Br isomers on the basis of the following information:

(a) Isomer A has the ^{1}H NMR spectrum shown in Figure 13.45.
(b) Isomer B has three peaks in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum: δ 32.6 (CH_2); 118.8 (CH_2); and 134.2 (CH).
(c) Isomer C has two peaks in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum: δ 12.0 (CH_2) and 16.8 (CH). The peak at lower field is only half as intense as the one at higher field.

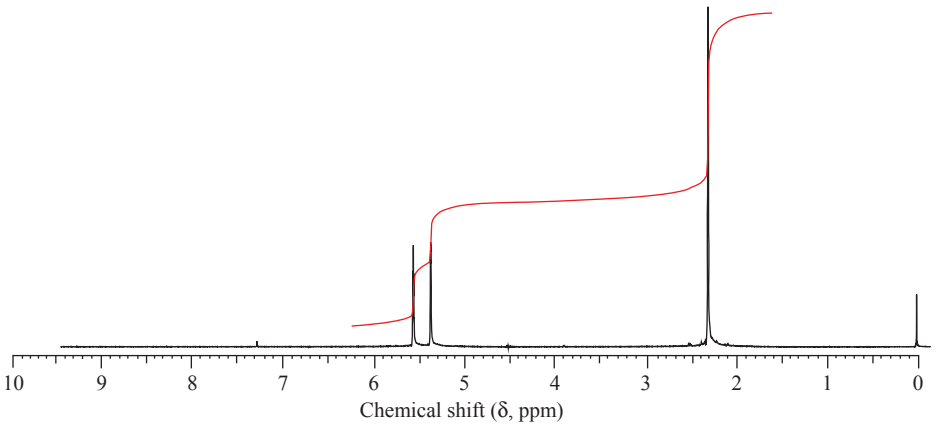


Figure 13.45
The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of isomer A (Problem 13.34a).

13.35 Identify each of the $C_4H_{10}O$ isomers on the basis of their ^{13}C NMR spectra:

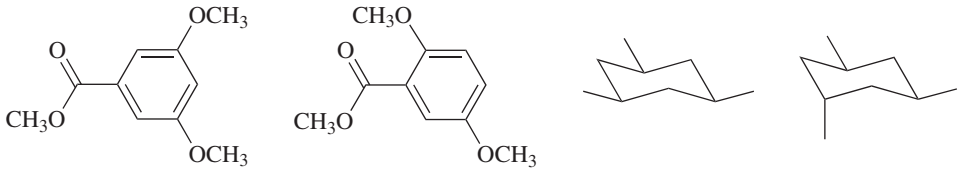
(a) δ 18.9 (CH_3) (two carbons)
δ 30.8 (CH) (one carbon)
δ 69.4 (CH_2) (one carbon)

(b) δ 10.0 (CH_3)
δ 22.7 (CH_3)
δ 32.0 (CH_2)
δ 69.2 (CH)

(c) δ 31.2 (CH_3) (three carbons)
δ 68.9 (C) (one carbon)

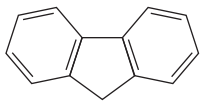
13.36 A compound ($C_3H_7ClO_2$) exhibited three peaks in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum at δ 46.8 (CH_2), δ 63.5 (CH_2), and δ 72.0 (CH). Excluding compounds that have Cl and OH on the same carbon, which are unstable, what is the most reasonable structure for this compound?

13.37 Label nonequivalent carbons in the following compounds.



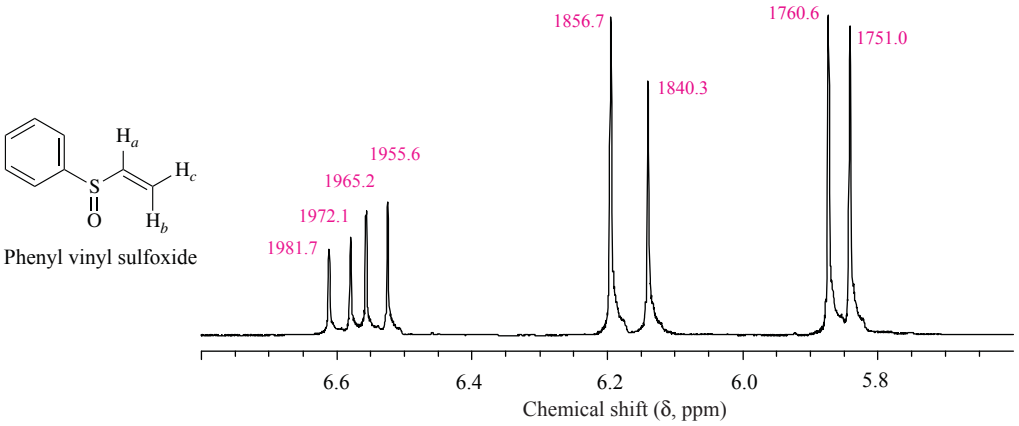
(*a*) (*b*) (*c*) (*d*)

13.38 The ^1H NMR spectrum of fluorene has signals at δ 3.8 and δ 7.2–7.7 in a 1:4 ratio. After heating with $NaOCH_3$ in CH_3OD at reflux for 15 minutes the signals at δ 7.2–7.7 remained, but the one at δ 3.8 had disappeared. Suggest an explanation and write a mechanism for this observation.



Fluorene

13.39 The vinyl proton region of the ^1H NMR spectrum of phenyl vinyl sulfoxide is shown in Figure 13.46. Construct a splitting diagram similar to the one in Figure 13.21 and label each of the coupling constants $J_{a,b}$, $J_{b,c}$, and $J_{a,c}$.

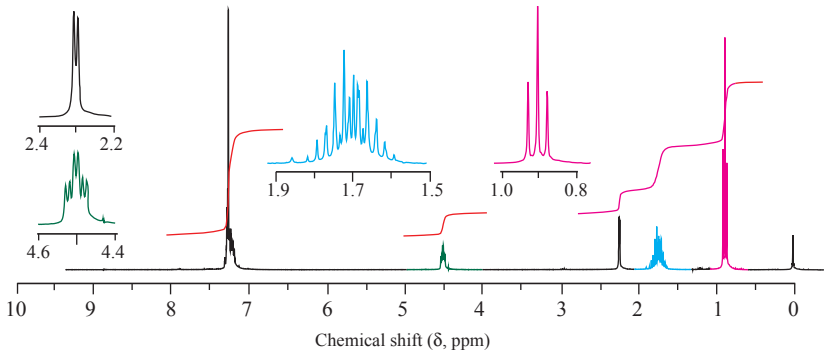


Phenyl vinyl sulfoxide

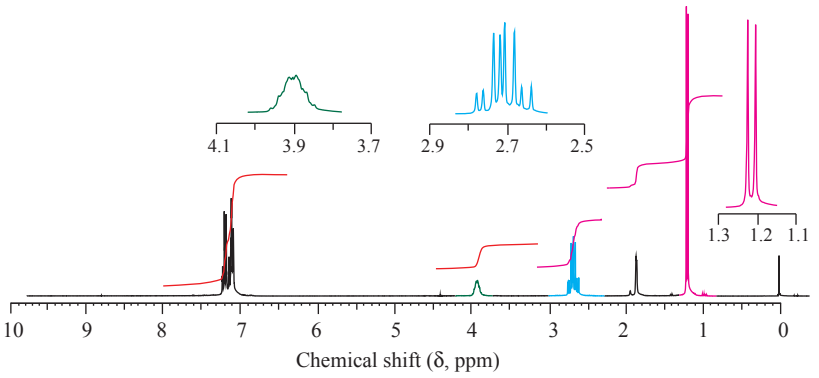
Figure 13.46

Vinyl proton region of the 300-MHz ^1H NMR spectrum of phenyl vinyl sulfoxide.

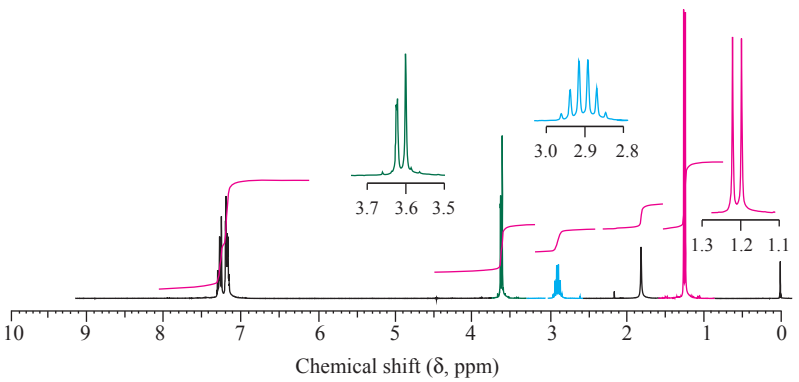
13.40 ^{1}H NMR spectra of four isomeric alcohols with formula $C_9H_{12}O$ are shown in Figure 13.47. Assign a structure for each alcohol and assign the peaks in each spectrum.



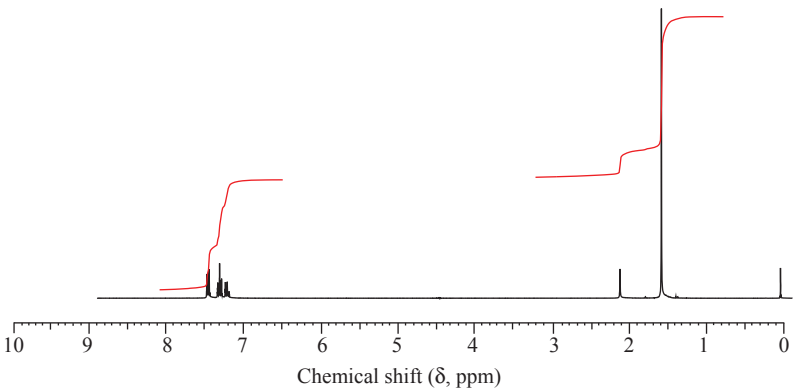
(*a*)



(*b*)



(*c*)

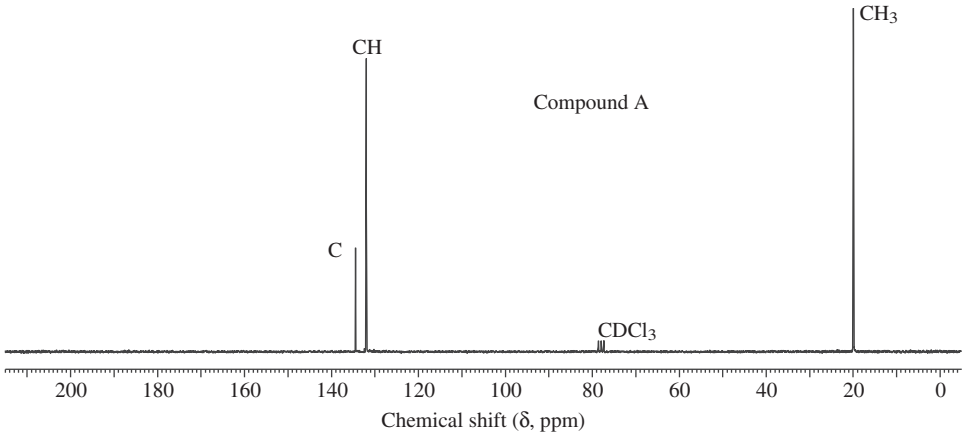


(*d*)

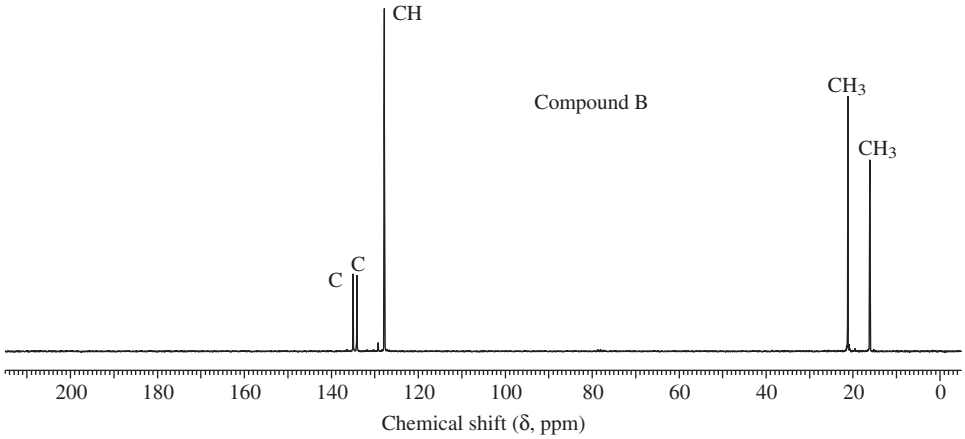
Figure 13.47

300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectra of alcohols for Problem 13.40.

13.41 Compounds A and B are isomers of molecular formula $C_{10}H_{14}$. Identify each one on the basis of the ^{13}C NMR spectra presented in Figure 13.48.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 13.48

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of (*a*) compound A and (*b*) compound B, isomers of $C_{10}H_{14}$ (Problem 13.41).

13.42 Identify the hydrocarbon that gives the IR spectrum shown in Figure 13.49 and has an M^+ peak at *m/z* 102 in its mass spectrum.

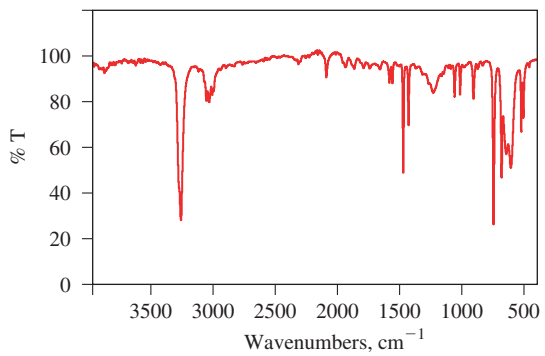


Figure 13.49

The IR spectrum of the hydrocarbon in Problem 13.42.

13.43 A compound ($C_8H_{10}O$) has the IR and ^1H NMR spectra presented in Figure 13.50. What is its structure?

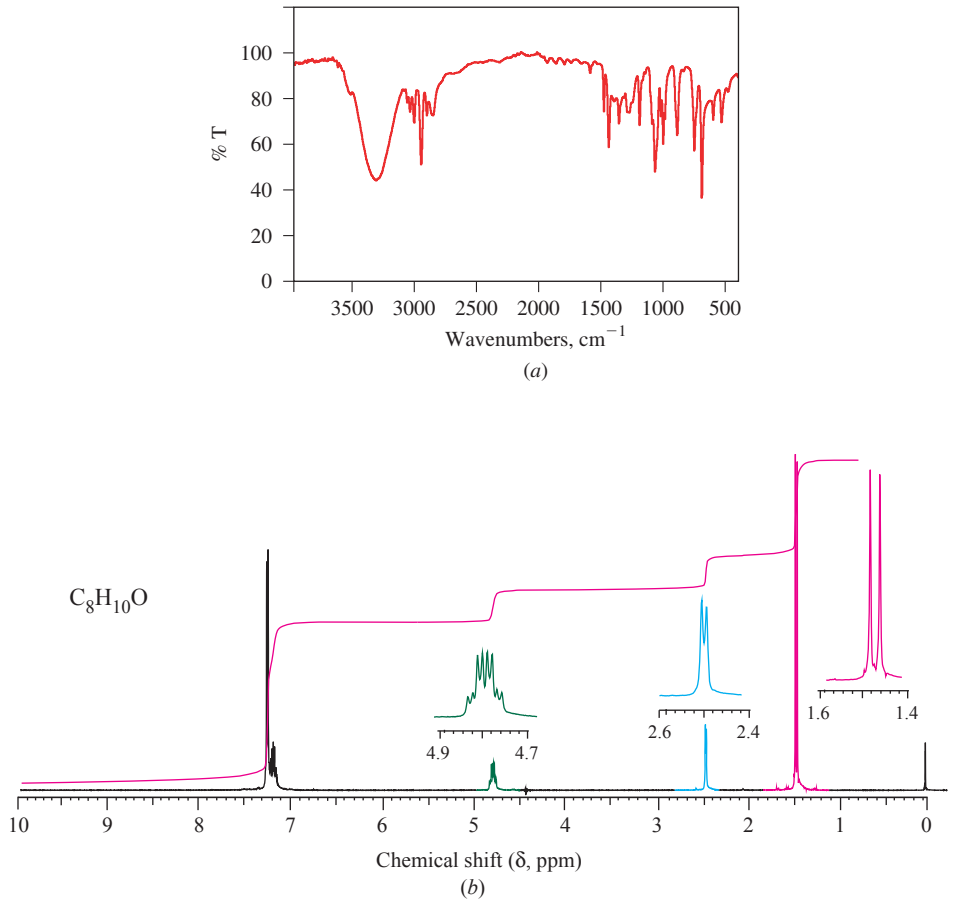
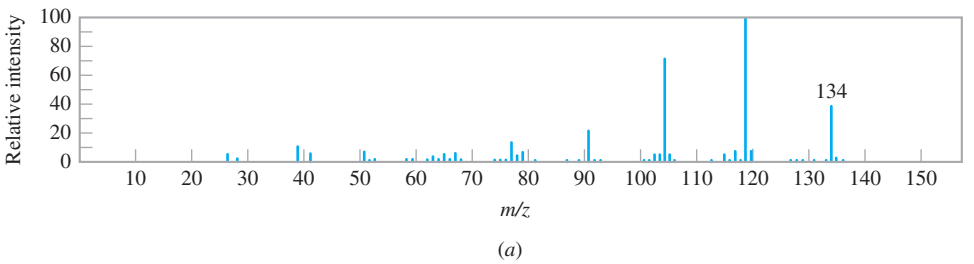
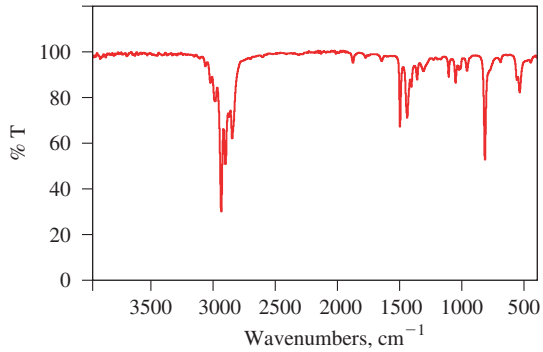


Figure 13.50

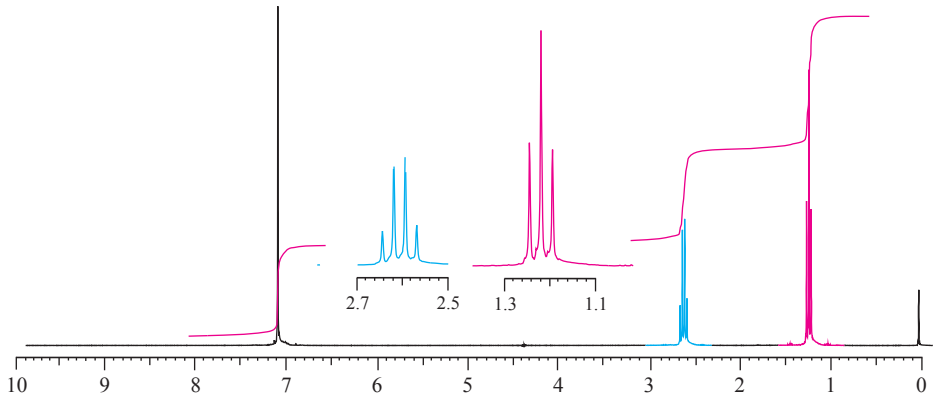
(*a*) IR and (*b*) 300-MHz ^1H NMR spectra of a compound $C_8H_{10}O$ (Problem 13.43).

13.44 Deduce the structure of a compound having the mass, IR, and ^1H NMR spectra presented in Figure 13.51.





(*b*)



(*c*)

Figure 13.51

(*a*) Mass, (*b*) IR, and (*c*) 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectra of a compound (Problem 13.44).

13.45 ^{13}C NMR spectra for four isomeric alkyl bromides with the formula $C_5H_{11}Br$ are shown in Figure 13.52. Multiplicities obtained from DEPT analysis are shown above each peak. Assign structures to each of the alkyl bromides and assign the peaks in each spectrum.

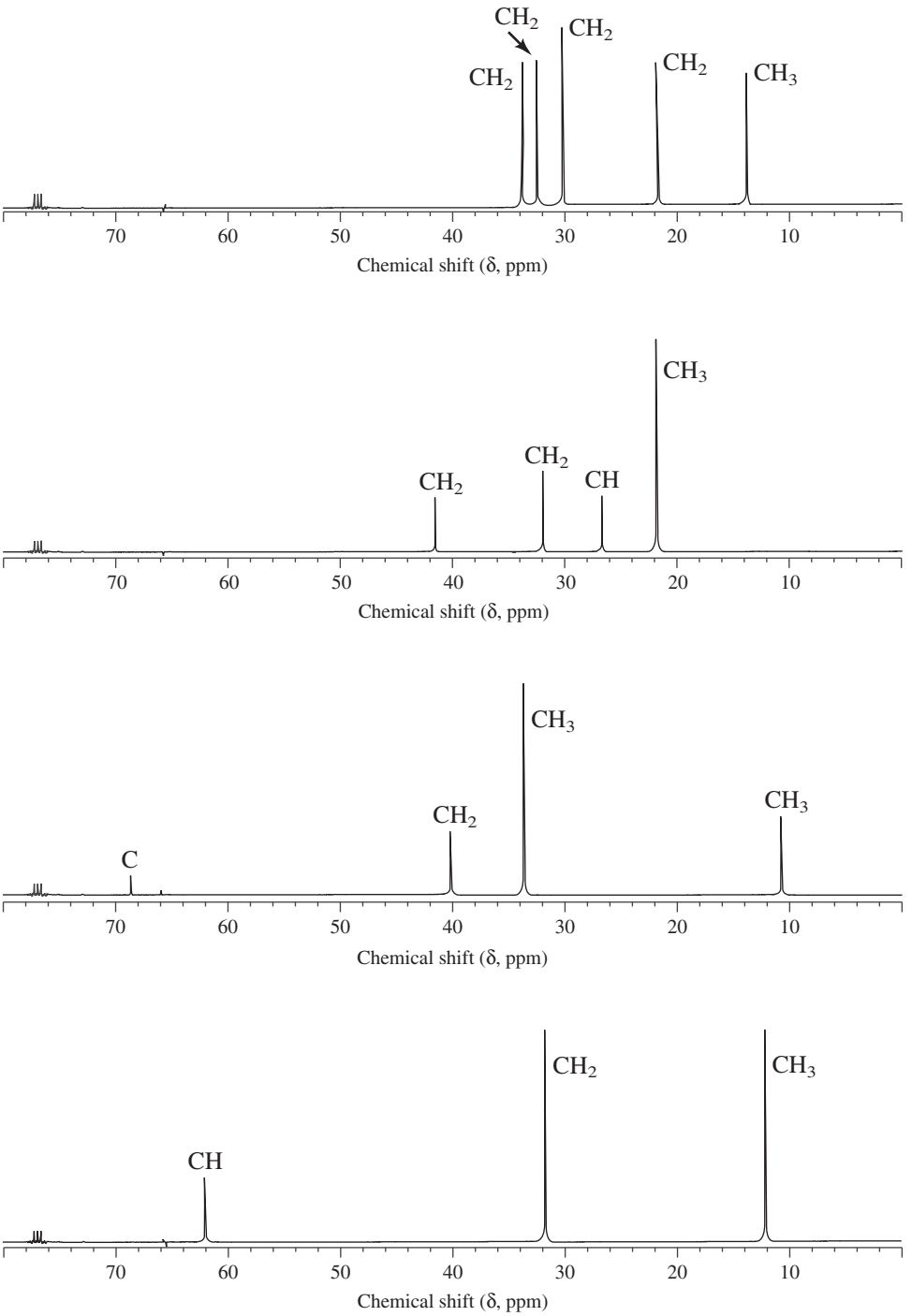


Figure 13.52

^{13}C NMR spectra for isomeric alkyl bromides in Problem 13.45.

13.46 Figure 13.53 presents IR, ^{1}H NMR, ^{13}C NMR, and mass spectra for a particular compound. What is it?

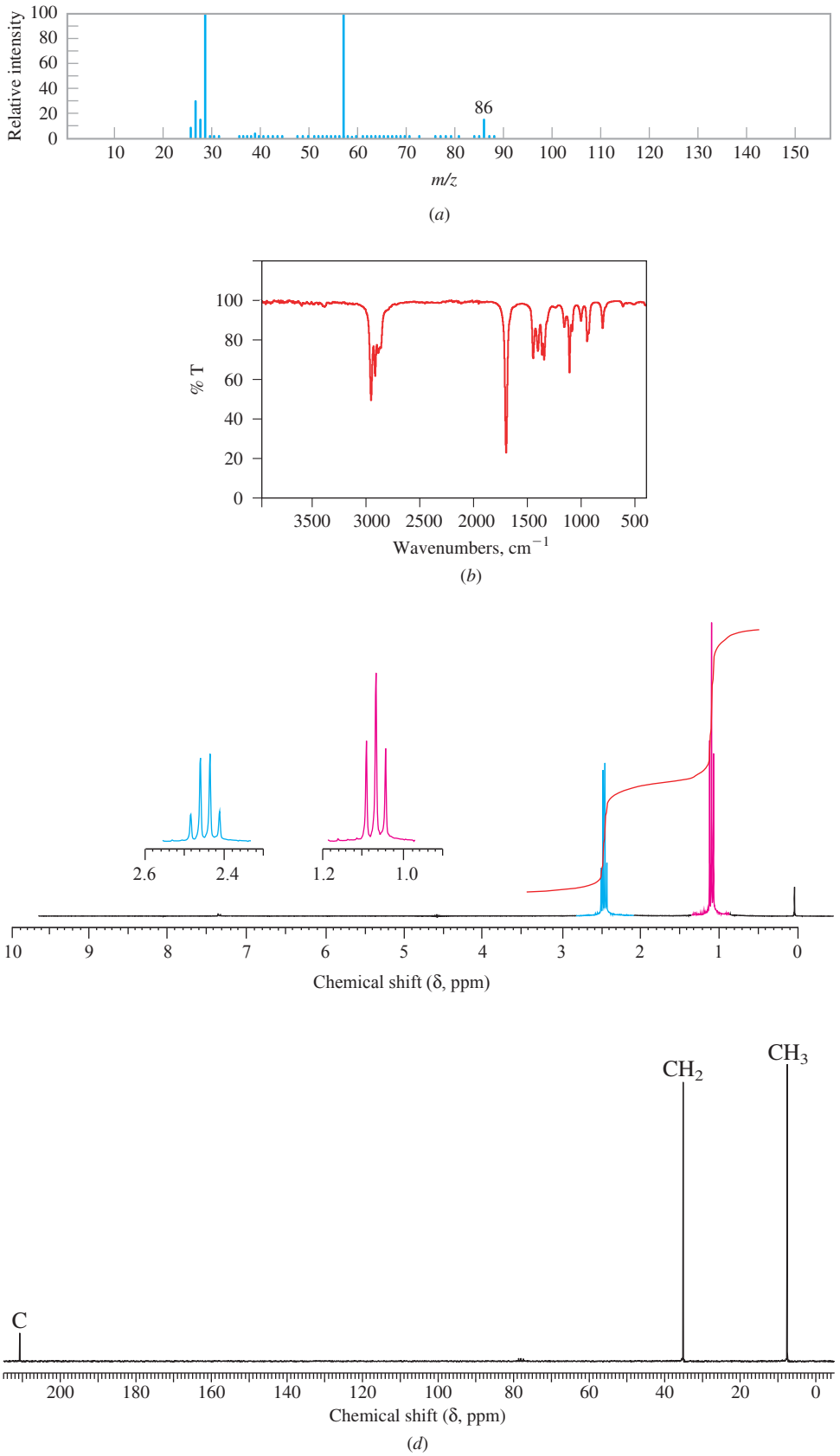


Figure 13.53

(*a*) Mass, (*b*) IR, (*c*) 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR, and (*d*) ^{13}C NMR spectra for the compound of Problem 13.46.

13.47 Which would you predict to be more shielded, the inner or outer protons of [24]annulene?

13.48 ^{19}F is the only isotope of fluorine that occurs naturally, and it has a nuclear spin of $\pm\frac{1}{2}$.

(a) Into how many peaks will the proton signal in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of methyl fluoride be split?

(b) Into how many peaks will the fluorine signal in the ^{19}F NMR spectrum of methyl fluoride be split?

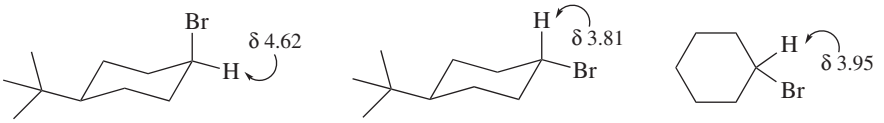
(c) The chemical shift of the protons in methyl fluoride is δ 4.3. Given that the geminal $^{1}H—^{19}F$ coupling constant is 45 Hz, specify the δ values at which peaks are observed in the proton spectrum of this compound at 300 MHz.

13.49 ^{31}P is the only phosphorus isotope present at natural abundance and has a nuclear spin of $\pm\frac{1}{2}$. The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of trimethyl phosphite, $(CH_3O)_3P$, exhibits a doublet for the methyl protons with a splitting of 12 Hz.

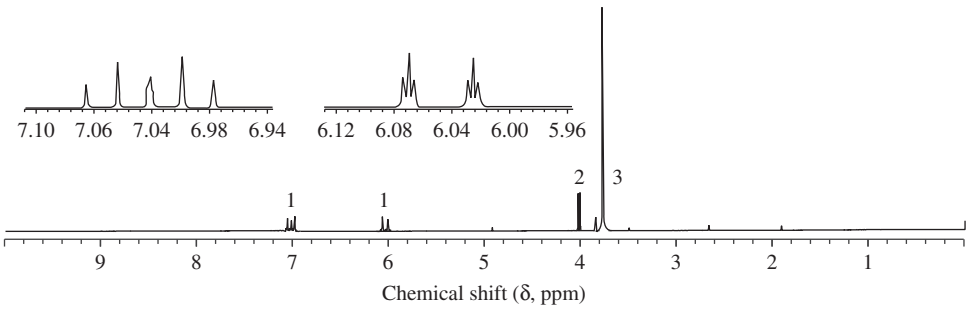
(a) Into how many peaks is the ^{31}P signal split?

(b) What is the difference in chemical shift (in hertz) between the lowest and highest field peaks of the ^{31}P multiplet?

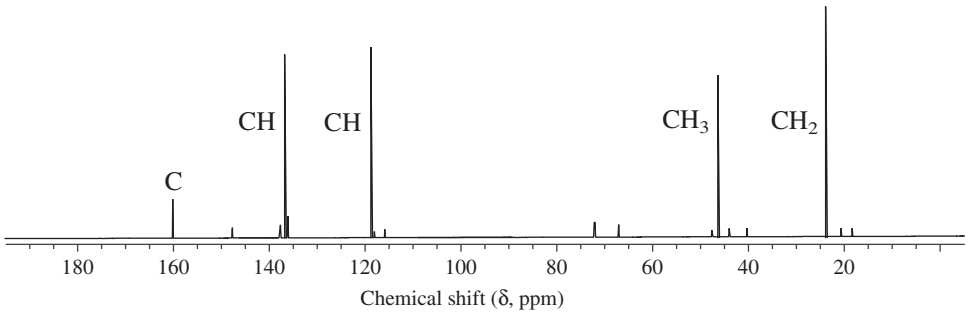
13.50 We noted in Section 13.13 that an NMR spectrum is an average spectrum of the conformations populated by a molecule. From the following data, estimate the percentages of axial and equatorial bromine present in bromocyclohexane.



13.51 ^{1}H NMR, ^{13}C NMR, IR, and mass spectra are shown for a compound in Figure 13.54. Propose a structure and explain your answer based on spectral assignments.



(*a*)



(*b*)

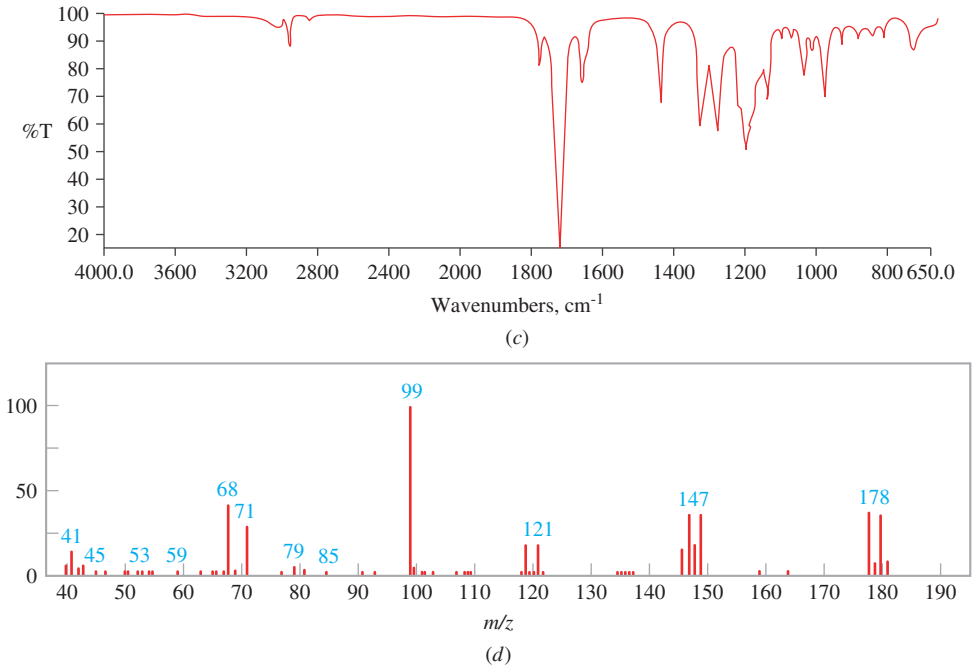


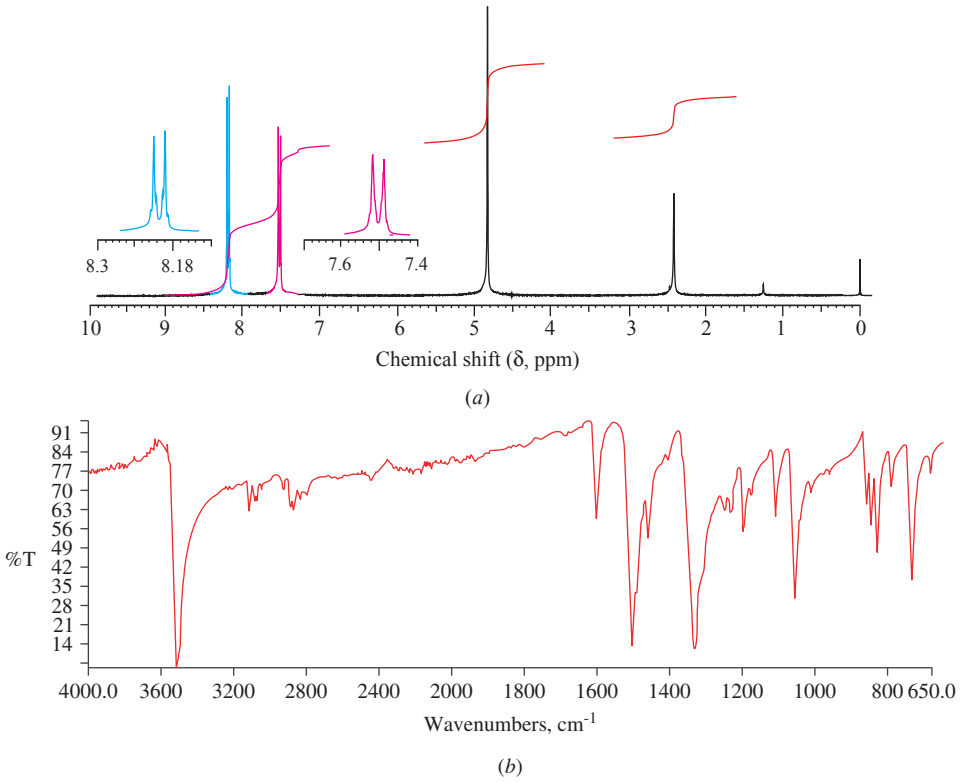
Figure 13.54

(*a*) ^{1}H NMR, (*b*) ^{13}C NMR, (*c*) IR, and (*d*) mass spectra (Problem 13.51).

13.52 ^{1}H NMR and IR spectra for a compound with the formula $C_7H_7NO_3$ are shown in Figure 13.55. Assign a structure and explain your reasoning.

Figure 13.55

(*a*) ^{1}H NMR and (*b*) IR spectra for Problem 13.52.



13.53 Friedel–Crafts alkylation of benzene with 1-chlorobutane gave a product for which the ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra are shown in Figure 13.56. The number of attached hydrogens from DEPT analysis are indicated on the ^{13}C NMR spectrum. Assign a structure to the product.

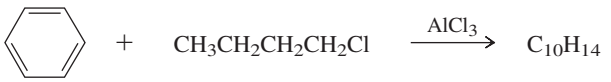
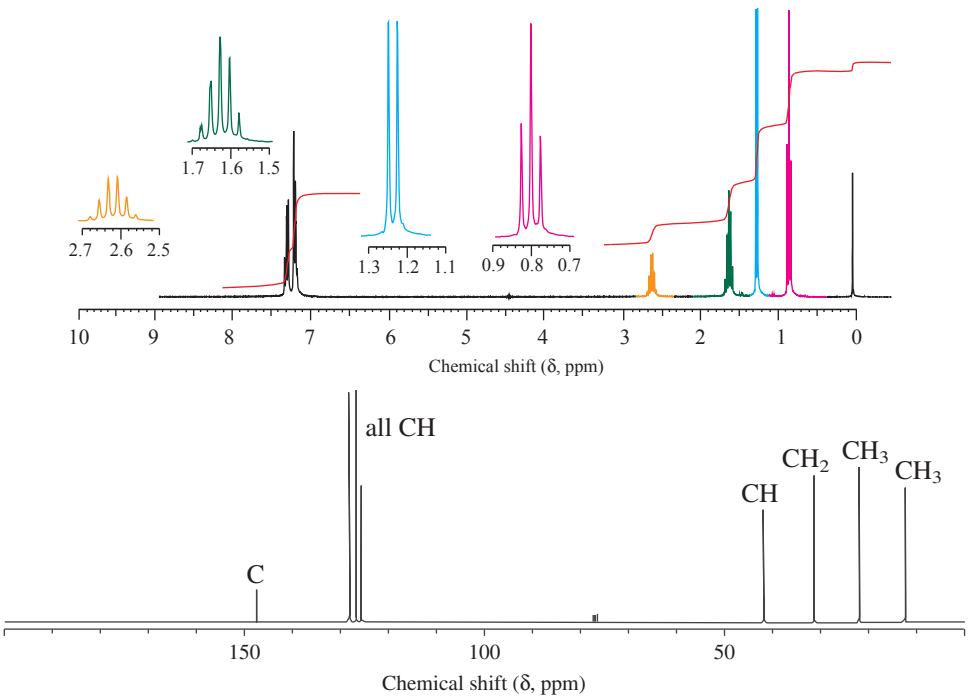


Figure 13.56

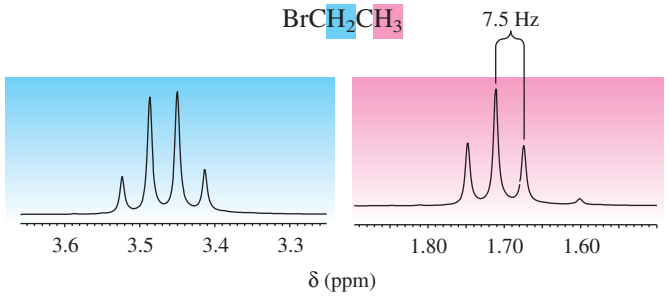
^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra for Problem 13.53.



Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 13

More on Coupling Constants

As a result of the coupling of the nuclear spin of a proton with the spins of other protons, its ^{1}H NMR signal is often split into two or more smaller peaks. The chemical-shift difference in hertz between the individual peaks in the resulting multiplet can provide structural information and is governed by a coupling constant J, which in most cases can be determined directly from the spectrum. For example, the difference between any two adjacent lines in either the quartet or triplet in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of ethyl bromide is 7.5 Hz and is cited as the vicinal, or three-bond (H—C—C—H), coupling constant (^3J).



The splitting pattern for ethyl bromide conforms to the $n + 1$ rule, which states that n adjacent nonequivalent protons split the signal for an observed proton into $n + 1$ lines. However, when a proton is unequally coupled to two or more nonequivalent protons, the splittings are independent of each other. Each of the vinylic protons H_a, H_b, and H_c in vinyl acetate, for example, is unequally coupled to the other two and each is split into a doublet of doublets (Figure 13.57).

Table 13.5 gives ranges for a variety of representative coupling constants. Their exact value within the range is influenced by several factors, including the number of bonds separating the

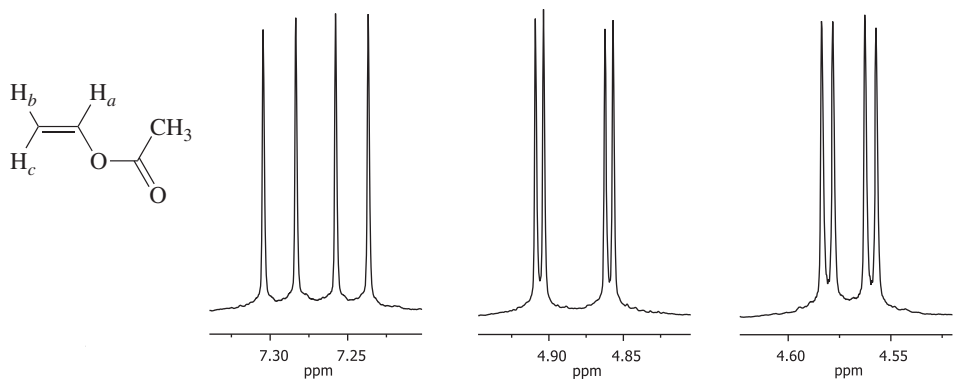
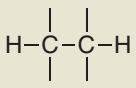
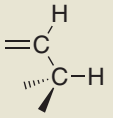
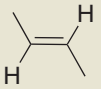
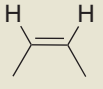
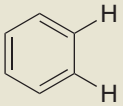
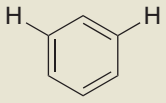
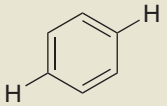
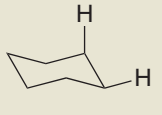
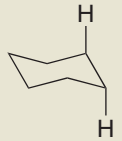


Figure 13.57

Each of the vinylic protons appears as a doublet of doublets in the 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of vinyl acetate.

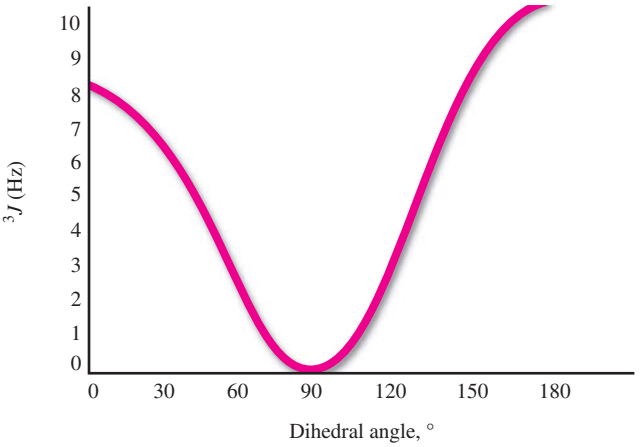
TABLE 13.5 Approximate Values of Proton Coupling Constants (in Hz)*

					
6–8 Hz Vicinal in alkyl groups	**9–15 Hz** Geminal	**0–2 Hz** Vinylic geminal	**4–10 Hz** Allylic to vinylic	**12–18 Hz** Vinylic trans	**6–12 Hz** Vinylic cis
					
6–10 Hz Ortho	**1–3 Hz** Meta	**0–1 Hz** Para	**2–3 Hz** Diequatorial	**2–3 Hz** Axial/equatorial	**8–10 Hz** Diaxial

*Some ^{1}H coupling contants have negative J values, but this does not affect the appearance of the spectrum.

Figure 13.58

The Karplus relationship of vicinal ^{1}H coupling constant to dihedral angle of H—C—C—H.



spin-coupled protons, hybridization and electronegativity of attached atoms, bond and torsion angles, and the presence of π bonds.

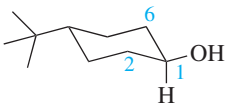
As the table indicates, ^{1}H NMR can indicate whether two benzene protons are ortho, meta, or para to each other, whether two protons are cis, trans, or geminal on a double bond, or whether a vicinal pair on a cyclohexane ring is gauche or anti.

The relation of J to dihedral angle in a pair of vicinal protons was explored on a theoretical basis by Martin Karplus of Columbia University who calculated that ^3J is greatest when the H—C—C—H dihedral angle is 0° or 180° and smallest when the angle is 90° (Figure 13.58).

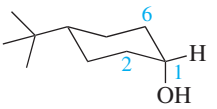
13.54 Refer to Figure 13.57 and Table 13.5 to assign chemical shifts for the vinylic protons H_a, H_b, and H_c in vinyl acetate.

(a) H_a: δ 4.57 H_b: δ 4.88 H_c: δ 7.28
(b) H_a: δ 4.88 H_b: δ 4.57 H_c: δ 7.28
(c) H_a: δ 7.28 H_b: δ 4.88 H_c: δ 4.57
(d) H_a: δ 7.28 H_b: δ 4.57 H_c: δ 4.88

13.55 Which one of the following statements *incorrectly* describes the expected coupling of the proton at C(1) in the stereoisomeric 4-*tert*-butylcyclohexanols?



trans-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexanol



cis-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexanol

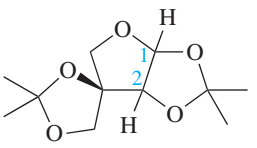
In the trans isomer the coupling constant between:

(a) the proton at C(1) and the axial protons at C(2) and C(6) is 8 Hz.
(b) the proton at C(1) and the equatorial protons at C(2) and C(6) is 2 Hz.

In the cis isomer the coupling constant between:

(c) the proton at C(1) and the axial protons at C(2) and C(6) is 8 Hz.
(d) the proton at C(1) and the equatorial protons at C(2) and C(6) is 2 Hz.

13.56 Apiose is one of several naturally occurring carbohydrates characterized by a branched carbon chain and is conveniently isolated as the compound shown ("diacetone apiose)." Based on the observation that the protons at C(1) and C(2) have a coupling constant of 3.7 Hz, choose the correct statement.



Diacetone apiose

(a) The C(1) and C(2) protons are eclipsed.
(b) The H—C(1)—C(2)—H dihedral angle is in the range 30–60°.
(c) The H—C(1)—C(2)—H dihedral angle is in the range 145–165°
(d) The C(1) and C(2) protons are anti.

13.57 The region of the ^{1}H NMR spectrum showing the signal for H_1 of a mixture of two isomers of glucose is shown in Figure 13.59. Which is the major isomer?

(a) Isomer A (b) Isomer B

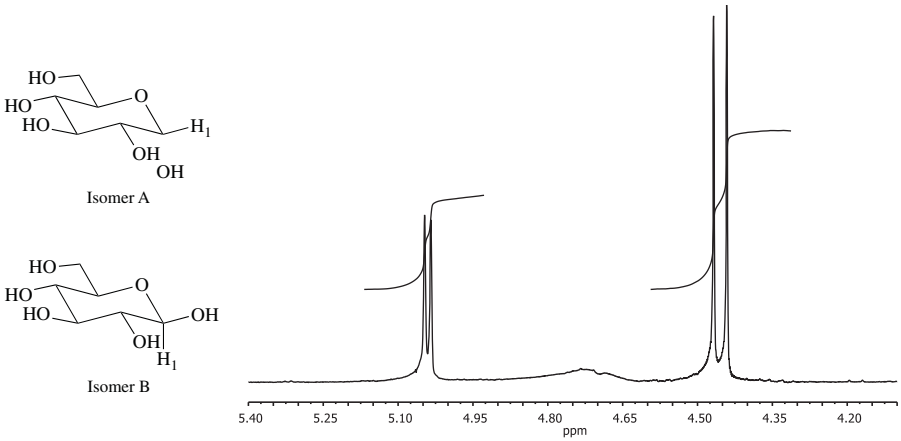


Figure 13.59

The portion of the 300-MHz spectrum where the signal for H_1 appears in a mixture of glucose stereoisomers A and B (Problem 13.57).

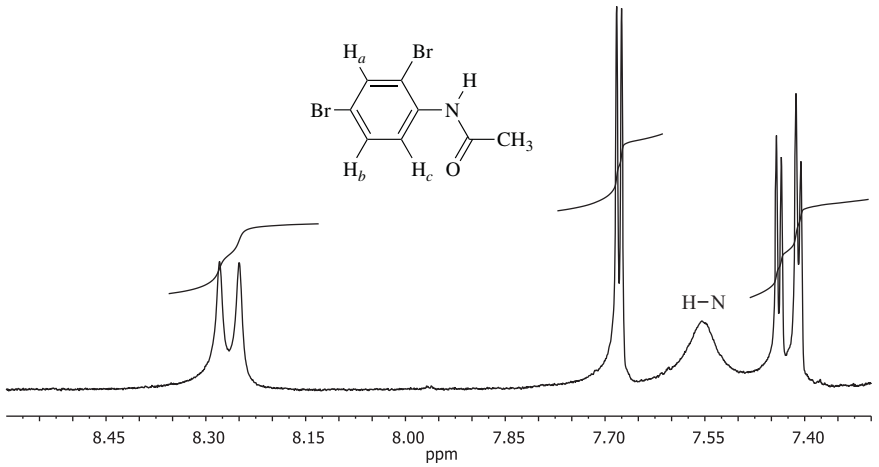


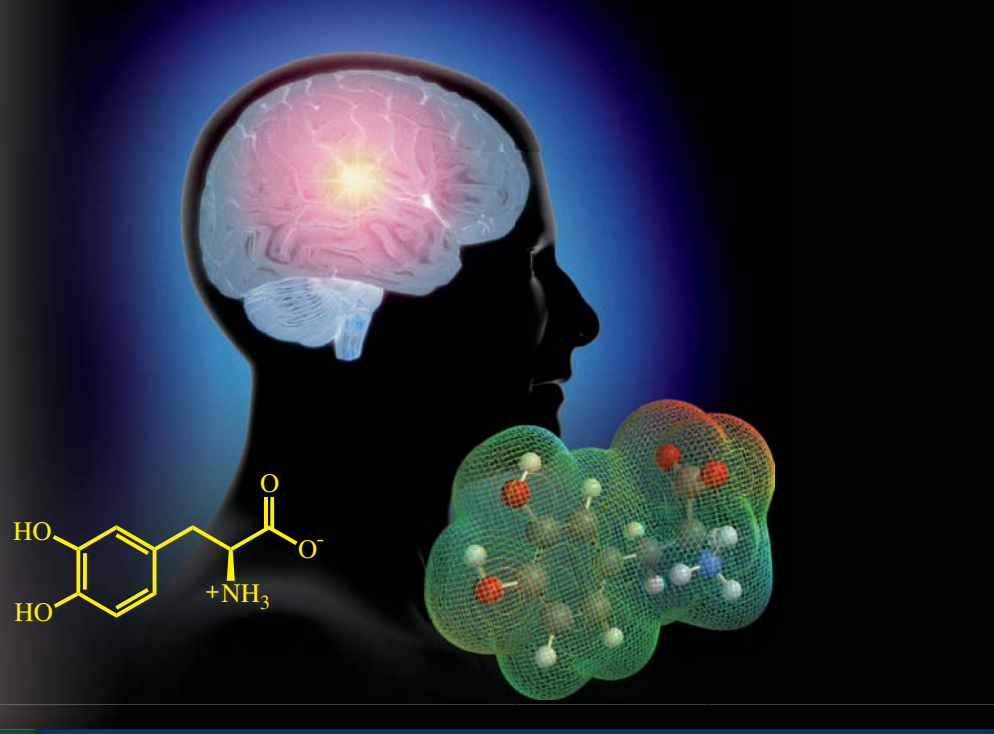
Figure 13.60

A portion of the 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2,4-dibromoacetanilide (Problem 13.58).

13.58 Figure 13.60 shows a portion of the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2,4-dibromoacetanilide. Which of the following corresponds to the chemical shift assignments for the ring protons?

(a) H_a: δ 8.27 H_b: δ 7.68 H_c: δ 7.43
(b) H_a: δ 8.27 H_b: δ 7.43 H_c: δ 7.68
(c) H_a: δ 7.43 H_b: δ 8.27 H_c: δ 7.68
(d) H_a: δ 7.68 H_b: δ 7.43 H_c: δ 8.27

14



CHAPTER OUTLINE

14.1 Organometallic Nomenclature 579
14.2 Carbon–Metal Bonds 579
14.3 Preparation of Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds 581
14.4 Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds as Brønsted Bases 582
14.5 Synthesis of Alcohols Using Grignard and Organolithium Reagents 583
14.6 Synthesis of Acetylenic Alcohols 586
14.7 Retrosynthetic Analysis and Grignard and Organolithium Reagents 586
14.8 An Organozinc Reagent for Cyclopropane Synthesis 587
14.9 Transition-Metal Organometallic Compounds 589
- An Organometallic Compound That Occurs Naturally: Coenzyme B_{12} 591

14.10 Organocopper Reagents 592
14.11 Palladium-Catalyzed Cross-Coupling 595
14.12 Homogeneous Catalytic Hydrogenation 597
14.13 Olefin Metathesis 600
14.14 Ziegler–Natta Catalysis of Alkene Polymerization 603
14.15 Summary 606
Problems 608
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 14: Cyclobutadiene and (Cyclobutadiene)tricabonyl-iron 612

Parkinsonism results from a dopamine deficit in the brain that affects the "firing" of neurons. It responds to treatment with a chiral drug (L-dopa), one commercial synthesis of which involves the enantioselective organorhodium-catalyzed hydrogenation described in Section 14.12.

Organometallic Compounds

Organometallic compounds are *compounds that have a carbon–metal bond;* they occupy the place where organic and inorganic chemistry meet. You are already familiar with at least one organometallic compound, sodium acetylide ($NaC{\equiv}CH$), which has an ionic bond between carbon and sodium. But just because a compound contains both a metal and carbon isn't enough to classify it as organometallic. Like sodium acetylide, sodium methoxide ($NaOCH_3$) is an ionic compound. Unlike sodium acetylide, however, the negative charge in sodium methoxide resides on oxygen, not carbon.

$Na^+ \; :\bar{C}{\equiv}CH$ — Sodium acetylide (has a carbon-to-metal bond)

$Na^+ \; \bar{:}\ddot{O}CH_3$ — Sodium methoxide (does not have a carbon-to-metal bond)

The properties of organometallic compounds are much different from those of the other classes we have studied so far and differ among themselves according to the metal, its oxidation state, and the groups attached to the metal. Many organometallic compounds are sources of nucleophilic carbon, a quality that makes them especially valuable to the synthetic organic chemist who needs to make carbon–carbon bonds. For example, the preparation of alkynes by the reaction of sodium acetylide with alkyl halides (Section 9.6) depends on the presence of a negatively charged, nucleophilic carbon in acetylide ion. Conversely, certain other organometallic compounds behave as electrophiles.

A comprehensive treatment of organometallic chemistry would require a book of its own. In this chapter the preparation, properties, and usefulness of some of the most common organometallic reagents, those based on magnesium and lithium, are described in some detail. Other organometallic compounds derived from less familiar metals are introduced by highlighting some of their synthetic applications. We will also continue the story of Ziegler–Natta catalysis of alkene polymerization begun in Chapters 6 and 7 by exploring its mechanism.

14.1 Organometallic Nomenclature

Organometallic compounds of main-group metals are named as substituted derivatives of the metal. The metal is the parent, and the attached alkyl groups are identified by the appropriate prefix.

Cyclopropyllithium

$H_2C{=}CHNa$

Vinylsodium

$(CH_3CH_2)_2Mg$

Diethylmagnesium

When the metal bears a substituent other than carbon, the substituent is treated as if it were an anion and named separately.

CH_3MgI

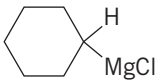
Methylmagnesium iodide

$(CH_3CH_2)_2AlCl$

Diethylaluminum chloride

Problem 14.1

Both of the following organometallic reagents will be encountered later in this chapter. Suggest a suitable name for each.

(a) $(CH_3)_3CLi$ (b) 

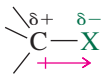
Sample Solution (a) The metal lithium is considered the parent. The alkyl group to which it is bonded is *tert*-butyl, and so the name of this organometallic compound is *tert*-butyllithium. An alternative, equally correct name is 1,1-dimethylethyllithium.

An exception to this type of nomenclature is $NaC{\equiv}CH$, which is normally referred to as *sodium acetylide.* Both sodium acetylide and ethynylsodium are acceptable IUPAC names.

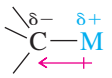
The second half of this chapter concentrates on organometallic complexes of transition metals. These complexes are normally named on the basis of the parent metal, with the attached groups (ligands) cited in alphabetical order preceding the metal. Their structural variety, however, requires a greater number of rules than is needed for our purposes and their nomenclature will be developed only to the degree necessary.

14.2 Carbon–Metal Bonds

With an electronegativity of 2.5 (Figure 14.1), carbon is neither strongly electropositive nor strongly electronegative. When carbon is bonded to an element more electronegative than itself, such as oxygen or chlorine, the electron distribution in the bond is polarized so that carbon is slightly positive and the more electronegative atom is slightly negative. Conversely, when carbon is bonded to a less electronegative element, such as a metal, the electrons in the bond are more strongly attracted toward carbon.



X is more electronegative than carbon



M is less electronegative than carbon

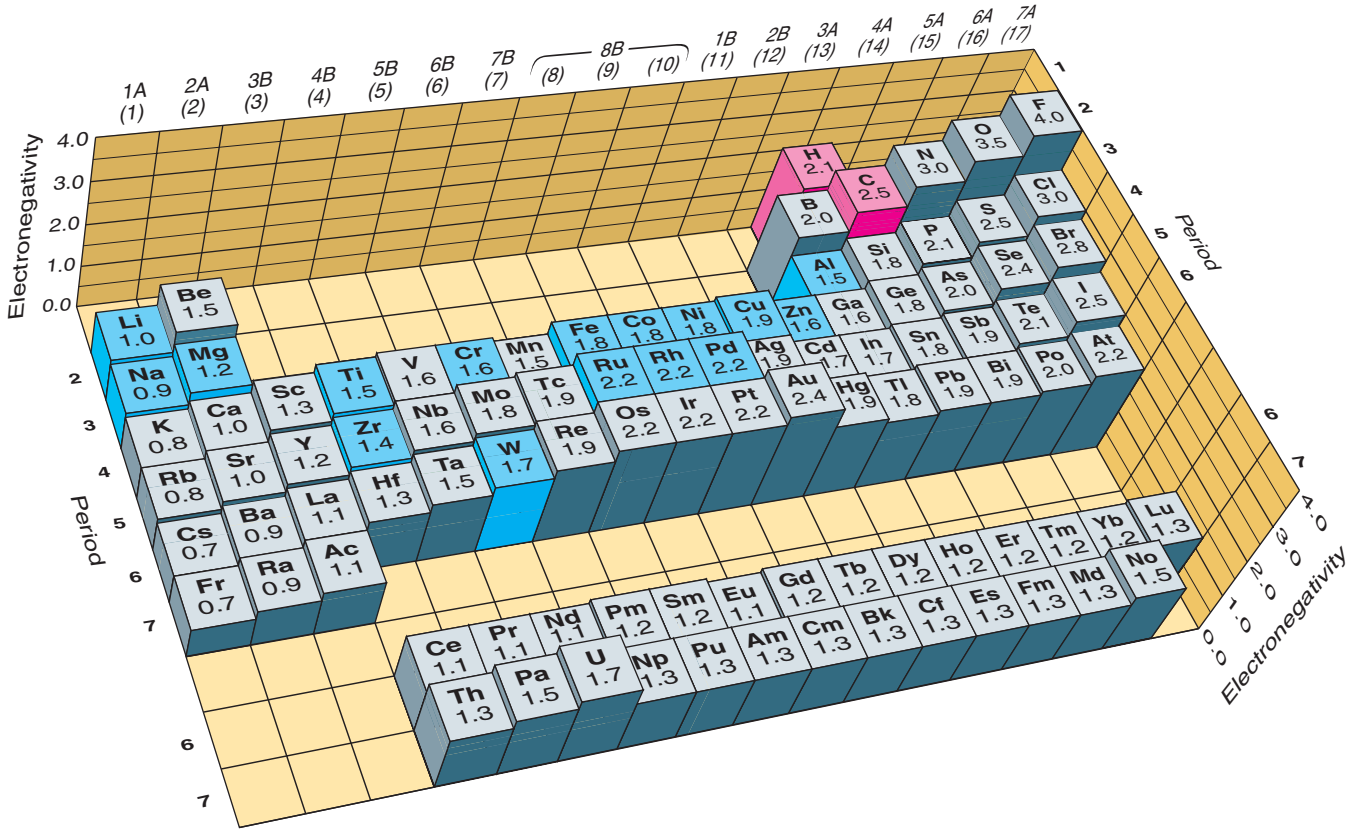
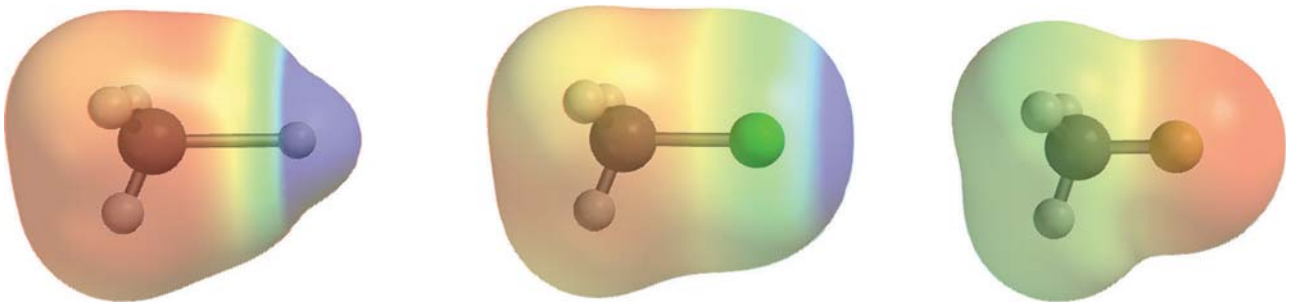


Figure 14.1

Electronegativities of the elements on the Pauling scale. The metals that appear in this chapter are shown in blue. Hydrogen and carbon are red. Adapted from Silberberg, *Chemistry,* 6/e, McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2012, p. 349.



(*a*) CH_3Li (*b*) CH_3Cu (*c*) CH_3F

Figure 14.2

Electrostatic potential maps of (*a*) methyllithium, (*b*) methylcopper, and (*c*) methyl fluoride. The color range is the same in all three maps. The C—Li and C—F bonds are oppositely polarized. The C—Cu bond is the least polar.

This is especially true with Group 1A and 2A metals where the bonds range from ionic to polar covalent, depending on the metal and the nature of the organic group to which it is attached. Less electropositive metals such as copper have much less polarized covalent bonds to carbon (Figure 14.2).

Many organometallic compounds have carbanionic character, and the ionic character of the carbon–metal bond becomes more pronounced as the metal becomes more electropositive. Organosodium and organopotassium compounds have ionic carbon–metal bonds; organolithium and organomagnesium compounds tend to have covalent, but rather polar, carbon–metal bonds with significant carbanionic character. *This carbanionic character makes these compounds especially useful as sources of nucleophilic carbon in organic synthesis.*

Carbanions are the conjugate bases of hydrocarbons and were introduced in Section 9.5.

In general, carbon–metal bonds involving transition elements are not as polar as those of the elements in Groups 1A and 2A and exhibit less carbanionic character. The availability of *d* orbitals of transition elements, however, provides opportunities for novel and useful types of reactivity not available to main-group metals. The first part of this chapter deals with Group 1A and 2A organometallics, the second part with the transition-metal organometallics. Both emphasize synthetic applications.

14.3 Preparation of Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds

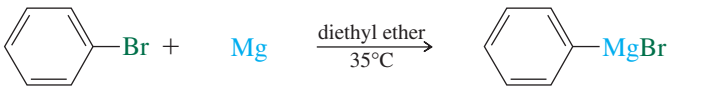
The most useful organometallic compounds of Groups 1A and 2A are those of lithium and magnesium. Organomagnesium compounds are called **Grignard reagents** after the French chemist Victor Grignard, who developed efficient methods for their preparation and demonstrated their value in synthesis. Grignard reagents and their lithium analogs are prepared by the reaction of the metal with an alkyl (primary, secondary, or tertiary), aryl, or vinyl halide, usually in diethyl ether as the solvent.

Grignard shared the 1912 Nobel Prize in Chemistry with Paul Sabatier, who showed that finely divided nickel is an effective hydrogenation catalyst.

$$\underset{\text{Organic halide}}{RX} + \underset{\text{Lithium}}{2Li} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Organolithium}}{RLi} + \underset{\text{Lithium halide}}{LiX}$$

$$\underset{\textit{tert}\text{-Butyl chloride}}{(CH_3)_3CCl} + \underset{\text{Lithium}}{2Li} \xrightarrow[-30^\circ C]{\text{diethyl ether}} \underset{\textit{tert}\text{-Butyllithium (75\%)}}{(CH_3)_3CLi} + \underset{\text{Lithium chloride}}{LiCl}$$

$$\underset{\text{Organic halide}}{RX} + \underset{\text{Magnesium}}{Mg} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Organomagnesium halide}}{RMgX}$$



Bromobenzene — Magnesium — Phenylmagnesium bromide (95%)

The order of halide reactivity is I > Br > Cl > F, and alkyl halides are more reactive than aryl and vinyl halides. As shown in the preceding examples, the reactions are normally carried out in diethyl ether. When more vigorous reaction conditions are required, as in the preparation of vinylmagnesium chloride from vinyl chloride, the higher boiling solvent tetrahydrofuran is used.

Recall the structure of tetrahydrofuran from Section 3.15:

Vinyl chloride — Vinylmagnesium chloride (92%)

In all cases, *it is especially important that the solvent be anhydrous.* Even trace amounts of water or alcohols react with organolithium and organomagnesium reagents to form insoluble hydroxides or alkoxides that coat the surface of the metal and prevent it from reacting with the alkyl halide. Also, as we'll discuss in Section 14.4, organolithium and organomagnesium reagents are very strong bases and react instantly with water and alcohols to form hydrocarbons.

Problem 14.2

Write equations showing how you could prepare 2-methylpropylmagnesium bromide [$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2MgBr$] from 2-methylpropene and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

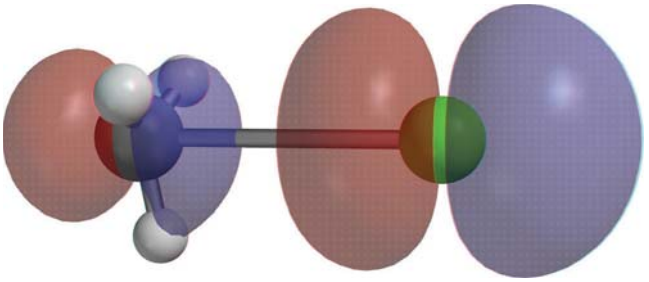
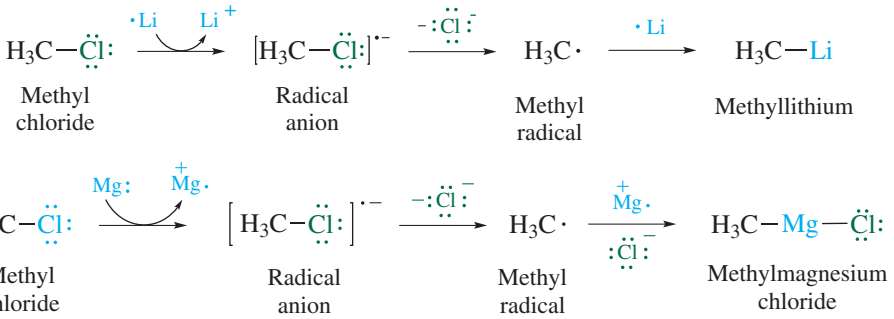


Figure 14.3

The highest occupied molecular orbital of the anion radical formed by donation of an electron to chloromethane is characterized by an antibonding interaction between carbon and chlorine.

The reaction of an organic halide with a metal is an oxidation–reduction in which the metal is the reducing agent. As shown in the following equations for the reactions of methyl chloride with lithium and with magnesium, a single-electron transfer from the metal converts methyl chloride to a *radical anion,* which then dissociates to a methyl radical and chloride ion. Bond formation between methyl radical and a metal species (·Li or $\dot{M}g^{+}$) follows.



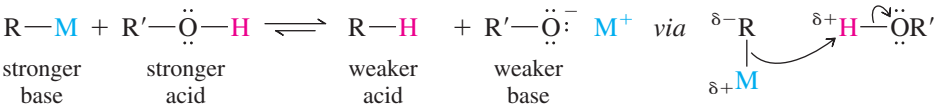
We can understand the tendency for the radical anion $[H_3C—\ddot{Cl}:]^{\cdot -}$ to dissociate to a methyl radical and chloride ion by referring to Figure 14.3, which illustrates the destabilizing antibonding interaction between carbon and chlorine in the highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) of the radical anion. This results in a much weaker bond and a C—Cl distance, calculated to be 324 pm, that is longer than that of methyl chloride itself (181 pm).

The actual structures of organolithium and organomagnesium compounds are rarely monomeric as shown here; dimers are common, as well as higher aggregates, depending on the structure of the organometallic and the solvent.

Organolithium and organomagnesium compounds find their chief use in the preparation of alcohols by reaction with aldehydes and ketones. Before discussing these reactions, let us first examine their reactions with proton donors.

14.4 Organolithium and Organomagnesium Compounds as Brønsted Bases

Organolithium and organomagnesium compounds are stable species in aprotic solvents such as diethyl ether. They are strongly basic, however, and react instantly with proton donors even as weakly acidic as water and alcohols. A proton is transferred from the hydroxyl group to the negatively polarized carbon of the organometallic compound to form a hydrocarbon.



Because of their basicity organolithium compounds and Grignard reagents cannot be prepared or used in the presence of any material that bears an —OH group. Nor are these reagents compatible with —NH or —SH groups, which can also convert an organolithium or organomagnesium compound to a hydrocarbon by proton transfer.

The carbon–metal bonds of organolithium and organomagnesium compounds have appreciable carbanionic character. Carbanions rank among the strongest bases that we'll

see in this text. Their conjugate acids are hydrocarbons—very weak acids indeed, with pK_a's in the 25–70 range.

Carbanion (very strong base) | Water (weak acid: pK_a = 15.7) | Hydrocarbon (weaker acid: pK_a ~ 25-70) | Hydroxide ion (weaker base)

The basicity of Grignard and organolithium reagents has several applications. One is in the preparation of analogous organometallics of acetylene and terminal alkynes.

$$CH_3CH_2MgBr + HC{\equiv}CH \longrightarrow CH_3CH_3 + HC{\equiv}CMgBr$$

Ethylmagnesium bromide (stronger base) | Acetylene (stronger acid: pK_a = 26) | Ethane (weaker acid: pK_a = 62) | Ethynylmagnesium bromide (weaker base)

Another is in introducing deuterium at a specific position in a carbon chain.

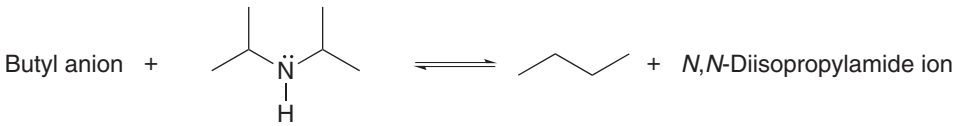
$$CH_3CH{=}CHBr \xrightarrow[THF]{Mg} CH_3CH{=}CHMgBr \xrightarrow{D_2O} CH_3CH{=}CHD$$

1-Bromopropene | Propenylmagnesium bromide | 1-Deuteriopropene (70%)

A third is illustrated in the following problem.

Problem 14.3

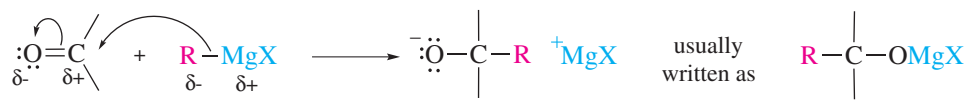
Lithium diisopropylamide is often used as a strong base in organic synthesis and is prepared by an acid–base reaction between butyllithium and *N,N*-diisopropylamine. Complete the equation shown with appropriate structural formulas and use curved arrows to show the flow of electrons. What is the value of the equilibrium constant *K*?



N,N-Diisopropylamine: pK_a = 36 | Butane: pK_a = 62

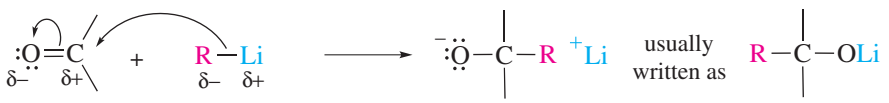
14.5 Synthesis of Alcohols Using Grignard and Organolithium Reagents

The main synthetic application of Grignard and organolithium reagents is their reaction with carbonyl-containing compounds to produce alcohols. Carbon–carbon bond formation is rapid and exothermic when Grignard and organolithium reagents react with an aldehyde or ketone.



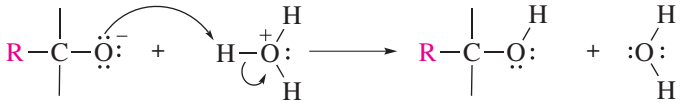
Aldehyde or ketone | Grignard reagent | Alkoxymagnesium halide

and



Aldehyde or ketone | Organolithium reagent | Lithium alkoxide

A carbonyl group is quite polar, and its carbon atom is electrophilic. Grignard and organolithium reagents are nucleophilic and add to carbonyl groups, forming a new carbon–carbon bond. This addition step leads to an alkoxymagnesium halide or a lithium alkoxide, which in the second stage of the synthesis is converted to the desired alcohol by adding aqueous acid.

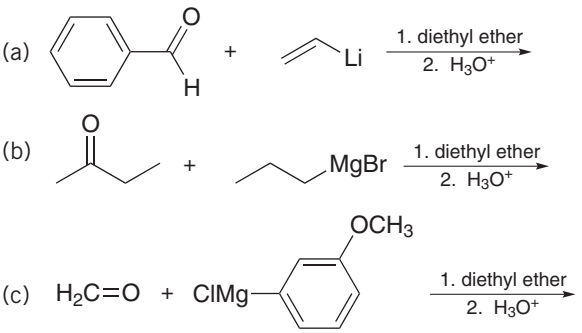


Lithium alkoxide Hydronium ion Alcohol Water

The type of alcohol produced depends on the carbonyl compound. Substituents present on the carbonyl group of an aldehyde or ketone stay there—they become substituents on the carbon that bears the hydroxyl group in the product. Thus as shown in Table 14.1, formaldehyde reacts with Grignard reagents to yield primary alcohols, aldehydes yield secondary alcohols, and ketones yield tertiary alcohols. Analogous reactions take place with organolithium reagents.

Problem 14.4

Write the structure of the organic product of each of the following reactions.



Sample Solution

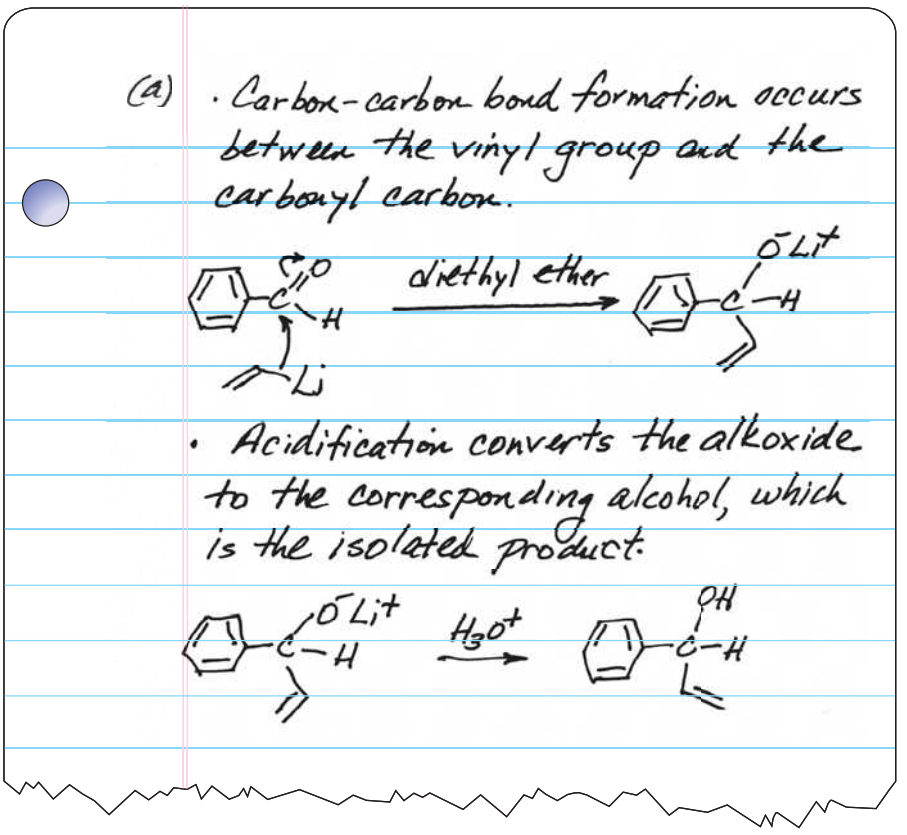
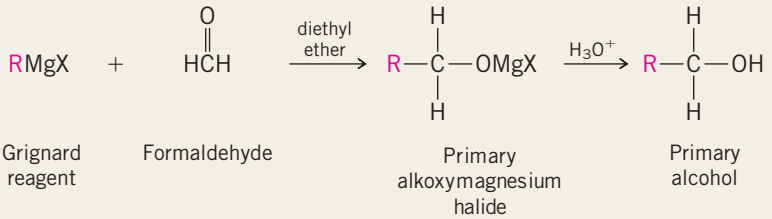
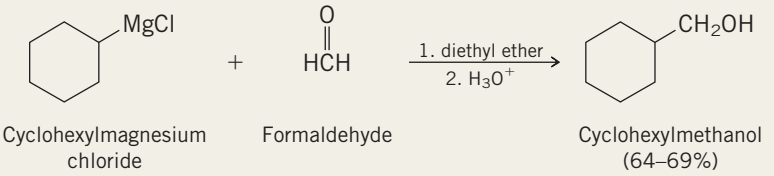
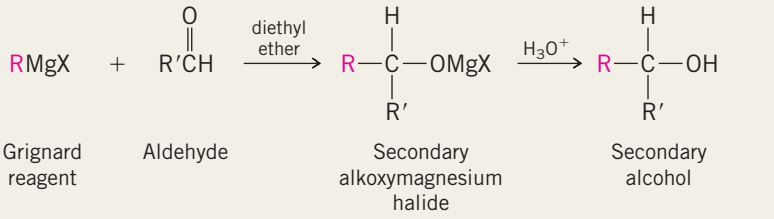
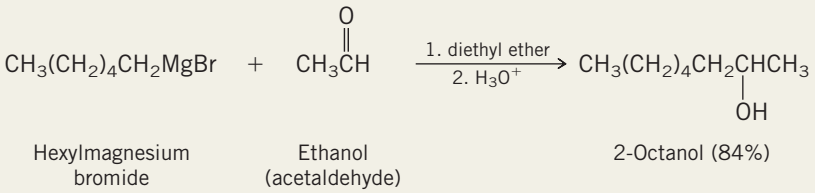
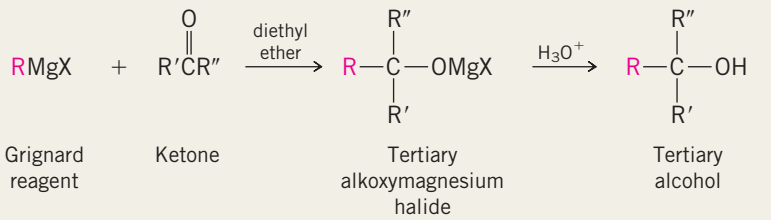
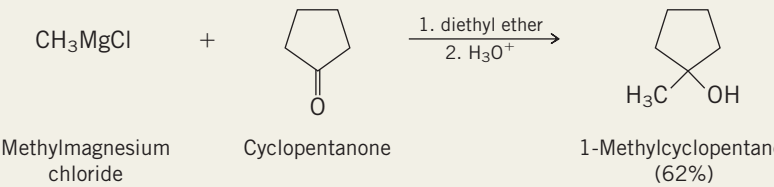


TABLE 14.1 Reactions of Grignard Reagents with Aldehydes and Ketones

Reaction	General equation and specific example
Reaction with formaldehyde Grignard reagents react with formaldehyde ($H_2C{=}O$) to give *primary alcohols* having one more carbon than the Grignard reagent.	 
Reaction with aldehydes Grignard reagents react with aldehydes ($R'CH{=}O$) to give *secondary alcohols.*	 
Reaction with ketones Grignard reagents react with ketones $R'CR''$ to give *tertiary alcohols.*	 

An ability to form carbon–carbon bonds is fundamental to organic synthesis. The addition of Grignard and organolithium reagents to aldehydes and ketones is one of the most frequently used reactions in synthetic organic chemistry. Not only does it permit the extension of carbon chains, but because the product is an alcohol, a wide variety of subsequent functional group transformations is possible.

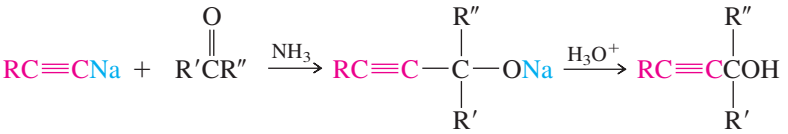
14.6 Synthesis of Acetylenic Alcohols

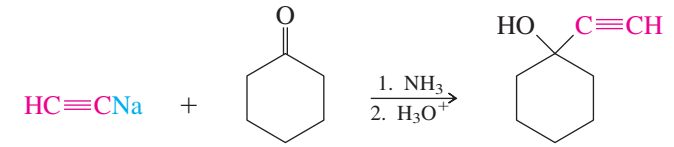
The first organometallic compounds we encountered were compounds of the type RC≡CNa obtained by treatment of terminal alkynes with sodium amide in liquid ammonia (Section 9.5):

$$\underset{\text{Terminal alkyne}}{RC{\equiv}CH} + \underset{\text{Sodium amide}}{NaNH_2} \xrightarrow[-33^\circ C]{NH_3} \underset{\text{Sodium alkynide}}{RC{\equiv}CNa} + \underset{\text{Ammonia}}{NH_3}$$

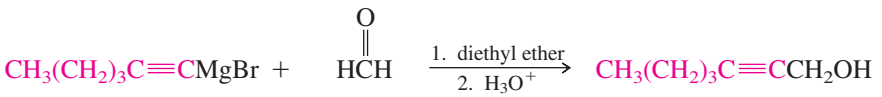
These compounds are sources of the nucleophilic anion RC≡C:⁻, and their reaction with primary alkyl halides provides an effective synthesis of alkynes (see Section 9.6). The nucleophilicity of acetylide anions is also evident in their reactions with aldehydes and ketones, which are entirely analogous to those of Grignard and organolithium reagents.

These reactions are normally carried out in liquid ammonia because that is the solvent in which the sodium salt of the alkyne is prepared.





As noted in Section 14.4, acetylenic Grignard reagents of the type RC≡CMgBr are prepared, not from an acetylenic halide, but by an acid–base reaction in which a Grignard reagent abstracts a proton from a terminal alkyne. Once formed, they react with aldehydes and ketones in the usual way.



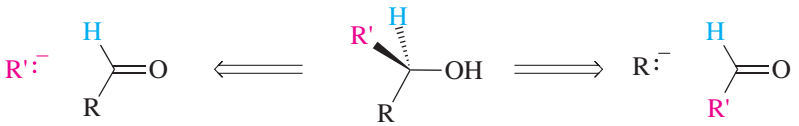
The corresponding acetylenic organolithium reagents are prepared by the reaction of terminal alkynes with methyllithium or butyllithium.

14.7 Retrosynthetic Analysis and Grignard and Organolithium Reagents

Constructing the desired carbon skeleton is a primary concern in synthetic organic chemistry, and we have already seen a number of methods for making carbon–carbon bonds in earlier chapters. The present section illustrates how to use retrosynthetic analysis to identify situations in which the reaction of a Grignard or organolithium reagent with an aldehyde or ketone can be used to advantage in building a carbon chain.

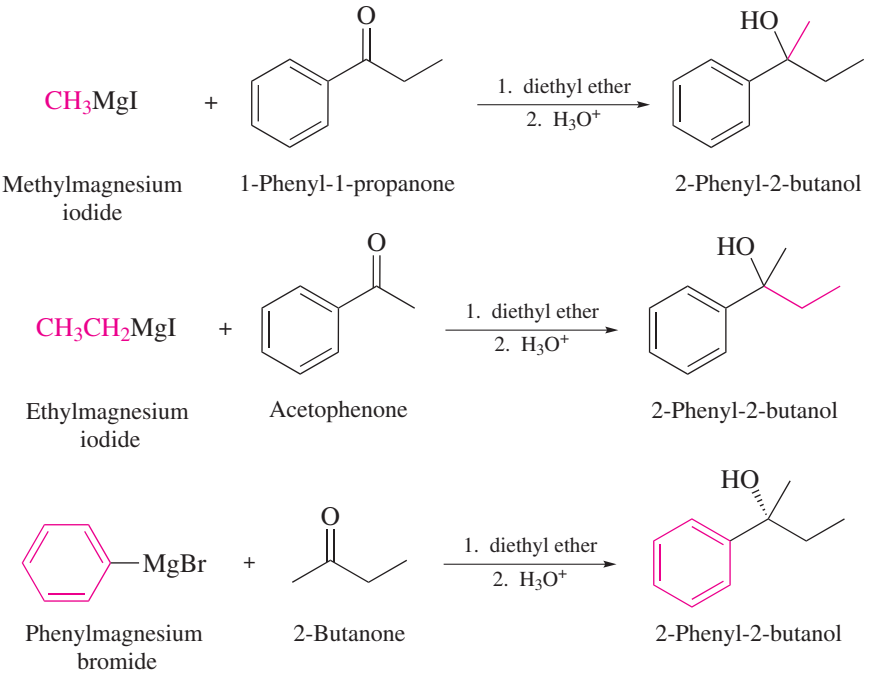
As illustrated earlier in Table 14.1, the main use of Grignard and organolithium reagents lies in the synthesis of alcohols. In such cases, the retrosynthesis focuses on the carbon that bears the hydroxyl group and begins by disconnecting one of its organic substituents as the corresponding anion.

This disconnection identifies the carbonyl component in the potential C—C bond-forming step, and R represents the group that adds to the carbonyl as a carbanion. For retrosynthetic purposes, Grignard and organolithium reagents (RMgX and RLi) are regarded as *synthetically equivalent* to a carbanion ($R:^-$). If the target is a primary alcohol (RCH_2OH), the carbonyl component is formaldehyde. If the target is a secondary alcohol, there are two retrosyntheses that differ in which R group is the carbanion equivalent and which remains attached to the carbonyl.



Three disconnections are possible for tertiary alcohols.

There is often little advantage in choosing one route over another when preparing a particular target alcohol. For example, all three of the following combinations have been used to prepare the tertiary alcohol 2-phenyl-2-butanol, and each is effective.



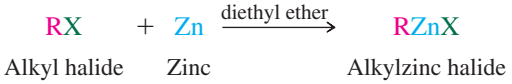
Problem 14.5

Use retrosynthetic analysis to develop a synthesis of 2-phenyl-2-butanol from benzene and 2-butyne as the source of all of the carbons and write a series of equations for the synthesis showing all necessary reagents.

All that has been said in this section applies with equal force to organolithium reagents. Grignard reagents are one source of nucleophilic carbon; organolithium reagents are another. Both have substantial carbanionic character in their carbon–metal bonds and undergo the same kinds of reactions with aldehydes and ketones.

14.8 An Organozinc Reagent for Cyclopropane Synthesis

Zinc reacts with alkyl halides in a manner similar to that of magnesium.



Victor Grignard was led to study organomagnesium compounds because of earlier work he performed with organic derivatives of zinc.

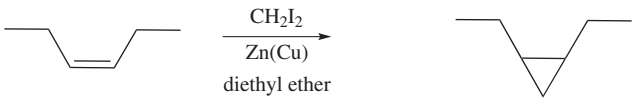
Iodomethylzinc iodide is known as the *Simmons–Smith reagent,* after Howard E. Simmons and Ronald D. Smith of DuPont, who first described its use in the preparation of cyclopropanes.

Zinc is less electropositive than lithium and magnesium, and the carbon–zinc bond is less polar. Organozinc reagents are not nearly as reactive toward aldehydes and ketones as Grignard reagents and organolithium compounds.

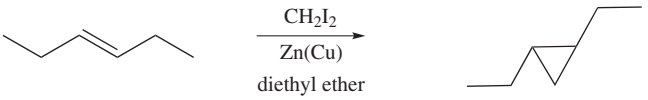
An organozinc compound that occupies a special niche in organic synthesis is *iodomethylzinc iodide* (ICH_2ZnI). It is prepared by the reaction of zinc–copper couple [Zn(Cu)], zinc that has had its surface activated with a little copper] with diiodomethane in diethyl ether.

$$\underset{\text{Diiodomethane}}{CH_2I_2} + \underset{\text{Zinc}}{Zn} \xrightarrow[Cu]{\text{diethyl ether}} \underset{\text{Iodomethylzinc iodide}}{ICH_2ZnI}$$

Iodomethylzinc iodide is a useful reagent because it reacts with alkenes to give cyclopropanes. This reaction is called the ***Simmons–Smith reaction*** and is one of the few methods available for the synthesis of cyclopropanes. The reaction is *stereospecific.* Substituents that were cis in the alkene remain cis in the cyclopropane.



(*Z*)-3-Hexene — *cis*-1,2-Diethylcyclopropane (34%)

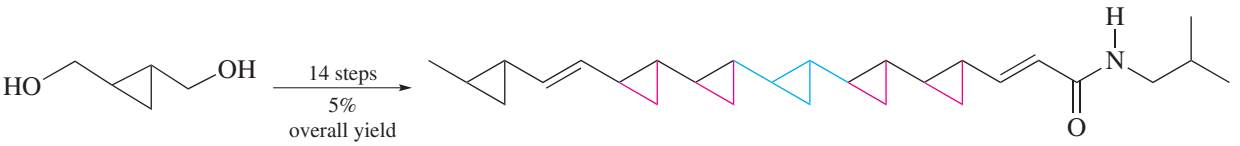


(*E*)-3-Hexene — *trans*-1,2-Diethylcyclopropane (15%)

Problem 14.6

Reaction of (*E*)-3-penten-2-ol with the Simmons–Smith reagent gave a mixture of two isomers having the molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O$. Suggest reasonable structures for these products.

A modified Simmons–Smith reaction has been used in the stereoselective synthesis of a naturally occurring substance called U-106305 containing six cyclopropane rings. In the synthesis, four of the six rings arise by Simmons–Smith-type cyclopropanation. The red lines in the structural formula identify the bonds to the CH_2 groups that are introduced in this way; the blue lines identify bonds that originated with the initial reactant.



U-106305

Knowing the configuration of the starting diol to be (1*R*,2*R*) allowed the absolute configuration of all the chirality centers in the product to be established.

In its reactivity, iodomethylzinc iodide behaves as if it were a source of H_2C:, a species called *methylene.* It is not. Methylene belongs to a class of neutral molecules called **carbenes,** which contain a divalent carbon plus two unshared electrons that can be either paired or unpaired. A characteristic reaction of many carbenes is cycloaddition to double bonds to form cyclopropanes, a property that is shared by iodomethylzinc iodide. Free H_2C: is not involved in the Simmons–Smith reaction, but the similarity in behavior of iodomethylzinc iodide toward alkenes has led to referring to it and related compounds as **carbenoids.**

14.9 Transition-Metal Organometallic Compounds

The transition elements occupy groups 3–11 of the periodic table and are characterized electronically as having a partially filled *d* subshell. A related but not equivalent term is ***d*-block element,** which includes all of these plus the elements in group 12. The first sequence of *d*-block elements begins in the fourth period with scandium which has one 3*d* electron and continues through zinc, which has ten. The second (4*d*) and third (5*d*) transition series are analogous.

3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Sc	Ti	V	Cr	Mn	Fe	Co	Ni	Cu	Zn

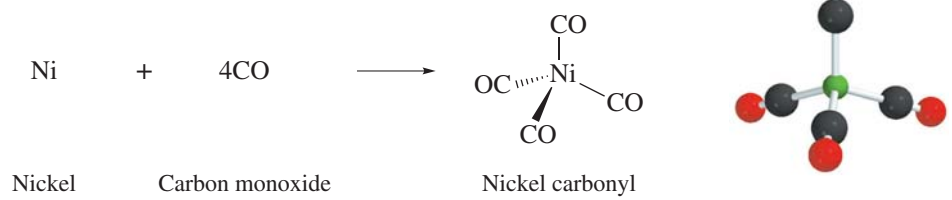
The group number (3–12) corresponds to the number of valence electrons, and the number of *d* electrons is two less than the group number. Manganese, for example, has seven valence electrons and five 3*d* electrons and is referred to as a d^5 element. Mn^{2+} is a d^3 ion, as is Fe^{3+}.

Problem 14.7

How many 4*d* electrons are there in Pd^{2+}? What +2 ion in the fourth period has the same number of 3*d* electrons? In the sixth period?

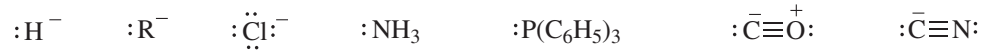
An already large and steadily increasing number of organometallic compounds of transition elements is known, and their applications in both laboratory and industrial processes has transformed synthetic organic chemistry. They not only make it possible to carry out reactions that are difficult to do otherwise but in many cases do so as catalysts rather than reactants. Before we look at the reactions of transition-metal organometallics in this and subsequent sections, some structural background is in order.

We'll start with nickel carbonyl, an intermediate in the purification of nickel first prepared over a hundred years ago. It is a neutral molecule (boiling point: 43°C) that forms spontaneously when carbon monoxide is passed over elemental nickel.



Nickel Carbon monoxide Nickel carbonyl

A structural unit attached to the metal is called a **ligand,** and can be an element, a compound (carbon monoxide in this case), or an ion; also, it can be organic or inorganic. Ligands are electron-pair donors (Lewis bases) and include the following plus many others.



Hydride Alkyl Chloride Ammonia Triphenylphosphine Carbon monoxide Cyanide

Many transition-metal complexes obey the **18-electron rule,** which is to transition elements as the octet rule is to main-group elements. It states:

> *The number of ligands that can be attached to a transition metal are such that the sum of the electrons in the bonds to the metal plus the metal's valence electrons equals 18.*

Both the octet rule and the 18-electron rule connect stability to noble gas electron configurations. The noble gases in the second and third periods of the periodic table (Ne and Ar) have 8 valence electrons, those in the fourth and fifth (Kr and Xe) have 18.

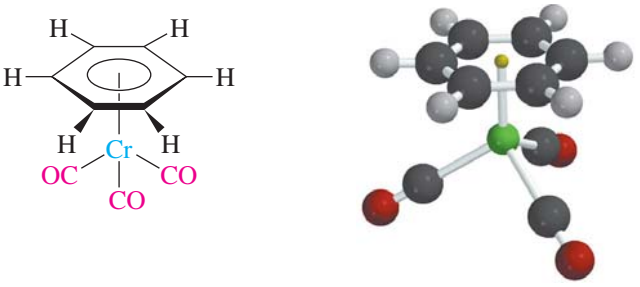
Because the custom for writing structural formulas of transition-metal complexes omits electrons and formal charges, we need to first know the charge on the complex itself in order to apply the 18-electron rule. $Ni(CO)_4$, for example is a neutral molecule. We then count the valence electrons of nickel as given by its group number (10) and add to that the total number of electrons in Ni—C bonds (8) for a total of 18. The 18-electron rule is satisfied for $Ni(CO)_4$.

Problem 14.8

Like nickel, iron reacts with carbon monoxide to form a compound having the formula $M(CO)_n$ that obeys the 18-electron rule. What is the value of n in the formula $Fe(CO)_n$?

Transition-metal complexes that have an electron count less than 18 are described as *coordinatively unsaturated* and can take on additional ligands.

Not all ligands use just two electrons to bond to transition metals. Benzene uses its six π electrons in organometallic compounds such as (benzene)tricarbonylchromium.

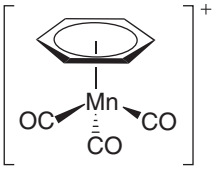


(Benzene)tricarbonylchromium

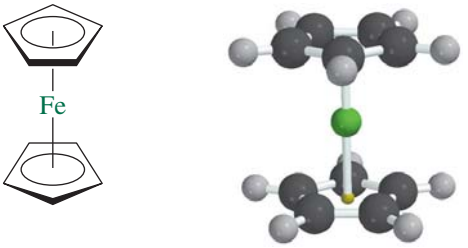
The complex is neutral, and chromium is a group 6 transition metal, so contributes six valence electrons. The three CO ligands contribute six more, and the six π electrons of benzene bring the total to 18.

Problem 14.9

What is the electron count of manganese in the cation shown? Is it coordinatively unsaturated?



Like benzene, cyclopentadienide anion is an aromatic six π-electron system (Section 11.20) and bonds to transition metals in a similar way. Ferrocene is the best known example, with a structure aptly described as a *sandwich.*



Ferrocene

Ferrocene is neutral, and each cyclopentadienide brings a charge of −1; therefore, the oxidation state of iron is +2. Iron is a group 8 transition metal, but being in the +2 oxidation state contributes six, rather than eight, electrons. These 6, plus 12 from the two cyclopentadienide ligands, bring the total to 18.

Problem 14.10

What is the oxidation state of manganese in the complex given in problem 14.9?

An Organometallic Compound That Occurs Naturally: Coenzyme B_{12}

Pernicious anemia is a disease characterized, as are all anemias, by a deficiency of red blood cells. Unlike ordinary anemia, pernicious anemia does not respond to treatment with sources of iron, and before effective treatments were developed, was often fatal. Injection of liver extracts was one such treatment, and in 1948 chemists succeeded in isolating the "anti-pernicious anemia factor" from beef liver as a red crystalline compound, which they called *vitamin B_{12}*. This compound had the formula $C_{63}H_{88}CoN_{14}O_{14}P$. Its complexity precluded structure determination by classical degradation techniques, and spectroscopic methods were too primitive to be of much help. The structure was solved by Dorothy Crowfoot Hodgkin of Oxford University in 1955 using X-ray diffraction techniques and is shown in Figure 14.4*a*. Structure determination by X-ray crystallography can be superficially considered as taking a photograph of a molecule with X-rays. It is a demanding task and earned Hodgkin the 1964 Nobel Prize in Chemistry. Modern structural studies by X-ray crystallography use computers to collect and analyze the diffraction data and take only a fraction of the time required years ago to solve the vitamin B_{12} structure.

The structure of vitamin B_{12} is interesting in that it contains a central cobalt atom that is surrounded by six atoms in an octahedral geometry. One substituent, the cyano (—CN) group, is what is known as an "artifact." It appears to be introduced into the molecule during the isolation process and leads to the synonym *cyanocobalamin* for vitamin B_{12}. This is the material used to treat pernicious anemia, but is not the form in which it exerts its activity. The biologically active substance is called *coenzyme B_{12}* and differs from vitamin B_{12} in the ligand attached to cobalt (Figure 14.4*b*). Coenzyme B_{12} is the only known naturally occurring substance that has a carbon–metal bond. Moreover, coenzyme B_{12} was discovered before any compound containing an alkyl group σ-bonded to cobalt had ever been isolated in the laboratory!

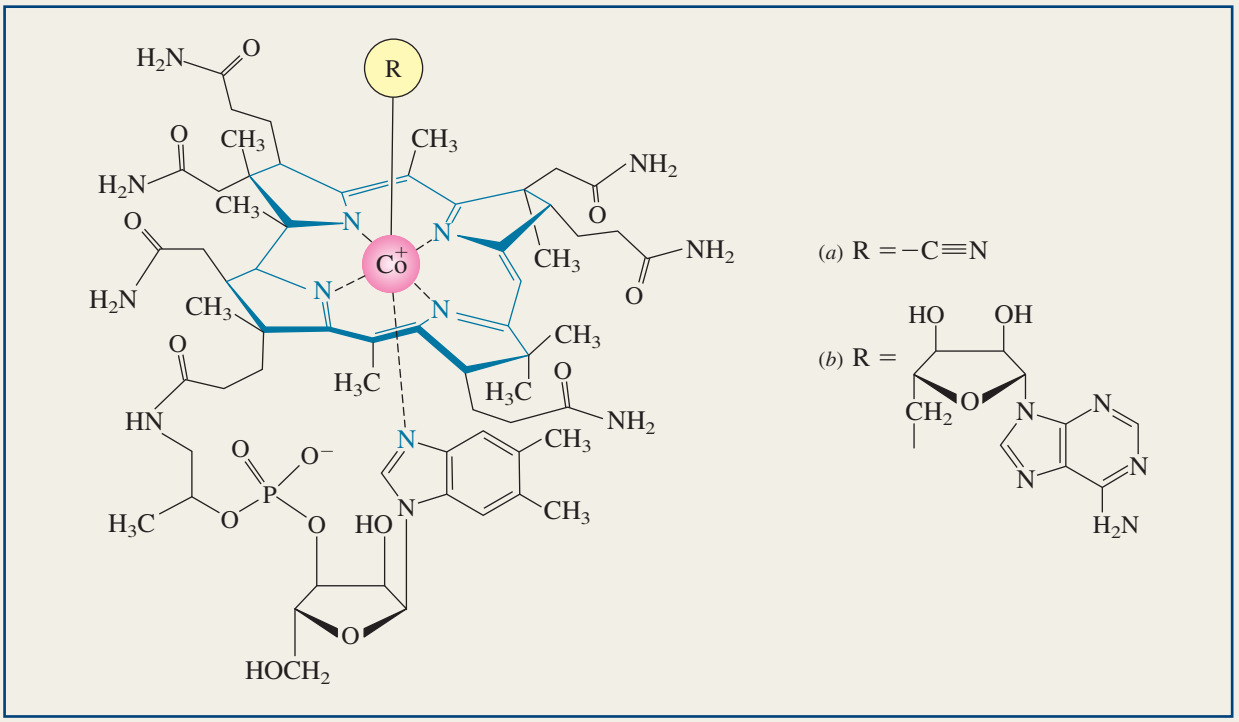
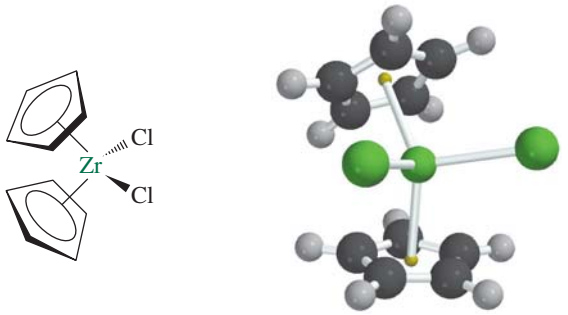


Figure 14.4

The structures of (*a*) vitamin B_{12} and (*b*) coenzyme B_{12}.

Metallocenes, organometallic compounds that bear cyclopentadienide ligands, are not only stucturally interesting but many of them have useful applications as catalysts for industrial processes. Zirconium-based metallocenes, for example, are the most widely used catalysts for Ziegler–Natta polymerization of alkenes. We'll have more to say about them in Section 14.14 and Chapter 27.



Zirconocene dichloride

Problem 14.11

Zirconocene dichloride is neutral. What is the oxidation state and electron count of zirconium? Is zirconocene dichloride coordinatively unsaturated?

Naturally occurring compounds with carbon–metal bonds are very rare, coenzyme B_{12} being the best known example (see the boxed essay *An Organometallic Compound That Occurs Naturally: Coenzyme B_{12}* that accompanies this section).

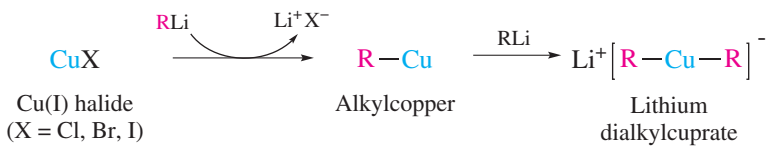
In the next two sections, we'll describe some synthetic applications of organocopper and organopalladium compounds used to form C—C bonds between organic groups. The two types differ in that the organocopper compounds to be described are reagents present in stoichiometric amounts, whereas the organopalladium compounds are catalysts.

14.10 Organocopper Reagents

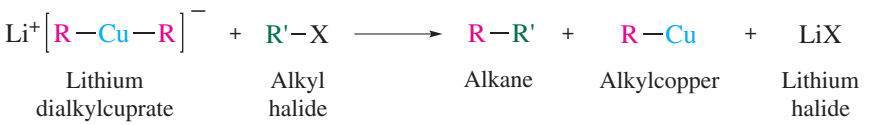
Early observations that certain Grignard reactions could be catalyzed by copper salts eventually led to systematic studies of organocopper compounds as reagents for carbon–carbon bond formation. Of these, lithium diorganocuprates known as **Gilman reagents** proved to be the most effective.

Gilman reagents are prepared by the reaction of a copper(I) halide with two equivalents of an alkyl- or aryllithium in diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran.

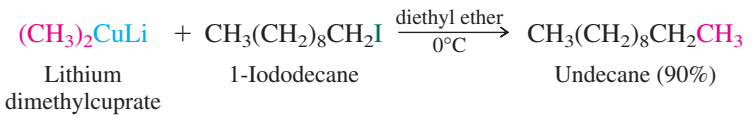
Henry Gilman, whose career at Iowa State spanned the period 1919–1975, was the first to prepare and study organocuprates.



Adding an alkyl halide to the solution of the lithium dialkylcuprate leads to carbon–carbon bond formation between the alkyl group of the halide and that of the cuprate.



The process is called *cross-coupling* when the groups that are joined from the two reactants are different. Methyl and primary alkyl halides, especially iodides, work best.

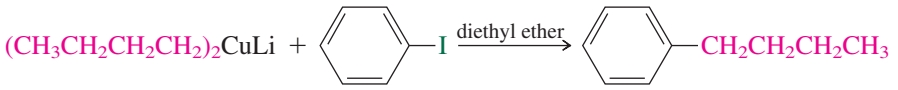


Elimination becomes a problem with secondary and tertiary alkyl halides. Lithium diarylcuprates are prepared in the same way as lithium dialkylcuprates and undergo comparable reactions with primary alkyl halides.

$$(C_6H_5)_2CuLi + ICH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3 \xrightarrow{\text{diethyl ether}} C_6H_5CH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$$

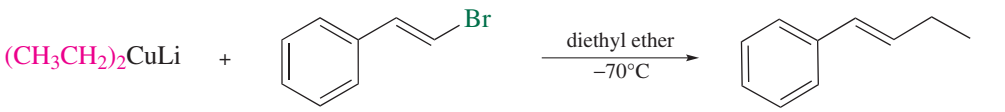
Lithium diphenylcuprate — 1-Iodooctane — 1-Phenyloctane (99%)

Like alkyl halides, vinylic and aryl halides undergo cross-coupling with diorganocuprates.



Lithium dibutylcuprate — Iodobenzene — Butylbenzene (75%)

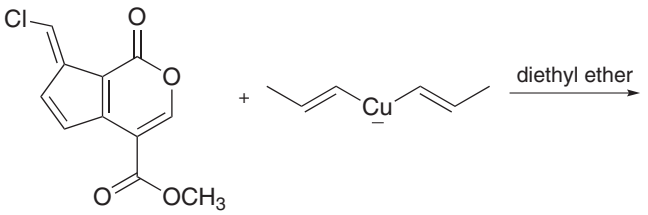
The stereochemistry of the double bond is retained in the reaction with vinylic halides.



Lithium diethylcuprate — (*E*)-1-Bromo-2-phenylethene — (*E*)-1-Phenyl-1-butene (65%)

Problem 14.12

An antibacterial substance obtained from the bark of a flowering shrub (*plumiera*) has been synthesized by the reaction shown. What is its structure?



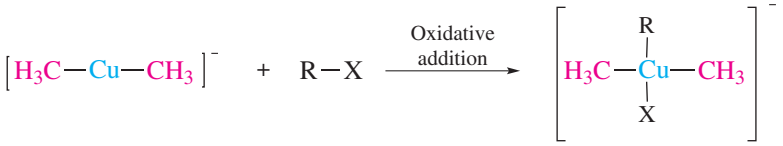
The reactions of diorganocuprates with alkyl halides have characteristics that we've come to associate with the S_N2 mechanism:

Relative reactivity:	RI > RBr > RCl >> RF CH_3 > primary > secondary > tertiary
Substitution/Elimination:	Mainly substitution with primary alkyl halides; elimination with secondary and tertiary alkyl halides.
Stereochemistry:	Inversion of configuration at sp^3-hybridized carbon.

However, the fact that vinylic and aryl halides undergo similar reactions suggests that S_N2 cannot be the only possible mechanism. An alternative, and more likely, mechanism begins by regarding the dialkylcuprate as equivalent to the product of the reaction between Cu^+ and two methyl anions.

$$H_3C{:}^- \quad {}^+Cu \quad {:}CH_3^- \longrightarrow [H_3C{-}Cu{-}CH_3]^-$$

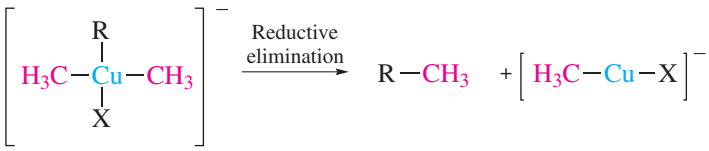
Copper is a group 11 element, so Cu^+ contributes 10 valence electrons, and the two methyl anions contribute 4 more, for a total of 14. With fewer than 18 valence electrons, copper is coordinatively unsaturated and can accommodate additional ligands. When dimethylcuprate reacts with an alkyl halide RX, both R and X become ligands on copper.



Copper gains two electrons from the R—X bond, increasing its electron count from 14 to 16, and the 18-electron rule is not exceeded.

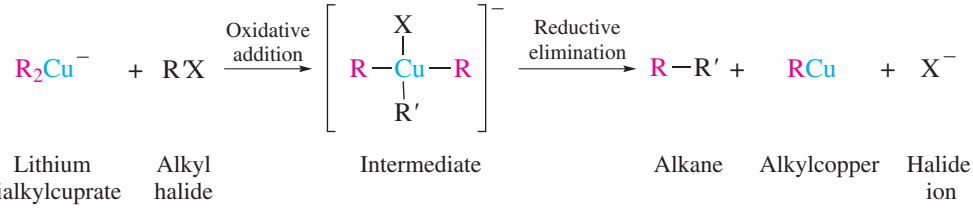
In spite of this increase in electron count, the reaction is classified as an *oxidative addition.* The reason for this seeming anomaly is that counting electrons for the purpose of the 18-electron rule differs from calculating oxidation state. Two new bonds, Cu—R and Cu—X, are formed by a process in which two electrons come from R—X and two *d* electrons from copper. We count all the electrons around an atom for the 18-electron rule, but when calculating oxidation number assign both electrons in a bond to the more electronegative partner, which is almost never the metal. Thus, copper is in the +1 oxidation state in R_2Cu^- and in the +3 oxidation state in the product of oxidative addition. Oxidative addition increases the electron count of a transition metal, but counts as a loss of two electrons when calculating oxidation state.

The counterpart of oxidative addition is *reductive elimination* and constitutes the next step in the reaction.



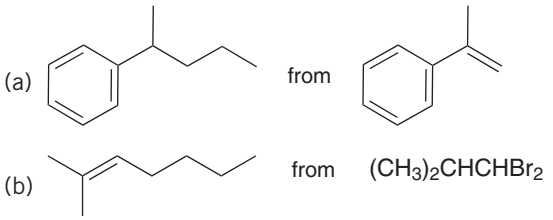
Of the four electrons in the Cu—X and Cu—CH_3 bonds, two remain on copper after elimination and decrease its oxidation state from +3 to +1.

The sum of the oxidative addition and reductive elimination stages correspond to the overall reaction.

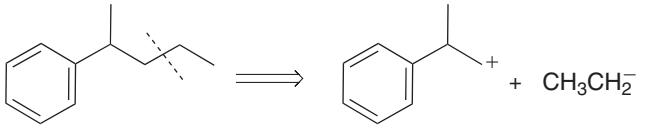


Problem 14.13

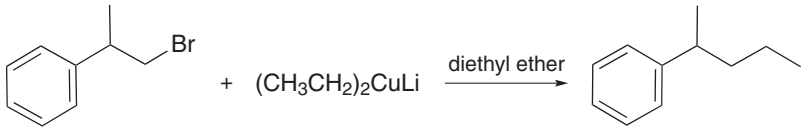
Use retrosynthetic analysis to devise a synthesis of each of the following from the indicated starting material and any necessary reagents.



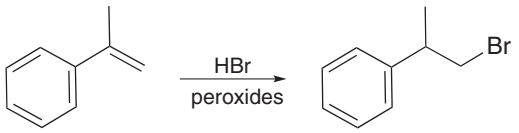
Sample Solution (a) The bond disconnection shown reveals the relationship between the carbon skeleton of the target and the given starting material.



Carbon–carbon bond formation between an ethyl anion equivalent and an electrophilic site on the side chain can be accomplished by the reaction between a primary alkyl bromide and lithium diethylcuprate.



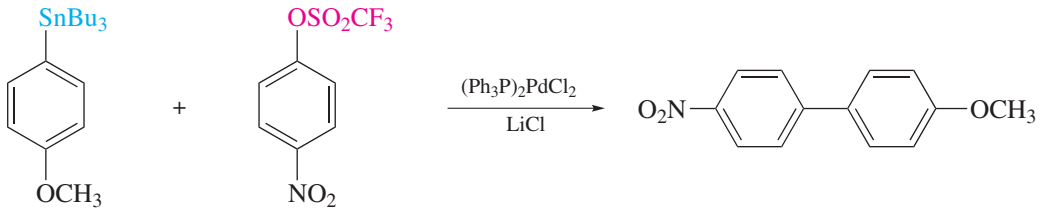
The primary bromide can be prepared by free-radical addition of HBr to the prescribed starting material.



14.11 Palladium-Catalyzed Cross-Coupling

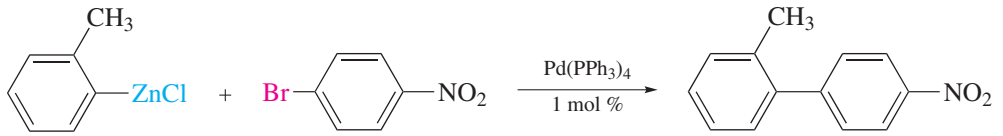
Four transition-metal catalyzed cross-coupling procedures, known separately as the Stille, Negishi, Suzuki, and Heck couplings, have emerged as powerful methods for making carbon–carbon bonds. Collectively, their most important qualities include their efficiency, tolerance of functionality elsewhere in the reacting molecules, versatility with respect to hybridization state, and the fact that palladium is used only in catalytic amounts. The four involve the Pd(0)-catalyzed reaction of a suitably functionalized organic group with an:

(a) Organotin reagent (Stille)



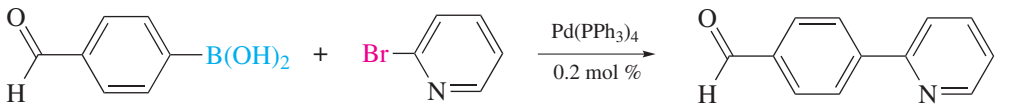
Tributyl(*p*-methoxyphenyl)stannane | *p*-Nitrophenyl trifluoromethanesulfonate | 4-Methoxy-4'-nitrobiphenyl (48%)

(b) Organozinc reagent (Negishi)



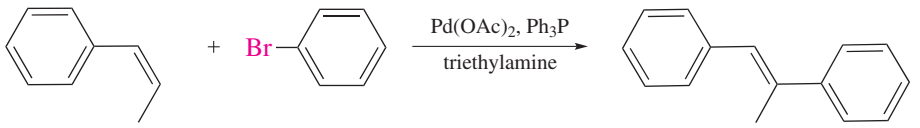
o-Tolylzinc chloride | 1-Bromo-4-nitrobenzene | 2-Methyl-4'-nitrobiphenyl (78%)

(c) Organoboron reagent (Suzuki)



(*p*-Formylphenyl)boronic acid | 2-Bromopyridine | 2-(*p*-Formylphenyl)pyridine (80%)

(d) Alkene (Heck)



(*Z*)-1-Phenylpropene | Bromobenzene | (*E*)-1,2-Diphenylpropene (79%)

As the examples illustrate, the synthesis of biaryls has received much attention. One reason is because they are difficult to synthesize, another is that they are often candidates for new drugs. The product in the Suzuki coupling, for example, is an intermediate in the synthesis of *atazanavir,* a protease inhibitor used in the treatment of HIV–AIDS. Numerous other classes of compounds are accessible by appropriate choices of reactants.

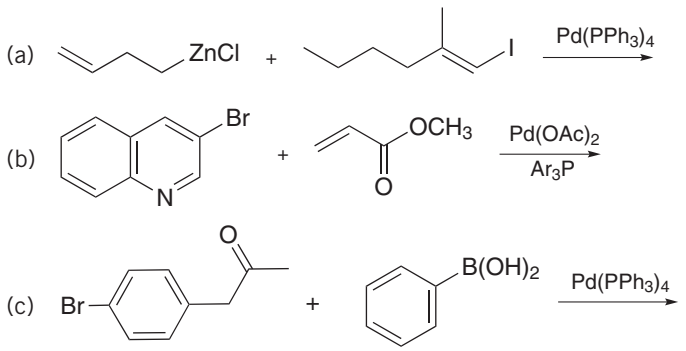
The 2010 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to Richard F. Heck (University of Delaware), Ei-ichi Negishi (Purdue University), and Akira Suzuki (Hokkaido University) for their work on palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling reactions. Early and important contributions were made by John Stille (Colorado State University) before his untimely death in a 1989 plane crash.

The reactions tolerate many functional groups, including OH, C═O, and NO_2 elsewhere in the molecule and as shown in the Heck example, the stereochemistry of the double bond is retained when cross-coupling involves an sp^2-hybridized carbon.

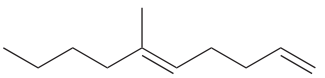
It should also be noted that various sources of palladium are given in the examples. The active oxidation state is Pd(0) in all these reactions, even when the source is Pd^{2+} as in the Heck reaction example that uses palladium acetate.

Problem 14.14

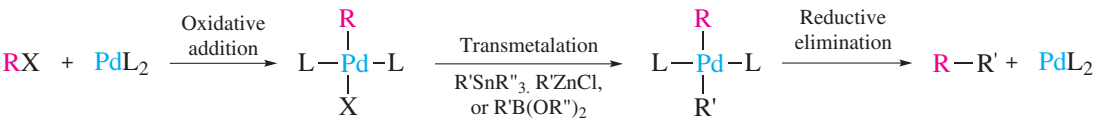
Give the structure including stereochemistry of the product of each of the following reactions.



Sample Solution (a) Palladium-catalyzed reactions of organozinc compounds with alkenyl halides give cross-coupling in which bond formation occurs between the carbon attached to zinc and the carbon attached to the halogen. The stereochemistry at the double bond of the iodoalkene is retained. The product is (*E*)-6-methyl-1,5-decadiene.



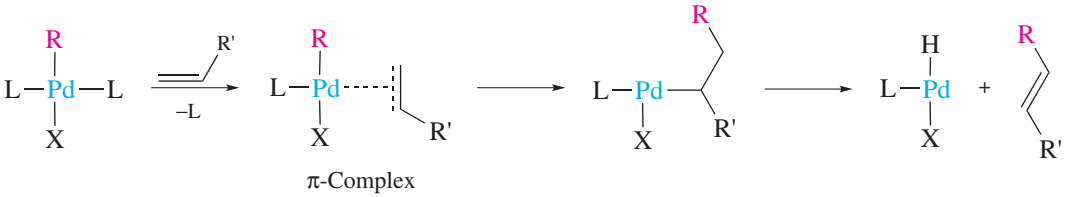
The mechanisms of palladium-catalyzed cross-couplings are complicated, but they all begin the same way—by oxidative addition of an organic halide to the catalyst (represented here as PdL_2, where L is a ligand). This is followed by transmetalation in the Stille, Negishi, and Suzuki methods through which palladium displaces another metal (Sn, Zn, or B) on the organometallic reactant. Reductive elimination creates a C—C bond between R and R′ and regenerates the catalyst.



The oxidation state of palladium is 0 in PdL_2, +2 in the products of oxidative addition and transmetalation, and returns to 0 after reductive elimination.

"Transmetalation" is sometimes spelled "transmetallation," and both forms are acceptable. The term was introduced by Henry Gilman, who spelled it with one "l."

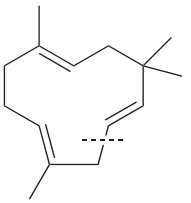
In the Heck procedure the intermediate formed by oxidative addition reacts with the alkene to give a π complex that goes on to products by a series of steps summarized as:



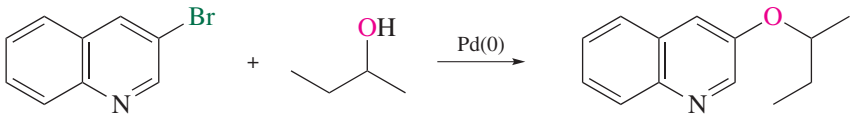
Coordination of the π electrons of the double bond with palladium gives a π-complex, which rearranges by migration of the substituent R to the less substituted carbon of the double bond while palladium bonds to the other carbon. Dissociation of the complex gives the alkene. Other steps (not shown) restore the original form of the catalyst.

Problem 14.15

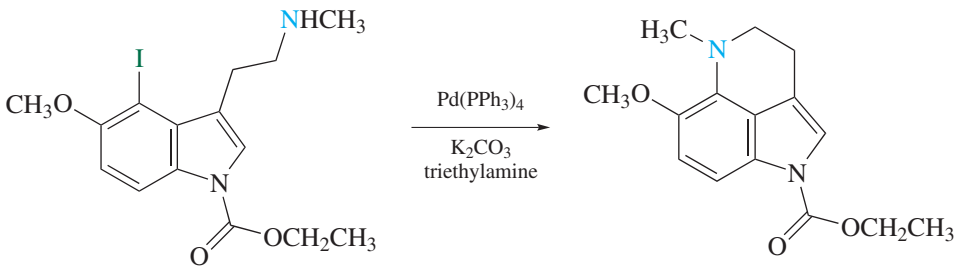
Humulene is a naturally occurring hydrocarbon present in the seed cone of hops and has been synthesized several times. In one of these, the retrosynthetic strategy was based on the disconnection shown. Deduce the structure, including stereochemistry, of an allylic bromide capable of yielding humulene by an intramolecular Suzuki coupling in the last step in the synthesis. Represent the boron containing unit as —$B(OH)_2$.



The scope of palladium-catalyzed cross-coupling has expanded beyond C—C bond formation to include C—O and C—N bond-forming methods.



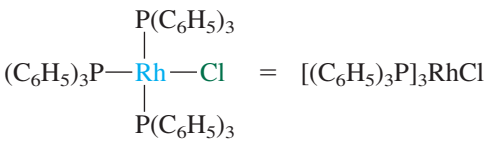
3-Bromoquinoline 2-Butanol *sec*-Butyl 3-quinolyl ether (88%)



14.12 Homogeneous Catalytic Hydrogenation

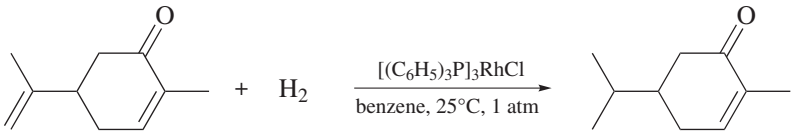
We have seen numerous examples of the hydrogenation of alkenes catalyzed by various finely divided metals such as Ni, Pt, Pd, and Rh. In all those cases, the metal acted as a *heterogeneous catalyst,* present as a solid while the alkene was in solution. The idea of carrying out hydrogenations in homogeneous solution seems far-fetched inasmuch as no solvent is capable of simultaneously dissolving both metals and hydrocarbons. Nevertheless, there is a way to do it.

Rhodium is a good catalyst for alkene hydrogenation (Section 6.1), as are many of its complexes such as tris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium chloride (Wilkinson's catalyst).



Tris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium chloride

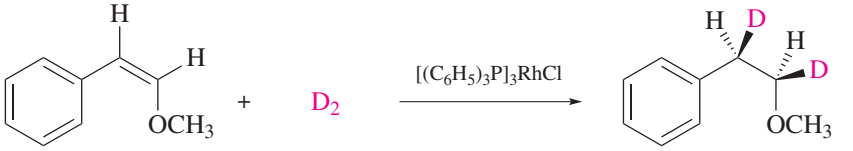
Like rhodium itself, Wilkinson's catalyst is an effective catalyst for alkene hydrogenation. Unlike rhodium metal, however, Wilkinson's catalyst is soluble in many organic solvents. It is selective, reducing less-substituted double bonds faster than more-substituted ones and C═C in preference to C═O.



Carvone Hydrogen Dihydrocarvone (90-94%)

Geoffrey Wilkinson (Imperial College, London) shared the 1973 Nobel Prize in Chemistry with Ernst O. Fischer (Munich) for their achievements in organometallic chemistry. In addition to his work on catalysts for homogeneous hydrogenation, Wilkinson collaborated on determining the structure of ferrocene as well as numerous other aspects of organometallic compounds.

Stereospecific syn addition is observed, and hydrogens are transferred to the less-hindered face of the double bond.

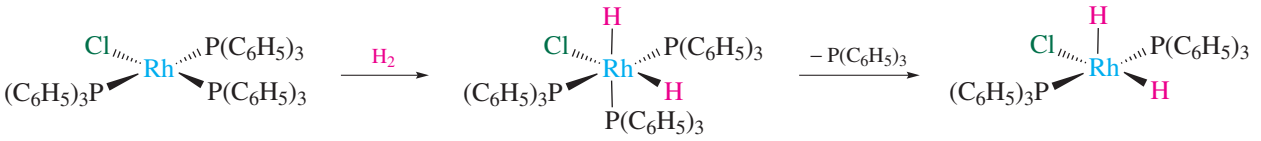


(*Z*)-1-Methoxy-2-phenylethylene — Deuterium — *erythro*-1,2-Dideuterio-1-methoxy-2-phenylethane

Problem 14.16

Homogeneous catalytic hydrogenation of the compound shown gives two isomers in a 73:27 ratio. What are their structures, and which one is the major product?

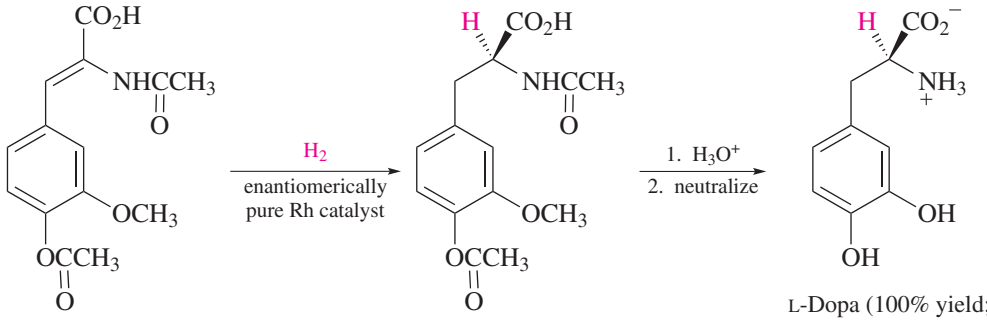
The mechanism of hydrogenation in the presence of Wilkinson's catalyst begins with oxidative addition of hydrogen to the rhodium complex, with loss of one of the triphenylphosphine ligands.



Tris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium chloride (Wilkinson's catalyst) — Dihydride of Wilkinson's catalyst — Dihydride of bis(triphenylphosphine) complex

Rhodium is in the +1 oxidation state in Wilkinson's catalyst, so is a d^8 ion. Its four ligands count for 8 more electrons, bringing the total number of valence electrons to 16. Addition of H_2 in the first step raises the number to 18. Loss of a triphenylphosphine ligand in the second step reduces the number of valence electrons to 16 and gives the active form of the catalyst, setting in motion the repeating cycle of four steps for alkene hydrogenation shown in Mechanism 14.1.

The effect that homogeneous transition-metal catalysis has had on stereoselective synthesis is especially impressive. Using chiral ligands, it is possible to control hydrogenation of double bonds so that new chirality centers have a particular configuration. The drug L-dopa, used to treat Parkinsonism, is prepared in multiton quantities by enantioselective hydrogenation catalyzed by an enantiomerically pure chiral rhodium complex.



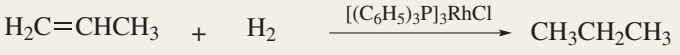
L-Dopa (100% yield; 95% enantiomeric excess)

The synthesis of L-dopa was one of the earliest of what has become an important advance in the pharmaceutical industry—the preparation and marketing of chiral drugs as single enantiomers (see the boxed essay, *Chiral Drugs,* in Chapter 7). William S. Knowles (Monsanto) and Ryoji Noyori (Nagoya, Japan) shared one half of the 2001 Nobel Prize

Mechanism 14.1

Homogeneous Catalysis of Alkene Hydrogenation

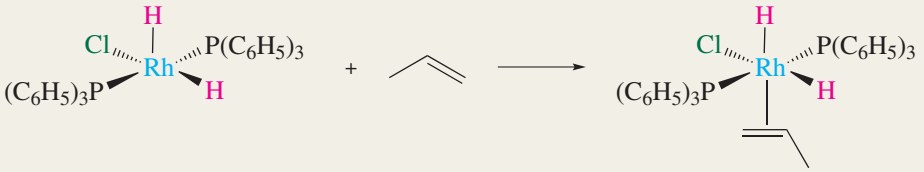
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Propene Hydrogen Propane

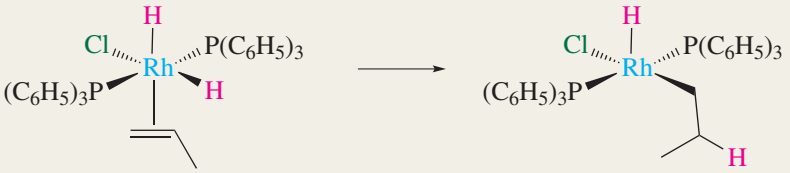
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The active form of Wilkinson's catalyst described in the text is coordinatively unsaturated and reacts with the alkene to form an 18-electron complex.



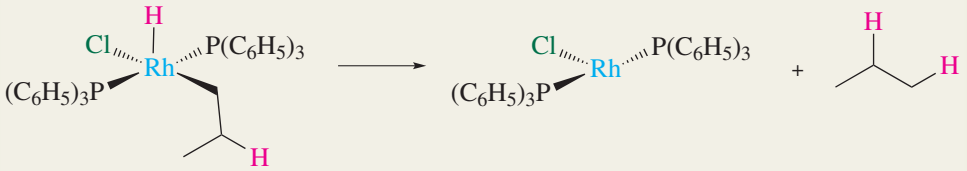
Dihydride of bis(triphenylphosphine) complex — Propene — Rhodium-propene complex

Step 2: The rhodium–propene complex rearranges. Rhodium bonds to the less-substituted carbon of the alkene while hydride migrates from rhodium to the more-substituted carbon.



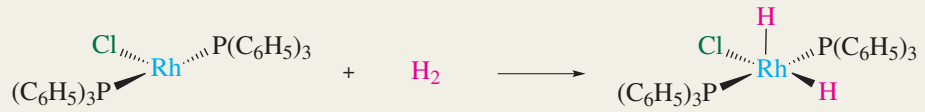
Rhodium-propene complex — Propylrhodium complex

Step 3: Hydride migrates from rhodium to carbon and the complex dissociates, releasing propane.



Propylrhodium complex — Bis(triphenylphosphine)rhodium chloride — Propane

Step 4: The complex formed in step 3 reacts with H_2 to restore the active form of the catalyst, which returns to step 1 to maintain a continuing cycle.

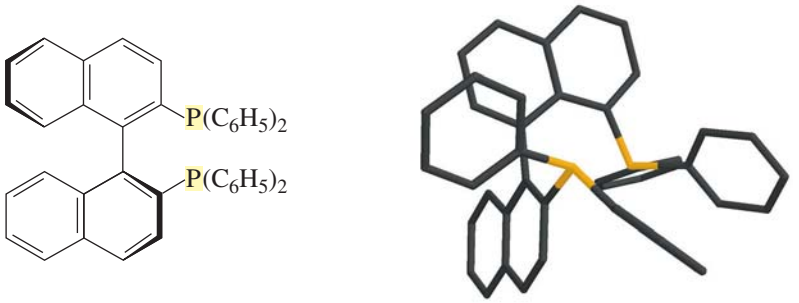


Bis(triphenylphosphine)rhodium chloride — Hydrogen — Dihydride of bis(triphenylphosphine) complex

in Chemistry for their independent work on enantioselective hydrogenations. Knowles devised and carried out the synthesis of L-dopa and Noyori developed a variety of chiral catalysts in which he varied both the metal and the ligands to achieve enantioselectivities approaching 100%.

BINAP is an abbreviation for 2,2′-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1′-binaphthyl.

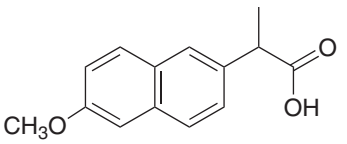
Chirality is built into the catalysts by employing ligands with either chirality centers or axes. Noyori's widely used BINAP has a chirality axis, and crowding prevents interconversion of enantiomers by restricting rotation around the bond connecting the naphthalene rings. The metal, usually ruthenium, is held in place by the two phosphorus atoms (yellow) in a chiral environment. The steric demands in the cavity occupied by the metal in Ru-BINAP cause reaction to occur preferentially at one face of the double bond.



(*S*)-(–)-BINAP

Problem 14.17

The antiinflammatory drug *naproxen* is sold as its (*S*)-enantiomer. One large-scale synthesis uses a Ru-BINAP hydrogenation catalyst. What compound would you hydrogenate to prepare naproxen?



A large number of enantioselective transition-metal catalysts have been developed, not just for hydrogenation but for other reactions as well. The opportunities for fine-tuning their properties by varying the metal, its oxidation state, and the ligands are almost limitless.

14.13 Olefin Metathesis

The word *metathesis* refers to an interchange, or transposition, of objects.

The 2005 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was jointly awarded to Robert H. Grubbs (Caltech), Yves Chauvin (French Petroleum Institute), and Richard R. Schrock (MIT) for establishing **olefin metathesis** as a reaction of synthetic versatility and contributing to an understanding of the mechanism of this novel process. Olefin metathesis first surfaced in the late 1950s when industrial researchers found that alkenes underwent a novel reaction when passed over a heated bed of mixed metal oxides. Propene, for example, was converted to a mixture of ethylene and 2-butene (cis + trans).

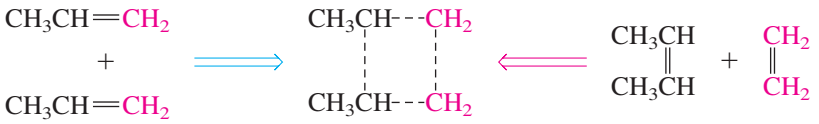
$$\underset{\text{Propene}}{2CH_3CH{=}CH_2} \overset{\text{catalyst}}{\rightleftharpoons} \underset{\text{Ethylene}}{H_2C{=}CH_2} + \underset{\text{cis- + trans-2-butene}}{CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3}$$

This same transformation was subsequently duplicated at lower temperatures by homogeneous transition-metal catalysis. An equilibrium is established, and the same mixture is

obtained regardless of whether propene or a 1:1 mixture of ethylene and 2-butene is subjected to the reaction conditions. This type of olefin metathesis is called a *cross-metathesis.*

When cross-metathesis was first discovered, propene enjoyed only limited use and the reaction was viewed as a potential source of ethylene. Once methods were developed for the preparation of stereoregular polypropylene, however, propene became more valuable and cross-metathesis of ethylene and 2-butene now serves as a source of propene.

The relationship between reactants and products in cross-metathesis can be analyzed retrosynthetically by joining the double bonds in two reactant molecules by dotted lines, then disconnecting in the other direction.



Two propene molecules

2-Butene + Ethylene

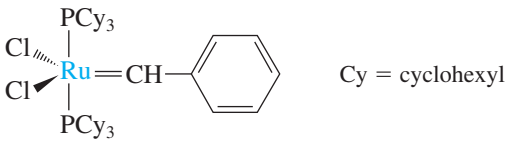
Although this representation helps us relate products and reactants, *it is not related to the mechanism. Nothing containing a ring of four carbons is an intermediate in olefin cross-metathesis.*

Problem 14.18

What alkenes are formed from 2-pentene by olefin cross-metathesis?

The generally accepted mechanism for olefin cross-metathesis is outlined for the case of propene in Mechanism 14.2. The catalyst's structure is characterized by a carbon–metal double bond, and the metal is typically ruthenium (Ru), tungsten (W), or molybdenum (Mo). Complexes of this type were first prepared by Ernst O. Fischer (Munich) who shared the 1973 Nobel Prize in Chemistry with Geoffrey Wilkinson.

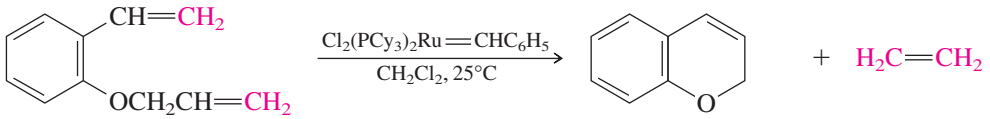
One of the most widely used catalysts for olefin metathesis is the ruthenium complex shown. It is called *Grubbs' catalyst* and abbreviated $Cl_2(PCy_3)_2Ru{=}CHC_6H_5$.



Cy = cyclohexyl

Grubbs' catalyst

Olefin cross-metathesis is an intermolecular reaction between double bonds in separate molecules. Intramolecular metatheses in which two double bonds belong to the same molecule are also common and lead to ring formation. The process is called *ring-closing metathesis.*



Allyl *o*-vinylphenyl ether

2H-1-Benzopyran (95%)

Ethylene

Although olefin metathesis is an equilibrium process, it can give high yields of the desired product when ethylene is formed as the other alkene. Being a gas, ethylene escapes from the reaction mixture, and the equilibrium shifts to the right in accordance with Le Châtelier's principle. Ring-closing metathesis has been widely and imaginatively applied to the synthesis of natural products. It occurs under mild conditions and tolerates the presence of numerous functional groups.

Mechanism 14.2

Olefin Cross-Metathesis

THE OVERALL REACTION:

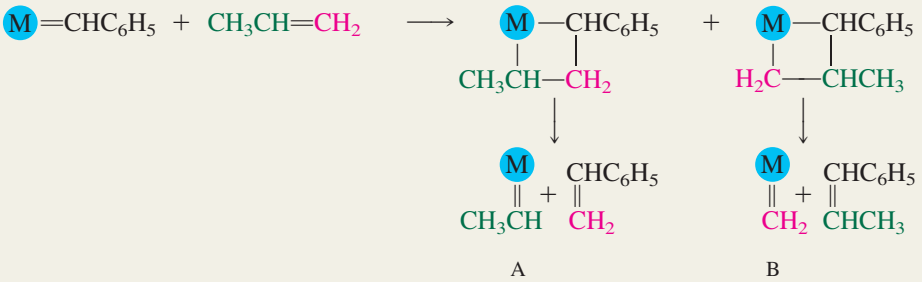
$$2CH_3CH{=}CH_2 \overset{\text{catalyst}}{\rightleftharpoons} H_2 + CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3$$

Propene — Ethylene — 2-Butene (cis + trans)

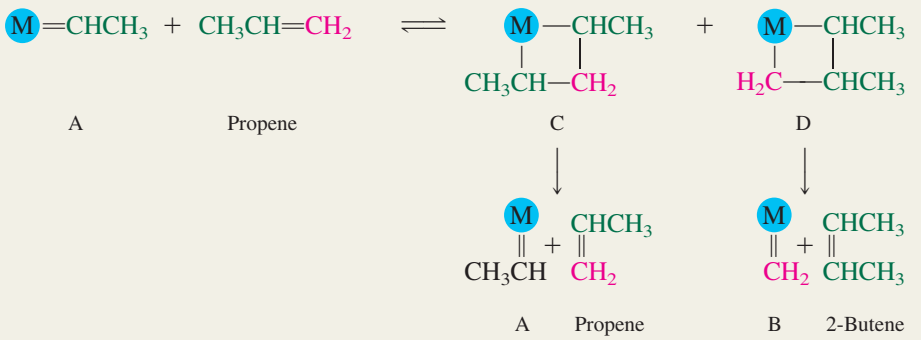
THE MECHANISM:

To simplify the presentation of the mechanism, the symbol M stands for the transition metal and its ligands. Steps have been omitted in which ligands leave or become attached to the metal; therefore, the number of ligands is not necessarily the same throughout a stage.

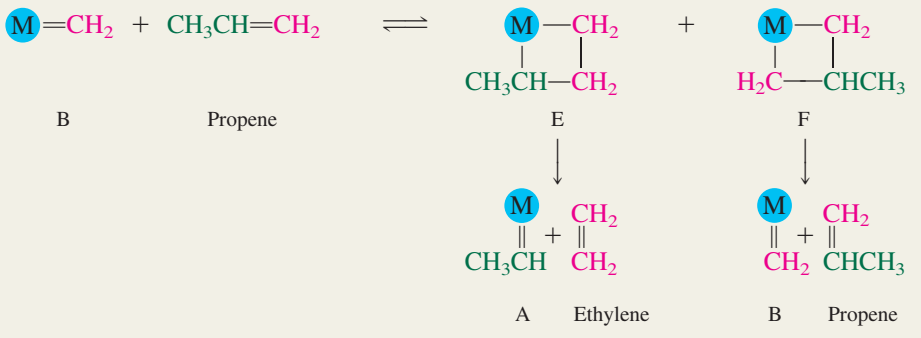
Stage 1: In this stage the sp^2-hybridized carbons of the alkene, with their attached groups, replace the benzylidene group of the catalyst. In the case of an unsymmetrical alkene such as propene, the two newly formed complexes (A and B) are different.



Stage 2: *Complex A:* Propene adds to the double bond of the complex to give metallocyclobutanes C and D. Dissociation of C gives propene + A. Dissociation of D gives 2-butene + B.



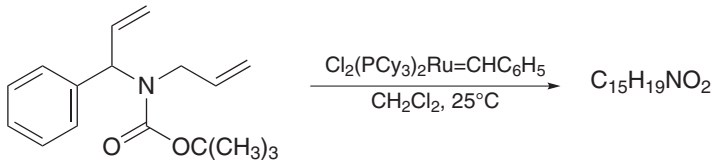
Complex B: Propene adds to the double bond of B to give metallocyclobutanes E and F. Dissociation of E gives ethylene + A. Dissociation of F gives propene + B.



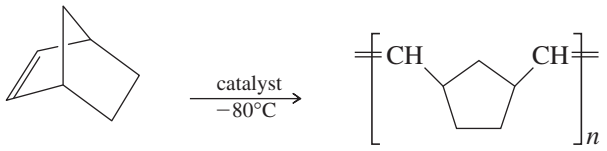
Stage 3: The two complexes A and B that react in stage 2 are also regenerated in the same stage. Thus, stage 3 is simply a repeat of stage 2 and the process continues.

Problem 14.19

The product of the following reaction was isolated in 99% yield. What is it?



Ring-opening metathesis is the converse of ring-closing metathesis and holds promise as a polymerization method. It is applied most often when ring opening is accompanied by relief of strain as in, for example, bicyclic alkenes.



Bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-2-ene — Polynorbornene

Norbornene is a common name for bicyclo[2.2.1]hept-2-ene

14.14 Ziegler–Natta Catalysis of Alkene Polymerization

In Section 6.14 we listed three main methods for polymerizing alkenes: cationic, free-radical, and coordination polymerization. In Section 7.16 we extended our knowledge of polymers to their stereochemical aspects by noting that although free-radical polymerization of propene gives atactic polypropylene, coordination polymerization produces a stereoregular polymer with superior physical properties. Because the catalysts responsible for coordination polymerization are organometallic compounds, we are now in a position to examine coordination polymerization in more detail, especially with respect to how the catalyst works.

In the early 1950s, Karl Ziegler, then at the Max Planck Institute for Coal Research in Germany, was studying the use of aluminum compounds as catalysts for the oligomerization of ethylene.

Ethylene — Ethylene oligomers

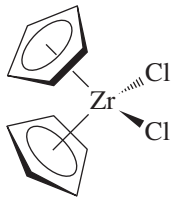
Ziegler found that adding certain metals or their compounds to the reaction mixture led to the formation of ethylene oligomers with 6–18 carbons, but others promoted the formation of very long carbon chains giving polyethylene. Both were major discoveries. The 6–18 carbon ethylene oligomers constitute a class of industrial organic chemicals known as *linear α olefins* that are produced at a rate of 3×10^9 pounds/year in the United States. The Ziegler route to polyethylene is even more important because it occurs at modest temperatures and pressures and gives *high-density polyethylene,* which has properties superior to the low-density material formed by the free-radical polymerization described in Section 6.14.

Ziegler had a working relationship with the Italian chemical company Montecatini, for which Giulio Natta of the Milan Polytechnic Institute was a consultant. When Natta used Ziegler's catalyst to polymerize propene, he discovered that the catalyst was not only effective but that it gave mainly isotactic polypropylene. (Recall from Section 7.16 that free-radical polymerization of propene gives atactic polypropylene.) Isotactic polypropylene has a higher melting point than the atactic form and can be drawn into fibers or molded into hard, durable materials.

The earliest Ziegler–Natta catalysts were combinations of titanium tetrachloride ($TiCl_4$) and diethylaluminum chloride [$(CH_3CH_2)_2AlCl$], but these have given way to more

Zirconium lies below titanium in the periodic table, so was an obvious choice in the search for other Ziegler–Natta catalysts.

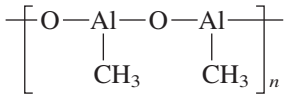
effective zirconium-based metallocenes, the simplest of which is bis(cyclopentadienyl)-zirconium dichloride (Section 14.9).



Bis(cyclopentadienyl)zirconium dichloride (Cp_2ZrCl_2)

Hundreds of analogs of Cp_2ZrCl_2 have been prepared and evaluated as catalysts for ethylene and propene polymerization. The structural modifications include replacing one or both of the cyclopentadienyl ligands by variously substituted cyclopentadienyl groups, linking the two rings with carbon chains, and so on. Some modifications give syndiotactic polypropylene, others give isotactic.

The metallocene catalyst is used in combination with a promoter, usually methylalumoxane (MAO).



Methylalumoxane (MAO)

Mechanism 14.3 outlines ethylene polymerization in the presence of Cp_2ZrCl_2. Step 1 describes the purpose of the MAO promoter, which is to transfer a methyl group to the metallocene to convert it to its catalytically active form. This methyl group will be incorporated into the growing polymer chain—indeed, it will be the end from which the rest of the chain grows.

The active form of the catalyst, having one less ligand and being positively charged, acts as an electrophile toward ethylene in step 2.

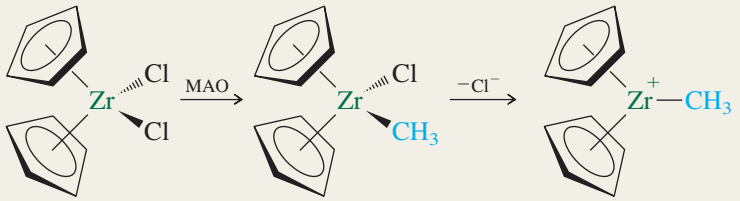
With electrons flowing from ethylene to zirconium, the Zr—CH_3 bond weakens, the carbons of ethylene become positively polarized, and the methyl group migrates from zirconium to one of the carbons of ethylene. Cleavage of the Zr—CH_3 bond is accompanied by formation of a σ bond between zirconium and one of the carbons of ethylene in step 3. The product of this step is a chain-extended form of the active catalyst, ready to accept another ethylene ligand and repeat the chain-extending steps.

Before coordination polymerization was discovered by Ziegler and applied to propene by Natta, there was no polypropylene industry. Now, more than 10^{10} pounds of it are prepared each year in the United States. Ziegler and Natta shared the 1963 Nobel Prize in Chemistry: Ziegler for discovering novel catalytic systems for alkene polymerization and Natta for stereoregular polymerization. We'll see more about Ziegler–Natta polymerization in Chapter 27 when we examine the properties of synthetic polymers in more detail.

Mechanism 14.3

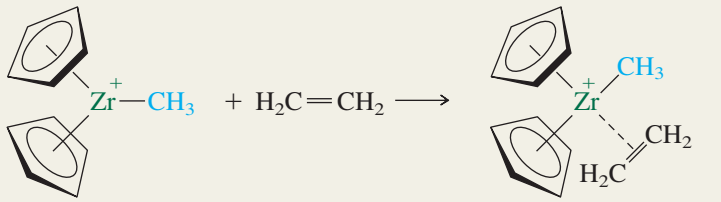
Polymerization of Ethylene in the Presence of Ziegler–Natta Catalyst

Step 1: Cp_2ZrCl_2 is converted to the active catalyst by reaction with the promoter methylalumoxane (MAO). A methyl group from MAO displaces one of the chlorine ligands of Cp_2ZrCl_2. The second chlorine is lost as chloride by ionization, giving a positively charged metallocene.



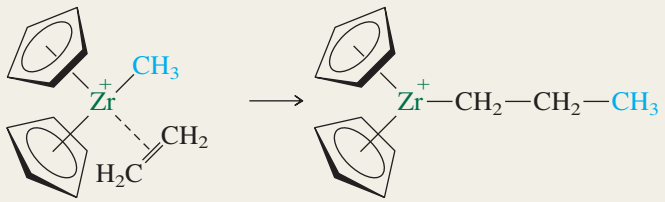
Cp_2ZrCl_2 Active form of catalyst

Step 2: Ethylene reacts with the active form of the catalyst. The two π electrons of ethylene are used to bind it as a ligand to zirconium.



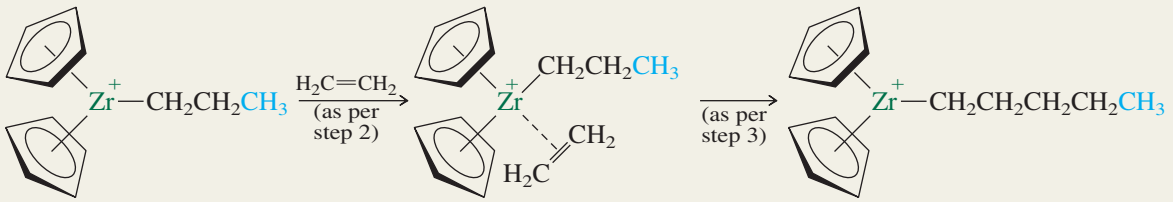
Active form of catalyst Ethylene Ethylene–catalyst complex

Step 3: The methyl group migrates from zirconium to one of the carbons of the ethylene ligand. At the same time, the π electrons of the ethylene ligand are used to form a σ bond between the other carbon and zirconium.



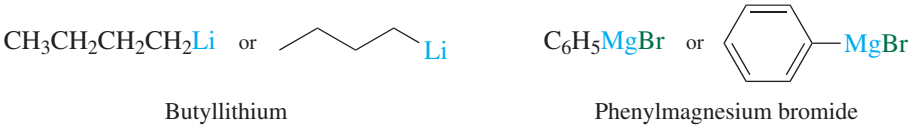
Ethylene–catalyst complex Chain-extended form of catalyst

Step 4: The catalyst now has a propyl group on zirconium instead of a methyl group. Repeating steps 2 and 3 converts the propyl group to a pentyl group, then a heptyl group, and so on. After thousands of repetitions, polyethylene results.



14.15 SUMMARY

Section 14.1 Organometallic compounds contain a carbon–metal bond. Those derived from main-group metals are named as alkyl or aryl derivatives of the metal.

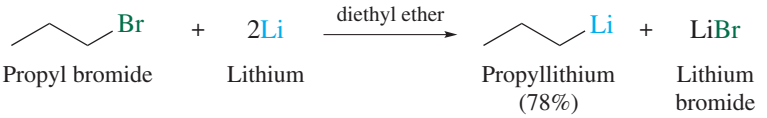


Butyllithium — Phenylmagnesium bromide

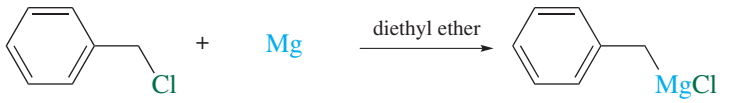
Section 14.2 Carbon is more electronegative than metals, and carbon–metal bonds are polarized so that carbon bears a partial to complete negative charge and the metal bears a partial to complete positive charge.

Methyllithium has a polar covalent carbon–lithium bond. — Sodium acetylide has an ionic bond between carbon and sodium.

Section 14.3 Organolithium compounds and Grignard reagents are prepared by reaction of the metal with an alkyl, aryl, or vinylic halide, usually in diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran as the solvent.

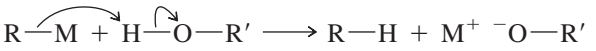


Propyl bromide — Lithium — Propyllithium (78%) — Lithium bromide



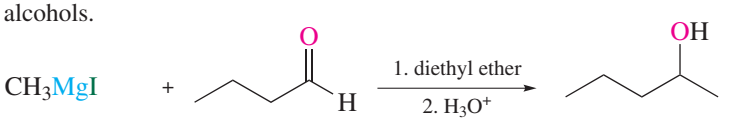
Benzyl chloride — Magnesium — Benzylmagnesium chloride (93%)

Section 14.4 Organolithium compounds and Grignard reagents are strong bases and react instantly with compounds that have —OH groups.



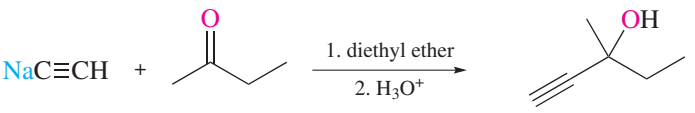
Therefore, these organometallic reagents cannot be used in solvents such as water or ethanol.

Section 14.5 The reaction of Grignard and organolithium reagents with carbonyl compounds is one of the most useful methods for making carbon–carbon bonds in synthetic organic chemistry. These reagents react with formaldehyde to yield primary alcohols, with aldehydes to give secondary alcohols, and with ketones to give tertiary alcohols.



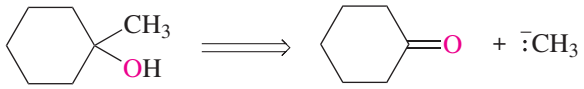
Methylmagnesium iodide — Butanal — 2-Pentanol (82%)

Section 14.6 The sodium salts of alkynes react with aldehydes and ketones in a manner analogous to that of Grignard and organolithium reagents.

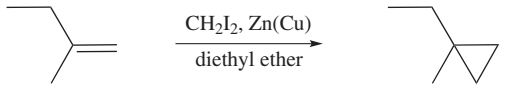


Sodium acetylide — 2-Butanone — 3-Methyl-1-pentyn-3-ol (72%)

Section 14.7 Retrosynthetic analysis of alcohols via Gignard and organolithium reagents begins with a disconnection of one of the groups attached to the carbon that bears the oxygen. The detached group is viewed as synthetically equivalent to a carbanion, and the structural unit from which it is disconnected becomes the aldehyde or ketone component.



Section 14.8 Methylene transfer from iodomethylzinc iodide to alkene is called the *Simmons–Smith reaction* and converts alkenes to cyclopropanes.

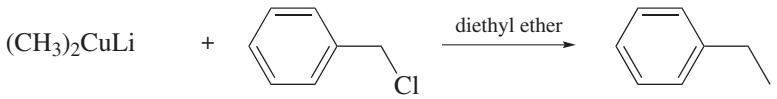


2-Methyl-1-butene — 1-Ethyl-1-methylcyclopropane (79%)

Stereospecific syn addition of a CH_2 group to the double bond occurs.

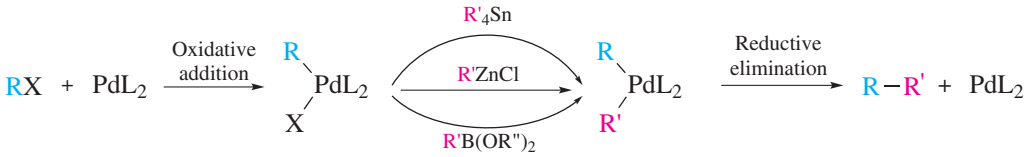
Section 14.9 Transition-metal complexes that contain one or more organic ligands offer a rich variety of structural types and reactivity. Organic ligands can be bonded to a metal by a σ bond or through its π system. The 18-electron rule is a guide to the number of ligands that may be attached to a particular metal.

Section 14.10 Lithium dialkylcuprates and diarylcuprates (R_2CuLi and Ar_2CuLi) are prepared by the reaction of a copper(I) salt with two equivalents of the corresponding organolithium reagent and undergo cross-coupling with primary alkyl halides and aryl and vinylic halides.

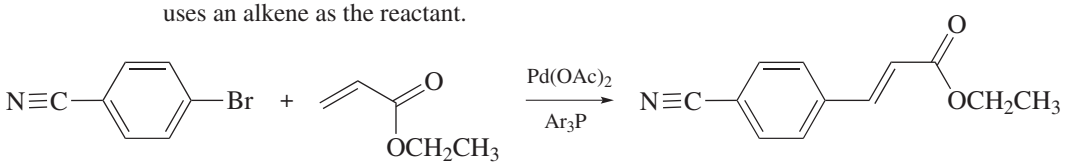


Lithium dimethylcuprate — Benzyl chloride — Ethylbenzene(80%)

Section 14.11 Certain formulations of Pd(0) are catalysts for a number of useful carbon–carbon bond-forming processes represented by the general equation:

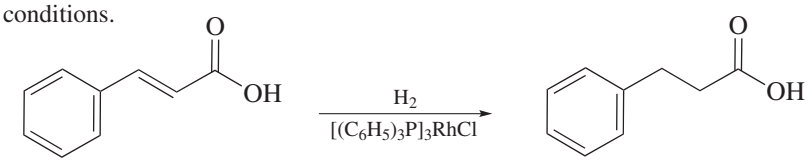


The various methods are known as the Stille, Negishi, or Suzuki cross couplings according to whether the organometallic component is a derivative of tin, zinc, or boron, respectively. The Heck reaction accomplishes the same transformation but uses an alkene as the reactant.



1-Bromo-4-cyanobenzene — Ethyl acrylate — Ethyl *p*-cyanocinnamate (70%)

Section 14.12 Organometallic compounds based on transition metals, especially rhodium and ruthenium, can catalyze the hydrogenation of alkenes under homogeneous conditions.



Cinnamic acid — 3-Phenylpropanoic acid (90%)

When a single enantiomer of a chiral catalyst is used, hydrogenations can be carried out with high enantioselectivity.

Section 14.13 The doubly bonded carbons of two alkenes exchange partners on treatment with transition-metal carbene complexes, especially those derived from ruthenium and tungsten.

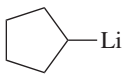
$$2R_2C{=}CR'_2 \xrightarrow[\text{catalyst}]{\text{Metallocarbene}} R_2C{=}CR_2 + R'_2C{=}CR'_2$$

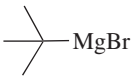
Among other applications **olefin metathesis** is useful in the synthesis of cyclic alkenes, the industrial preparation of propene, and in polymerization.

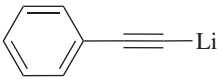
Section 14.14 Coordination polymerization of ethylene and propene has the biggest economic impact of any organic chemical process. Ziegler–Natta polymerization is carried out using catalysts derived from transition metals such as titanium and zirconium. π-Bonded and σ-bonded organometallic compounds are intermediates in coordination polymerization.

PROBLEMS

14.20 Suggest appropriate methods for preparing each of the following organometallic compounds from the starting material of your choice.


(a)


(b)


(c)

$(H_2C{=}CH)_2CuLi$

(d)

14.21 Given the reactants in the preceding problem, write the structure of the principal organic product of each of the following.

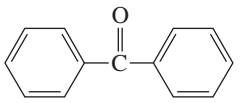
(a) Cyclopentyllithium with formaldehyde in diethyl ether, followed by dilute acid.

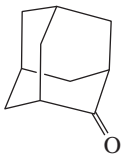
(b) *tert*-Butylmagnesium bromide with benzaldehyde in diethyl ether, followed by dilute acid.

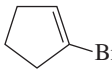
(c) Lithium phenylacetylide ($C_6H_5C{\equiv}CLi$) with cycloheptanone in diethyl ether, followed by dilute acid.

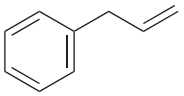
(d) Lithium divinylcuprate [$(H_2C{=}CH)_2CuLi$] with 2-bromonaphthalene.

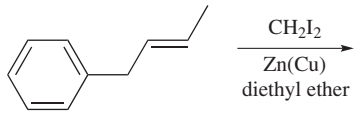
14.22 Predict the principal organic product of each of the following reactions:

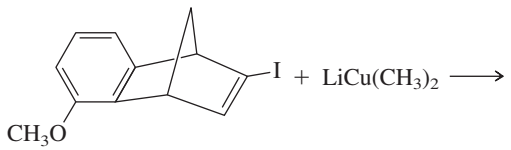
(a)  $+ NaC{\equiv}CH \xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+]{1.\ \text{liquid ammonia}}$

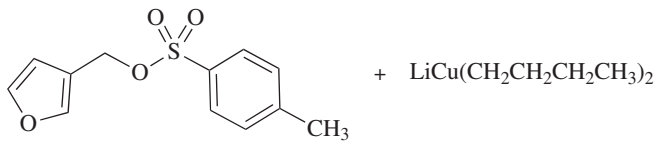
(b)  $+ CH_3CH_2Li \xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+]{1.\ \text{diethyl ether}}$

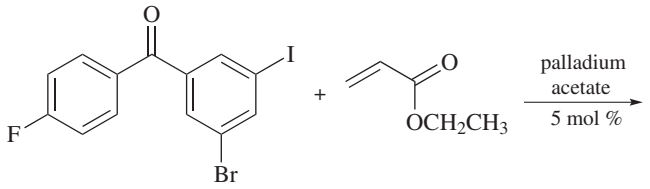
(c)  $\xrightarrow[\text{2. HCH}\ \ \text{3. } H_3O^+]{\text{1. Mg, THF}}$

(d)  $\xrightarrow[\text{diethyl ether}]{CH_2I_2,\ Zn(Cu)}$

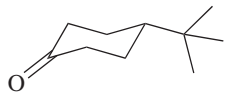
(e) 

(f) 

(g) 

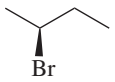
(h) 

14.23 Addition of phenylmagnesium bromide to 4-*tert*-butylcyclohexanone gives two isomeric tertiary alcohols as products. Both alcohols yield the same alkene when subjected to acid-catalyzed dehydration. Suggest reasonable structures for these two alcohols.

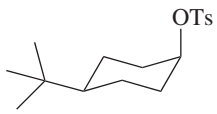


4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexanone

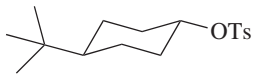
14.24 Reaction of lithium diphenylcuprate with optically active 2-bromobutane yields 2-phenylbutane, with high net inversion of configuration. When the 2-bromobutane used has the absolute configuration shown, will the 2-phenylbutane formed have the *R* or the *S* configuration?



14.25 A different stereoisomer of 1-*tert*-butyl-4-methylcyclohexane was formed when lithium dimethylcuprate was allowed to react with each of the compounds shown.



cis-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl *p*-toluenesulfonate



trans-4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl *p*-toluenesulfonate

Give the structure of the product from each reactant. One reactant gave a higher yield of the substitution product than the other (36% versus 6%). Which one? What was the major product in each reaction?

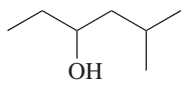
14.26 Using 1-bromobutane and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents, suggest efficient syntheses of each of the following alcohols:

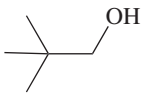
(a) 1-Pentanol
(b) 2-Hexanol
(c) 1-Phenyl-1-pentanol
(d) 1-Butylcyclobutanol

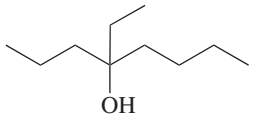
14.27 Using phenyllithium and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents, suggest efficient syntheses of each of the following:

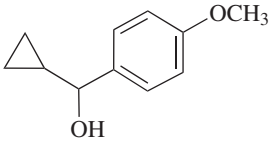
(a) Benzyl bromide
(b) 1-Bromo-1-phenylcyclohexane
(c) *trans*-2-Phenylcyclohexanol
(d) 2-Phenyl-1,3-butadiene

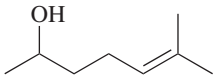
14.28 Apply retrosynthetic analysis to identify all the practical combinations of Grignard reagent and aldehyde or ketone that will give the required target.

(a) 

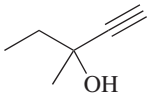
(c) 

(e) 

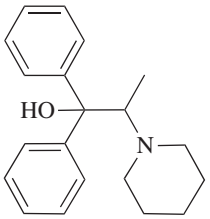
(b) 

(d) 

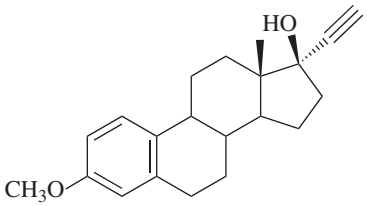
14.29 A number of drugs are prepared by reactions in which carbon–carbon bond formation is the last step. Indicate what you believe would be a reasonable last step in the synthesis of each of the following:



(a) Meparfynol: a mild hypnotic or sleep-inducing drug

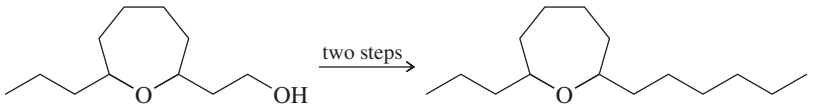


(b) Diphepanol: a cough suppresant

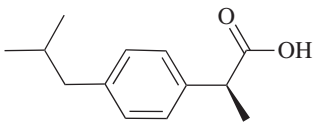


(c) Mestranol: an estrogenic component in oral contraceptives

14.30 The following conversion was carried out in two steps, the first of which involved formation of a *p*-toluenesulfonate. Indicate the reagents for this step, and show how you could convert the *p*-toluenesulfonate to the desired product.

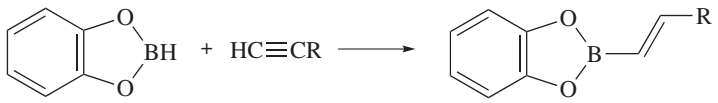


14.31 (*S*)-(+)-Ibuprofen can be prepared by enantioselective hydrogenation. Give the structure of the $C_{13}H_{16}O_2$ isomer you would select as a candidate for this reaction.

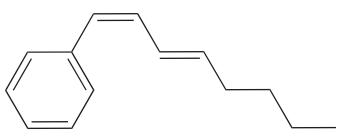


(*S*)-(+)-Ibuprofen

14.32 Like other hydroborations, the reaction of alkynes with catecholborane is a syn addition and its regioselectivity is opposite to Markovnikov's rule.

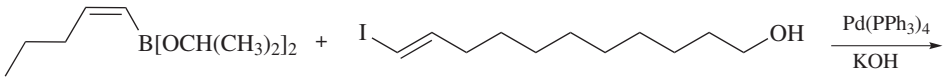


Use this fact to outline a synthesis of the compound shown from 1-hexyne and (*Z*)-$C_6H_5CH{=}CHBr$.

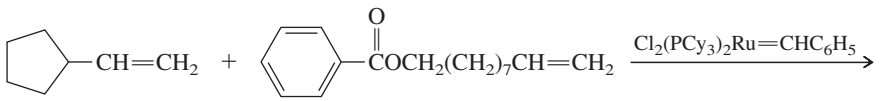


(1*Z*, 3*E*)-1-Phenyl-1,3-octadiene

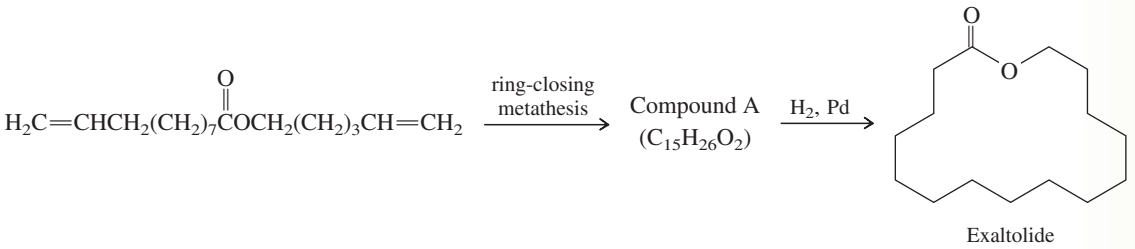
14.33 The sex attractant of the female silkworm has been synthesized by the reaction shown. What is its structure?



14.34 A compound having the molecular formula $C_{22}H_{32}O_2$ was isolated in 66% yield in the following reaction. Suggest a reasonable structure for this compound. What other organic compound is formed in this reaction?



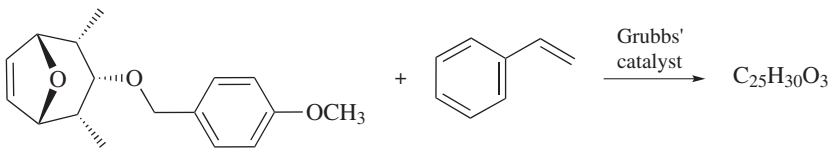
14.35 (a) *Exaltolide,* a musk substance, has been prepared by the reaction sequence shown. What is compound A?



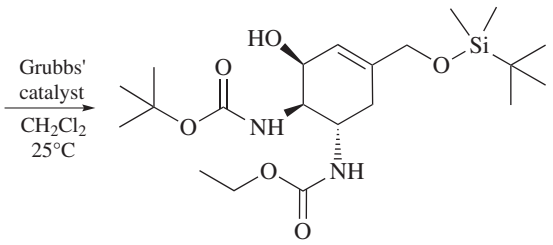
Exaltolide

(b) An analogous sequence using $H_2C{=}CHCH_2(CH_2)_2COCH_2(CH_2)_8CH{=}CH_2$ as the reactant also gives Exaltolide. What is the product of ring-closing metathesis of this reactant?

14.36 On treatment with a Grubbs' olefin metathesis catalyst, the compound shown reacted with styrene to give a 95% yield of a product with the molecular formula $C_{25}H_{30}O_3$, which was later used in the synthesis of a metabolite isolated from a species of mollusk. Suggest a reasonable structure for the metathesis product.



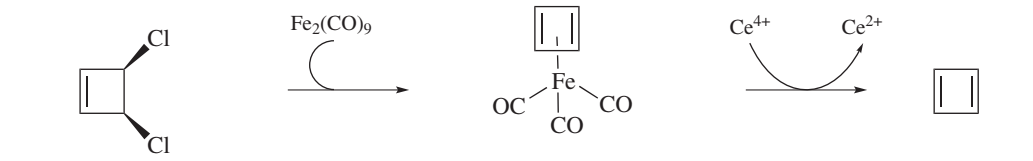
14.37 One synthetic advantage of olefin metathesis is that the catalyst tolerates a variety of functional groups in the reactant. In a synthesis of the antiinfluenza drug Tamiflu (oseltamivir), ring-closing metathesis was used to prepare the highly functionalized cyclohexene derivative shown. What was the reactant?



Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 14

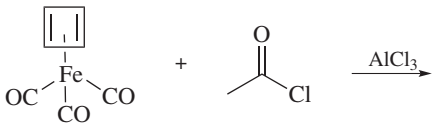
Cyclobutadiene and (Cyclobutadiene)tricarbonyliron

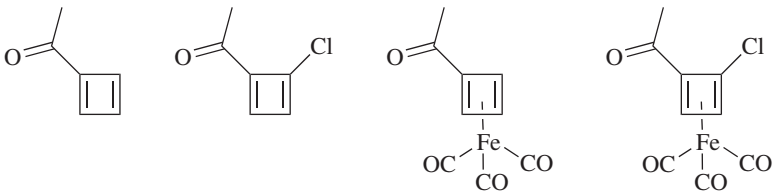
As we saw in Section 11.17, cyclobutadiene is antiaromatic and exceedingly difficult to prepare and study. Its successful preparation by Rowland Pettit (University of Texas) in 1965 demonstrated how transition-metal organometallic chemistry can provide access to novel reactions and structures. His approach was to prepare cyclobutadiene as a transition-metal complex, then destabilize the complex to trigger its dissociation. The sequence for cyclobutadiene begins with the reaction of *cis*-3,4-dichlorocyclobutene with diiron nonacarbonyl [$Fe_2(CO)_9$]. The resulting iron–cyclobutadiene complex satisfies the 18-electron rule, is stable, and undergoes a variety of reactions. Most importantly, oxidation with ceric ammonium nitrate (a source of Ce^{4+}) lowers the electron count from 18 to 16, causing the complex to dissociate and liberate free cyclobutadiene.



cis-3,4-Dichlorocyclobutene (Cyclobutadiene)tricarbonyliron Cyclobutadiene

14.38 The tricarbonyliron complex of cyclobutadiene is sufficiently stable to undergo reactions typical of aromatic hydrocarbons. What is the product of the reaction shown?



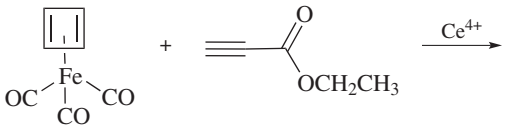


A. B. C. D.

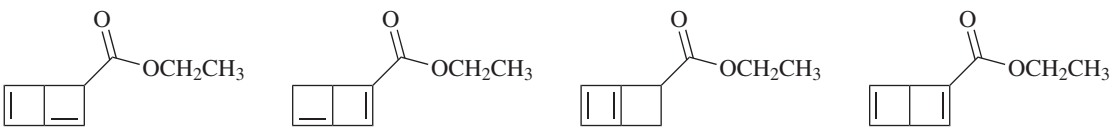
14.39 Once freed from its iron tricarbonyl complex, cyclobutadiene is unstable and dimerizes readily. The structure of the dimer is:

A. B. C. D.

14.40 Oxidation of (cyclobutadiene)tricarbonyliron with Ce^{4+} in the presence of ethyl propynoate yielded a product corresponding to a Diels–Alder adduct of cyclobutadiene and ethyl propynoate.

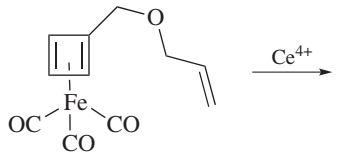


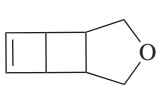
What is the structure of this product?



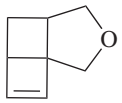
A. B. C. D.

14.41 The product of this reaction is formed by an intramolecular Diels–Alder cycloaddition. What is its structure?

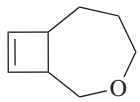




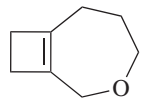
A.



B.

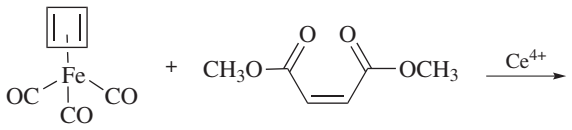


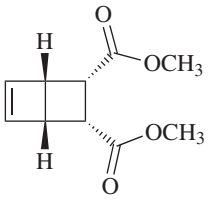
C.



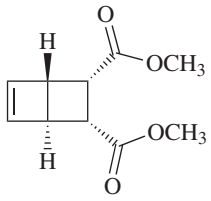
D.

14.42 What is the product of the following reaction?

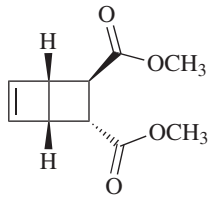




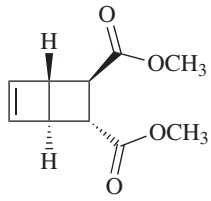
A.



B.

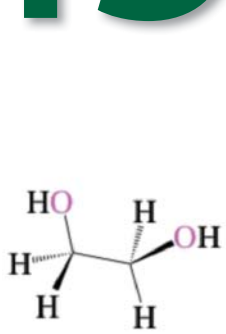


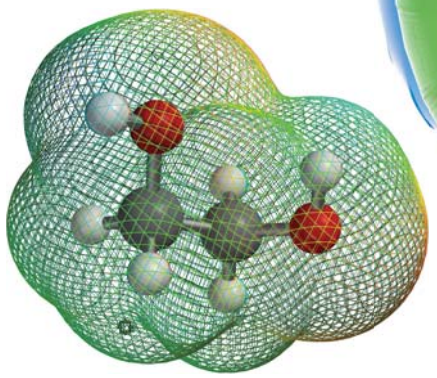
C.



D.

15





Helium-filled party balloons are made of Mylar, a polyester film made from 1,2-ethanediol (ethylene glycol) as one of the reactants.

CHAPTER OUTLINE

15.1 Sources of Alcohols 615
15.2 Preparation of Alcohols by Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones 617
15.3 Preparation of Alcohols by Reduction of Carboxylic Acids 620
15.4 Preparation of Alcohols from Epoxides 620
15.5 Preparation of Diols 621
15.6 Reactions of Alcohols: A Review and a Preview 623
15.7 Conversion of Alcohols to Ethers 624
15.8 Esterification 625
15.9 Oxidation of Alcohols 627
15.10 Biological Oxidation of Alcohols 629
■ **Sustainability and Organic Chemistry** 630
15.11 Oxidative Cleavage of Vicinal Diols 633
15.12 Thiols 634
15.13 Spectroscopic Analysis of Alcohols and Thiols 637
15.14 **Summary** 638
Problems 641
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 15: The Pinacol Rearrangement 646

Alcohols, Diols, and Thiols

The next several chapters deal with the chemistry of various oxygen-containing functional groups. The interplay of these important classes of compounds—alcohols, ethers, aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids, and derivatives of carboxylic acids—is fundamental to organic chemistry and biochemistry.

ROH	ROR′	$\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{}}$RCH	$\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{}}$RCR′	$\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{}}$RCOH
Alcohol	Ether	Aldehyde	Ketone	Carboxylic acid

We'll start by discussing in more detail a class of compounds already familiar to us, *alcohols.* Alcohols were introduced in Chapter 4 and have appeared regularly since then. With this chapter we extend our knowledge of alcohols, particularly with respect to their relationship to carbonyl-containing compounds. In the course of studying alcohols, we shall also look at some relatives. **Diols** are alcohols in which two hydroxyl groups (—OH) are present; **thiols** are compounds that contain an —SH group. **Phenols,** compounds of the type ArOH, share many properties in common with alcohols but are sufficiently different from them to warrant separate discussion in Chapter 22.

This chapter is a transitional one. It ties together much of the material encountered earlier and sets the stage for our study of other oxygen-containing functional groups in the chapters that follow.

15.1 Sources of Alcohols

At one time, the major source of *methanol* was as a byproduct in the production of charcoal from wood—hence, the name *wood alcohol.* Now, most of the more than 10 billion lb of methanol used annually in the United States is synthetic, prepared by reduction of carbon monoxide with hydrogen. Carbon monoxide is normally made from methane.

$$\underset{\text{Carbon monoxide}}{CO} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen}}{2H_2} \xrightarrow[400^\circ C]{ZnO/Cr_2O_3} \underset{\text{Methanol}}{CH_3OH}$$

The major use of methanol is in the preparation of formaldehyde as a starting material for various resins and plastics.

When vegetable matter ferments, its carbohydrates are converted to *ethanol* and carbon dioxide by enzymes present in yeast. Fermentation of barley produces beer; grapes give wine. The maximum ethanol content is on the order of 15%, because higher concentrations inactivate the enzymes, halting fermentation. Distillation of the fermentation broth gives "distilled spirits" of increased ethanol content. The characteristic flavors, odors, and colors of the various alcoholic beverages depend on both their origin and the way they are aged.

Synthetic ethanol and isopropyl alcohol are derived from petroleum by hydration of ethylene and propene, respectively.

Most alcohols of six carbons or fewer, as well as many higher alcohols, are commercially available at low cost. Some occur naturally; others are the products of efficient syntheses. Figure 15.1 presents the structures of a few naturally occurring alcohols. Table 15.1 summarizes the reactions encountered in earlier chapters that give alcohols and illustrates a thread that runs through the fabric of organic chemistry: *a reaction that is characteristic of one functional group often serves as a synthetic method for preparing another.*

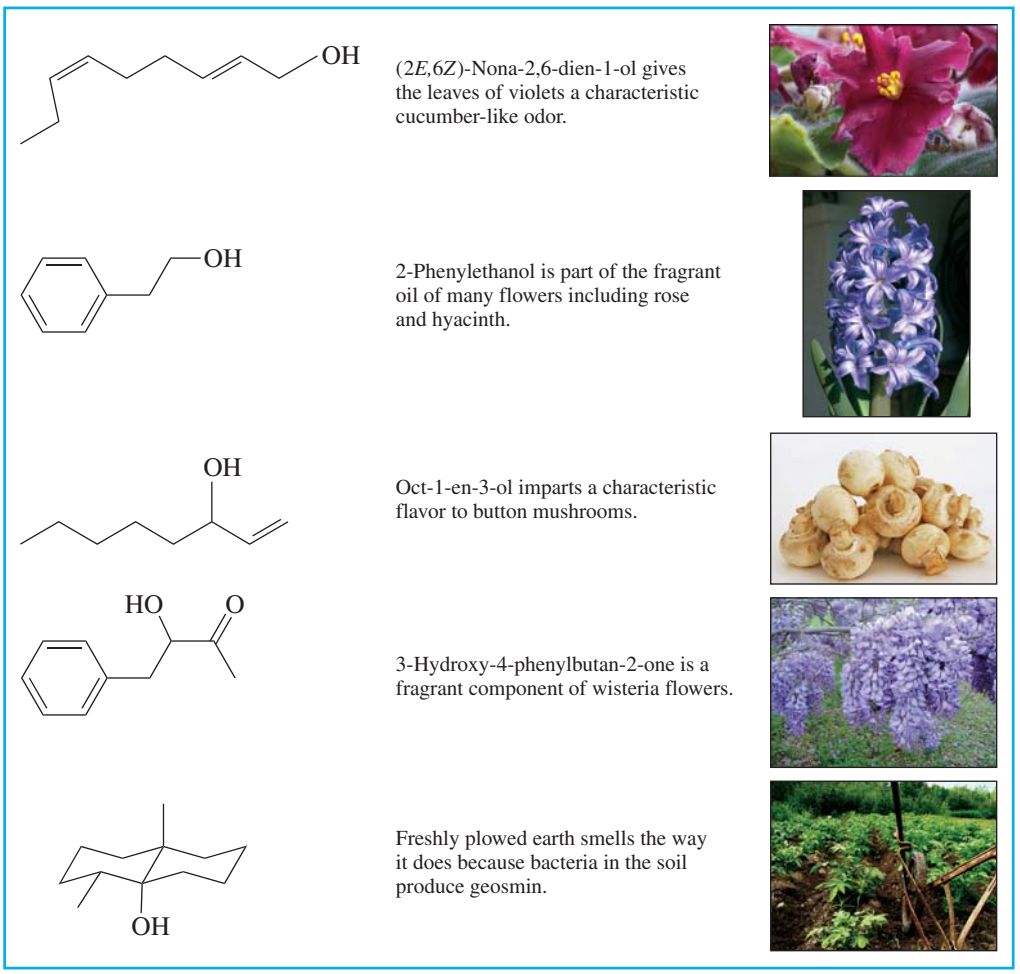
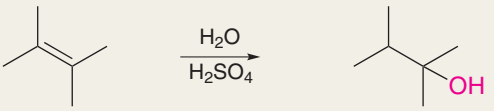
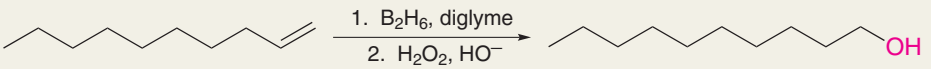
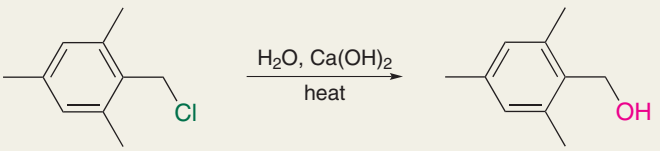
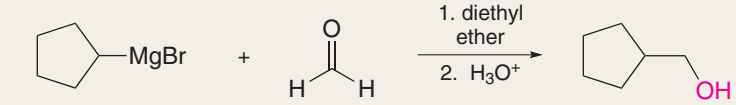
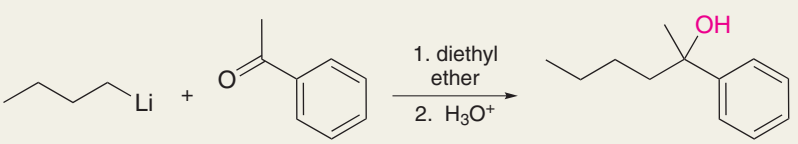


Figure 15.1

Several of the countless naturally occurring alcohols that stimulate our senses.

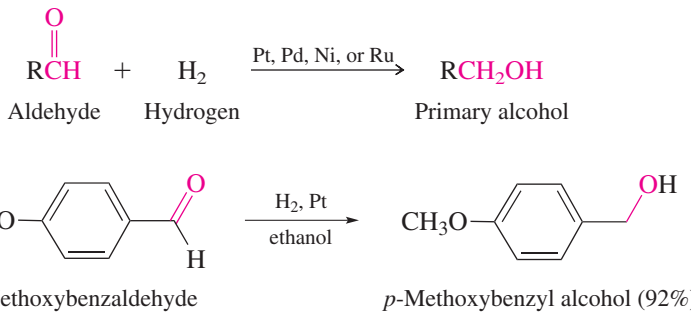
TABLE 15.1 Reactions Discussed in Earlier Chapters That Yield Alcohols

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Acid-catalyzed hydration of alkenes (Section 6.6) Water adds to the double bond in accordance with Markovnikov's rule.	$R_2C{=}CR_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+} R_2CCHR_2$ (OH) Alkene, Water, Alcohol  2-Methyl-2-butene; 2-Methyl-2-butanol (90%)
Hydroboration–oxidation of alkenes (Section 6.8) H and OH add to the double bond with a regioselectivity opposite to Markovnikov's rule. Addition is syn, and rearrangements do not occur.	$R_2C{=}CR_2 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2,\ HO^-]{1.\ B_2H_6,\ \text{diglyme}} R_2CCHR_2$ (OH) Alkene, Alcohol  1-Decene; 1-Decanol (93%)
Hydrolysis of alkyl halides (Section 8.1) A reaction useful only with alkyl halides that do not undergo E2 elimination readily. It is rarely used for the synthesis of alcohols, since alkyl halides are normally prepared from alcohols.	$RX + HO^- \longrightarrow ROH + X^-$ Alkyl halide, Hydroxide ion, Alcohol, Halide ion  2,4,6-Trimethylbenzyl chloride; 2,4,6-Trimethylbenzyl alcohol (78%)
Reaction of Grignard and organolithium reagents with aldehydes and ketones (Section 14.5) A method that allows for alcohol preparation with formation of new carbon–carbon bonds. Primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols are all accessible.	$RMgX \text{ or } RLi + \underset{R'}{\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}}\underset{R''}{} \xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+]{1.\ \text{diethyl ether}} \underset{R''}{\overset{R'}{R-C-OH}}$ Grignard or organolithium reagent; Aldehyde or ketone; Alcohol  Cyclopentylmagnesium bromide; Formaldehyde; Cyclopentylmethanol (62–64%)  Butyllithium; Acetophenone; 2-Phenyl-2-hexanol (67%)

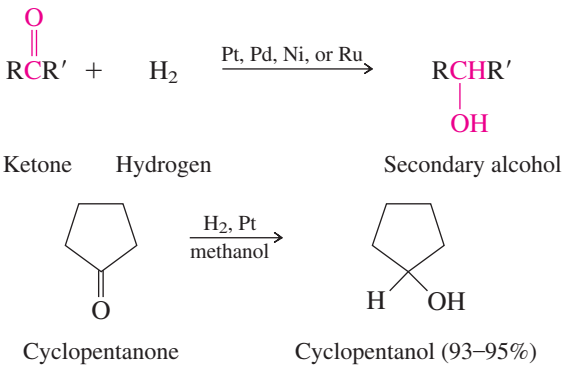
15.2 Preparation of Alcohols by Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones

The most obvious way to reduce an aldehyde or a ketone to an alcohol is by hydrogenation of the carbon–oxygen double bond. Like the hydrogenation of alkenes, the reaction is exothermic but exceedingly slow in the absence of a catalyst. Finely divided metals such as platinum, palladium, nickel, and ruthenium are effective catalysts for the hydrogenation of aldehydes and ketones. Aldehydes yield primary alcohols:

Recall from Section 2.19 that reduction corresponds to a decrease in the number of bonds between carbon and oxygen or an increase in the number of bonds between carbon and hydrogen (or both).



Ketones yield secondary alcohols:

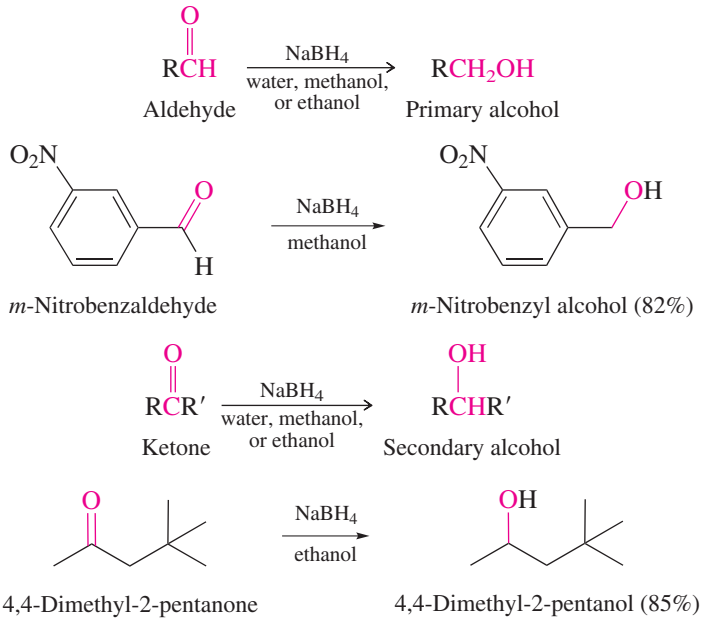


Problem 15.1

Which of the isomeric $C_4H_{10}O$ alcohols can be prepared by hydrogenation of aldehydes? Which can be prepared by hydrogenation of ketones? Which cannot be prepared by hydrogenation of a carbonyl compound?

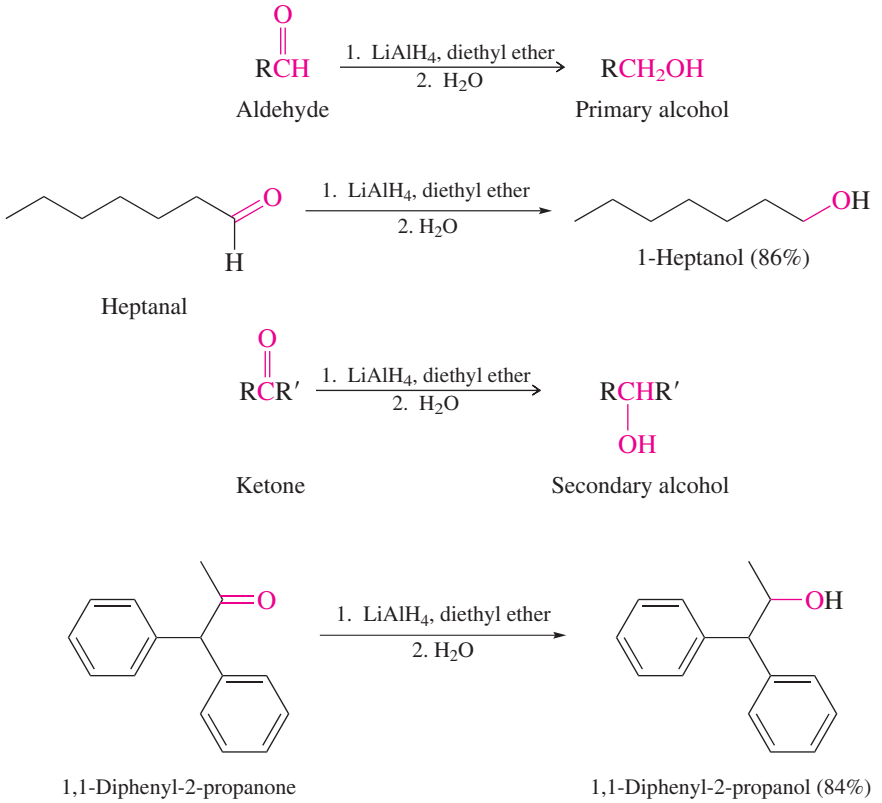
For most laboratory-scale reductions of aldehydes and ketones, catalytic hydrogenation has been replaced by methods based on metal hydride reducing agents. The two most common reagents are sodium borohydride and lithium aluminum hydride.

Sodium borohydride is especially easy to use, needing only to be added to an aqueous or alcoholic solution of an aldehyde or a ketone:

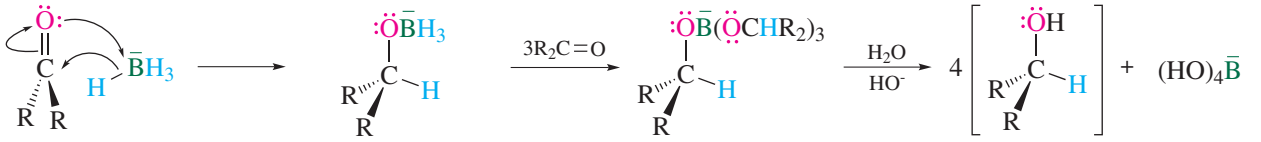


The same kinds of aprotic solvents are used for $LiAlH_4$ as for Grignard reagents.

Lithium aluminum hydride reacts violently with water and alcohols, so it must be used in solvents such as anhydrous diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran. Following reduction, a separate hydrolysis step is required to liberate the alcohol product:



Sodium borohydride and lithium aluminum hydride react with carbonyl compounds in much the same way that Grignard reagents do, except that they function as *hydride donors* rather than as carbanion sources. The sodium borohydride reduction of an aldehyde or ketone can be outlined as:



Aldehyde or ketone + borohydride ion | Alkoxyborohydride | Tetraalkoxyborate | Alcohol | Borate ion

Two points about the process bear special mention.

1. At no point is H_2 involved. The reducing agent is borohydride ion (BH_4^-).
2. In the reduction $R_2C{=}O \rightarrow R_2CHOH$, the hydrogen bonded to carbon comes from BH_4^-; the hydrogen on oxygen comes from an OH group of the solvent (water, methanol, or ethanol).

Problem 15.2

Sodium borodeuteride ($NaBD_4$) and lithium aluminum deuteride ($LiAlD_4$) are convenient reagents for introducing deuterium, the mass-2 isotope of hydrogen, into organic compounds. Write the structure of the organic product of the following reactions, clearly showing the position of all the deuterium atoms in each:

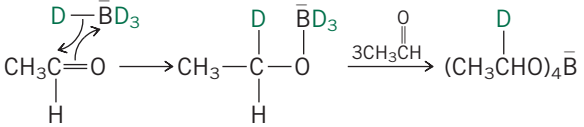
(a) Reduction of CH_3CH (acetaldehyde) with $NaBD_4$ in H_2O

(b) Reduction of CH_3CCH_3 (acetone) with $NaBD_4$ in CH_3OD

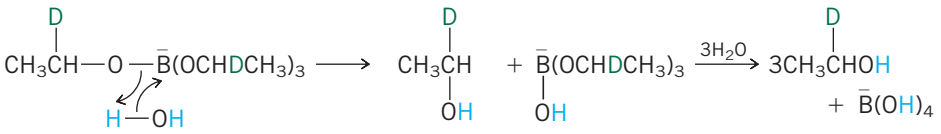
(c) Reduction of C_6H_5CH (benzaldehyde) with $NaBD_4$ in CD_3OH

(d) Reduction of HCH (formaldehyde) with $LiAlD_4$ in diethyl ether, followed by addition of D_2O

Sample Solution (a) Sodium borodeuteride transfers deuterium to the carbonyl group of acetaldehyde, forming a C—D bond.

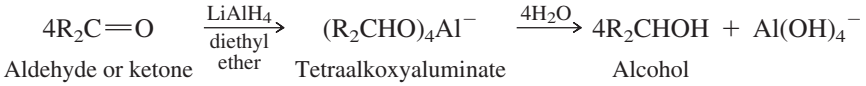


Hydrolysis of $(CH_3CHDO)_4B^-$ in H_2O leads to the formation of ethanol, retaining the C—D bond formed in the preceding step while forming an O—H bond.



Ethanol-1-*d*

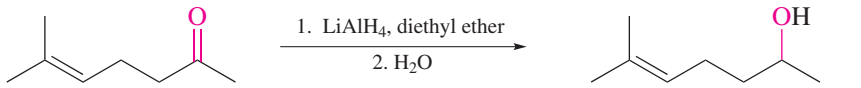
The mechanism of lithium aluminum hydride reduction of aldehydes and ketones is analogous to that of sodium borohydride except that the reduction and hydrolysis stages are independent operations. The reduction is carried out in diethyl ether, followed by a separate hydrolysis step when water is added to the reaction mixture.



Aldehyde or ketone | Tetraalkoxyaluminate | Alcohol

Neither sodium borohydride nor lithium aluminum hydride reduces isolated carbon–carbon double bonds. This makes possible the selective reduction of a carbonyl group in a molecule that contains both carbon–carbon and carbon–oxygen double bonds.

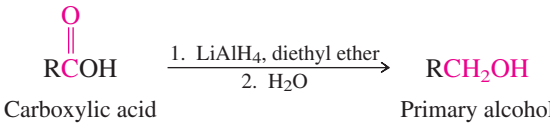
Catalytic hydrogenation would not be suitable for this transformation, because H_2 adds to carbon–carbon double bonds faster than it reduces carbonyl groups.



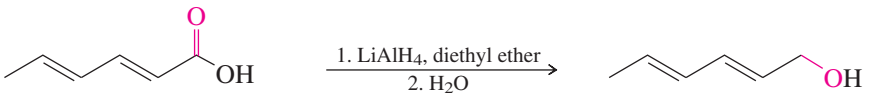
6-Methyl-5-hepten-2-one — 6-Methyl-5-hepten-2-ol (90%)

15.3 Preparation of Alcohols by Reduction of Carboxylic Acids

Carboxylic acids are exceedingly difficult to reduce. Acetic acid, for example, is often used as a solvent in catalytic hydrogenations because it is inert under the reaction conditions. Lithium aluminum hydride is one of the few reducing agents capable of reducing a carboxylic acid to a primary alcohol.



Carboxylic acid — Primary alcohol



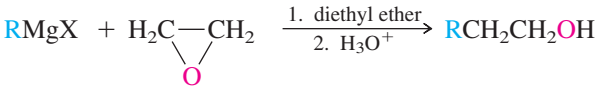
(2*E*,4*E*)-Hexa-2,4-dienoic acid — (2*E*,4*E*)-Hexa-2,4-dien-l-ol (92%)

Esters can also be reduced to alcohols with lithium aluminum hydride. We will examine this reaction in detail in Chapter 19.

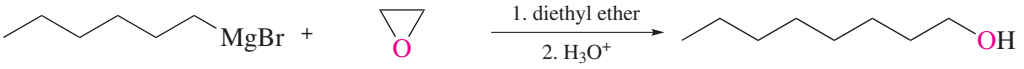
Sodium borohydride is not nearly as potent a hydride donor as lithium aluminum hydride and does not reduce carboxylic acids.

15.4 Preparation of Alcohols from Epoxides

Grignard reagents react with ethylene oxide to yield primary alcohols containing two more carbon atoms than the alkyl halide from which the organometallic compound was prepared.



Grignard reagent — Ethylene oxide — Primary alcohol



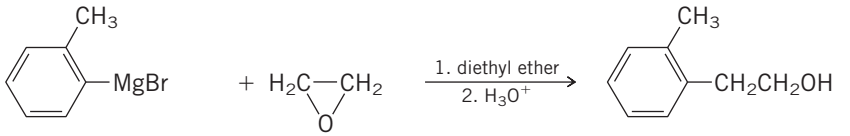
Hexylmagnesium bromide — Ethylene oxide — 1-Octanol (71%)

Organolithium reagents react with epoxides in a similar manner.

Problem 15.3

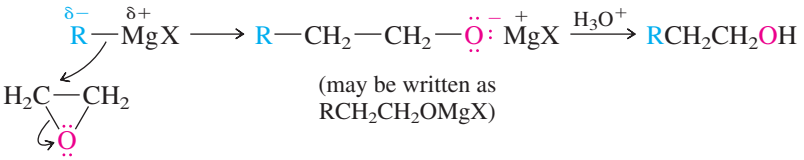
Each of the following alcohols has been prepared by reaction of a Grignard reagent with ethylene oxide. Select the appropriate Grignard reagent in each case.

Sample Solution (a) Reaction with ethylene oxide results in the addition of a $—CH_2CH_2OH$ unit to the Grignard reagent. The Grignard reagent derived from *o*-bromotoluene (or *o*-chlorotoluene or *o*-iodotoluene) is appropriate here.



o-Methylphenylmagnesium bromide | Ethylene oxide | 2-(*o*-Methylphenyl)ethanol (66%)

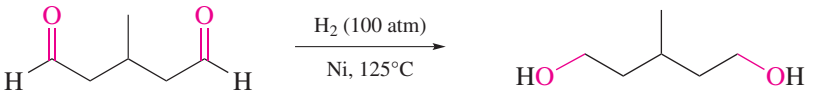
Epoxide rings are readily opened with cleavage of the carbon–oxygen bond when attacked by nucleophiles. Grignard reagents and organolithium reagents react with ethylene oxide by serving as sources of nucleophilic carbon. The mechanism resembles an S_N2 reaction. Cleavage of the epoxide C—O bond is analogous to the cleavage of the bond between carbon and a leaving group.



This kind of chemical reactivity of epoxides is rather general. Nucleophiles other than Grignard reagents react with epoxides, and epoxides more elaborate than ethylene oxide may be used. These features of epoxide chemistry will be discussed in Sections 16.11–16.13.

15.5 Preparation of Diols

Much of the chemistry of diols—compounds that bear two hydroxyl groups—is analogous to that of alcohols. Diols may be prepared, for example, from compounds that contain two carbonyl groups, using the same reducing agents employed in the preparation of alcohols. The following example shows the conversion of a dialdehyde to a diol by catalytic hydrogenation. Alternatively, the same transformation can be achieved by reduction with sodium borohydride or lithium aluminum hydride.



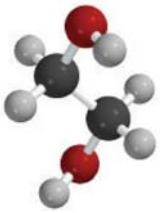
3-Methylpentanedial | 3-Methylpentane-1,5-diol (81-83%)

As can be seen in the preceding equation, the nomenclature of diols is similar to that of alcohols. The suffix *-diol* replaces *-ol,* and two locants, one for each hydroxyl group, are required. Note that the final *-e* of the parent alkane name is retained when the suffix begins with a consonant (*-diol*), but dropped when the suffix begins with a vowel (*-ol*).

Problem 15.4

Write an equation showing how 3-methylpentane-1,5-diol could be prepared from a dicarboxylic acid.

Vicinal diols are diols that have their hydroxyl groups on adjacent carbons. Two commonly encountered vicinal diols are ethane-1,2-diol and propane-1,2-diol.

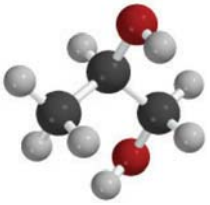


$HOCH_2CH_2OH$

Ethane-1,2-diol (ethylene glycol)

CH_3CHCH_2OH (OH)

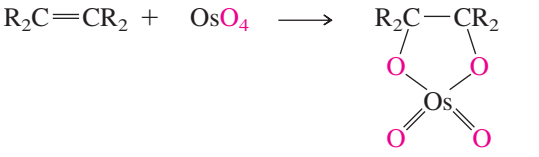
Propane-1,2-diol (propylene glycol)



Ethylene glycol and propylene glycol are prepared industrially from the corresponding alkenes by way of their epoxides.

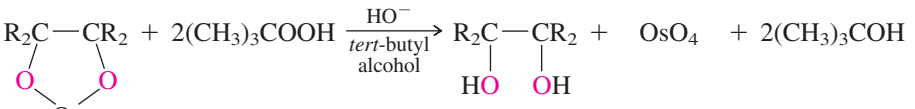
Ethylene glycol and *propylene glycol* are common names for these two diols and are acceptable IUPAC names. Aside from these two compounds, the IUPAC system does not use the word *glycol* for naming diols.

Vicinal diols are often prepared from alkenes using *osmium tetraoxide* (OsO_4). Osmium tetraoxide reacts rapidly with alkenes to give cyclic osmate esters.



Alkene — Osmium tetraoxide — Cyclic osmate ester

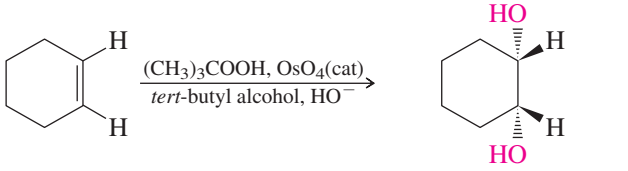
Osmate esters are fairly stable but are readily cleaved in the presence of an oxidizing agent such as *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide.



tert-Butyl hydroperoxide — Vicinal diol — Osmium tetraoxide — *tert*-Butyl alcohol

Because osmium tetraoxide is regenerated in this step, alkenes can be converted to vicinal diols using only catalytic amounts of osmium tetraoxide in a single operation by simply allowing a solution of the alkene and *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide in *tert*-butyl alcohol containing a small amount of osmium tetraoxide and base to stand for several hours.

Overall, the reaction leads to addition of two hydroxyl groups to the double bond and is referred to as **dihydroxylation.** Both hydroxyl groups of the diol become attached to the same face of the double bond; *syn dihydroxylation of the alkene is observed.*



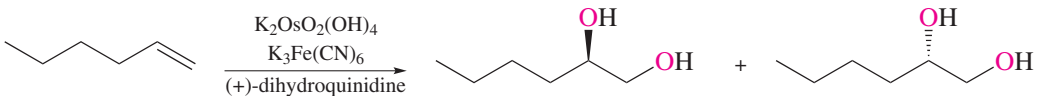
Cyclohexene — *cis*-1,2-Cyclohexanediol (62%)

Problem 15.5

Give the structures, including stereochemistry, for the diols obtained by dihydroxylation of *cis*-2-butene and *trans*-2-butene.

Enantioselective dihydroxylation is one aspect of novel oxidation methods developed by K. Barry Sharpless (Scripps Institute). Sharpless shared the 2001 Nobel Prize in Chemistry with William S. Knowles and Ryogi Noyori (Section 14.12).

Osmium-catalyzed dihydroxylation of alkenes can be carried out with high enantioselectivity as illustrated by the following equation:



1-Hexene — (*R*)-1,2-Hexanediol (90%) — (*S*)-1,2-Hexanediol (10%)

The chiral reactant in this example was the naturally occurring and readily available alkaloid (+)-dihydroquinidine.

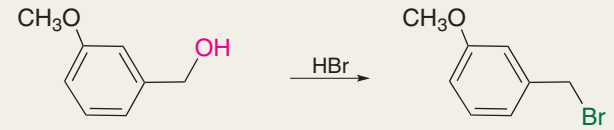
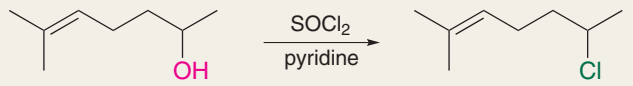
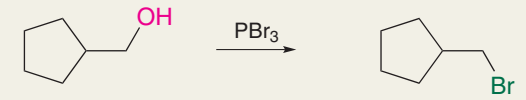
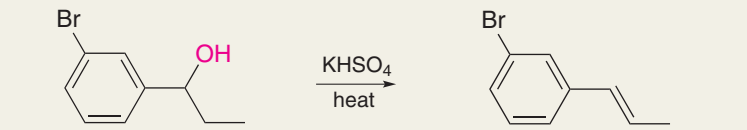
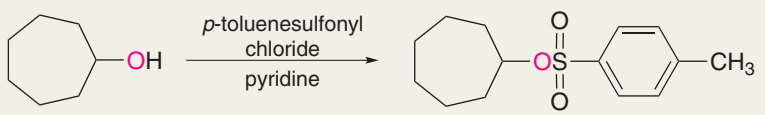
Problem 15.6

When *trans*-2-Butene was subjected to enantioselective dihydroxylation the 2,3-butanediol that was formed had the (*R*)-configuration at one carbon. What was the configuration at the other?

15.6 Reactions of Alcohols: A Review and a Preview

Alcohols are versatile starting materials for the preparation of a variety of organic functional groups. Several reactions of alcohols have already been seen in earlier chapters and are summarized in Table 15.2. The remaining sections of this chapter add to the list.

TABLE 15.2 Reactions of Alcohols Discussed in Earlier Chapters

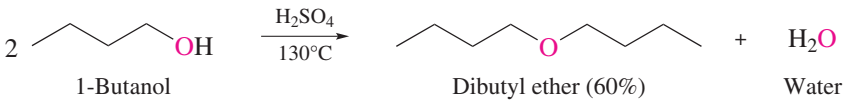
Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Reaction with hydrogen halides (Section 4.7) Alcohols react with hydrogen halides to give alkyl halides.	ROH + HX → RX + H_2O Alcohol; Hydrogen halide; Alkyl halide; Water  *m*-Methoxybenzyl alcohol → *m*-Methoxybenzyl bromide (98%)
Reaction with thionyl chloride (Section 4.12) Thionyl chloride converts alcohols to alkyl chlorides.	ROH + $SOCl_2$ → RX + SO_2 + HCl Alcohol; Thionyl chloride; Alkyl chloride; Sulfur dioxide; Hydrogen chloride  6-Methyl-5-hepten-2-ol → 6-Chloro-2-methyl-2-heptene (67%)
Reaction with phosphorus tribromide (Section 4.12) Phosphorus tribromide converts alcohols to alkyl bromides.	ROH + PBr_3 → 3RBr + H_3PO_3 Alcohol; Phosphorus tribromide; Alkyl bromide; Phosphorous acid  Cyclopentylmethanol → (Bromomethyl)cyclopentane (50%)
Acid-catalyzed dehydration (Section 5.9) Frequently used for the preparation of alkenes. The order of alcohol reactivity parallels the order of carbocation stability: $R_3C^+ > R_2CH^+ > RCH_2^+$. Benzylic alcohols react readily. Rearrangements are sometimes observed.	R_2CCHR_2 (OH) $\xrightarrow[\text{heat}]{H^+}$ $R_2C{=}CR_2$ + H_2O Alcohol; Alkene; Water  1-(*m*-Bromophenyl)-1-propanol → 1-(*m*-Bromophenyl)propene (71%)
Conversion to *p*-toluenesulfonates (Section 8.11) Alcohols react with *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride to give *p*-toluenesulfonates. These compounds are often called *tosylates* and are used instead of alkyl halides in nucleophilic substitution and elimination reactions.	ROH + H_3C–C_6H_4–SO_2Cl → RO–S(=O)(=O)–C_6H_4–CH_3 + HCl Alcohol; *p*-Toluenesulfonyl chloride; Alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonate; Hydrogen chloride  Cycloheptanol → Cycloheptyl *p*-toluenesulfonate (83%)

15.7 Conversion of Alcohols to Ethers

Primary alcohols are converted to ethers on heating in the presence of an acid catalyst, usually sulfuric acid.

$$\underset{\text{Primary alcohol}}{2RCH_2OH} \xrightarrow{H^+,\ \text{heat}} \underset{\text{Dialkyl ether}}{RCH_2OCH_2R} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O}$$

This kind of reaction is called a **condensation**—two molecules combine to form a larger one plus some smaller molecule. Here, two alcohol molecules combine to give an ether and water.



When applied to the synthesis of ethers, the reaction is effective only with primary alcohols. Elimination to form alkenes predominates with secondary and tertiary alcohols.

The individual steps in the formation of diethyl ether are outlined in Mechanism 15.1 and each is analogous to steps seen in earlier mechanisms. Both the first and the last steps

Mechanism 15.1

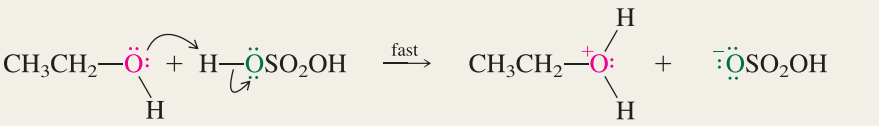
Acid-Catalyzed Formation of Diethyl Ether from Ethyl Alcohol

THE OVERALL REACTION:

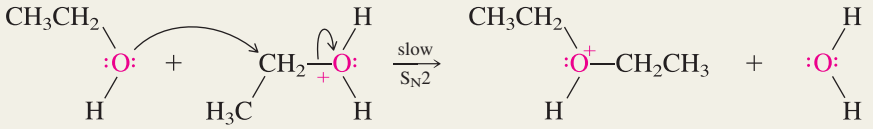
$$\underset{\text{Ethanol}}{2CH_3CH_2OH} \xrightarrow[140°C]{H_2SO_4} \underset{\text{Diethyl ether}}{CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O}$$

THE MECHANISM:

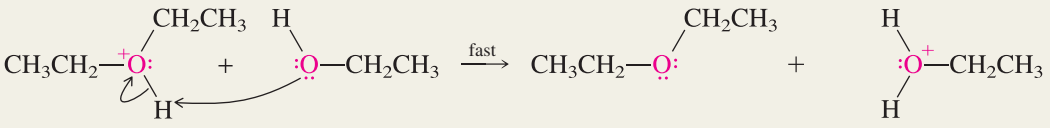
Step 1: Proton transfer from the acid catalyst (sulfuric acid) to the oxygen of the alcohol to produce an alkyloxonium ion.



Step 2: Nucleophilic attack by a molecule of alcohol on the alkyloxonium ion formed in step 1.

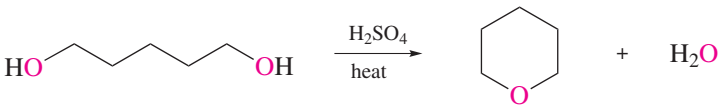


Step 3: The product of step 2 is the conjugate acid of the dialkyl ether. It is deprotonated in the final step of the process to give the ether.



are proton-transfers between oxygens. Reaction of a protonated alcohol with a nucleophile was encountered in the reaction of primary alcohols with hydrogen halides (Section 4.11), and the nucleophilic properties of alcohols were discussed in the context of solvolysis reactions (Section 8.5).

Diols react intramolecularly to form cyclic ethers when a five-membered or six-membered ring can result.



1,5-Pentanediol — Oxane (75%) — Water

Oxane is also called tetrahydropyran.

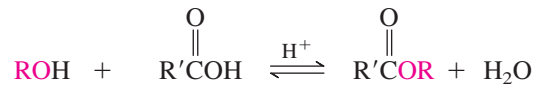
In these intramolecular ether-forming reactions, the alcohol may be primary, secondary, or tertiary.

Problem 15.7

On the basis of the acid-catalyzed formation of diethyl ether from ethanol in Mechanism 15.1, write a stepwise mechanism for the formation of oxane from 1,5-pentanediol.

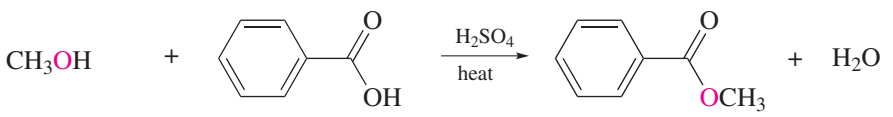
15.8 Esterification

Acid-catalyzed condensation of an alcohol and a carboxylic acid yields an ester and water and is known as the **Fischer esterification.**



Alcohol — Carboxylic acid — Ester — Water

Fischer esterification is reversible, and the position of equilibrium usually lies slightly to the side of products. For preparative purposes, the position of equilibrium can be made more favorable by using either the alcohol or the carboxylic acid in excess. In the following example, in which an excess of the alcohol was employed, the yield indicated is based on the carboxylic acid as the limiting reactant.

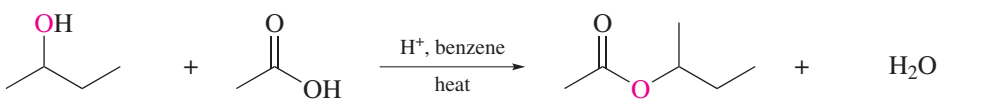


Methanol (0.6 mol) — Benzoic acid (0.1 mol) — Methyl benzoate (70% yield based on benzoic acid) — Water

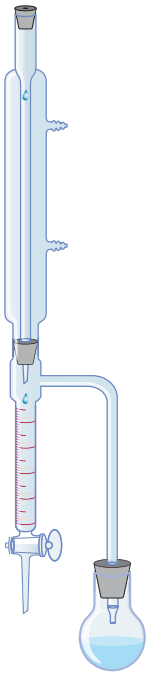
Mechanism 18.1 shows the mechanism of this reaction.

Another way to shift the position of equilibrium to favor ester formation is to remove water from the reaction mixture by using benzene as a cosolvent and distilling the azeotropic mixture of benzene and water. This can be accomplished in the laboratory with a Dean–Stark trap.

An *azeotropic mixture* contains two or more substances that distill together at a constant boiling point. The benzene–water azeotrope contains 9% water and boils at 69°C.



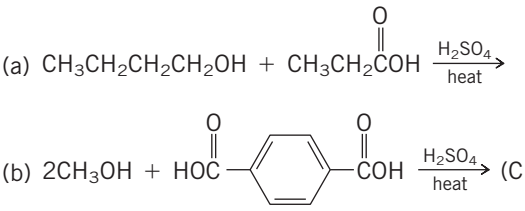
sec-Butyl alcohol (0.20 mol) — Acetic acid (0.25 mol) — *sec*-Butyl acetate (71% yield based on *sec*-butyl alcohol) — Water (codistills with benzene)



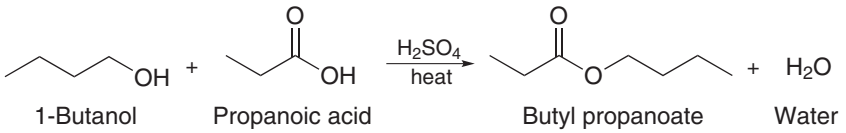
A reaction apparatus with a Dean–Stark trap. The water is denser than the ester–benzene mixture, and collects in the side arm of the trap.

Problem 15.8

Write the structure of the ester formed in each of the following reactions:

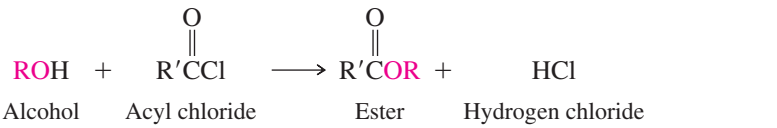


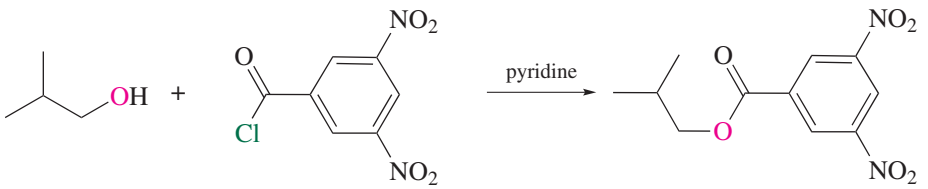
Sample Solution (a) By analogy to the general equation and to the examples cited in this section, we can write the equation



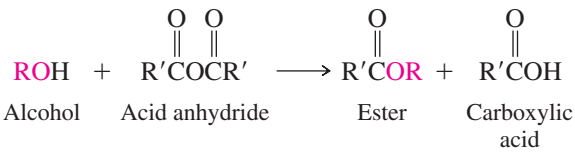
As actually carried out in the laboratory, 3 mol of propanoic acid was used per mole of 1-butanol, and the desired ester was obtained in 78% yield.

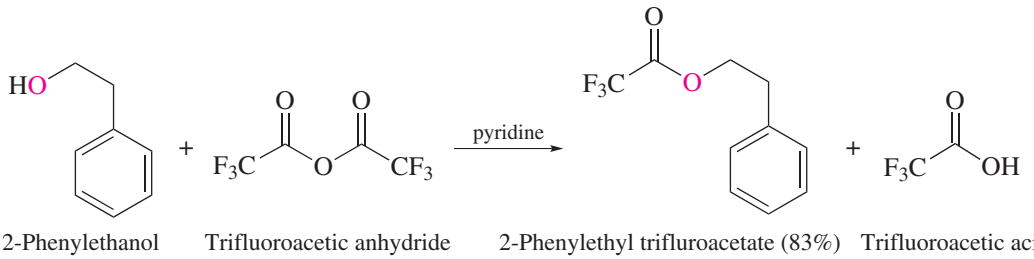
Esters are also formed by the reaction of alcohols with acyl chlorides, usually in the presence of a weak base such as pyridine.



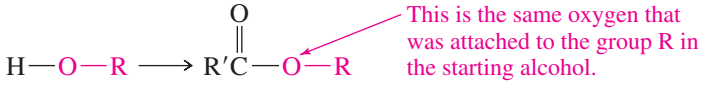


Acid anhydrides react similarly to acyl chlorides.

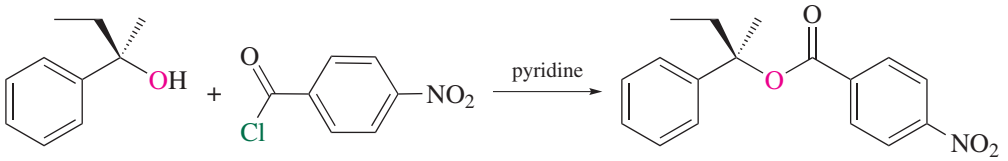




The mechanisms of the Fischer esterification and the reactions of alcohols with acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides will be discussed in detail in Chapters 18 and 19 after some fundamental principles of carbonyl group reactivity have been developed. For the present, it is sufficient to point out that most of the reactions that convert alcohols to esters leave the C—O bond of the alcohol intact.



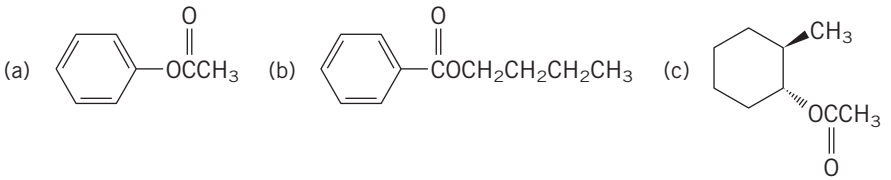
The acyl group of the carboxylic acid, acyl chloride, or acid anhydride is transferred to the oxygen of the alcohol. This fact is most clearly evident in the esterification of chiral alcohols, where, because none of the bonds to the chirality center is broken in the process, *retention of configuration occurs.*



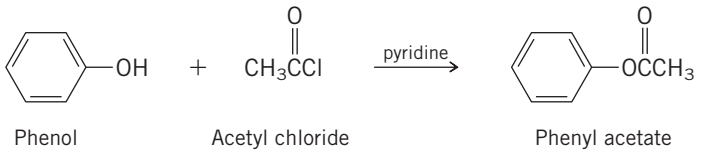
(*R*)-(+)-2-Phenyl-2-butanol | *p*-Nitrobenzoyl chloride | (*R*)-(-)-1-Methyl-1-phenylpropyl *p*-nitrobenozoate (63%)

Problem 15.9

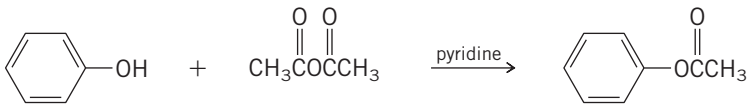
From what alcohol and acyl chloride can the following esters be synthesized? From what alcohol and acid anhydride?



Sample Solution (a) The oxygen that has a single bond to the carbonyl carbon is the alcohol oxygen, and the carbonyl carbon is part of the acyl chloride or anhydride. The compound in part (a) is phenyl acetate, and it can be prepared from phenol and acetyl chloride, or acetic anhydride.



Phenol | Acetyl chloride | Phenyl acetate

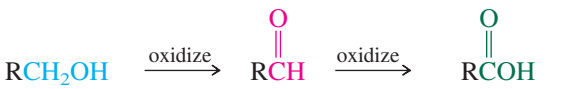


Phenol | Acetic anhydride | Phenyl acetate

15.9 Oxidation of Alcohols

Oxidation of an alcohol yields a carbonyl compound. Whether the resulting carbonyl compound is an aldehyde, a ketone, or a carboxylic acid depends on the alcohol and on the oxidizing agent.

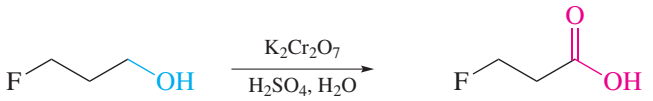
Primary alcohols are oxidized either to an aldehyde or to a carboxylic acid:



Primary alcohol | Aldehyde | Carboxylic acid

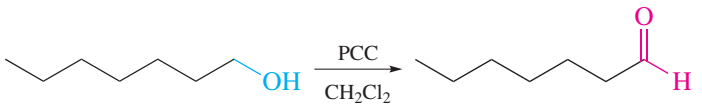
Vigorous oxidation leads to the formation of a carboxylic acid, but a number of methods permit us to stop the oxidation at the intermediate aldehyde stage. The reagents most commonly used for oxidizing alcohols are based on high-oxidation-state transition metals, particularly chromium(VI).

Chromic acid (H_2CrO_4) is a good oxidizing agent and is formed when solutions containing chromate (CrO_4^{2-}) or dichromate ($Cr_2O_7^{2-}$) are acidified. Sometimes it is possible to obtain aldehydes in satisfactory yield before they are further oxidized, but in most cases carboxylic acids are the major products isolated on treatment of primary alcohols with chromic acid.

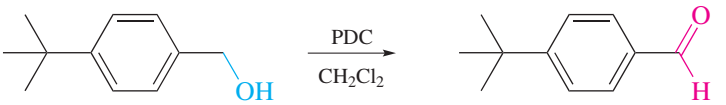


3-Fluoro-1-propanol 3-Fluoropropanoic acid (74%)

Conditions that do permit the easy isolation of aldehydes in good yield by oxidation of primary alcohols employ various Cr(VI) species as the oxidant in *anhydrous* media. Two such reagents are pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC), $C_5H_5NH^+\ ClCrO_3^-$, and pyridinium dichromate (PDC), $(C_5H_5NH)_2^{2+}\ Cr_2O_7^{2-}$; both are used in dichloromethane.

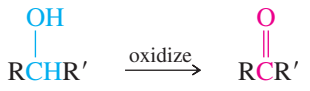


1-Heptanol Heptanal (78%)

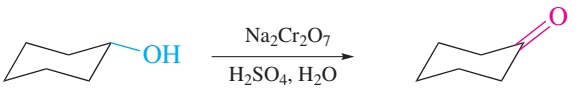


p-tert-Butylbenzyl alcohol *p-tert*-Butylbenzaldehyde (94%)

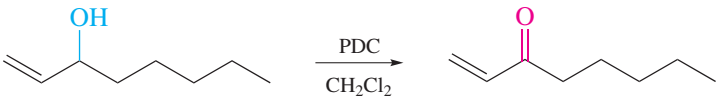
Secondary alcohols are oxidized to ketones by the same reagents that oxidize primary alcohols:



Secondary alcohol Ketone



Cyclohexanol Cyclohexanone (85%)



1-Octen-3-ol 1-Octen-3-one (80%)

Tertiary alcohols lack an H—C—O unit and are not as readily oxidized. When oxidation does occur (stronger oxidizing agents and/or higher temperatures) complex mixtures of products result.

Problem 15.10

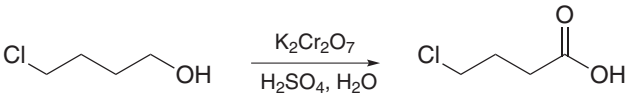
Predict the principal organic product of each of the following reactions:

(a) $ClCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2OH \xrightarrow[H_2SO_4,\ H_2O]{K_2Cr_2O_7}$

(b) $CH_3CHCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3 \xrightarrow[H_2SO_4,\ H_2O]{Na_2Cr_2O_7}$ (OH on the second carbon)

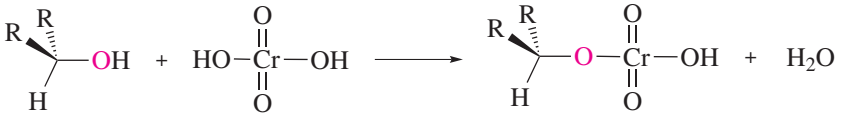
(c) $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2OH \xrightarrow[CH_2Cl_2]{PCC}$

Sample Solution (a) The reactant is a primary alcohol and so can be oxidized either to an aldehyde or to a carboxylic acid. Aldehydes are the major products only when the oxidation is carried out in anhydrous media. Carboxylic acids are formed when water is present. The reaction shown produced 4-chlorobutanoic acid in 56% yield.



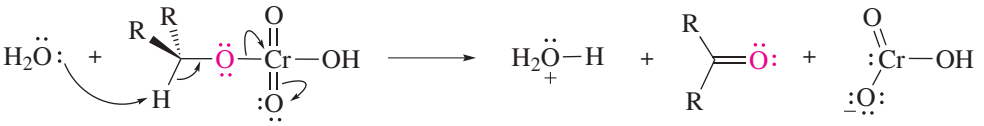
4-Chloro-1-butanol 4-Chlorobutanoic acid

The mechanism of chromic acid oxidation is complicated, but can be summarized as a combination of two stages. In the first, the alcohol and chromic acid react to give a chromate ester.



Alcohol Chromic acid Alkyl chromate Water

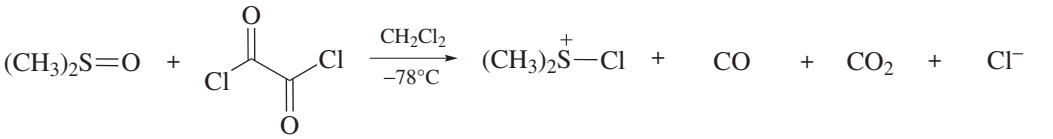
Next, the chromate ester undergoes a β elimination in which a proton is removed from carbon while the Cr—O bond breaks.



Water Alkyl chromate Hydronium ion Aldehyde or ketone Chromite ion

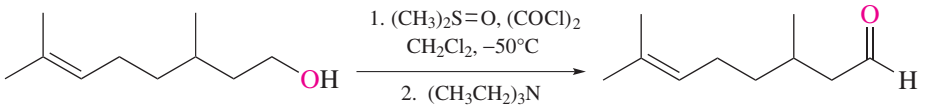
The second step is slower than the first as evidenced by the observation that $(CH_3)_2CHOH$ reacts almost seven times faster than $(CH_3)_2CDOH$. An H/D kinetic isotope effect this large is consistent with rate-determining carbon–hydrogen bond cleavage (Section 5.17).

As an alternative to chromium-based oxidants, chemists have developed other reagents for oxidizing alcohols, several of which are based on chlorodimethylsulfonium ion $[(CH_3)_2SCl^+]$. Most commonly, chlorodimethylsulfonium ion is generated under the reaction conditions by the reaction of dimethyl sulfoxide with oxalyl chloride.



Dimethyl sulfoxide Oxalyl chloride Chlorodimethyl-sulfonium ion Carbon monoxide Carbon dioxide Chloride ion

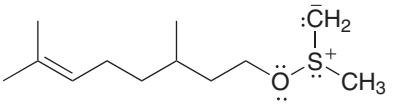
The alcohol to be oxidized is then added to the solution of chlorodimethylsulfonium ion, followed by treatment with a weak base such as triethylamine. Primary alcohols yield aldehydes; secondary alcohols yield ketones.



Citronellol Citronellal (83%)

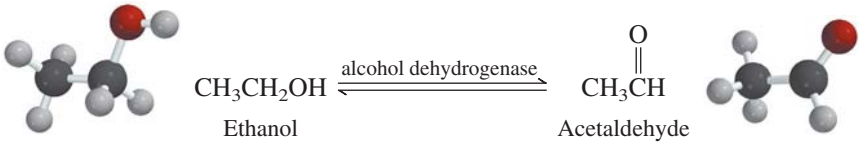
Problem 15.11

The last intermediate in the oxidation of citronellol by dimethyl sulfoxide is believed to have the structure shown. Use curved arrows to describe its *unimolecular* dissociation to citronellal. What is the sulfur-containing product?



15.10 Biological Oxidation of Alcohols

Many biological processes involve oxidation of alcohols to carbonyl compounds or the reverse process, reduction of carbonyl compounds to alcohols. Ethanol, for example, is metabolized in the liver to acetaldehyde in a reaction catalyzed by the enzyme *alcohol dehydrogenase.*

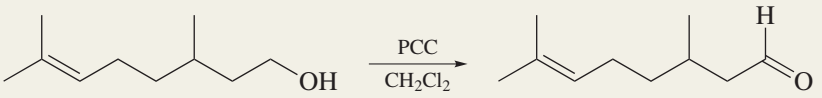


Ethanol Acetaldehyde

Sustainability and Organic Chemistry

In the 1970s, both the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the United Nations Conference on the Human Environment independently addressed *sustainability*—the efficient and environmentally responsible use of our resources. Ideally, a "green" or "benign" chemical process should be efficient, based on renewable raw materials, produce minimum waste, use catalysts rather than stoichiometric reagents, avoid the use or formation of toxic or hazardous materials, require minimum energy, and yield a product that maximizes the incorporation of all materials.

These objectives have spurred research directed toward developing alternative synthetic methods. Take alcohol oxidation, for example. As described in Section 15.9, primary alcohols are converted to aldehydes by oxidation with pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC).



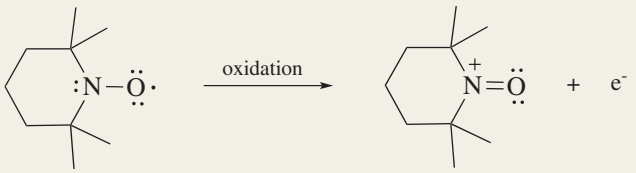
3,7-Dimethyloct-6-en-1-ol 3,7-Dimethyloct-6-enal (82%)

While this oxidation proceeds in synthetically satisfactory yield, it is inefficient in terms of *atom economy.* PCC is used in stoichiometric amounts and none of its atoms are incorporated into the desired product. Moreover, the toxicity of chromium compounds introduces significant hazardus-waste disposal problems.

On the other hand, oxidation according to the equation:

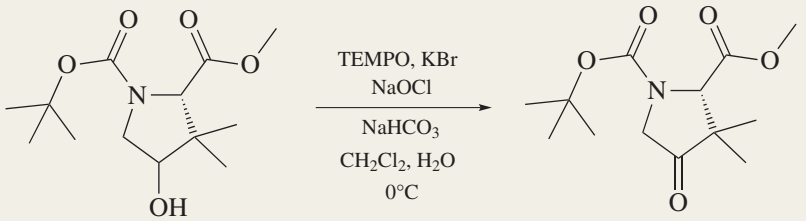
Alcohol Sodium hypochlorite Aldehyde Sodium chloride Water

offers a more sustainable alternative in that it avoids toxicity problems (aqueous sodium hypochlorite is nothing more than household bleach), and the byproducts (water and sodium chloride) are benign. In practice, however, the reaction was not widely used until it was found that it could be catalyzed by the free-radical compound 2,2,6,6 tetramethylpiperidine-1-oxyl (TEMPO). The active catalyst is an oxoammonium cation formed by hypochlorite oxidation of TEMPO under the reaction conditions.

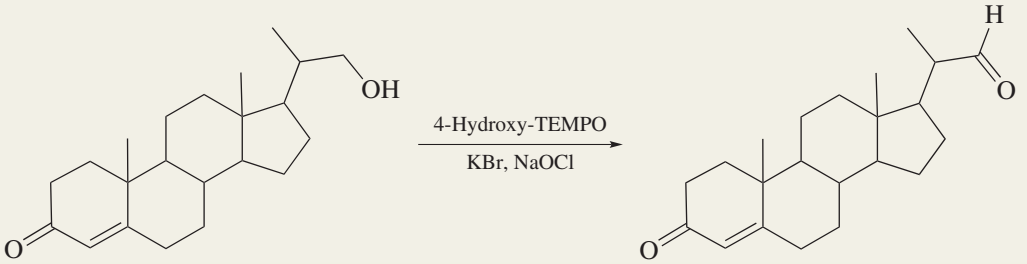


TEMPO An oxoammonium cation

TEMPO-catalyzed oxidations are replacing more familiar oxidation methods, especially in the pharmaceutical industry. An early step in the synthesis of an HIV protease inhibitor is the oxidation shown where the desired ketone is formed in 98% yield in the presence of 1 mol % of TEMPO.

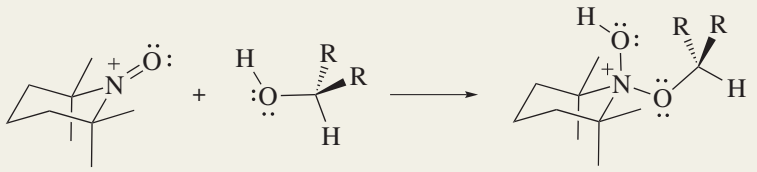


The 4-hydroxy derivative of TEMPO is used as the catalyst for the synthesis of a key aldehyde intermediate in the large-scale preparation of progesterone and corticosteroids.

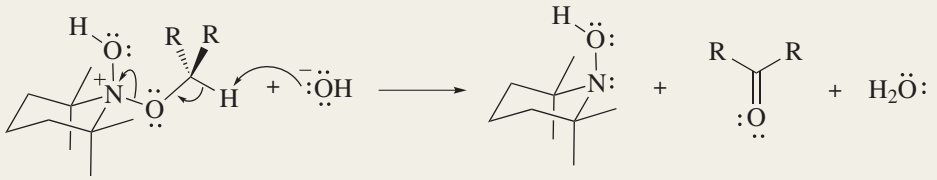


Not only is the reaction itself green, but the raw material for the synthesis is a plant sterol obtained from soybean waste.

The mechanism of TEMPO-catalyzed oxidation depends on the particular experimental conditions but involves two stages. First, the alcohol undergoes nucleophilic addition to the oxoammonium ion:

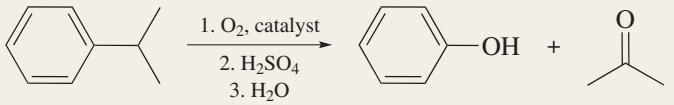


and is followed by elimination of the species produced.



Subsequent steps with the oxidizing agent present in the reaction mixture (hypochlorite) restore the active form of the oxoammonium ion catalyst.

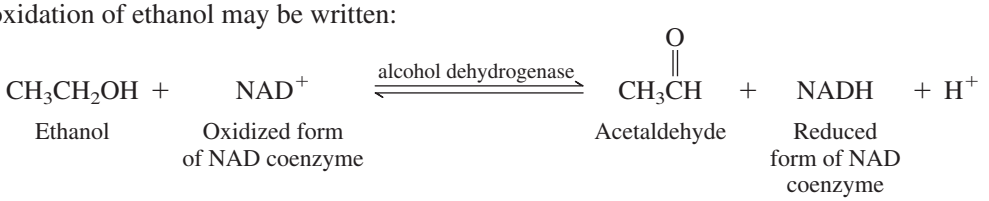
Because of their scale, the methods and practices of the chemical industry can have significant environmental effects. Fortunately, many of the qualities that characterize green chemistry are also the most desirable in economic terms. For example, two industrial chemicals–phenol and acetone–are produced in a process with high atom economy.



Isopropylbenzene is made from benzene and propene, both of which are readily available petrochemicals, O_2 is the ultimate green oxidizing agent, and the waste products are either benign (water) or easily managed (sulfuric acid).

On an even larger scale, all of the polymers listed in Table 6.2 and most of them in Chapter 27 are prepared by reactions that are efficient, use catalysts, produce minimum waste, and incorporate all of the atoms in the reactant into the product.

In addition to enzymes, biological oxidations require substances known as *coenzymes*. Coenzymes are organic molecules that, in concert with an enzyme, act on a substrate to bring about chemical change. Most vitamins are coenzymes. A coenzyme contains a functional group that is complementary to a functional group of the substrate; the enzyme catalyzes the interaction of these mutually complementary functional groups. If ethanol is oxidized, some other substance must be reduced. This other substance is the oxidized form of the coenzyme *nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide* (NAD). By representing the oxidized form as NAD^+ and the reduced form as NADH, the chemical equation for the biological oxidation of ethanol may be written:



The structure of the oxidized form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide is shown in Figure 15.2. The only portion of the coenzyme that undergoes chemical change in the reaction

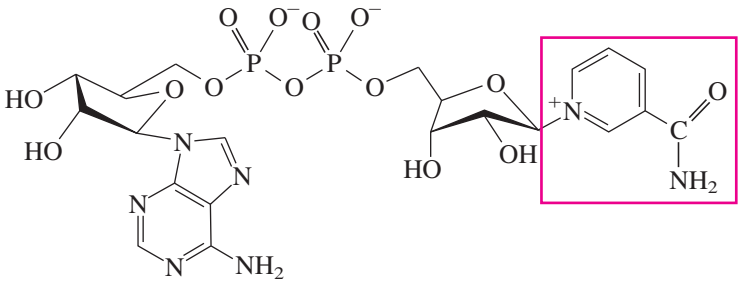
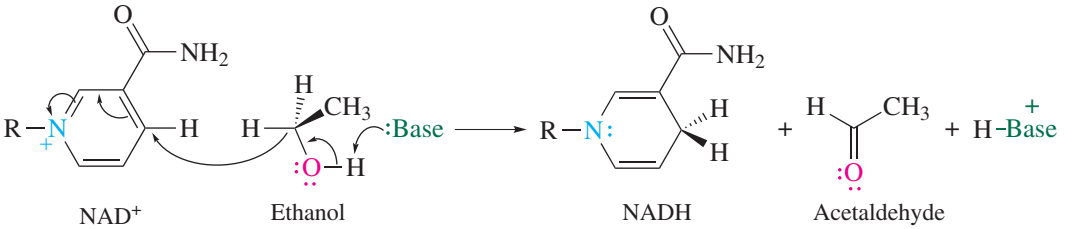


Figure 15.2

Structure of NAD^+, the oxidized form of the coenzyme nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide. The functional part of the coenzyme is framed in red.

is the substituted pyridine ring of the nicotinamide unit (framed in red in Figure 15.2). Representing the remainder of the coenzyme molecule by R, we track the flow of electrons in the oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde as:



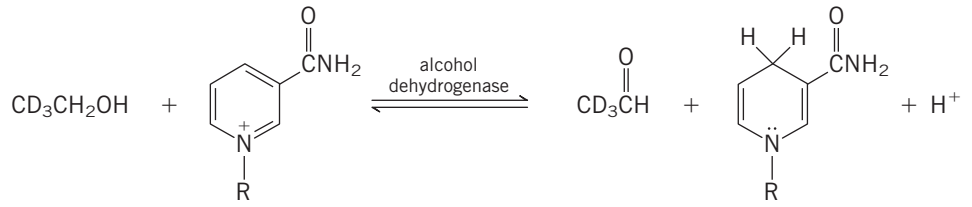
The key feature here is that hydrogen is transferred from ethanol to NAD^+ not as a proton (H^+), but as hydride ($:H^-$). The ability of ethanol to transfer hydride is enhanced by removal of the O—H proton by a basic site of the enzyme. Hydride is never free, but is transferred directly from ethanol to the positively charged pyridinium ring of NAD^+ to give NADH.

Problem 15.12

The mechanism of enzymatic oxidation has been studied by isotopic labeling with the aid of deuterated derivatives of ethanol. Specify the number of deuterium atoms that you would expect to find attached to the dihydropyridine ring of NADH following enzymatic oxidation of each of the alcohols given:

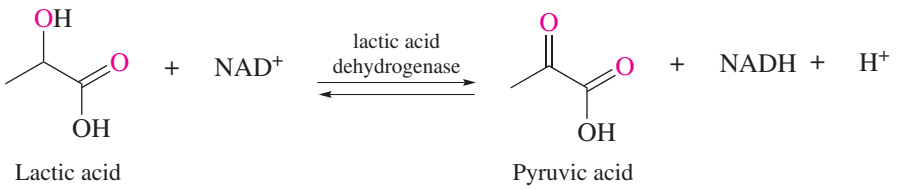
(a) CD_3CH_2OH (b) CH_3CD_2OH (c) CH_3CH_2OD

Sample Solution The hydrogen that is transferred to the coenzyme comes from C-1 of ethanol. Therefore, the dihydropyridine ring will bear no deuterium atoms when CD_3CH_2OH is oxidized, because all the deuterium atoms of the alcohol are attached to C-2.



The reverse reaction also occurs in living systems; NADH reduces acetaldehyde to ethanol in the presence of alcohol dehydrogenase. In this process, NADH serves as a hydride donor and is oxidized to NAD^+ while acetaldehyde is reduced.

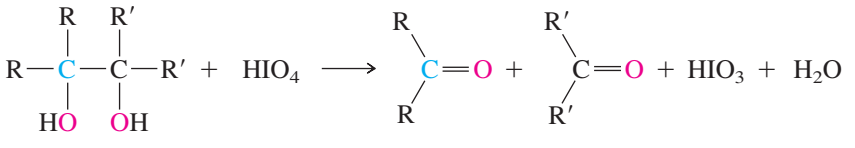
The NAD^+–NADH coenzyme system is involved in a large number of biological oxidation–reductions. Another reaction similar to the ethanol–acetaldehyde conversion is the oxidation of lactic acid to pyruvic acid by NAD^+ and the enzyme *lactic acid dehydrogenase:*



We shall encounter other biological processes in which the $NAD^+ \rightleftharpoons$ NADH interconversion plays a prominent role in biological oxidation–reduction.

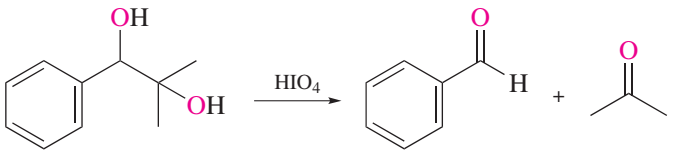
15.11 Oxidative Cleavage of Vicinal Diols

A reaction characteristic of vicinal diols is their oxidative cleavage on treatment with periodic acid (HIO_4). The carbon–carbon bond of the vicinal diol unit is broken and two carbonyl groups result. Periodic acid is reduced to iodic acid (HIO_3).



Vicinal diol | Periodic acid | Aldehyde or ketone | Aldehyde or ketone | Iodic acid | Water

What is the oxidation state of iodine in HIO_4? In HIO_3?



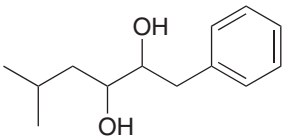
2-Methyl-1-phenyl-1,2-propanediol | Benzaldehyde | Acetone

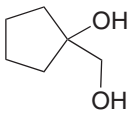
Can you remember what reaction of an alkene would give the same products as the periodic acid cleavage shown here?

This reaction occurs only when the hydroxyl groups are on adjacent carbons.

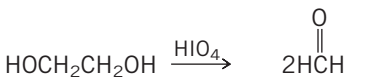
Problem 15.13

Predict the products formed on oxidation of each of the following with periodic acid:

(a) $HOCH_2CH_2OH$ (b) 

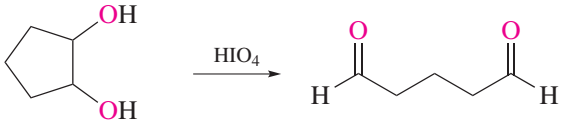
(c) 

Sample Solution (a) The carbon–carbon bond of 1,2-ethanediol is cleaved by periodic acid to give two molecules of formaldehyde:



1,2-Ethanediol | Formaldehyde

Cyclic diols give dicarbonyl compounds. The reactions are faster when the hydroxyl groups are cis than when they are trans, but both stereoisomers are oxidized by periodic acid.



1,2-Cyclopentanediol (cis or trans) | Pentanedial

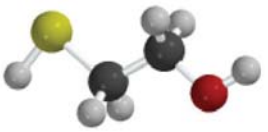
Periodic acid cleavage of vicinal diols is often used for analytical purposes as an aid in structure determination. By identifying the carbonyl compounds produced, the constitution of the starting diol may be deduced. This technique finds its widest application with carbohydrates and will be discussed more fully in Chapter 23.

15.12 Thiols

Sulfur lies just below oxygen in the periodic table, and many oxygen-containing organic compounds have sulfur analogs. The sulfur analogs of alcohols (ROH) are **thiols (RSH).** Thiols are given substitutive IUPAC names by appending the suffix *-thiol* to the name of the corresponding alkane, numbering the chain in the direction that gives the lower locant to the carbon that bears the —SH group. As with diols (Section 15.5), the final *-e* of the alkane name is retained. When the —SH group is named as a substituent, it is called a *mercapto,* or *sulfanyl,* group. It is also often referred to as a *sulfhydryl* group, but this is a generic term, not used in systematic nomenclature.

$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2SH$

3-Methyl-1-butanethiol
3-Methylbutane-1-thiol



$HSCH_2CH_2OH$

2-Mercaptoethanol
2-Sulfanylethanol

$HSCH_2CH_2CH_2SH$

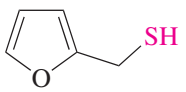
1,3-Propanedithiol
Propane-1,3-dithiol

Thiols have a marked tendency to bond to mercury, and the word *mercaptan* comes from the Latin *mercurium captans,* which means "seizing mercury." The drug *dimercaprol* is used to treat mercury and lead poisoning; it is 2,3-disulfanyl-1-propanol.

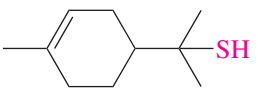
At one time thiols were named **mercaptans.** Thus, CH_3CH_2SH was called "ethyl mercaptan" according to this system. This nomenclature was abandoned beginning with the 1965 revision of the IUPAC rules but is still sometimes encountered.

The most obvious property of a low-molecular-weight thiol is its foul odor. Ethanethiol is added to natural gas so that leaks can be detected without special equipment—your nose is so sensitive that it can detect less than one part of ethanethiol in 10,000,000,000 parts of air! The odor of thiols weakens with the number of carbons, because both the volatility and the sulfur content decrease. 1-Dodecanethiol, for example, has only a faint odor. On the positive side, of the hundreds of substances that contribute to the aroma of freshly brewed coffee, the one most responsible for its characteristic odor is the thiol 2-(mercaptomethyl) furan. Likewise, the contribution of *p*-1-menthene-8-thiol to the taste and odor of freshly squeezed grapefruit juice far exceeds that of most of the more than 260 other volatile components so far identified.

p-1-Menthene-8-thiol is a common name, not an IUPAC name.



3-(Mercaptomethyl)furan



p-1-Menthene-8-thiol

Problem 15.14

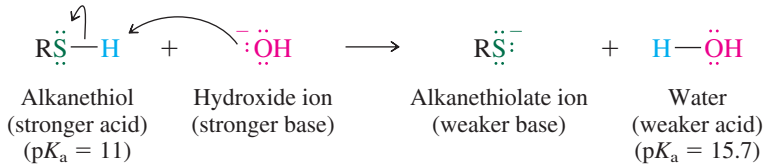
Two major components of a skunk's scent fluid are 3-methyl-1-butanethiol and *trans*-2-butene-1-thiol. Write structural formulas for each of these compounds.

Compare the boiling points of H_2S (–60°C) and H_2O (100°C).

The S—H bond is less polar than the O—H bond, as is evident in the electrostatic potential maps of Figure 15.3. The decreased polarity of the S—H bond, especially the decreased positive character of the proton, causes hydrogen bonding to be absent in thiols. Thus, methanethiol (CH_3SH) is a gas at room temperature (bp 6°C), whereas methanol (CH_3OH) is a liquid (bp 65°C).

In spite of S—H bonds being less polar than O—H bonds, thiols are stronger acids than alcohols. This is largely because S—H bonds are weaker than O—H bonds. We have seen that most alcohols have pK_a's of 16–18. The corresponding value for a thiol is about 11. The significance of this difference is that a thiol can be quantitatively converted to its

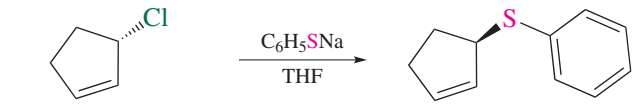
conjugate base (RS^-), called an **alkanethiolate,** by hydroxide. Consequently, thiols dissolve in aqueous base.



Alkanethiol (stronger acid) (pK_a = 11) | Hydroxide ion (stronger base) | Alkanethiolate ion (weaker base) | Water (weaker acid) (pK_a = 15.7)

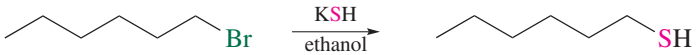
Alkanethiolate ions (RS^-) are weaker bases than alkoxide ions (RO^-), but they are powerful nucleophiles and undergo synthetically useful S_N2 reactions even with secondary alkyl halides.

Recall from Section 8.10 that the major pathway for reaction of *alkoxide* ions with secondary alkyl halides is E2, not S_N2.



3-Chlorocyclopentene | 3-Benzenesulfanyl-cyclopentene (75%)

Thiols themselves can be prepared by nucleophilic substitution using the conjugate base of H_2S.

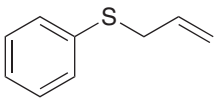


1-Bromohexane | 1-Hexanethiol (67%)

Problem 15.15

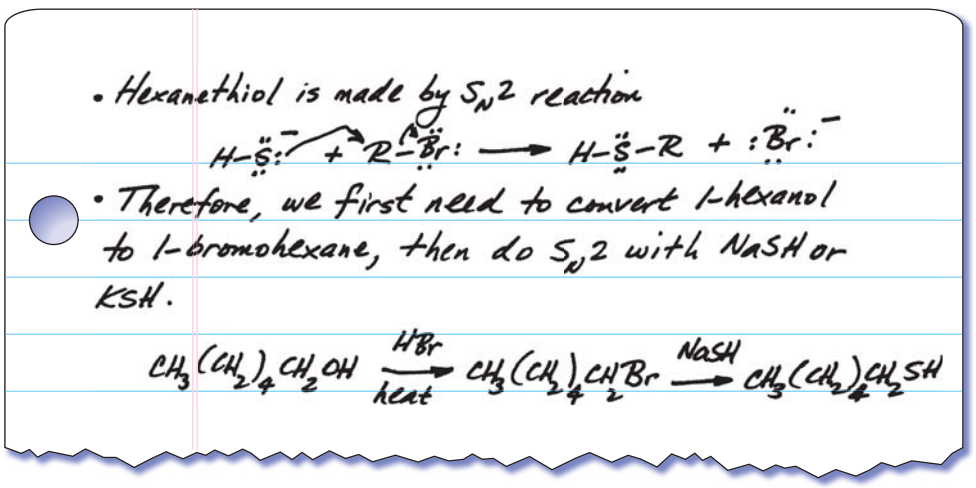
Outline a synthesis of

(a) 1-Hexanethiol from 1-hexanol.

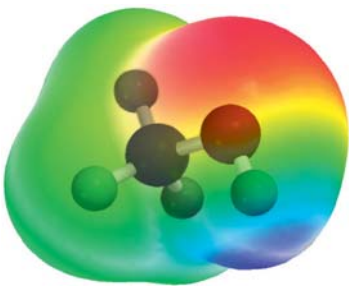
(b)  from allyl bromide

Sample Solution

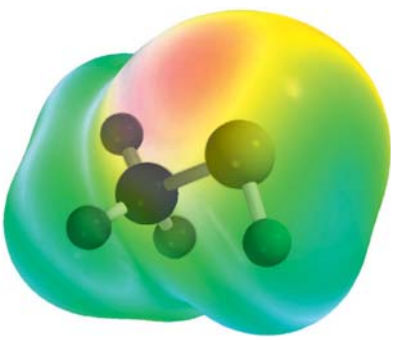
(a)



A major difference between alcohols and thiols concerns their oxidation. We have seen earlier in this chapter that oxidation of alcohols produces carbonyl compounds. Analogous oxidation of thiols to compounds with C=S functions does *not* occur. Only sulfur is oxidized, not carbon, and compounds containing sulfur in various oxidation states are possible. These include a series of acids classified as *sulfenic, sulfinic,* and *sulfonic* according to the number of oxygens attached to sulfur.



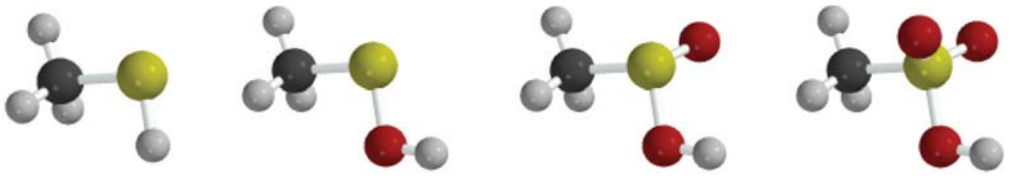
(*a*) Methanol (CH_3OH)



(*b*) Methanethiol (CH_3SH)

Figure 15.3

Electrostatic potential maps of (*a*) methanol, and (*b*) methanethiol. The color scales were adjusted to be the same for both molecules to allow for direct comparison. The development of charge is more pronounced in the bluer color near the —OH proton in methanol than the —SH proton in methanethiol.



$CH_3SH \longrightarrow CH_3SOH \longrightarrow CH_3S(O)OH \longrightarrow CH_3SO_2OH$

Methanethiol — Methanesulfenic acid — Methanesulfinic acid — Methanesulfonic acid

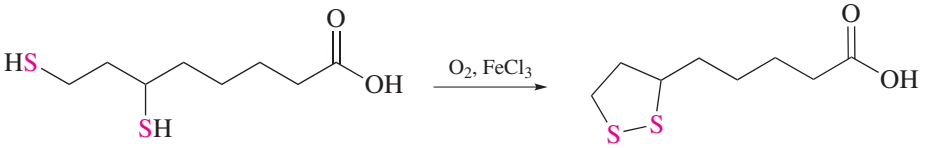
Of these the most important are the sulfonic acids. In general though, sulfonic acids are not prepared by oxidation of thiols. Benzenesulfonic acid ($C_6H_5SO_2OH$), for example, is prepared by sulfonation of benzene (see Section 12.4).

From a biochemical perspective the most important oxidation is the conversion of thiols to **disulfides.**

$$2RSH \underset{\text{reduction}}{\overset{\text{oxidation}}{\rightleftharpoons}} RSSR$$

Thiol — Disulfide

Although a variety of oxidizing agents are available for this transformation, it occurs so readily that thiols are slowly converted to disulfides by the oxygen in air. Dithiols give cyclic disulfides by intramolecular sulfur–sulfur bond formation. An example of a cyclic disulfide is the coenzyme α-*lipoic acid.* The last step in the laboratory synthesis of α-lipoic acid is an iron(III)-catalyzed oxidation of the dithiol shown:

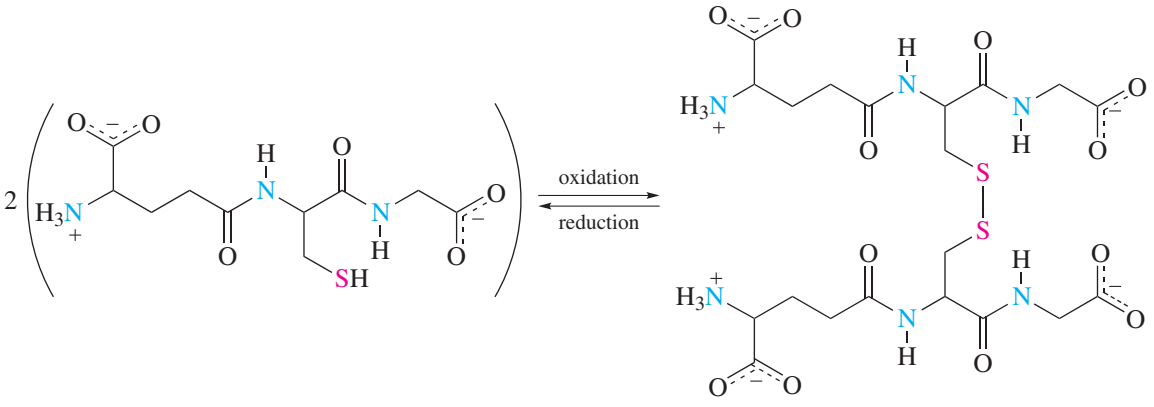


6,8-Dimercaptooctanoic acid — α-Lipoic acid (78%)

Rapid and reversible making and breaking of the sulfur–sulfur bond is essential to the biological function of α-lipoic acid.

The S—S bonds in disulfides are intermediate in strength between typical covalent bonds and weaker interactions such as hydrogen bonds. Covalent bonds involving C, H, N, and O have bond strengths on the order of 330–420 kJ/mol. The S—S bond energy is about 220 kJ/mol, and hydrogen bond strengths are usually less than 30 kJ/mol. Thus S—S bonds provide more structural stability than a hydrogen bond, but can be broken while leaving the covalent framework intact.

All mammalian cells contain a thiol called *glutathione,* which protects the cell by scavenging harmful oxidants. It reacts with these oxidants by forming a disulfide, which is eventually converted back to glutathione.



Glutathione (reduced form) — Glutathione (oxidized form)

The three-dimensional shapes of many proteins are governed and stabilized by S—S bonds connecting what would ordinarily be remote segments of the molecule. We'll have more to say about these *disulfide bridges* in Chapter 25.

15.13 Spectroscopic Analysis of Alcohols and Thiols

Infrared: We discussed the most characteristic features of the infrared spectra of *alcohols* earlier (Section 13.22). The O—H stretching vibration is especially easy to identify, appearing in the 3200–3650 cm^{-1} region. As the infrared spectrum of cyclohexanol, presented in Figure 15.4 demonstrates, this peak is seen as a broad absorption of moderate intensity. The C—O bond stretching of alcohols gives rise to a moderate to strong absorbance between 1025 and 1200 cm^{-1}. It appears at 1065 cm^{-1} in cyclohexanol, a typical secondary alcohol, but is shifted to slightly higher energy in tertiary alcohols and slightly lower energy in primary alcohols.

The S—H stretching frequency of *thiols* gives rise to a weak band in the range 2550–2700 cm^{-1}.

^{1}H NMR: The most helpful signals in the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of *alcohols* result from the O—**H** proton and the proton in the **H**—C—O unit of primary and secondary alcohols.

H—C—O—H

δ 3.3–4.0 δ 0.5–5

The chemical shift of the hydroxyl proton signal is variable, depending on solvent, temperature, and concentration. Its precise position is not particularly significant in structure determination. Often the signals due to hydroxyl protons are not split by other protons in the molecule and are fairly easy to identify. To illustrate, Figure 15.5 shows the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2-phenylethanol, in which the hydroxyl proton signal appears as a singlet at δ 2.2. Of the two triplets in this spectrum, the one at lower field (δ 3.8) corresponds to the protons of the CH_2O unit. The higher-field triplet at δ 2.8 arises from the benzylic CH_2 group. The assignment of a particular signal to the hydroxyl proton can be confirmed by adding D_2O. The hydroxyl proton is replaced by deuterium, and its ^{1}H NMR signal disappears.

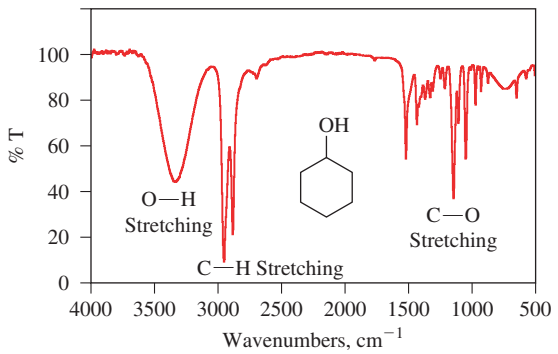


Figure 15.4

The infrared spectrum of cyclohexanol.

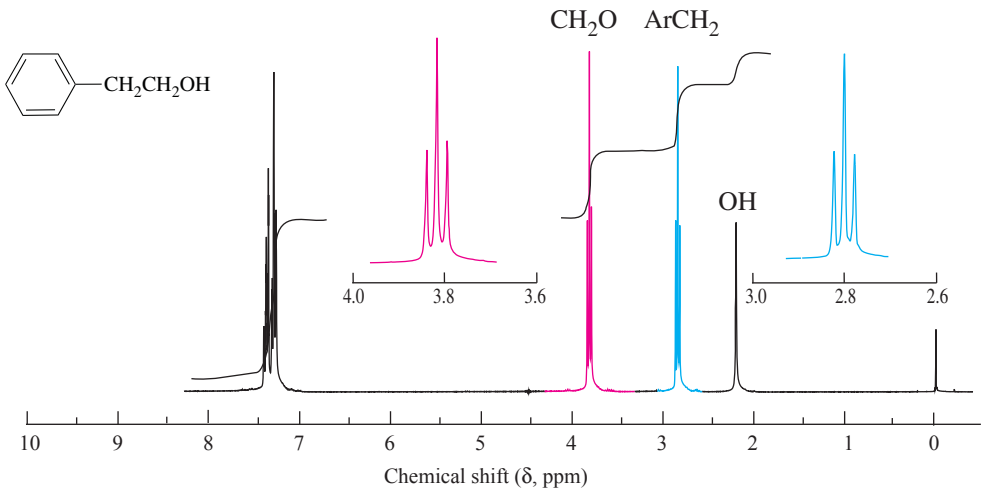
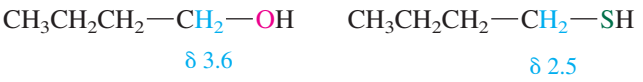


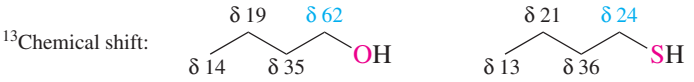
Figure 15.5

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2-phenylethanol ($C_6H_5CH_2CH_2OH$).

Because of its lower electronegativity, sulfur deshields neighboring protons less than oxygen does. Thus, the protons of a CH_2S group appear at higher field than those of a CH_2OH group.

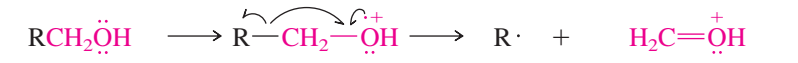


^{13}C NMR: The electronegative oxygen of an *alcohol* decreases the shielding of the carbon to which it is attached. The chemical shift for the carbon of the C—OH is 60–75 ppm for most alcohols. Carbon of a C—S group is more shielded than carbon of C—O.



UV-VIS: Unless the molecule has other chromophores, alcohols are transparent above about 200 nm; λ_{max} for methanol, for example, is 177 nm.

Mass Spectrometry: The molecular ion peak is usually quite small in the mass spectrum of an alcohol. A peak corresponding to loss of water is often evident. Alcohols also fragment readily by a pathway in which the molecular ion loses an alkyl group from the hydroxyl-bearing carbon to form a stable cation. Thus, the mass spectra of most primary alcohols exhibit a prominent peak at *m/z* 31.



Interpreting the mass spectra of sulfur compounds is aided by the observation of an M+2 peak because of the presence of the mass-34 isotope of sulfur. The major cleavage pathway of *thiols* is analogous to that of alcohols.

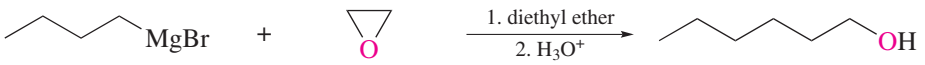
15.14 SUMMARY

Section 15.1 Functional group interconversions involving alcohols either as reactants or as products are the focus of this chapter. Alcohols are commonplace natural products. Table 15.1 summarizes reactions discussed in earlier sections that can be used to prepare alcohols.

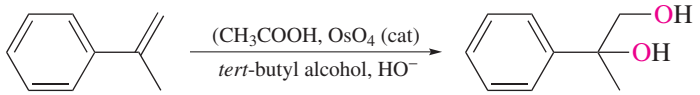
Section 15.2 Alcohols can be prepared from carbonyl compounds by reduction of aldehydes and ketones. See Table 15.3.

Section 15.3 Alcohols can be prepared from carbonyl compounds by reduction of carboxylic acids. See Table 15.3.

Section 15.4 Grignard and organolithium reagents react with ethylene oxide to give primary alcohols.



Section 15.5 Osmium tetraoxide is a key reagent in the conversion of alkenes to vicinal diols.



This **dihydroxylation** proceeds by syn addition to the double bond. Osmium-based reagents that bear chiral ligands catalyze enantioselective dihydroxylation of alkenes.

Section 15.6 Table 15.2 summarizes reactions of alcohols that were introduced in earlier chapters.

TABLE 15.3 Preparation of Alcohols by Reduction of Carbonyl Functional Groups

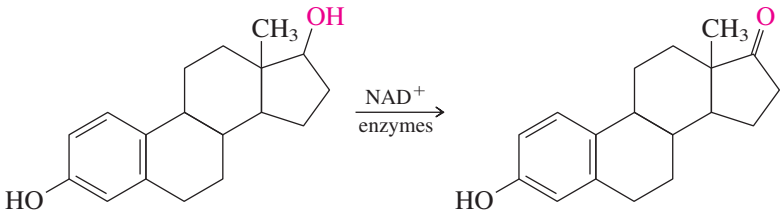
Carbonyl compound	Product of reduction of carbonyl compound by specified reducing agent		
	Lithium aluminum hydride ($LiAlH_4$)	Sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$)	Hydrogen (in the presence of a catalyst)
Aldehyde RCH (Section 15.2)	Primary alcohol RCH_2OH	Primary alcohol RCH_2OH	Primary alcohol RCH_2OH
Ketone RCR' (Section 15.2)	Secondary alcohol $RCHR'$ (OH)	Secondary alcohol $RCHR'$ (OH)	Secondary alcohol $RCHR'$ (OH)
Carboxylic acid $RCOH$ (Section 15.3)	Primary alcohol RCH_2OH	Not reduced	Not reduced

Section 15.7 See Table 15.4

Section 15.8 See Table 15.4

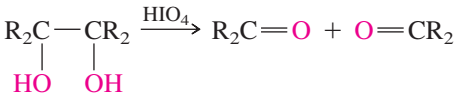
Section 15.9 See Table 15.5

Section 15.10 Oxidation of alcohols to aldehydes and ketones is a common biological reaction. Most require a coenzyme such as the oxidized form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+).

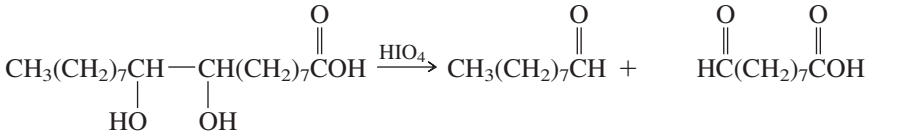


Estradiol Estrone

Section 15.11 Periodic acid cleaves vicinal diols; two aldehydes, two ketones, or an aldehyde and a ketone are formed.

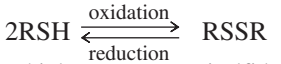


Diol Two carbonyl-containing compounds



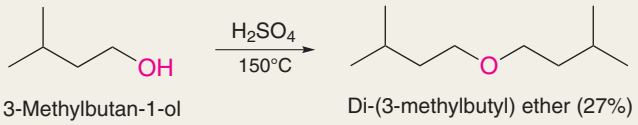
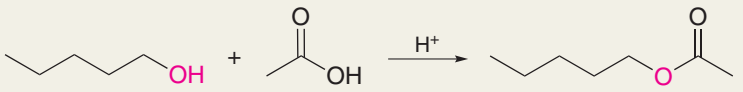
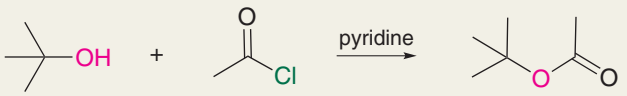
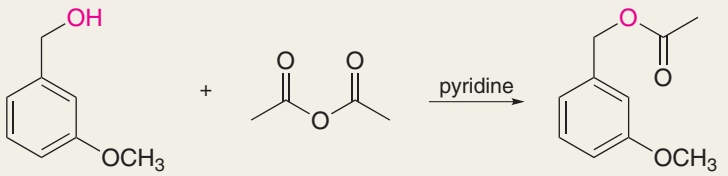
9,10-Dihydroxyoctadecanoic acid Nonanal (89%) 9-Oxononanoic acid (76%)

Section 15.12 **Thiols** are compounds of the type RSH. They are more acidic than alcohols and are readily deprotonated by reaction with aqueous base. Thiols can be oxidized to sulfenic acids (RSOH), sulfinic acids (RSO_2H), and sulfonic acids (RSO_3H). The redox relationship between thiols and disulfides is important in certain biochemical processes.



Thiol Disulfide

TABLE 15.4 Reactions of Alcohols Presented in This Chapter

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Conversion to dialkyl ethers (Section 15.7) Heating in the presence of an acid catalyst converts two molecules of a primary alcohol to an ether and water. Diols can undergo an intramolecular condensation if a five- or six-membered cyclic ether results.	$2RCH_2OH \xrightarrow{H^+} RCH_2OCH_2R + H_2O$ Alcohol → Dialkyl ether + Water  3-Methylbutan-1-ol → Di-(3-methylbutyl) ether (27%)
Fischer esterification (Section 15.8) Alcohols react with carboxylic acids in the presence of an acid catalyst to yield an ester and water. The reaction is an equilibrium process that can be driven to completion by using either the alcohol or the acid in excess or by removing the water as it is formed.	$ROH + R'COH \xrightarrow{H^+} R'COR + H_2O$ Alcohol + Carboxylic acid → Ester + Water  1-Pentanol + Acetic acid → Pentyl acetate (71%)
Esterification with acyl chlorides (Section 15.8) Acyl chlorides react with alcohols to give esters. The reaction is usually carried out in the presence of pyridine.	$ROH + R'COCl \xrightarrow{H^+} R'COR + HCl$ Alcohol + Acyl chloride → Ester + Hydrogen chloride  *tert*-Butyl alcohol + Acetyl chloride → *tert*-Butyl acetate (62%)
Esterification with acid anhydrides (Section 15.8) Acid anhydrides react with alcohols to form esters in the same way that acyl chlorides do.	$ROH + R'COCR' \xrightarrow{H^+} R'COR + R'COH$ Alcohol + Acid anhydride → Ester + Carboxylic acid  *m*-Methoxybenzyl alcohol + Acetic anhydride → *m*-Methoxybenzyl acetate (99%)

Section 15.13 The hydroxyl group of an alcohol has its O—H and C—O stretching vibrations at 3200–3650 and 1025–1200 cm^{-1}, respectively.

The chemical shift of the proton of an O—H group is variable (δ 1–5) and depends on concentration, temperature, and solvent. Oxygen deshields both the proton and the carbon of an H—C—O unit. Typical NMR chemical shifts are δ 3.3–4.0 for ^1H and δ 60–75 for ^{13}C of H—C—O.

The most intense peaks in the mass spectrum of an alcohol correspond to the ion formed according to carbon–carbon cleavage of the type shown:

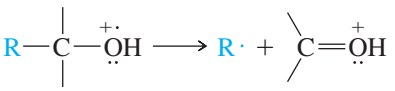


TABLE 15.5 Oxidation of Alcohols

Class of alcohol	Desired product	Suitable oxidizing agent(s)
Primary, RCH_2OH	Aldehyde RCH (O double-bonded)	PCC* PDC* $DMSO/(COCl)_2$; $(CH_3CH_2)_3N$
Primary, RCH_2OH	Carboxylic acid $RCOH$ (O double-bonded)	$Na_2Cr_2O_7$, H_2SO_4, H_2O H_2CrO_4
Secondary, $RCHR'$ (OH)	Ketone RCR' (O double-bonded)	PCC* PDC* $Na_2Cr_2O_7$, H_2SO_4, H_2O H_2CrO_4 $DMSO/(COCl)_2$; $(CH_3CH_2)_3N$

*PCC is pyridinium chlorochromate; PDC is pyridinium dichromate. Both are used in dichloromethane.

PROBLEMS

15.16 Write chemical equations, showing all necessary reagents, for the preparation of 1-butanol by each of the following methods:

(a) Hydroboration–oxidation of an alkene
(b) Use of a Grignard reagent
(c) Use of a Grignard reagent in a way different from part (b)
(d) Reduction of a carboxylic acid
(e) Hydrogenation of an aldehyde
(f) Reduction with sodium borohydride

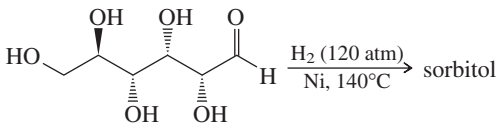
15.17 Write chemical equations, showing all necessary reagents, for the preparation of 2-butanol by each of the following methods:

(a) Hydroboration–oxidation of an alkene
(b) Use of a Grignard reagent
(c) Use of a Grignard reagent different from that used in part (b)
(d–f) Three different methods for reducing a ketone

15.18 Which of the isomeric $C_5H_{12}O$ alcohols can be prepared by lithium aluminum hydride reduction of:

(a) An aldehyde
(b) A ketone
(c) A carboxylic acid
(d) An ester of the type $RCOCH_3$ (O double-bonded)

15.19 Sorbitol is a sweetener often substituted for cane sugar, because it is better tolerated by diabetics. It is also an intermediate in the commercial synthesis of vitamin C. Sorbitol is prepared by high-pressure hydrogenation of glucose over a nickel catalyst. What is the structure (including stereochemistry) of sorbitol?



Glucose

15.20 Write equations showing how 1-phenylethanol ($C_6H_5CHCH_3$, with OH) could be prepared from each of the following starting materials:

(a) Bromobenzene
(b) Benzaldehyde
(c) Benzyl alcohol
(d) Acetophenone
(e) Benzene

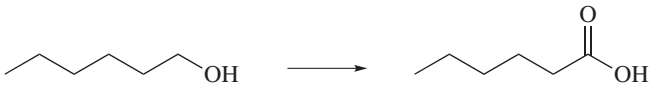
15.21 Write equations showing how 2-phenylethanol ($C_6H_5CH_2CH_2OH$) could be prepared from each of the following starting materials:

(a) Bromobenzene
(b) Styrene
(c) 2-Phenylethanal ($C_6H_5CH_2CHO$)
(d) 2-Phenylethanoic acid ($C_6H_5CH_2CO_2H$)

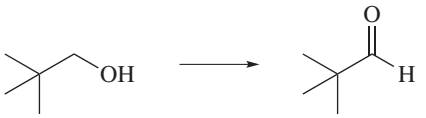
15.22 Outline a brief synthesis of each of the following compounds from the indicated starting material and any other necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

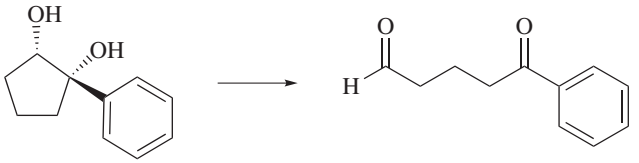
(a) 2-Propen-1-thiol from propene
(b) 1-Hexanol from 1-bromobutane
(c) 2-Hexanol from 1-bromobutane
(d) 2-Methyl-1,2-propanediol from *tert*-butyl alcohol
(e) 1-Chloro-2-phenylethane from benzene

15.23 Several oxidizing reagents for alcohols were described in this chapter. Suggest one for each of the following oxidations.

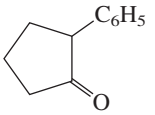
(a) 

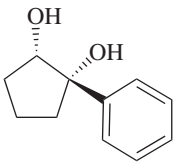
(b)

(c) 

(d) 

15.24 Show how each of the following compounds can be synthesized from cyclopentanol and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents. In many cases the desired compound can be made from one prepared in an earlier part of the problem.

(a) 1-Phenylcyclopentanol
(b) 1-Phenylcyclopentene
(c) *trans*-2-Phenylcyclopentanol
(d) 

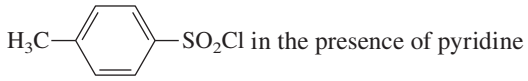
(e) 

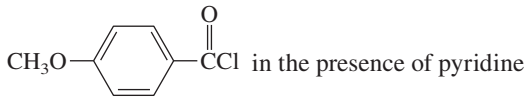
(f) 1-Phenyl-1,5-pentanediol

15.25 Write the structure of the principal organic product formed in the reaction of 1-propanol with each of the following reagents:

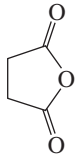
(a) Sulfuric acid (catalytic amount), heat at 140°C
(b) Sulfuric acid (catalytic amount), heat at 200°C
(c) Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), oxalyl chloride [$(COCl)_2$], triethylamine [$N(CH_2CH_3)_3$]
(d) Pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC) in dichloromethane
(e) Potassium dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$) in aqueous sulfuric acid, heat
(f) Sodium amide ($NaNH_2$)

(g) Acetic acid ($CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}OH$) in the presence of dissolved hydrogen chloride

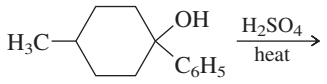
(h)  in the presence of pyridine

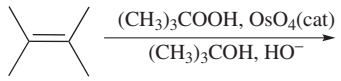
(i)  in the presence of pyridine

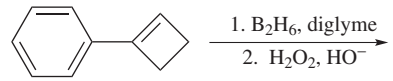
(j) $C_6H_5\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}C_6H_5$ in the presence of pyridine

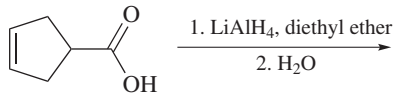
(k)  in the presence of pyridine

15.26 Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature. Predict the product in each case, showing stereochemistry where appropriate.

(a) 

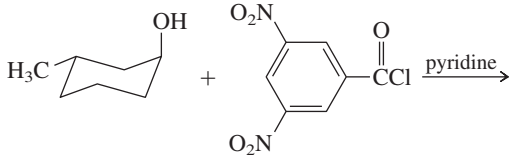
(b) 

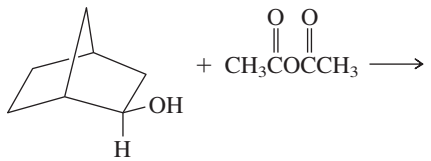
(c) 

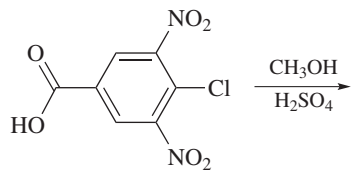
(d) 

(e) $CH_3\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}HC{\equiv}C(CH_2)_3CH_3 \xrightarrow[H_2SO_4,\ H_2O,\ \text{acetone}]{H_2CrO_4}$

(f) $CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}CH_3 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ LiAlH_4,\ \text{diethyl ether}}$

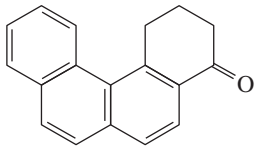
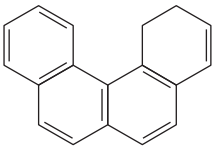
(g) 

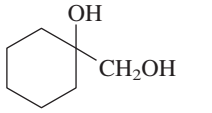
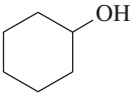
(h) 

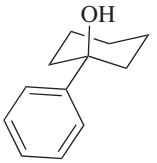
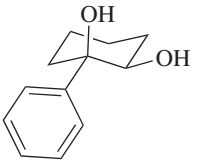
(i) 

15.27 On heating 1,2,4-butanetriol in the presence of an acid catalyst, a cyclic ether of molecular formula $C_4H_8O_2$ was obtained in 81–88% yield. Suggest a reasonable structure for this product.

15.28 Suggest reaction sequences and reagents suitable for carrying out each of the following conversions. Two synthetic operations are required in each case.

(a)  to 

(b)  to 

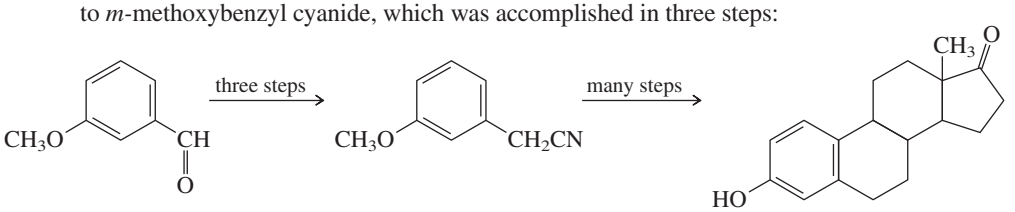
(c)  to 

15.29 The fungus responsible for Dutch elm disease is spread by European bark beetles when they burrow into the tree. Other beetles congregate at the site, attracted by the scent of a mixture of chemicals, some emitted by other beetles and some coming from the tree. One of the compounds given off by female bark beetles is 4-methyl-3-heptanol. Suggest an efficient synthesis of this pheromone from alcohols of five carbon atoms or fewer.

15.30 (a) The cis isomer of 3-hexen-1-ol ($CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2CH_2OH$) has the characteristic odor of green leaves and grass. Suggest a synthesis for this compound from acetylene and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

(b) One of the compounds responsible for the characteristic odor of ripe tomatoes is the cis isomer of $CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2CH{=}O$. How could you prepare this compound?

15.31 R. B. Woodward was one of the leading organic chemists of the middle part of the twentieth century. Known primarily for his achievements in the synthesis of complex natural products, he was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1965. He entered Massachusetts Institute of Technology as a 16-year-old freshman in 1933 and four years later was awarded the Ph.D. While a student there he carried out a synthesis of *estrone,* a female sex hormone. The early stages of Woodward's estrone synthesis required the conversion of *m*-methoxybenzaldehyde to *m*-methoxybenzyl cyanide, which was accomplished in three steps:



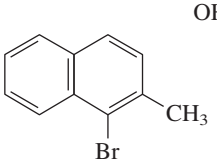
Estrone

Suggest a reasonable three-step sequence, showing all necessary reagents, for the preparation of *m*-methoxybenzyl cyanide from *m*-methoxybenzaldehyde.

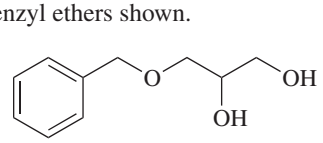
15.32 Complete each of the following equations by writing structural formulas for compounds A through I:

(a) $\xrightarrow{HCl}$ C_5H_7Cl (Compound A) $\xrightarrow[H_2O]{NaHCO_3}$ C_5H_8O (Compound B) $\xrightarrow[H_2SO_4,\ H_2O]{Na_2Cr_2O_7}$ C_5H_6O (Compound C)

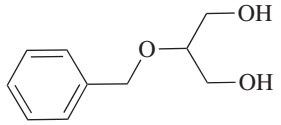
(b) $H_2C{=}CHCH_2CH_2\underset{\displaystyle OH}{\underset{|}{C}}HCH_3 \xrightarrow[pyridine]{SOCl_2} C_6H_{11}Cl$ (Compound D) $\xrightarrow[2.\ Zn,\ H_2O]{1.\ O_3} C_5H_9ClO$ (Compound E) $\xrightarrow{NaBH_4} C_5H_{11}ClO$ (Compound F)

(c)  $\xrightarrow[\text{benzoyl peroxide, heat}]{NBS}$ Compound G $\xrightarrow[heat]{H_2O,\ CaCO_3}$ Compound H $\xrightarrow[CH_2Cl_2]{PCC}$ $(C_{11}H_7BrO)$ (Compound I)

15.33 Suggest a chemical test that would permit you to distinguish between the two glycerol monobenzyl ethers shown.



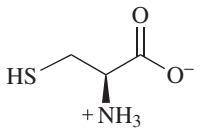
1-*O*-Benzylglycerol



2-*O*-Benzylglycerol

15.34 Choose the correct enantiomer of 2-butanol that would permit you to prepare (*R*)-2-butanethiol by way of a *p*-toluenesulfonate.

15.35 The amino acid *cysteine* has the structure.



(a) A second sulfur-containing amino acid called *cystine* ($C_6H_{12}N_2O_4S_2$) is formed when cysteine undergoes biological oxidation. Suggest a reasonable structure for cystine.

(b) Another metabolic pathway converts cysteine to *cysteine sulfinic acid* ($C_3H_7NO_4S$), then to *cysteic acid* ($C_3H_7NO_5S$). What are the structures of these two compounds?

15.36 A diol ($C_8H_{18}O_2$) does not react with periodic acid. Its ^{1}H NMR spectrum is shown in Figure 15.6. What is the structure of this diol?

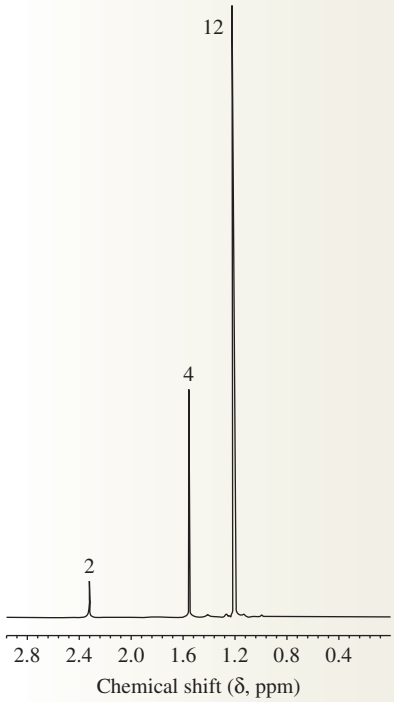


Figure 15.6

^{1}H NMR spectrum of the diol in Problem 15.36

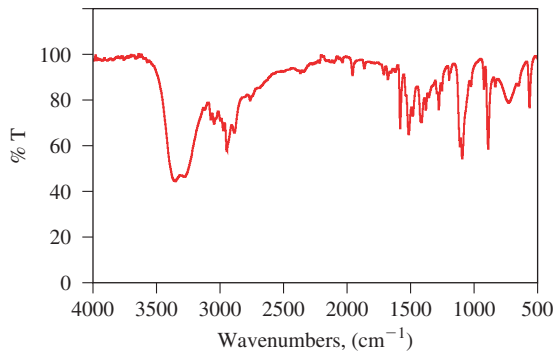
15.37 Identify the compound $C_8H_{10}O$ on the basis of its IR and ^{1}H NMR spectra (Figure 15.7). The broad triplet near δ 2.5 in the NMR spectrum disappears when D_2O is added.

15.38 Identify each of the following $C_4H_{10}O$ isomers on the basis of their ^{13}C NMR spectra:

(a) δ 31.2: CH_3
δ 68.9: C

(b) δ 10.0: CH_3
δ 22.7: CH_3
δ 32.0: CH_2
δ 69.2: CH

(c) δ 18.9: CH_3, area 2
δ 30.8: CH, area 1
δ 69.4: CH_2, area 1



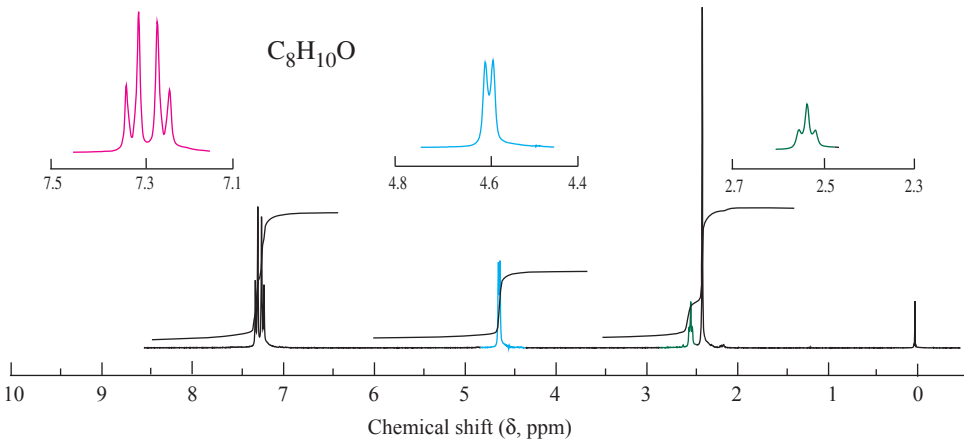
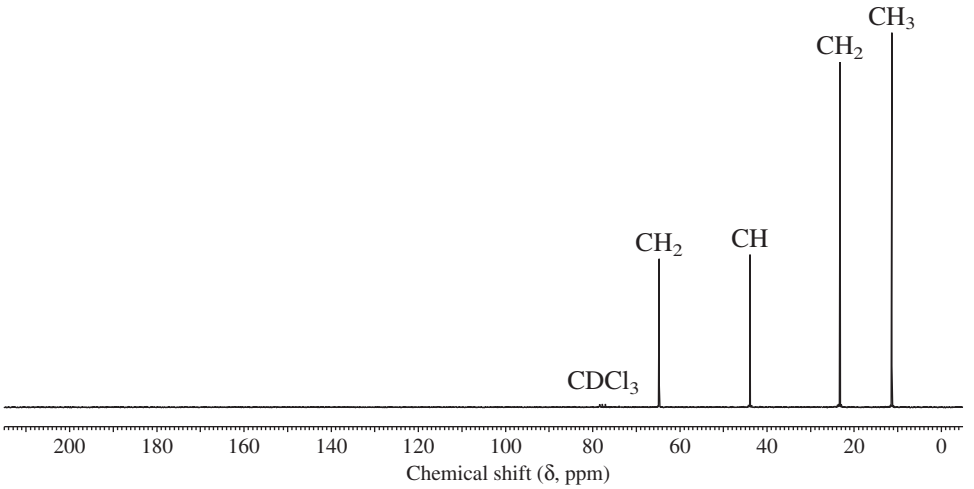


Figure 15.7

The IR (a) and 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR (b) spectra of a compound $C_8H_{10}O$ (Problem 15.37).

Figure 15.8

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of the compound $C_6H_{14}O$ (Problem 15.40).



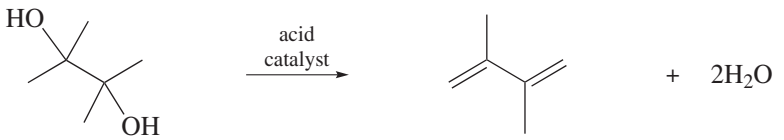
15.39 A compound $C_3H_7ClO_2$ exhibited three peaks in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum at δ 46.8 (CH_2), δ 63.5 (CH_2), and δ 72.0 (CH). What is the structure of this compound?

15.40 A compound $C_6H_{14}O$ has the ^{13}C NMR spectrum shown in Figure 15.8. Its mass spectrum has a prominent peak at *m/z* 31. Suggest a reasonable structure for this compound.

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 15

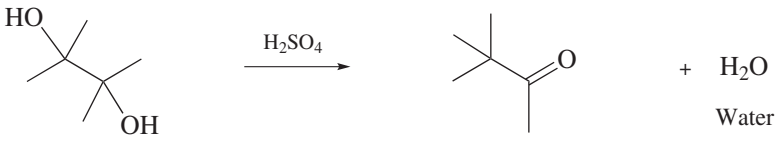
The Pinacol Rearrangement

We would expect a vicinal diol such as 2,3-dimethyl-2,3-butanediol to give a conjugated diene by double dehydration on treatment with an acid catalyst.



2,3-Dimethyl-2,3-butanediol — 2,3-Dimethyl-1,3-butadiene — Water

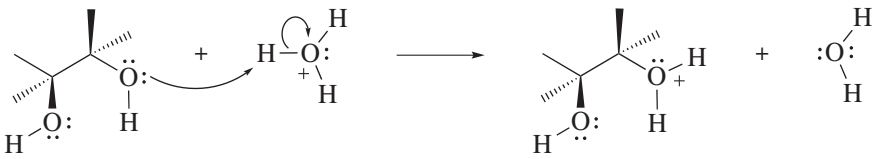
Although 2,3-dimethyl-1,3-butadiene can be prepared by just such a process, under certain conditions a different reaction occurs.



2,3-Dimethyl-2,3-butanediol (Common name: pinacol) — 3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanone (Common name: pinacolone)

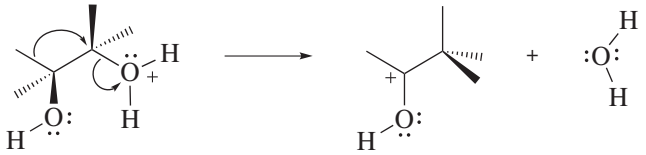
This reaction is called the *pinacol rearrangement* after the common name of the diol reactant.

The mechanism for conversion of pinacol to pinacolone begins with protonation of one of the OH groups of the vicinal diol.

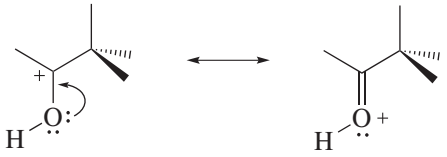


Pinacol

This is followed by loss of water and migration of a methyl group, usually in a single step in which the group anti to the departing water migrates.

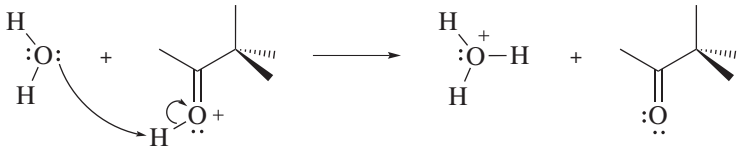


A key to understanding this migration is to recall that carbocations are stabilized by delocalization of a lone pair of an attached oxygen.



Major contributor

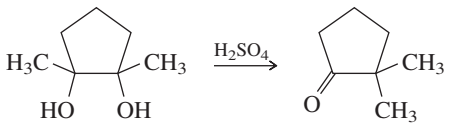
Thus, the rearrangement follows the usual generalization that a less stable carbocation is converted to a more stable one. Deprotonation of oxygen completes the mechanism.



Pinacolone

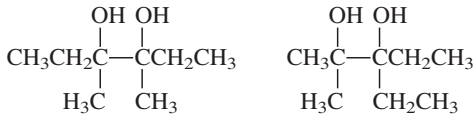
The term "pinacol rearrangement" is applied in a general way to any rearrangement that transforms a vicinal diol to a ketone.

15.41 Which word or phrase best describes the stereochemistry of the product formed in the pinacol rearrangement of the diol shown?



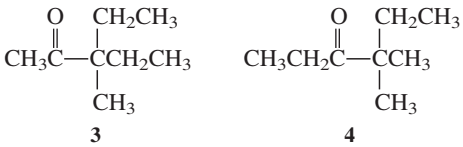
A. Achiral
B. A single enantiomer of a chiral molecule
C. Chiral, but racemic
D. Two diastereomers

15.42–15.43 Consider the two diols (**1** and **2**) and the two ketones (**3** and **4**).



1 **2**

Vicinal diols



3 **4**

Ketones

A mixture of **3** and **4** is formed by pinacol rearrangement of either **1** or **2.** Given that an ethyl migrates in preference to methyl in pinacol rearrangements, predict the major ketone formed by rearrangement of each diol.

15.42 Diol **1** gives predominantly

A. Ketone **3**

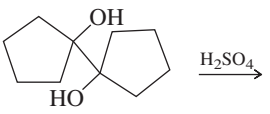
B. Ketone **4**

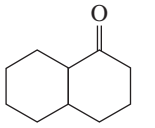
15.43 Diol **2** gives predominantly

A. Ketone **3**

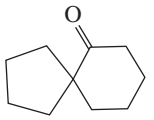
B. Ketone **4**

15.44 What is the product of the following reaction?

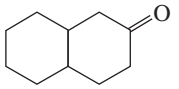




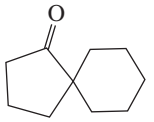
A.



C.

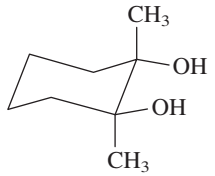


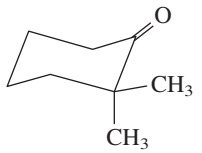
B.



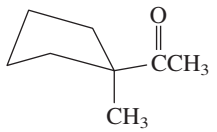
D.

15.45 The group that is anti to oxygen migrates in the pinacol rearrangement of the diol shown. What is the product?



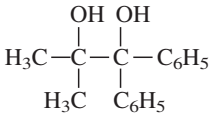


A.

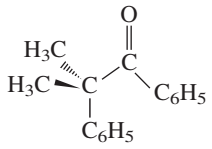


B.

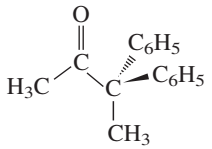
15.46 Rather than following a mechanism in which a group migrates in the same step as water departs, the pinacol rearrangement of the vicinal diol shown proceeds by way of the more stable of two possible carbocations. A single ketone is formed in 73% yield. What is the structure of this ketone?



2-Methyl-1,1-diphenyl-1,2-propanediol

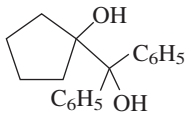


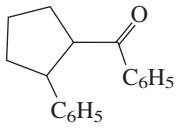
A.



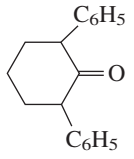
B.

15.47 Like the pinacol rearrangement in the preceding problem, this one also begins with the formation of the more stable of two possible carbocations from a vicinal diol. A 99% yield of a single ketone was isolated. What is this ketone?

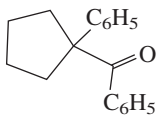




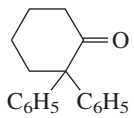
A.



C.

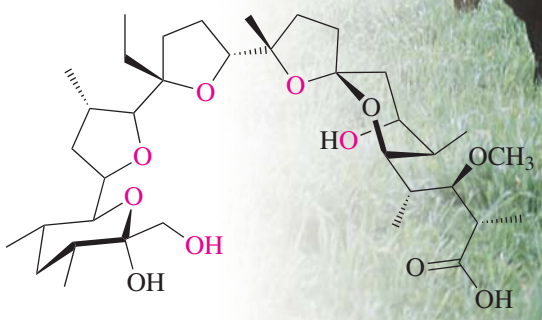


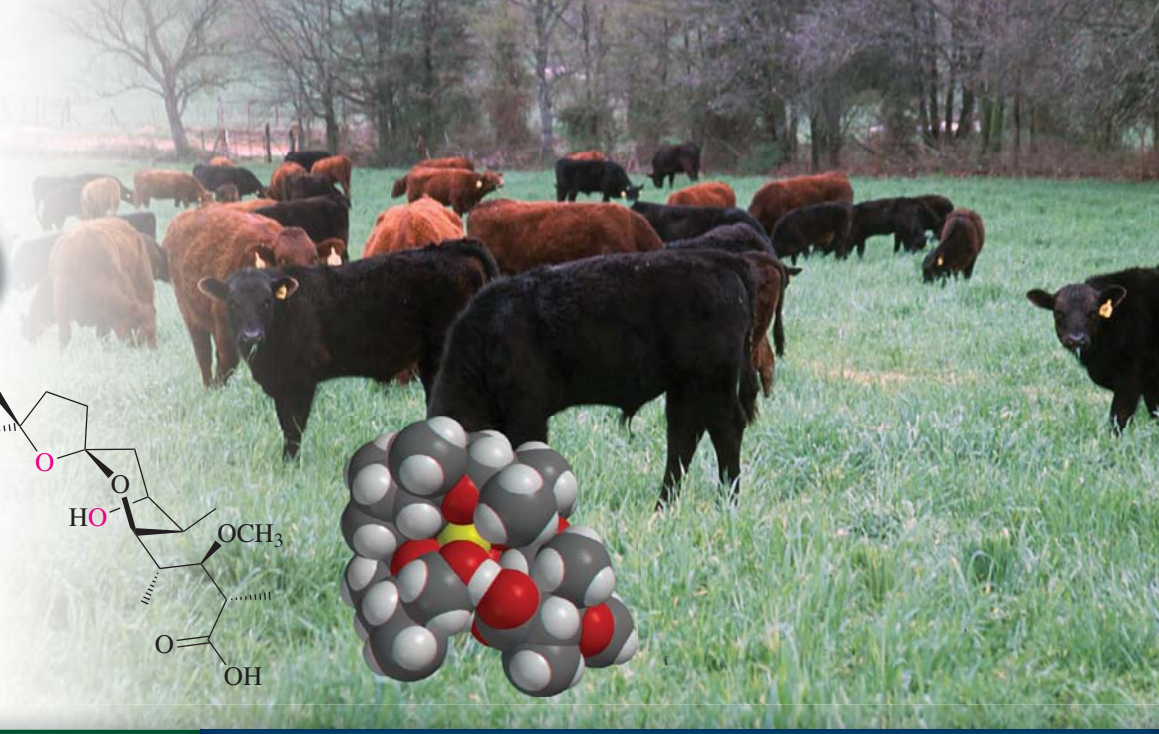
B.



D.

16





CHAPTER OUTLINE

16.1 Nomenclature of Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides 650
16.2 Structure and Bonding in Ethers and Epoxides 652
16.3 Physical Properties of Ethers 652
16.4 Crown Ethers 654
16.5 Preparation of Ethers 655
- Polyether Antibiotics 656

16.6 The Williamson Ether Synthesis 657
16.7 Reactions of Ethers 658
16.8 Acid-Catalyzed Cleavage of Ethers 659
16.9 Preparation of Epoxides 660
16.10 Conversion of Vicinal Halohydrins to Epoxides 661
16.11 Reactions of Epoxides with Anionic Nucleophiles 662
16.12 Acid-Catalyzed Ring Opening of Epoxides 665
16.13 Epoxides in Biological Processes 667
16.14 Preparation of Sulfides 667
16.15 Oxidation of Sulfides: Sulfoxides and Sulfones 668
16.16 Alkylation of Sulfides: Sulfonium Salts 669
16.17 Spectroscopic Analysis of Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides 670
16.18 **Summary** 672
Problems 675
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 16: Epoxide Rearrangements and the NIH Shift 682

Intestinal parasites in cattle are controlled by adding monensin to their feed. Monensin belongs to a class of antibiotics known as *ionophores* ("ion carriers") that act by forming stable complexes of the kind shown in the space-filling model with metal ions. For more, see the boxed essay *Polyether Antibiotics*.

Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides

In contrast to alcohols with their rich chemical reactivity, **ethers** (compounds containing a C—O—C unit) undergo relatively few chemical reactions. As you saw when we discussed Grignard reagents in Chapter 14 and lithium aluminum hydride reductions in Chapter 15, this lack of reactivity of ethers makes them valuable as solvents in a number of synthetically important transformations. In the present chapter you will learn of the conditions in which an ether linkage acts as a functional group, as well as the methods by which ethers are prepared.

Unlike most ethers, **epoxides** (compounds in which the C—O—C unit forms a three-membered ring) are very reactive substances. The principles of nucleophilic substitution are important in understanding the preparation and properties of epoxides.

Sulfides (RSR′) are the sulfur analogs of ethers. Just as in the preceding chapter, where we saw that the properties of thiols (RSH) are different from those of alcohols, we will explore differences between sulfides and ethers in this chapter.

16.1 Nomenclature of Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides

Ethers are named, in substitutive IUPAC nomenclature, as *alkoxy* derivatives of alkanes. Functional class IUPAC names of ethers are derived by listing the two alkyl groups in the general structure

ROR′ in alphabetical order as separate words, and adding the word *ether* at the end. When both alkyl groups are the same, the prefix *di-* precedes the name of the alkyl group.

	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$	$CH_3CH_2OCH_3$	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$
Substitutive IUPAC name:	Ethoxyethane	Methoxyethane	3-Chloro-1-ethoxypropane
Functional class IUPAC name:	Diethyl ether	Ethyl methyl ether	3-Chloropropyl ethyl ether

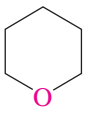
Ethers are described as *symmetrical* or *unsymmetrical* depending on whether the two groups bonded to oxygen are the same or different. Diethyl ether is a symmetrical ether; ethyl methyl ether is an unsymmetrical ether.

Cyclic ethers have their oxygen as part of a ring—they are *heterocyclic compounds* (Section 3.15). Several have specific IUPAC names.

Oxirane
Ethylene oxide

Oxetane

Oxolane
Tetrahydrofuran



Oxane
Tetrahydropyran

In each case the ring is numbered starting at the oxygen. The IUPAC rules also permit oxirane (without substituents) to be called *ethylene oxide. Tetrahydrofuran* and *tetrahydropyran* are acceptable synonyms for oxolane and oxane, respectively.

Problem 16.1

Each of the following ethers has been shown to be or is suspected to be a *mutagen,* which means it can induce mutations in test cells. Write the structure of each of these ethers.

(a) Chloromethyl methyl ether

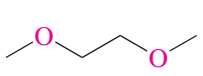
(b) 2-(Chloromethyl)oxirane (also known as epichlorohydrin)

(c) 3,4-Epoxy-1-butene (2-vinyloxirane)

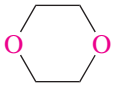
Sample Solution (a) Chloromethyl methyl ether has a chloromethyl group ($ClCH_2$—) and a methyl group (H_3C—) attached to oxygen. Its structure is $ClCH_2OCH_3$.

Recall from Section 6.11 that epoxides may be named as *epoxy* derivatives of alkanes in substitutive IUPAC nomenclature.

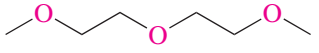
Many substances have more than one ether linkage. Two such compounds, often used as solvents, are the *diethers* 1,2-dimethoxyethane and 1,4-dioxane. Diglyme, also a commonly used solvent, is a *triether.*



1,2-Dimethoxyethane



1,4-Dioxane

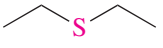


Diethylene glycol dimethyl ether
diglyme

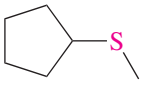
Molecules that contain several ether functions are referred to as *polyethers.* Polyethers have some novel properties and will appear in Section 16.4.

The sulfur analogs (RS—) of alkoxy groups are called *alkylthio* groups. The first two of the following examples illustrate the use of alkylthio prefixes in substitutive nomenclature of sulfides. Functional class IUPAC names of sulfides are derived in exactly the same way as those of ethers but end in the word *sulfide.* Sulfur heterocycles have names analogous to their oxygen relatives, except that *ox-* is replaced by *thi-.* Thus the sulfur heterocycles containing three-, four-, five-, and six-membered rings are named *thiirane, thietane, thiolane,* and *thiane,* respectively.

Sulfides are sometimes informally referred to as *thioethers,* but this term is not part of systematic IUPAC nomenclature.



Ethylthioethane
Diethyl sulfide

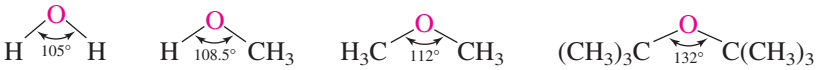


(Methylthio)cyclopentane
Cyclopentyl methyl sulfide

Thiirane

16.2 Structure and Bonding in Ethers and Epoxides

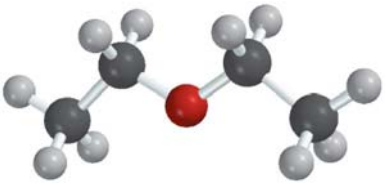
Bonding in ethers is readily understood by comparing ethers with water and alcohols. Van der Waals strain involving alkyl groups causes the bond angle at oxygen to be larger in ethers than in alcohols, and larger in alcohols than in water. An extreme example is di-*tert*-butyl ether, where steric hindrance between the *tert*-butyl groups is responsible for a dramatic increase in the C—O—C bond angle.



Water Methanol Dimethyl ether Di-*tert*-butyl ether

Typical carbon–oxygen bond distances in ethers are similar to those of alcohols (≈142 pm) and are shorter than carbon–carbon bond distances in alkanes (≈153 pm).

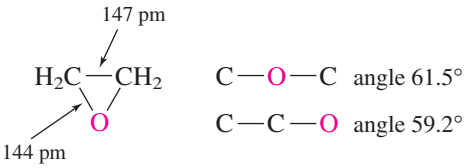
An ether oxygen affects the conformation of a molecule in much the same way that a CH_2 unit does. The most stable conformation of diethyl ether is the all-staggered anti conformation. Tetrahydropyran is most stable in the chair conformation—a fact that has an important bearing on the structures of many carbohydrates.



Anti conformation of diethyl ether

Chair conformation of tetrahydropyran

Incorporating an oxygen atom into a three-membered ring requires its bond angle to be seriously distorted from the normal tetrahedral value. In ethylene oxide, for example, the bond angle at oxygen is 61.5°.



Thus epoxides, like cyclopropanes, have significant angle strain. They tend to undergo reactions that open the three-membered ring by cleaving one of the carbon–oxygen bonds.

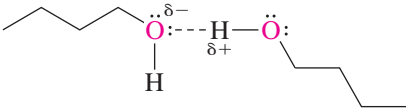
Problem 16.2

The heats of combustion of 1,2-epoxybutane (2-ethyloxirane) and tetrahydrofuran have been measured: one is 2499 kJ/mol; the other is 2546 kJ/mol. Match the heats of combustion with the respective compounds.

16.3 Physical Properties of Ethers

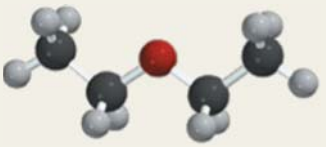
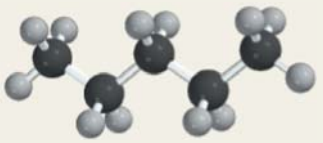
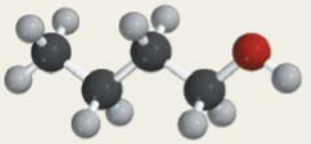
Table 16.1 compares the physical properties of diethyl ether to those of an alkane (pentane) and an alcohol (1-butanol) of similar size and shape. With respect to boiling point, diethyl ether resembles pentane more than 1-butanol. With respect to dipole moment and solubility in water, the reverse is true.

As we have seen before, alcohols have unusually high boiling points because of hydrogen bonding between —OH groups.



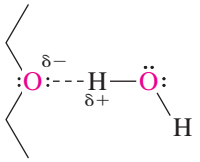
Intermolecular hydrogen bonding in 1-butanol

TABLE 16.1 Physical Properties of Diethyl Ether, Pentane, and 1-Butanol

	Compound		Dipole moment, D	Boiling point, °C	Solubility in water, g/100 mL
Diethyl ether	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$		1.2	35	7.5
Pentane	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$		0	36	≈0
1-Butanol	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$		1.7	117	9

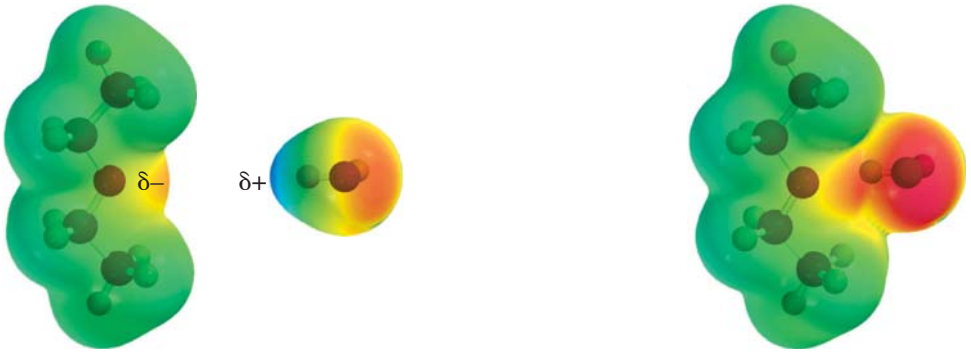
Lacking —OH groups, ethers resemble alkanes in that dispersion forces are the major contributors to intermolecular attractions. Although ethers have significant dipole moments, the fact that their boiling points are closer to alkanes than to alcohols tells us that dipole–dipole attractive forces are minor contributors.

On the other hand, ethers have a negatively polarized oxygen that can hydrogen bond to an —OH proton of water.



Hydrogen bonding between diethyl ether and water

Such hydrogen bonding causes ethers to dissolve in water to approximately the same extent as alcohols of similar size and shape. Alkanes cannot engage in hydrogen bonding to water. Figure 16.1 shows electrostatic potential maps of diethyl ether, water, and the hydrogen-bonded complex formed between them.



(*a*) Diethyl ether and water as separate molecules (*b*) Hydrogen-bonded complex

Figure 16.1

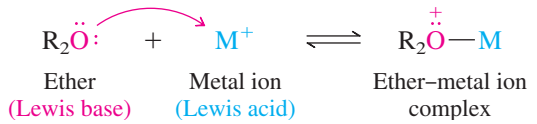
Hydrogen bonding between diethyl ether and water results from the attractive force between the negatively polarized oxygen of diethyl ether and the positively polarized hydrogen of water. The color ranges of the three electrostatic potential maps are the same.

Problem 16.3

Of the two compounds cyclopentane and tetrahydrofuran, one has a boiling point of 49°C and is insoluble in water; the other has a boiling point of 65°C and is miscible with water in all proportions. Match the properties to the appropriate compound. In which property of which compound is hydrogen bonding important? Sketch the hydrogen-bonding interaction.

16.4 Crown Ethers

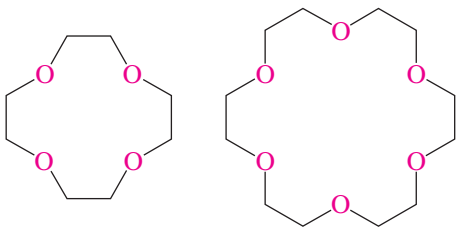
Their polar carbon–oxygen bonds and the presence of unshared electron pairs at oxygen contribute to the ability of ethers to form Lewis acid/Lewis base complexes with metal ions.



The strength of this bonding depends on the kind of ether. Simple ethers form relatively weak complexes with metal ions, but Charles J. Pedersen of DuPont discovered that certain *polyethers* form much more stable complexes with metal ions than do simple ethers.

Pedersen was a corecipient of the 1987 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

Pedersen prepared a series of *macrocyclic polyethers,* cyclic compounds containing four or more oxygens in a ring of 12 or more atoms. He called these compounds **crown ethers,** because their molecular models resemble crowns. Systematic nomenclature of crown ethers is somewhat cumbersome, so Pedersen devised a shorthand description whereby the word *crown* is preceded by the total number of atoms in the ring and is followed by the number of oxygen atoms.

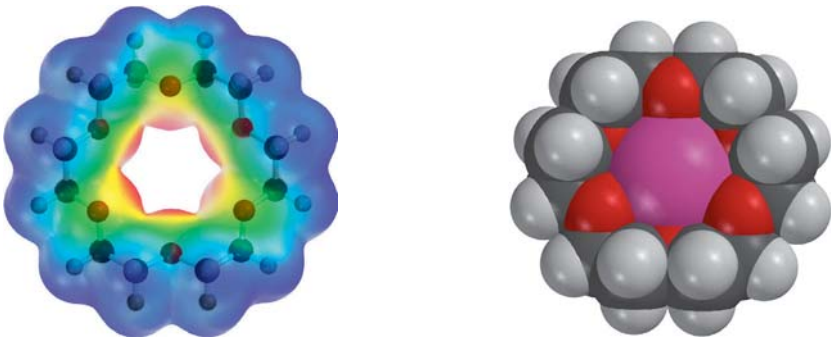


12-Crown-4 and 18-crown-6 are a cyclic tetramer and hexamer, respectively, of repeating —OCH_2CH_2— units; they are polyethers based on ethylene glycol ($HOCH_2CH_2OH$) as the parent alcohol.

Problem 16.4

What organic compound mentioned earlier in this chapter is a cyclic dimer of —OCH_2CH_2— units?

The metal–ion complexing properties of crown ethers are clearly evident in their effects on the solubility and reactivity of ionic compounds in nonpolar media. Potassium fluoride (KF) is ionic and practically insoluble in benzene alone, but dissolves in it when 18-crown-6 is present. This happens because of the electron distribution of 18-crown-6 as shown in Figure 16.2*a*. The electrostatic potential surface consists of essentially two regions: an electron-rich interior associated with the oxygens and a hydrocarbon-like exterior associated with the CH_2 groups. When KF is added to a solution of 18-crown-6 in benzene, potassium ion (K^+) interacts with the oxygens of the crown ether to form a Lewis acid/Lewis base complex. As can be seen in the space-filling model of this complex (Figure 16.2*b*), K^+, with a diameter of 266 pm, fits comfortably within the 260–320 pm internal cavity of 18-crown-6. Nonpolar CH_2 groups dominate the outer surface of the complex,



(*a*) (*b*)

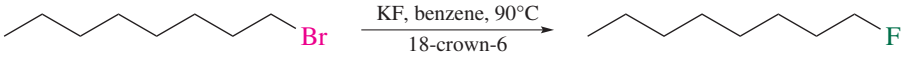
Figure 16.2

(*a*) An electrostatic potential map of 18-crown-6. The region of highest electron density (red) is associated with the negatively polarized oxygens and their lone pairs. The outer periphery of the crown ether (blue) is relatively nonpolar (hydrocarbon-like) and causes the molecule to be soluble in nonpolar solvents such as benzene. (*b*) A space-filling model of the complex formed between 18-crown-6 and potassium ion (K^+). K^+ fits into the cavity of the crown ether where it is bound by a Lewis acid/Lewis base interaction with the oxygens.

mask its polar interior, and permit the complex to dissolve in nonpolar solvents. Every K^+ that is carried into benzene brings a fluoride ion with it, resulting in a solution containing strongly complexed potassium ions and relatively unsolvated fluoride ions.

18-Crown-6 | Potassium fluoride (solid) | 18-Crown-6/potassium fluoride complex (in solution)

In solvents such as water and alcohols, fluoride ion is strongly solvated by ion–dipole forces and is neither very basic nor very nucleophilic. On the other hand, the poorly solvated, or "naked," fluoride ions that are present when potassium fluoride dissolves in benzene in the presence of a crown ether are better able to express their anionic reactivity. Thus, alkyl halides react with potassium fluoride in benzene containing 18-crown-6, thereby providing a method for the preparation of otherwise difficultly accessible alkyl fluorides. No reaction is observed in the absence of the crown ether.



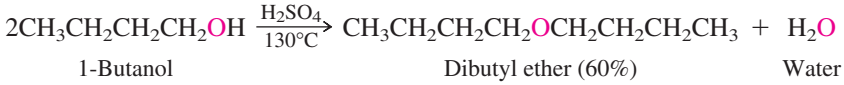
1-Bromooctane | 1-Fluorooctane (92%)

The reaction proceeds in the direction indicated because a C—F bond is much stronger than a C—Br bond.

Catalysis by crown ethers has been used to advantage to increase the rate of many organic reactions that involve anions as reactants. Just as important, though, is the increased understanding that studies of crown ether catalysis have brought to our knowledge of biological processes in which metal ions, including Na^+ and K^+, are transported through the nonpolar interiors of cell membranes.

16.5 Preparation of Ethers

Because they are widely used as solvents, many simple dialkyl ethers are commercially available. Diethyl ether and dibutyl ether, for example, are prepared by acid-catalyzed condensation of the corresponding alcohols, as described earlier in Section 15.7.



1-Butanol | Dibutyl ether (60%) | Water

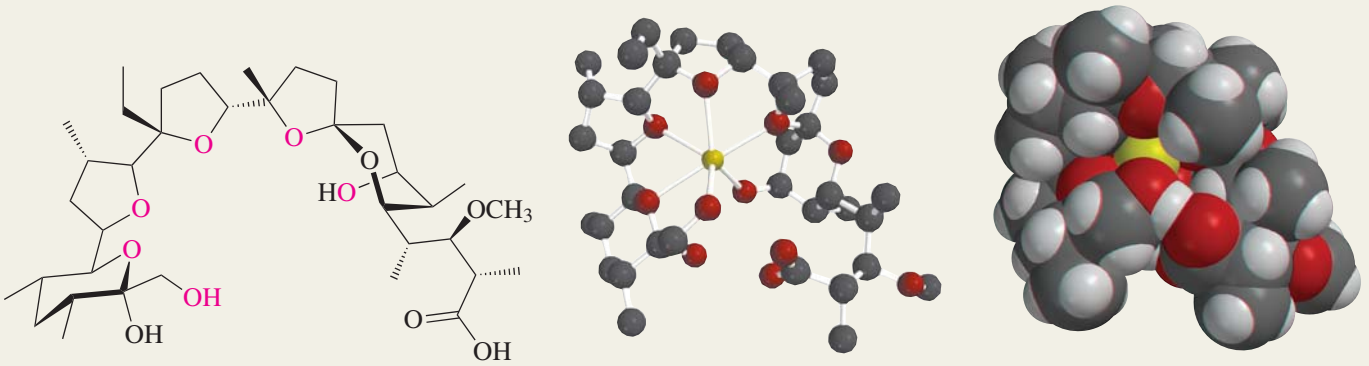
The mechanism for the formation of diethyl ether from ethanol under conditions of acid catalysis was shown in Mechanism 15.1.

In general, this method is limited to the preparation of symmetrical ethers in which both alkyl groups are primary.

Polyether Antibiotics

One way in which pharmaceutical companies search for new drugs is by growing colonies of microorganisms in nutrient broths and assaying the substances produced for their biological activity. This method has yielded thousands of antibiotic substances, of which hundreds have been developed into effective drugs. Antibiotics are, by definition, toxic (*anti* = "against"; *bios* = "life"), and the goal is to find substances that are more toxic to infectious organisms than to their human hosts.

Since 1950, a number of polyether antibiotics have been discovered using fermentation technology. They are characterized by the presence of several cyclic ether structural units, as illustrated for the case of *monensin* in Figure 16.3*a*. Monensin and other naturally occurring polyethers are similar to crown ethers in their ability to form stable complexes with metal ions. The structure of the sodium salt of monensin is depicted in Figure 16.3*b*, where it can be seen that four ether oxygens and two hydroxyl groups surround a sodium ion. The alkyl groups are oriented toward the outside of the complex, and the polar oxygens and the metal ion are on the inside. The hydrocarbon-like surface of the complex permits it to carry its sodium ion through the hydrocarbon-like interior of a cell membrane. This disrupts the normal balance of sodium ions within the cell and interferes with important processes of cellular respiration. Small amounts of monensin are added to animal feed to kill parasites that live in the intestines of chickens, cows, etc. Compounds such as monensin and the crown ethers that affect metal ion transport are referred to as *ionophores* ("ion carriers").

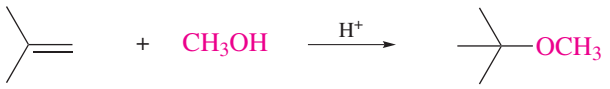


(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Figure 16.3

(*a*) The structure of monensin; (*b*) and (*c*) Ball-and-stick and space-filling models, respectively, of the sodium salt of monensin showing close contacts between Na^+ (yellow) and the oxygens in the internal cavity of the complex.

Acid-catalyzed addition of alcohols to alkenes is sometimes used. Billions of pounds of *tert*-butyl methyl ether (MTBE) have been prepared by the reaction:



2-Methylpropene Methanol *tert*-Butyl methyl ether

tert-Butyl methyl ether is often referred to as MTBE, standing for the incorrect name "methyl *tert*-butyl ether." Remember, italicized prefixes are ignored when alphabetizing, and *tert*-butyl precedes methyl.

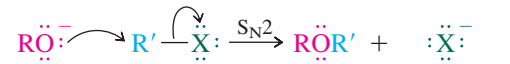
Small amounts of *tert*-butyl methyl ether increase the octane rating of gasoline, and before environmental concerns placed limits on its use, the demand for MTBE exceeded the supply.

Problem 16.5

Outline a reasonable mechanism for the formation of *tert*-butyl methyl ether according to the preceding equation.

16.6 The Williamson Ether Synthesis

A long-standing method for the preparation of ethers is the **Williamson ether synthesis.** Nucleophilic substitution of an alkyl halide by an alkoxide gives the carbon–oxygen bond of an ether:



Alkoxide ion — Alkyl halide — Ether — Halide ion

The reaction is most successful with methyl and primary alkyl halides.

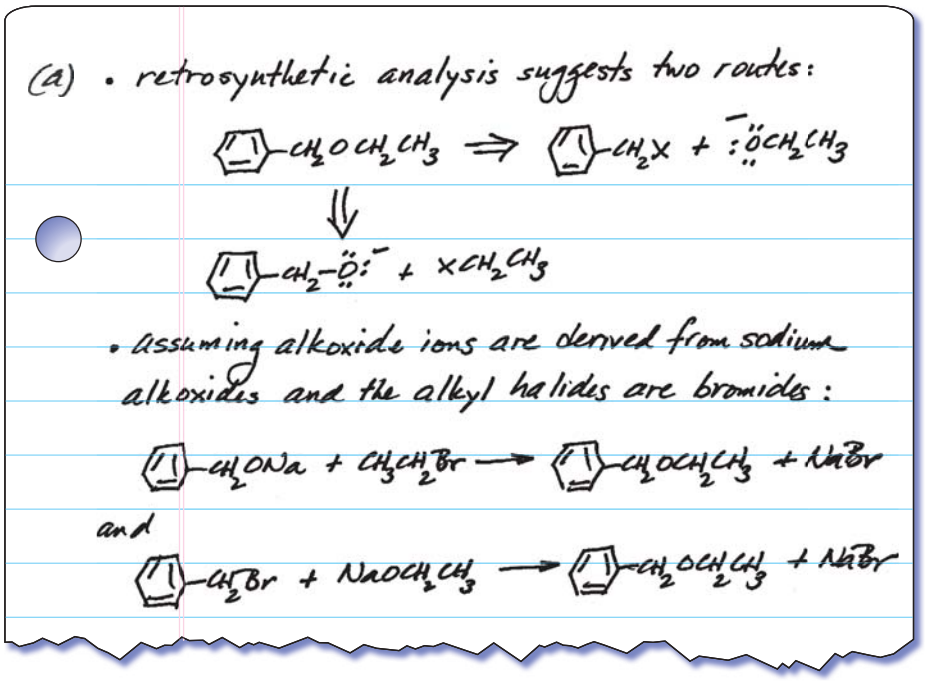
Sodium butoxide — Ethyl iodide — Butyl ethyl ether (71%) — Sodium iodide

The reaction is named for Alexander Williamson, a British chemist who used it to prepare diethyl ether in 1850.

Problem 16.6

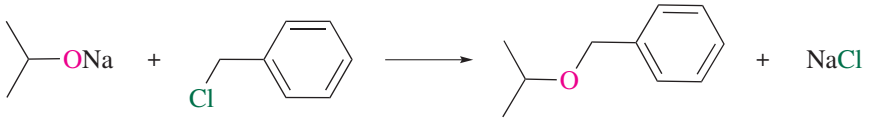
(a) Write equations describing two different ways in which benzyl ethyl ether could be prepared by a Williamson ether synthesis.

Sample Solution



(b) Write an equation showing the most practical synthesis of allyl phenyl ether by the Williamson method.

Secondary and tertiary *alkyl halides* are not suitable, because they react with alkoxide bases by E2 elimination rather than by S_N2 substitution. Whether the *alkoxide base* is primary, secondary, or tertiary is much less important than the nature of the alkyl halide. Thus benzyl isopropyl ether is prepared in high yield from benzyl chloride, a primary chloride that is incapable of undergoing elimination, and sodium isopropoxide:

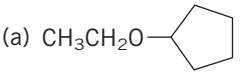


Sodium isopropoxide — Benzyl chloride — Benzyl isopropyl ether (84%) — Sodium chloride

The alternative synthetic route using the sodium salt of benzyl alcohol and an isopropyl halide would be much less effective, because of increased competition from elimination as the alkyl halide becomes more sterically hindered.

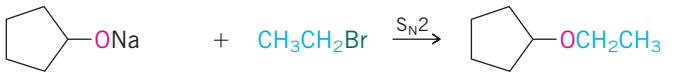
Problem 16.7

Only one combination of alkyl halide and alkoxide is appropriate for the preparation of each of the following ethers by the Williamson ether synthesis. What is the correct combination in each case?

(a) 

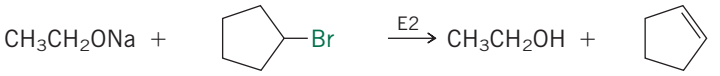
(b) $H_2C{=}CHCH_2OCH(CH_3)_2$ (c) $(CH_3)_3COCH_2C_6H_5$

Sample Solution (a) The ether linkage of cyclopentyl ethyl ether involves a primary carbon and a secondary one. Choose the alkyl halide corresponding to the primary alkyl group, leaving the secondary alkyl group to arise from the alkoxide nucleophile.



Sodium cyclopentanolate Ethyl bromide Cyclopentyl ethyl ether

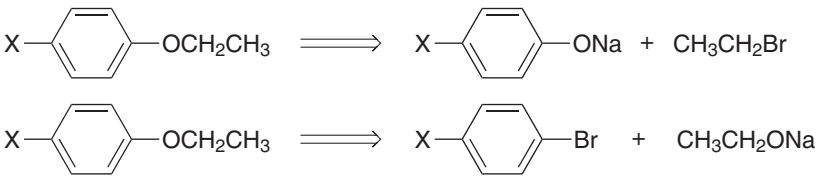
The alternative combination, cyclopentyl bromide and sodium ethoxide, is not appropriate because elimination will be the major reaction:



Sodium ethoxide Cyclopentyl bromide Ethanol (major products) Cyclopentene

Problem 16.8

Two approaches can be considered for the synthesis of alkyl aryl ethers:



Evaluate the feasibility of both approaches for X = methyl and X = nitro.

16.7 Reactions of Ethers: A Review and a Preview

Up to this point, we haven't seen any reactions of dialkyl ethers. Indeed, ethers are one of the least reactive of the functional groups we shall study. It is this low level of reactivity, along with an ability to dissolve nonpolar substances, that makes ethers so often used as solvents when carrying out organic reactions. Nevertheless, most ethers are hazardous materials, and precautions must be taken when using them. Diethyl ether is extremely flammable and because of its high volatility can form explosive mixtures in air relatively quickly. Open flames must never be present in laboratories where diethyl ether is being used. Other low-molecular-weight ethers must also be treated as fire hazards.

Another dangerous property of ethers is the ease with which they undergo oxidation in air to form explosive peroxides. Air oxidation of diisopropyl ether proceeds according to the equation

Diisopropyl ether Oxygen Diisopropyl ether hydroperoxide

The reaction follows a free-radical mechanism and gives a hydroperoxide, a compound of the type ROOH. Hydroperoxides are unstable and shock-sensitive and form related peroxidic derivatives that are prone to violent decomposition. Air oxidation leads to peroxides within a few days if ethers are even briefly exposed to atmospheric oxygen. For this reason, one should never use old bottles of dialkyl ethers, and extreme care must be exercised in their disposal.

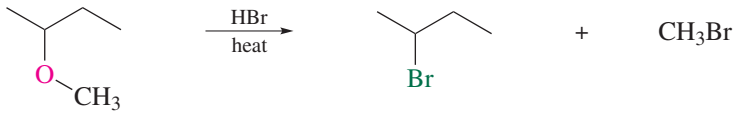
16.8 Acid-Catalyzed Cleavage of Ethers

Just as the carbon–oxygen bond of alcohols is cleaved on reaction with hydrogen halides, so too is an ether linkage broken:

$$\underset{\text{Ether}}{ROR'} + \underset{\substack{\text{Hydrogen}\\\text{halide}}}{HX} \longrightarrow \underset{\substack{\text{Alkyl}\\\text{halide}}}{RX} + \underset{\text{Alcohol}}{R'OH}$$

The reaction is normally carried out under conditions (excess hydrogen halide, heat) that convert the alcohol formed as one of the original products to an alkyl halide and typically leads to two alkyl halide molecules plus water.

$$\underset{\text{Ether}}{ROR'} + \underset{\substack{\text{Hydrogen}\\\text{halide}}}{2HX} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \underset{\text{Two alkyl halides}}{RX + R'X} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O}$$



sec-Butyl methyl ether — 2-Bromobutane (81%) — Bromomethane

The order of hydrogen halide reactivity is HI > HBr >> HCl. Hydrogen fluoride is not effective.

Problem 16.9

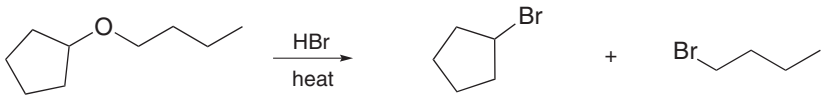
A series of dialkyl ethers was allowed to react with excess hydrogen bromide, with the following results. Identify the ether in each case.

(a) One ether gave a mixture of bromocyclopentane and 1-bromobutane.

(b) Another ether gave only benzyl bromide.

(c) A third ether gave one mole of 1,5-dibromopentane per mole of ether.

Sample Solution (a) In the reaction of dialkyl ethers with excess hydrogen bromide, each alkyl group of the ether function is cleaved and forms an alkyl bromide. Because bromocyclopentane and 1-bromobutane are the products, the starting ether must be butyl cyclopentyl ether.

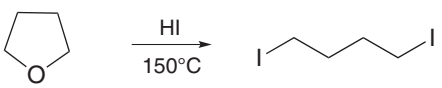


Butyl cyclopentyl ether — Bromocyclopentane — 1-Bromobutane

The cleavage of diethyl ether by hydrogen bromide is outlined in Mechanism 16.1. The key step is an S_N2-like attack on a dialkyloxonium ion by bromide (step 2).

Problem 16.10

Adapt Mechanism 16.1 to the reaction:

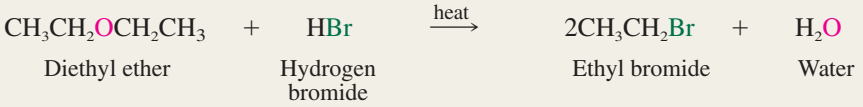


Tetrahydrofuran — 1,4-Diiodobutane (65%)

Mechanism 16.1

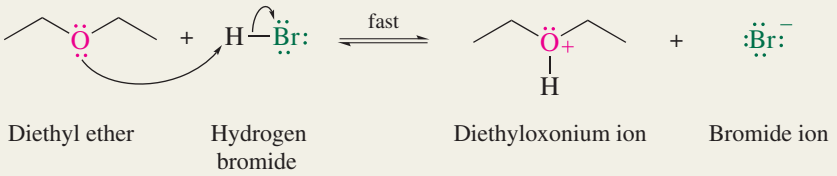
Cleavage of Ethers by Hydrogen Halides

THE OVERALL REACTION:

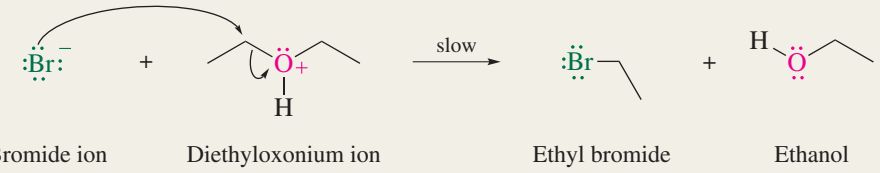


THE MECHANISM:

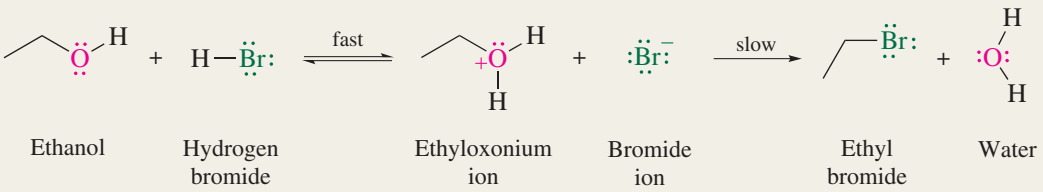
Step 1: Proton transfer to the oxygen of the ether to give a dialkyloxonium ion.



Step 2: Nucleophilic attack of the halide anion on carbon of the dialkyloxonium ion. This step gives one molecule of an alkyl halide and one molecule of an alcohol.



Steps 3 and 4: These two steps do not involve an ether at all. They correspond to those in which an alcohol is converted to an alkyl halide (Sections 4.8–4.12).



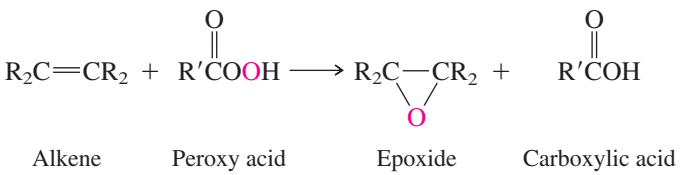
With ethers of the type ROR′ (R≠R′), the question of which carbon–oxygen bond is broken first is not one that we need examine at our level of study. Note also that ethers of tertiary alcohols react with hydrogen halides by an S_N1 mechanism.

16.9 Preparation of Epoxides

There are two main methods for the preparation of epoxides:

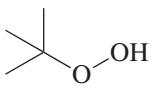
1. Epoxidation of alkenes
2. Base-promoted ring closure of vicinal halohydrins

Epoxidation of alkenes with peroxy acids was discussed in Section 6.11 and is represented by the general equation

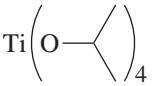


The reaction, which is easy to carry out, is a stereospecific syn addition, and yields are usually high.

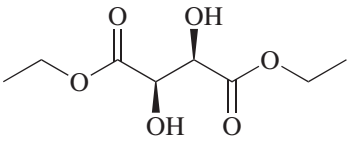
Allylic alcohols are converted to epoxides by oxidation with *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide in the presence of certain transition metals. The most significant aspect of this reaction—called the **Sharpless epoxidation**—is its high enantioselectivity when carried out using a combination of *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide, titanium(IV) isopropoxide, and diethyl tartrate.



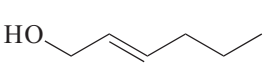
tert-Butyl hydroperoxide



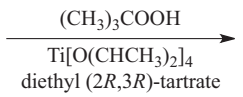
Titanium(IV) isopropoxide

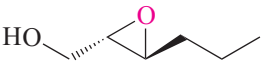


Diethyl (2*R*,3*R*)-tartrate



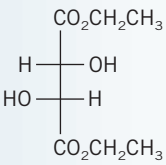
trans-2-Hexen-1-ol





(2*S*,3*S*)-2,3-Epoxy-1-hexanol
(78% yield, 98% enantiomeric excess)

Diethyl (2*R*,3*R*)-tartrate is the diethyl ester of tartaric acid, a chiral molecule that was discussed in Section 7.15.



Diethyl (2*R*,3*R*)-tartrate

Oxygen is transferred to the double bond of the allylic alcohol from the hydroperoxy group in a chiral environment and occurs enantioselectively.

The value of this reaction was recognized with the award of the 2001 Nobel Prize in Chemistry to its creator K. Barry Sharpless. Sharpless epoxidation of allylic alcohols can be carried out with catalytic amounts of titanium(IV) isopropoxide and, because both enantiomers of diethyl tartrate are readily available, can be applied to the synthesis of either enantiomer of a desired epoxy alcohol.

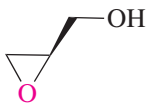
Sharpless's work in oxidation also included methods for the enantioselective dihydroxylation of alkenes (see Section 15.5).

Problem 16.11

What would be the absolute configuration of the 2,3-epoxy-1-hexanol produced in the preceding reaction if diethyl (2*S*,3*S*)-tartrate were used instead of (2*R*,3*R*)?

More than a laboratory synthesis, Sharpless epoxidation has been adapted to the large-scale preparation of (+)-disparlure, a sex pheromone used to control gypsy moth infestations, and of (*R*)-glycidol, an intermediate in the synthesis of cardiac drugs known as beta-blockers.

(+)-Disparlure
[(7*R*,8*S*)-7,8-Epoxy-2-methyloctadecane]

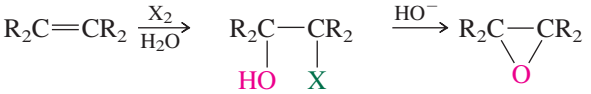


(+)-Glycidol
[(*R*)-2,3-Epoxy-1-propanol]

The following section describes the preparation of epoxides by the base-promoted ring closure of vicinal halohydrins. Because vicinal halohydrins are customarily prepared from alkenes (Section 6.11), both methods—epoxidation using peroxy acids and ring closure of halohydrins—are based on alkenes as the starting materials for preparing epoxides.

16.10 Conversion of Vicinal Halohydrins to Epoxides

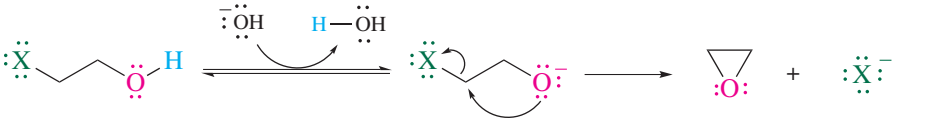
The vicinal halohydrins formed by the reaction of alkenes with aqueous Cl_2, Br_2, or I_2 (Section 6.10) are converted to epoxides in base.



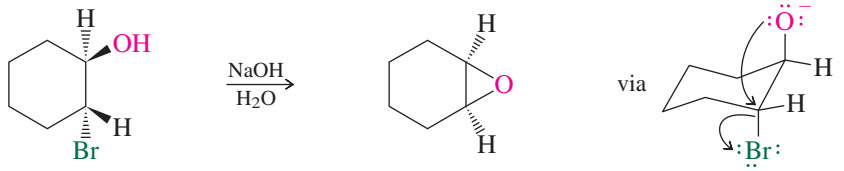
Alkene Vicinal halohydrin Epoxide

A large portion of the more than 2 billion pounds of 1,2-epoxypropane produced each year in the United States is made from propene by this method. Its main use is in the preparation of polyurethane plastics.

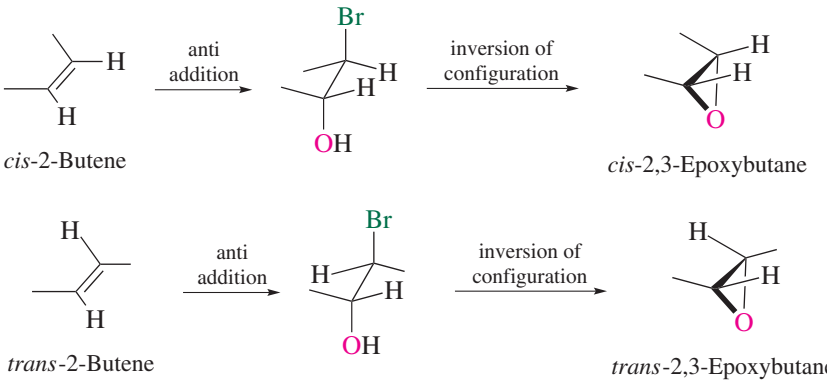
Reaction with base brings the alcohol into equilibrium with its corresponding alkoxide and intramolecular nucleophilic substitution closes the three-membered ring.



This ring-closing step obeys the usual S_N2 stereochemistry—approach of the nucleophilic oxygen from the side opposite the bond to the leaving group. In cyclohexane rings, this corresponds to a trans-diaxial arrangement of oxygen and halide.



The stereochemistry of the alkene → halohydrin → epoxide sequence is the same as that observed in peroxy acid oxidation of alkenes. Substituents that are cis in the alkene remain cis in the epoxide. The combination of anti addition in forming the bromohydrin, followed inversion of configuration in conversion of the bromohydrin to the epoxide yields the same stereochemical result as syn epoxidation of an alkene.



Problem 16.12

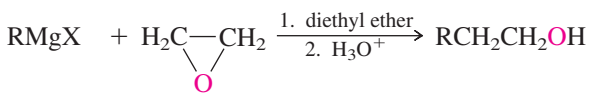
Classify the bromohydrins formed from *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene as erythro or threo. Is either chiral? Is either optically active when formed from the alkene by this method? Classify the epoxides as either chiral or meso. Is either optically active when formed by this method?

16.11 Reactions of Epoxides with Anionic Nucleophiles

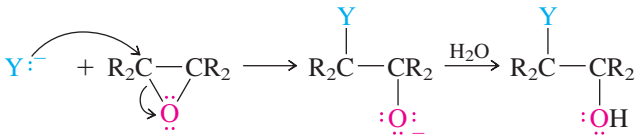
Angle strain is the main source of strain in epoxides, but torsional strain that results from the eclipsing of bonds on adjacent carbons is also present. Both kinds of strain are relieved when a ring-opening reaction occurs.

The most striking chemical property of epoxides is their far greater reactivity toward nucleophilic reagents compared with simple ethers. They react rapidly and exothermically with anionic nucleophiles to yield ring-opened products. This enhanced reactivity results from the angle strain of epoxides; ring-opening relieves that strain.

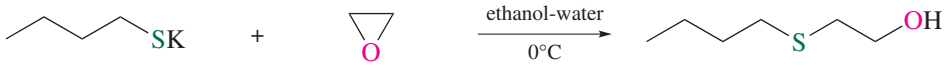
We saw an example of nucleophilic ring opening of epoxides in Section 15.4, where the reaction of Grignard and organolithium reagents with ethylene oxide was presented as a synthetic route to primary alcohols:



Typical anionic nucleophiles react with epoxides in water or alcohols as the solvent to give an alkoxide intermediate that is rapidly converted to an alcohol by proton transfer.



Nucleophile Epoxide Alkoxide ion Alcohol



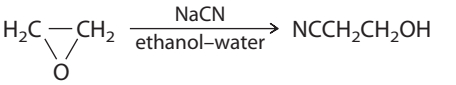
Potassium butanethiolate Ethylene oxide 2-(Butylthio)ethanol (99%)

Problem 16.13

What is the principal organic product formed in the reaction of ethylene oxide with each of the following?

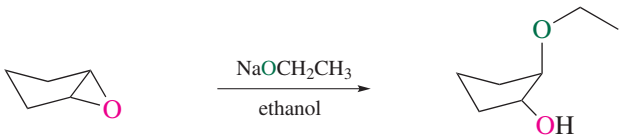
(a) Sodium cyanide (NaCN) in aqueous ethanol
(b) Sodium azide (NaN_3) in aqueous ethanol
(c) Sodium hydroxide (NaOH) in water
(d) Phenyllithium (C_6H_5Li) in diethyl ether, followed by addition of dilute sulfuric acid
(e) 1-Butynylsodium ($CH_3CH_2C{\equiv}CNa$) in liquid ammonia

Sample Solution (a) Sodium cyanide is a source of the nucleophilic cyanide anion. Cyanide ion attacks ethylene oxide, opening the ring and forming 2-cyanoethanol:



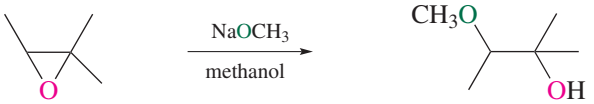
Ethylene oxide 2-Cyanoethanol

The reactions of epoxides with anionic nucleophiles have many of the characteristics of S_N2 reactions. Inversion of configuration occurs at the carbon attacked by the nucleophile:



1,2-Epoxycyclopentane *trans*-2-Ethoxycyclopentanol (67%)

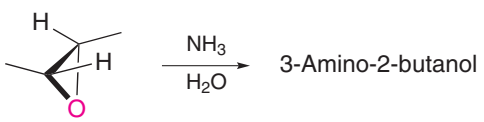
and the nucleophile bonds to the less substituted, less sterically hindered carbon of the ring:



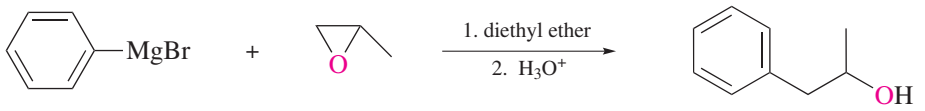
2,3,3-Trimethyloxirane 3-Methoxy-2,3-dimethyl-2-butanol (53%)

Problem 16.14

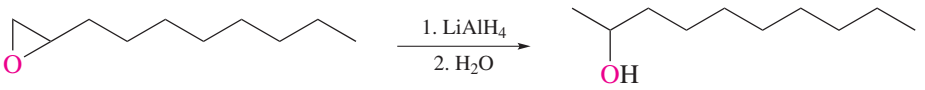
Ammonia and amines react with epoxides with the same stereospecificity as anionic nucleophiles. Draw a sawhorse or Newman projection formula for the product of the reaction shown, clearly showing the stereochemistry at both chirality centers. What are the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R,S* descriptors for these chirality centers in the reactant and the product?



The reactions of Grignard reagents and lithium aluminum hydride with epoxides are regioselective in the same sense as the examples just shown. Substitution occurs at the less substituted carbon of the epoxide ring.



Phenylmagnesium bromide — 1,2-Epoxypropane — 1-Phenyl-2-propanol (60%)



1,2-Epoxydecane — 2-Decanol (90%)

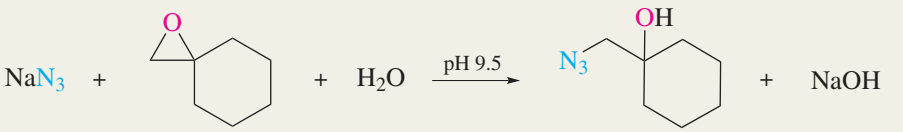
Epoxidation of an alkene, followed by lithium aluminum hydride reduction of the resulting epoxide, gives the same alcohol as would be obtained by acid-catalyzed hydration of an alkene (Section 6.6).

Experimental observations such as these combine with the principles of nucleophilic substitution to give the picture of epoxide ring opening shown in Mechanism 16.2.

Mechanism 16.2

Nucleophilic Ring-Opening of an Epoxide

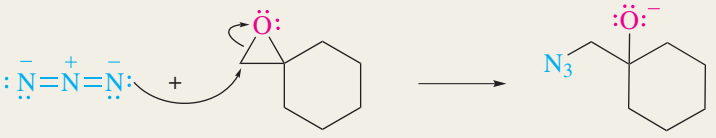
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Sodium azide — 1-Oxaspiro[2.5]-heptane — Water — 1-(Azidomethyl)-cyclohexanol (77%) — Sodium hydroxide

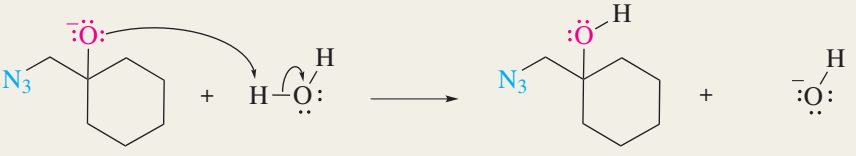
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The nucleophile attacks the less crowded carbon from the side opposite the carbon–oxygen bond. Bond formation with the nucleophile accompanies carbon–oxygen bond breaking, and a substantial portion of the strain in the three-membered ring is relieved as it begins to open at the transition state.



Azide ion — 1-Oxaspiro[2.5]-heptane — Azido alkoxide ion

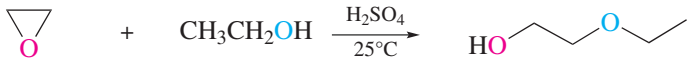
Step 2: The alkoxide rapidly abstracts a proton from the solvent to give the β-azido alcohol as the isolated product.



Azido alkoxide ion — Water — 1-(Azidomethyl)-cyclohexanol — Hydroxide ion

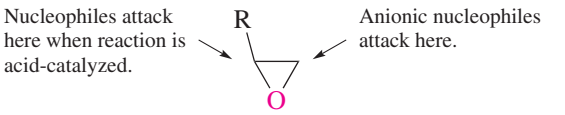
16.12 Acid-Catalyzed Ring Opening of Epoxides

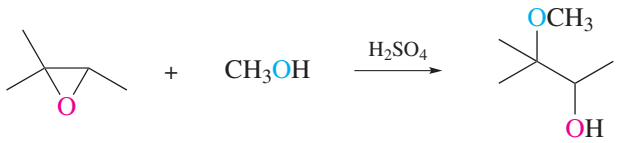
Nucleophilic ring openings of epoxides can be catalyzed by acids.



Ethylene oxide Ethanol 2-Ethoxyethanol (85%)

There is an important difference in the regioselectivity of ring-opening reactions of epoxides in acid solution compared with their counterparts in base. Unsymmetrically substituted epoxides tend to react with anionic nucleophiles at the less hindered carbon of the ring. Under acid-catalyzed conditions, however, reaction occurs at the more substituted carbon.

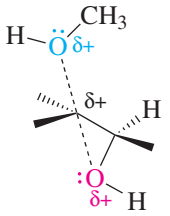




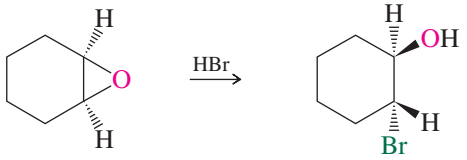
2,3-Epoxy-2-methylbutane Methanol 3-Methoxy-3-methyl-2-butanol (76%)

As seen in Mechanism 16.3, the reaction just described involves three steps. Steps 1 and 3 are proton transfers; step 2 involves methanol acting as a nucleophile toward the protonated epoxide. The transition state for this step has a fair amount of carbocation character; breaking the C—O bond of the ring is more advanced than formation of the bond to the nucleophile.

Transition state for reaction of methanol with conjugate acid of 2,3-epoxy-2-methylbutane



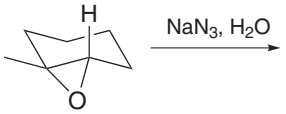
Although nucleophilic participation at the transition state is less than that for reactions between epoxides and anionic nucleophiles, it is enough to ensure that substitution proceeds with inversion of configuration.



1,2-Epoxycyclohexane *trans*-2-Bromocyclohexanol (73%)

Problem 16.15

The epoxide shown gives a mixture of two azido alcohols on reaction with sodium azide in aqueous acid and in base.

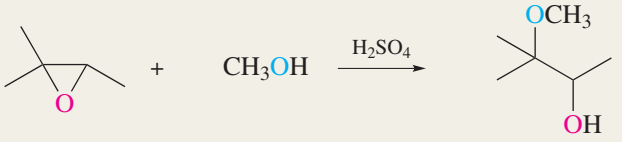


Write a structural formula including stereochemistry for the major product formed at pH 9.5. A different isomer predominates at pH 4.2. What is the structure of this isomer? (Note: The pK_a of HN_3 = 4.2).

Mechanism 16.3

Acid-Catalyzed Ring Opening of an Epoxide

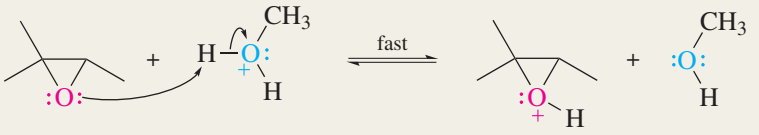
THE OVERALL REACTION:



2,3-Epoxy-2-methylbutane | Methanol | 3-Methoxy-3-methyl-2-butanol (76%)

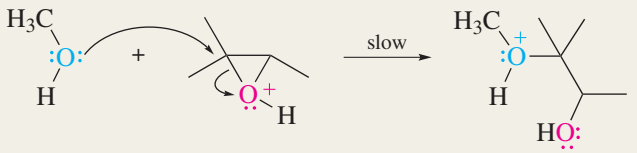
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The most abundant acid in the reaction mixture, the conjugate acid of the solvent methanol, transfers a proton to the oxygen of the epoxide.



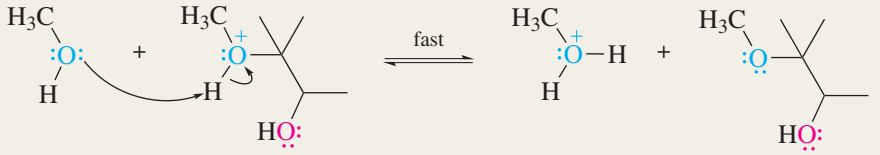
2,3-Epoxy-2-methylbutane | Methyloxonium ion | 2,3-Epoxonium-2-methylbutane | Methanol

Step 2: Methanol acts as a nucleophile toward the protonated epoxide and bonds to the more highly substituted (more carbocation-like) carbon of the ring. The carbon–oxygen bond of the ring breaks in this step, and the ring opens.



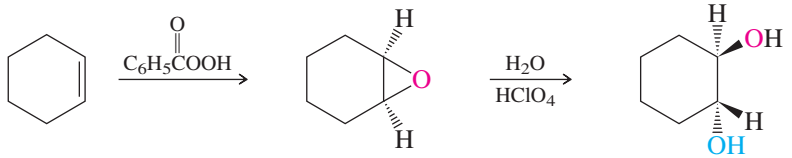
Methanol | 2,3-Epoxonium-2-methylbutane | 3-Methoxonium-3-methyl-2-butanol

Step 3: Proton transfer to methanol completes the reaction and regenerates the acid catalyst.



Methanol | 3-Methoxonium-3-methyl-2-butanol | Methyloxonium ion | 3-Methoxy-3-methyl-2-butanol

A method for achieving net anti hydroxylation of alkenes combines two stereospecific processes: epoxidation of the double bond and hydrolysis of the derived epoxide.



Cyclohexene | 1,2-Epoxycyclohexane | *trans*-1,2-Cyclohexanediol (80%)

Problem 16.16

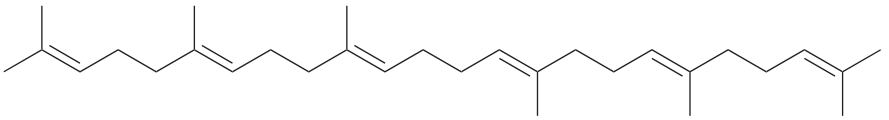
Which alkene, *cis*-2-butene or *trans*-2-butene, would you choose in order to prepare *meso*-2,3-butanediol by epoxidation followed by acid-catalyzed hydrolysis? Which alkene would yield *meso*-2,3-butanediol by osmium tetraoxide dihydroxylation?

16.13 Epoxides in Biological Processes

Many naturally occurring substances are epoxides. In most cases, epoxides are biosynthesized by the enzyme-catalyzed transfer of one of the oxygen atoms of an O_2 molecule to an alkene. Because only one of the atoms of O_2 is transferred to the substrate, the enzymes that catalyze such transfers are classified as *monooxygenases*. A biological reducing agent, usually the coenzyme NADH (Section 15.10), is required as well.

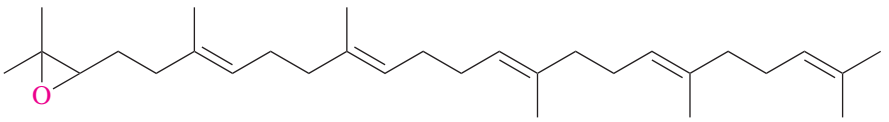
$$R_2C{=}CR_2 + O_2 + H^+ + NADH \xrightarrow{\text{enzyme}} R_2C\text{—}CR_2 + H_2O + NAD^+$$
(O bridges the two carbons)

A prominent example of such a reaction is the biological epoxidation of the polyene squalene.



Squalene

O_2, NADH, a monooxygenase



Squalene 2,3-epoxide

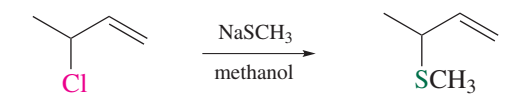
The reactivity of epoxides toward nucleophilic ring opening is responsible for one of the biological roles they play. Squalene 2,3-epoxide, for example, is the biological precursor to cholesterol and the steroid hormones, including testosterone, progesterone, estrone, and cortisone. The pathway from squalene 2,3-epoxide to these compounds is triggered by epoxide ring opening and will be described in Chapter 24.

16.14 Preparation of Sulfides

Sulfides, compounds of the type RSR′, are prepared by nucleophilic substitution. Treatment of a primary or secondary alkyl halide with an alkanethiolate ion (RS^-) gives a sulfide:

$$RS^- Na^+ + R'\text{—}X: \xrightarrow{S_N2} RSR' + Na^+ X^-$$

Sodium alkanethiolate — Alkyl halide — Sulfide — Sodium halide



3-Chloro-1-butene

Methyl 1-methylallyl sulfide (62%)

The pK_a for CH_3SH is 10.7.

It is not necessary to prepare and isolate the sodium alkanethiolate in a separate operation. Because thiols are more acidic than water, they are quantitatively converted to their alkanethiolate anions by sodium hydroxide. Thus, all that is necessary is to add a thiol to sodium hydroxide in a suitable solvent (water or an alcohol) followed by the alkyl halide.

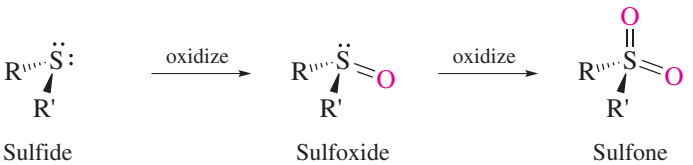
Problem 16.17

The *p*-toluenesulfonate derived from (*R*)-2-octanol and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride was allowed to react with sodium benzenethiolate (C_6H_5SNa). Give the structure, including stereochemistry and the appropriate *R* or *S* descriptor, of the product.

16.15 Oxidation of Sulfides: Sulfoxides and Sulfones

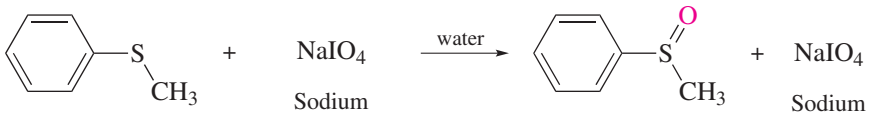
We saw in Section 15.12 that thiols differ from alcohols with respect to their behavior toward oxidation. Similarly, sulfides differ from ethers in their behavior toward oxidizing agents. Whereas ethers tend to undergo oxidation at carbon to give hydroperoxides (Section 16.7), sulfides are oxidized at sulfur to give **sulfoxides.** If the oxidizing agent is strong enough and present in excess, oxidation can proceed further to give **sulfones.**

Third-row elements such as sulfur can expand their valence shell beyond eight electrons, and so sulfur–oxygen bonds in sulfoxides and sulfones can be represented as double bonds.



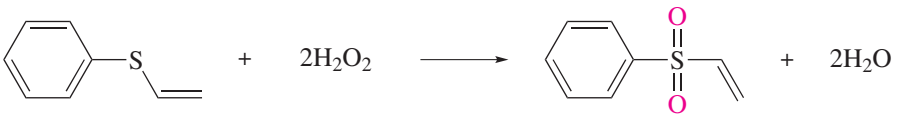
Sulfide Sulfoxide Sulfone

When the desired product is a sulfoxide, sodium metaperiodate ($NaIO_4$) is an ideal reagent. It oxidizes sulfides to sulfoxides in high yield but shows no tendency to oxidize sulfoxides to sulfones.



Methyl phenyl sulfide | Sodium metaperiodate | Methyl phenyl sulfoxide (91%) | Sodium iodate

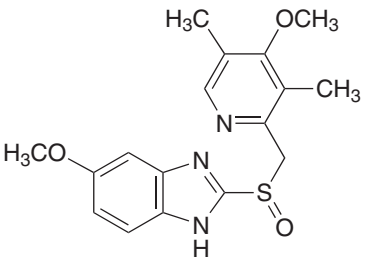
Peroxy acids, usually in dichloromethane as the solvent, are also reliable reagents for converting sulfides to sulfoxides. One equivalent of a peroxy acid or hydrogen peroxide converts sulfides to sulfoxides; two equivalents gives the corresponding sulfone.



Phenyl vinyl sulfide | Hydrogen peroxide | Phenyl vinyl sulfone (74–78%) | Water

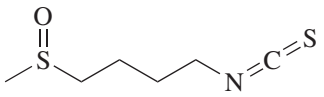
Problem 16.18

Prilosec and Nexium ("the little purple pill") are widely used to treat acid reflux and prevent the damage that stomach acid can do to the lining of the esophagus. Prilosec is the racemic form of omeprazole; Nexium is (*S*)-omeprazole. Write a structural formula for (*S*)-omeprazole clearly showing its stereochemistry. (For a hint, see Section 7.17.)



Omeprazole

Oxidation of sulfides occurs in living systems as well. Among naturally occurring sulfoxides, one that has received recent attention is *sulforaphane,* which is present in broccoli and other vegetables. Sulforaphane holds promise as a potential anticancer agent because, unlike most anticancer drugs, which act by killing rapidly dividing tumor cells faster than they kill normal cells, sulforaphane is nontoxic and may simply inhibit the formation of tumors.

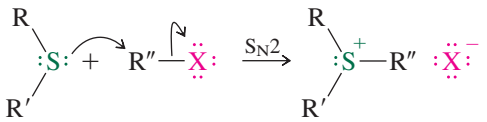


Sulforaphane

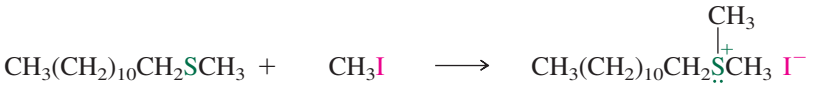
The —N═C═S unit in sulforaphane is the *isothiocyanate* group. Isothiocyanates are among the ingredients responsible for the flavor of wasabi.

16.16 Alkylation of Sulfides: Sulfonium Salts

Sulfur is more nucleophilic than oxygen (Section 8.5), and sulfides react with alkyl halides much faster than do ethers. The products of these reactions are called *sulfonium salts.*



Sulfide Alkyl halide Sulfonium salt



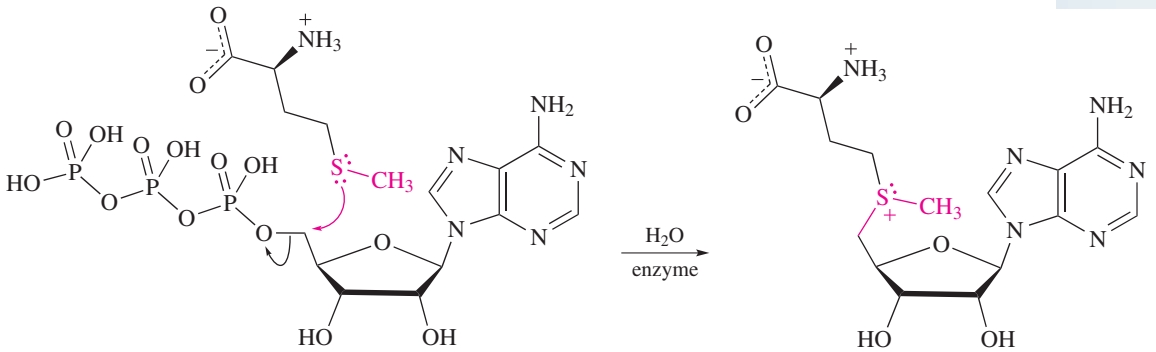
Dodecyl methyl sulfide Methyl iodide Dodecyldimethylsulfonium iodide

Problem 16.19

What other combination of alkyl halide and sulfide will yield the same sulfonium salt shown in the preceding example? Predict which combination will yield the sulfonium salt at the faster rate.

A naturally occurring sulfonium salt, *S-adenosylmethionine (SAM),* is a key substance in certain biological processes. It is formed by a nucleophilic substitution in which the sulfur atom of methionine attacks the primary carbon of adenosine triphosphate, displacing the triphosphate leaving group.

The *S* in *S*-adenosylmethionine indicates that the adenosyl group is bonded to sulfur. It does *not* stand for the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog stereochemical descriptor.

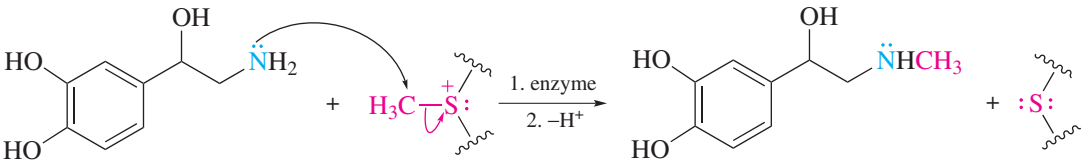


Adenosine triphosphate (ATP) + Methionine *S*-Adenosylmethionine (SAM)

S-Adenosylmethionine acts as a biological methyl-transfer agent. Nucleophiles, particularly nitrogen atoms of amines, attack the methyl carbon of SAM, breaking the carbon–sulfur bond. The following equation represents the biological formation of *epinephrine* by methylation of *norepinephrine.* Only the methyl group and the sulfur of SAM are shown

Epinephrine is also known as *adrenaline* and is a hormone with profound physiological effects designed to prepare the body for "fight or flight."

explicitly in the equation to draw attention to the similarity of this reaction, which occurs in living systems, to the more familiar S_N2 reactions we have studied.



Norepinephrine SAM Epinephrine

16.17 Spectroscopic Analysis of Ethers, Epoxides, and Sulfides

The IR, ^{1}H NMR, and ^{13}C NMR spectra of dipropyl ether, which appear in parts *a, b,* and *c,* respectively of Figure 16.4, illustrate some of the spectroscopic features of ethers.

Infrared: The infrared spectra of *ethers* are characterized by a strong, rather broad band due to antisymmetric C—O—C stretching between 1070 and 1150 cm^{-1}. Dialkyl ethers exhibit this band consistently at 1120 cm^{-1}, as shown in the IR spectrum of dipropyl ether.

$CH_3CH_2CH_2OCH_2CH_2CH_3$ Dipropyl ether

C—O—C: ν = 1118 cm^{-1}

The analogous band in alkyl aryl ethers (ROAr) appears at 1200–1275 cm^{-1} (Section 22.15).

Epoxides typically exhibit three bands. Two bands, one at 810–950 cm^{-1} and the other near 1250 cm^{-1}, correspond to asymmetric and symmetric stretching of the ring, respectively. The third band appears in the range 750–840 cm^{-1}.

H_2C—$CH(CH_2)_9CH_3$ (O) 1,2-Epoxydodecane

Epoxide vibrations: ν = 837, 917, and 1265 cm^{-1}

The C—S—C stretching vibration of *sulfides* gives a weak peak in the 600–700 cm^{-1} range. *Sulfoxides* show a strong peak due to S—O stretching at 1030–1070 cm^{-1}. With two oxygens attached to sulfur, *sulfones* exhibit strong bands due to symmetric (1120–1160 cm^{-1}) and asymmetric (1290–1350 cm^{-1}) S—O stretching.

Dimethyl sulfoxide
S=O: ν = 1050 cm^{-1}

Dimethyl sulfone
S=O: ν = 1139 and 1298 cm^{-1}

^{1}H NMR: The chemical shift of the proton in the **H**—C—O—C unit of an *ether* is very similar to that of the proton in the **H**—C—OH unit of an alcohol. A range of δ 3.2–4.0 is typical. The proton in the **H**—C—S—C unit of a *sulfide* appears at higher field than the corresponding proton of an ether because sulfur is less electronegative than oxygen.

^{1}H Chemical shift (δ): $CH_3CH_2CH_2$—O—$CH_2CH_2CH_3$ (3.2) $CH_3CH_2CH_2$—S—$CH_2CH_2CH_3$ (2.5)

Oxidation of a sulfide to a *sulfoxide* or *sulfone* is accompanied by a decrease in shielding of the **H**—C—S—C proton by about 0.3–0.5 ppm for each oxidation.

Epoxides are unusual in that the protons on the ring are more shielded than expected. The protons in ethylene oxide, for example, appear at δ 2.5 instead of the δ 3.2–4.0 range just cited for dialkyl ethers.

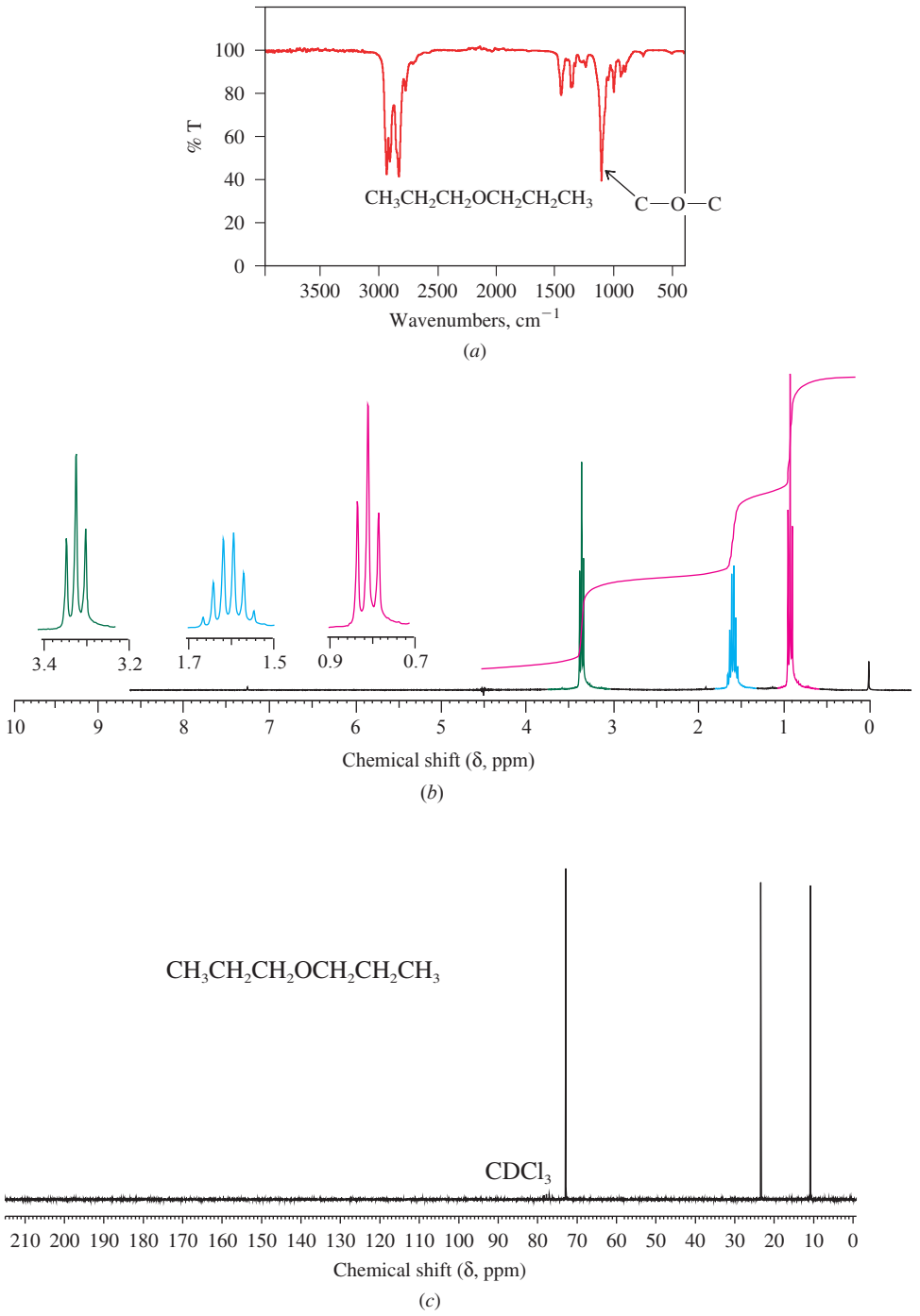


Figure 16.4

The (*a*) infrared, (*b*) 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR, and (*c*) ^{13}C NMR spectra of dipropyl ether ($CH_3CH_2CH_2OCH_2CH_2CH_3$).

^{13}C NMR: The carbons of the C—O—C group in an *ether* are about 10 ppm less shielded than those of an alcohol and appear in the range δ 57–87. The carbons of the C—S—C group in a *sulfide* are significantly more shielded than those of an ether.

^{13}C Chemical shift (δ):

$CH_3CH_2\underset{\uparrow}{CH_2}—O—\underset{\uparrow}{CH_2}CH_2CH_3$ (73)

$CH_3CH_2\underset{\uparrow}{CH_2}—S—\underset{\uparrow}{CH_2}CH_2CH_3$ (34)

The ring carbons of an *epoxide* are somewhat more shielded than the carbons of a C—O—C unit of larger rings or dialkyl ethers.

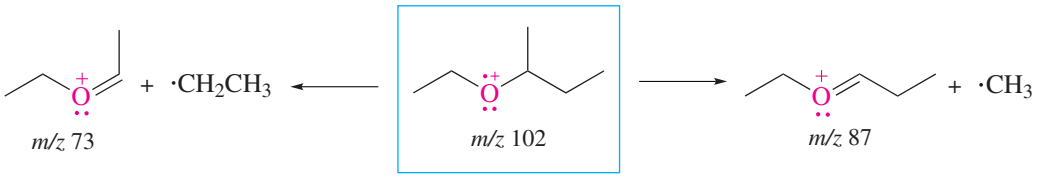
δ 47 δ 52

$H_2C—CH—CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ (O)

δ 68

UV-VIS: Simple ethers have their absorption maximum at about 185 nm and are transparent to ultraviolet radiation above about 220 nm.

Mass Spectrometry: Ethers, like alcohols, lose an alkyl radical from their molecular ion to give an oxygen-stabilized cation. Thus, *m/z* 73 and *m/z* 87 are both more abundant than the molecular ion in the mass spectrum of *sec*-butyl ethyl ether.



Problem 16.20

There is another oxygen-stabilized cation of *m/z* 87 capable of being formed by fragmentation of the molecular ion in the mass spectrum of *sec*-butyl ethyl ether. Suggest a reasonable structure for this ion.

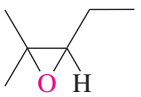
An analogous fragmentation process occurs in the mass spectra of sulfides. As with other sulfur-containing compounds, the presence of sulfur can be inferred by a peak at *m/z* of M+2.

16.18 SUMMARY

Section 16.1 **Ethers** are compounds that contain a C—O—C linkage. In substitutive IUPAC nomenclature, they are named as *alkoxy* derivatives of alkanes. In functional class IUPAC nomenclature, we name each alkyl group as a separate word (in alphabetical order) followed by the word *ether.*

$CH_3OCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ **Substitutive IUPAC name:** 1-Methoxyhexane
Functional class name: Hexyl methyl ether

Epoxides are normally named as *epoxy* derivatives of alkanes or as substituted *oxiranes.*

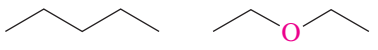


2,3-Epoxy-2-methylpentane
3-Ethyl-2,2-dimethyloxirane

Sulfides are sulfur analogs of ethers: they contain the C—S—C functional group. They are named as *alkylthio* derivatives of alkanes in substitutive IUPAC nomenclature. The functional class IUPAC names of sulfides are derived in the same manner as those of ethers, but the concluding word is *sulfide.*

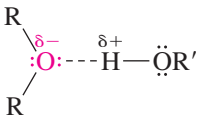
$CH_3SCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$ **Substitutive IUPAC name:** 1-(Methylthio)hexane
Functional class name: Hexyl methyl sulfide

Section 16.2 The oxygen atom in an ether or epoxide affects the shape of the molecule in much the same way as an sp^3-hybridized carbon of an alkane or cycloalkane.



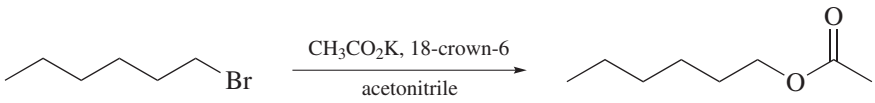
Pentane Diethyl ether

Section 16.3 The carbon–oxygen bond of ethers is polar, and ethers can act as proton *acceptors* in hydrogen bonds with water and alcohols.



But ethers lack OH groups and cannot act as proton *donors* in forming hydrogen bonds.

Section 16.4 Ethers form Lewis acid/Lewis base complexes with metal ions. Certain cyclic polyethers, called **crown ethers,** are particularly effective in coordinating with Na^+ and K^+, and salts of these cations can be dissolved in nonpolar solvents when crown ethers are present. Under these conditions the rates of many reactions that involve anions are accelerated.



1-Bromohexane — Hexyl acetate (96%)

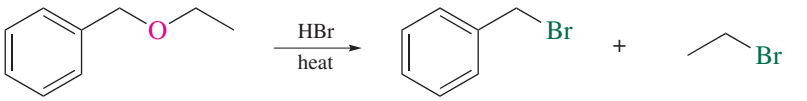
Sections 16.5 and 16.6 The two major methods for preparing ethers are summarized in Table 16.2.

Section 16.7 Dialkyl ethers are useful solvents for organic reactions, but must be used cautiously due to their tendency to form explosive hydroperoxides by air oxidation in opened bottles.

Section 16.8 The only important reaction of ethers is their cleavage by hydrogen halides.

$$\underset{\text{Ether}}{ROR'} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen halide}}{2HX} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Alkyl halide}}{RX} + \underset{\text{Alkyl halide}}{R'X} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O}$$

The order of hydrogen halide reactivity is HI > HBr > HCl.

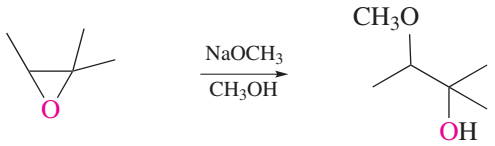


Benzyl ethyl ether — Benzyl bromide — Ethyl bromide

Section 16.9 Epoxides are prepared by the methods listed in Table 16.2.

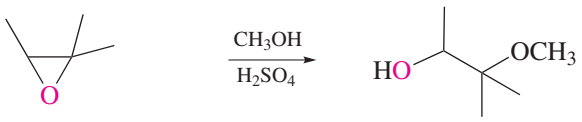
Section 16.10 Epoxides are much more reactive than ethers, especially in reactions that lead to cleavage of their three-membered ring.

Section 16.11 Anionic nucleophiles usually attack the less substituted carbon of the epoxide in an S_N2-like fashion.



2,2,3-Trimethyloxirane — 3-Methoxy-2-methyl-2-butanol (53%)

Section 16.12 Under conditions of acid catalysis, nucleophiles attack the carbon that can better support a positive charge. Carbocation character is developed in the transition state.

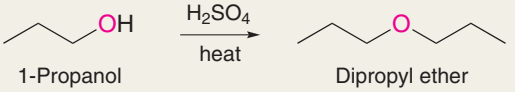
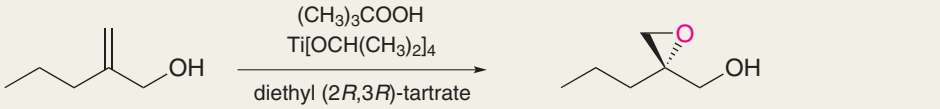
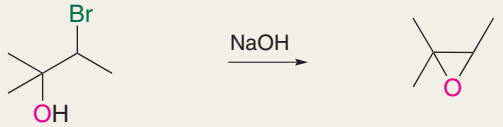


2,2,3-Trimethyloxirane — 3-Methoxy-3-methyl-2-butanol (76%)

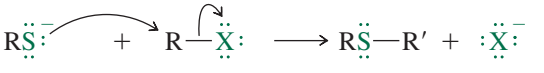
Inversion of configuration is observed at the carbon that is attacked by the nucleophile, irrespective of whether the reaction takes place in acidic or basic solution.

Section 16.13 Epoxide functions are present in a great many natural products, and epoxide ring opening is sometimes a key step in the biosynthesis of other substances.

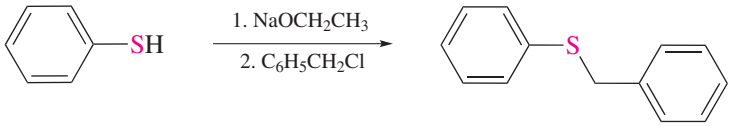
TABLE 16.2 Preparation of Ethers and Epoxides

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Acid-catalyzed condensation of alcohols (Sections 15.7 and 16.5) Two molecules of an alcohol condense in the presence of an acid catalyst to yield a dialkyl ether and water. The reaction is limited to the synthesis of symmetrical ethers from primary alcohols.	$2RCH_2OH \xrightarrow{H^+} RCH_2OCH_2R + H_2O$ Alcohol → Dialkyl ether + Water  1-Propanol → Dipropyl ether
Williamson ether synthesis (Section 16.6) An alkoxide ion displaces a halide or similar leaving group in an S_N2 reaction. The alkyl halide cannot be one that is prone to elimination, and so this reaction is limited to methyl and primary alkyl halides. There is no limitation on the alkoxide ion that can be used.	$RONa + R'X \longrightarrow ROR' + NaX$ Sodium alkoxide + Alkyl halide → Dialkyl ether + Sodium halide Sodium isobutoxide + Ethyl bromide → Ethyl isobutyl ether (66%) + Sodium bromide
Peroxy acid oxidation of alkenes (Sections 6.11 and 16.9) Peroxy acids transfer oxygen to alkenes to yield epoxides by stereospecific syn addition.	$R_2C{=}CR_2 + R'COOH \longrightarrow R_2C(O)CR_2 + R'COH$ Alkene + Peroxy acid → Epoxide + Carboxylic acid 2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene + Peroxyacetic acid → 2,2,3,3-Tetramethyloxirane (70–80%) + Acetic acid
Sharpless epoxidation (Section 16.9) Allylic alcohols are converted to epoxides by treatment with *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide and titanium(IV) alkoxides. The reaction is highly enantioselective in the presence of enantiomerically pure diethyl tartrate.	$R_2C{=}CR_2 + (CH_3)_3COOH \xrightarrow[\text{diethyl (2}R\text{,3}R\text{)-tartrate}]{(CH_3)_3COOH,\ Ti[OCH(CH_3)_2]_4} R_2C(O)CR_2 + (CH_3)_3COH$ Alkene + *tert*-Butyl hydroperoxide → Epoxide + *tert*-Butyl alcohol  2-Propyl-2-propen-1-ol → (*S*)-2,3-Epoxy-2-propylpropan-1-ol (88% yield; 95% enantiomeric excess)
Cyclization of vicinal halohydrins (Section 16.10) This reaction is an intramolecular version of the Williamson ether synthesis. The alcohol function of a vicinal halohydrin is converted to its conjugate base, which then displaces halide from the adjacent carbon.	$R_2C(OH)CR_2X + HO^- \longrightarrow R_2C(O)CR_2 + X^-$ Vicinal halohydrin + Hydroxide ion → Epoxide + Halide ion  3-Bromo-2-methyl-2-butanol → 2,2,3-Trimethyloxirane (78%)

Section 16.14 Sulfides are prepared by nucleophilic substitution (S_N2) in which an alkanethiolate ion reacts with an alkyl halide.

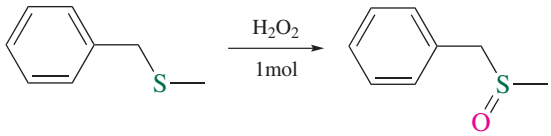


Alkanethiolate Alkyl halide Sulfide Halide



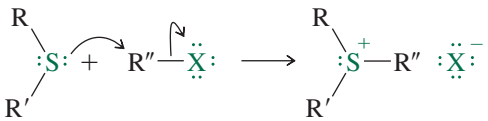
Benzenethiol Benzyl phenyl sulfide (60%)

Section 16.15 Oxidation of sulfides yields sulfoxides, then sulfones. Sodium metaperiodate is specific for the oxidation of sulfides to sulfoxides, and no further. Hydrogen peroxide or peroxy acids can yield sulfoxides (1 mol of oxidant per mole of sulfide) or sulfones (2 mol of oxidant per mole of sulfide).

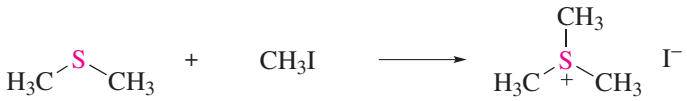


Benzyl methyl sulfide Benzyl methyl sulfoxide (94%)

Section 16.16 Sulfides react with alkyl halides to give sulfonium salts.



Sulfide Alkyl halide Sulfonium salt



Dimethyl sulfide Methyl iodide Trimethylsulfonium iodide (100%)

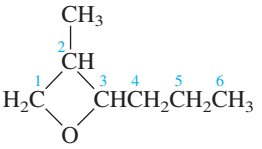
Section 16.17 An H—C—O—C structural unit in an ether resembles an H—C—O—H unit of an alcohol with respect to the C—O stretching frequency in its infrared spectrum and the H—C chemical shift in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum. Because sulfur is less electronegative than oxygen, the ^{1}H and ^{13}C chemical shifts of H—C—S—C units appear at higher field than those of H—C—O—C.

PROBLEMS

16.21 Write the structures of all the constitutionally isomeric ethers of molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O$, and give an acceptable name for each.

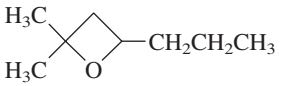
16.22 Many ethers, including diethyl ether, are effective as general anesthetics. Because simple ethers are quite flammable, their place in medical practice has been taken by highly halogenated nonflammable ethers. Two such general anesthetic agents are *isoflurane* and *enflurane*. These compounds are isomeric; isoflurane is 1-chloro-2,2,2-trifluoroethyl difluoromethyl ether; enflurane is 2-chloro-1,1,2-trifluoroethyl difluoromethyl ether. Write the structural formulas of isoflurane and enflurane.

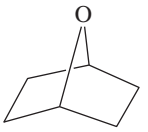
16.23 Although epoxides are always considered to have their oxygen atom as part of a three-membered ring, the prefix *epoxy* in the IUPAC system of nomenclature can be used to denote a cyclic ether of various sizes. Thus

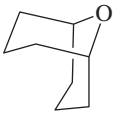


may be named 1,3-epoxy-2-methylhexane. Using the epoxy prefix in this way, name each of the following compounds:

(a)

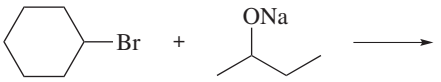
(b) 

(c) 

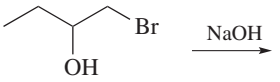
(d) 

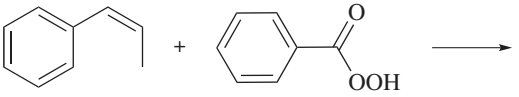
16.24 Outline the steps in the preparation of each of the constitutionally isomeric ethers of molecular formula $C_4H_{10}O$, starting with the appropriate alcohols. Use the Williamson ether synthesis as your key reaction.

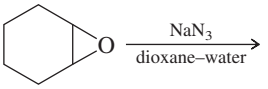
16.25 Predict the principal organic product of each of the following reactions. Specify stereochemistry where appropriate.

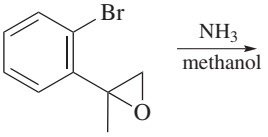
(a) 

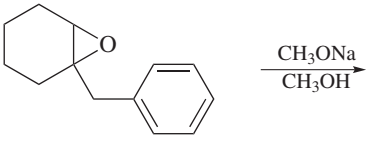
(b)

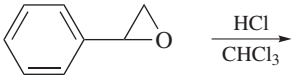
(c) 

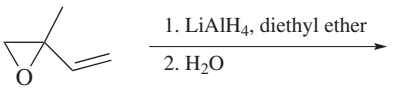
(d) 

(e) 

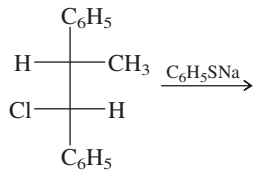
(f) 

(g) 

(h) 

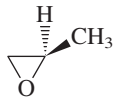
(i) 

(j) $CH_3(CH_2)_{16}CH_2OTs + CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2SNa \longrightarrow$

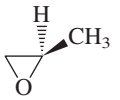
(k) 

16.26 When (*R*)-(+)-2-phenyl-2-butanol is allowed to stand in methanol containing a few drops of sulfuric acid, racemic 2-methoxy-2-phenylbutane is formed. Suggest a reasonable mechanism for this reaction.

16.27 Select reaction conditions that would allow you to carry out each of the following stereospecific transformations:

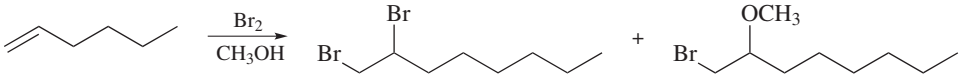
(a) 

⟶ (*R*)-1,2-propanediol

(b) 

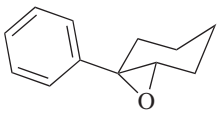
⟶ (*S*)-1,2-propanediol

16.28 When bromine is added to a solution of 1-hexene in methanol, the major products of the reaction are as shown:

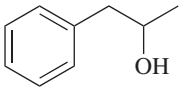


1,2-Dibromohexane is not converted to 1-bromo-2-methoxyhexane under the reaction conditions. Suggest a reasonable explanation for the formation of 1-bromo-2-methoxyhexane.

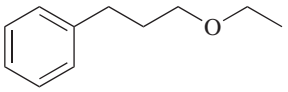
16.29 Suggest short, efficient reaction sequences suitable for preparing each of the following compounds from the given starting materials and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents:

(a) 

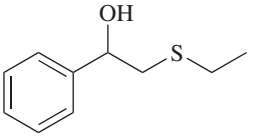
from bromobenzene and cyclohexanol

(b) 

from bromobenzene and isopropyl alcohol

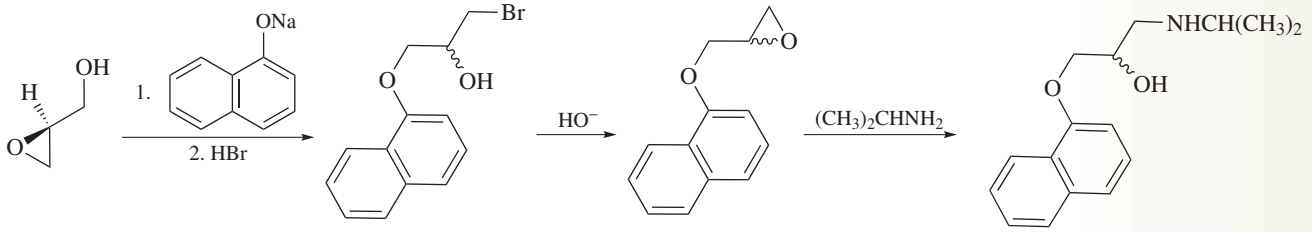
(c) 

from benzyl alcohol and ethanol

(d) 

from styrene and ethanol

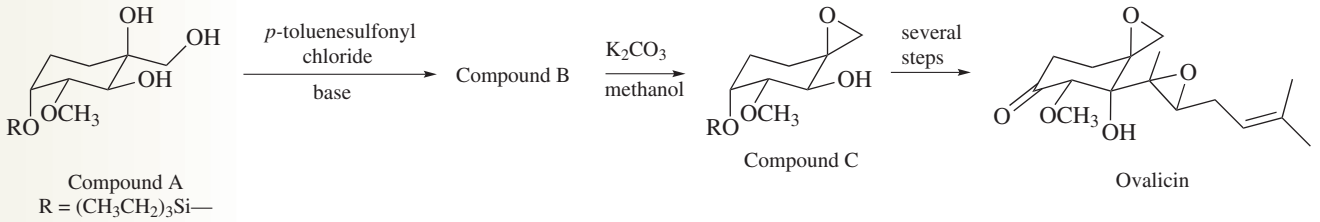
16.30 Propranolol is a drug prescribed to treat cardiac arrhythmia and angina pain and to lower blood pressure. It is chiral, and one enantiomer is responsible for its therapeutic effects. That enantiomer can be synthesized from (*S*)-glycidol as shown. What is the configuration of the propranolol formed by this sequence? (No rearrangements occur.) A bond of the type ⧚ means unspecified stereochemistry.



(*S*)-Glycidol

Propranolol

16.31 The growth of new blood vessels, angiogenesis, is crucial to wound healing and embryonic development. Abnormal angiogenesis is associated with tumor growth, suggesting that inhibition of angiogenesis may be an approach for the treatment of cancer. The diepoxide ovalicin is an angiogenesis inhibitor that was synthesized from compound C, which was in turn prepared from compound A by a two-step sequence. Can you suggest a structure for compound B?

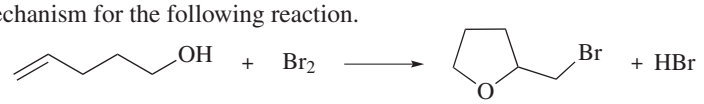


Compound A
R = $(CH_3CH_2)_3Si$—

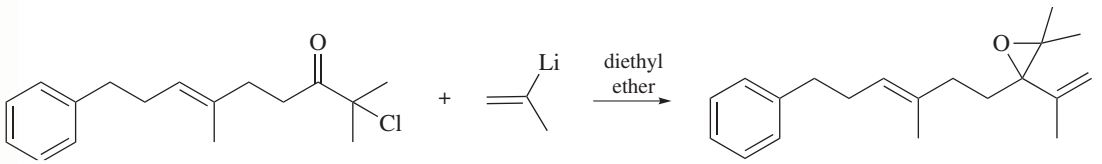
Compound C

Ovalicin

16.32 Write a mechanism for the following reaction.



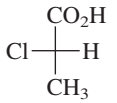
16.33 The following reaction has been reported in the chemical literature. Suggest a reasonable mechanism.



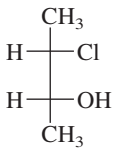
16.34 Deduce the identity of the missing compounds in the following reaction sequences. Show stereochemistry in parts (b) through (d).

(a) $H_2C{=}CHCH_2Br$ —(1. Mg; 2. $H_2C{=}O$; 3. H_3O^+)→ Compound A (C_4H_8O) —Br_2→ Compound B ($C_4H_8Br_2O$) —KOH, 25°C→ Compound C (C_4H_7BrO) —KOH, heat→ Compound D

Compound D

(b) 

—(1. $LiAlH_4$; 2. H_2O)→ Compound E (C_3H_7ClO) —KOH, H_2O→ Compound F (C_3H_6O)

(c) 

—NaOH→ Compound G (C_4H_8O) —$NaSCH_3$→ Compound H ($C_5H_{12}OS$)

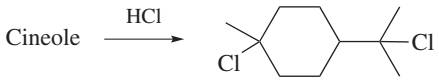
(d) Compound I (C_7H_{12})

—OsO_4, $(CH_3)_3COOH$; $(CH_3)_3COH$, HO^-→ Compound J ($C_7H_{14}O_2$) (a liquid)

—$C_6H_5CO_2OH$→ —(H_2O; H_2SO_4)→ Compound L ($C_7H_{14}O_2$) (mp 99.5-101°C)

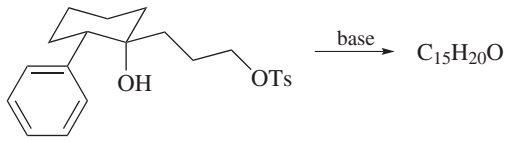
Compound K

16.35 Cineole is the chief component of eucalyptus oil; it has the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{18}O$ and contains no double or triple bonds. It reacts with hydrochloric acid to give the dichloride shown:

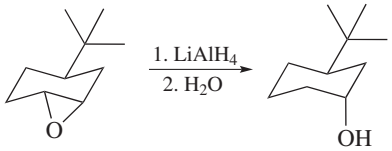


Deduce the structure of cineole.

16.36 The *p*-toluenesulfonate shown undergoes an intramolecular Williamson reaction on treatment with base to give a spirocyclic ether. Demonstrate your understanding of the terminology used in the preceding sentence by writing the structure, including stereochemistry, of the product.



16.37 Given that:



does the product of the analogous reaction using $LiAlD_4$ contain an axial or an equatorial deuterium?

16.38 The name of the parent six-membered sulfur-containing heterocycle is *thiane.* It is numbered beginning at sulfur. Multiple incorporation of sulfur in the ring is indicated by the prefixes *di-, tri-,* and so on.

(a) How many methyl-substituted thianes are there? Which ones are chiral?

(b) Write structural formulas for 1,4-dithiane and 1,3,5-trithiane.

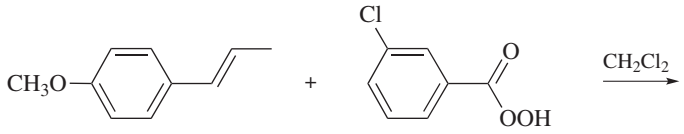
(c) Which dithiane isomer (1,2-, 1,3-, or 1,4-) is a disulfide?

(d) Draw the two most stable conformations of the sulfoxide derived from thiane.

16.39 Oxidation of 4-*tert*-butylthiane (see Problem 16.38 for the structure of thiane) with sodium metaperiodate ($NaIO_4$) gives a mixture of two compounds of molecular formula $C_9H_{18}OS$. Both products give the same sulfone on further oxidation with hydrogen peroxide. What is the relationship between the two compounds?

16.40 This problem is adapted from an experiment designed for undergraduate organic chemistry laboratories.

(a) Reaction of (*E*)-1-(*p*-methoxyphenyl)propene with *m*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid converted the alkene to its corresponding epoxide. Give the structure, including stereochemistry, of this epoxide.



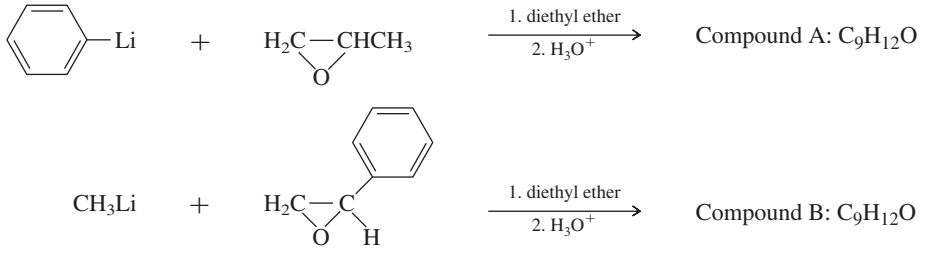
(b) Assign the signals in the ^1H NMR spectrum of the epoxide to the appropriate hydrogens.

δ 1.4 (doublet, 3H)	δ 3.8 (singlet, 3H)
δ 3.0 (quartet of doublets, 1H)	δ 6.9 (doublet, 2H)
δ 3.5 (doublet, 1H)	δ 7.2 (doublet, 2H)

(c) Three signals appear in the range δ 55–60 in the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of the epoxide. To which carbons of the epoxide do these signals correspond?

(d) The epoxide is isolated only when the reaction is carried out under conditions (added Na_2CO_3) that ensure that the reaction mixture does not become acidic. Unless this precaution is taken, the isolated product has the molecular formula $C_{17}H_{17}O_4Cl$. Suggest a reasonable structure for this product and write a reasonable mechanism for its formation.

16.41 A different product is formed in each of the following reactions. Identify the product in each case from their ^1H NMR spectra in Figure 16.5 and suggest an explanation for the observed regioselectivity.



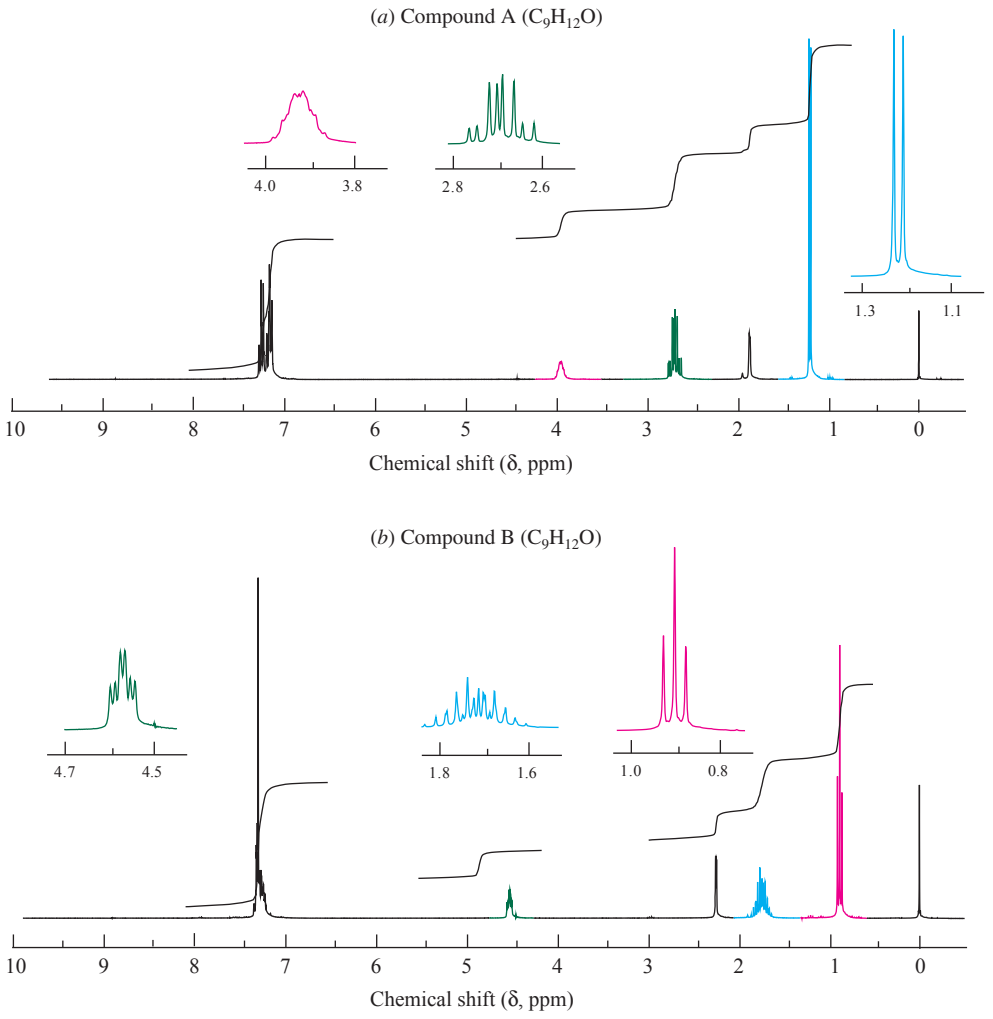


Figure 16.5

The 300–MHz ^1H NMR spectra of compounds formed by the reaction of (*a*) phenyllithium with 1,2-epoxypropane and (*b*) methyllithium with styrene oxide.

16.42 The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of compound A (C_8H_8O) consists of two singlets of equal area at δ 5.1 (sharp) and 7.2 ppm (broad). On treatment with excess hydrogen bromide, compound A is converted to a single dibromide ($C_8H_8Br_2$). The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the dibromide is similar to that of A in that it exhibits two singlets of equal area at δ 4.7 (sharp) and 7.3 ppm (broad). Suggest reasonable structures for compound A and the dibromide derived from it.

16.43 The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of a compound ($C_{10}H_{13}BrO$) is shown in Figure 16.6. The compound gives benzyl bromide, along with a second compound $C_3H_6Br_2$, when heated with HBr. What is the first compound?

16.44 A compound is a cyclic ether of molecular formula $C_9H_{10}O$. Its ^{13}C NMR spectrum is shown in Figure 16.7. Oxidation of the compound with sodium dichromate and sulfuric acid gave 1,2-benzenedicarboxylic acid. What is the compound?

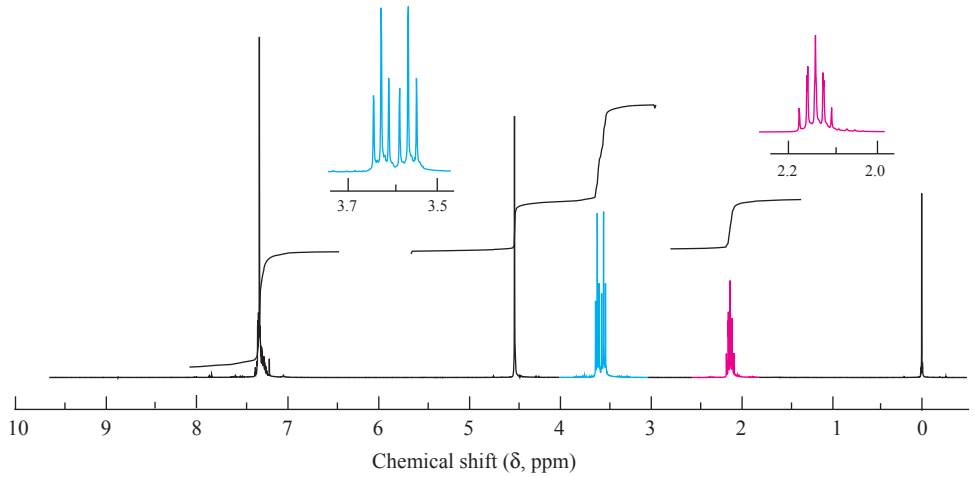


Figure 16.6

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of a compound, $C_{10}H_{13}BrO$ (Problem 16.43).

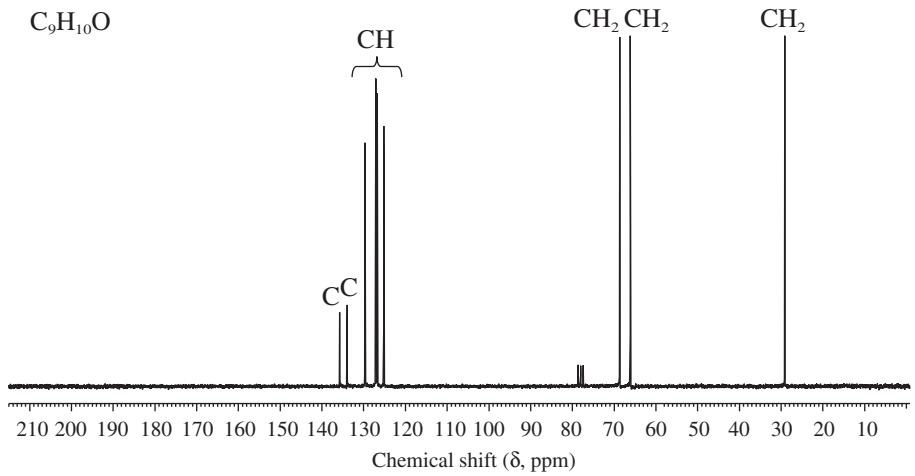


Figure 16.7

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of a compound, $C_9H_{10}O$ (Problem 16.44).

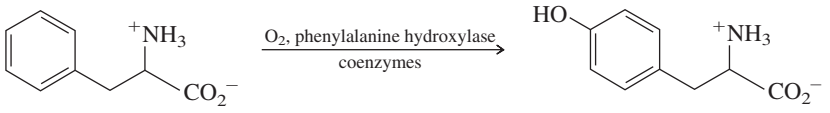
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 16

Epoxide Rearrangements and the NIH Shift

This passage is about two seemingly unrelated aspects of epoxides:

1. epoxide rearrangements
2. arene oxides

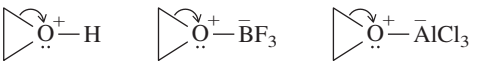
These two topics merge in an important biological transformation in which neither the reactant nor the product is an epoxide—the conversion of the amino acid phenylalanine to tyrosine.



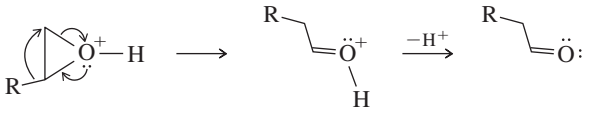
Phenylalanine Tyrosine

Epoxide rearrangements

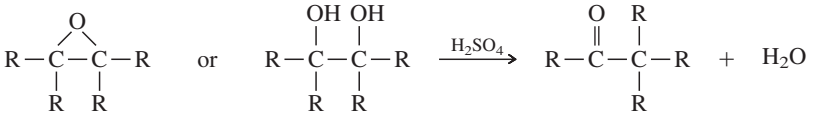
In some epoxide ring-opening reactions C—O bond cleavage is accompanied by the development of enough carbocation character at carbon ($^{\delta+}$C---O) to allow rearrangement to occur. These reactions are typically promoted by protonation of the epoxide oxygen or by its coordination to Lewis acids such as boron trifluoride (BF_3) and aluminum chloride ($AlCl_3$).



As positive charge develops on the ring carbon, one of the groups on the adjacent carbon migrates to it. This migration is assisted by electron-pair donation from oxygen. It is likely that all of this occurs in the same transition state. Subsequent deprotonation gives an aldehyde or ketone as the isolated product.

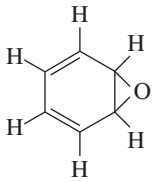


Overall, the reaction resembles the pinacol rearrangement of vicinal diols (see the Chapter 15 Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems) and takes place under similar conditions.



Arene Oxides

Aromatic rings are normally inert to the customary reagents that convert alkenes to epoxides, but arene oxides have been synthesized in the laboratory, often by indirect methods. Their chemical reactivity resembles that of other epoxides.

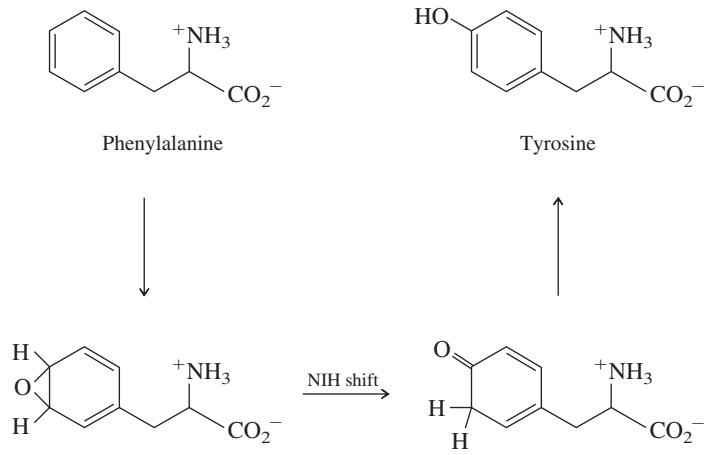


1,2-Epoxycyclohexa-3,5-diene is formally the epoxide of benzene and is the parent of the class of compounds known as arene oxides.

The most striking thing about arene oxides is their involvement in biological processes. Enzymes in the liver oxidize aromatic hydrocarbons to arene oxides, which then react with biological nucleophiles to give compounds used in subsequent reactions or to aid elimination of the arene oxide from the body. Some arene oxides, especially those from polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, are carcinogenic and react with nitrogen nucleophiles of DNA to induce mutations (Section 11.6).

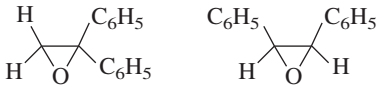
The NIH shift

Although hydroxylation of phenylalanine to tyrosine looks like a typical electrophilic aromatic substitution, scientists at the U.S. National Institutes of Health discovered that the biochemical pathway combines epoxidation of the benzene ring followed by epoxide ring-opening with rearrangement. This rearrangement, which is the biochemical analog of the pinacol-type reactions described earlier, is known as the "NIH shift."



Phenylalanine Tyrosine

16.45 Epoxides X and Y give the same aldehyde ($C_{14}H_{12}O$) on BF_3-catalyzed rearrangement.

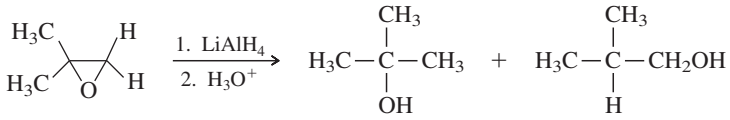


X Y

Which of the following best describes the rearrangement step?

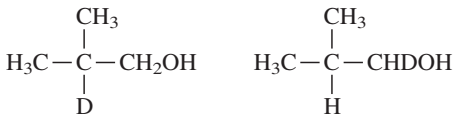
A. H migrates in both X and Y.
B. C_6H_5 migrates in both X and Y.
C. H migrates in X; C_6H_5 migrates in Y.
D. C_6H_5 migrates in X; H migrates in Y.

16.46 Lithium aluminum hydride reduction of 1,2-epoxy-2-methylpropane gives, as expected, predominantly *tert*-butyl alcohol.



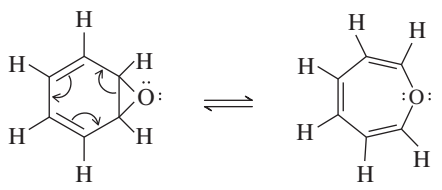
1,2-Epoxy-2-methylpropane *tert*-Butyl alcohol (97%) Isobutyl alcohol (3%)

When the reduction is carried out with an $LiAlH_4/AlCl_3$ mixture, however, epoxide rearrangement precedes reduction and isobutyl alcohol becomes the major product. This rearrangement was confirmed by a deuterium-labeling experiment in which an $LiAlD_4/AlCl_3$ mixture was used. Where was the deuterium located in the isobutyl alcohol product?



A. B.

16.47 The epoxide derived from benzene, 1,2-epoxycyclohexa-3,5-diene, exists in equilibrium with a monocyclic isomer oxepine.



1,2-Epoxycyclohexa-3,5-diene Oxepine

Which statement is correct concerning the aromaticity of these two isomers?

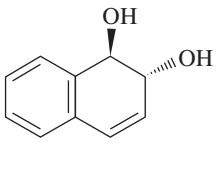
A. Both are aromatic.

B. Neither is aromatic.

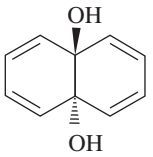
C. 1,2-Epoxycyclohexa-3,5-diene is aromatic; oxepine is not aromatic.

D. Oxepine is aromatic; 1,2-epoxycyclohexa-3,5-diene is not aromatic.

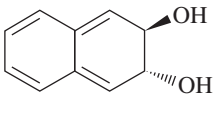
16.48 Biological oxidation of naphthalene gives a trans vicinal diol by way of an epoxide intermediate. The diol formed is the most stable of the three isomers shown. Which diol is it?



A.

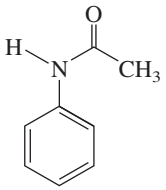


B.

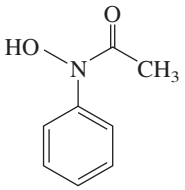


C.

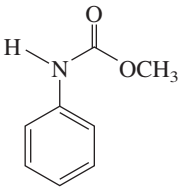
16.49 Acetanilide, which has pain-relieving properties, undergoes a biochemical oxidation similar to that of the NIH shift that occurs with phenylalanine. The product formed from acetanilide is itself a pain-reliever. What is the structure of this substance (better known as Tylenol)?



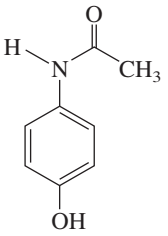
Acetanilide



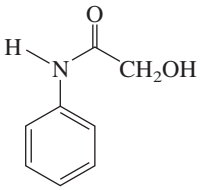
A.



B.

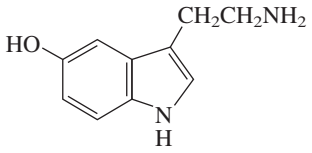


C.

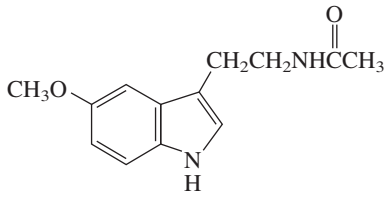


D.

16.50 The hormones serotonin and melatonin are biosynthesized from tryptophan by a series of reactions, including one that involves an NIH shift.

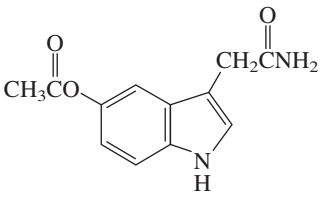


Serotonin

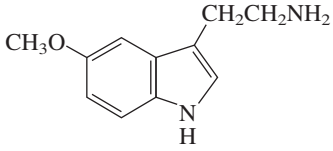


Melatonin

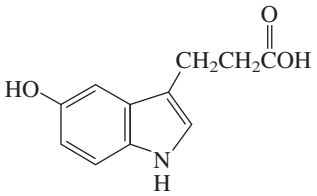
What is the most likely structure for tryptophan?



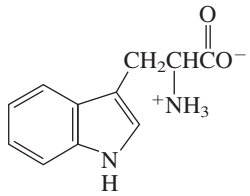
A.



C.

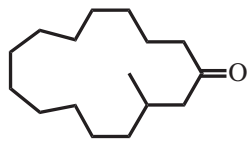


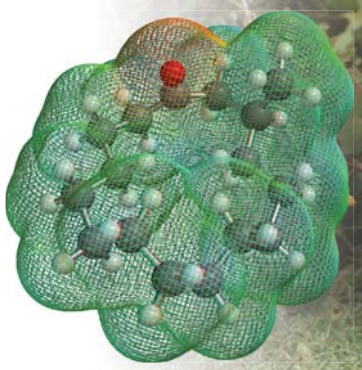
B.



D.

17





CHAPTER OUTLINE

17.1 Nomenclature 687
17.2 Structure and Bonding: The Carbonyl Group 689
17.3 Physical Properties 691
17.4 Sources of Aldehydes and Ketones 691
17.5 Reactions of Aldehydes and Ketones: A Review and a Preview 695
17.6 Principles of Nucleophilic Addition: Hydration of Aldehydes and Ketones 696
17.7 Cyanohydrin Formation 700
17.8 Reaction with Alcohols: Acetals and Ketals 703
17.9 Acetals and Ketals as Protecting Groups 706
17.10 Reaction with Primary Amines: Imines 707
- Imines in Biological Chemistry 710

17.11 Reaction with Secondary Amines: Enamines 712
17.12 The Wittig Reaction 714
17.13 Stereoselective Addition to Carbonyl Groups 716
17.14 Oxidation of Aldehydes 718
17.15 Spectroscopic Analysis of Aldehydes and Ketones 718
17.16 **Summary** 721
Problems 724
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 17: The Baeyer–Villiger Oxidation 732

Muscone is a cyclic ketone containing a 15-membered ring. As a product of chemical synthesis, its main application is in perfumery. As obtained from male musk deer native to Asia, it is used in traditional medicine.

Aldehydes and Ketones: Nucleophilic Addition to the Carbonyl Group

Aldehydes and ketones contain an acyl group $RC(=O)-$ bonded either to hydrogen or to another carbon.

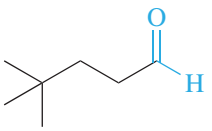
$HC(=O)H$	$RC(=O)H$	$RC(=O)R'$
Formaldehyde	Aldehyde	Ketone

Although the present chapter includes the usual collection of topics designed to acquaint us with a particular class of compounds, its central theme is a fundamental reaction type, *nucleophilic addition to carbonyl groups*. The principles of nucleophilic addition to aldehydes and ketones developed here will be seen to have broad applicability in later chapters when transformations of various derivatives of carboxylic acids are discussed.

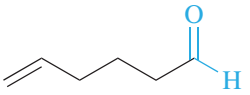
17.1 Nomenclature

The longest continuous chain that contains the —CH(=O) group provides the parent name for aldehydes. The *-e* ending of the corresponding alkane name is replaced by *-al,* and substituents are specified in the usual way. It is not necessary to specify the location of the —CH(=O) group in the name, because the chain must be numbered by starting with this group as C-1. The suffix *-dial* is added to the appropriate alkane name when the compound contains two aldehyde functions.

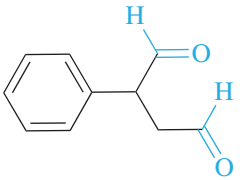
The *-e* ending of an alkane name is dropped before a suffix beginning with a vowel (*-al*) and retained before one beginning with a consonant (*-dial*).



4,4-Dimethylpentanal



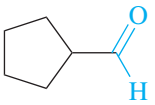
5-Hexenal or Hex-5-enal



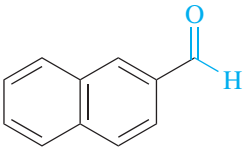
2-Phenylbutanedial

Notice that, because they define the ends of the carbon chain in 2-phenylbutanedial, the aldehyde positions are not designated by numerical locants in the name.

When a formyl group (—CH=O) is attached to a ring, the ring name is followed by the suffix *-carbaldehyde.*

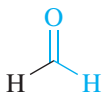


Cyclopentanecarbaldehyde



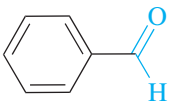
2-Naphthalenecarbaldehyde
or
Naphthalene-2-carbaldehyde

Certain common names of familiar aldehydes are acceptable as IUPAC names. A few examples include



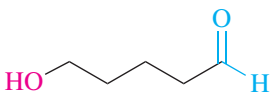
Formaldehyde
(methanal)

Acetaldehyde
(ethanal)



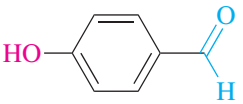
Benzaldehyde
(benzenecarbaldehyde)

Among oxygen-containing groups, a higher oxidation state takes precedence over a lower one in determining the suffix of the substitutive name. Thus, a compound that contains both an alcohol and an aldehyde function is named as an aldehyde.



5-Hydroxypentanal

trans-4-Hydroxycyclohexane-
carbaldehyde

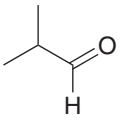


p-Hydroxybenzaldehyde

Problem 17.1

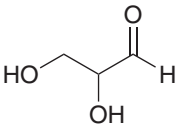
The common names and structural formulas of a few aldehydes follow. Provide an IUPAC name.

(a)



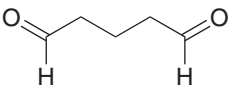
Isobutyraldehyde

(c)



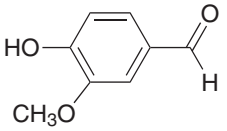
Glyceraldehyde

(b)



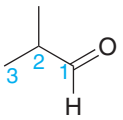
Glutaraldehyde

(d)



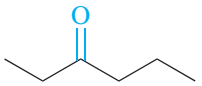
Vanillin

Sample Solution (a) Don't be fooled by the fact that the common name is isobutyraldehyde. The longest continuous chain has three carbons, and so the parent is *propanal*. There is a methyl group at C-2; thus the compound is 2-methylpropanal.

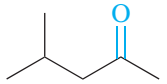


2-Methylpropanal
(isobutyraldehyde)

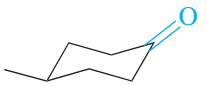
With ketones, the *-e* ending of an alkane is replaced by *-one* in the longest continuous chain containing the carbonyl group. The chain is numbered in the direction that provides the lower number for this group. The carbonyl carbon of a cyclic ketone is C-1 and the number does not appear in the name.



3-Hexanone
or
Hexan-3-one

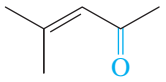


4-Methyl-2-pentanone
or
4-Methylpentan-2-one

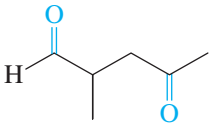


4-Methylcyclohexanone

Like aldehydes, ketone functions take precedence over alcohol functions, halogens, and alkyl groups in determining the parent name and direction of numbering. Aldehydes outrank ketones, however, and a compound that contains both an aldehyde and a ketone carbonyl group is named as an aldehyde. In such cases, the carbonyl oxygen of the ketone is considered an *oxo*-substituent on the main chain.



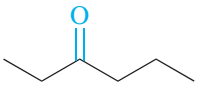
4-Methyl-3-penten-2-one
or
4-Methylpent-3-en-2-one



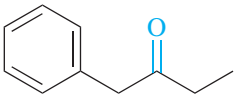
2-Methyl-4-oxopentanal

There are no functional class names for aldehydes in the IUPAC system.

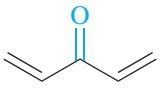
Although substitutive names of the type just described are preferred, the IUPAC rules also permit ketones to be named by functional class nomenclature. The groups attached to the carbonyl group are named as separate words followed by the word *ketone*. They are listed alphabetically.



Ethyl propyl ketone



Benzyl ethyl ketone



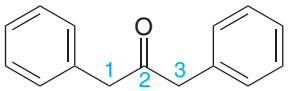
Divinyl ketone

Problem 17.2

Convert each of the following functional class IUPAC names to a substitutive name.

(a) Dibenzyl ketone
(b) Ethyl isopropyl ketone
(c) Methyl 2,2-dimethylpropyl ketone
(d) Allyl methyl ketone

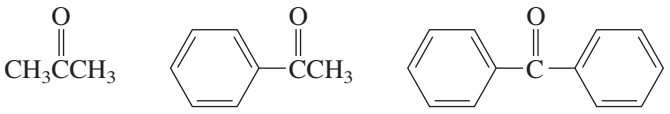
Sample Solution (a) First write the structure corresponding to the name. Dibenzyl ketone has two benzyl groups attached to a carbonyl.



Dibenzyl ketone

The longest continuous chain contains three carbons, and C-2 is the carbon of the carbonyl group. The substitutive IUPAC name for this ketone is *1,3-diphenyl-2-propanone* or *1,3-diphenylpropan-2-one.*

A few of the common names acceptable for ketones in the IUPAC system are



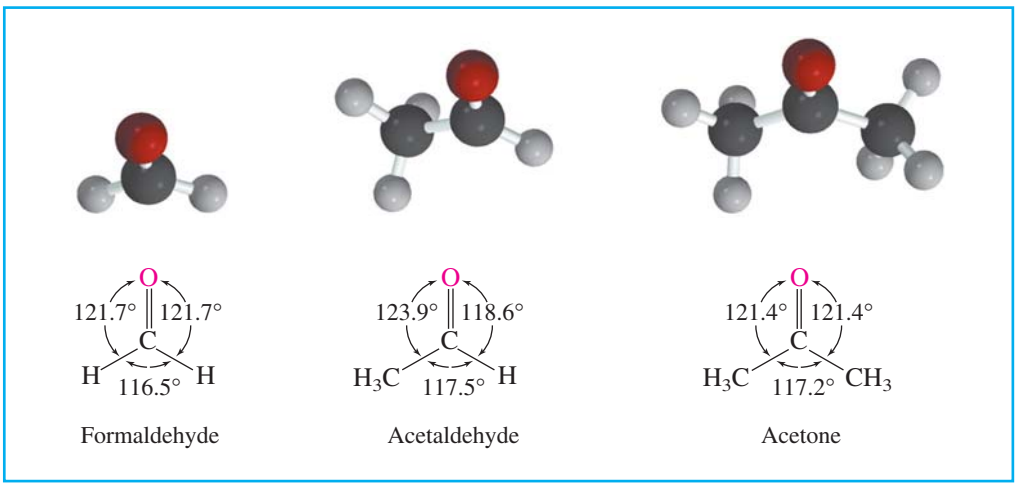
Acetone Acetophenone Benzophenone

(The suffix *-phenone* indicates that the acyl group is attached to a benzene ring.)

17.2 Structure and Bonding: The Carbonyl Group

Two notable aspects of the carbonyl group are its *geometry* and *polarity.* The coplanar geometry of the bonds to the carbonyl group is seen in the molecular models of formaldehyde, acetaldehyde, and acetone in Figure 17.1. The bond angles involving the carbonyl group are approximately 120°, but vary somewhat from compound to compound as shown by the examples in Figure 17.1. The C═O bond distance in aldehydes and ketones (122 pm) is significantly shorter than the typical C—O bond distance of 141 pm seen in alcohols and ethers.

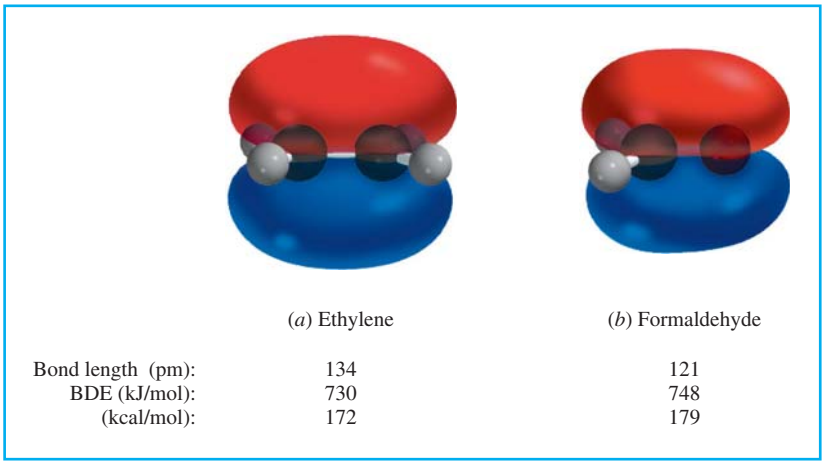
Bonding in formaldehyde can be described according to an sp^2-hybridization model analogous to that of ethylene (Figure 17.2). According to this model, the carbon–oxygen double bond is viewed as one of the σ + π type. Overlap of half-filled sp^2 hybrid orbitals of carbon and oxygen gives the σ component, whereas side-by-side overlap of half-filled $2p$ orbitals gives the π bond. The oxygen lone pairs occupy sp^2 hybrid orbitals, the axes of which lie in the plane of the molecule. The carbon–oxygen double bond of formaldehyde is both shorter and stronger than the carbon–carbon double bond of ethylene.



Formaldehyde Acetaldehyde Acetone

Figure 17.1

The bonds to the carbon of the carbonyl group lie in the same plane, and at angles of approximately 120° with respect to each other.

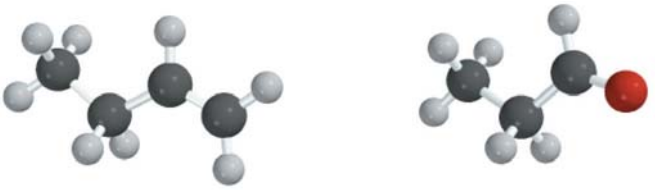


	(*a*) Ethylene	(*b*) Formaldehyde
Bond length (pm):	134	121
BDE (kJ/mol):	730	748
(kcal/mol):	172	179

Figure 17.2

Both (*a*) ethylene and (*b*) formaldehyde have the same number of electrons, and carbon is sp^2-hybridized in both. In formaldehyde, one of the carbons is replaced by an sp^2-hybridized oxygen. Like the carbon–carbon double bond of ethylene, the carbon–oxygen double bond of formaldehyde is composed of a σ component and a π component. The values given correspond to the C═C and the C═O units respectively.

The carbonyl group makes aldehydes and ketones rather polar, with dipole moments that are substantially higher than alkenes.

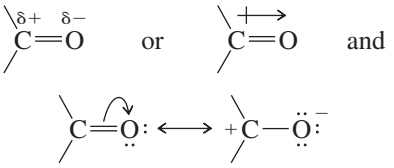


$CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2$ — 1-Butene, Dipole moment: 0.3 D

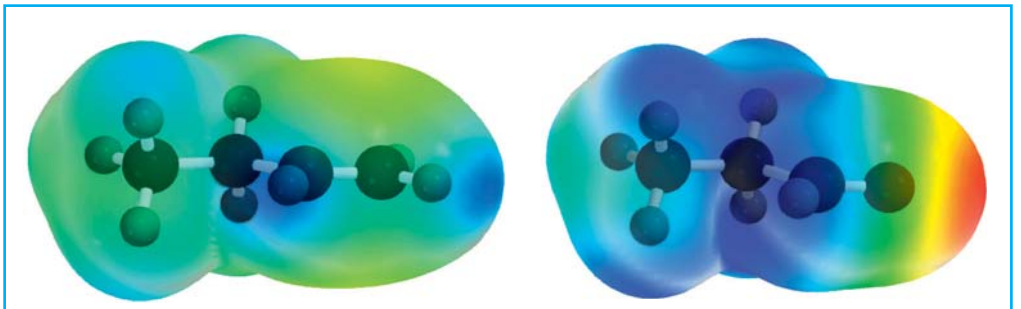
$CH_3CH_2CH{=}O$ — Propanal, Dipole moment: 2.5 D

How much a carbonyl group affects the charge distribution in a molecule is apparent in the electrostatic potential maps of 1-butene and propanal (Figure 17.3). The carbonyl carbon of propanal is positively polarized and the oxygen is negatively polarized.

The various ways of representing this polarization include



The structural features, especially the very polar nature of the carbonyl group, point clearly to the kind of chemistry we will see for aldehydes and ketones in this chapter. The partially positive carbon of C═O has carbocation character and is electrophilic. The planar

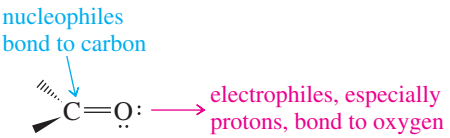


(*a*) 1-Butene ($CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2$) (*b*) Propanal ($CH_3CH_2CH{=}O$)

Figure 17.3

Electrostatic potential maps of (*a*) 1-butene and (*b*) propanal. The color ranges are adjusted to a common scale so that the charge distributions in the two compounds can be compared directly. The region of highest negative potential in 1-butene is associated with the electrons of the double bond. The charge separation is greater in propanal. The carbon of the carbonyl group is a site of positive potential. The region of highest negative potential is near oxygen.

arrangement of its bonds make this carbon relatively uncrowded and susceptible to attack by nucleophiles. Oxygen is partially negative and weakly basic.



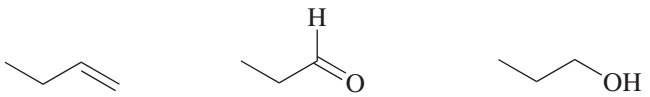
Alkyl substituents stabilize a carbonyl group in much the same way that they stabilize carbon–carbon double bonds and carbocations—by releasing electrons to sp^2-hybridized carbon. Thus, as their heats of combustion reveal, the ketone 2-butanone is more stable than its aldehyde isomer butanal.

	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH(=O)$	$CH_3CH_2C(=O)CH_3$
	Butanal	2-Butanone
Heat of combustion:	2475 kJ/mol (592 kcal/mol)	2442 kJ/mol (584 kcal/mol)

The carbonyl carbon of a ketone bears two electron-releasing alkyl groups; an aldehyde carbonyl has only one. Just as a disubstituted double bond in an alkene is more stable than a monosubstituted double bond, a ketone carbonyl is more stable than an aldehyde carbonyl. We'll see later in this chapter that structural effects on the relative *stability* of carbonyl groups in aldehydes and ketones are an important factor in their relative *reactivity.*

17.3 Physical Properties

In general, aldehydes and ketones have higher boiling points than alkenes because the dipole–dipole attractive forces between molecules are stronger. But they have lower boiling points than alcohols because, unlike alcohols, two carbonyl groups can't form hydrogen bonds to each other.



	1-Butene	Propanal	1-Propanol
bp (1 atm)	-6°C	49°C	97°C
Solubility in water (g/100 mL)	Negligible	20	Miscible in all proportions

The carbonyl oxygen of aldehydes and ketones can form hydrogen bonds with the protons of OH groups. This makes them more soluble in water than alkenes, but less soluble than alcohols.

Problem 17.3

Sketch the hydrogen bonding between benzaldehyde and water.

17.4 Sources of Aldehydes and Ketones

As we'll see later in this chapter and the next, aldehydes and ketones are involved in many of the most widely used reactions in synthetic organic chemistry. Where do aldehydes and ketones themselves come from?

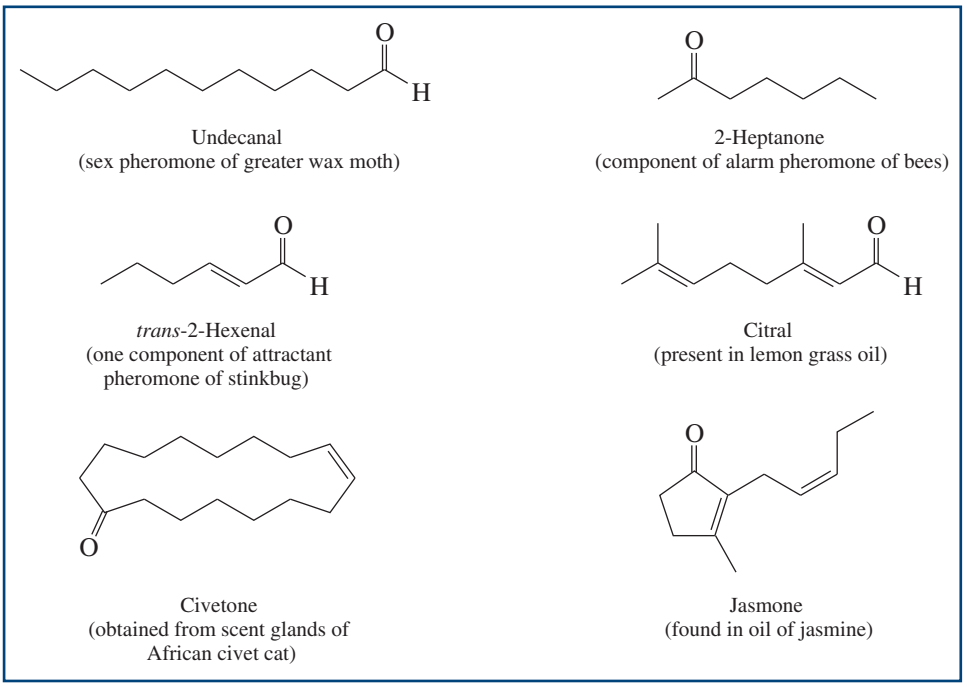


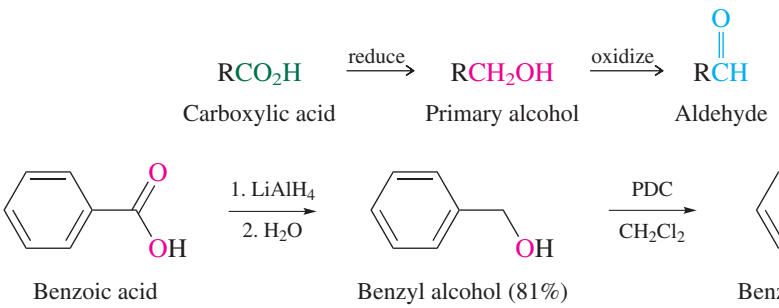
Figure 17.4

Some naturally occurring aldehydes and ketones.

Many occur naturally. In terms of both variety and quantity, aldehydes and ketones rank among the most common and familiar natural products. Several are shown in Figure 17.4.

Many aldehydes and ketones are made in the laboratory by reactions that you already know about, summarized in Table 17.1. To the synthetic chemist, the most important of these are the last two: the oxidation of primary alcohols to aldehydes and secondary alcohols to ketones. *Indeed, when combined with reactions that yield alcohols, the oxidation methods are so versatile that it will not be necessary to introduce any new methods for preparing aldehydes and ketones in this chapter.* A few examples will illustrate this point.

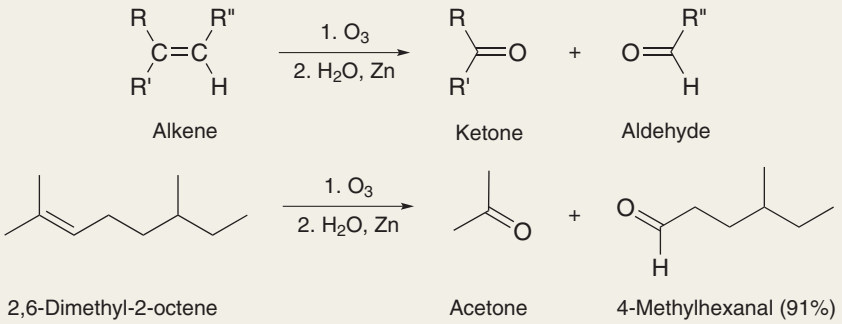
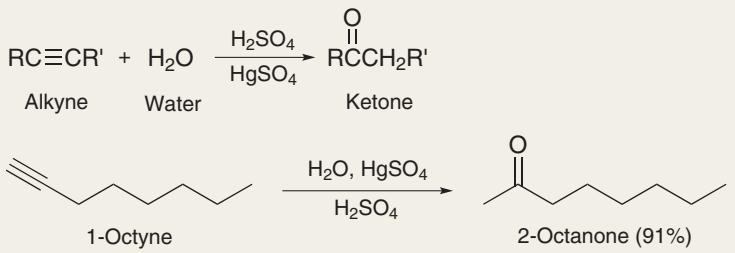
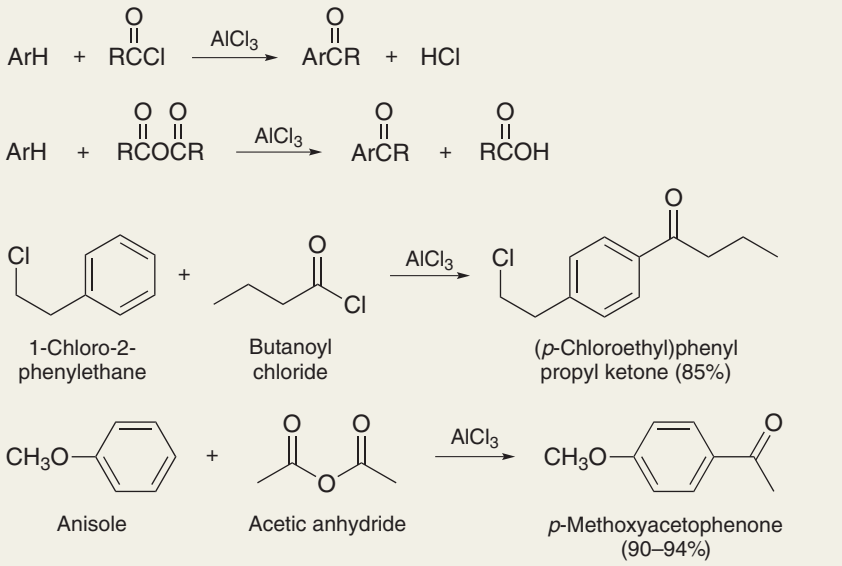
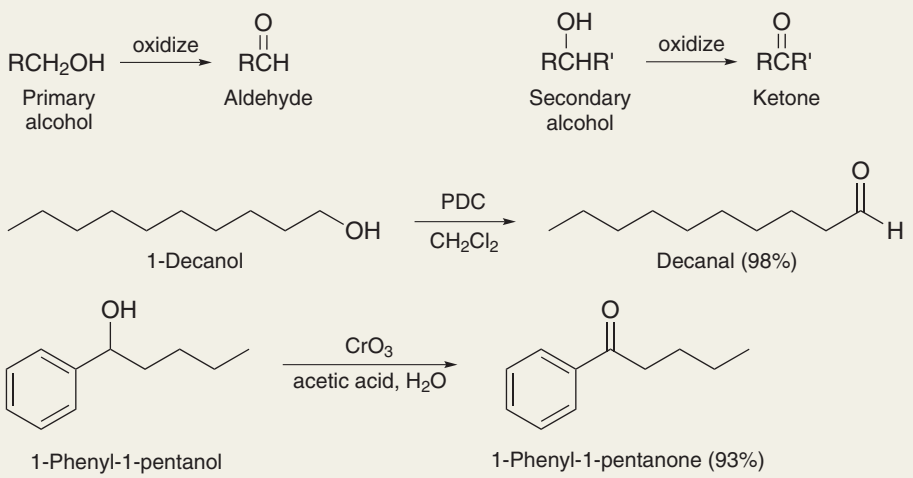
Let's first consider how to prepare an aldehyde from a carboxylic acid. There are no good methods for going from RCO_2H to RCHO directly. Instead, we do it indirectly by first reducing the carboxylic acid to the corresponding primary alcohol, then oxidizing the primary alcohol to the aldehyde.



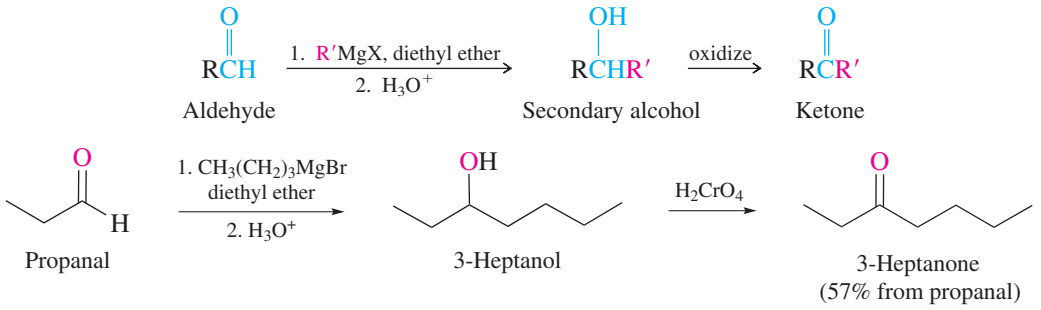
Problem 17.4

Can catalytic hydrogenation be used to reduce a carboxylic acid to a primary alcohol in the first step of the sequence $RCO_2H \rightarrow RCH_2OH \rightarrow RCHO$?

TABLE 17.1 Summary of Reactions Discussed in Earlier Chapters That Yield Aldehydes and Ketones

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Ozonolysis of alkenes (Section 6.12) This reaction is used for structure determination and in synthesis. Hydrolysis of the ozonide intermediate in the presence of zinc permits aldehyde products to be isolated without further oxidation. The substituents on a double bond are revealed by identifying the carbonyl-containing compounds in the product.	
Hydration of alkynes (Section 9.12) Reaction occurs by way of an enol intermediate formed by Markovnikov addition of water to the triple bond.	
Friedel–Crafts acylation of aromatic compounds (Section 12.7) Acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides acylate aromatic rings in the presence of aluminum chloride. The reaction is electrophilic aromatic substitution in which acylium ions are generated and attack the ring.	
Oxidation of primary and secondary alcohols to aldehydes and ketones (Section 15.9) Primary alcohols are oxidized to aldehydes and secondary alcohols to ketones by a number of reagents especially pyridinium dichromate (PDC) or pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC) in dichloromethane. Aqueous sources of Cr(VI) are also useful for preparing ketones, but not for aldehydes because of overoxidation to carboxylic acids. Like PDC and PCC, dimethyl sulfoxide in the presence of oxalyl chloride and trimethylamine gives aldehydes from primary alcohols and ketones from secondary alcohols.	

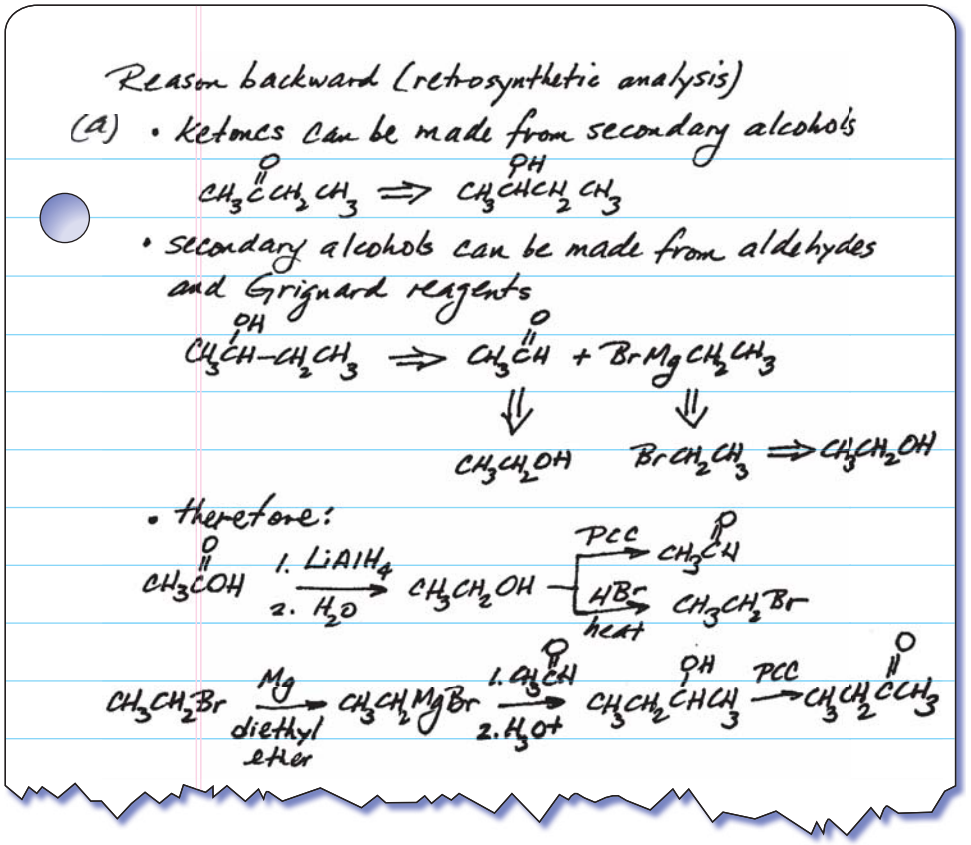
It is often necessary to prepare ketones by processes involving carbon–carbon bond formation. In such cases the standard method combines addition of a Grignard reagent to an aldehyde with oxidation of the resulting secondary alcohol:



Problem 17.5

(a) Show how 2-butanone could be prepared by a procedure in which all of the carbons originate in acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H).

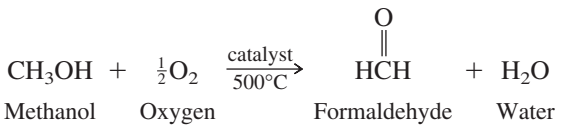
Sample Solution



(b) Two species of ants found near the Mediterranean use 2-methyl-4-heptanone as an alarm pheromone. Suggest a synthesis of this compound from two 4-carbon alcohols.

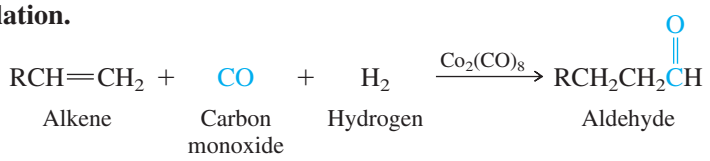
The name *aldehyde* was invented to stand for *al*cohol *dehyd*rogenatum, indicating that aldehydes are related to alcohols by loss of hydrogen.

Many low-molecular-weight aldehydes and ketones are important industrial chemicals. Formaldehyde, a starting material for a number of polymers, is prepared by oxidation of methanol over a silver or iron oxide/molybdenum oxide catalyst at elevated temperature.



Similar processes are used to convert ethanol to acetaldehyde and isopropyl alcohol to acetone.

The "linear α-olefins" described in Section 14.14 are starting materials for the preparation of a variety of aldehydes by reaction with carbon monoxide. The process is called **hydroformylation.**



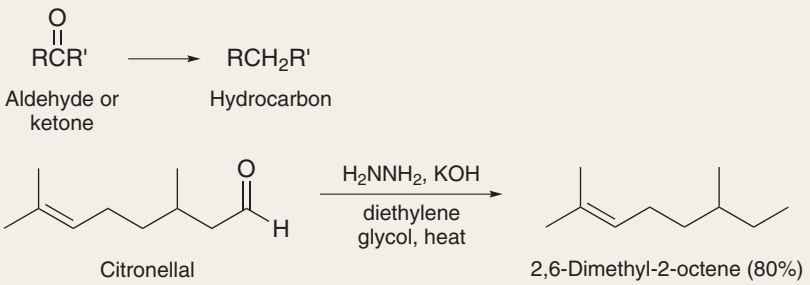
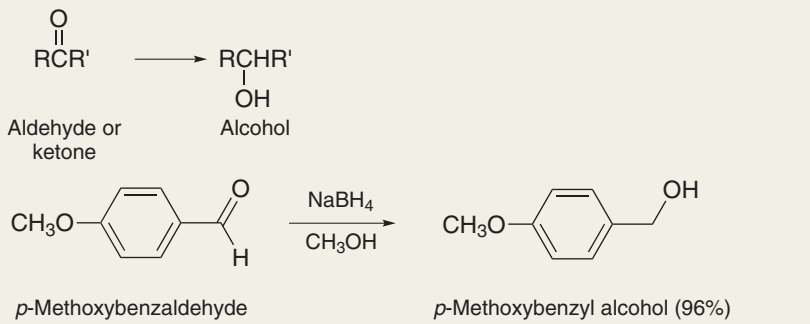
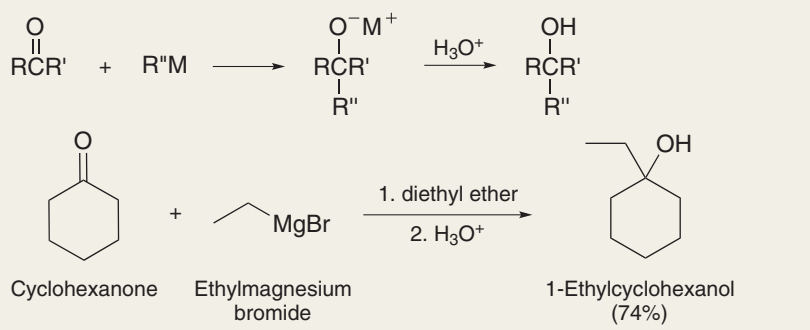
Excess hydrogen brings about the hydrogenation of the aldehyde and allows the process to be adapted to the preparation of primary alcohols. Over 2×10^9 lb/year of a variety of aldehydes and alcohols is prepared in the United States by hydroformylation.

A number of aldehydes and ketones are prepared both in industry and in the laboratory by a reaction known as the *aldol condensation,* which will be discussed in detail in Chapter 20.

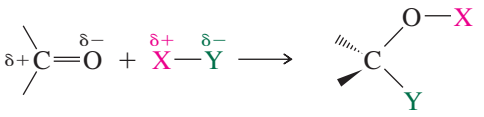
17.5 Reactions of Aldehydes and Ketones: A Review and a Preview

Table 17.2 summarizes the reactions of aldehydes and ketones that you've seen in earlier chapters. All are valuable tools to the synthetic chemist. Carbonyl groups provide access to hydrocarbons by Clemmensen or Wolff–Kishner reduction, and to alcohols by reduction or by reaction with Grignard or organolithium reagents.

TABLE 17.2 Summary of Reactions of Aldehydes and Ketones Discussed in Earlier Chapters

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Reduction to hydrocarbons (Section 12.8) Two methods for converting carbonyl groups to methylene units are the Clemmensen reduction (zinc amalgam and concentrated hydrochloric acid) and the Wolff–Kishner reduction (heat with hydrazine and potassium hydroxide in a high boiling alcohol).	
Reduction to alcohols (Section 15.2) Aldehydes are reduced to primary alcohols, and ketones to secondary alcohols by a variety of reducing agents. Catalytic hydrogenation over a metal catalyst and reduction with sodium borohydride or lithium aluminum hydride are general methods.	
Addition of Grignard reagents and organolithium compounds (Sections 14.5–14.6) Carbon–carbon bond formation converts aldehydes to secondary alcohols and ketones to tertiary alcohols.	

The most important chemical property of the carbonyl group is its tendency to undergo **nucleophilic addition** reactions of the type represented in the general equation:



Aldehyde or ketone — Product of nucleophilic addition

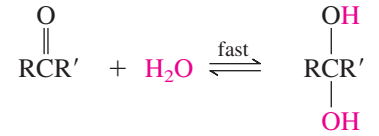
A negatively polarized atom or group bonds to the positively polarized carbon of the carbonyl group in the rate-determining step of these reactions. Grignard reagents, organolithium reagents, lithium aluminum hydride, and sodium borohydride, for example, all react with carbonyl compounds by nucleophilic addition.

The next section explores the mechanism of nucleophilic addition to aldehydes and ketones. There we'll discuss their *hydration,* a reaction in which water adds to the C═O group. After we use this reaction to develop some general principles, we'll then survey a number of related reactions of synthetic, mechanistic, or biological interest.

17.6 Principles of Nucleophilic Addition: Hydration of Aldehydes and Ketones

The convention for writing equilibrium constant expressions without the solvent (water in this case) was discussed in Section 1.13.

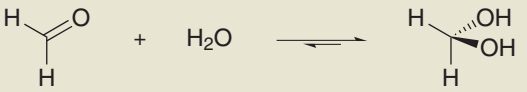
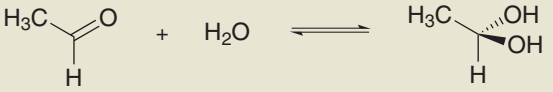
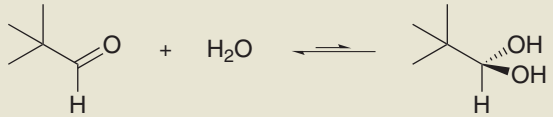
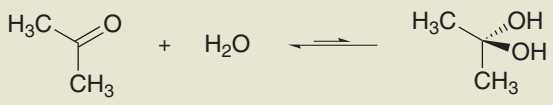
Effects of Structure on Equilibrium: Aldehydes and ketones react with water in a rapid equilibrium. The product is a **geminal diol,** also called a hydrate.



$$K_{hydr} = \frac{[\text{hydrate}]}{[\text{carbonyl compound}]}$$

Aldehyde or ketone — Water — Geminal diol (hydrate)

TABLE 17.3 Equilibrium Constants (K_{hydr}) and Relative Rates of Hydration of Some Aldehydes and Ketones

Reaction*	K_{hydr}†	Percent hydrate	Relative rate
	2300	>99.9	2200
	1.0	50	1.0
	0.2	17	0.09
	0.0014	0.14	0.0018

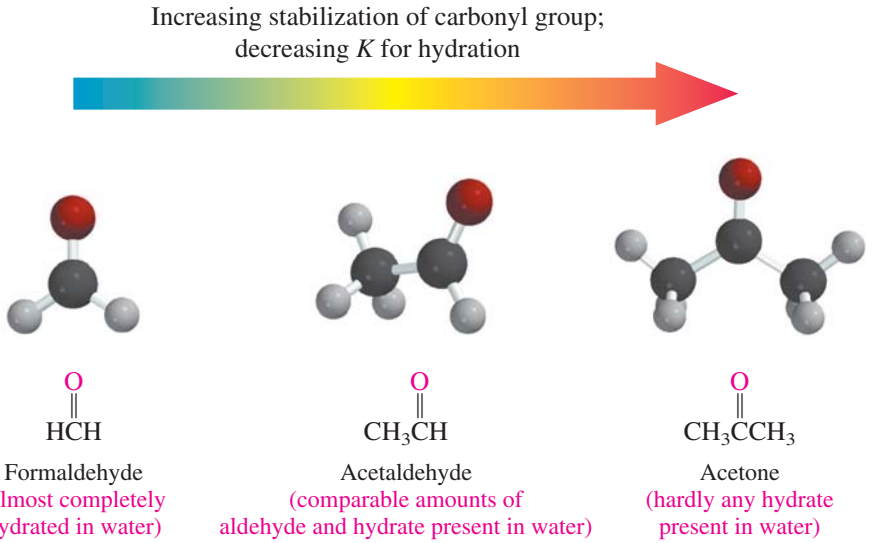
*Neutral solution, 25°C

†$K_{hydr} = \dfrac{[\text{hydrate}]}{[\text{carbonyl compound}]}$

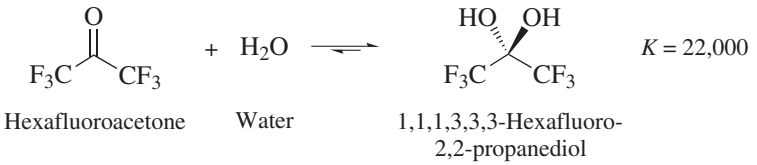
Overall, the reaction is classified as an *addition*. Water adds to the carbonyl group. Hydrogen becomes bonded to the negatively polarized carbonyl oxygen, hydroxyl to the positively polarized carbon.

Table 17.3 compares the equilibrium constants K_{hydr} of some simple aldehydes and ketones. The position of equilibrium depends on what groups are attached to C═O and how they affect its *steric* and *electronic* environment. Both contribute, but the electronic effect controls K_{hydr} more than the steric effect.

Consider first the electronic effect of alkyl groups versus hydrogen atoms attached to C═O. Alkyl substituents stabilize a ketone carbonyl more than an aldehyde carbonyl. As with all equilibria, factors that stabilize the reactants decrease the equilibrium constant. Thus, the extent of hydration decreases as the number of alkyl groups on the carbonyl increase.



A striking example of an electronic effect on carbonyl group stability and its relation to the equilibrium constant for hydration is seen in the case of hexafluoroacetone. In contrast to the almost negligible hydration of acetone, hexafluoroacetone is completely hydrated.



Instead of stabilizing the carbonyl group by electron donation as alkyl substituents do, trifluoromethyl groups destabilize it by withdrawing electrons. A less stabilized carbonyl group is associated with a greater equilibrium constant for addition.

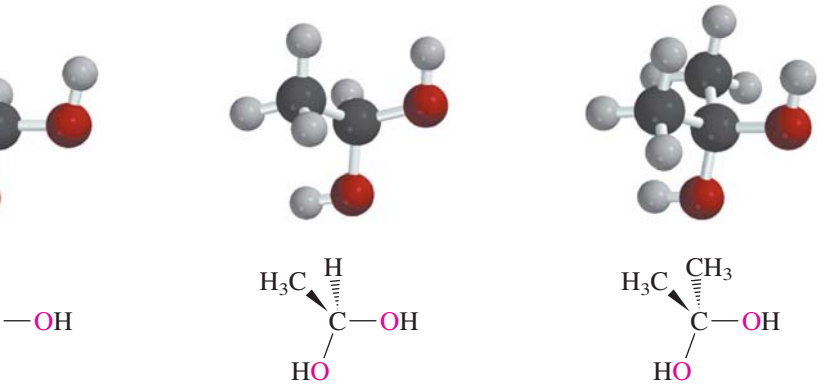
Problem 17.6

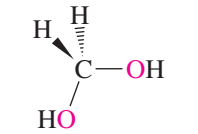
Chloral is one of the common names for trichloroethanal. Its hydrate has featured prominently in countless detective stories as the notorious "Mickey Finn" knockout drops. Write a structural formula for chloral hydrate.

Now let's turn our attention to steric effects by looking at how the size of the groups that were attached to C═O affect K_{hydr}. The bond angles at carbon shrink from ≈120 to ≈109.5 as the hybridization changes from sp^2 in the reactant (aldehyde or ketone) to sp^3 in the product (hydrate). The increased crowding this produces in the

hydrate is better tolerated, and K_{hydr} is greater when the groups are small (hydrogen) than when they are large (alkyl).

Increasing crowding in hydrate;
decreasing K for formation





Hydrate of formaldehyde

Hydrate of acetaldehyde

Hydrate of acetone

Electronic and steric effects operate in the same direction. Both cause the equilibrium constants for hydration of aldehydes to be greater than those of ketones.

Effects of Structure on Rate: Electronic and steric effects influence the rate of hydration in the same way that they affect equilibrium. Indeed, the rate and equilibrium data of Table 17.3 parallel each other almost exactly.

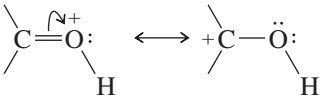
Hydration of aldehydes and ketones is a rapid reaction, quickly reaching equilibrium, but faster in acid or base than in neutral solution. Thus, instead of a single mechanism for hydration, we'll look at two mechanisms, one for basic and the other for acidic solution.

Mechanism of Base-Catalyzed Hydration: The base-catalyzed mechanism (Mechanism 17.1) is a two-step process in which the first step is rate-determining. In step 1, the nucleophilic hydroxide ion bonds to the carbon of the carbonyl group. The alkoxide ion formed in step 1 abstracts a proton from water in step 2, yielding the geminal diol. The second step, like all other proton transfers between oxygen that we have seen, is fast.

The role of the basic catalyst (HO^-) is to increase the rate of the nucleophilic addition step. Hydroxide ion, the nucleophile in the base-catalyzed reaction, is much more reactive than a water molecule, the nucleophile in neutral solutions.

Aldehydes react faster than ketones for almost the same reasons that their equilibrium constants for hydration are more favorable. The $sp^2 \rightarrow sp^3$ hybridization change that the carbonyl carbon undergoes on hydration is partially developed in the transition state for the rate-determining nucleophilic addition step (Figure 17.5). Alkyl groups at the reaction site increase the activation energy by simultaneously lowering the energy of the starting state (ketones have a more stabilized carbonyl group than aldehydes) and raising the energy of the transition state (a steric crowding effect).

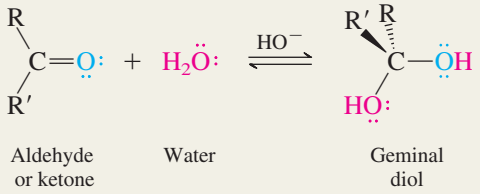
Mechanism of Acid-Catalyzed Hydration: Three steps are involved in acid-catalyzed hydration (Mechanism 17.2). The first and last are rapid proton transfers between oxygens. The second is a nucleophilic addition and is rate-determining. The acid catalyst activates the carbonyl group toward attack by a weakly nucleophilic water molecule. Protonation of oxygen makes the carbonyl carbon of an aldehyde or a ketone much more electrophilic. Expressed in resonance terms, the protonated carbonyl has a greater degree of carbocation character than an unprotonated carbonyl.



Mechanism 17.1

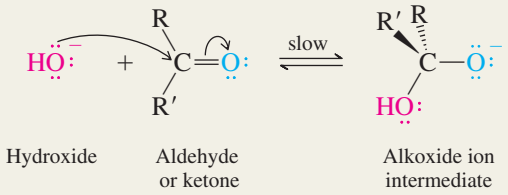
Hydration of an Aldehyde or Ketone in Basic Solution

THE OVERALL REACTION:

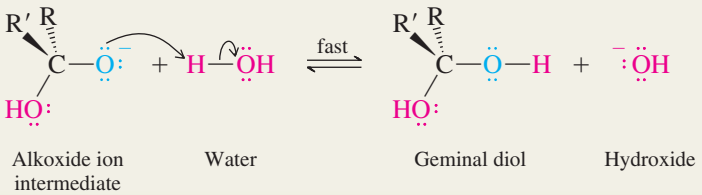


THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Nucleophilic addition of hydroxide ion to the carbonyl group



Step 2: Proton transfer from water to the intermediate formed in step 1



Steric and electronic effects influence the rate of nucleophilic addition to a protonated carbonyl group in much the same way as they do for the case of a neutral one, and protonated aldehydes react faster than protonated ketones.

With this as background, let us now examine how the principles of nucleophilic addition apply to the characteristic reactions of aldehydes and ketones. We'll begin with the addition of hydrogen cyanide.

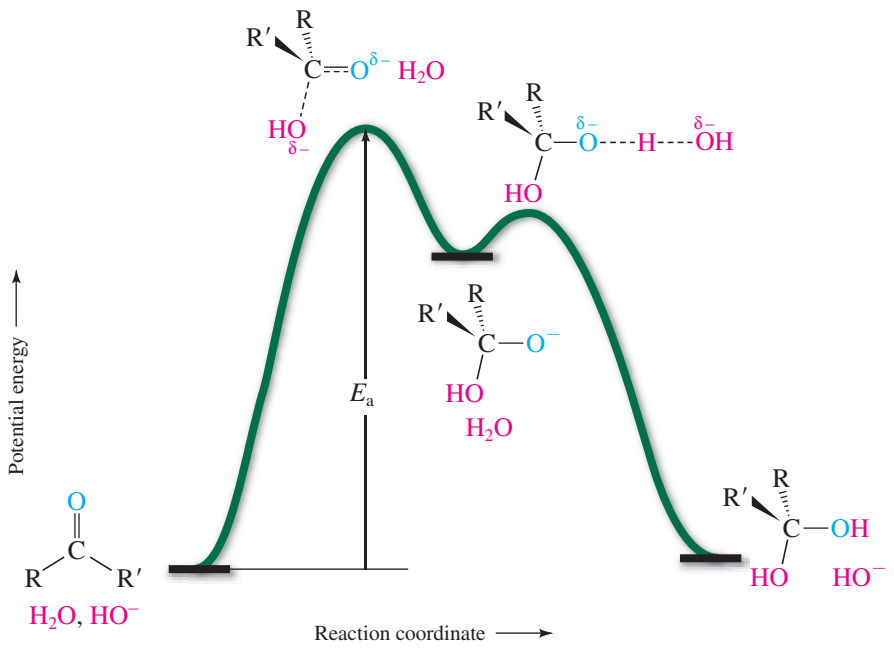


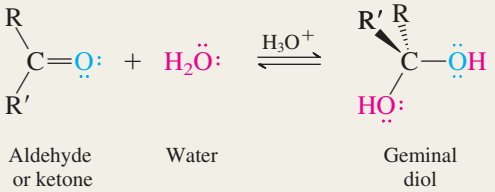
Figure 17.5

Potential energy diagram for base-catalyzed hydration of an aldehyde or ketone.

Mechanism 17.2

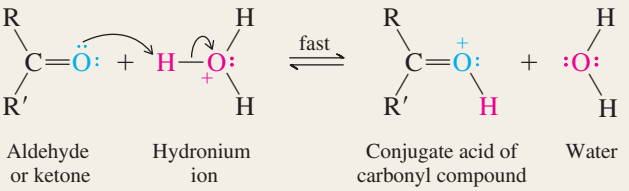
Hydration of an Aldehyde or Ketone in Acid Solution

THE OVERALL REACTION:

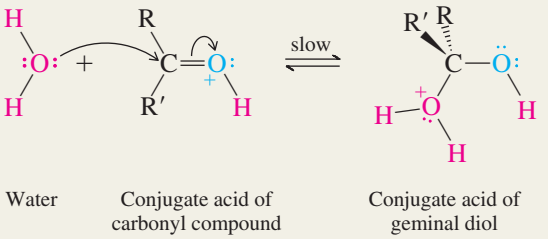


THE MECHANISM:

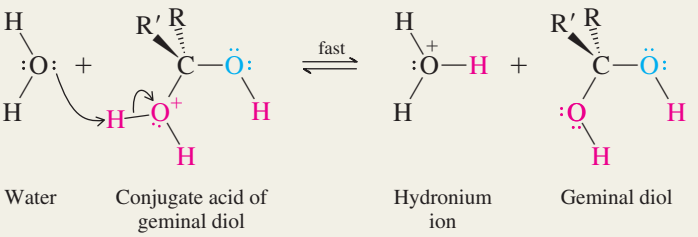
Step 1: Protonation of the carbonyl oxygen



Step 2: Nucleophilic addition to the protonated aldehyde or ketone

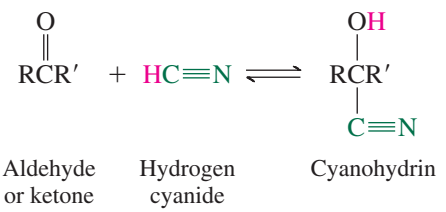


Step 3: Proton transfer from the conjugate acid of the geminal diol to a water molecule



17.7 Cyanohydrin Formation

The product of addition of hydrogen cyanide to an aldehyde or a ketone contains both a hydroxyl group and a cyano group bonded to the same carbon. Compounds of this type are called **cyanohydrins.**

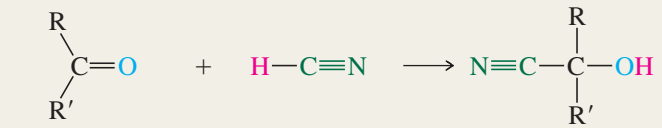


Mechanism 17.3 describing cyanohydrin formation is analogous to the mechanism of base-catalyzed hydration. The nucleophile (cyanide ion) bonds to the carbonyl carbon in

Mechanism 17.3

Cyanohydrin Formation

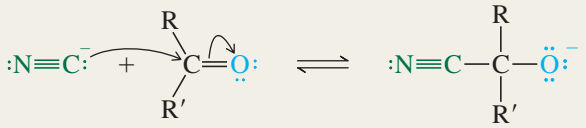
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Aldehyde or ketone — Hydrogen cyanide — Cyanohydrin

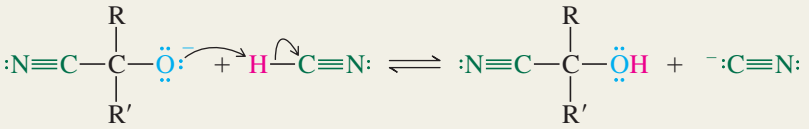
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The negatively charged carbon of cyanide ion is nucleophilic and bonds to the carbonyl carbon of the aldehyde or ketone. Hydrogen cyanide itself is not very nucleophilic and does not ionize to form cyanide ion to a significant extent. Thus, a source of cyanide ion such as NaCN or KCN is used.



Cyanide ion — Aldehyde or ketone — Conjugate base of cyanohydrin

Step 2: The alkoxide ion formed in the first step abstracts a proton from hydrogen cyanide. This step yields the cyanohydrin product and regenerates cyanide ion.



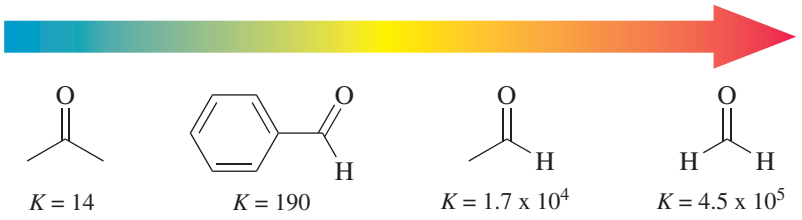
Conjugate base of cyanohydrin — Hydrogen cyanide — Cyanohydrin — Cyanide ion

the rate-determining first step, followed by proton transfer to the carbonyl oxygen in the second step.

The addition of hydrogen cyanide is catalyzed by cyanide ion, but HCN is too weak an acid to provide enough $:\bar{C}{\equiv}N:$ for the reaction to proceed at a reasonable rate. Cyanohydrins are normally prepared by adding an acid to a solution containing the carbonyl compound and sodium or potassium cyanide. This procedure ensures that free cyanide ion is always present in amounts sufficient to increase the rate of the reaction.

Cyanohydrin formation is reversible, and the position of equilibrium depends on the steric and electronic factors governing nucleophilic addition to carbonyl groups described in the preceding section.

Equilibrium constant for cyanohydrin formation



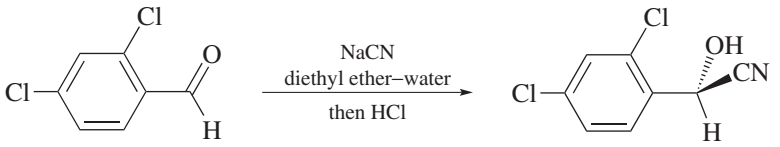
$K = 14$ — $K = 190$ — $K = 1.7 \times 10^4$ — $K = 4.5 \times 10^5$

Stabilization of the carbonyl group decreases the equilibrium constant for formation of the cyanohydrin. K is greatest for formaldehyde, which has the least stabilized carbonyl, and

greater for aldehydes than ketones. Conjugation of the carbonyl and phenyl substituent in benzaldehyde is stabilizing and decreases the value of K relative to acetaldehyde.

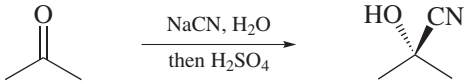
At the preparative level, aldehydes and unhindered ketones give good yields of cyanohydrins.

In substitutive IUPAC nomenclature, cyanohydrins are named as hydroxy derivatives of nitriles. Because nitrile nomenclature will not be discussed until Section 19.1, we will refer to cyanohydrins as derivatives of the parent aldehyde or ketone as shown in the examples. This conforms to the practice of most chemists.



2,4-Dichlorobenzaldehyde

2,4-Dichlorobenzaldehyde cyanohydrin (100%)



Acetone

Acetone cyanohydrin (77–78%)

Problem 17.7

Cyanohydrin formation is reversible in base. Using sodium hydroxide as the base, use curved arrows to show the elimination of HCN from the cyanohydrin product in the presence of sodium hydroxide in step 2 in Mechanism 17.3.

Converting aldehydes and ketones to cyanohydrins is of synthetic value because:

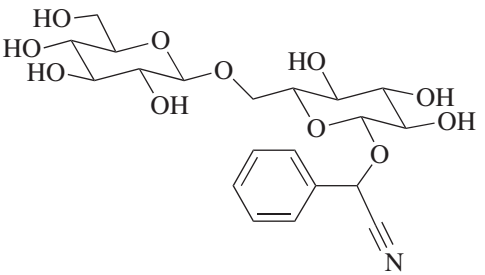
1. A new carbon–carbon bond is formed.
2. The —C≡N group can be converted to —C(=O)OH (Section 18.12) and —CH_2NH_2 (Section 21.9).
3. The —OH group can undergo functional group transformations.

Problem 17.8

Methacrylonitrile is an industrial chemical used in the production of plastics and fibers. One method for its preparation is the acid-catalyzed dehydration of acetone cyanohydrin. Deduce the structure of *methacrylonitrile*.

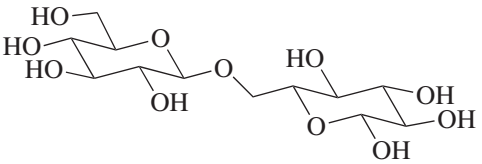
Cyanohydrins occur naturally, often as derivatives in which the –OH group has been modified to –OR, where R is a carbohydrate unit. These *cyanogenic glycosides* are widespread in plants; one, called *amygdalin,* is found in bitter almonds and in the kernels of peaches, plums, apricots, and related fruits.

Apricot pits are the most common source of amygdalin.

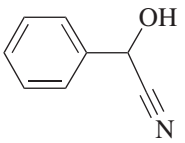


Amygdalin

Enzyme-catalyzed hydrolysis of amygdalin gives the carbohydrate gentiobiose along with benzaldehyde cyanohydrin, which dissociates to benzaldehyde and hydrogen cyanide.



Gentiobiose

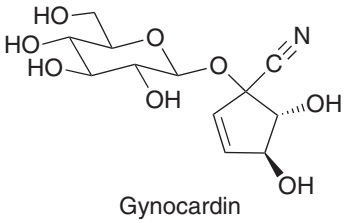


Benzaldehyde cyanohydrin

Depending on the amount of amygdalin present and the manner in which food is prepared from plants containing cyanogenic glycosides, toxic levels of hydrogen cyanide can result.

Problem 17.9

Gynocardin is a naturally occurring cyanogenic glycoside having the structure shown. What cyanohydrin would you expect to be formed on hydrolysis of gynocardin, and to what ketone does this cyanohydrin correspond?



Gynocardin

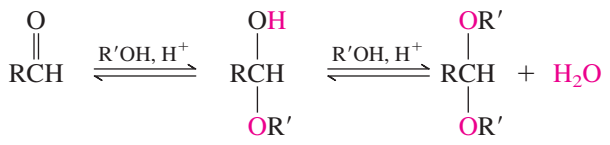
Cyanogenic compounds are not limited to plants. The defense secretion of many species of millipedes contains the products of cyanohydrin dissociation. These millipedes (Figure 17.6) store either benzaldehyde cyanohydrin or a derivative of it, and the enzyme that catalyzes its hydrolysis in separate chambers within their bodies. When the millipede is under stress, the contents of the two chambers are mixed and the hydrolysis products—including HCN—are released through the millipede's pores to deter predatory insects and birds.

Figure 17.6

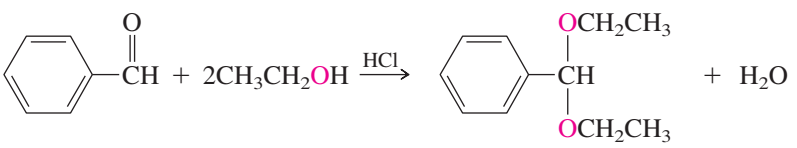
When disturbed, many millipedes protect themselves by converting stored benzaldehyde cyanohydrin to hydrogen cyanide and benzaldehyde.

17.8 Reaction with Alcohols: Acetals and Ketals

Many of the most interesting and useful reactions of aldehydes and ketones involve transformation of the initial product of nucleophilic addition to some other substance under the reaction conditions. An example is the acid-catalyzed addition of alcohols to aldehydes.The expected product, a **hemiacetal,** is not usually isolable, but reacts with an additional mole of the alcohol to give an **acetal.**

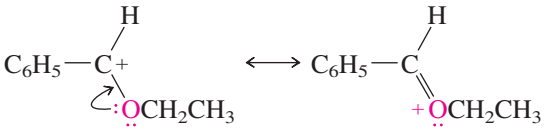


Aldehyde Hemiacetal Acetal Water



Benzaldehyde Ethanol Benzaldehyde diethyl acetal (66%) Water

Mechanism 17.4 for formation of benzaldehyde diethyl acetal encompasses two stages. Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group characterizes the first stage (steps 1–3), carbocation chemistry the second (steps 4–7). The key carbocation intermediate is stabilized by electron release from oxygen.



A particularly stable resonance contributor; satisfies the octet rule for carbon and oxygen.

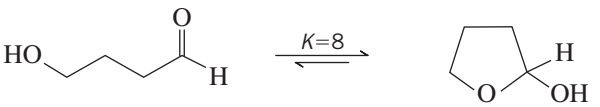
Problem 17.10

Be sure you fully understand Mechanism 17.4 by writing equations for steps 1–3. Use curved arrows to show electron flow.

Ketal is an acceptable term for acetals formed from ketones. It was once dropped from IUPAC nomenclature, but continued to be so widely used that it was reinstated.

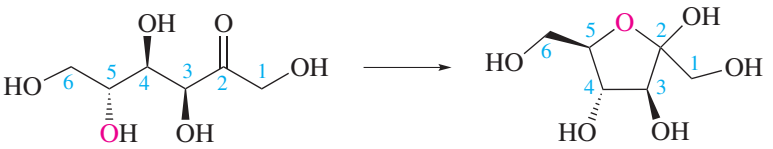
The position of equilibrium is favorable for acetal formation from most aldehydes, especially when excess alcohol is present as the reaction solvent. For most ketones the position of equilibrium is unfavorable, and other methods must be used for the preparation of acetals from ketones.

Compounds that contain both carbonyl and alcohol functional groups are often more stable as cyclic hemiacetals or hemiketals than as open-chain structures. An equilibrium mixture of 4-hydroxybutanal contains 11.4% of the open-chain hydroxy aldehyde and 88.6% of the cyclic hemiacetal.



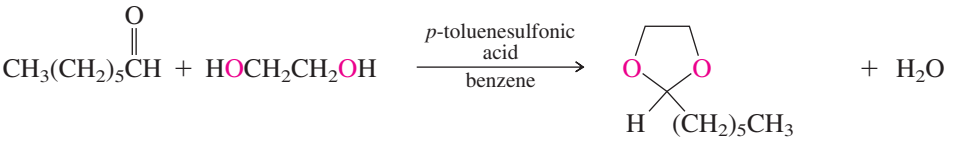
4-Hydroxybutanal Tetrahydrofuran-2-ol

Similarly, the carbohydrate D-fructose, which contains a ketone carbonyl, exists almost entirely as a mixture of several cyclic hemiketals, one of which is shown in the equation.

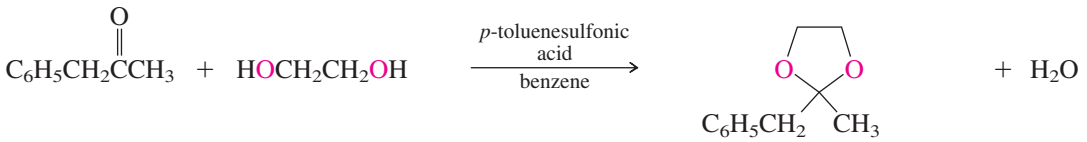


D-Fructose

Diols that bear two hydroxyl groups in a 1,2 or 1,3 relationship to each other yield *cyclic acetals and ketals* with aldehydes and ketones. The five-membered cyclic acetals derived from ethylene glycol are the most commonly encountered examples. Often the position of equilibrium is made more favorable by removing the water formed in the reaction by azeotropic distillation with benzene or toluene:



Heptanal Ethylene glycol 2-Hexyl-1,3-dioxolane (81%) Water

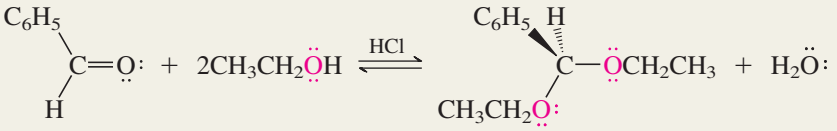


Benzyl methyl ketone Ethylene glycol 2-Benzyl-2-methyl-1,3-dioxolane (78%) Water

Mechanism 17.4

Acetal Formation from Benzaldehyde and Ethanol

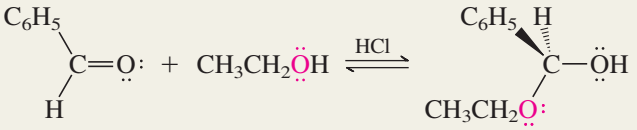
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Benzaldehyde | Ethanol | Benzaldehyde diethyl acetal | Water

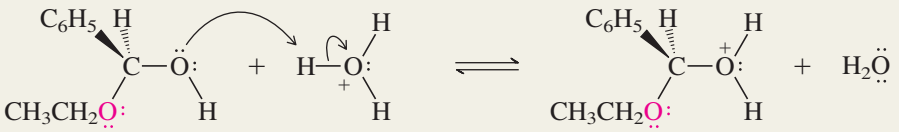
THE MECHANISM:

Steps 1–3: Acid-catalyzed nucleophilic addition of 1 mole of ethanol to the carbonyl group. The details of these three steps are analogous to the three steps of acid-catalyzed hydration in Mechanism 17.2. The product of these three steps is a hemiacetal.



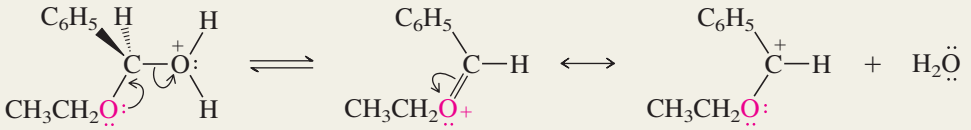
Benzaldehyde | Ethanol | Benzaldehyde ethyl hemiacetal

Step 4: Steps 4 and 5 are analogous to the two steps in the formation of carbocations in acid-catalyzed reactions of alcohols. Step 4 is proton-transfer from hydronium ion to the hydroxyl oxygen of the hemiacetal.



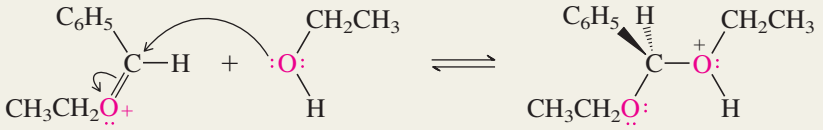
Benzaldehyde ethyl hemiacetal | Hydronium ion | Conjugate acid of benzaldehyde ethyl hemiacetal | Water

Step 5: Loss of water from the protonated hemiacetal gives an oxygen-stabilized carbocation. Of the resonance structures shown, the more stable contributor satisfies the octet rule for both carbon and oxygen.



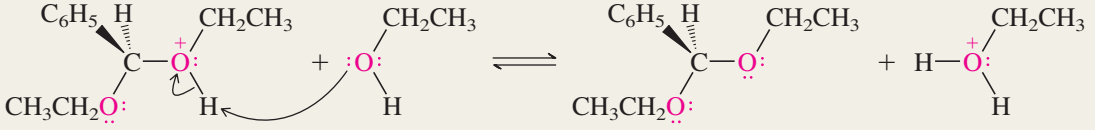
Conjugate acid of benzaldehyde ethyl hemiacetal | More stable contributor | Less stable contributor | Water

Step 6: Nucleophilic addition of ethanol to the oxygen-stabilized carbocation



Oxygen-stabilized carbocation | Ethanol | Conjugate acid of acetal

Step 7: Proton transfer from the conjugate acid of the product to ethanol



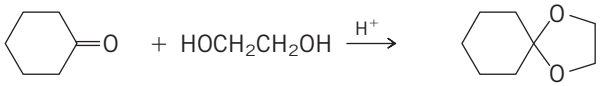
Conjugate acid of acetal | Ethanol | Benzaldehyde diethyl acetal | Conjugate acid of ethanol

Problem 17.11

Write the structures of the cyclic acetal or ketal derived from each of the following.

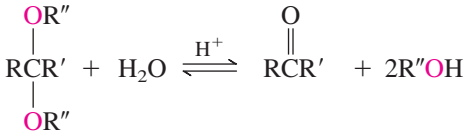
(a) Cyclohexanone and ethylene glycol
(b) Benzaldehyde and 1,3-propanediol
(c) Isobutyl methyl ketone and ethylene glycol
(d) Isobutyl methyl ketone and 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-propanediol

Sample Solution (a) The cyclic acetals derived from ethylene glycol contain a five-membered 1,3-dioxolane ring.



Cyclohexanone Ethylene glycol Acetal of cyclohexanone and ethylene glycol

Acetals and ketals are susceptible to hydrolysis in aqueous acid:



Acetal Water Aldehyde or ketone Alcohol

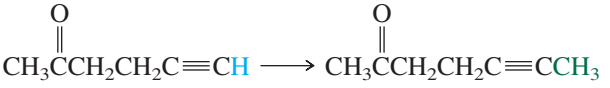
This reaction is simply the reverse of the reaction by which acetals are formed—acetal or ketal formation is favored by excess alcohol, hydrolysis by excess water. The two reactions share the same mechanistic pathway but travel along it in opposite directions. In the following section you'll see how acetal and ketal formation and hydrolysis are applied to synthetic organic chemistry.

Problem 17.12

Problem 17.10 asked you to write details of the mechanism describing formation of benzaldehyde diethyl acetal from benzaldehyde and ethanol. Write a stepwise mechanism for the acid hydrolysis of this acetal.

17.9 Acetals and Ketals as Protecting Groups

In an organic synthesis, it sometimes happens that one of the reactants contains a functional group that is incompatible with the reaction conditions. Consider, for example, the conversion

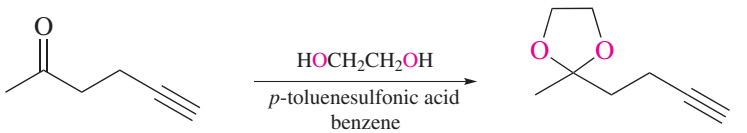


5-Hexyn-2-one 5-Heptyn-2-one

It looks as though all that is needed is to prepare the acetylenic anion $CH_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}CH_2CH_2C{\equiv}\bar{C}$:, then alkylate it with methyl iodide (Section 9.6). There is a complication, however. The carbonyl group in the starting alkyne will neither tolerate the strongly basic conditions required for anion formation nor survive in a solution containing carbanions. Acetylide ions add to carbonyl groups (Section 14.6). Thus, the necessary anion is inaccessible.

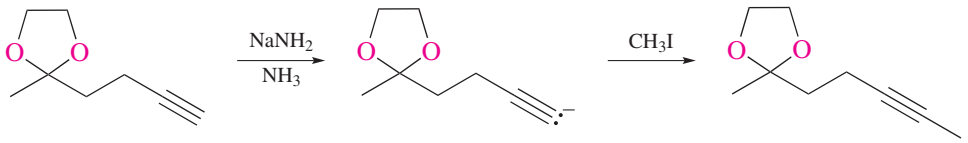
The strategy that is routinely followed is to *protect* the carbonyl group during the reactions with which it is incompatible and then to *remove* the protecting group in a subsequent step. Acetals and ketals, especially those derived from ethylene glycol, are the most commonly used groups for carbonyl protection, because they can be introduced and removed readily. They resemble ethers in being inert to many of the reagents, such as hydride reducing agents and organometallic compounds, that react readily with carbonyl groups. The following sequence is the one that was actually used to bring about the desired transformation.

(a) Protection of carbonyl group



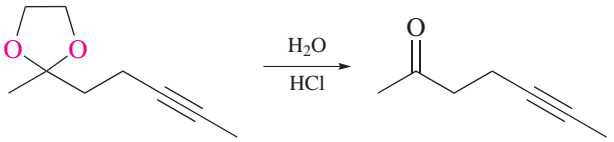
5-Hexyn-2-one — Ketal of reactant (80%)

(b) Alkylation of alkyne



Ketal of reactant — Ketal of product (78%)

(c) Removal of the protecting group by hydrolysis

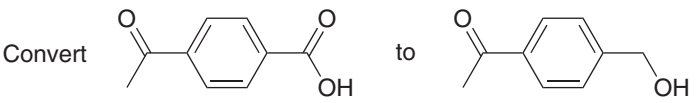


Ketal of product — 5-Heptyn-2-one (96%)

Although protecting and deprotecting the carbonyl group adds two steps to the synthetic procedure, both are essential to its success. Functional group protection is frequently encountered in preparative organic chemistry, and considerable attention has been paid to the design of effective protecting groups for a variety of functionalities.

Problem 17.13

Acetal formation is a characteristic reaction of aldehydes and ketones, but not of carboxylic acids. Use retrosynthetic analysis to show you could use a cyclic acetal protecting group in the following synthesis, then write equations for the procedure showing the necessary reagents.

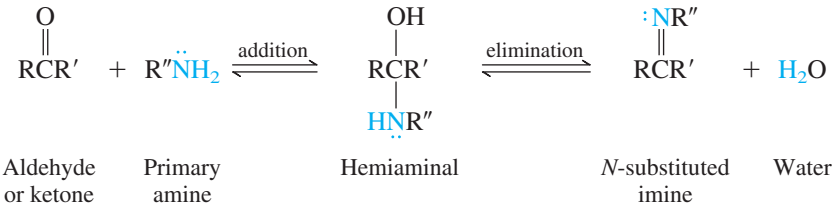


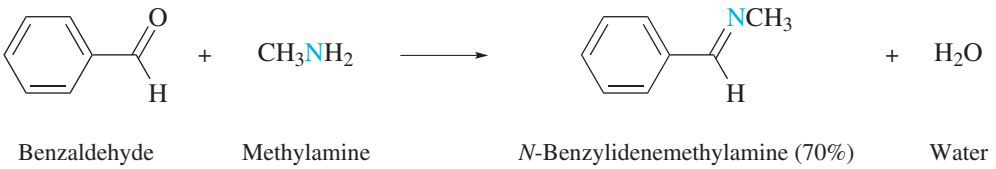
17.10 Reaction with Primary Amines: Imines

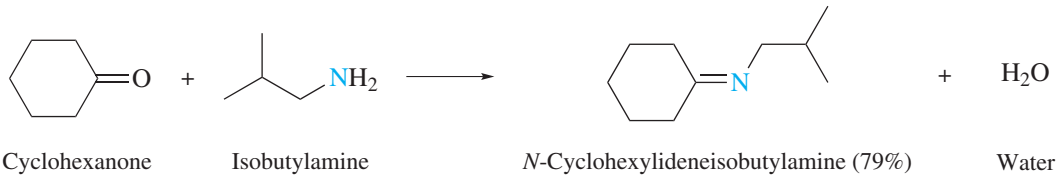
Like acetal formation, the reaction of aldehydes and ketones with primary amines—compounds of the type RNH_2 and $ArNH_2$—is a two-stage process. Its first stage is nucleophilic addition of the amine to the carbonyl group to give a **hemiaminal.** The second

Hemiaminals were formerly known by the now obsolete term *carbinolamine.* Imines are sometimes called **Schiff's bases,** after the nineteenth-century German chemist Hugo Schiff.

stage is a dehydration and yields an **imine** as the isolated product. Imines from aldehydes are called **aldimines,** those from ketones are **ketimines.**





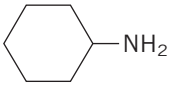


Mechanism 17.5 describes the reaction between benzaldehyde and methylamine given in the first example. The first two steps lead to the hemiaminal; the last three show its dehydration to the imine. Step 4, the key step in the dehydration phase, is rate-determining when the reaction is carried out in acid solution. If the solution is too acidic, however, protonation of the amine blocks step 1. Therefore there is some optimum pH, usually about 5, at which the reaction rate is a maximum. Too basic a solution reduces the rate of step 4; too acidic a solution reduces the rate of step 1.

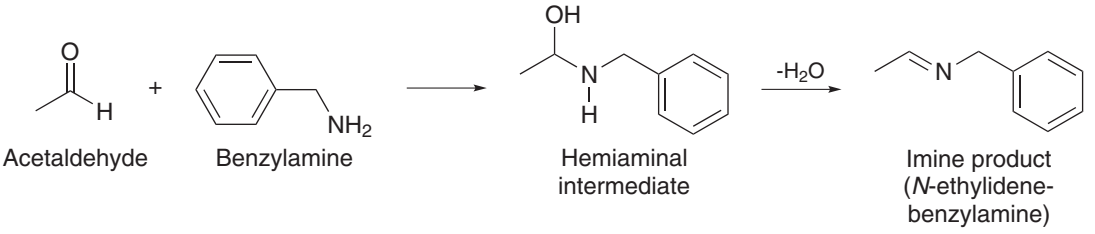
Imine formation is reversible and can be driven to completion by removing the water that forms. Imines revert to the aldehyde or ketone and amine in the presence of aqueous acid.

Problem 17.14

Write the structure of the aminal or hemiaminal intermediate and the imine product formed in the reaction of each of the following:

(a) Acetaldehyde and benzylamine, $C_6H_5CH_2NH_2$
(b) Benzaldehyde and butylamine, $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$
(c) Cyclohexanone and *tert*-butylamine, $(CH_3)_3CNH_2$
(d) Acetophenone and cyclohexylamine, 

Sample Solution A hemiaminal is formed by nucleophilic addition of the amine to the carbonyl group. Its dehydration gives the imine product.

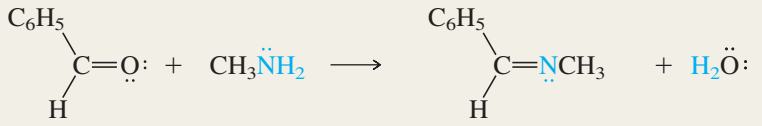


A number of compounds of the general type H_2NZ react with aldehydes and ketones in a manner analogous to that of primary amines to form products that are more stable than

Mechanism 17.5

Imine Formation from Benzaldehyde and Methylamine

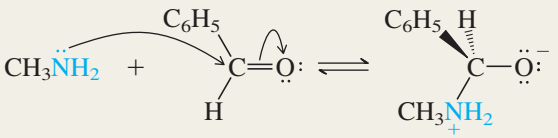
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Benzaldehyde Methylamine *N*-Benzylidenemethylamine Water

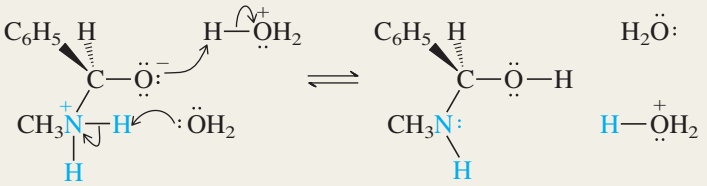
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The amine acts as a nucleophile, adding to the carbonyl group and forming a C—N bond.



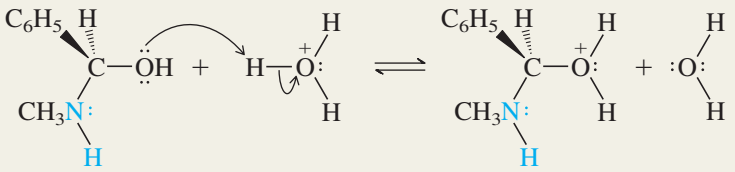
Methylamine Benzaldehyde First intermediate

Step 2: In a solvent such as water, proton transfers give the hemiaminal.



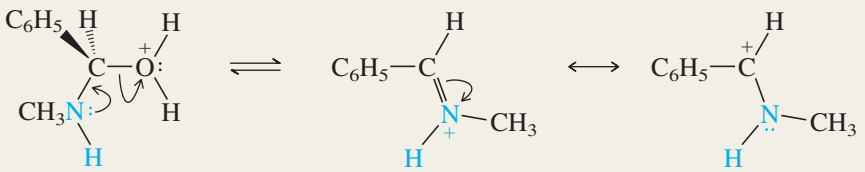
First intermediate Hemiaminal

Step 3: The dehydration stage begins with protonation of the hemiaminal on oxygen.



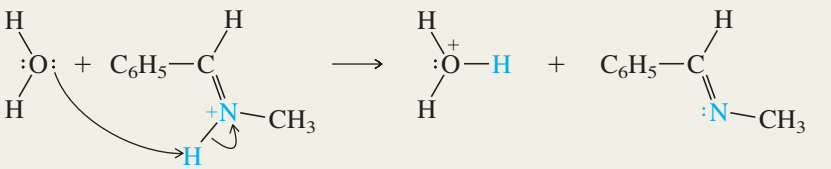
Hemiaminal Hydronium ion *O*-Protonated hemiaminal Water

Step 4: The oxygen-protonated hemiaminal loses water to give a nitrogen-stabilized carbocation.



O-Protonated hemiaminal Nitrogen-stabilized carbocation

Step 5: The nitrogen-stabilized carbocation is the conjugate acid of the imine. Proton transfer to water gives the imine.



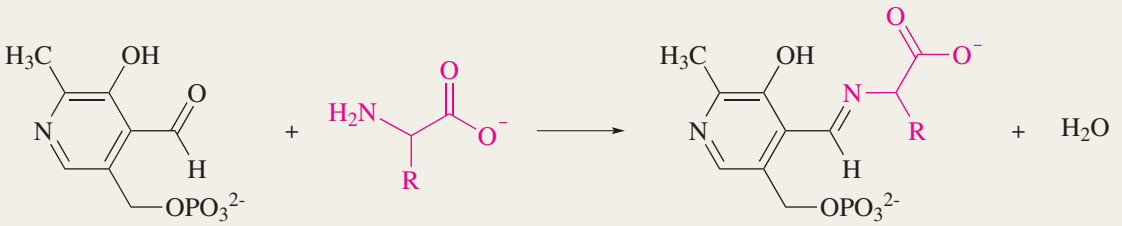
Water Nitrogen-stabilized carbocation Hydronium ion *N*-Benzylidenemethylamine

Imines in Biological Chemistry

Many biological processes involve an "association" between two species in a step prior to some subsequent transformation. This association can take many forms. It can be a weak association of the attractive van der Waals type, or a stronger interaction such as a hydrogen bond. It can be an electrostatic attraction between a positively charged atom of one molecule and a negatively charged atom of another. Covalent bond formation between two species of complementary chemical reactivity represents an extreme kind of association. It often occurs in biological processes in which aldehydes or ketones react with amines via imine intermediates.

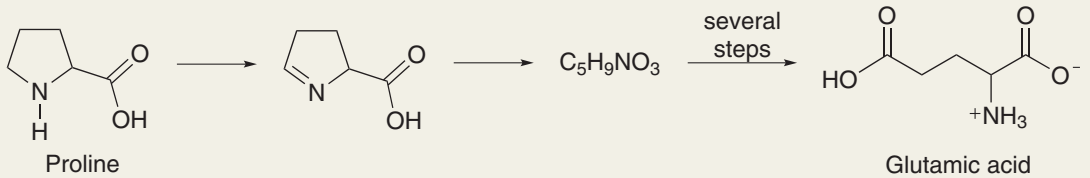
An example of a biologically important aldehyde is *pyridoxal phosphate,* which is the active form of *vitamin* B_6 and a coenzyme for many of the reactions of α-amino acids. In these reactions the amino acid binds to the coenzyme by reacting with it to form an imine of the kind shown in the equation. Reactions then take place at the amino acid portion of the imine, modifying the amino acid. In the last step, enzyme-catalyzed hydrolysis cleaves the imine to pyridoxal and the modified amino acid.

In a second example, a key step in the chemistry of vision is binding of an aldehyde to an enzyme via an imine. An outline of the steps involved is presented in Figure 17.7. It starts with β-*carotene,* a pigment that occurs naturally in several fruits and vegetables, including carrots. β-Carotene undergoes oxidative cleavage in the liver to give an alcohol known as *retinol,* or *vitamin A.* Oxidation of vitamin A, followed by isomerization of one of its double bonds, gives the aldehyde 11-*cis*-retinal. In the eye, the aldehyde function of 11-*cis*-retinal combines with an amino group of the protein *opsin* to form an imine called *rhodopsin.* When rhodopsin absorbs a photon of visible light, the cis double bond of the retinal unit undergoes a photochemical cis-to-trans isomerization, which is attended by a dramatic change in its shape and a change in the conformation of rhodopsin. This conformational change is translated into a nerve impulse perceived by the brain as a visual image. Enzyme-promoted hydrolysis of the photochemically isomerized rhodopsin regenerates opsin and a molecule of all-*trans*-retinal. Once all-*trans*-retinal has been enzymatically converted to its 11-cis isomer, it and opsin reenter the cycle.



Problem 17.15

Not all biological reactions of amino acids involving imine intermediates require pyridoxal phosphate. The first step in the conversion of proline to glutamic acid is an oxidation giving the imine shown. Once formed, this imine undergoes hydrolysis to a species having the molecular formula $C_5H_9NO_3$, which then goes on to produce glutamic acid. Suggest a structure for the $C_5H_9NO_3$ species. (*Hint:* There are two reasonable possibilities; one is a hemiaminal, the other is not cyclic.)



Continued

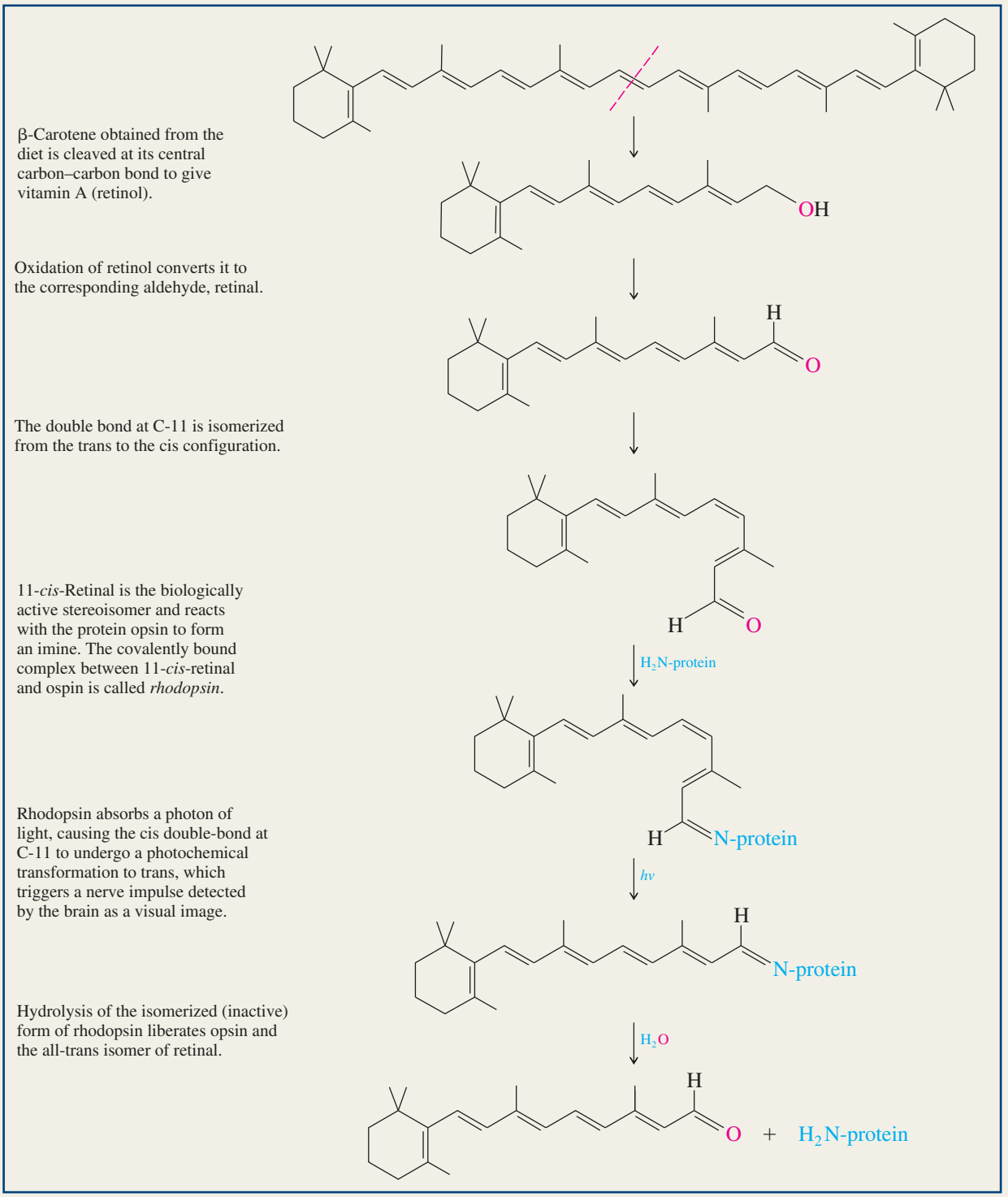


Figure 17.7

Imine formation between the aldehyde function of 11-*cis*-retinal and an amino group of a protein (opsin) is involved in the chemistry of vision. The numbering scheme in retinal was specifically developed for carotenes and related compounds.

TABLE 17.4 Reactions of Aldehydes and Ketones with Derivatives of Ammonia

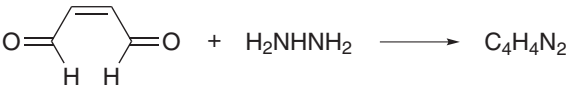
Reagent	Type of product	Specific example of the general reaction: $RCR' + H_2NZ \longrightarrow RCR' + H_2O$ (NZ)
H_2NOH Hydroxylamine	Oxime	Heptanal $\xrightarrow{\text{hydroxylamine}}$ Heptanal oxime (81-93%)
H_2NNH–C$_6$H$_5$ Phenylhydrazine*	Phenylhydrazone	Acetophenone $\xrightarrow{\text{phenylhydrazine}}$ Acetophenone phenylhydrazone (87–91%)
$H_2NNHCNH_2$ (O) Semicarbazide	Semicarbazone	Pyruvic acid $\xrightarrow{\text{semicarbazide}}$ Pyruvic acid semicarbazone (94%)

*Compounds related to phenylhydrazine react analogously. *p*-Nitrophenylhydrazine yields *p*-nitrophenylhydrazones; 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine yields 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazones.

imines. Table 17.4 presents examples of some of these reactions. The mechanism by which each proceeds is similar to the nucleophilic addition–elimination mechanism described for the reaction of primary amines with aldehydes and ketones.

Problem 17.16

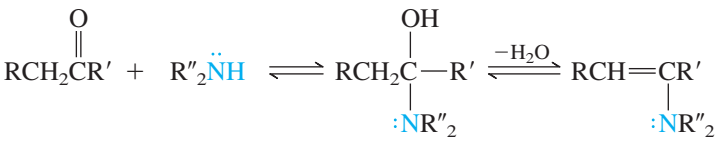
The product of the following reaction is a heterocyclic aromatic compound. What is its structure?



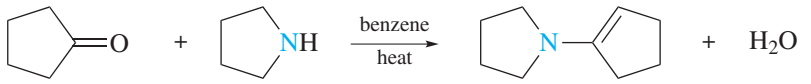
The reactions listed in Table 17.4 have been extensively studied from a mechanistic perspective because of their relevance to biological processes. Many biological reactions involve initial binding of a carbonyl compound to an enzyme or coenzyme via imine formation. The boxed essay *Imines in Biological Chemistry* gives some important examples.

17.11 Reaction with Secondary Amines: Enamines

Secondary amines are compounds of the type R_2NH. They add to aldehydes and ketones to form hemiaminals that can dehydrate to a stable product only in the direction that leads to a carbon–carbon double bond:



The product is an alkenyl-substituted amine, or **enamine.**



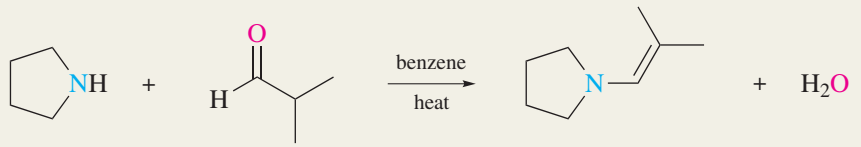
Cyclopentanone | Pyrrolidine | *N*-(1-Cyclopentenyl)-pyrrolidine (80-90%) | Water

Mechanism 17.6 outlines the mechanism of the corresponding reaction of pyrrolidine and 2-methylpropanal.

MECHANISM 17.6

Enamine Formation

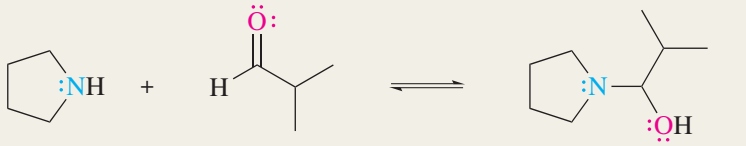
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Pyrrolidine | 2-Methylpropanal | 1-(2-Methylpropenyl)-pyrrolidine (94-95%) | Water

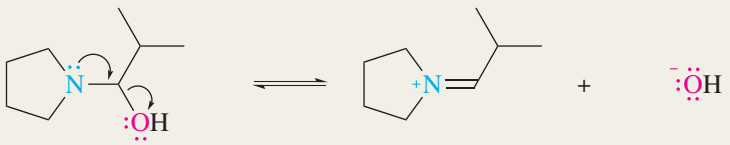
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Nucleophilic addition of pyrrolidine to 2-methylpropanal gives a hemiaminal. The mechanism is analogous to the addition of primary amines to aldehydes and ketones (Mechanism 17.5).



Pyrrolidine | 2-Methylpropanal | Hemiaminal intermediate

Step 2: With an assist from the nitrogen lone pair, the hemiaminal expels hydroxide to form an iminium ion.



Hemiaminal intermediate | Iminium ion | Hydroxide ion

Step 3: The iminium ion is then deprotonated in the direction that gives a carbon–carbon double bond.

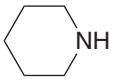
Iminium ion | Hydroxide ion | 1-(2-Methylpropenyl)-pyrrolidine | Water

Problem 17.17

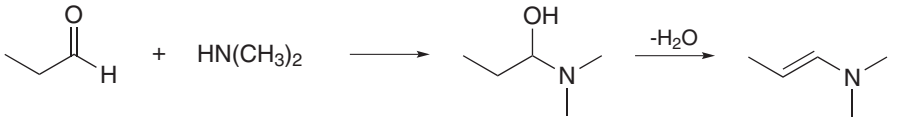
Write the structure of the hemiaminal intermediate and the enamine product formed in the reaction of each of the following.

(a) Propanal and dimethylamine

(b) 3-Pentanone and pyrrolidine

(c) Acetophenone and 

Sample Solution (a) Nucleophilic addition of dimethylamine to the carbonyl group of propanal gives a hemiaminal that undergoes dehydration to form an enamine.



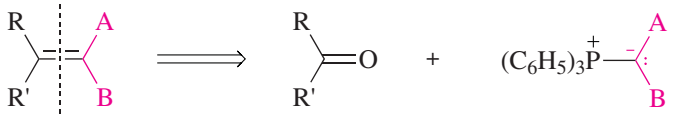
Propanal — Dimethylamine — Hemiaminal intermediate — *N*-(1-Propenyl)-dimethylamine

Enamines are mainly used as reagents for making carbon–carbon bonds, some applications of which are illustrated in the Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems accompanying Chapter 21.

17.12 The Wittig Reaction

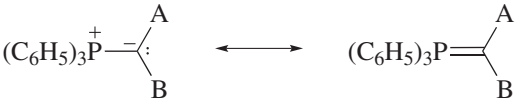
The reaction is named after Georg Wittig, a German chemist who shared the 1979 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for demonstrating its synthetic potential. Wittig shared the prize with H. C. Brown who was recognized for developing hydroboration as a synthetic tool.

Wittig reactions, and reactions related to it, are used for the regiospecific synthesis of alkenes from aldehydes and ketones. Their retrosynthetic analysis begins with disconnecting the double bond as shown and introduces a novel structural type called an **ylide.**



Alkene target — Aldehyde or ketone — A triphenylphosponium ylide

An ylide is a neutral molecule having a contributing structure in which two oppositely charged atoms, each with an octet of electrons, are directly bonded to each other. In **Wittig reagents**—ylides of the type shown—the positively charged atom is phosphorus and the negatively charged one is carbon. Most Wittig reagents have three phenyl groups attached to phosphorus and are commonly written as either of two resonance contributors.



Although second-row elements such as phosphorus can accommodate more than 8 electrons in their valence shell, the dipolar structure is believed to be the major contributing structure for Wittig reagents.

The electrostatic potential map of a very simple ylide, one in which all the atoms other than phosphorus and carbon are hydrogen, is shown in Figure 17.8. The electron distribution is highly polarized in the direction that makes carbon nucleophilic.

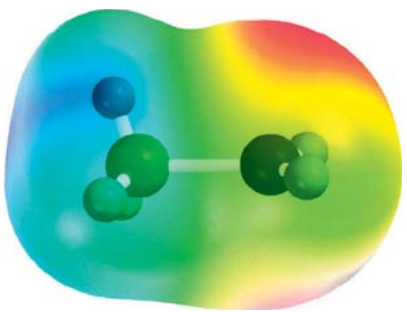
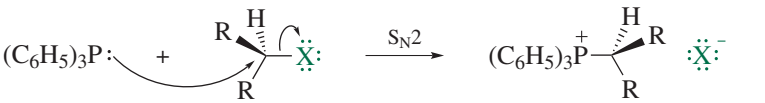


Figure 17.8

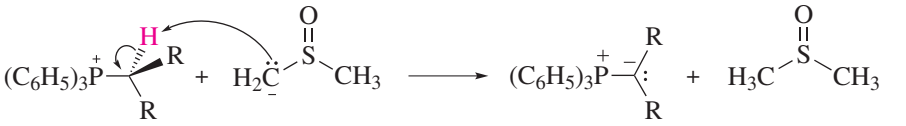
An electrostatic potential map of the ylide $H_3\overset{+}{P}—\overset{-}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{C}}H_2$. The region of greatest negative charge is concentrated at carbon.

Ylides are prepared by a two-step procedure. First, an alkyl halide is treated with a phosphine—typically triphenylphosphine—to give a phosphonium salt. The alkyl halide can be methyl, primary, or secondary.



Triphenylphosphine — Alkyl halide — An alkyltriphenylphosphonium halide

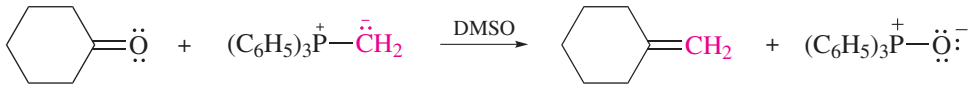
The phosphonium salt is isolated, then converted to an ylide by an acid–base reaction. The conjugate base of dimethyl sulfoxide is often used.



An alkyltriphenylphosphonium ion | Conjugate base of dimethyl sulfoxide | Ylide | Dimethyl sulfoxide

The conjugate base of dimethyl sulfoxide is about 10^{20} times more basic than hydroxide.

When the ylide is prepared in this way in dimethyl sulfoxide as the solvent, adding an aldehyde or ketone gives the alkene, along with triphenylphospine oxide as a coproduct. The P—O bond strength of the triphenylphosphine oxide coproduct is estimated to be greater than 540 kJ/mol (130 kcal/mol) and contributes to the reaction proceeding in the direction shown.



Cyclohexanone | Methylenetriphenylphosphorane | Methylenecyclohexane (86%) | Triphenylphosphine oxide

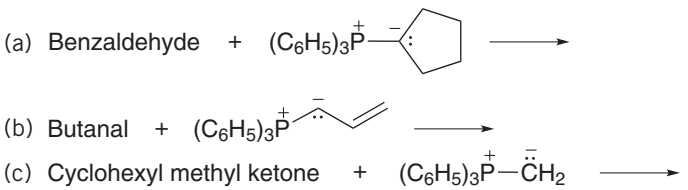
Alternatively, triphenylphosphonium salts may be converted to ylides using an alkyllithium reagent as the base and tetrahydrofuran as the solvent.

Problem 17.18

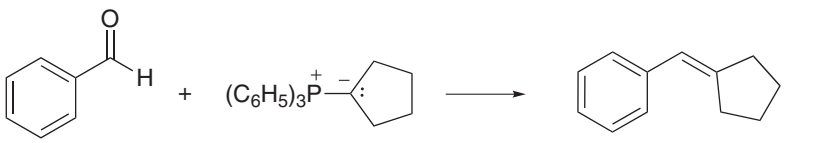
What other combination of ylide and aldehyde or ketone will give methylenecyclohexane by a Wittig reaction? Write a balanced equation for the reaction.

Problem 17.19

Identify the alkene formed in each of the following reactions:



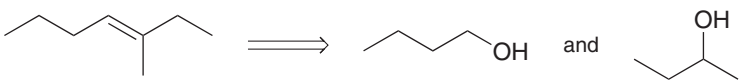
Sample Solution (a) In a Wittig reaction the negatively charged substituent on phosphorus is transferred to the aldehyde or ketone, replacing the carbonyl oxygen. Reaction (a) has been used to prepare the indicated alkene in 65% yield.



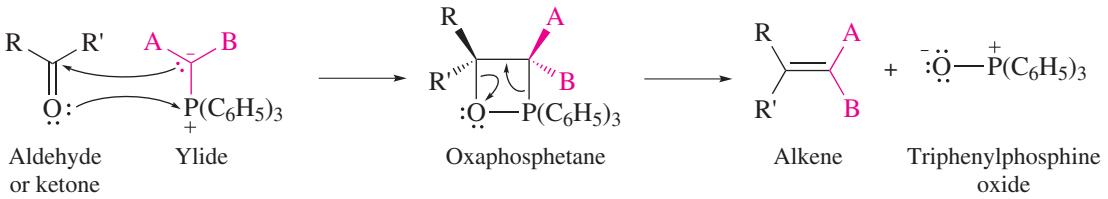
Benzaldehyde | Cyclopentylidenetriphenylphosphorane | Benzylidenecyclopentane (65%)

Problem 17.20

Write equations outlining two different syntheses of 3-methyl-3-heptene using 1-butanol and 2-butanol as the source of all of the carbons.



The mechanism of the Wittig reaction has been explored extensively using experimental, spectroscopic, and theoretical methods and has led to general agreement that a four-membered ring called an oxaphosphetane is an intermediate.



Apparently, what begins as a nucleophilic addition of the ylide to the carbonyl group becomes a one-step cycloaddition instead. As the C—C bond forms, the carbonyl oxygen becomes more negative and promotes P—O bond formation through a cyclic transition state.

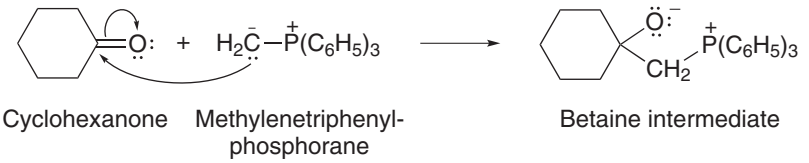
Problem 17.21

(a) The product expected from nucleophilic addition of an ylide to an aldehyde or ketone belongs to a class of substances called *betaines.* Like ylides, betaines contain a positively charged and a negatively charged atom and both have an octet of electrons; they differ from ylides in that the two charged atoms are nonadjacent. Write a structural formula for the betaine corresponding to nucleophilic addition of methylenetriphenylphosphorane to cyclohexanone.

(b) Use curved arrows to show the conversion of the betaine in (a) to an oxaphosphetane.

(c) Use curved arrows to show the one-step conversion of the betaine in (a) to methylenecyclohexane and triphenylphosphine oxide.

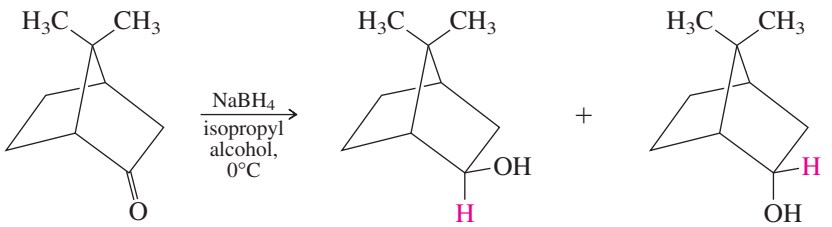
Sample Solution (a) Nucleophilic addition of the ylide to the carbonyl group leads to C—C bond formation.



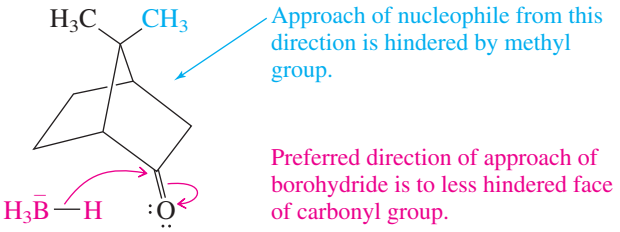
The stereoselectivity of the Wittig reaction is variable. Simple ylides give a mixture of stereoisomers in which the *Z*-alkene predominates, whereas ylides of the type $(C_6H_5)_3P{=}CHX$, where X is a strongly electron-withdrawing substituent such as —C═O or —C≡N, give mainly the *E*-alkene.

17.13 Stereoselective Addition to Carbonyl Groups

Nucleophilic addition to carbonyl groups sometimes leads to a mixture of stereoisomeric products. The direction of addition is often controlled by steric factors, with the nucleophile approaching the carbonyl group at its less hindered face. Sodium borohydride reduction of 7,7-dimethylbicyclo[2.2.1]heptan-2-one illustrates this point:



Approach of borohydride to the top face of the carbonyl group is sterically hindered by one of the methyl groups. The bottom face of the carbonyl group is less congested, and the major product is formed by hydride transfer from this direction.

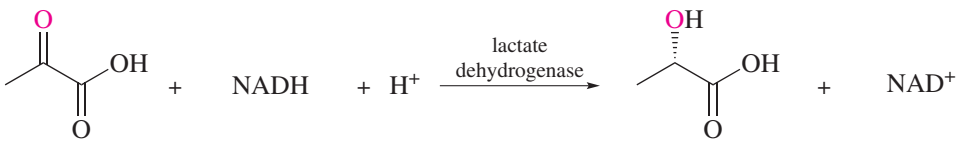


The reduction is *stereoselective*. A single starting material can form two stereoisomers of the product but yields one of them in greater amounts than the other or even to the exclusion of the other.

Problem 17.22

What is the relationship between the products of the reaction just described? Are they enantiomers or diastereomers? Is the reaction enantioselective or diastereoselective?

Enzyme-catalyzed reductions of carbonyl groups are, more often than not, completely stereoselective. Pyruvic acid, for example, is converted exclusively to (*S*)-(+)-lactic acid by the lactate dehydrogenase-NADH system (Section 15.10). The enantiomer (*R*)-(−)-lactic acid is not formed.

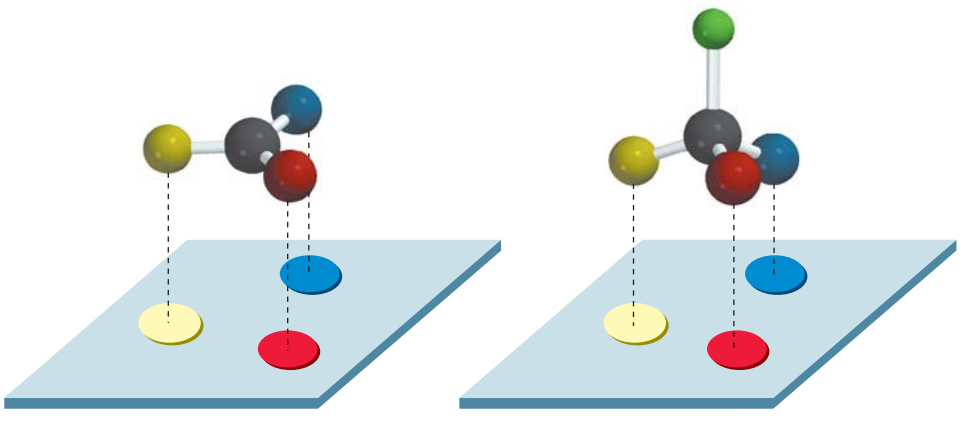


Pyruvic acid | Reduced form of coenzyme | (*S*)-(+)-Lactic acid | Oxidized form of coenzyme

The enzyme is a single enantiomer of a chiral molecule and binds the coenzyme and substrate in such a way that hydride is transferred exclusively to the face of the carbonyl group that leads to (*S*)-(+)-lactic acid. Reduction of pyruvic acid in an achiral environment, say with sodium borohydride, also gives lactic acid but as a racemic mixture containing equal quantities of the *R* and *S* enantiomers.

The enantioselectivity of enzyme-catalyzed reactions can be understood on the basis of a relatively simple model. Consider the case of an sp^2-hybridized carbon with prochiral faces as in Figure 17.9*a*. If structural features on the enzyme are complementary in some respect to the groups attached to this carbon, one prochiral face can bind to the enzyme better than the other—there will be a preferred geometry of

Prochirality was introduced in Section 7.10 and is the topic of the Chapter 7 Descriptive Passage.



(*a*) (*b*)

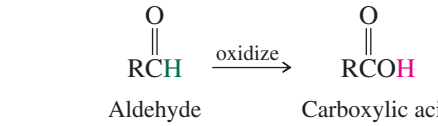
Figure 17.9

(*a*) Binding sites of enzyme discriminate between prochiral faces of substrate. One prochiral face can bind to the enzyme better than the other. (*b*) Reaction attaches fourth group to the top face of the substrate producing only one enantiomer of chiral product.

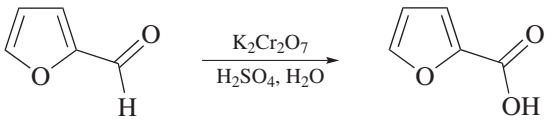
the enzyme–substrate complex. The binding forces are the usual ones: electrostatic, van der Waals, and so on. If a reaction occurs that converts the sp^2-hybridized carbon to sp^3, there will be a bias toward adding the fourth group from a particular direction as shown in Figure 17.9*b*. As a result, an achiral molecule is converted to a single enantiomer of a chiral one. The reaction is enantioselective because it occurs preferentially at one prochiral face.

17.14 Oxidation of Aldehydes

Aldehydes are readily oxidized to carboxylic acids by a number of reagents, including those based on Cr(VI) in aqueous media.

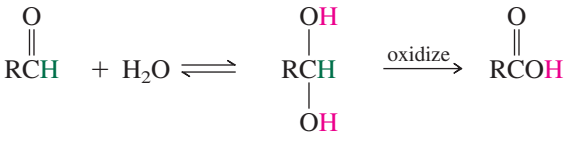


Aldehyde Carboxylic acid



Furfural Furoic acid (75%)

Mechanistically, these reactions probably proceed through the hydrate of the aldehyde and follow a course similar to that of alcohol oxidation.

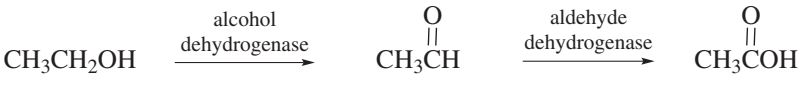


Aldehyde Geminal diol (hydrate) Carboxylic acid

PCC is pyridinium chlorochromate. PDC is pyridinium dichromate.

Hydrates of aldehydes are more easily oxidized than alcohols, which is why special reagents such as PCC and PDC (Section 15.9) have been developed for oxidizing primary alcohols to aldehydes and no further. PCC and PDC are effective not only because they are sources of Cr(VI), but also because they are used in nonaqueous media (dichloromethane). By keeping water out of the reaction mixture, the aldehyde is not converted to its hydrate, which is the necessary intermediate that leads to the carboxylic acid.

Alcohol oxidation, especially of ethanol, is one of the most common of all biological processes. Two key enzymes, both classified as *dehydrogenases,* are involved. The first catalyzes the oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde, the second catalyzes the oxidation of acetaldehyde to acetic acid.



Ethanol Acetaldehyde Acetic acid

Acetaldehyde is toxic and responsible for many of the adverse effects attributed to ethanol. Too much ethanol produces acetaldehyde faster than it can be oxidized to acetic acid and leads to elevated acetaldehyde levels.

17.15 Spectroscopic Analysis of Aldehydes and Ketones

Infrared: Carbonyl groups are among the easiest functional groups to detect by IR spectroscopy. The C═O stretching vibration of aldehydes and ketones gives rise to strong absorption in the region 1710–1750 cm^{-1}, as illustrated for butanal in Figure 17.10. In addition to a peak for C═O stretching, the CH═O group of an aldehyde exhibits two weak bands for C—H stretching near 2720 and 2820 cm^{-1}.

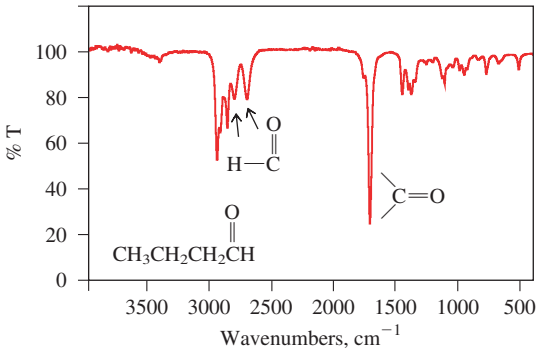


Figure 17.10

IR spectrum of butanal showing peaks characteristic of the CH═O unit at 2700 and 2800 cm^{-1} (C—H) and at 1720 cm^{-1} (C═O).

^{1}H NMR: Aldehydes are readily identified by the presence of a signal for the hydrogen of CH═O at δ 9–10. This is a region where very few other protons ever appear. Figure 17.11 shows the ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2-methylpropanal [$(CH_3)_2CHCH{=}O$)], where the large chemical shift difference between the aldehyde proton and the other protons in the molecule is clearly evident. As seen in the expanded-scale inset, the aldehyde proton is a doublet, split by the proton at C-2. Coupling between the protons in HC—CH═O is much smaller than typical vicinal couplings, making the multiplicity of the aldehyde peak difficult to see without expanding the scale.

Methyl ketones, such as 2-butanone in Figure 17.12, are characterized by sharp singlets near δ 2 for the protons of $CH_3C{=}O$. Similarly, the deshielding effect of the carbonyl causes the protons of $CH_2C{=}O$ to appear at lower field (2.5) than in a CH_2 group of an alkane.

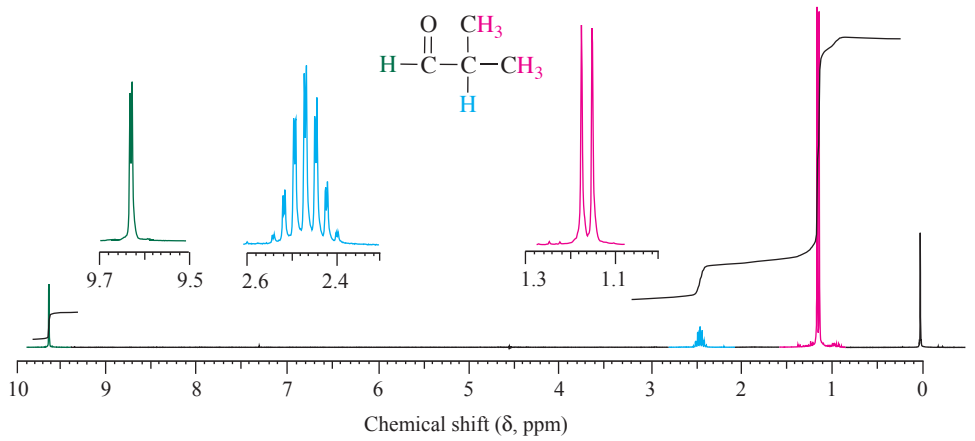


Figure 17.11

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2-methylpropanal, showing the aldehyde proton as a doublet at low field (δ 9.6).

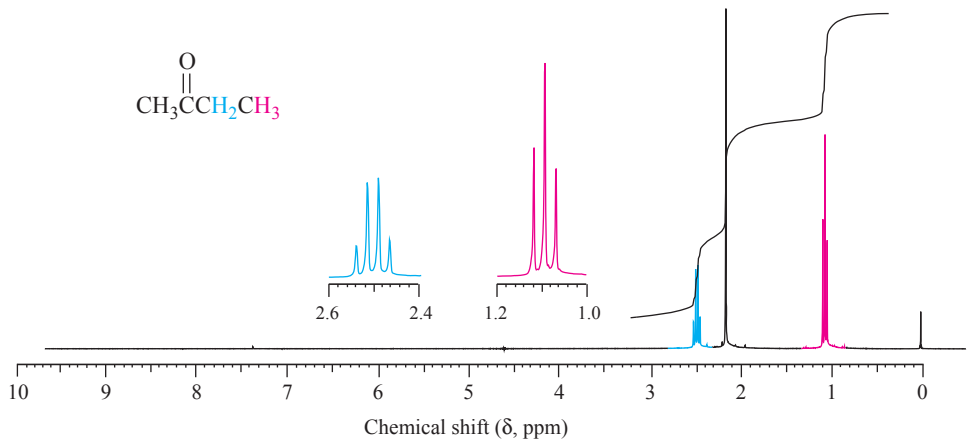


Figure 17.12

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 2-butanone.

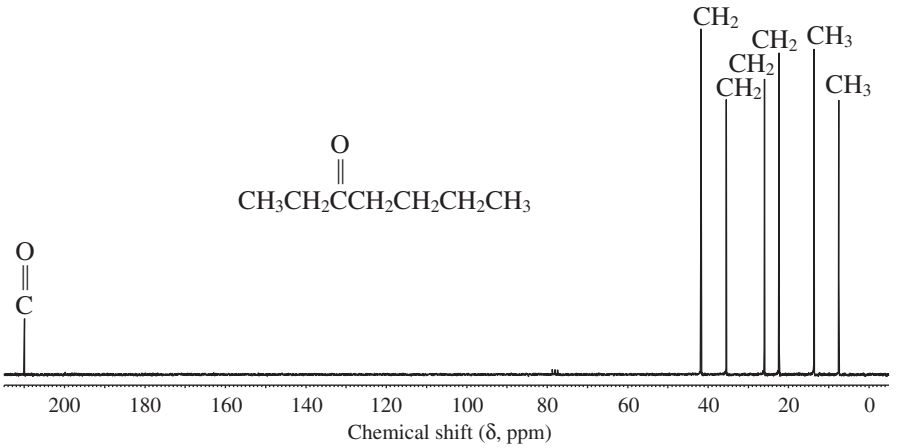
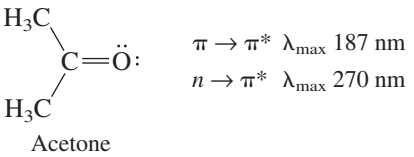


Figure 17.13

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of 3-heptanone. Each signal corresponds to a single carbon. The carbonyl carbon is the least shielded and appears at δ 210.

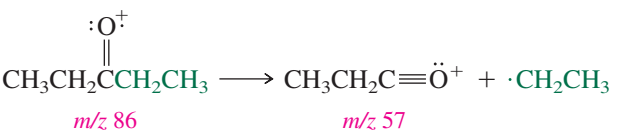
^{13}C NMR: The signal for the carbon of C═O in aldehydes and ketones appears at very low field, some 190–220 ppm downfield from tetramethylsilane. Figure 17.13 illustrates this for 3-heptanone, in which separate signals appear for each of the seven carbons. The six sp^3-hybridized carbons appear in the range δ 8–42, and the carbon of the C═O group is at δ 210. Note, too, that the intensity of the peak for the C═O carbon is much less than all the others, even though each peak corresponds to a single carbon. This decreased intensity is a characteristic of pulsed Fourier transform (FT) spectra for carbons that don't have attached hydrogens.

UV-VIS: Aldehydes and ketones have two absorption bands in the ultraviolet region. Both involve excitation of an electron to an antibonding π* orbital. In one, called a π→π* transition, the electron is one of the π electrons of the C═O group. In the other, called an *n*→π* transition, it is one of the oxygen lone-pair electrons. Because the π electrons are more strongly held than the lone-pair electrons, the π→π* transition is of higher energy and shorter wavelength than the *n*→π* transition. For simple aldehydes and ketones, the π→π* transition is below 200 nm and of little use in structure determination. The *n*→π* transition, although weak, is of more diagnostic value.



Acetone

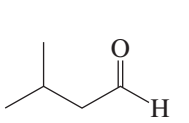
Mass Spectrometry: Aldehydes and ketones typically give a prominent molecular ion peak in their mass spectra. Aldehydes also exhibit an M-1 peak. A major fragmentation pathway for both aldehydes and ketones leads to formation of acyl cations (acylium ions) by cleavage of an alkyl group from the carbonyl. The most intense peak in the mass spectrum of diethyl ketone, for example, is *m/z* 57, corresponding to loss of ethyl radical from the molecular ion.



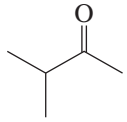
17.16 SUMMARY

The chemistry of the carbonyl group is probably the single most important aspect of organic chemical reactivity. Classes of compounds that contain the carbonyl group include many derived from carboxylic acids (acyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, esters, and amides) as well as the two related classes discussed in this chapter: *aldehydes* and *ketones.*

Section 17.1 The substitutive IUPAC names of aldehydes and ketones are developed by identifying the longest continuous chain that contains the carbonyl group and replacing the final *-e* of the corresponding alkane by *-al* for aldehydes and *-one* for ketones. The chain is numbered in the direction that gives the lowest locant to the carbon of the carbonyl group.



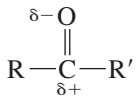
3-Methylbutanal



3-Methyl-2-butanone
or
3-Methylbutan-2-one

Ketones may also be named using functional class IUPAC nomenclature by citing the two groups attached to the carbonyl in alphabetical order followed by the word *ketone.* Thus, 3-methyl-2-butanone (substitutive) becomes isopropyl methyl ketone (functional class).

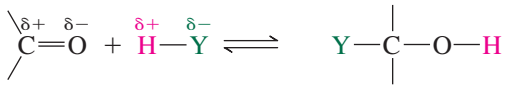
Section 17.2 The carbonyl carbon is sp^2-hybridized, and it and the atoms attached to it are coplanar. Aldehydes and ketones are polar molecules. Nucleophiles attack C=O at carbon (positively polarized) and electrophiles, especially protons, attack oxygen (negatively polarized).



Section 17.3 Aldehydes and ketones have higher boiling points than hydrocarbons, but have lower boiling points than alcohols.

Section 17.4 The numerous reactions that yield aldehydes and ketones discussed in earlier chapters and reviewed in Table 17.1 are sufficient for most syntheses.

Sections 17.5–17.12 The characteristic reactions of aldehydes and ketones involve *nucleophilic addition* to the carbonyl group and are summarized in Table 17.5. Reagents of the type HY react according to the general equation

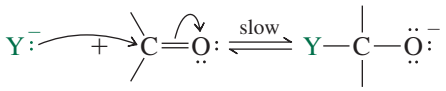


Aldehyde or ketone

Product of nucleophilic addition to carbonyl group

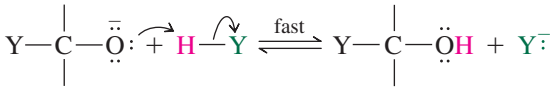
Aldehydes undergo nucleophilic addition more readily and have more favorable equilibrium constants for addition than do ketones.

The step in which the nucleophile attacks the carbonyl carbon is rate-determining in both base-catalyzed and acid-catalyzed nucleophilic addition. In the base-catalyzed mechanism this is the first step.



Nucleophile

Aldehyde or ketone



Product of nucleophilic addition

TABLE 17.5 Nucleophilic Addition to Aldehydes and Ketones

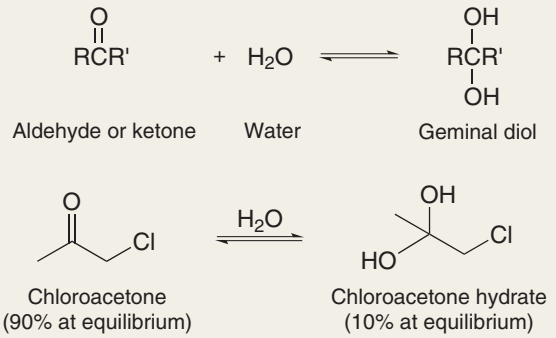
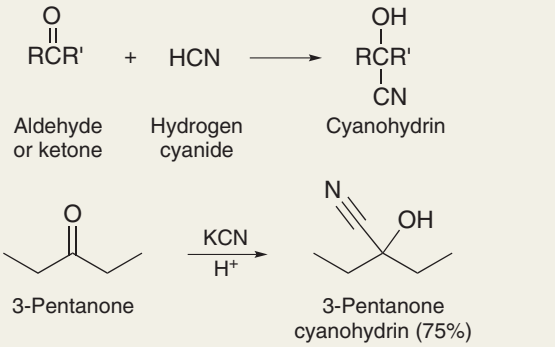
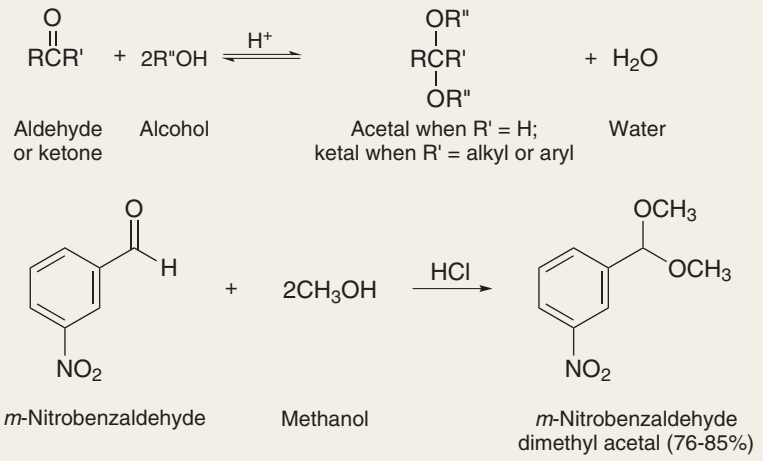
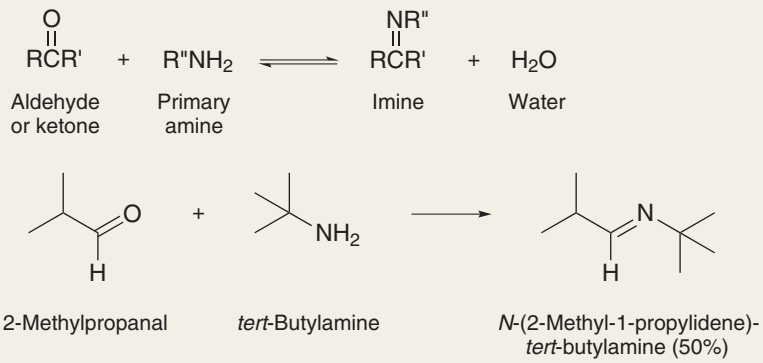
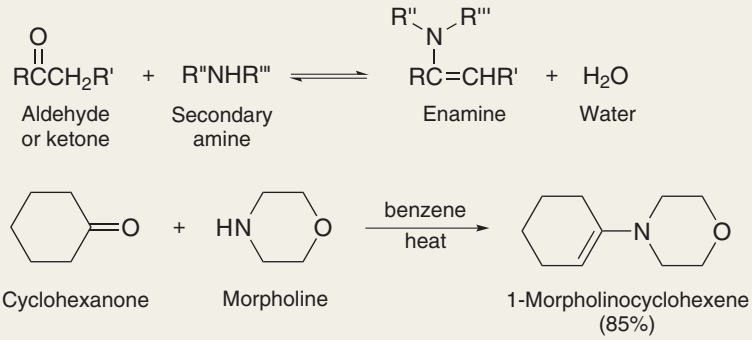
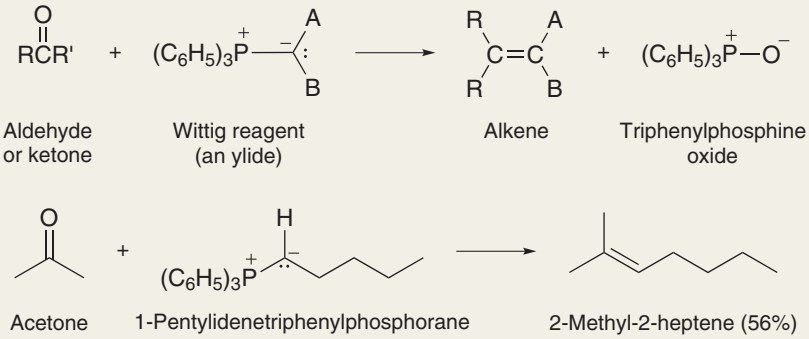
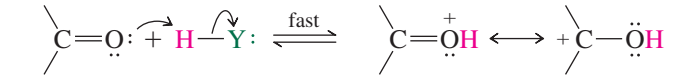
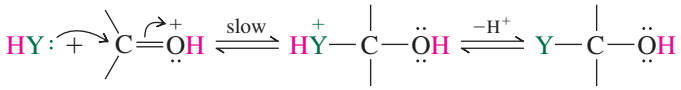
Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Hydration (Section 17.6) Can be either acid- or base-catalyzed. Equilibrium constant is normally unfavorable for ketones unless R, R′, or both are strongly electron-withdrawing.	
Cyanohydrin formation (Section 17.7) Reaction is catalyzed by cyanide ion. Cyanohydrins are useful synthetic intermediates; cyano group can be hydrolyzed to CO_2H or reduced to CH_2NH_2.	
Acetal and ketal formation (Sections 17.8–17.9) Reaction is acid catalyzed and proceeds by way of a hemiacetal or hemiketal as an intermediate. Equilibrium constant normally favorable for aldehydes, unfavorable for ketones. Cyclic acetals from vicinal diols form readily.	
Reaction with primary amines (Section 17.10) Isolated product is an imine, formed by dehydration of a hemiaminal intermediate.	

TABLE 17.5 Nucleophilic Addition to Aldehydes and Ketones *continued*

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Reaction with secondary amines (Section 17.11) In this case, the hemiaminal intermediate cannot give an imine so dehydrates in the direction that gives a carbon–carbon double bond.	
Wittig reaction (Section 17.12) The reaction of a phosphorus ylide with an aldehyde or ketones is a synthetically useful method for the preparation of alkenes.	

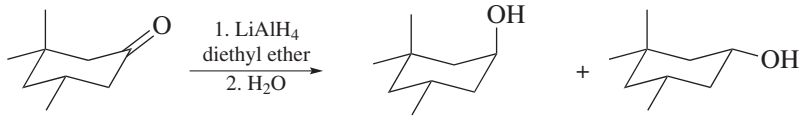
Under conditions of acid catalysis, the nucleophilic addition step follows protonation of the carbonyl oxygen. Protonation increases the carbocation character of a carbonyl group and makes it more electrophilic.



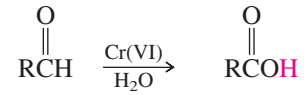


Often the product of nucleophilic addition is not isolated but is an intermediate leading to the ultimate product. Most of the reactions in Table 17.5 are of this type.

Section 17.13 Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group can be *stereoselective.* When one direction of approach to the carbonyl group is less hindered than the other, the nucleophile normally attacks at the less hindered face.



Section 17.14 Aldehydes are easily oxidized to carboxylic acids.



Aldehyde Carboxylic acid

Section 17.15 A strong peak near 1700 cm^{-1} in the IR spectrum is characteristic of compounds that contain a C═O group. The ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra of aldehydes and ketones are affected by the deshielding of a C═O group. The proton of an H—C═O group appears in the δ 8–10 range. The carbon of a C═O group is at δ 190–210.

PROBLEMS

17.23 (a) Write structural formulas and provide IUPAC names for all the isomeric aldehydes and ketones that have the molecular formula $C_5H_{10}O$. Include stereoisomers.

(b) Which of the isomers in part (a) yield chiral alcohols on reaction with sodium borohydride?

(c) Which of the isomers in part (a) yield chiral alcohols on reaction with methylmagnesium iodide?

17.24 Each of the following aldehydes or ketones is known by a common name. Its substitutive IUPAC name is provided in parentheses. Write a structural formula for each one.

(a) Chloral (2,2,2-trichloroethanal)

(b) Pivaldehyde (2,2-dimethylpropanal)

(c) Acrolein (2-propenal)

(d) Crotonaldehyde [(*E*)-2-butenal]

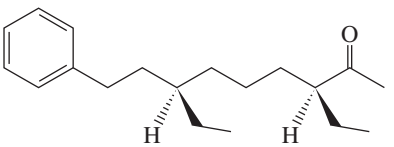
(e) Citral [(*E*)-3,7-dimethyl-2,6-octadienal]

(f) Diacetone alcohol (4-hydroxy-4-methyl-2-pentanone)

(g) Carvone (5-isopropenyl-2-methyl-2-cyclohexenone)

(h) Biacetyl (2,3-butanedione)

17.25 The African dwarf crocodile secretes a volatile substance believed to be a sex pheromone. It is a mixture of two stereoisomers, one of which is shown:



(a) Give the IUPAC name for this compound, including *R* and *S* descriptors for its chirality centers.

(b) One component of the scent substance has the *S* configuration at both chirality centers. How is this compound related to the one shown? Are the compounds enantiomers, or diastereomers?

17.26 Predict the product of the reaction of propanal with each of the following:

(a) Lithium aluminum hydride, followed by water

(b) Sodium borohydride, methanol

(c) Hydrogen (nickel catalyst)

(d) Methylmagnesium iodide, followed by dilute acid

(e) Sodium acetylide, followed by dilute acid

(f) Phenyllithium, followed by dilute acid

(g) Methanol containing dissolved hydrogen chloride

(h) Ethylene glycol, *p*-toluenesulfonic acid, benzene

(i) Aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$)

(j) Dimethylamine, *p*-toluenesulfonic acid, benzene

(k) Hydroxylamine

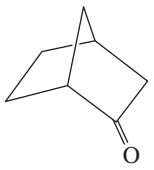
(l) Hydrazine

(m) Product of part (l) heated in triethylene glycol with sodium hydroxide
(n) *p*-Nitrophenylhydrazine
(o) Semicarbazide
(p) Ethylidenetriphenylphosphorane $[(C_6H_5)_3\overset{+}{P}-\ddot{\overset{-}{C}}HCH_3]$
(q) Sodium cyanide with addition of sulfuric acid
(r) Chromic acid

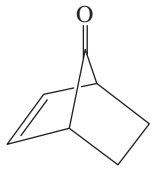
17.27 Repeat the preceding problem for cyclopentanone instead of propanal.

17.28 Hydride reduction (with $LiAlH_4$ or $NaBH_4$) of each of the following ketones has been reported in the chemical literature and gives a mixture of two diastereomeric alcohols in each case. Give the structures of both alcohol products for each ketone.

(a) (*S*)-3-Phenyl-2-butanone
(b) 4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexanone
(c)



(d)



17.29 Choose which member in each of the following pairs reacts faster or has the more favorable equilibrium constant for reaction with the indicated reagent. Explain your reasoning.

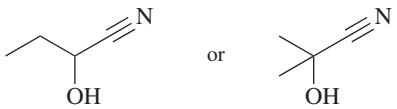
(a) $C_6H_5\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}H$ or $C_6H_5\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}CH_3$ (rate of reduction with sodium borohydride)
(b) $Cl_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}CH$ or $CH_3\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}H$ (equilibrium constant for hydration)
(c) Acetone or 3,3-dimethyl-2-butanone (equilibrium constant for cyanohydrin formation)
(d) Acetone or 3,3-dimethyl-2-butanone (rate of reduction with sodium borohydride)
(e) $CH_2(OCH_2CH_3)_2$ or $(CH_3)_2C(OCH_2CH_3)_2$ (rate of acid-catalyzed hydrolysis)

17.30 Equilibrium constants for the dissociation (K_{diss}) of cyanohydrins according to the equation

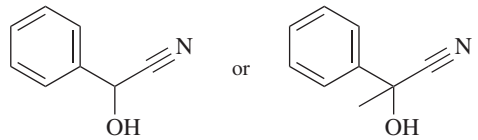
$$\underset{\text{Cyanohydrin}}{RC(OH)(CN)R'} \overset{K_{diss}}{\rightleftharpoons} \underset{\text{Aldehyde or ketone}}{RC(=O)R'} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen cyanide}}{HCN}$$

have been measured for a number of cyanohydrins. Which cyanohydrin in each of the following pairs has the greater dissociation constant?

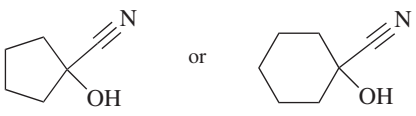
(a)



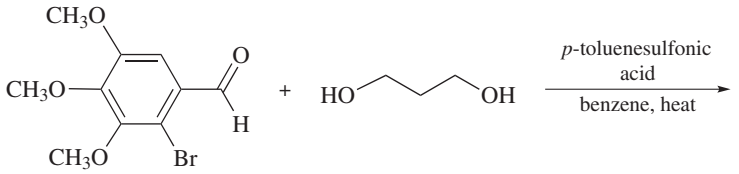
(b)

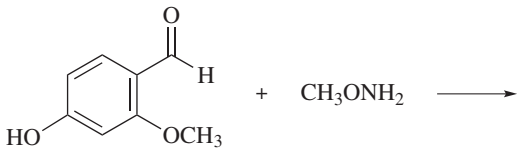


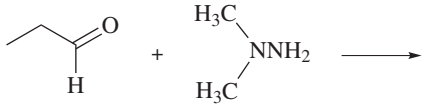
(c)

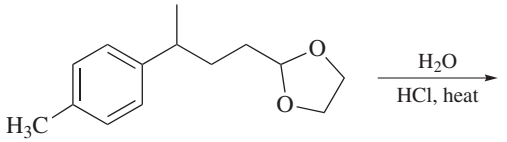


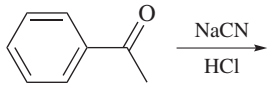
17.31 Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature and gives a single organic product in good yield. What is the principal product in each reaction?

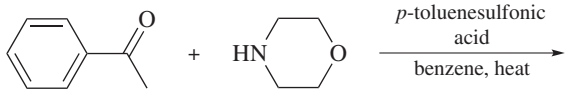
(a) 

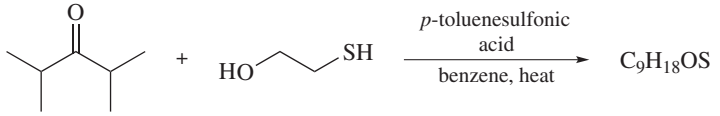
(b) 

(c) 

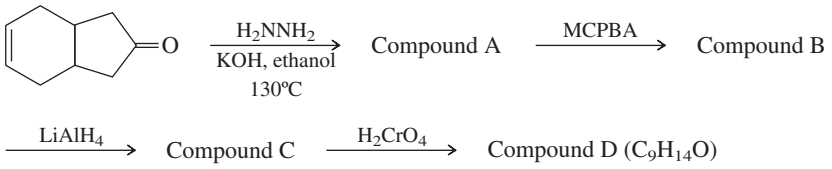
(d) 

(e) 

(f) 

(g) 

17.32 Wolff–Kishner reduction (hydrazine, KOH, ethylene glycol, 130°C) of the compound shown gave compound A. Treatment of compound A with *m*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (MCPBA) gave compound B, which on reduction with lithium aluminum hydride gave compound C. Oxidation of compound C with chromic acid gave compound D ($C_9H_{14}O$). Identify compounds A through D in this sequence.

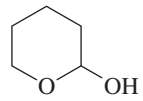


17.33 On standing in ^{17}O-labeled water, both formaldehyde and its hydrate are found to have incorporated the ^{17}O isotope of oxygen. Suggest a reasonable explanation for this observation.

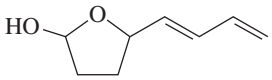
17.34 Reaction of benzaldehyde with 1,2-octanediol in benzene containing a small amount of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid yields almost equal quantities of two products in a combined yield of 94%. Both products have the molecular formula $C_{15}H_{22}O_2$. Suggest reasonable structures for these products.

17.35 Compounds that contain both carbonyl and alcohol functional groups are often more stable as cyclic hemiacetals or cyclic acetals than as open-chain compounds. Examples of several of these are shown. Deduce the structure of the open-chain form of each.

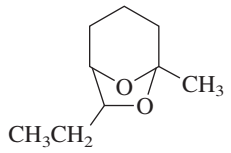
(a)



(b)

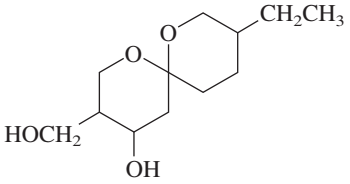


(c)



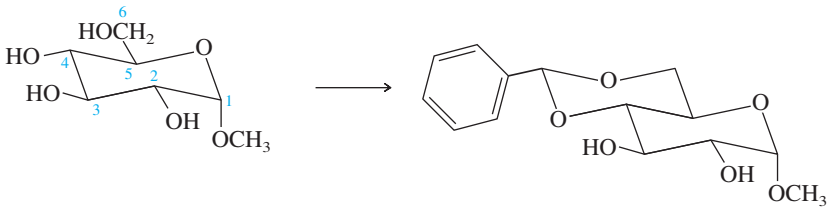
Brevicomin (sex attractant of Western pine beetle)

(d)



Talaromycin A (a toxic substance produced by a fungus that grows on poultry house litter)

17.36 The OH groups at C-4 and C-6 of methyl α-D-glucopyranoside can be protected by conversion to a benzylidene acetal. What reagents are needed for this conversion?



Methyl α–D–glucopyranoside

Methyl 4,6-O-benzylidene-α-D-glucopyranoside

17.37 Compounds that contain a carbon–nitrogen double bond are capable of stereoisomerism much like that seen in alkenes. The structures

are stereoisomeric. Specifying stereochemistry in these systems is best done by using *E*–*Z* descriptors and considering the nitrogen lone pair to be the lowest priority group. Write the structures, clearly showing stereochemistry, of the following:

(a) (*Z*)-$CH_3CH{=}NCH_3$

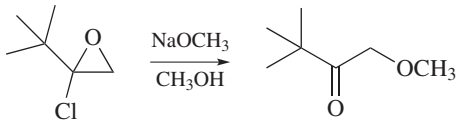
(b) (*E*)-Acetaldehyde oxime

(c) (*Z*)-2-Butanone hydrazone

(d) (*E*)-Acetophenone semicarbazone

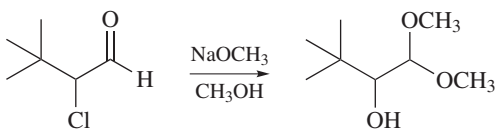
17.38 Suggest a reasonable mechanism for each of the following reactions:

(a)



(88%)

(b)



(72%)

17.39 Describe reasonable syntheses of benzophenone, $C_6H_5CC_6H_5$, from each of the following starting materials and any necessary inorganic reagents.

(a) Benzoyl chloride and benzene

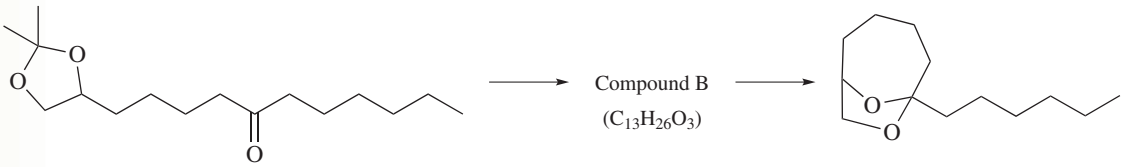
(b) Benzyl alcohol and bromobenzene

(c) Bromodiphenylmethane, $(C_6H_5)_2CHBr$

(d) Dimethoxydiphenylmethane, $(C_6H_5)_2C(OCH_3)_2$

(e) 1,1,2,2-Tetraphenylethene, $(C_6H_5)_2C{=}C(C_6H_5)_2$

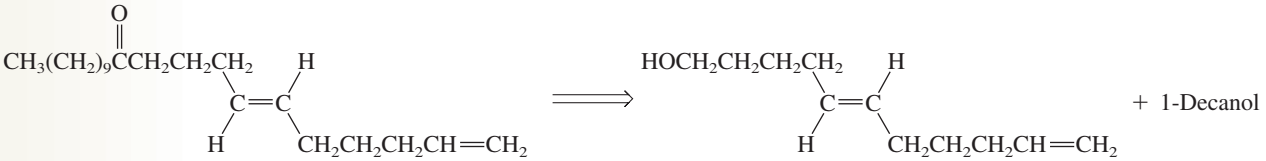
17.40 After heating compound A with a catalytic amount of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid and water in dichloromethane (45C) for 24 hr, compound C was isolated in 79% yield.



Compound A ($C_{16}H_{30}O_3$) Compound C ($C_{13}H_{24}O_2$)

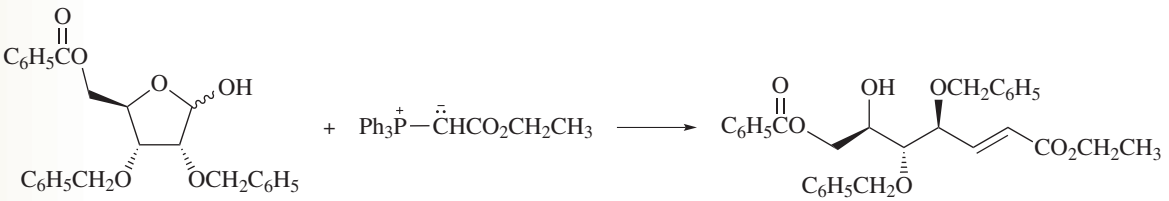
Demonstrate your understanding of the overall reaction by identifying the key intermediate (compound B). What other compound is formed in the reaction?

17.41 Studies of the sex pheromone of the Douglas fir tussock moth required the synthesis of (*E*)-1,6-henicosadien-11-one. Outline a synthesis of this ketone using (*E*)-5,10-undecadien-1-ol and 1-decanol as sources of all of the carbons.



17.42 The sex attractant of the female winter moth has been identified as the tetraene $CH_3(CH_2)_8CH{=}CHCH_2CH{=}CHCH_2CH{=}CHCH{=}CH_2$. Devise a synthesis of this material from 3,6-hexadecadien-1-ol and allyl alcohol.

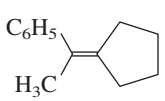
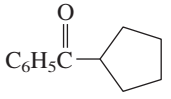
17.43 Leukotrienes are substances produced in the body that may be responsible for inflammatory effects. As part of a synthesis of one of these, compound A reacted with the Wittig reagent shown to give B along with some of its *Z* stereoisomer. Explain the origin of these compounds.

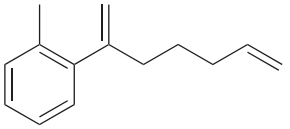


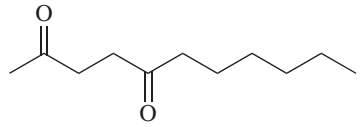
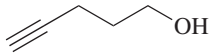
Compound A Compound B

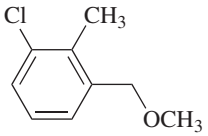
17.44 Syntheses of each of the following compounds have been reported in the chemical literature. Using the indicated starting material and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents, describe short sequences of reactions that would be appropriate for each transformation.

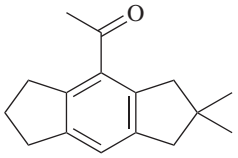
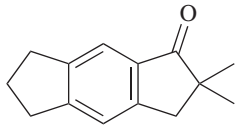
(a) 1,1,5-Trimethylcyclononane from 5,5-dimethylcyclononanone

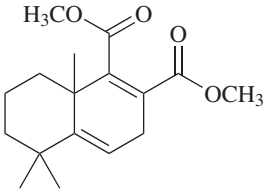
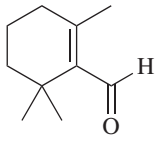
(b)  from 

(c)  from *o*-Bromotoluene and 5-hexenal

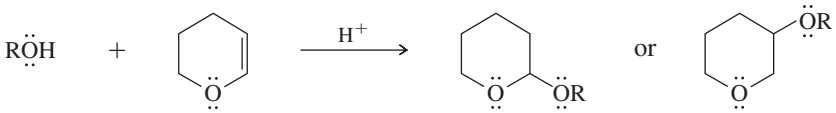
(d)  from 

(e)  from 3-Chloro-2-methylbenzaldehyde

(f)  from 

(g)  from 

17.45 Alcohol functions can be protected as tetrahydropyranyl ethers (THPs) by acid-catalyzed addition to dihydropyran according to the equation:



I II

Addition of the alcohol to dihydropyran is regiospecific in that I is formed to the exclusion of II. Suggest a mechanistic reason for the observed regioselectivity.

17.46 A compound has the molecular formula C_4H_8O and contains a carbonyl group. Identify the compound on the basis of its ^1H NMR spectrum shown in Figure 17.14.

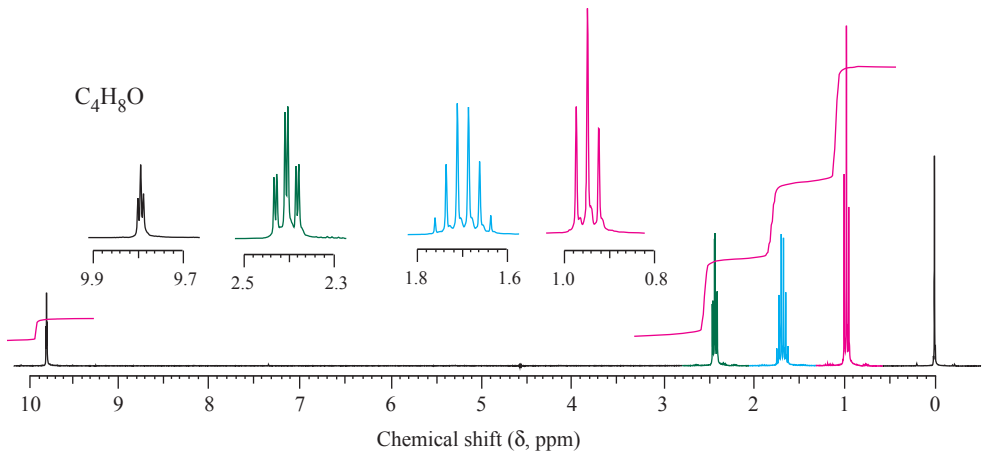


Figure 17.14

The 300-MHz ^1H NMR spectrum of a compound (C_4H_8O) (Problem 17.46).

17.47 A compound ($C_7H_{14}O$) has a strong peak in its IR spectrum at 1710 cm^{-1}. Its ^1H NMR spectrum consists of three singlets in the ratio 9:3:2 at δ 1.0, 2.1, and 2.3, respectively. Identify the compound.

17.48 Compounds A and B are isomeric diketones of molecular formula $C_6H_{10}O_2$. The ^1H NMR spectrum of compound A contains two signals, both singlets, at δ 2.2 (six protons) and 2.8 (four protons). The ^1H NMR spectrum of compound B contains two signals, one at δ 1.3 (triplet, six protons) and the other at δ 2.8 (quartet, four protons). What are the structures of compounds A and B?

17.49 A compound ($C_{11}H_{14}O$) has the (*a*) IR and (*b*) 300-MHz ^1H NMR spectra shown in Figure 17.15. What is the structure of this compound?

17.50 A compound is a ketone of molecular formula $C_7H_{14}O$. Its ^{13}C NMR spectrum is shown in Figure 17.16. What is the structure of the compound?

17.51 Compound A and compound B are isomers having the molecular formula $C_{10}H_{12}O$. The mass spectrum of each compound contains an abundant peak at *m/z* 105. The ^{13}C NMR spectra of compound A (Figure 17.17) and compound B (Figure 17.18) are shown. Identify these two isomers.

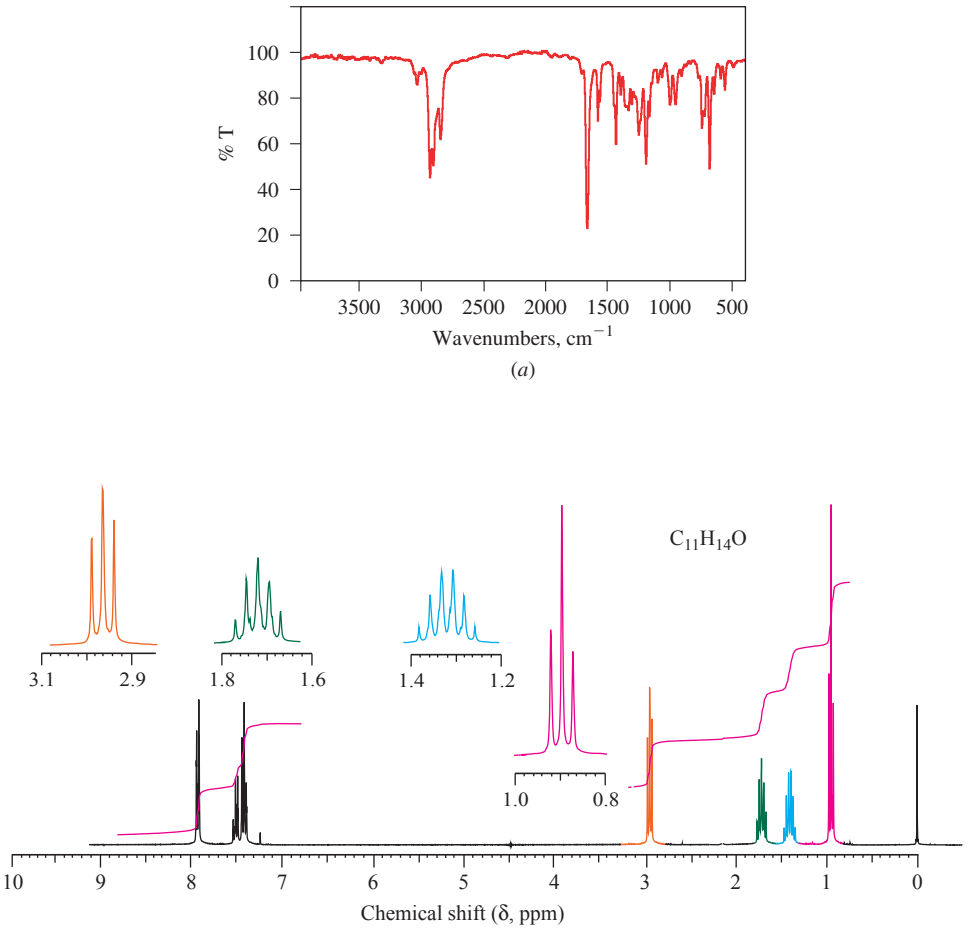


Figure 17.15

The (*a*) IR and (*b*) 300-MHz ^1H NMR spectra of a compound ($C_{11}H_{14}O$) (Problem 17.49).

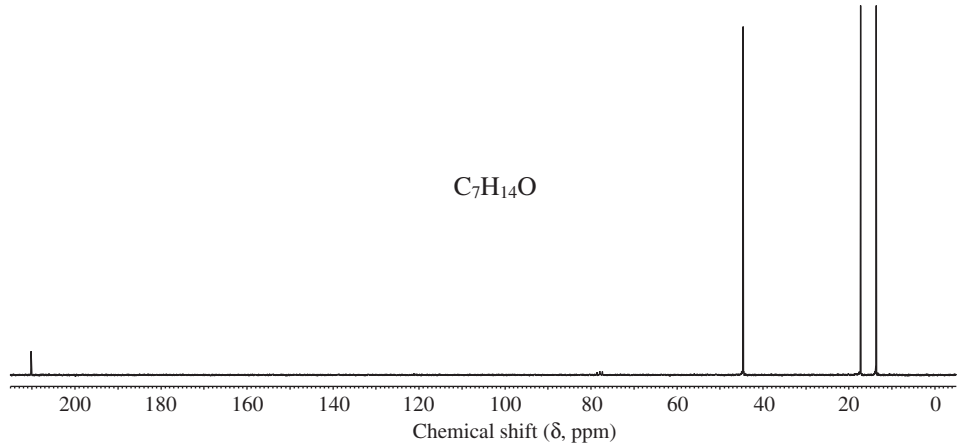


Figure 17.16

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of a compound ($C_7H_{14}O$) (Problem 17.50).

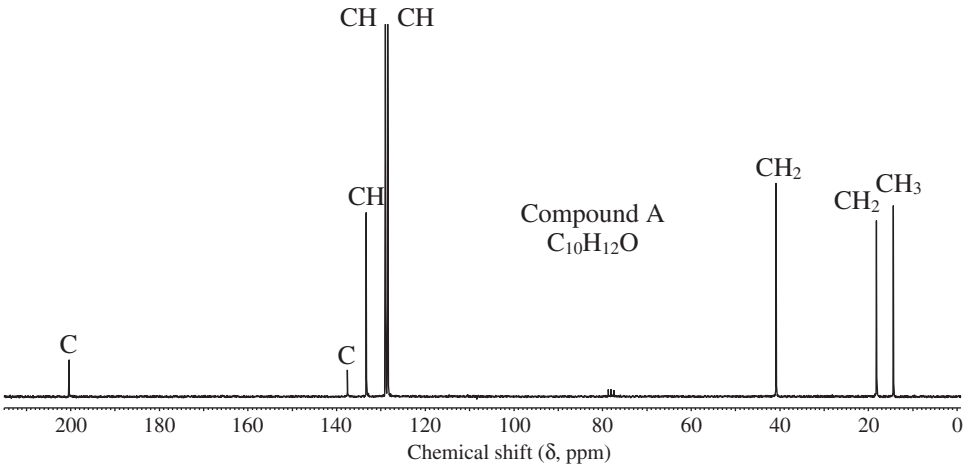


Figure 17.17

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of compound A ($C_{10}H_{12}O$) (Problem 17.51).

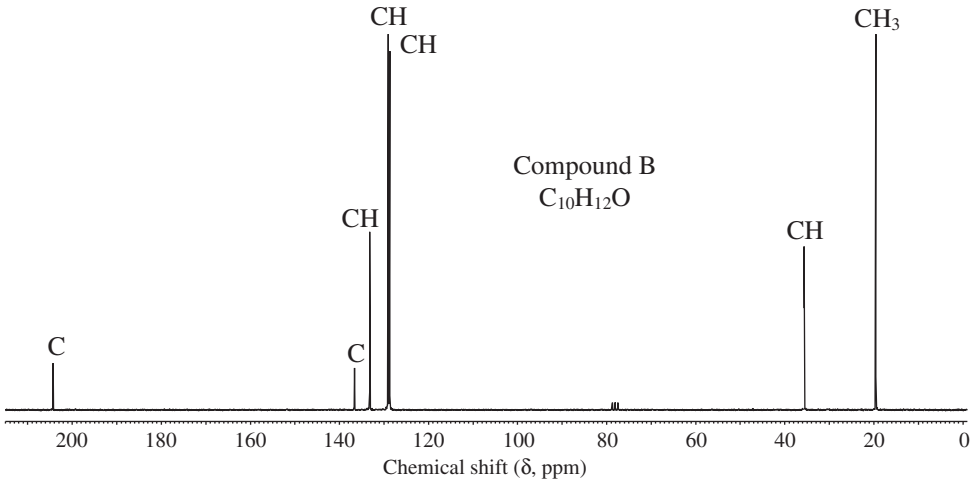


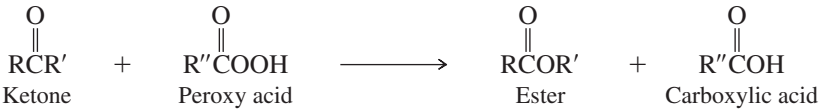
Figure 17.18

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of compound B ($C_{10}H_{12}O$) (Problem 17.51).

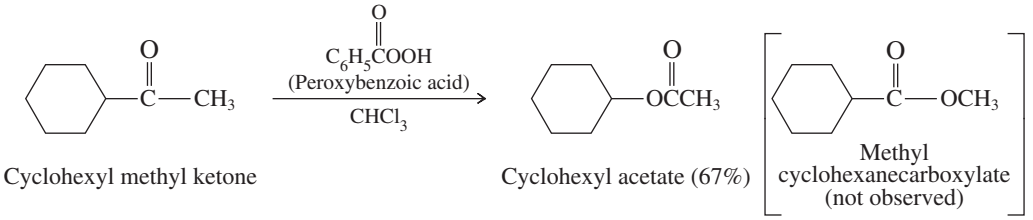
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 17

The Baeyer–Villiger Oxidation

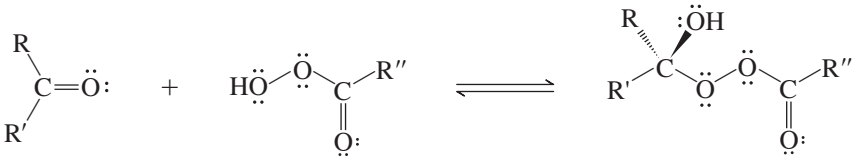
The oxidation of ketones with peroxy acids is both novel and synthetically useful. An oxygen from the peroxy acid is inserted between the ketone carbonyl group and one of its attached carbons to give an ester. First described by Adolf von Baeyer and Victor Villiger in 1899, reactions of this type are known as **Baeyer–Villiger oxidations.**



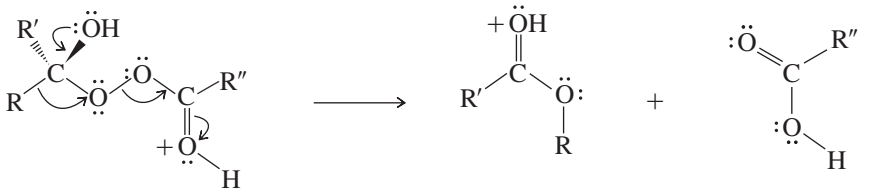
The reaction is regioselective; oxygen insertion occurs between the carbonyl carbon and the larger (R) of the two groups attached to it. Methyl ketones (R = CH_3) give esters of acetic acid;



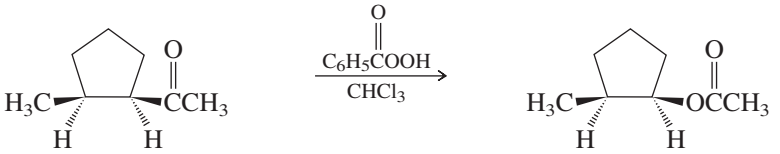
The mechanism of the Baeyer–Villiger reaction begins with nucleophilic addition of the peroxy acid to the carbonyl group.



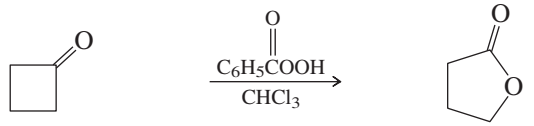
After protonation by an acid catalyst (either the peroxy acid or a carboxylic acid), the conjugate acid of the product of the first step rearranges by an alkyl group migration. Normally, it is the larger of the two groups originally bonded to the carbonyl group that migrates.



The reaction is stereospecific; the alkyl group migrates with retention of configuration, as illustrated for the oxidation of *cis*-1-acetyl-2-methylcyclopentane; only the cis product is obtained.



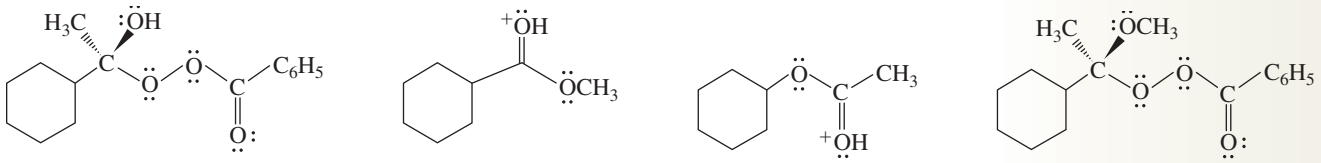
When the ketone is cyclic, a cyclic ester, or *lactone,* is formed. Cyclobutanone is oxidized to a lactone by the Baeyer–Villiger reaction.



Cyclobutanone γ-Butyrolactone (70%)

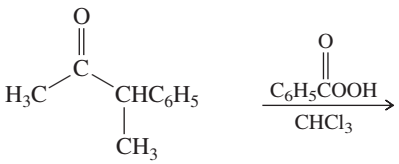
17.52 Which of the following are *not* intermediates in the Baeyer–Villiger oxidation of cyclohexyl methyl ketone with peroxybenzoic acid?

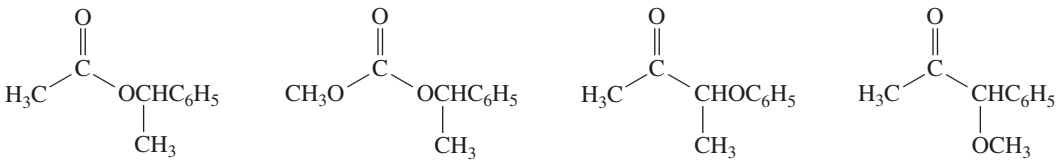
A. I and II
B. III and IV
C. I and III
D. II and IV



I. II. III. IV.

17.53 Which is the product of the following reaction?



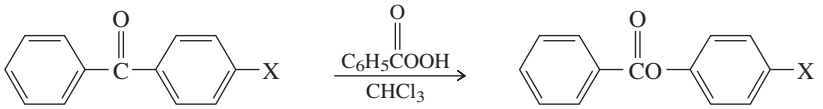


A. B. C. D.

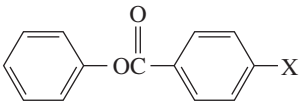
17.54 If the configuration of the chirality center is *R* in the reactant in Problem 17.53, what will the configuration be at this carbon in the product?

A. *R*
B. *S*
C. an equal mixture of *R* and *S*
D. an unequal mixture of *R* and *S*

17.55 The Baeyer–Villiger oxidations of the substituted diphenyl ketones proceeds as indicated because:



Major product if X = OCH_3



Major product if X = NO_2

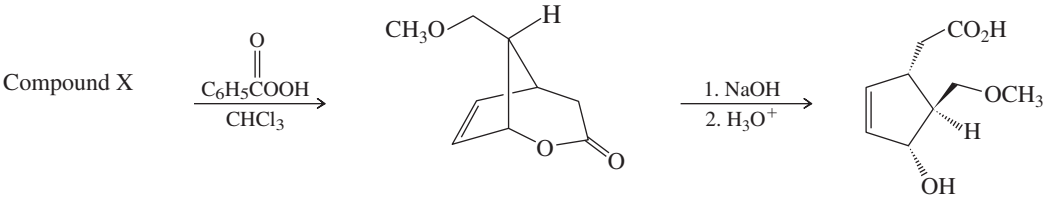
A. The electron-withdrawing nitro group retards the migration of the phenyl ring to which it is attached.

B. The electron-releasing methoxy group accelerates the migration of the phenyl ring to which it is attached.

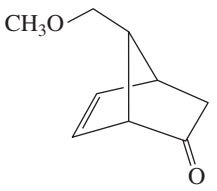
C. Both A and B

D. Neither A nor B. The regioselectivity is due to steric effects in the migrating group.

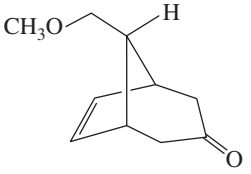
17.56 A key step in the synthesis of an important class of lipids known as the prostaglandins involves the sequence shown here. What is the identity of compound X?



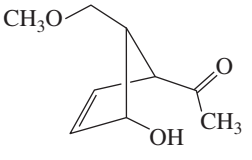
A.



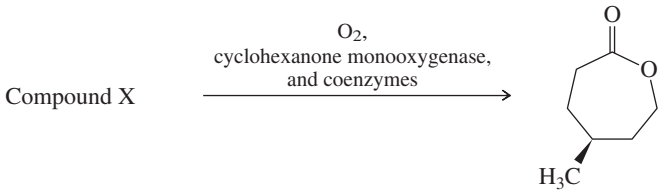
B.



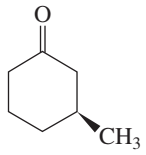
C.

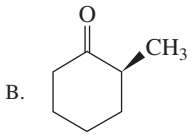


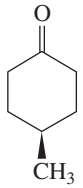
17.57 A reaction analogous to the Baeyer–Villiger reaction occurs in living systems through the action of enzymes in certain bacteria, for example, species of *Pseudomonas* and *Acinetobacter*. A preparation of the *S* enantiomer of compound Y has been described using a bacterial cyclohexanone monooxygenase enzyme system. What is compound X?

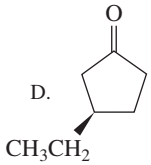


Compound Y

A. 

B. 

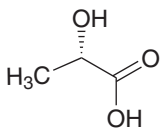
C. 

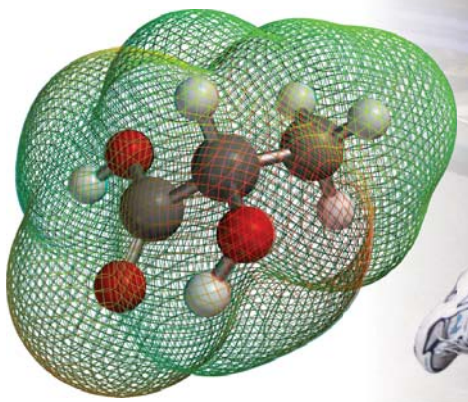
D. 

17.58 If compound Y is prepared by treatment of compound X with peroxybenzoic acid, compound Y would be obtained as:

A. Only the *S* enantiomer
B. Only the *R* enantiomer
C. A racemic mixture
D. An unequal mixture of *R* and *S* enantiomers

18





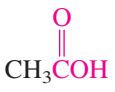
CHAPTER OUTLINE

18.1 Carboxylic Acid Nomenclature 737
18.2 Structure and Bonding 739
18.3 Physical Properties 739
18.4 Acidity of Carboxylic Acids 740
18.5 Substituents and Acid Strength 742
18.6 Ionization of Substituted Benzoic Acids 744
18.7 Salts of Carboxylic Acids 745
18.8 Dicarboxylic Acids 747
18.9 Carbonic Acid 748
18.10 Sources of Carboxylic Acids 749
18.11 Synthesis of Carboxylic Acids by the Carboxylation of Grignard Reagents 751
18.12 Synthesis of Carboxylic Acids by the Preparation and Hydrolysis of Nitriles 752
18.13 Reactions of Carboxylic Acids: A Review and a Preview 753
18.14 Mechanism of Acid-Catalyzed Esterification 754
18.15 Intramolecular Ester Formation: Lactones 757
18.16 Decarboxylation of Malonic Acid and Related Compounds 758
18.17 Spectroscopic Analysis of Carboxylic Acids 760
18.18 **Summary** 761
Problems 763
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 18: Lactonization Methods 768

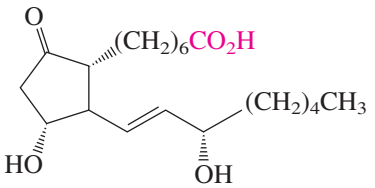
This runner may experience discomfort from the lactic acid that formed in her muscles during her run. The discomfort will be gone in a day or so; the exhilaration lasts much longer.

Carboxylic Acids

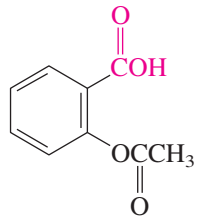
Carboxylic acids, compounds of the type $RC(=O)OH$, constitute one of the most frequently encountered classes of organic compounds. Countless natural products are carboxylic acids or are derived from them. Some carboxylic acids, such as acetic acid, have been known for centuries. Others, such as the prostaglandins, which are powerful regulators of numerous biological processes, remained unknown until relatively recently. Still others, aspirin for example, are the products of chemical synthesis. The therapeutic effects of aspirin, known for well over a century, are now understood to result from aspirin's ability to inhibit the biosynthesis of prostaglandins.



Acetic acid (present in vinegar)



PGE_1 (a prostaglandin; a small amount of PGE_1 lowers blood pressure significantly)



Aspirin

The importance of carboxylic acids is magnified when we realize that they are the parent compounds of a large group of

derivatives that includes acyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, esters, and amides. Those classes of compounds will be discussed in Chapter 19. Together, this chapter and the next tell the story of some of the most fundamental structural types and functional group transformations in organic and biological chemistry.

18.1 Carboxylic Acid Nomenclature

It is hard to find a class of compounds in which the common names of its members have influenced organic nomenclature more than carboxylic acids. Not only are the common names of carboxylic acids themselves abundant and widely used, but the names of many other compounds are derived from them. Benzene took its name from *benzoic* acid and propane from *propionic* acid, not the other way around. The name butane comes from *butyric* acid, present in rancid butter. The common names of most aldehydes are derived from the common names of carboxylic acids—valeraldehyde from *valeric* acid, for example. Many carboxylic acids are better known by common names than by their systematic ones, and the framers of the IUPAC rules have taken a liberal view toward accepting these common names as permissible alternatives to the systematic ones. Table 18.1 lists both common and systematic names for a number of important carboxylic acids.

Systematic names for carboxylic acids are derived by counting the number of carbons in the longest continuous chain that includes the carboxyl group and replacing the *-e* ending of the corresponding alkane by *-oic acid.* The first four acids in Table 18.1, methanoic (1 carbon), ethanoic (2 carbons), pentanoic (5 carbons) and octadecanoic acid (18 carbons), illustrate this point. When substituents are present, their locations are identified by number; numbering of the carbon chain always begins at the carboxyl group.

Notice that compounds 5 and 6 are named as hydroxy derivatives of carboxylic acids, rather than as carboxyl derivatives of alcohols. This parallels what we saw earlier in Section 17.1 where an aldehyde or ketone function took precedence over a hydroxyl group in defining the main chain. Carboxylic acids take precedence over all the common groups we have encountered to this point in respect to defining the main chain.

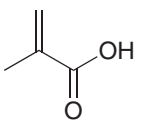
Double bonds in the main chain are signaled by the ending *-enoic acid,* and their position is designated by a numerical prefix as shown in entries 7 and 8.

When a carboxyl group is attached to a ring, the parent ring is named (retaining the final *-e*) and the suffix *-carboxylic acid* is added, as shown in entries 9 and 10.

Compounds with two carboxyl groups, as illustrated by entries 11 through 13, are distinguished by the suffix *-dioic acid* or *-dicarboxylic acid* as appropriate. The final *-e* in the name of the parent alkane is retained.

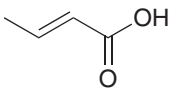
Problem 18.1

The list of carboxylic acids in Table 18.1 is by no means exhaustive insofar as common names are concerned. Many others are known by their common names, a few of which follow. Give a systematic IUPAC name for each.



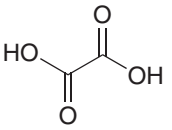
Methacrylic acid

(a)



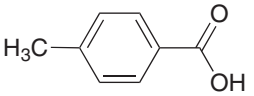
Crotonic acid

(b)



Oxalic acid

(c)

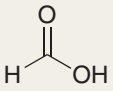
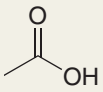
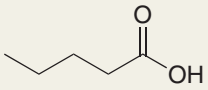
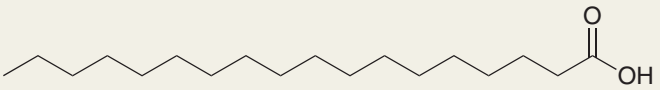
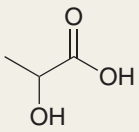
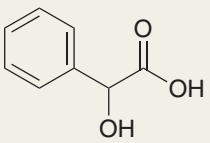
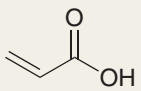
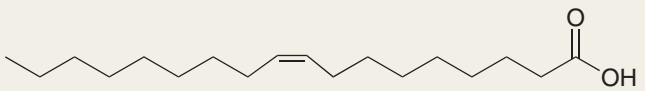
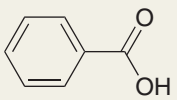
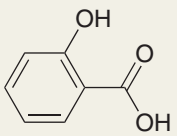
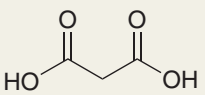
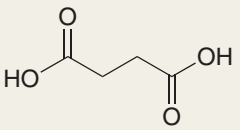
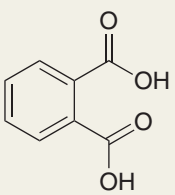


p-Toluic acid

(d)

Sample Solution (a) Methacrylic acid is an industrial chemical used in the preparation of transparent plastics such as *Lucite* and *Plexiglas.* The carbon chain that includes both the carboxylic acid and the double bond is three carbon atoms in length. The compound is named as a derivative of *propenoic acid.* Both 2-methylpropenoic acid and 2-methylprop-2-enoic acid are acceptable IUPAC names.

TABLE 18.1 Systematic and Common Names of Some Carboxylic Acids

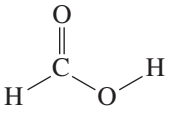
	Structural formula	Systematic name	Common name*
1.		Methanoic acid	Formic acid
2.		Ethanoic acid	Acetic acid
3.		Pentanoic acid	Valeric acid
4.		Octadecanoic acid	Stearic acid
5.		2-Hydroxypropanoic acid	Lactic acid
6.		2-Hydroxy-2-phenylethanoic acid	Mandelic acid
7.		Propenoic acid	Acrylic acid
8.		(*Z*)-9-Octadecenoic acid	Oleic acid
9.		Benzenecarboxylic acid	Benzoic acid
10.		*o*-Hydroxybenzenecarboxylic acid	Salicylic acid
11.		Propanedioic acid	Malonic acid
12.		Butanedioic acid	Succinic acid
13.		1,2-Benzenedicarboxylic acid	Phthalic acid

*Except for valeric, mandelic, and salicylic acid, all of the common names in this table are acceptable IUPAC names.

18.2 Structure and Bonding

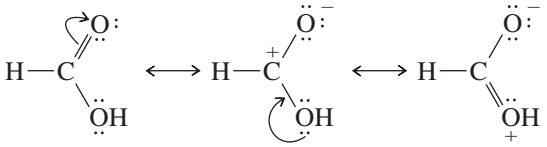
The structural features of the carboxyl group are most apparent in formic acid, which is planar, with one of its carbon–oxygen bonds shorter than the other, and with bond angles at carbon close to 120°.

Bond Distances		*Bond Angles*	
C═O	120 pm	H—C═O	124°
C—O	134 pm	H—C—O	111°
		O—C═O	125°



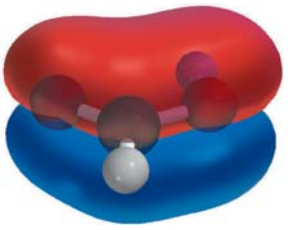
This suggests sp^2 hybridization at carbon, and a σ + π carbon–oxygen double bond analogous to that of aldehydes and ketones.

Additionally, sp^2 hybridization of the hydroxyl oxygen allows one of its unshared electron pairs to be delocalized by orbital overlap with the π system of the carbonyl group (Figure 18.1*a*). In resonance terms, this electron delocalization is represented as:

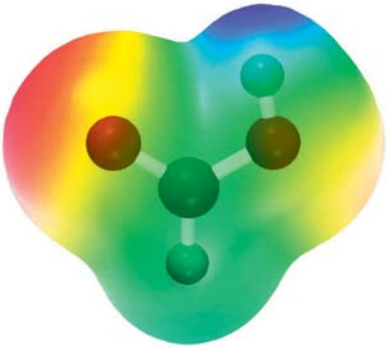


Lone-pair donation from the hydroxyl oxygen makes the carbonyl group less electrophilic than that of an aldehyde or ketone. The electrostatic potential map of formic acid (Figure 18.1*b*) shows the most electron-rich site to be the oxygen of the carbonyl group and the most electron-poor one to be, as expected, the OH hydrogen.

Carboxylic acids are fairly polar, and simple ones such as acetic acid, propanoic acid, and benzoic acid have dipole moments in the range 1.7–1.9 D.



(*a*)



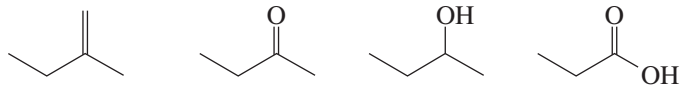
(*b*)

Figure 18.1

(*a*) The *p* orbital of the hydroxyl oxygen of formic acid overlaps with the π component of the double bond of the C═O group to form an extended π system that includes carbon and both oxygens. (*b*) The region of greatest negative charge (red) in formic acid is associated with the oxygen of C═O, and that of positive charge (blue) with the hydrogen of OH.

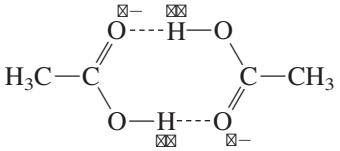
18.3 Physical Properties

The melting points and boiling points of carboxylic acids are higher than those of hydrocarbons and oxygen-containing organic compounds of comparable size and shape and indicate strong intermolecular attractive forces.



	2-Methyl-1-butene	2-Butanone	2-Butanol	Propanoic acid
bp (1 atm):	31°C	80°C	99°C	141°C

A unique hydrogen-bonding arrangement, shown in Figure 18.2, contributes to these attractive forces. The hydroxyl group of one carboxylic acid molecule acts as a proton



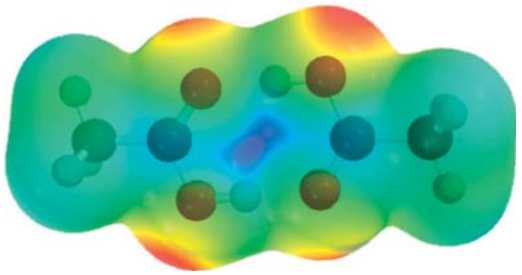


Figure 18.2

Hydrogen bonding between two acetic acid molecules.

donor toward the carbonyl oxygen of a second. In a reciprocal fashion, the hydroxyl proton of the second carboxyl function interacts with the carbonyl oxygen of the first. The result is that the two carboxylic acid molecules are held together by *two* hydrogen bonds. So efficient is this hydrogen bonding that some carboxylic acids exist as hydrogen-bonded dimers even in the gas phase. In the pure liquid a mixture of hydrogen-bonded dimers and higher aggregates is present.

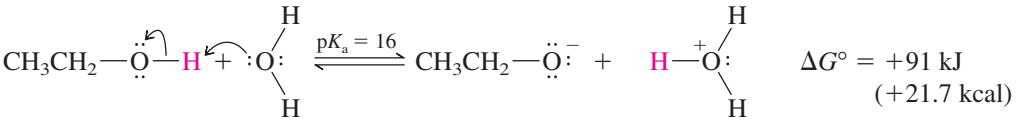
In aqueous solution intermolecular association between carboxylic acid molecules is replaced by hydrogen bonding to water. The solubility properties of carboxylic acids are similar to those of alcohols. Carboxylic acids of four carbon atoms or fewer are miscible with water in all proportions.

18.4 Acidity of Carboxylic Acids

Carboxylic acids are the most acidic class of compounds that contain only carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. With pK_a's of about 5, they are much stronger acids than water and alcohols. The case should not be overstated, however. Carboxylic acids are weak acids; a 0.1 M solution of acetic acid in water, for example, is only 1.3% ionized.

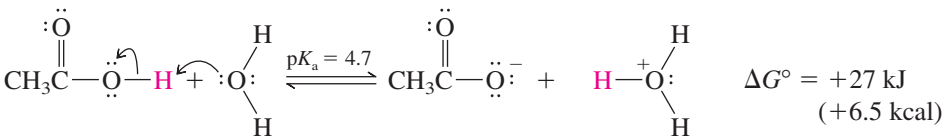
To understand the greater acidity of carboxylic acids compared with water and alcohols, compare the structural changes that accompany the ionization of a representative alcohol (ethanol) and a representative carboxylic acid (acetic acid).

Ionization of ethanol



Ethanol Water Ethoxide ion Hydronium ion

Ionization of acetic acid

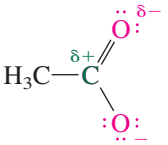


Acetic acid Water Acetate ion Hydronium ion

The large difference in the free energies of ionization of ethanol and acetic acid reflects a greater stabilization of acetate ion relative to ethoxide. Ionization of ethanol yields an alkoxide ion in which the negative charge is localized on oxygen. Solvation forces are the chief means by which ethoxide ion is stabilized. Acetate ion is also stabilized by solvation, but has two additional mechanisms for dispersing its negative charge that are not available to ethoxide:

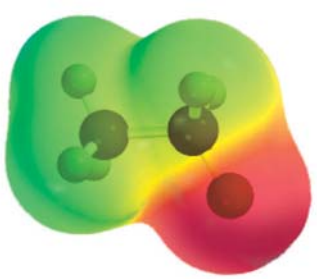
1. *The inductive effect of the carbonyl group.* The carbonyl group of acetate ion is electron-withdrawing, and by attracting electrons away from the negatively charged oxygen, acetate anion is stabilized. This is an inductive effect, arising in the polarization of the electron distribution in the σ bond between the carbonyl carbon and the negatively charged oxygen.

Positively polarized carbon attracts electrons from negatively charged oxygen.



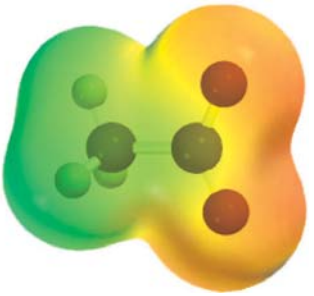
CH_2 group has negligible effect on electron density at negatively charged oxygen.

2. *The resonance effect of the carbonyl group.* Electron delocalization, expressed by resonance between the following Lewis structures, causes the negative charge in



$CH_3CH_2—\ddot{O}:^-$

(*a*) Ethoxide



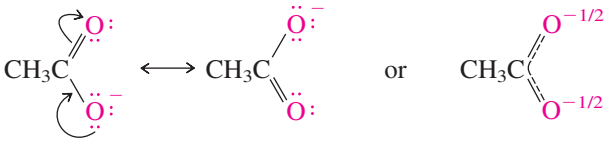
$CH_3C(=\ddot{O}:)(:\ddot{O}:^-) \longleftrightarrow CH_3C(:\ddot{O}:^-)(=\ddot{O}:)$

(*b*) Acetate

Figure 18.3

The negative charge in ethoxide (*a*) is localized on oxygen. Electron delocalization in acetate (*b*) causes the charge to be shared between two oxygens. The color scale is the same in both electrostatic potential maps.

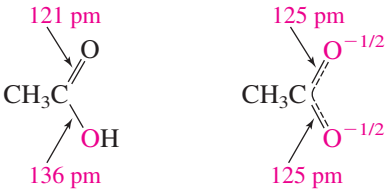
acetate to be shared equally by both oxygens. Electron delocalization of this type is not available to ethoxide.



$CH_3C(=\ddot{O}:)(:\ddot{O}:^-) \longleftrightarrow CH_3C(:\ddot{O}:^-)(=\ddot{O}:)$ or $CH_3C(O^{-1/2})(O^{-1/2})$

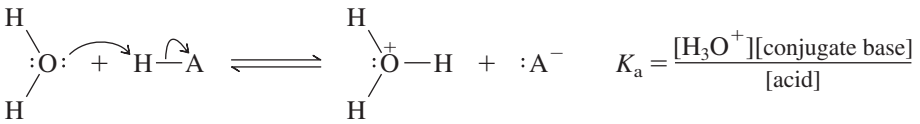
The electrostatic potential maps in Figure 18.3 contrast the localized negative charge in ethoxide ion with the delocalized charge in acetate.

Measured C—O bond distances also reflect the importance of electron delocalization in acetate ion. Acetic acid's bond distances are consistent with a short double bond (121 pm) and a long single bond (136 pm), whereas the two carbon–oxygen bond distances in acetate are the same (125 pm).



121 pm, 136 pm: $CH_3C(=O)(OH)$ 125 pm, 125 pm: $CH_3C(O^{-1/2})(O^{-1/2})$

Because the electrical properties of a neutral carboxylic acid molecule and a negatively charged carboxylate ion are so different, we need to be aware of which is the major form at the most commonly encountered pH values. For the ionization of a weak acid (HA) in water:



$H_2O: + H—A \rightleftharpoons H_2O^+—H + :A^-$ $\qquad K_a = \dfrac{[H_3O^+][\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]}$

Acid — Conjugate base

and

$$\text{pH} = \text{p}K_a + \log \frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]}$$

This relationship is known as the **Henderson–Hasselbalch equation.**

Beyond its usual application in calculating the pH of buffer solutions, the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation can be rearranged to tell us the ratio of concentrations of an acid and its conjugate base at a particular pH.

$$\log \frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]} = \text{pH} - \text{p}K_a$$

$$\frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]} = 10^{(\text{pH} - \text{p}K_a)}$$

For a typical carboxylic acid with $\text{p}K_a = 5$, the ratio of the carboxylate ion to the carboxylic acid at pH = 7 is:

$$\frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]} = 10^{(7-5)} = 10^2 = 100$$

Thus, in a solution buffered at a pH of 7, the carboxylate concentration is 100 times greater than the concentration of the undissociated acid.

Notice that this ratio is for a solution at a specified pH, which is not the same as the pH that would result from dissolving a weak acid in pure (unbuffered) water. In the latter instance, ionization of the weak acid proceeds until equilibrium is established at some pH less than 7.

In most biochemical reactions the pH of the medium is close to 7. At this pH, carboxylic acids are nearly completely converted to their conjugate bases. Thus, it is common practice in biological chemistry to specify the derived carboxylate anion rather than the carboxylic acid itself. For example, we say that glycolysis leads to *lactate* by way of *pyruvate*.

Problem 18.2

(a) Lactic acid has a $\text{p}K_a$ of 3.9. What is the [lactate]/[lactic acid] ratio at the pH of blood (7.4)?

(b) A 0.1 *M* solution of lactic acid in water has a pH of 2.5. What is the [lactate]/[lactic acid] ratio in this solution?

Sample Solution (a) Use the Henderson–Hasselbalch relationship to calculate the ratio of the concentration of the conjugate base (lactate) to the acid (lactic acid).

$$\frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]} = 10^{(\text{pH}-\text{p}K_a)}$$

$$\frac{[\text{lactate}]}{[\text{lactic acid}]} = 10^{(7.4-3.9)} = 10^{3.5} = 3160$$

18.5 Substituents and Acid Strength

The effect of structure on acidity was introduced in Section 1.14 where we saw that electronegative substituents near an ionizable hydrogen increase its acidity. Substituent effects on the acidity of carboxylic acids have been extensively studied.

Alkyl groups have little effect. The ionization constants of all acids that have the general formula $C_nH_{2n+1}CO_2H$ are very similar to one another and equal approximately 10^{-5} ($\text{p}K_a = 5$). Table 18.2 gives a few examples.

An electronegative substituent, particularly if it is attached to the α carbon, increases the acidity of a carboxylic acid. All the monohaloacetic acids in Table 18.2 are about 100 times more acidic than acetic acid. Multiple halogen substitution increases the acidity even more; trichloroacetic acid is 7000 times more acidic than acetic acid!

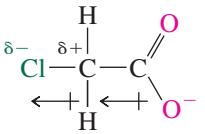
The acid-strengthening effect of electronegative atoms or groups is easily seen as an inductive effect transmitted through the σ bonds of the molecule. According to this model, the σ electrons in the carbon–chlorine bond of chloroacetate ion are drawn toward chlorine, leaving carbon with a slight positive charge. Because of its positive character, this carbon attracts electrons from the negatively charged carboxylate, dispersing charge and

TABLE 18.2 Effect of Substituents on Acidity of Carboxylic Acids*

Name of acid	Structure	pK_a
Standard of comparison.		
Acetic acid	CH_3CO_2H	4.7
Alkyl substituents have a negligible effect on acidity.		
Propanoic acid	$CH_3CH_2CO_2H$	4.9
2-Methylpropanoic acid	$(CH_3)_2CHCO_2H$	4.8
2,2-Dimethylpropanoic acid	$(CH_3)_3CCO_2H$	5.1
Heptanoic acid	$CH_3(CH_2)_5CO_2H$	4.9
α-Halogen substituents increase acidity.		
Fluoroacetic acid	FCH_2CO_2H	2.6
Chloroacetic acid	$ClCH_2CO_2H$	2.9
Bromoacetic acid	$BrCH_2CO_2H$	2.9
Dichloroacetic acid	Cl_2CHCO_2H	1.3
Trichloroacetic acid	Cl_3CCO_2H	0.9
Electron-attracting groups increase acidity.		
Methoxyacetic acid	$CH_3OCH_2CO_2H$	3.6
Cyanoacetic acid	$N{\equiv}CCH_2CO_2H$	2.5
Nitroacetic acid	$O_2NCH_2CO_2H$	1.7

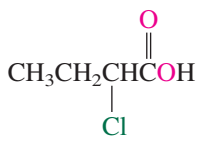
*In water at 25°C.

stabilizing the anion. The more stable the anion, the greater the equilibrium constant for its formation.



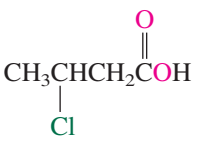
Chloroacetate anion is stabilized by electron-withdrawing effect of chlorine.

Inductive effects depend on the electronegativity of the substituent and the number of σ bonds between it and the affected site. As the number of bonds increases, the inductive effect decreases.



2-Chlorobutanoic acid

pK_a 2.8



3-Chlorobutanoic acid

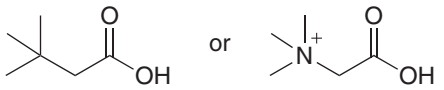
4.1

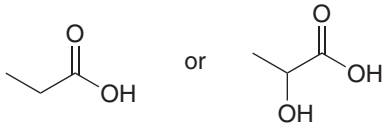
4-Chlorobutanoic acid

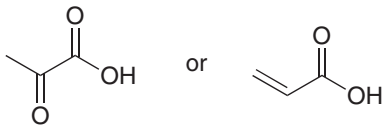
4.5

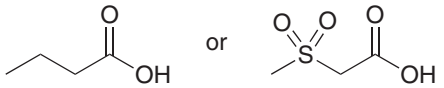
Problem 18.3

Which is the stronger acid in each of the following pairs?

(a)  or

(b) 

(c) 

(d) 

Sample Solution (a) Think of the two compounds as substituted derivatives of acetic acid. A *tert*-butyl group is slightly electron-releasing and has only a modest effect on acidity. The compound $(CH_3)_3CCH_2CO_2H$ is expected to have an acid strength similar to that of acetic acid. A trimethylammonium substituent, on the other hand, is positively charged and is a powerful electron-withdrawing substituent. The compound $(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2H$ is expected to be a much stronger acid than $(CH_3)_3CCH_2CO_2H$. The measured ionization constants, shown as follows, confirm this prediction.

$(CH_3)_3CCH_2CO_2H$	$(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2H$
Weaker acid	Stronger acid
$pK_a = 5.3$	$pK_a = 1.8$

Closely related to the inductive effect, and operating in the same direction, is the **field effect.** In the field effect the electronegativity of a substituent is communicated, not by successive polarization of bonds but through the medium, usually the solvent. A substituent in a molecule polarizes surrounding solvent molecules and this polarization is transmitted through other solvent molecules to the remote site.

It is a curious fact that substituents affect the entropy of ionization more than they do the enthalpy term in the expression

$$\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ$$

The enthalpy term ΔH° is close to zero for the ionization of most carboxylic acids, regardless of their strength. The free energy of ionization ΔG° is dominated by the $-T\Delta S^\circ$ term. Ionization is accompanied by an increase in solvation forces, leading to a decrease in the entropy of the system; ΔS° is negative, and $-T\Delta S^\circ$ is positive. Carboxylate ions with substituents capable of dispersing negative charge impose less order on the solvent (water), and less entropy is lost in their production.

18.6 Ionization of Substituted Benzoic Acids

A considerable body of data is available on the acidity of substituted benzoic acids. Benzoic acid itself is a slightly stronger acid than acetic acid. Its carboxyl group is attached to an sp^2-hybridized carbon and ionizes to a greater extent than one that is attached to an sp^3-hybridized carbon. Remember, carbon becomes more electron-withdrawing as its *s* character increases.

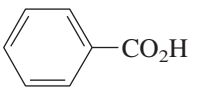
CH_3CO_2H	$H_2C{=}CHCO_2H$	
Acetic acid	Acrylic acid	Benzoic acid
$pK_a = 4.7$	$pK_a = 4.3$	$pK_a = 4.2$

TABLE 18.3 Acidity of Some Substituted Benzoic Acids*

Substituent in $XC_6H_4CO_2H$	pK_a for different positions of substituent X		
	Ortho	Meta	Para
H	4.2	4.2	4.2
CH_3	3.9	4.3	4.4
F	3.3	3.9	4.1
Cl	2.9	3.8	4.0
Br	2.8	3.8	4.0
I	2.9	3.9	4.0
CH_3O	4.1	4.1	4.5
O_2N	2.2	3.5	3.4

*In water at 25°C.

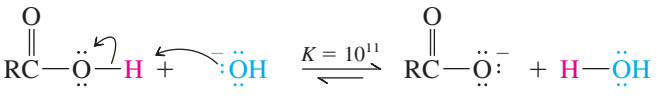
Problem 18.4

What is the most acidic neutral molecule characterized by the formula $C_3H_xO_2$?

Table 18.3 lists the ionization constants of some substituted benzoic acids. The largest effects are observed when strongly electron-withdrawing substituents are ortho to the carboxyl group. An *o*-nitro substituent, for example, increases the acidity of benzoic acid 100-fold. Substituent effects are small at positions meta and para to the carboxyl group. In those cases the pK_a values are clustered in the range 3.5–4.5.

18.7 Salts of Carboxylic Acids

In the presence of strong bases such as sodium hydroxide, carboxylic acids are neutralized rapidly and quantitatively:



Carboxylic acid (stronger acid) + Hydroxide ion (stronger base) ⇌ Carboxylate ion (weaker base) + Water (weaker acid)

Problem 18.5

Write an ionic equation for the reaction of acetic acid with each of the following, and specify whether the equilibrium favors starting materials or products. What is the value of *K* for each?

(a) Sodium ethoxide
(b) Potassium *tert*-butoxide
(c) Sodium bromide
(d) Sodium acetylide
(e) Potassium nitrate
(f) Lithium amide

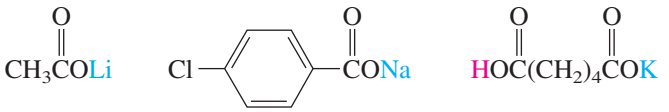
Sample Solution (a) This is an acid–base reaction; ethoxide ion is the base.

$$CH_3CO_2H + CH_3CH_2O^- \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2^- + CH_3CH_2OH$$

Acetic acid (stronger acid) + Ethoxide ion (stronger base) ⇌ Acetate ion (weaker base) + Ethanol (weaker acid)

The position of equilibrium lies well to the right. Ethanol, with $pK_a = 16$, is a much weaker acid than acetic acid ($pK_a = 4.7$). The equilibrium constant *K* is $10^{(16-4.7)}$ or $10^{11.3}$.

The salts formed on neutralization of carboxylic acids are named by first specifying the metal ion and then adding the name of the acid modified by replacing *-ic acid* by *-ate*. Monocarboxylate salts of diacids are designated by naming both the cation and the hydrogen of the CO_2H group.



Lithium acetate | Sodium *p*-chlorobenzoate | Potassium hydrogen hexanedioate

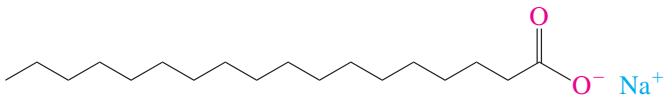
Metal carboxylates are ionic, and when the molecular weight isn't too high, the sodium and potassium salts of carboxylic acids are soluble in water. Carboxylic acids therefore may be extracted from ether solutions into aqueous sodium or potassium hydroxide.

The solubility behavior of salts of carboxylic acids having 12–18 carbons is unusual and can be illustrated by considering sodium stearate (sodium octadecanoate). Stearate ion contains two very different structural units—a long nonpolar hydrocarbon chain and a polar carboxylate group. The electrostatic potential map of sodium stearate in Figure 18.4 illustrates how different most of the molecule is from its polar carboxylate end.

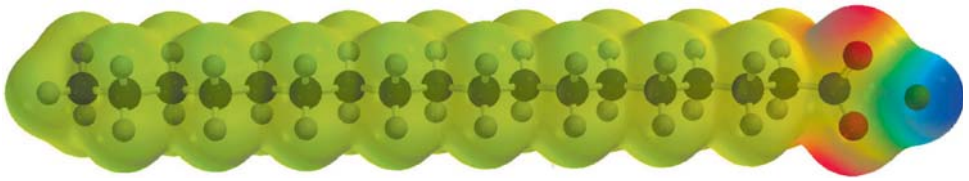
"Hydrophobic" is often used instead of "lipophilic."

Carboxylate groups are **hydrophilic** ("water-loving") and tend to confer water solubility on species that contain them. Long hydrocarbon chains are **lipophilic** ("fat-loving") and tend to associate with other hydrocarbon chains. Sodium stearate is an example of an **amphiphilic** substance; both hydrophilic and lipophilic groups occur within the same molecule.

When sodium stearate is placed in water, the hydrophilic carboxylate group encourages the formation of a solution; the lipophilic alkyl chain discourages it. The compromise achieved is to form a colloidal dispersion of aggregates called **micelles** (Figure 18.5). Micelles form spontaneously when the carboxylate concentration exceeds a certain minimum value called the **critical micelle concentration.** Each micelle is composed of



lipophilic (hydrophobic) hydrophilic



Sodium stearate [$CH_3(CH_2)_{16}CO_2Na$]

Figure 18.4

Structure and electrostatic potential map of sodium stearate.

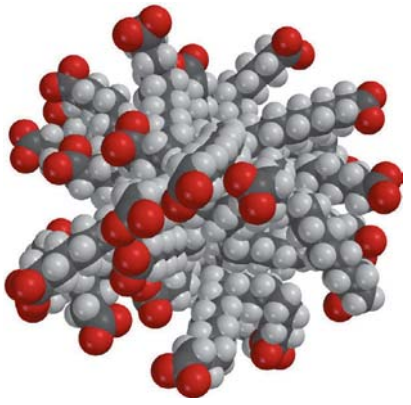


Figure 18.5

Space-filling model of a micelle formed by association of carboxylate ions derived from a long-chain carboxylic acid. The hydrocarbon chains tend to be on the inside and the carboxylate ions on the surface where they are in contact with water molecules and metal cations.

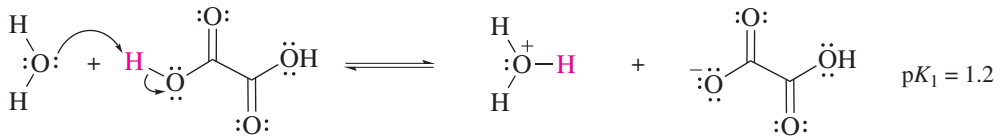
50–100 individual molecules, with the polar carboxylate groups directed toward its outside where they experience attractive forces with water and sodium ions. The nonpolar hydrocarbon chains are directed toward the interior of the micelle, where individually weak but cumulatively significant induced-dipole/induced-dipole forces bind them together. Micelles are approximately spherical because a sphere exposes the minimum surface for a given volume of material and disrupts the water structure least. Because their surfaces are negatively charged, two micelles repel each other rather than clustering to form higher aggregates.

The formation of micelles and their properties are responsible for the cleansing action of soaps. Water that contains sodium stearate removes grease by enclosing it in the hydrocarbon-like interior of the micelles. The grease is washed away with the water, not because it dissolves in the water but because it dissolves in the micelles that are dispersed in the water. Sodium stearate is an example of a soap; sodium and potassium salts of other C_{12}–C_{18} unbranched carboxylic acids possess similar properties.

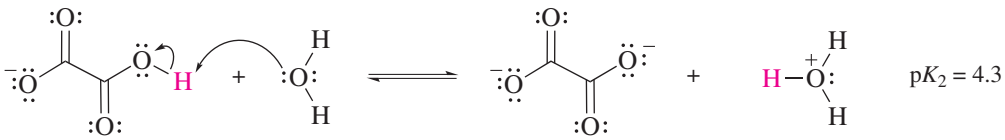
Detergents are substances, including soaps, that cleanse by micellar action. A large number of synthetic detergents are known. An example is sodium lauryl sulfate [$CH_3(CH_2)_{10}CH_2OSO_3Na$], which has a long hydrocarbon chain terminating in a polar sulfate ion and forms soap-like micelles in water. Detergents are designed to be effective in hard water, meaning water containing calcium salts that form insoluble calcium carboxylates with soaps. These precipitates rob the soap of its cleansing power and form an unpleasant scum. The calcium salts of synthetic detergents such as sodium lauryl sulfate, however, are soluble and retain their micelle-forming ability even in hard water.

18.8 Dicarboxylic Acids

Separate ionization constants, designated K_1 and K_2, respectively, characterize the two successive ionization steps of a dicarboxylic acid.



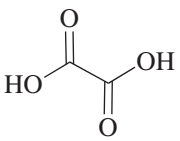
Water Oxalic acid Hydronium ion Hydrogen oxalate ion $pK_1 = 1.2$



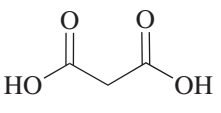
Hydrogen oxalate ion Water Oxalate ion Hydronium ion $pK_2 = 4.3$

Oxalic acid is poisonous and occurs naturally in a number of plants including sorrel and begonia. It is a good idea to keep houseplants out of the reach of small children, who might be tempted to eat the leaves or berries.

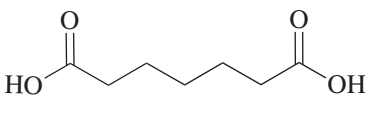
The first ionization constant of dicarboxylic acids is larger than K_a for monocarboxylic analogs. One reason is statistical. There are two potential sites for ionization rather than one, making the effective concentration of carboxyl groups twice as large. Furthermore, one carboxyl group acts as an electron-withdrawing group to facilitate dissociation of the other. This is particularly noticeable when the two carboxyl groups are separated by only a few bonds. Oxalic and malonic acid, for example, are two to three orders of magnitude stronger than simple alkyl derivatives of acetic acid. Heptanedioic acid, in which the carboxyl groups are well separated from each other, is only slightly stronger than acetic acid.



Oxalic acid
$pK_1 = 1.2$



Malonic acid
$pK_1 = 2.8$



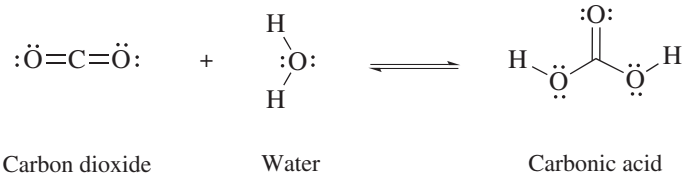
Heptanedioic acid
$pK_1 = 4.3$

18.9 Carbonic Acid

Through an accident of history, the simplest dicarboxylic acid, carbonic acid, HOCOH, is not even classified as an organic compound. Because many minerals are carbonate salts, nineteenth-century chemists placed carbonates, bicarbonates, and carbon dioxide in the inorganic realm. Nevertheless, the essential features of carbonic acid and its salts are easily understood on the basis of our knowledge of carboxylic acids.

The systematic name for bicarbonate ion is *hydrogen carbonate*. Thus, the systematic name for sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) is *sodium hydrogen carbonate*.

Carbonic acid is formed when carbon dioxide reacts with water. Hydration of carbon dioxide is far from complete, however. Almost all the carbon dioxide that is dissolved in water exists as carbon dioxide; only 0.3% of it is converted to carbonic acid. Carbonic acid is a weak acid and ionizes to a small extent to bicarbonate ion.



Carbon dioxide Water Carbonic acid

Water Carbonic acid Hydronium ion Bicarbonate ion

The equilibrium constant for the overall reaction is related to an apparent equilibrium constant K_1 for carbonic acid ionization by the expression

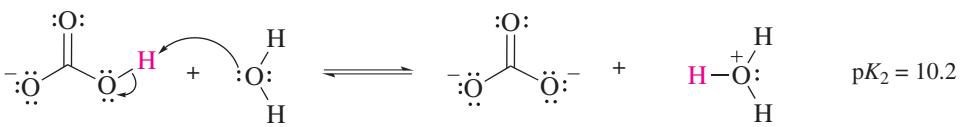
$$K_1 = \frac{[H_3O^+][HCO_3^-]}{[CO_2]} = 4.3 \times 10^{-7} \qquad pK_1 = 6.4$$

Problem 18.6

The value cited for K_1 of carbonic acid, 4.3×10^{-7}, is determined by measuring the pH of water to which a known amount of carbon dioxide has been added. When we recall that only 0.3% of carbon dioxide is converted to carbonic acid in water, what is the "true K_1" of carbonic acid?

Carbonic anhydrase is an enzyme that catalyzes the hydration of carbon dioxide to bicarbonate. The uncatalyzed hydration of carbon dioxide is too slow to be effective in transporting carbon dioxide from the tissues to the lungs, and so animals have developed catalysts to speed this process. The activity of carbonic anhydrase is remarkable; it has been estimated that one molecule of this enzyme can catalyze the hydration of 3.6×10^7 molecules of carbon dioxide per minute.

As with other dicarboxylic acids, the second ionization constant of carbonic acid is far smaller than the first.



Bicarbonate ion Water Carbonate ion Hydronium ion

$pK_2 = 10.2$

Bicarbonate is a weaker acid than carboxylic acids but a stronger acid than water and alcohols.

18.10 Sources of Carboxylic Acids

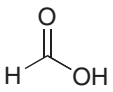
Many carboxylic acids were first isolated from natural sources and were given common names based on their origin (Figure 18.6). Formic acid (Latin *formica,* meaning "ant") was obtained by distilling ants, but is found in some other insects as well. Since ancient times acetic acid (Latin *acetum,* for "vinegar") has been known to be present in wine that has turned sour. Butyric acid (Latin *butyrum,* meaning "butter") contributes to the odor of both rancid butter and ginkgo berries. Malic acid (Latin *malum,* meaning "apple") occurs in apples. Oleic acid (Latin *oleum,* "oil") takes its name from naturally occurring esters such as those that comprise the major portion of olive oil.

The large-scale preparation of carboxylic acids relies on chemical synthesis. Virtually none of the 3×10^9 lb of acetic acid produced in the United States each year is obtained from vinegar. Most of it comes from the reaction of methanol with carbon monoxide.

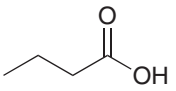
$$\underset{\text{Methanol}}{CH_3OH} + \underset{\text{Carbon monoxide}}{CO} \xrightarrow[\text{heat, pressure}]{\text{cobalt or rhodium catalyst}} \underset{\text{Acetic acid}}{CH_3CO_2H}$$

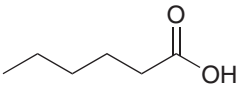
Where do we find carboxylic acids?

Ants aren't the only insects that use formic acid as a weapon. Some *Galerita* beetles spray attackers with an 80% solution of it.

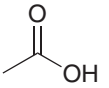


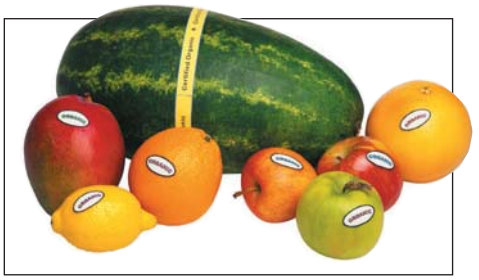
Butanoic and hexanoic acid are responsible for the nasty odor of ginkgo seeds.



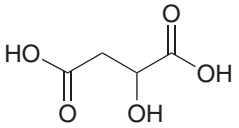


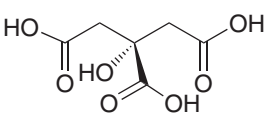
Ethanol is oxidized to acetic acid as wine becomes vinegar.





Malic acid and citric acid contribute to the tart taste of many fruits and vegetables.





The oleic acid that forms during decomposition of dead ants is a chemical signal to other ants to carry them from the nest. In an experiment in which live ants had been coated with oleic acid, they were also removed.

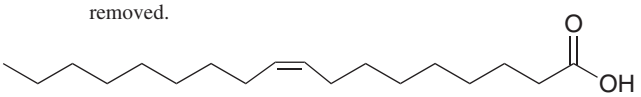


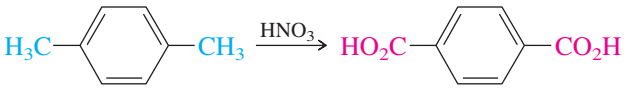
Figure 18.6

Some naturally occurring carboxylic acids.

The principal end use of acetic acid is in the production of vinyl acetate for paints and adhesives.

The carboxylic acid produced in the greatest amounts is 1,4-benzenedicarboxylic acid (terephthalic acid). About 5×10^9 lb/year is produced in the United States as a starting material for the preparation of polyester fibers, "PETE" beverage containers, and Mylar film. One important process converts *p*-xylene to terephthalic acid by oxidation with nitric acid:

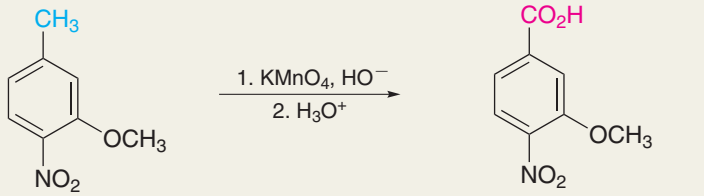
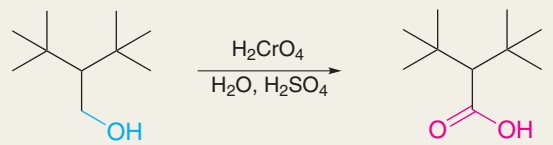
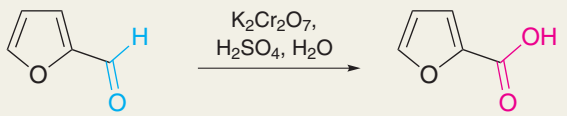
See Chapter 27 for more on polymers made from terephthalic acid.



p-Xylene — 1,4-Benzenedicarboxylic acid (terephthalic acid)

You will recognize the side-chain oxidation of *p*-xylene to terephthalic acid as a reaction type discussed previously (see Section 11.12). It, and examples of other reactions encountered earlier that can be applied to the synthesis of carboxylic acids are collected in Table 18.4.

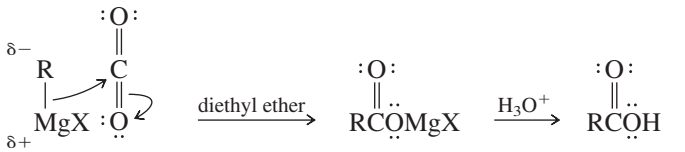
TABLE 18.4 Summary of Reactions Discussed in Earlier Chapters That Yield Carboxylic Acids

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Side-chain oxidation of alkylbenzenes (see Section 11.12) A primary or secondary alkyl side chain on an aromatic ring is converted to a carboxyl group by reaction with a strong oxidizing agent such as potassium permanganate or chromic acid.	$ArCHR_2 \xrightarrow[K_2Cr_2O_7,\ H_2SO_4,\ H_2O]{KMnO_4\ or} ArCO_2H$ Alkylbenzene — Arenecarboxylic acid  3-Methoxy-4-nitrotoluene — 3-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzoic acid (100%)
Oxidation of primary alcohols (see Section 15.9) Potassium permanganate and chromic acid convert primary alcohols to carboxylic acids by way of the corresponding aldehyde.	$RCH_2OH \xrightarrow[K_2Cr_2O_7,\ H_2SO_4,\ H_2O]{KMnO_4\ or} RCO_2H$ Primary alcohol — Carboxylic acid  2-*tert*-Butyl-3,3-dimethyl-1-butanol — 2-*tert*-Butyl-3,3-dimethylbutanoic acid (82%)
Oxidation of aldehydes (see Section 17.14) Aldehydes are particularly sensitive to oxidation and are converted to carboxylic acids by a number of oxidizing agents, including potassium permanganate and chromic acid.	$RCH(=O) \xrightarrow{\text{oxidizing agent}} RCO_2H$ Aldehyde — Carboxylic acid  Furan-2-carbaldehyde — Furan-2-carboxylic acid (75%)

The examples in the table give carboxylic acids that have the same number of carbon atoms as the starting material. The reactions to be described in the next two sections permit carboxylic acids to be prepared by extending a chain by one carbon atom and are of great value in laboratory syntheses of carboxylic acids.

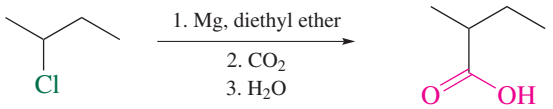
18.11 Synthesis of Carboxylic Acids by the Carboxylation of Grignard Reagents

We've seen how Grignard reagents add to the carbonyl group of aldehydes, ketones, and esters. Grignard reagents react in much the same way with *carbon dioxide* to yield magnesium salts of carboxylic acids. Acidification converts these magnesium salts to the desired carboxylic acids.

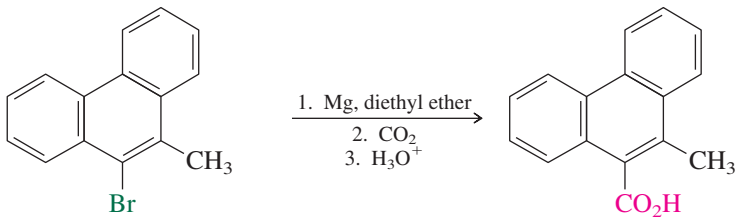


Grignard reagent acts as a nucleophile toward carbon dioxide — Halomagnesium carboxylate — Carboxylic acid

Overall, the carboxylation of Grignard reagents transforms an alkyl or aryl halide to a carboxylic acid in which the carbon skeleton has been extended by one carbon atom.



2-Chlorobutane — 2-Methylbutanoic acid (76-78%)

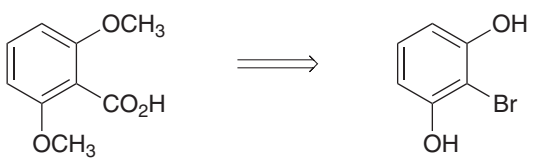


9-Bromo-10-methylphenanthrene — 10-Methylphenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid (82%)

The major limitation to this procedure is that the alkyl or aryl halide must not bear substituents that are incompatible with Grignard reagents, such as OH, NH, SH, or C═O.

Problem 18.7

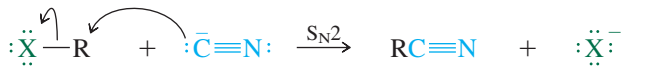
2,6-Dimethoxybenzoic acid was needed for a synthesis of the β-lactam antibiotic methicillin. Show how this carboxylic acid could be synthesized from 2-bromo-1,3-benzenediol.



2,6-Dimethoxybenzoic acid — 2-Bromo-1,3-benzenediol

18.12 Synthesis of Carboxylic Acids by the Preparation and Hydrolysis of Nitriles

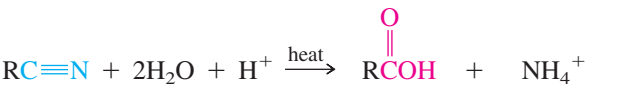
Primary and secondary alkyl halides may be converted to the next higher carboxylic acid by a two-step synthetic sequence involving the preparation and hydrolysis of *nitriles*. Nitriles, also known as *alkyl cyanides,* are prepared by nucleophilic substitution.



Primary or secondary alkyl halide — Cyanide ion — Nitrile (alkyl cyanide) — Halide ion

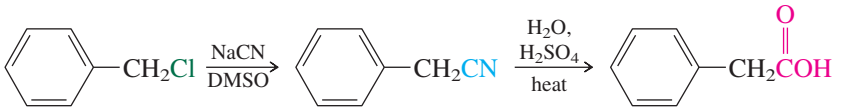
The reaction follows an S_N2 mechanism and works best with primary and secondary alkyl halides. Elimination is the only reaction observed with tertiary alkyl halides. Aryl and vinyl halides do not react. Dimethyl sulfoxide is the preferred solvent for this reaction, but alcohols and water–alcohol mixtures have also been used.

Once the cyano group has been introduced, the nitrile is subjected to hydrolysis. Usually this is carried out by heating in aqueous acid.



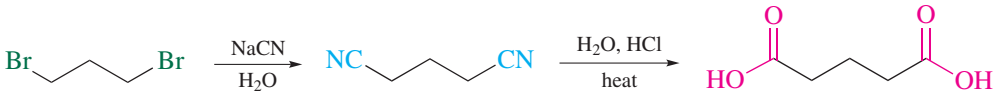
Nitrile — Water — Carboxylic acid — Ammonium ion

The mechanism of nitrile hydrolysis will be described in Section 19.16.



Benzyl chloride — Benzyl cyanide (92%) — Phenylacetic acid (77%)

Dicarboxylic acids have been prepared from dihalides by this method:



1,3-Dibromopropane — 1,5-Pentanedinitrile (77–86%) — 1,5-Pentanedioic acid (83–85%)

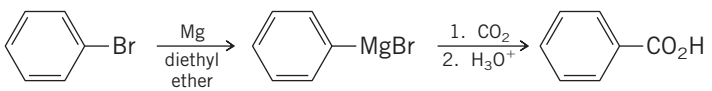
Applications of dicarboxylic acids in the synthesis of nylon and other polymers are described in Sections 27.11 and 27.12.

Problem 18.8

Of the two procedures just described, preparation and carboxylation of a Grignard reagent or formation and hydrolysis of a nitrile, only one is appropriate to each of the following RX → RCO_2H conversions. Identify the correct procedure in each case, and specify why the other will fail.

(a) Bromobenzene → benzoic acid
(b) 2-Chloroethanol → 3-hydroxypropanoic acid
(c) *tert*-Butyl chloride → 2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid

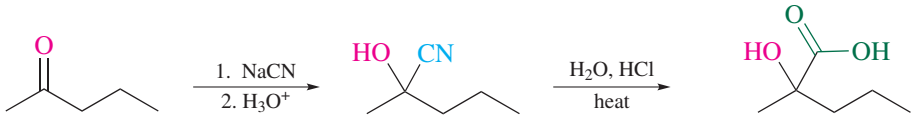
Sample Solution (a) Bromobenzene is an aryl halide and is unreactive toward nucleophilic substitution by cyanide ion. The route $C_6H_5Br \rightarrow C_6H_5CN \rightarrow C_6H_5CO_2H$ fails because the first step fails. The route proceeding through the Grignard reagent is perfectly satisfactory and appears as an experiment in a number of introductory organic chemistry laboratory texts.



Bromobenzene — Phenylmagnesium bromide — Benzoic acid

Nitrile groups in cyanohydrins are hydrolyzed under conditions similar to those of alkyl cyanides. Cyanohydrin formation followed by hydrolysis provides a route to the preparation of α-hydroxy carboxylic acids.

Recall the preparation of cyanohydrins in Section 17.7.

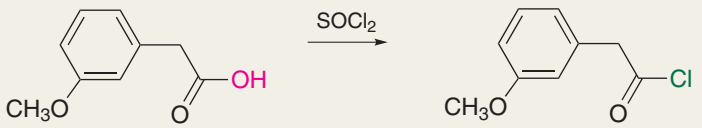
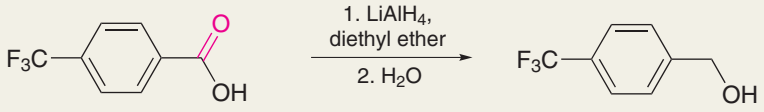
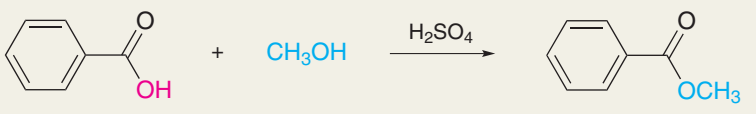


2-Pentanone | 2-Pentanone cyanohydrin | 2-Hydroxy-2-methylpentanoic acid (60% from 2-pentanone)

18.13 Reactions of Carboxylic Acids: A Review and a Preview

The most apparent chemical property of carboxylic acids, their acidity, has already been examined. Three reactions of carboxylic acids—conversion to acyl chlorides, reduction, and esterification—have been encountered in previous chapters and are reviewed in Table 18.5. Acid-catalyzed esterification of carboxylic acids is one of the fundamental reactions of

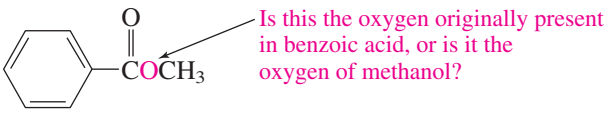
TABLE 18.5 Summary of Reactions of Carboxylic Acids Discussed in Earlier Chapters

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Conversion to acyl chlorides (see Section 12.7) Thionyl chloride reacts with carboxylic acids to yield acyl chlorides.	$RCO_2H + SOCl_2 \rightarrow RCCl + SO_2 + HCl$ (Carboxylic acid; Thionyl chloride; Acyl chloride; Sulfur dioxide; Hydrogen choride)  *m*-Methoxyphenylacetic acid; *m*-Methoxyphenylacetyl chloride (85%)
Lithium aluminum hydride reduction (see Section 15.3) Carboxylic acids are not reducible by catalytic hydrogenation, but are converted to primary alcohols by lithium aluminum hydride. Sodium borohydride does not reduce carboxylic acids.	$RCO_2H \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ LiAlH_4,\ \text{diethyl ether}} RCH_2OH$ (Carboxylic acid; Primary alcohol)  *p*-Trifluoromethylbenzoic acid; *p*-Trifluoromethylbenzyl alcohol (96%)
Esterification (see Section 15.8) In the presence of an acid catalyst, carboxylic acids and alcohols react to form esters (Fischer esterification). The reaction is an equilibrium process, but can be driven to completion by removing the water that is formed.	$RCO_2H + R'OH \underset{}{\overset{H^+}{\rightleftharpoons}} RCOR' + H_2O$ (Carboxylic acid; Alcohol; Ester; Water)  Benzoic acid; Methanol; Methyl benzoate (70%)

organic chemistry, and this portion of the chapter begins with an examination of the mechanism by which it occurs.

18.14 Mechanism of Acid-Catalyzed Esterification

An important question about the mechanism of acid-catalyzed esterification concerns the origin of the alkoxy oxygen. For example, does the methoxy oxygen in methyl benzoate come from methanol, or is it derived from benzoic acid?



A clear-cut answer was provided by Irving Roberts and Harold C. Urey of Columbia University in 1938. They prepared methanol that had been enriched in the mass-18 isotope of oxygen and found that when this sample of methanol was esterified with benzoic acid, the methyl benzoate product contained all the ^{18}O label that was originally present in the alcohol.

In this equation, the red O signifies oxygen enriched in its mass-18 isotope; analysis of isotopic enrichment was performed by mass spectrometry.

Benzoic acid | ^{18}O-enriched methanol | ^{18}O-enriched methyl benzoate | Water

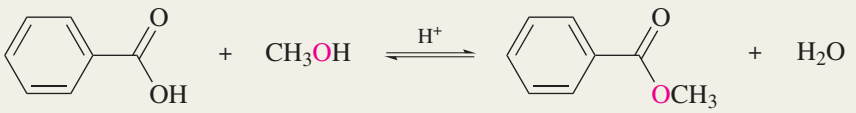
The Roberts–Urey experiment tells us that the C—O bond of the alcohol is preserved during esterification. The oxygen that is lost as a water molecule must come from the carboxylic acid.

Mechanism 18.1 is consistent with these facts. The six steps are best viewed as a combination of two distinct stages. *Formation* of a **tetrahedral intermediate** characterizes

Mechanism 18.1

Acid-Catalyzed Esterification of Benzoic Acid with Methanol

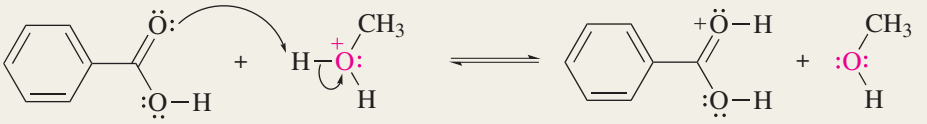
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Benzoic acid | Methanol | Methyl benzoate | Water

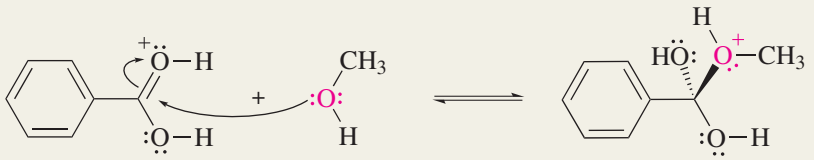
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The carboxylic acid is protonated on its carbonyl oxygen. The proton donor shown in the equation for this step is an alkyloxonium ion formed by proton transfer from the acid catalyst to the alcohol.



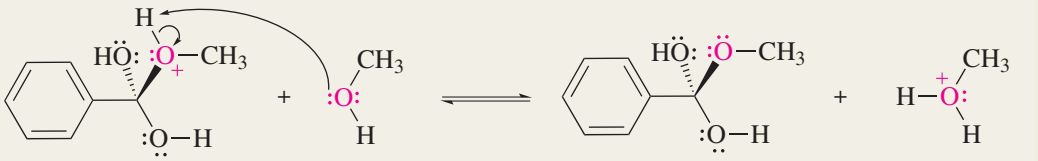
Benzoic acid | Methyloxonium ion | Conjugate acid of benzoic acid | Methanol

Step 2: Protonation of the carboxylic acid increases the positive character of its carbonyl group. A molecule of the alcohol acts as a nucleophile and bonds to the carbonyl carbon.



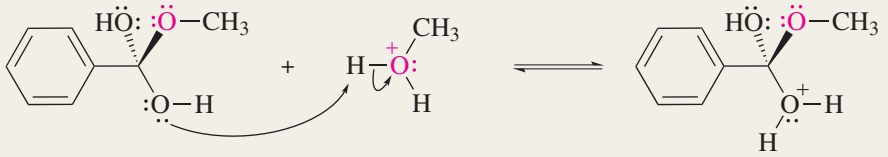
Conjugate acid of benzoic acid | Methanol | Protonated form of tetrahedral intermediate

Step 3: The oxonium ion formed in step 2 loses a proton to give the tetrahedral intermediate in its neutral form. This concludes the first stage in the mechanism.



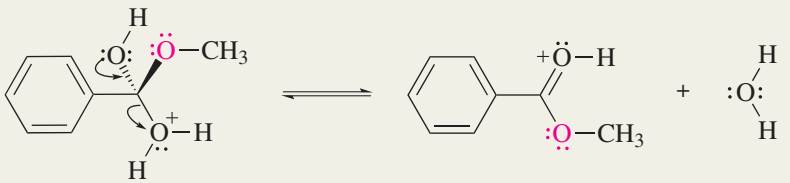
Protonated form of tetrahedral intermediate | Methanol | Tetrahedral intermediate | Methyloxonium ion

Step 4: The second stage begins with protonation of the tetrahedral intermediate on one of its hydroxyl oxygens.



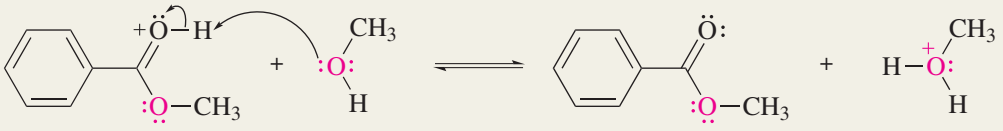
Tetrahedral intermediate | Methyloxonium ion | Hydroxyl-protonated tetrahedral intermediate

Step 5: The hydroxyl-protonated tetrahedral intermediate dissociates to a molecule of water and gives the protonated form of the ester.



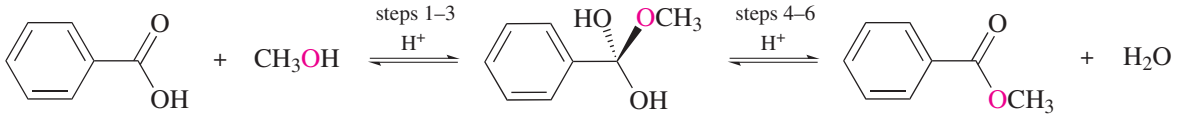
Hydroxyl-protonated tetrahedral intermediate | Conjugate acid of methyl benzoate | Water

Step 6: Deprotonation of the protonated ester gives the ester.



Conjugate acid of methyl benzoate | Methanol | Methyl benzoate | Methyloxonium ion

the first stage (steps 1–3), and *dissociation* of this tetrahedral intermediate characterizes the second (steps 4–6).

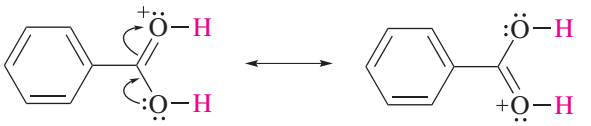


Benzoic acid | Methanol | Tetrahedral intermediate | Methyl benzoate | Water

The species connecting the two stages is called a *tetrahedral intermediate* because the hybridization at carbon has changed from sp^2 in the carboxylic acid to sp^3 in the intermediate before returning to sp^2 in the ester product. *The tetrahedral intermediate is formed by nucleophilic addition of an alcohol to a carboxylic acid and is analogous to a hemiacetal formed by nucleophilic addition of an alcohol to an aldehyde or a ketone.* The three steps that lead to the tetrahedral intermediate in the first stage of esterification are analogous to those in the mechanism for acid-catalyzed nucleophilic addition of an alcohol to an aldehyde or a ketone (see Section 17.8). The tetrahedral intermediate is unstable under the conditions of its formation and undergoes acid-catalyzed dehydration to form the ester.

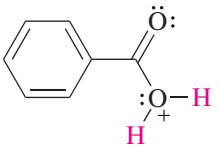
Notice that the oxygen of methanol becomes incorporated into the methyl benzoate product according to Mechanism 18.1, as the results of the Roberts–Urey experiment require it to be.

Notice, too, that the carbonyl oxygen of the carboxylic acid is protonated in the first step and not the hydroxyl oxygen. The species formed by protonation of the carbonyl oxygen is more stable because it is stabilized by electron delocalization. The positive charge is shared equally by both oxygens.



Electron delocalization in carbonyl-protonated benzoic acid

Protonation of the hydroxyl oxygen, on the other hand, yields a less stable cation:



Localized positive charge in hydroxyl-protonated benzoic acid

The positive charge in this cation cannot be shared by the two oxygens; it is localized on one of them. Because protonation of the *carbonyl oxygen* gives a more stable cation, that cation is formed preferentially.

Problem 18.9

When benzoic acid is allowed to stand in water enriched in ^{18}O, the isotopic label becomes incorporated into the benzoic acid. The reaction is catalyzed by acids. Suggest an explanation for this observation.

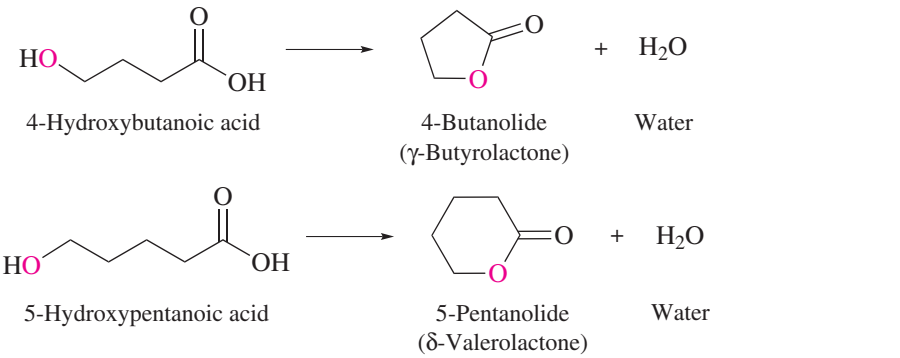
In the next chapter the three elements of the mechanism just described will be seen again as part of the general theme that unites the chemistry of carboxylic acid derivatives. These elements are

1. Activation of the carbonyl group by protonation of the carbonyl oxygen
2. Nucleophilic addition to the protonated carbonyl to form a tetrahedral intermediate
3. Elimination from the tetrahedral intermediate to restore the carbonyl group

This sequence is fundamental to the carbonyl-group chemistry of carboxylic acids, acyl chlorides, anhydrides, esters, and amides.

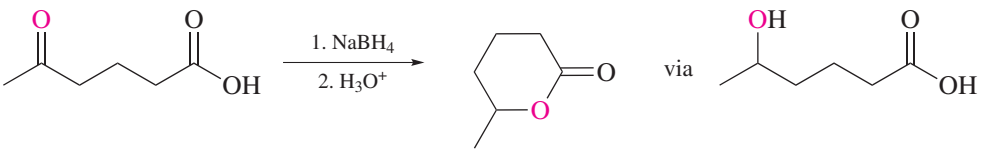
18.15 Intramolecular Ester Formation: Lactones

Hydroxy acids, compounds that contain both a hydroxyl and a carboxylic acid function, have the capacity to form cyclic esters called **lactones.** This intramolecular esterification takes place spontaneously when the ring that is formed is five- or six-membered. Lactones that contain a five-membered cyclic ester are referred to as *γ-lactones;* their six-membered analogs are known as *δ-lactones.*



Lactones are named by replacing the *-oic acid* ending of the parent carboxylic acid by *-olide* and identifying its oxygenated carbon by number as illustrated in the preceding equations.

Reactions that are expected to produce hydroxy acids often yield the derived lactones instead if a five- or six-membered ring can be formed.



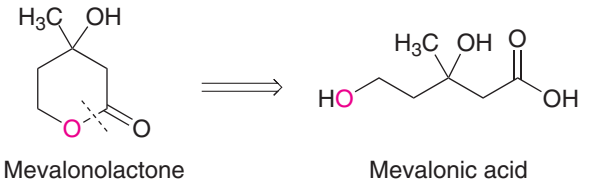
Many natural products are lactones, and it is not unusual to find examples in which the ring size is rather large. A few naturally occurring lactones are shown in Figure 18.7. The *macrolide antibiotics,* of which erythromycin is one example, are macrocyclic (large-ring) lactones. The lactone ring of erythromycin is 14-membered.

Problem 18.10

Write the structure of the hydroxy acid corresponding to each of the lactones shown in Figure 18.7.

(a) Mevalonolactone (b) Pentadecanolide (c) Vernolepin

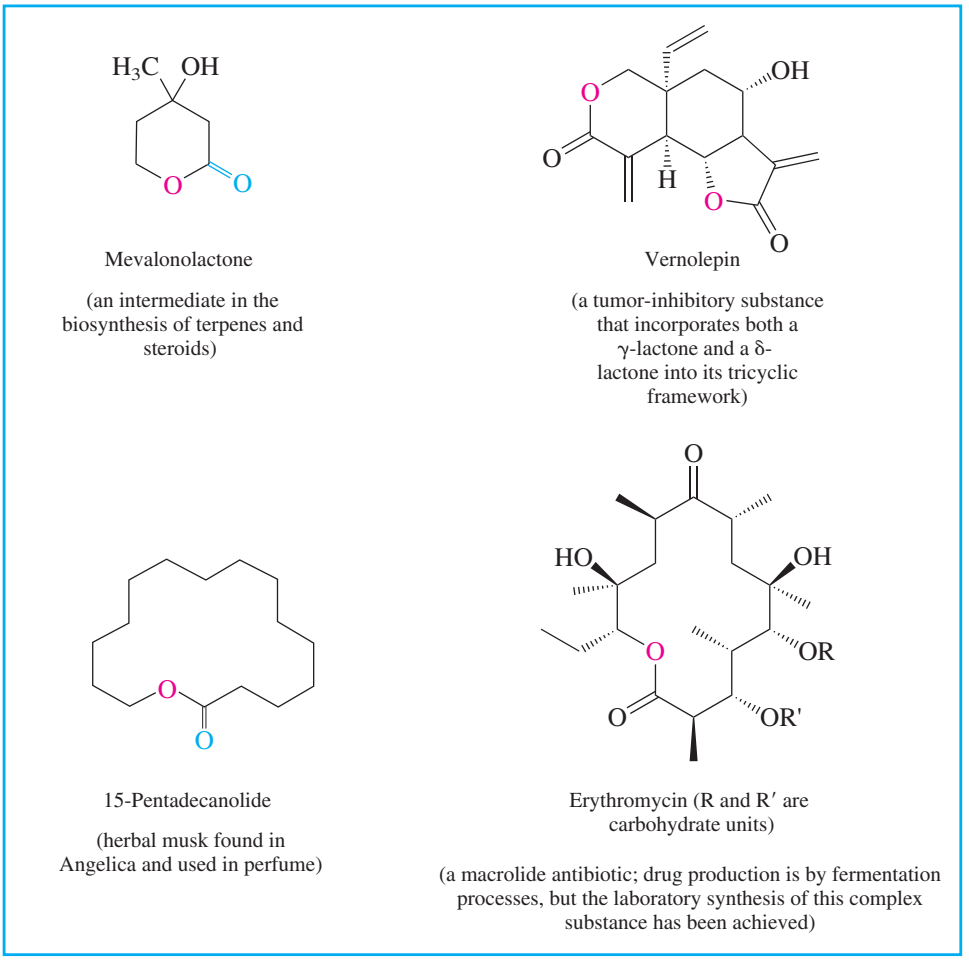
Sample Solution (a) The ring oxygen of the lactone is derived from the OH group of the hydroxy acid. To identify the hydroxy acid, disconnect the O—C(O) bond of the lactone.



Lactones with three- or four-membered rings (α-lactones and β-lactones) are very reactive, making their isolation difficult. Special methods are normally required for the laboratory synthesis of small-ring lactones as well as those that contain rings larger than six-membered.

Figure 18.7

Some naturally occurring lactones.



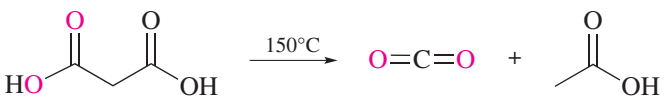
18.16 Decarboxylation of Malonic Acid and Related Compounds

The loss of a molecule of carbon dioxide from a carboxylic acid is known as **decarboxylation.**

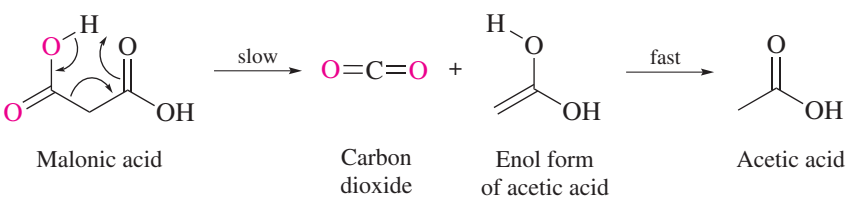
$$\underset{\text{Carboxylic acid}}{RCO_2H} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Alkane}}{RH} + \underset{\text{Carbon dioxide}}{CO_2}$$

Decarboxylation of simple carboxylic acid takes place with great difficulty and is rarely encountered.

Compounds that readily undergo thermal decarboxylation include those related to malonic acid. On being heated, malonic acid is converted to acetic acid and carbon dioxide.



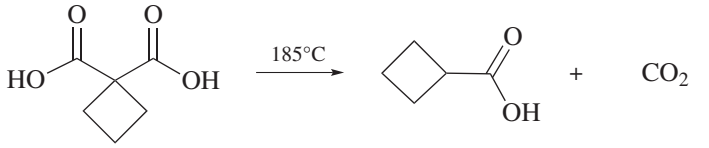
It is important to recognize that only one carboxyl group is lost in this process; the second is retained. A mechanism that accounts for the assistance that one carboxyl group gives to the departure of the other involves two steps.



The first step gives carbon dioxide and an enol, which isomerizes to acetic acid in the second step.

Keto–enol tautomerism was introduced in Section 9.12.

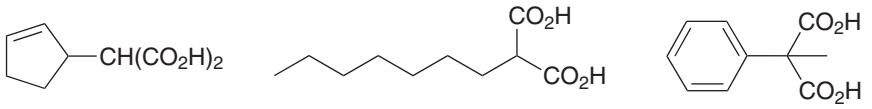
The hydrogens attached to C-2 of malonic acid are not directly involved in the decarboxylation step; thus, 1,3-dicarboxylic acids bearing substituents at C-2 undergo an analogous reaction on heating.



1,1-Cyclobutanedicarboxylic acid | Cyclobutanecarboxylic acid (74%) | Carbon dioxide

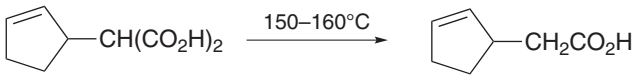
Problem 18.11

What will be the product isolated after thermal decarboxylation of each of the following? Using curved arrows, represent the bond changes that occur in the decarboxylation step.



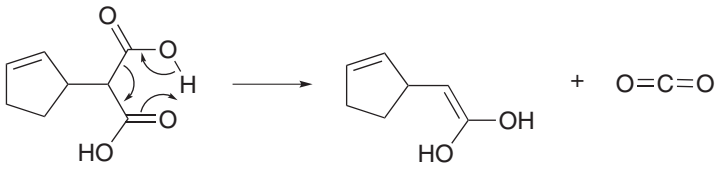
(a) (b) (c)

Sample Solution (a) Thermal decarboxylation of malonic acid derivatives leads to the replacement of one of the carboxyl groups by a hydrogen.



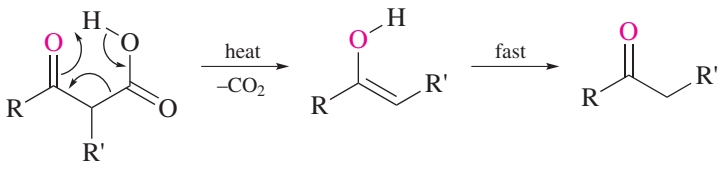
In this particular case, the reaction was carried out at the temperature indicated and gave the product shown in 96–99% yield.

The transition state for decarboxylation incorporates a cyclic array of six atoms and gives the enol form of the product as an intermediate:



Enol form of product

Notice that the carboxyl group that stays behind during the decarboxylation of malonic acid has a hydroxyl function that is not directly involved. Compounds that have substituents other than OH at this position undergo an analogous decarboxylation. The most frequently encountered ones are β-keto acids; that is, carboxylic acids in which C-3 is C═O.

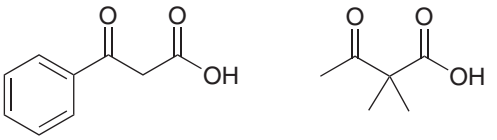


β-Keto acid | Enol form of ketone | Ketone

Decarboxylation of β-keto acids occurs even at room temperature, giving an enol, which isomerizes to the corresponding ketone as the isolated product.

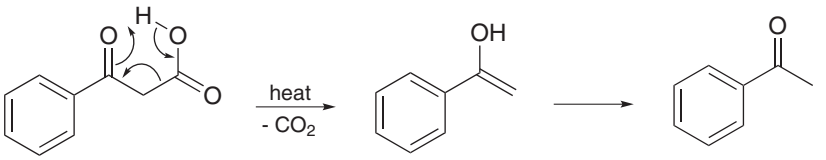
Problem 18.12

Use curved arrows to show the bonding changes that occur during the decarboxylation of each of the following, give the structure of the resulting enol, and the ketone formed from the enol.



(a) (b)

Sample Solution (a) By analogy to the thermal decarboxylation of malonic acid, we represent the corresponding reaction of benzoylacetic acid as:



Benzoylacetic acid Enol Acetophenone

Decarboxylation of derivatives of malonic acid and β-keto acids is the last step in two standard synthetic methods—the *malonic ester synthesis* and the *acetoacetic ester synthesis*—each of which is described in Chapter 20. They also find parallels in certain biochemical reactions.

18.17 Spectroscopic Analysis of Carboxylic Acids

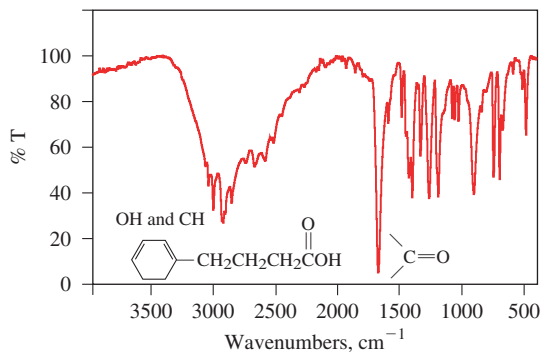
Infrared: The most characteristic peaks in the IR spectra of carboxylic acids are those of the hydroxyl and carbonyl groups. As shown in the IR spectrum of 4-phenylbutanoic acid (Figure 18.8) the O—H and C—H stretching frequencies overlap to produce a broad absorption in the 3500–2500 cm^{-1} region. The carbonyl group gives a strong band for C=O stretching at 1684 cm^{-1}.

^{1}H NMR: The hydroxyl proton of a CO_2H group is normally the least shielded of all the protons in an NMR spectrum, appearing 10–12 ppm downfield from tetramethylsilane, often as a broad peak. Figure 18.9 illustrates this for 4-phenylbutanoic acid. As with other hydroxyl protons, the proton of a carboxyl group can be identified by adding D_2O to the sample. Hydrogen–deuterium exchange converts —CO_2H to —CO_2D, and the signal corresponding to the carboxyl group disappears.

^{13}C NMR: Like other carbonyl groups, the carbon of the —CO_2H group of a carboxylic acid is strongly deshielded (δ 160–185), but not as much as that of an aldehyde or ketone (δ 190–215).

Figure 18.8

The IR spectrum of 4-phenylbutanoic acid.



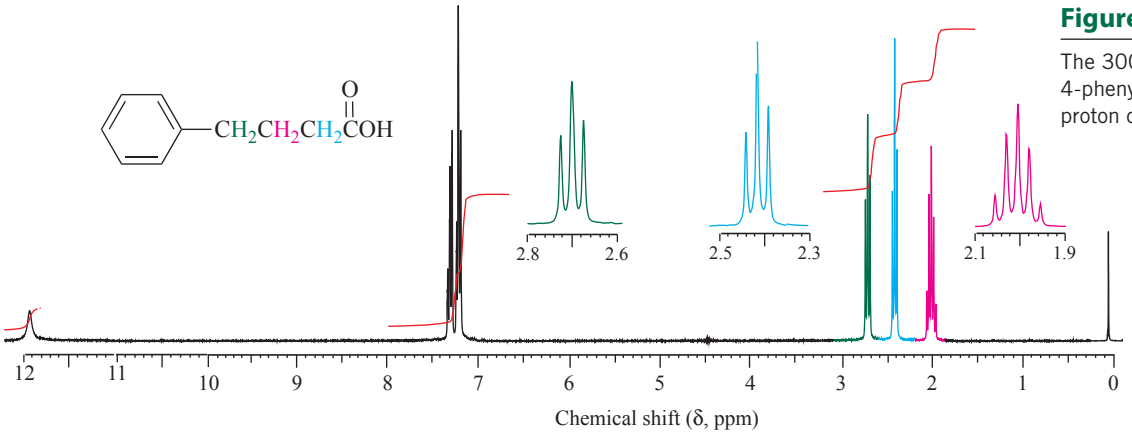
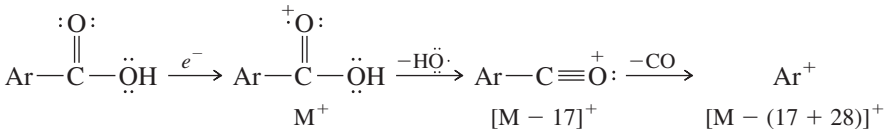


Figure 18.9

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of 4-phenylbutanoic acid. The peak for the proton of the CO_2H group is at δ 12.

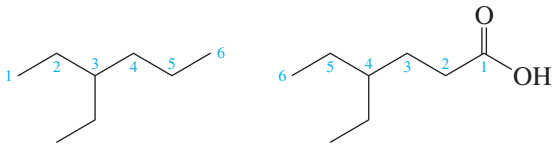
UV-VIS: In the absence of any additional chromophores, carboxylic acids absorb at a wavelength (210 nm) that is not very useful for diagnostic purposes.

Mass Spectrometry: Aside from a peak for the molecular ion, which is normally easy to pick out, aliphatic carboxylic acids undergo a variety of fragmentation processes. The dominant fragmentation in aromatic acids corresponds to loss of OH, then loss of CO.



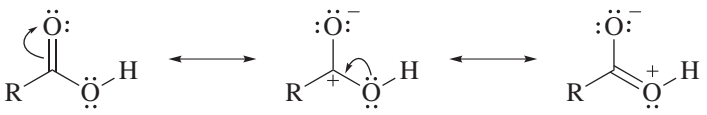
18.18 SUMMARY

Section 18.1 Carboxylic acids take their names from the alkane that contains the same number of carbons as the longest continuous chain that contains the —CO_2H group. The *-e* ending is replaced by *-oic acid.* Numbering begins at the carbon of the —CO_2H group.



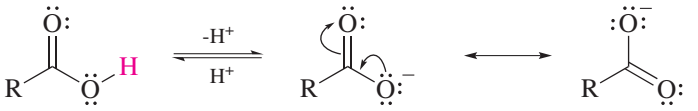
3-Ethylhexane 4-Ethylhexanoic acid

Section 18.2 Like the carbonyl group of aldehydes and ketones, the carbon of a C═O unit in a carboxylic acid is sp^2-hybridized. Compared with the carbonyl group of an aldehyde or ketone, the C═O unit of a carboxylic acid receives an extra degree of stabilization from its attached OH group.



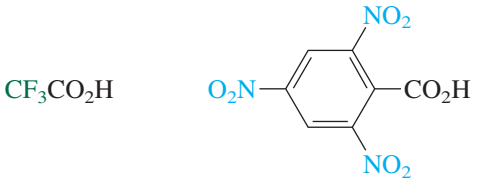
Section 18.3 Hydrogen bonding in carboxylic acids raises their melting points and boiling points above those of comparably constituted alkanes, alcohols, aldehydes, and ketones.

Section 18.4 Carboxylic acids are weak acids and, in the absence of electron-attracting substituents, have pK_a's of approximately 5. Carboxylic acids are much stronger acids than alcohols because of the electron-withdrawing power of the carbonyl group (inductive effect) and its ability to delocalize negative charge in the carboxylate anion (resonance effect).



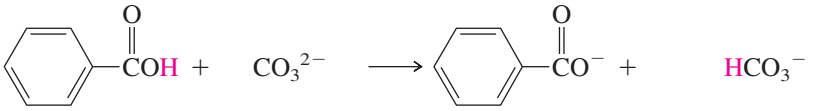
Carboxylic acid — Electron delocalization in carboxylate ion

Sections 18.5–18.6 Electronegative substituents, especially those within a few bonds of the carboxyl group, increase the acidity of carboxylic acids.



Trifluoroacetic acid pK_a = 0.2 — 2,4,6-Trinitrobenzoic acid pK_a = 0.6

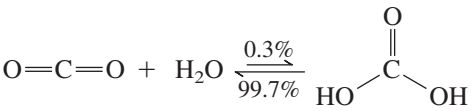
Section 18.7 Although carboxylic acids dissociate to only a small extent in water, they are deprotonated almost completely in basic solution.



Benzoic acid pK_a = 4.2 (stronger acid) — Carbonate ion — Benzoate ion — Hydrogen carbonate ion pK_a = 10.2 (weaker acid)

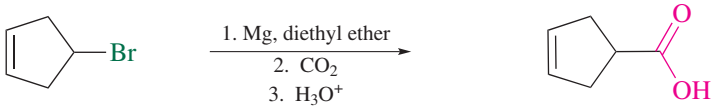
Section 18.8 Dicarboxylic acids have separate pK_a values for their first and second ionizations.

Section 18.9 Carbon dioxide and carbonic acid are in equilibrium in water. Carbon dioxide is the major component.



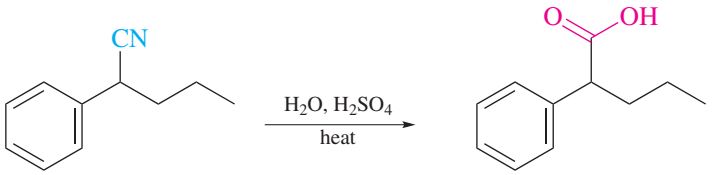
Section 18.10 Several of the reactions introduced in earlier chapters can be used to prepare carboxylic acids (see Table 18.4).

Section 18.11 Carboxylic acids can be prepared by the reaction of Grignard reagents with carbon dioxide.



4-Bromocyclopentene — Cyclopentene-4-carboxylic acid (66%)

Section 18.12 Nitriles are prepared from primary and secondary alkyl halides by nucleophilic substitution with cyanide ion and can be converted to carboxylic acids by hydrolysis.

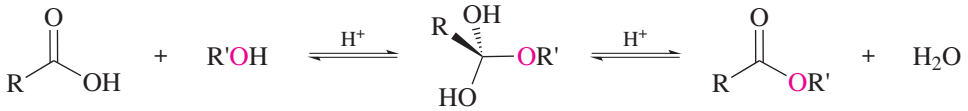


2-Phenylpentanenitrile — 2-Phenylpentanoic acid (52%)

Likewise, the cyano group of a cyanohydrin can be hydrolyzed to —CO_2H.

Section 18.13 Among the reactions of carboxylic acids, their conversions to acyl chlorides, primary alcohols, and esters were introduced in earlier chapters and were reviewed in Table 18.5.

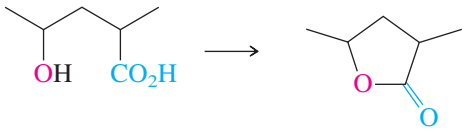
Section 18.14 The mechanism of acid-catalyzed esterification involves two stages. The first is formation of a tetrahedral intermediate by nucleophilic addition of the alcohol to the carbonyl group and is analogous to acid-catalyzed acetal and ketal formation of aldehydes and ketones. The second is dehydration of the tetrahedral intermediate.



Carboxylic acid | Alcohol | Tetrahedral intermediate | Ester | Water

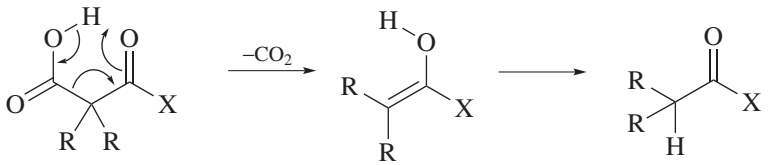
Mechanism 18.1 provides details of the six individual steps.

Section 18.15 An intramolecular esterification can occur when a molecule contains both a hydroxyl and a carboxyl group. Cyclic esters are called *lactones* and are most stable when the ring is five- or six-membered.



4-Hydroxy-2-methylpentanoic acid | 2-Methyl-4-pentanolide

Section 18.16 1,1-Dicarboxylic acids (malonic acids) and β-keto acids undergo thermal decarboxylation by a mechanism in which a β-carbonyl group assists the departure of carbon dioxide.



X = OH: malonic acid derivative
X = alkyl or aryl: β-keto acid

Enol form of product

X = OH: carboxylic acid
X = alkyl or aryl: ketone

Section 18.17 Carboxylic acids are readily identified by the presence of strong IR absorptions near 1700 cm^{-1} (C═O) and between 2500 and 3500 cm^{-1} (OH), a ^1H NMR signal for the hydroxyl proton at δ 10–12, and a ^{13}C signal for the carbonyl carbon near δ 180.

PROBLEMS

18.13 Many carboxylic acids are much better known by their common names than by their systematic names. Some of these follow. Provide a structural formula for each one on the basis of its systematic name.

(a) 2-Hydroxypropanoic acid (better known as *lactic acid,* it is found in sour milk and is formed in the muscles during exercise)

(b) 2-Hydroxy-2-phenylethanoic acid (also known as *mandelic acid,* it is obtained from plums, peaches, and other fruits)

(c) Tetradecanoic acid (also known as *myristic acid,* it can be obtained from a variety of fats)

(d) 10-Undecenoic acid (also called *undecylenic acid,* it is used, in combination with its zinc salt, to treat fungal infections such as athlete's foot)

(e) 3,5-Dihydroxy-3-methylpentanoic acid (also called *mevalonic acid,* it is an important intermediate in the biosynthesis of terpenes and steroids)

(f) (*E*)-2-Methyl-2-butenoic acid (also known as *tiglic acid,* it is a constituent of various natural oils)

(g) 2-Hydroxybutanedioic acid (also known as *malic acid,* it is found in apples and other fruits)

(h) 2-Hydroxy-1,2,3-propanetricarboxylic acid (better known as *citric acid,* it contributes to the tart taste of citrus fruits)

(i) 2-(*p*-Isobutylphenyl)propanoic acid (an antiinflammatory drug better known as *ibuprofen*)

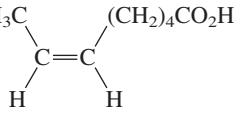
(j) *o*-Hydroxybenzenecarboxylic acid (better known as *salicylic acid,* it is obtained from willow bark)

18.14 Give an acceptable IUPAC name for each of the following:

(a) $CH_3(CH_2)_6CO_2H$

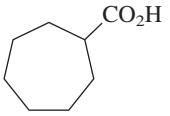
(b) $CH_3(CH_2)_6CO_2K$

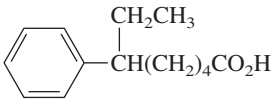
(c) $H_2C{=}CH(CH_2)_5CO_2H$

(d) 

(e) $HO_2C(CH_2)_6CO_2H$

(f) $CH_3(CH_2)_4CH(CO_2H)_2$

(g) 

(h) 

18.15 Rank the compounds in each of the following groups in order of decreasing acidity:

(a) Acetic acid, ethane, ethanol

(b) Benzene, benzoic acid, benzyl alcohol

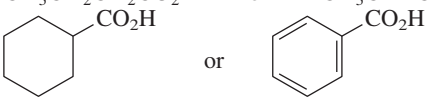
(c) 1,3-Propanediol, propanedioic acid, propanoic acid

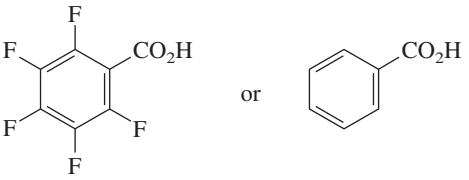
(d) Acetic acid, ethanol, trifluoroacetic acid, 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol, trifluoromethanesulfonic acid (CF_3SO_2OH)

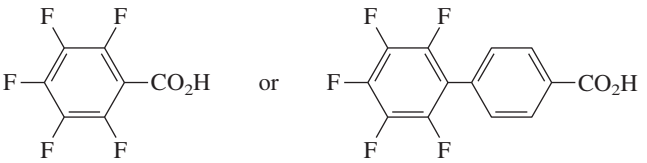
18.16 Identify the more acidic compound in each of the following pairs:

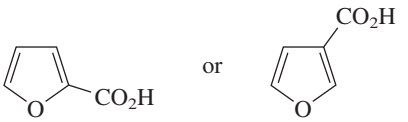
(a) $CF_3CH_2CO_2H$ or $CF_3CH_2CH_2CO_2H$

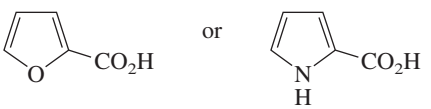
(b) $CH_3CH_2CH_2CO_2H$ or $CH_3C{\equiv}CCO_2H$

(c) 

(d) 

(e) 

(f) 

(g) 

18.17 Propose methods for preparing butanoic acid from each of the following:

(a) 1-Butanol (c) 1-Butene (e) 2-Propanol

(b) Butanal (d) 1-Propanol (f) $CH_3CH_2CH(CO_2H)_2$

18.18 It is sometimes necessary to prepare isotopically labeled samples of organic substances for probing biological transformations and reaction mechanisms. Various sources of the radioactive mass-14 carbon isotope are available. Describe synthetic procedures by which benzoic acid, labeled with ^{14}C at its carbonyl carbon, could be prepared from benzene and the following ^{14}C-labeled precursors. You may use any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

(a) CH_3Cl (b) HCH (O double-bonded) (c) CO_2

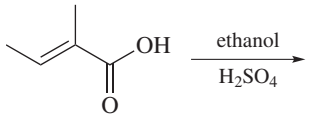
18.19 Give the product of the reaction of pentanoic acid with each of the following reagents:

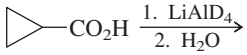
(a) Sodium hydroxide
(b) Sodium bicarbonate
(c) Thionyl chloride
(d) Phosphorus tribromide
(e) Benzyl alcohol, sulfuric acid (catalytic amount)
(f) Lithium aluminum hydride, then hydrolysis
(g) Phenylmagnesium bromide

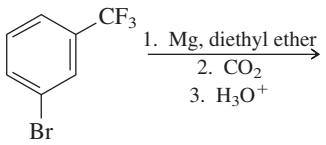
18.20 Show how butanoic acid may be converted to each of the following compounds:

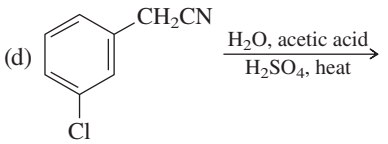
(a) 1-Butanol (c) 1-Chlorobutane (e) Phenyl propyl ketone
(b) Butanal (d) Butanoyl chloride (f) 4-Octanone

18.21 Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature and gives a single product in good yield. What is the product in each reaction?

(a) 

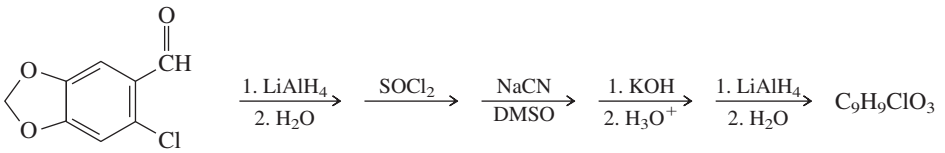
(b) 

(c) 

(d) 

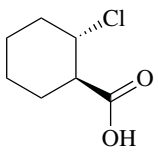
(e) $H_2C{=}CH(CH_2)_8CO_2H \xrightarrow[\text{benzoyl peroxide}]{\text{HBr}}$

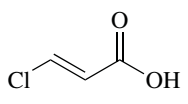
18.22 The compound shown was subjected to the following series of reactions to give a product having the molecular formula $C_9H_9ClO_3$. What is this product?



18.23 Show by a series of equations how you could synthesize each of the following compounds from the indicated starting material and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents:

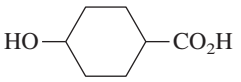
(a) 2-Methylpropanoic acid from *tert*-butyl alcohol
(b) 3-Methylbutanoic acid from *tert*-butyl alcohol
(c) 3,3-Dimethylbutanoic acid from *tert*-butyl alcohol
(d) $HO_2C(CH_2)_5CO_2H$ from $HO_2C(CH_2)_3CO_2H$
(e) 3-Phenyl-1-butanol from CH_3CHCH_2CN (C_6H_5 on the CH)

(f) 

from


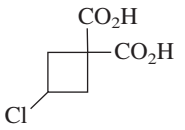
(g) 2,4-Dimethylbenzoic acid from *m*-xylene
(h) 4-Chloro-3-nitrobenzoic acid from *p*-chlorotoluene
(i) (*Z*)-$CH_3CH{=}CHCO_2H$ from propyne

18.24 (a) Which stereoisomer of 4-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylic acid (cis or trans) can form a lactone? What is the conformation of the cyclohexane ring in the starting hydroxy acid? In the lactone?



(b) Repeat part (a) for the case of 3-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylic acid.

18.25 When compound A is heated, two isomeric products are formed. What are these two products?

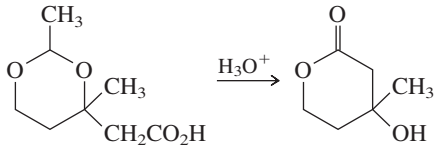


Compound A

18.26 A certain carboxylic acid ($C_{14}H_{26}O_2$), which can be isolated from whale blubber or sardine oil, yields nonanal and $O{=}CH(CH_2)_3CO_2H$ on ozonolysis. What is the structure of this acid?

18.27 When levulinic acid ($CH_3\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}CH_2CH_2CO_2H$) was hydrogenated at high pressure over a nickel catalyst at 220°C, a single product, $C_5H_8O_2$, was isolated in 94% yield. This compound lacks hydroxyl absorption in its IR spectrum. What is a reasonable structure for the compound?

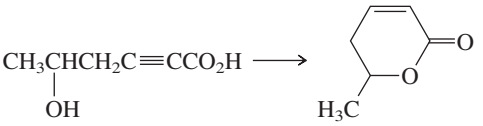
18.28 On standing in dilute aqueous acid, compound A is smoothly converted to mevalonolactone.



Compound A Mevalonolactone

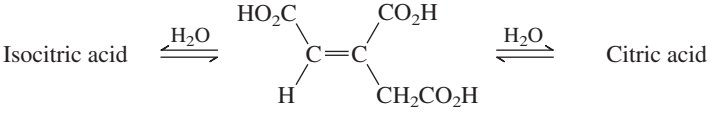
Suggest a reasonable mechanism for this reaction. What other organic product is also formed?

18.29 Suggest reaction conditions suitable for the preparation of compound A from 5-hydroxy-2-hexynoic acid.



5-Hydroxy-2-hexynoic acid Compound A

18.30 In the presence of the enzyme *aconitase,* the double bond of aconitic acid undergoes hydration. The reaction is reversible, and the following equilibrium is established:



$(C_6H_8O_7)$ (6% at equilibrium) Aconitic acid (4% at equilibrium) $(C_6H_8O_7)$ (90% at equilibrium)

(a) The major tricarboxylic acid present is *citric acid,* the substance responsible for the tart taste of citrus fruits. Citric acid is achiral. What is its structure?

(b) What must be the constitution of isocitric acid? (Assume that no rearrangements accompany hydration.) How many stereoisomers are possible for isocitric acid?

18.31 The ^1H NMR spectra of formic acid (HCO_2H), maleic acid (*cis*-$HO_2CCH{=}CHCO_2H$), and malonic acid ($HO_2CCH_2CO_2H$) are similar in that each is characterized by two

singlets of equal intensity. Match these compounds with the designations A, B, and C on the basis of the appropriate ^{1}H NMR chemical shift data.

Compound A: signals at δ 3.2 and 12.1

Compound B: signals at δ 6.3 and 12.4

Compound C: signals at δ 8.0 and 11.4

18.32 Compounds A and B are isomers having the molecular formula $C_4H_8O_3$. Identify A and B on the basis of their ^{1}H NMR spectra.

Compound A: δ 1.3 (3H, triplet); 3.6 (2H, quartet); 4.1 (2H, singlet); 11.1 (1H, broad singlet)

Compound B: δ 2.6 (2H, triplet); 3.4 (3H, singlet); 3.7 (2H triplet); 11.3 (1H, broad singlet)

18.33 Compounds A and B are carboxylic acids. Identify each one on the basis of its ^{1}H NMR spectrum.

(a) Compound A ($C_3H_5ClO_2$) (Figure 18.10).

(b) Compound B ($C_9H_9NO_4$) has a nitro group attached to an aromatic ring (Figure 18.11).

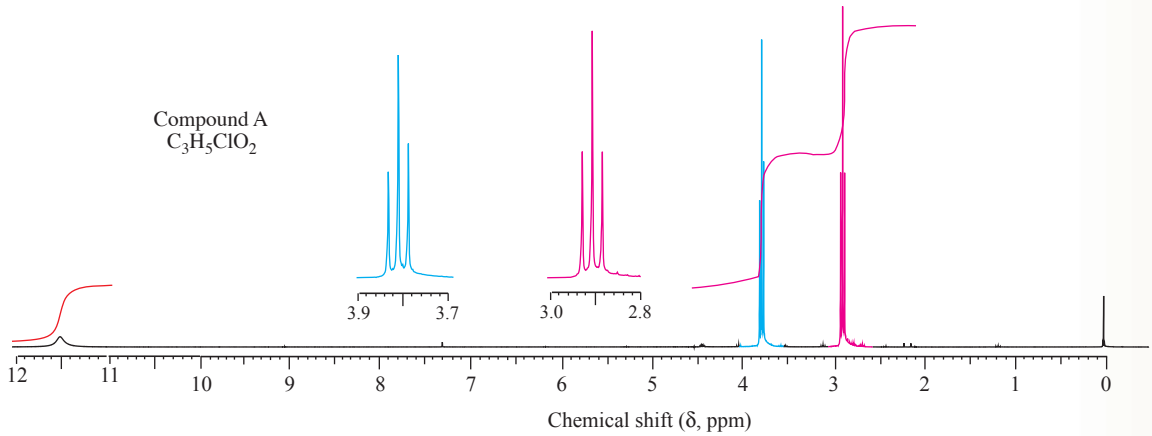


Figure 18.10

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of compound A ($C_3H_5ClO_2$) (Problem 18.33a).

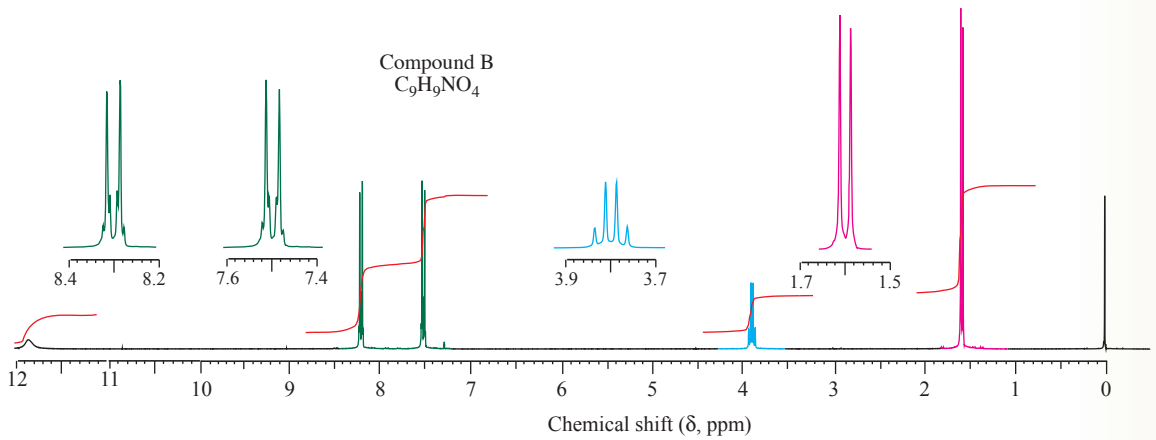


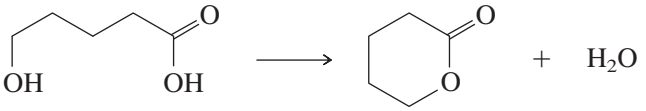
Figure 18.11

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of compound B ($C_9H_9NO_4$) (Problem 18.33b).

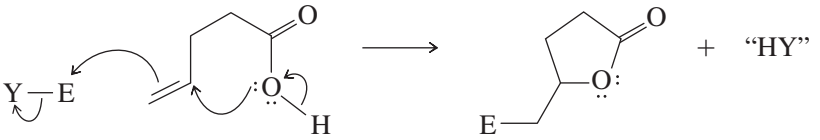
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 18

Lactonization Methods

In Section 18.15 we saw that hydroxy-substituted carboxylic acids spontaneously cyclize to lactones if a five- or six-membered ring can be formed.

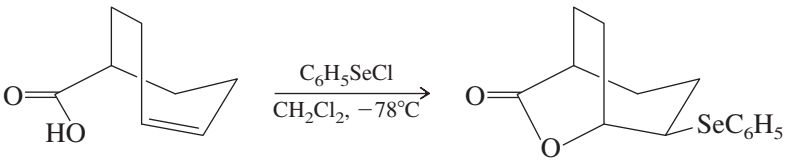


Many natural products are lactones, and chemists have directed substantial attention to developing alternative methods for their synthesis. The most successful of these efforts are based on electrophilic addition to the double bond of unsaturated carboxylic acids. For a generalized electrophilic reagent E—Y and 4-pentenoic acid, such reactions give a 5-substituted γ-lactone.

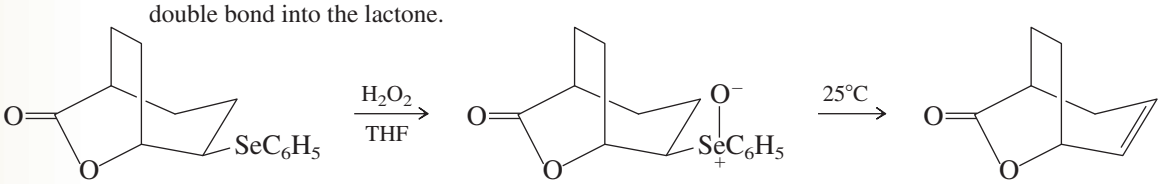


Although the curved arrows show the *overall* electron flow, the mechanism depends on the electrophilic reagent E—Y and normally involves more than one step.

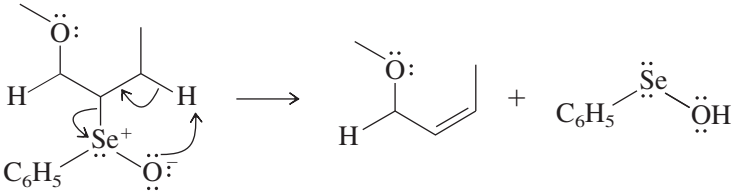
In *iodolactonization* the electrophilic atom E = I, and E—Y represents a source of electrophilic iodine, usually I_2 or *N*-iodosuccinimide. In *phenylselenolactonization,* E = C_6H_5Se and E—Y is benzeneselenenyl chloride (C_6H_5SeCl). Anti addition is observed in both iodo- and phenylselenolactonization.



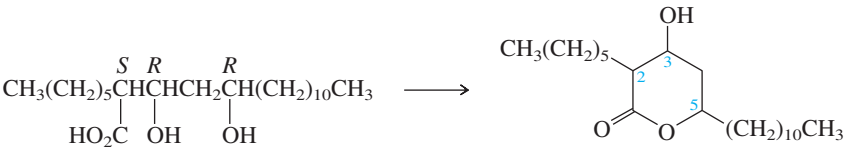
Both iodo- and phenylselenolactonization offer the advantage of giving a product containing a functional group capable of further modification. Oxidation of the C_6H_5Se substituent, for example, gives a selenoxide that undergoes elimination of C_6H_5SeOH at room temperature to introduce a double bond into the lactone.



In eliminations of this type, H is always removed from the carbon β to selenium that is remote from the lactone oxygen. Elimination is syn.

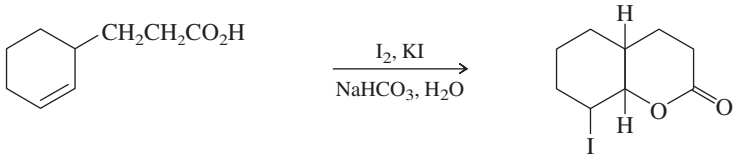


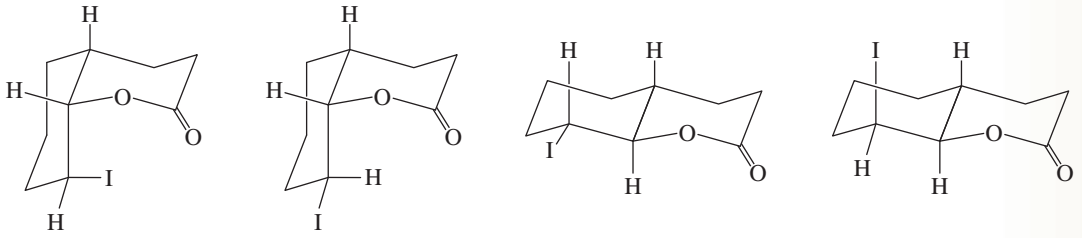
18.34 The dihydroxy acid shown was prepared as a single enantiomer and underwent spontaneous cyclization to give a δ-lactone, What are the *R*–*S* configurations of the chirality centers in this lactone? (No stereochemistry is implied in the structural drawing.)



A. 2*R*, 3*R*, 5*R*
B. 2*R*, 3*R*, 5*S*
C. 2*S*, 3*R*, 5*R*
D. 2*S*, 3*R*, 5*S*

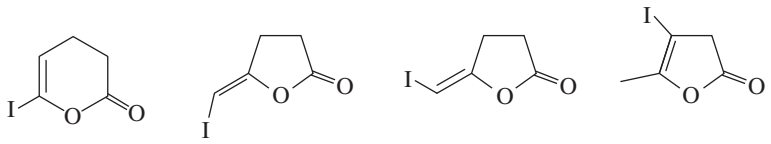
18.35 The product of the following reaction has the constitution shown. No stereochemistry is implied. Deduce the stereochemistry on the basis of the fact that iodolactonization is normally an anti addition and it was determined experimentally that the ring junction is cis.





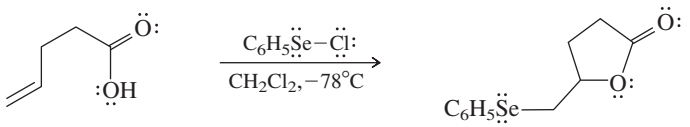
A. B. C. D.

18.36 What is the structure of the γ lactone formed by iodolactonization of 4-pentynoic acid ($HC{\equiv}CCH_2CH_2CO_2H$)? Anti addition to the triple bond occurs.

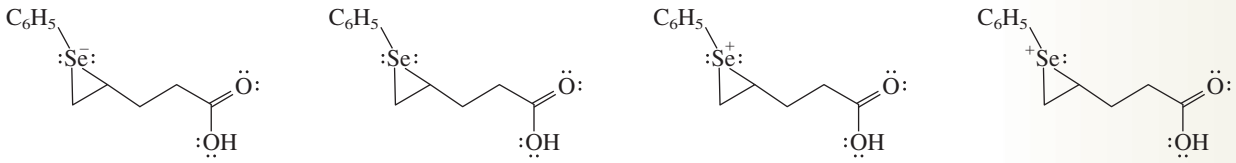


A. B. C. D.

18.37 Assume that the following reaction proceeds through a bridged selenonium ion.

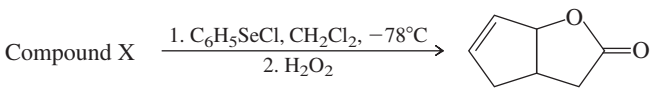


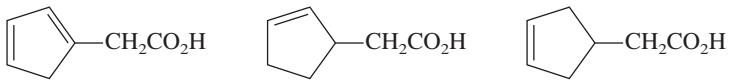
What Lewis structure best represents the bridged selenonium ion?



A. B. C. D.

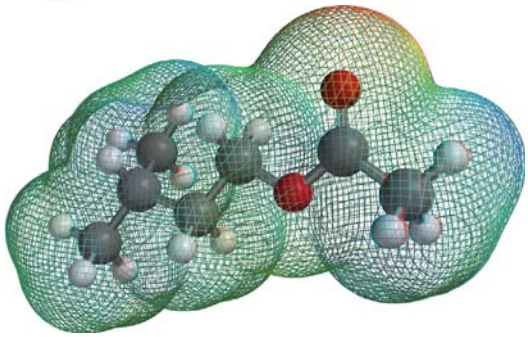
18.38 What is compound X?





A. B. C.

19



CHAPTER OUTLINE

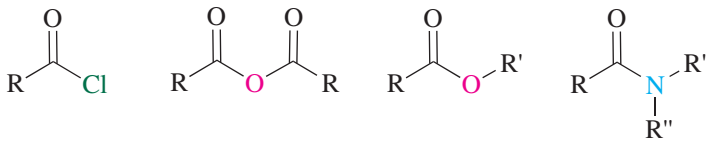
19.1 Nomenclature of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 771
19.2 Structure and Reactivity of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 772
19.3 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanisms 775
19.4 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in Acyl Chlorides 776
19.5 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in Acid Anhydrides 778
19.6 Physical Properties and Sources of Esters 780
19.7 Reactions of Esters: A Preview 781
19.8 Acid-Catalyzed Ester Hydrolysis 783
19.9 Ester Hydrolysis in Base: Saponification 786
19.10 Reaction of Esters with Ammonia and Amines 790
19.11 Reaction of Esters with Grignard and Organolithium Reagents and Lithium Aluminum Hydride 791
19.12 Amides 792
19.13 Hydrolysis of Amides 796
19.14 Lactams 800
- β-Lactam Antibiotics 800

19.15 Preparation of Nitriles 802
19.16 Hydrolysis of Nitriles 803
19.17 Addition of Grignard Reagents to Nitriles 805
19.18 Spectroscopic Analysis of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives 805
19.19 **Summary** 807
Problems 810
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 19: Thioesters 816

3-Methylbutyl acetate (isoamyl acetate) is best known for the characteristic odor it gives to bananas. It is also one of the more than 40 compounds in the alarm pheromone a honeybee uses to alert other bees that an intruder has arrived.

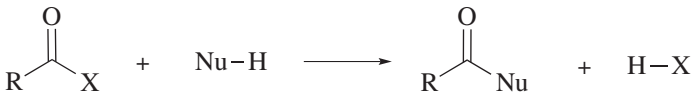
Carboxylic Acid Derivatives: Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution

This chapter deals with several related classes of compounds collectively referred to as **carboxylic acid derivatives.**



Acyl chloride Acid anhydride Ester Amide

All have an acyl group bonded to an electronegative element and have **nucleophilic acyl substitution** as their characteristic reaction type.



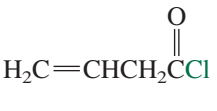
Nucleophilic acyl substitution includes many useful synthetic methods and is a major participant in numerous biosynthetic processes. Its mechanism, which constitutes a major portion of this chapter, has been thoroughly studied and provides a framework for organizing what might otherwise be a collection of isolated facts, details, and observations. Similar principles apply to the reactions of nitriles and are included as well.

19.1 Nomenclature of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

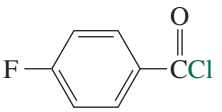
Acyl Chlorides: Although acyl fluorides, bromides, and iodides are all known classes of organic compounds, they are not encountered nearly as often as acyl chlorides. Acyl chlorides, which will be the only acyl halides discussed in this chapter, are named by adding the word "chloride" after the name of the acyl group. To name an acyl group, replace the *-ic acid* ending of the IUPAC name of the corresponding carboxylic acid by *-yl*. The suffix *-carbonyl chloride* is used for attachments to rings other than benzene.

Formyl, acetyl, and benzoyl are preferred over methanoyl, ethanoyl, and benzenecarbonyl, respectively.

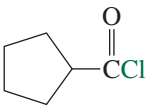
Pentanoyl chloride



3-Butenoyl chloride
or
But-3-enoyl chloride



p-Fluorobenzoyl chloride
or
4-Fluorobenzoyl chloride

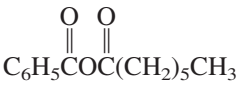


Cyclopentanecarbonyl chloride

Acid Anhydrides: When both acyl groups are the same, the word "acid" in the corresponding carboxylic acid is replaced by "anhydride." When the two acyl groups are different, their corresponding carboxylic acids are cited in alphabetical order.

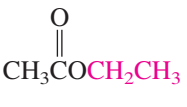
Acetic anhydride

Benzoic anhydride

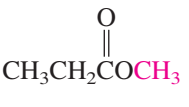


Benzoic heptanoic anhydride

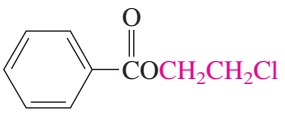
Esters: The alkyl group and the acyl group of an *ester* are specified independently. Esters are named as *alkyl alkanoates*. The alkyl group R′ of $RC(=O)OR'$ is cited first, followed by the acyl portion $RC(=O)-$. The acyl portion is named by substituting the suffix *-ate* for the *-ic acid* ending of the corresponding acid.



Ethyl acetate



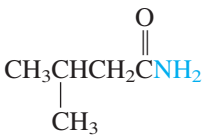
Methyl propanoate



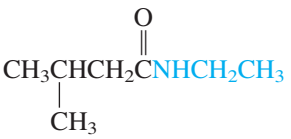
2-Chloroethyl benzoate

Aryl esters, that is, compounds of the type $RC(=O)OAr$, are named in an analogous way.

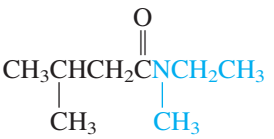
Amides: When naming amides, replace the *-ic acid* or *-oic acid* of the corresponding carboxylic acid with *-amide*. Substituents, irrespective of whether they are attached to the acyl group or the amide nitrogen, are listed in alphabetical order. Substitution on nitrogen is indicated by the locant *N*-.



3-Methylbutanamide



N-Ethyl-3-methylbutanamide

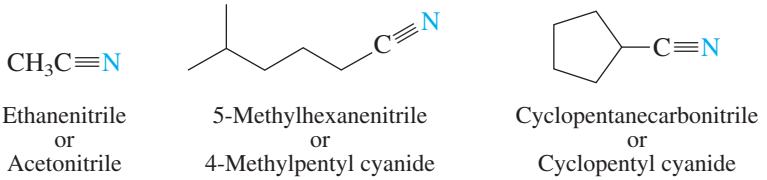


N-Ethyl-*N*,3-dimethylbutanamide

Similar to the *-carbonyl chloride* suffix for acyl chlorides, *-carboxamide* is used when an amide group is attached to a ring.

Nitriles: Substitutive IUPAC names for *nitriles* add the suffix *-nitrile* to the name of the parent hydrocarbon chain that includes the carbon of the cyano group. Nitriles may also be named by replacing the *-ic acid* or *-oic acid* ending of the corresponding carboxylic acid

with *-onitrile.* Alternatively, they are sometimes given functional class IUPAC names as alkyl cyanides. The suffix *-carbonitrile* is used when a —CN group is attached to a ring.



Ethanenitrile or Acetonitrile

5-Methylhexanenitrile or 4-Methylpentyl cyanide

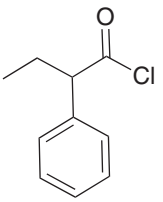
Cyclopentanecarbonitrile or Cyclopentyl cyanide

Problem 19.1

Write a structural formula for each of the following compounds:

(a) 2-Phenylbutanoyl chloride
(b) 2-Phenylbutanoic anhydride
(c) Butyl 2-phenylbutanoate
(d) 2-Phenylbutyl butanoate
(e) 2-Phenylbutanamide
(f) *N*-Ethyl-2-phenylbutanamide
(g) 2-Phenylbutanenitrile

Sample Solution (a) A 2-phenylbutanoyl group is a four-carbon acyl unit that bears a phenyl substituent at C-2. When the name of an acyl group is followed by the name of a halide, it designates an *acyl halide.*



2-Phenylbutanoyl chloride

19.2 Structure and Reactivity of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

The number of reactions in this chapter is quite large and keeping track of them all can be difficult—or it can be manageable. The key to making it manageable is the same as always: *structure determines properties.*

Figure 19.1 shows the structures of various derivatives of acetic acid (acetyl chloride, acetic anhydride, ethyl acetate and acetamide) arranged in order of decreasing reactivity toward nucleophilic acyl substitution. Acyl chlorides are the most reactive, amides the least reactive. The reactivity order:

$$\text{acyl chloride} > \text{anhydride} > \text{ester} > \text{amide}$$

is general for nucleophilic acyl substitution and well worth remembering. The range of reactivities is quite large; a factor of about 10^{13} in relative rate separates acyl chlorides from amides.

This difference in reactivity, especially toward hydrolysis, has an important result. We'll see in Chapter 25 that the structure and function of proteins are critical to life itself. The bonds mainly responsible for the structure of proteins are amide bonds, which are about 100 times more stable to hydrolysis than ester bonds. These amide bonds are stable enough to maintain the structural integrity of proteins in an aqueous environment, but susceptible enough to hydrolysis to be broken when the occasion demands.

What structural features are responsible for the reactivity order of carboxylic acid derivatives? Like the other carbonyl-containing compounds that we've studied, they all have a planar arrangement of bonds to the carbonyl group. Thus, all are about the same in offering relatively unhindered access to the approach of a nucleophile. They differ in the

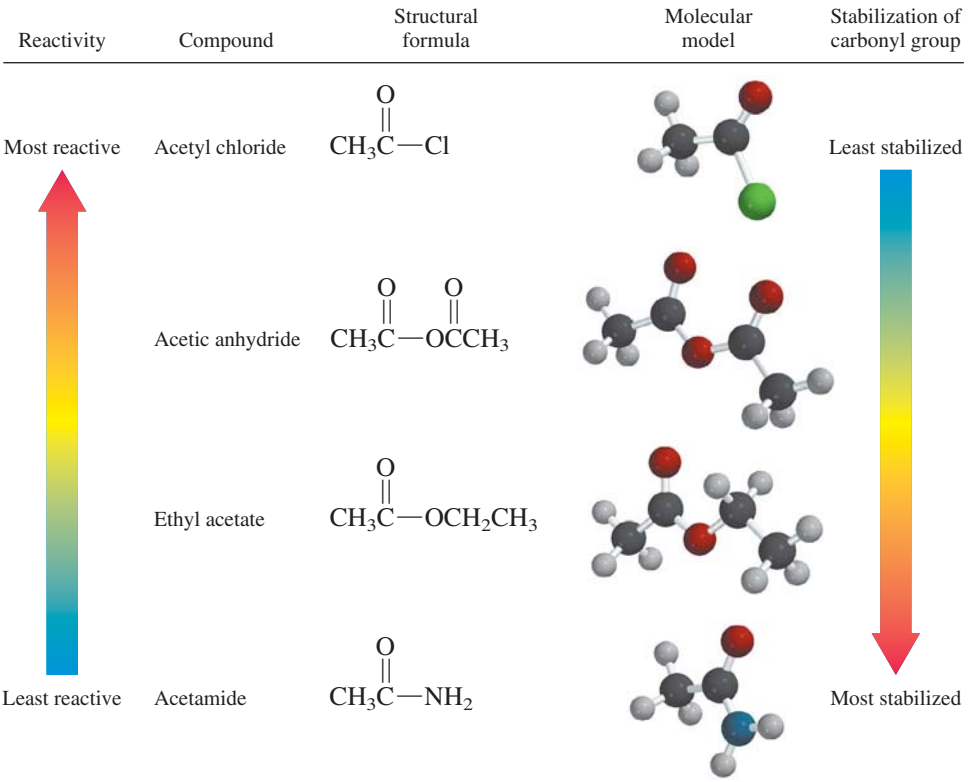
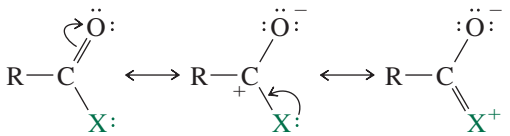


Figure 19.1

Structure, reactivity, and carbonyl-group stabilization in carboxylic acid derivatives. Acyl chlorides are the most reactive, amides the least reactive. Acyl chlorides have the least stabilized carbonyl group, amides the most. Conversion of one class of compounds to another is feasible only in the direction that leads to a more stabilized carbonyl group; that is, from more reactive to less reactive.

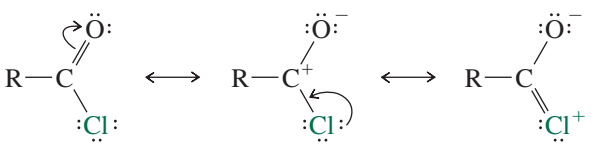
degree to which the atom attached to the carbonyl group can stabilize the carbonyl group by electron donation.



Electron release from the substituent X stabilizes the carbonyl group and makes it less electrophilic.

The order of reactivity of carboxylic acid derivatives toward nucleophilic acyl substitution can be explained on the basis of the electron-donating properties of substituent X. The greater the electron-donating powers of X, the slower the rate.

1. **Acyl chlorides:** Although chlorine has unshared electron pairs, it is a poor electron-pair donor in resonance of the type:

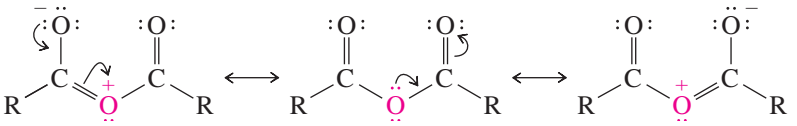


Lone-pair donation ineffective because of poor orbital overlap

Not a significant contributor

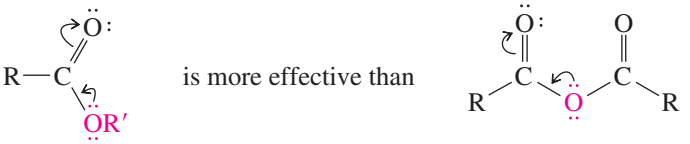
Because the C—Cl bond is so long, the lone-pair orbital ($3p$) of chlorine and the π orbital of the carbonyl group do not overlap sufficiently to permit delocalization of a chlorine unshared pair. Not only is the carbonyl group of an acyl chloride not stabilized by electron-pair donation, the electron-withdrawing inductive effect of chlorine makes it more electrophilic and more reactive toward nucleophiles.

2. **Acid anhydrides:** The carbonyl group of an acid anhydride is better stabilized by electron donation than the carbonyl group of an acyl chloride. Even though oxygen is more electronegative than chlorine, it is a far better electron-pair donor toward sp^2-hybridized carbon.



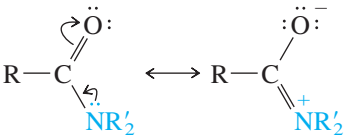
Working against this electron-delocalization is the fact that both carbonyl groups are competing for the same electron pair. Thus, the extent to which each one is stabilized is reduced.

3. **Esters:** Like acid anhydrides, the carbonyl group of an ester is stabilized by electron release from oxygen. Because there is only one carbonyl group, versus two in anhydrides, esters are stabilized more and are less reactive than anhydrides.



Ester Acid anhydride

4. **Amides:** Nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen; therefore, the carbonyl group of an amide is stabilized more than that of an ester.

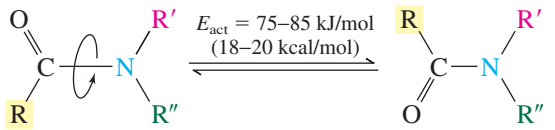


Very effective resonance stabilization

Amide resonance is a powerful stabilizing force and gives rise to a number of structural effects. Unlike the pyramidal arrangement of bonds in ammonia and amines, the bonds to nitrogen in amides lie in the same plane (Figure 19.2*a*). The carbon–nitrogen bond has considerable double-bond character and, at 135 pm, is substantially shorter than the normal 147 pm carbon–nitrogen single-bond distance observed in amines.

The barrier to rotation about the carbon–nitrogen bond in amides is 75–85 kJ/mol (18–20 kcal/mol).

Recall (Section 3.1) that the rotational barrier in ethane is only 12 kJ/mol (3 kcal/mol).



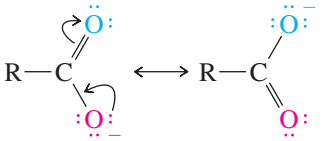
This is an unusually high rotational energy barrier for a single bond and indicates that the carbon–nitrogen bond has significant double-bond character, as the resonance and orbital overlap (Figure 19.2*b*) descriptions suggest.

Problem 19.2

Suggest an explanation for the fact that *N,N*-dimethylformamide [$(CH_3)_2NCH{=}O$] has signals for three nonequivalent carbons (δ 31.3, 36.4, and 162.6) in its ^{13}C NMR spectrum.

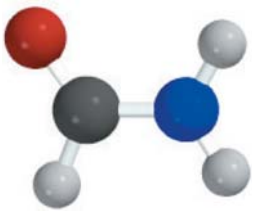
Electron release from nitrogen stabilizes the carbonyl group of amides and decreases the rate at which nucleophiles attack the carbonyl carbon.

An extreme example of carbonyl group stabilization is seen in carboxylate anions:

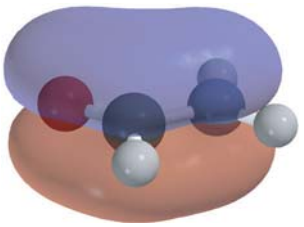


The negatively charged oxygen is a powerful electron donor to the carbonyl group. Resonance in carboxylate anions is more effective than resonance in carboxylic acids, acyl chlorides, anhydrides, esters, and amides. Carboxylate ions do not undergo nucleophilic acyl substitution.

Most methods for their preparation convert one class of carboxylic acid derivative to another by nucleophilic acyl substitution. The order of carbonyl group stabilization given in Figure 19.1 bears directly on the means by which these transformations may be achieved. A reaction that converts one carboxylic acid derivative to another that lies below it in the figure is practical; a reaction that converts it to one that lies above it is not. This is another way of saying that *one carboxylic acid derivative can be converted to another if the reaction leads to a more stabilized carbonyl group.* Numerous examples of reactions of this type will be presented in the sections that follow.



(*a*)



(*b*)

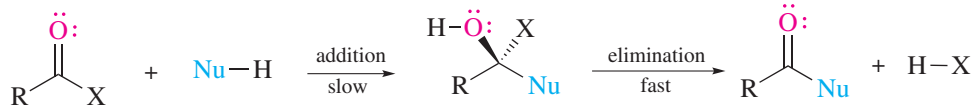
Figure 19.2

(*a*) Formamide ($HCNH_2$) is planar. Carbon and nitrogen are both sp^2-hybridized. (*b*) A π orbital generated by overlap of the 2*p* orbital of nitrogen and the π orbital of the carbonyl group allows delocalization of the nitrogen unshared pair.

19.3 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanisms

Experimental support exists for several different mechanisms of nucleophilic acyl substitution, three of which are introduced here.

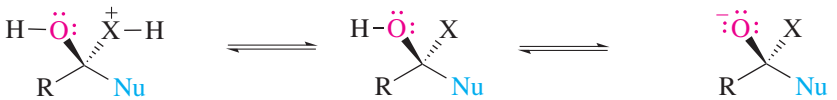
By far, the most common mechanism is *bimolecular* and involves what is referred to as a *tetrahedral intermediate (TI).* It incorporates two stages, formation of the TI by nucleophilic *addition* to the carbonyl group followed by an *elimination* that restores the carbonyl.



Carboxylic acid derivative | Nucleophile | Tetrahedral intermediate (TI) | Products

The first stage is rate-determining and analogous to nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group of an aldehyde or ketone. Many of the same nucleophiles that add to the carbonyl groups of aldehydes and ketones—water, alcohols, and amines—add to carbonyl groups of carboxylic acid derivatives and lead to the products of nucleophilic acyl substitution. Each stage can involve several steps, the precise nature of which depends on whether the reaction occurs in neutral, acidic, or basic solution.

The main features that complicate the mechanism involve acid–base chemistry and influence the form in which the reactants, intermediates, and products exist under the reaction conditions. Thus, the rate-determining step can involve formation of the tetrahedral intermediate as a cation (TI—H^+), anion (TI^-), or neutral species (TI) depending on the pH at which the reaction is carried out.

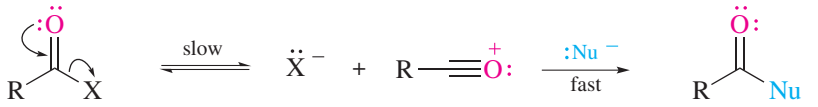


$TI-H^+$ | TI | TI^-

Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate | Tetrahedral intermediate | Conjugate base of tetrahedral intermediate

Once formed, the tetrahedral intermediate can revert to the original carboxylic acid derivative or go on to form the product of nucleophilic acyl substitution. As noted in the preceding section, the reactions generally proceed in the direction that converts a less stabilized carbonyl group to a more stable one.

Alternative mechanisms for nucleophilic acyl substitution are more limited in their scope. One is analogous to the S_N1 mechanism and involves rate-determining formation of an acylium ion.

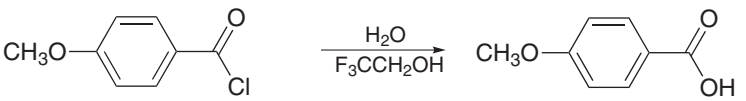


Carboxylic acid derivative — Acylium ion — Carboxylic acid derivative

Among carboxylic acid derivatives, this mechanism is observed only with acyl chlorides, and even then in only a limited number of cases.

Problem 19.3

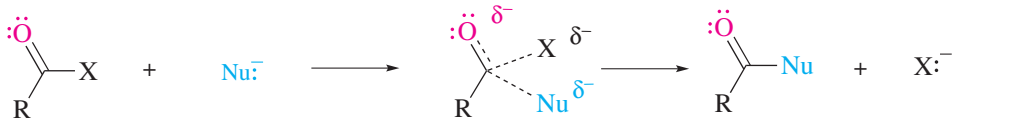
The reaction shown is believed to involve an acylium ion intermediate.



p-Methoxybenzoyl chloride — *p*-Methoxybenzoic acid

Write a structural formula for the acylium ion and describe the structural features that make it a plausible intermediate.

The third mechanism is an S_N2-like process with qualities akin to both the ionization and tetrahedral intermediate pathways.



Carboxylic acid derivative — Nucleophile — Transition state — Product — Anion of leaving group

This mechanism combines features of both the tetrahedral intermediate and acylium ion mechanisms. Like the tetrahedral intermediate mechanism, bond making to the nucleophile contributes to the transition state. Like the ionization mechanism, the bond to the leaving group is partially broken at the transition state. The latter makes it more likely to compete with the tetrahedral intermediate mechanism in reactions of acyl chlorides and less likely in reactions of anhydrides, esters, and amides.

19.4 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in Acyl Chlorides

One of the most useful reactions of acyl chlorides was presented in Section 12.7. Friedel–Crafts acylation of aromatic rings takes place when arenes are treated with acyl chlorides in the presence of aluminum chloride.

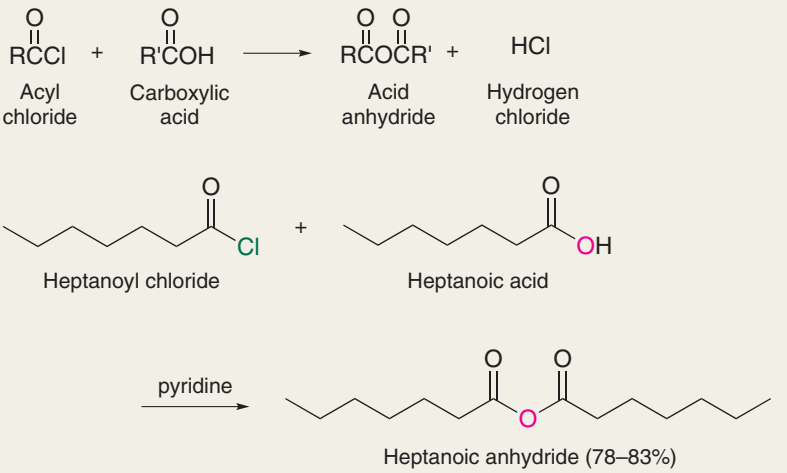
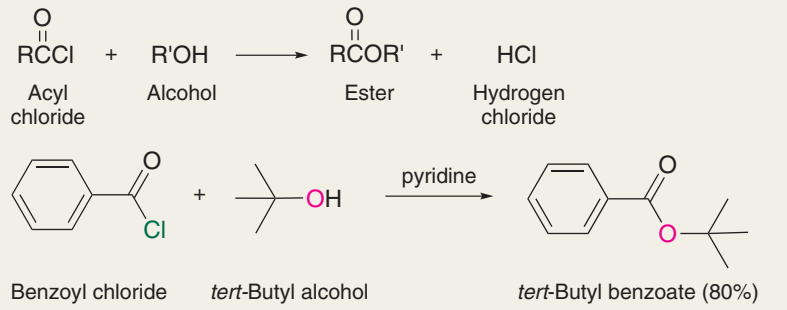
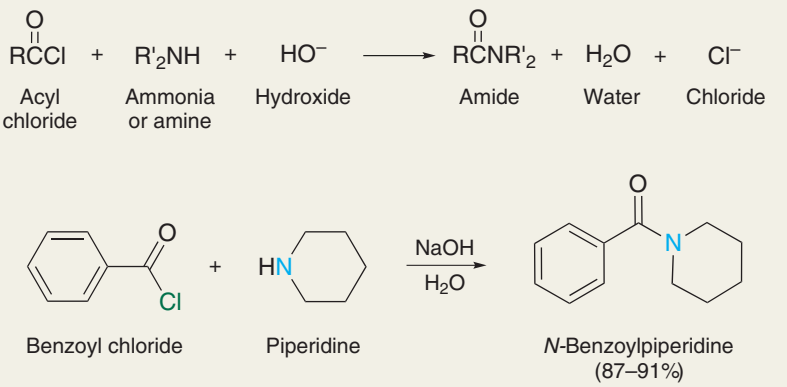
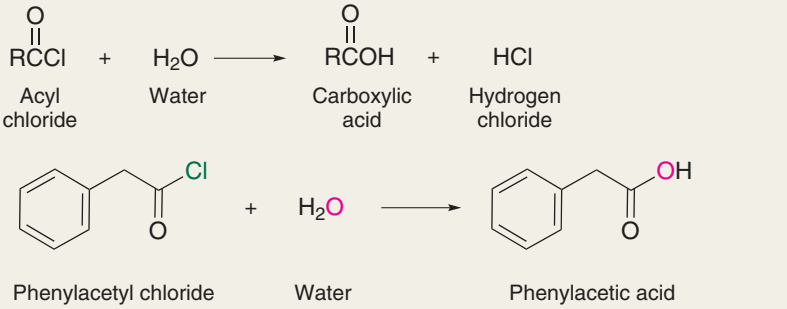
Among the various carboxylic acid derivatives, acyl chlorides are especially useful because they are readily converted to acid anhydrides, esters, and amides by nucleophilic acyl substitution (Table 19.1). Yields are high and the reaction rates are much greater than the corresponding rates of alkyl halides with the same nucleophiles. Benzoyl chloride, for example, is about 1,000 times more reactive than benzyl chloride toward hydrolysis at 25°C.

Problem 19.4

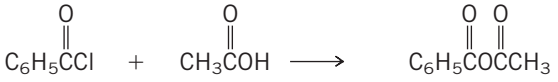
Use Table 19.1 to predict the major organic product obtained by reaction of benzoyl chloride with each of the following:

(a) Acetic acid
(b) Benzoic acid
(c) Ethanol
(d) Methylamine, CH_3NH_2
(e) Dimethylamine, $(CH_3)_2NH$
(f) Water

TABLE 19.1 Conversion of Acyl Chlorides to Other Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Reaction with carboxylic acids (see Section 19.4) Acyl chlorides react with carboxylic acids to yield acid anhydrides. When this reaction is used for preparative purposes, pyridine is normally added. Pyridine is a catalyst for the reaction and also acts as a base to neutralize the hydrogen chloride that is formed.	
Reaction with alcohols (see Section 15.8) Acyl chlorides react with alcohols to form esters. The reaction is typically carried out in the presence of pyridine.	
Reaction with ammonia and amines (see Section 19.14) Acyl chlorides react with ammonia and amines to form amides. A base such as sodium hydroxide is normally added to react with the hydrogen chloride produced.	
Hydrolysis (see Section 19.4) Acyl chlorides react with water to yield carboxylic acids. In base, the acid is converted to its carboxylate salt. The reaction has little preparative value because the acyl chloride is nearly always prepared from the carboxylic acid itself.	

Sample Solution (a) As noted in Table 19.1, the reaction of an acyl chloride with a carboxylic acid yields an acid anhydride.



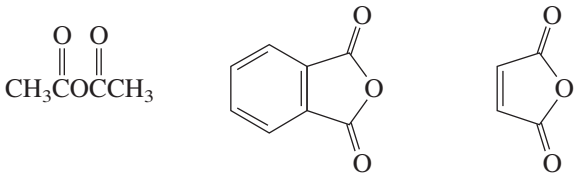
The product is a mixed anhydride. Acetic acid acts as a nucleophile and substitutes for chloride on the benzoyl group.

On examining the specific examples in Table 19.1, we see that nucleophilic substitutions of acyl chlorides are often carried out in the presence of pyridine. Pyridine is both a catalyst and a weak base. As a catalyst it increases the rate of acylation. As a base it prevents the build-up of HCl, which is a strong acid.

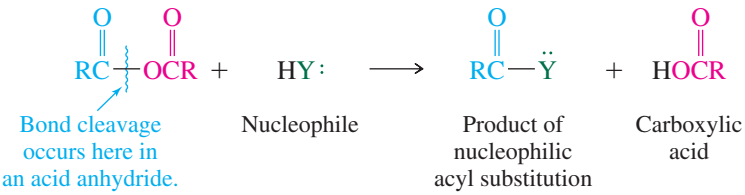
Table 19.1 concludes with the hydrolysis of acyl chlorides. Because acyl chlorides are themselves prepared by the reaction of carboxylic acids with thionyl chloride (Section 12.7), their hydrolysis is of little synthetic value.

19.5 Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in Acid Anhydrides

After acyl halides, acid anhydrides are the most reactive carboxylic acid derivatives. Although anhydrides can be prepared by reaction of carboxylic acids with acyl chlorides as was shown in Table 19.1, the three most commonly used anhydrides are industrial chemicals and are prepared by specialized methods. Phthalic anhydride and maleic anhydride, for example, are prepared from naphthalene and butane, respectively.



Acid anhydrides contain two acyl groups bonded to the same oxygen. In nucleophilic acyl substitution, one of these acyl groups becomes bonded to the nucleophilic atom. The other acyl group remains on oxygen to become part of a carboxylic acid.



Acid anhydrides are more stable and less reactive than acyl chlorides. Acetyl chloride, for example, undergoes hydrolysis about 100,000 times more rapidly than acetic anhydride at 25°C.

Table 19.2 gives examples of two reactions of acetic anhydride. In the first, the anhydride carbonyl is converted to the more stabilized carbonyl group of an ester; in the second, a more stabilized amide carbonyl results. Hydrolysis under neutral or acid-catalyzed conditions yields two moles of a carboxylic acid per mole of anhydride, but, like hydrolysis of acyl chlorides is of little preparative value and is not included in the table. Likewise, hydrolysis in aqueous base according to the following equation is omitted from the table.

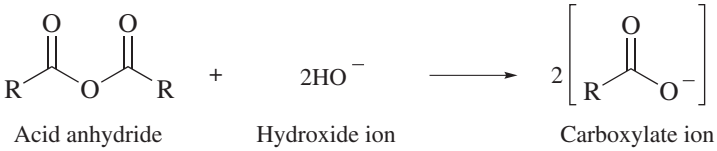
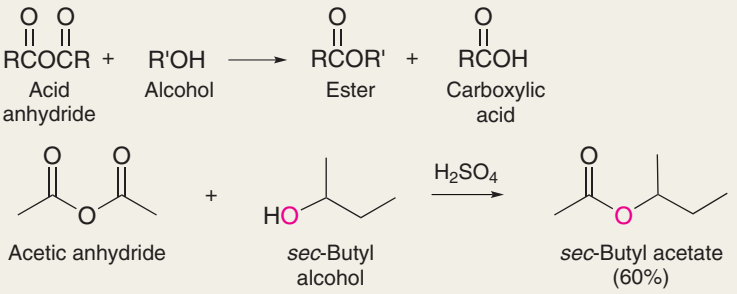
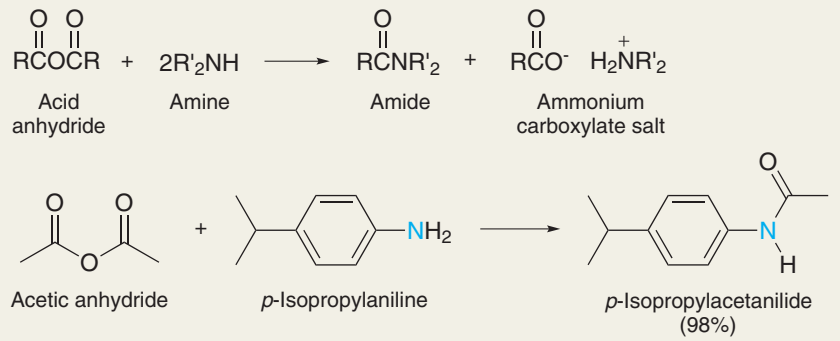


TABLE 19.2 Conversion of Acid Anhydrides to Other Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Reaction with alcohols (see Section 15.8) Acid anhydrides react with alcohols to form esters. The reaction may be carried out in the presence of pyridine or it may be catalyzed by acids. Only one acyl group of an anhydride is incorporated into the ester; the other becomes the acyl group of a carboxylic acid.	
Reaction with ammonia and amines (see Section 19.14) Acid anhydrides react with ammonia and amines to form amides. Only one acyl group of an anhydride is incorporated into the amide; the other becomes the acyl group of the amine salt of the carboxylic acid.	

Problem 19.5

Predict the major organic product of each of the following reactions.

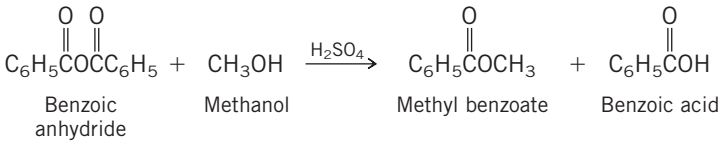
(a) Benzoic anhydride + methanol $\xrightarrow{H_2SO_4}$

(b) Acetic anhydride + ammonia (2 mol) ⟶

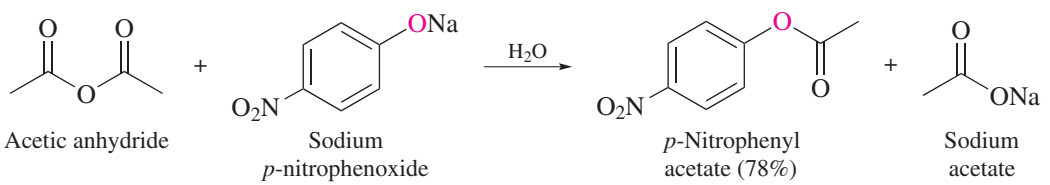
(c) Phthalic anhydride + $(CH_3)_2NH$ (2 mol) ⟶

(d) Phthalic anhydride + sodium hydroxide (2 mol) ⟶

Sample Solution (a) Nucleophilic acyl substitution by an alcohol on an acid anhydride yields an ester.



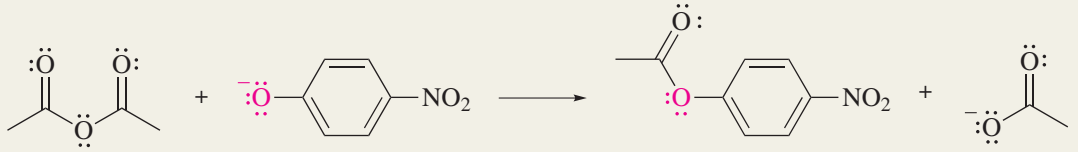
Mechanistically, nucleophilic acyl substitutions of anhydrides normally proceed by way of a tetrahedral intermediate. When the nucleophile is an anion, TI^- is the initial intermediate and its dissociation leads directly to the observed products as shown in Mechanism 19.1 for the reaction:



Mechanism 19.1

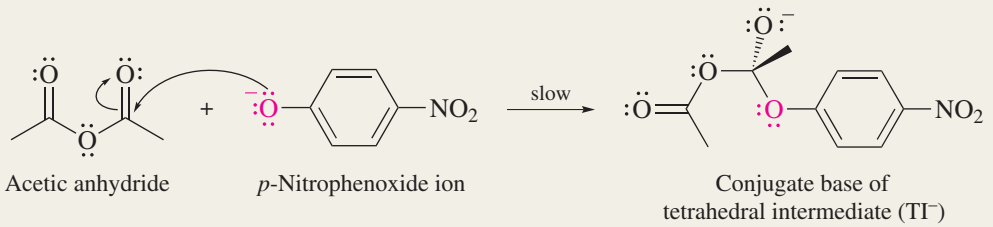
Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution in an Anhydride

THE OVERALL REACTION:

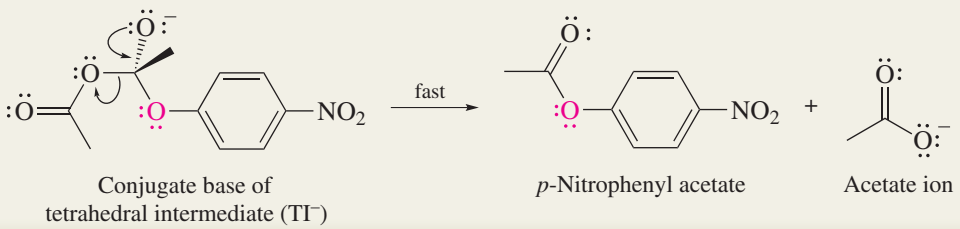


THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Nucleophilic addition of *p*-nitrophenoxide to one of the carbonyl groups of the anhydride gives the conjugate base of the tetrahedral intermediate (TI^-).

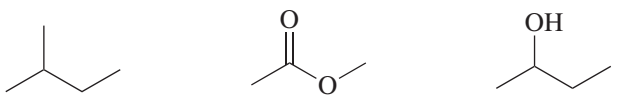


Step 2: Expulsion of acetate from TI^- restores the carbonyl group.



19.6 Physical Properties and Sources of Esters

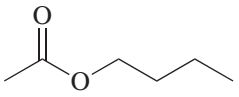
Esters are moderately polar, with dipole moments in the 1.5 to 2.0-D range. Dipole–dipole attractive forces give esters higher boiling points than hydrocarbons of similar shape and molecular weight. Because they lack hydroxyl groups, however, ester molecules cannot form hydrogen bonds to each other; consequently, esters have lower boiling points than alcohols of comparable molecular weight.



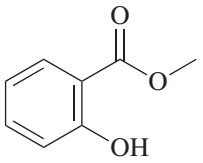
Esters can participate in hydrogen bonds with substances that contain hydroxyl groups (water, alcohols, carboxylic acids). This confers some measure of water solubility on low-molecular-weight esters; methyl acetate, for example, dissolves in water to the extent of 33 g/100 mL. Water solubility decreases as the carbon content of the ester increases.

Many esters occur naturally. Those of low molecular weight are fairly volatile, and many have pleasing odors. Esters often form a significant fraction of the fragrant oil of

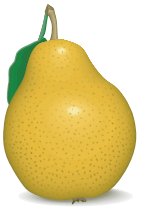
fruits and flowers. The aroma of oranges, for example, contains 30 different esters along with 10 carboxylic acids, 34 alcohols, 34 aldehydes and ketones, and 36 hydrocarbons.



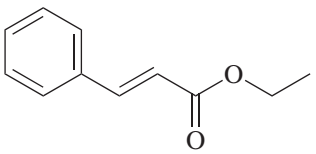
Butyl acetate
(contributes to characteristic pear odor)



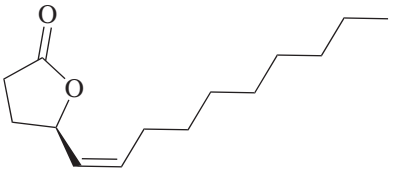
Methyl salicylate
(principal component of oil of wintergreen)



Among the chemicals used by insects to communicate with one another, esters occur frequently.



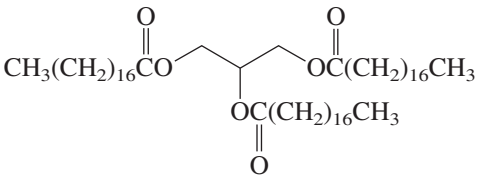
Ethyl cinnamate
(one of the constituents of the sex pheromone of the male oriental fruit moth)



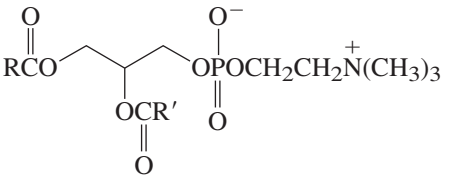
(*R*)-(*Z*)-5-Tetradecen-5-olide
(sex pheromone of the female Japanese beetle)

Notice that (*R*)-(*Z*)-5-tetradecen-4-olide is a cyclic ester. Recall from Section 18.15 that cyclic esters are called *lactones* and that the suffix *-olide* is characteristic of IUPAC names for lactones.

Esters of glycerol, called *glycerol triesters, triacylglycerols,* or *triglycerides,* are abundant natural products. The most important group of glycerol triesters includes those in which each acyl group is unbranched and has 14 or more carbon atoms. Structurally related phosphatidylcholine is a component of cell membranes (Section 24.4).



Tristearin, a trioctadecanoyl ester of glycerol found in many animal and vegetable fats



Phosphatidylcholine
(R and R′ are carbon chains)

A molecular model of tristearin is shown in Figure 24.2.

Fats and **oils** are naturally occurring mixtures of glycerol triesters. Fats are mixtures that are solids at room temperature; oils are liquids. The long-chain carboxylic acids obtained from fats and oils by hydrolysis are known as **fatty acids.**

The chief methods used to prepare esters are reviewed in Table 19.3.

19.7 Reactions of Esters: A Preview

Nucleophilic acyl substitutions of esters are summarized in Table 19.4. Esters are less reactive than acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides. Nucleophilic acyl substitution in esters, especially ester hydrolysis, has been extensively investigated from a mechanistic perspective. Indeed, much of what we know concerning the general topic of nucleophilic acyl substitution comes from studies carried out on esters. The following sections describe those mechanistic studies.

TABLE 19.3 Preparation of Esters

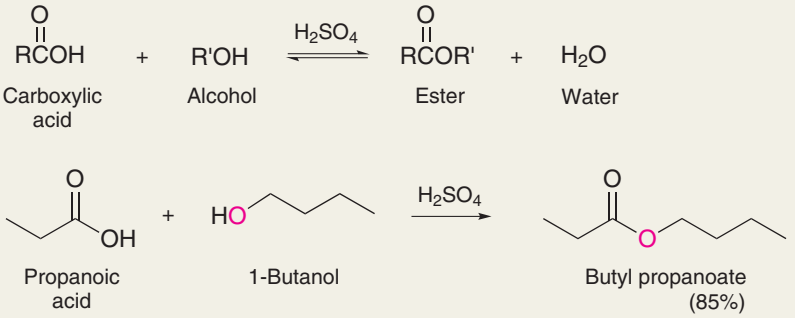
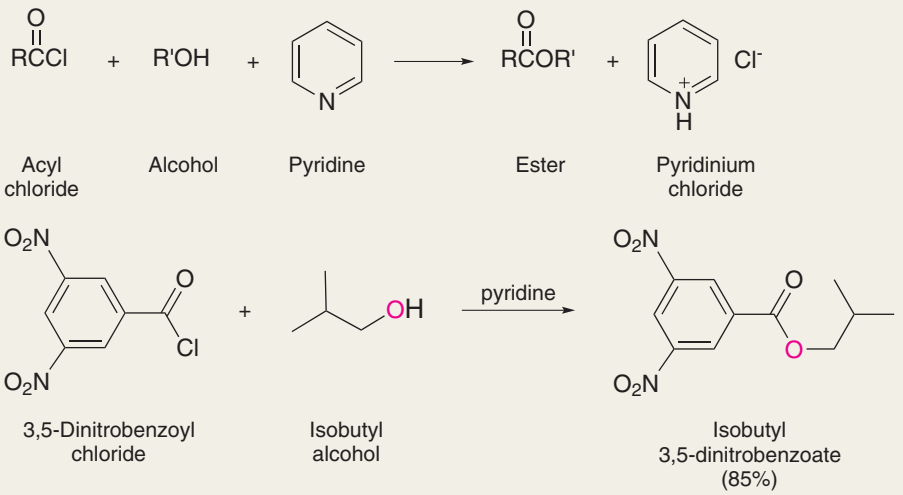
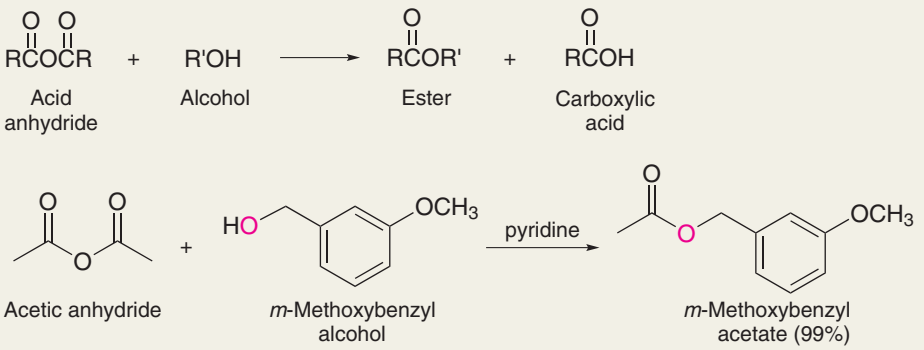
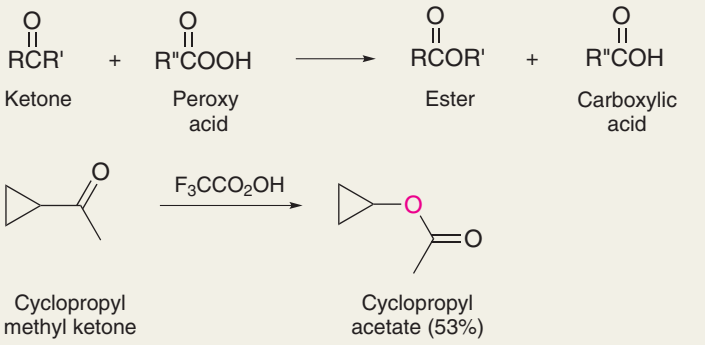
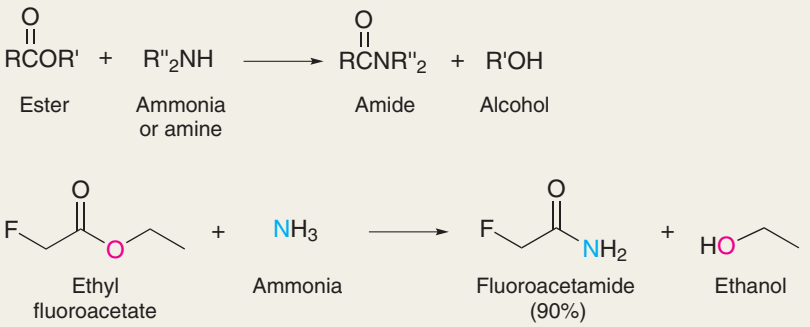
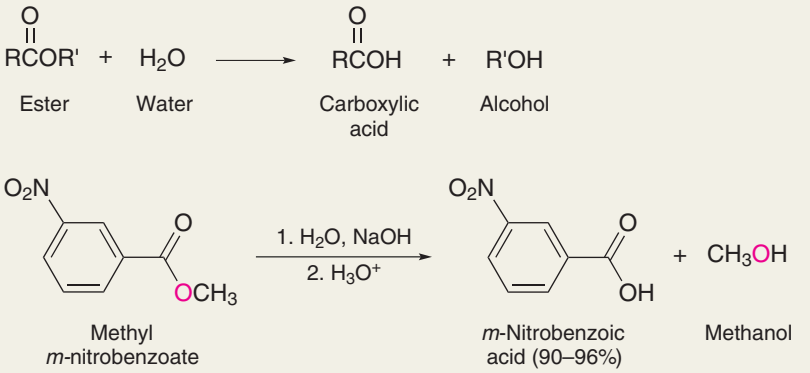
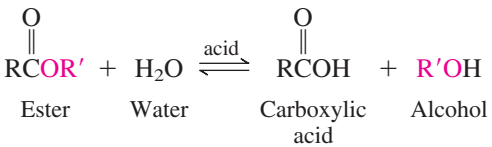
Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
From carboxylic acids (see Sections 15.8 and 18.14) In the presence of an acid catalyst, alcohols and carboxylic acids react to form an ester and water. This is the Fischer esterification. The yield of ester can be increased beyond the equilibrium amount by removing the water as it is formed.	
From acyl chlorides (see Sections 15.8 and 19.4) Alcohols react with acyl chlorides by nucleophilic acyl substitution to yield esters. These reactions are typically performed in the presence of a weak base such as pyridine.	
From acid anhydrides (see Sections 15.8 and 19.5) Acyl transfer from an acid anhydride to an alcohol is a standard method for preparing esters. The reaction is subject to catalysis by either acids (H_2SO_4) or bases (pyridine).	
Baeyer–Villiger oxidation of ketones (see Descriptive Passage 17) Ketones are converted to esters on treatment with peroxy acids. The reaction proceeds by migration of the group R′ from carbon to oxygen. It is the more highly substituted group that migrates. Methyl ketones give acetate esters.	

TABLE 19.4 Conversion of Esters to Other Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

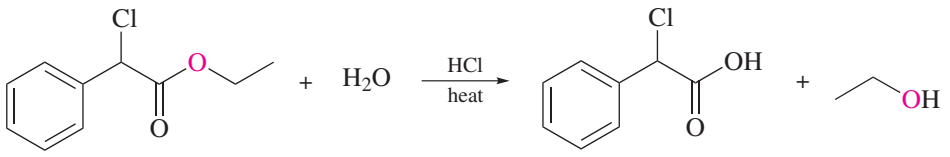
Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Reaction with ammonia and amines (see Section 19.10) Esters react with ammonia and amines to form amides. Methyl and ethyl esters are the most reactive.	
Hydrolysis (see Sections 19.8 and 19.9) Ester hydrolysis may be catalyzed either by acids or by bases. Acid-catalyzed hydrolysis is an equilibrium-controlled process and the reverse of the Fischer esterification. Hydrolysis in base, called saponification, is irreversible and is the method usually chosen for preparative purposes.	

19.8 Acid-Catalyzed Ester Hydrolysis

Ester hydrolysis is the most studied and best understood of all nucleophilic acyl substitutions. Esters are fairly stable in neutral aqueous media but are cleaved when heated with water in the presence of strong acids or bases. The hydrolysis of esters in dilute aqueous acid is the reverse of the Fischer esterification (Sections 15.8 and 18.14):

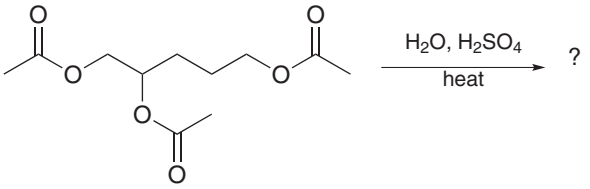


When esterification is the objective, water is removed from the reaction mixture to encourage ester formation. When ester hydrolysis is the objective, the reaction is carried out in the presence of a generous excess of water. Both reactions illustrate the application of Le Châtelier's principle (Section 6.7) to organic synthesis.



Problem 19.6

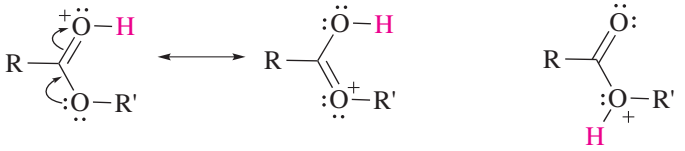
The compound having the structure shown was heated with dilute sulfuric acid to give a product having the molecular formula $C_5H_{12}O_3$ in 63–71% yield. Propose a reasonable structure for this product. What other organic compound is formed in this reaction?



The pathway for acid-catalyzed ester hydrolysis is given in Mechanism 19.2. It is precisely the reverse of the mechanism given for acid-catalyzed ester formation in Section 18.14. Like other nucleophilic acyl substitutions, it proceeds in two stages. A tetrahedral intermediate is formed in the first stage, and this tetrahedral intermediate dissociates to products in the second stage.

A key feature of the first stage (steps 1–3) is the site at which the starting ester is protonated. Protonation of the carbonyl oxygen, as shown in step 1 of Mechanism 19.2, gives a cation that is stabilized by electron delocalization. The alternative site of protonation, the alkoxy oxygen, gives rise to a much less stable cation.

Protonation of carbonyl oxygen ***Protonation of alkoxy oxygen***



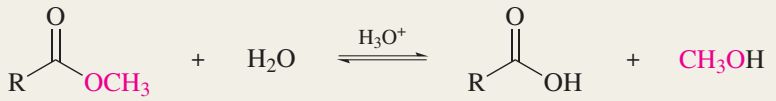
Positive charge is delocalized.

Positive charge is localized on a single oxygen.

Mechanism 19.2

Acid-Catalyzed Ester Hydrolysis

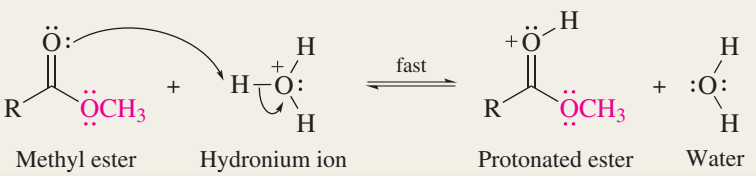
THE OVERALL REACTION:



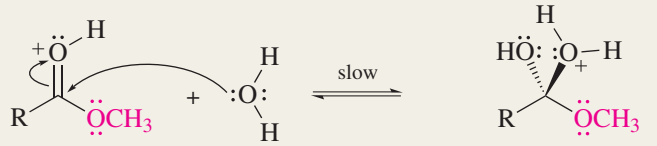
THE MECHANISM:

First Stage: Formation of the tetrahedral intermediate Steps 1–3 are analogous to the mechanism of acid-catalyzed hydration of an aldehyde or ketone.

Step 1: Protonation of the carbonyl oxygen of the ester

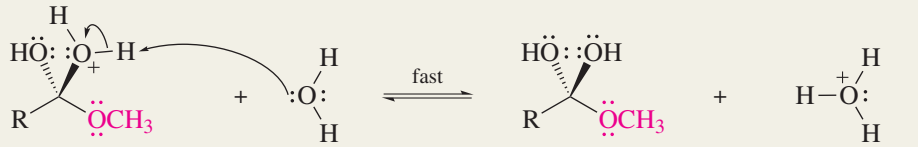


Step 2: Nucleophilic addition of water to the protonated ester



Protonated ester | Water | Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate (TI–H$^+$)

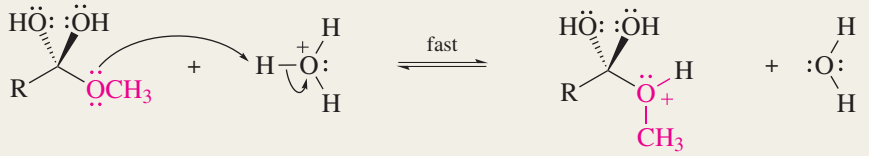
Step 3: Deprotonation of TI—H$^+$ to give the neutral form of the tetrahedral intermediate (TI)



Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate (TI–H$^+$) | Water | Tetrahedral intermediate (TI) | Hydronium ion

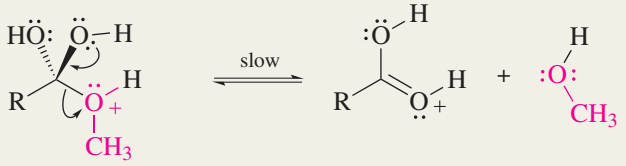
Second Stage: Dissociation of the tetrahedral intermediate Just as steps 1–3 corresponded to addition of water to the carbonyl group, steps 4–6 correspond to elimination of an alcohol, in this case methanol, from the TI and a restoration of the carbonyl group.

Step 4: Protonation of the alkoxy oxygen of the tetrahedral intermediate



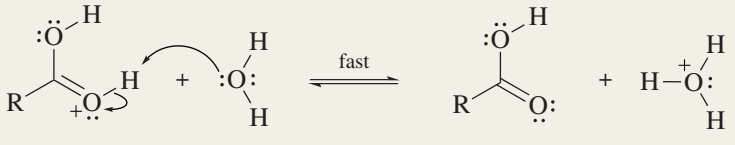
Tetrahedral intermediate (TI) | Hydronium ion | Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate (TI–H$^+$) | Water

Step 5: Dissociation of the protonated form of the tetrahedral intermediate gives the alcohol and the protonated form of the carboxylic acid



Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate (TI–H$^+$) | Protonated carboxylic acid | Methanol

Step 6: Deprotonation of the protonated carboxylic acid completes the process



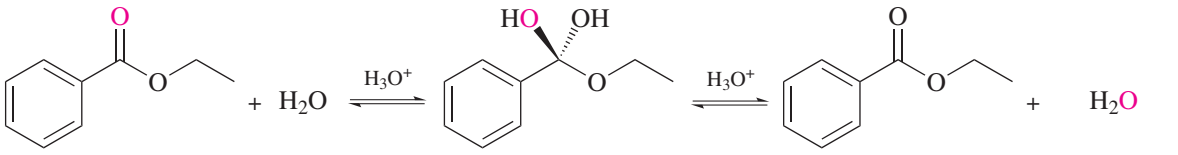
Protonated carboxylic acid | Water | Carboxylic acid | Hydronium ion

Protonation of the carbonyl oxygen makes the carbonyl group more electrophilic. A water molecule adds to the carbonyl group of the protonated ester in step 2. Loss of a proton from the resulting alkyloxonium ion gives the neutral form of the tetrahedral intermediate in step 3 and completes the first stage of the mechanism. In step 4 of Mechanism 19.2, protonation of the tetrahedral intermediate at its alkoxy oxygen gives a new oxonium ion, which loses a molecule of alcohol in step 5. Along with the alcohol, the protonated form of the carboxylic acid arises by dissociation of the tetrahedral intermediate. Its deprotonation in step 6 completes the process.

Problem 19.7

On the basis of the general mechanism for acid-catalyzed ester hydrolysis shown in Mechanism 19.2, write an analogous sequence of steps for the specific case of ethyl benzoate hydrolysis.

The most important species in the mechanism for ester hydrolysis is the tetrahedral intermediate. Evidence in support of its existence was developed by Professor Myron Bender on the basis of labeling experiments he carried out at the University of Chicago. Bender prepared ethyl benzoate, labeled with the mass-18 isotope of the carbonyl oxygen, then subjected it to acid-catalyzed hydrolysis in ordinary (unlabeled) water. He found that ethyl benzoate, recovered from the reaction before hydrolysis was complete, had lost a portion of its isotopic label. This observation is consistent only with the reversible formation of a tetrahedral intermediate under the reaction conditions:

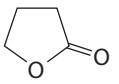


^{18}O-Labeled ethyl benzoate — Water — Tetrahedral intermediate — Ethyl benzoate — ^{18}O-Labeled water

The two OH groups in the tetrahedral intermediate are equivalent, and so either the labeled or the unlabeled one can be lost when the tetrahedral intermediate reverts to ethyl benzoate. Both are retained when the tetrahedral intermediate goes on to form benzoic acid.

Problem 19.8

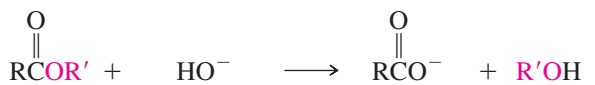
In a similar experiment, unlabeled 4-butanolide was allowed to stand in an acidic solution in which the water had been labeled with ^{18}O. When the lactone was extracted from the solution after four days, it was found to contain ^{18}O. Which oxygen of the lactone do you think became isotopically labeled?



4-Butanolide

19.9 Ester Hydrolysis in Base: Saponification

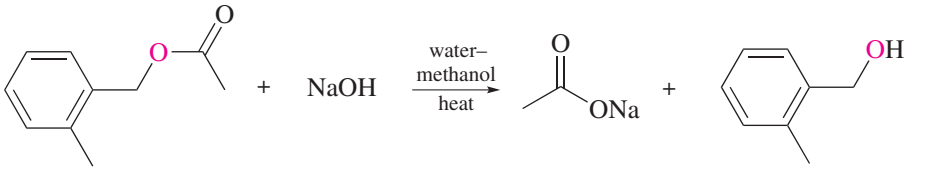
Unlike its acid-catalyzed counterpart, ester hydrolysis in aqueous base is *irreversible.*



Ester — Hydroxide ion — Carboxylate ion — Alcohol

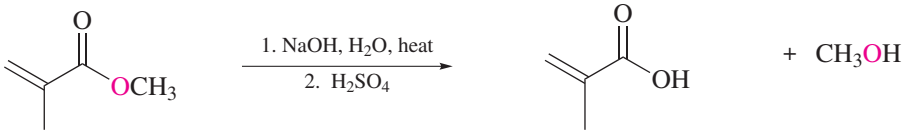
Because it is consumed, hydroxide ion is a reactant, not a catalyst.

This is because carboxylic acids are converted to their corresponding carboxylate anions, which are stable under the reaction conditions.



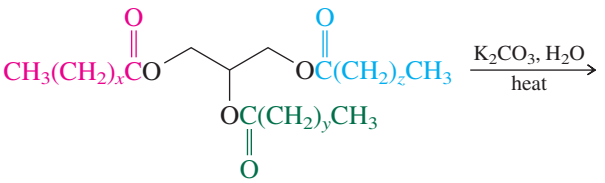
o-Methylbenzyl acetate | Sodium hydroxide | Sodium acetate | *o*-Methylbenzyl alcohol (95–97%)

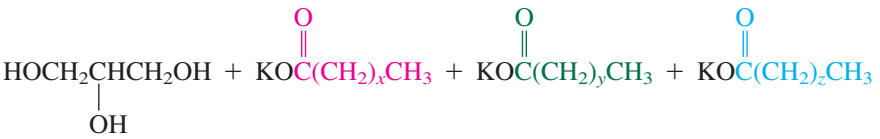
To isolate the carboxylic acid, a separate acidification step following hydrolysis is necessary. Acidification converts the carboxylate salt to the free acid.



Methyl 2-methylpropenoate (methyl methacrylate) | 2-Methylpropenoic acid (87%) (methacrylic acid) | Methanol

Ester hydrolysis in base is called **saponification,** which means "soap making." Over 2000 years ago, the Phoenicians made soap by heating animal fat with wood ashes. Animal fat is rich in glycerol triesters, and wood ashes are a source of potassium carbonate. Basic hydrolysis of the fats produced a mixture of long-chain carboxylic acids as their potassium salts.





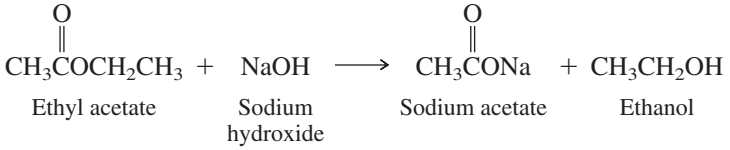
Glycerol | Potassium carboxylate salts

Potassium and sodium salts of long-chain carboxylic acids form micelles that dissolve grease (Section 18.7) and have cleansing properties. The carboxylic acids obtained by saponification of fats and oils are called *fatty acids.*

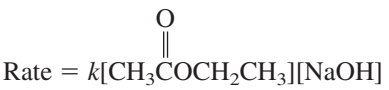
Problem 19.9

Trimyristin is obtained from coconut oil and has the molecular formula $C_{45}H_{86}O_6$. On being heated with aqueous sodium hydroxide followed by acidification, trimyristin was converted to glycerol and tetradecanoic acid as the only products. What is the structure of trimyristin?

In one of the earliest kinetic studies of an organic reaction, carried out in the nineteenth century, the rate of hydrolysis of ethyl acetate in aqueous sodium hydroxide was found to be first order in ester and first order in base.



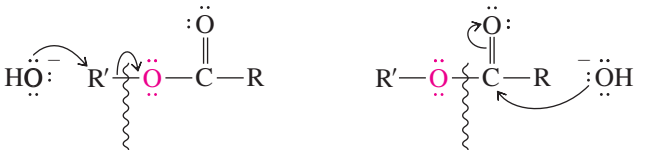
Ethyl acetate | Sodium hydroxide | Sodium acetate | Ethanol



Overall, the reaction exhibits second-order kinetics. Both the ester and the base are involved in the rate-determining step or in a rapid step that precedes it.

Two processes consistent with second-order kinetics both involve hydroxide ion as a nucleophile but differ in the site of nucleophilic attack. One is an S_N2 reaction, the other is nucleophilic acyl substitution.

S_N2 ***Nucleophilic acyl substitution***



Bond between O and alkyl group R′ breaks

Bond between O and acyl group RC═O breaks

Convincing evidence that ester hydrolysis in base proceeds by a *nucleophilic acyl substitution* mechanism has been obtained from several sources. In one experiment, ethyl propanoate labeled with ^{18}O in the ethoxy group was hydrolyzed. On isolating the products, all the ^{18}O was found in the ethyl alcohol; none was in the sodium propanoate.

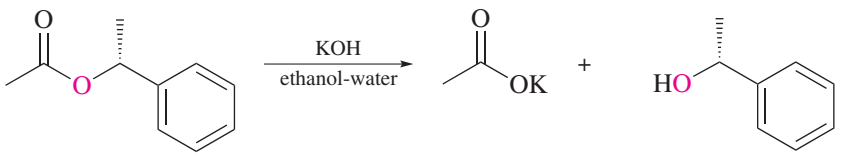
^{18}O-labeled ethyl propanoate | Sodium hydroxide | Sodium propanoate | ^{18}O-labeled ethyl alcohol

The carbon–oxygen bond broken in the process is therefore the one between oxygen and the acyl group. The bond between oxygen and the ethyl group remains intact. An S_N2 reaction at the ethyl group would have broken this bond.

Problem 19.10

In a similar experiment, pentyl acetate was subjected to saponification with ^{18}O-labeled hydroxide in ^{18}O-labeled water. What product do you think became isotopically labeled here, acetate ion or 1-pentanol?

Identical conclusions come from stereochemical studies. Saponification of esters of optically active alcohols proceeds with *retention of configuration.*



(*R*)-(+)-1-Phenylethyl acetate | Potassium acetate | (*R*)-(+)-1-Phenylethanol (80% yield)

None of the bonds to the chirality center is broken when hydroxide attacks the carbonyl group. Had an S_N2 reaction occurred instead, inversion of configuration at the chirality center would have taken place to give (*S*)-(−)-1-phenylethyl alcohol.

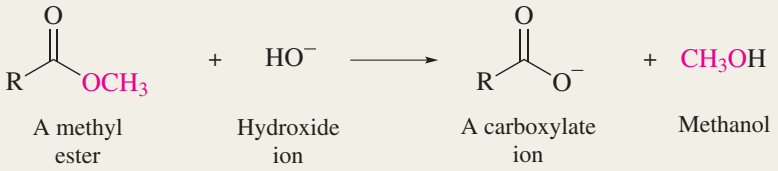
In an extension of his work described in the preceding section, Bender showed that basic ester hydrolysis, like acid hydrolysis, takes place by way of a tetrahedral intermediate. The nature of the experiment was the same, and the results were similar to those observed in the acid-catalyzed reaction.

The observation of second-order kinetics, nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl group, and the involvement of a tetrahedral intermediate are accommodated by Mechanism 19.3. Like the acid-catalyzed mechanism, it has two distinct stages, namely, formation of the

Mechanism 19.3

Ester Hydrolysis in Basic Solution

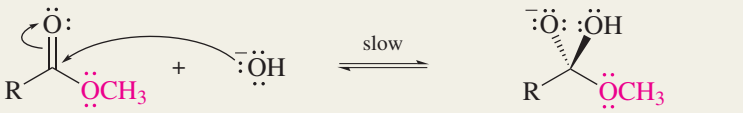
THE OVERALL REACTION:



A methyl ester + Hydroxide ion → A carboxylate ion + Methanol

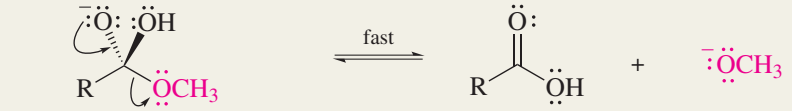
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Nucleophilic addition of hydroxide to the carbonyl group



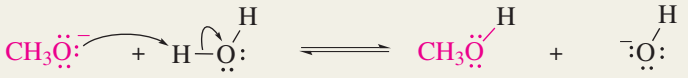
Methyl ester + Hydroxide ion ⇌ Conjugate base of tetrahedral intermediate (TI^-)

Step 2: Dissociation of the anionic tetrahedral intermediate TI^-



Conjugate base of tetrahedral intermediate (TI^-) ⇌ Carboxylic acid + Methoxide ion

Step 3: Proton transfers yield an alcohol and a carboxylate ion



Methoxide ion + Water ⇌ Methanol + Hydroxide ion

Carboxylic acid (stronger acid) + Hydroxide ion (stronger base) → Carboxylate ion (weaker base) + Water (weaker acid)

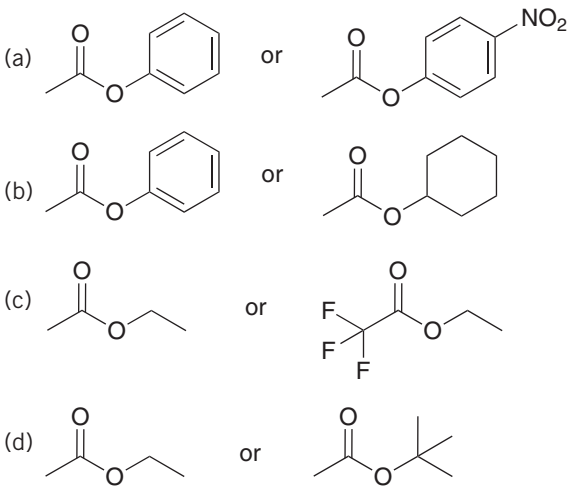
tetrahedral intermediate and its subsequent dissociation. Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group has a higher activation energy than dissociation of the tetrahedral intermediate; step 1 is rate-determining. All the steps are reversible except the last one. The equilibrium constant for proton abstraction from the carboxylic acid by hydroxide in step 3 is so large that it makes the overall reaction irreversible.

Problem 19.11

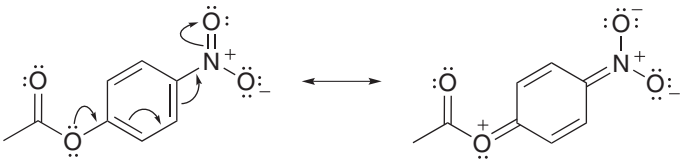
On the basis of the general mechanism for basic ester hydrolysis shown in Mechanism 19.3, write an analogous sequence of steps for the saponification of ethyl benzoate.

Problem 19.12

Which ester in each pair would be expected to undergo saponification at the faster rate? Why?

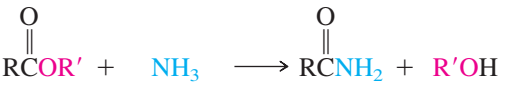


Sample Solution (a) *p*-Nitrophenyl acetate reacts faster. A *p*-nitrophenyl group withdraws electrons from the ester oxygen which decreases its ability to stabilize the carbonyl group. A less-stabilized carbonyl is more reactive than a more-stabilized one.

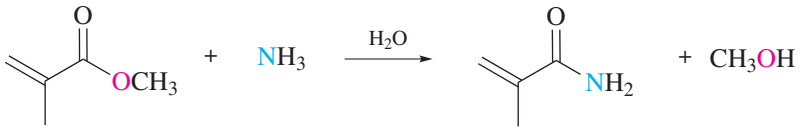


19.10 Reaction of Esters with Ammonia and Amines

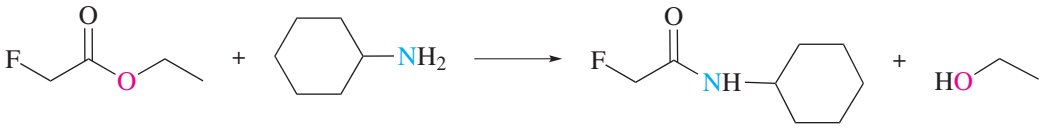
Esters react with ammonia to form amides.



Ammonia is more nucleophilic than water, making it possible to carry out this reaction using aqueous ammonia.



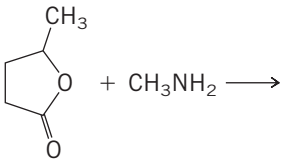
Amines react similarly:



The amine must be primary (RNH_2) or secondary (R_2NH). Tertiary amines (R_3N) cannot form amides because they have no proton on nitrogen that can be replaced by an acyl group.

Problem 19.13

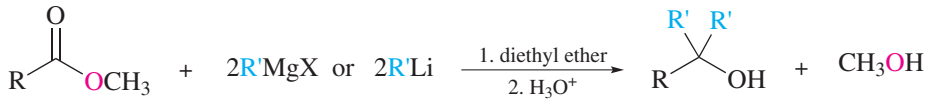
Give the structure of the expected product of the following reaction:



The reaction of ammonia and amines with esters follows the same general mechanistic course as other nucleophilic acyl substitutions. A tetrahedral intermediate is formed in the first stage of the process and dissociates in the second stage.

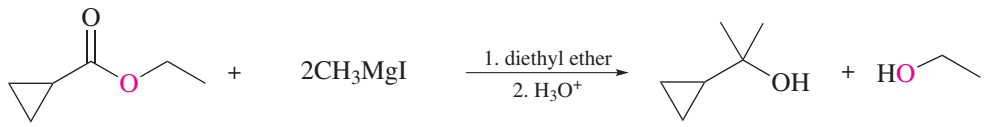
19.11 Reaction of Esters with Grignard and Organolithium Reagents and Lithium Aluminum Hydride

Esters react with two equivalents of a Grignard or organolithium reagent to give tertiary alcohols. Methyl and ethyl esters are normally used.



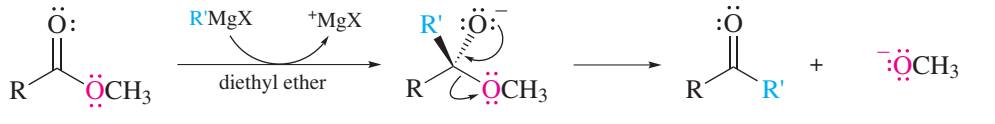
Methyl ester | Grignard or organolithium reagent | Tertiary alcohol | Methanol

Two of the groups bonded to the hydroxyl-bearing carbon are the same because both are derived from the organometallic reagent.



Ethyl cyclopropanecarboxylate | Methylmagnesium iodide | 2-Cyclopropyl-2-propanol (93%) | Ethanol

The mechanism of the reaction begins with nucleophilic addition of the reagent to the carbonyl group to give a tetrahedral intermediate, which dissociates, giving a ketone.



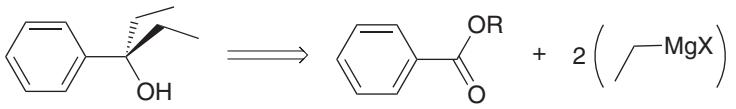
Methyl ester | TI⁻ | Ketone | Methoxide ion

Once formed, the ketone intermediate reacts rapidly with the Grignard or organolithium reagent and gives the tertiary alcohol after the usual workup procedure. The ketone is more reactive toward nucleophilic addition than the starting ester; therefore, the reaction cannot be used as a synthesis of ketones by using equimolar amounts of ester and Grignard or organolithium reagent.

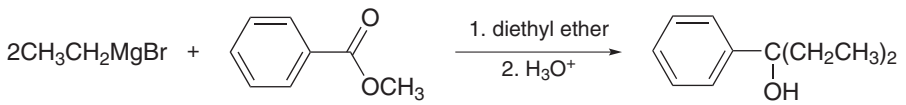
Problem 19.14

What combination of ester and Grignard reagent could you use to prepare each of the following tertiary alcohols?

Sample Solution (a) Tertiary alcohols that have two equivalent groups attached to the C—OH unit are prepared using the Grignard reagent corresponding to those equivalent groups. Retrosynthetically:



An appropriate synthesis is:



Ethylmagnesium bromide | Methyl benzoate | 3-Phenyl-3-pentanol

Problem 19.15

Which aldehyde is an intermediate in the reduction of ethyl benzoate with lithium aluminum hydride?

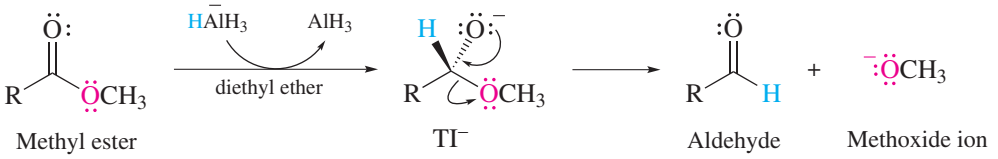
Problem 19.16

Give the structure of an ester that will yield a mixture containing equimolar amounts of 1-propanol and 2-propanol on reduction with lithium aluminum hydride.

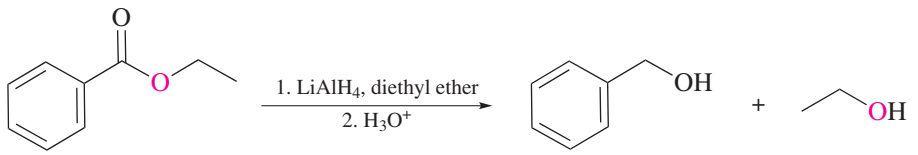
19.12 Amides

Physical Properties of Amides: Earlier in this chapter (see Section 19.2) we noted several of the ways in which electron donation from nitrogen to the carbonyl group affects various structural features of amides. To review, the hybridization of nitrogen in amides is sp^2, and the bonds to nitrogen lie in the same plane. The CN bond is shorter in amides, and

Lithium aluminum hydride reduction of esters follows a similar pattern, giving first an aldehyde as an intermediate, which is then rapidly reduced to a primary alcohol.

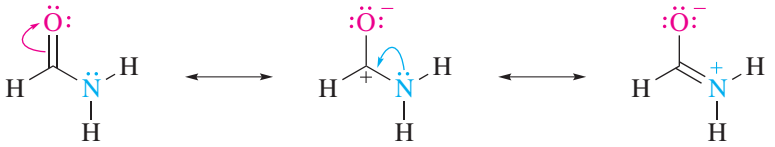


Methyl ester | TI^- | Aldehyde | Methoxide ion



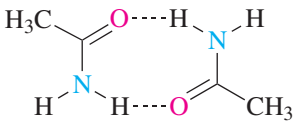
Ethyl benzoate | Benzyl alcohol (90%) | Ethyl alcohol

the activation energy for rotation about this bond is greater than in amines. According to the resonance picture of formamide, all these properties are consistent with significant CN double bond character as expressed in contributor C.



A B C

Of the major classes of organic compounds, amides rank among the most polar. As shown in Table 19.5, acetamide, *N*-methylacetamide, and *N,N*-dimethylacetamide have dipole moments that range from 3.8–4.4 D compared with 1.9 for acetic acid. This increased polarity leads to stronger intermolecular attractive forces and causes the boiling points of the amides to be higher. They also contribute to higher melting points for the two amides that contain N—H bonds. *N,N*-Dimethylacetamide does not participate in the hydrogen bonds that characterize the solid phase and has a lower melting point than acetic acid. On the other hand, acetamide has two N—H protons capable of hydrogen bonding and is composed of flat sheets of hydrogen-bonded dimers stacked on top of each other in the crystal.



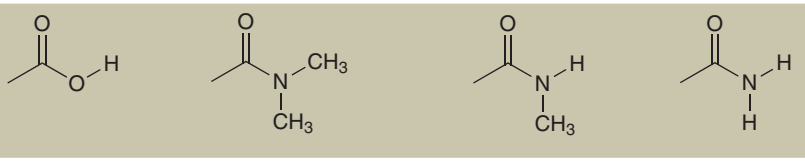
Problem 19.17

Compare *N*-methylacetamide with its amide isomers propanamide and *N,N*-dimethylformamide. Which do you predict has the highest boiling point? The lowest?

Intermolecular hydrogen bonding in amides, along with the planar geometry of the amide functional group, are the two most important factors governing the conformation of protein chains. We'll learn more about this in Chapter 25.

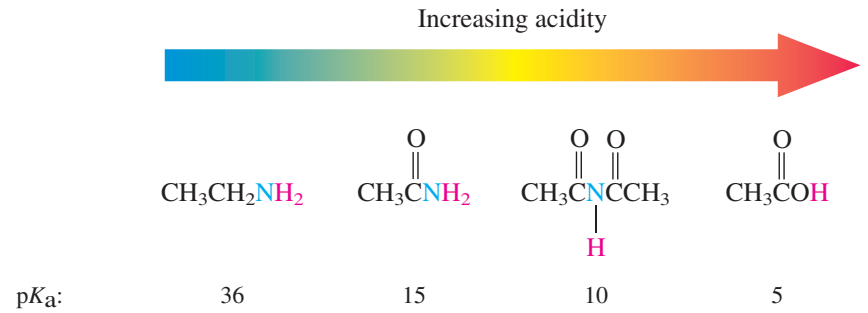
Acidity of Amides: Because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen, the N—H group of an amide is a weaker acid than the O—H of a carboxylic acid. Typical primary amides have pK_a's near 16, which makes them about as acidic as water. The presence of

TABLE 19.5 Intermolecular Forces in Amides



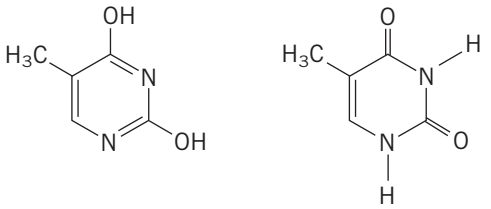
	Acetic acid	*N,N*-Dimethylacetamide	*N*-Methylacetamide	Acetamide
Number of hydrogens available for hydrogen bonds	1	0	1	2
Dipole moment, D	1.9	3.8	4.4	3.9
Melting point, °C	17	–20	31	80
Boiling point, °C	118	165	206	221

the carbonyl group makes amides stronger acids and weaker bases than amines. Amides in which two carbonyl groups are bonded to the same nitrogen are called **imides** and have pK_a values near 10.

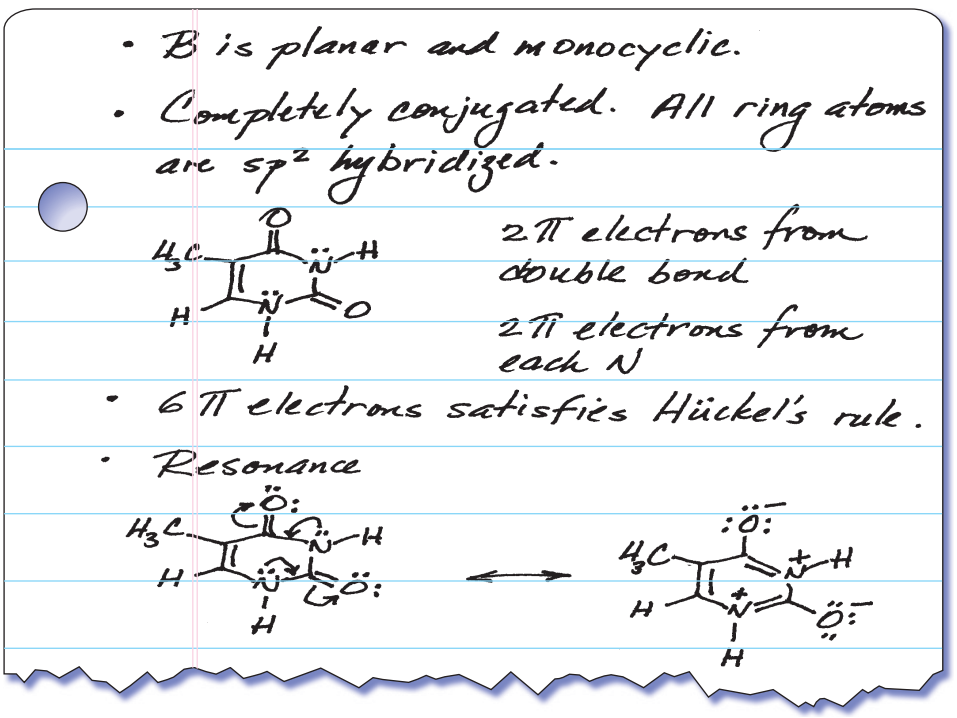


Problem 19.18

The pyrimidine thymine, present in DNA, was once thought to be A because A is analogous to benzene. In fact, thymine is B, which is also aromatic. Explain how B satisfies Hückel's rule, and write a contributing resonance structure for B that has a benzene-like ring.



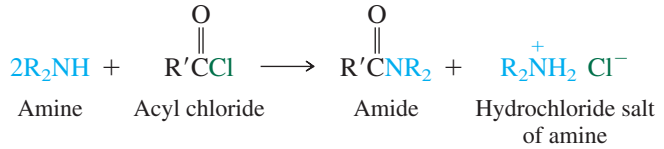
A. B.

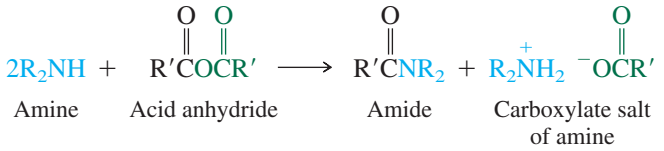


Synthesis of Amides: Tables 19.1, 19.2, and 19.4 included nucleophilic acyl substitutions that are useful for preparing amides by the reaction of amines with acyl chlorides, anhydrides, and esters, respectively. These are the most common methods for the laboratory synthesis of amides.

Because acylation of amines with acyl chlorides and anhydrides yields an acid as one of the products (HCl from acyl chlorides, a carboxylic acid from an anhydride), the efficient synthesis of amides requires some attention to stoichiometry.

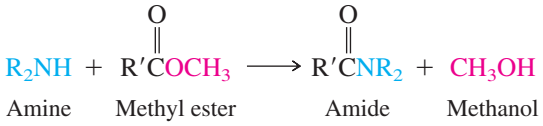
Two molar equivalents of amine are frequently used in the reaction with acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides; one molecule of amine acts as a nucleophile, the second as a Brønsted base.





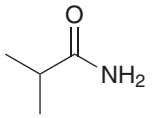
It is possible to use only one molar equivalent of amine in these reactions if some other base, such as sodium hydroxide, is present in the reaction mixture to react with the hydrogen chloride or carboxylic acid that is formed. This is a useful procedure in those cases in which the amine is a valuable one or is available only in small quantities.

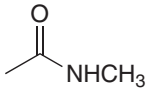
Esters and amines react in a 1:1 molar ratio to give amides. No acidic product is formed from the ester, and so no additional base is required.

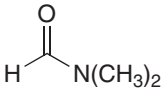


Problem 19.19

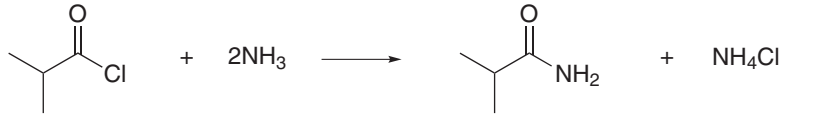
Write an equation showing the preparation of the following amides from the indicated carboxylic acid derivative:

(a)  from an acyl chloride

(b)  from an acid anhydride

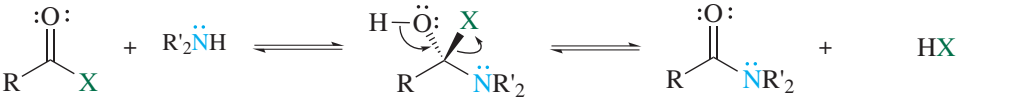
(c)  from a methyl ester

Sample Solution (a) Amides of the type are derived by acylation of ammonia.



Two molecules of ammonia are needed because its acylation produces, in addition to the desired amide, a molecule of hydrogen chloride. Hydrogen chloride (an acid) reacts with ammonia (a base) to give ammonium chloride.

All these reactions proceed by nucleophilic addition of the amine to the carbonyl group. Dissociation of the tetrahedral intermediate proceeds in the direction that leads to an amide.



Acylating agent | Amine | Tetrahedral intermediate | Amide | Conjugate acid of leaving group

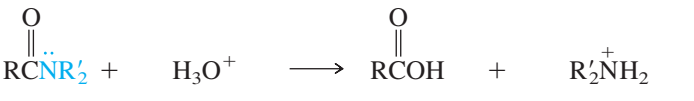
The carbonyl group of an amide is stabilized to a greater extent than that of an acyl chloride, acid anhydride, or ester; amides are formed rapidly and in high yield from each of these carboxylic acid derivatives.

Problem 19.20

Unlike esters, which can be prepared by acid-catalyzed condensation of an alcohol and a carboxylic acid, amides cannot be prepared by an acid-catalyzed condensation of an amine and a carboxylic acid. Why?

19.13 Hydrolysis of Amides

Amides are the least reactive carboxylic acid derivative, and the only nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction they undergo is hydrolysis. Amides are fairly stable in water, but the amide bond is cleaved on heating in the presence of strong acids or bases. Nominally, this cleavage produces an amine and a carboxylic acid. In acid, however, the amine is protonated, giving an ammonium ion:

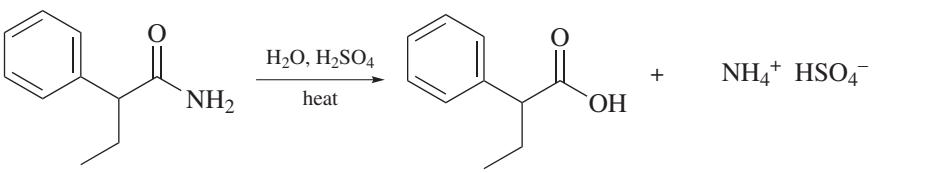


Amide | Hydronium ion | Carboxylic acid | Ammonium ion

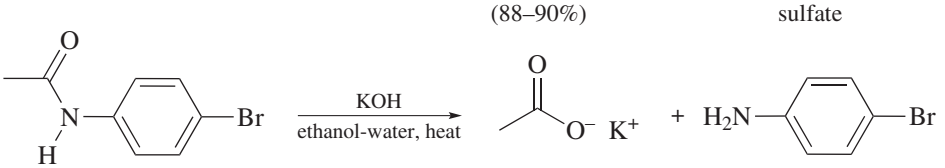
In base the carboxylic acid is deprotonated, giving a carboxylate ion:

Amide | Hydroxide ion | Carboxylate ion | Amine

The acid–base reactions that occur after the amide bond is broken make the overall hydrolysis irreversible in both cases. The amine product is protonated in acid; the carboxylic acid is deprotonated in base.



2-Phenylbutanamide | 2-Phenylbutanoic acid (88–90%) | Ammonium hydrogen sulfate



N-(4-Bromophenyl)acetamide | Potassium acetate | *p*-Bromoaniline (95%)

Mechanistically, amide hydrolysis is similar to the hydrolysis of other carboxylic acid derivatives. The mechanism of hydrolysis in acid is presented in Mechanism 19.4. It proceeds in two stages; a tetrahedral intermediate is formed in the first stage and dissociates in the second.

Mechanism 19.4

Amide Hydrolysis in Acid Solution

THE OVERALL REACTION:

An amide | Hydronium ion | A carboxylic acid | Ammonium ion

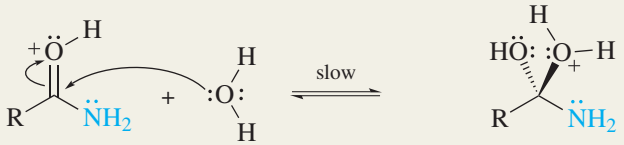
THE MECHANISM:

First Stage: Formation of the tetrahedral intermediate Steps 1–3 are analogous to the mechanism of acid-catalyzed hydration of aldehydes and ketones and acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of esters.

Step 1: Protonation of the carbonyl oxygen of the amide

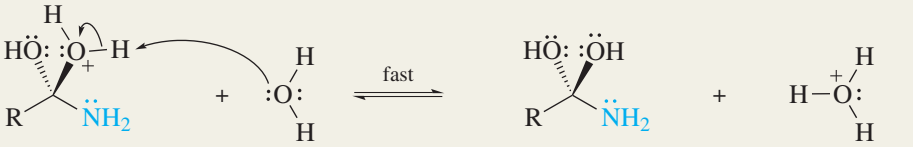
Amide | Hydronium ion | Protonated amide | Water

Step 2: Nucleophilic addition of water to the protonated amide



Protonated amide | Water | Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate (TI–H+)

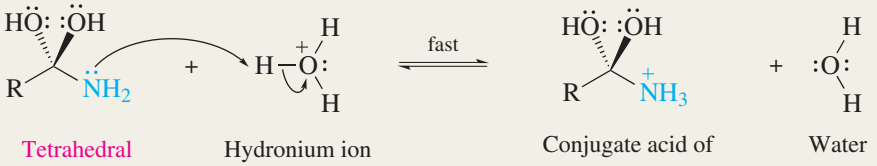
Step 3: Deprotonation of TI—H+ to give the neutral form of the tetrahedral intermediate (TI)



Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate (TI–H+) | Water | Tetrahedral intermediate (TI) | Hydronium ion

Second Stage: Dissociation of the tetrahedral intermediate Just as steps 1–3 corresponded to addition of water to the carbonyl group, steps 4–6 correspond to elimination of ammonia or an amine from TI and restoration of the carbonyl group.

Step 4: Protonation of TI at its amino nitrogen

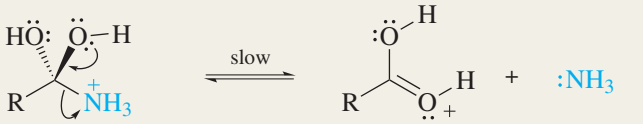


Tetrahedral intermediate (TI) | Hydronium ion | Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate (TI–H+) | Water

continued

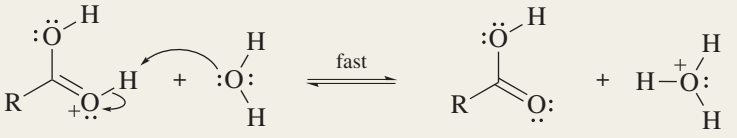
continued

Step 5: Dissociation of the *N*-protonated form of the tetrahedral intermediate to give ammonia and the protonated form of the carboxylic acid

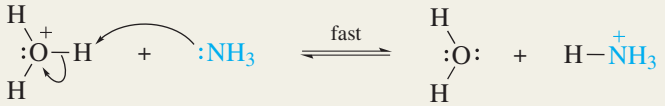


Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate ($TI–H^+$) | Protonated carboxylic acid | Ammonia

Step 6: Proton transfer processes give the carboxylic acid and ammonium ion



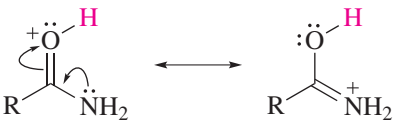
Protonated carboxylic acid | Water | Carboxylic acid | Hydronium ion



Hydronium ion | Ammonia | Water | Ammonium ion

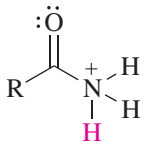
The amide is activated toward nucleophilic acyl substitution by protonation of its carbonyl oxygen. The cation produced in this step is stabilized by resonance involving the nitrogen lone pair and is more stable than the intermediate in which the amide nitrogen is protonated.

Protonation of carbonyl oxygen



Most stable resonance contributors of an *O*-protonated amide

Protonation of amide nitrogen



An acylammonium ion; the positive charge is localized on nitrogen

Once formed, the *O*-protonated intermediate is attacked by a water molecule in step 2. The intermediate formed in this step loses a proton in step 3 to give the neutral form of the tetrahedral intermediate. The tetrahedral intermediate has its amino group (—NH_2) attached to an sp^3-hybridized carbon, and this amino group is the site at which protonation occurs in step 4. Cleavage of the carbon–nitrogen bond in step 5 yields the protonated form of the carboxylic acid, along with a molecule of ammonia. In acid solution ammonia is immediately protonated to give ammonium ion, as shown in step 6.

The protonation of ammonia in step 6 has such a large equilibrium constant that it makes the overall reaction irreversible.

Problem 19.21

On the basis of the general mechanism for amide hydrolysis in acidic solution shown in Mechanism 19.4, write an analogous sequence of steps for the hydrolysis of acetanilide, $CH_3CNHC_6H_5$.

In base the tetrahedral intermediate is formed in a manner analogous to that proposed for ester saponification. Steps 1 and 2 in Mechanism 19.5 show the formation of the tetrahedral intermediate in the basic hydrolysis of amides. In step 3 the basic amino group of the tetrahedral intermediate abstracts a proton from water, and in step 4 the derived ammonium ion dissociates. Conversion of the carboxylic acid to its corresponding carboxylate anion in step 5 completes the process and renders the overall reaction irreversible.

Mechanism 19.5

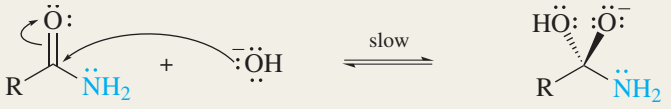
Amide Hydrolysis in Basic Solution

THE OVERALL REACTION:

An amide | Hydroxide ion | A carboxylate ion | Ammonia

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Nucleophilic addition of hydroxide ion to the carbonyl group



Amide | Hydroxide ion | Anionic form of tetrahedral intermediate

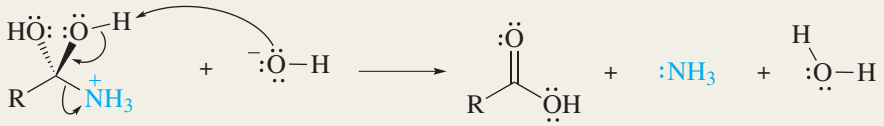
Step 2: Proton transfer to the anionic form of the tetrahedral intermediate

Anionic form of tetrahedral intermediate | Water | Tetrahedral intermediate | Hydroxide ion

Step 3: Protonation of the amino nitrogen

Tetrahedral intermediate | Water | Ammonium ion | Hydroxide ion

Step 4: Dissociation of the *N*-protonated form of the tetrahedral intermediate



Conjugate acid of tetrahedral intermediate | Hydroxide ion | Carboxylic acid | Ammonia | Water

Step 5: Irreversible formation of the carboxylate anion

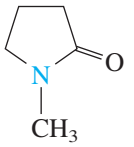
Carboxylic acid | Hydroxide ion | Carboxylate ion | Water

Problem 19.22

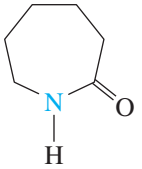
On the basis of the general mechanism for basic hydrolysis shown in Mechanism 19.5, write an analogous sequence for the hydrolysis of *N,N*-dimethylformamide, $HCN(CH_3)_2$.

19.14 Lactams

Lactams are cyclic amides and are analogous to lactones, which are cyclic esters. Most lactams are known by their common names, as the examples shown illustrate.



N-Methylpyrrolidone
(a polar aprotic solvent)



ϵ-Caprolactam
(industrial chemical used to prepare a type of nylon)

β-Lactam Antibiotics

It may never be known just how spores of *Penicillium notatum* found their way to a Petri dish containing *Staphylococcus* in Alexander Fleming's laboratory at St. Mary's Hospital in London during the summer of 1928. But they did, and the mold they produced made a substance that stopped the *Staphylococcus* colony from growing. His curiosity aroused, Fleming systematically challenged the substance he called "penicillin" with other bacteria and, in addition to *Staphylococcus,* found impressive activity against *Streptococcus* as well as the bacteria that cause diphtheria, meningitis, and pneumonia. Fleming published his findings in 1929, but his efforts to isolate the active substance responsible for penicillin's antibacterial properties were unsuccessful.

By 1938, Fleming had moved on to other research, and Howard Florey and Ernst Chain of the School of Pathology at Oxford were just beginning a program aimed at developing antibacterial agents from natural sources. A candidate that especially appealed to them was Fleming's penicillin.

Their most daunting initial problem was making enough penicillin. Enter Norman Heatley, of whom it has been said; ". . . without Heatley, no penicillin."* Heatley (Figure 19.3), an inventive and careful experimentalist, devised procedures to make and isolate penicillin on a scale sufficient to begin testing. By 1941, Florey, Chain, and Heatley had a drug that was both effective and safe.

England was at war, and the United States soon would be; the need for large amounts of penicillin was obvious. Working with the U.S. Department of Agriculture, Heatley and Andrew J. Moyer of the USDA laboratories in Peoria, Illinois, found better penicillium sources and developed novel fermentation methods to produce ever-increasing amounts of penicillin. Treatment of wounded soldiers with penicillin became possible early in 1943 and was widely practiced before the war ended in August 1945. Four months later, Fleming, Florey, and Chain traveled to Stockholm to accept that year's Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine. Heatley was not included because custom dictates that a Nobel Prize can be divided among no more than three persons.

The structure of penicillin is unusual because it contains an amide function as part of a four-membered ring (a **β-lactam**). Various penicillins differ in respect to substituent groups and their effectiveness against different strains of bacteria. Penicillin G originated in a strain obtained from a rotting cantaloupe in Peoria and was the first penicillin made on a large scale.

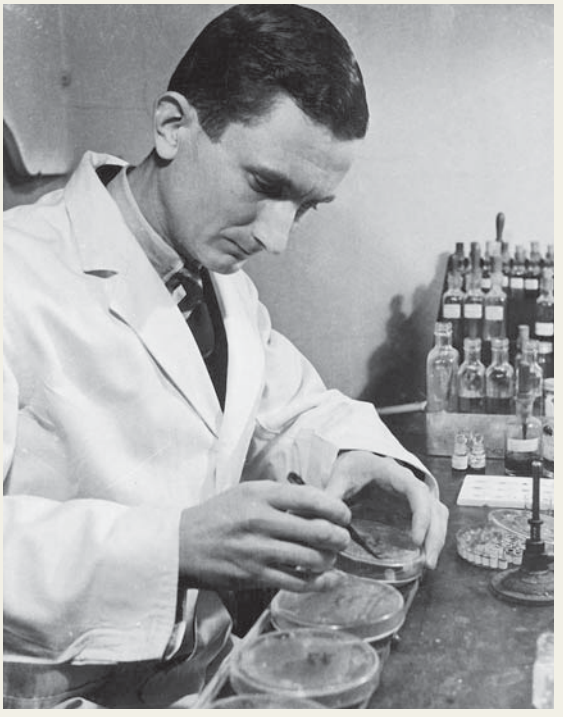
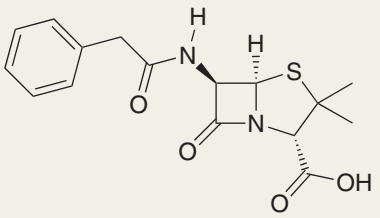


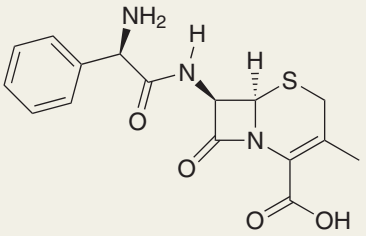
Figure 19.3

Norman Heatley was instrumental in devising methods for obtaining penicillins on a practical scale.

Fleming's original penicillin (now called penicillin F) bears a $CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2$—group in place of the $C_6H_5CH_2$—of penicillin G. A different class of β-lactam antibiotics, the cephalosporins, are similar in structure to the penicillins but have a six-membered instead of a five-membered sulfur-containing ring.

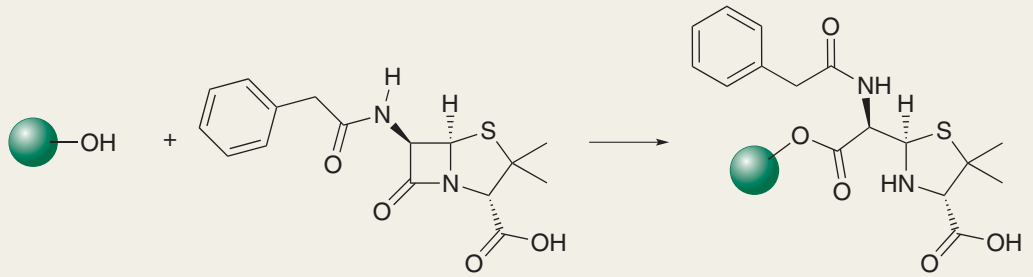


Penicillin G



Cephalexin

Although their strained four-membered ring makes β-lactam antibiotics susceptible to hydrolysis, this same elevated reactivity toward nucleophilic acyl substitution is responsible for their antibacterial properties. β-Lactams act by deactivating an enzyme, *transpeptidase,* required for the biosynthesis of bacterial cell walls. The active site of transpeptidase contains a key hydroxyl group, which is converted to an ester by a nucleophilic acyl substitution that cleaves the β-lactam ring. With the acylated form of the enzyme unable to catalyze cell-wall biosynthesis, further bacterial growth is brought under control, and the body's immune system does the rest.



Active form of transpeptidase

Penicillin G

Inactive ester of transpeptidase

Problem 19.23

(a) Penicillin-resistant strains of bacteria contain *β-lactamases,* enzymes that catalyze the hydrolysis of a penicillin before the penicillin can acylate *transpeptidase.* Suggest a reasonable structure for the product $C_{16}H_{20}N_2O_5S$ formed by β-lactamase-catalyzed hydrolysis of penicillin G.

(b) 6-Aminopenicillanic acid ($C_8H_{12}N_2O_3S$), a key compound in the preparation of "semisynthetic" penicillins, is prepared from penicillin G by *penicillin acyl transferase*-catalyzed hydrolysis. Suggest a reasonable structure for 6-aminopenicillanic acid.

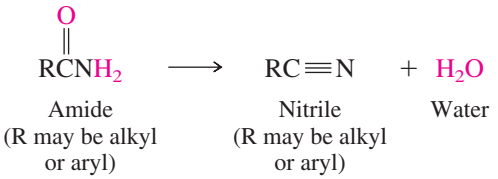
*H. Harris, "The Florey Centenary Lecture and the Development of Penicillin," as quoted in E. Lax, *The Mold in Dr. Florey's Coat,* Henry Holt and Company, New York, 2004, page 89.

Just as amides are more stable than esters, lactams are more stable than lactones. Thus, although β-lactones are rare (Section 18.15), β-lactams are among the best known products of the pharmaceutical industry. The penicillin and cephalosporin antibiotics, which are so useful in treating bacterial infections, are β-lactams and are discussed in the boxed essay accompanying this section.

19.15 Preparation of Nitriles

We have already discussed two procedures by which nitriles are prepared, namely, nucleophilic substitution of alkyl halides by cyanide and conversion of aldehydes and ketones to cyanohydrins. Table 19.6 reviews aspects of these reactions. Neither of the reactions in the table is suitable for aryl nitriles (ArC≡N); these compounds are normally prepared by a reaction to be discussed in Section 21.17.

Both alkyl and aryl nitriles are accessible by dehydration of amides.



Among the reagents used for this dehydration is P_4O_{10}, known by the common name *phosphorus pentoxide* because it was once thought to have the molecular formula P_2O_5. Phosphorus pentoxide is the anhydride of phosphoric acid and is used in a number of reactions requiring dehydrating agents.

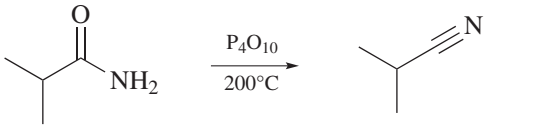
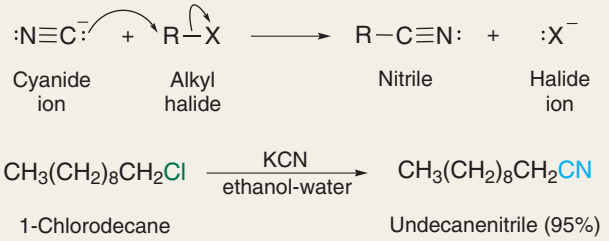
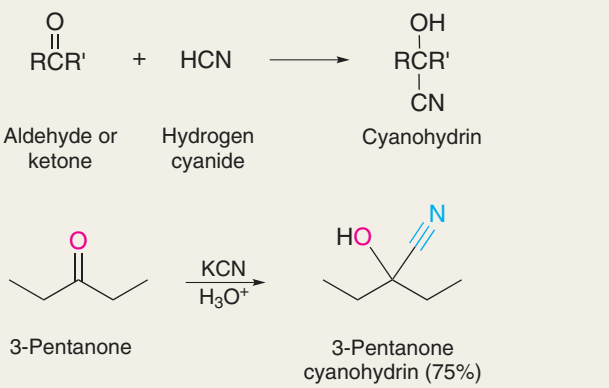


TABLE 19.6 Preparation of Nitriles

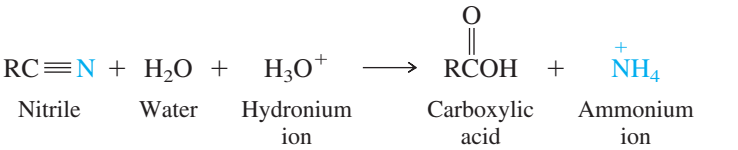
Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Nucleophilic substitution by cyanide ion (see Sections 8.1, 8.10) Cyanide ion is a good nucleophile and reacts with alkyl halides to give nitriles. The reaction is of the S_N2 type and is limited to primary and secondary alkyl halides. Tertiary alkyl halides undergo elimination; aryl and vinyl halides do not react.	
Cyanohydrin formation (see Section 17.7) Hydrogen cyanide adds to the carbonyl group of aldehydes and ketones.	

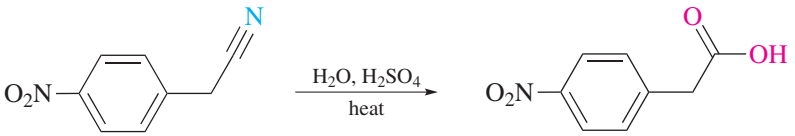
Problem 19.24

Show how ethyl alcohol could be used to prepare (a) CH_3CN and (b) CH_3CH_2CN. Along with ethyl alcohol you may use any necessary inorganic reagents.

19.16 Hydrolysis of Nitriles

Nitriles are classified as carboxylic acid derivatives because they are converted to carboxylic acids on hydrolysis. The conditions required are similar to those for the hydrolysis of amides, namely, heating in aqueous acid or base for several hours. Like the hydrolysis of amides, nitrile hydrolysis is irreversible in the presence of acids or bases. Acid hydrolysis yields ammonium ion and a carboxylic acid.

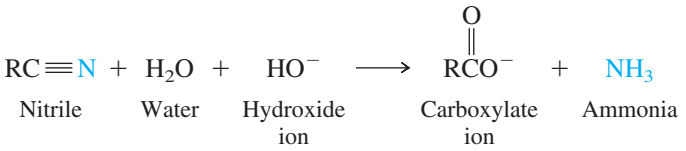


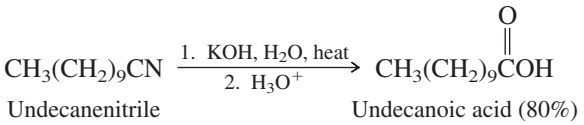


p-Nitrobenzyl cyanide

p-Nitrophenylacetic acid (92-95%)

In aqueous base, hydroxide ion abstracts a proton from the carboxylic acid. Isolating the acid requires a subsequent acidification step.





The first four steps of the mechanism for hydrolysis of nitriles in basic solution are given in Mechanism 19.6. These steps convert the nitrile to an amide, which then proceeds to the hydrolysis products according to the mechanism of amide hydrolysis in Mechanism 19.5.

The acid-catalyzed mechanism for nitrile hydrolysis also goes through the amide as an intermediate. Problem 19.25 encourages you to propose a mechanism for that process.

Problem 19.25

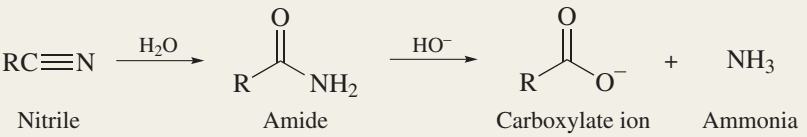
Suggest a reasonable mechanism for the conversion of a nitrile (RCN) to the corresponding amide in aqueous acid.

Nucleophiles other than water can also add to the carbon–nitrogen triple bond of nitriles. In the following section we will see a synthetic application of such a nucleophilic addition.

Mechanism 19.6

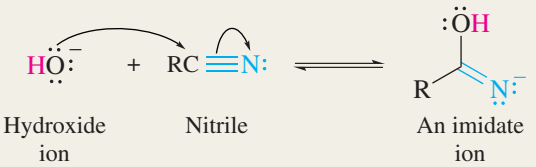
Nitrile Hydrolysis in Basic Solution

THE OVERALL REACTION: Nitriles are hydrolyzed in base to give ammonia and a carboxylate ion. An amide is an intermediate.

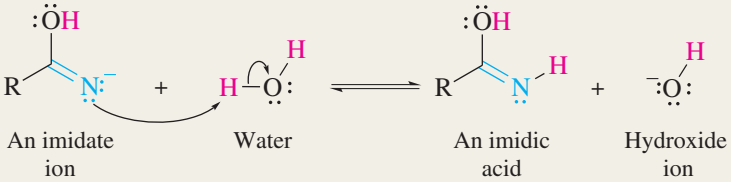


THE MECHANISM:

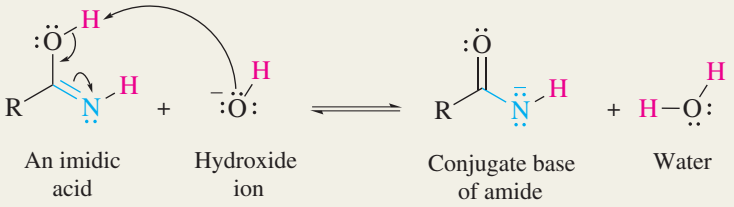
Step 1: Hydroxide adds to the carbon–nitrogen triple bond. This step is analogous to nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group.



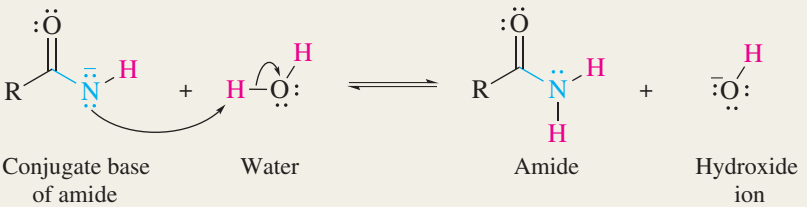
Step 2: The product of step 1 is the conjugate base of an imidic acid to which it is converted by proton abstraction from water.



Step 3: Proton abstraction from oxygen of the imino acid gives the conjugate base of an amide.



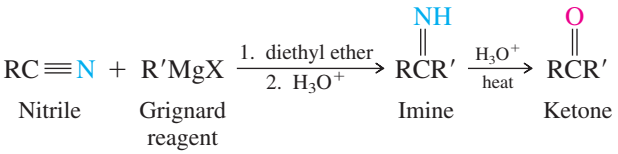
Step 4: The conjugate base of the amide abstracts a proton from water.



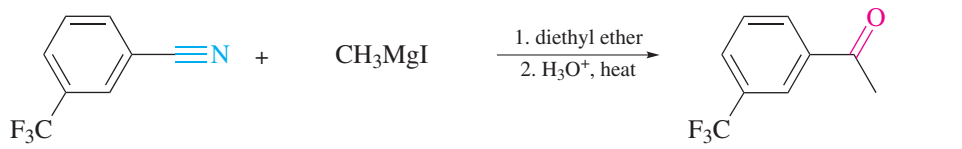
The amide formed in this step then undergoes basic hydrolysis according to the process shown in Mechanism 19.5.

19.17 Addition of Grignard Reagents to Nitriles

The carbon–nitrogen triple bond of nitriles is much less reactive toward nucleophilic addition than the carbon–oxygen double bond of aldehydes and ketones. Strongly basic nucleophiles such as Grignard reagents, however, do react with nitriles in a reaction that is of synthetic value:



The imine formed by nucleophilic addition of the Grignard reagent to the nitrile is normally not isolated but is hydrolyzed directly to a ketone. The overall sequence is used as a means of preparing ketones.



m-(Trifluoromethyl)-benzonitrile + Methylmagnesium iodide → *m*-(Trifluoromethyl)-acetophenone (79%)

Problem 19.26

Write an equation showing how you could prepare ethyl phenyl ketone from propanenitrile and a Grignard reagent. What is the structure of the imine intermediate?

Organolithium reagents react in the same way and are often used instead of Grignard reagents.

19.18 Spectroscopic Analysis of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

Infrared: IR spectroscopy is quite useful in identifying carboxylic acid derivatives. The carbonyl stretching vibration is very strong, and its position is sensitive to the nature of the carbonyl group. In general, electron donation from the substituent decreases the double-bond character of the bond between carbon and oxygen and decreases the stretching frequency. Two distinct absorptions are observed for the symmetric and antisymmetric stretching vibrations of the anhydride function.

Acetyl chloride	Acetic anhydride	Methyl acetate	Acetamide
$\nu_{C=O}$ = 1822 cm^{-1}	$\nu_{C=O}$ = 1748 cm^{-1} and 1815 cm^{-1}	$\nu_{C=O}$ = 1736 cm^{-1}	$\nu_{C=O}$ = 1694 cm^{-1}

Nitriles are readily identified by absorption due to —C≡N stretching in the 2210–2260 cm^{-1} region.

^{1}H NMR: Chemical-shift differences in their ^{1}H NMR spectra aid the structure determination of esters. Consider the two isomeric esters: ethyl acetate and methyl propanoate.

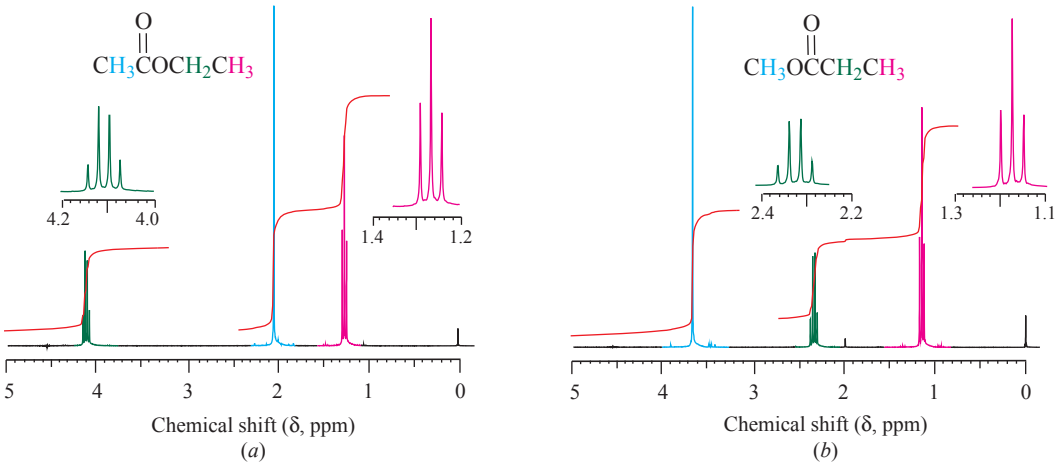
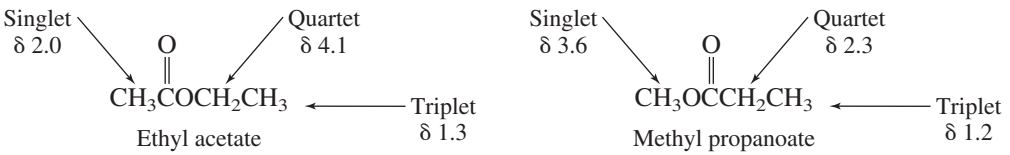


Figure 19.4

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectra of (*a*) ethyl acetate and (*b*) methyl propanoate.

As Figure 19.4 shows, the number of signals and their multiplicities are the same for both esters. Both have a methyl singlet and a triplet–quartet pattern for the ethyl group.



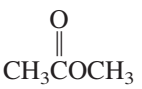
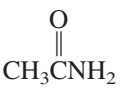
Notice, however, that there is a significant difference in the chemical shifts of the corresponding signals in the two spectra. The methyl singlet is more shielded (δ 2.0) when it is bonded to the carbonyl group of ethyl acetate than when it is bonded to the oxygen of methyl propanoate (δ 3.6). The methylene quartet is more shielded (δ 2.3) when it is bonded to the carbonyl group of methyl propanoate than when it is bonded to the oxygen of ethyl acetate (δ 4.1). Analysis of only the number of peaks and their splitting patterns does not provide an unambiguous answer to structure assignment in esters; chemical-shift data such as that just described must also be considered.

The chemical shift of the N—H proton of amides appears in the range δ 5–8 and is often very broad.

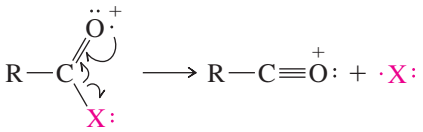
^{13}C NMR: The ^{13}C NMR spectra of carboxylic acid derivatives, like the spectra of carboxylic acids themselves, are characterized by a low-field resonance for the carbonyl carbon in the range δ 160–180. The carbonyl carbons of carboxylic acid derivatives are more shielded than those of aldehydes and ketones, but less shielded than the sp^2-hybridized carbons of alkenes and arenes.

The carbon of a C≡N group appears near δ 120.

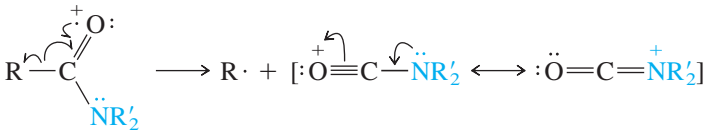
UV-VIS: The following values are typical for the $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ absorption associated with the C=O group of carboxylic acid derivatives.

				
	Acetyl chloride	Acetic anhydride	Methyl acetate	Acetamide
λ_{max}	235 nm	225 nm	207 nm	214 nm

Mass Spectrometry: A prominent peak in the mass spectra of most carboxylic acid derivatives corresponds to an acylium ion derived by cleavage of the bond to the carbonyl group:

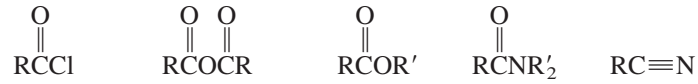


Amides, however, tend to cleave in the opposite direction to produce a nitrogen-stabilized acylium ion:



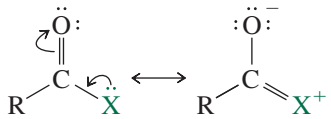
19.19 SUMMARY

Section 19.1 This chapter concerns the preparation and reactions of *acyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, esters, amides,* and *nitriles.* These compounds are generally classified as carboxylic acid derivatives, and their nomenclature is based on that of carboxylic acids.

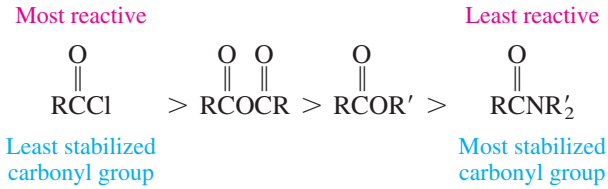


Acyl chloride | Acid anhydride | Ester | Amide | Nitrile

Section 19.2 The structure and reactivity of carboxylic acid derivatives depend on how well the atom bonded to the carbonyl group donates electrons to it.

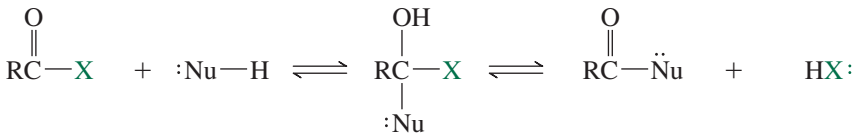


Electron-pair donation stabilizes the carbonyl group and makes it less reactive toward nucleophilic acyl substitution.



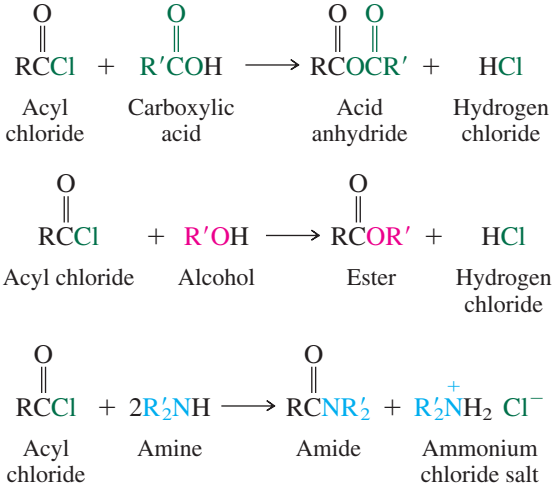
Nitrogen is a better electron-pair donor than oxygen, and amides have a more stabilized carbonyl group than esters and anhydrides. Chlorine is the poorest electron-pair donor, and acyl chlorides have the least stabilized carbonyl group and are the most reactive.

Section 19.3 The characteristic reaction of acyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, esters, and amides is **nucleophilic acyl substitution.** In the most common mechanism, addition of a nucleophilic reagent :Nu—H to the carbonyl group leads to a tetrahedral intermediate that dissociates to give the product of substitution:



Carboxylic acid derivative | Nucleophile | Tetrahedral intermediate | Product of nucleophilic acyl substitution | Conjugate acid of leaving group

Section 19.4 Acyl chlorides are converted to acid anhydrides, esters, and amides by nucleophilic acyl substitution.



Examples of each of these reactions may be found in Table 19.1.

Section 19.5 Acid anhydrides are less reactive toward nucleophilic acyl substitution than acyl chlorides, but are useful reagents for preparing esters and amides.

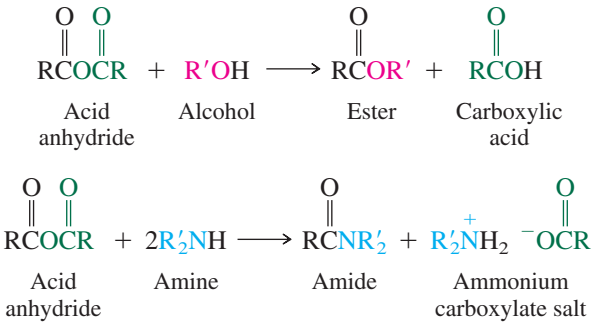
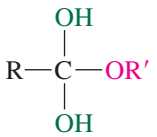


Table 19.2 presents examples of these reactions.

Section 19.6 Esters occur naturally or are prepared from alcohols by Fischer esterification or by acylation with acyl chlorides or acid anhydrides (see Table 19.3). Esters are polar and have higher boiling points than alkanes of comparable size and shape. Esters don't form hydrogen bonds to other ester molecules so have lower boiling points than analogous alcohols. They can form hydrogen bonds to water and so are comparable to alcohols in their solubility in water.

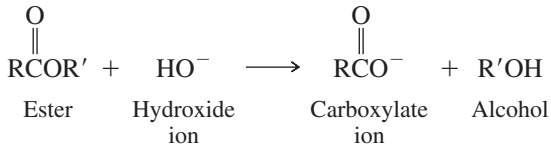
Section 19.7 Esters give amides on reaction with ammonia and amines and are cleaved to a carboxylic acid and an alcohol on hydrolysis (see Table 19.4).

Section 19.8 Ester hydrolysis can be catalyzed by acids and its mechanism (see Mechanism 19.2) is the reverse of the mechanism for Fischer esterification. The reaction proceeds via a tetrahedral intermediate.

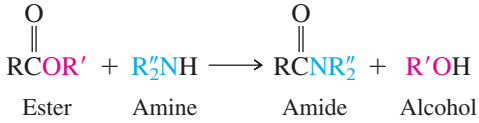


Tetrahedral intermediate in ester hydrolysis

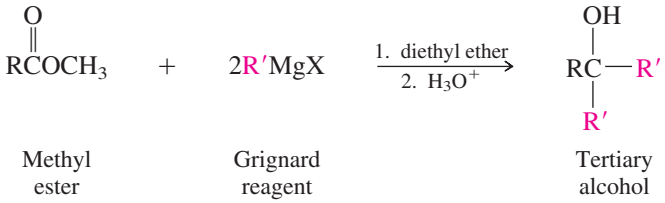
Section 19.9 Ester hydrolysis in basic solution is called *saponification* and proceeds through the same tetrahedral intermediate (see Mechanism 19.3) as in acid-catalyzed hydrolysis. Unlike acid-catalyzed hydrolysis, saponification is irreversible because the carboxylic acid is deprotonated under the reaction conditions.



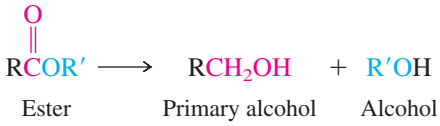
Section 19.10 Esters react with amines to give amides.



Section 19.11 Esters react with two equivalents of a Grignard or organolithium reagent to form tertiary alcohols.



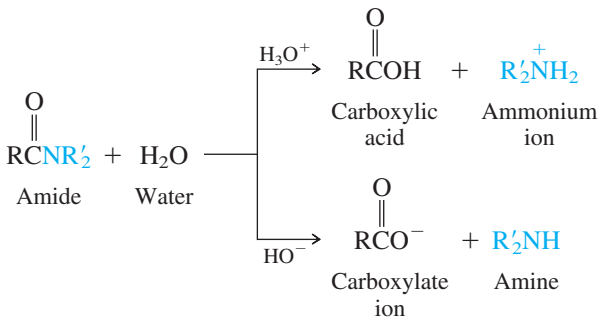
Lithium aluminum hydride reduces esters to alcohols. Two alcohols are formed; the acyl group is reduced to the primary alcohol.



Section 19.12 Amides having at least one N—H unit can form intermolecular hydrogen bonds with other amide molecules. Compounds of this type have higher melting and boiling points than comparable compounds in which N—H bonds are absent.

Amides are normally prepared by the reaction of amines with acyl chlorides, anhydrides, or esters.

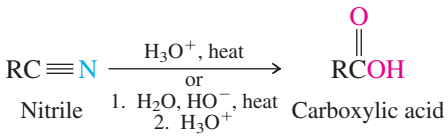
Section 19.13 Like ester hydrolysis, amide hydrolysis can be achieved in either aqueous acid or aqueous base. The process is irreversible in both media. In base, the carboxylic acid is converted to the carboxylate anion; in acid, the amine is protonated to an ammonium ion:



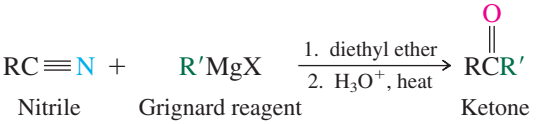
Section 19.14 Lactams are cyclic amides.

Section 19.15 Nitriles are prepared by nucleophilic substitution (S_N2) of alkyl halides with cyanide ion, by converting aldehydes or ketones to cyanohydrins (see Table 19.6), or by dehydration of amides.

Section 19.16 The hydrolysis of nitriles to carboxylic acids is irreversible in both acidic and basic solution.



Section 19.17 Nitriles are useful starting materials for the preparation of ketones by reaction with Grignard reagents.



Section 19.18 Acyl chlorides, anhydrides, esters, and amides all show a strong band for C=O stretching in the infrared. The range extends from about 1820 cm^{-1} (acyl chlorides) to 1690 cm^{-1} (amides). Their ^{13}C NMR spectra are characterized by a peak near δ 180 for the carbonyl carbon. ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy is useful for distinguishing between the groups R and R′ in esters (RCO_2R'). The protons on the carbon bonded to O in R′ appear at lower field (less shielded) than those on the carbon bonded to C=O.

PROBLEMS

19.27 Write a structural formula for each of the following compounds:

(a) *m*-Chlorobenzoyl chloride
(b) Trifluoroacetic anhydride
(c) *cis*-1,2-Cyclopropanedicarboxylic anhydride
(d) Ethyl cycloheptanecarboxylate
(e) 1-Phenylethyl acetate
(f) 2-Phenylethyl acetate
(g) *p*-Ethylbenzamide
(h) *N*-Ethylbenzamide
(i) 2-Methylhexanenitrile

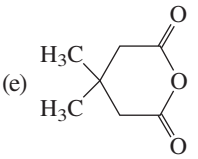
19.28 Give an acceptable IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

(a) CH_3CHCH_2CCl (O; Cl)

(b) CH_3COCH_2–C$_6$H$_5$ (O)

(c) CH_3OCCH_2–C$_6$H$_5$ (O)

(d) $ClCH_2CH_2COCCH_2CH_2Cl$ (O O)

(e) 

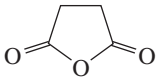
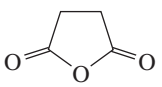
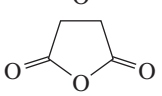
(f) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2C{\equiv}N$

(g) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2CNH_2$ (O)

(h) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2CNHCH_3$ (O)

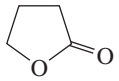
(i) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2CN(CH_3)_2$ (O)

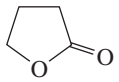
19.29 Write a structural formula for the principal organic product or products of each of the following reactions:

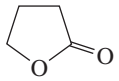
(a) Propanoyl chloride and sodium propanoate
(b) Butanoyl chloride and benzyl alcohol
(c) *p*-Chlorobenzoyl chloride and ammonia
(d)  and water
(e)  and aqueous sodium hydroxide to give $C_4H_4Na_2O_4$
(f)  and aqueous ammonia to give $C_4H_{10}N_2O_3$
(g) Methyl benzoate and excess phenylmagnesium bromide, then H_3O^+

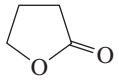
(h) Acetic anhydride and 3-pentanol

(i) Ethyl phenylacetate and lithium aluminum hydride, then H_3O^+

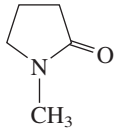
(j)  and aqueous sodium hydroxide to give $C_4H_7NaO_3$

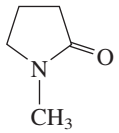
(k)  and aqueous ammonia

(l)  and lithium aluminum hydride, then H_2O

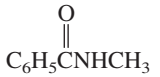
(m)  and excess methylmagnesium bromide, then H_3O^+

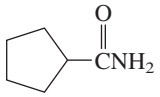
(n) Ethyl phenylacetate and methylamine (CH_3NH_2)

(o)  and aqueous sodium hydroxide to give $C_5H_{10}NNaO_2$

(p)  and aqueous hydrochloric acid, heat to give $[C_5H_{12}NO_2]^+$

(q) and aqueous hydrochloric acid, heat to give $C_2H_4O_2 + C_6H_8ClN$

(r)  and aqueous sulfuric acid, heat to give $CH_7NO_4S + C_7H_6O_2$

(s)  and P_4O_{10}

(t) $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2C{\equiv}N$ and aqueous hydrochloric acid, heat

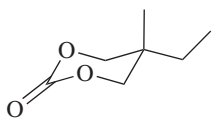
(u) *p*-Methoxybenzonitrile and aqueous sodium hydroxide, heat to give $C_8H_7NaO_3$

(v) Propanenitrile and methylmagnesium bromide, then H_3O^+, heat

19.30 (a) Unlike other esters which react with Grignard reagents to give tertiary alcohols, ethyl formate ($HCOCH_2CH_3$) yields a different class of alcohols on treatment with Grignard reagents. What kind of alcohol is formed in this case and why?

(b) Diethyl carbonate ($CH_3CH_2OCOCH_2CH_3$) reacts with excess Grignard reagent to yield alcohols of a particular type. What is the structural feature that characterizes alcohols prepared in this way?

19.31 On being heated with a dilute solution of sulfuric acid in water, the compound shown was observed to liberate CO_2. What organic compound is formed during the reaction?



19.32 Using ethanol and sodium or potassium cyanide as the sources of the carbon atoms, along with any necessary inorganic reagents, show how you could prepare each of the following:

(a) Acetyl chloride

(b) Acetic anhydride

(c) Ethyl acetate

(d) Acetamide

(e) 2-Hydroxypropanoic acid

19.33 Using toluene, sodium cyanide, and carbon dioxide as the sources of the carbon atoms, along with any necessary inorganic reagents, show how you could prepare each of the following:

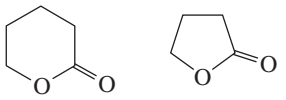
(a) Benzoyl chloride
(b) Benzoic anhydride
(c) Benzyl benzoate
(d) Benzamide
(e) Benzonitrile
(f) Benzyl cyanide
(g) Phenylacetic acid
(h) *p*-Nitrobenzoyl chloride
(i) *m*-Nitrobenzoyl chloride

19.34 The saponification of ^{18}O-labeled ethyl propanoate was described in Section 19.9 as one of the significant experiments that demonstrated acyl–oxygen cleavage in ester hydrolysis. The ^{18}O-labeled ethyl propanoate used in this experiment was prepared from ^{18}O-labeled ethyl alcohol, which in turn was obtained from acetaldehyde and ^{18}O-enriched water. Write a series of equations showing the preparation of $CH_3CH_2C(=O)OCH_2CH_3$ (where $O = {}^{18}O$) from these starting materials.

19.35 Acid hydrolysis of *tert*-butyl acetate in ^{18}O-labeled water was found to give *tert*-butyl alcohol having an ^{18}O content nearly identical to that of the solvent. Suggest a mechanism consistent with this observation. (It was shown that incorporation of ^{18}O into *tert*-butyl alcohol after it was formed did not occur.)

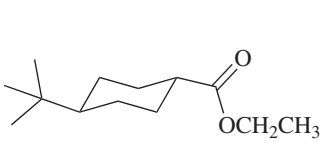
19.36 Suggest a reasonable explanation for each of the following observations:

(a) The second-order rate constant *k* for saponification (basic hydrolysis) of ethyl trifluoroacetate is over 1 million times greater than that for ethyl acetate (25°C).
(b) The second-order rate constant for saponification of ethyl 2,2-dimethylpropanoate, $(CH_3)_3CCO_2CH_2CH_3$, is almost 100 times smaller than that for ethyl acetate (30°C).
(c) The second-order rate constant *k* for saponification of methyl acetate is 100 times greater than that for *tert*-butyl acetate (25°C).
(d) The second-order rate constant *k* for saponification of methyl *m*-nitrobenzoate is 40 times greater than that for methyl benzoate (25°C).
(e) The second-order rate constant *k* for saponification of 5-pentanolide is over 20 times greater than that for 4-butanolide (25°C).

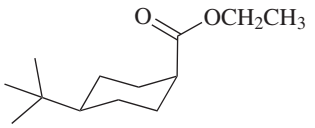


5-Pentanolide 4-Butanolide

(f) The second-order rate constant *k* for saponification of ethyl *trans*-4-*tert*-butylcyclohexanecarboxylate is 20 times greater than that for its cis diastereomer (25°C).

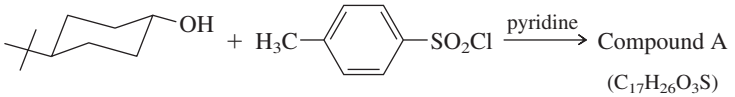


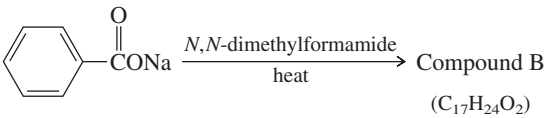
Ethyl *trans*-4-*tert*-butylcyclohexanecarboxylate

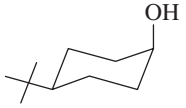


Ethyl *cis*-4-*tert*-butylcyclohexanecarboxylate

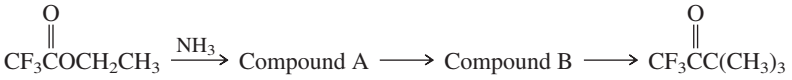
19.37 The preparation of *cis*-4-*tert*-butylcyclohexanol from its trans stereoisomer was carried out by the following sequence of steps. Write structural formulas, including stereochemistry, for compounds A and B.

Step 1: 

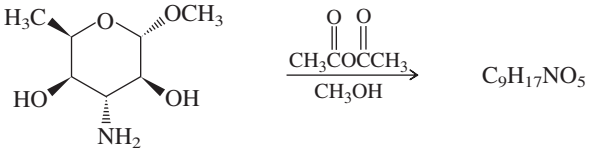
Step 2: Compound A + 

Step 3: Compound B $\xrightarrow[H_2O]{NaOH}$ 

19.38 The ketone shown was prepared in a three-step sequence from ethyl trifluoroacetate. The first step in the sequence involved treating ethyl trifluoroacetate with ammonia to give compound A. Compound A was in turn converted to the desired ketone by way of compound B. Fill in the missing reagents in the sequence shown, and give the structures of compounds A and B.



19.39 Compound A is a derivative of the carbohydrate perosamine, which is found in the antibiotic perimycin. When A is treated with excess acetic anhydride in methanol, a monoacyl derivative B ($C_9H_{17}NO_5$) is obtained in 73% yield.



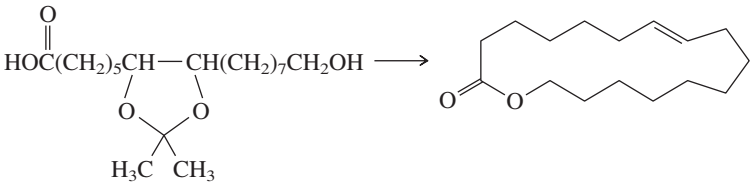
Compound A Compound B

(a) What is its structure? (*Hint:* Consider that methanol reacts with acetic anhydride.)

(b) Explain the selectivity of this reaction.

(c) What is the expected product if methanol is omitted and the reaction is conducted with excess acetic anhydride in pyridine?

19.40 *Ambrettolide* is obtained from hibiscus and has a musk-like odor. Its preparation from compound A is outlined in the table that follows. Write structural formulas, ignoring stereochemistry, for compounds B through G in this synthesis. (*Hint:* Zinc, as used in step 4, converts vicinal dibromides to alkenes.)



Compound A Ambrettolide

Step	Reactant	Reagents	Product
1.	Compound A	H_2O, H^+ heat	Compound B ($C_{16}H_{32}O_5$)
2.	Compound B	HBr	Compound C ($C_{16}H_{29}Br_3O_2$)
3.	Compound C	Ethanol, H_2SO_4	Compound D ($C_{18}H_{33}Br_3O_2$)
4.	Compound D	Zinc, ethanol	Compound E ($C_{18}H_{33}BrO_2$)
5.	Compound E	Sodium acetate, acetic acid	Compound F ($C_{20}H_{36}O_4$)
6.	Compound F	KOH, ethanol, then H^+	Compound G ($C_{16}H_{30}O_3$)
7.	Compound G	Heat	Ambrettolide ($C_{16}H_{28}O_2$)

19.41 The preparation of the sex pheromone of the bollworm moth, (*E*)-9,11-dodecadien-1-yl acetate, from compound A has been described. Suggest suitable reagents for each step in this sequence.

(a) $HOCH_2CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7CO_2CH_3 \longrightarrow HC(=O)CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7CO_2CH_3$

Compound A (*E* isomer) Compound B

(b) Compound B $\longrightarrow H_2C{=}CHCH{=}CH(CH_2)_7CO_2CH_3$

Compound C

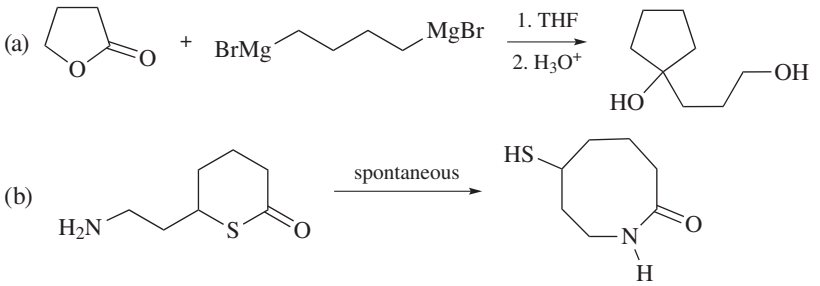
(c) Compound C $\longrightarrow H_2C{=}CHCH{=}CH(CH_2)_7CH_2OH$

Compound D

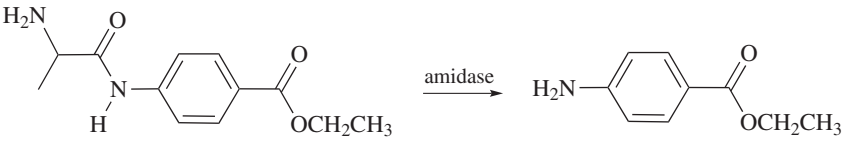
(d) Compound D $\longrightarrow H_2C{=}CHCH{=}CH(CH_2)_7CH_2OC(=O)CH_3$

(*E*)-9,11-Dodecadien-1-yl acetate

19.42 Outline reasonable mechanisms for each of the following reactions:

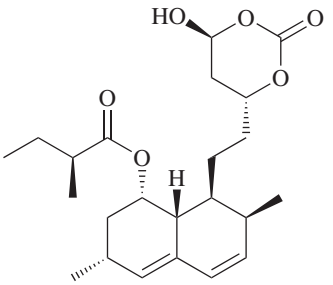


19.43 Compound A serves as a prodrug for the analgesic benzocaine. (A prodrug is a pharmacologically inactive compound that is converted in the body to an active drug, usually by a metabolic transformation.) The enzyme *amidase* catalyzes the hydrolysis of compound A into benzocaine. Write the structures of the possible products of A that might be formed by hydrolysis in aqueous HCl.



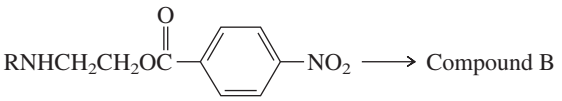
Compound A Benzocaine

19.44 The serum cholesterol-lowering agent mevinolin (lovastatin) is shown here. Identify the ester and lactone functional groups of lovastatin, and for each, write the structures of the carboxylic acid and alcohol from which the ester and lactone are formed.



Lovastatin

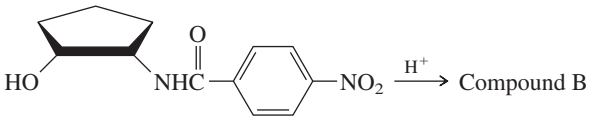
19.45 When compounds of the type represented by A are allowed to stand in pentane, they are converted to a constitutional isomer B.



Compound A

Hydrolysis of either A or B yields $RNHCH_2CH_2OH$ and *p*-nitrobenzoic acid. Suggest a reasonable structure for compound B, and demonstrate your understanding of the mechanism of this reaction by writing the structure of the key intermediate in the conversion of compound A to compound B.

19.46 (a) In the presence of dilute hydrochloric acid, compound A is converted to a constitutional isomer, compound B.



Compound A

Suggest a reasonable structure for compound B.

(b) The trans stereoisomer of compound A is stable under the reaction conditions. Why does it not rearrange?

19.47 A certain compound has a molecular weight of 83 and contains nitrogen. Its infrared spectrum contains a moderately strong peak at 2270 cm^{-1}. Its ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra are shown in Figure 19.5. What is the structure of this compound?

19.48 A compound has a molecular formula of $C_8H_{14}O_4$, and its IR spectrum contains an intense peak at 1730 cm^{-1}. The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the compound is shown in Figure 19.6. What is its structure?

19.49 A compound ($C_4H_6O_2$) has a strong band in the infrared at 1760 cm^{-1}. Its ^{13}C NMR spectrum exhibits signals at δ 20.2 (CH_3), 96.8 (CH_2), 141.8 (CH), and 167.6 (C). The ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the compound has a three-proton singlet at δ 2.1 along with three other signals, each of which is a doublet of doublets, at δ 4.7, 4.9, and 7.3. What is the structure of the compound?

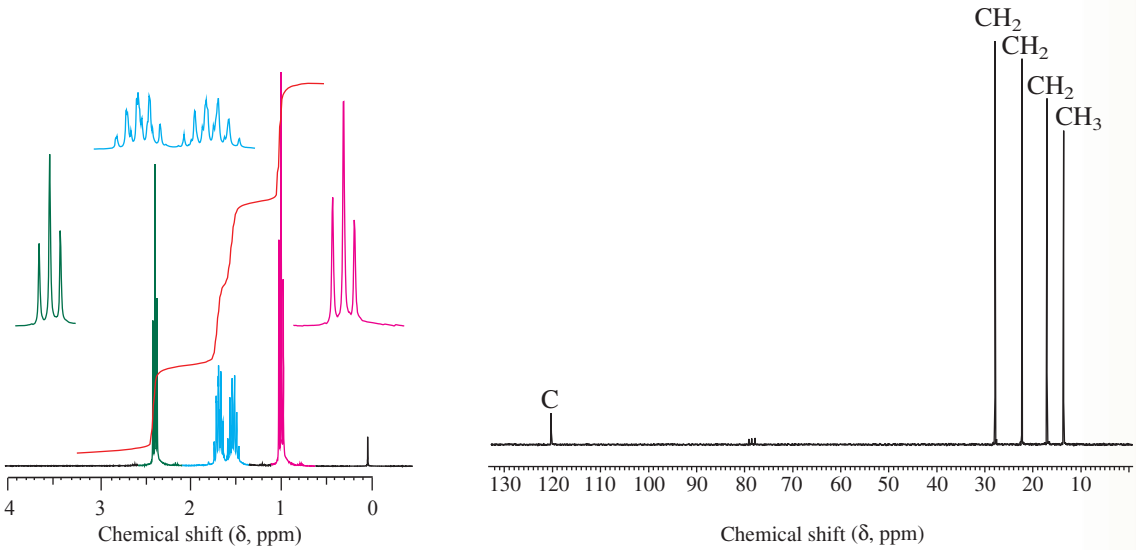


Figure 19.5

The (*a*) 300-MHz ^{1}H and (*b*) ^{13}C NMR spectra of the compound in Problem 19.47.

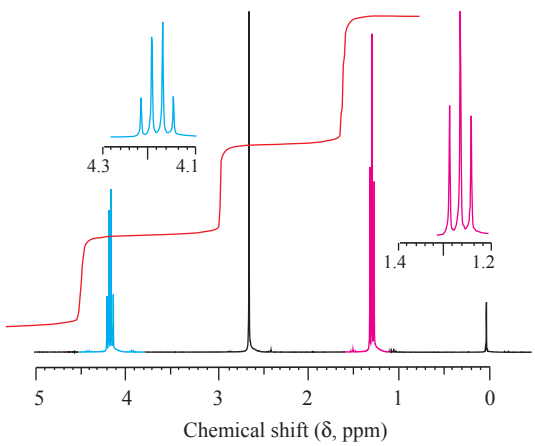


Figure 19.6

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectrum of the compound $C_8H_{14}O_4$ in Problem 19.48.

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 19

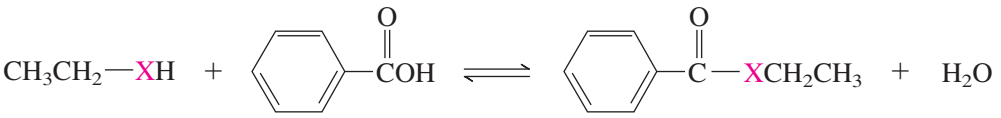
Thioesters

Thioesters have the general formula $RCSR'$. They resemble their oxygen counterparts $RCOR'$ (oxoesters) in structure and reactivity more than other carboxylic acid derivatives such as acyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, and amides. Thioesters can be prepared from thiols by reaction with acyl chlorides or acid anhydrides in much the same way as oxoesters are prepared from alcohols.

$$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2SH + CH_3CCl \longrightarrow CH_3CSCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$$

1-Butanethiol Acetyl chloride Butyl thioacetate (91%)

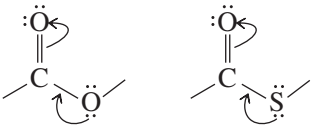
The preparation of thioesters by Fischer esterification is not very effective, however, because the equilibrium is normally unfavorable. Under conditions in which ethanol is converted to ethyl benzoate to the extent of 68%, ethanethiol gives only 15% ethyl thiobenzoate.



Ethanol: X = O
Ethanethiol: X = S

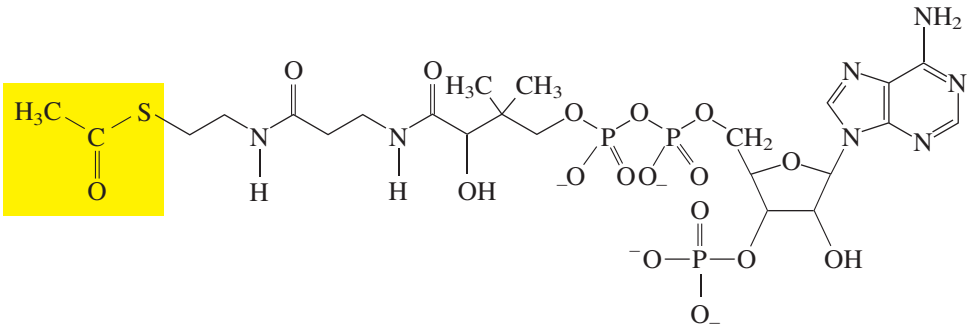
At equilibrium: X = O; 68%
X = S; 15%

This, and numerous other observations, indicates that S—C═O is less stabilized than O—C═O. Like chlorine, sulfur is a third-row element and does not act as an electron-pair donor to the carbonyl group as well as oxygen.



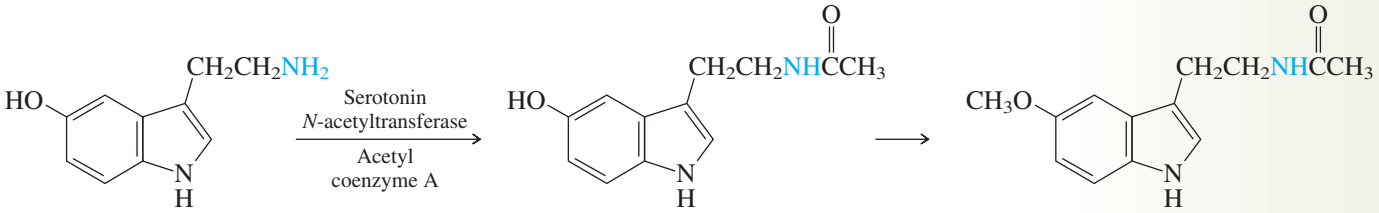
More effective Less effective

Thioesters and oxoesters are similar in their rates of nucleophilic acyl substitution, except with amine nucleophiles for which thioesters are much more reactive. Many biological reactions involve nucleophilic acyl substitutions referred to as **acyl transfer** reactions. The thioester *acetyl coenzyme A* is an acetyl group donor to alcohols, amines, and assorted other biological nucleophiles.



Acetyl coenzyme A (CH_3CSCoA)

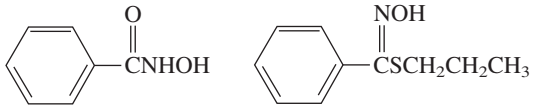
Melatonin, a hormone secreted by the pineal gland that regulates circadian rhythms, including wake–sleep cycles, is biosynthesized by a process in which the first step is an enzyme-catalyzed transfer of the acetyl group from sulfur of acetyl coenzyme A to the $—NH_2$ group of serotonin.



19.50 Thioesters react with hydroxylamine by nucleophilic acyl substitution to give hydroxamic acids. What is the structure of the hydroxamic acid formed in the following reaction?

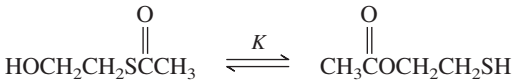
$CH_3CH_2CH_2ONH_2$ $CH_3CH_2CH_2NHOH$

A. B.



C. D.

19.51 The equilibrium constant K equals 56 for the reaction shown.

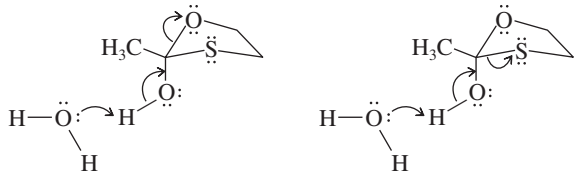


Complete the following statement so that it correctly describes this reaction.

The sign of:

A. ΔG is + at equilibrium
B. ΔG is − at equilibrium
C. $\Delta G°$ is +
D. $\Delta G°$ is −

19.52 For the reaction shown in Problem 19.51, which of the following better represents the flow of electrons for the step in the mechanism leading to the isomer present in greatest amount at equilibrium?



A. B.

19.53 Which reaction occurs at the fastest rate?

A. $CH_3CSCH_2CH_3 + CH_3NH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3CNHCH_3 + CH_3CH_2SH$

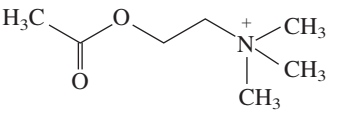
B. $CH_3COCH_2CH_3 + CH_3NH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3CNHCH_3 + CH_3CH_2OH$

C. $CH_3CSCH_2CH_3 + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_3COH + CH_3CH_2SH$

D. $CH_3COCH_2CH_3 + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_3COH + CH_3CH_2OH$

19.54 Which one of the reactions in the preceding problem has the most negative value of ΔG°?

19.55 Acetylcholine is a neurotransmitter formed in nerve cells by the enzyme-catalyzed reaction of choline with acetyl coenzyme A.

Choline + Acetyl coenzyme A $\xrightarrow{\text{Choline acetyltransferase}}$ 

Acetylcholine

What is the most reasonable structure for choline?

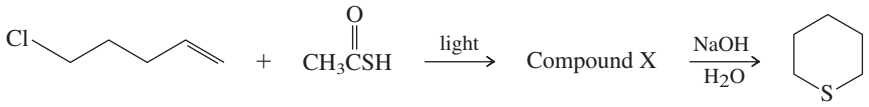
A. $HSCH_2CH_2\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3$

B. $HOCH_2CH_2\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3$

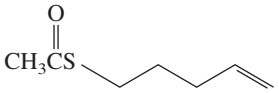
C. $CH_3COCH_2CH_2NH_2$

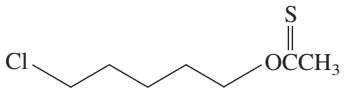
D. $CH_3CSCH_2CH_2\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3$

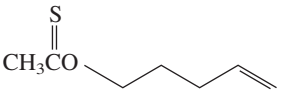
19.56 Thiane was prepared in 76% yield from 5-chloro-1-pentene by the procedure shown. Deduce the structure of compound X in this synthesis.

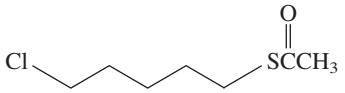


5-Chloro-1-pentene Thiane

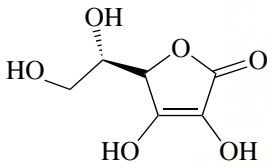
A. 

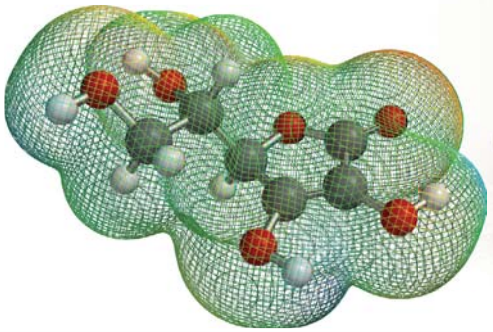
C. 

B. 

D. 

20





CHAPTER OUTLINE

20.1 Enol Content and Enolization 821
20.2 Enolates 824
20.3 The Aldol Condensation 828
20.4 Mixed and Directed Aldol Reactions 831
- Chalcones as Aromatase Inhibitors: From the Mulberry Tree to Cancer Chemotherapy 832

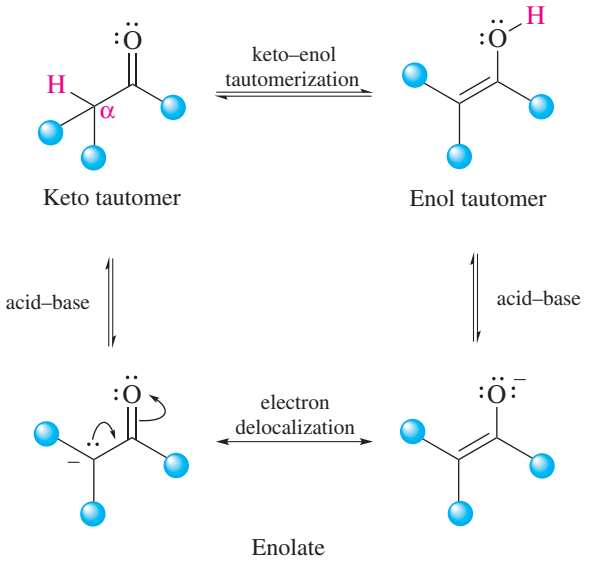
20.5 Acylation of Enolates: The Claisen and Related Condensations 833
20.6 Alkylation of Enolates: The Acetoacetic Ester and Malonic Ester Syntheses 837
20.7 The Haloform Reaction 840
- The Haloform Reaction and the Biosynthesis of Trihalomethanes 841

20.8 Conjugation Effects in α,β-Unsaturated Aldehydes and Ketones 843
20.9 Summary 847
Problems 849
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 20: The Enolate Chemistry of Dianions 855

Compounds that have C═C—OH structural units are classified as enols and have properties that differ from their alcohol and alkene relatives. Vitamin C is even more different; it is an enediol with an HO—C═C—OH unit in its structure.

Enols and Enolates

You learned in Chapter 17 that *nucleophilic addition* to aldehydes and ketones is one of the fundamental reaction types of organic chemistry, then in Chapter 19 you saw that addition to carbonyl groups in carboxylic acid derivatives can lead to *nucleophilic acyl substitution.* In this chapter, you'll encounter a third pattern of carbonyl reactivity—one that involves the enol **tautomers** of aldehydes, ketones, and esters and the conjugate bases of enols known as enolates.



Tautomers are constitutional isomers related by switching the locations of a multiple bond and an atom or group. In keto–enol tautomerism these are the double bond of the carbonyl group and a proton on the carbon adjacent to C═O (the α carbon). *Tautomerism* describes the relationship between a keto and enol form, *tautomerization* refers to their interconversion.

The chapter begins with keto–enol tautomerism and examines structural effects on the degree of enolization, its mechanism, and the role of enols in the reactions of carbonyl compounds. We then proceed to the major emphasis of the chapter—enolates and their synthetic value in making carbon–carbon bonds. The applications are numerous, but most share the common feature of enolates acting as nucleophiles.

20.1 Enol Content and Enolization

Keto ⇌ enol equilibration is a property of carbonyl compounds that contain a proton on their α carbon and normally favors the keto form (Table 20.1). Simple aldehydes and ketones exist almost entirely in their keto forms; acetaldehyde contains less than 1 ppm of its enol, and acetone contains 100 times less than that. The enol content of acetic acid and methyl acetate is even smaller because their keto isomers are stabilized by electron release from OH and OCH_3, respectively, to C═O; the enols are not.

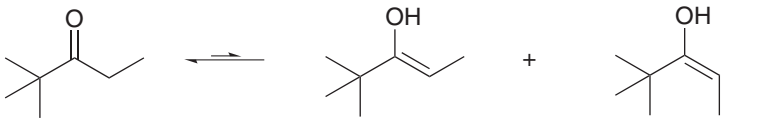
Enols were introduced in Section 9.12 as reactive intermediates in the hydration of alkynes.

Problem 20.1

Write structural formulas for the enol isomers of each of the following.

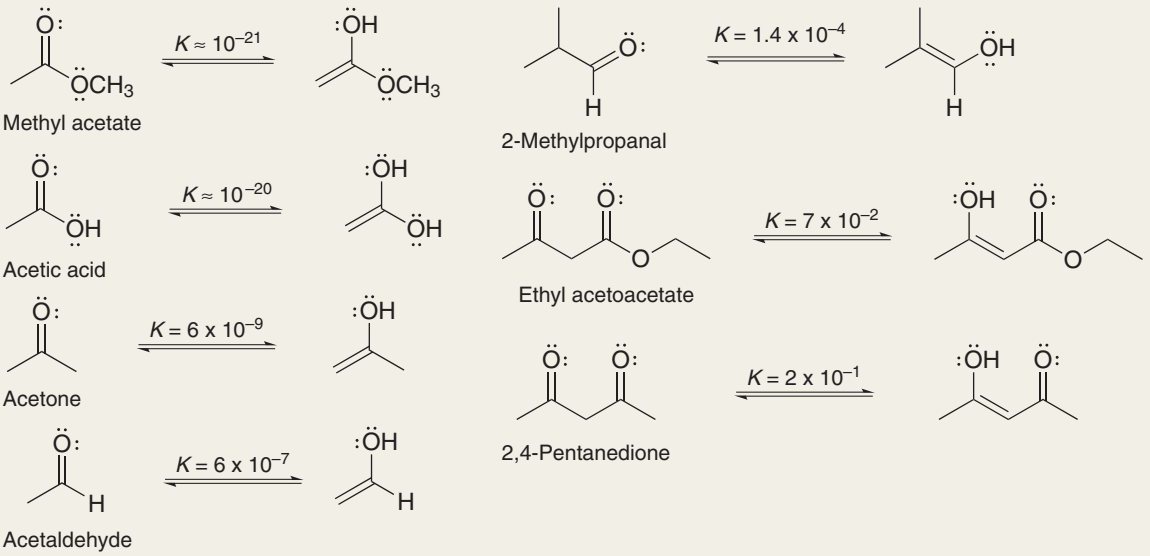
(a) 2,2-Dimethyl-3-pentanone
(b) Acetophenone
(c) 2-Methylcyclohexanone
(d) Methyl vinyl ketone

Sample Solution (a) Only one of the α carbons of 2,2-dimethyl-3-pentanone has an attached hydrogen, so only one constitutional isomer is possible for the enol. *E* and *Z* stereoisomers are possible.



2,2-Dimethyl-3-pentanone (keto) ⇌ (*Z*)-4,4-Dimethyl-2-penten-3-ol (enol) + (*E*)-4,4-Dimethyl-2-penten-3-ol (enol)

TABLE 20.1 Enolization Equilibria (keto ⇌ enol) of Some Carbonyl Compounds*



*In water, 25°C

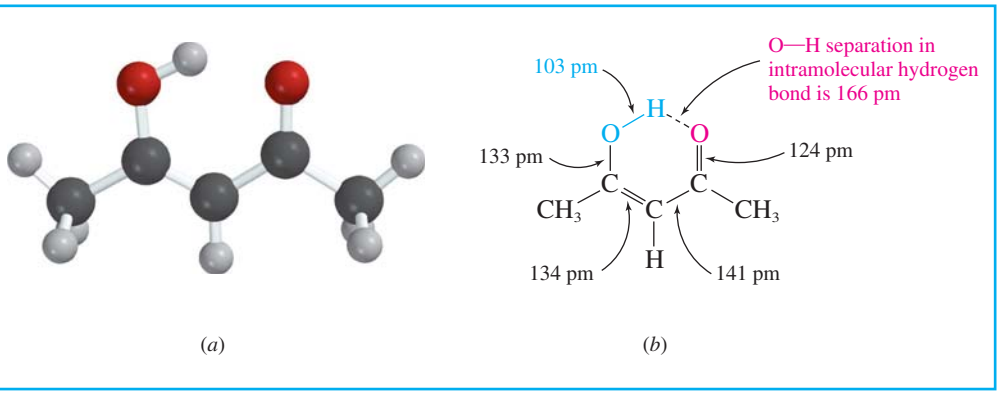


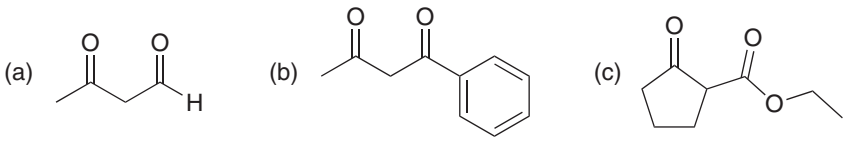
Figure 20.1

(*a*) A molecular model and (*b*) bond distances in the enol of 2,4-pentanedione.

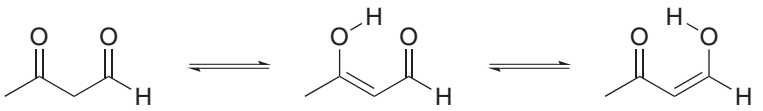
The far higher enol content in the β-dicarbonyl compounds of Table 20.1—almost 7% in ethyl acetoacetate and 20% in 2,4-pentanedione—reflects the stabilization of the enol by conjugation of the carbon–carbon double bond with the other carbonyl group plus intramolecular hydrogen bonding of the enolic OH with C═O. Both features are apparent in the structure of the enol of 2,4-pentanedione shown in Figure 20.1. Analogous structural features stabilize the enol of ethyl acetoacetate.

Problem 20.2

Write structural formulas for the two most stable enol isomers of the β-dicarbonyl compounds shown in a form that reflects an intramolecular hydrogen bond.

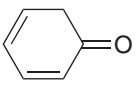


Sample Solution (a) Enolization in β-dicarbonyl compounds involves the carbon between the two carbonyl groups. Hydrogen bonding occurs between OH and C═O.



Problem 20.3

K for enolization of 2,4-cyclohexadienone is about 10^{13}. Explain why the enol is so much more stable than the keto tautomer.



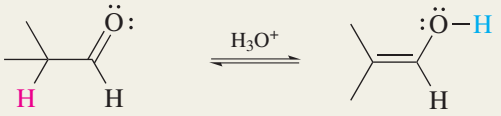
Mechanism 20.1 describes the two steps by which acid-catalyzed keto–enol equilibration occurs; the first is protonation of the carbonyl oxygen, the second is removal of a proton from the α carbon.

The studies that led to this mechanism were carried out in London over a century ago by Arthur Lapworth, who found that the rate of halogenation of acetone is the same regardless of the halogen and its concentration.

Mechanism 20.1

Acid-Catalyzed Enolization of 2-Methylpropanal

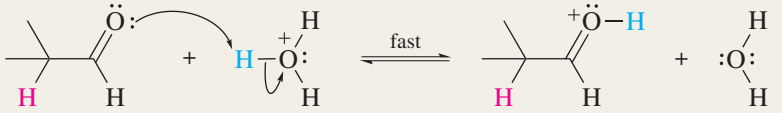
THE OVERALL REACTION:



2-Methylpropanal Enol

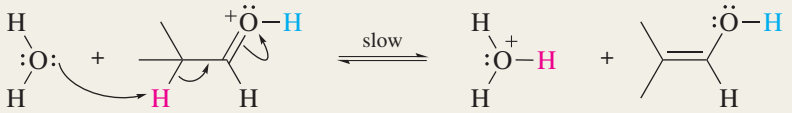
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: In aqueous solution, hydronium ion transfers a proton to the carbonyl oxygen.



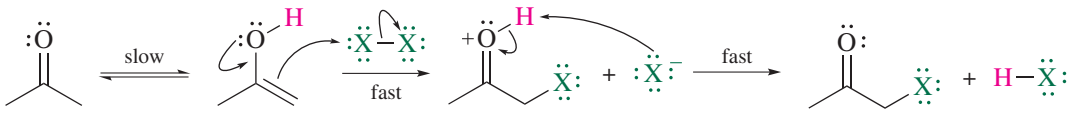
2-Methylpropanal Hydronium ion Conjugate acid of 2-methylpropanal Water

Step 2: A water molecule acts as a Brønsted base to remove a proton from the α carbon of the protonated carbonyl.



Water Conjugate acid of 2-methylpropanal Hydronium ion Enol

Lapworth reasoned that an enol was a reactive intermediate, that its formation was rate-determining, and that the halogen didn't participate until after the rate-determining step. These early studies provided the basis for the generally accepted mechanism for the α-halogenation of aldehydes and ketones.



Further, Lapworth's suggestion that enols are intermediates in these reactions has been established to apply to numerous other reactions of carbonyl compounds as well. Enols are intermediates in the hydration of alkynes (see Section 9.12) and the decarboxylation of β-keto acids and malonic acid derivatives (see Section 18.16). They are also intermediates in a number of biochemical processes including glucose metabolism and fatty acid biosynthesis.

Problem 20.4

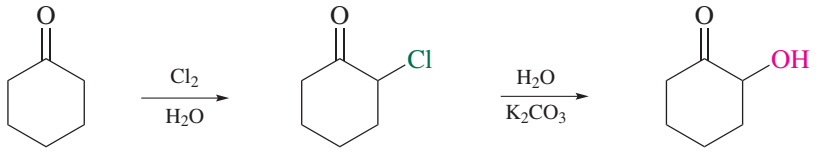
Chlorination of 2-butanone yields two isomeric products, each having the molecular formula C_4H_7ClO.

(a) What are these two compounds?

(b) Write structural formulas for the enol intermediates that lead to each of these compounds.

(c) Using curved arrows, show the flow of electrons in the reaction of each of the enols with Cl_2.

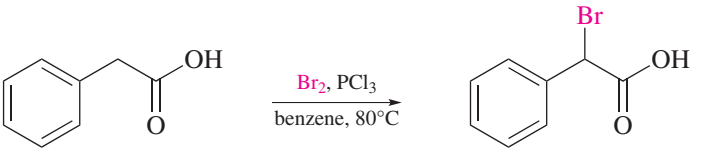
Synthetically, halogenation of aldehydes and ketones is a useful first step toward introducing other substituents at the α carbon of aldehydes and ketones.



Cyclohexanone — 2-Chlorocyclohexanone (61–66%) — 2-Hydroxycyclohexanone (76%)

The enol content of carboxylic acids is far smaller than that of aldehydes and ketones and their α-halogenation under the usual conditions is not feasible. Adding a small amount of phosphorus trichloride, however, promotes the desired halogenation.

This procedure is called the Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction after its discoverers. In an alternative method, elemental phosphorus is used which reacts with the halogen to generate the phosphorus trihalide.

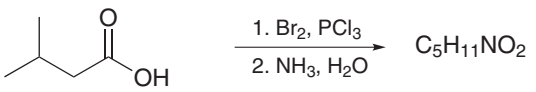


Phenylacetic acid — 2-Bromo-2-phenylacetic acid (60–62%)

Phosphorus trichloride converts the carboxylic acid to the corresponding acyl chloride, which has a less stabilized carbonyl group (see Section 19.2) and, therefore, a greater enol content. Bromination of this enol takes place, followed by a process that gives the α-bromo acid plus another molecule of the acyl chloride, which then undergoes enolization, bromination, and so on.

Problem 20.5

α-Halogenation of 3-methylbutanoic acid has been used to prepare the amino acid valine.



3-Methylbutanoic acid — Valine

What is the structure of valine? When isolated from proteins, natural valine has a specific rotation [α] of +26°. What is the rotation of valine prepared via halogenation of 3-methylbutanoic acid?

We'll return to examine more reactions of enols later in the chapter after describing the properties and synthetic applications of the conjugate bases of enols—enolates.

20.2 Enolates

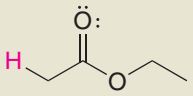
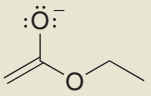
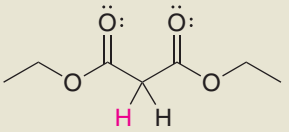
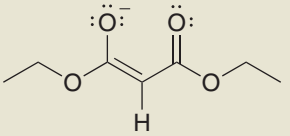
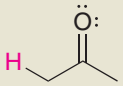
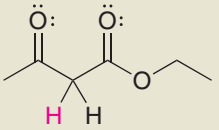
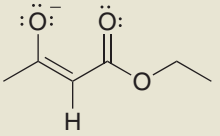
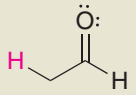
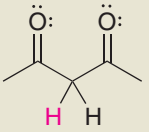
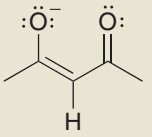
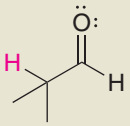
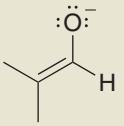
Our experience to this point has been that C—H bonds are not very acidic. Alkanes, for example, have pK_a's of approximately 60. Compared with them, however, aldehydes, ketones, and esters have relatively acidic hydrogens on their α-carbon atoms (Table 20.2).

Problem 20.6

Find the most acidic hydrogen in each of the following and write a chemical equation for the proton-transfer process that occurs on reaction with hydroxide ion. Use curved arrows to show electron flow and label the acid, base, conjugate acid, and conjugate base.

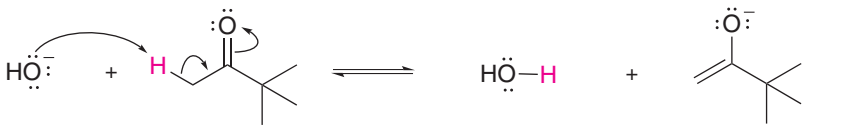
(a) *tert*-Butyl methyl ketone
(b) 3-Methylbutanal
(c) Methyl propanoate

TABLE 20.2 pK_a* Values of Some Aldehydes, Ketones, and Esters

Compound	pK_a	Enolate	Compound	pK_a	Enolate
 Ethyl acetate	25.6		 Diethyl malonate	13	
 Acetone	19.1		 Ethyl acetoacetate	11	
 Acetaldehyde	16.7		 2,4-Pentanedione	9	
 2-Methylpropanal	15.5				

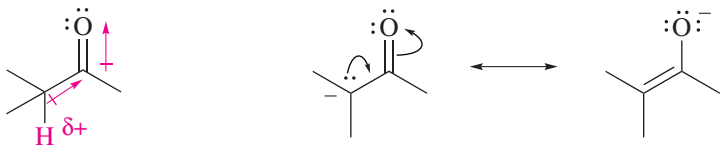
*The most acidic hydrogens are bonded to the α carbon; one of the α hydrogens is shown in red for each substance.

Sample Solution (a) The only α hydrogens in *tert*-butyl methyl ketone are those of the methyl group attached to the carbonyl. Only α hydrogens are acidic enough to be removed by hydroxide. None of the hydrogens of the *tert*-butyl group are α hydrogens.



Hydroxide (base) | *tert*-Butyl methyl ketone (acid) | Water (conjugate acid) | Enolate (conjugate base)

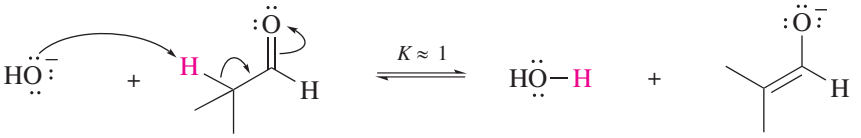
Two factors—one an electron-withdrawing inductive effect, the other electron delocalization—combine to make an α hydrogen of an aldehyde, ketone, or ester more acidic than most hydrogens bonded to carbon. The inductive effect of the carbonyl increases the positive character of the α hydrogen, and resonance stabilizes the conjugate base.



Inductive effect increases positive character of α hydrogen

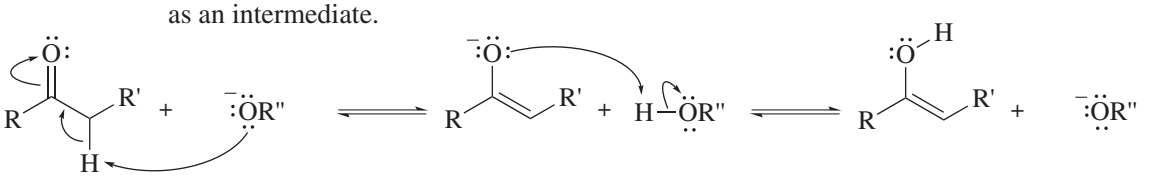
Electron delocalization stabilizes enolate

The pK_a of 2-methylpropanal is similar to that of water; therefore, hydroxide is a strong enough base to establish an equilibrium containing it and the enolate in virtually equal amounts.



Hydroxide ion | 2-Methylpropanal pK_a = 15.5 | Water pK_a = 15.7 | Enolate of 2-methylpropanal

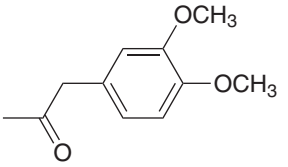
The position of equilibrium is less favorable for ketones, but hydroxide and alkoxides are sufficiently basic to catalyze the enolization of aldehydes and ketones by way of the enolate as an intermediate.



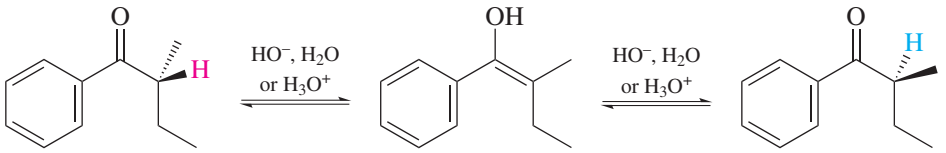
Aldehyde or ketone | Hydroxide or alkoxide | Enolate | Alcohol or water | Enol | Hydroxide or alkoxide

Problem 20.7

After the compound shown was heated in D_2O containing K_2CO_3 at 70°C, the only signals that were observed in its ^{1}H NMR spectrum were at δ 3.9 (6H) and δ 6.7–6.9 (3H). What happened?



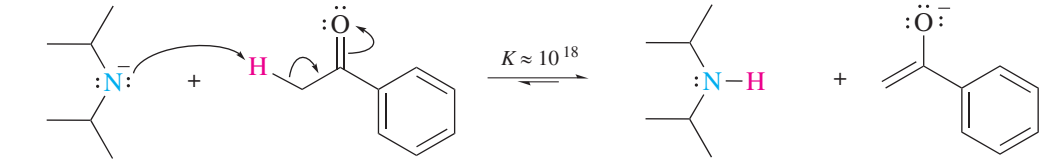
If the α-carbon of an aldehyde or ketone is a chirality center, its stereochemical integrity is lost on enolization. Enolization of optically active *sec*-butyl phenyl ketone leads to its racemization by way of the achiral enol form.



(*R*)-*sec*-Butyl phenyl ketone | (*S*)-*sec*-Butyl phenyl ketone

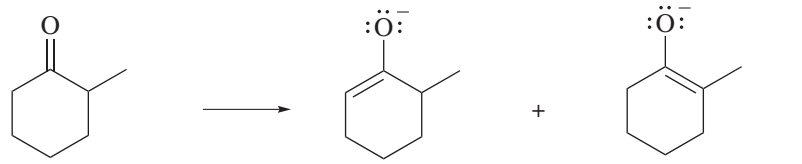
Kinetic studies using *sec*-butyl phenyl ketone have established that its rates of racemization, hydrogen-deuterium exchange, bromination, and iodination are equal. In each case, formation of the enol or enolate is rate-determining.

Ketones can be converted almost entirely to their enolates by using very strong bases such as lithium diisopropylamide $LiN[CH(CH_3)_2]_2$, known as LDA. Because it is sterically hindered, LDA does not undergo nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group.



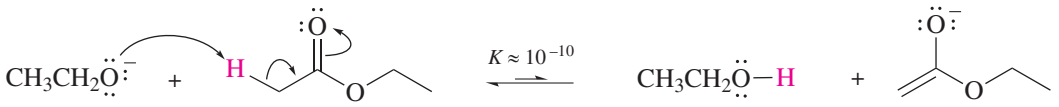
Diisopropylamide ion | Acetophenone (Stronger acid: pK_a = 18.3) | Diisopropylamine (Weaker acid: pK_a = 36) | Enolate of acetophenone

A second property of LDA is that, because of crowding around nitrogen, it tends to remove a proton from the less-substituted α carbon. In a ketone with two nonequivalent α carbons such as 2-methylcyclohexanone, LDA deprotonates the less-substituted α carbon faster than the more-substituted one to give predominantly what is called the *kinetic enolate*. The isomeric enolate with its more-substituted double bond is more stable and is called the *thermodynamic* enolate.



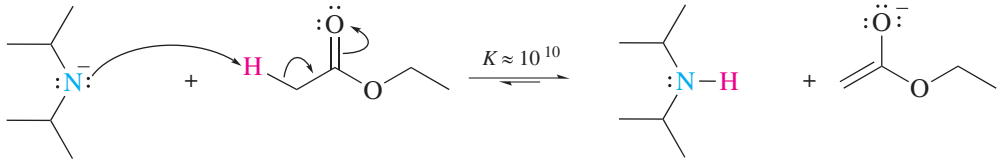
2-Methylcyclohexanone — *Kinetic enolate* formed faster — *Thermodynamic enolate* more stable

Ester enolates are generated under conditions similar to those of aldehydes and ketones except alkoxide bases are used instead of hydroxide in order to avoid ester saponification.



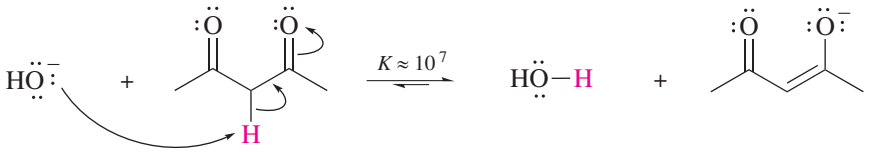
Ethoxide ion — Ethyl acetate (Weaker acid: $pK_a = 25.6$) — Ethanol (Stronger acid: $pK_a = 16$) — Enolate of ethyl acetate

Like ketones, esters can be converted almost entirely to their enolates using LDA as the base.



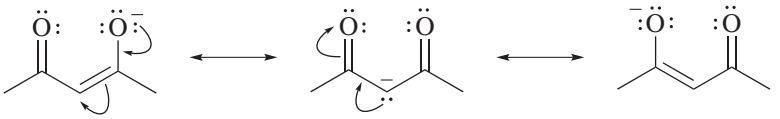
Diisopropylamide ion — Ethyl acetate (Stronger acid: $pK_a = 25.6$) — Diisopropylamine (Weaker acid: $pK_a = 36$) — Enolate of ethyl acetate

As shown in Table 20.2, β-dicarbonyl compounds such as 2,4-pentanedione (a β-diketone), ethyl acetoacetate (a β-keto ester), and diethyl malonate (a 1,3-diester) have pK_a's in the 9–13 range. They are stronger acids than water and alcohols so can be converted to their enolates by hydroxide and alkoxides.



Hydroxide ion — 2,4-Pentanedione (Stronger acid: $pK_a = 9$) — Water (Weaker acid: $pK_a = 15.7$) — Enolate of 2,4-pentanedione

Both carbonyl groups participate in stabilizing the enolate by electron delocalization.



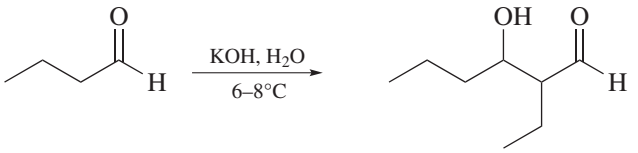
Problem 20.8

Use the structural formulas and pK_a's in Table 20.2 to estimate the equilibrium constant K for the reaction of ethoxide with (a) ethyl acetoacetate and (b) diethyl malonate. The pK_a of ethanol is 16.

Enolates are much more powerful nucleophiles than enols and have more synthetic applications. Much of this nucleophilicity is associated with the α carbon and is the basis for a number of widely used methods for making carbon–carbon bonds.

20.3 The Aldol Condensation

We have just seen that treatment of aldehydes and ketones with bases such as hydroxide and alkoxide gives a solution containing both the carbonyl compound and its enolate. Instead of simply maintaining an equilibrium between the two, however, carbon–carbon bond formation occurs.



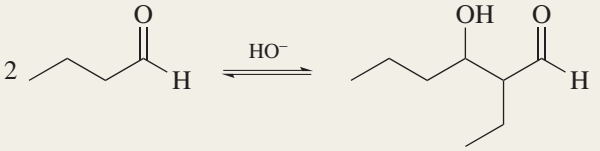
Butanal — 2-Ethyl-3-hydroxyhexanal (75%)

The β-hydroxy aldehyde product is called an *aldol* because it contains both an *ald*ehyde and an alcoh*ol* function, and the reaction is referred to as **aldol addition.** It proceeds by the series of steps shown in Mechanism 20.2. All the steps in the reaction are reversible, and,

Mechanism 20.2

Aldol Addition of Butanal

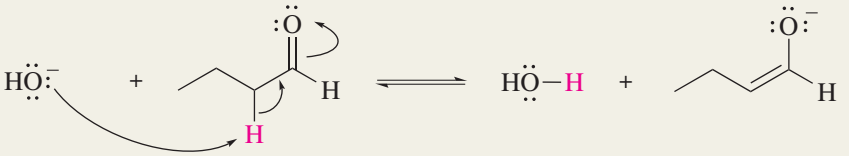
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Butanal — 2-Ethyl-3-hydroxyhexanal

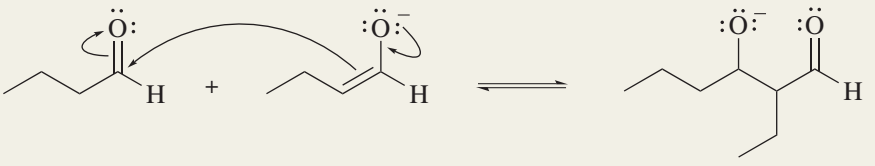
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The base, in this case hydroxide ion, converts a portion of butanal to its enolate by abstracting a proton from the α carbon.



Hydroxide ion — Butanal — Water — Enolate of butanal

Step 2: The enolate acts as a nucleophile and adds to the carbonyl group.

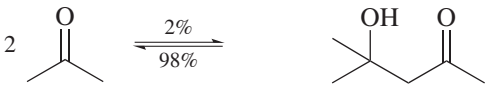


Butanal (electrophile) — Enolate of butanal (nucleophile) — Alkoxide from nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl

Step 3: The alkoxide product of step 2 abstracts a proton from water to give the aldol and regenerate the hydroxide catalyst.

Water — Alkoxide from nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl — Hydroxide ion — 2-Ethyl-3-hydroxyhexanal

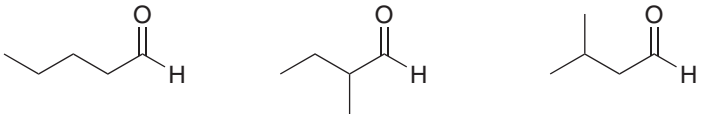
like other nucleophilic additions to carbonyl groups, the position of equilibrium is more favorable for aldehydes than for ketones. In the case of acetone, for example, only 2% of the aldol addition product is present at equilibrium.



Acetone — 4-Hydroxy-4-methyl-2-pentanone

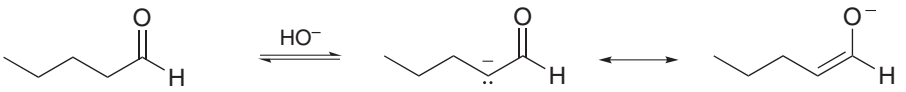
Problem 20.9

Write the structure of the aldol addition product of each of the following.



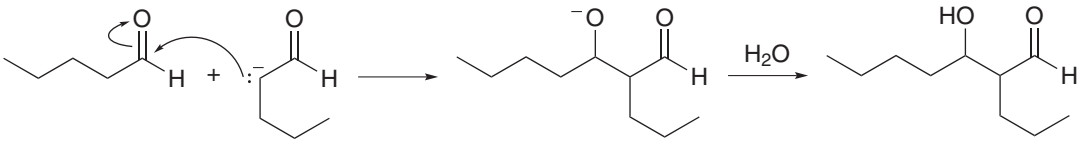
(a) Pentanal (b) 2-Methylbutanal (c) 3-Methylbutanal

Sample Solution (a) A good way to correctly identify the aldol addition product of any aldehyde is to work through the process mechanistically. Remember that the first step is enolate formation and that this *must* involve proton abstraction from the a carbon.



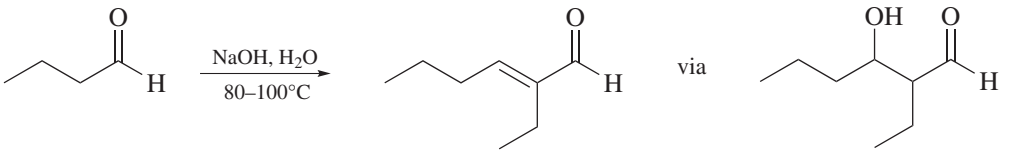
Pentanal — Enolate of pentanal

Now use the negatively charged α carbon of the enolate to form a new carbon–carbon bond to the carbonyl group. Proton transfer from the solvent completes the process.



Pentanal + enolate — Aldol addition product

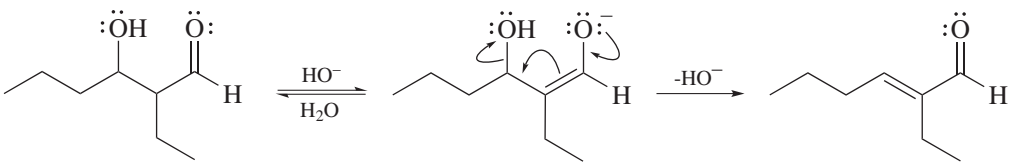
The products of aldol addition undergo dehydration on heating to yield α,β-unsaturated aldehydes.



Butanal — (*E*)-2-Ethyl-2-hexenal (86%) — 2-Ethyl-3-hydroxyhexanal (not isolated; dehydrates under reaction conditions)

Reactions of this type are called **aldol condensations.**

We have seen numerous examples of acid-catalyzed dehydration of alcohols, so it may seem strange that aldols can dehydrate in basic solution. This is another example of how the acidity of the α hydrogens affects the reactivity of carbonyl compounds. Here, elimination occurs by initial formation of an enolate, which then loses hydroxide to form the α,β-unsaturated aldehyde.

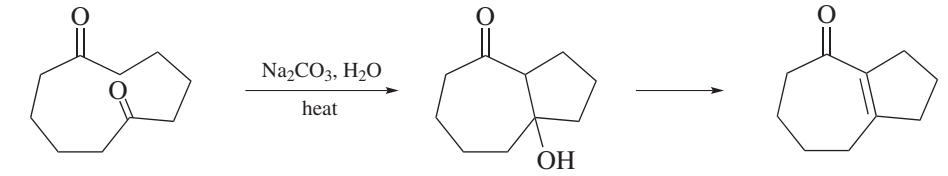


2-Ethyl-3-hydroxyhexanal — Enolate — (*E*)-2-Ethyl-2-hexenal

Problem 20.10

Write the structure of the aldol condensation product of each of the aldehydes in Problem 20.9. One of these aldehydes can undergo aldol addition, but not aldol condensation. Which one? Why?

Aldol condensations of dicarbonyl compounds—even diketones—occur intramolecularly when five- or six-membered rings are possible.



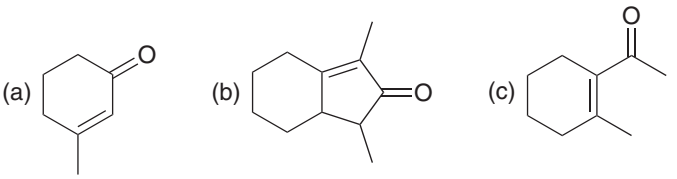
1,6-Cyclodecanedione

Not isolated: dehydrates under reaction conditions

Bicyclo[5.3.0]dec-1(7)-en-2-one (96%)

Problem 20.11

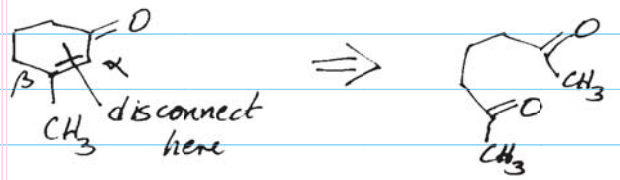
Each of the following can be prepared by an intramolecular aldol condensation of a diketone. Apply retrosynthetic analysis to deduce the structure of the diketone in each case.



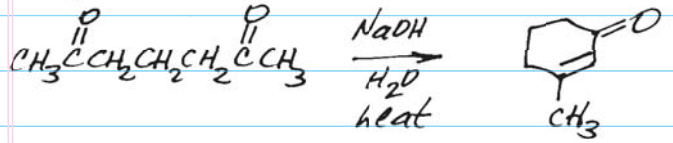
Sample Solution

(a) • Apply retrosynthetic analysis.

• To reveal an aldol condensation route to an α,β-unsaturated ketone, disconnect C=C so that the α carbon stays with C=O and the β carbon becomes the second C=O.

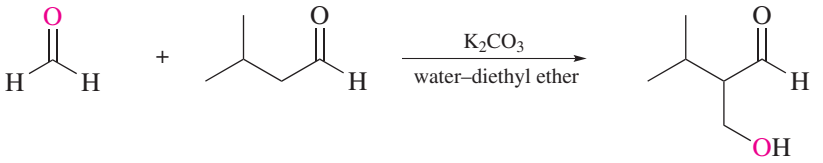


• The synthesis is:



20.4 Mixed and Directed Aldol Reactions

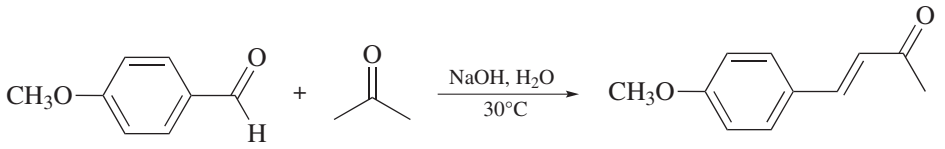
Mixed aldol additions and condensations are those involving two different carbonyl compounds. In the most synthetically useful circumstances, only one of the reactants can form an enolate or is more reactive toward nucleophilic addition to its carbonyl group. For example:



Formaldehyde | 3-Methylbutanal | 2-Hydroxymethyl-3-methylbutanal (52%)

Formaldehyde cannot form an enolate and is so reactive toward nucleophilic addition that it suppresses the self-condensation of the other aldehyde.

Aromatic aldehydes are another class of carbonyl compounds that cannot form enolates.



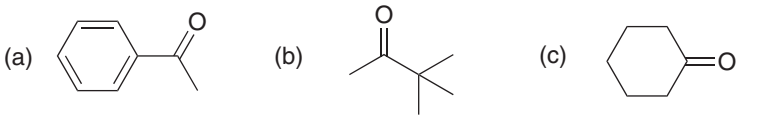
p-Methoxybenzaldehyde | Acetone | 4-*p*-Methoxyphenyl-3-buten-2-one (83%)

Here, the mixed condensation is favored by both the reluctance of ketones to self-condense and the readiness with which aldol addition is followed by dehydration to give a product in which the double bond is conjugated to both the carbonyl group and an aromatic ring.

Mixed aldol condensations in which a ketone reacts with an aromatic aldehyde are known as **Claisen-Schmidt condensations.**

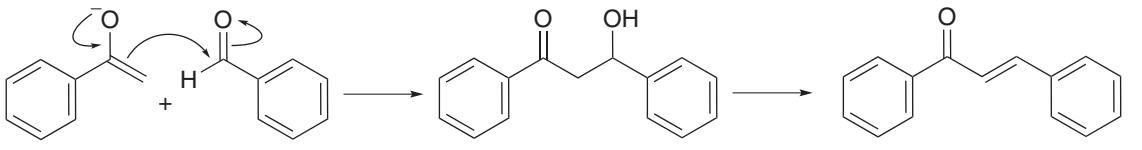
Problem 20.12

Give the structure of the mixed aldol condensation product of benzaldehyde with



Acetophenone | *tert*-Butyl methyl ketone | Cyclohexanone

Sample Solution (a) The enolate of acetophenone reacts with benzaldehyde to yield the product of mixed addition. Dehydration of the intermediate occurs, giving the α,β-unsaturated ketone.



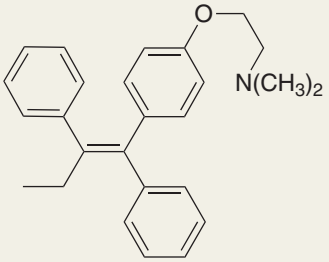
Enolate of acetophenone + benzaldehyde | 1,3-Diphenyl-2-propen-1-one

As actually carried out, the mixed aldol condensation product was isolated in 85% yield on treating benzaldehyde with acetophenone in an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide at 15–30°C.

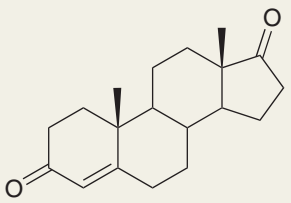
Another way to ensure that only one enolate is present is to use lithium diisopropylamide as the base. LDA is such a strong base that enolate formation is virtually instantaneous

Chalcones as Aromatase Inhibitors: From the Mulberry Tree to Cancer Chemotherapy

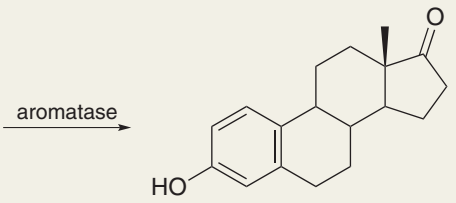
Estrogens—the primary female sex hormones—are risk factors for developing breast cancer, which, except for certain types of skin cancer, is the most common cancer among women. One approach to breast-cancer treatment is to restrict tumor growth with drugs such as *tamoxifen* that bind to the same cellular receptors as estrogens and block their action by denying them access. Another is to reduce estrogen levels by inhibiting the aromatase enzymes involved in the oxidation of androstenedione to estrone.



Tamoxifen

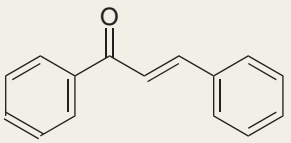


Androstenedione

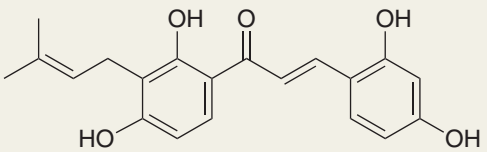


Estrone (an estrogen)

The potential of aromatase inhibitors in the treatment of breast cancer has spurred efforts to find more potent drugs. Bioassays of over 4000 plants led to the discovery of potent aromatase inhibitors from organic extracts of the paper mulberry tree, *Broussonetia papyrifera.* One of these compounds is a chalcone called morachalcone A. Chalcone and its derivatives are present in many plants, have a long history in folk medicine, and continue to be widely used as alternatives to conventional therapies.



Chalcone



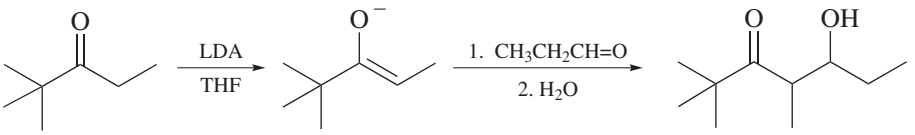
Morachalcone A

The paper mulberry tree *Broussonetia papyrifera* is a source of a compound that holds promise as an anticancer drug.

Problem 20.13

Chalcones are based on the parent structure shown above and are conveniently prepared by an aldol condensation. Use retrosynthetic analysis to identify the carbonyl compound and enolate and write an equation for the synthesis of chalcone.

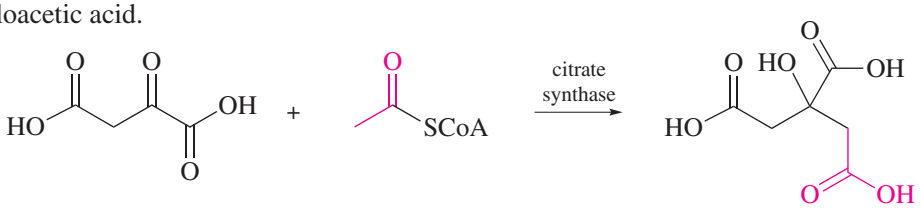
and quantitative. The ketone is added to a solution of LDA in a suitable solvent, followed by the compound with which the enolate is to react.



2,2-Dimethyl-3-pentanone — Enolate — 5-Hydroxy-2,2,4-trimethyl-3-heptanone (81%)

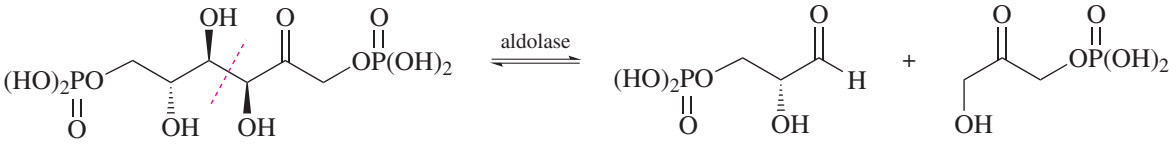
Reactions of this type are called *directed aldol additions.*

A number of biochemical reactions resemble aldol addition. One, the first step in the citric acid cycle, is an aldol-type addition of acetyl coenzyme A to the ketone carbonyl of oxaloacetic acid.



Oxaloacetic acid — Acetyl coenzyme A — Citric acid

In an early step of *glycolysis,* the energy-producing part of glucose metabolism, the enzyme *aldolase* catalyzes a reverse or *retro-aldol* reaction.

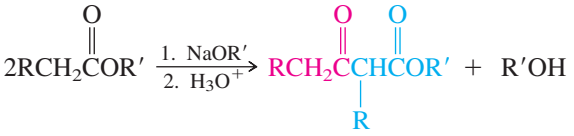


D-Fructose 1,6-diphosphate — D-Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate — Dihydroxyacetone phosphate

20.5 Acylation of Enolates: The Claisen and Related Condensations

Nucleophilic *addition* to the carbonyl group of an aldehyde or ketone by an enolate is a key step in aldol condensations. Nucleophilic acyl *substitution* at the carbonyl group of an ester by an enolate is a key step in several synthetic procedures applied to making C—C bonds.

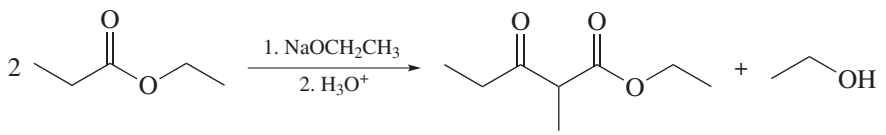
In the **Claisen condensation,** one ester is the source of both the acyl group and the enolate and the product is a β-keto ester.



Ester — β-Keto ester — Alcohol

Ludwig Claisen was a German chemist who worked during the last two decades of the nineteenth century and the first two decades of the twentieth. His name is associated with three reactions. The *Claisen–Schmidt reaction* was presented in Section 20.4, the *Claisen condensation* is discussed here, and the *Claisen rearrangement* will be introduced in Section 22.13.

The Claisen condensation is used to prepare β-keto esters and involves bond formation between the α carbon of one molecule and the carbonyl carbon of another. Mechanism 20.3 outlines the steps in the reaction:



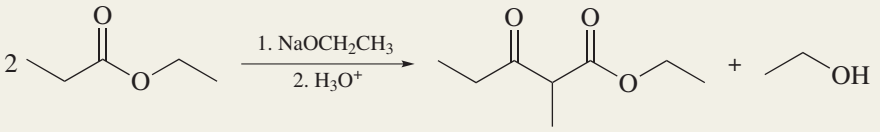
Ethyl propanoate — Ethyl 2-methyl-3-oxopentanoate (81%) — Ethanol

An ester must have, as in this case, at least two α hydrogens to undergo a synthetically useful Claisen condensation. The first α proton is removed to form the ester enolate

Mechanism 20.3

Claisen Condensation of Ethyl Propanoate

THE OVERALL REACTION:



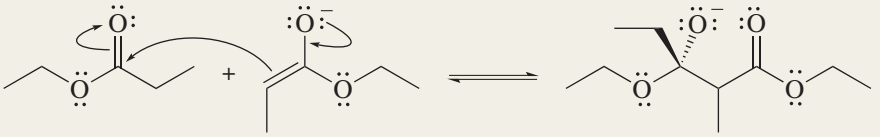
Ethyl propanoate — Ethyl 2-methyl-3-oxopentanoate — Ethanol

THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: Proton abstraction from the α carbon of ethyl propanoate gives the corresponding enolate.

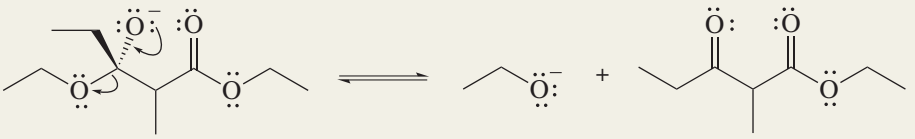
Ethoxide — Ethyl propanoate (weaker acid: pK_a ~ 26) — Ethanol (stronger acid: pK_a = 16) — Enolate of ethyl propanoate

Step 2: The ester enolate undergoes nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group of the keto form of the ester. The product of this step is the anionic form of the tetrahedral intermediate.



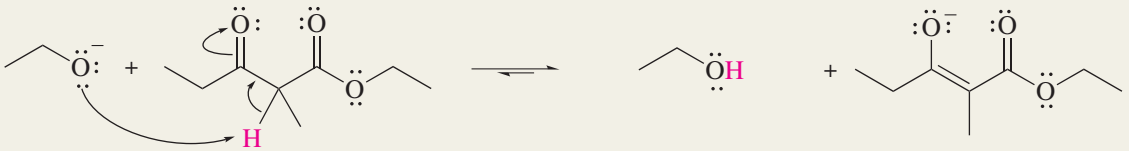
Ethyl propanoate — Enolate of ethyl propanoate — Anionic form of tetrahedral intermediate

Step 3: The tetrahedral intermediate dissociates by loss of ethoxide and gives the β-keto ester.



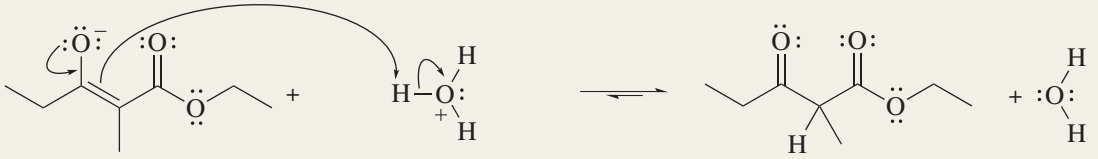
Anionic form of tetrahedral intermediate — Ethoxide ion — Ethyl 2-methyl-3-oxopentanoate

Step 4: Under the conditions of its formation, the β-keto ester is deprotonated. The equilibrium constant for this step is favorable and drives the equilibrium toward product formation.



Ethoxide — Ethyl 2-methyl-3-oxopentanoate (stronger acid: pK_a ~ 11) — Ethanol (weaker acid: pK_a = 16) — Conjugate base of ethyl 2-methyl-3-oxopentanoate

Step 5: In a separate operation, aqueous acid is added to the reaction mixture to convert the enolate from step 4 to the neutral form of the desired product.

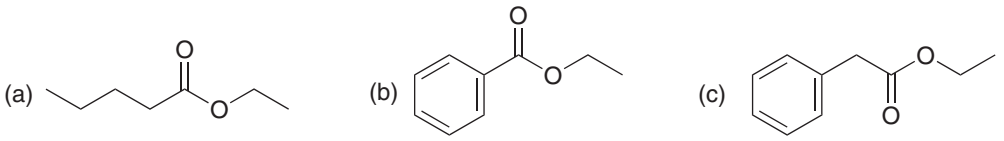


Conjugate base of ethyl 2-methyl-3-oxopentanoate — Hydronium ion (stronger acid: pK_a = –1.7) — Ethyl 2-methyl-3-oxopentanoate (weaker acid: pK_a ~ 11) — Water

(step 1 in Mechanism 20.3). However, the equilibrium concentration of the β-keto ester is unfavorable unless a second α proton is removed as in step 4. Thus, Claisen concentrations succeed for esters of the type RCH_2CO_2R', but not R_2CHCO_2R'.

Problem 20.14

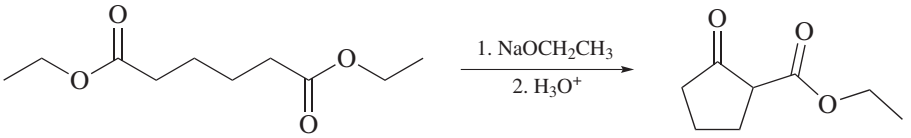
One of the following esters cannot undergo the Claisen condensation. Which one? Write structural formulas for the Claisen condensation products of the other two.



Ethyl pentanoate | Ethyl benzoate | Ethyl phenylacetate

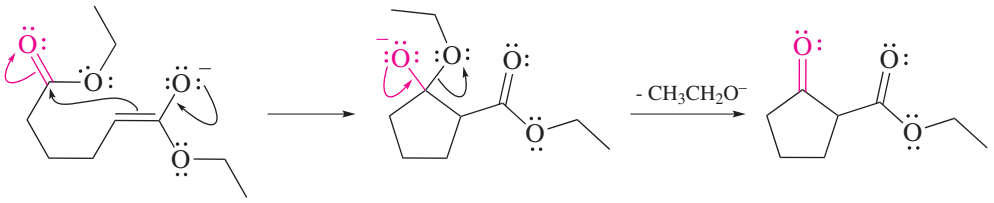
Esters of dicarboxylic acids can undergo an *intramolecular* version of the Claisen condensation, called a **Dieckmann cyclization,** if it leads to a five- or six-membered ring.

Walter Dieckmann was a German chemist and a contemporary of Claisen.



Diethyl hexanedioate | Ethyl (2-oxocyclopentane)-carboxylate (74–81%)

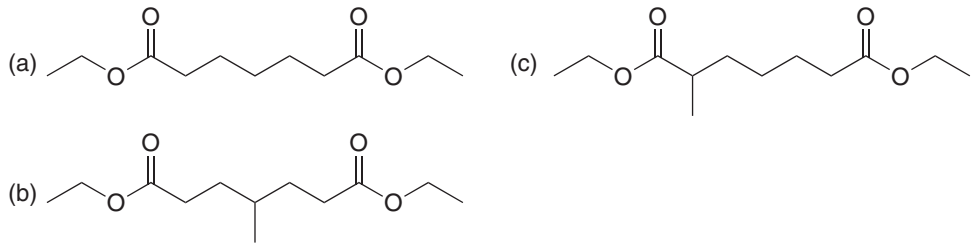
The α carbon of the enolate unit acts as a nucleophile toward the carbonyl carbon of the other.



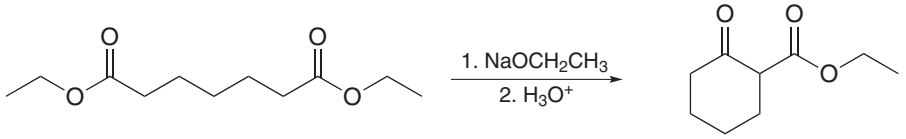
Enolate of diethyl hexanedioate | Ethyl (2-oxocyclo-pentane)carboxylate

Problem 20.15

Write the structure of the Dieckmann cyclization product formed on treatment of each of the following diesters with sodium ethoxide, followed by acidification.

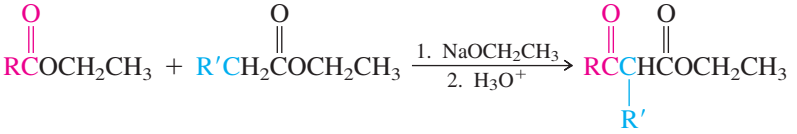


Sample Solution (a) The cyclization involves one C═O unit and the carbon that is α to the other. Therefore, a six-membered ring is formed in this case.



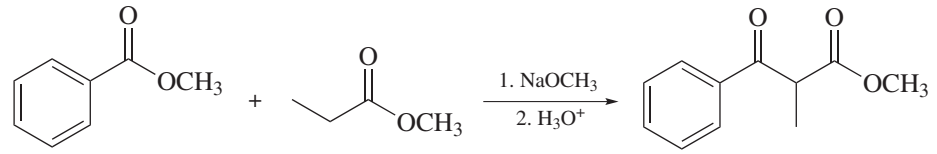
Diethyl heptanedioate | Ethyl 2-oxo(cyclohexane)-carboxylate)

Mixed Claisen condensations involve C—C bond formation between the α carbon of one ester and the carbonyl carbon of another. The product is a β-keto ester.



Ester Another ester β-Keto ester

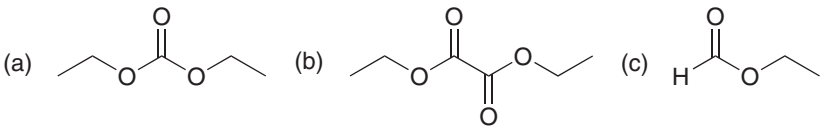
Esters that lack α hydrogens, methyl benzoate for example, cannot form enolates so are good candidates for one of the reactants.



Methyl benzoate (cannot form an enolate) Methyl propanoate Methyl 2-methyl-3-oxo-3-phenylpropanoate (60%)

Problem 20.16

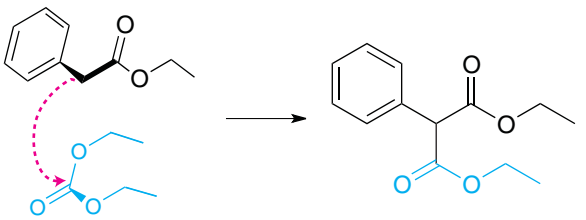
Give the structure of the product obtained when ethyl phenylacetate is treated with each of the following esters under conditions of the mixed Claisen condensation.



Diethyl carbonate Diethyl oxalate Ethyl formate

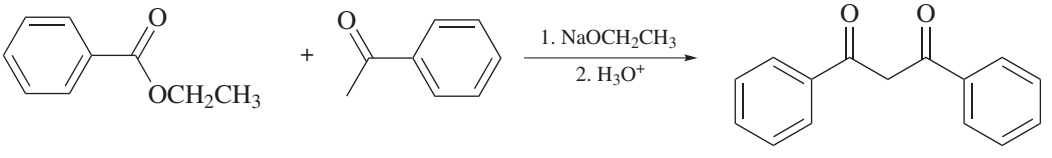
Sample Solution (a) Diethyl carbonate cannot form an enolate, but ethyl phenylacetate can. Nucleophilic acyl substitution of diethyl carbonate by the enolate of ethyl phenylacetate yields a diester.

Bond formation is between α carbon of ethyl phenylacetate and carbonyl carbon of diethyl carbonate

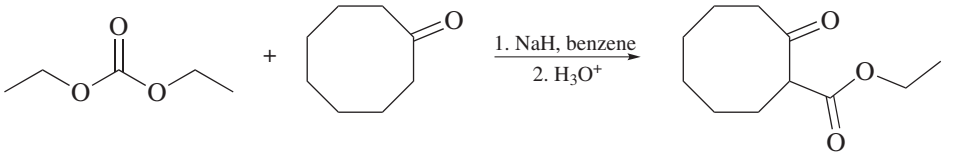


The reaction proceeds in good yield (86%), and the product (diethyl phenylmalonate) is useful in further synthetic transformations of the type to be described in Section 20.6).

In a reaction related to the mixed Claisen condensation, esters that cannot form enolates react with enolates of ketones by nucleophilic acyl substitution to give β-dicarbonyl compounds.

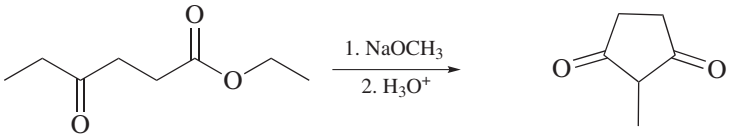


Ethyl benzoate Acetophenone 1,3-Diphenyl-1,3-propanedione (62–71%)



Diethyl carbonate Cyclooctanone 2-Carboethoxycyclooctanone (91–94%)

Like the Dieckmann cyclization, intramolecular C—C bond formation can occur if a five- or six-membered results.



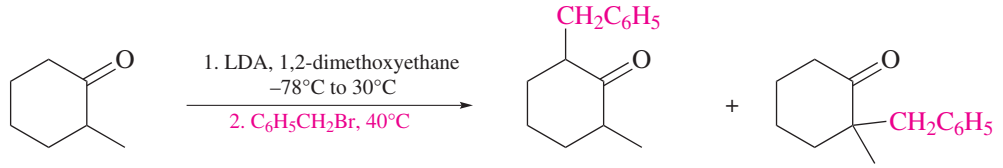
Ethyl 4-oxohexanoate — 2-Methyl-1,3-cyclopentanedione (70–71%)

Problem 20.17

Write an equation for the carbon–carbon bond-forming step in the cyclization just cited. Show clearly the structure of the enolate ion, and use curved arrows to represent its nucleophilic addition to the appropriate carbonyl group. Write a second equation showing dissociation of the tetrahedral intermediate formed in the carbon–carbon bond-forming step.

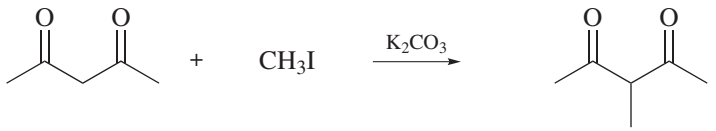
20.6 Alkylation of Enolates: The Acetoacetic Ester and Malonic Ester Syntheses

Simple aldehyde, ketone, and ester enolates are relatively basic, and their alkylation is limited to methyl and primary alkyl halides; secondary and tertiary alkyl halides undergo elimination. Even when alkylation is possible, other factors intervene that can reduce its effectiveness as a synthetic tool. It is not always possible to limit the reaction to monoalkylation, and aldol addition can compete with alkylation. With unsymmetrical ketones, regioselectivity becomes a consideration. We saw in Section 20.2 that a strong, hindered base such as lithium diisopropylamide (LDA) exhibits a preference for abstracting a proton from the less-substituted α carbon of 2-methylcyclohexanone to form the kinetic enolate. Even under these conditions, however, regioisomeric products are formed on alkylation with benzyl bromide.



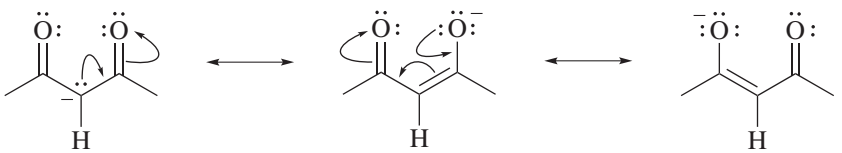
2-Methyl-cyclohexanone — 2-Benzyl-6-methyl-cyclohexanone (~52% yield) — 2-Benzyl-2-methyl-cyclohexanone (~7% yield)

On the other hand, alkylation of the β-diketone 2,4-pentanedione is regiospecific for the position between the two carbon groups.



2,4-Pentanedione — Methyl iodide — 3-Methyl-2,4-pentanedione (only product: 75–77% yield)

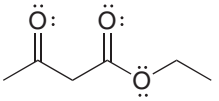
With a pK_a of 9, the protons attached to C-3 of 2,4-pentanedione are much more acidic than the protons of C-1 and C-5 (pK_a ~19). This increased acidity reflects stabilization of the enolate by electron delocalization involving both carbonyl groups.



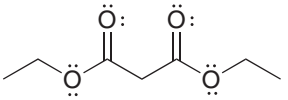
Similar stabilization and reduced basicity of the enolates of β-keto esters and esters of malonic acid makes possible their efficient alkylation as well.

Problem 20.18

The pK_a's of ethyl acetoacetate and diethyl malonate are 11 and 13, respectively. Write a structural formula for the most stable enolate of each using resonance to show the electron delocalization in each enolate.



Ethyl acetoacetate

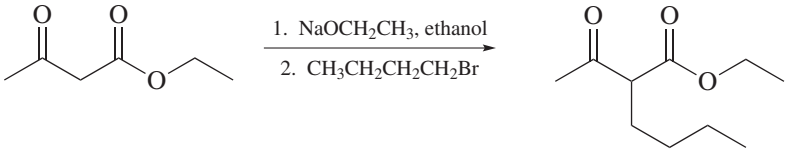


Diethyl malonate

Acetoacetic ester is a common name for ethyl acetoacetate. Its systematic, but rarely used, name is ethyl 3-oxobutanoate. Malonic ester is a common name for diethyl malonate, which is an acceptable alternative for diethyl propanedioate.

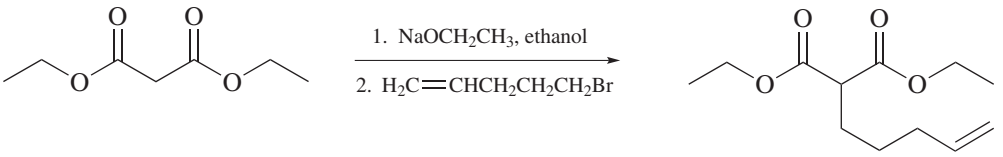
Two procedures called the **acetoacetic ester synthesis** and the **malonic ester synthesis** take advantage of the properties of β-dicarbonyl compounds and are standard methods for making carbon–carbon bonds. Both begin with alkylation of the enolate. Ethyl esters are normally used, with sodium ethoxide as the base.

Alkylation phase:



Ethyl acetoacetate

Ethyl 2-butyl-3-oxobutanoate (70%)



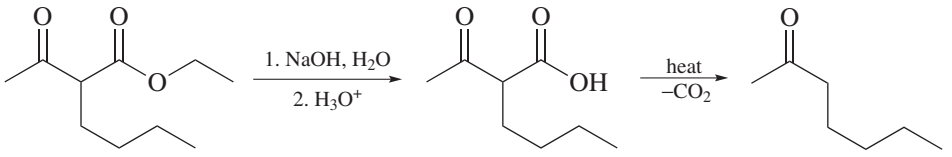
Diethyl malonate

Diethyl 2-(4-pentenyl)malonate (85%)

Methyl, primary, and unhindered secondary alkyl halides are satisfactory alkylating agents. Elimination (E2) is the only reaction with tertiary alkyl halides.

After alkylation, hydrolysis in aqueous base and acidification, followed by heating, leads to decarboxylation. The alkylated β-keto ester yields a ketone; the alkylated malonic ester gives a carboxylic acid.

Hydrolysis and decarboxylation phase:

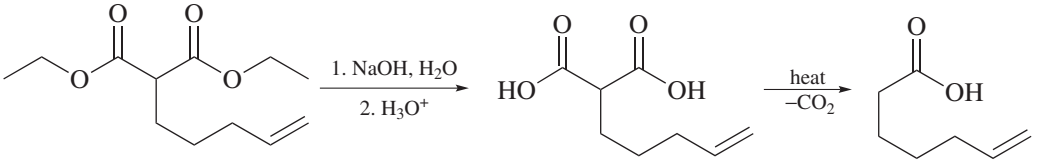


Ethyl 2-butyl-3-oxobutanoate

2-Butyl-3-oxobutanoic acid

2-Heptanone (60%)

Decarboxylation of malonic acid and β-keto acids was introduced in Section 18.16



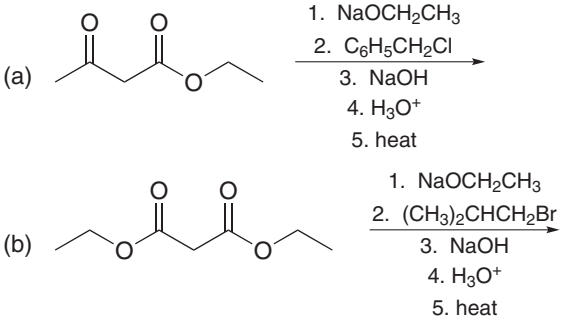
Diethyl 2-(4-pentenyl)malonate

2-(4-Pentenyl)-malonic acid

6-Heptenoic acid (75%)

Problem 20.19

What is the product of each of the following reaction sequences?



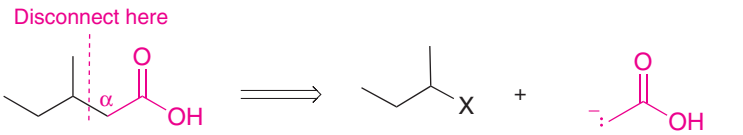
A convenient way to determine when to apply the acetoacetic ester or malonic ester approach to a synthetic problem is to incorporate the synthon concept into retrosynthetic analysis. A **synthon** is a structural unit in a molecule that is related to a synthetic operation. A CH_2CO_2H group is a synthon that alerts us to the possibility of preparing a target by a malonic ester synthesis. Likewise, a $CH_2C(O)CH_3$ group is a synthon that suggests an acetoacetic synthesis.

Problem 20.20

Use retrosynthetic analysis to choose the appropriate β-dicarbonyl compound and alkyl halide to prepare each of the following:

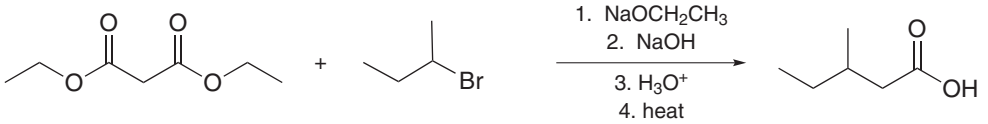
(a) 3-Methylpentanoic acid
(b) 1-Phenyl-1,4-pentanedione
(c) 4-Methylhexanoic acid
(d) 5-Hexen-2-one

Sample Solution (a) Locate the appropriate synthon and mentally disconnect the bond to its α carbon. The synthon is derived from diethyl malonate, the remainder of the molecule comes from the alkyl halide.



3-Methylpentanoic acid | Alkyl halide | Derived from diethyl malonate

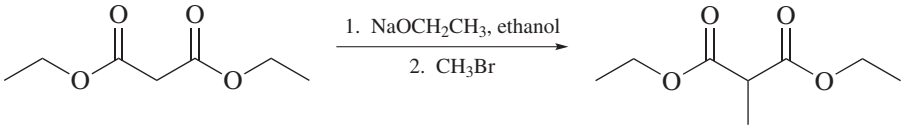
In this case, a secondary alkyl halide is needed as the alkylating agent. The anion of diethyl malonate is a relatively weak base (the pK_a of its conjugate acid = 11) and reacts with secondary alkyl halides by substitution rather than elimination. Thus, the synthesis begins with the alkylation of the anion of diethyl malonate with 2-bromobutane.



Diethyl malonate | 2-Bromobutane | 3-Methylpentanoic acid

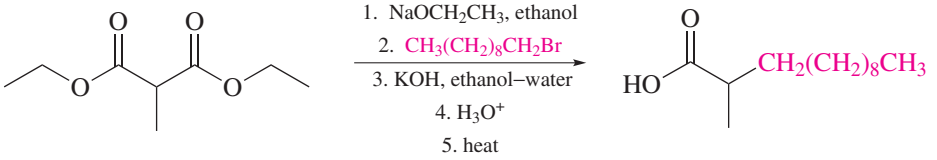
As actually carried out, the alkylation phase proceeded in 83–84% yield, and the product of that reaction was converted to 3-methylpentanoic acid by saponification, acidification, and decarboxylation in 62–65% yield.

By carrying out successive alkylations, two different alkyl groups can be added to the α carbon. For the case of diethyl malonate:



Diethyl malonate — Diethyl 2-methylmalonate

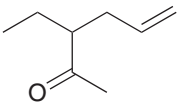
then



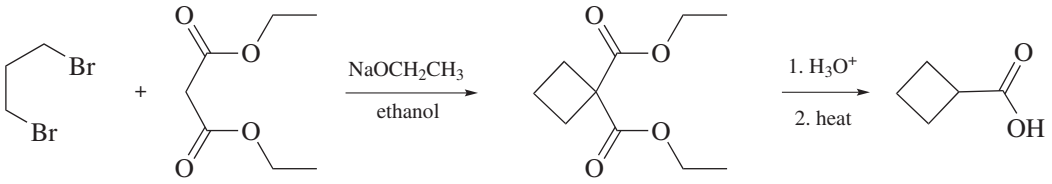
Diethyl 2-methylmalonate — 2-Methyldodecanoic acid (61–74%)

Problem 20.21

Outline a synthesis of the compound shown.



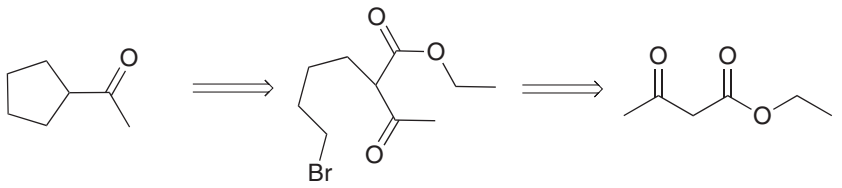
Alkylation of diethyl malonate with dihalides is used to prepare cycloalkanecarboxylic acids when the ring has seven carbons or fewer.



1,3-Dibromopropane — Diethyl malonate — Diethyl 1,1-cyclobutanedicarboxylate — Cyclobutanecarboxylic acid

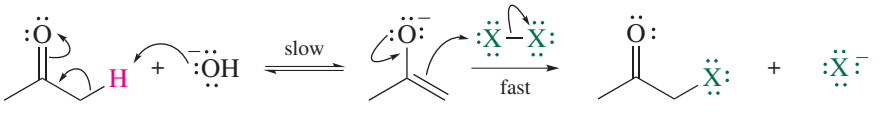
Problem 20.22

Design a synthesis of cyclopentyl methyl ketone based on the partial retrosynthesis:



20.7 The Haloform Reaction

We saw earlier in this chapter that aldehydes and ketones undergo α-halogenation in neutral and acidic media via an enol intermediate. A similar reaction occurs in basic solution except, in this case, the reactive intermediate is an enolate ion.



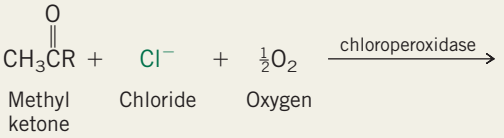
Aldehyde or ketone — Enolate — α-Halo aldehyde or ketone

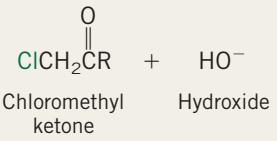
Unlike its acid-catalyzed counterpart, this reaction is difficult to limit to monohalogenation,

The Haloform Reaction and the Biosynthesis of Trihalomethanes

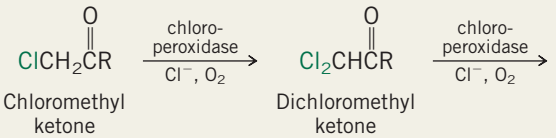
Until scientists started looking specifically for them, it was widely believed that naturally occurring organohalogen compounds were rare. We now know that more than 4000 such compounds occur naturally, with the oceans being a particularly rich source. Over 50 organohalogen compounds, including $CHBr_3$, CHBrClI, $BrCH_2CH_2I$, CH_2I_2, $Br_2CHCH{=}O$, I_2CHCO_2H, and $(Cl_3C)_2C{=}O$, have been found in a single species of Hawaiian red seaweed, for example. It is not surprising that organisms living in the oceans have adapted to their halide-rich environment by incorporating chlorine, bromine, and iodine into their metabolic processes. Chloromethane (CH_3Cl), bromomethane (CH_3Br), and iodomethane (CH_3I) are all produced by marine algae and kelp, but land-based plants and fungi also contribute their share to the more than 5 million tons of the methyl halides formed each year by living systems. The ice plant, which grows in arid regions throughout the world and is cultivated as a ground cover along coastal highways in California, biosynthesizes CH_3Cl by a process in which nucleophilic attack by chloride ion (Cl^-) on the methyl group of *S*-adenosylmethionine is the key step (see Section 16.16).

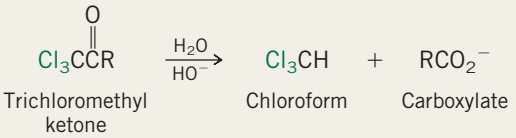
Interestingly, the trihalomethanes chloroform ($CHCl_3$), bromoform ($CHBr_3$), and iodoform (CHI_3) are biosynthesized by an entirely different process, one that is equivalent to the haloform reaction and begins with the formation of an α-halo ketone. Unlike the biosynthesis of methyl halides, which requires attack by a halide nucleophile (X^-), α halogenation of a ketone requires attack by an electrophilic form of the halogen. For chlorination, the electrophilic form of the halogen is generated by oxidation of Cl^- in the presence of the enzyme *chloroperoxidase*. Thus, the overall equation for the enzyme-catalyzed chlorination of a methyl ketone may be written as





Further chlorination of the chloromethyl ketone gives the corresponding trichloromethyl ketone, which then undergoes hydrolysis to form chloroform.

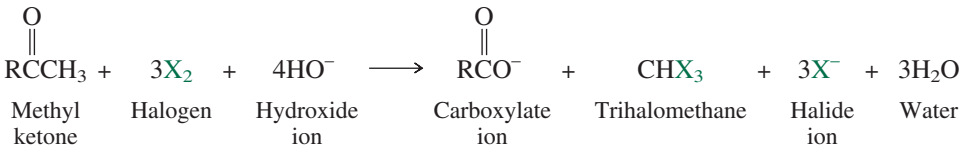




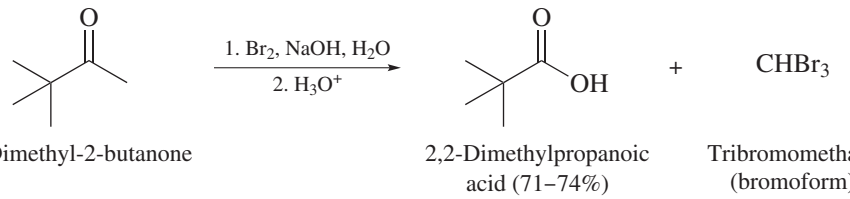
Purification of drinking water, by adding Cl_2 to kill bacteria, is a source of electrophilic chlorine and contributes a nonenzymatic pathway for a chlorination and subsequent chloroform formation. Although some of the odor associated with tap water may be due to chloroform, more of it probably results from chlorination of algae-produced organic compounds.

The ice plant generates chloromethane naturally.

Methyl ketones undergo a novel C—C cleavage on treatment with halogens in aqueous base that finds some use as a synthesis of carboxylic acids.



The reaction is called the **haloform reaction** because the trihalomethane produced is chloroform ($CHCl_3$), bromoform ($CHBr_3$), or iodoform (CHI_3), depending on the halogen used.



The boxed essay *The Haloform Reaction and the Biosynthesis of Trihalomethanes* describes a biochemical version of the haloform reaction.

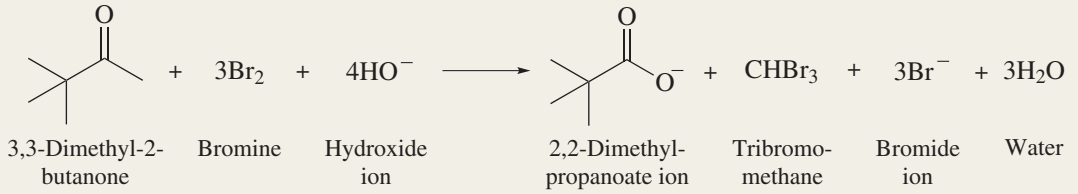
The methyl ketone shown in the example can enolize in only one direction and typifies the kind of reactant that can be converted to a carboxylic acid in synthetically acceptable yield by the haloform reaction. Mechanism 20.4 describes how this cleavage occurs.

Methyl ketones of the type $RCH_2C(O)CH_3$ and $R_2CHC(O)CH_3$ undergo nonregioselective α halogenation and give a mixture of products.

Mechanism 20.4

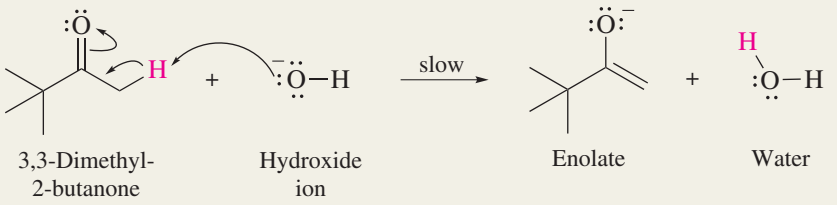
The Haloform Reaction

THE OVERALL REACTION:

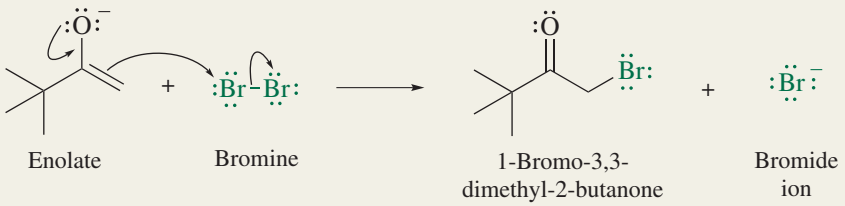


THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: The ketone is converted to its enolate by proton abstraction from the α-carbon.

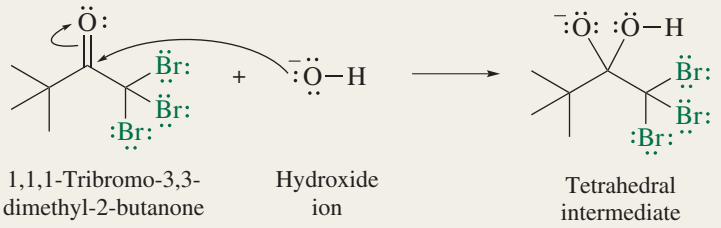


Step 2: The enolate reacts with bromine to give the α-bromoketone.

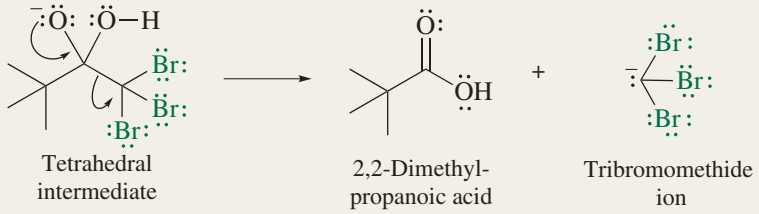


Steps 3–6: Steps 1 and 2 repeat twice more to introduce two additional bromines at the α-carbon.

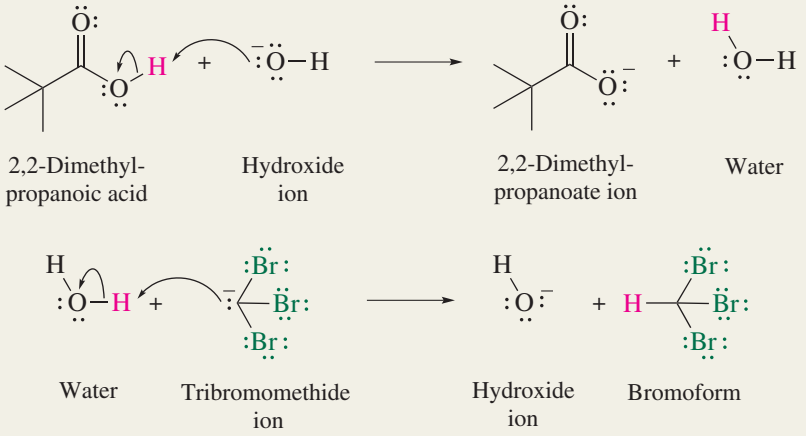
Step 7: Nucleophilic addition of hydroxide to the double bond of the carbonyl group gives a tetrahedral intermediate.



Step 8: Expulsion of a tribromomethide ion from the tetrahedral intermediate restores the carbon–oxygen double bond.

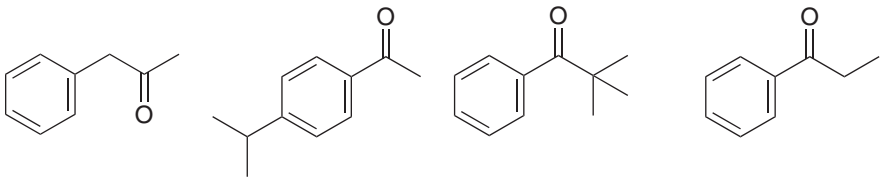


Step 9: Both 2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid and tribromomethide ion undergo proton transfer reactions to give the carboxylate and bromoform.



Problem 20.23

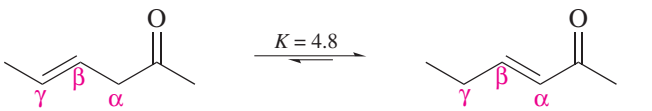
Which of the following is the most suitable for preparing a carboxylic acid by the haloform reaction? Give the structure of the carboxylic acid.



20.8 Conjugation Effects in α,β-Unsaturated Aldehydes and Ketones

Aldol condensation offers an effective route to α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones, compounds that have interesting and useful properties that result from conjugation of the carbon–carbon double bond with the carbonyl group.

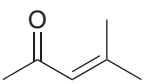
First, in common with other conjugated π-electron systems that we have seen, α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones are more stable than their nonconjugated isomers. Under conditions chosen to bring about their interconversion, for example, the equilibrium between a β,γ-unsaturated carbonyl and its α,β-unsaturated analog favors the conjugated isomer.



(*E*)-4-Hexen-2-one (17%) (*E*)-3-Hexen-2-one (83%)

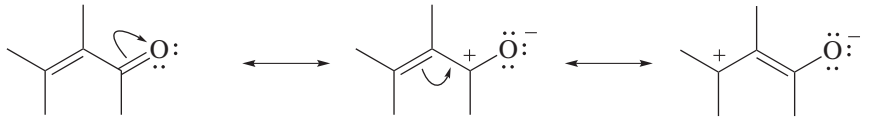
Problem 20.24

Mesityl oxide is an industrial chemical prepared by an aldol condensation. From what organic starting material is mesityl oxide prepared? It often contains about 10% of an isomer with the same carbon skeleton. What is the most likely structure for this contaminant?



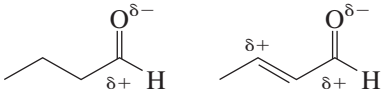
Mesityl oxide

Electron delocalization in α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds is represented as resonance among three principal contributors.



Most stable contributor — Charge-separated contributors

The positive character of the β carbon suggested by the resonance description is consistent with numerous differences between α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds and their non-conjugated relatives. Consistent with its greater separation of positive and negative charge, *trans*-2-butenal has a larger dipole moment than butanal.



Butanal
μ = 2.7 D

trans-2-Butenal
μ = 3.7 D

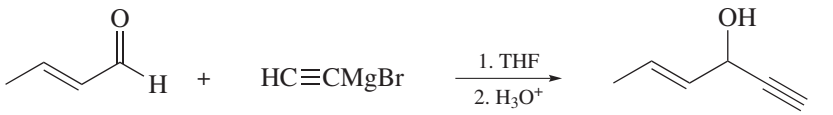
Compare also the ^{13}C chemical shifts in the two. In butanal, the electron-withdrawing power of the carbonyl group deshields the α carbon more than the β, and the β more than the γ. Reflecting its increased positive character in 2-butenal, the β carbon is more deshielded than either α or γ.

Butanal

trans-2-Butenal

Chemically, the diminished π-electron density in the double bond makes α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones less reactive than alkenes toward *electrophilic* addition. *Nucleophilic* addition the other hand, can involve either the carbonyl group or the α,β double bond.

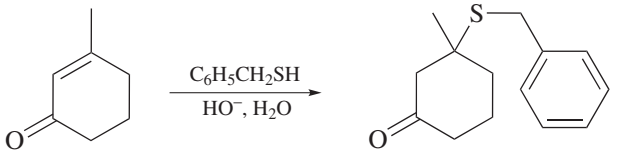
Strongly basic nucleophiles such as Grignard and organolithium reagents and lithium aluminum hydride tend to react with the carbonyl group by *1,2-addition.*



trans-2-Butenal — Ethynylmagnesium bromide — *trans*-4-Hexen-1-yn-3-ol (84%)

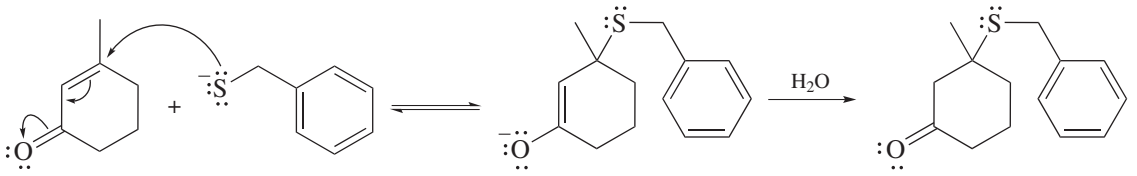
Weakly basic nucleophiles yield products corresponding to reaction at the β carbon of C═C by *conjugate addition* or *1,4-addition.*

Thiols have pK_a's in the 9–10 range.



3-Methyl-2-cyclohexenone — 3-Benzylthio-3-methylcyclohexanone (58%)

The initial intermediate is an enolate, which is converted to a ketone under the reaction conditions.



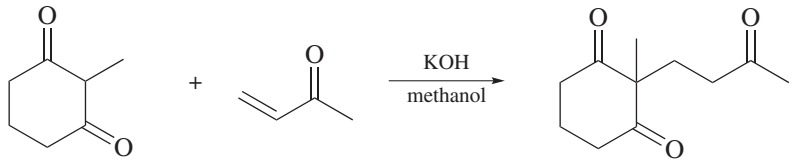
α,β-Unsaturated ketone | Weakly basic nucleophile | Enolate | Product of 1,4-addition

With strongly basic nucleophiles such as a Grignard or organolithium reagent, nucleophilic addition to C═O is essentially irreversible and 1,2-addition occurs. When the nucleophile is weakly basic, attack at C═O although rapid, is reversible. The nucleophile goes on and off the carbonyl carbon, thereby allowing the slower, but less reversible, 1,4-addition to compete. The eventual product from 1,4-addition is more stable because it retains the stronger C═O bond at the expense of the weaker C═C bond. 1,2-Addition is kinetically controlled; 1.4-addition is thermodynamically controlled.

Problem 20.25

Acrolein ($H_2C{=}CHCH{=}O$) reacts with sodium azide (NaN_3) in aqueous acetic acid to form a compound, $C_3H_5N_3O$ in 71% yield. Propanal ($CH_3CH_2CH{=}O$), when subjected to the same reaction conditions, is recovered unchanged. Suggest a structure for the product formed from acrolein, and offer an explanation for the difference in reactivity between acrolein and propanal.

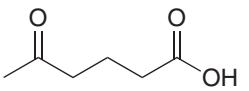
The **Michael reaction** is an alkylation in which carbanions, such as the enolates derived from β-diketones, β-keto esters, and diethyl malonate, react with α,β-unsaturated ketones by conjugate addition. The α,β-unsaturated ketone serves the same kind of electrophilic role that alkyl halides do toward the enolate.



2-Methyl-1,3-cyclohexanedione | Methyl vinyl ketone | 2-Methyl-2-(3'-oxobutyl)-1,3-cyclohexanedione (85%)

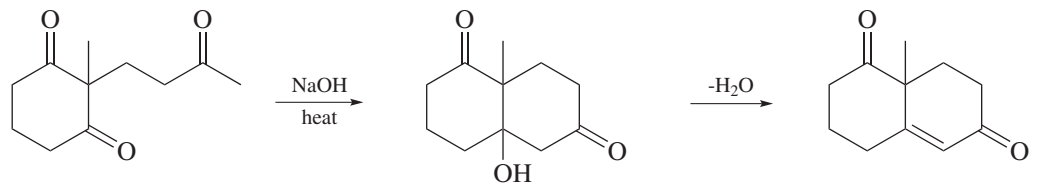
Problem 20.26

Outline a synthesis of the compound shown from methyl vinyl ketone and diethyl malonate.



Michael reactions of β-diketones have proven especially useful in *annulation*—the grafting of a ring onto some starting molecule. In the **Robinson annulation,** named after Sir Robert Robinson who popularized its use, Michael addition is followed by an intramolecular aldol condensation to give a cyclohexenone.

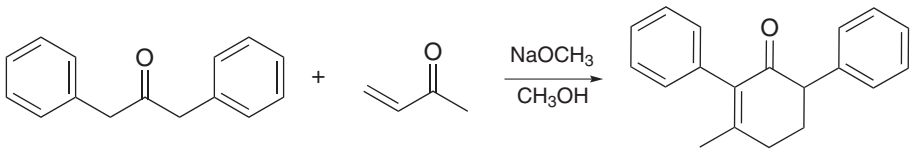
Robinson won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1947 for his studies of biologically important plant products.



2-Methyl-2-(3'-oxobutyl)-1,3-cyclohexanedione | Intramolecular aldol addition product; not isolated | 6-Methylbicyclo[4.4.0]dec-1-ene-3,7-dione

Problem 20.27

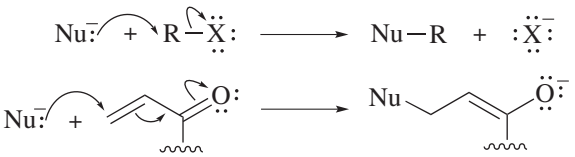
Both conjugate addition and intramolecular aldol condensation can be carried out in one synthetic operation without isolating any of the intermediates.



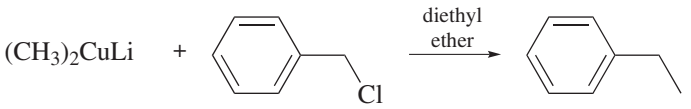
Dibenzyl ketone | Methyl vinyl ketone | 3-Methyl-2,6-diphenyl-2-cyclohexenone (55%)

Write structural formulas corresponding to the intermediate formed in the conjugate addition step and in the aldol condensation step.

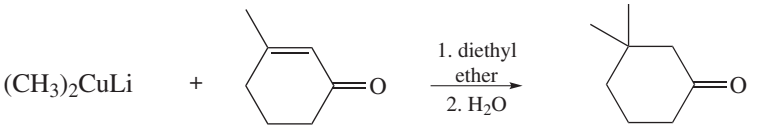
In many of the preceding synthetic applications, α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds resemble alkyl halides in their reactivity toward nucleophiles.



The analogy extends toward their reaction with lithium dialkylcuprates. Just as alkyl halides react with lithium dialkylcuprates to form carbon–carbon bonds, so do α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds.



Lithium dimethylcuprate | Benzyl chloride | Ethylbenzene (80%)

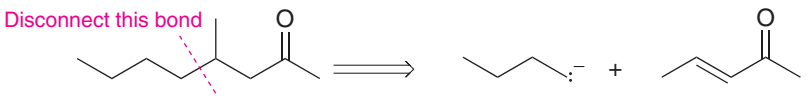


Lithium dimethylcuprate | 3-Methyl-2-cyclohexenone | 3,3-Dimethyl-cyclohexanone (98%)

Problem 20.28

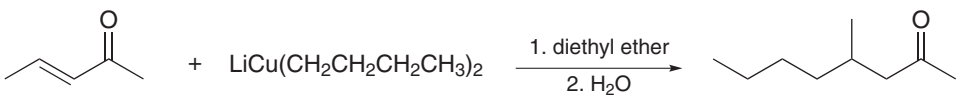
Outline two ways in which 4-methyl-2-octanone can be prepared by conjugate addition of an organocuprate to an α,β-unsaturated ketone.

Sample Solution Mentally disconnect one of the bonds to the β carbon so as to identify the group that comes from the lithium dialkycuprate.



4-Methyl-2-octanone

According to this disconnection, the butyl group is derived from lithium dibutylcuprate. A suitable preparation is

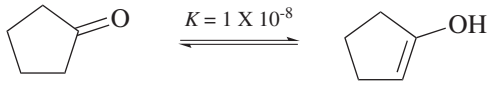


3-Penten-2-one | Lithium dibutylcuprate | 4-Methyl-2-octanone

Now see if you can identify the second possibility.

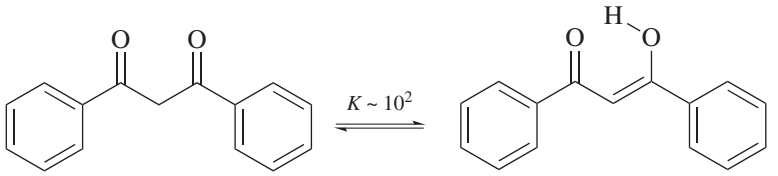
20.9 SUMMARY

Section 20.1 Aldehydes, ketones, and esters having at least one α hydrogen exist in equilibrium with their enols. The enol content of simple aldehydes, ketones, and esters is small.



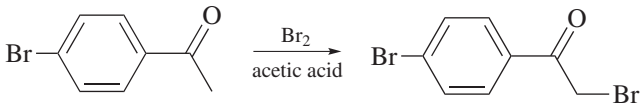
Cyclopentanone Cyclopenten-1-ol

β-Diketones and β-keto esters are more extensively enolized.



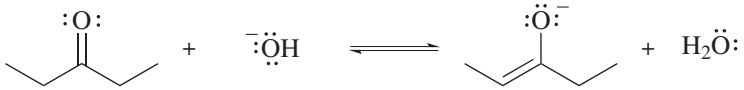
1,3-Diphenyl-1,3-dione 1.3-Diphenyl-2-propen-3-ol-1-one

Aldehydes and ketones undergo halogenation at their α carbon via an enol intermediate.



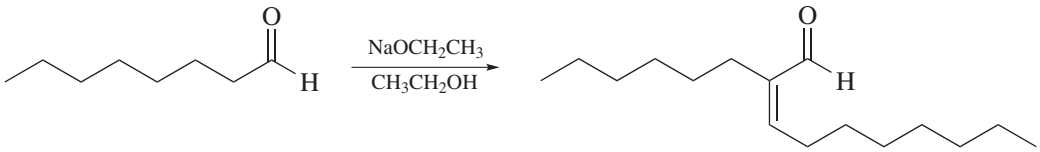
p-Bromoacetophenone *p*-Bromophenacyl bromide (69–72%)

Section 20.2 An α hydrogen of an aldehyde or ketone is more acidic than most other protons bound to carbon (pK_a in the range of 16–20). Their enhanced acidity is due to the electron-withdrawing effect of the carbonyl group and the resonance stabilization of the enolate.



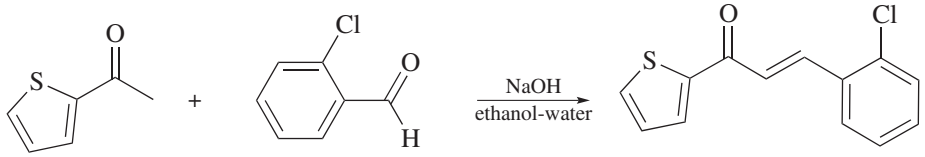
3-Pentanone Hydroxide Enolate Water

Section 20.3 The aldol condensation is synthetically useful as a method for carbon–carbon bonds. Nucleophilic addition of an enolate to a carbonyl, followed by dehydration, yields an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde or ketone.



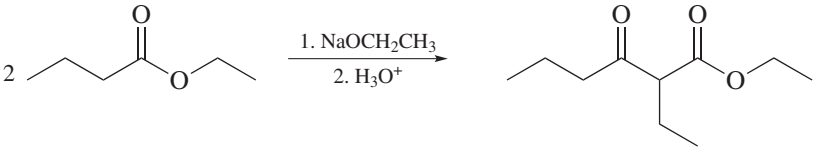
Octanal 2-Hexyl-2-decenal (79%)

Section 20.4 A mixed aldol condensation between two different carbonyl compounds can be accomplished effectively if only one of them can form an enolate.



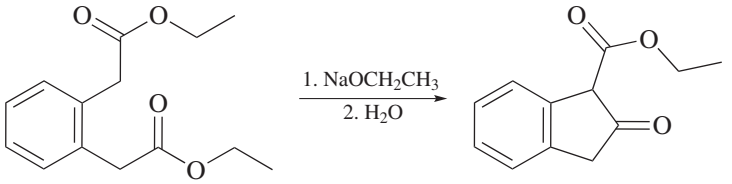
Methyl 2-thienyl ketone o-Chlorobenzaldehyde 3-(*o*-Chlorophenyl-1-(2-thienyl)prop-2-en-1-one (60%)

Section 20.5 Esters of the type RCH_2CO_2R' are converted to β-keto esters on treatment with alkoxide bases. One molecule of an ester is converted to its enolate; a second molecule of the ester acts as an acylating agent toward the enolate.



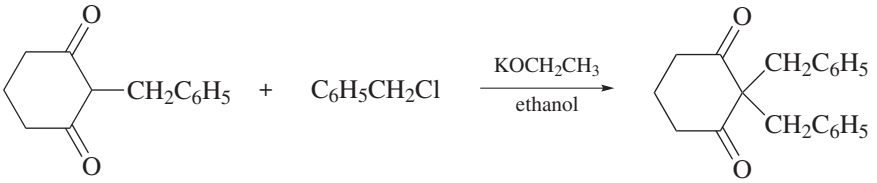
Ethyl butanoate — Ethyl 2-ethyl-3-oxohexanoate (76%)

The Dieckmann condensation is an intramolecular version of the Claisen condensation.



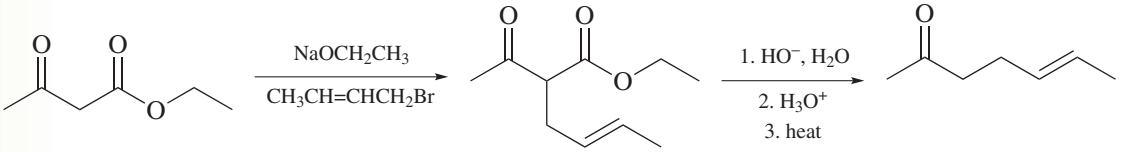
Diethyl 1,2-benzenedicarboxylate — Ethyl indan-2-one-1-carboxylate (70%)

Section 20.6 Alkylation of simple aldehydes and ketones via their enolates is difficult. β-Diketones can be converted quantitatively their enolates, which react efficiently with primary alkyl halides.



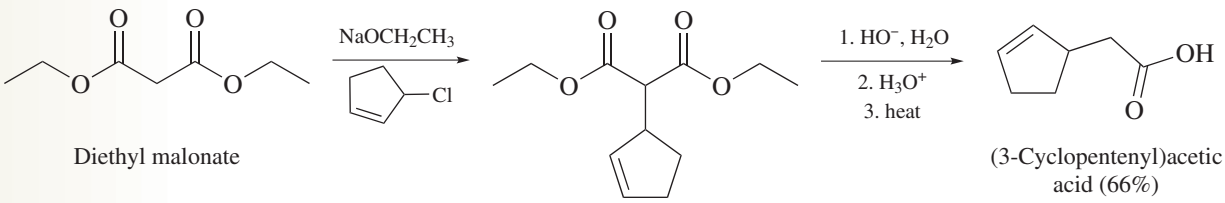
2-Benzyl-1,3-cyclohexanedione — Benzyl chloride — 2,2-Dibenzyl-1,3-cyclohexanedione (69%)

In the acetoacetic ester synthesis, a β-keto ester is alkylated as the first step in the preparation of ketones.



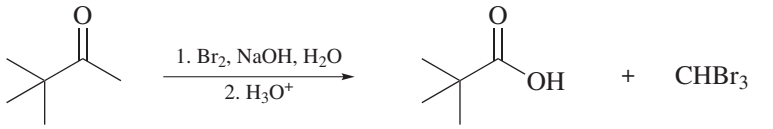
Ethyl acetoacetate — 5-Hepten-2-one (81%)

Alkyl halides are converted to carboxylic acids by reaction with the enolate derived from diethyl malonate, followed by saponification and decarboxylation.



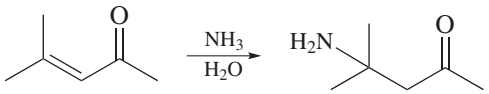
Diethyl malonate — (3-Cyclopentenyl)acetic acid (66%)

Section 20.7 Methyl ketones are cleaved on reaction with excess halogen in the presence of base. The products are a trihalomethane (haloform) and a carboxylate salt. The reaction is used as a synthesis of carboxylic acids.



3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanone — 2,2-Dimethylpropanoic acid (71–74%) — Bromoform

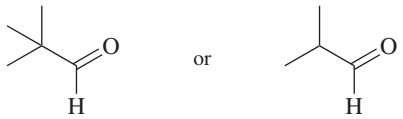
Section 20.8 The β carbon of an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound is electrophilic; nucleophiles, especially weakly basic ones, react with α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones by conjugate addition. The nucleophile bonds to the β carbon.

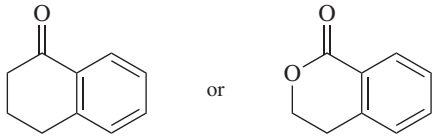


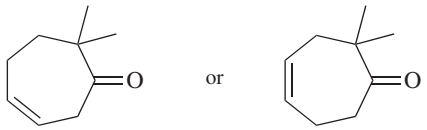
4-Methyl-3-penten-2-one — 4-Amino-4-methyl-2-pentanone (63–70%)

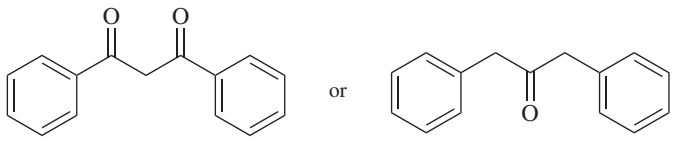
PROBLEMS

20.29 Choose the compound in each of the following pairs that has the greater enol content.

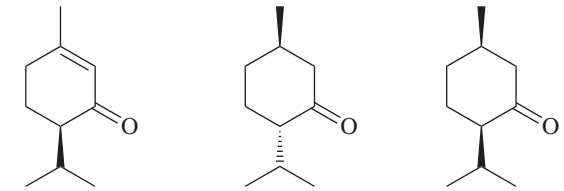
(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

(d) 

20.30 Consider the ketones piperitone, menthone, and isomenthone.



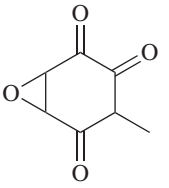
(R)-(–)-Piperitone — Menthone — Isomenthone

Suggest reasonable explanations for each of the following observations.

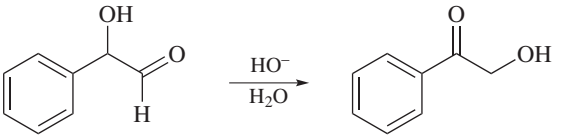
(a) (*R*)-(−)-Piperitone racemizes on standing in a solution of sodium ethoxide in ethanol.

(b) Menthone is converted to a mixture of menthone and isomenthone on treatment with 90% sulfuric acid.

20.31 *Terreic acid,* a naturally occurring antibiotic substance, is an enol isomer of the structure shown. Write the two most stable enols and choose the more stable one.



20.32 Compound A is difficult to prepare owing to its ready base-catalyzed isomerization to compound B. Write a reasonable mechanism for this isomerization.



Compound A Compound B

20.33 In each of the following, the indicated observations were made before any of the starting material was transformed to aldol addition or condensation products:

(a) In aqueous acid, only 17% of $(C_6H_5)_2CHCH{=}O$ is present as the aldehyde; 2% of the enol is present. Some other species accounts for 81% of the material. What is it?

(b) In aqueous base, 97% of $(C_6H_5)_2CHCH{=}O$ is present as a species different from any of those in part (a). What is this species?

20.34 (a) Only a small amount (less than 0.01%) of the enol form of diethyl malonate is present at equilibrium. Write a structural formula for this enol.

(b) Enol forms are present to the extent of about 8% in ethyl acetoacetate. There are three constitutionally isomeric enols possible. Write structural formulas for these three enols. Which one do you think is the most stable? The least stable? Why?

(c) Bromine reacts rapidly with both diethyl malonate and ethyl acetoacetate. The reaction is acid-catalyzed and liberates hydrogen bromide. What is the product formed in each reaction?

20.35 (a) On addition of one equivalent of methylmagnesium iodide to ethyl acetoacetate, the Grignard reagent is consumed, but the only organic product obtained after working up the reaction mixture is ethyl acetoacetate. Why? What happens to the Grignard reagent?

(b) On repeating the reaction but using D_2O and DCl to work up the reaction mixture, it is found that the recovered ethyl acetoacetate contains deuterium. Where is this deuterium located?

20.36 Give the structure of the expected organic product in the reaction of 3-phenylpropanal with each of the following:

(a) Chlorine in acetic acid

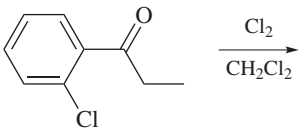
(b) Sodium hydroxide in ethanol, 10°C

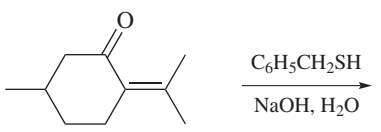
(c) Sodium hydroxide in ethanol, 70°C

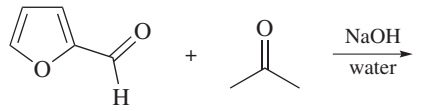
(d) Product of part (c) with lithium aluminum hydride; then H_2O

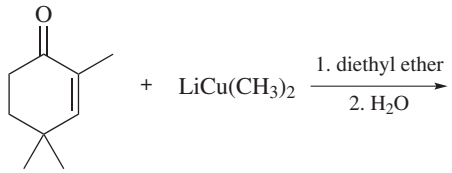
(e) Product of part (c) with sodium cyanide in acidic ethanol

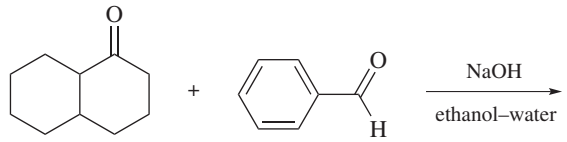
20.37 Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature. Write the structure of the product(s) formed in each case.

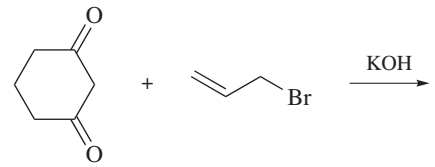
(a) 

(b) 

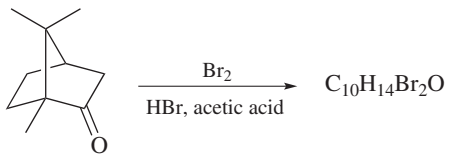
(c) 

(d) 

(e) 

(f) 

20.38 Dibromination of camphor under the conditions shown gave a single product in 99% yield. What is this product?



20.39 Bromination of 3-methyl-2-butanone yielded two compounds, each having the molecular formula C_5H_9BrO in a 95:5 ratio. The ^1H NMR spectrum of the major isomer A was characterized by a doublet at δ 1.2 (six protons), a septet at δ 3.0 (one proton), and a singlet at δ 4.1 (two protons). The ^1H NMR spectrum of the minor isomer B exhibited two singlets, one at δ 1.9 and the other at δ 2.5. The lower field singlet had half the area of the higher field one. Suggest reasonable structures for A and B.

20.40 Treatment of 2-butanone (1 mol) with Br_2 (2 mol) in aqueous HBr gave $C_4H_6Br_2O$. The ^1H NMR spectrum of the product was characterized by signals at δ 1.9 (doublet, three protons), δ 4.6 (singlet, two protons), and δ 5.2 (quartet, one proton). Identify this compound.

20.41 Give the structure of the principal organic product of each of the following reactions:

(a) Ethyl acetoacetate + 1-bromobutane $\xrightarrow{NaOCH_2CH_3,\ ethanol}$

(b) Product of part (a) $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+]{1.\ NaOH,\ H_2O}{3.\ heat}$

(c) Acetophenone + diethyl carbonate $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+]{1.\ NaOCH_2CH_3}$

(d) Acetone + diethyl oxalate $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+]{1.\ NaOCH_2CH_3}$

(e) Diethyl malonate + 1-bromo-2-methylbutane $\xrightarrow{NaOCH_2CH_3,\ ethanol}$

(f) Product of part (e) $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+]{1.\ NaOH,\ H_2O}{3.\ heat}$

(g) Diethyl malonate + 6-methyl-2-cyclohexenone $\xrightarrow{NaOCH_2CH_3,\ ethanol}$

(h) Product of part (g) $\xrightarrow{H_2O,\ HCl,\ heat}$

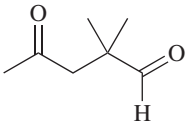
(i) *tert*-Butyl acetate $\xrightarrow[2.\ benzaldehyde]{1.\ [(CH_3)_2CH]_2NLi,\ THF}{3.\ H_3O^+}$

20.42 Give the structure of the product formed on reaction of ethyl acetoacetate with each of the following:

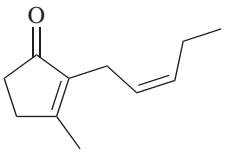
(a) 1-Bromopentane and sodium ethoxide
(b) Saponification (basic hydrolysis) and decarboxylation of the product in part (a)
(c) Methyl iodide and the product in part (a) treated with sodium ethoxide
(d) Saponification and decarboxylation of the product in part (c)
(e) 1-Bromo-3-chloropropane and one equivalent of sodium ethoxide
(f) Product in part (e) treated with a second equivalent of sodium ethoxide
(g) Saponification and decarboxylation of the product in part (f)
(h) Phenyl vinyl ketone and sodium ethoxide
(i) Saponification and decarboxylation of the product in part (h)

20.43 Repeat the preceding problem for diethyl malonate.

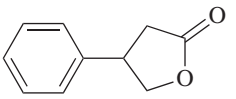
20.44 Give the structure of the product ($C_7H_{10}O$) formed by intramolecular aldol condensation of the keto-aldehyde shown.



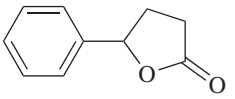
20.45 Jasmone, which contributes to the odor of jasmine, can be prepared by an intramolecular aldol condensation of a diketone. Use retrosynthetic analysis to deduce the structure of the diketone.



20.46 The use of epoxides as alkylating agents for diethyl malonate provides a useful route to γ-lactones. Write equations illustrating such a sequence for styrene oxide as the starting epoxide. Is the lactone formed by this reaction 3-phenylbutanolide, or is it 4-phenylbutanolide?



3-Phenylbutanolide

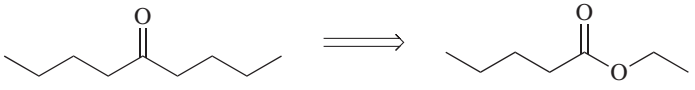


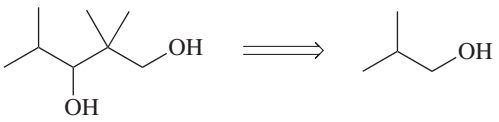
4-Phenylbutanolide

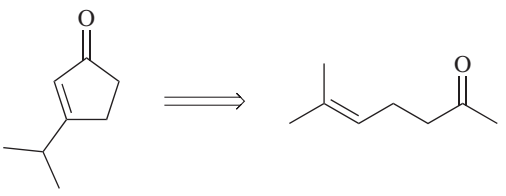
20.47 Show how each of the following compounds could be prepared from 3-pentanone. In most cases more than one synthetic transformation will be necessary.

(a) 2-Bromo-3-pentanone
(b) 1-Penten-3-one
(c) 1-Penten-3-ol
(d) 3-Hexanone
(e) 2-Methyl-1-phenyl-1-penten-3-one

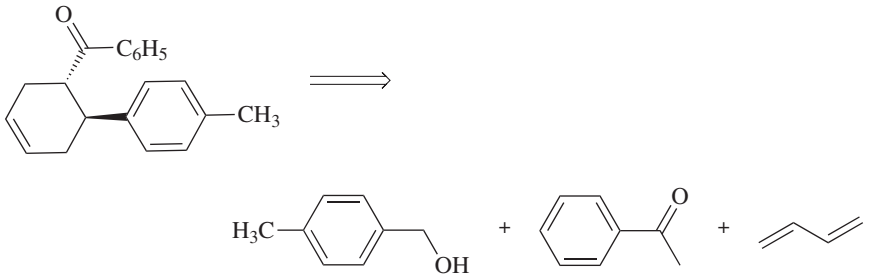
20.48 Prepare each of the following target molecules using the compounds shown as the sources of all of the carbons plus any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

(d)



20.49 Show how you could prepare each of the following compounds. Use the starting material indicated along with ethyl acetoacetate or diethyl malonate and any necessary inorganic reagents. Assume also that the customary organic solvents are freely available.

(a) 4-Phenyl-2-butanone from benzyl alcohol

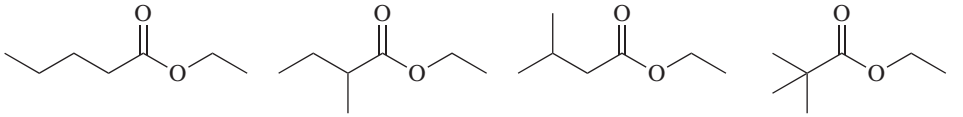
(b) 3-Phenylpropanoic acid from benzyl alcohol

(c) 2-Allyl-1,3-propanediol from propene

(d) 4-Penten-1-ol from propene

(e) 5-Hexen-2-ol from propene

20.50 The following questions pertain to the esters shown and behavior under conditions of the Claisen condensation.



Ethyl pentanoate | Ethyl 2-methylbutanoate | Ethyl 3-methylbutanoate | Ethyl 2,2-dimethylpropanoate

(a) Two of these esters are converted to β-keto esters in good yield on treatment with sodium ethoxide and subsequent acidification of the reaction mixture. Which two are these? Write the structure of the Claisen condensation product of each one.

(b) One ester is capable of being converted to a β-keto ester on treatment with sodium ethoxide, but the amount of β-keto ester than can be isolated after acidification of the reaction mixture is quite small. Which ester is this?

(c) One ester is incapable of reaction under conditions of the Claisen condensation. Which one? Why?

20.51 (a) Give the structure of the Claisen condensation product of ethyl phenylacetate ($C_6H_5CH_2COOCH_2CH_3$).

(b) What ketone would you isolate after saponification and decarboxylation of this Claisen condensation product?

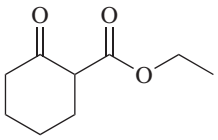
(c) What ketone would you isolate after treatment of the Claisen condensation product of ethyl phenylacetate with sodium ethoxide and allyl bromide, followed by saponification and decarboxylation?

(d) Give the structure of the mixed Claisen condensation product of ethyl phenylacetate and ethyl benzoate.

(e) What ketone would you isolate after saponification and decarboxylation of the product in part (d)?

(f) What ketone would you isolate after treatment of the product in part (d) with sodium ethoxide and allyl bromide, followed by saponification and decarboxylation?

20.52 The following questions concern ethyl (2-oxocyclohexane)carboxylate.



(a) Write a chemical equation showing how you could prepare ethyl (2-oxocyclohexane)-carboxylate by a Dieckmann cyclization.

(b) Write a chemical equation showing how you could prepare ethyl (2-oxocyclohexane)-carboxylate by acylation of a ketone.

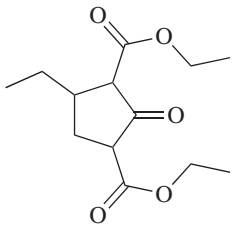
(c) Write structural formulas for the two most stable enol forms of ethyl (2-oxocyclohexane)carboxylate.

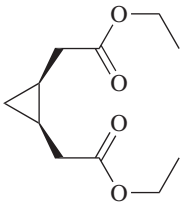
(d) Write the three most stable resonance contributors to the most stable enolate derived from ethyl (2-oxocyclohexane)carboxylate.

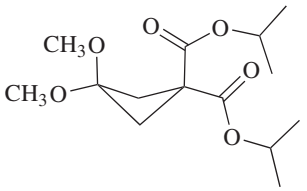
(e) Show how you could use ethyl (2-oxocyclohexane)carboxylate to prepare 2-methylcyclohexanone.

(f) Give the structure of the product formed on treatment of ethyl (2-oxocyclohexane)-carboxylate with acrolein ($H_2C{=}CHCH{=}O$) in ethanol in the presence of sodium ethoxide.

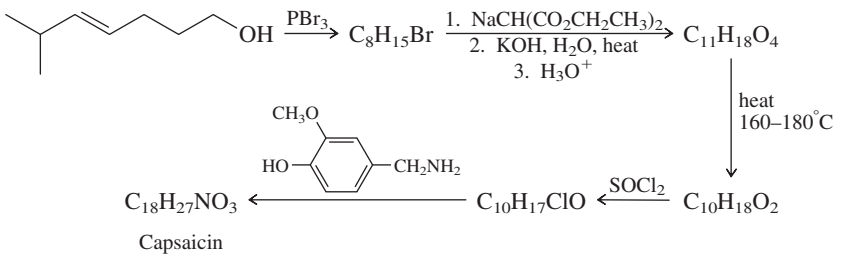
20.53 Each of the reactions shown has been carried out in the course of some synthetic project and gave the compound indicated by the molecular formula. What are those compounds?

(a)  $\xrightarrow[\text{heat}]{H_2O,\ H_2SO_4}$ $C_7H_{12}O$

(b)  $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+]{1.\ NaOCH_2CH_3}$ $C_9H_{12}O_3$ $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_3O^+\ 3.\ \text{heat}]{1.\ HO^-,\ H_2O}$ C_6H_8O

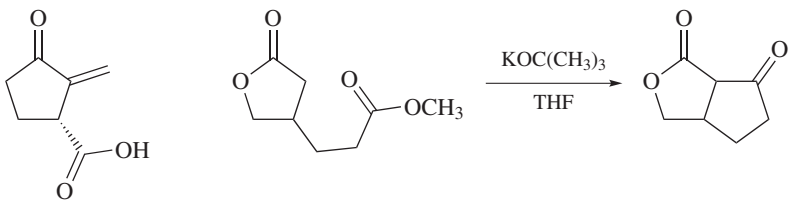
(c)  $\xrightarrow[\text{heat}]{HCl,\ H_2O}$ $C_5H_6O_3$

20.54 The spicy flavor of cayenne pepper is due mainly to a substance called *capsaicin.* See if you can deduce the structure of capsaicin on the basis of its laboratory synthesis:



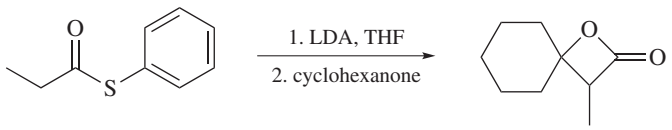
Capsaicin

20.55 The α-methylene ketone sarkomycin has an inhibitory effect on certain types of tumors. A key step in the synthesis of sarkomycin is the reaction of lactone ester A with potassium *tert*-butoxide in tetrahydrofuran to give the bicyclic compound B. Write a mechanism for this reaction.



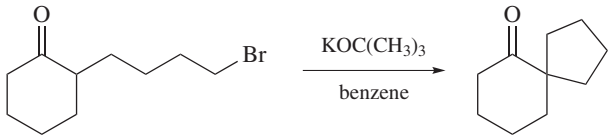
Sarkomycin A B

20.56 β-Lactones can be prepared in good yield from thioester enolates. Suggest a mechanism for the reaction shown.



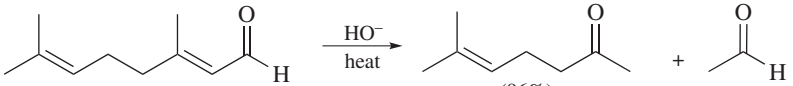
20.57 Outline a reasonable mechanism for each of the following reactions.

(a)



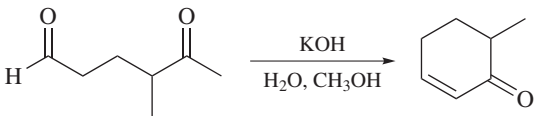
(76%)

(b)



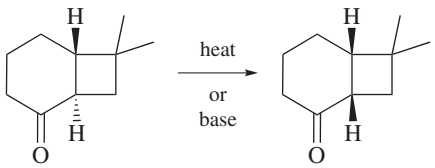
(96%)

(c)



(40%)

(d)

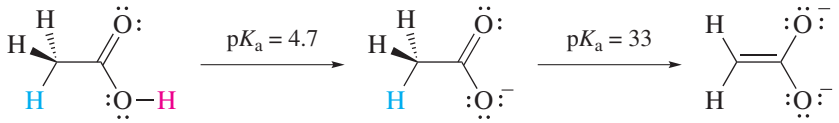


Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 20

The Enolate Chemistry of Dianions

The synthetic applications of carbanions as reagents for carbon-carbon bond formation have been highlighted numerous times throughout this text. All of the reagents covered so far have a net charge of −1; that is, they are *monoanions.* Are there others with a −2 charge (*dianions*), and, if so, how are they prepared, what are their properties, and how are they used in synthesis?

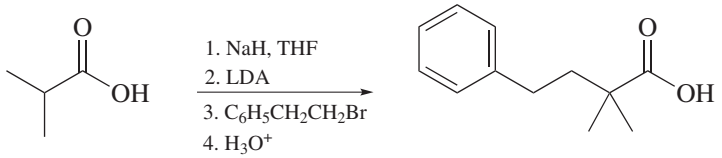
Consider acetic acid:



Acetic acid Monoanion Dianion

The pK_a of acetic acid is 4.7, which corresponds to ionization of the O—H group. The pK_a for ionization of a C—H bond of acetate ion is 33. None of the negative charge of the monoanion is shared by carbon. The dianion, however, has carbanionic character and the potential to act as a nucleophile in carbon-carbon bond-forming reactions.

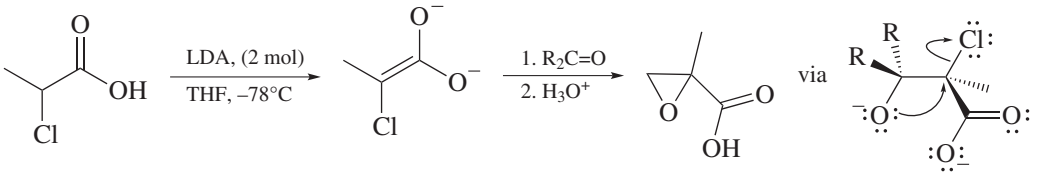
Diisopropylamine has a pK_a of 36, which makes lithium diisopropylamide (LDA) a strong enough base to convert acetic acid to its dianion. Other carboxylic acids behave similarly to give dianions that undergo typical carbanion reactions. Alkylation of carboxylic acid dianions provide a useful alternative to the malonic ester synthesis.



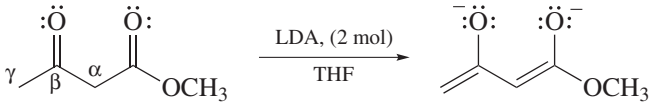
2-Methylpropanoic acid 2,2-Dimethyl-4-phenylbutanoic acid (70-76%)

Experimentally, as in this example, it is sometimes useful to convert the carboxylic acid to its carboxylate (monoanion) with sodium hydride (NaH, step 1) before treating with LDA (step 2). Because the dianion is a strong base, the alkyl halide used in step 3 must be methyl or primary. A pH adjustment (step 4) converts the resulting carboxylate salt to the desired carboxylic acid.

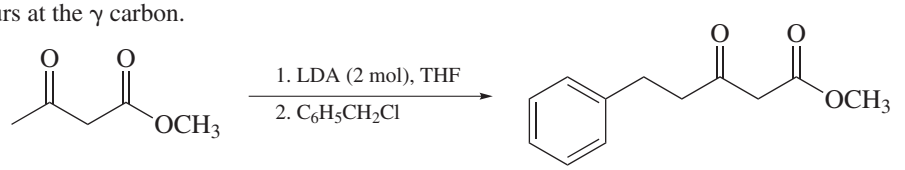
The dianions of α-halocarboxylic acids give epoxy acids (called *glycidic acids*) on reaction with aldehydes and ketones.



Dianions have been prepared from β-keto esters by double deprotonation using a number of strong bases including LDA.

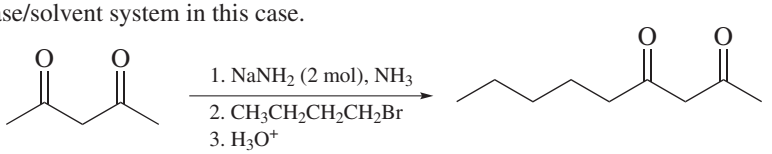


Protons on the α carbon of β-keto esters are flanked by two carbonyl groups and are far more acidic than those on the γ carbon. In the dianion, therefore, the γ carbon is more basic and more nucleophilic. Alkylation of the monoanion of β-keto acids occurs at the α carbon. Alkylation of the dianion occurs at the γ carbon.



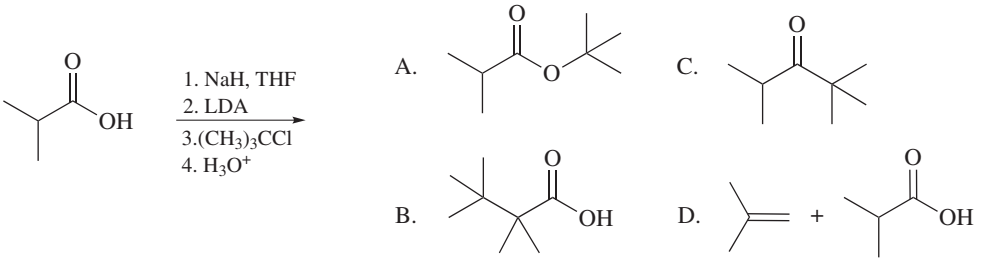
Methyl acetoacetate — Methyl 3-oxo-5-phenylpentanoate (83%)

β-Diketones behave similarly to β-keto esters. Sodium or potassium amide in liquid ammonia is a suitable base/solvent system in this case.

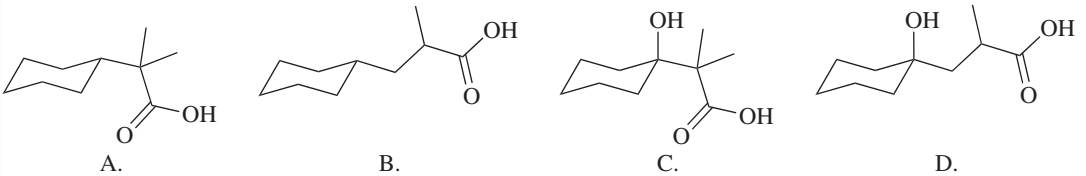


2,4-Pentanedione — 2,4-Nonanedione (81-82%)

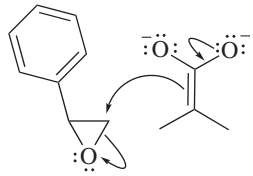
20.58 Predict the major organic product(s) of the following reaction.



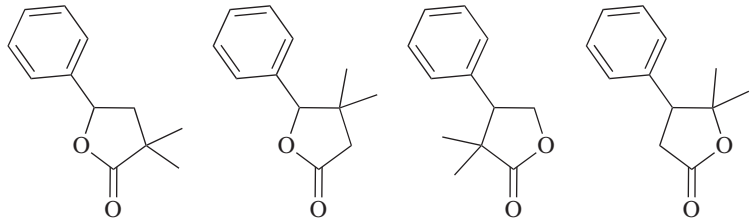
20.59 What is the product of the reaction of the dianion in Problem 20.58 with cyclohexanone?



20.60 The regiochemistry of carbon–carbon bond formation between the dianion shown and styrene oxide is as indicated by the curved arrows:

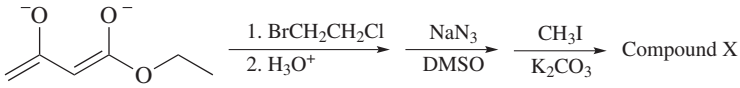


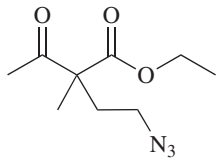
The product of this reaction is a hydroxy acid having the molecular formula $C_{12}H_{16}O_3$, which cyclizes readily to give a lactone ($C_{12}H_{16}O_2$). What is the structure of this lactone?

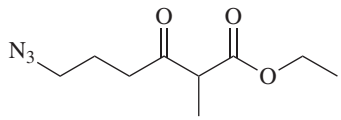


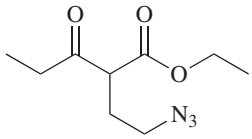
A. B. C. D.

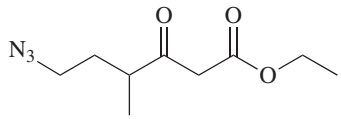
20.61 The dianion from ethyl acetoacetate was carried through the reaction sequence shown. What was the product (compound X)?



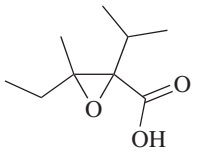
A. 

C. 

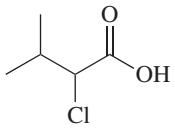
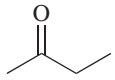
B. 

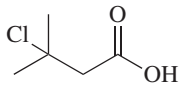
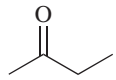
D. 

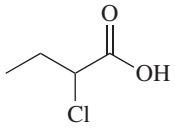
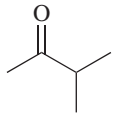
20.62 What pair of compounds is the most reasonable source of all of the carbon atoms if you wished to prepare the epoxy acid shown via a dianion?

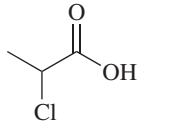
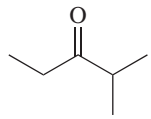


(mixture of stereoisomers)

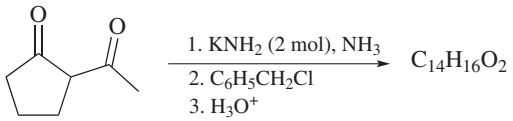
A.  and 

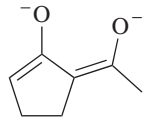
C.  and 

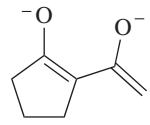
B.  and 

D.  and 

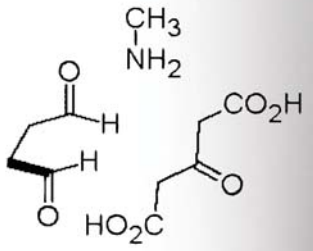
20.63 Two dianions A and B are capable of being formed in the following reaction, but only a single alkylation product, isolated in 62% yield, was obtained. This product is not capable of cis–trans isomerism. Was this product formed from dianion A or dianion B?

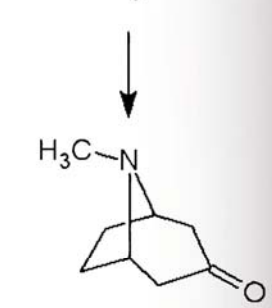


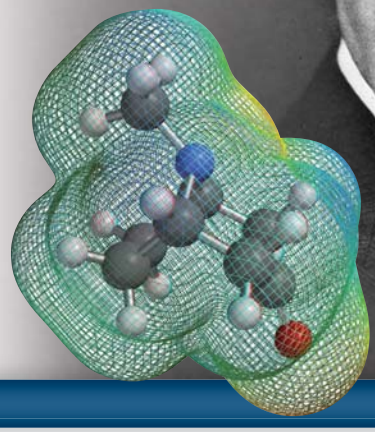
A. 

B. 

21







CHAPTER OUTLINE

21.1 Amine Nomenclature 859
21.2 Structure and Bonding 860
21.3 Physical Properties 862
21.4 Basicity of Amines 863
- Amines as Natural Products 868

21.5 Tetraalkylammonium Salts as Phase-Transfer Catalysts 869
21.6 Reactions That Lead to Amines: A Review and a Preview 870
21.7 Preparation of Amines by Alkylation of Ammonia 872
21.8 The Gabriel Synthesis of Primary Alkylamines 873
21.9 Preparation of Amines by Reduction 874
21.10 Reductive Amination 878
21.11 Reactions of Amines: A Review and a Preview 879
21.12 Reaction of Amines with Alkyl Halides 881
21.13 The Hofmann Elimination 881
21.14 Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution in Arylamines 883
21.15 Nitrosation of Alkylamines 885
21.16 Nitrosation of Arylamines 887
21.17 Synthetic Transformations of Aryl Diazonium Salts 888
21.18 Azo Coupling 891
- From Dyes to Sulfa Drugs 892

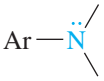
21.19 Spectroscopic Analysis of Amines 894
21.20 Summary 896
Problems 902
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 21: Synthetic Applications of Enamines 910

In 1917, Robert Robinson verified his ideas about the biosynthesis of alkaloids by combining methylamine with the compounds shown. The reaction worked as Robinson planned and is recognized as the first chemical synthesis inspired by biochemical thinking.

Amines

Nitrogen-containing compounds are essential to life. Their ultimate source is atmospheric nitrogen that, by a process known as *nitrogen fixation,* is reduced to ammonia, then converted to organic nitrogen compounds. This chapter describes the chemistry of **amines,** organic derivatives of ammonia. **Alkylamines** have their nitrogen attached to sp^3-hybridized carbon; **arylamines** have their nitrogen attached to an sp^2-hybridized carbon of a benzene or benzene-like ring.

R = alkyl group: alkylamine



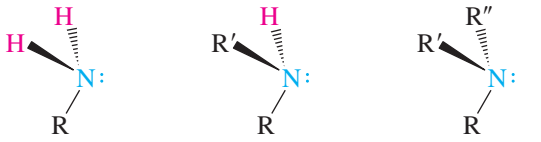
Ar = aryl group: arylamine

Amines, like ammonia, are weak bases. They are, however, the strongest uncharged bases found in significant quantities under physiological conditions. Amines are usually the bases involved in biological acid–base reactions; they are often the nucleophiles in biological nucleophilic substitutions.

Our word *vitamin* was coined in 1912 in the belief that the substances present in the diet that prevented scurvy, pellagra, beriberi, rickets, and other diseases were "vital amines." In many cases, that belief was confirmed; certain vitamins did prove to be amines. In many other cases, however, vitamins were not amines. Nevertheless, the name *vitamin* entered our language and stands as a reminder that early chemists recognized the crucial place occupied by amines in biological processes.

21.1 Amine Nomenclature

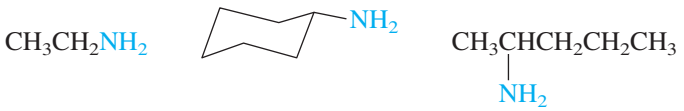
Unlike alcohols and alkyl halides, which are classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary according to the degree of substitution at the carbon that bears the functional group, amines are classified according to their *degree of substitution at nitrogen.* An amine with one carbon attached to nitrogen is a **primary amine,** an amine with two is a **secondary amine,** and an amine with three is a **tertiary amine.**



Primary amine Secondary amine Tertiary amine

The groups attached to nitrogen may be any combination of alkyl or aryl groups.

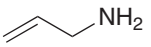
Amines are named in two main ways in the IUPAC system, either as *alkylamines* or as *alkanamines.* When primary amines are named as alkylamines, the ending *-amine* is added to the name of the alkyl group that bears the nitrogen. When named as alkanamines, the alkyl group is named as an alkane and the *-e* ending replaced by *-amine.*



Ethylamine (ethanamine) Cyclohexylamine (cyclohexanamine) 1-Methylbutylamine (2-pentanamine or pentan-2-amine)

Problem 21.1

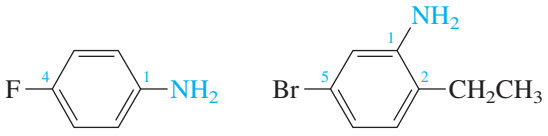
Give an acceptable alkylamine or alkanamine name for each of the following amines:

(a) $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2NH_2$ (b) $C_6H_5CHNH_2$ with CH_3 (c) 

Sample Solution (a) The amino substituent is bonded to an ethyl group that bears a phenyl substituent at C-2. The compound $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2NH_2$ may be named as either 2-phenylethylamine or 2-phenylethanamine.

Aniline is the parent IUPAC name for amino-substituted derivatives of benzene. Substituted derivatives of aniline are numbered beginning at the carbon that bears the amino group. Substituents are listed in alphabetical order, and the direction of numbering is governed by the usual "first point of difference" rule.

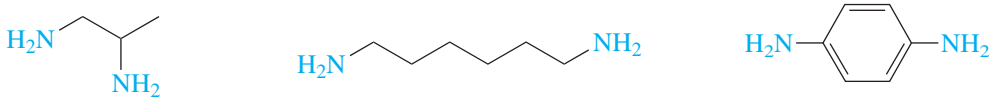
Aniline was first isolated in 1826 as a degradation product of indigo, a dark blue dye obtained from the West Indian plant *Indigofera anil,* from which the name *aniline* is derived.



p-Fluoroaniline or 4-Fluoroaniline 5-Bromo-2-ethylaniline

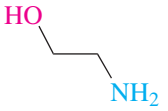
Arylamines may also be named as *arenamines.* Thus, *benzenamine* is an alternative, but rarely used, name for aniline.

Compounds with two amino groups are named by adding the suffix *-diamine* to the name of the corresponding alkane or arene. The final *-e* of the parent hydrocarbon is retained.

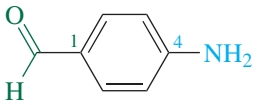


1,2-Propanediamine or Propane-1,2-diamine 1,6-Hexanediamine or Hexane-1,6-diamine 1,4-Benzenediamine or Benzene-1,4-diamine

Amino groups rank rather low in seniority when the parent compound is identified for naming purposes. Hydroxyl groups and carbonyl groups outrank amino groups. In these cases, the amino group is named as a substituent.

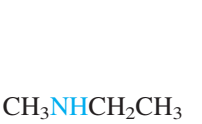


2-Aminoethanol

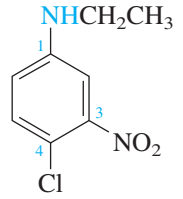


p-Aminobenzaldehyde
(4-Aminobenzenecarbaldehyde)

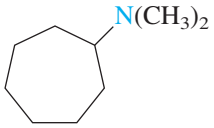
Secondary and tertiary amines are named as *N*-substituted derivatives of primary amines. The parent primary amine is taken to be the one with the longest carbon chain. Rings, however, take precedence over chains. The prefix *N*- is added as a locant to identify substituents on the amine nitrogen.



N-Methylethylamine
(a secondary amine)



4-Chloro-*N*-ethyl-3-nitroaniline
(a secondary amine)



N,N-Dimethylcycloheptylamine
(a tertiary amine)

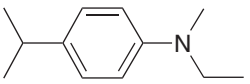
Problem 21.2

Assign alkanamine names to *N*-methylethylamine and to *N,N*-dimethylcycloheptylamine.

Sample Solution *N*-Methylethylamine (given as $CH_3NHCH_2CH_3$ in the preceding example) is an *N*-substituted derivative of ethanamine; it is *N*-methylethanamine.

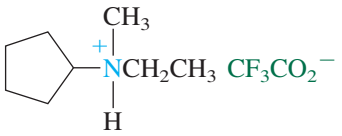
Problem 21.3

Classify the following amine as primary, secondary, or tertiary, and give it an acceptable IUPAC name.

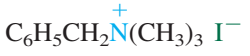


A nitrogen that bears four substituents is positively charged and is named as an *ammonium* ion. The anion that is associated with it is also identified in the name.

Methylammonium chloride



N-Ethyl-*N*-methylcyclopentylammonium trifluoroacetate

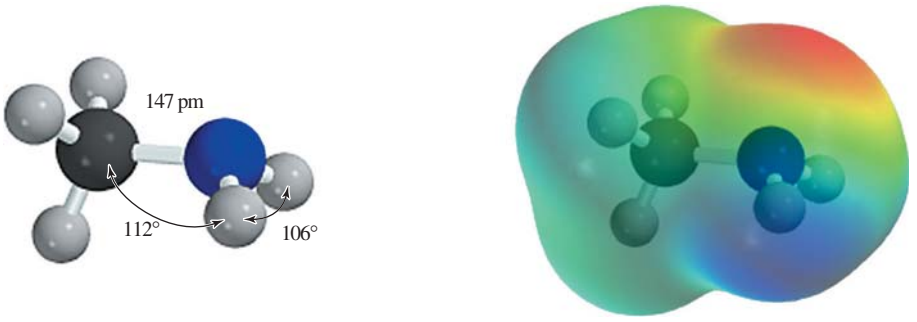


Benzyltrimethylammonium iodide
(a quaternary ammonium salt)

Ammonium salts that have four alkyl groups bonded to nitrogen are called **quaternary ammonium salts.**

21.2 Structure and Bonding

Alkylamines: As shown in Figure 21.1, methylamine, like ammonia, has a pyramidal arrangement of bonds to nitrogen. Its H—N—H angles (106°) are slightly smaller than the tetrahedral value of 109.5°, whereas the C—N—H angle (112°) is slightly larger.



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 21.1

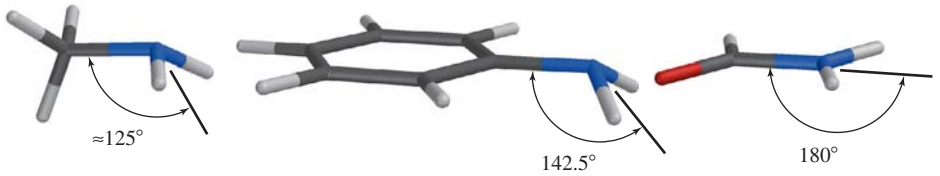
Methylamine. (*a*) Bond angles at nitrogen and C—N bond distance. (*b*) The unshared electron pair of nitrogen is a major contributor to the concentration of negative charge indicated by the red region in the electrostatic potential map.

The C—N bond distance of 147 pm lies between typical C—C bond distances in alkanes (153 pm) and C—O bond distances in alcohols (143 pm).

Nitrogen and carbon are both sp^3-hybridized and are joined by a σ bond in methylamine. The unshared electron pair on nitrogen occupies an sp^3-hybridized orbital. This lone pair is involved in reactions in which amines act as bases or nucleophiles. The electrostatic potential map clearly shows the concentration of electron density at nitrogen in methylamine.

Amines that are substituted with three different groups on the nitrogen are chiral but cannot be resolved into enantiomers because of the low energy barrier for racemization by inversion (see Section 7.17).

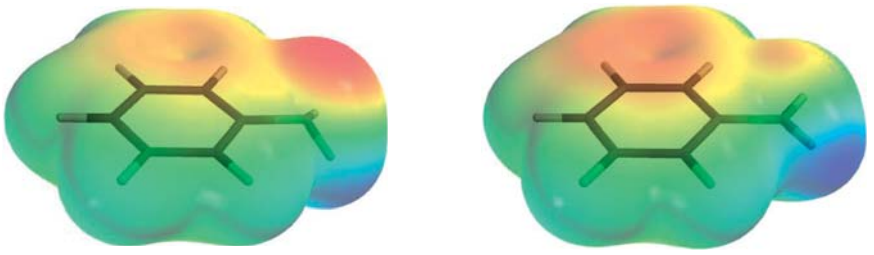
Arylamines: Aniline, like alkylamines, has a pyramidal arrangement of bonds around nitrogen, but its pyramid is somewhat shallower. One measure of the extent of this flattening is given by the angle between the carbon–nitrogen bond and the bisector of the H—N—H angle.



Methylamine (CH_3NH_2) Aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) Formamide ($O{=}CHNH_2$)

For sp^3-hybridized nitrogen, this angle (not the same as the C—N—H bond angle) is 125°, and the measured angles in simple alkylamines are close to that. The corresponding angle for sp^2 hybridization at nitrogen with a planar arrangement of bonds, as in amides, for example, is 180°. The measured value for this angle in aniline is 142.5°, suggesting a hybridization somewhat closer to sp^3 than to sp^2.

The structure of aniline reflects a compromise between two modes of binding the nitrogen lone pair (Figure 21.2). The electrons are more strongly attracted to nitrogen when



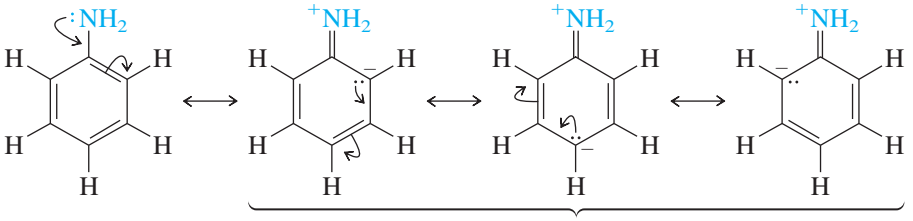
(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 21.2

Electrostatic potential maps of aniline in which the geometry at nitrogen is (*a*) nonplanar and (*b*) planar. In the nonplanar geometry, the unshared pair occupies an sp^3 hybrid orbital of nitrogen. The region of highest electron density in (*a*) is associated with nitrogen. In the planar geometry, nitrogen is sp^2-hybridized, and the electron pair is delocalized between a *p* orbital of nitrogen and the π system of the ring. The region of highest electron density in (*b*) encompasses both the ring and nitrogen. The actual structure combines features of both; nitrogen adopts a hybridization state between sp^3 and sp^2. The color scale is the same for both models.

they are in an orbital with some *s* character—an sp^3-hybridized orbital, for example—than when they are in a *p* orbital. On the other hand, delocalization of these electrons into the aromatic π system is better achieved if they occupy a *p* orbital. A *p* orbital of nitrogen is better aligned for overlap with the *p* orbitals of the benzene ring to form an extended π system than is an sp^3-hybridized orbital. As a result of these two opposing forces, nitrogen adopts an orbital hybridization that is between sp^3 and sp^2.

The corresponding resonance description shows the delocalization of the nitrogen lone-pair electrons in terms of contributions from dipolar structures.



Most stable Lewis structure for aniline

Dipolar resonance contributors of aniline

Delocalization of the nitrogen lone pair decreases the electron density at nitrogen while increasing it in the π system of the aromatic ring. We've already seen one chemical consequence of this in the high level of reactivity of aniline in electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions (see Section 12.12). Other ways in which electron delocalization affects the properties of arylamines are described in later sections of this chapter.

Problem 21.4

As the extent of electron delocalization into the ring increases, the geometry at nitrogen flattens. *p*-Nitroaniline, for example, is planar. Write a resonance contributor for *p*-nitroaniline that shows how the nitro group increases electron delocalization.

21.3 Physical Properties

Most commonly encountered alkylamines are liquids with unpleasant, "fishy" odors.

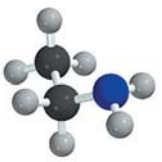
We have often seen that the polar nature of a substance can affect physical properties such as boiling point. This is true for amines, which are more polar than alkanes but less polar than alcohols. For similarly constituted compounds, alkylamines have boiling points higher than those of alkanes but lower than those of alcohols.

$CH_3CH_2CH_3$

Propane

μ = 0 D

bp −42°C



$CH_3CH_2NH_2$

Ethylamine

μ = 1.2 D

bp 17°C

CH_3CH_2OH

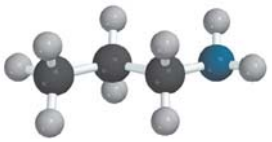
Ethanol

μ = 1.7 D

bp 78°C

Dipole–dipole interactions, especially hydrogen bonding, are present in amines but absent in alkanes. But because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen, an N—H bond is less polar than an O—H bond and hydrogen bonding is weaker in amines than in alcohols.

Among isomeric amines, primary amines have the highest boiling points, and tertiary amines the lowest.



$CH_3CH_2CH_2NH_2$

Propylamine
(primary amine)

bp 50°C

$CH_3CH_2NHCH_3$

N-Methylethylamine
(secondary amine)

bp 34°C

$(CH_3)_3N$

Trimethylamine
(tertiary amine)

bp 3°C

Primary and secondary amines can participate in intermolecular hydrogen bonding, but tertiary amines lack N—H bonds and so cannot.

Amines that have fewer than six or seven carbon atoms are soluble in water. All amines, even tertiary amines, can act as proton acceptors in hydrogen bonding to water molecules.

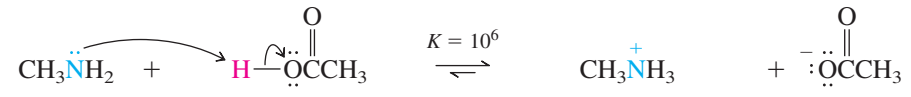
21.4 Basicity of Amines

When considering the basicity of amines, bear in mind that:

The more basic the amine, the weaker its conjugate acid.

The more basic the amine, the larger the pK_a *of its conjugate acid.*

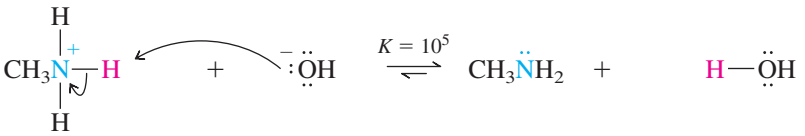
Citing amine basicity according to the pK_a of the conjugate acid makes it possible to analyze acid–base reactions of amines according to the usual Brønsted relationships. For example, we see that amines are converted to ammonium ions by acids even as weak as acetic acid:



Methylamine — Acetic acid (stronger acid; $pK_a = 4.7$) — Methylammonium ion (weaker acid; $pK_a = 10.7$) — Acetate ion

Recall that acid–base reactions are favorable when the stronger acid is on the left and the weaker acid on the right.

Conversely, adding sodium hydroxide to an ammonium salt converts it to the free amine:



Methylammonium ion (stronger acid; $pK_a = 10.7$) — Hydroxide ion — Methylamine — Water (weaker acid; $pK_a = 15.7$)

Problem 21.5

Apply the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation (see Section 18.4) to calculate the $CH_3NH_3^+/CH_3NH_2$ ratio in water buffered at pH 7.

Their basicity provides a means by which amines may be separated from neutral organic compounds. A mixture containing an amine is dissolved in diethyl ether and shaken with dilute hydrochloric acid to convert the amine to an ammonium salt. The ammonium salt, being ionic, dissolves in the aqueous phase, which is separated from the ether layer. Adding sodium hydroxide to the aqueous layer converts the ammonium salt back to the free

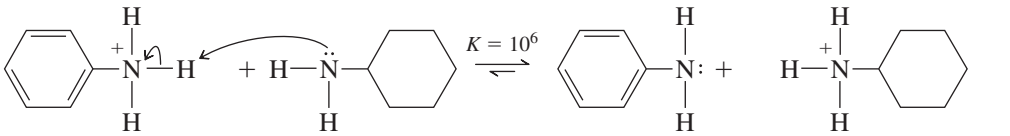
amine, which is then removed from the aqueous phase by extraction with a fresh portion of ether.

Amines are weak bases, but as a class, *amines are the strongest bases of all neutral molecules.* Table 21.1 lists basicity data for a number of amines. The most important relationships to be drawn from the data are:

1. Alkylamines are slightly stronger bases than ammonia.
2. Alkylamines differ very little among themselves in basicity. Their basicities cover a range of less than 10 in equilibrium constant (1 pK unit).
3. Arylamines are about 1 million times (6 pK units) weaker bases than ammonia and alkylamines.

The small differences in basicity between ammonia and alkylamines, and among the various classes of alkylamines (primary, secondary, tertiary), come from a mix of effects. Replacing hydrogens of ammonia by alkyl groups affects both sides of the acid–base equilibrium in ways that largely cancel.

Replacing hydrogens by aryl groups is a different story, however. An aryl group affects the base much more than the conjugate acid, and the overall effect is large. One way to compare alkylamines and arylamines is by examining the Brønsted equilibrium for proton transfer *to* an alkylamine *from* the conjugate acid of an arylamine.



Anilinium ion (stronger acid; pK_a = 4.6) | Cyclohexylamine | Aniline | Cyclohexylammonium ion (weaker acid; pK_a = 10.6)

TABLE 21.1 Basicity of Amines As Measured by the pK_a of Their Conjugate Acids*

Compound	Structure	pK_a of conjugate acid
Ammonia	NH_3	9.3
Primary amines		
Methylamine	CH_3NH_2	10.6
Ethylamine	$CH_3CH_2NH_2$	10.8
Isopropylamine	$(CH_3)_2CHNH_2$	10.6
tert-Butylamine	$(CH_3)_3CNH_2$	10.4
Aniline	$C_6H_5NH_2$	4.6
Secondary amines		
Dimethylamine	$(CH_3)_2NH$	10.7
Diethylamine	$(CH_3CH_2)_2NH$	11.1
N-Methylaniline	$C_6H_5NHCH_3$	4.8
Tertiary amines		
Trimethylamine	$(CH_3)_3N$	9.7
Triethylamine	$(CH_3CH_2)_3N$	10.8
N,N-Dimethylaniline	$C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2$	5.1

*In water, 25°C.

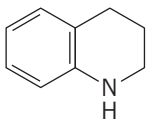
The equilibrium shown in the equation lies to the right. $K_{eq} = 10^6$ for proton transfer from the conjugate acid of aniline to cyclohexylamine, making cyclohexylamine 1,000,000 times more basic than aniline.

Reading the equation from left to right, we can say that anilinium ion is a stronger acid than cyclohexylammonium ion because loss of a proton from anilinium ion creates a delocalized electron pair of aniline and biases the equilibrium toward the right.

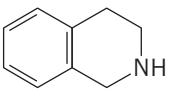
Reading the equation from right to left, we can say that aniline is a weaker base than cyclohexylamine because the electron pair on nitrogen of aniline is strongly held by virtue of being delocalized into the π system of the aromatic ring. The unshared pair in cyclohexylamine is localized on nitrogen, less strongly held, and therefore "more available" in an acid–base reaction.

Problem 21.6

The pK_a's of the conjugate acids of the two amines shown differ by a factor of 40,000. Which amine is the stronger base? Why?



Tetrahydroquinoline



Tetrahydroisoquinoline

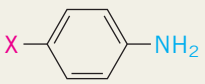
Even though they are weaker bases, arylamines, like alkylamines, can be completely protonated by strong acids. Aniline is extracted from an ether solution into 1 M hydrochloric acid by being completely converted to a water-soluble anilinium salt under these conditions.

Conjugation of the amino group of an arylamine with a second aromatic ring, then a third, reduces its basicity even further. Diphenylamine is 6300 times less basic than aniline, whereas triphenylamine is scarcely a base at all, being estimated as 10^{10} times less basic than aniline and 10^{14} times less basic than ammonia.

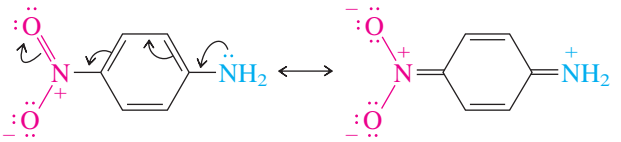
	$C_6H_5NH_2$	$(C_6H_5)_2NH$	$(C_6H_5)_3N$
	Aniline	Diphenylamine	Triphenylamine
pK_a of conjugate acid:	4.6	0.8	≈ -5

In general, electron-donating substituents on the aromatic ring increase the basicity of arylamines only slightly. Thus, as shown in Table 21.2, an electron-donating methyl group in the para position *increases* the basicity of aniline by less than 1 pK unit. Electron-withdrawing groups are base-weakening and can exert large effects. A *p*-trifluoromethyl group *decreases* the basicity of aniline by a factor of 200 and a *p*-nitro group by a factor of

TABLE 21.2 Effect of para Substituents on the Basicity of Aniline

	X	pK_a of conjugate acid
	H	4.6
	CH_3	5.3
	CF_3	2.5
	O_2N	1.0

3800. In the case of *p*-nitroaniline a resonance interaction of the type shown provides for extensive delocalization of the unshared electron pair of the amine group.



Electron delocalization in *p*-nitroaniline

Just as aniline is much less basic than alkylamines because the unshared electron pair of nitrogen is delocalized into the π system of the ring, *p*-nitroaniline is even less basic because the extent of this delocalization is greater and involves the oxygens of the nitro group.

Problem 21.7

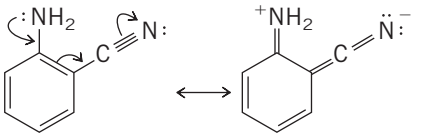
Each of the following is a much weaker base than aniline. Present a resonance argument to explain the effect of the substituent in each case.

(a) *o*-Cyanoaniline

(b) $C_6H_5NHCCH_3$ (O double-bonded to the carbonyl carbon)

(c) *p*-Aminoacetophenone

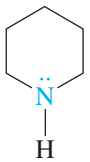
Sample Solution (a) A cyano substituent is strongly electron-withdrawing. When present at a position ortho to an amino group on an aromatic ring, a cyano substituent increases the delocalization of the amine lone-pair electrons.



This resonance stabilization is lost when the amine group becomes protonated, and *o*-cyanoaniline is therefore a weaker base than aniline.

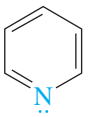
Multiple substitution by strongly electron-withdrawing groups diminishes the basicity of arylamines still more. Aniline is 3800 times as strong a base as *p*-nitroaniline and 10^9 times more basic than 2,4-dinitroaniline.

Nonaromatic heterocyclic compounds, piperidine, for example, are similar in basicity to alkylamines. When nitrogen is part of an aromatic ring, however, its basicity decreases markedly. Pyridine, for example, resembles arylamines in being almost 1 million times less basic than piperidine.



Piperidine
pK_a of conjugate acid = 11.2

is more basic than



Pyridine
pK_a of conjugate acid = 5.2

The difference between the two lies in the fact that the nitrogen lone pair occupies an sp^3-hybridized orbital in piperidine versus an sp^2-hybridized one in pyridine. As we have noted on several occasions, electrons in orbitals with more *s* character are more strongly held than those with less *s* character. For this reason, nitrogen holds on to its unshared pair more strongly in pyridine than in piperidine and is less basic.

Imidazole and its derivatives form an interesting and important class of heterocyclic aromatic amines. Imidazole is approximately 100 times more basic than pyridine.

Pyridine and imidazole were two of the heterocyclic aromatic compounds described in Section 11.21.

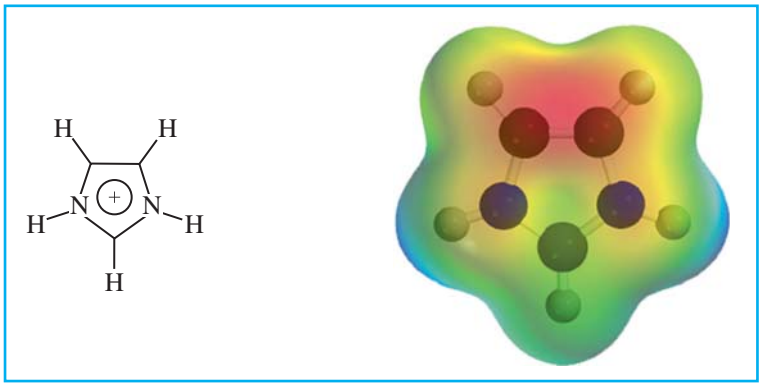


Figure 21.3

Electrostatic potential map of imidazolium ion showing equal distribution of charge between both nitrogens.

Protonation of imidazole yields an ion that is stabilized by the electron delocalization represented in the resonance structures shown:

Imidazole
pK_a of conjugate acid = 7

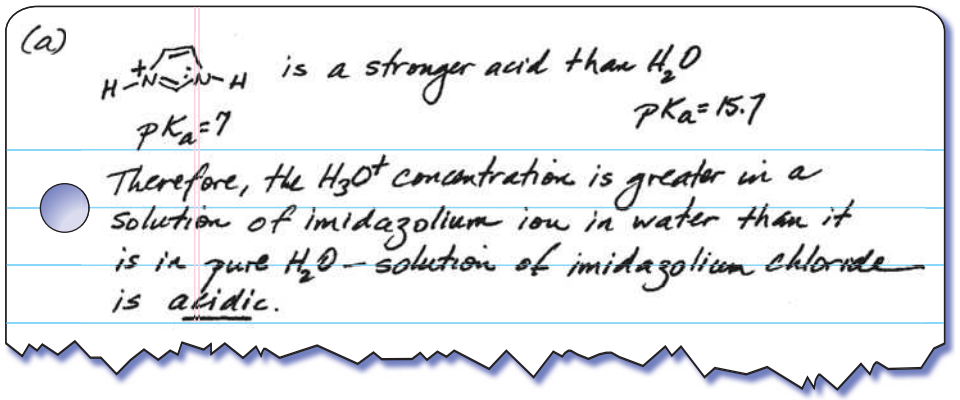
Imidazolium ion

As seen in Figure 21.3, the electrostatic potential map of the conjugate acid of imidazole (imidazolium ion) is consistent with the resonance description that shows both nitrogens as equivalent.

Problem 21.8

Given that the pK_a of imidazolium ion is 7, is a 1 M aqueous solution of imidazolium chloride acidic, basic, or neutral? (b) What about a 1 M solution of imidazole? (c) A solution containing equal molar quantities of imidazole and imidazolium chloride?

Sample Solution



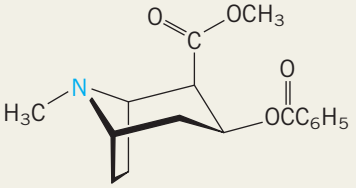
An imidazole ring is a structural unit in two biologically important compounds, *histidine* and *histamine*. Histidine is one of the amino acid building blocks of proteins and is directly involved in key proton-transfer processes. The drop in blood pressure associated with shock is a result of the formation of histamine, which stimulates the dilation of blood vessels.

Histidine

Histamine

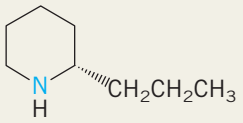
Amines as Natural Products

The ease with which amines are extracted into aqueous acid, combined with their regeneration on treatment with base, makes it a simple matter to separate amines from other plant materials, and nitrogen-containing natural products were among the earliest organic compounds to be studied. Their basic (alkaline) properties led amines obtained from plants to be called **alkaloids.** The number of known alkaloids exceeds 5000. They are of special interest because most are characterized by a high level of biological activity. Some examples include *cocaine, coniine,* and *morphine.*



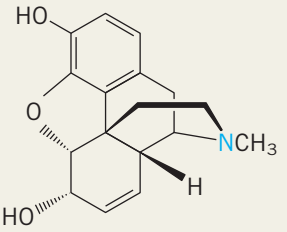
Cocaine

(A central nervous system stimulant obtained from the leaves of the coca plant.)



Coniine

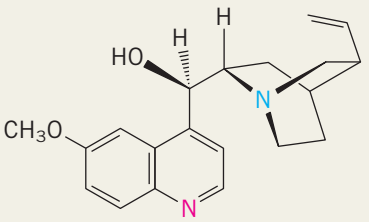
(Present along with other alkaloids in the hemlock extract used to poison Socrates.)



Morphine

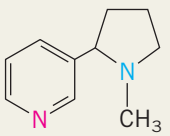
(An opium alkaloid. Although it is an excellent analgesic, its use is restricted because of the potential for addiction. Heroin is the diacetate ester of morphine.)

Many alkaloids, such as *nicotine* and *quinine,* contain two (or more) nitrogen atoms. The nitrogens shown in red in quinine and nicotine are part of a substituted quinoline and pyridine ring, respectively.



Quinine

(Alkaloid of cinchona bark used to treat malaria)



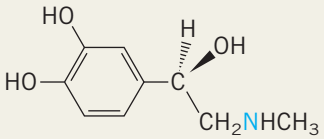
Nicotine

(An alkaloid present in tobacco; a very toxic compound sometimes used as an insecticide)

Problem 21.9

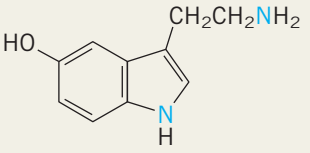
Write structural formulas for two isomeric conjugate acids of nicotine and use Table 1.8 to estimate their pK_a's.

Several naturally occurring amines mediate the transmission of nerve impulses and are referred to as **neurotransmitters.** Two examples are *epinephrine* and *serotonin.* (Strictly speaking these compounds are not classified as alkaloids because they are not isolated from plants.)



Epinephrine

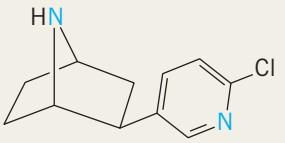
(Also called *adrenaline;* a hormone secreted by the adrenal gland that prepares the organism for "flight or fight.")



Serotonin

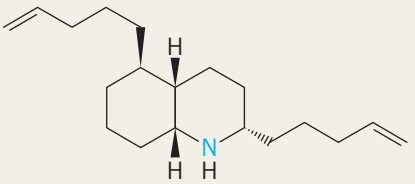
(A hormone synthesized in the pineal gland. Certain mental disorders are believed to be related to serotonin levels in the brain.)

Bioactive amines are also widespread in animals. A variety of structures and properties have been found in substances isolated from frogs, for example. One, called *epibatidine,* is a naturally occurring painkiller isolated from the skin of an Ecuadoran frog (*Epipedobates tricolor*). Another family of frogs produces a toxic mixture of several stereoisomeric amines, called *dendrobines,* on their skin that protects them from attack.



Epibatidine

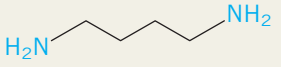
(Once used as an arrow poison, it is hundreds of times more powerful than morphine in relieving pain. It is too toxic to be used as a drug, however.)



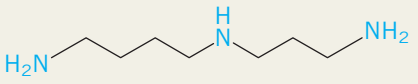
Dendrobine

(Isolated from frogs of the Dendrobatidae family. Related compounds have also been isolated from certain ants.)

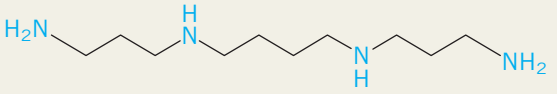
Among the more important amine derivatives found in the body are a group of compounds known as **polyamines,** which contain two to four nitrogen atoms separated by several methylene units:



Putrescine



Spermidine



Spermine

These compounds are present in almost all mammalian cells, where they are believed to be involved in cell differentiation and proliferation. Because each nitrogen of a polyamine is protonated at physiological pH (7.4), putrescine, spermidine, and spermine exist as cations with a charge of +2, +3, and +4, respectively, in body fluids. Structural studies suggest that these polyammonium ions affect the conformation of biological macromolecules by electrostatic binding to specific anionic sites—the negatively charged phosphate groups of DNA, for example.

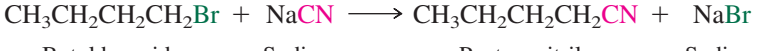
21.5 Tetraalkylammonium Salts as Phase-Transfer Catalysts

In spite of being ionic, many quaternary ammonium salts dissolve in nonpolar media. The four alkyl groups attached to nitrogen shield its positive charge and impart *lipophilic* (hydrophobic) character to the tetraalkylammonium ion. The following two quaternary ammonium salts, for example, are soluble in solvents of low polarity such as benzene, decane, and halogenated hydrocarbons:

Methyltrioctylammonium chloride

Benzyltriethylammonium chloride

This property of quaternary ammonium salts is used to advantage in an experimental technique known as **phase-transfer catalysis.** Imagine that you wish to carry out the reaction



Butyl bromide — Sodium cyanide — Pentanenitrile — Sodium bromide

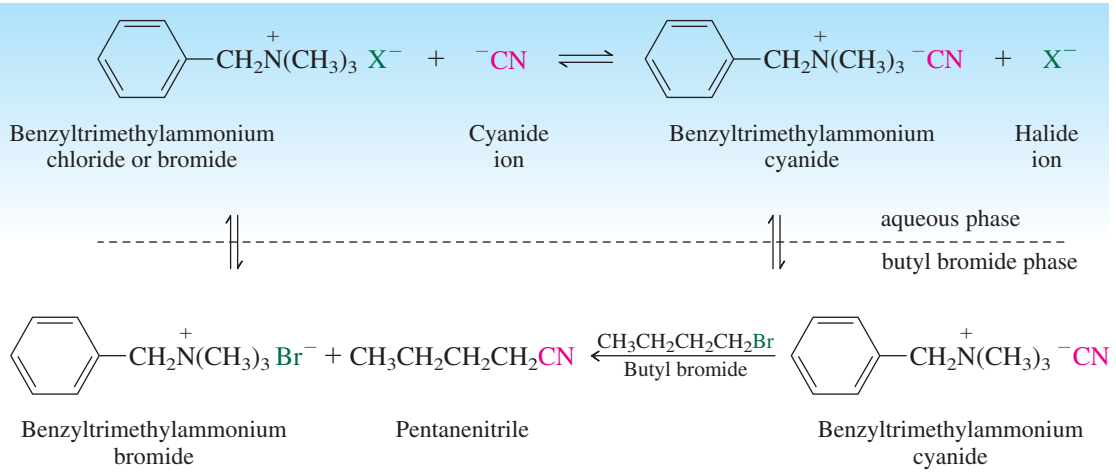


Figure 21.4

Phase-transfer catalysis. Nucleophilic cyanide ion is transferred from the aqueous to the organic phase as benzyltrimethylammonium cyanide.

Sodium cyanide does not dissolve in butyl bromide. The two reactants contact each other only at the surface of the solid sodium cyanide, and the rate of reaction under these conditions is too slow to be of synthetic value. Dissolving the sodium cyanide in water is of little help because butyl bromide is not soluble in water and reaction can occur only at the interface between the two phases. Adding a small amount of benzyltrimethylammonium chloride, however, causes pentanenitrile to form rapidly even at room temperature. The quaternary ammonium salt is acting as a *catalyst;* it increases the reaction rate. How?

Quaternary ammonium salts catalyze the reaction between an anion and an organic substrate by transferring the anion from the aqueous phase, where it cannot contact the substrate, to the organic phase. In the cycle shown in Figure 21.4, the first step occurs in the aqueous phase and is an exchange of the anionic partner of the quaternary ammonium salt for cyanide ion. The benzyltrimethylammonium ion migrates to the butyl bromide phase, carrying a cyanide ion along with it. Once in the organic phase, cyanide ion is only weakly solvated and is far more reactive than it is in water or ethanol, where it is strongly solvated by hydrogen bonding. The benzyltrimethylammonium bromide formed in the substitution step returns to the aqueous phase, where it can repeat the cycle. Phase-transfer catalysis incorporates principles of green chemistry. Reactions are faster and proceed in higher yield; fewer side products are produced; the need for excess reagents (cyanide in this case) is minimized; and water can be used as a solvent.

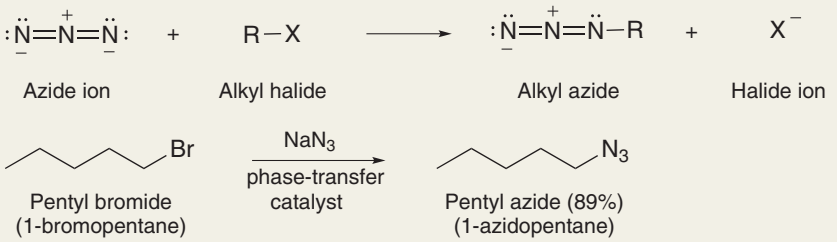
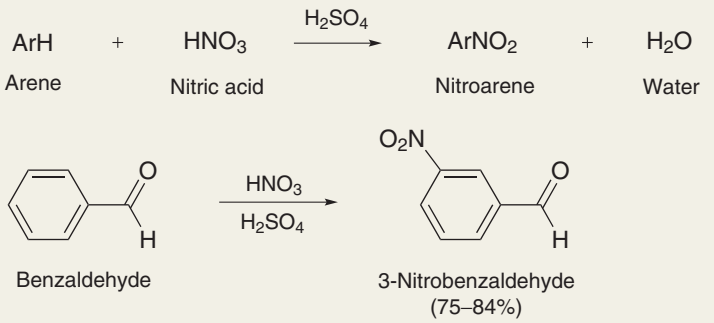
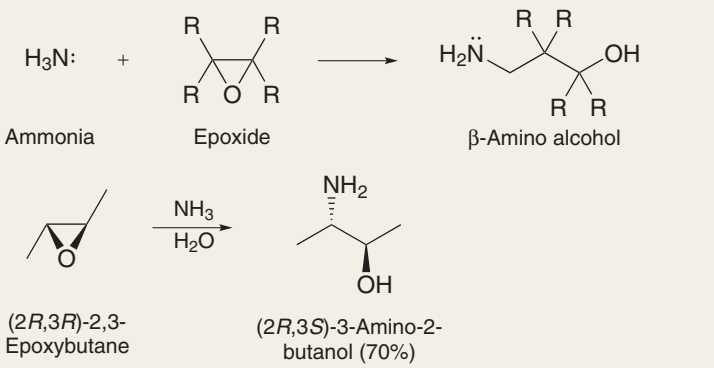
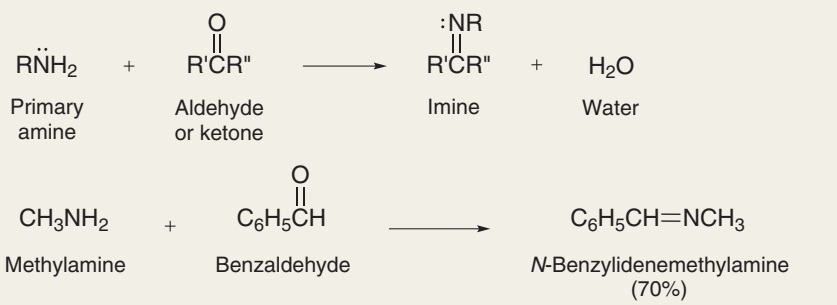
21.6 Reactions That Lead to Amines: A Review and a Preview

Methods for preparing amines address either or both of the following questions:

1. How is the required carbon–nitrogen bond to be formed?
2. Given a nitrogen-containing organic compound such as an amide, a nitrile, or a nitro compound, how is the correct oxidation state of the desired amine to be achieved?

A number of reactions that lead to carbon–nitrogen bond formation were presented in earlier chapters and are summarized in Table 21.3. Among the reactions in the table, the nucleophilic ring opening of epoxides and the reaction of α-halo acids with ammonia give amines directly. The other reactions in Table 21.3 yield products that are converted to amines by some subsequent procedure. As these procedures are described in the following sections, you will see that they are largely applications of principles that you've already learned. You will encounter some new reagents and some new uses for familiar reagents, but very little in the way of new reaction types is involved.

TABLE 21.3 Methods for Carbon–Nitrogen Bond Formation Discussed in Earlier Chapters

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Nucleophilic substitution by azide ion on an alkyl halide (see Sections 8.1, 8.10) Azide ion is a very good nucleophile and reacts with primary and secondary alkyl halides to give alkyl azides. Phase-transfer catalysts accelerate the rate of reaction.	
Nitration of arenes (see Section 12.3) The standard method for introducing a nitrogen atom as a substituent on an aromatic ring is nitration with a mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid. The reaction proceeds by electrophilic aromatic substitution.	
Nucleophilic ring opening of epoxides by ammonia (see Section 16.11) The strained ring of an epoxide is opened on nucleophilic attack by ammonia and amines to give β-amino alcohols. Azide ion also reacts with epoxides; the products are β-azido alcohols.	
Nucleophilic addition of amines to aldehydes and ketones (see Sections 17.10, 17.11) Primary amines undergo nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group of aldehydes and ketones to form hemiaminals, which dehydrate under the conditions of their formation to give *N*-substituted imines. Secondary amines yield enamines.	

Continued

TABLE 21.3 Methods for Carbon–Nitrogen Bond Formation Discussed in Earlier Chapters (*Continued*)

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Nucleophilic substitution by ammonia on α-halo acids (see Section 20.1) The α-halo acids obtained by halogenation of carboxylic acids under conditions of the Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction are reactive substrates in nucleophilic substitution processes. A standard method for the preparation of α-amino acids is displacement of halide from α-halo acids by nucleophilic substitution using excess aqueous ammonia.	$H_3N:$ + $RCHCO_2H$ (X) → $RCHCO_2^-$ ($^+NH_3$) + NH_4X Ammonia; α-Halo carboxylic acid; α-Amino acid; Ammonium halide 2-Bromo-3-methylbutanoic acid —(NH_3, H_2O)→ 2-Amino-3-methylbutanoic acid (47–48%)
Nucleophilic acyl substitution (see Sections 19.4, 19.5, and 19.10) Acylation of ammonia and amines by an acyl chloride, acid anhydride, or ester is an exceptionally effective method for the formation of carbon–nitrogen bonds.	$R_2\ddot{N}H$ + $R'COX$ → $R_2\ddot{N}COR'$ + HX Amine (primary or secondary) or ammonia; Acyl chloride, acid anhydride, or ester; Amide 2 Pyrrolidine + Acetyl chloride → *N*-Acetylpyrrolidine (79%) + Pyrrolidine hydrochloride

21.7 Preparation of Amines by Alkylation of Ammonia

Alkylamines are, in principle, capable of being prepared by nucleophilic substitution reactions of alkyl halides with ammonia.

$$RX + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow RNH_2 + {}^{+}NH_4\ X^-$$

Alkyl halide; Ammonia; Primary amine; Ammonium halide salt

Although this reaction is useful for preparing α-amino acids (see Table 21.3, fifth entry), it is *not* a general method for the synthesis of amines. Its major limitation is that the expected primary amine product is itself a nucleophile and competes with ammonia for the alkyl halide. When 1-bromooctane, for example, is allowed to react with ammonia, both the primary amine and the secondary amine are isolated in comparable amounts.

$$CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_2Br \xrightarrow{NH_3\ (2\ mol)} CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_2NH_2 + [CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_2]_2NH$$

1-Bromooctane (1 mol); Octylamine (45%); *N,N*-Dioctylamine (43%)

Competitive alkylation may continue, resulting in the formation of tertiary amines and quaternary ammonium salts.

Alkylation of ammonia is used to prepare primary amines only when the starting alkyl halide is not particularly expensive and the desired amine can be easily separated from the other components of the reaction mixture.

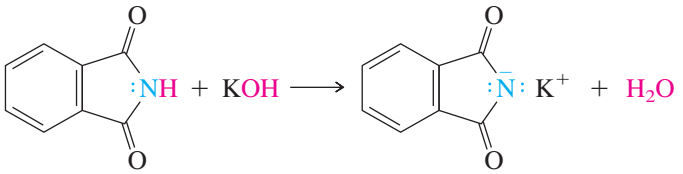
Problem 21.10

Alkylation of ammonia is sometimes employed in industrial processes; the resulting mixture of amines is separated by distillation. The ultimate starting materials for the industrial preparation of allylamine are propene, chlorine, and ammonia. Write a series of equations showing the industrial preparation of allylamine from these starting materials. (Allylamine has a number of uses, including the preparation of the diuretic drugs *meralluride* and *mercaptomerin*.)

Aryl halides that are substituted with electron-withdrawing groups react with amines by nucleophilic aromatic substitution (see Section 12.19).

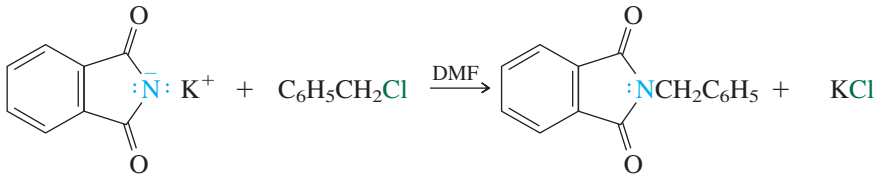
21.8 The Gabriel Synthesis of Primary Alkylamines

A method that achieves the same end result as that of alkylation of ammonia but which avoids the formation of secondary and tertiary amines as byproducts is the **Gabriel synthesis.** Alkyl halides are converted to primary alkylamines without contamination by secondary or tertiary amines. The key reagent is the potassium salt of phthalimide, prepared by the reaction



Phthalimide ($pK_a = 8.3$) | *N*-Potassiophthalimide | Water ($pK_a = 15.7$)

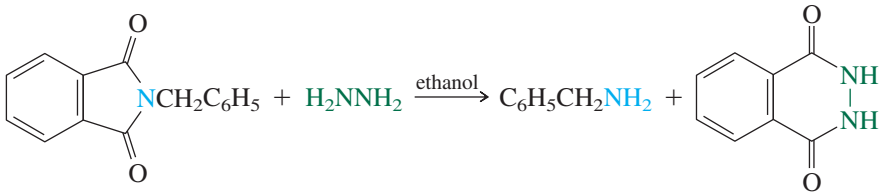
Phthalimide, with a pK_a of 8.3, can be quantitatively converted to its potassium salt with potassium hydroxide. The potassium salt of phthalimide has a negatively charged nitrogen atom, which acts as a nucleophile toward primary alkyl halides in a bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2) process.



N-Potassiophthalimide | Benzyl chloride | *N*-Benzylphthalimide (74%) | Potassium chloride

DMF is an abbreviation for *N,N*-dimethylformamide, $HCN(CH_3)_2$. DMF is a polar aprotic solvent (see Section 8.9) and an excellent medium for S_N2 reactions.

The product of this reaction is an imide, a diacyl derivative of an amine. Either aqueous acid or aqueous base can be used to hydrolyze its two amide bonds and liberate the desired primary amine. A more effective method of cleaving the two amide bonds is by reaction with hydrazine:



N-Benzylphthalimide | Hydrazine | Benzylamine (97%) | Phthalhydrazide

Aryl halides cannot be converted to arylamines by the Gabriel synthesis because they do not undergo nucleophilic substitution with *N*-potassiophthalimide in the first step of the procedure.

Among compounds other than simple alkyl halides, α-halo ketones, α-halo esters, and alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonates have also been used. Because phthalimide can undergo

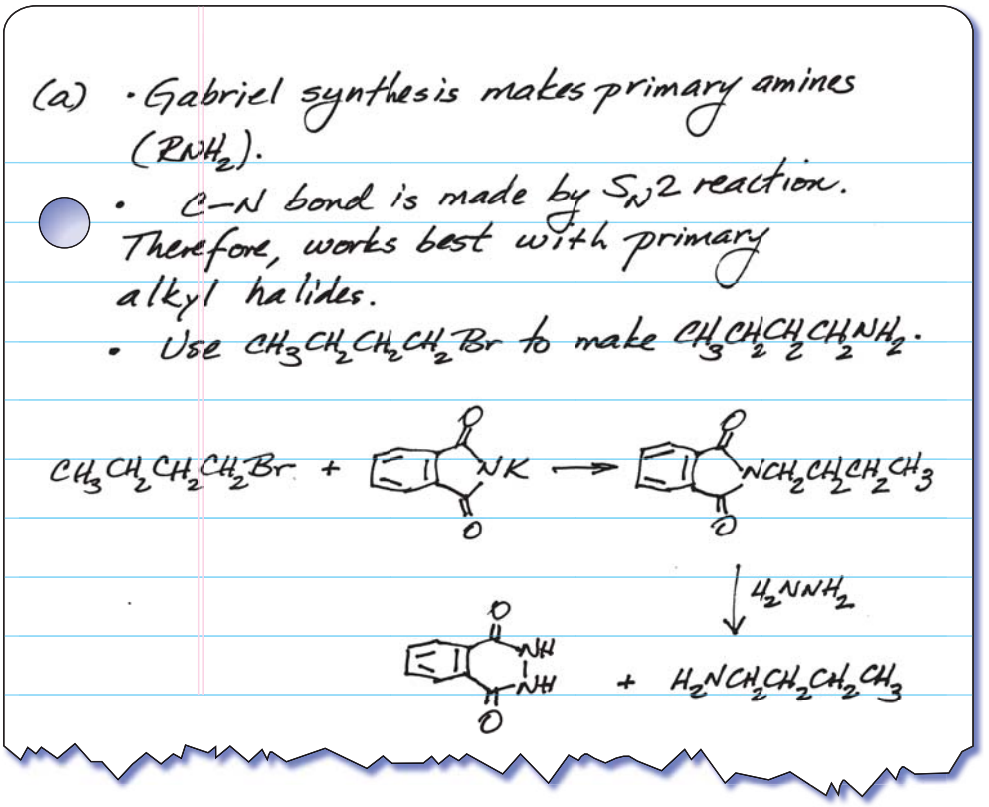
only a single alkylation, the formation of secondary and tertiary amines does not occur, and the Gabriel synthesis is a valuable procedure for the laboratory preparation of primary amines.

Problem 21.11

Three of the following amines can be prepared by the Gabriel synthesis; three cannot. Write equations showing the successful applications of this method.

(a) Butylamine
(b) Isobutylamine
(c) *tert*-Butylamine
(d) 2-Phenylethylamine
(e) *N*-Methylbenzylamine
(f) Aniline

Sample Solution



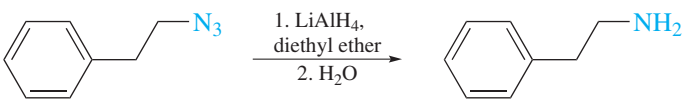
21.9 Preparation of Amines by Reduction

Almost any nitrogen-containing organic compound can be reduced to an amine. The synthesis of amines then becomes a question of the availability of suitable precursors and the choice of an appropriate reducing agent.

Alkyl *azides,* prepared by nucleophilic substitution of alkyl halides by sodium azide, as shown in the first entry of Table 21.3, are reduced to alkylamines by a variety of reagents, including lithium aluminum hydride.

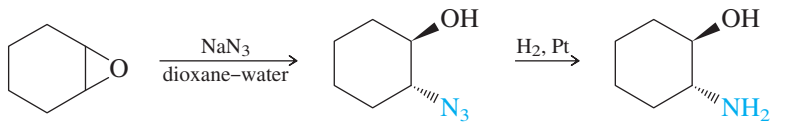
$$R{-}\ddot{N}{=}\overset{+}{N}{=}\ddot{N}:^{-} \xrightarrow{\text{reduce}} R\ddot{N}H_2$$

Alkyl azide — Primary amine



2-Phenylethyl azide — 2-Phenylethylamine (89%)

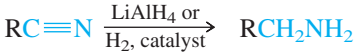
Catalytic hydrogenation is also effective:



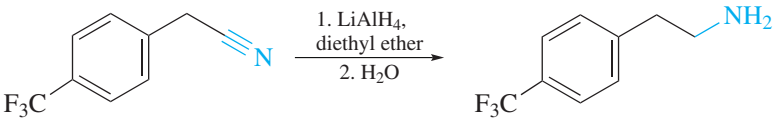
1,2-Epoxycyclohexane | *trans*-2-Azidocyclohexanol (61%) | *trans*-2-Aminocyclohexanol (81%)

In its overall design, this procedure is similar to the Gabriel synthesis; a nitrogen nucleophile is used in a carbon–nitrogen bond-forming operation and then converted to an amino group in a subsequent transformation.

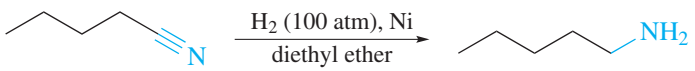
The same reduction methods may be applied to the conversion of *nitriles* to primary amines.



Nitrile | Primary amine



p-(Trifluoromethyl)benzyl cyanide | *p*-(Trifluoromethyl)phenylethylamine (53%)



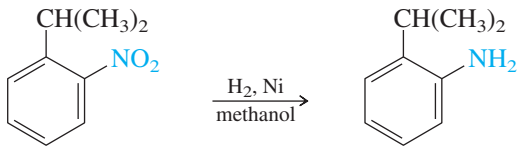
Pentanenitrile | 1-Pentanamine (56%)

The preparation of pentanenitrile under phase-transfer conditions was described in Section 21.5.

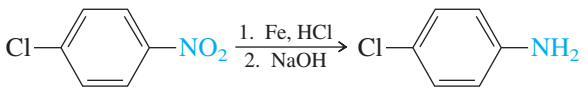
Because nitriles can be prepared from alkyl halides by nucleophilic substitution with cyanide ion, the overall process RX → RC≡N → RCH_2NH_2 leads to primary amines that have one more carbon atom than the starting alkyl halide.

Cyano groups in *cyanohydrins* (see Section 17.7) are reduced under the same reaction conditions.

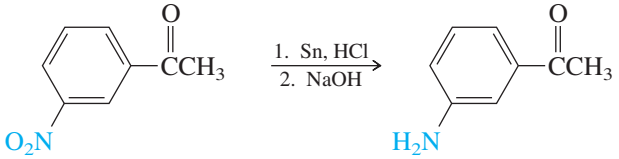
Nitro groups are readily reduced to primary amines by a variety of methods. Catalytic hydrogenation over platinum, palladium, or nickel is often used, as is reduction by iron or tin in hydrochloric acid. The ease with which nitro groups are reduced is especially useful in the preparation of arylamines, where the sequence ArH → $ArNO_2$ → $ArNH_2$ is the standard route to these compounds.



o-Isopropylnitrobenzene | *o*-Isopropylaniline (92%)



p-Chloronitrobenzene | *p*-Chloroaniline (95%)



m-Nitroacetophenone | *m*-Aminoacetophenone (82%)

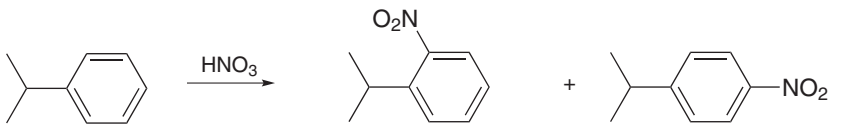
For reductions carried out in acidic media, a pH adjustment with sodium hydroxide is required in the last step in order to convert $ArNH_3^+$ to $ArNH_2$.

Problem 21.12

Outline the synthesis of each of the following arylamines from benzene:

(a) *o*-Isopropylaniline
(b) *p*-Isopropylaniline
(c) 4-Isopropyl-1,3-benzenediamine
(d) *p*-Chloroaniline
(e) *m*-Aminoacetophenone

Sample Solution (a) The last step in the synthesis of *o*-isopropylaniline, the reduction of the corresponding nitro compound by catalytic hydrogenation, is given as one of the three preceding examples. The necessary nitroarene is obtained by fractional distillation of the ortho–para mixture formed during nitration of isopropylbenzene.

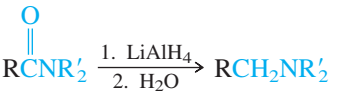


Isopropylbenzene — *o*-Isopropylnitrobenzene (bp 110°C) — *p*-Isopropylnitrobenzene (bp 131C°)

As actually performed, a 62% yield of a mixture of ortho and para nitration products has been obtained with an ortho–para ratio of about 1:3.

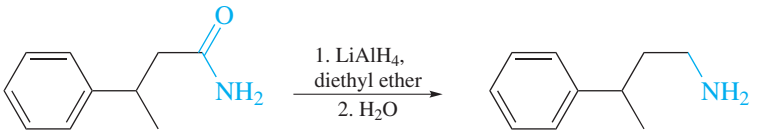
Isopropylbenzene is prepared by the Friedel–Crafts alkylation of benzene using isopropyl chloride and aluminum chloride (see Section 12.6).

Reduction of an azide, a nitrile, or a nitro compound furnishes a primary amine. A method that provides access to primary, secondary, or tertiary amines is reduction of the carbonyl group of an amide by lithium aluminum hydride.



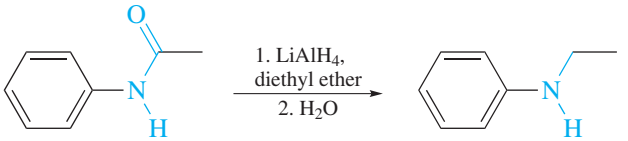
Amide — Amine

In this general equation, R and R′ may be either alkyl or aryl groups. When R′ = H, the product is a primary amine:



3-Phenylbutanamide — 3-Phenyl-1-butanamine (59%)

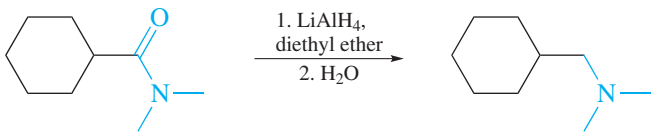
N-Substituted amides yield secondary amines:



Acetanilide — *N*-Ethylaniline (92%)

Acetanilide is an acceptable IUPAC synonym for *N*-phenylethanamide.

N,N-Disubstituted amides yield tertiary amines:



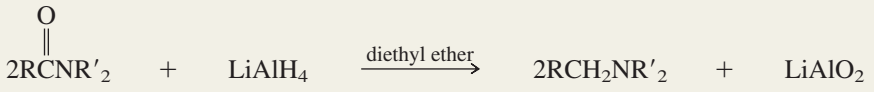
N,N-Dimethylcyclohexane-carboxamide — *N,N*-Dimethyl(cyclohexyl-methyl)amine (88%)

Mechanism 21.1 shows the reduction of amides with lithium aluminum hydride. The reduction of amides follows a similar course to the reduction of esters (see Section 19.11). A tetrahedral intermediate is formed by the addition of hydride (step 1), and undergoes elimination (step 2). In the case of an ester, the alkoxy group is lost to give an intermediate aldehyde. Amides, on the other hand, retain the nitrogen and lose the oxygen from the tetrahedral intermediate. The iminium ion formed undergoes addition of a second hydride and is reduced to the amine in step 3.

Mechanism 21.1

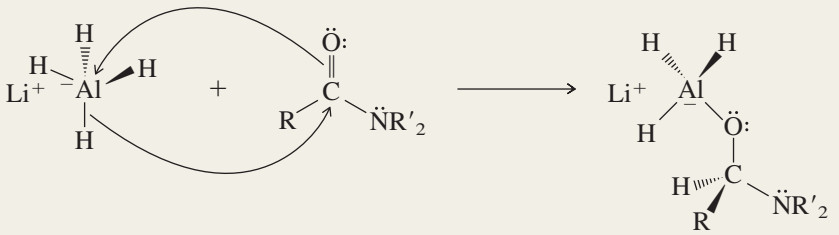
Lithium Aluminum Hydride Reduction of an Amide

THE OVERALL REACTION:

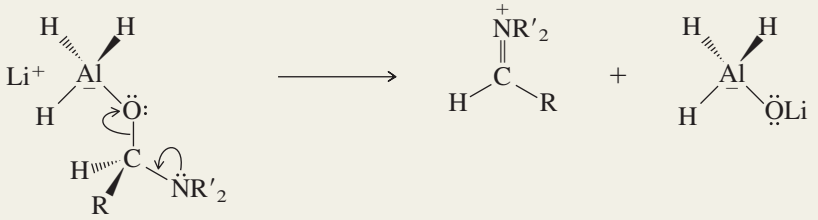


THE MECHANISM:

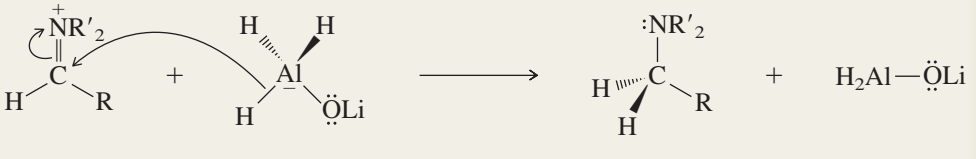
Step 1: Hydride is transferred from aluminum to the carbonyl carbon of the amide to give a tetrahedral intermediate. The carbonyl oxygen becomes bound to aluminum.



Step 2: The tetrahedral intermediate undergoes elimination to form an iminium ion.



Step 3: The iminium ion undergoes addition of a second hydride. For simplicity, the source of hydride shown in the next equation is the $[LiOAlH_3]^-$ species formed in step 2, but it can be any species present in the reaction mixture that retains an Al—H bond. Thus, the overall stoichiometry corresponds to reduction of two moles of amide per mole of $LiAlH_4$ and the final inorganic product is $LiAlO_2$.

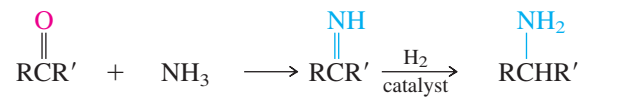


Because amides are so easy to prepare, this is a versatile method for preparing amines.

The methods described in this section involve the prior synthesis and isolation of some reducible material that has a carbon–nitrogen bond: an azide, a nitrile, a nitro-substituted arene, or an amide. The following section describes a method that combines the two steps of carbon–nitrogen bond formation and reduction into a single operation. Like the reduction of amides, it offers the possibility of preparing primary, secondary, or tertiary amines by proper choice of starting materials.

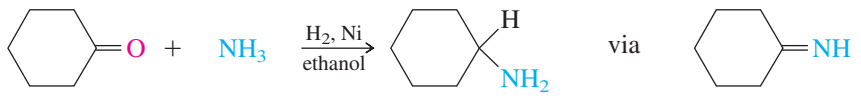
21.10 Reductive Amination

A class of nitrogen-containing compounds that was omitted from the section just discussed includes *imines* and their derivatives. Imines are formed by the reaction of aldehydes and ketones with ammonia (see Section 17.10). Imines can be reduced to primary amines by catalytic hydrogenation.

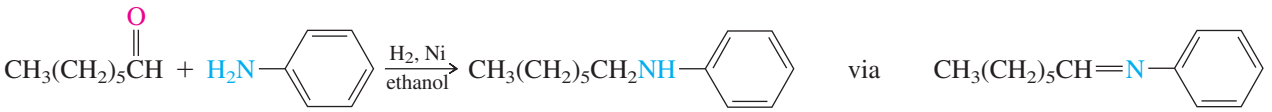


The overall reaction converts a carbonyl compound to an amine by carbon–nitrogen bond formation and reduction; it is commonly known as **reductive amination.** What makes it a particularly valuable synthetic procedure is that it can be carried out in a single operation by hydrogenation of a solution containing both ammonia and the carbonyl compound along with a hydrogenation catalyst. The intermediate imine is not isolated but undergoes reduction under the conditions of its formation. Also, the reaction is broader in scope than implied by the preceding equation. All classes of amines—primary, secondary, and tertiary—may be prepared by reductive amination.

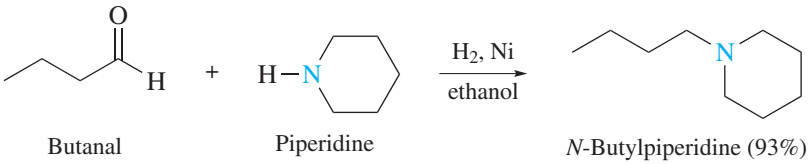
When primary amines are desired, the reaction is carried out as just described, using ammonia as the nitrogen source.



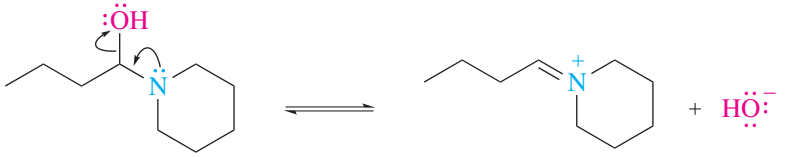
Secondary amines are prepared by hydrogenation of a carbonyl compound in the presence of a primary amine. An *N*-substituted imine, or *Schiff's base,* is an intermediate:



Reductive amination has been successfully applied to the preparation of tertiary amines from carbonyl compounds and secondary amines even though a neutral imine is not possible in this case.



Presumably, the species that undergoes reduction here is a hemiaminal, an iminium ion derived from it, or an enamine.



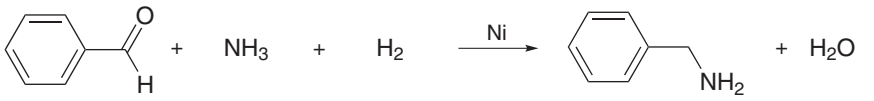
Hemiaminal Iminium ion

Problem 21.13

Show how you could prepare each of the following amines from benzaldehyde by reductive amination:

(a) Benzylamine
(b) Dibenzylamine
(c) *N,N*-Dimethylbenzylamine
(d) *N*-Benzylpiperidine

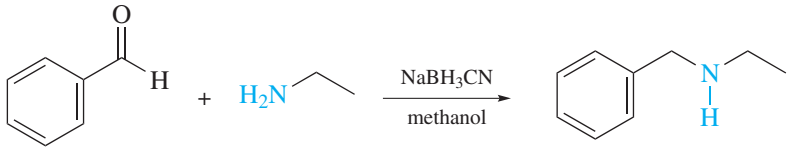
Sample Solution (a) Because benzylamine is a primary amine, it is derived from ammonia and benzaldehyde.



Benzaldehyde Ammonia Hydrogen Benzylamine (89%) Water

The reaction proceeds by initial formation of the imine $C_6H_5CH{=}NH$, followed by its hydrogenation.

A variation of the classical reductive amination procedure uses sodium cyanoborohydride ($NaBH_3CN$) instead of hydrogen as the reducing agent and is better suited to amine syntheses in which only a few grams of material are needed. All that is required is to add sodium cyanoborohydride to an alcohol solution of the carbonyl compound and an amine.



Benzaldehyde Ethylamine *N*-Ethylbenzylamine (91%)

Sodium cyanoborohydride reduces aldehydes and ketones less rapidly than sodium borohydride, but it reduces iminium ions rapidly. To take advantage of this selectivity, reductive aminations are carried out at mildly acidic pH, where the imines are protonated. Iminium ions are also more reactive than imines toward reduction with hydride.

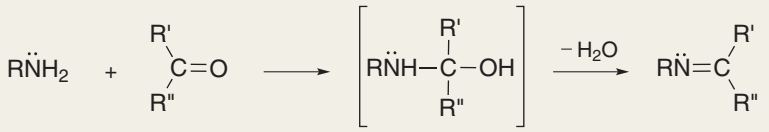
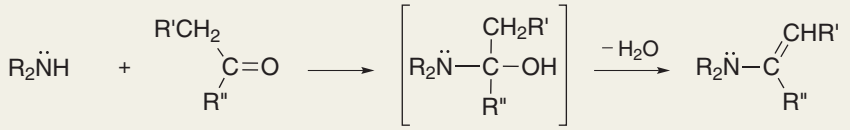
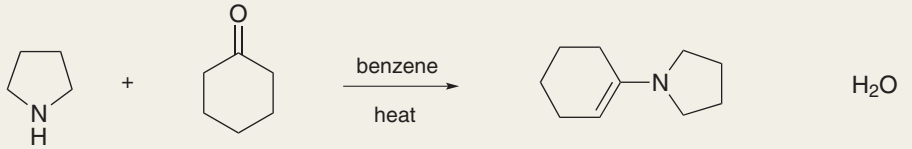
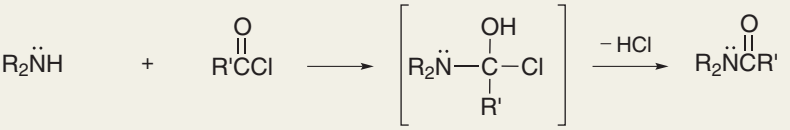
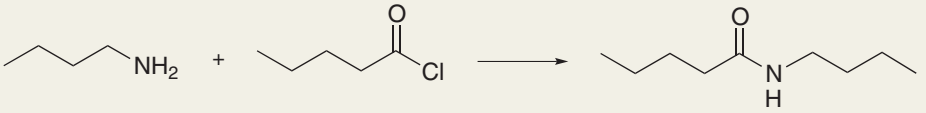
21.11 Reactions of Amines: A Review and a Preview

The noteworthy properties of amines are their *basicity* and their *nucleophilicity*. The basicity of amines has been discussed in Section 21.4. Several reactions in which amines act as nucleophiles have already been encountered in earlier chapters. These are summarized in Table 21.4.

Both the basicity and the nucleophilicity of amines originate in the unshared electron pair of nitrogen. When an amine acts as a base, this electron pair abstracts a proton from a Brønsted acid. When an amine undergoes the reactions summarized in Table 21.4, the first step in each case is nucleophilic addition to the positively polarized carbon of a carbonyl group.

Amine acting as a base Amine acting as a nucleophile

TABLE 21.4 Reactions of Amines Discussed in Previous Chapters*

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Reaction of primary amines with aldehydes and ketones (see Section 17.10) Imines are formed by nucleophilic addition of a primary amine to the carbonyl group of an aldehyde or a ketone. The key step is formation of a hemiaminal intermediate, which then dehydrates to the imine.	 Primary amine; Aldehyde or ketone; Hemiaminal intermediate; Imine Methylamine; Benzaldehyde; *N*-Benzylidenemethylamine (70%); Water
Reaction of secondary amines with aldehydes and ketones (see Section 17.11) Enamines are formed in the corresponding reaction of secondary amines with aldehydes and ketones.	 Secondary amine; Aldehyde or ketone; Hemiaminal intermediate; Enamine  Pyrrolidine; Cyclohexanone; *N*-(1-Cyclohexenyl)pyrrolidine (85–90%); Water
Reaction of amines with acyl chlorides (see Section 19.4) Amines are converted to amides on reaction with acyl chlorides. Other acylating agents, such as acid anhydrides and esters, may also be used but are less reactive.	 Primary or secondary amine; Acyl chloride; Tetrahedral intermediate; Amide  Butylamine; Pentanoyl chloride; *N*-Butylpentanamide (81%)

*Both alkylamines and arylamines undergo these reactions.

In addition to being more basic than arylamines, alkylamines are also more nucleophilic. All the reactions in Table 21.4 take place faster with alkylamines than with arylamines.

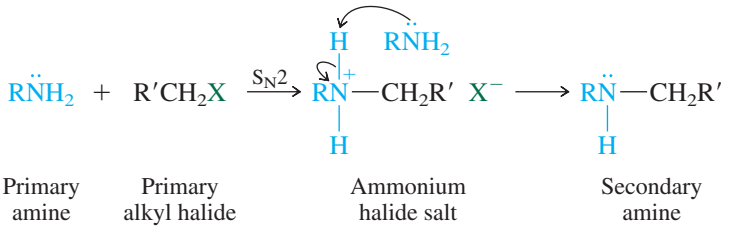
The sections that follow introduce some additional reactions of amines. In all cases our understanding of how these reactions take place starts with a consideration of the role of the unshared electron pair of nitrogen.

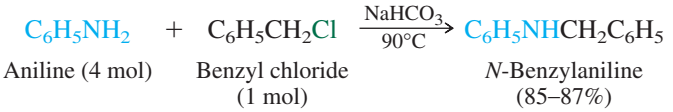
We will begin with an examination of the reactivity of amines as nucleophiles in S_N2 reactions.

21.12 Reaction of Amines with Alkyl Halides

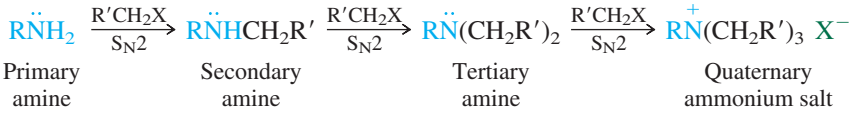
The reaction of amines with alkyl halides was seen earlier (see Section 21.7) as a complicating factor in the preparation of amines by alkylation of ammonia.

Nucleophilic substitution results when primary alkyl halides are treated with amines.

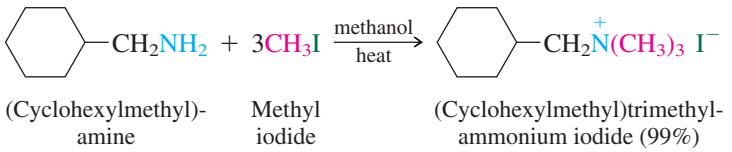




A second alkylation may follow, converting the secondary amine to a tertiary amine. Alkylation need not stop there; the tertiary amine may itself be alkylated, giving a quaternary ammonium salt.



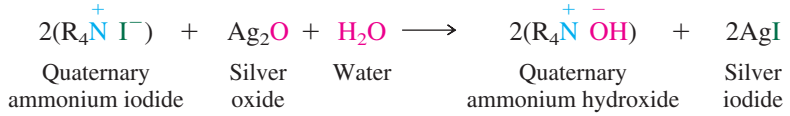
Because of its high reactivity toward nucleophilic substitution, methyl iodide is the alkyl halide most often used to prepare quaternary ammonium salts.

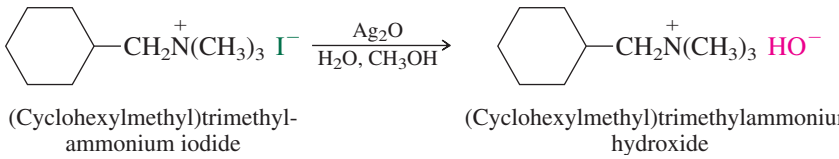


Quaternary ammonium salts, as we have seen, are useful in synthetic organic chemistry as phase-transfer catalysts. In another, more direct application, quaternary ammonium *hydroxides* are used as substrates in an elimination reaction to form alkenes.

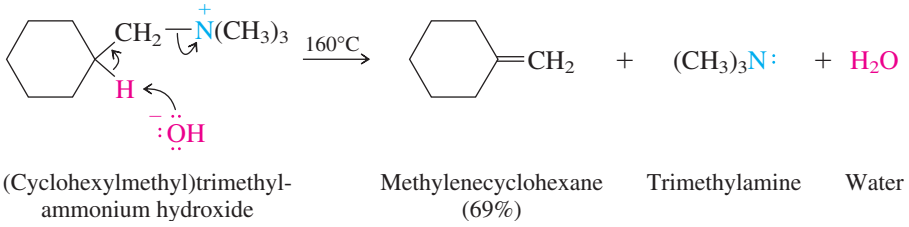
21.13 The Hofmann Elimination

The halide anion of quaternary ammonium iodides may be replaced by hydroxide by treatment with an aqueous slurry of silver oxide. Silver iodide precipitates, and a solution of the quaternary ammonium hydroxide is formed.



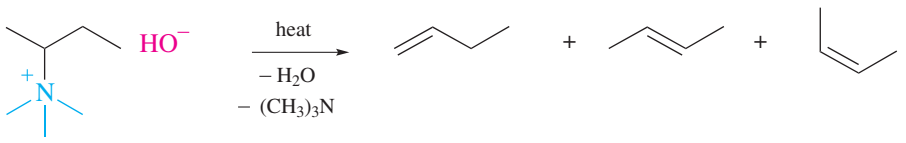


When quaternary ammonium hydroxides are heated, they undergo an E2 β elimination to form an alkene and an amine.



This reaction is known as the **Hofmann elimination;** it was developed by August W. Hofmann in the middle of the nineteenth century and is both a synthetic method to prepare alkenes and an analytical tool for structure determination.

A novel aspect of the Hofmann elimination is its regioselectivity. Elimination in alkyltrimethylammonium hydroxides proceeds in the direction that gives the *less* substituted alkene.

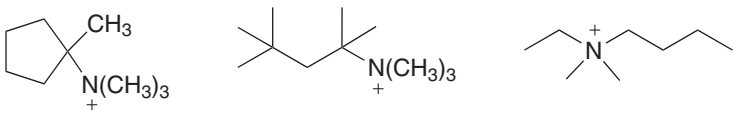


sec-Butyltrimethylammonium hydroxide | 1-Butene (95%) | *trans*-2-Butene | *cis*-2-Butene (5% combined)

The least sterically hindered β hydrogen is removed by the base in Hofmann elimination reactions. Methyl groups are deprotonated in preference to methylene groups, and methylene groups are deprotonated in preference to methines. The regioselectivity of Hofmann elimination is opposite to that predicted by the Zaitsev rule (see Section 5.10). Elimination reactions of alkyltrimethylammonium hydroxides are said to obey the **Hofmann rule;** they yield the less substituted alkene.

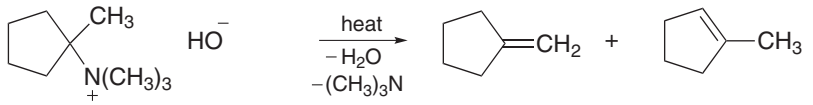
Problem 21.14

Give the structure of the major alkene formed when the hydroxide of each of the following quaternary ammonium ions is heated.



(a) (b) (c)

Sample Solution (a) Two alkenes are capable of being formed by β elimination: methylenecyclopentane and 1-methylcyclopentane.



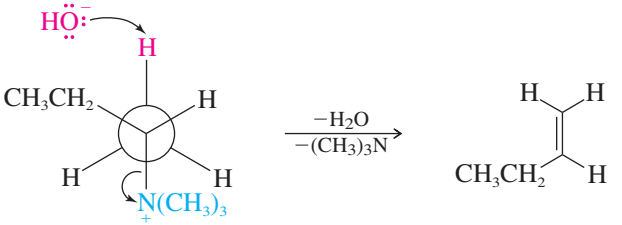
(1-Methylcyclopentyl)trimethylammonium hydroxide | Methylenecyclopentane | 1-Methylcyclopentene

Methylenecyclopentane has the less substituted double bond and is the major product. The reported isomer distribution is 91% methylenecyclopentane and 9% 1-methylcyclopentene.

We can understand the regioselectivity of the Hofmann elimination by comparing steric effects in the E2 transition states for formation of 1-butene and *trans*-2-butene from *sec*-butyltrimethylammonium hydroxide. In terms of its size, $(CH_3)_3\overset{+}{N}$— (trimethylammonio) is comparable to $(CH_3)_3C$— (*tert*-butyl). As Figure 21.5 illustrates, the E2 transition state requires an anti relationship between the proton that is removed and the trimethylammonio group. No serious van der Waals repulsions are evident in the transition state geometry for formation of 1-butene. The conformation leading to *trans*-2-butene, however, is destabilized by van der Waals strain between the trimethylammonio group and a methyl group gauche to it. Thus, the activation energy for formation of *trans*-2-butene exceeds that of 1-butene, which becomes the major product because it is formed faster.

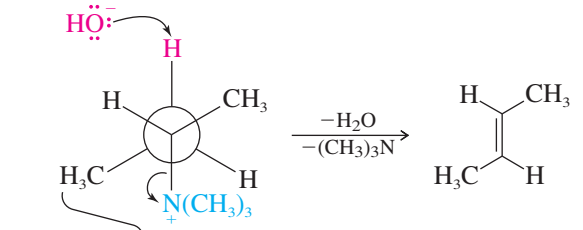
With a regioselectivity opposite to that of the Zaitsev rule, the Hofmann elimination is sometimes used in synthesis to prepare alkenes not accessible by dehydrohalogenation

(*a*) *Less crowded:* Conformation leading to 1-butene by anti elimination:



1-Butene
(major product)

(*b*) *More crowded:* Conformation leading to *trans*-2-butene by anti elimination:



These two groups
crowd each other

trans-2-Butene
(minor product)

Figure 21.5

Newman projections showing the conformations leading to (*a*) 1-butene, and (*b*) *trans*-2-butene by Hofmann elimination of *sec*-butyltrimethylammonium hydroxide. The major product is 1-butene.

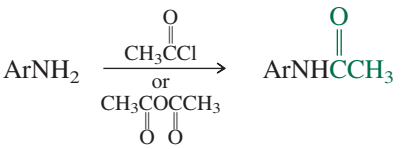
of alkyl halides. This application decreased in importance once the Wittig reaction (see Section 17.12) became established as a synthetic method.

21.14 Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution in Arylamines

Arylamines contain two functional groups, the amine group and the aromatic ring; they are *difunctional compounds.* The reactivity of the amine group is affected by its aryl substituent, and the reactivity of the ring is affected by its amine substituent. The same electron delocalization that reduces the basicity and the nucleophilicity of an arylamine nitrogen increases the electron density in the aromatic ring and makes arylamines extremely reactive toward electrophilic aromatic substitution.

The reactivity of arylamines was noted in Section 12.12, where it was pointed out that —$\ddot{N}H_2$, —$\ddot{N}HR$, and —$\ddot{N}R_2$ are ortho, para-directing and exceedingly powerful activating groups. These substituents are such powerful activators that electrophilic aromatic substitution is only rarely performed directly on arylamines.

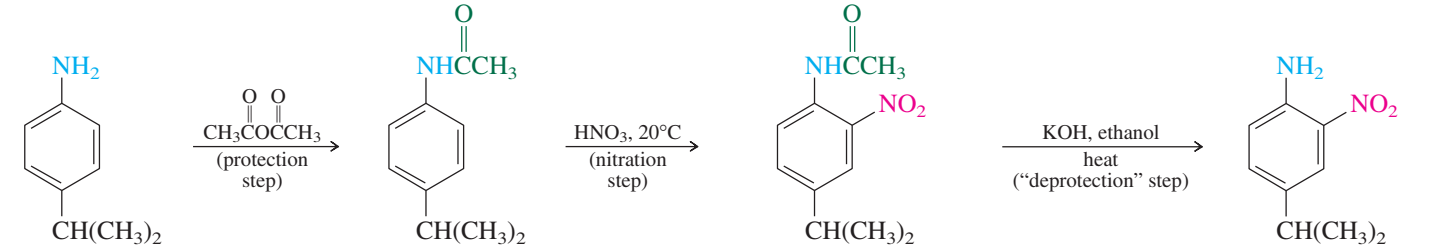
Direct nitration of aniline and other arylamines fails because oxidation leads to the formation of dark-colored "tars." As a solution to this problem it is standard practice to first protect the amino group by acylation with either acetyl chloride or acetic anhydride.



Arylamine *N*-Acetylarylamine

Amide resonance within the *N*-acetyl group competes with delocalization of the nitrogen lone pair into the ring. Protecting the amino group of an arylamine in this way moderates its reactivity and permits nitration of the ring. The acetamido group is activating toward

electrophilic aromatic substitution and is ortho, para-directing. After the *N*-acetyl-protecting group has served its purpose, it may be removed by hydrolysis, restoring the amino group:



p-Isopropylaniline | *p*-Isopropylacetanilide (98%) | 4-Isopropyl-2-nitroacetanilide (94%) | 4-Isopropyl-2-nitroaniline (100%)

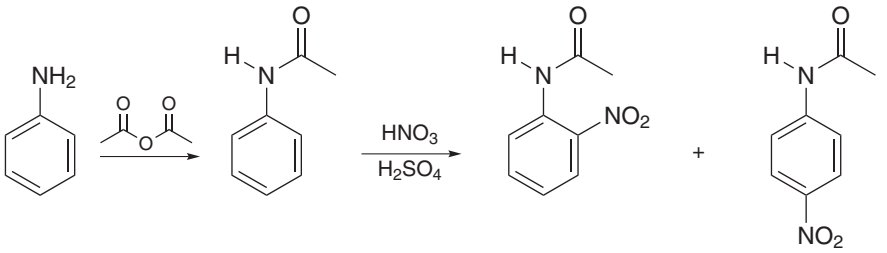
The net effect of the sequence *protect–nitrate–deprotect* is the same as if the substrate had been nitrated directly. Because direct nitration is impossible, however, the indirect route is the only practical method.

Problem 21.15

Outline syntheses of each of the following from aniline and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

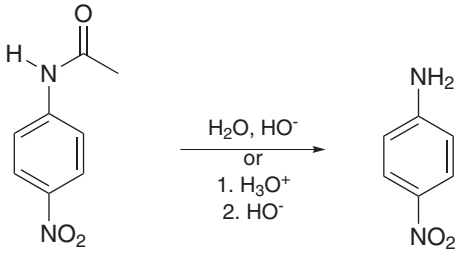
(a) *p*-Nitroaniline (b) 2,4-Dinitroaniline (c) *p*-Aminoacetanilide

Sample Solution (a) Because direct nitration of aniline is not a practical reaction, the amino group must first be protected as its *N*-acetyl derivative.



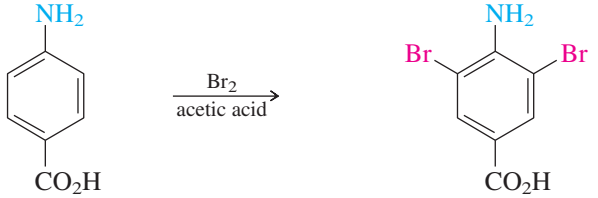
Aniline | Acetanilide | *o*-Nitroacetanilide | *p*-Nitroacetanilide

Nitration of acetanilide yields a mixture of ortho and para substitution products. The para isomer is separated, then subjected to hydrolysis to give *p*-nitroaniline.



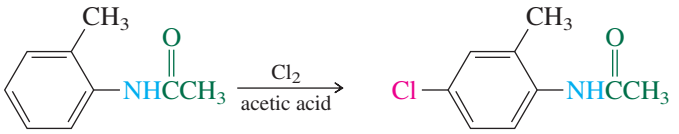
p-Nitroacetanilide | *p*-Nitroaniline

Unprotected arylamines are so reactive that it is difficult to limit halogenation to monosubstitution. Generally, halogenation proceeds rapidly to replace all the available hydrogens that are ortho or para to the amino group.



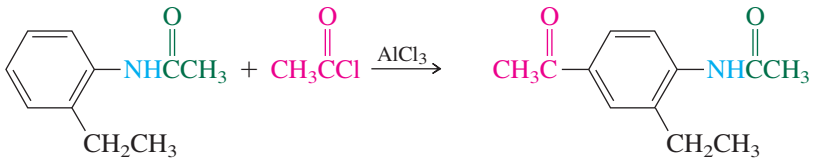
p-Aminobenzoic acid | 4-Amino-3,5-dibromobenzoic acid (82%)

Decreasing the electron-donating ability of an amino group by acylation makes monohalogenation possible.



2-Methylacetanilide 4-Chloro-2-methylacetanilide (74%)

Friedel–Crafts reactions are normally not successful when attempted on an arylamine, but can be carried out readily once the amino group is protected.

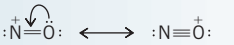


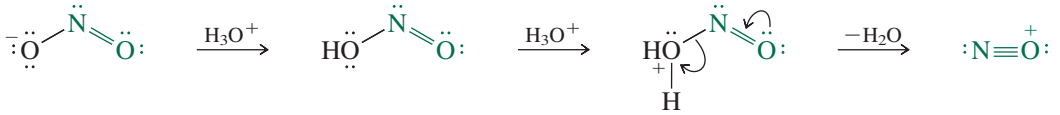
2-Ethylacetanilide 4-Acetamido-3-ethylacetophenone (57%)

21.15 Nitrosation of Alkylamines

When solutions of sodium nitrite ($NaNO_2$) are acidified, a number of species are formed that act as sources of nitrosyl cation, $:\overset{+}{N}{=}\ddot{O}:$. For simplicity, organic chemists group all these species together and speak of the chemistry of one of them, *nitrous acid,* as a generalized precursor to nitrosyl cation.

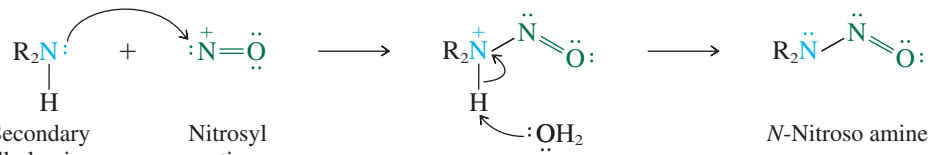
Nitrosyl cation is also called *nitrosonium* ion. It can be represented by the two resonance structures





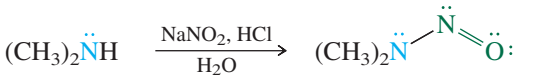
Nitrite ion (from sodium nitrite) Nitrous acid Nitrosyl cation

Nitrosation of amines is best illustrated by examining what happens when a secondary amine "reacts with nitrous acid." The amine acts as a nucleophile toward the nitrogen of nitrosyl cation. The intermediate that is formed in the first step loses a proton to give an ***N*-nitroso amine** as the isolated product.



Secondary alkylamine Nitrosyl cation *N*-Nitroso amine

For example,



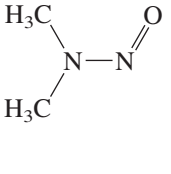
Dimethylamine *N*-Nitrosodimethylamine (88–90%)

Problem 21.16

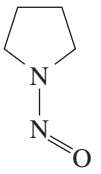
N-Nitroso amines are stabilized by electron delocalization. Write the two most stable resonance contributors of *N*-nitrosodimethylamine, $(CH_3)_2NNO$.

N-Nitroso amines are more often called **nitrosamines,** and because many of them are potent carcinogens, they have been the object of much investigation. We encounter

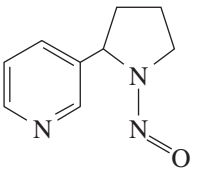
nitrosamines in the environment on a daily basis. A few of these, all of which are known carcinogens, are:



N-Nitrosodimethylamine (formed during tanning of leather; also found in beer and herbicides)



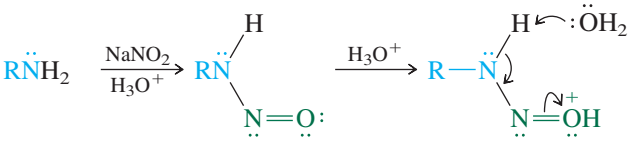
N-Nitrosopyrrolidine (formed when bacon that has been cured with sodium nitrite is fried)



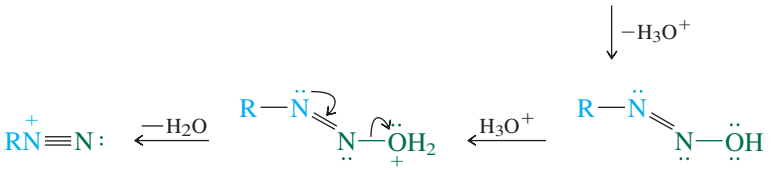
N-Nitrosonornicotine (present in tobacco smoke)

Nitrosamines are formed whenever nitrosating agents come in contact with secondary amines, and more are probably synthesized within our body than enter it by environmental contamination. Enzyme-catalyzed reduction of nitrate (NO_3^-) produces nitrite (NO_2^-), which combines with amines present in the body to form *N*-nitroso amines.

When primary amines are nitrosated, their *N*-nitroso compounds can't be isolated because they react further.



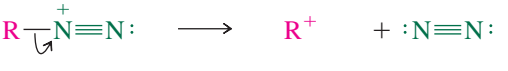
Primary alkylamine — (Not isolable) — (Not isolable)



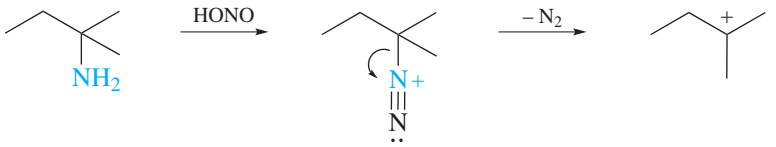
Alkyl diazonium ion — (Not isolable) — (Not isolable)

The product of this series of steps is an alkyl **diazonium ion**, and the amine is said to have been **diazotized.** Alkyl diazonium ions are not very stable, decomposing rapidly to form a carbocation and molecular nitrogen when the alkyl group is secondary or tertiary.

Recall from Section 8.11 that decreasing basicity is associated with increasing leaving-group ability. Molecular nitrogen is an exceedingly weak base and an excellent leaving group.

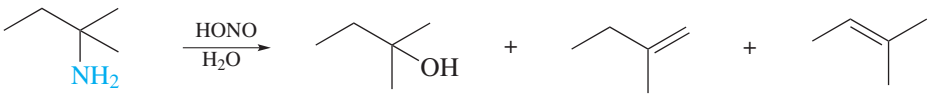


Alkyl diazonium ion — Carbocation — Nitrogen



1,1-Dimethylpropyl-amine — 1,1-Dimethylpropyl-diazonium ion — 1,1-Dimethylpropyl cation

The ultimate products arise by nucleophilic substitution (S_N1) and/or elimination (E1) of the diazonium ion via the carbocation.



1,1-Dimethylpropyl-amine — 2-Methyl-2-butanol (80%) — 2-Methyl-1-butene (3%) — 2-Methyl-2-butene (2%)

Problem 21.17

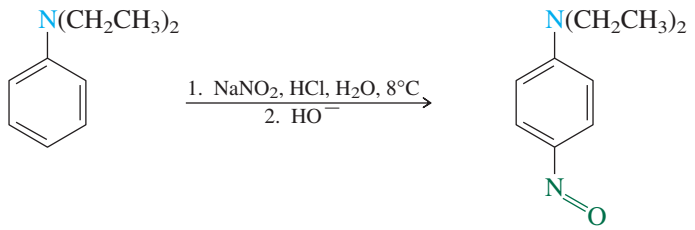
Nitrous acid deamination of 2,2-dimethylpropylamine, $(CH_3)_3CCH_2NH_2$, gives the same products as from 1,1-dimethylpropylamine. Suggest a mechanism for their formation from 2,2-dimethylpropylamine.

Aryl diazonium ions, prepared by nitrous acid diazotization of primary arylamines, are substantially more stable than alkyl diazonium ions and are of enormous synthetic value. Their use in the synthesis of substituted aromatic compounds is described in the following two sections.

The nitrosation of tertiary alkylamines is rather complicated, and no generally useful chemistry is associated with reactions of this type.

21.16 Nitrosation of Arylamines

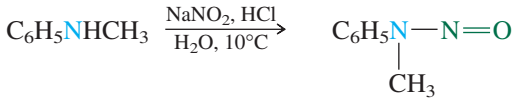
We learned in the preceding section that different reactions are observed when the various classes of alkylamines—primary, secondary, and tertiary—react with nitrosating agents. Although no useful chemistry attends the nitrosation of tertiary alkylamines, electrophilic aromatic substitution by nitrosyl cation ($:N\equiv\overset{+}{O}:$) takes place with *N,N*-dialkylarylamines.



N,N-Diethylaniline — *N,N*-Diethyl-*p*-nitrosoaniline (95%)

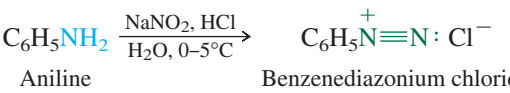
Nitrosyl cation is a relatively weak electrophile and attacks only very strongly activated aromatic rings.

N-Alkylarylamines resemble secondary alkylamines in that they form *N*-nitroso compounds on reaction with nitrous acid.

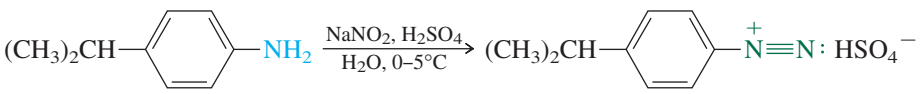


N-Methylaniline — *N*-Methyl-*N*-nitrosoaniline (87–93%)

Primary arylamines, like primary alkylamines, form diazonium ion salts on nitrosation. Whereas alkyl diazonium ions decompose under the conditions of their formation, aryl diazonium salts are considerably more stable and can be stored in aqueous solution at 0–5°C for a reasonable time. Loss of nitrogen from an aryl diazonium ion generates an unstable aryl cation and is much slower than loss of nitrogen from an alkyl diazonium ion.



Aniline — Benzenediazonium chloride

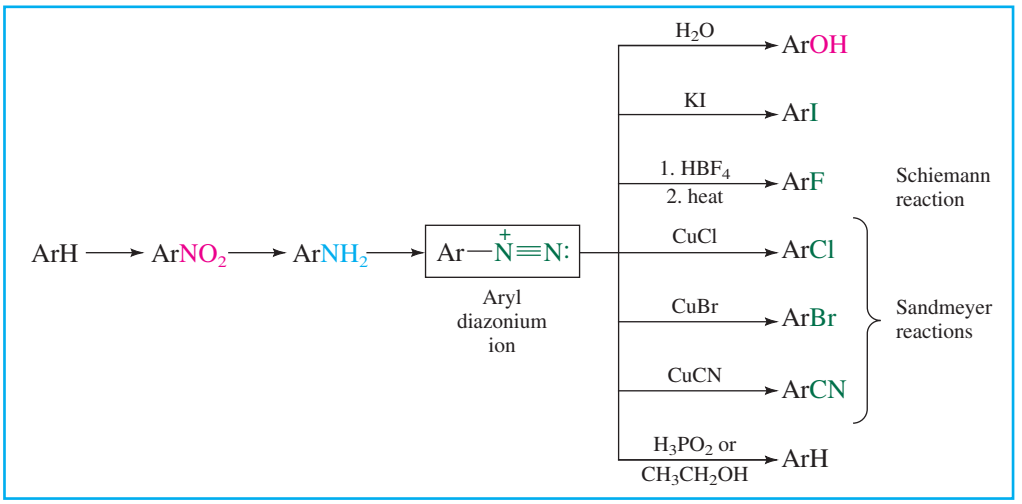


p-Isopropylaniline — *p*-Isopropylbenzenediazonium hydrogen sulfate

Aryl diazonium ions undergo a variety of reactions that make them versatile intermediates for preparing a host of ring-substituted aromatic compounds. In these reactions, summarized

Figure 21.6

The synthetic origin of aryl diazonium ions and their most useful transformations.



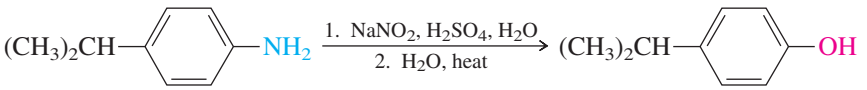
in Figure 21.6 and discussed individually in the following section, molecular nitrogen acts as a leaving group and is replaced by another atom or group. All the reactions are regiospecific; the entering group becomes bonded to the same carbon from which nitrogen departs.

21.17 Synthetic Transformations of Aryl Diazonium Salts

An important reaction of aryl diazonium ions is their conversion to *phenols* by hydrolysis:

$$\underset{\text{Aryl diazonium ion}}{ArN_2^+} + \underset{\text{Water}}{2\,H_2O} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{A phenol}}{ArOH} + \underset{}{H_3O^+} + \underset{\text{Nitrogen}}{:N{\equiv}N:}$$

This is the most general method for preparing phenols. It is easily performed; the aqueous acidic solution in which the diazonium salt is prepared is heated and gives the phenol directly. An aryl cation is probably generated, which is then captured by water acting as a nucleophile.



p-Isopropylaniline — *p*-Isopropylphenol (73%)

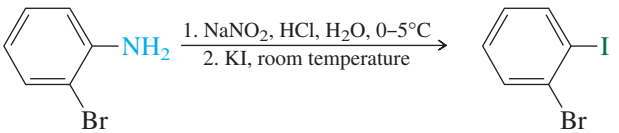
Sulfuric acid is normally used instead of hydrochloric acid in the diazotization step so as to minimize the competition with water for capture of the cationic intermediate. Hydrogen sulfate anion (HSO_4^-) is less nucleophilic than chloride.

Problem 21.18

Design a synthesis of *m*-bromophenol from benzene.

The reaction of an aryl diazonium salt with potassium iodide is the standard method for the preparation of *aryl iodides*. The diazonium salt is prepared from a primary aromatic amine in the usual way, a solution of potassium iodide is then added, and the reaction mixture is brought to room temperature or heated to accelerate the reaction.

$$\underset{\text{Aryl diazonium ion}}{Ar{-}N_2^+} + \underset{\text{Iodide ion}}{I^-} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Aryl iodide}}{ArI} + \underset{\text{Nitrogen}}{:N{\equiv}N:}$$

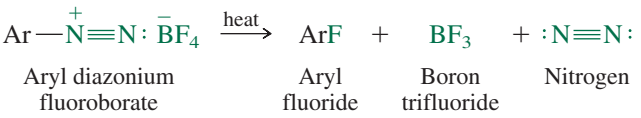


o-Bromoaniline — *o*-Bromoiodobenzene (72–83%)

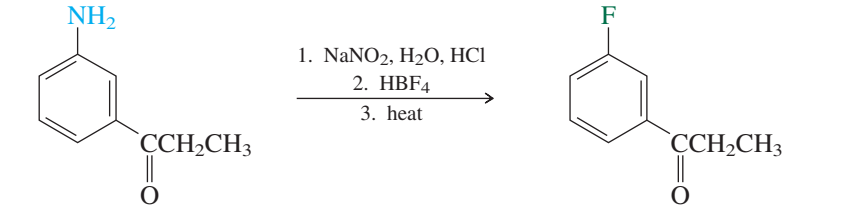
Problem 21.19

Show how you could prepare *m*-bromoiodobenzene from benzene.

Diazonium salt chemistry provides the principal synthetic method for the preparation of *aryl fluorides* through a process known as the **Schiemann reaction.** In this procedure the aryl diazonium ion is isolated as its fluoroborate salt, which then yields the desired aryl fluoride on being heated.



A standard way to form the aryl diazonium fluoroborate salt is to add fluoroboric acid (HBF_4) or a fluoroborate salt to the diazotization medium.



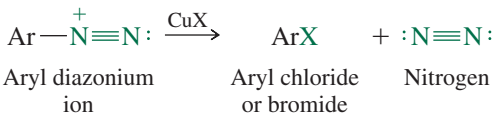
m-Aminophenyl ethyl ketone

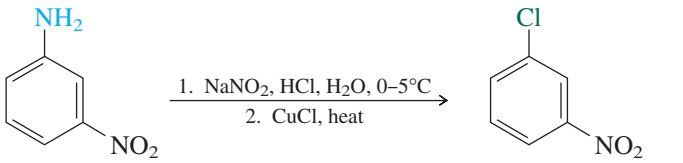
Ethyl *m*-fluorophenyl ketone (68%)

Problem 21.20

Show the proper sequence of synthetic transformations in the conversion of benzene to ethyl *m*-fluorophenyl ketone.

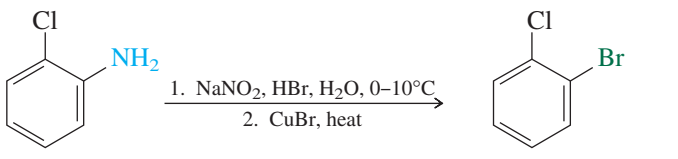
Although it is possible to prepare *aryl chlorides* and *aryl bromides* by electrophilic aromatic substitution, it is often necessary to prepare these compounds from an aromatic amine. The amine is converted to the corresponding diazonium salt and then treated with copper(I) chloride or copper(I) bromide as appropriate.





m-Nitroaniline

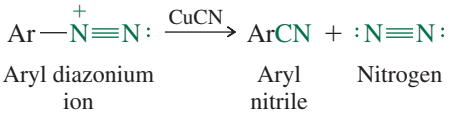
m-Chloronitrobenzene (68–71%)

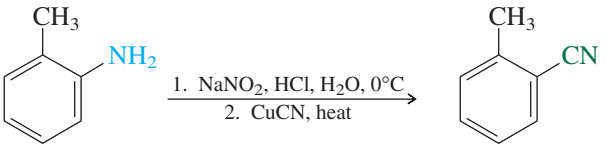


o-Chloroaniline

o-Bromochlorobenzene (89–95%)

Reactions that use copper(I) salts to replace nitrogen in diazonium salts are called **Sandmeyer reactions.** The Sandmeyer reaction using copper(I) cyanide is a good method for the preparation of aromatic *nitriles:*





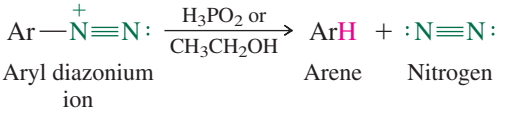
o-Toluidine

o-Methylbenzonitrile (64–70%)

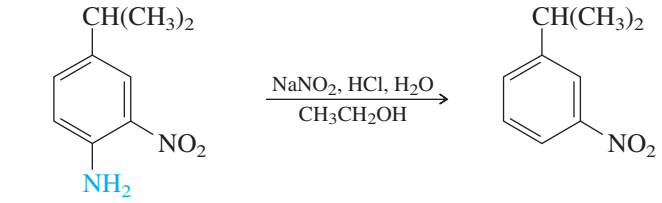
The preparation of aryl chlorides, bromides, and nitriles by the Sandmeyer reaction is mechanistically complicated and may involve arylcopper intermediates.

Because cyano groups may be hydrolyzed to carboxylic acids (see Section 19.16), the Sandmeyer preparation of aryl nitriles is a key step in the conversion of arylamines to substituted benzoic acids. In the example just cited, the *o*-methylbenzonitrile that was formed was subsequently subjected to acid-catalyzed hydrolysis to give *o*-methylbenzoic acid in 80–89% yield.

It is possible to replace amino groups on an aromatic ring by hydrogen by reducing a diazonium salt with hypophosphorous acid (H_3PO_2) or with ethanol. These reductions are free-radical reactions in which ethanol or hypophosphorous acid acts as a hydrogen atom donor:



Reactions of this type are called *reductive deaminations.*



4-Isopropyl-2-nitroaniline

m-Isopropylnitrobenzene (59%)

Sodium borohydride has also been used to reduce aryl diazonium salts in reductive deamination reactions.

Problem 21.21

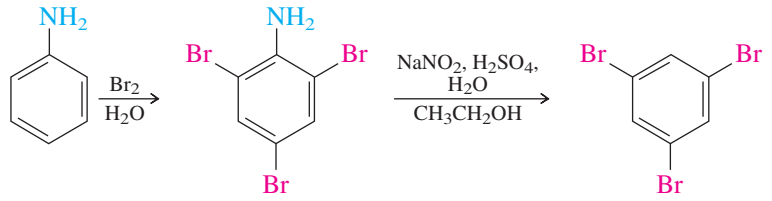
Cumene (isopropylbenzene) is a relatively inexpensive commercially available starting material. Show how you could prepare *m*-isopropylnitrobenzene from cumene.

The value of diazonium salts in synthetic organic chemistry rests on two main points. Through the use of diazonium salt chemistry:

1. Substituents that are otherwise accessible only with difficulty, such as fluoro, iodo, cyano, and hydroxyl, may be introduced onto a benzene ring.
2. Compounds that have substitution patterns not directly available by electrophilic aromatic substitution can be prepared.

The first of these two features is readily apparent and is illustrated by Problems 21.18 to 21.20. If you have not done these problems yet, you are strongly encouraged to attempt them now.

The second point is somewhat less obvious but is illustrated by the synthesis of 1,3,5-tribromobenzene. This particular substitution pattern cannot be obtained by direct bromination of benzene because bromine is an ortho, para director. Instead, advantage is taken of the powerful activating and ortho, para-directing effects of the amino group in aniline. Bromination of aniline yields 2,4,6-tribromoaniline in quantitative yield. Diazotization of the resulting 2,4,6-tribromoaniline and reduction of the diazonium salt gives the desired 1,3,5-tribromobenzene.

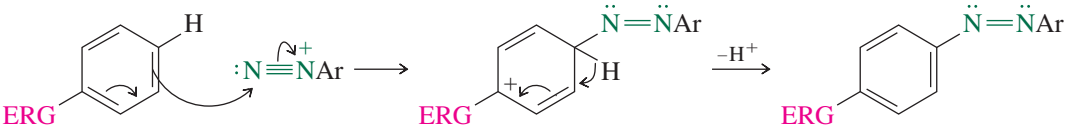


Aniline — 2,4,6-Tribromoaniline (100%) — 1,3,5-Tribromobenzene (74–77%)

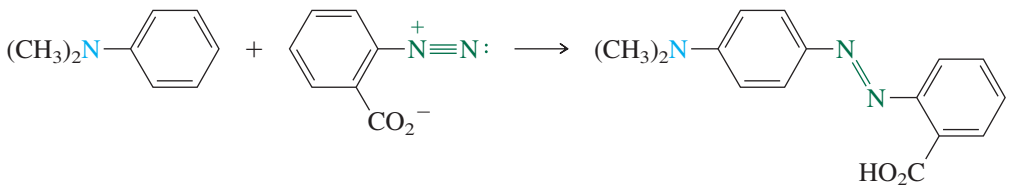
To exploit the synthetic versatility of aryl diazonium salts, be prepared to reason backward. When you see a fluorine attached to a benzene ring, for example, realize that it probably will have to be introduced by a Schiemann reaction of an arylamine; realize that the required arylamine is derived from a nitroarene, and that the nitro group is introduced by nitration. Be aware that an unsubstituted position of a benzene ring need not have always been that way. It might once have borne an amino group that was used to control the orientation of electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions before being removed by reductive deamination. The strategy of synthesis is intellectually demanding, and a considerable sharpening of your reasoning power can be gained by attacking the synthesis problems at the end of each chapter. Use retrosynthetic analysis to plan your sequence of accessible intermediates, then fill in the details on how each transformation is to be carried out.

21.18 Azo Coupling

A reaction of aryl diazonium salts that does not involve loss of nitrogen takes place when they react with phenols and arylamines. Aryl diazonium ions are relatively weak electrophiles but have sufficient reactivity to attack strongly activated aromatic rings. The reaction is known as *azo coupling;* two aryl groups are joined together by an azo (—N═N—) function.



(ERG is a powerful electron-releasing group such as —OH or —NR_2) — Aryl diazonium ion — Intermediate in electrophilic aromatic substitution — Azo compound



N,N-Dimethylaniline — Diazonium ion from *o*-aminobenzoic acid — Methyl red (62–66%)

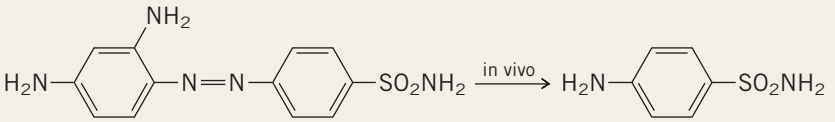
From Dyes to Sulfa Drugs

The medicine cabinet was virtually bare of antibacterial agents until *sulfa drugs* burst on the scene in the 1930s. Before sulfa drugs became available, bacterial infection might transform a small cut or puncture wound to a life-threatening event. The story of how sulfa drugs were developed is an interesting example of being right for the wrong reasons. It was known that many bacteria absorbed dyes, and staining was a standard method for making bacteria more visible under the microscope. Might there not be some dye that is both absorbed by bacteria and toxic to them? Acting on this hypothesis, scientists at the German dyestuff manufacturer I. G. Farbenindustrie undertook a program to test the thousands of compounds in their collection for their antibacterial properties.

In general, in vitro testing of drugs precedes in vivo testing. The two terms mean, respectively, "in glass" and "in life." In vitro testing of antibiotics is carried out using bacterial cultures in test tubes or Petri dishes. Drugs that are found to be active in vitro progress to the stage of in vivo testing. In vivo testing is carried out in living organisms: laboratory animals or human volunteers. The I. G. Farben scientists found that some dyes did possess antibacterial properties, both in vitro and in vivo. Others were active in vitro but were converted to inactive substances in vivo and therefore of no use as drugs. Unexpectedly, an azo dye called *Prontosil* was inactive in vitro but active in vivo.

In 1932, a member of the I. G. Farben research group, Gerhard Domagk used Prontosil to treat a young child suffering from a serious, potentially fatal staphylococcal infection. According to many accounts, the child was Domagk's own daughter; her infection was cured and her recovery was rapid and complete. Systematic testing followed and Domagk was awarded the 1939 Nobel Prize in Medicine or Physiology.

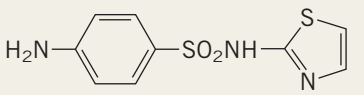
In spite of the rationale on which the testing of dyestuffs as antibiotics rested, subsequent research revealed that the antibacterial properties of Prontosil had nothing at all to do with its being a dye! In the body, Prontosil undergoes a reductive cleavage of its azo linkage to form *sulfanilamide,* which is the substance actually responsible for the observed biological activity. This is why Prontosil is active in vivo, but not in vitro.



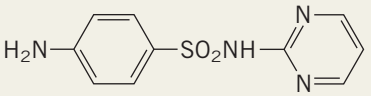
Prontosil Sulfanilamide

Bacteria require *p*-aminobenzoic acid to biosynthesize *folic acid,* a growth factor. Structurally, sulfanilamide resembles *p*-aminobenzoic acid and is mistaken for it by the bacteria. Folic acid biosynthesis is inhibited and bacterial growth is slowed sufficiently to allow the body's natural defenses to effect a cure. Because animals do not biosynthesize folic acid but obtain it in their food, sulfanilamide halts the growth of bacteria without harm to the host.

Identification of the mechanism by which Prontosil combats bacterial infections was an early triumph of *pharmacology,* a branch of science at the interface of physiology and biochemistry that studies the mechanism of drug action. By recognizing that sulfanilamide was the active agent, the task of preparing structurally modified analogs with potentially superior properties was considerably simplified. Instead of preparing Prontosil analogs, chemists synthesized sulfanilamide analogs. They did this with a vengeance; over 5000 compounds related to sulfanilamide were prepared during the period 1935–1946. Two of the most widely used sulfa drugs are *sulfathiazole* and *sulfadiazine.*



Sulfathiazole

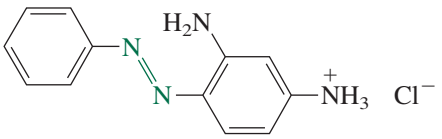


Sulfadiazine

We tend to take the efficacy of modern drugs for granted. One comparison with the not-too-distant past might put this view into better perspective. Once sulfa drugs were introduced in the United States, the number of pneumonia deaths alone decreased by an estimated 25,000 per year. The sulfa drugs are used less now than they were in the mid-twentieth century. Not only are more-effective, less-toxic antibiotics available, such as the penicillins and tetracyclines, but many bacteria that were once susceptible to sulfa drugs have become resistant.

The product of this reaction, as with many azo couplings, is highly colored. It is called *methyl red* and was a familiar acid–base indicator before the days of pH meters. It is red in solutions of pH 4 and below, yellow above pH 6.

Soon after azo coupling was discovered in the mid-nineteenth century, the reaction received major attention as a method for preparing dyes. Azo dyes first became commercially available in the 1870s and remain widely used, with more than 50% of the synthetic dye market. Chrysoidine, an azo dye for silk, cotton, and wool, first came on the market in 1876 and remains in use today.



Chrysoidine

Problem 21.22

What amine and what diazonium salt would you use to prepare chrysoidine?

Dyes are regulated in the United States by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Over the years FDA has removed a number of dyes formerly approved for use in food and cosmetics because of concerns about toxicity, cancer-causing potential, or because they are skin irritants. Naturally occurring pigments, too numerous to count (saffron, turmeric, fruit colors, for example), are exempt from the approval process.

Of the seven synthetic dyes presently approved for food use, the three shown in Figure 21.7 are azo dyes. Red dye #40, which provides the red color to cherry-flavored foods, is the most popular. Not only is red dye #40 used to color foods, but you may have noticed that almost every over-the-counter cold medicine is a red liquid or comes in a red capsule. The color is red dye #40 and is there by custom more than necessity. Yellow #5 is a lemon color; yellow #6 is orange. The highly conjugated azo linkage and combination of electron-donating and electron-attracting groups are responsible for the intense absorption of visible light by these molecules. Substituents affect the wavelengths absorbed and ultimately the color. Red #40, yellow #5, and yellow #6 all are sodium salts of sulfonic acids, which confers on them the water solubility they need to be effective food colors.

The official names of these dyes are FD&C Red No. 40, FD&C Yellow No. 5, and FD&C Yellow No. 6, where FD&C stands for "Food, Drug, and Cosmetic," which is both the name of the law under which these dyes are regulated and the purposes for which they are approved.

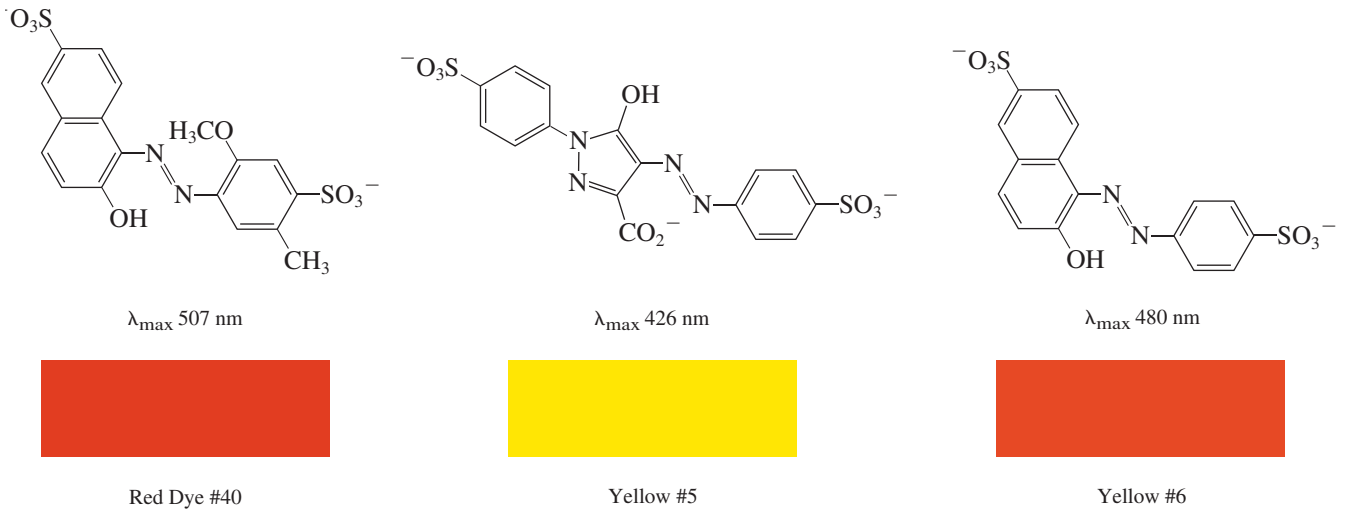


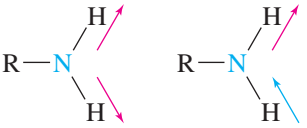
Figure 21.7

Of the seven dyes approved for coloring foods, these three are azo dyes. All are sold as their sodium salts.

21.19 Spectroscopic Analysis of Amines

Infrared: The absorptions of interest in the IR spectra of amines are those associated with N—H vibrations. Primary alkyl- and arylamines exhibit two peaks in the range 3000–3500 cm^{-1}, which are due to symmetric and antisymmetric N—H stretching modes.

Symmetric N—H stretching of a primary amine



Antisymmetric N—H stretching of a primary amine

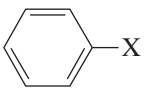
These two vibrations appear at 3290 and 3370 cm^{-1} in the IR spectrum of butylamine, shown in Figure 21.8. Secondary amines such as diethylamine, exhibit only one peak due to N—H stretching. Tertiary amines, of course, are transparent in this region because they have no N—H bonds.

^{1}H NMR: Characteristics of the nuclear magnetic resonance spectra of amines may be illustrated by comparing 4-methylbenzylamine (Figure 21.9*a*) with 4-methylbenzyl alcohol (Figure 21.9*b*). Nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen and so shields neighboring nuclei to a greater extent. The benzylic methylene group attached to nitrogen in 4-methylbenzylamine appears at higher field (δ 3.8) than the benzylic methylene of 4-methylbenzyl alcohol (δ 4.5). The N—H protons are somewhat more shielded than the O—H protons of an alcohol. In 4-methylbenzylamine the protons of the amino group correspond to the signal at δ 1.4, whereas the hydroxyl proton signal of 4-methylbenzyl alcohol is found at δ 2.5. The chemical shifts and splittings of amino group protons, like those of hydroxyl protons, are variable and are sensitive to solvent, concentration, and temperature.

^{13}C NMR: Similarly, carbons that are bonded to nitrogen are more shielded than those bonded to oxygen, as revealed by comparing the ^{13}C chemical shifts of methylamine and methanol.

δ 26.9 CH_3NH_2 Methylamine δ 48.0 CH_3OH Methanol

UV-VIS: In the absence of any other chromophore, the UV-VIS spectrum of an alkylamine is not very informative. The longest wavelength absorption involves promoting one of the unshared electrons of nitrogen to an antibonding σ* orbital (n → σ*) with a λ_{max} in the relatively inaccessible region near 200 nm. In arylamines the interaction of the nitrogen lone pair with the π-electron system of the ring shifts the ring's absorptions to longer wavelength. Tying up the lone pair by protonation causes the UV-VIS spectrum of anilinium ion to resemble benzene.



	X	λ_{max} (*nm*)
Benzene	H	204, 256
Aniline	NH_2	230, 280
Anilinium ion	NH_3^+	203, 254

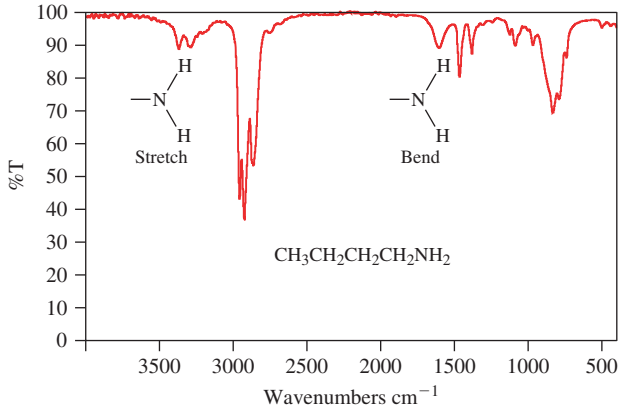


Figure 21.8

The infrared spectrum of butylamine has peaks for N—H stretching at 3290 and 3370 cm^{-1}. One corresponds to a symmetrical stretch of the two N—H bonds, the other to an antisymmetrical stretch. The peak at 1600 cm^{-1} is for NH_2 bending (scissoring).

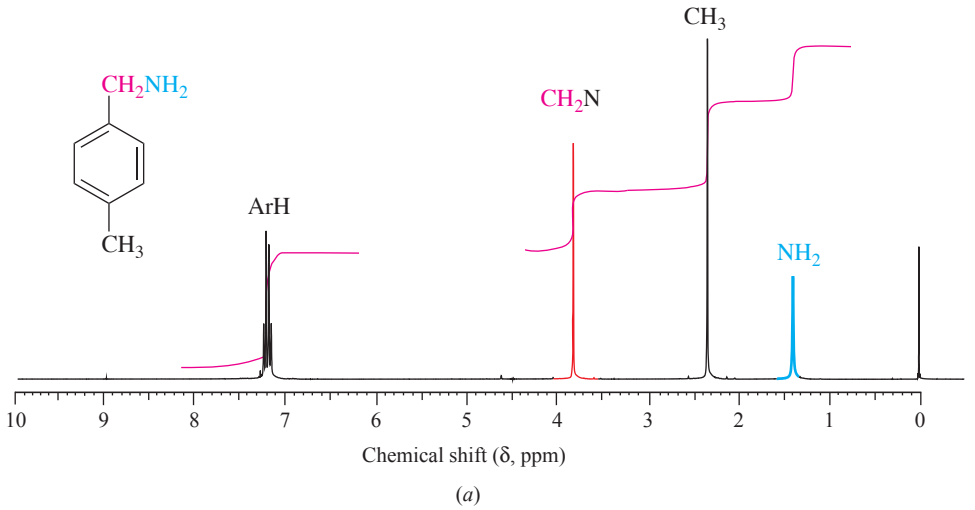


Figure 21.9

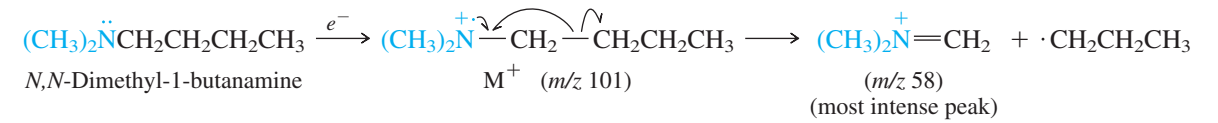
The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectra of (*a*) 4-methylbenzylamine and (*b*) 4-methylbenzyl alcohol. The singlet corresponding to CH_2N in (*a*) is more shielded than that of CH_2O in (*b*).

Mass Spectrometry: A number of features make amines easily identifiable by mass spectrometry.

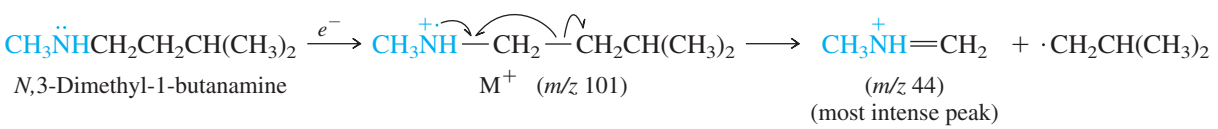
First, the peak for the molecular ion M^+ for all compounds that contain only carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen has an *m/z* value that is an even number. The presence of a nitrogen atom in the molecule requires that the *m/z* value for the molecular ion be odd. An odd number of nitrogens corresponds to an odd value of the molecular weight; an even number of nitrogens corresponds to an even molecular weight.

Recall the "nitrogen rule" from Section 13.25.

Second, nitrogen is exceptionally good at stabilizing adjacent carbocation sites. The fragmentation pattern seen in the mass spectra of amines is dominated by cleavage of groups from the carbon atom attached to the nitrogen, as the data for the following pair of constitutionally isomeric amines illustrate:



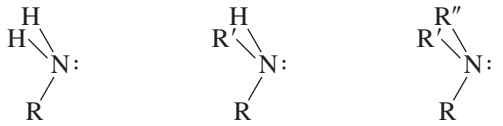
N,N-Dimethyl-1-butanamine — M^+ (*m/z* 101) — (*m/z* 58) (most intense peak)



N,3-Dimethyl-1-butanamine — M^+ (*m/z* 101) — (*m/z* 44) (most intense peak)

21.20 SUMMARY

Section 21.1 Alkylamines are compounds of the type shown, where R, R′, and R″ are alkyl groups. One or more of these groups is an aryl group in arylamines.



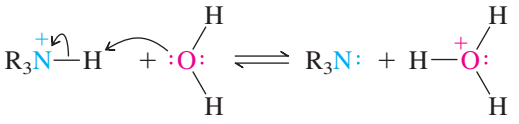
Primary amine Secondary amine Tertiary amine

Alkylamines are named in two ways. One method adds the ending *-amine* to the name of the alkyl group. The other applies the principles of substitutive nomenclature by replacing the *-e* ending of an alkane name by *-amine* and uses appropriate locants to identify the position of the amino group. Arylamines are named as derivatives of aniline.

Section 21.2 Nitrogen's unshared electron pair is of major importance in understanding the structure and properties of amines. Alkylamines have a pyramidal arrangement of bonds to nitrogen, with an unshared electron pair in an sp^3-hybridized orbital. The geometry at nitrogen in arylamines is somewhat flatter, and the unshared electron pair is delocalized into the π system of the ring. Delocalization binds the electron pair more strongly in arylamines than in alkylamines. Arylamines are less basic and less nucleophilic than alkylamines.

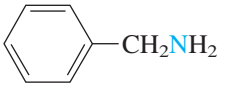
Section 21.3 Amines are less polar than alcohols. Hydrogen bonding in amines is weaker than in alcohols because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen. Amines have lower boiling points than alcohols, but higher boiling points than alkanes. Primary amines have higher boiling points than isomeric secondary amines; tertiary amines, which cannot form intermolecular hydrogen bonds, have the lowest boiling points. Amines resemble alcohols in their solubility in water.

Section 21.4 The basicity of amines is conveniently expressed in terms of the pK_a of their conjugate acids.

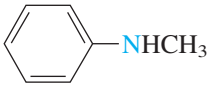


Conjugate acid of amine Amine

The stronger base is associated with the weaker conjugate acid. The greater the pK_a of the conjugate acid, the stronger the base. The pK_a's of the conjugate acids of alkylamines lie in the 9–11 range. Arylamines are much weaker bases than alkylamines. The pK_a's of the conjugate acids of arylamines are usually 3–5. Strong electron-withdrawing groups can weaken the basicity of arylamines even more.



Benzylamine
(alkylamine: pK_a of conjugate acid = 9.3)



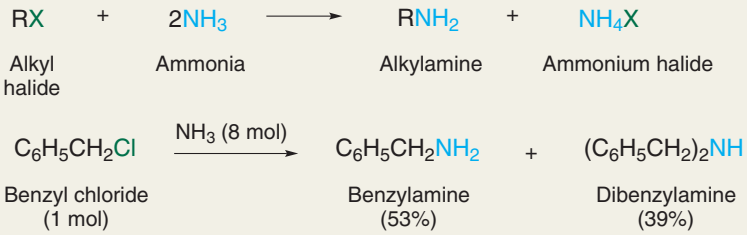
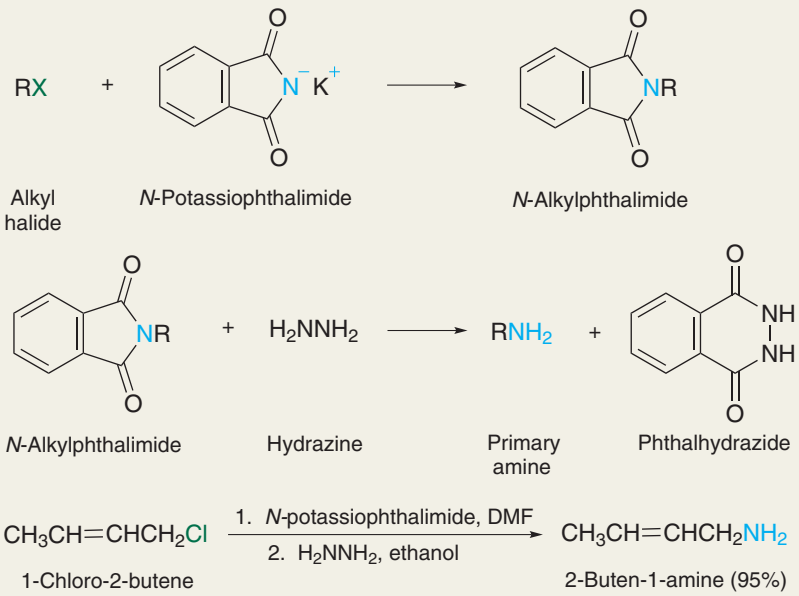
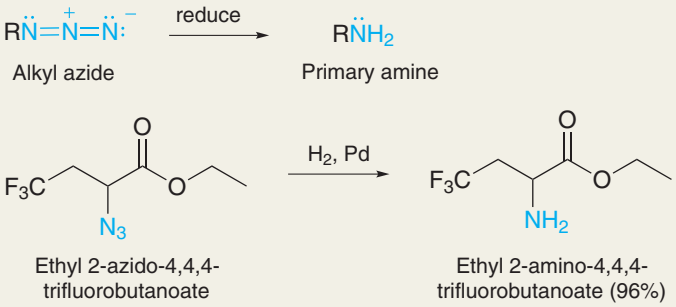
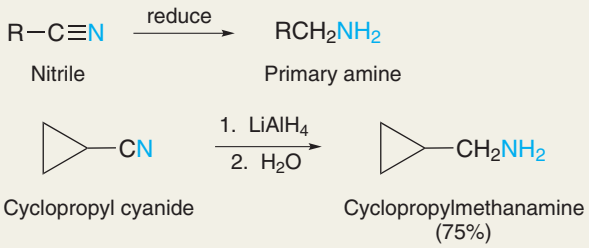
N-Methylaniline
(arylamine: pK_a of conjugate acid = 4.8)

Section 21.5 Quaternary ammonium salts, compounds of the type $R_4N^+ X^-$, find application as **phase-transfer catalysts.** A small amount of a quaternary ammonium salt promotes the transfer of an anion from aqueous solution, where it is highly solvated, to an organic solvent, where it is much less solvated and much more reactive.

Sections 21.6–21.10 Methods for the preparation of amines are summarized in Table 21.5.

Sections 21.11–21.18 The reactions of amines are summarized in Tables 21.6 and 21.7.

TABLE 21.5 Preparation of Amines

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Alkylation methods	
Alkylation of ammonia (Section 21.7) Ammonia can act as a nucleophile toward primary and some secondary alkyl halides to give primary alkylamines. Yields tend to be modest because the primary amine is itself a nucleophile and undergoes alkylation. Alkylation of ammonia can lead to a mixture containing a primary amine, a secondary amine, a tertiary amine, and a quaternary ammonium salt.	
Alkylation of phthalimide. The Gabriel synthesis (Section 21.8) The potassium salt of phthalimide reacts with alkyl halides to give *N*-alkylphthalimide derivatives. Hydrolysis or hydrazinolysis of this derivative yields a primary alkylamine.	
Reduction methods	
Reduction of alkyl azides (Section 21.9) Alkyl azides, prepared by nucleophilic substitution by azide ion in primary or secondary alkyl halides, are reduced to primary alkylamines by lithium aluminum hydride or by catalytic hydrogenation.	
Reduction of nitriles (Section 21.9) Nitriles are reduced to primary amines by lithium aluminum hydride or by catalytic hydrogenation.	

Continued

TABLE 21.5 Preparation of Amines (*Continued*)

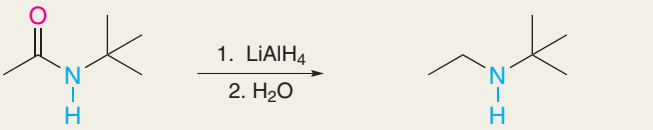
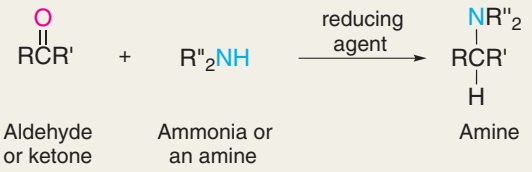
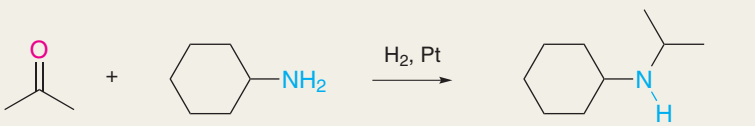
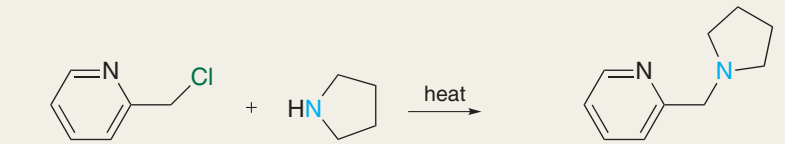
Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Reduction of aryl nitro compounds (Section 21.9) The standard method for the preparation of an arylamine is by nitration of an aromatic ring, followed by reduction of the nitro group. Typical reducing agents include iron or tin in hydrochloric acid or catalytic hydrogenation.	$ArNO_2 \xrightarrow{\text{reduce}} ArNH_2$ Nitroarene → Arylamine $C_6H_5NO_2 \xrightarrow[2.\ HO^-]{1.\ Fe,\ HCl} C_6H_5NH_2$ Nitrobenzene → Aniline (97%)
Reduction of amides (Section 21.9) Lithium aluminum hydride reduces the carbonyl group of an amide to a methylene group. Primary, secondary, or tertiary amines may be prepared by proper choice of the starting amide. R and R′ may be either alkyl or aryl.	$RCNR'_2 \xrightarrow{\text{reduce}} RCH_2NR'_2$ Amide → Amine  *N-tert*-Butylacetamide → *N-tert*-Butyl-*N*-ethylamine (60%)
Reductive amination (Section 21.10) Reaction of ammonia or an amine with an aldehyde or a ketone in the presence of a reducing agent is an effective method for the preparation of primary, secondary, or tertiary amines. The reducing agent may be either hydrogen in the presence of a metal catalyst or sodium cyanoborohydride. R, R′, and R″ may be either alkyl or aryl.	 Aldehyde or ketone + Ammonia or an amine → Amine  Acetone + Cyclohexylamine → *N*-Isopropylcyclohexylamine (79%)

TABLE 21.6 Reactions of Amines Discussed in This Chapter

Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Alkylation (Section 21.12) Amines act as nucleophiles toward alkyl halides. Primary amines yield secondary amines, secondary amines yield tertiary amines, and tertiary amines yield quaternary ammonium salts.	$R\ddot{N}H_2 \xrightarrow{R'CH_2X} R\ddot{N}HCH_2R' \xrightarrow{R'CH_2X} R\ddot{N}(CH_2R')_2 \xrightarrow{R'CH_2X} R\overset{+}{N}(CH_2R')_3\ X^-$ Primary amine → Secondary amine → Tertiary amine → Quaternary ammonium salt  2-Chloromethylpyridine + Pyrrolidine → 2-(Pyrrolidinylmethyl)pyridine (93%)

Continued

TABLE 21.6 Reactions of Amines Discussed in This Chapter (*Continued*)

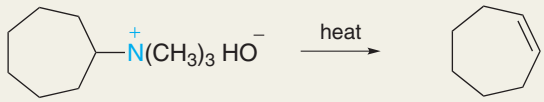
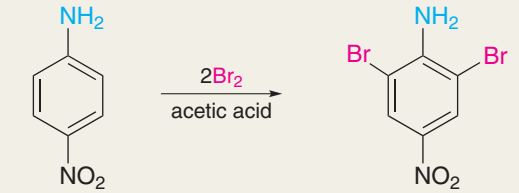
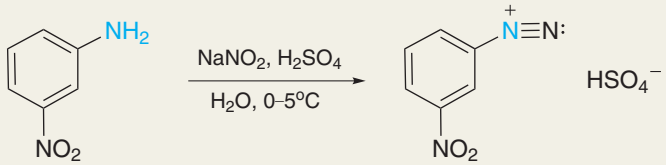
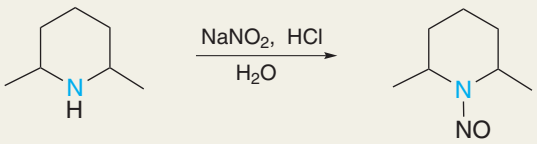
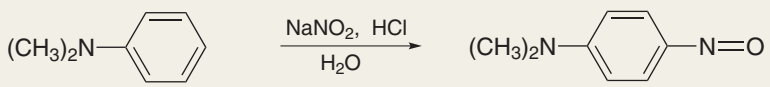
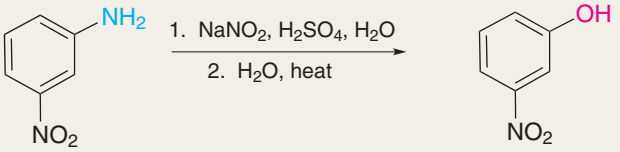
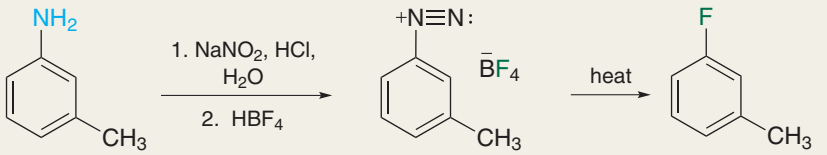
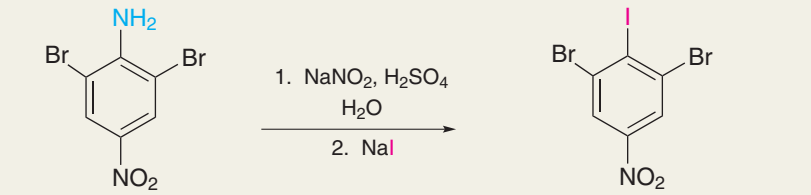
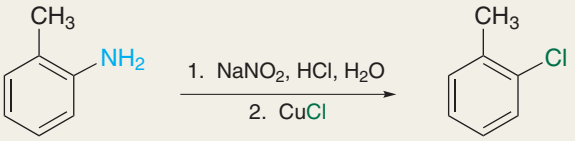
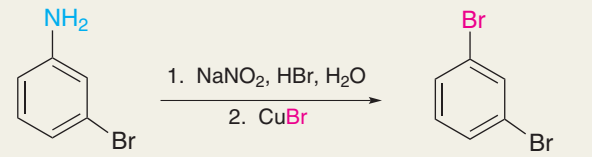
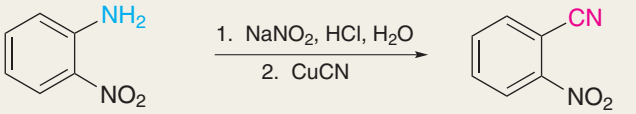
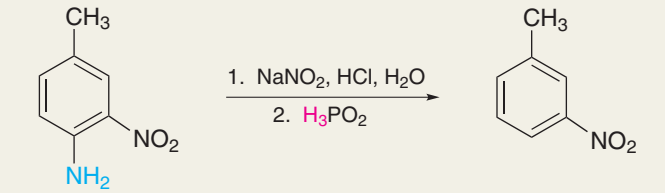
Reaction (section) and comments	General equation and specific example
Hofmann elimination (Section 21.13) Quaternary ammonium hydroxides undergo elimination on being heated. It is an anti elimination of the E2 type. The regioselectivity of the Hofmann elimination is opposite to that of the Zaitsev rule and leads to the less highly substituted alkene.	RCH_2CHR' ($^+N(CH_3)_3$) HO^- $\xrightarrow{\text{heat}}$ $RCH{=}CHR'$ + $:N(CH_3)_3$ + H_2O Alkyltrimethylammonium hydroxide — Alkene — Trimethylamine — Water  Cycloheptyltrimethylammonium hydroxide — Cycloheptene (87%)
Electrophilic aromatic substitution (Section 21.14) Arylamines are very reactive toward electrophilic aromatic substitution. It is customary to protect arylamines as their *N*-acyl derivatives before carrying out ring nitration, chlorination, bromination, sulfonation, or Friedel–Crafts reactions.	ArH + E^+ $\longrightarrow$ ArE + H^+ Arylamine — Electrophile — Product of electrophilic aromatic substitution — Proton  *p*-Nitroaniline — 2,6-Dibromo-4-nitroaniline (95%)
Nitrosation (Sections 21.15–16) Nitrosation of amines occurs when sodium nitrite is added to a solution containing an amine and an acid. *Primary amines* yield alkyl diazonium salts. Alkyl diazonium salts are very unstable and yield carbocation-derived products. Aryl diazonium salts are exceedingly useful synthetic intermediates. Their reactions are described in Table 21.7.	RNH_2 $\xrightarrow[H_3O^+]{NaNO_2}$ $R\overset{+}{N}{\equiv}N:$ Primary amine — Diazonium ion  *m*-Nitroaniline — *m*-Nitrobenzenediazonium hydrogen sulfate
Secondary alkylamines and *secondary arylamines* yield *N*-nitroso amines.	R_2NH $\xrightarrow[H_3O^+]{NaNO_2}$ $R_2N{-}N{=}O$ Secondary amine — *N*-Nitroso amine  2,6-Dimethylpiperidine — 2,6-Dimethyl-*N*-nitrosopiperidine (72%)
Tertiary alkylamines illustrate no useful chemistry on nitrosation. *Tertiary arylamines* undergo nitrosation of the ring by electrophilic aromatic substitution.	 *N*,*N*-Dimethylaniline — *N*,*N*-Dimethyl-4-nitrosoaniline (80–89%)

TABLE 21.7 Synthetically Useful Transformations Involving Aryl Diazonium Ions (Section 21.17)

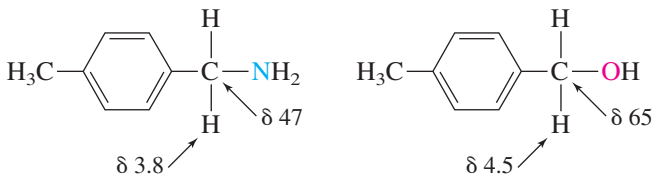
Reaction and comments	General equation and specific example
Preparation of phenols Heating its aqueous acidic solution converts a diazonium salt to a phenol. This is the most general method for the synthesis of phenols.	$ArNH_2$ (Primary arylamine) $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O,\ heat]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_2SO_4,\ H_2O}$ $ArOH$ (Phenol)  *m*-Nitroaniline → *m*-Nitrophenol (81–86%)
Preparation of aryl fluorides Addition of fluoroboric acid to a solution of a diazonium salt causes the precipitation of an aryl diazonium fluoroborate. When the dry aryl diazonium fluoroborate is heated, an aryl fluoride results. This is the Schiemann reaction; it is the most general method for the preparation of aryl fluorides.	$ArNH_2$ (Primary arylamine) $\xrightarrow[2.\ HBF_4]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_3O^+}$ $ArN{\equiv}N:\ \bar{B}F_4$ (Aryldiazonium fluoroborate) $\xrightarrow{heat}$ ArF (Aryl fluoride)  *m*-Toluidine → *m*-Methylbenzenediazonium fluoroborate (76–84%) → *m*-Fluorotoluene (89%)
Preparation of aryl iodides Aryl diazonium salts react with sodium or potassium iodide to form aryl iodides. This is the most general method for the synthesis of aryl iodides.	$ArNH_2$ (Primary arylamine) $\xrightarrow[2.\ NaI\ or\ KI]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_3O^+}$ ArI (Aryl iodide)  2,6-Dibromo-4-nitroaniline → 1,3-Dibromo-2-iodo-5-nitrobenzene (84–88%)
Preparation of aryl chlorides In the Sandmeyer reaction, a solution containing an aryl diazonium salt is treated with copper(I) chloride to give an aryl chloride.	$ArNH_2$ (Primary arylamine) $\xrightarrow[2.\ CuCl]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ HCl,\ H_2O}$ $ArCl$ (Aryl chloride)  *o*-Toluidine → *o*-Chlorotoluene (74–79%)

Continued

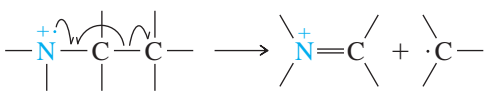
TABLE 21.7 Synthetically Useful Transformations Involving Aryl Diazonium Ions (Section 21.17) (*Continued*)

Reaction and comments	General equation and specific example
Preparation of aryl bromides The Sandmeyer reaction using copper(I) bromide converts primary arylamines to aryl bromides.	$ArNH_2 \xrightarrow[2.\ CuBr]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ HBr,\ H_2O} ArBr$ Primary arylamine → Aryl bromide  *m*-Bromoaniline → *m*-Dibromobenzene (80–87%)
Preparation of aryl nitriles Copper(I) cyanide converts aryl diazonium salts to aryl nitriles.	$ArNH_2 \xrightarrow[2.\ CuCN]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_2O} ArCN$ Primary arylamine → Aryl nitrile  *m*-Nitroaniline → *o*-Nitrobenzonitrile (87%)
Reductive deamination of primary arylamines The amino group of an arylamine can be replaced by hydrogen by treatment of its diazonium salt with ethanol or with hypophosphorous acid.	$ArNH_2 \xrightarrow[2.\ CH_3CH_2OH \text{ or } H_3PO_2]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_3O^+} ArH$ Primary arylamine → Arene  4-Methyl-2-nitroaniline → *m*-Nitrotoluene (80%)

Section 21.19 The N—H stretching frequency of primary and secondary amines appears in the infrared in the 3000–3500 cm^{-1} region. In the NMR spectra of amines, protons and carbons of the type H—C—N are more shielded than H—C—O.



Amines have odd-numbered molecular weights, which helps identify them by mass spectrometry. Fragmentation tends to be controlled by the formation of a nitrogen-stabilized cation.



PROBLEMS

21.23 Write structural formulas for all the amines of molecular formula $C_4H_{11}N$. Give an acceptable name for each one, and classify it as a primary, secondary, or tertiary amine.

21.24 Provide a structural formula for each of the following compounds:

(a) 2-Ethyl-1-butanamine
(b) *N*-Ethyl-1-butanamine
(c) Dibenzylamine
(d) Tribenzylamine
(e) Tetraethylammonium hydroxide
(f) *N*-Allylcyclohexylamine
(g) *N*-Allylpiperidine
(h) Benzyl 2-aminopropanoate
(i) 4-(*N,N*-Dimethylamino)cyclohexanone
(j) 2,2-Dimethyl-1,3-propanediamine

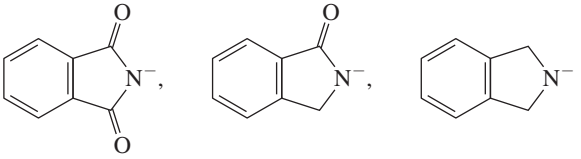
21.25 Many naturally occurring nitrogen compounds and many nitrogen-containing drugs are better known by common names than by their systematic names. A few of these follow. Write a structural formula for each one.

(a) *trans*-2-Phenylcyclopropylamine, better known as *tranylcypromine:* an antidepressant drug
(b) *N*-Benzyl-*N*-methyl-2-propynylamine, better known as *pargyline:* a drug used to treat high blood pressure
(c) 1-Phenyl-2-propanamine, better known as *amphetamine:* a stimulant
(d) 1-(*m*-Hydroxyphenyl)-2-(methylamino)ethanol: better known as *phenylephrine:* a nasal decongestant

21.26 (a) Give the structures and provide an acceptable name for all the isomers of molecular formula C_7H_9N that contain a benzene ring.

(b) Which one of these isomers is the strongest base?
(c) Which, if any, of these isomers yield an *N*-nitroso amine on treatment with sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid?
(d) Which, if any, of these isomers undergo nitrosation of their benzene ring on treatment with sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid?

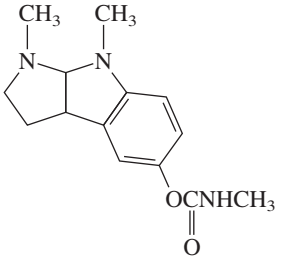
21.27 Arrange the following compounds or anions in each group in order of decreasing basicity:

(a) H_3C^-, H_2N^-, HO^-, F^-
(b) H_2O, NH_3, HO^-, H_2N^-
(c) HO^-, H_2N^-, $:\bar{C}\equiv N:$, NO_3^-
(d) 

21.28 Arrange the members of each group in order of decreasing basicity:

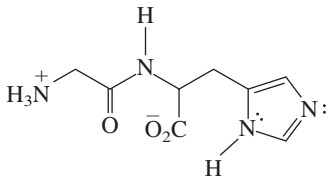
(a) Ammonia, aniline, methylamine
(b) Acetanilide, aniline, *N*-methylaniline
(c) 2,4-Dichloroaniline, 2,4-dimethylaniline, 2,4-dinitroaniline
(d) 3,4-Dichloroaniline, 4-chloro-2-nitroaniline, 4-chloro-3-nitroaniline
(e) Dimethylamine, diphenylamine, *N*-methylaniline

21.29 *Physostigmine,* an alkaloid obtained from a West African plant (*Physotigma venenosum*), is used in the treatment of glaucoma. Treatment of physostigmine with methyl iodide gives a quaternary ammonium salt. What is the structure of this salt?



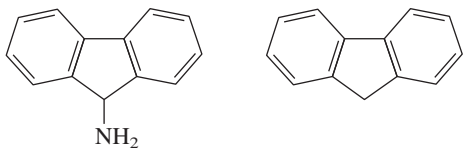
Physostigmine

21.30 Carnosine, found in muscle and brain tissue, acts as a buffer to neutralize small amounts of acid. The pK_a of the conjugate acid of carnosine is close to 7.0. What is its structure?



Carnosine

21.31 9-Aminofluorene has applications in the structural analysis of proteins and carbohydrates. Write a stepwise procedure with equations to show how to separate a mixture of 9-aminofluorene and fluorene in diethyl ether solution.



9-Aminofluorene Fluorene

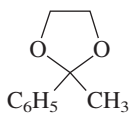
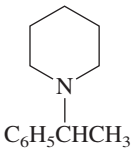
21.32 Both alkyl- and arylamines have a low barrier for pyramidal inversion at nitrogen, which prevents the separation of chiral amines into their enantiomers. The barrier for inversion at nitrogen in alkylamines is approximately 25 kJ/mol (6 kcal/mol), whereas for arylamines it is much lower, on the order of 6.3 kJ/mol (1.5 kcal/mol). Can you suggest a reason for the difference?

21.33 Describe procedures for preparing each of the following compounds, using ethanol as the source of all their carbon atoms. Once you prepare a compound, you need not repeat its synthesis in a subsequent part of this problem.

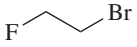
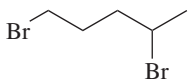
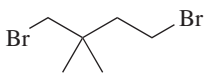
(a) Ethylamine
(b) *N*-Ethylacetamide
(c) Diethylamine
(d) *N,N*-Diethylacetamide
(e) Triethylamine
(f) Tetraethylammonium bromide

21.34 Show by writing the appropriate sequence of equations how you could carry out each of the following transformations:

(a) 1-Butanol to 1-pentanamine
(b) *tert*-Butyl chloride to 2,2-dimethyl-1-propanamine
(c) Cyclohexanol to *N*-methylcyclohexylamine
(d) Isopropyl alcohol to 1-amino-2-methyl-2-propanol
(e) Isopropyl alcohol to 1-amino-2-propanol
(f) Isopropyl alcohol to 1-(*N,N*-dimethylamino)-2-propanol

(g)  to 

21.35 Each of the following dihaloalkanes gives an *N*-(haloalkyl)phthalimide on reaction with one equivalent of the potassium salt of phthalimide. Write the structure of the phthalimide derivative formed in each case and explain the basis for your answer.

(a)  (b)  (c) 

21.36 Give the structure of the expected product formed when benzylamine reacts with each of the following reagents:

(a) Hydrogen bromide
(b) Sulfuric acid
(c) Acetic acid
(d) Acetyl chloride
(e) Acetic anhydride
(f) Acetone
(g) Acetone and hydrogen (nickel catalyst)
(h) Ethylene oxide
(i) 1,2-Epoxypropane
(j) Excess methyl iodide
(k) Sodium nitrite in dilute hydrochloric acid

21.37 Write the structure of the product formed on reaction of aniline with each of the following:

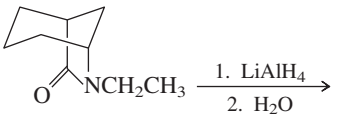
(a) Hydrogen bromide
(b) Excess methyl iodide
(c) Acetaldehyde
(d) Acetaldehyde and hydrogen (nickel catalyst)
(e) Acetic anhydride
(f) Benzoyl chloride
(g) Sodium nitrite, aqueous sulfuric acid, 0–5°C

21.38 Write the structure of the product formed on reaction of acetanilide with each of the following:

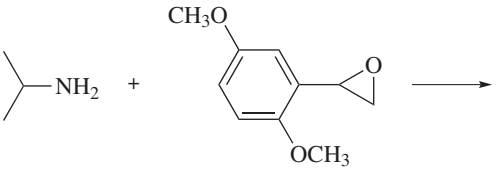
(a) Lithium aluminum hydride, followed by water
(b) Nitric acid and sulfuric acid
(c) Sulfur trioxide and sulfuric acid
(d) Bromine in acetic acid
(e) *tert*-Butyl chloride, aluminum chloride
(f) Acetyl chloride, aluminum chloride
(g) 6 M hydrochloric acid, reflux
(h) Aqueous sodium hydroxide, reflux

21.39 Identify the principal organic products of each of the following reactions:

(a) Cyclohexanone + cyclohexylamine $\xrightarrow{H_2, Ni}$

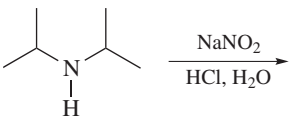
(b) 

(c) $C_6H_5CH_2CH_2CH_2OH \xrightarrow[2.\ (CH_3)_2NH\ (excess)]{1.\ p\text{-toluenesulfonyl chloride, pyridine}}$

(d) 

(e) $(C_6H_5CH_2)_2NH + CH_3CCH_2Cl \xrightarrow[THF]{triethylamine}$

(f)

(g) 

21.40 Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature and proceeds in good yield. Identify the principal organic product of each reaction.

(a) 1,2-Diethyl-4-nitrobenzene $\xrightarrow[\text{ethanol}]{H_2,\ Pt}$

(b) 1,3-Dimethyl-2-nitrobenzene $\xrightarrow[2.\ HO^-]{1.\ SnCl_2,\ HCl}$

(c) Product of part (b) + $ClCH_2\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}Cl \longrightarrow$

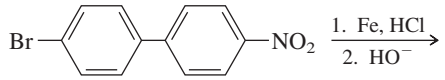
(d) Product of part (c) + $(CH_3CH_2)_2NH \longrightarrow$

(e) Product of part (d) + $HCl \longrightarrow$

(f) $C_6H_5NH\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}CH_2CH_2CH_3 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ LiAlH_4}$

(g) Aniline + heptanal $\xrightarrow{H_2,\ Ni}$

(h) Acetanilide + $ClCH_2\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}Cl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3}$

(i)  $\xrightarrow[2.\ HO^-]{1.\ Fe,\ HCl}$

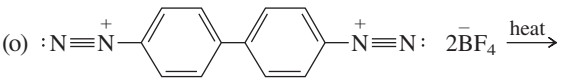
(j) Product of part (i) $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O,\ heat]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_2SO_4,\ H_2O}$

(k) 2,6-Dinitroaniline $\xrightarrow[2.\ CuCl]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_2SO_4,\ H_2O}$

(l) *m*-Bromoaniline $\xrightarrow[2.\ CuBr]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ HBr,\ H_2O}$

(m) *o*-Nitroaniline $\xrightarrow[2.\ CuCN]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ HCl,\ H_2O}$

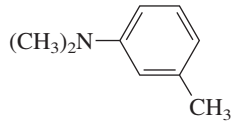
(n) 2,6-Diiodo-4-nitroaniline $\xrightarrow[2.\ KI]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_2SO_4,\ H_2O}$

(o)  $\xrightarrow{heat}$

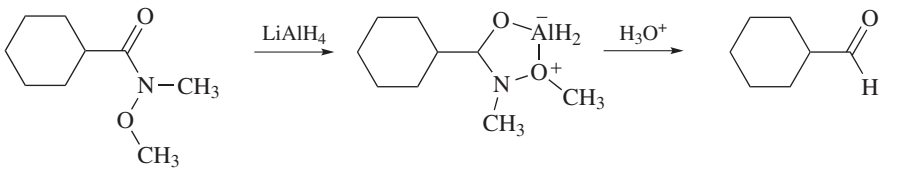
(p) 2,4,6-Trinitroaniline $\xrightarrow[H_2O,\ H_3PO_2]{NaNO_2,\ H_2SO_4}$

(q) 2-Amino-5-iodobenzoic acid $\xrightarrow[2.\ CH_3CH_2OH]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ HCl,\ H_2O}$

(r) Aniline $\xrightarrow[2.\ 2,3,6\text{-trimethylphenol}]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ H_2SO_4,\ H_2O}$

(s)  $\xrightarrow[2.\ HO^-]{1.\ NaNO_2,\ HCl,\ H_2O}$

21.41 Most amides are reduced to amines with lithium aluminum hydride (Section 21.9); however, *N*-methoxy-*N*-methylamides are an exception. The initial reduction product is a cyclic intermediate that is hydrolyzed to an aldehyde on workup.



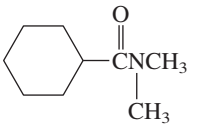
N-Methoxy-*N*-methylcyclohexanecarboxamide — Cyclic intermediate — Cyclohexanecarbaldehyde

N-methoxy-*N*-methylamides are readily synthesized from carboxylic acids, by reaction of the acyl chloride with *N,O*-dimethylhydroxylamine (CH_3ONHCH_3).

(a) How many equivalents of $LiAlH_4$ are required for the reduction of the amide?

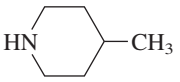
(b) Write a series of equations to show the preparation of cyclohexanecarbaldehyde from the appropriate carboxylic acid and any other necessary reagents.

(c) Would you expect the amide shown here to undergo reduction with lithium aluminum hydride to give the same product? Why or why not?

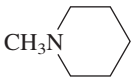


21.42 Provide a reasonable explanation for each of the following observations:

(a) 4-Methylpiperidine has a higher boiling point than *N*-methylpiperidine.

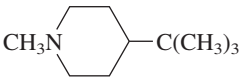


4-Methylpiperidine (bp 129°C)



N-Methylpiperidine (bp 106°C)

(b) Two isomeric quaternary ammonium salts are formed in comparable amounts when 4-*tert*-butyl-*N*-methylpiperidine is treated with benzyl chloride.

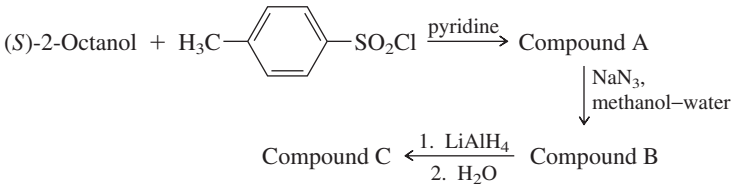


4-*tert*-Butyl-*N*-methylpiperidine

(c) When tetramethylammonium hydroxide is heated at 130°C, trimethylamine and methanol are formed.

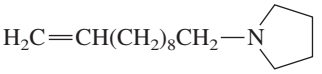
(d) The major product formed on treatment of 1-propanamine with sodium nitrite in dilute hydrochloric acid is 2-propanol.

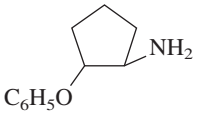
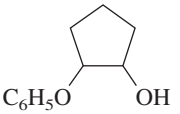
21.43 Give the structures, including stereochemistry, of compounds A through C.



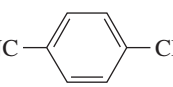
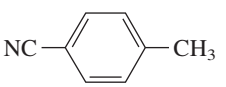
21.44 Devise efficient syntheses of each of the following compounds from the designated starting materials. You may also use any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

(a) 3,3-Dimethyl-1-butanamine from 1-bromo-2,2-dimethylpropane

(b)  from 10-undecenoic acid and pyrrolidine

(c)  from 

(d) $C_6H_5CH_2NCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$ (with CH_3 on the N) from $C_6H_5CH_2NHCH_3$ and $BrCH_2CH_2CH_2CN$

(e)  from 

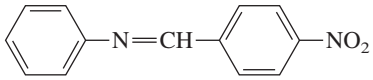
21.45 Each of the following compounds has been prepared from *p*-nitroaniline. Outline a reasonable series of steps leading to each one.

(a) *p*-Nitrobenzonitrile
(b) 3,4,5-Trichloroaniline
(c) 1,3-Dibromo-5-nitrobenzene
(d) 3,5-Dibromoaniline
(e) *p*-Acetamidophenol (*acetaminophen*)

21.46 Each of the following compounds has been prepared from *o*-anisidine (*o*-methoxyaniline). Outline a series of steps leading to each one.

(a) *o*-Bromoanisole
(b) *o*-Fluoroanisole
(c) 3-Fluoro-4-methoxyacetophenone
(d) 3-Fluoro-4-methoxybenzonitrile
(e) 3-Fluoro-4-methoxyphenol

21.47 (a) Outline a synthesis of the following compound from nitrobenzene, *p*-nitrobenzyl alcohol, and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.



(b) How would you modify the synthesis if you had to start with *p*-nitrotoluene instead of *p*-nitrobenzyl alcohol?

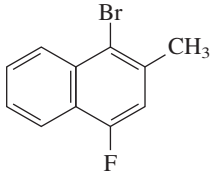
21.48 Design syntheses of each of the following compounds from the indicated starting material and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents:

(a) *p*-Aminobenzoic acid from *p*-methylaniline

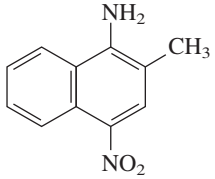
(b) $p\text{-FC}_6\text{H}_4\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ from benzene

(c) 1-Bromo-2-fluoro-3,5-dimethylbenzene from *m*-xylene

(d)



from

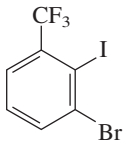


(e) $o\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{C(CH}_3)_3$ from $p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{C(CH}_3)_3$

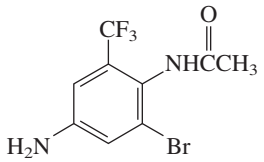
(f) $m\text{-ClC}_6\text{H}_4\text{C(CH}_3)_3$ from $p\text{-O}_2\text{NC}_6\text{H}_4\text{C(CH}_3)_3$

(g) 1-Bromo-3,5-diethylbenzene from *m*-diethylbenzene

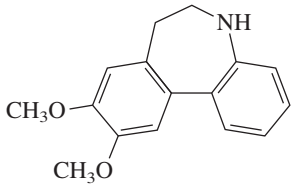
(h)



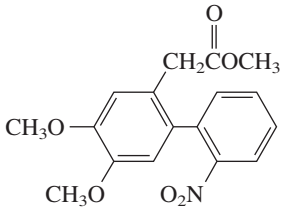
from



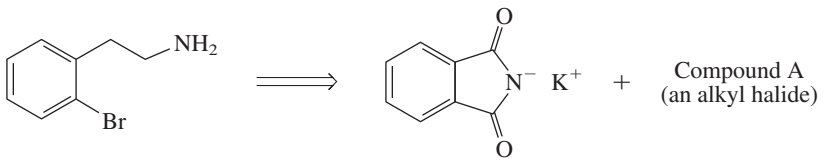
(i)



from



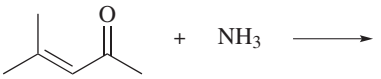
21.49 Show how 2-(2-bromophenyl)ethanamine could be prepared by the Gabriel amine synthesis, from *N*-potassiophthalimide and compound A, an alkyl halide.

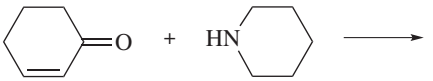


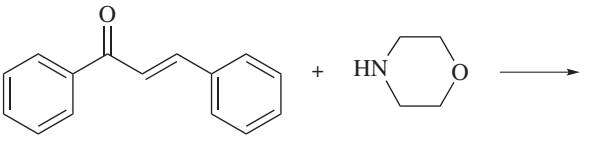
2-(2-Bromophenyl)-ethanamine

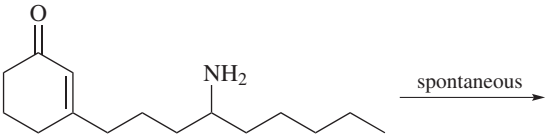
N-Potassiophthalimide

21.50 Ammonia and amines undergo conjugate addition to α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds (see Section 20.8). On the basis of this information, predict the principal organic product of each of the following reactions:

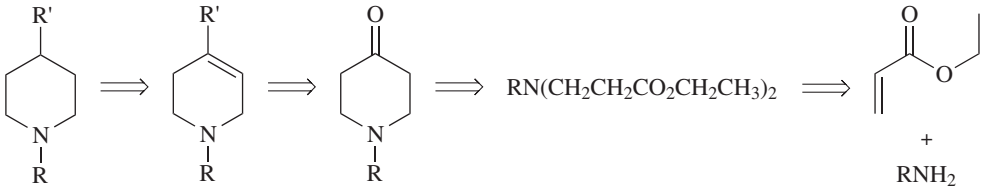
(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

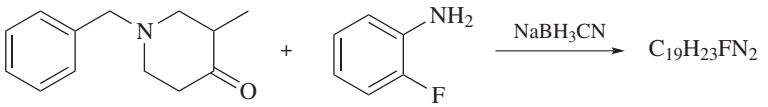
(d) 

21.51 A number of compounds of the type represented by compound A were prepared for evaluation as potential analgesic drugs. Their preparation is described in a retrosynthetic format as shown.

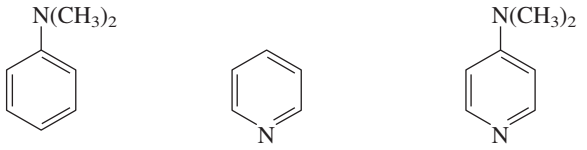


On the basis of this retrosynthetic analysis, design a synthesis of *N*-methyl-4-phenylpiperidine (compound A, where R = CH_3, R′ = C_6H_5). Present your answer as a series of equations, showing all necessary reagents and isolated intermediates.

21.52 The reductive amination shown was a key step in the synthesis of a compound for testing as an analgesic. Write a structural formula for this compound.



21.53 *N,N*-Dimethylaniline and pyridine are similar in basicity, whereas 4-(*N,N*-dimethylamino)pyridine is considerably more basic than either.



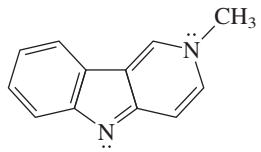
N,N-Dimethylaniline
pK_a of conjugate acid = 5.1

Pyridine
pK_a of conjugate acid = 5.3

4-(*N,N*-Dimethylamino)pyridine
pK_a of conjugate acid = 9.7

Apply resonance principles to identify the more basic of the two nitrogens of 4-(*N,N*-dimethylamino)pyridine, and suggest an explanation for its enhanced basicity.

21.54 The compound shown is a somewhat stronger base than ammonia. Which nitrogen do you think is protonated when it is treated with an acid? Write a structural formula for the species that results.



5-Methyl-γ-carboline
pK_a of conjugate acid = 10.5

21.55 Compounds A and B are isomeric amines of molecular formula $C_8H_{11}N$. Identify each isomer on the basis of the ^{1}H NMR spectra given in Figure 21.10.

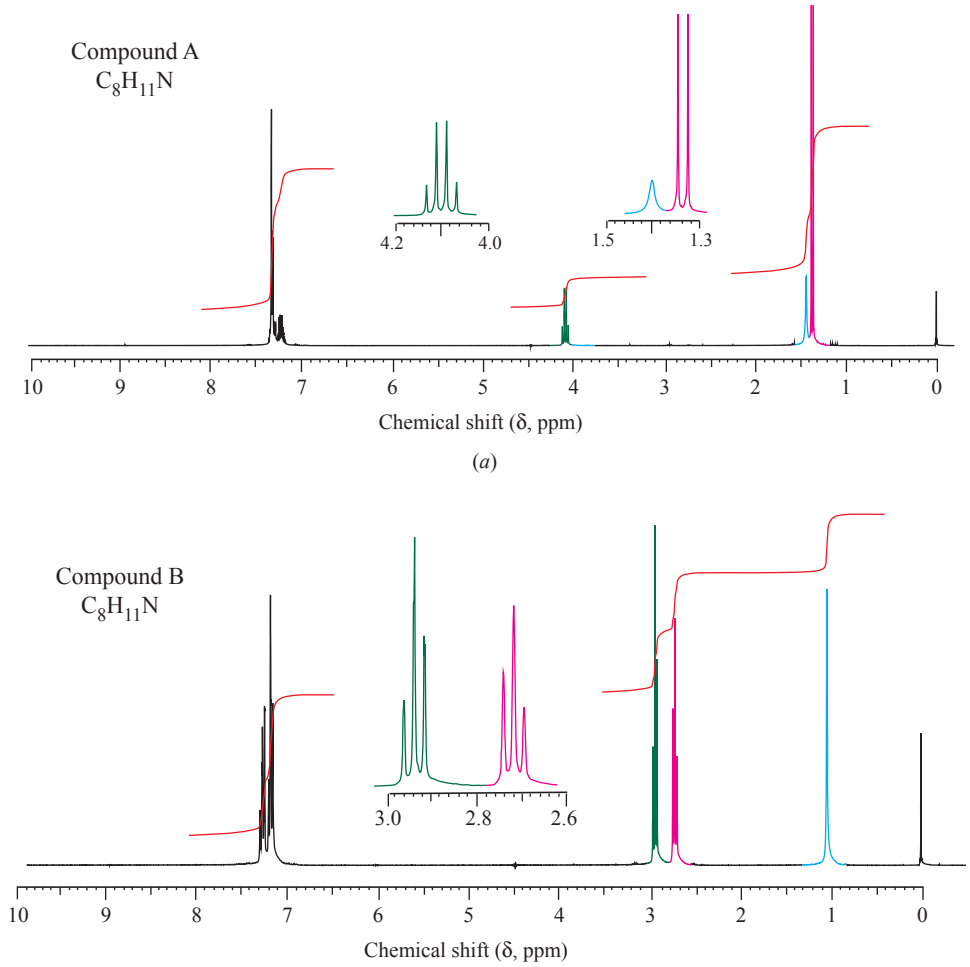
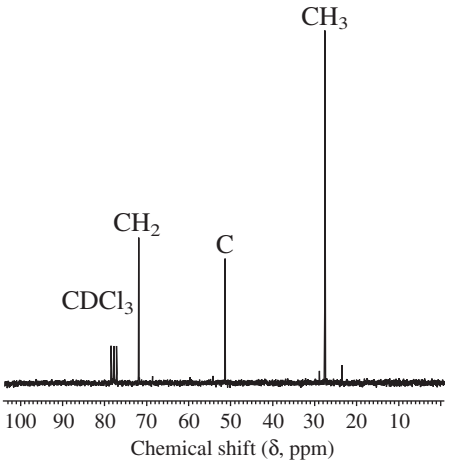


Figure 21.10

The 300-MHz ^{1}H NMR spectra of (*a*) compound A and (*b*) compound B (Problem 21.55).

Figure 21.11

The ^{13}C NMR spectrum of the compound described in Problem 21.56.

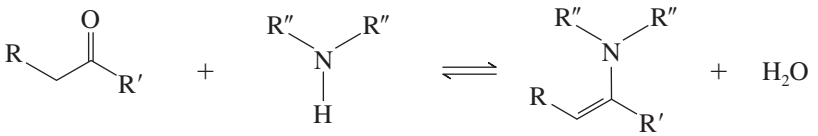


21.56 Does the ^{13}C NMR spectrum shown in Figure 21.11 correspond to that of 1-amino-2-methyl-2-propanol or to 2-amino-2-methyl-1-propanol? Could this compound be prepared by reaction of an epoxide with ammonia?

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 21

Synthetic Applications of Enamines

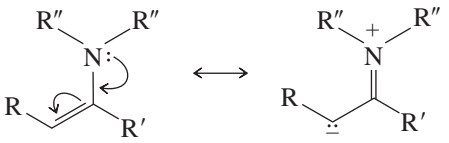
The formation of enamines by the reaction of aldehydes and ketones with secondary amines was described in Section 17.11. As the following equation illustrates, the reaction is reversible.



Aldehyde or ketone Secondary amine Enamine Water

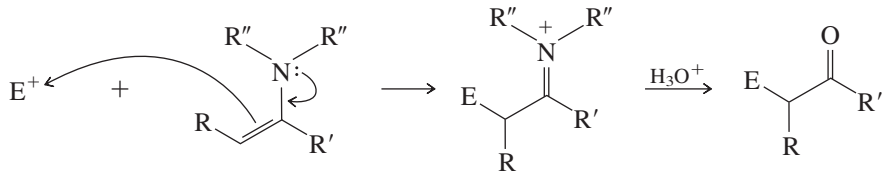
When preparing enamines, the reaction is normally carried out by heating in benzene as the solvent. No catalyst is necessary, but *p*-toluenesulfonic acid is sometimes added. The water formed is removed by distillation of its azeotropic mixture with benzene, which shifts the position of equilibrium to the right to give the enamine in high yield. Conversely, enamines can be hydrolyzed in aqueous acid to aldehydes and ketones.

Enamines resemble enols in that electron-pair donation makes their double bond electron-rich and nucleophilic.



Because nitrogen is a better electron-pair donor than oxygen, an enamine is more nucleophilic than an enol. Enamines, being neutral molecules are, however, less nucleophilic than enolates, which are anions.

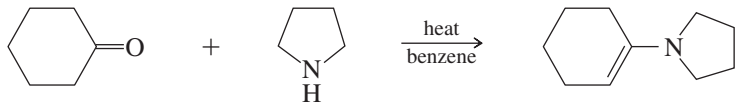
Reactions of enamines with electrophiles (E^+) lead to carbon–carbon bond formation. Subsequent hydrolysis gives an α-substituted derivative of the original aldehyde or ketone.



Electrophile + enamine

α-Substituted aldehyde or ketone

Pyrrolidine is the secondary amine used most often for making enamines from aldehydes and ketones.

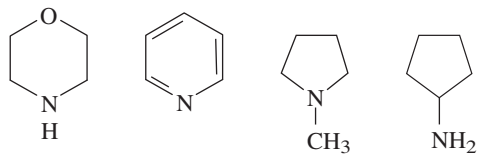


Cyclohexanone Pyrrolidine 1-Pyrrolidinocyclohexene (85–90%)

For synthetic purposes, the electrophilic reagents that give the best yields of α-substituted aldehydes and ketones on reactions with enamines are the following:

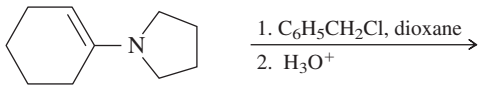
1. Alkyl halides that are very reactive in S_N2 reactions such as primary allylic and benzylic halides, α-halo ethers, α-halo esters, and α-halo nitriles.
2. Acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides.
3. Michael acceptors: α,β-unsaturated nitriles, esters, and ketones.

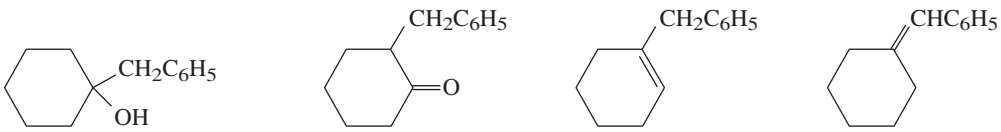
21.57 One of the following is often used to prepare enamines from aldehydes and ketones. The others do not yield enamines. Identify the enamine-forming compound.



A. B. C. D.

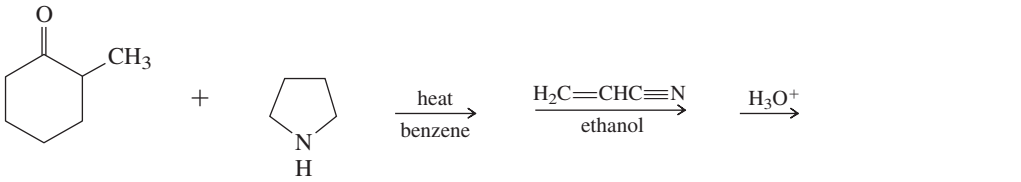
21.58 What is the product of the following reaction?

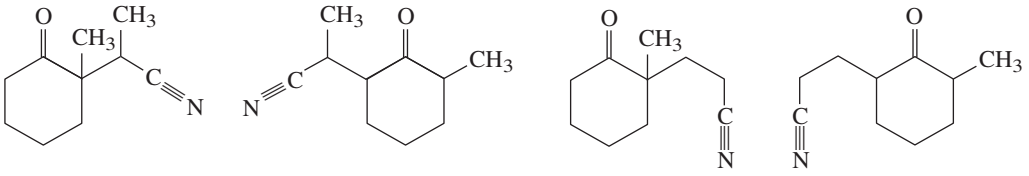




A. B. C. D.

21.59 Unsymmetrical ketones give a mixture of two pyrrolidine enamines in which the enamine with the less-substituted double bond predominates. What is the major product of the following reaction sequence?

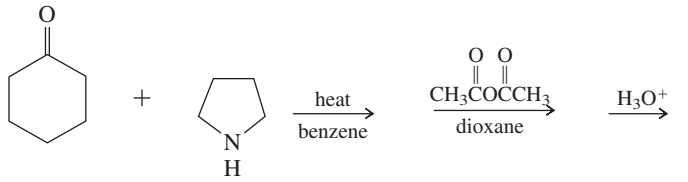


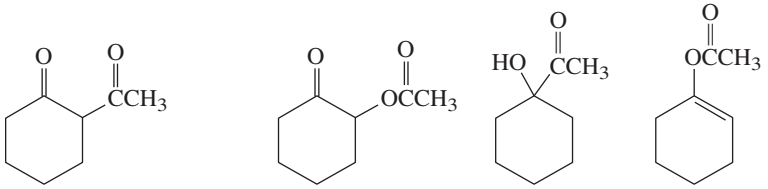


(*cis* + *trans*) (*cis* + *trans*)

A. B. C. D.

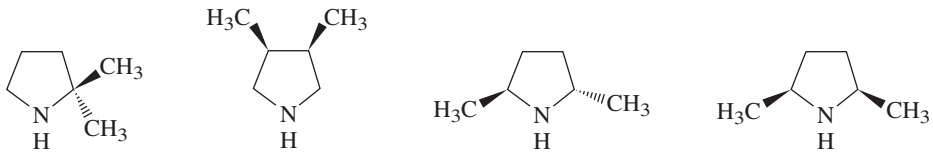
21.60 What is the product of the following reaction sequence?





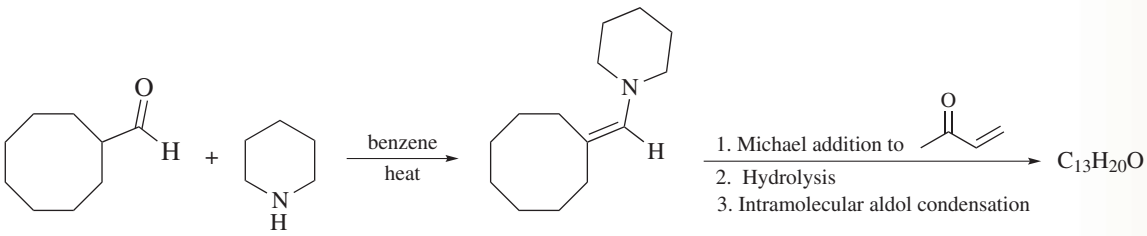
A. B. C. D.

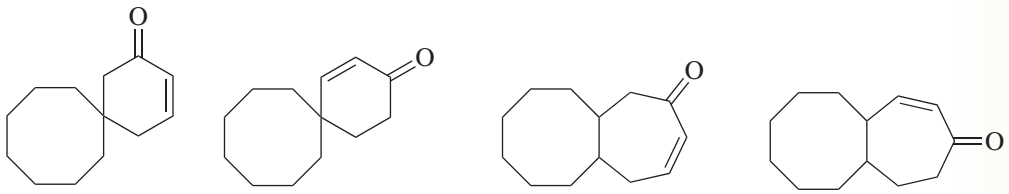
21.61 (+)-2-Allylcyclohexanone has been prepared in 82% enantiomeric excess by alkylation of the optically active enamine prepared from cyclohexanone and an enantiomerically pure pyrrolidine derivative. Of the following, which one is the best pyrrolidine derivative to use in this enantioselective synthesis?



A. B. C. D.

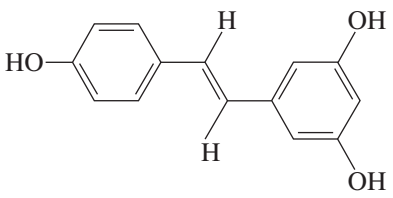
21.62 Cyclooctanecarboxaldehyde was converted to a ketone having the molecular formula $C_{13}H_{20}O$ via its piperidine enamine as shown. What is the structure of the ketone?





A. B. C. D.

22



CHAPTER OUTLINE

22.1 Nomenclature 914
22.2 Structure and Bonding 916
22.3 Physical Properties 916
22.4 Acidity of Phenols 917
22.5 Substituent Effects on the Acidity of Phenols 918
22.6 Sources of Phenols 919
22.7 Naturally Occurring Phenols 920
22.8 Reactions of Phenols: Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution 921
22.9 Acylation of Phenols 923
22.10 Carboxylation of Phenols: Aspirin and the Kolbe–Schmitt Reaction 925
22.11 Preparation of Aryl Ethers 926
■ James Bond, Oxidative Stress, and Antioxidant Phenols 928
22.12 Cleavage of Aryl Ethers by Hydrogen Halides 930
22.13 Claisen Rearrangement of Allyl Aryl Ethers 931
22.14 Oxidation of Phenols: Quinones 932
22.15 Spectroscopic Analysis of Phenols 933
22.16 Summary 935
Problems 937
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 22: Directed Metalation of Aryl Ethers 943

The skins of red grapes are a source of *resveratrol,* a polyphenol having antioxidant properties that is widely used as a nutritional supplement.

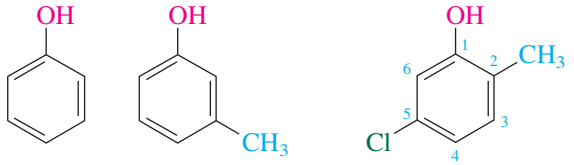
Phenols

Phenols are compounds that have a hydroxyl group bonded directly to a benzene or benzenoid ring. The parent compound of this group, C_6H_5OH, called simply *phenol,* is an important industrial chemical. Many of the properties of phenols are analogous to those of alcohols, but this similarity is something of an oversimplification. Like arylamines, phenols are difunctional compounds; the hydroxyl group and the aromatic ring interact strongly, affecting each other's reactivity. This interaction leads to some novel and useful properties of phenols. A key step in the synthesis of aspirin, for example, is without parallel in the reactions of either alcohols or arenes. With periodic reminders of the ways in which phenols resemble alcohols and arenes, this chapter emphasizes the ways in which phenols are unique.

22.1 Nomenclature

An old name for benzene was *phene,* and its hydroxyl derivative came to be called *phenol.* Phenol is not only an acceptable IUPAC name, it is the preferred name. More highly substituted compounds are named as derivatives of phenol. Numbering of the ring begins at the hydroxyl-substituted carbon and proceeds in the

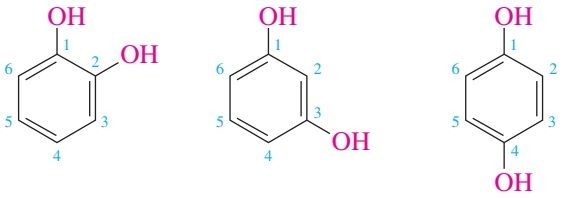
direction that gives the lower number to the next substituted carbon. Substituents are cited in alphabetical order.



Phenol 3-Methylphenol 5-Chloro-2-methylphenol

The common names of 2-,3-, and 4-methylphenol are *o*-, *m*-, and *p*-cresol, respectively.

The three dihydroxy derivatives of benzene may be named as 1,2-, 1,3-, and 1,4-benzenediol, respectively, but each is more familiarly known by the common name indicated in parentheses below the structures shown here.



1,2-Benzenediol (pyrocatechol) 1,3-Benzenediol (resorcinol) 1,4-Benzenediol (hydroquinone)

Pyrocatechol is often called *catechol*.

The common names for the two hydroxy derivatives of naphthalene are 1-naphthol and 2-naphthol. The systematic names are naphthalen-1-ol and naphthalen-2-ol.

Problem 22.1

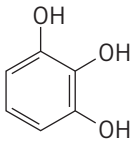
Write structural formulas for each of the following compounds:

(a) Pyrogallol (1,2,3-benzenetriol)

(b) *o*-Benzylphenol

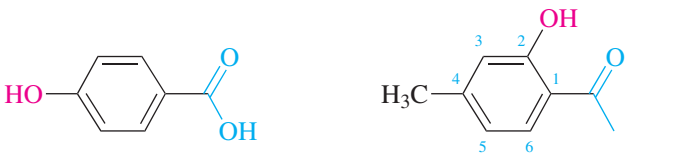
(c) 3-Nitro-1-naphthol

Sample Solution (a) Like the dihydroxybenzenes, the isomeric trihydroxybenzenes have unique names. Pyrogallol, used as a developer of photographic film, is 1,2,3-benzenetriol. The three hydroxyl groups occupy adjacent positions on a benzene ring.



Pyrogallol (1,2,3-benzenetriol)

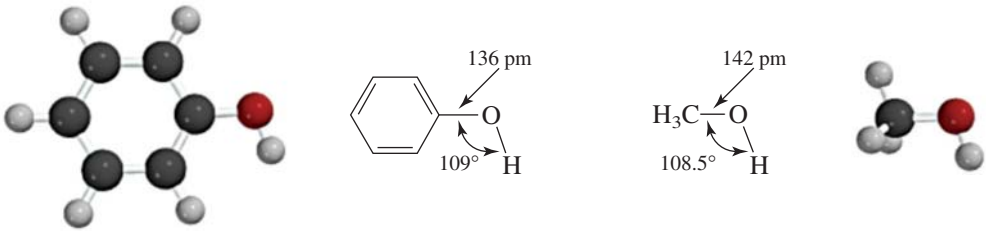
Carboxyl and acyl groups take precedence over the phenolic hydroxyl in determining the name of the parent. The hydroxyl is treated as a substituent in such cases.



p-Hydroxybenzoic acid 2-Hydroxy-4-methylacetophenone

22.2 Structure and Bonding

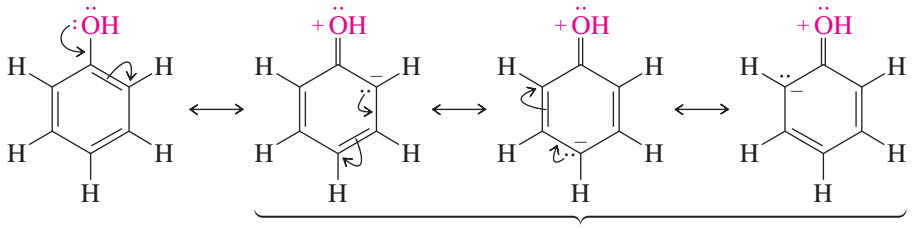
Phenol is planar, with a C—O—H angle of 109°, almost the same as the tetrahedral angle and not much different from the 108.5° C—O—H angle of methanol:



Phenol Methanol

As we've seen on a number of occasions, bonds to sp^2-hybridized carbon are shorter than those to sp^3-hybridized carbon, and the case of phenols is no exception. The carbon–oxygen bond distance in phenol is slightly less than that in methanol.

In resonance terms, the shorter carbon–oxygen bond distance in phenol is attributed to the partial double-bond character that results from conjugation of the unshared electron pair of oxygen with the aromatic ring.



Most stable Lewis structure for phenol

Dipolar resonance contributors of phenol

Many of the properties of phenols reflect the polarization implied by the contributing structures. The hydroxyl oxygen is less basic, and the hydroxyl proton more acidic, in phenols than in alcohols. Electrophilic aromatic substitution in phenols is much faster than in benzene, indicating that the ring, especially at the positions ortho and para to the hydroxyl group, is relatively "electron-rich."

22.3 Physical Properties

The physical properties of phenols are strongly influenced by the hydroxyl group, which permits phenols to form hydrogen bonds with other phenol molecules and with water. Thus, phenols have higher melting points and boiling points and are more soluble in water than arenes and aryl halides of comparable molecular weight. Table 22.1 compares phenol, toluene, and fluorobenzene with regard to these physical properties.

Some ortho-substituted phenols, such as *o*-nitrophenol, have significantly lower boiling points than those of the meta and para isomers. This is because the *intramolecular* hydrogen bond that forms between the hydroxyl group and the substituent partially compensates for the energy required to go from the liquid state to the vapor.

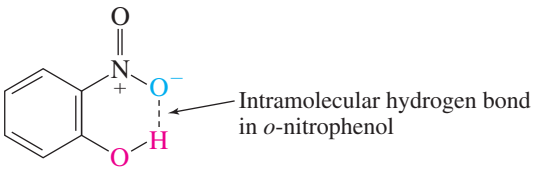


TABLE 22.1 Comparison of Physical Properties of an Arene, a Phenol, and an Aryl Halide

Physical property	Compound		
	Toluene, $C_6H_5CH_3$	Phenol, C_6H_5OH	Fluorobenzene, C_6H_5F
Molecular weight	92	94	96
Melting point	–95°C	43°C	–41°C
Boiling point (1 atm)	111°C	132°C	85°C
Solubility in water (25°C)	0.05 g/100 mL	8.2 g/100 mL	0.2 g/100 mL

Problem 22.2

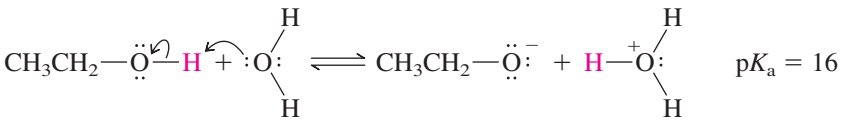
One of the hydroxybenzoic acids is known by the common name *salicylic acid.* Its methyl ester, methyl salicylate, occurs in oil of wintergreen. Methyl salicylate boils over 50°C lower than either of the other two methyl hydroxybenzoates. What is the structure of methyl salicylate? Why is its boiling point so much lower than that of either of its regioisomers?

22.4 Acidity of Phenols

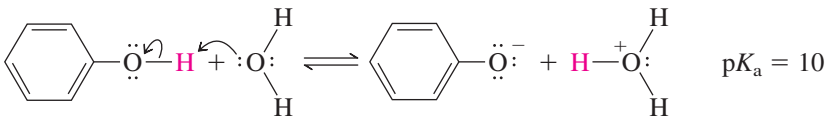
Because of its acidity, phenol was known as *carbolic acid* when Joseph Lister introduced it as an antiseptic in 1865 to prevent postoperative bacterial infections that were then a life-threatening hazard in even minor surgical procedures.

The most characteristic property of phenols is their acidity. Phenols are more acidic than alcohols but less acidic than carboxylic acids. Recall that carboxylic acids have pK_a's of approximately 5, whereas the pK_a's of alcohols are in the 16–20 range. The pK_a for most phenols is about 10.

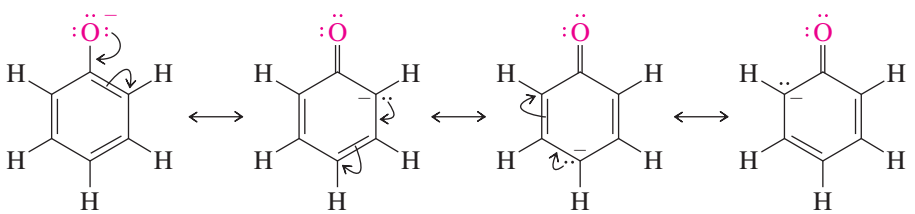
To help us understand why phenols are more acidic than alcohols, compare the ionization equilibria for phenol and ethanol. In particular, consider the differences in charge delocalization in ethoxide ion and in phenoxide ion. The negative charge in ethoxide ion is localized on oxygen and is stabilized only by solvation forces.



The negative charge in phenoxide ion is stabilized both by solvation and by electron delocalization into the ring.



This electron delocalization is represented by resonance among the various contributing structures:



The negative charge is shared by oxygen and carbons that are ortho and para to it. Delocalization of its negative charge strongly stabilizes phenoxide ion.

To place the acidity of phenol in perspective, note that although phenol is more than a million times more acidic than ethanol, it is over a hundred thousand times less acidic than acetic acid. Thus, phenols can be separated from alcohols because they are more acidic, and from carboxylic acids because they are less acidic.

Problem 22.3

Taking advantage of their large differences in pK_a values, describe how a mixture of phenol and benzoic acid in diethyl ether solution could be separated. How could a mixture of phenol and cyclohexanol in diethyl ether solution be separated?

Many synthetic reactions involving phenols as nucleophiles are carried out in the presence of sodium or potassium hydroxide. Under these conditions the phenol is converted to the corresponding phenoxide ion, which is a far better nucleophile.

22.5 Substituent Effects on the Acidity of Phenols

As Table 22.2 shows, most phenols have ionization constants similar to that of phenol itself. Substituent effects, in general, are small.

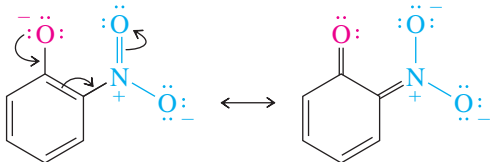
Alkyl substitution produces negligible changes in acidities, as do weakly electronegative groups attached to the ring.

Only when the substituent is strongly electron-withdrawing, as is a nitro group, is a substantial change in acidity noted. The ionization constants of *o*- and *p*-nitrophenol are several hundred times greater than that of phenol. An ortho- or para-nitro group greatly stabilizes the phenoxide ion by permitting a portion of the negative charge to be carried by its own oxygens.

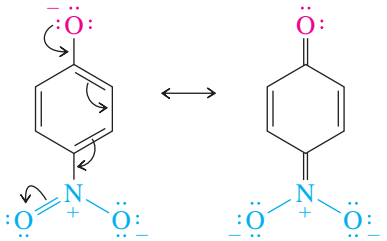
TABLE 22.2 Acidities of Some Phenols

Compound name	pK_a	Compound name	pK_a
Monosubstituted phenols			
Phenol	10.0	2-Methoxyphenol	10.0
2-Methylphenol	10.3	3-Methoxyphenol	9.6
3-Methylphenol	10.1	4-Methoxyphenol	10.2
4-Methylphenol	10.3	2-Nitrophenol	7.2
2-Chlorophenol	8.6	3-Nitrophenol	8.4
3-Chlorophenol	9.1	4-Nitrophenol	7.2
4-Chlorophenol	9.4		
Di- and trinitrophenols			
2,4-Dinitrophenol	4.0	2,4,6-Trinitrophenol	0.4
3,5-Dinitrophenol	6.7		
Naphthols			
1-Naphthol	9.2	2-Naphthol	9.5

Electron delocalization in* o-*nitrophenoxide ion



Electron delocalization in* p-*nitrophenoxide ion



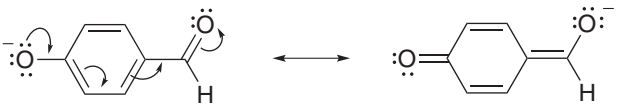
A meta-nitro group is not directly conjugated to the phenoxide oxygen and thus stabilizes a phenoxide ion to a smaller extent. *m*-Nitrophenol is more acidic than phenol but less acidic than either *o*- or *p*-nitrophenol.

Problem 22.4

Which is the stronger acid in each of the following pairs? Explain your reasoning.

(a) Phenol or *p*-hydroxybenzaldehyde
(b) *m*-Cyanophenol or *p*-cyanophenol
(c) *o*-Fluorophenol or *p*-fluorophenol

Sample Solution (a) The best approach when comparing the acidities of different phenols is to assess opportunities for stabilization of negative charge in their anions. Electron delocalization in the anion of *p*-hydroxybenzaldehyde is very effective because of conjugation.



A carbonyl group is strongly electron-withdrawing and acid-strengthening, especially when ortho or para to the hydroxyl group. *p*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde is a stronger acid than phenol. Its pK_a is 7.6.

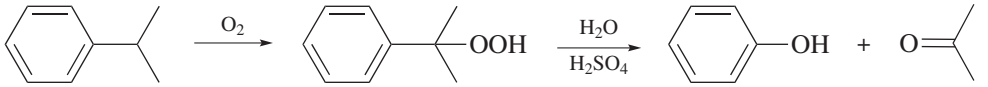
Multiple substitution by strongly electron-withdrawing groups greatly increases the acidity of phenols, as the pK_a values for 2,4-dinitrophenol (4.0) and 2,4,6-trinitrophenol (0.4) in Table 22.2 attest.

22.6 Sources of Phenols

Phenol was first isolated in the early nineteenth century from coal tar, and a small portion of the more than 4 billion lbs of phenol produced in the United States each year comes from this source. Although significant quantities of phenol are used to prepare aspirin and dyes, most of it is converted to phenolic resins used in adhesives and plastics. Almost all the phenol produced commercially is synthetic. The most widely used industrial synthesis of phenol begins with oxidation of isopropylbenzene at its benzylic carbon. The resulting hydroperoxide gives phenol and acetone on treatment with dilute sulfuric acid. The economically attractive features of this process are its use of inexpensive reagents (oxygen and sulfuric acid) and the fact that it yields two high-volume industrial chemicals: phenol and

acetone. The mechanism of this synthesis forms the basis of Problem 22.34 at the end of this chapter.

Can you recall how to prepare isopropylbenzene?

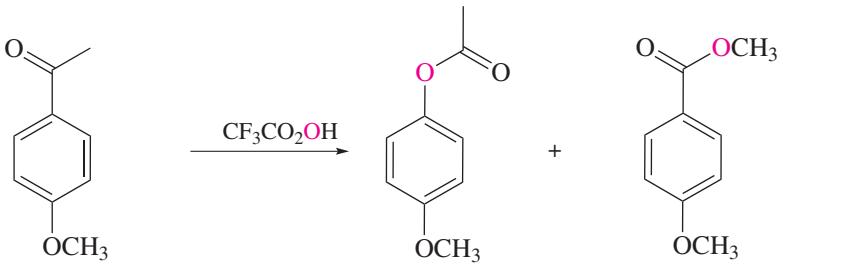


Isopropylbenzene — 1-Methyl-1-phenylethyl hydroperoxide — Phenol — Acetone

The most important laboratory synthesis of phenols is from amines by hydrolysis of their corresponding diazonium salts, as described in Section 21.17.

The Baeyer–Villiger oxidation is described in Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 17.

Phenols can also be prepared by combining Baeyer–Villiger oxidation and ester hydrolysis. Oxidation of *p*-methoxyacetophenone with trifluoroperoxyacetic acid gives 4-methoxyphenyl acetate as the major product and methyl 4-methoxybenzoate as the minor one.

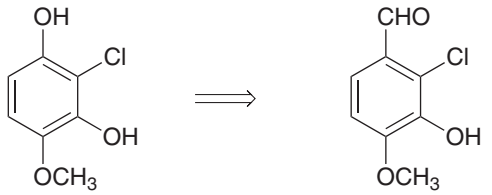


p-Methoxyacetophenone — 4-Methoxyphenyl acetate (66%) — Methyl 4-methoxybenzoate (9%)

Ester hydrolysis of 4-methoxyphenyl acetate gives 4-methoxyphenol.

Problem 22.5

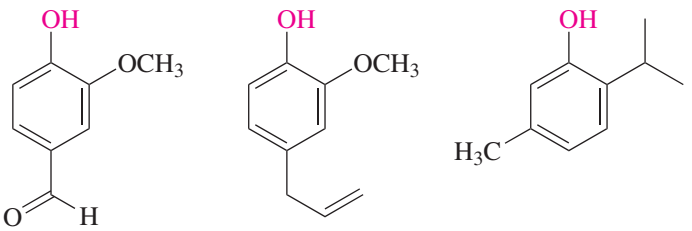
The compound shown was required for the preparation of fluorescent markers for biological compounds. How can it be synthesized from 2-chloro-3-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde?



2-Chloro-3-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde

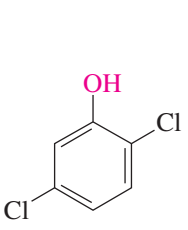
22.7 Naturally Occurring Phenols

Phenolic compounds are commonplace natural products. Vanillin gives the vanilla bean its flavor, eugenol is present in the oil of cloves, and thymol in thyme.

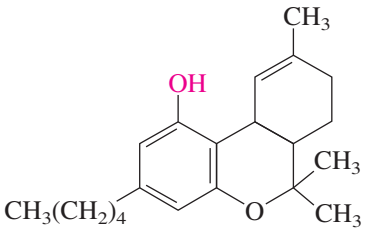


Vanillin — Eugenol — Thymol

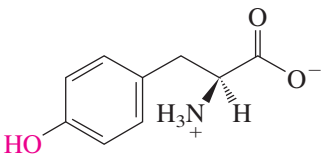
2,5-Dichlorophenol has been isolated from the defensive substance of a species of grasshopper, Δ^9-tetrahydrocannabinol is the psychoactive material in marijuana, and tyrosine is the only phenol represented among the 20 amino acid components of proteins.



2,5-Dichlorophenol

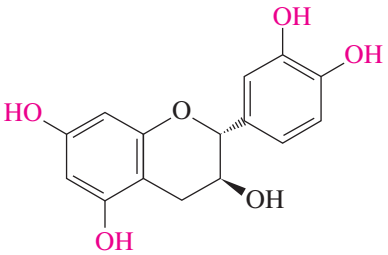


Δ^9-Tetrahydrocannabinol

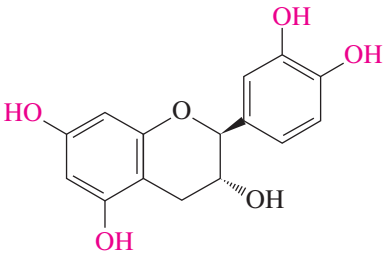


(*S*)-Tyrosine

Many plant pigments are tricyclic phenols called flavanoids, which among their other properties are antioxidants. A flavanoid in green tea and red wine, (+)-catechin may play a role in the low incidence of atherosclerosis in Japan and France.



(+)-Catechin



(−)-Catechin

Both catechin enantiomers are secreted as a racemic mixture through the roots of spotted knapweed (Figure 22.1). (+)-Catechin has antibacterial properties, but (–)-catechin kills other plants with which it comes in contact. In the approximately 100 years since it was accidentally introduced to the United States, spotted knapweed has spread rapidly, replacing native plants over millions of acres and forcing grazing animals to search elsewhere for food.

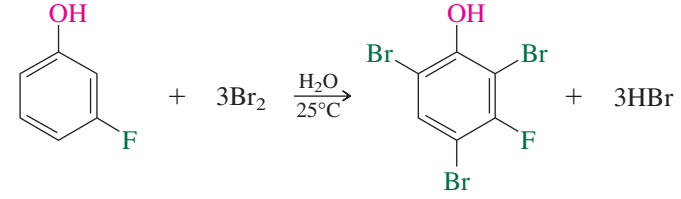
Figure 22.1

Spotted knapweed produces a phenolic compound that kills other plants.

22.8 Reactions of Phenols: Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution

In most of their reactions phenols behave as nucleophiles, and the reagents that act on them are electrophiles. Either the hydroxyl oxygen or the aromatic ring may be the site of nucleophilic reactivity in a phenol. Reactions that take place on the ring lead to electrophilic aromatic substitution; Table 22.3 summarizes the behavior of phenols in reactions of this type.

A hydroxyl group is a very powerful activating substituent, and electrophilic aromatic substitution in phenols occurs far faster, and under milder conditions, than in benzene. The first entry in Table 22.3, for example, shows the monobromination of phenol in high yield at low temperature and in the absence of any catalyst. In polar solvents such as water it is difficult to limit the bromination of phenols to monosubstitution. In the following example, all three positions that are ortho or para to the hydroxyl undergo rapid substitution:



m-Fluorophenol | Bromine | 2,4,6-Tribromo-3-fluorophenol (95%) | Hydrogen bromide

Other typical electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions—nitration (second entry), sulfonation (fourth entry), and Friedel–Crafts alkylation and acylation (fifth and sixth entries)—take place readily and are synthetically useful. Phenols also undergo electrophilic

TABLE 22.3 Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions of Phenols

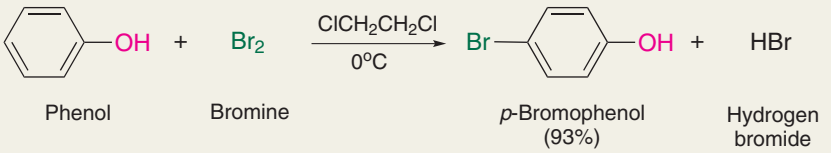
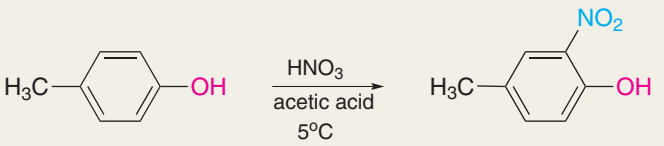
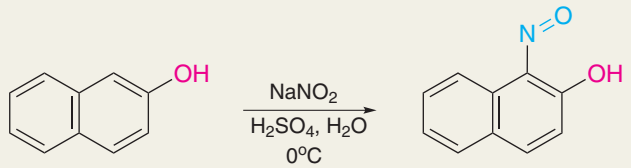
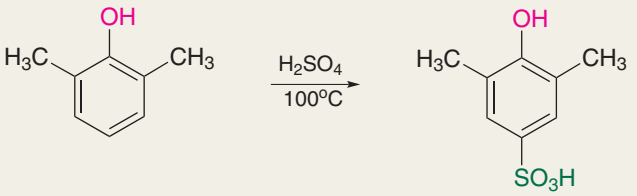
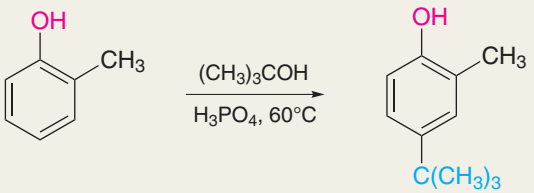
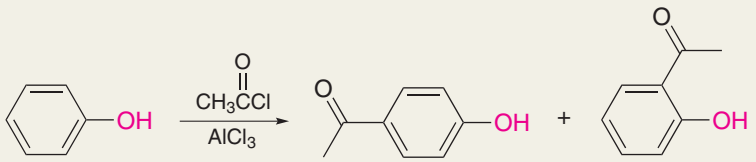
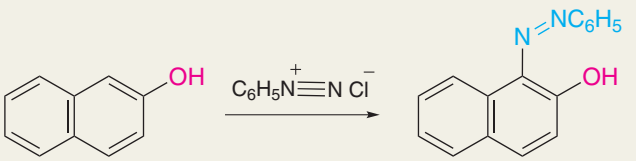
Reaction and comments	Example
Halogenation Bromination and chlorination of phenols occur readily even in the absence of a catalyst. Substitution occurs primarily at the position para to the hydroxyl group. When the para position is blocked, ortho substitution is observed.	 Phenol; Bromine; *p*-Bromophenol (93%); Hydrogen bromide
Nitration Phenols are nitrated on treatment with a dilute solution of nitric acid in either water or acetic acid. It is not necessary to use mixtures of nitric and sulfuric acids, because of the high reactivity of phenols.	 4-Methylphenol; 4-Methyl-2-nitrophenol (73–77%)
Nitrosation On acidification of aqueous solutions of sodium nitrite, the nitrosyl cation ^+NO is formed, which is a weak electrophile and attacks the strongly activated ring of a phenol. The product is a nitroso phenol.	 2-Naphthol; 1-Nitroso-2-naphthol (99%)
Sulfonation Heating a phenol with concentrated sulfuric acid causes sulfonation of the ring.	 2,6-Dimethylphenol; 4-Hydroxy-3,5-dimethylbenzenesulfonic acid (69%)
Friedel–Crafts alkylation Alcohols in combination with acids serve as sources of carbocations. Attack of a carbocation on the electron-rich ring of a phenol brings about its alkylation.	 2-Methylphenol; 4-*tert*-Butyl-2-methylphenol (63%)
Friedel–Crafts acylation In the presence of aluminum chloride, acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides acylate the aromatic ring of phenols.	 Phenol; *p*-Hydroxyacetophenone (74%); *o*-Hydroxyacetophenone (16%)

TABLE 22.3 Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution Reactions of Phenols (*Continued*)

Reaction and comments	Specific example
Reaction with arenediazonium salts Adding a phenol to a solution of a diazonium salt formed from a primary aromatic amine leads to formation of an azo compound. The reaction is carried out at a pH such that a significant portion of the phenol is present as its phenoxide ion. The diazonium ion acts as an electrophile toward the strongly activated ring of the phenoxide ion.	 2-Naphthol → 1-Phenylazo-2-naphthol (48%)

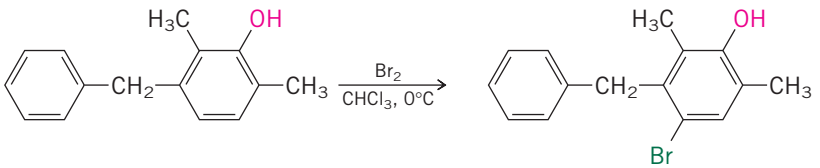
substitution reactions that are limited to only the most active aromatic compounds; these include nitrosation (third entry) and coupling with diazonium salts (seventh entry).

Problem 22.6

Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature and gives a single organic product in high yield. Identify the product in each case.

(a) 3-Benzyl-2,6-dimethylphenol treated with bromine in chloroform
(b) 4-Bromo-2-methylphenol treated with 2-methylpropene and sulfuric acid
(c) 2-Isopropyl-5-methylphenol (thymol) treated with sodium nitrite and dilute hydrochloric acid
(d) 4-Methylphenol treated with propanoyl chloride and aluminum chloride

Sample Solution (a) The ring that bears the hydroxyl group is much more reactive than the other ring. In electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions of rings that bear several substituents, it is the most activating substituent that controls the orientation. Bromination occurs para to the hydroxyl group.

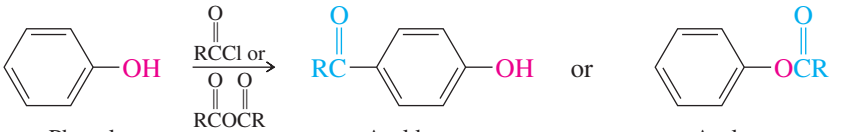


3-Benzyl-2,6-dimethylphenol → 3-Benzyl-4-bromo-2,6-dimethylphenol (isolated in 100% yield)

The aromatic ring of a phenol, like that of an arylamine, is seen as an electron-rich functional unit and is capable of a variety of reactions. In some cases, however, it is the hydroxyl oxygen that reacts instead. An example of this kind of chemical reactivity is described in the following section.

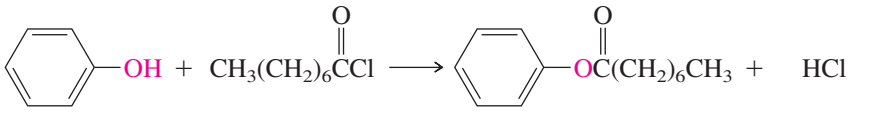
22.9 Acylation of Phenols

Acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides can react with phenols either at the aromatic ring (C-acylation) or at the hydroxyl oxygen (O-acylation):



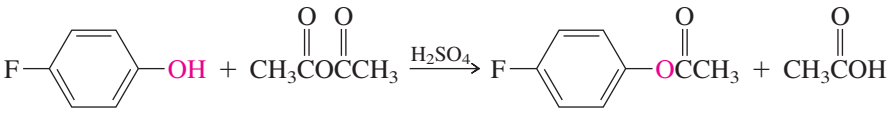
Phenol → Aryl ketone (product of C-acylation) or Aryl ester (product of O-acylation)

As shown in the sixth entry of Table 22.3, C-acylation of phenols is observed under the customary conditions of the Friedel–Crafts reaction (treatment with an acyl chloride or acid anhydride in the presence of aluminum chloride). In the absence of aluminum chloride, however, O-acylation occurs instead.



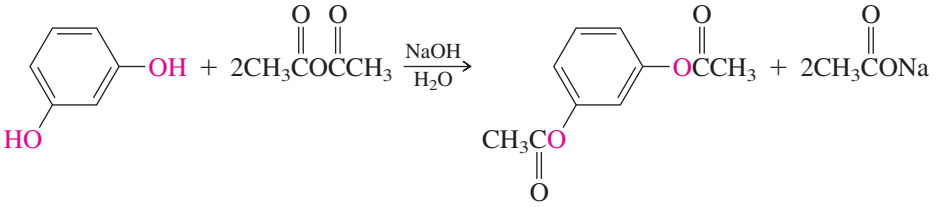
Phenol | Octanoyl chloride | Phenyl octanoate (95%) | Hydrogen chloride

The O-acylation of phenols with acid anhydrides can be conveniently catalyzed in either of two ways. One method involves converting the acid anhydride to a more powerful acylating agent by protonation of one of its carbonyl oxygens. Addition of a few drops of sulfuric acid is usually sufficient.



p-Fluorophenol | Acetic anhydride | *p*-Fluorophenyl acetate (81%) | Acetic acid

An alternative approach is to increase the nucleophilicity of the phenol by converting it to its phenoxide anion in basic solution:



Resorcinol | Acetic anhydride | 1,3-Diacetoxybenzene (93%) | Sodium acetate

Problem 22.7

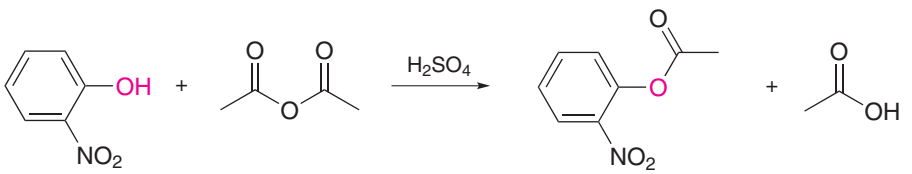
Write chemical equations expressing each of the following:

(a) Preparation of *o*-nitrophenyl acetate by sulfuric acid catalysis of the reaction between a phenol and an acid anhydride.

(b) Esterification of 2-naphthol with acetic anhydride in aqueous sodium hydroxide

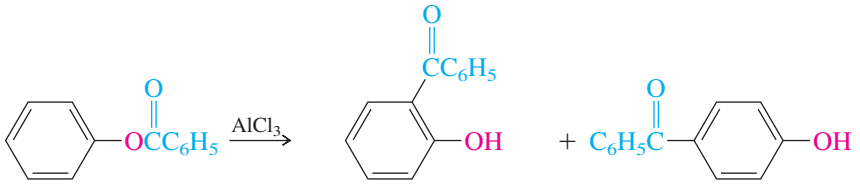
(c) Reaction of phenol with benzoyl chloride

Sample Solution (a) The problem specifies that an acid anhydride be used; therefore, use acetic anhydride to prepare the acetate ester of *o*-nitrophenol:



o-Nitrophenol | Acetic anhydride | *o*-Nitrophenyl acetate (isolated in 93% yield by this method) | Acetic acid

The preference for O-acylation of phenols arises because these reactions are *kinetically controlled.* O-acylation is faster than C-acylation. The C-acyl isomers are more stable, however, and it is known that aluminum chloride is a very effective catalyst for the conversion of aryl esters to aryl ketones. This isomerization is called the **Fries rearrangement.**



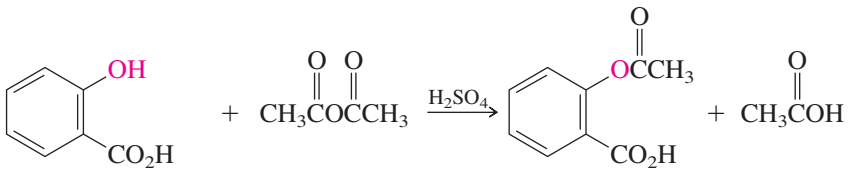
Phenyl benzoate — *o*-Hydroxybenzophenone (9%) — *p*-Hydroxybenzophenone (64%)

Thus, ring acylation of phenols is observed under Friedel–Crafts conditions because the presence of aluminum chloride causes that reaction to be subject to *thermodynamic* (*equilibrium*) *control.*

Fischer esterification, in which a phenol and a carboxylic acid condense in the presence of an acid catalyst, is not used to prepare aryl esters.

22.10 Carboxylation of Phenols: Aspirin and the Kolbe–Schmitt Reaction

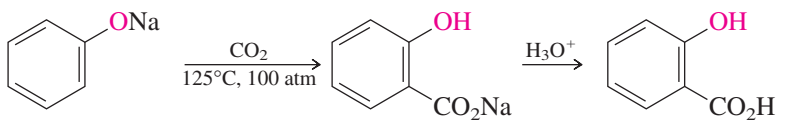
The best known aryl ester is *O*-acetylsalicylic acid, better known as *aspirin.* It is prepared by acetylation of the phenolic hydroxyl group of salicylic acid:



Salicylic acid (*o*-hydroxybenzoic acid) — Acetic anhydride — *O*-Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin) — Acetic acid

Aspirin possesses a number of properties that make it an often-recommended drug. It is an analgesic, effective in relieving headache pain. It is also an antiinflammatory agent, providing some relief from the swelling associated with arthritis and minor injuries. Aspirin is an antipyretic compound; that is, it reduces fever. How aspirin does all this was once a mystery but is now better understood and will be discussed in Section 24.6. Until recently, more than 40 million lb of aspirin were produced each year in the United States, a rate equal to 300 tablets for every man, woman, and child.

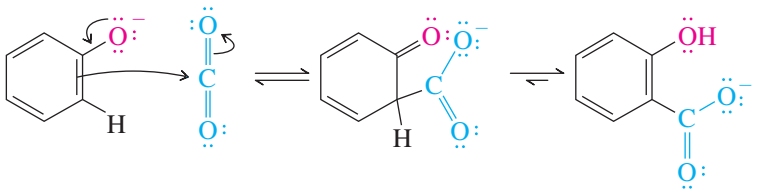
The key compound in the synthesis of aspirin, salicylic acid, is prepared from phenol by a process discovered in the nineteenth century by the German chemist Hermann Kolbe. In the Kolbe synthesis, also known as the **Kolbe–Schmitt reaction,** sodium phenoxide is heated with carbon dioxide under pressure, and the reaction mixture is subsequently acidified to yield salicylic acid:



Sodium phenoxide — Sodium salicylate — Salicylic acid (79%)

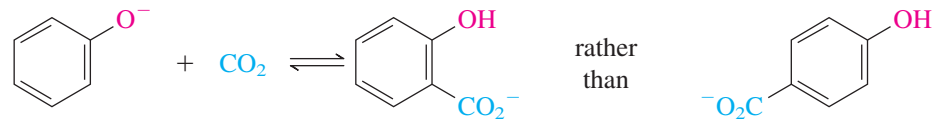
Although a hydroxyl group strongly activates an aromatic ring toward electrophilic attack, an oxyanion substituent is an even more powerful activator. Electron delocalization in phenoxide anion leads to increased electron density at the positions ortho and para to

oxygen. The increased nucleophilicity of the ring permits it to react with carbon dioxide. An intermediate is formed that is simply the keto form of salicylate anion:



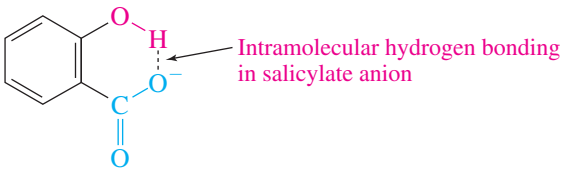
Phenoxide anion (stronger base) | Carbon dioxide | Cyclohexadienone intermediate | Salicylate anion (weaker base)

The Kolbe–Schmitt reaction is an equilibrium process governed by thermodynamic control. The position of equilibrium favors formation of the weaker base (salicylate ion) at the expense of the stronger one (phenoxide ion). Thermodynamic control is also responsible for the pronounced bias toward ortho over para substitution. Salicylate anion is a weaker base than *p*-hydroxybenzoate and predominates at equilibrium.



Phenoxide ion (strongest base; pK_a of conjugate acid, 10) | Carbon dioxide | Salicylate anion (weakest base; pK_a of conjugate acid, 3) | rather than | *p*-Hydroxybenzoate anion (pK_a of conjugate acid, 4.5)

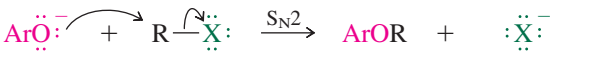
Salicylate anion is a weaker base than *p*-hydroxybenzoate because it is stabilized by intramolecular hydrogen bonding.



The Kolbe–Schmitt reaction has been applied to the preparation of other *o*-hydroxybenzoic acids. Alkyl derivatives of phenol behave very much like phenol itself. Phenols that bear strongly electron-withdrawing substituents usually give low yields of carboxylated products; their derived phenoxide anions are less basic, and the equilibrium constants for their carboxylation are smaller.

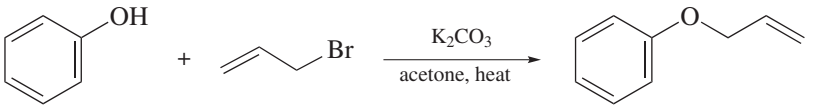
22.11 Preparation of Aryl Ethers

Aryl ethers are best prepared by the Williamson method (Section 16.6). Alkylation of the hydroxyl oxygen of a phenol takes place readily when a phenoxide anion reacts with an alkyl halide.



Phenoxide anion | Alkyl halide | Alkyl aryl ether | Halide anion

As the synthesis is normally performed, a solution of the phenol and alkyl halide is simply heated in the presence of a suitable base such as potassium carbonate:

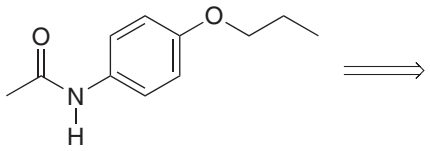


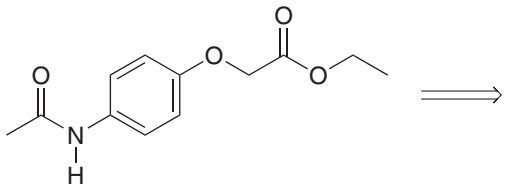
Phenol Allyl bromide Allyl phenyl ether (86%)

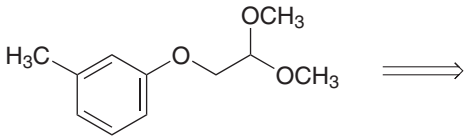
The alkyl halide must be one that reacts readily by an S_N2 mechanism. Thus, methyl and primary alkyl halides are the most effective alkylating agents. Elimination competes with substitution when secondary alkyl halides are used and is the only reaction observed with tertiary alkyl halides.

Problem 22.8

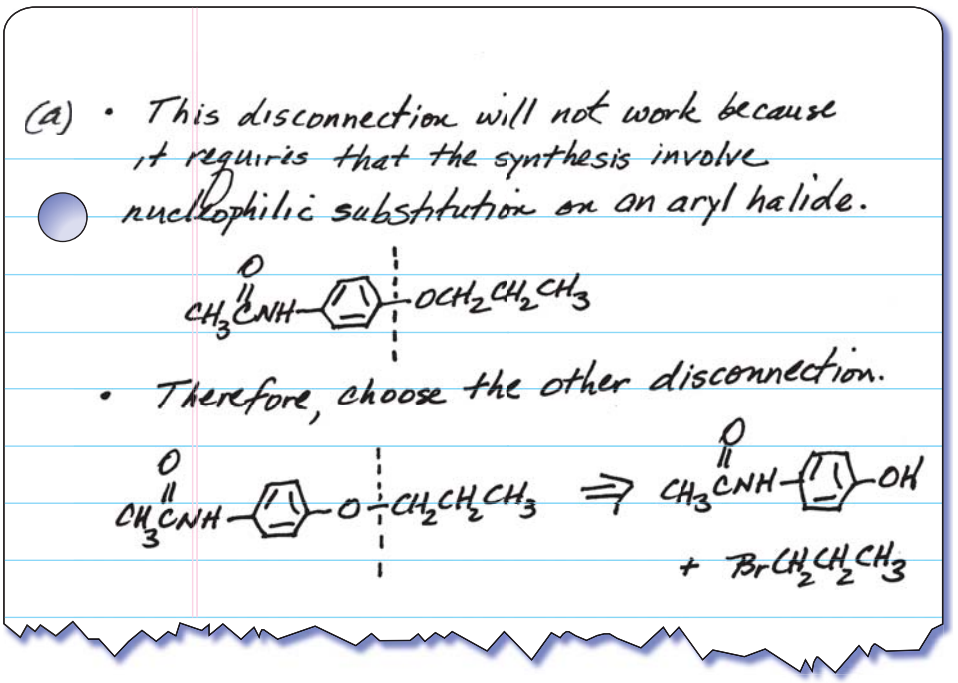
The aryl ethers shown here are intermediates that have been used to make pharmaceuticals. In each case, provide the structures of the phenol and the alkyl halide from which these compounds can be synthesized.

(a) 

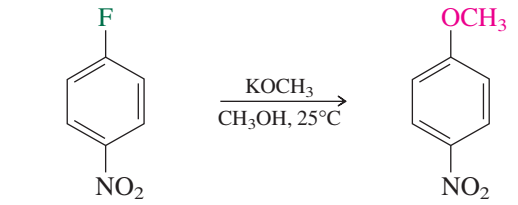
(b) 

(c) 

Sample Solution



The reaction between an alkoxide ion and an aryl halide can be used to prepare alkyl aryl ethers only when the aryl halide is one that reacts rapidly by the addition–elimination mechanism of nucleophilic aromatic substitution (Section 12.21).



p-Fluoronitrobenzene *p*-Nitroanisole (93%)

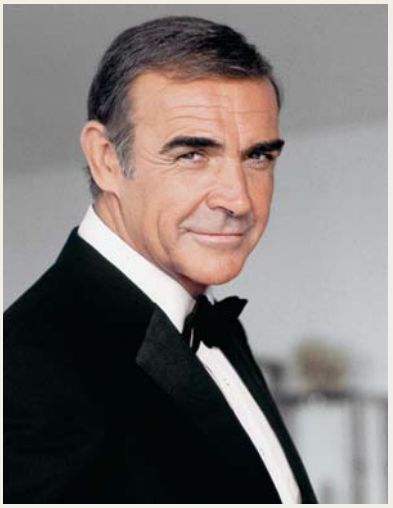
Problem 22.9

Which of the following two combinations of reactants is more appropriate for the preparation of *p*-nitrophenyl phenyl ether?

Fluorobenzene and sodium *p*-nitrophenoxide, or *p*-fluoronitrobenzene and sodium phenoxide

James Bond, Oxidative Stress, and Antioxidant Phenols

In the film *Never Say Never Again* James Bond has the following conversation with M:

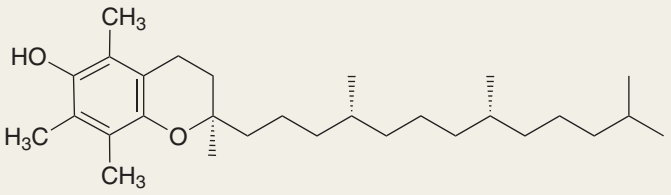


M: Too many free radicals. That's your problem.
James Bond: "Free radicals," sir?
M: Yes. They're toxins that destroy the body and the brain, caused by eating too much red meat and white bread and too many dry martinis!
James Bond: Then I shall cut out the white bread, sir.
M: Oh, you'll do more than THAT, 007. From now on you will suffer a strict regimen of diet and exercise; we shall PURGE those toxins from you!

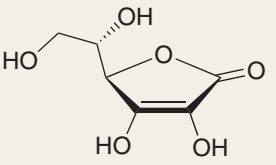
We're familiar with free radicals as reactive, short-lived intermediates in chemical reactions. How are they involved in biological processes and why does M refer to them as "toxins"? We'll consider these questions, but first some background on *reactive oxygen species* (ROS) and *oxidative stress* will be helpful.

ROS are formed as byproducts of energy production and storage in aerobic microorganisms, animals, and plants. Some are intermediates in essential biological processes such as intracellular signaling, but others damage cell membranes and DNA. They include not only molecules in which all of the electrons are paired, hydrogen peroxide and its conjugate base, for example, but also species with unpaired electrons such as hydroxyl (·Ö—H), alkoxyl (·Ö—R), and superoxide (·Ö—Ö:⁻) radicals.

Oxidative stress is an imbalance in ROS levels. It has been implicated in some forms of cancer, in cardiovascular disease, and in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. One way that living systems respond to oxidative stress is by lowering ROS concentrations by scavenging free radicals with the aid of *antioxidants,* such as vitamins E and C.



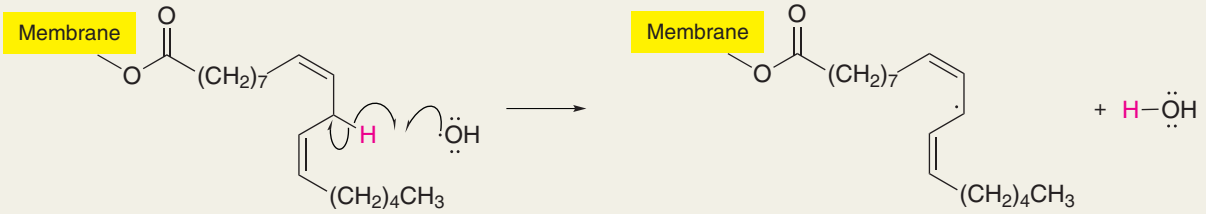
Vitamin E (α-tocopherol)



Vitamin C (L-ascorbic acid)

Vitamin E is present in the nonpolar interior of cell membranes, and vitamin C in the water-rich cytosol. Vitamin E protects against oxidation of cell membrane lipids by a process that you have seen before; namely, termination of a radical chain reaction.

Consider a cell membrane lipid derived from linoleic acid, which is an unsaturated fatty acid. Hydrogen atom abstraction of an allylic hydrogen by a hydroxyl radical leads to a resonance-stabilized free allylic radical in which the unpaired electron is delocalized over C-9, C-11, and C-13.



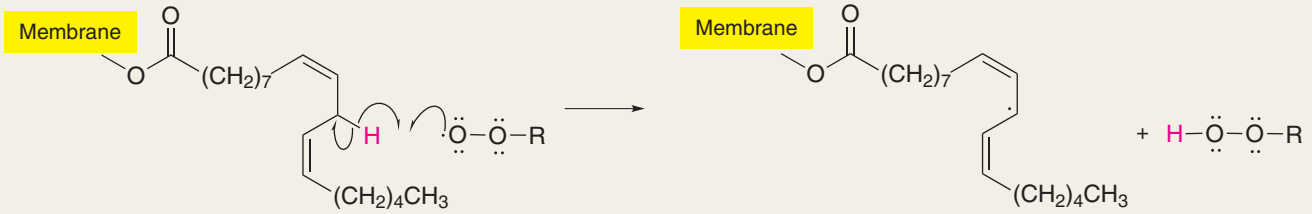
Linoleic portion of a cell membrane + hydroxyl radical

An allylic radical + water

Reaction of O_2 with this allylic radical is possible at any of the three carbons that share the unpaired electron to give a peroxyl radical according to the general equation:

Allylic radical from preceding equation — Oxygen — Peroxyl radical

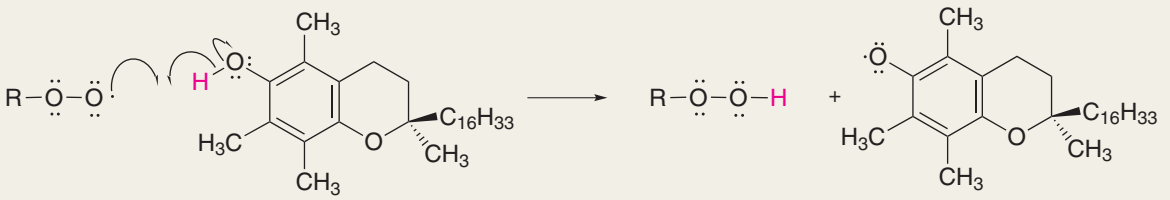
The peroxyl radical can then go on to abstract an allylic hydrogen from another molecule of lipid as part of a chain reaction that can damage the cell membrane.



Linoleic portion of a cell membrane + peroxyl radical

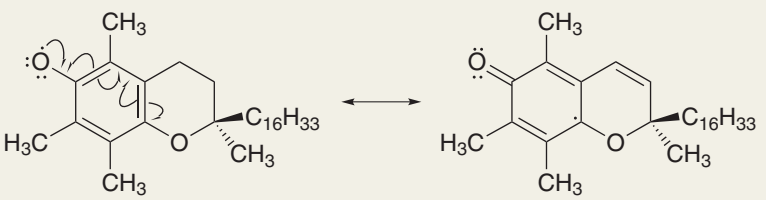
An allylic radical + a hydroperoxide

Vitamin E interferes with the chain-propagating step described in the preceding equation by transferring a hydrogen atom to the peroxyl radical, converting it to a less-reactive hydroperoxide and preventing further damage to the cell membrane.



Peroxyl radical — Vitamin E — A hydroperoxide — Vitamin E radical

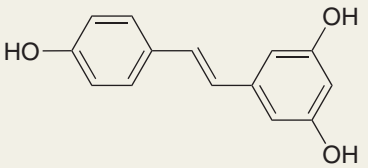
The vitamin E radical is stabilized by delocalization of the unpaired electron into the benzene ring and does not abstract hydrogen atoms from the lipid.



Vitamin E radical

Continued

Vitamin E is found in nuts, seeds, and vegetable and fish oils. Citrus fruits and juices are rich in vitamin C. In addition to vitamins C and E, it is estimated that over 4000 polyphenolic natural products with antioxidant properties are found in fruits and vegetables as well as in coffee, tea, red wine, and chocolate. The beneficial effects of resveratrol, a phenolic compound present in the skins of red grapes and other foods, are thought to originate in resveratrol's ability to act as an antioxidant.



Resveratrol

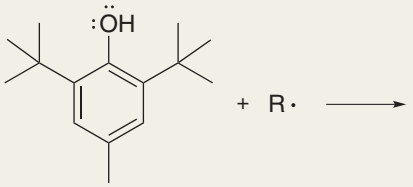
Excessive alcohol consumption as well as smoking are thought to increase oxidative stress, whereas regular exercise may actually enhance the body's antioxidant defense systems. So, it looks like it's more exercise, a better diet, and fewer martinis for 007!

Problem 22.10

The allyl radical of linoleic acid is stabilized by resonance involving the C-9–10 and C-12–13 double bonds. Show structures for each of these resonance contributors.

Problem 22.11

Phenolic compounds such as BHT (butylated hydroxytoluene) are added to food products to retard spoilage. What is the structure of the radical that would be formed from BHT when it reacts with an alkyl radical R·? Write a resonance contributor for this radical.



22.12 Cleavage of Aryl Ethers by Hydrogen Halides

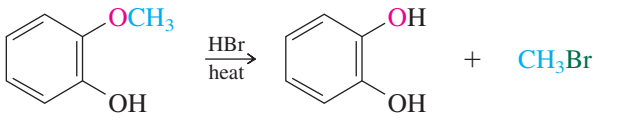
The cleavage of *dialkyl ethers* by hydrogen halides was discussed in Section 16.8, where it was noted that the same pair of alkyl halides results, irrespective of the order in which the carbon–oxygen bonds of the ether are broken.

$$\underset{\text{Dialkyl ether}}{ROR'} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen halide}}{2HX} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Two alkyl halides}}{RX + R'X} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O}$$

Cleavage of *alkyl aryl ethers* by hydrogen halides always proceeds so that the alkyl–oxygen bond is broken and yields an alkyl halide and a phenol as the *final* products. Either hydrogen bromide or hydrogen iodide is normally used.

$$\underset{\text{Alkyl aryl ether}}{ArOR} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen halide}}{HX} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Phenol}}{ArOH} + \underset{\text{Alkyl halide}}{RX}$$

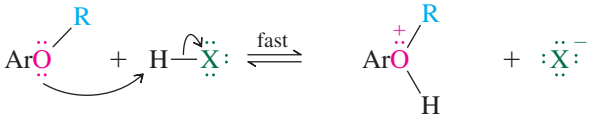
Because phenols are not converted to aryl halides by reaction with hydrogen halides, the reaction proceeds no further than shown in the preceding general equation. For example,



Guaiacol | Pyrocatechol (85–87%) | Methyl bromide (57–72%)

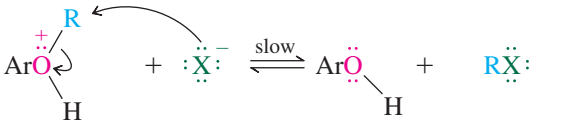
Guaiacol is obtained by chemical treatment of *lignum vitae*, the wood from a species of tree that grows in warm climates. It is sometimes used as an expectorant to help relieve bronchial congestion.

The first step in the reaction of an alkyl aryl ether with a hydrogen halide is protonation of oxygen to form an alkylaryloxonium ion:



Alkyl aryl ether | Hydrogen halide | Alkylaryloxonium ion | Halide ion

This is followed by a nucleophilic substitution step, which is S_N2-like if the alkyl group is primary or secondary.

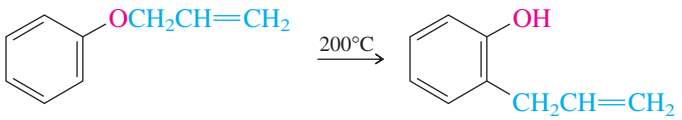


Alkylaryloxonium ion | Halide ion | Phenol | Alkyl halide

Attack by the halide nucleophile always occurs at the sp^3-hybridized carbon of the alkyl group and is analogous to what takes place in the cleavage of dialkyl ethers. Nucleophilic *aromatic* substitution does not occur under these conditions.

22.13 Claisen Rearrangement of Allyl Aryl Ethers

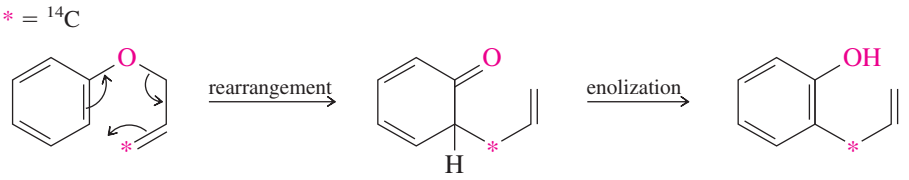
Allyl aryl ethers undergo an interesting reaction, called the **Claisen rearrangement,** on being heated. The allyl group migrates from oxygen to the ring carbon ortho to it.



Allyl phenyl ether | *o*-Allylphenol (73%)

Allyl phenyl ether is prepared by the reaction of phenol with allyl bromide, as described in Section 22.11.

Carbon-14 labeling of the allyl group reveals that the terminal carbon of the allyl group is the one that becomes bonded to the ring and suggests a mechanism involving a concerted electron reorganization in the first step. This step is followed by enolization of the resulting cyclohexadienone to regenerate the aromatic ring.

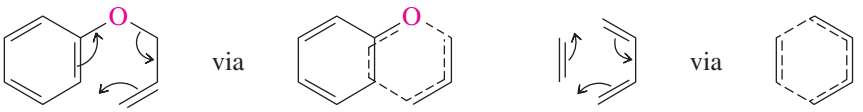


Allyl phenyl ether | 6-Allyl-2,4-cyclohexadienone | *o*-Allylphenol

Problem 22.12

The mechanism of the Claisen rearrangement of other allylic ethers of phenol is analogous to that of allyl phenyl ether. What is the product of the Claisen rearrangement of $C_6H_5OCH_2CH{=}CHCH_3$?

The transition state for the first step of the Claisen rearrangement bears much in common with the transition state for the Diels–Alder cycloaddition. Both involve a concerted six-electron reorganization.

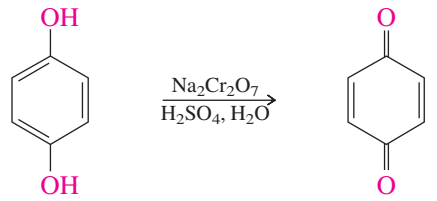


Claisen rearrangement Diels–Alder cycloaddition

The Claisen rearrangement is an example of a **sigmatropic rearrangement.** A sigmatropic rearrangement is characterized by a transition state in which a σ bond migrates from one end of a conjugated π electron system to the other. In this case the σ bond to oxygen at one end of an allyl unit is broken and replaced by a σ bond to the ring carbon at the other end.

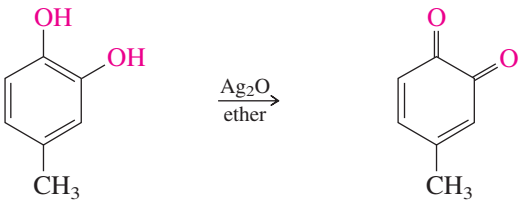
22.14 Oxidation of Phenols: Quinones

Phenols are more easily oxidized than alcohols, and a large number of inorganic oxidizing agents have been used for this purpose. The phenol oxidations that are of the most use to the organic chemist are those involving derivatives of 1,2-benzenediol (pyrocatechol) and 1,4-benzenediol (hydroquinone). Oxidation of compounds of this type with silver oxide or with chromic acid yields conjugated dicarbonyl compounds called **quinones.**



Hydroquinone *p*-Benzoquinone (76–81%)

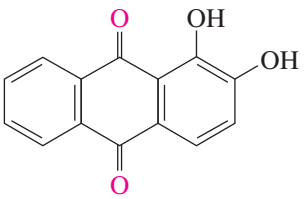
Silver oxide is a weak oxidizing agent.



4-Methylpyrocatechol (4-methyl-1,2-benzenediol) 4-Methyl-1,2-benzoquinone (68%)

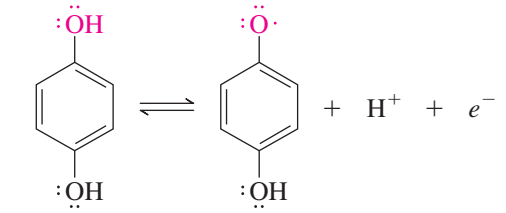
Quinones are colored; *p*-benzoquinone, for example, is yellow. Many occur naturally and have been used as dyes. *Alizarin* is a red pigment extracted from the roots of the madder plant. Its preparation from anthracene, a coal tar derivative, in 1868 was a significant step in the development of the synthetic dyestuff industry.

Quinones that are based on the anthracene ring system are called *anthraquinones.* Alizarin is one example of an *anthraquinone dye.*

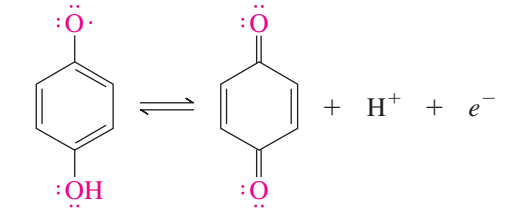


Alizarin

The oxidation–reduction process that connects hydroquinone and benzoquinone involves two 1-electron transfers:

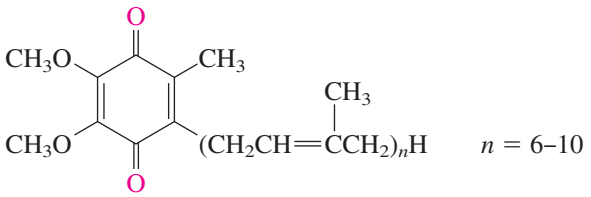


Hydroquinone



Benzoquinone

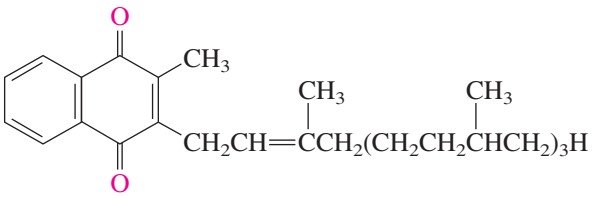
The ready reversibility of this reaction is essential to the role that quinones play in cellular respiration, the process by which an organism uses molecular oxygen to convert its food to carbon dioxide, water, and energy. Electrons are not transferred directly from the substrate molecule to oxygen but instead are transferred by way of an *electron transport chain* involving a succession of oxidation–reduction reactions. A key component of this electron transport chain is the substance known as *ubiquinone,* or **coenzyme Q:**



Ubiquinone (coenzyme Q)

The name *ubiquinone* is a shortened form of *ubiquitous quinone,* a term coined to describe the observation that this substance can be found in all cells. The length of its side chain varies among different organisms; the most common form in vertebrates has $n = 10$, and ubiquinones in which $n = 6$ to 9 are found in yeasts and plants.

Another physiologically important quinone is vitamin K. Here "K" stands for *koagulation* (Danish) because this substance was first identified as essential for the normal clotting of blood.



Vitamin K

Some vitamin K is provided in the normal diet, but a large proportion of that required by humans is produced by their intestinal flora.

Intestinal flora is a general term for the bacteria, yeast, and fungi that live in the large intestine.

22.15 Spectroscopic Analysis of Phenols

Infrared: The IR spectra of phenols combine features of those of alcohols and aromatic compounds. Hydroxyl absorbances resulting from O—H stretching are found in the 3600-cm^{-1} region, and the peak due to C—O stretching appears around 1200–1250 cm^{-1}. These features can be seen in the IR spectrum of 4-methylphenol, shown in Figure 22.2.

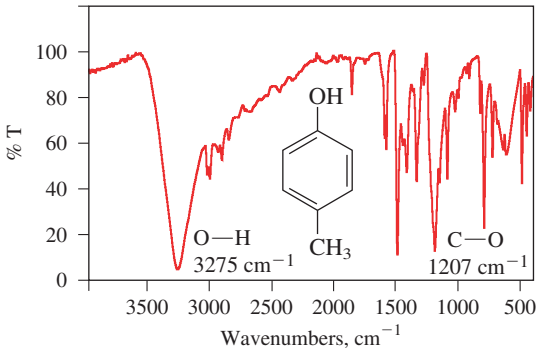
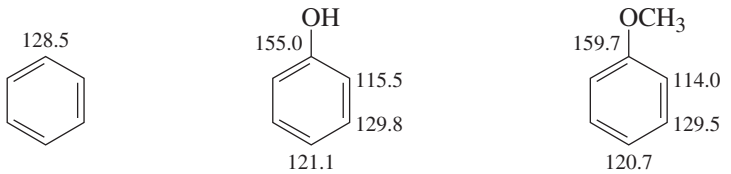


Figure 22.2

The infrared spectrum of 4-methylphenol.

^{1}H NMR: The ^{1}H NMR signals for the hydroxyl protons of phenols are often broad, and their chemical shift, like their acidity, lies between alcohols and carboxylic acids. The range is δ 4–12, with the exact chemical shift depending on the concentration, the solvent, and the temperature.

^{13}C NMR: The —OH group of a phenol has its largest effects on the carbon to which it is attached, and those ortho to it. The —OH group *deshields* the carbon to which it is attached by about 25 ppm, while *shielding* the ortho carbon by about 14 ppm. Aryl ethers behave similarly.

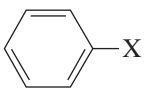


Benzene Phenol Anisole

^{13}C Chemical shifts δ (ppm)

Notice, too, that the most shielded carbons of the aromatic ring are the ones that are ortho and para to the hydroxyl group in keeping with our experience that the OH group donates electrons preferentially to these positions.

UV-VIS: Just as with arylamines (see Section 21.19), it is informative to look at the UV-VIS behavior of phenols in terms of how the OH group affects the benzene chromophore.



	X	λ_{max} ***(nm)***
Benzene	H	204, 256
Aniline	NH_2	230, 280
Phenol	OH	210, 270
Phenoxide ion	O^-	235, 287

An OH group affects the UV-VIS spectrum of benzene in a way similar to that of an NH_2 group, but to a smaller extent. In basic solution, in which OH is converted to O^-, however, the shift to longer wavelengths exceeds that of an NH_2 group.

Mass Spectrometry: A peak for the molecular ion is usually quite prominent in the mass spectra of phenols. It is, for example, the most intense peak in phenol.

22.16 SUMMARY

Section 22.1 Phenol is both an important industrial chemical and the parent of a large class of compounds widely distributed as natural products. Although *benzenol* is the systematic name for C_6H_5OH, the IUPAC rules permit *phenol* to be used instead. Substituted derivatives are named on the basis of phenol as the parent compound.

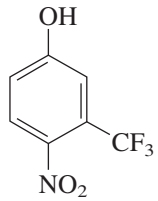
Section 22.2 Phenols are polar compounds, but less polar than alcohols. They resemble arylamines in having an electron-rich aromatic ring.

Section 22.3 The —OH group of phenols makes it possible for them to participate in hydrogen bonding. This contributes to the higher boiling points and greater water-solubility of phenolic compounds compared with arenes and aryl halides.

Section 22.4 With pK_a's of approximately 10, phenols are stronger acids than alcohols, but weaker than carboxylic acids. They are converted quantitatively to phenoxide anions on treatment with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

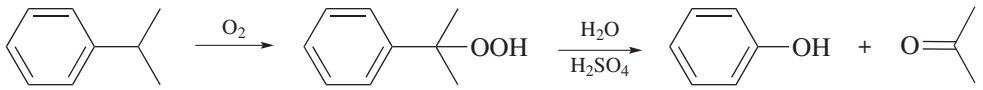
$$ArOH + NaOH \rightarrow ArONa + H_2O$$

Section 22.5 Electron-releasing substituents attached to the ring have a negligible effect on the acidity of phenols. Strongly electron-withdrawing groups increase the acidity. The compound 4-nitro-3-(trifluoromethyl)phenol, for example, is 10,000 times more acidic than phenol.



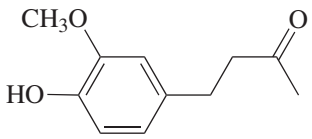
4-Nitro-3-(trifluoromethyl)phenol:
pK_a = 6.0

Section 22.6 An industrial process for the preparation of phenol involves oxidation of isopropylbenzene with oxygen and treatment of the resulting hydroperoxide with dilute sulfuric acid.



Isopropylbenzene (cumene) | 1-Methyl-1-phenylethyl hydroperoxide | Phenol | Acetone

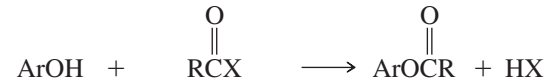
Section 22.7 Many phenols occur naturally.

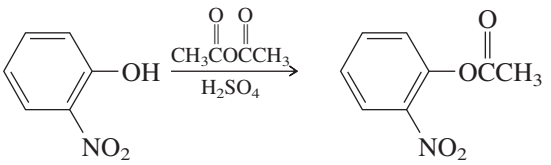


Zingerone
(responsible for spicy taste of ginger)

Section 22.8 The hydroxyl group of a phenol is a strongly activating substituent, and electrophilic aromatic substitution occurs readily in phenol and its derivatives. Typical examples were presented in Table 22.3.

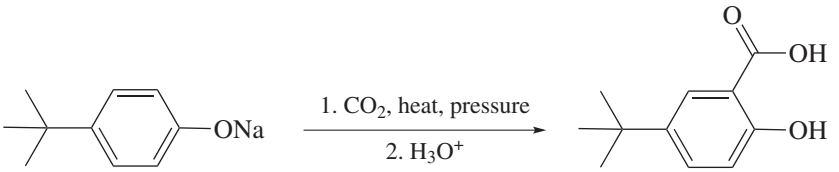
Section 22.9 On reaction with acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides, phenols may undergo either acylation of the hydroxyl group (O-acylation) or acylation of the ring (C-acylation). The product of C-acylation is more stable and predominates under conditions of thermodynamic control when aluminum chloride is present (see entry 6 in Table 22.3, Section 22.8). O-acylation is faster than C-acylation, and aryl esters are formed under conditions of kinetic control.





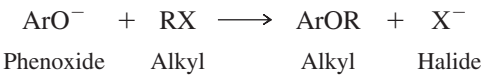
o-Nitrophenol *o*-Nitrophenyl acetate (93%)

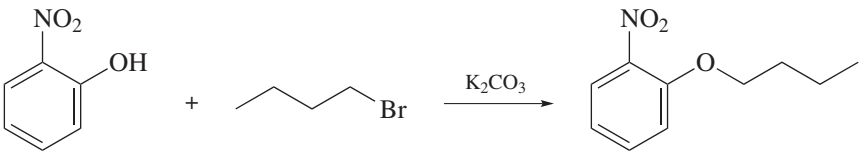
Section 22.10 The Kolbe–Schmitt synthesis of salicylic acid is a vital step in the preparation of aspirin. Phenols, as their sodium salts, undergo highly regioselective ortho carboxylation on treatment with carbon dioxide at elevated temperature and pressure.



Sodium *p*-*tert*-butylphenoxide 5-*tert*-Butyl-2-hydroxybenzoic acid (74%)

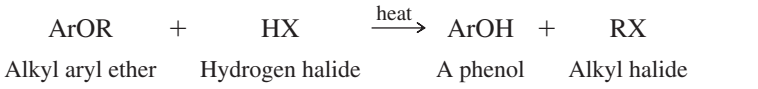
Section 22.11 Phenoxide anions are nucleophilic toward alkyl halides, and the preparation of alkyl aryl ethers is easily achieved under S_N2 conditions.

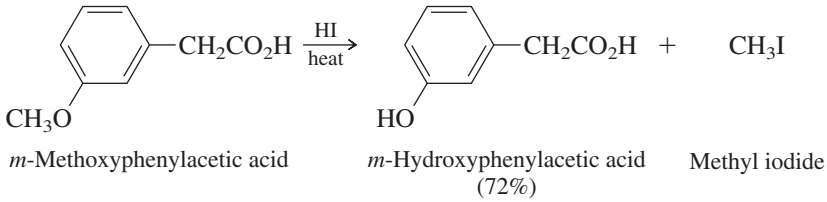




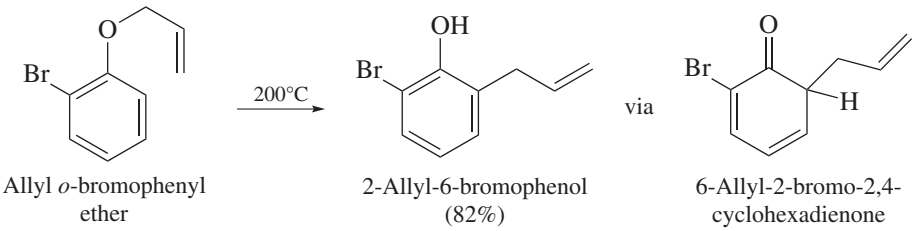
o-Nitrophenol 1-Bromobutane Butyl *o*-nitrophenyl ether (75-80%)

Section 22.12 The cleavage of alkyl aryl ethers by hydrogen halides yields a phenol and an alkyl halide.

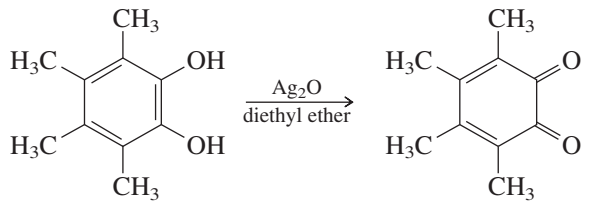




Section 22.13 On being heated, allyl aryl ethers undergo a **Claisen rearrangement** to form *o*-allylphenols. A cyclohexadienone, formed by a concerted six-π-electron reorganization, is an intermediate.



Section 22.14 Oxidation of 1,2- and 1,4-benzenediols gives colored compounds known as **quinones.**



Section 22.15 The IR and ^{1}H NMR spectra of phenols are similar to those for alcohols, except that the OH proton is somewhat less shielded in a phenol than in an alcohol. In ^{13}C NMR, an OH group deshields the carbon of an aromatic ring to which it is attached. An OH group causes a shift in the UV-VIS spectrum of benzene to longer wavelengths. The effect is quite large in basic solution because of conversion of OH to O^-.

PROBLEMS

22.13 The IUPAC rules permit the use of common names for a number of familiar phenols and aryl ethers. These common names are listed here along with their systematic names. Write the structure of each compound.

(a) *Vanillin* (4-hydroxy-3-methoxybenzaldehyde): a component of vanilla bean oil, which contributes to its characteristic flavor

(b) *Thymol* (2-isopropyl-5-methylphenol): obtained from oil of thyme

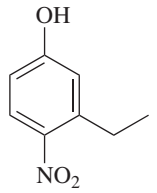
(c) *Carvacrol* (5-isopropyl-2-methylphenol): present in oil of thyme and marjoram

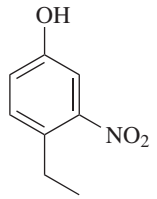
(d) *Eugenol* (4-allyl-2-methoxyphenol): obtained from oil of cloves

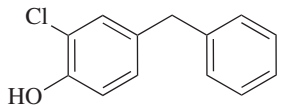
(e) *Gallic acid* (3,4,5-trihydroxybenzoic acid): prepared by hydrolysis of tannins derived from plants

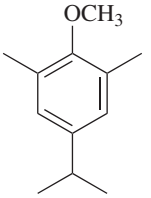
(f) *Salicyl alcohol* (*o*-hydroxybenzyl alcohol): obtained from bark of poplar and willow trees

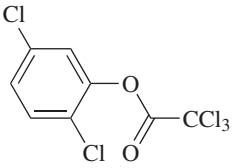
22.14 Name each of the following compounds:

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

(d) 

(e) 

22.15 Write a balanced chemical equation for each of the following reactions:

(a) Phenol + sodium hydroxide
(b) Product of part (a) + ethyl bromide
(c) Product of part (a) + butyl *p*-toluenesulfonate
(d) Product of part (a) + acetic anhydride
(e) *o*-Cresol + benzoyl chloride
(f) *m*-Cresol + ethylene oxide
(g) 2,6-Dichlorophenol + bromine
(h) *p*-Cresol + excess aqueous bromine
(i) Isopropyl phenyl ether + excess hydrogen bromide + heat

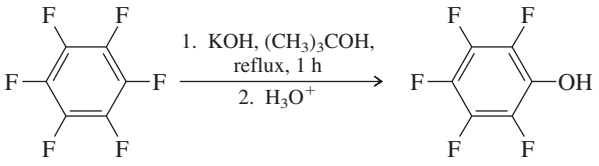
22.16 Which phenol in each of the following pairs is more acidic? Justify your choice.

(a) 2,4,6-Trimethylphenol or 2,4,6-trinitrophenol
(b) 2,6-Dichlorophenol or 3,5-dichlorophenol
(c) 3-Nitrophenol or 4-nitrophenol
(d) Phenol or 4-cyanophenol
(e) 2,5-Dinitrophenol or 2,6-dinitrophenol

22.17 Choose the reaction in each of the following pairs that proceeds at the faster rate. Explain your reasoning.

(a) Basic hydrolysis of phenyl acetate or *m*-nitrophenyl acetate
(b) Basic hydrolysis of *m*-nitrophenyl acetate or *p*-nitrophenyl acetate
(c) Reaction of ethyl bromide with phenol or with the sodium salt of phenol
(d) Reaction of ethylene oxide with the sodium salt of phenol or with the sodium salt of *p*-nitrophenol
(e) Bromination of phenol or phenyl acetate

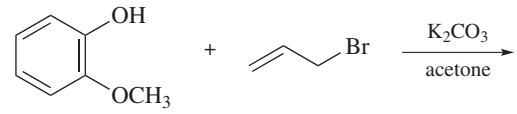
22.18 Pentafluorophenol is readily prepared by heating hexafluorobenzene with potassium hydroxide in *tert*-butyl alcohol:

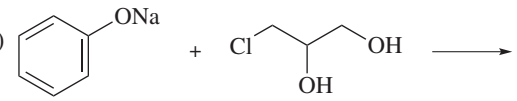


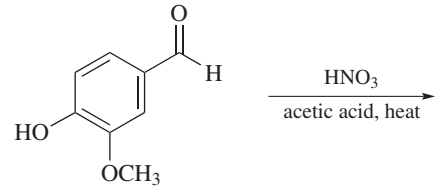
Hexafluorobenzene Pentafluorophenol (71%)

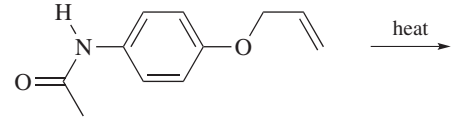
What is the most reasonable mechanism for this reaction? Comment on the comparative ease with which this conversion occurs.

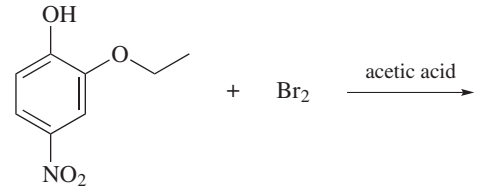
22.19 Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature and proceeds cleanly in good yield. Identify the principal organic product in each case.

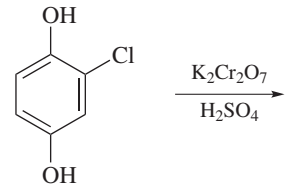
(a) 

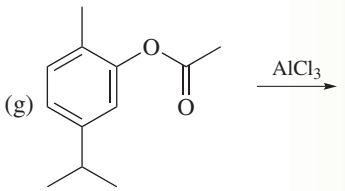
(b) 

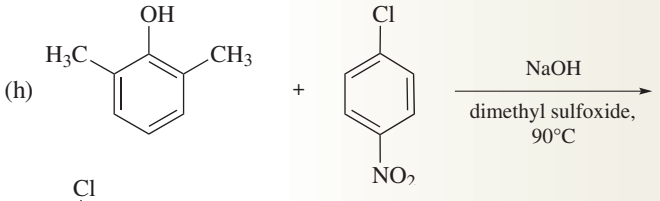
(c) 

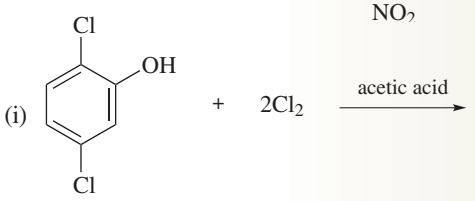
(d) 

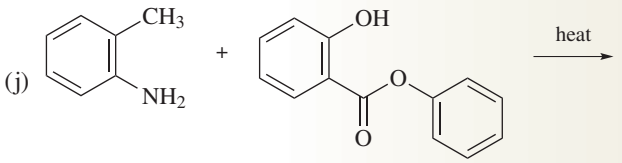
(e) 

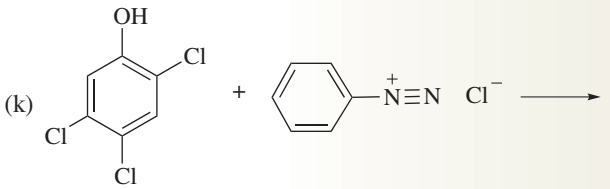
(f) 

(g) 

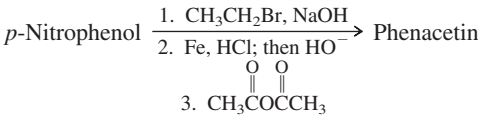
(h) 

(i) 

(j) 

(k) 

22.20 A synthesis of the pain reliever *phenacetin* is outlined in the following equation. What is the structure of phenacetin?



22.21 Identify compounds A through C in the synthetic sequence represented by equations (a) through (c).

(a) Phenol + H_2SO_4 $\xrightarrow{\text{heat}}$ Compound A ($C_6H_6O_7S_2$)

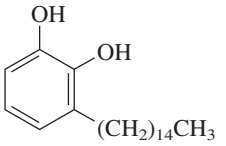
(b) Compound A + Br_2 $\xrightarrow[2.\ H^+]{1.\ HO^-}$ Compound B ($C_6H_5BrO_7S_2$)

(c) Compound B + H_2O $\xrightarrow[\text{heat}]{H^+}$ Compound C (C_6H_5BrO)

22.22 Treatment of 3,5-dimethylphenol with dilute nitric acid, followed by steam distillation of the reaction mixture, gave a compound A ($C_8H_9NO_3$, mp 66°C) in 36% yield. The nonvolatile residue from the steam distillation gave a compound B ($C_8H_9NO_3$, mp 108°C) in 25% yield on extraction with chloroform. Identify compounds A and B.

22.23 Outline a reasonable synthesis of 4-nitrophenyl phenyl ether from chlorobenzene and phenol.

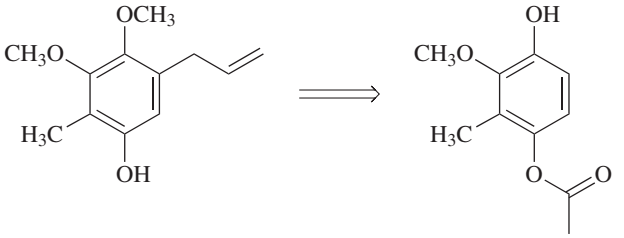
22.24 As an allergen for testing purposes, synthetic 3-pentadecylcatechol is more useful than natural poison ivy extracts (of which it is one component). A stable crystalline solid, it is efficiently prepared in pure form from readily available starting materials. Outline a reasonable synthesis of this compound from 2,3-dimethoxybenzaldehyde and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.



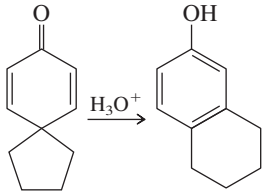
3-Pentadecylcatechol

22.25 Reaction of phenol with 1,2-epoxypropane in aqueous sodium hydroxide at 150°C gives a single product, $C_9H_{12}O_2$, in 90% yield. Suggest a reasonable structure for this compound.

22.26 The following retrosynthetic analysis summarizes a synthetic plan that has been executed in four separate steps. Write equations appropriate for those steps.



22.27 In a general reaction known as the *cyclohexadienone–phenol rearrangement,* cyclohexadienones are converted to phenols under conditions of acid catalysis. An example is



(100%)

Write a reasonable mechanism for this reaction.

22.28 Treatment of *p*-hydroxybenzoic acid with aqueous bromine leads to the evolution of carbon dioxide and the formation of 2,4,6-tribromophenol. Explain.

22.29 Treatment of phenol with excess aqueous bromine is actually more complicated than expected. A white precipitate forms rapidly, which on closer examination is not 2,4,6-tribromophenol but is instead 2,4,4,6-tetrabromocyclohexadienone. Explain the formation of this product.

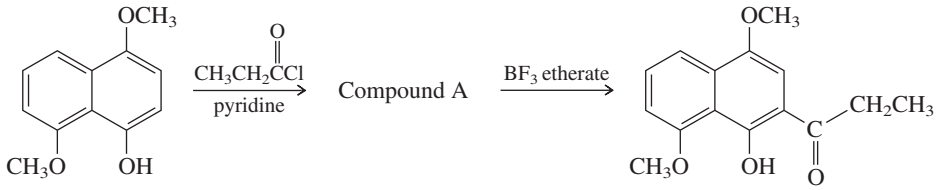
22.30 Treatment of 2,4,6-tri-*tert*-butylphenol with bromine in cold acetic acid gives the compound $C_{18}H_{29}BrO$ in quantitative yield. The infrared spectrum of this compound contains absorptions at 1630 and 1655 cm^{-1}. Its ^1H NMR spectrum shows only three peaks (all singlets), at δ 1.2, 1.3, and 6.9, in the ratio 9:18:2. What is a reasonable structure for the compound?

22.31 Compound A undergoes hydrolysis of its acetal function in dilute sulfuric acid to yield 1,2-ethanediol and compound B ($C_6H_6O_2$), mp 54°C. Compound B exhibits a carbonyl stretching band in the infrared at 1690 cm^{-1} and has two singlets in its ^1H NMR spectrum, at δ 2.9 and 6.7, in the ratio 2:1. On standing in water or ethanol, compound B is converted

cleanly to an isomeric substance, compound C, mp 172–173°C. Compound C has no peaks attributable to carbonyl groups in its infrared spectrum. Identify compounds B and C.

Compound A

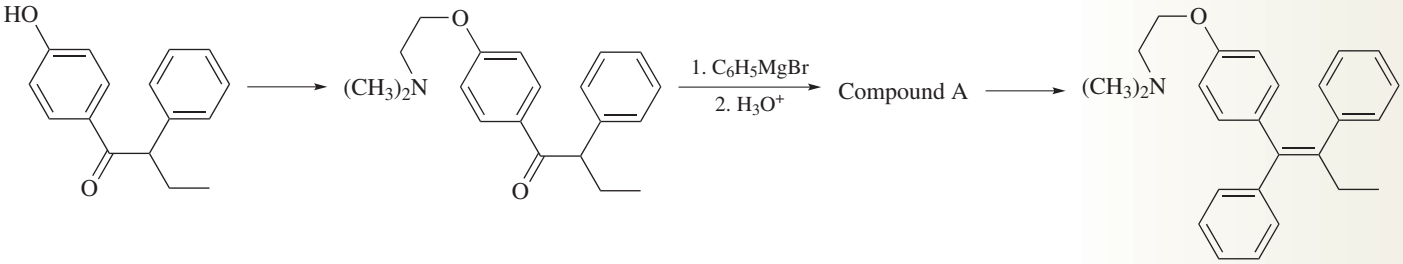
22.32 In a study aimed at the synthesis of analogs of anthracycline antibiotics, 4,8-dimethoxynaphthalen-1-ol was converted to 4,8-dimethoxy-2-propanoylnaphthalen-1-ol by the following sequence of reactions. What is compound A?



4,8-Dimethoxynaphthalen-1-ol

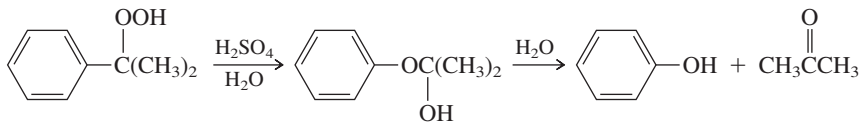
4,8-Dimethoxy-2-propanoylnaphthalen-1-ol

22.33 Tamoxifen is an estrogen receptor modulator that is used in the treatment of breast cancer. Provide the missing reagents and the structure of compound A in the synthesis of tamoxifen.



Tamoxifen

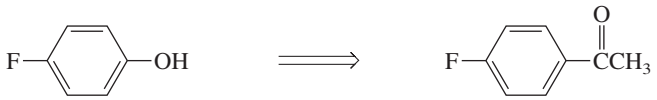
22.34 One of the industrial processes for the preparation of phenol, discussed in Section 22.6, includes an acid-catalyzed rearrangement of cumene hydroperoxide as a key step. This reaction proceeds by way of an intermediate hemiacetal:



Cumene hydroperoxide — Hemiketal — Phenol — Acetone

You learned in Section 17.8 of the relationship among hemiketals, ketones, and alcohols; the formation of phenol and acetone is an example of hemiketal hydrolysis. The formation of the hemiketal intermediate is a key step in the synthetic procedure; it is the step in which the aryl–oxygen bond is generated. Can you suggest a reasonable mechanism for this step?

22.35 Devise a synthesis of the compound shown on the left from the indicated starting materials and any other necessary reagents.



22.36 Identify the following compounds on the basis of the information provided:

(a) $C_9H_{12}O$: Its IR and ^{13}C NMR spectra are shown in Figure 22.4.

(b) $C_9H_{11}BrO$: Its IR and ^{13}C NMR spectra are shown in Figure 22.5.

Figure 22.3

(*a*) Infrared and (*b*) ^{13}C NMR spectra of the compound $C_9H_{12}O$ (Problem 22.36(*a*)).

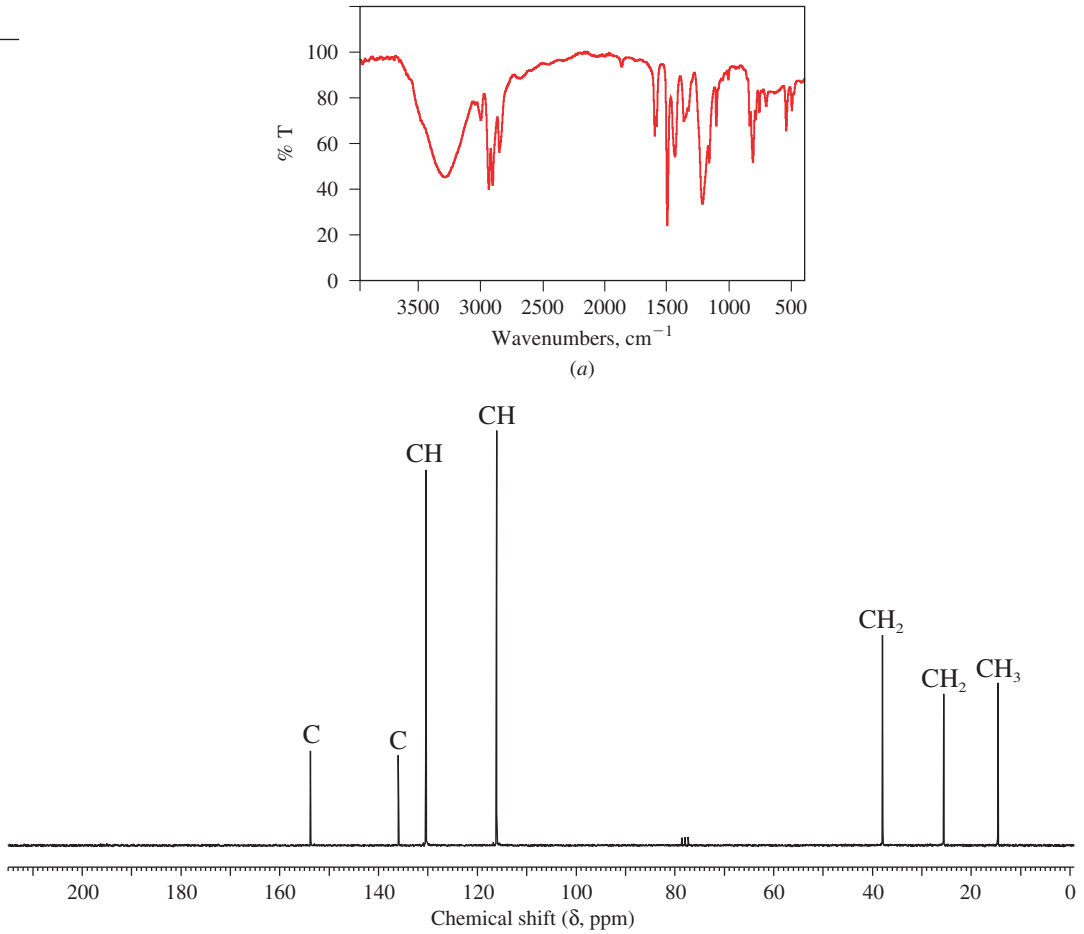
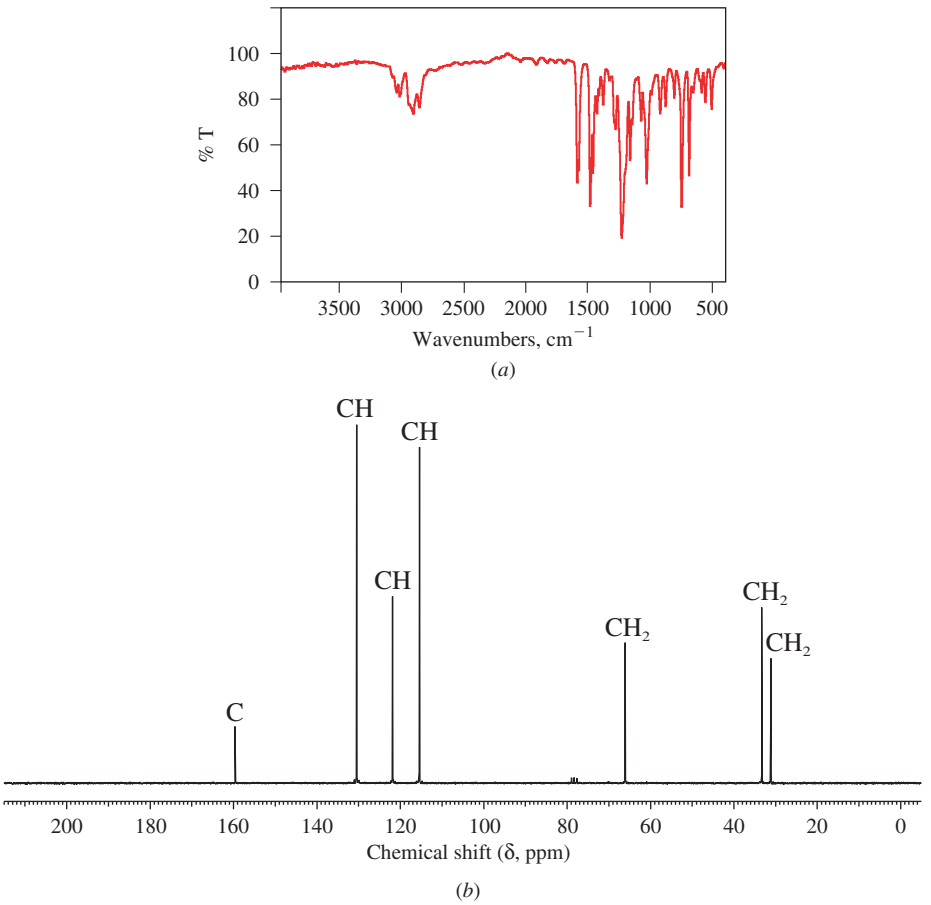


Figure 22.4

(*a*) Infrared and (*b*) ^{13}C NMR spectra of the compound $C_9H_{11}BrO$ (Problem 22.36(*b*)).



Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 22

Directed Metalation of Aryl Ethers

Aryllithium reagents are familiar to us as the products of the reaction of aryl halides with lithium. A second route to aryllithiums is by deprotonation of an aromatic ring with an alkyllithium reagent. This process is called *metalation*.

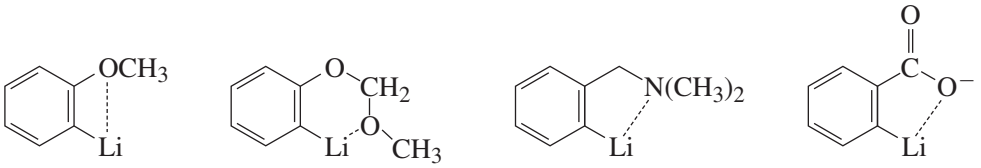
$$\underset{\text{Arene}}{\text{Ar—H}} + \underset{\text{Alkyllithium}}{\text{R—Li}} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Aryllithium}}{\text{Ar—Li}} + \underset{\text{Alkane}}{\text{R—H}}$$

($pK_a \approx 43$) ($pK_a \approx 60$-70)

Although reasonable from an acid–base perspective (stronger acid on the left, weaker acid on the right), reactions such as this are inconveniently slow and not practical as a general method for making aryllithiums. Certain substitutents on an aromatic ring, however, both promote metalation and control its regioselectivity.

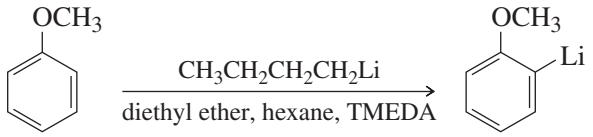
X = OCH_3, OCH_2OCH_3, CH_2OH, CO_2^-, $N(CH_3)_2$, $CH_2N(CH_3)_2$, $\overset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{C}}NHR$, and others

These *directed metalations* are regioselective for lithiation at carbons ortho to the substituent. The substituents contain atoms, especially oxygen and nitrogen, capable of coordinating to lithium. This coordination is reflected in the transition state for proton abstraction and causes lithiation to be fastest at the carbons ortho to the substituent.



X = OCH_3 X = OCH_2OCH_3 X = $CH_2N(CH_3)_2$ X = CO_2^-

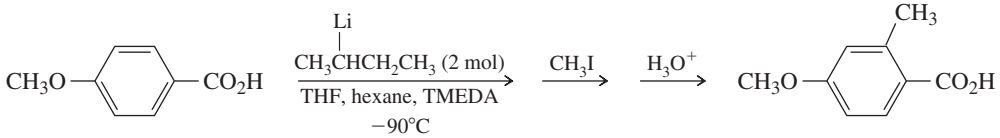
Typical conditions for metalation involve treating a diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran solution of the aryl derivative with an alkyllithium in hexane. *N,N,N′,N′*-Tetramethylethylenediamine [$(CH_3)_2NCH_2CH_2N(CH_3)_2$, TMEDA] is sometimes added to increase the rate of metalation.



Once formed, the ortho-metalated derivative undergoes the usual reactions of organolithium reagents.

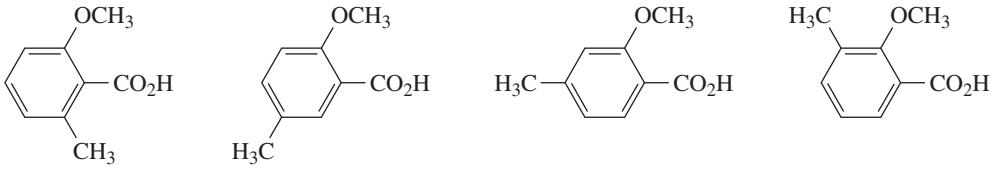
The directing effects associated with electrophilic aromatic substitution play no role in directed metalation. Likewise, steric effects are not very important. It is common, for example, for metalation to occur at C-2 of a 1,3-disubstituted benzene.

22.37 4-Methoxybenzoic acid was metalated and allowed to react with methyl iodide as shown in the equation. (Two molar equivalents of *sec*-butyllithium are required because one equivalent is needed to deprotonate the CO_2H group.)

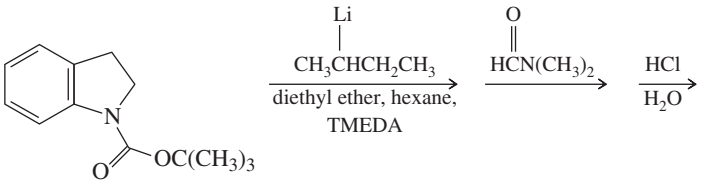


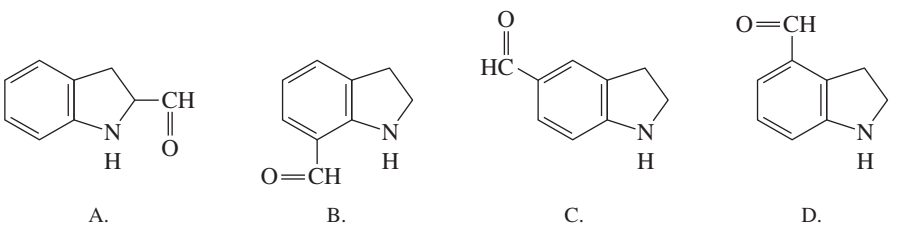
(major product)

Predict the major product of the analogous methylation of 2-methoxybenzoic acid.

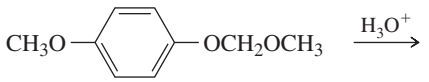


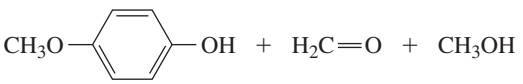
22.38 Even though the following sequence, reported in the chemical literature, includes an unfamiliar reaction, you should be able to deduce the structure of the product from among the possible choices.

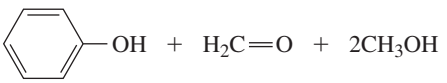


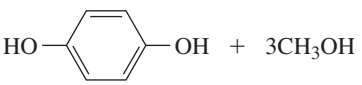


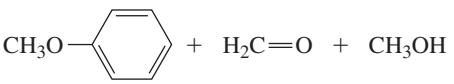
22.39 The methoxymethyl group is an acetal, easily removed by acid hydrolysis. What are the products of the following hydrolysis?



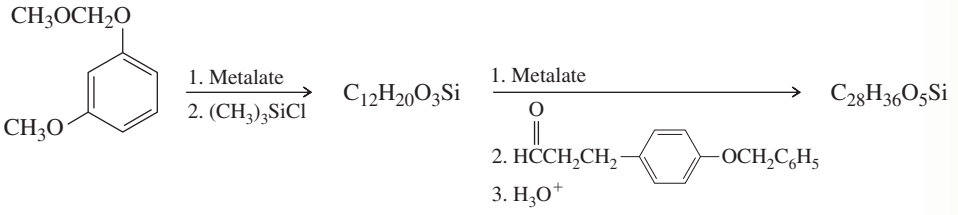
A. 

B. 

C. 

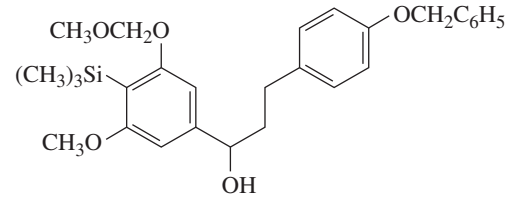
D. 

22.40 A synthesis of a natural product (broussonin A) began with metalation and trimethylsilylation of compound **1** to give **2.** Compound **2** was metalated and the resulting organolithium reagent treated with 3-(*p*-benzyloxy)propanal to give compound **3.** Subsequent transformations of **3** gave broussonin A ($C_{16}H_{18}O_3$). Which of the choices is most reasonable for compound **3**?

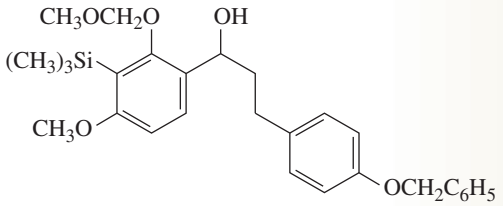


1 **2** **3**

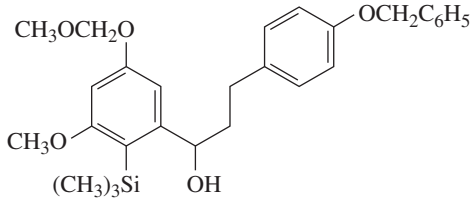
A.



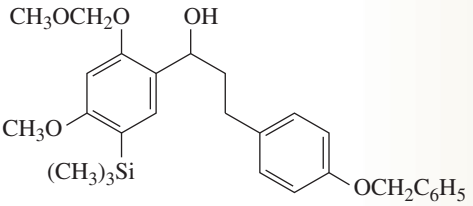
C.



B.



D.



23

CHAPTER OUTLINE

23.1 Classification of Carbohydrates 947
23.2 Fischer Projections and D,L Notation 948
23.3 The Aldotetroses 949
23.4 Aldopentoses and Aldohexoses 950
23.5 A Mnemonic for Carbohydrate Configurations 952
23.6 Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates: Furanose Forms 952
23.7 Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates: Pyranose Forms 956
23.8 Mutarotation 958
23.9 Carbohydrate Conformation: The Anomeric Effect 960
23.10 Ketoses 962
23.11 Deoxy Sugars 963
23.12 Amino Sugars 964
23.13 Branched-Chain Carbohydrates 965
23.14 Glycosides: The Fischer Glycosidation 965
23.15 Disaccharides 969
23.16 Polysaccharides 971
■ How Sweet It Is! 972
23.17 Application of Familiar Reactions to Monosaccharides 973
23.18 Oxidation of Monosaccharides 976
23.19 Glycosides: Synthesis of Oligosaccharides 978
23.20 Glycobiology 981
23.22 **Summary** 983
Problems 984
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 23: Emil Fischer and the Structure of (+)-Glucose 989

Hummingbirds receive nourishment from flower nectar. Nectar contains glucose (shown), fructose, and sucrose.

Carbohydrates

The major classes of organic compounds common to living things are *lipids, proteins, nucleic acids,* and *carbohydrates.* Carbohydrates are very familiar to us—we call many of them "sugars." They make up a substantial portion of the food we eat and provide most of the energy that keeps the human engine running. Carbohydrates are structural components of the walls of plant cells and the wood of trees; they are also major components of the exoskeletons of insects, crabs, and lobsters. Carbohydrates are found on every cell surface, where they provide the molecular basis for cell-to-cell communication. Genetic information is stored and transferred by way of nucleic acids, specialized derivatives of carbohydrates, which we'll examine in more detail in Chapter 26.

Historically, carbohydrates were once considered to be "hydrates of carbon" because their molecular formulas in many (but not all) cases correspond to $C_n(H_2O)_m$. It is more realistic to define a carbohydrate as a *polyhydroxy aldehyde* or *polyhydroxy ketone,* a point of view closer to structural reality and more suggestive of chemical reactivity.

This chapter is divided into two parts. The first, and major, portion is devoted to carbohydrate *structure.* You will see how the principles of stereochemistry and conformational analysis combine to aid our understanding of this complex subject. The second portion of the chapter describes chemical *reactions* of carbohydrates. Most of these reactions are simply extensions of what you have already learned concerning alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, and acetals. The two areas—structure and reactions—meet in Section 23.20 where we consider the role of carbohydrates in the emerging field of glycobiology.

23.1 Classification of Carbohydrates

The Latin word for *sugar* is *saccharum,* and the derived term *saccharide* is the basis of a system of carbohydrate classification. A **monosaccharide** is a simple carbohydrate, one that on attempted hydrolysis is not cleaved to smaller carbohydrates. *Glucose* ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), for example, is a monosaccharide. A **disaccharide** on hydrolysis is cleaved to two monosaccharides, which may be the same or different. *Sucrose*—common table sugar—is a disaccharide that yields one molecule of glucose and one of fructose on hydrolysis.

Sugar is a combination of the Sanskrit words *su* (sweet) and *gar* (sand). Thus, its literal meaning is "sweet sand."

$$\text{Sucrose } (C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}) + H_2O \longrightarrow \text{glucose } (C_6H_{12}O_6) + \text{fructose } (C_6H_{12}O_6)$$

An **oligosaccharide** (*oligos* is a Greek word that in its plural form means "few") yields two or more monosaccharides on hydrolysis. Thus, the IUPAC classifies disaccharides, trisaccharides, and so on as subcategories of oligosaccharides.

Polysaccharides are hydrolyzed to "many" monosaccharides. The IUPAC has chosen not to specify the number of monosaccharide components that separates oligosaccharides from polysaccharides. The standard is a more practical one; it notes that an oligosaccharide is homogeneous. Each molecule of a particular oligosaccharide has the same number of monosaccharide units joined together in the same order as every other molecule of the same oligosaccharide. Polysaccharides are almost always mixtures of molecules having similar, but not necessarily the same, chain length. *Cellulose,* for example, is a polysaccharide that gives thousands of glucose molecules on hydrolysis but only a small fraction of the cellulose chains contain exactly the same number of glucose units.

Over 200 different monosaccharides are known. They can be grouped according to the number of carbon atoms they contain and whether they are polyhydroxy aldehydes or polyhydroxy ketones. Monosaccharides that are polyhydroxy aldehydes are called **aldoses;** those that are polyhydroxy ketones are **ketoses.** Aldoses and ketoses are further classified according to the number of carbon atoms in the main chain. Table 23.1 lists the terms applied to monosaccharides having four to eight carbon atoms.

TABLE 23.1 Some Classes of Monosaccharides

Number of carbon atoms	Aldose	Ketose
Four	Aldotetrose	Ketotetrose
Five	Aldopentose	Ketopentose
Six	Aldohexose	Ketohexose
Seven	Aldoheptose	Ketoheptose
Eight	Aldooctose	Ketooctose

23.2 Fischer Projections and D,L Notation

Fischer determined the structure of glucose in 1900 and won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1902.

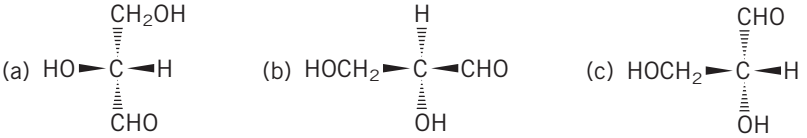
Stereochemistry is the key to understanding carbohydrate structure, a fact that was clearly appreciated by the German chemist Emil Fischer. The projection formulas used by Fischer to represent stereochemistry in chiral molecules (see Section 7.7) are particularly well-suited to studying carbohydrates. Figure 23.1 illustrates their application to the enantiomers of *glyceraldehyde* (2,3-dihydroxypropanal), a fundamental molecule in carbohydrate stereochemistry. When the Fischer projection is oriented as shown in the figure, with the carbon chain vertical and the aldehyde carbon at the top, the C-2 hydroxyl group points to the right in (+)-glyceraldehyde and to the left in (−)-glyceraldehyde.

Adopting the enantiomers of glyceraldehyde as stereochemical reference compounds originated with proposals made in 1906 by M. A. Rosanoff, a chemist at New York University.

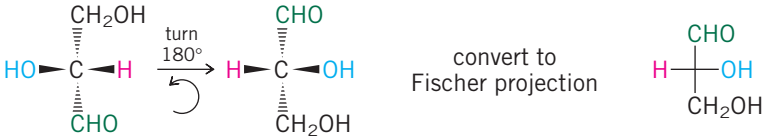
Techniques for determining the absolute configuration of chiral molecules were not developed until the 1950s, and so it was not possible for Fischer and his contemporaries to relate the sign of rotation of any substance to its absolute configuration. A system evolved based on the arbitrary assumption, later shown to be correct, that the enantiomers of glyceraldehyde have the signs of rotation and absolute configurations shown in Figure 23.1. Two stereochemical descriptors were defined: D and L: D from the Latin (dexter) for right and L from the Latin (laevus) for left. The absolute configuration of (+)-glyceraldehyde was said to be D and that of its enantiomer, (−)-glyceraldehyde, L, as depicted in Figure 23.1. Compounds that had a spatial arrangement of substituents analogous to (+)-D- or (−)-L-glyceraldehyde were said to have the D or L configurations.

Problem 23.1

Identify each of the following as either D- or L-glyceraldehyde:



Sample Solution (a) To compare the structure given to glyceraldehyde most easily, turn it 180° in the plane of the page so that CHO is at the top and CH_2OH is at the bottom. Rotation in this sense keeps the horizontal bonds pointing forward, and the vertical bonds pointing back making it an easy matter to convert the structural drawing to a Fischer projection.



The structure is the same as that of (+)-glyceraldehyde in Figure 23.1. It is D-glyceraldehyde.

Fischer projections and D,L notation have proved to be so helpful in representing carbohydrate stereochemistry that the chemical and biochemical literature is replete with their use. To read that literature you need to be acquainted with these devices, as well as the more modern Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R,S* system.

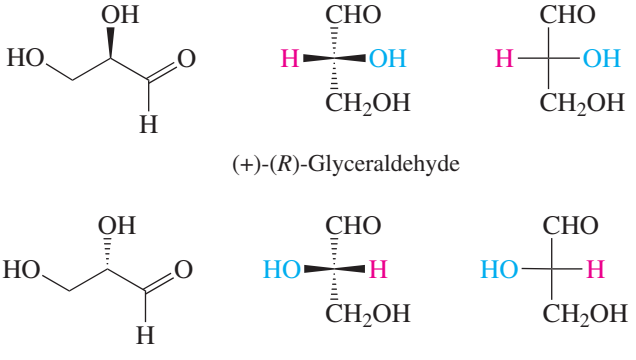


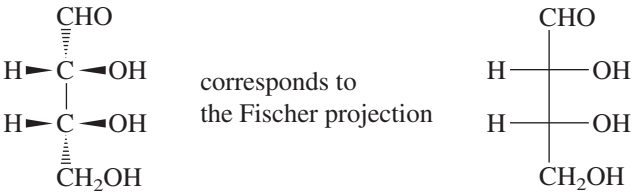
Figure 23.1

Three-dimensional representations and Fischer projections of the enantiomers of glyceraldehyde.

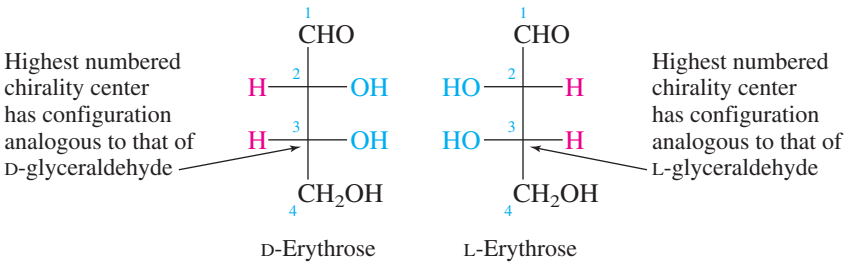
23.3 The Aldotetroses

Glyceraldehyde can be thought of as the simplest chiral carbohydrate. It is an *aldotriose* and, because it contains one chirality center, exists in two stereoisomeric forms: the D and L enantiomers. Moving up the ladder in complexity, next come the *aldotetroses*. Examining their structures illustrates the application of the Fischer system to compounds that contain more than one chirality center.

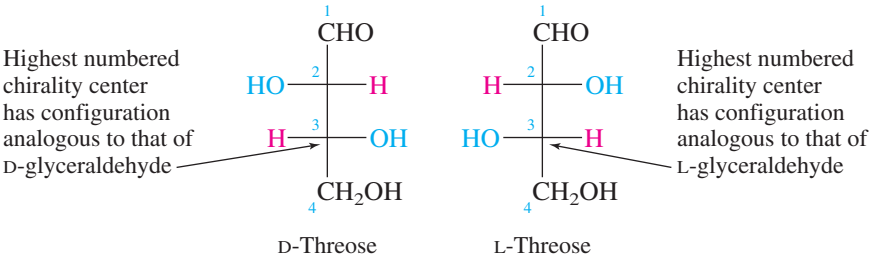
The aldotetroses are the four stereoisomers of 2,3,4-trihydroxybutanal. Fischer projections are constructed by orienting the molecule in an eclipsed conformation with the aldehyde group at the top. The four carbon atoms define the main chain of the Fischer projection and are arranged vertically. Horizontal bonds point outward, vertical bonds back.



The particular aldotetrose just shown is called D-*erythrose*. The prefix D tells us that the configuration at the *highest numbered chirality center* is analogous to that of (+)-D-glyceraldehyde. Its mirror image is L-erythrose.

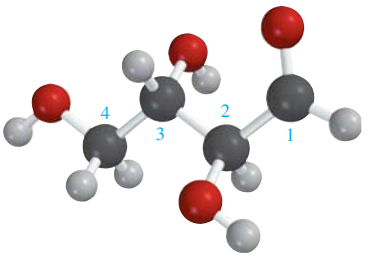


Relative to each other, both hydroxyl groups are on the same side in Fischer projections of the erythrose enantiomers. The remaining two stereoisomers have hydroxyl groups on opposite sides in their Fischer projections. They are diastereomers of D- and L-erythrose and are called D- and L-*threose*. The D and L prefixes again specify the configuration of the highest numbered chirality center. D-Threose and L-threose are enantiomers:



Problem 23.2

Which aldotetrose is the structure shown? Is it D-erythrose, D-threose, L-erythrose, or L-threose? (Be careful! The conformation given is not the same as that used to generate a Fischer projection.)



As shown for the aldotetroses, an aldose belongs to the D or the L series according to the configuration of the chirality center farthest removed from the aldehyde function. Individual names, such as erythrose and threose, specify the particular arrangement of chirality centers within the molecule relative to each other. Optical activities cannot be determined directly from the D and L prefixes. As it turns out, both D-erythrose and D-threose are levorotatory, but D-glyceraldehyde is dextrorotatory.

Dextrorotatory and levorotatory are older terms for (+) and (–) optical rotation, respectively.

23.4 Aldopentoses and Aldohexoses

$2^3 = 8$

Aldopentoses have *three* chirality centers. The *eight stereoisomers* are divided into a set of four D-aldopentoses and an enantiomeric set of four L-aldopentoses. The aldopentoses are named *ribose, arabinose, xylose,* and *lyxose.* Fischer projections of the D stereoisomers of the aldopentoses are given in Figure 23.2. Notice that all these diastereomers have the same configuration at C-4 and that this configuration is analogous to that of (+)-D-glyceraldehyde.

Problem 23.3

(+)-L-Arabinose is a naturally occurring L sugar. It is obtained by acid hydrolysis of the polysaccharide present in mesquite gum. Write a Fischer projection for (+)-L-arabinose.

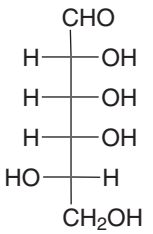
Among the aldopentoses, D-ribose is a component of many biologically important substances, most notably the ribonucleic acids. D-Xylose is very abundant and is isolated by hydrolysis of the polysaccharides present in corncobs and the wood of trees.

The aldohexoses include some of the most familiar of the monosaccharides, as well as one of the most abundant organic compounds on Earth, (+)-D-glucose. With *four* chirality centers, *16* stereoisomeric aldohexoses are possible; 8 belong to the D series and 8 to the L series. All are known, either as naturally occurring substances or as the products of synthesis. The eight D-aldohexoses are given in Figure 23.2; the spatial arrangement at C-5, hydrogen to the left in a Fischer projection and hydroxyl to the right, identifies them as carbohydrates of the D series.

$2^4 = 16$

Problem 23.4

Use Figure 23.2 as a guide to help you name the aldose shown. What is the D,L configuration at the highest numbered chirality center? The *R,S* configuration? What is its sign of rotation?



Of all the monosaccharides, (+)-D-*glucose* is the best known, most important, and most abundant. Its formation from carbon dioxide, water, and sunlight is the central theme of photosynthesis. Carbohydrate formation by photosynthesis is estimated to be on the order of 10^{11} tons per year, a source of stored energy utilized, directly or indirectly, by all higher forms of life on the planet. Glucose was isolated from raisins in 1747 and by hydrolysis of starch in 1811. Its structure was determined, in work culminating in 1900, by Emil Fischer.

Cellulose is more abundant than glucose, but each cellulose molecule is a polysaccharide composed of thousands of glucose units (Section 23.16). Methane may also be more abundant, but most of the methane comes from glucose.

(+)-D-*Galactose* is a constituent of numerous polysaccharides. It is best obtained by acid hydrolysis of lactose (milk sugar), a disaccharide of D-glucose and D-galactose.

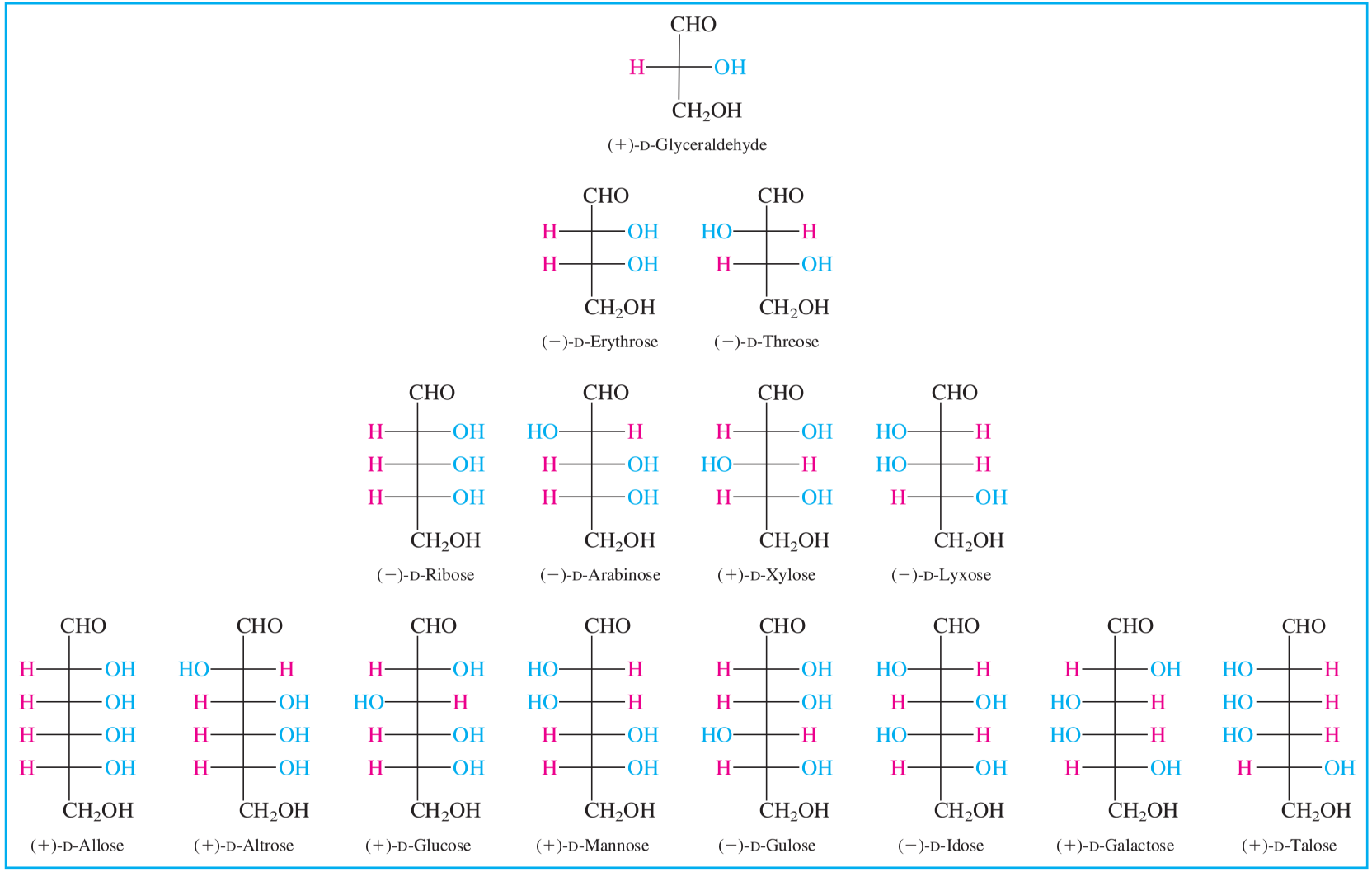


Figure 23.2

Configurations of the D series of aldoses containing three through six carbon atoms.

951

(−)-L-Galactose also occurs naturally and can be prepared by hydrolysis of flaxseed gum and agar. The principal source of (+)-D-*mannose* is hydrolysis of the polysaccharide of the ivory nut, a large, nut-like seed obtained from a South American palm.

23.5 A Mnemonic for Carbohydrate Configurations

The task of relating carbohydrate configurations to names requires either a world-class memory or an easily recalled mnemonic. A mnemonic that serves us well here was popularized by Louis F. Fieser and Mary Fieser of Harvard University in their 1956 textbook, *Organic Chemistry.* As with many mnemonics, it's not clear who actually invented it, and references to this particular one appeared in the chemical education literature before publication of the Fiesers' text. The mnemonic has two features: (1) a system for setting down all the stereoisomeric D-aldohexoses in a logical order; and (2) a way to assign the correct name to each one.

A systematic way to set down all the D-aldohexoses (as in Figure 23.2) is to draw skeletons of the necessary eight Fischer projections, placing the C-5 hydroxyl group to the right in each so as to guarantee that they all belong to the D series. Working up the carbon chain, place the C-4 hydroxyl group to the right in the first four structures, and to the left in the next four. In each of these two sets of four, place the C-3 hydroxyl group to the right in the first two and to the left in the next two; in each of the resulting four sets of two, place the C-2 hydroxyl group to the right in the first one and to the left in the second.

Once the eight Fischer projections have been written, they are named in order with the aid of the sentence: "All altruists gladly make gum in gallon tanks." The words of the sentence stand for *allose, altrose, glucose, mannose, gulose, idose, galactose, talose.*

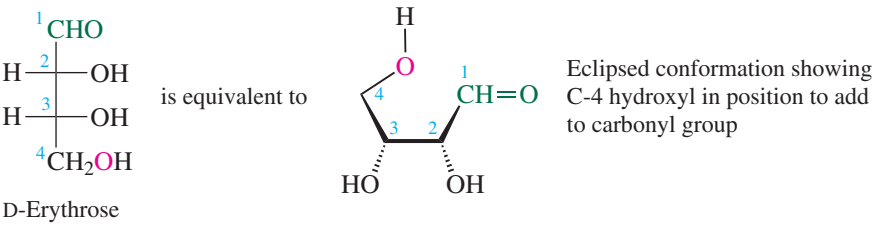
An analogous pattern of configurations can be seen in the aldopentoses when they are arranged in the order *ribose, arabinose, xylose, lyxose.* (RAXL is an easily remembered nonsense word that gives the correct sequence.) This pattern is discernible even in the aldotetroses erythrose and threose.

23.6 Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates: Furanose Forms

Aldoses incorporate two functional groups, C═O and OH, which are capable of reacting with each other. We saw in Section 17.8 that nucleophilic addition of an alcohol function to a carbonyl group gives a hemiacetal. When the hydroxyl and carbonyl groups are part of the same molecule, a *cyclic hemiacetal* results, as illustrated in Figure 23.3.

Cyclic hemiacetal formation is most common when the ring that results is five- or six-membered. Five-membered cyclic hemiacetals of carbohydrates are called **furanose** forms; six-membered ones are called **pyranose** forms. The ring carbon that is derived from the carbonyl group, the one that bears two oxygen substituents, is called the **anomeric carbon.**

Aldoses exist almost exclusively as their cyclic hemiacetals; very little of the open-chain form is present at equilibrium. To understand their structures and chemical reactions, we need to be able to translate Fischer projections of carbohydrates into their cyclic hemiacetal forms. Consider first cyclic hemiacetal formation in D-erythrose. To visualize furanose ring formation more clearly, redraw the Fischer projection in a form more suited to cyclization, being careful to maintain the stereochemistry at each chirality center.



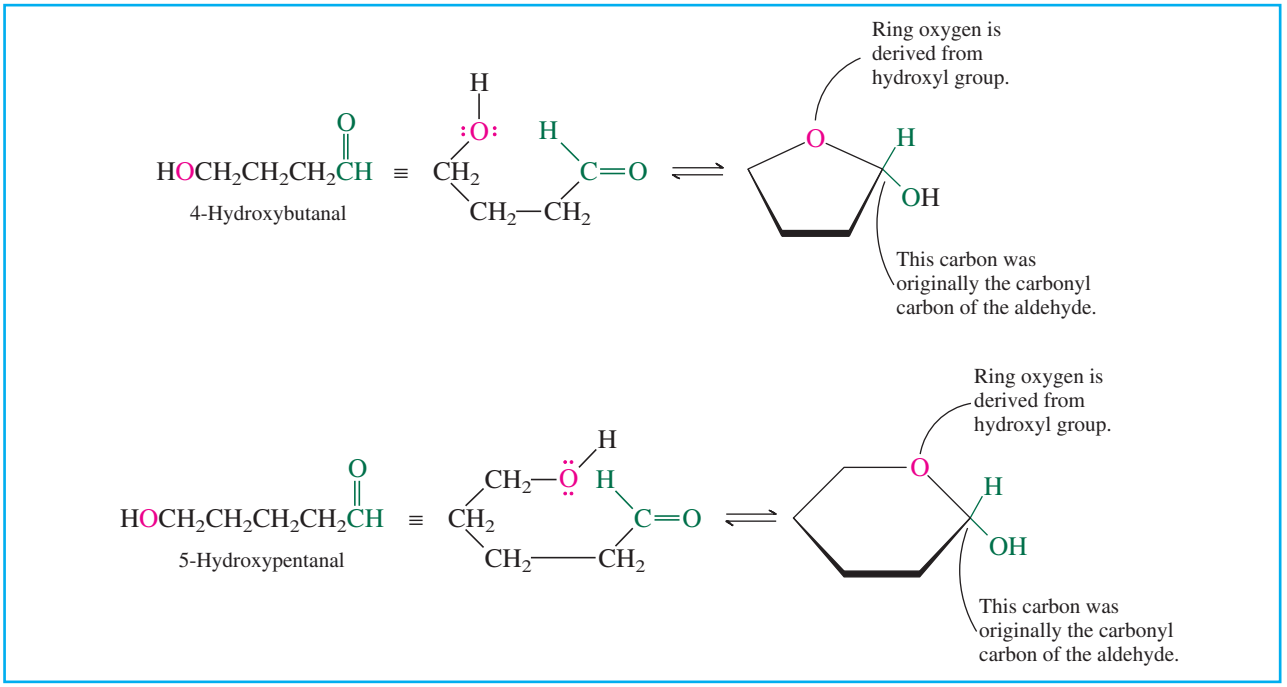
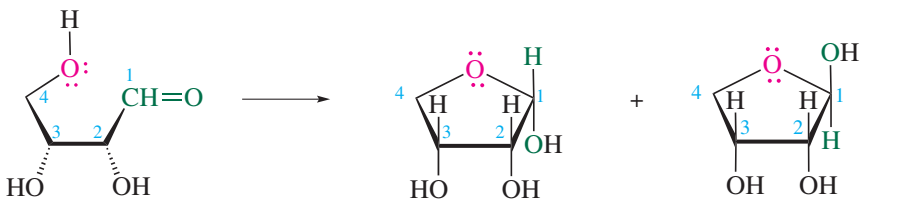


Figure 23.3

Cyclic hemiacetal formation in 4-hydroxybutanal and 5-hydroxypentanal.

Hemiacetal formation between the carbonyl group and the C-4 hydroxyl yields the five-membered furanose ring form. The anomeric carbon is a new chirality center; its hydroxyl group can be either cis or trans to the other hydroxyl groups. The two cyclic forms are diastereomers and are referred to as anomers because they have different configurations at the anomeric carbon.



Structural drawings of carbohydrates of this type are called **Haworth formulas,** after the British chemist Sir Walter Norman Haworth (St. Andrew's University and the University of Birmingham). Early in his career Haworth contributed to the discovery that carbohydrates exist as cyclic hemiacetals rather than in open-chain forms. Later he collaborated on an efficient synthesis of vitamin C from carbohydrate precursors. This was the first chemical synthesis of a vitamin and provided an inexpensive route to its preparation on a commercial scale. Haworth was a corecipient of the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1937.

The two stereoisomeric furanose forms of D-erythrose are named α-D-erythrofuranose and β-D-erythrofuranose. The prefixes α and β describe the *relative configuration* of the anomeric carbon. The configuration of the anomeric carbon is compared with that of the highest numbered chirality center in the molecule—the one that determines whether the

The formal IUPAC rules for α and β notation in carbohydrates are more detailed than our purposes require. These rules can be accessed at http://www.chem.qmul.ac.uk/iupac/2carb/06n07.html.

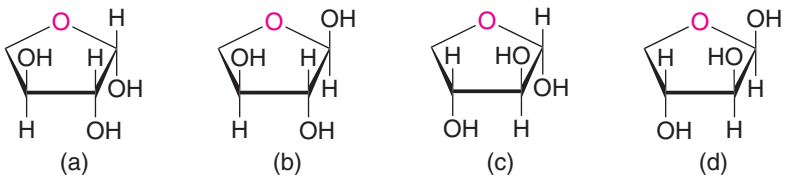
carbohydrate is D or L. Chemists use a simplified, informal version of the IUPAC rules for assigning α and β that holds for carbohydrates up to and including hexoses.

1. Orient the Haworth formula of the carbohydrate with the ring oxygen at the back and the anomeric carbon at the right.
2. For carbohydrates of the D series, the configuration of the anomeric carbon is α if its hydroxyl group is *down,* β if the hydroxyl group at the anomeric carbon is *up*.
3. For carbohydrates of the L series, the configuration of the anomeric carbon is α if its hydroxyl group is *up,* β if the hydroxyl group at the anomeric carbon is *down*. This is exactly the reverse of the rule for the D series.

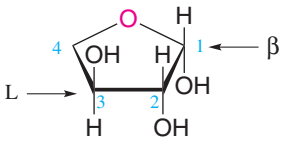
Substituents that are to the right in a Fischer projection are "down" in the corresponding Haworth formula; those to the left are "up."

Problem 23.5

The structures shown are the four stereoisomeric threofuranoses. Assign the proper D, L and α, β stereochemical descriptors to each.

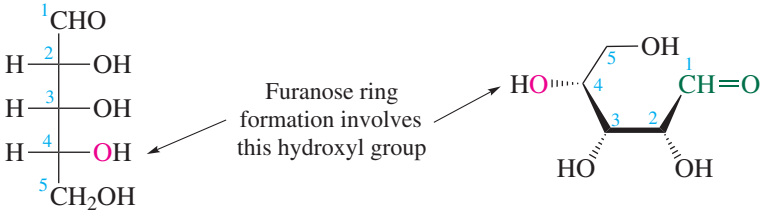


Sample Solution (a) The —OH group at the highest-numbered chirality center (C-3) is up, which places it to the left in the Fischer projection of the open-chain form. The stereoisomer belongs to the L series. The —OH group at the anomeric carbon (C-1) is down, making this the β-furanose form.



β-L-Threofuranose

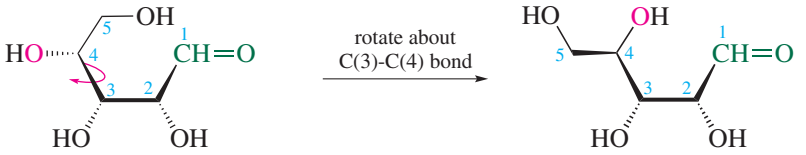
Generating Haworth formulas to show stereochemistry in furanose forms of higher aldoses is slightly more complicated and requires an additional operation. Furanose forms of D-ribose are frequently encountered building blocks in biologically important organic molecules. They result from hemiacetal formation between the aldehyde group and the C-4 hydroxyl:



D-Ribose

Eclipsed conformation of D-ribose

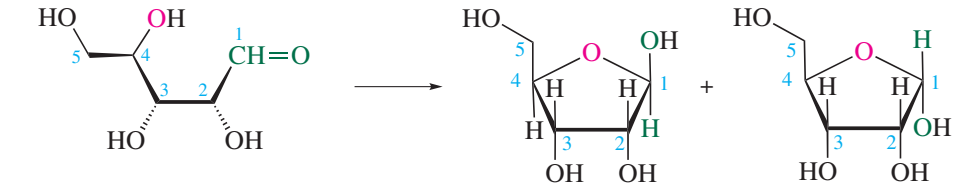
Notice that the eclipsed conformation of D-ribose derived directly from the Fischer projection does not have its C-4 hydroxyl group properly oriented for furanose ring formation. We must redraw it in a conformation that permits the five-membered cyclic hemiacetal to form. This is accomplished by rotation about the C(3)—C(4) bond, taking care that the configuration at C-4 is not changed.



Eclipsed conformation of D-ribose

Conformation of D-ribose suitable for furanose ring formation

As viewed in the drawing, a 120° counterclockwise rotation of C-4 places its hydroxyl group in the proper position. At the same time, this rotation moves the CH_2OH group to a position such that it will become a substituent that is "up" on the five-membered ring. The hydrogen at C-4 then will be "down" in the furanose form.



Conformation of D-ribose suitable for furanose ring formation

β-D-Ribofuranose

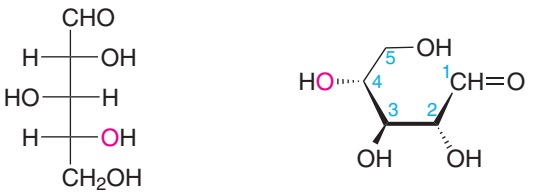
α-D-Ribofuranose

Problem 23.6

Write Haworth formulas corresponding to the furanose forms of each of the following carbohydrates:

(a) D-Xylose (b) D-Arabinose (c) L-Arabinose

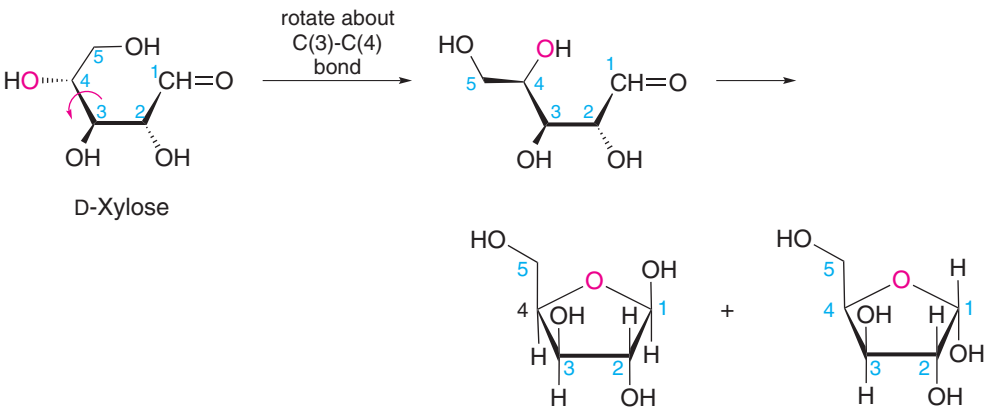
Sample Solution (a) The Fischer projection of D-xylose is given in Figure 23.2.



D-Xylose

Eclipsed conformation of D-xylose

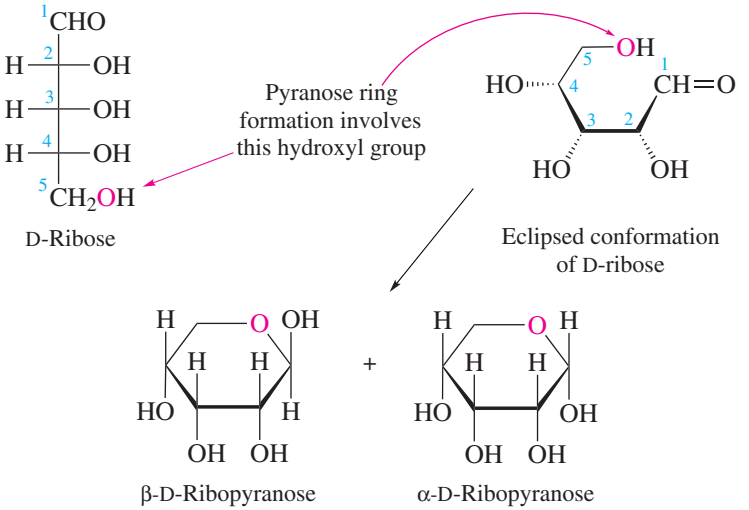
Carbon-4 of D-xylose must be rotated in a counterclockwise sense to bring its hydroxyl group into the proper orientation for furanose ring formation.



D-Xylose

23.7 Cyclic Forms of Carbohydrates: Pyranose Forms

During the discussion of hemiacetal formation in D-ribose in the preceding section, you may have noticed that aldopentoses can potentially form a six-membered cyclic hemiacetal via addition of the C-5 hydroxyl to the carbonyl group. This mode of ring closure leads to α- and β-*pyranose* forms:

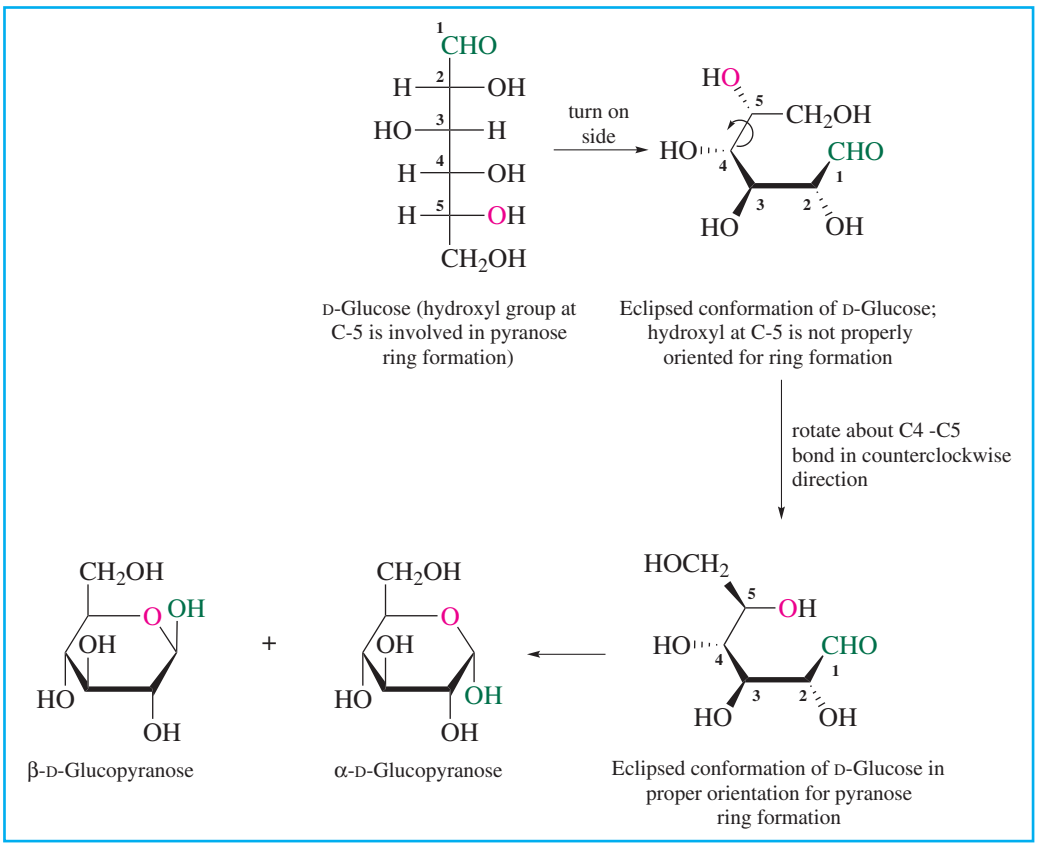


Like aldopentoses, aldohexoses such as D-glucose are capable of forming two furanose forms (α and β) and two pyranose forms (α and β). The Haworth representations of the pyranose forms of D-glucose are constructed as shown in Figure 23.4; each has a CH_2OH group as a substituent on the six-membered ring.

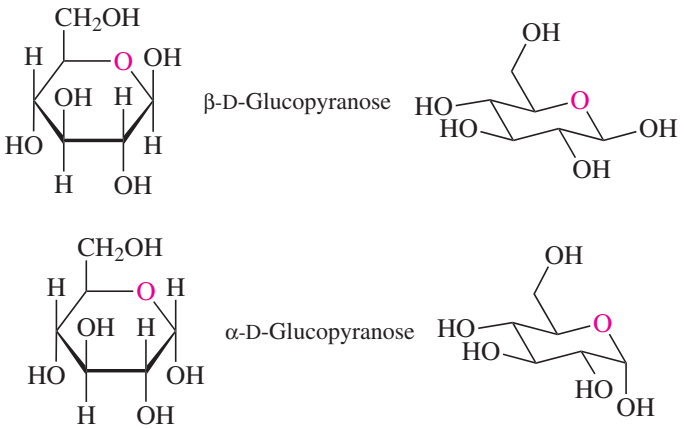
Haworth formulas are satisfactory for representing *configurational* relationships in pyranose forms but are uninformative as to carbohydrate *conformations*. X-ray

Figure 23.4

Haworth formulas for α- and β-pyranose forms of D-glucose.



crystallographic studies of a large number of carbohydrates reveal that the six-membered pyranose ring of D-glucose adopts a chair conformation:



All the ring substituents in β-D-glucopyranose are equatorial in the most stable chair conformation. Only the anomeric hydroxyl group is axial in the α isomer; all the other substituents are equatorial.

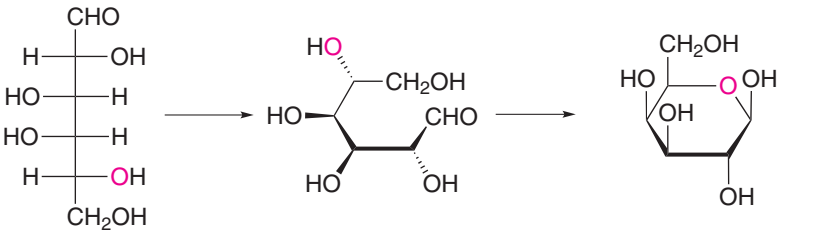
Other aldohexoses behave similarly in adopting chair conformations that permit the CH_2OH substituent to occupy an equatorial orientation. Normally the CH_2OH group is the bulkiest, most conformationally demanding substituent in the pyranose form of a hexose.

Problem 23.7

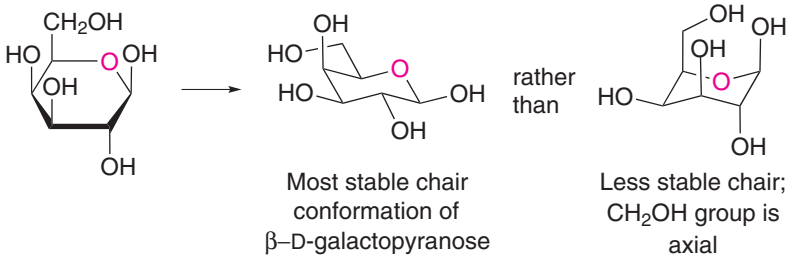
Clearly represent the most stable conformation of the β-pyranose form of each of the following sugars:

(a) D-Galactose (b) D-Mannose (c) L-Mannose (d) L-Ribose

Sample Solution (a) By analogy with the procedure outlined for D-glucose in Figure 23.4, first generate a Haworth formula for β-D-galactopyranose:



Next, convert the Haworth formula to the chair conformation that has the CH_2OH group equatorial.

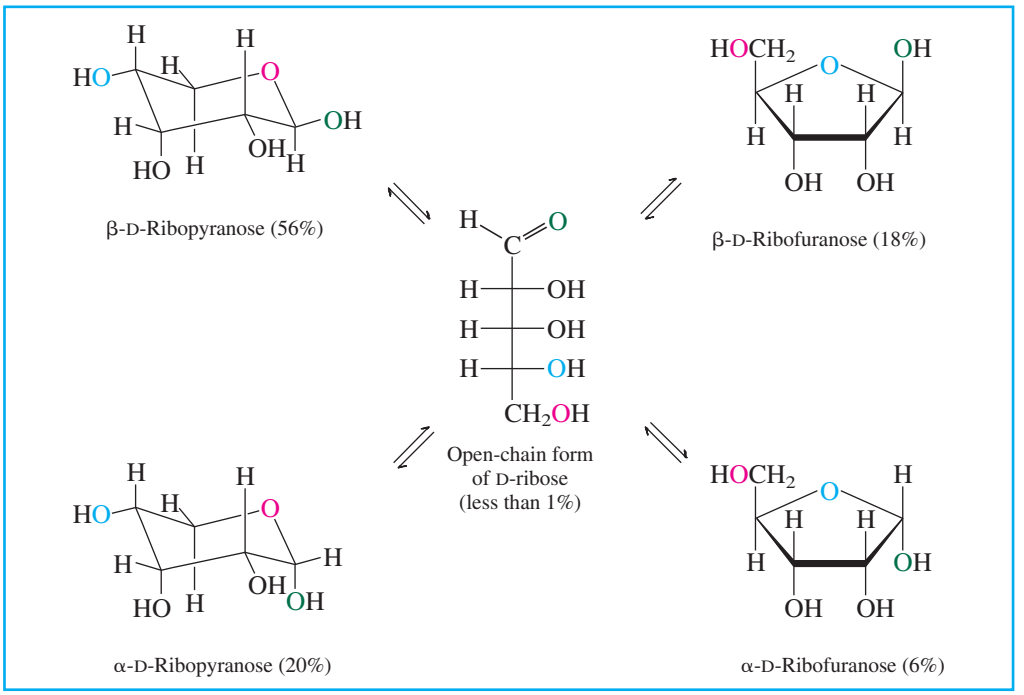


Galactose differs from glucose in configuration at C-4. The C-4 hydroxyl is axial in β-D-galactopyranose, but it is equatorial in β-D-glucopyranose.

Because six-membered rings are normally less strained than five-membered ones, pyranose forms are usually present in greater amounts than furanose forms at equilibrium, and the concentration of the open-chain form is quite small. The distribution of carbohydrates among

Figure 23.5

Distribution of furanose, pyranose, and open-chain forms of D-ribose in aqueous solution as measured by ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy.

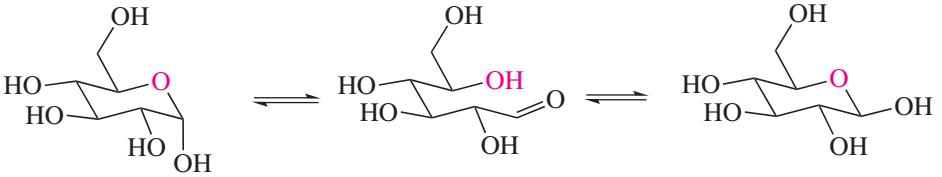


their various hemiacetal forms has been examined by using ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy. In aqueous solution, for example, D-ribose is found to contain the various α- and β-furanose and pyranose forms in the amounts shown in Figure 23.5. The concentration of the open-chain form at equilibrium is too small to measure directly. Nevertheless, it occupies a central position, in that interconversions of α and β anomers and furanose and pyranose forms take place by way of the open-chain form as an intermediate. As will be seen later, certain chemical reactions also proceed by way of the open-chain form.

23.8 Mutarotation

The α and β stereoisomeric forms of carbohydrates are capable of independent existence, and many have been isolated in pure form as stable, crystalline solids. When crystallized from ethanol, for example, D-glucose yields α-D-glucopyranose, mp 146°C, $[\alpha]_D$ +112.2°. Crystallization from a water–ethanol mixture produces β-D-glucopyranose, mp 148–155°C, $[\alpha]_D$ +18.7°. In the solid state the two forms do not interconvert and are stable indefinitely. Their structures have been unambiguously confirmed by X-ray crystallography.

The optical rotations just cited for each isomer are those measured immediately after each one is dissolved in water. On standing, the rotation of the solution containing the α isomer decreases from +112.2° to +52.5°; the rotation of the solution of the β isomer increases from +18.7° to the same value of +52.5°. This phenomenon is called **mutarotation.** What is happening is that each solution, initially containing only one anomeric form, undergoes equilibration to the same mixture of α- and β-pyranose forms. The open-chain form is an intermediate in the process.



Mutarotation occurs slowly in neutral aqueous solution, but can be catalyzed by either acid or base. Mechanism 23.1 shows a four-step, acid-catalyzed mechanism for mutarotation starting with α-D-glucopyranose. Steps 1 and 4 are proton transfers and describe the

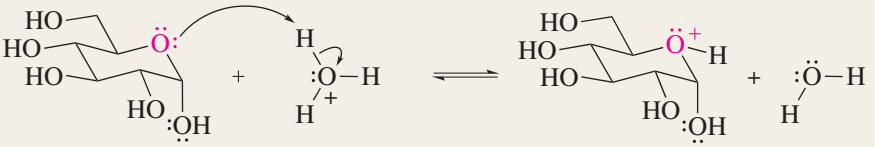
Mechanism 23.1

Acid-Catalyzed Mutarotation of D-Glucopyranose

THE OVERALL REACTION:

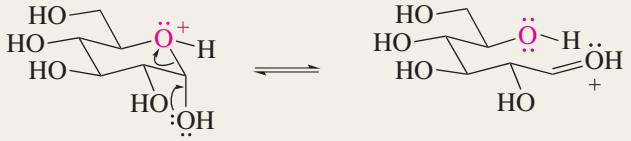
α-D-Glucopyranose β-D-Glucopyranose

Step 1: Protonation of the oxygen of the pyranose ring by the acid catalyst. In aqueous solution, the acid catalyst is the hydronium ion.



α-D-Glucopyranose Hydronium ion Conjugate acid of α-D-glucopyranose Water

Step 2: The pyranose ring opens by cleaving the bond between the anomeric carbon and the positively charged oxygen. This ring opening is facilitated by electron release from the OH group at the anomeric carbon and gives the conjugate acid of the open-chain form of D-glucose.

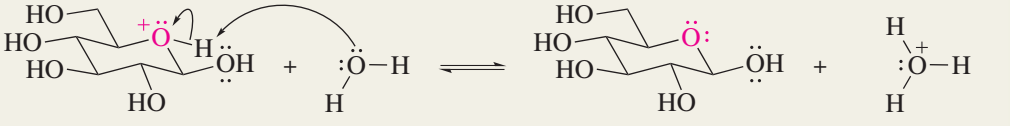


Conjugate acid of α-D-glucopyranose Conjugate acid of open-chain form of D-glucose

Step 3: The species formed in the preceding step cyclizes to give the conjugate acid of β-D-glucopyranose. This cyclization is analogous to the acid-catalyzed nucleophilic additions to aldehydes and ketones in Chapter 17.

Conjugate acid of open-chain form of D-glucose Conjugate acid of β-D-glucopyranose

Step 4: The product of step 3 transfers a proton to water to regenerate the acid catalyst and yield the neutral form of the product.



Conjugate acid of β-D-glucopyranose Water β-D-Glucopyranose Hydronium ion

role of the acid catalyst. The combination of step 2 (ring-opening) and step 3 (ring-closing) reverses the configuration at the anomeric carbon. All the steps are reversible and the α/β ratio is governed by the relative energies of the two diastereomers.

The distribution between the α- and β-pyranose forms at equilibrium can be calculated from the optical rotations of the pure isomers and the final optical rotation of the solution. For D-glucose, such a calculation gives 36% α and 64% β. These are close to the values (38.8% and 60.9%, respectively) obtained by ^{13}C NMR measurements. The α- and β-furanoses and the hydrate of the open-chain form comprise the remaining 0.3%.

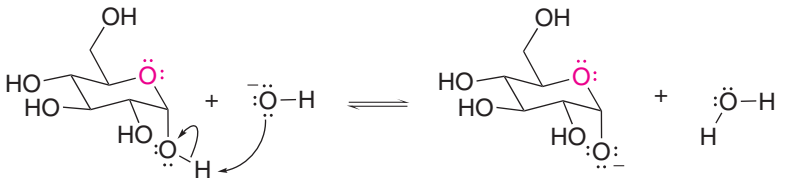
Problem 23.8

The specific optical rotations of pure α- and β-D-mannopyranose are +29.3° and −17.0°, respectively. When either form is dissolved in water, mutarotation occurs, and the observed rotation of the solution changes until a final rotation of +14.2° is observed. Assuming that only α- and β-pyranose forms are present, calculate the percent of each isomer at equilibrium.

It is not possible to tell by inspection which pyranose form of a particular carbohydrate—α or β—predominates at equilibrium. As just described, the β-pyranose is the major species present in an aqueous solution of D-glucose, whereas the α-pyranose predominates in a solution of D-mannose (Problem 23.8). In certain other carbohydrates, D-ribose for example, furanose and pyranose forms are both well represented at equilibrium (Figure 23.5).

Problem 23.9

Write a four-step mechanism for the mutarotation of D-glucopyranose in aqueous base. Use curved arrows to track electron flow. The first step is:



The factors that control the equilibrium composition of sugars in solution are complex. Although the well-established preference for substituents in six-membered rings to be equatorial rather than axial is important, it is not always the overriding factor. The next section introduces a new structural feature that plays a significant part in determining carbohydrate conformations and α/β anomeric ratios.

23.9 Carbohydrate Conformation: The Anomeric Effect

Not only does carbohydrate structure affect properties such as chemical reactivity, but the structure and shape of carbohydrates are also major factors in a number of biological processes that depend on interactions between molecules—a phenomenon known as *molecular recognition*. In this section, we will consider mainly the conformations of carbohydrates in their pyranose forms. We will return to some familiar concepts of chair conformations and axial versus equatorial groups, but you will see that the presence of an oxygen atom in a six-membered ring leads to some surprising consequences.

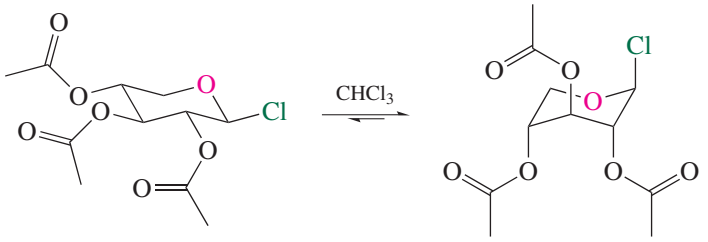
The 1969 Nobel Laureate for Chemistry, Odd Hassel, was the first to suggest that the pyranose form of carbohydrates would resemble chair cyclohexane. Replacing a carbon atom in the ring with an oxygen does not change the basic preference for chair forms, even though the pyranose ring has unequal bond lengths. However, in addition to the usual factors that govern the equatorial versus axial orientation of substituents on a six-membered ring, two other factors are important:

1. an equatorial OH is less crowded and better solvated by water than an axial one
2. the anomeric effect

The first of these is straightforward and alerts us to the fact that the relative energies of two species may be different in solution than in the solid state or the gas phase. Hydrogen bonding to water stabilizes equatorial OH groups better than axial ones.

The **anomeric effect,** on the other hand, stabilizes *axial* OH and other electronegative groups at the anomeric carbon in pyranose rings better than equatorial. Consider the mutarotation of glucose just described, which produces an equilibrium mixture containing 36% of the α-anomer and 64% of the β. If we consider only the destabilizing effect of a solvated axial hydroxyl group in the axial position, we would expect only 11% α and 89% β. The presence of more axial hydroxyl than expected results from the contribution of the anomeric effect to the free energy difference between these two *stereoisomers*.

The anomeric effect also influences the *conformational* equilibria in pyranoses with an electronegative atom, usually oxygen or halogen, at C-1. For example, the equilibrium mixture of the β-pyranosyl chloride derived from xylose triacetate contains 98% of the conformer in which chlorine is axial. These two conformations are not interconverted by mutarotation but by chair–chair interconversion. The anomeric effect is sufficiently large so that all four substituents occupy axial positions in the more stable conformer.



2,3,4-Tri-*O*-acetyl-β-D-xylopyranosyl chloride

What is responsible for the anomeric effect? Chemists continue to debate this question, and a number of explanations have emerged, one of which is detailed in Figure 23.6. The structure depicted in (a), in which substituent X is axial, is stabilized by the interaction of an unshared electron pair on the ring oxygen with the antibonding σ* orbital of the C—X bond [(b) and (c)]. This interaction is greater when X is axial and anti coplanar to the nonbonding electron pair than it is when X is equatorial (d). The transfer of electron density toward the anomeric carbon is facilitated when X is an electronegative substituent, so the effect is often seen in pyranoses with oxygen or halogen at the anomeric carbon. This model also accounts for the shortening of the O—C-1 bond seen in pyranoses that bear an axial electronegative substituent at the anomeric carbon.

Because five-membered rings are more flexible than six-membered, the anomeric effect is less important in furanose than in pyranose forms.

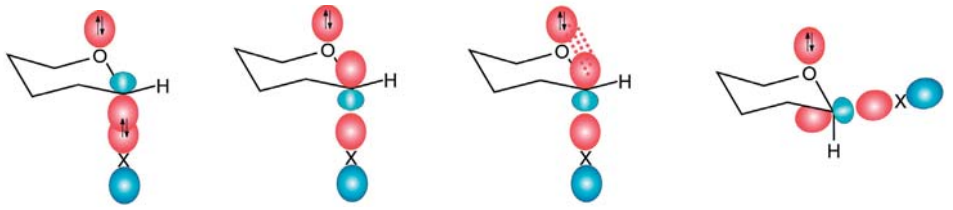
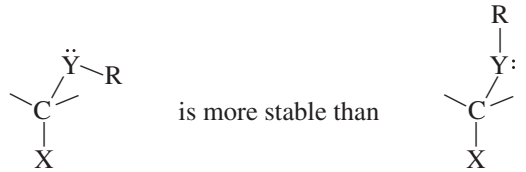


Figure 23.6

Delocalization of an oxygen lone pair stabilizes the conformation in which an electronegative substituent X at the anomeric carbon is axial. (a) Atom X is connected to the ring by a σ bond formed by overlap of an sp^3 hybrid orbital of carbon and a *p* orbital of X. It is doubly occupied and is therefore incapable of sharing oxygen's unshared pair. (b) The antibonding C—X orbital σ* is unoccupied and can accommodate two electrons. (c) Overlap of the oxygen 2*p* orbital with the C—X σ* orbital allows oxygen's unshared electron pair to be delocalized. Delocalization is maximized when the oxygen 2*p* orbital and σ* are anti coplanar; that is when X is axial. (d) When X is equatorial, the axis of its C—X σ* orbital is gauche to that of the oxygen 2*p* orbital and does not allow oxygen's unshared electron pair to be delocalized as well as in (c).

The anomeric effect is a general property of structural units of the type X—C—Y—R where X and Y are electronegative and Y has at least one unshared pair. Of the conformations about the Y—C bond, gauche is normally more stable than anti.



C—X and Y—R bonds are gauche

C—X and Y—R bonds are anti

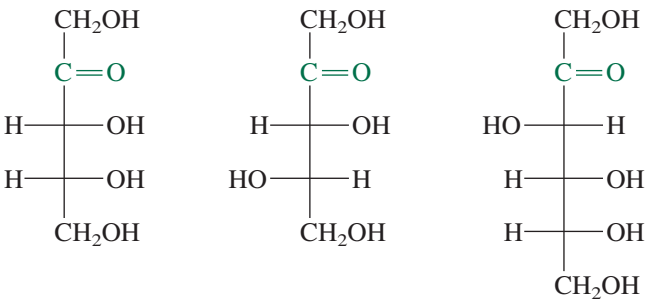
For a simple structure such as chloromethyl methyl ether ($ClCH_2OCH_3$), the gauche conformation has been estimated to be about 8 kJ/mol (2 kcal/mol) more stable than the anti.

Problem 23.10

Sketch the most stable conformation of chloromethyl methyl ether.

23.10 Ketoses

Up to this point all our attention has been directed toward aldoses, carbohydrates having an aldehyde function in their open-chain form. Aldoses are more common than ketoses, and their role in biological processes has been more thoroughly studied. Nevertheless, a large number of ketoses are known, and several of them are pivotal intermediates in carbohydrate biosynthesis and metabolism. Examples of some ketoses include D-*ribulose,* L-*xylulose,* and D-*fructose:*



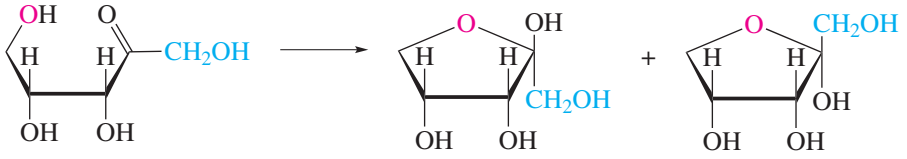
D-Ribulose L-Xylulose D-Fructose

In all three the carbonyl group is at C-2, which is the most common case for naturally occurring ketoses. D-Ribulose is a key intermediate in photosynthesis, the process by which energy from sunlight drives the formation of D-glucose from carbon dioxide and water. L-Xylulose is a product of the abnormal metabolism of xylitol in persons who lack a particular enzyme. D-Fructose is the most familiar ketose; it is present in fruits and honey and is sweeter than sucrose.

Problem 23.11

How many ketotetroses are possible? Write Fischer projections for each.

Ketoses, like aldoses, exist mainly as cyclic hemiacetals. In the case of D-ribulose, furanose forms result from addition of the C-5 hydroxyl to the carbonyl group.



Eclipsed conformation of D-ribulose

β-D-Ribulofuranose

α-D-Ribulofuranose

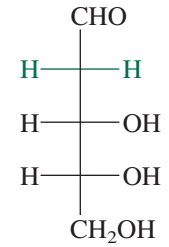
The anomeric carbon of a furanose or pyranose form of a ketose bears both a hydroxyl group and a carbon substituent. In the case of 2-ketoses, this substituent is a CH_2OH group. As with aldoses, the anomeric carbon of a cyclic hemiacetal is readily identifiable because it is bonded to two oxygens.

Problem 23.12

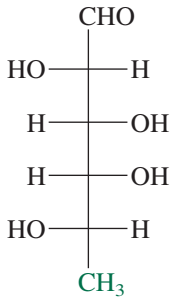
Use the method outlined in Figure 23.4 to write a Haworth formula for the β-furanose form of D-fructose.

23.11 Deoxy Sugars

A common variation on the general pattern seen in carbohydrate structure is the replacement of one or more of the hydroxyl substituents by some other atom or group. In **deoxy sugars** the hydroxyl group is replaced by hydrogen. Two examples of deoxy sugars are 2-deoxy-D-ribose and L-fucose:



2-Deoxy-D-ribose



L-Fucose
(6-deoxy-L-galactose)

The hydroxyl at C-2 in D-ribose is absent in 2-deoxy-D-ribose. In Chapter 26 we shall see how derivatives of 2-deoxy-D-ribose, called *deoxyribonucleotides,* are the fundamental building blocks of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), the material responsible for storing genetic information. L-Fucose, the carbon chain of which terminates in a methyl rather than a CH_2OH group, is often found as one of the carbohydrates in glycoproteins, such as those on the surface of red blood cells that determine blood type (see Section 23.21).

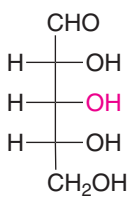
Problem 23.13

Write Fischer projections of

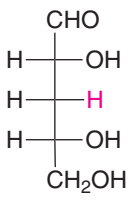
(a) *Cordycepose* (3-deoxy-D-ribose): a deoxy sugar isolated by hydrolysis of the antibiotic substance *cordycepin*

(b) L-*Rhamnose* (6-deoxy-L-mannose): found in plants

Sample Solution (a) The hydroxyl group at C-3 in D-ribose is replaced by hydrogen in 3-deoxy-D-ribose.



D-Ribose
(from Figure 23.2)



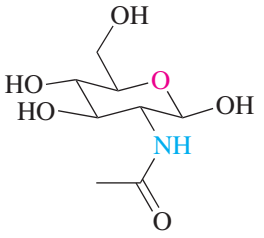
3-Deoxy-D-ribose
(cordycepose)

Figure 23.7

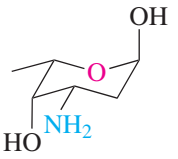
The shells of lobsters are mainly chitin, a polymer of *N*-acetyl-D-glucosamine.

23.12 Amino Sugars

Another structural variation is the replacement of a hydroxyl group in a carbohydrate by an amino group to give an **amino sugar.** The most abundant amino sugar is one of the oldest and most abundant organic compounds on Earth. *N*-Acetyl-D-glucosamine is the main component of the polysaccharide in *chitin,* the substance that makes up the tough outer skeleton of arthropods and insects. Chitin has been isolated from a 25-million-year-old beetle fossil, and more than 10^9 tons of chitin is produced in the biosphere each year. Lobster shells, for example, are mainly chitin (Figure 23.7). More than 60 amino sugars are known, many of them having been isolated and identified only recently as components of antibiotics. The anticancer drug doxorubicin hydrochloride (Adriamycin), for example, contains the amino sugar L-daunosamine as one of its structural units.

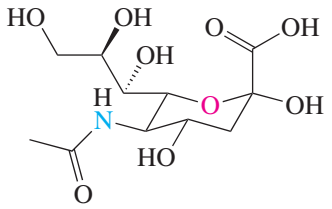


N-Acetyl-D-glucosamine



L-Daunosamine

Sialic acids are a group of carbohydrates that have the interesting structural feature of being amino-substituted derivatives of a nine-carbon ketose. *N*-Acetylneuraminic acid can be considered the parent.



N-Acetylneuraminic acid

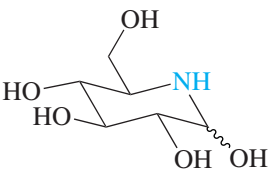
More than 40 structurally related sialic acids occur naturally where they play a number of roles. As covalently bound components of glycolipids and glycoproteins, they are intimately involved in cell recognition processes.

Problem 23.14

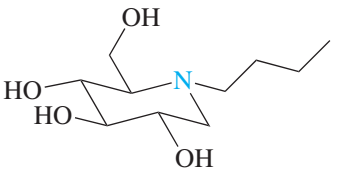
We've included *N*-acetylneuraminic acid in the section on amino sugars and described it as a ketose. We could also call it a deoxy sugar. Locate reasons for these classifications in the structural formula. Number the carbon atoms in the nine-carbon chain. What is the configuration (D or L) at the highest numbered chirality center?

Nitrogen-containing sugars in which nitrogen replaces the ring oxygen are known as imino sugars. An example of an imino sugar is nojirimicin, which occurs naturally. A synthetic derivative, *N*-butyl-1-deoxynojirimicin, is used in the treatment of a lipid metabolism disorder known as Gaucher's disease.

The symbol ∿∿∿ is used to represent a bond of undefined stereochemistry.



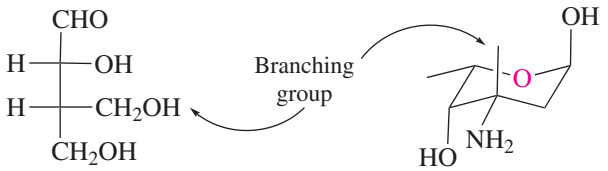
Nojirimicin



N-Butyl-1-deoxynojirimicin

23.13 Branched-Chain Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates that have a carbon substituent attached to the main chain are said to have a **branched chain.** D-Apiose and L-vancosamine are representative branched-chain carbohydrates:

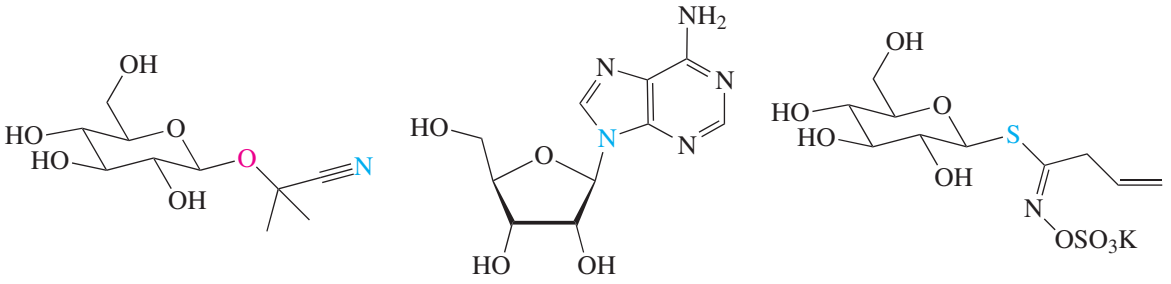


D-Apiose L-Vancosamine

D-Apiose can be isolated from parsley and is a component of the cell-wall polysaccharide of various marine plants. Among its novel structural features is the presence of only a single chirality center. L-Vancosamine is but one portion of vancomycin, a powerful antibiotic that has emerged as one of only a few that are effective against drug-resistant bacteria. L-Vancosamine is not only a branched-chain carbohydrate, it is a deoxy sugar and an amino sugar as well.

23.14 Glycosides: The Fischer Glycosidation

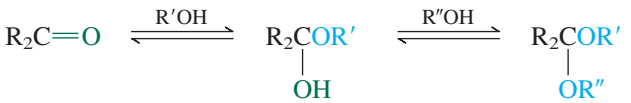
Glycosides are a large and important class of carbohydrate derivatives characterized by the replacement of the anomeric hydroxyl group by some other substituent. Glycosides are termed *O*-glycosides when the atom attached to the anomeric carbon is oxygen. If the atom is sulfur, the names *S*-glycoside and thioglycoside are both used. Glycosides in which the atom attached to the anomeric carbon is nitrogen are named as glycosylamines.



Linamarin Adenosine Sinigrin

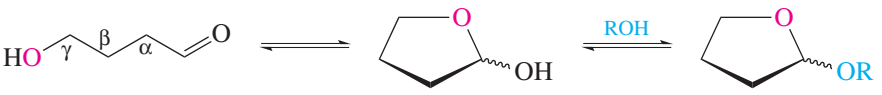
Linamarin is an *O*-glycoside of D-glucose and acetone cyanohydrin. It is present in manioc (cassava), a tuberous food plant and is just one of many cyanogenic glycosides. Nucleosides such as adenosine are glycosylamines of heterocyclic aromatic compounds. The most important ones are those derived from D-ribose and 2-deoxy-D-ribose. Sinigrin is an *S*-glycoside that contributes to the characteristic flavor of mustard and horseradish. All three of the glycosides shown have the β configuration at their anomeric carbon. Many antibiotics occur as glycosides. The most common are *O*-glycosides, such as erythromycin (see Figure 18.7).

The term *glycoside* without a prefix is taken to mean an *O*-glycoside. *O*-Glycosides bear an alkoxy group —OR instead of —OH at the anomeric carbon. Structurally, they are mixed acetals. Recall the sequence of intermediates in acetal formation (see Section 17.8):



Aldehyde or ketone Hemiacetal Acetal

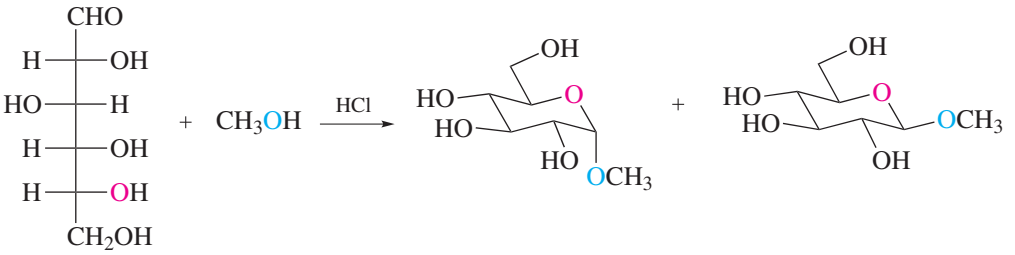
If the aldehyde or ketone bears a γ or δ OH group, the first step takes place intramolecularly to yield a *cyclic* hemiacetal. The second step is intermolecular and requires an alcohol ROH as a reactant.



4-Hydroxybutanal | Cyclic hemiacetal | Acetal

In this illustration only a five-membered cyclic hemiacetal, analogous to the furanose form of a carbohydrate, is possible from the γ-hydroxy aldehyde. The final acetal is analogous to a glycoside; in this case, a furanoside. The corresponding products from an aldehyde with a δ —OH group would be a pyranose (cyclic hemiacetal) and a pyranoside (acetal).

In a reaction known as the **Fischer glycosidation,** glycosides are prepared by simply allowing a carbohydrate to react with an alcohol in the presence of an acid catalyst. The reaction is *thermodynamically controlled,* and the major product is the most stable glycoside; for the reaction of D-glucose with methanol this is methyl α-D-glucopyranoside. Six-membered rings are more stable than five-membered ones, and the anomeric effect stabilizes an axial —OCH_3 group.

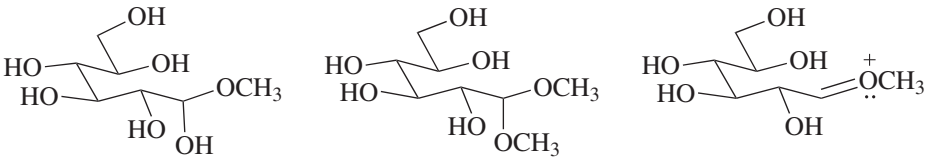


D-Glucose | Methanol | Methyl α-D-glucopyranoside (major product; isolated in 49% yield) | Methyl β-D-glucopyranoside (minor product)

Problem 23.15

Write structural formulas for the α- and β-methyl pyranosides formed by reaction of D-galactose with methanol in the presence of hydrogen chloride.

Experimental observations suggest that the methyl glycosides are formed by more than one mechanism and can involve formation of a hemiacetal, acetal, or oxonium ion as an intermediate, followed by its cyclization. For the reaction of D-glucose with methanol these key intermediates are:



Hemiacetal | Dimethyl acetal | Oxonium ion

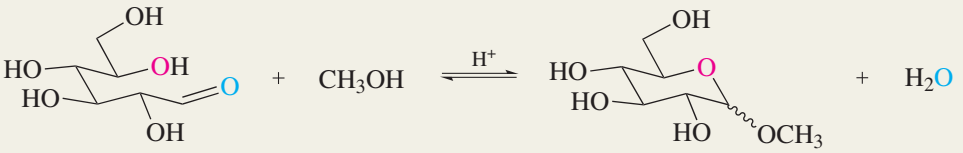
Cyclization can lead to the α- or β-furanoside or α- or β-pyranoside. The furanosides are the kinetic products of the Fischer glycosidation and can be isolated if the reaction is stopped prior to equilibrium. Mechanism 23.2 describes the initial formation of the methyl hemiacetal of D-glucose and its cyclization to a mixture of methyl α-D-glucopyranoside and its β anomer.

A process similar to that of Mechanism 23.2 involving the —OH group at C-4 gives the methyl α- and β-furanosides. These then undergo subsequent conversion to the more stable pyranosides by a mechanism not requiring reversion to D-glucose itself.

Mechanism 23.2

Preparation of Methyl D-Glucopyranosides by Fischer Glycosidation

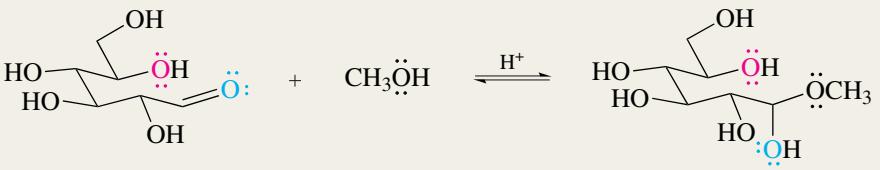
THE REACTION:



D-Glucose | Methanol | Methyl D-glucopyranoside (α + β) | Water

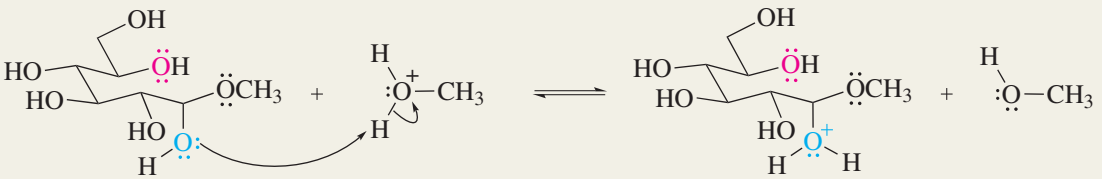
THE MECHANISM

Steps 1–3: Acid-catalyzed nucleophilic addition of methanol to the carbonyl group of D-glucose. (See Mechanisms 17.2 and 17.4 for details of acid-catalyzed addition to aldehydes and ketones.)



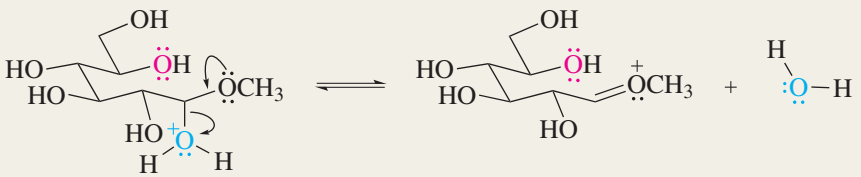
D-Glucose | Methanol | D-Glucose methyl hemiacetal

Step 4: Protonation of the —OH group of the hemiacetal unit. The proton donor is shown as the conjugate acid of methanol. It was formed by proton transfer from the acid catalyst to methanol.



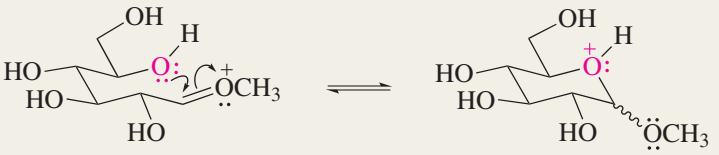
D-Glucose methyl hemiacetal | Methyloxonium ion | Conjugate acid of D-glucose methyl hemiacetal | Methanol

Step 5: Loss of water from the protonated hemiacetal to give an oxonium ion.



Conjugate acid of D-glucose methyl hemiacetal | Oxonium ion | Water

Step 6: Cyclization of the oxonium ion. An unshared electron pair of the C-5 oxygen is used to form a bond to C-1, forming the six-membered ring of the glycopyranoside. Both the α and β stereoisomers are formed in this reaction with the α stereoisomer (axial OCH_3) predominating.



Oxonium ion | Conjugate acid of methyl D-glucopyranoside (α + β)

continued

Mechanism 23.2

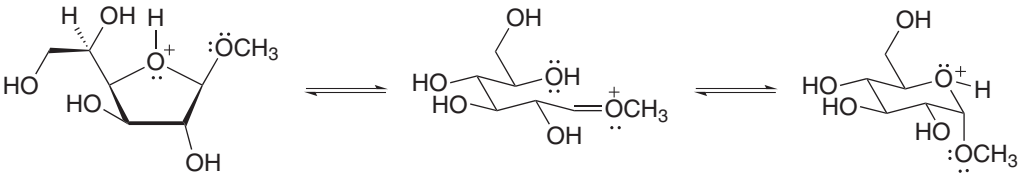
Preparation of Methyl D-Glucopyranosides by Fischer Glycosidation *continued*

Step 7: Proton transfer from the positively charged ring oxygen to the oxygen of methanol giving a mixture of methyl α- and β-D-glucopyranoside. The acid catalyst is regenerated in this step.

Conjugate acid of methyl D-glucopyranoside (α + β) | Methanol | Methyl D-glucopyranoside (α + β) | Methyloxonium ion

Problem 23.16

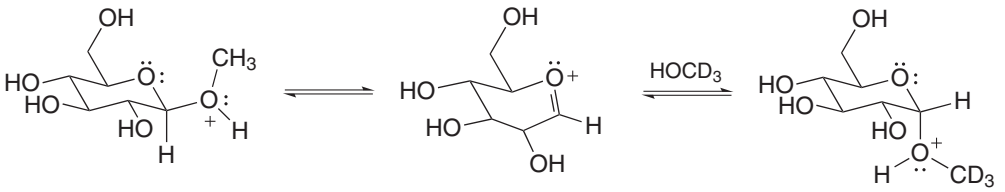
Add curved arrows to the following sequence to show how the conjugate acid of methyl β-D-glucofuranoside is converted to the corresponding pyranoside.



Still another mechanism, one involving a cyclic oxonium ion, is believed to interconvert the α and β anomers of methyl D-glucopyranoside.

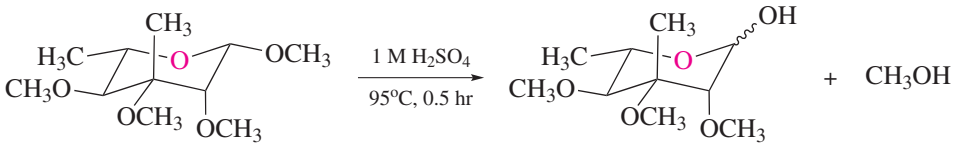
Problem 23.17

When methyl β-D-glucopyranoside is allowed to stand in CD_3OH in the presence of an acid catalyst, it is converted to an α anomer that bears an OCD_3 group. Use curved arrows to to track the electrons in the reactive intermediates shown.



In spite of its mechanistic complexity, equilibrium is established rapidly thereby making the Fischer glycosidation a reliable method for converting a carbohydrate to its *O*-glycoside. Once formed, *O*-glycosides are useful intermediates in the synthesis of a variety of carbohydrate structural types by suitable manipulation of the remaining hydroxyl groups.

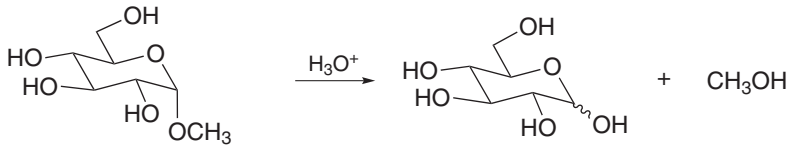
Glycosides, like other acetals, are stable in base but undergo hydrolysis in aqueous acid. The products of hydrolysis of an alkyl glycoside are an alcohol and a carbohydrate. Hydrolysis of methyl β-L-nogaloside, for example, gives L-nogalose, which is a branched-chain carbohydrate found in the antibiotic nogalamycin. Note that the methyl glycoside is hydrolyzed selectively; the three methyl ethers remain intact.



Methyl β-L-nogaloside L-Nogalose (88%) Methanol

Problem 23.18

Using Mechanism 23.2 as a guide, write a stepwise mechanism for the acid hydrolysis of methyl α-D-glucopyranoside.

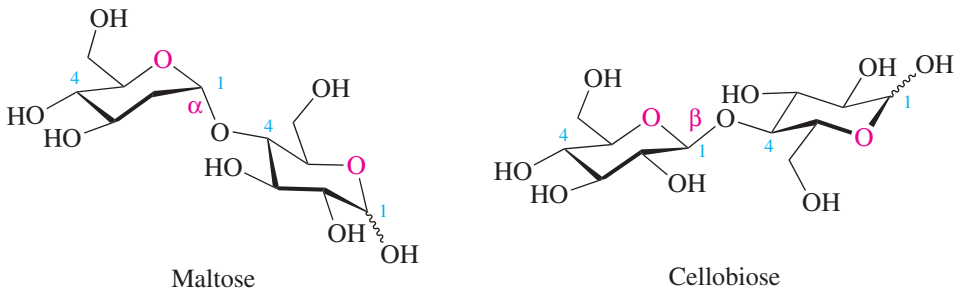


Methyl α-D-glucopyranoside D-Glucose Methanol

23.15 Disaccharides

Disaccharides are carbohydrates that yield two monosaccharide molecules on hydrolysis. Structurally, disaccharides are *glycosides* in which the alkoxy group attached to the anomeric carbon is derived from a second sugar molecule.

Maltose, obtained by the hydrolysis of starch, and *cellobiose,* by the hydrolysis of cellulose, are isomeric disaccharides. In both maltose and cellobiose two D-glucopyranose units are joined by a glycosidic bond between C-1 of one unit and C-4 of the other. The two are diastereomers, differing only in the stereochemistry at the anomeric carbon of the glycoside bond; maltose is an α-glycoside, cellobiose is a β-glycoside.



Maltose Cellobiose

The stereochemistry and points of connection of glycosidic bonds are commonly designated by symbols such as α-(1→4) for maltose and β-(1→4) for cellobiose; α and β designate the stereochemistry at the anomeric position; the numerals specify the ring carbons involved.

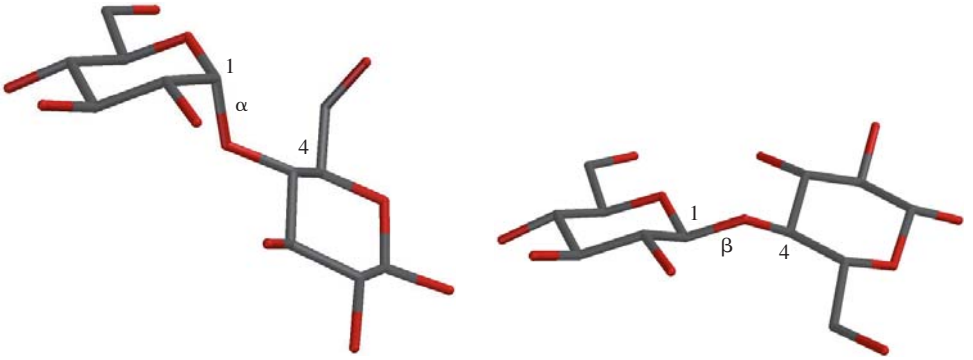
Both maltose and cellobiose have a free anomeric hydroxyl group that is not involved in a glycoside bond. The configuration at the free anomeric center is variable and may be either α or β. Indeed, two stereoisomeric forms of maltose have been isolated: one has its anomeric hydroxyl group in an equatorial orientation; the other has an axial anomeric hydroxyl.

Problem 23.19

The two stereoisomeric forms of maltose just mentioned undergo mutarotation when dissolved in water. What is the structure of the key intermediate in this process?

Figure 23.8

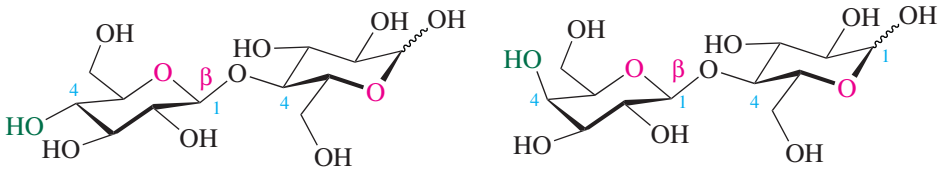
Molecular models of the disaccharides maltose and cellobiose. Two D-glucopyranose units are connected by a glycoside linkage between C-1 and C-4. The glycosidic bond has the α orientation in maltose and is β in cellobiose. Maltose and cellobiose are diastereomers.



Maltose Cellobiose

The single difference in their structures, the stereochemistry of the glycosidic bond, causes maltose and cellobiose to differ significantly in their three-dimensional shape, as the molecular models of Figure 23.8 illustrate. This difference in shape affects how maltose and cellobiose interact with other chiral molecules such as proteins, causing them to behave much differently toward enzyme-catalyzed hydrolysis. The enzyme *maltase* catalyzes the hydrolytic cleavage of the α-glycosidic bond of maltose but not the β-glycosidic bond of cellobiose. A different enzyme, *emulsin,* produces the opposite result: emulsin catalyzes the hydrolysis of cellobiose but not maltose. The behavior of each enzyme is general for glucosides (glycosides of glucose). Maltase catalyzes the hydrolysis of α-glucosides and is also known as α-*glucosidase,* whereas emulsin catalyzes the hydrolysis of β-glucosides and is known as β-*glucosidase.* The specificity of these enzymes offers a useful tool for structure determination because it allows the stereochemistry of glycosidic linkages to be assigned.

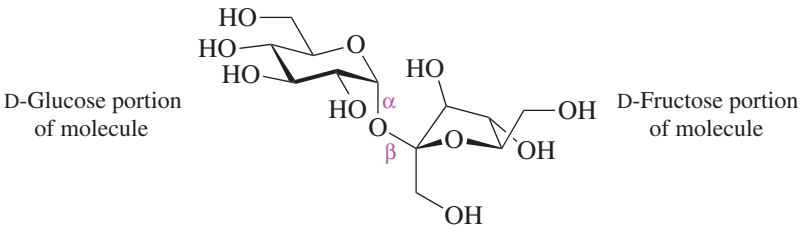
Lactose is a disaccharide constituting 2–6% of milk and is known as *milk sugar.* It differs from maltose and cellobiose in that only one of its monosaccharide units is D-glucose. The other monosaccharide unit, the one that contributes its anomeric carbon to the glycoside bond, is D-galactose. Like cellobiose, lactose is a β-glycoside.



Cellobiose Lactose

Digestion of lactose is facilitated by the β-glycosidase *lactase.* A deficiency of this enzyme makes it difficult to digest lactose and causes abdominal discomfort. Lactose intolerance is a genetic trait; it is treatable through over-the-counter formulations of lactase and by limiting the amount of milk in the diet.

The most familiar of all the carbohydrates is *sucrose*—common table sugar. Sucrose is a disaccharide in which D-glucose and D-fructose are joined at their anomeric carbons by a glycosidic bond.



Sucrose

Its chemical composition is the same irrespective of its source; sucrose from cane and sucrose from sugar beets are identical. Because sucrose does not have a free anomeric

hydroxyl group, it does not undergo mutarotation. Hydrolysis of sucrose, catalyzed either by acid or by the enzyme *invertase,* gives a 1:1 mixture of D-glucose and D-fructose, which is sweeter than sucrose. The mixture prepared this way is called "invert sugar" because the sign of rotation of the aqueous solution in which it is carried out "inverts" from + to – as sucrose is converted to the glucose–fructose mixture.

23.16 Polysaccharides

Cellulose is the principal structural component of vegetable matter. Wood is 30–40% cellulose, cotton over 90%. Photosynthesis in plants is responsible for the formation of 10^9 tons per year of cellulose. Structurally, cellulose is a polysaccharide composed of D-glucose units joined by β-(1→4)-glycosidic linkages (Figure 23.9). The average is 7000 glucose units, but can be as many as 12,000. Complete hydrolysis of all the glycosidic bonds of cellulose yields D-glucose. The disaccharide fraction that results from partial hydrolysis is cellobiose.

As Figure 23.9 shows, the glucose units of cellulose are turned with respect to each other. The overall shape of the chain, however, is close to linear. Consequently, neighboring chains can pack together in bundles where networks of hydrogen bonds stabilize the structure and impart strength to cellulose fibers.

Animals lack the enzymes necessary to catalyze the hydrolysis of cellulose and so can't digest it. Cattle and other ruminants use cellulose as a food source indirectly. Colonies of bacteria that live in their digestive tract consume cellulose and in the process convert it to other substances that the animal can digest.

A more direct source of energy for animals is provided by the starches found in many plants. Starch is a mixture containing about 20% of a water-dispersible fraction called *amylose* and 80% of a second component, *amylopectin.*

Like cellulose, amylose is a polysaccharide of D-glucose. However, unlike cellulose in which all of the glycosidic linkages are β, all of the linkages in amylose are α. The small change in stereochemistry between cellulose and amylose creates a large difference in their overall shape and in their properties. Some of this difference can be seen in the structure of a short portion of amylose in Figure 23.10. The presence of the α-glycosidic linkages imparts a twist to the amylose chain. Where the main chain is roughly linear in cellulose, it

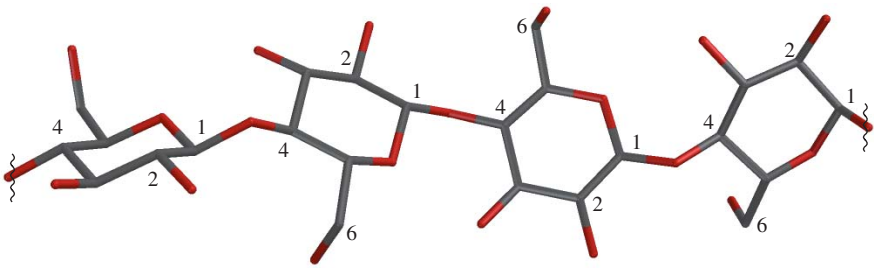


Figure 23.9

Cellulose is a polysaccharide in which D-glucose units are connected by β-(1→4)-glycoside linkages analogous to cellobiose. Hydrogen bonding, especially between the C-2 and C-6 hydroxyl groups, causes adjacent glucose units to tilt at an angle of 180° with each other.

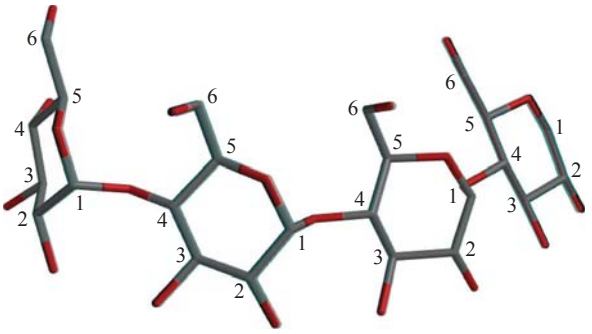


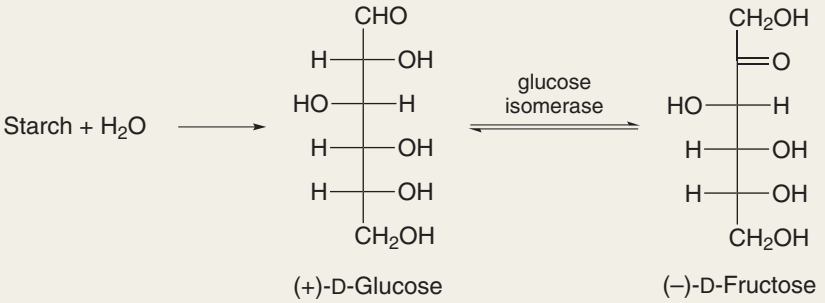
Figure 23.10

Amylose is a polysaccharide in which D-glucose units are connected by α-(1→4)-glycoside linkages analogous to maltose. The geometry of the glycoside linkage is responsible for the left-hand helical twist of the chain.

How Sweet It Is!

How sweet is it?

There is no shortage of compounds, natural or synthetic, that taste sweet. The most familiar, sucrose, glucose, and fructose, all occur naturally with worldwide production of sucrose from cane and sugar beets exceeding 100 million tons per year. Glucose is prepared by the enzymatic hydrolysis of starch, and fructose is made by the isomerization of glucose.

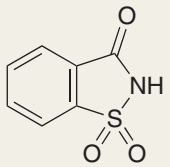


(+)-D-Glucose (–)-D-Fructose

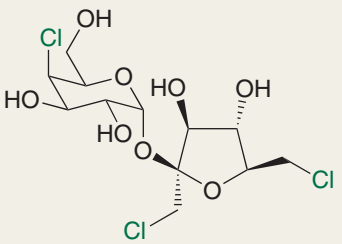
Among sucrose, glucose, and fructose, fructose is the sweetest. Honey is sweeter than table sugar because it contains fructose formed by the isomerization of glucose as shown in the equation.

You may have noticed that most soft drinks contain "high-fructose corn syrup." Corn starch is hydrolyzed to glucose, which is then treated with glucose isomerase to produce a fructose-rich mixture. The enhanced sweetness permits less to be used, reducing the cost of production. Using less carbohydrate-based sweetener also reduces the number of calories.

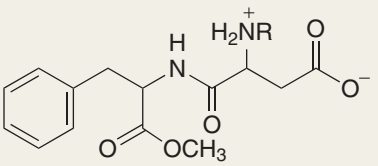
Artificial sweeteners are a billion-dollar-per-year industry. The primary goal is, of course, to maximize sweetness and minimize calories. We'll look at the following sweeteners to give us an overview of the field.



Saccharin



Sucralose



Aspartame, R = H
Neotame, R = $CH_2CH_2C(CH_3)_3$

All of these are hundreds of times sweeter than sucrose and variously described as "low-calorie" or "nonnutritive" sweeteners.

Saccharin was discovered at Johns Hopkins University in 1879 in the course of research on coal-tar derivatives and is the oldest artificial sweetener. In spite of its name, which comes from the Latin word for sugar, saccharin bears no structural relationship to any sugar. Nor is saccharin itself very soluble in water. The proton bonded to nitrogen, however, is fairly acidic and saccharin is normally marketed as its water-soluble sodium or calcium salt. Its earliest applications were not in weight control, but as a replacement for sugar in the diet of diabetics before insulin became widely available.

Sucralose has the structure most similar to sucrose. Galactose replaces the glucose unit of sucrose, and chlorines replace three of the hydroxyl groups. The three chlorine substituents do not diminish sweetness, but do interfere with the ability of the body to metabolize sucralose. It, therefore, has no food value and is "noncaloric."

Aspartame is a methyl ester of a dipeptide, unrelated to any carbohydrate. An aspartame relative, neotame, is even sweeter.

Saccharin, sucralose, and aspartame illustrate the diversity of structural types that taste sweet, and the vitality and continuing development of the industry of which they are a part.

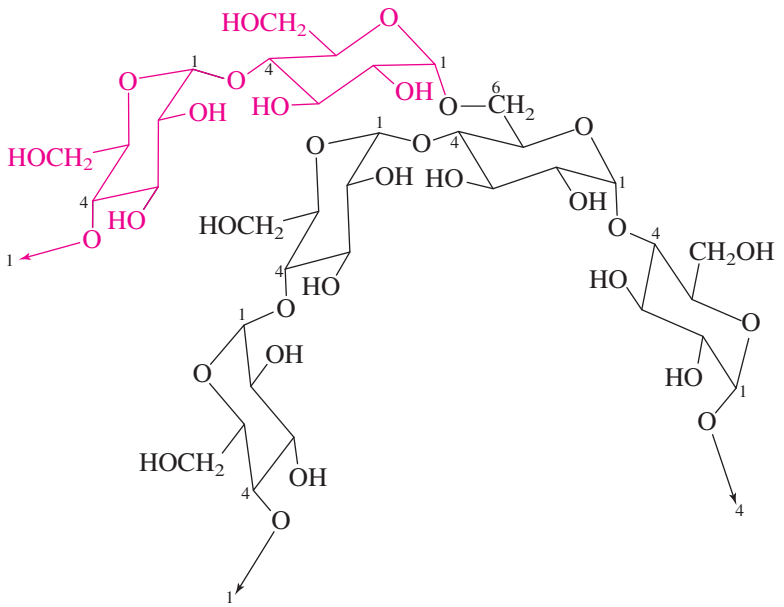


Figure 23.11

Amylopectin. The main chain (black) is the same as in amylose. Amylopectin differs from amylose in having branches (red) linked to the main chain by α-(1→6) glycosidic bonds. Except for the glycoside bonds connecting the branches to the main chain, all other glycoside bonds are α-(1→4).

is helical in amylose. Attractive forces *between* chains are weaker in amylose, and amylose does not form the same kind of strong fibers that cellulose does.

Amylopectin resembles amylose in being a polysaccharide built on a framework of α-(1→4)-linked D-glucose units. In addition to this main framework, however, amylose incorporates polysaccharide branches of 24–30 glucose units joined by α-(1→4)-glycosidic bonds. These branches sprout from C-6 of glucose units at various points along the main framework, connected to it by α-(1→6)-glycosidic bonds (Figure 23.11).

One of the most important differences between cellulose and starch is that animals can digest starch. Because the glycosidic linkages in starch are α, an animal's α-glycosidase enzymes can catalyze their hydrolysis to glucose. When more glucose is available than is needed as fuel, animals store some of it as glycogen. Glycogen resembles amylopectin in that it is a branched polysaccharide of α-(1→4)-linked D-glucose units with branches connected to C-6 of the main chain. The frequency of such branches is greater in glycogen than in amylopectin.

23.17 Application of Familiar Reactions to Monosaccharides

In our discussion of carbohydrate structure to this point, we have already encountered an important reaction—the formation of glycosides under acid-catalyzed conditions (see Section 23.14). Glycoside formation draws our attention to the fact that an OH group on the anomeric carbon of a pyranose or furanose differs in reactivity from the other hydroxyl groups of the carbohydrate. It also demonstrates that what looks like a new reaction is one that we've encountered before—in this case, acetal formation that occurs in the reactions of alcohols with aldehydes and ketones (see Section 17.8). Many other reactions of carbohydrates are also related to familiar functional-group transformations; some of these are recounted in Table 23.2.

The first two entries in Table 23.2 illustrate reactions that involve nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group of the open-chain form which, although present in small amounts, is continuously replenished as it reacts. Entry 1 is the sodium borohydride reduction of the carbonyl group of the aldose D-galactose. The reaction is a general one; other

TABLE 23.2 Familiar Reaction Types of Carbohydrates

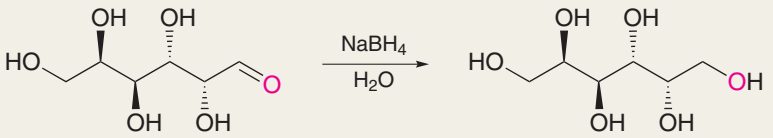
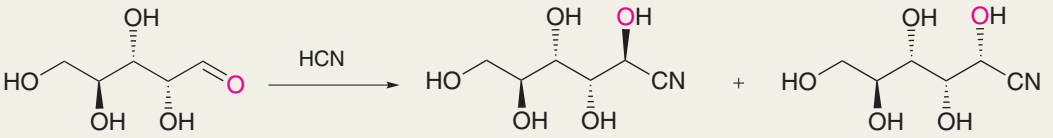
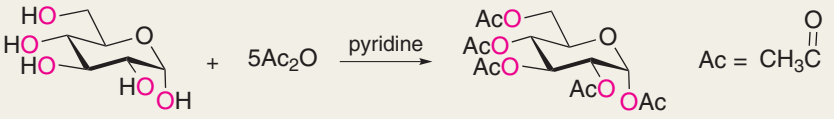
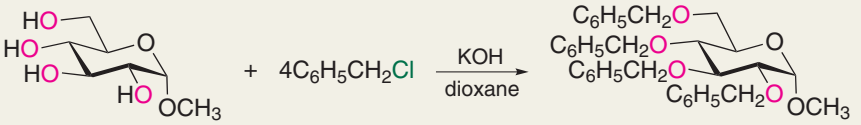
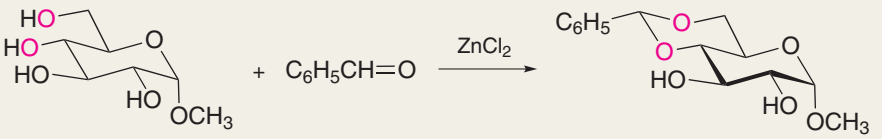
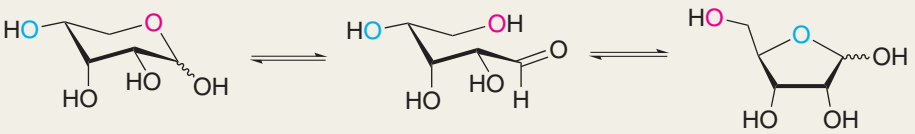
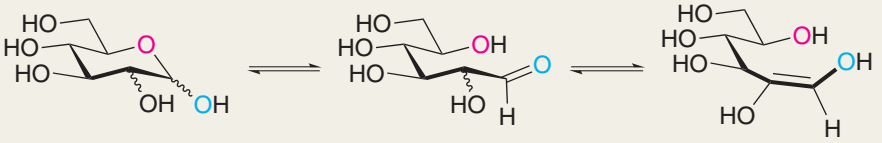
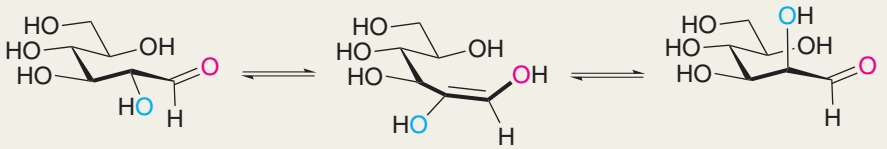
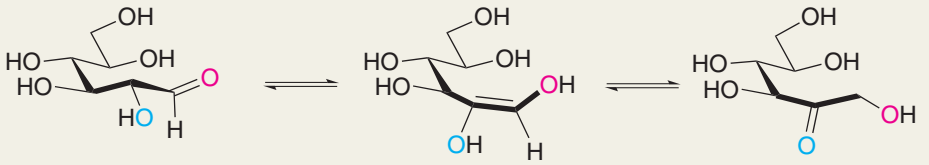
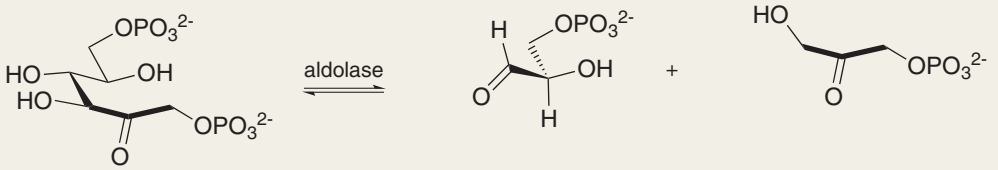
Reaction and comments	Example
1. Reduction: Carbonyl groups in carbohydrates are reduced by the same methods used for aldehydes and ketones: reduction with sodium borohydride or lithium aluminum hydride or by catalytic hydrogenation.	 D-Galactose → D-Galactitol (90%)
2. Cyanohydrin formation: Reaction of an aldose with HCN gives a mixture of two diastereomeric cyanohydrins.	 L-Arabinose → L-Mannonitrile + L-Glucononitrile
3. Acylation: All available hydroxyl groups of carbohydrates are capable of undergoing acylation to form esters.	 α-D-Glucopyranose + Acetic anhydride → 1,2,3,4,6-Penta-*O*-acetyl-D-glucopyranose (88%)
4. Alkylation: Carbohydrate hydroxyl groups react with alkyl halides, especially methyl and benzyl halides, to give ethers.	 Methyl α-D-glucopyranoside + Benzyl chloride → Methyl 2,3,4,6-tetra-*O*-benzyl-α-D-glucopyranoside (95%)
5. Acetal formation: Carbohydrates can serve as the diol component in the formation of cyclic acetals on reaction with aldehydes and ketones in the presence of an acid catalyst. In the example shown, the catalyst is a Lewis acid.	 Methyl α-D-glucopyranoside + Benzaldehyde → Methyl 4,6-O-benzylidene-α-D-glucopyranoside (63%)
6. Pyranose-furanose isomerization: The furanose and pyranose forms of a carbohydrate are cyclic hemiacetals and equilibrate by way of their open-chain isomer.	 D-Ribopyranose (α and/or β) ⇌ D-Ribose ⇌ D-Ribofuranose (α and/or β)
7. Enolization: Enolization of the open-chain form of a carbohydrate gives an enediol. Carbohydrates that are epimeric at C-2 give the same enediol.	 D-Gluco- or D-mannopyranose (α and/or β) ⇌ D-Glucose or D-mannose ⇌ Enediol

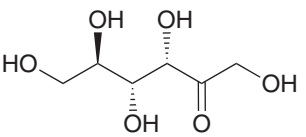
TABLE 23.2 Familiar Reaction Types of Carbohydrates *continued*

8. Epimerization: Enediol formation provides a pathway for the interconversion of the C-2 epimers. The stereochemistry at C-2 is lost on enolization; reversion to the aldehyde can give either the *R* or *S* configuration at C-2.	 D-Glucose ⇌ Enediol ⇌ D-Mannose
9. Aldose-ketose isomerization: The same 1,2-enediol can revert to either an aldose or a ketose.	 D-Glucose ⇌ Enediol ⇌ D-Fructose
10. Aldol addition and retro-aldol cleavage: The enzyme *aldolase* catalyzes important biochemical reactions related to aldol addition and its reverse.	 D-Fructose 1,6-diphosphate —aldolase⇌ D-Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate + Dihydroxyacetone phosphate

reducing agents may be used, and the product from reduction of either an aldose or ketose is called an **alditol.** Alditols lack a carbonyl group and exist entirely in open chain forms.

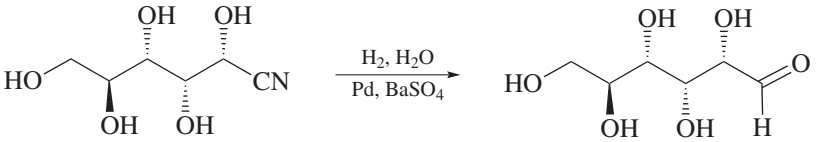
Problem 23.20

Reduction of the ketose D-fructose gives two alditols on reduction. One is D-galactitol (see Table 23.2). The other is an isomer of D-galactitol. Write a structural formula for this alditol. What aldose gives only this alditol on reduction?



D-Fructose

Entry 2 is cyanohydrin formation by nucleophilic addition of HCN to the carbonyl group. It is the basis of a synthetic method for extending the carbon chain of an aldose. In the example shown in Table 23.2 the two diastereomeric cyanohydrins derived from L-arabinose were separated, and their —C≡N groups converted to —CH═O to yield L-mannose and L-glucose, as shown below for one of the diastereomers. In this conversion, the nitrile group is first reduced to an imine (—C═NH), which is then hydrolyzed to the aldehyde. The sequence extends the chain of L-arabinose, a pentose, to that of L-glucose, a hexose.



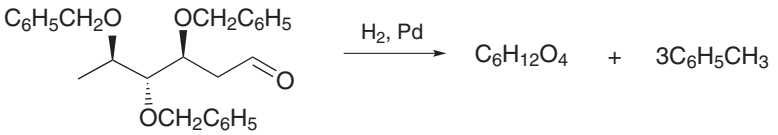
L-Gluconononitrile —H_2, H_2O, Pd, $BaSO_4$→ L-Glucose (26% from L-arabinose)

Entries 3 and 4 are acylation and alkylation, respectively, of hydroxyl groups. Entry 3 shows the formation of a pentaacetate on reaction of α-D-glucopyranose with acetic anhydride, and entry 4 shows the formation of a tetrabenzyl ether on reaction of methyl α-D-glucopyranoside with benzyl chloride. Benzyl ethers are stable to acid and base hydrolysis, organometallic reagents, and numerous other reaction conditions and are often used to protect

OH groups during synthetic operations. They are usually removed by *hydrogenolysis,* a reaction in which catalytic hydrogenation cleaves the $C_6H_5CH_2$—O bond of a benzyl ether.

Problem 23.21

D-Digitoxose, the carbohydrate component of the antiarrhythmic drug *digoxin* (digitalis), has been prepared by a synthetic procedure in which the last step is:



Give the structure of the α-pyranose form of D-digitoxose.

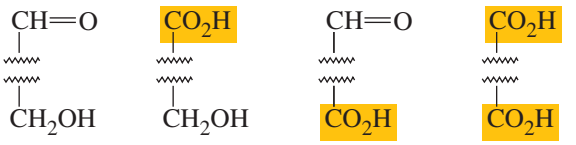
In Section 17.9 we explored the use of diols to protect carbonyl groups. Entry 5 shows how carbohydrates can function as the diol component in forming a cyclic acetal from benzaldehyde, thereby protecting two of the carbohydrate's hydroxyl groups. This is yet another example of acetal formation, in this case involving the aldehyde group of benzaldehyde and the C-4 and C-6 hydroxyl groups of the carbohydrate.

Entry 6 reminds us that the furanose and pyranose forms of carbohydrates are specialized examples of hemiacetals and capable of interconversion. Entries 7 and 8 connect enolization of the open-chain form to interconversion of C-2 epimers. Entry 9 illustrates another reaction involving the enol of the open-chain form. Here, the enediol intermediate connects aldose and ketose isomers. In entry 10, an enzyme-catalyzed reverse aldol reaction cleaves a 6-carbon chain to two 3-carbon fragments.

Most monosaccharides bear an oxidizable function on every carbon so their oxidation is more complicated than others we have seen and is discussed separately in the next section.

23.18 Oxidation of Monosaccharides

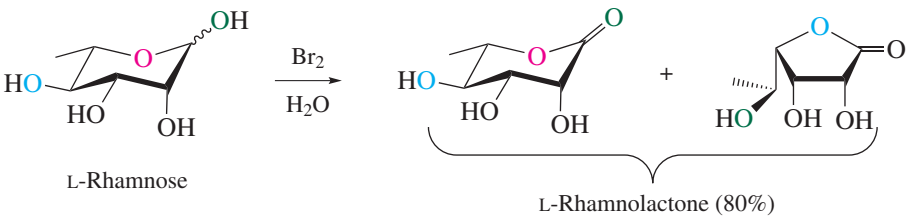
The most easily oxidized groups in an aldose are the aldehyde at one end and the primary alcohol at the other. Oxidation of CH═O gives an **aldonic acid;** oxidation of CH_2OH gives a **uronic acid,** and oxidation of both gives an **aldaric acid.**



Aldose | Aldonic acid | Uronic acid | Aldaric acid

Aldonic acids are named by replacing the *–ose* ending of the aldose by *–onic acid.* Similarly, the endings *-uronic acid* and *-aric acid* are used in uronic and aldaric acids, respectively.

The most commonly used method for preparing aldonic acids is by oxidation with bromine in aqueous solution. The species that is oxidized is a furanose or pyranose form of the carbohydrate.



L-Rhamnose

L-Rhamnolactone (80%)

Aldonic acids spontaneously form five-membered (γ) or six-membered (δ) lactones. γ-Lactones are normally more stable than δ-lactones.

Problem 23.22

What is the structure of the aldonic acid that is produced during the oxidation of L-rhamnose?

Direct oxidation of CH_2OH in the presence of CH═O is not practical, so laboratory preparations of uronic acids are limited to processes that include appropriate protection–deprotection strategies.

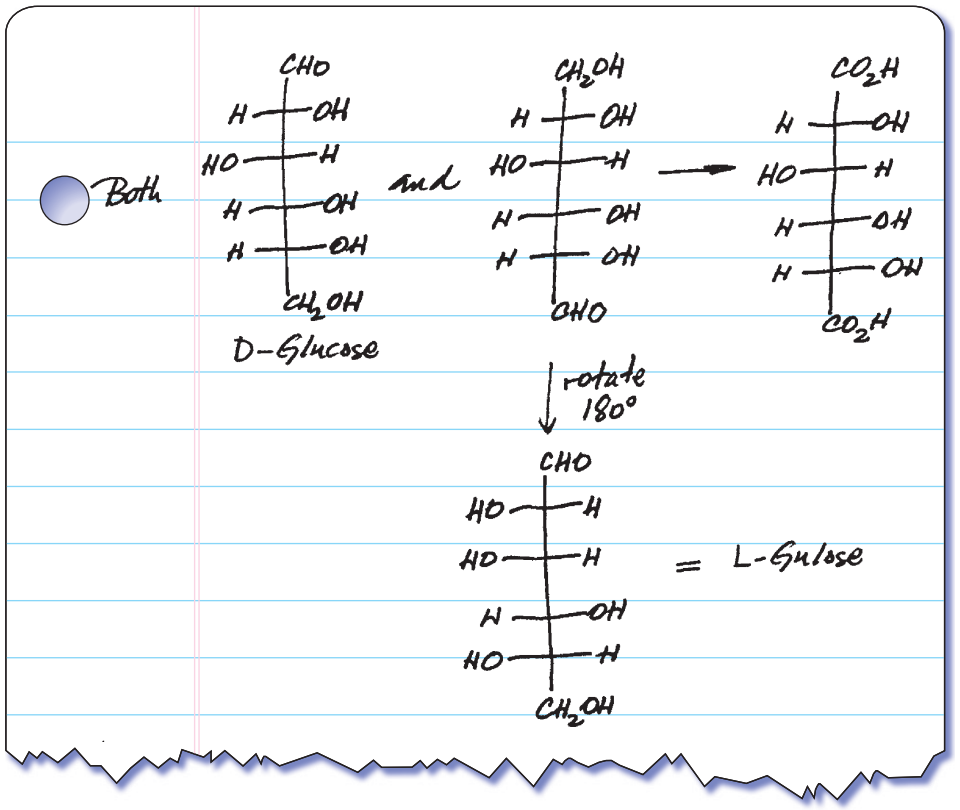
Problem 23.23

Uronic acids exist as cyclic hemiacetals rather than lactones. Write a structural formulation for the β-pyranose form of D-glucuronic acid—an intermediate in the biosynthesis of vitamin C and in various metabolic pathways.

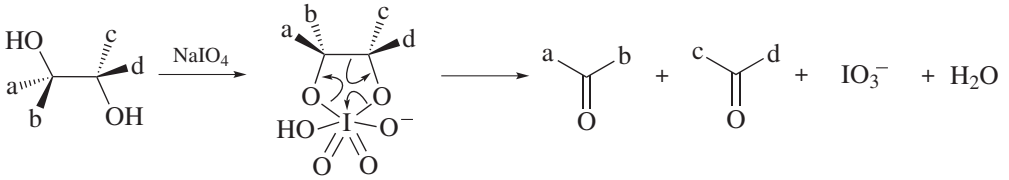
Aldaric acids are prepared in the laboratory by oxidation of aldoses with nitric acid. Like aldonic acids, aldaric acids exist mainly as lactones when the rings are five-membered or six-membered.

Problem 23.24

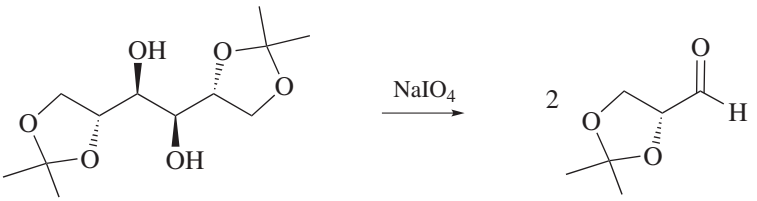
Another hexose gives the same aldaric acid on oxidation as does D-glucose. Which one?



Oxidative cleavage of vicinal diol functions in carbohydrates occurs with periodic acid (HIO_4) or sodium metaperiodate ($NaIO_4$). The reaction proceeds through a cyclic intermediate and is similar to what we encountered with diols in Section 15.11.



Once used mainly as an aid in structure determination, periodate oxidation finds its major present use in synthesis as shown in the following example.

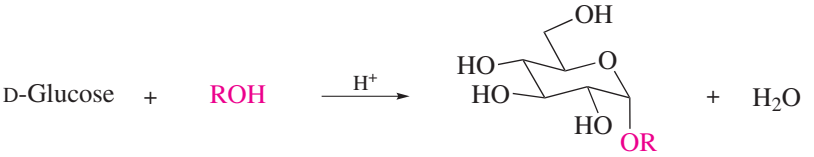


1,2:5,6-Di-*O*-isopropylidene-D-mannitol

2,3-*O*-(Isopropylidene)-D-glyceraldehyde (72%)

23.19 Glycosides: Synthesis of Oligosaccharides

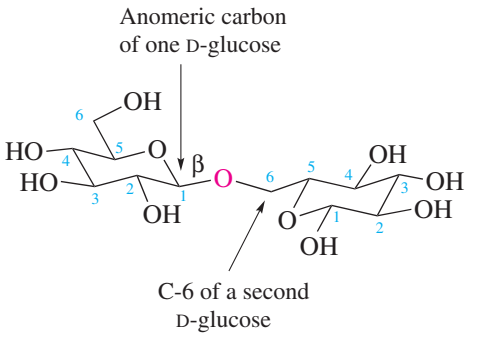
As we saw in Section 23.14, the preparation of glycosides by acid-catalyzed condensation of a carbohydrate with a simple alcohol—the **Fischer glycosidation**—is thermodynamically controlled and favors the formation of pyranose over furanose rings. The anomeric effect causes the α stereoisomer to predominate over the β.



An alcohol — An α-D-glucopyranoside — Water

When the desired glycoside is a disaccharide, however, the "alcohol" is no longer simple; it is a carbohydrate with more than one OH group capable of bonding to the anomeric carbon of the other carbohydrate. Thus, constitutionally isomeric as well as stereoisomeric pyranosides are possible.

Consider, for example, a disaccharide such as gentiobiose in which both carbohydrate units are pyranosyl forms of D-glucose. Using the notation introduced in Section 23.15, gentiobiose is a β-(1→6) glycoside. An oxygen atom is bonded to the anomeric carbon of one D-glucopyranose and C-6 of a second D-glucopyranose.



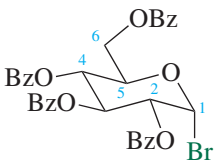
Gentiobiose

Gentiobiose occurs naturally and has been isolated from gentian root, saffron, and numerous other plant materials. For more, see the boxed essay *Crocuses Make Saffron from Carotenes* in Chapter 24.

Although the stereochemistry of the glycosidic linkage is a concern, the first problem to be addressed in a chemical synthesis of a disaccharide such as gentiobiose is achieving the desired 1→6 connectivity. The general strategy involves three stages:

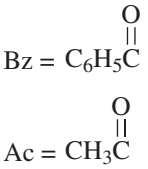
1. Preparation of a suitably protected *glycosyl donor* and *glycosyl acceptor.* A glycosyl donor contains a leaving group at the anomeric carbon. The glycosyl acceptor contains a nucleophilic group, hydroxyl in this case, at the desired carbon.
2. Formation of the glycosidic C—O bond by a nucleophilic substitution in which an OH group of the glycosyl acceptor acts as the nucleophile toward the anomeric carbon of the glycosyl donor.
3. Removal of the protecting groups from the protected disaccharide formed in stage 2.

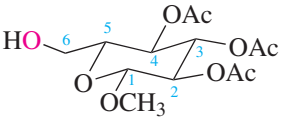
The glycosyl donor in the synthesis of gentiobiose is 2,3,4,6-tetra-*O*-benzoyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide. It is prepared by treating D-glucose with benzoyl chloride in pyridine, then hydrogen bromide. This reaction places a bromide leaving group on the anomeric carbon and protects the four remaining OH groups as benzoate esters. Like the Fischer glycosylation, the α stereochemistry at the anomeric carbon results from thermodynamic control. The glycosyl acceptor is methyl 2,3,4-tri-*O*-acetyl-β-D-glucopyranoside, in which all of the hydroxyl groups are protected except the one at C-6.



2,3,4,6-Tetra-*O*-benzoyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide

Glycosyl Donor



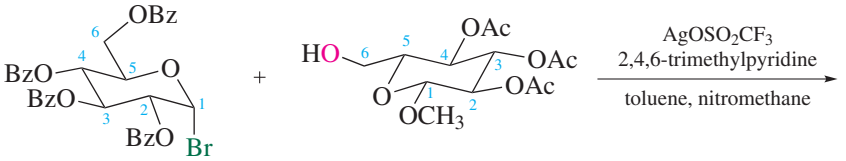


Methyl 2,3,4-tri-*O*-acetyl-β-D-glucopyranoside

Glycosyl Acceptor

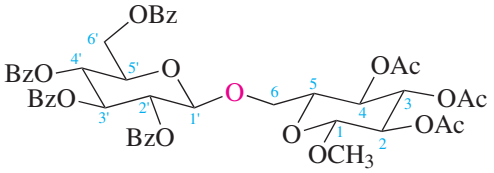
Coupling of the glycosyl donor and acceptor takes place in the presence of silver trifluoromethanesulfonate ($AgOSO_2CF_3$) as a source of Ag^+, which activates the pyranosyl bromide toward nucleophilic substitution. A weak base such as 2,4,6-trimethylpyridine is included in order to react with the trifluoromethanesulfonic acid that is produced.

This method of silver-assisted glycoside synthesis is a variation of the *Koenigs–Knorr reaction.* William Koenigs and Edward Knorr first reported their method in 1901.



2,3,4,6-Tetra-*O*-benzoyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide

Methyl 2,3,4-tri-*O*-acetyl-β-D-glucopyranoside



Methyl 2,3,4-tri-*O*-acetyl-2',3',4',6'-tetra-*O*-benzoyl-β-gentiobioside (91%)

The coupling reaction is stereoselective for formation of the β-disaccharide. Removal of the ester protecting groups and hydrolysis of the methyl glycoside are required to complete the synthesis of gentiobiose.

The mechanism of the coupling reaction resembles an S_N1 reaction and begins with a silver-ion-assisted ionization of the carbon-bromine bond of the glycosyl donor to give a carbocation (Mechanism 23.3).

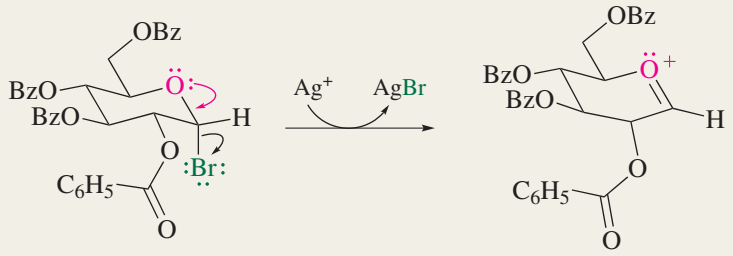
The synthesis of di- and trisaccharides was considered a major achievement, until the advent of new synthetic methods has made it possible to construct more complex oligosaccharides, such as those found on cell surfaces. In 2006, an oligosaccharide containing 28 sugar residues was synthesized. Advances in oligosaccharide synthesis are critical to the development of emerging areas of research in carbohydrate chemistry and biology. An exciting new area is **glycobiology,** described in the following section.

Other methods of oligosaccharide synthesis are considered in Problems 23.43 and 23.44 in this chapter and in Problem 26.28.

Mechanism 23.3

Silver-Assisted Glycosidation

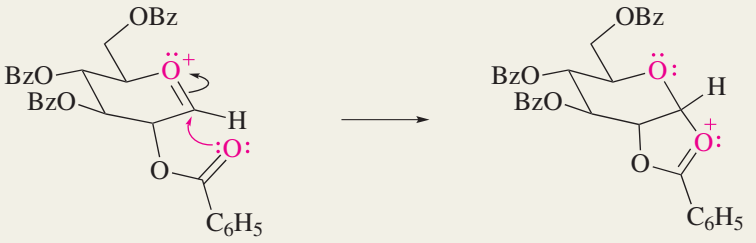
Step 1: Silver ion acts as a Lewis acid to promote loss of bromide from the anomeric carbon giving a carbocation.



2,3,4,6-Tetra-*O*-benzoyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide

Oxygen-stabilized carbocation

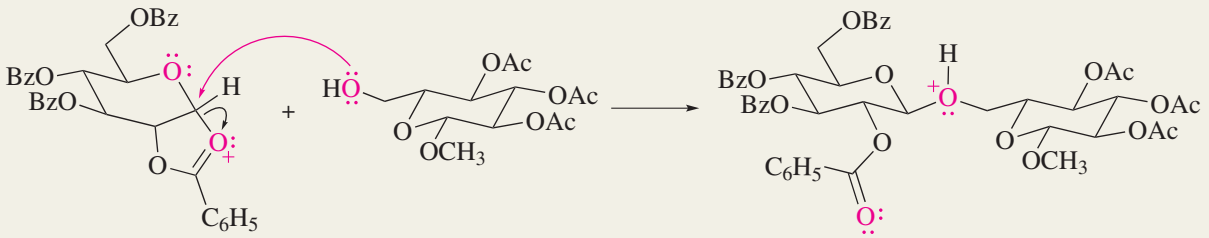
Step 2: Once formed, this carbocation rearranges to a more stable structure, one that is stabilized by electron release from two oxygens.



Oxygen-stabilized carbocation

A dioxolenium ion (more stable)

Step 3: The dioxolenium ion reacts with the free hydroxyl group of the glycosyl acceptor to give the conjugate acid of the disaccharide. Attack of the hydroxyl group occurs stereoselectively from the direction opposite the dioxolane ring.

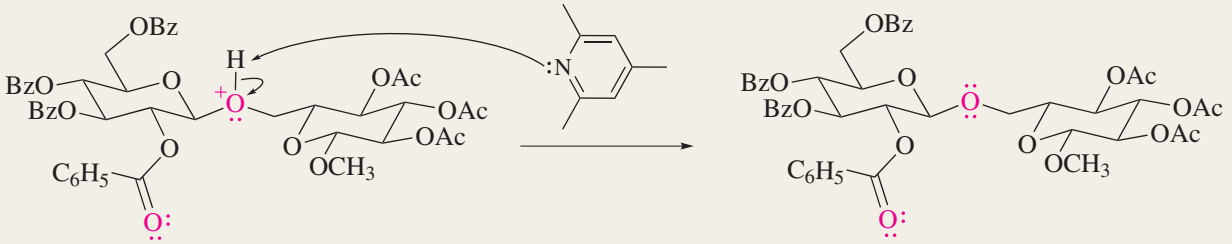


Dioxolenium ion

Methyl 2,3,4-tri-*O*-acetyl-β-D-glucopyranoside

Conjugate acid of β-disaccharide

Step 4: Subsequent to its formation, the conjugate acid is converted to the disaccharide by proton transfer to 2,4,6-trimethylpyridine, which forms a salt with the trifluoromethanesulfonate that is produced in step 1.



Conjugate acid of β-disaccharide

Methyl 2,3,4-tri-*O*-acetyl-2',3',4',6'-tetra-*O*-benzoyl-β-gentiobioside

23.20 Glycobiology

Carbohydrates are often linked, that is conjugated, to other types of biomolecules. In glycoproteins and glycolipids, for example, a carbohydrate is covalently bound to a protein or lipid, respectively. Glycoconjugates on the surface of a cell provide receptors for cell–cell recognition at the molecular level and are involved in such processes as the regulation of cell growth and repair, cell adhesion and migration, and in pathological conditions such as tumor metastasis in cancer. The study of the carbohydrates in nature that occur in these conjugates and in other structures is the subject of the field of *glycobiology*. A related term, *glycomics,* refers to the study of the complete set of carbohydrates in an organism and their genetic, physiological, and pathological roles.

That carbohydrates play an informational role in biological interactions is a revelation of great importance to our understanding of molecular recognition. One example of the informational role of cell-surface carbohydrates occurs in the distinctions among human blood groups. The structure of the glycoproteins attached to the surface of blood cells determines whether the blood is type A, B, AB, or O. Differences among the carbohydrate components of the various glycoproteins have been identified and are shown in Figure 23.12. Compatibility of blood types is dictated by *antigen–antibody* interactions. The cell-surface glycoproteins are antigens. Antibodies present in certain blood types can cause the blood cells of certain other types to clump together, and thus set practical limitations on transfusion procedures. The antibodies "recognize" the antigens they act on by their terminal saccharide units.

Glycoproteins found on the exterior of bacteria, parasites, or viruses are sometimes distinct from cell-surface glycoproteins found in the human body, and some glycoproteins, referred to as "tumor-associated antigens" are more highly expressed on the surface of cancer cells. Antigen–antibody interactions are the fundamental basis by which the immune system functions and are also the basis for vaccines, which rely on the recognition of cell-specific markers. Vaccines are usually prepared from either killed microorganisms or from live, but attenuated microorganisms that have been cultivated under conditions that disable their virulent properties. Such vaccine preparations from natural sources contain complex, heterogeneous mixtures of glycoproteins as well as impurities. An alternative approach to vaccine development is to synthesize specific glycoconjugates. The oligosaccharide portion is synthesized and conjugated to a carrier protein. This approach has been successful in the development of a commercial vaccine against *Haemophilus influenzae* type b (Hib). It is

Edward Jenner, an English physician, is credited with the development of a vaccine for smallpox in the 1790s. Louis Pasteur developed a vaccine against anthrax for use in cattle in the 1870s and coined the term *vaccine* from the Latin *vacca* for cow, in reference to the earlier work of Jenner.

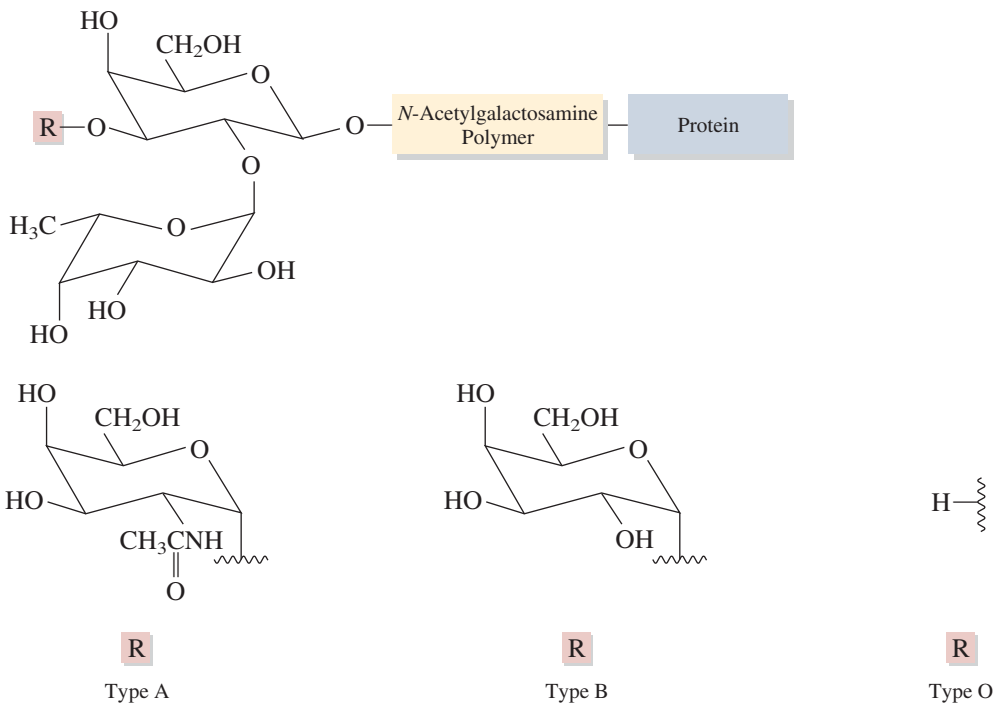


Figure 23.12

Terminal carbohydrate units of human blood-group glycoproteins. The structural difference between the type A, type B, and type O glycoproteins lies in the group designated R.

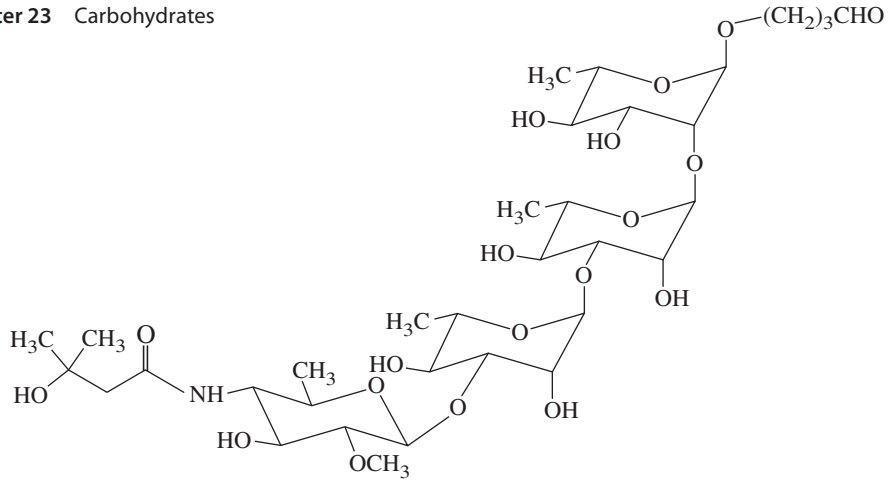


Figure 23.13

The tetrasaccharide found on the surface of anthrax spores. The aldehyde group is used to attach the tetrasaccharide covalently to a carrier protein.

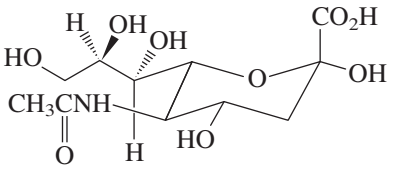
also being explored with the tetrasaccharide that is found on the spore surface of *Bacillus anthracis* as a possible means of creating a vaccine against anthrax (Figure 23.13). The tetrasaccharide–protein conjugate may be useful in not only developing a vaccine but also as a method for detecting anthrax. The $(CH_2)_3CHO$ chain attached to the first carbohydrate provides an aldehyde function that is used to attach the tetrasaccharide to the protein carrier by reductive amination (see Section 21.10).

Problem 23.25

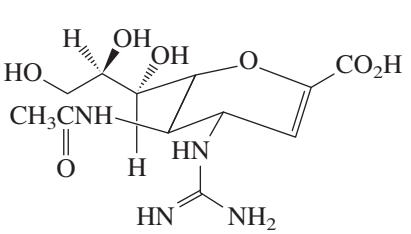
Label the glycosidic linkages between the carbohydrates in the anthrax spore tetrasaccharide, using the system introduced in Section 23.15.

New drugs to treat influenza were developed based on an understanding of the oligosaccharide structure on the surface of the virus. The key player is *N*-acetylneuraminic acid which is the *N*-acetyl derivative of a nine-carbon monosaccharide. *N*-Acetylneuraminic acid is part of the cell-surface glycoprotein that is recognized by an invading influenza virus (Figure 23.14).

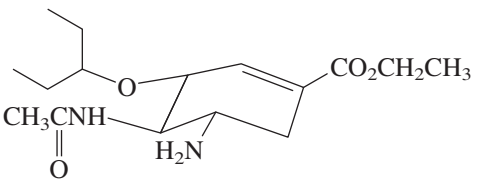
N-Acetylneuraminic acid also forms a coating on newly emerging virus particles that must be removed from the exterior before the virus can adhere to and infect a new cell. This neuraminic acid is removed by an enzyme, neuraminidase, that the virus carries on its surface. Chemists have found that by inhibiting this enzyme, the virus cannot shed its coating of neuraminic acid and is unable to infect new cells. Two drugs that inhibit the activity of neuraminidase are *oseltamivir* (Tamiflu) and *zanamivir* (Relenza).



N-Acetylneuraminic acid



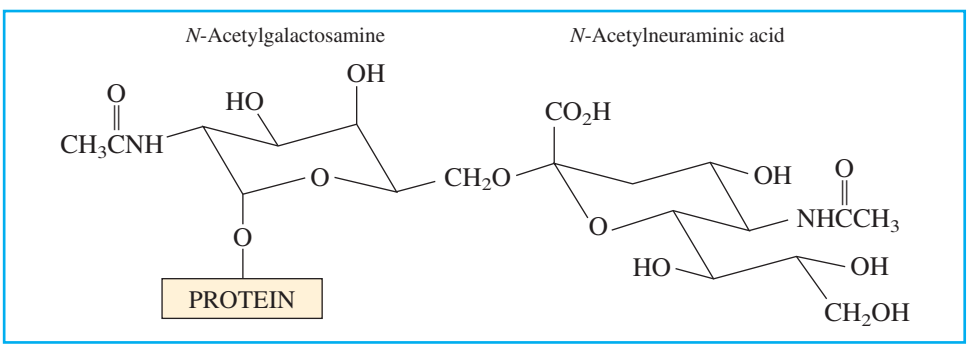
Zanamivir



Oseltamivir

Figure 23.14

Diagram of a cell-surface glycoprotein, showing the disaccharide unit that is recognized by an invading influenza virus.

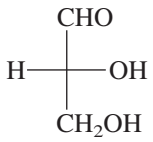


23.22 Summary

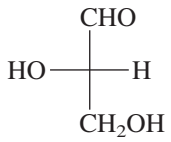
Section 23.1 Carbohydrates are marvelous molecules! In most of them, every carbon bears a functional group, and the nature of the functional groups changes as the molecule interconverts between open-chain and cyclic hemiacetal forms. Any approach to understanding carbohydrates must begin with structure.

Carbohydrates are polyhydroxy aldehydes and ketones. Those derived from aldehydes are classified as **aldoses;** those derived from ketones are **ketoses.**

Section 23.2 Fischer projections and D,L notation are commonly used to describe carbohydrate stereochemistry. The standards are the enantiomers of glyceraldehyde.



(+)-D-Glyceraldehyde



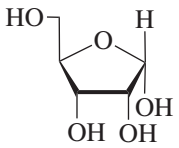
(−)-L-Glyceraldehyde

Section 23.3 Aldotetroses have two chirality centers, so four stereoisomers are possible. They are assigned to the D or the L series according to whether the configuration at their highest numbered chirality center is analogous to D- or L-glyceraldehyde, respectively. Both hydroxyl groups are on the same side of the Fischer projection in erythrose, but on opposite sides in threose. The Fischer projections of D-erythrose and D-threose are shown in Figure 23.2.

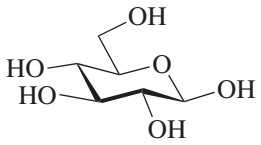
Section 23.4 Of the eight stereoisomeric aldopentoses, Figure 23.2 shows the Fischer projections of the D-enantiomers (D-ribose, D-arabinose, D-xylose, and D-lyxose). Likewise, Figure 23.2 gives the Fischer projections of the eight D-aldohexoses.

Section 23.5 The aldohexoses are allose, altrose, glucose, mannose, gulose, idose, galactose, and talose. The mnemonic "All altruists gladly make gum in gallon tanks" is helpful in writing the correct Fischer projection for each one.

Sections 23.6–23.7 Most carbohydrates exist as cyclic hemiacetals. Those with five-membered rings are called **furanose** forms; those with six-membered rings are called **pyranose** forms.



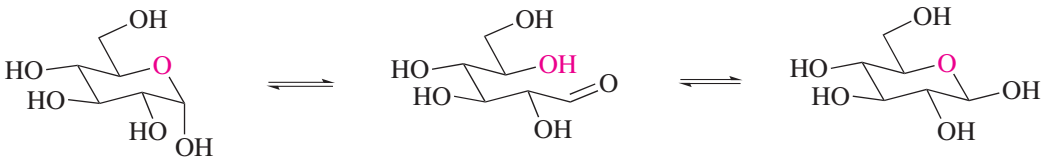
α-D-Ribofuranose



β-D-Glucopyranose

The **anomeric carbon** in a cyclic hemiacetal is the one attached to *two* oxygens. It is the carbon that corresponds to the carbonyl carbon in the open-chain form. The symbols α and β refer to the configuration at the anomeric carbon.

Section 23.8 Hemiacetal forms of carbohydrates are interconvertible in water. The equilibrium mixture can contain α and β anomers of furanose and pyranose forms. The change from one form to the equilibrium mixture is accompanied by a change in optical rotation called **mutarotation.** For D-glucose, mutarotation can be described in terms of the interconversion of α-pyranose and β-pyranose forms by way of the open-chain form.



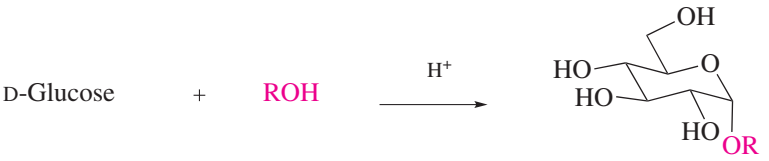
α-D-Glucopyranose Open-chain form β-D-Glucopyranose

Section 23.9 Pyranose forms of carbohydrates resemble cyclohexane in their conformational preference for chair forms. The **anomeric effect** causes an electronegative substituent at the anomeric (C-1) carbon to be more stable when it is axial than when it is equatorial. The effect is believed to result from the delocalization of an electron pair of the ring oxygen into an antibonding orbital of the anomeric substituent.

Section 23.10 Most naturally occurring ketoses have their carbonyl group located at C-2. Like aldoses, ketoses cyclize to hemiacetals and exist as furanose or pyranose forms.

Sections 23.11–23.13 Structurally modified carbohydrates include **deoxy sugars, amino sugars,** and **branched-chain carbohydrates.**

Section 23.14 Glycosides are acetals, compounds in which the anomeric hydroxyl group has been replaced by an alkoxy group. Glycosides are easily prepared by allowing a carbohydrate and an alcohol to stand in the presence of an acid catalyst.



A glycoside

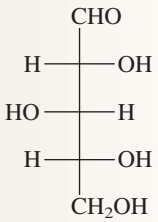
Sections 23.15–23.16 **Disaccharides** are carbohydrates in which two monosaccharides are joined by a glycosidic bond. **Polysaccharides** have many monosaccharide units connected through glycosidic linkages. Complete hydrolysis of disaccharides and polysaccharides cleaves the glycoside bonds, yielding the free monosaccharide components.

Sections 23.17–23.18 Carbohydrates undergo chemical reactions characteristic of aldehydes and ketones, alcohols, diols, and other classes of compounds, depending on their structure. A review of the reactions described in this chapter is presented in Table 23.2.

Section 23.19 Carbohydrates linked by *O*-glycosidic linkages such as those found in disaccharides are synthesized by the reaction of a glycosyl donor and a glycosyl acceptor.

Section 23.20 Carbohydrates linked to proteins, termed glycoproteins, are one example of glycoconjugates in which a carbohydrate is attached to some other biomolecule. Cell-surface glycoproteins are involved in molecular recognition and are important in the immune system as well as in certain diseases.

PROBLEMS



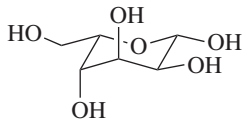
(+)-D-Xylose

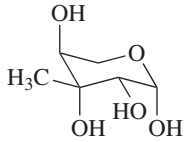
23.26 Refer to the Fischer projection of (+)-D-xylose and give structural formulas for
- (a) (–)-Xylose (Fischer projection)
- (b) Xylitol
- (c) β-D-Xylopyranose
- (d) α-L-Xylofuranose
- (e) Methyl α-L-xylofuranoside
- (f) D-Xylonic acid (open-chain Fischer projection)
- (g) δ-Lactone of D-xylonic acid
- (h) γ-Lactone of D-xylonic acid
- (i) Xylaric acid (open-chain Fischer projection)

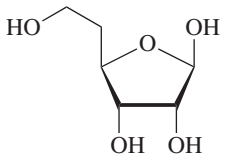
23.27 What are the *R,S* configurations of the three chirality centers in D-xylose?

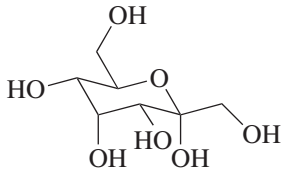
23.28 From among the carbohydrates shown in Figure 23.2, choose the D-aldohexoses that yield
- (a) An optically inactive product on reduction with sodium borohydride
- (b) An optically inactive product on oxidation with bromine
- (c) An optically inactive product on oxidation with nitric acid
- (d) The same enediol

23.29 Write the Fischer projection of the open-chain form of each of the following:

(a) 

(c) 

(b) 

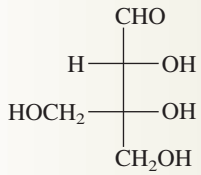
(d) 

23.30 From among the carbohydrates shown in Problem 23.29, choose the one(s) that

(a) Belong to the L series
(b) Are deoxy sugars
(c) Are branched-chain sugars
(d) Are ketoses
(e) Are furanose forms
(f) Have the α configuration at their anomeric carbon

23.31 How many ketopentoses are possible? Write their Fischer projections.

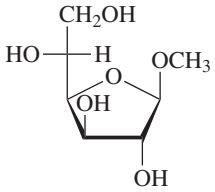
23.32 Given the Fischer projection of the branched-chain carbohydrate (+)-D-apiose:


(+)-D-Apiose

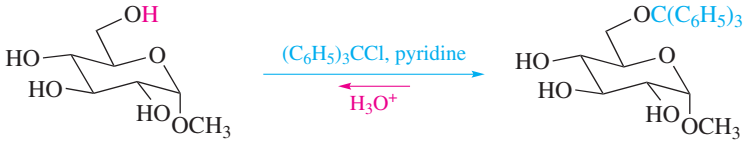
(a) How many chirality centers are in the open-chain form of D-apiose?
(b) Does D-apiose form an optically active alditol on reduction?
(c) How many chirality centers are in the furanose forms of D-apiose?
(d) How many stereoisomeric furanose forms of D-apiose are possible? Write their Haworth formulas.

23.33 Treatment of D-mannose with methanol in the presence of an acid catalyst yields four isomeric products having the molecular formula $C_7H_{14}O_6$. What are these four products?

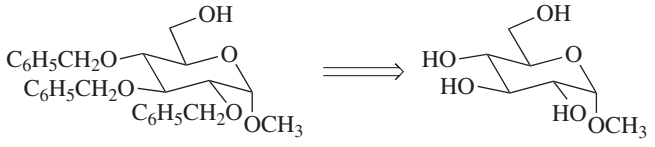
23.34 Give the products of periodic acid oxidation of each of the following. How many moles of reagent will be consumed per mole of substrate in each case?

(a) D-Arabinose
(b) D-Ribose
(c) Methyl β-D-glucopyranoside
(d) 

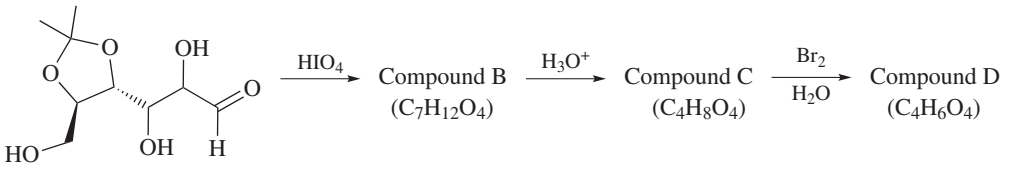
23.35 Triphenylmethyl ether reacts with primary alcohols faster than with secondary ones, making the reaction selective for the hydroxyl group at C-6 in the following case. The ether can be removed by mild acid hydrolysis under conditions that leave the methyl glycoside intact.



Using the above information and any additional information from Table 23.2, show how the compound on the left could be synthesized from the indicated starting material.

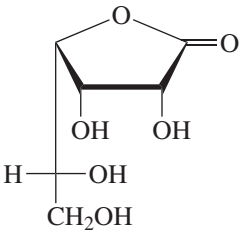


23.36 Compound A was oxidized with periodic acid to give B, which after acid hydrolysis gave C. Bromine oxidation of C gave D. Suggest structural formulas, including stereochemistry, for compounds B, C, and D.



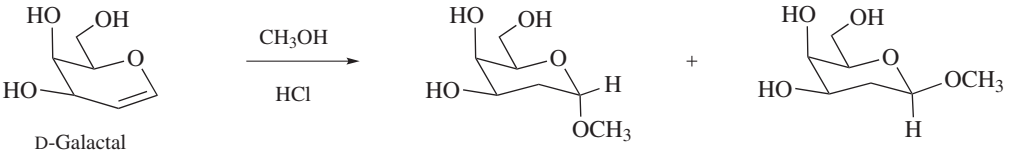
Compound A

23.37 The γ-lactone of D-gulonic acid was prepared by way of a cyanohydrin derived from an aldopentose.



Identify the aldopentose subjected to this chain extension.

23.38 Methyl glycosides of 2-deoxy sugars have been prepared by the acid-catalyzed addition of methanol to unsaturated carbohydrates known as *glycals*.



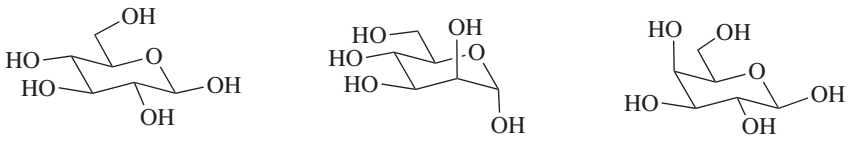
D-Galactal

Methyl 2-deoxy-α-D-lyxopyranoside (38%)

Methyl 2-deoxy-β-D-lyxopyranoside (36%)

Suggest a reasonable mechanism for this reaction.

23.39 The following are the more stable anomers of the pyranose forms of D-glucose, D-mannose, and D-galactose:



β-D-Glucopyranose
(64% at equilibrium)

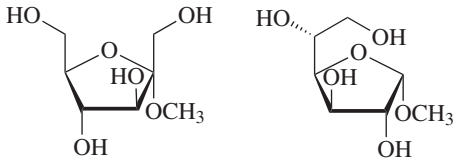
α-D-Mannopyranose
(68% at equilibrium)

β-D-Galactopyranose
(64% at equilibrium)

On the basis of these empirical observations and your own knowledge of steric effects in six-membered rings, predict the preferred form (α- or β-pyranose) at equilibrium in aqueous solution for each of the following:

(a) D-Gulose
(b) D-Talose
(c) D-Xylose
(d) D-Lyxose

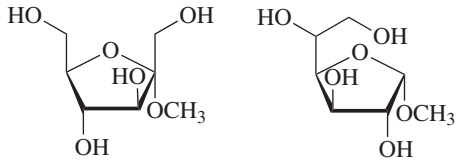
23.40 Basing your answers on the general mechanism for the first stage of acid-catalyzed acetal hydrolysis



Compound A Compound B

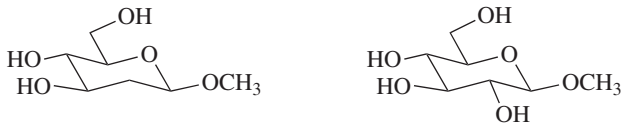
suggest reasonable explanations for the following observations:

(a) Methyl α-D-fructofuranoside (compound A) undergoes acid-catalyzed hydrolysis some 10^5 times faster than methyl α-D-glucofuranoside (compound B).



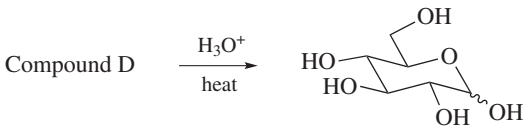
Compound A Compound B

(b) The β-methyl glucopyranoside of 2-deoxy-D-glucose (compound C) undergoes hydrolysis several thousand times faster than that of D-glucose (compound D).

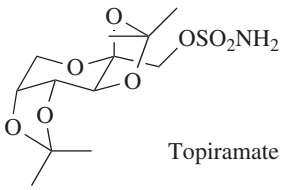


Compound C Compound D

(c) Using Mechanism 23.2 as a guide, write a mechanism for the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of compound D (methyl β-D-glucopyranoside, shown in part b) to D-glucose.

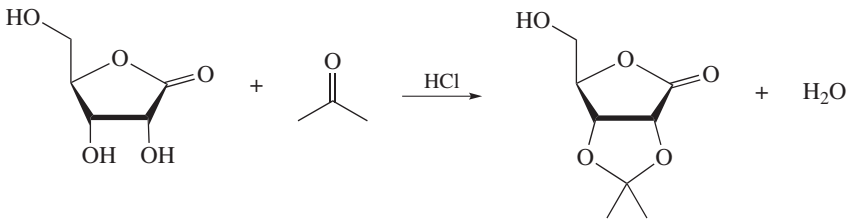


23.41 The compound shown here is the anticonvulsant drug known as topiramate. It is a derivative of D-fructopyranose. Identify the acetal carbons in topiramate.

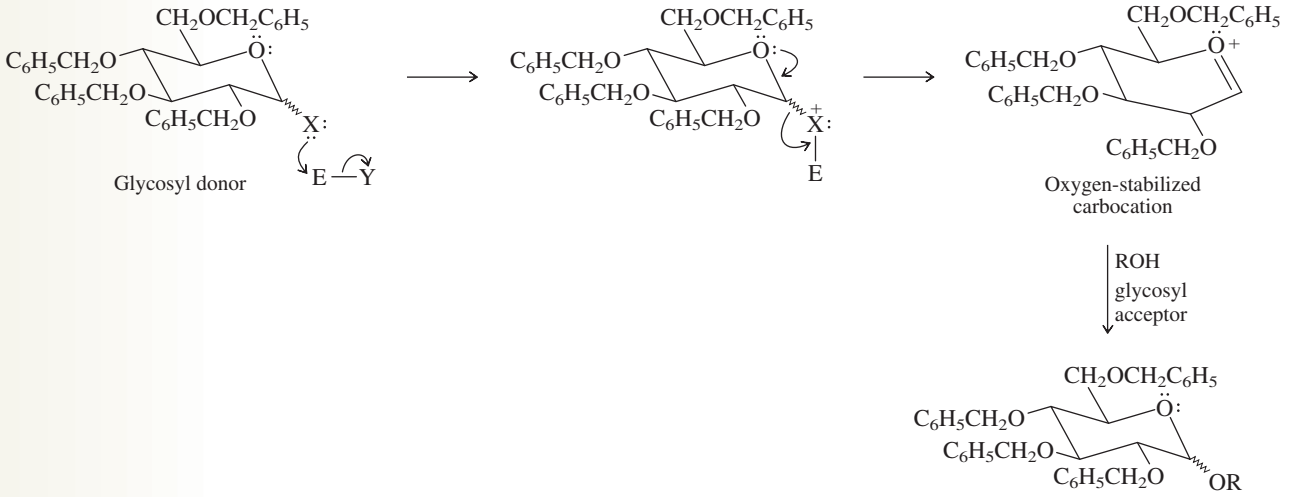


Topiramate

23.42 Acetone reacts with carbohydrates in the presence of an acid catalyst to form products that are commonly referred to as "isopropylidene" or "acetonide" derivatives. The carbohydrate D-ribono-(1,4)-lactone reacts with acetone in the presence of hydrochloric acid to give the acetonide shown here. Write a mechanism for this reaction. (*Hint:* Review Section 17.9 and Problem 17.10.)



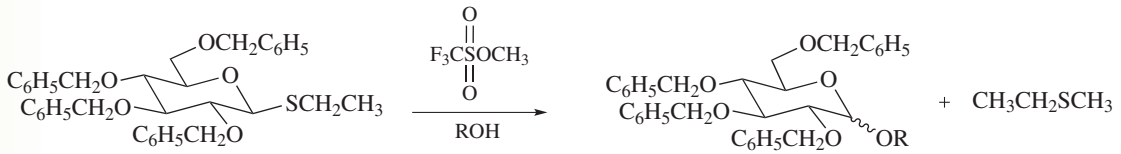
23.43 In each of the following reactions, the glycosyl donor is activated by reaction with an electrophilic reagent by the general pathway:



The oxygen-stabilized carbocation that is formed reacts with the glycosyl acceptor ROH to form an anomeric mixture of *O*-glycosides.

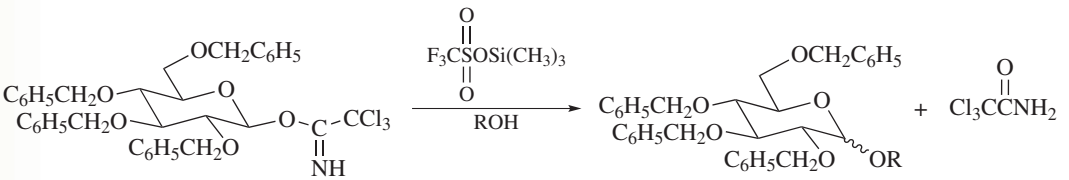
Using curved arrows, write a mechanism to show how each of the glycosyl donors produces the oxygen-stabilized carbocation. For part (a) consult Section 16.16 on sulfides and 8.11 on triflates; for part (b) examine step 2 in Mechanism 19.6, and assume that silylation occurs at nitrogen in the glycosyl imidate ester.

(a)



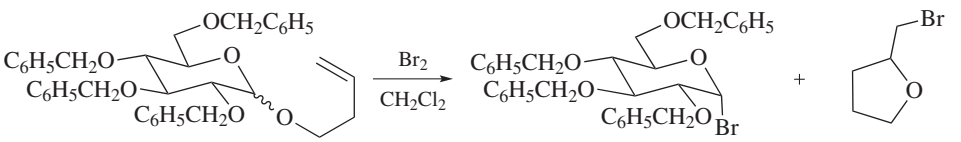
Thioglycoside — α/β Glycoside mixture — Ethyl methyl sulfide

(b)



Glycosyl imidate ester — α/β Glycoside mixture — Trichloro-acetamide

23.44 Pentenyl glycosides are glycosyl donors as illustrated by their conversion to glycosyl bromides with bromine. Write a mechanism for this reaction. Why is the α-anomer formed selectively?



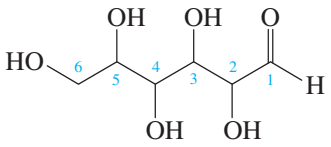
Pentenyl glycoside — α Glycosyl bromide (90%) — 2-(Bromomethyl)-tetrahydrofuran

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 23

Emil Fischer and the Structure of (+)-Glucose

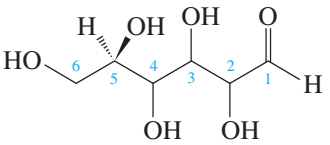
Emil Fischer's determination of the structure of glucose was carried out as the nineteenth century ended and the twentieth began. The structure of no other sugar was known at that time, and the spectroscopic techniques that now aid organic analysis were not yet available. All Fischer had was information from chemical transformations, polarimetry, and his own intellect.

Fischer knew that (+)-glucose was one of 16 possible stereoisomers having the constitution:

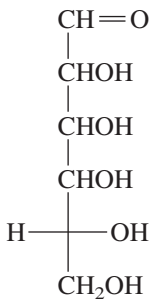


C-2, 3, 4, and 5 are chirality centers of unknown configuration.

By arbitrarily assigning a particular configuration to the chirality center at C-5, Fischer realized that he could determine the configurations of C-2, C-3, and C-4 *relative* to C-5. This reduces the number of structural possibilities to the eight that we now call D-hexoses.

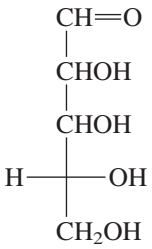


or, as in a Fischer projection



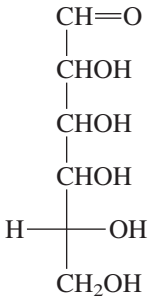
Eventually, Fischer's arbitrary assignment proved correct, which made his stereochemical assignments for all of the chirality centers of (+)-glucose correct in an absolute as well as a relative sense.

The following problems lead you through Fischer's interpretation of the information available to him in determining the structure of (+)-glucose. The order in which the facts are presented is modified slightly from Fischer's, but the logic is the same. We'll begin in Problem 23.45 with (−)-arabinose, a pentose having the same configuration at its highest numbered chirality center as (+)-glucose, a fact that emerges in Problem 23.46.



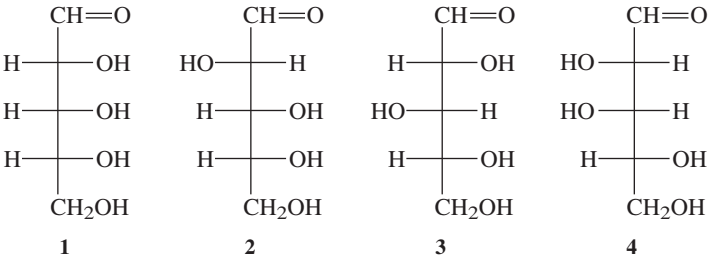
D-Pentoses including (−)-arabinose

(−)-Arabinose and (+)-glucose have the same configuration at their highest numbered chirality center. This fact is established in Problem 23.46 but used in Problem 23.45.



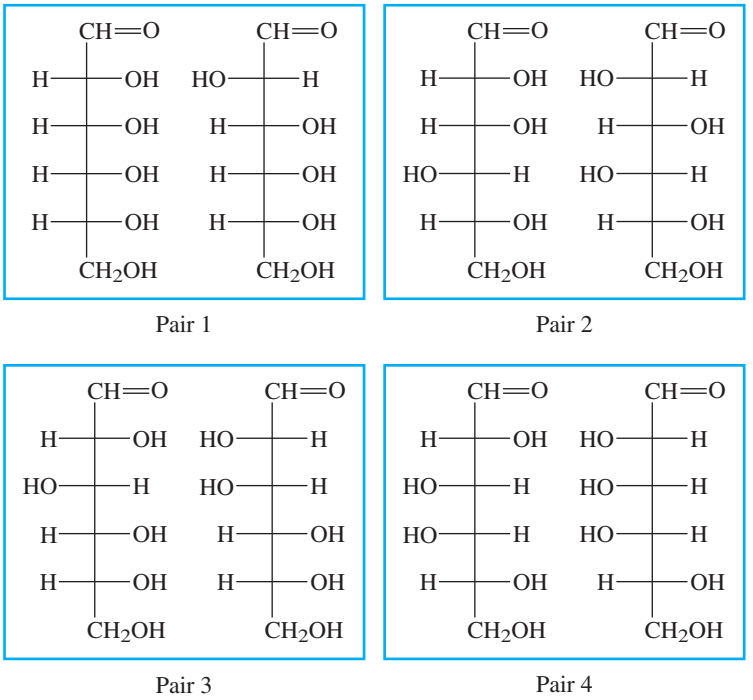
D-Hexoses including (+)-glucose

23.45 Oxidation of (−)-arabinose with warm nitric acid gave an optically active aldaric acid. In this reaction, both C-1 and C-5 are oxidized to CO_2H. Assuming the C-4 OH is to the right, which two of the structures shown are possible for (−)-arabinose?



A. **1** and **2**
B. **1** and **3**
C. **1** and **4**
D. **2** and **3**
E. **2** and **4**
F. **3** and **4**

23.46 Chain extension of (−)-arabinose by way of its derived cyanohydrin gave a mixture of (+)-glucose and (+)-mannose. Based on this observation *and* your answer to the preceding problem, which pairs are possible for (+)-mannose and (+)-glucose?



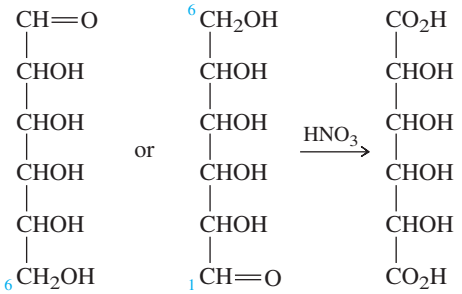
A. Pair 1 and pair 2
B. Pair 1 and pair 3
C. Pair 1 and pair 4
D. Pair 2 and pair 3
E. Pair 2 and pair 4
F. Pair 3 and pair 4

23.47 Both (+)-glucose and (+)-mannose were oxidized to optically active dicarboxylic acids (aldaric acids) ($C_6H_{14}O_4$) with nitric acid. Of the pairs remaining after solving the preceding problem, which one is the (+)-glucose/(+)-mannose pair?

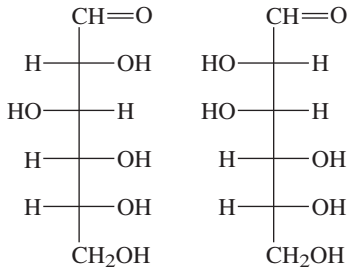
A. Pair 1
B. Pair 2
C. Pair 3
D. Pair 4

In order to do the next problem, you need to know that pair 3 is the correct answer to Problem 23.46. If you are not certain about how this answer is arrived at, it would be a good idea to review the previous questions.

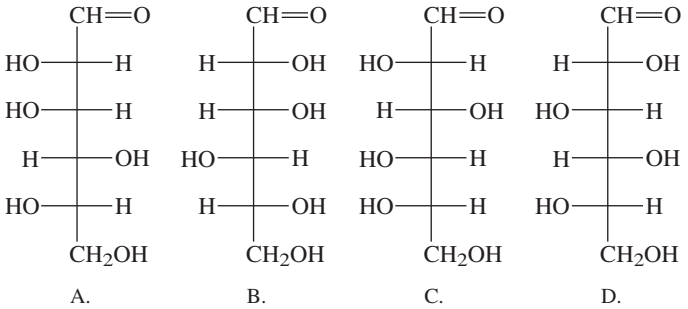
23.48 Because both C-1 and C-6 are oxidized to —CO_2H groups by nitric acid, Fischer recognized that two diastereomeric hexoses could give the same aldaric acid.



Of the (+)-glucose/(+)-mannose pair (pair 3 in Problem 23.46), only (+)-glucose has a diastereomeric hexose that gives the same aldaric acid. Fischer synthesized that specific diastereomer and found it gave the same aldaric acid as (+)-glucose. Thus, he was able to determine that (+)-glucose and (+)-mannose are:



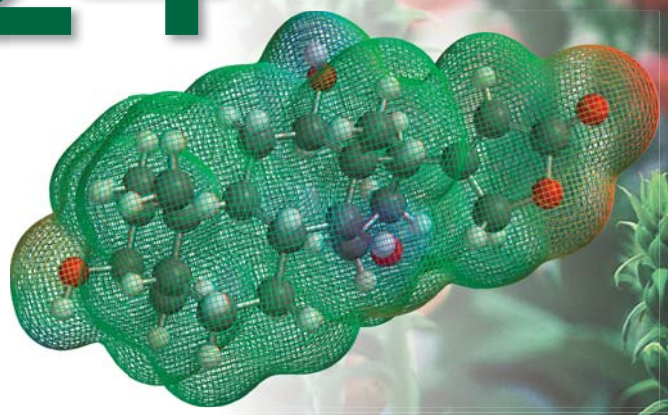
Which hexose did Fischer synthesize that gave the same aldaric acid as (+)-glucose?



23.49 Refer to Table 23.2 to identify the hexose that is the answer to Problem 23.48.

A. (+)-D-Altrose
B. (+)-D-Galactose
C. (–)-L-Glucose
D. (+)-L-Gulose

24



CHAPTER OUTLINE

24.1 Acetyl Coenzyme A 993
24.2 Fats, Oils, and Fatty Acids 994
24.3 Fatty Acid Biosynthesis 997
24.4 Phospholipids 999
24.5 Waxes 1001
24.6 Prostaglandins 1002
- Nonsteroidal Antiinflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs) and COX-2 Inhibitors 1004

24.7 Terpenes: The Isoprene Rule 1005
24.8 Isopentenyl Diphosphate: The Biological Isoprene Unit 1008
24.9 Carbon–Carbon Bond Formation in Terpene Biosynthesis 1008
24.10 The Pathway from Acetate to Isopentenyl Diphosphate 1011
24.11 Steroids: Cholesterol 1013
24.12 Vitamin D 1016
- Good Cholesterol? Bad Cholesterol? What's the Difference? 1016

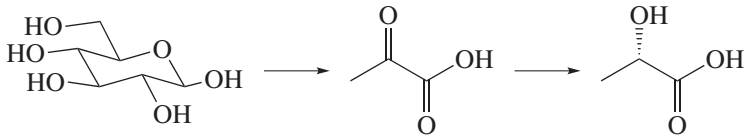
24.13 Bile Acids 1017
24.14 Corticosteroids 1017
24.15 Sex Hormones 1018
24.16 Carotenoids 1019
- Crocuses Make Saffron from Carotenes 1020

24.17 **Summary** 1021
Problems 1022
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 24: Polyketides 1027

Digoxigenin is the steroid component of digoxin, a glycoside found in the flowers called foxgloves. Digoxin is used to treat heart arrhythmia and fibrillation. Like all steroids, digoxigenin is a lipid.

Lipids

Among the major classes of naturally occurring biomolecules (lipids, carbohydrates, proteins, and nucleic acids), **lipids** differ in being defined by a physical property—solubility. They are more soluble in nonpolar solvents than in water. Lipids include a variety of structural types, a collection of which is introduced in this chapter. Fatty acids, terpenes, steroids, prostaglandins, and carotenes are all lipids but are very different from one another in both structure and function. They share a common biosynthetic origin in that all are ultimately derived from glucose. During glycolysis, glucose is converted to lactic acid by way of pyruvic acid.

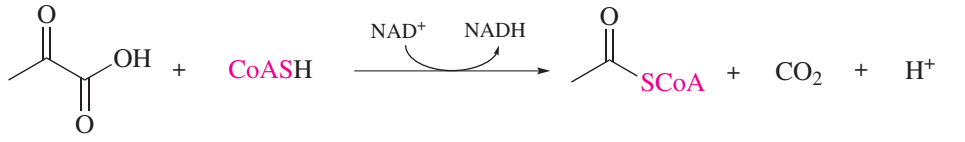


Glucose — Pyruvic acid — (*S*)-Lactic acid

The pathway leading to lactic acid and beyond is concerned with energy storage and production, but some pyruvic acid is converted to acetic acid and used as a starting material in the biosynthesis of more complex substances, especially lipids. This chapter is organized around that theme. We'll begin by looking at the reaction in which acetate (two carbons) is formed from pyruvate (three carbons).

24.1 Acetyl Coenzyme A

Acetate is furnished in most of its important biochemical reactions as its thioester **acetyl coenzyme A** (Figure 24.1*a*). Its formation from pyruvate involves several enzyme-catalyzed steps summarized as:



Pyruvic acid — Coenzyme A — Acetyl coenzyme A — Carbon dioxide — Proton

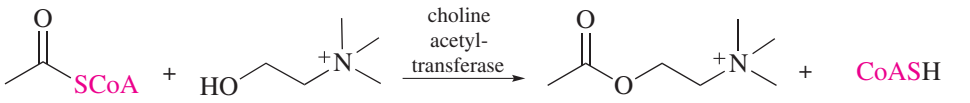
Two coenzymes are required; NAD^+ (see Section 15.10) as an oxidizing agent and coenzyme A (Figure 24.1*b*) as the acetyl group acceptor. Coenzyme A is a thiol; its chain terminates in a sulfhydryl (—SH) group. Acetylation of the sulfhydryl group of coenzyme A gives acetyl coenzyme A.

Coenzyme A was isolated and identified by Fritz Lipmann, an American biochemist who shared the 1953 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for this work.

Thioesters are both more reactive than ordinary esters toward nucleophilic acyl substitution and also contain a greater proportion of enol at equilibrium. Both properties are apparent in the properties of acetyl coenzyme A. In some reactions it is the C═O function that reacts; in others it is the α-carbon atom.

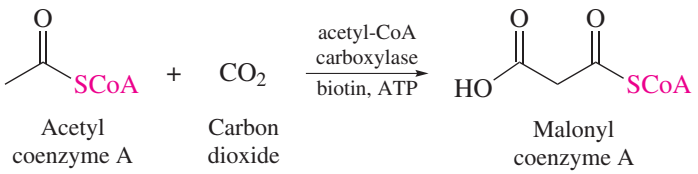
The Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems section at the end of Chapter 19 compares thioesters to their oxygen counterparts and introduces their reactions.

Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution

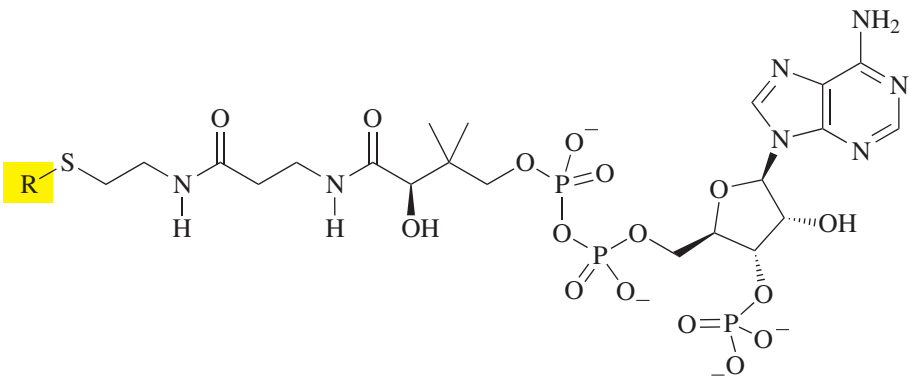


Acetyl coenzyme A — Choline — Acetylcholine — Coenzyme A

Reaction at the α-Carbon



Acetyl coenzyme A — Carbon dioxide — Malonyl coenzyme A



(*a*) R = $CH_3C(=O)$— (Acetyl coenzyme A: $CH_3C(=O)SCoA$)

(*b*) R = H— (Coenzyme A: CoASH)

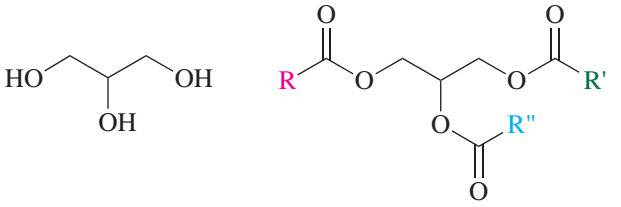
Figure 24.1

Structures of (*a*) acetyl coenzyme and (*b*) coenzyme A.

We'll see numerous examples of both reaction types in the following sections. Even though these reactions are enzyme-catalyzed and occur at far faster rates than similar transformations carried out in their absence, the types of reactions are essentially the same as the fundamental processes of organic chemistry.

24.2 Fats, Oils, and Fatty Acids

Fats and **oils** are one class of lipids. In terms of structure, both are triesters of glycerol (*triglycerides*).

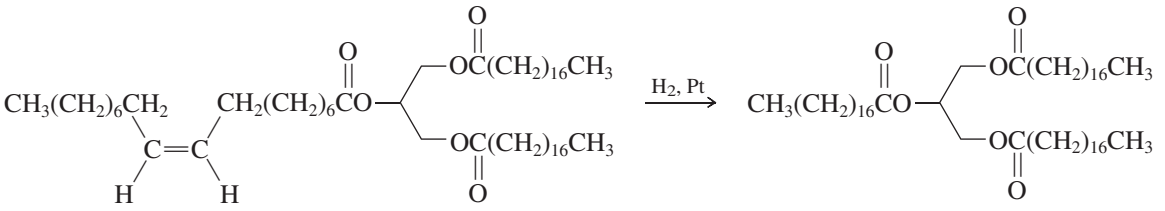


Glycerol

A triacylglycerol:
R, R', and R" may be the same or different

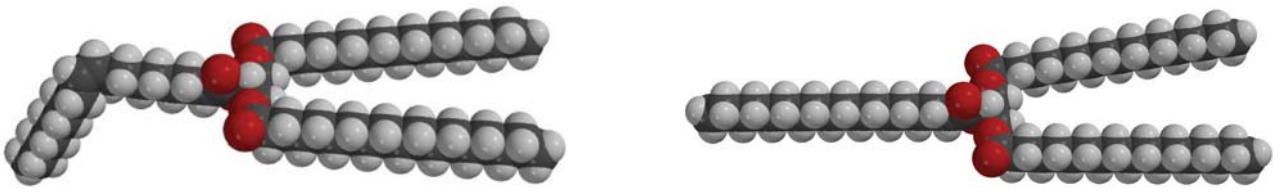
Historically, fats are solids and oils are liquids, but we refer to both as fats when describing most of their other properties. They serve a number of functions especially that of energy storage. Although carbohydrates are a source of readily available energy, it is more efficient for an organism to store energy in the form of fat because the same mass of fat delivers over twice the energy.

Figure 24.2 shows the structures of two typical triacylglycerols, 2-oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol (Figure 24.2*a*) and tristearin (Figure 24.2*b*). Both occur naturally—in cocoa butter, for example. All three acyl groups in tristearin are stearyl (octadecanoyl) groups. In 2-oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol, two of the acyl groups are stearyl, but the one in the middle is oleyl (*cis*-9-octadecenoyl). As the figure shows, tristearin can be prepared by catalytic hydrogenation of the carbon–carbon double bond of 2-oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol. Hydrogenation raises the melting point from 43°C in 2-oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol to 72°C in tristearin and is a standard technique in the food industry for converting liquid vegetable



2-Oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol (mp 43°C)

Tristearin (mp 72°C)



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 24.2

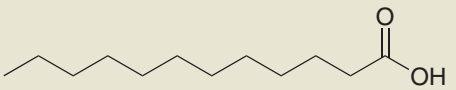
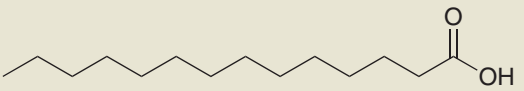
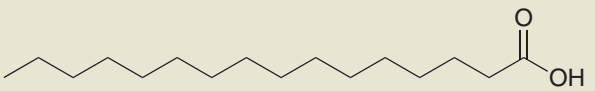
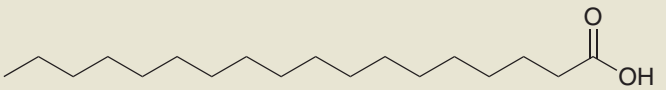
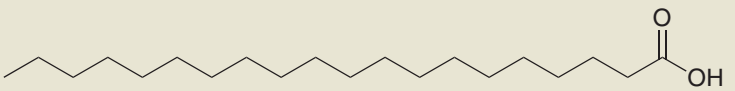
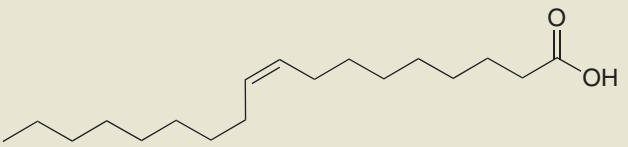
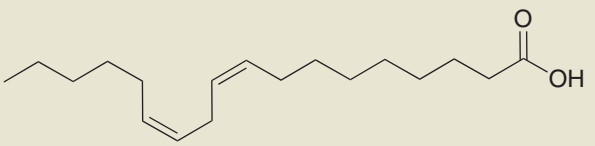
The structures of two typical triacylglycerols. (*a*) 2-Oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol is a naturally occurring triacylglycerol found in cocoa butter. The cis double bond of its oleyl group gives the molecule a shape that interferes with efficient crystal packing. (*b*) Catalytic hydrogenation converts 2-oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol to tristearin. Tristearin has a higher melting point than 2-oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol.

oils to solid "shortenings." The space-filling models of the two show the flatter structure of tristearin, which allows it to pack better in a crystal lattice than the more irregular shape of 2-oleyl-1,3-distearyl-glycerol permits. This irregular shape is a direct result of the cis double bond in the side chain.

Hydrolysis of fats yields glycerol and long-chain **fatty acids.** Thus, tristearin gives glycerol and three molecules of stearic acid on hydrolysis. Table 24.1 lists a few representative fatty acids. As these examples indicate, most naturally occurring fatty acids possess an

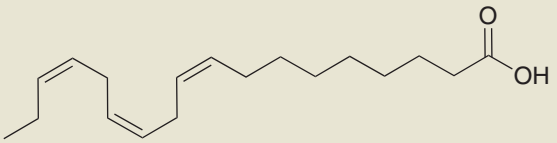
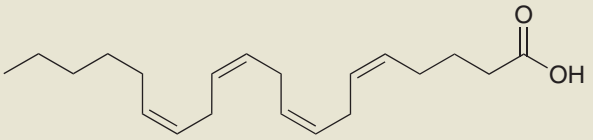
The term *fatty acid* originally referred to those carboxylic acids that occur naturally in triacylglycerols. Its use has expanded to include all unbranched carboxylic acids, irrespective of their origin and chain length.

TABLE 24.1 Some Representative Fatty Acids

Number of carbons	Common name	Structural formula and systematic name	Melting point, °C
Saturated fatty acids			
12	Lauric acid	 Dodecanoic acid	44
14	Myristic acid	 Tetradecanoic acid	58.5
16	Palmitic acid	 Hexadecanoic acid	63
18	Stearic acid	 Octadecanoic acid	69
20	Arachidic acid	 Icosanoic acid	75
Unsaturated fatty acids			
18	Oleic acid	 *cis*-9-Octadecenoic acid	4
18	Linoleic acid	 *cis,cis*-9,12-Octadecadienoic acid	–12

continued

TABLE 24.1 Some Representative Fatty Acids *continued*

Number of carbons	Common name	Structural formula and systematic name	Melting point, °C
Unsaturated fatty acids			
18	Linolenic acid	 *cis,cis,cis*-9,12,15-Octadecatrienoic acid	−11
20	Arachidonic acid	 *cis,cis,cis,cis*-5,8,11,14-Icosatetraenoic acid	−49

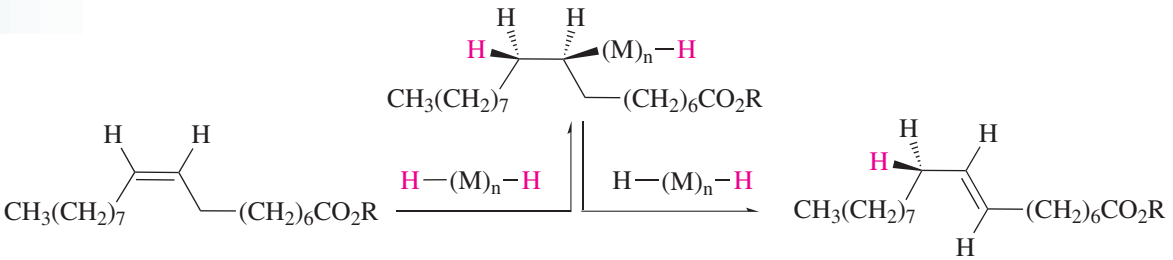
Palmitic acid is the most abundant naturally occurring fatty acid. It is present in many fats and oils and is best known as the major fatty acid component of palm oil.

even number of carbon atoms and an unbranched carbon chain. The carbon chain may be saturated or it can contain one or more double bonds. When double bonds are present, they are almost always cis. Acyl groups containing 14–20 carbon atoms are the most abundant in triacylglycerols.

Problem 24.1

What fatty acids are produced on hydrolysis of 2-oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol? What other triacylglycerol gives the same fatty acids and in the same proportions as 2-oleyl-1,3-distearylglycerol?

A few fatty acids with trans double bonds (trans fatty acids) occur naturally, but the major source of trans fats comes from partial hydrogenation of vegetable oils in, for example, the preparation of margarine. The same catalysts that catalyze the hydrogenation of the double bonds in a triacylglycerol also catalyze double-bond migration and stereoisomerization.

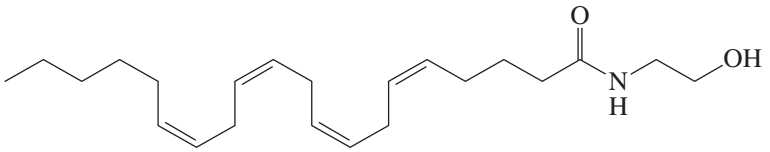


Ester of *cis*-9-Octadecenoic acid

Ester of *trans*-8-Octadecenoic acid

The intermediate in hydrogenation, formed by reaction of the unsaturated ester with the hydrogenated surface of the metal catalyst, not only can proceed to the saturated fatty acid ester, but also can dissociate to constitutional and stereoisomers. Unlike polyunsaturated vegetable oils, which tend to reduce serum cholesterol levels, the trans fats produced by stereoisomerization during partial hydrogenation have cholesterol-raising effects similar to those of saturated fats. Increased consumption of trans fats has been linked to higher levels of coronary artery disease.

Fatty acids occur naturally in forms other than as triacylglycerols, and we'll see numerous examples as we go through the chapter. *Anandamide,* for example, is an amide of arachidonic acid (see Table 24.1).



Anandamide

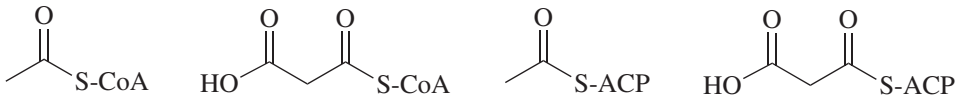
Anandamide was isolated from pig's brain and identified as the substance that normally binds to the "cannabinoid receptor." The active component of marijuana, Δ^9-tetrahydrocannabinol, exerts its effect by binding to a receptor, and scientists had long wondered what compound was the natural substrate for this binding site. Anandamide is that compound and seems to be involved in moderating pain. Once the identity of the "endogenous cannabinoid" was known, scientists looked specifically for it and found it in some surprising places—chocolate, for example.

The cannabinoid receptor belongs to a large family of receptor proteins that span the cell membrane, known as G-coupled protein receptors. Membrane receptor proteins are illustrated later on in Figure 24.4.

24.3 Fatty Acid Biosynthesis

The saturated fatty acids through hexadecanoic acid (palmitic acid) share a biosynthetic pathway that differs among them only in the number of chain elongation events. Four thioesters are involved:

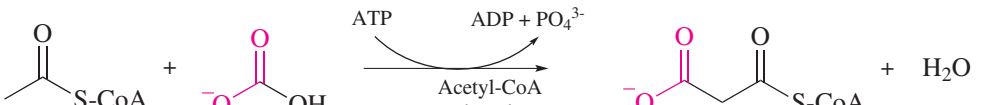
This section outlines fatty acid biosynthesis in animals. The pathway in other organisms such as bacteria is different.



Acetyl coenzyme A | Malonyl coenzyme A | Acetyl acyl carrier protein | Malonyl acyl carrier protein

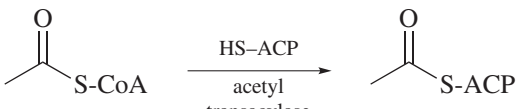
Of these four, acetyl-CoA and malonyl-ACP deserve special mention: acetyl-CoA because the other three are derived from it, malonyl-ACP because it is the source of all but two of the carbons in the final fatty acid.

Malonyl-CoA is formed by carboxylation of acetyl-CoA. The energy to drive the carboxylation comes from ATP.

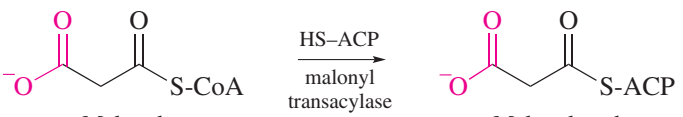


Acetyl coenzyme A | Bicarbonate | Malonyl coenzyme A | Water

Acetyl and malonyl acyl carrier proteins are formed by acyl transfer to the polypeptide acyl carrier protein.



Acetyl coenzyme A | Acetyl acyl carrier protein

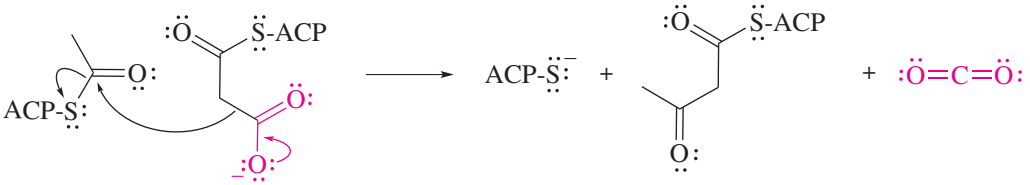


Malonyl coenzyme A | Malonyl acyl carrier protein

mFAS is a dimer of two polypeptide chains, each of which has a molecular weight of about 270,000.

These attached acyl carrier protein units are handles that bind the growing fatty acid to the multienzyme complex *mammalian fatty acid synthase* (mFAS) and guide it through subsequent transformations. The various enzymes occupy seven domains of mFAS.

One enzyme catalyzes a reaction in which decarboxylation of malonyl-ACP gives an enolate that reacts with acetyl-ACP by nucleophilic acyl substitution to give acetoacetyl-ACP.

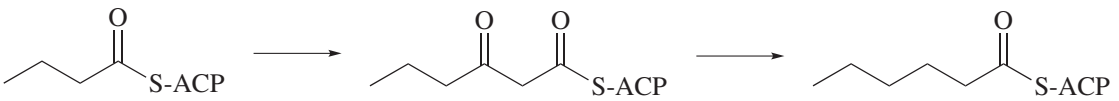


Acetyl acyl carrier protein | Malonyl acyl carrier protein | Thiolate leaving group | Acetoacetyl acyl carrier protein | Carbon dioxide

Acetoacetyl-ACP is transported to a second domain of mFAS where it undergoes a sequence of three reactions—reduction, dehydration, reduction—that convert the acetoacetyl group to butanoyl.

Acetoacetyl acyl carrier protein | 3-Hydroxybutanoyl acyl carrier protein | *trans*-2-Butenoyl acyl carrier protein | Butanoyl acyl carrier protein

Transfer of an acyl group between the first and second domains is reversible, which allows butanoyl ACP to return to the first domain of mFAS where it reacts with a second malonyl-ACP. The resulting six-carbon β-keto thioester then proceeds through another reduction—dehydration—reduction sequence to give hexanoyl-ACP.



Butanoyl-ACP | 3-Oxohexanoyl-ACP | Hexanoyl-ACP

The process continues until the acyl chain reaches 16 carbons at which point hydrolysis gives hexadecanoic acid.

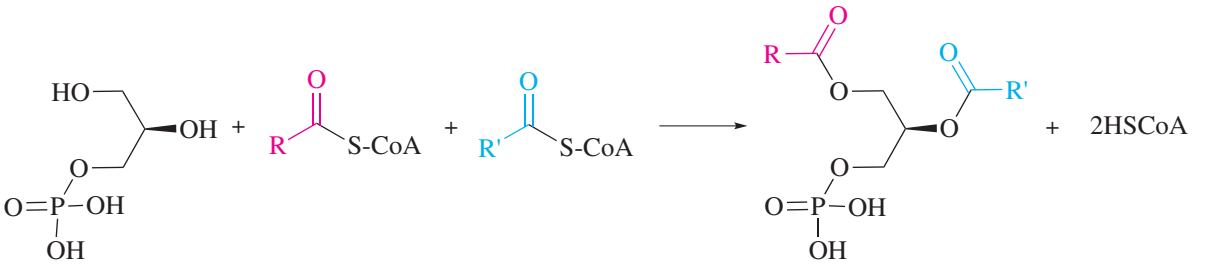
Problem 24.2

Give the structure of the keto acyl-ACP formed after four cycles of chain extension starting with acetyl-ACP.

This phase of fatty acid biosynthesis concludes with transfer of the newly formed acyl group from ACP to coenzyme A. The resulting acyl coenzyme A molecules can then undergo a number of subsequent biological transformations. One is chain extension, leading to acyl groups with more than 16 carbons. Another is the introduction of one or more carbon–carbon double bonds. A third is acyl transfer from sulfur to oxygen to form esters such as triacylglycerols. The process by which acyl coenzyme A molecules are converted to triacylglycerols involves a type of intermediate called a *phospholipid* and is discussed in the following section.

24.4 Phospholipids

Triacylglycerols arise, not by acylation of glycerol itself, but by a sequence of steps in which the first stage is acyl transfer to L-glycerol 3-phosphate giving a **phosphatidic acid.**

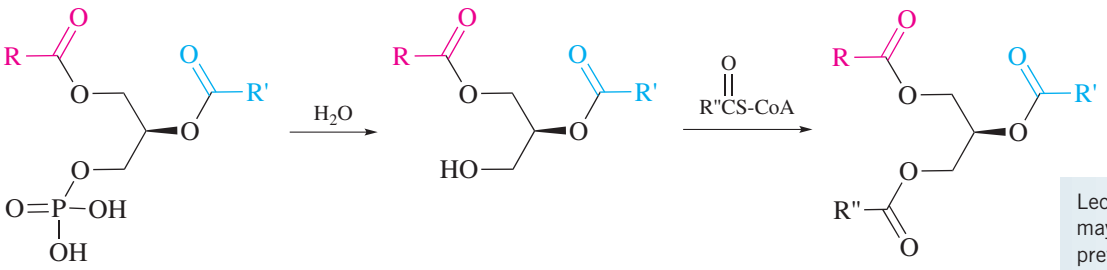


L-Glycerol 3-phosphate | Two acyl coenzyme A molecules (R and R' may be the same or different) | Phosphatidic acid | Coenzyme A

Problem 24.3

What is the absolute configuration (*R* or *S*) of L-glycerol 3-phosphate? What must be the absolute configuration of the naturally occurring phosphatidic acids biosynthesized from it?

Hydrolysis of the phosphate ester function of the phosphatidic acid gives a diacylglycerol, which then reacts with a third acyl coenzyme A molecule to produce a triacylglycerol.

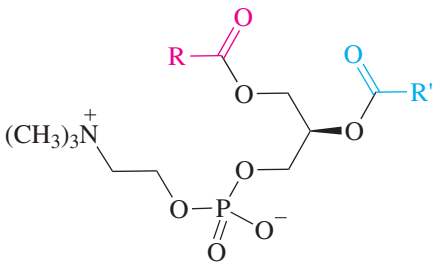


Phosphatidic acid | Diacylglycerol | Triacylglycerol

Lecithin is added to foods such as mayonnaise as an emulsifying agent to prevent the fat and water from separating into two layers.

Phosphatidic acids not only are intermediates in the biosynthesis of triacylglycerols but also are biosynthetic precursors of other members of a group of compounds called *phosphoglycerides* or *glycerol phosphatides.* Phosphorus-containing derivatives of lipids are known as **phospholipids,** and phosphoglycerides are one type of phospholipid.

One important phospholipid is **phosphatidylcholine,** also called *lecithin.* Phosphatidylcholine is a mixture of diesters of phosphoric acid. One ester function is derived from a diacylglycerol, whereas the other is a choline [$—OCH_2CH_2\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3$] unit.



Phosphatidylcholine

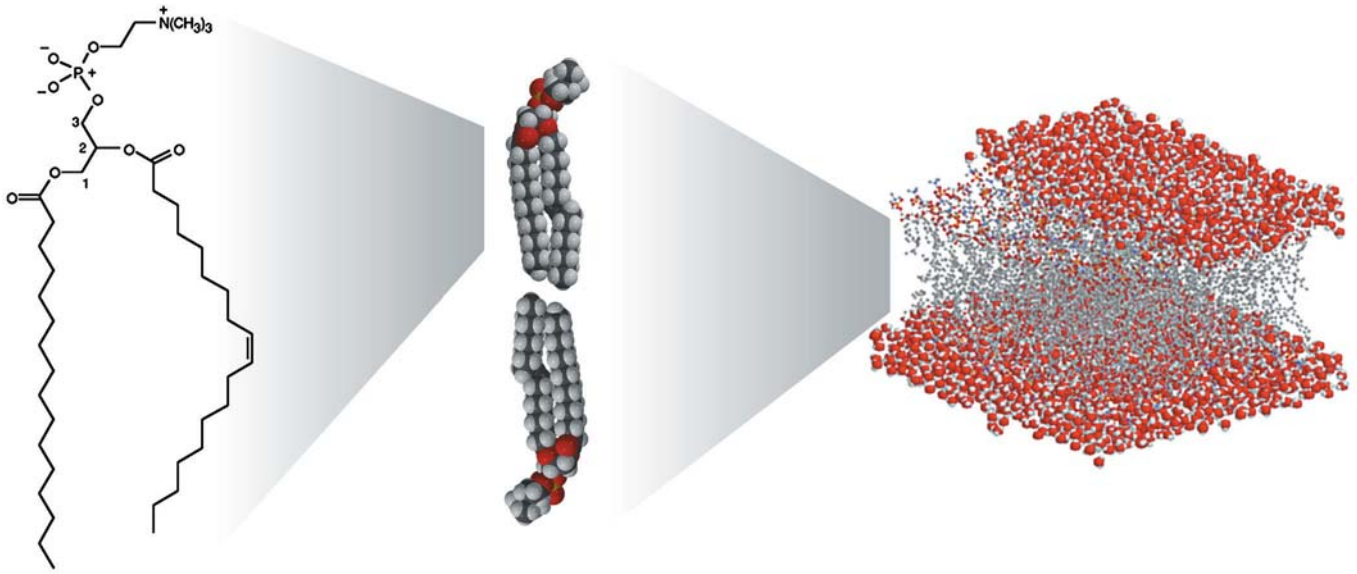


Figure 24.3

(*a*) Phosphatidylcholine. The C-1 and C-2 oxygens of glycerol bear hexadecanoyl (palmityl) and *cis*-9-octadecenoyl (oleyl) groups, respectively; C-3 bears the phosphate ester of choline. (*b*) Two space-filling models of (*a*) oriented so that the polar head group of one points up and the other down. (*c*) A simulation of a phospholipid bilayer. The space-filling models at the top and bottom are water molecules. The polar head groups are in contact with water molecules. The hydrocarbon chains are grey and shown as ball-and-spoke models with the hydrogens omitted. Water molecules are omitted at the upper left corner to make the head groups visible. The simulation is based on the coordinates of H. Heller, M. Schaefer, and K. Schulten, "Molecular Dynamics Simulation of a Bilayer of 200 Lipids in the Gel and in the Liquid-Crystal Phases," *Journal of Physical Chemistry,* 97, 8343–8360 (1993) and taken from an interactive animated tutorial by E. Martz and A. Herráez, "Lipid Bilayers and the Gramicidin Channel" [http://molvis.sdsc.edu/bilayers/index.htm (2001)] by courtesy of Professor Martz.

Phosphatidylcholine possesses a hydrophilic polar "head group" (the positively charged choline) and two lipophilic (hydrophobic) nonpolar "tails" (the acyl groups). Under certain conditions, such as at the interface of two aqueous phases, phosphatidylcholine forms what is called a *lipid bilayer,* as shown in Figure 24.3. Because there are two long-chain acyl groups in each molecule, the most stable assembly has the polar groups solvated by water molecules at the top and bottom surfaces and the lipophilic acyl groups directed toward the interior of the bilayer.

Phosphatidylcholine is an important component of cell membranes, but cell membranes are more than simply lipid bilayers. Although their composition varies with their source, a typical membrane contains about equal amounts of lipid and protein, and the amount of cholesterol in the lipid fraction can approximate that of phosphatidylcholine. A schematic representation of a cell membrane is shown in Figure 24.4. This diagram is known as the **fluid mosaic model.**

The lipid fraction is responsible for the structure of the membrane. Phosphatidylcholine provides the bilayer that is the barrier between what is inside the cell and what is outside. Cholesterol intermingles with the phosphatidylcholine to confer an extra measure of rigidity to the membrane.

The protein fraction is responsible for a major part of membrane function. Nonpolar materials can diffuse through the bilayer from one side to the other relatively easily, but polar materials, particularly metal ions such as Na^+, K^+, and Ca^{2+} cannot. The transport of metal ions is assisted by the membrane proteins. These proteins pick up a metal ion from the aqueous phase on one side of the membrane and shield it from the hydrophobic environment within the membrane while transporting it to the aqueous phase on the other side of the membrane. Ionophore antibiotics such as monensin (see Section 16.5, Figure 16.3) disrupt the normal functioning of cells by facilitating metal ion transport across cell membranes.

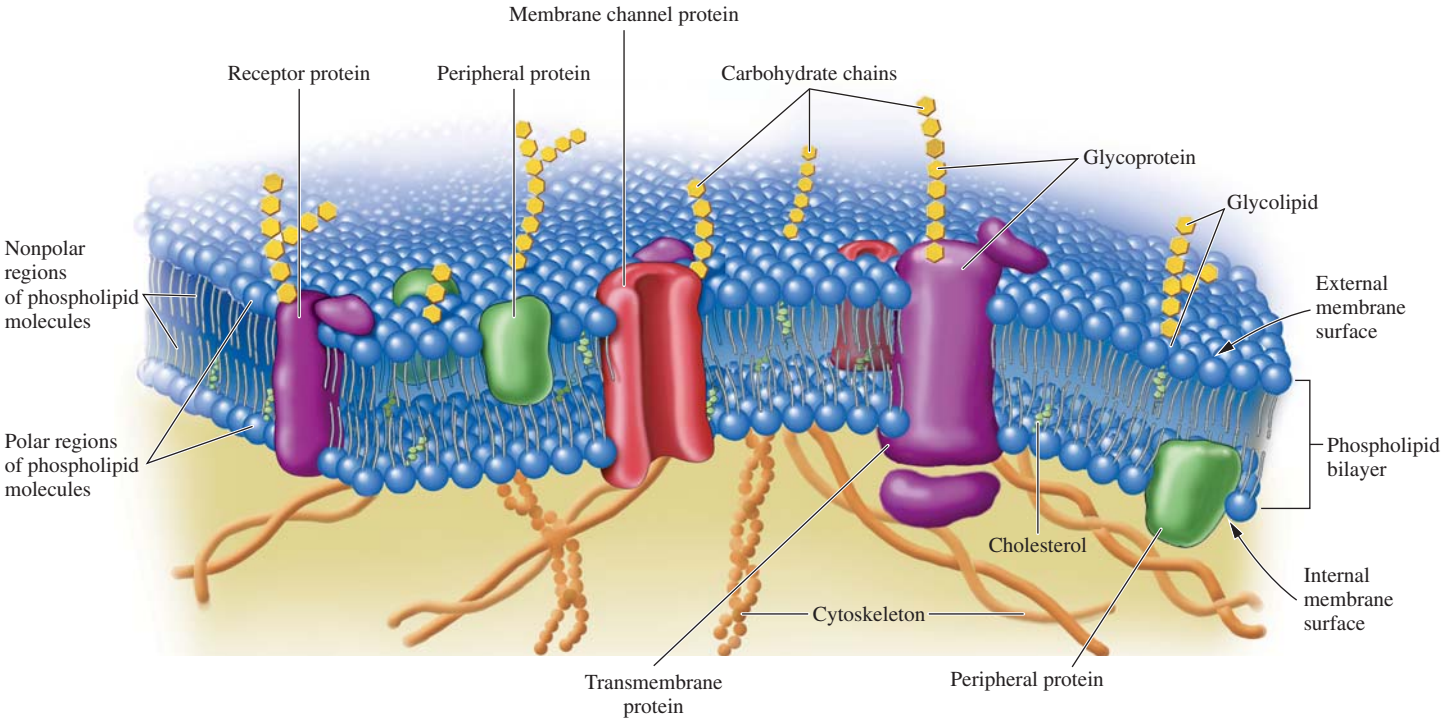


Figure 24.4

Fluid mosaic model of a cell membrane.
Receptor protein: A protein that acts as a receptor toward a hormone, neurotransmitter, or other molecule that can serve as a ligand.
Peripheral protein: A protein that adheres temporarily to the membrane.
Membrane channel protein: Proteins that can form a pore through the membrane, through which ions or other solutes may flow.

Like cells, only much smaller, spherical objects called **liposomes** are enclosed by a phospholipid bilayer that separates a watery interior from an external (also watery) environment. Liposomes occur naturally but can also be prepared from lecithin as a phosphatidylcholine source. Following their chance discovery in 1961, liposomes originally received attention as models for membrane structure. Subsequently, their use as novel vehicles for drug delivery was demonstrated and has led to important applications in medicine.

Generating a liposome in an aqueous solution containing a water-soluble drug yields the species illustrated in Figure 24.5 in which the drug is encapsulated within the interior of the liposome. When given to a patient, the drug-carrying liposome binds to one of the patient's cells and transfers the drug into the cell. Antitumor agents for cancer chemotherapy and zidovudine (AZT) (see Section 26.13) for treatment of HIV-AIDS are among the drugs that are often administered using this technique.

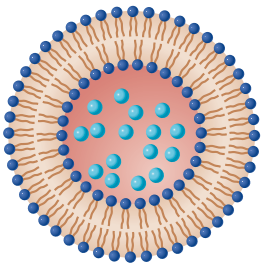


Figure 24.5

A spherical liposome shown in cross section. The membrane is a phospholipid bilayer. The interior is water. The blue spheres represent a water-soluble drug.

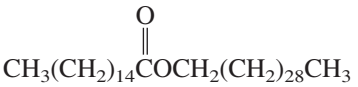
Problem 24.4

In addition to bilayers in cell membranes and liposomes, phosphatidylcholine also forms micelles. Compare a typical fatty acid micelle (see Section 18.7) and a phosphatidylcholine micelle, both at pH 7. What is the most significant difference in their surface properties?

24.5 Waxes

Waxes are water-repelling solids that are part of the protective coatings of a number of living things, including the leaves of plants, the fur of animals, and the feathers of birds. They are usually mixtures of esters in which both the alkyl and acyl group are unbranched and

contain a dozen or more carbon atoms. Beeswax, for example, contains the ester triacontyl hexadecanoate as one component of a complex mixture of hydrocarbons, alcohols, and esters.



Triacontyl hexadecanoate

Problem 24.5

Spermaceti is a wax obtained from the sperm whale. It contains, among other materials, an ester known as *cetyl palmitate,* which is used as an emollient in a number of soaps and cosmetics. The systematic name for cetyl palmitate is *hexadecyl hexadecanoate.* Write a structural formula for this substance.

Fatty acids normally occur naturally as components of esters; fats, oils, phospholipids, and waxes all are unique types of fatty acid esters. There is, however, an important class of fatty acid derivatives that carries out its biological role in the form of the free acid. This class of fatty acid derivatives is described in the following section.

24.6 Prostaglandins

Much of the fundamental work on prostaglandins was carried out by Sune Bergström and Bengt Samuelsson of the Karolinska Institute (Sweden) and by Sir John Vane of the Wellcome Foundation (Great Britain). These three shared the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine in 1982.

Research in physiology carried out in the 1930s established that the lipid fraction of semen contains small amounts of substances that exert powerful effects on smooth muscle. Sheep prostate glands proved to be a convenient source of this material and yielded a mixture of structurally related substances referred to collectively as **prostaglandins.** We now know that prostaglandins are present in almost all animal tissues, where they carry out a variety of regulatory functions. Among these functions are relaxation or constriction of bronchial muscles, platelet aggregation or disaggregation, induction of labor, and the regulation of inflammation.

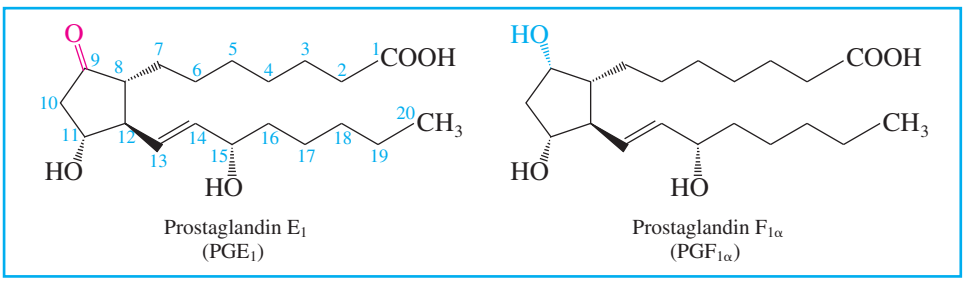
Prostaglandins are extremely potent substances and exert their physiological effects at very small concentrations. Because of this, their isolation was difficult, and it was not until 1960 that the first members of this class, designated PGE_1 and $PGF_{1\alpha}$ (Figure 24.6), were obtained as pure compounds. More than a dozen structurally related prostaglandins have since been isolated and identified. All the prostaglandins are 20-carbon carboxylic acids and contain a cyclopentane ring. All have hydroxyl groups at C-11 and C-15 (see Figure 24.6). Prostaglandins belonging to the F series have an additional hydroxyl group at C-9, and a carbonyl function is present at this position in the various PGEs. The subscript numerals in their abbreviated names indicate the number of double bonds.

Arachidonic acid gets its name from *arachidic acid,* the saturated C_{20} fatty acid isolated from peanut (*Arachis hypogaea*) oil.

Prostaglandins arise from unsaturated C_{20}-carboxylic acids such as arachidonic acid (see Table 24.1). Animals cannot biosynthesize arachidonic acid directly. They

Figure 24.6

Structures of two representative prostaglandins. The numbering scheme is illustrated in the structure of PGE_1.

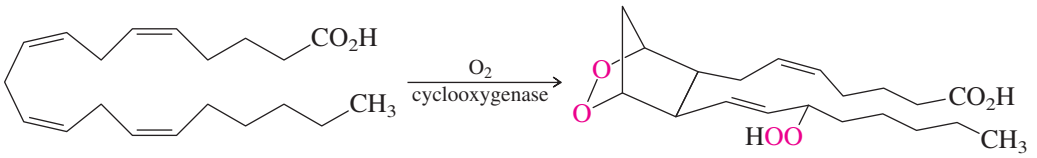


Prostaglandin E_1 (PGE_1)

Prostaglandin $F_{1\alpha}$ ($PGF_{1\alpha}$)

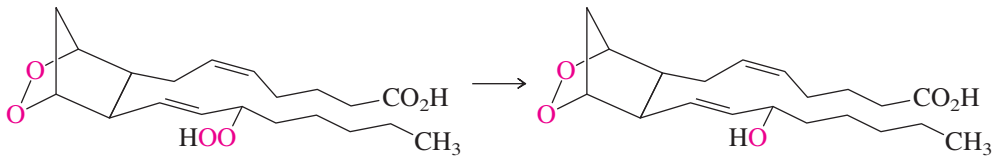
obtain linoleic acid from vegetable oils in their diet and extend the carbon chain of linoleic acid from 18 to 20 carbons while introducing two more double bonds. Linoleic acid is said to be an **essential fatty acid,** forming part of the dietary requirement of animals. Those that feed on diets that are deficient in linoleic acid grow poorly and suffer a number of other disorders, some of which are reversed on feeding them vegetable oils rich in linoleic acid and other *polyunsaturated fatty acids.* One function of these substances is to provide the raw materials for prostaglandin biosynthesis.

Studies of the biosynthesis of PGE_2 from arachidonic acid have shown that the three new oxygens come from O_2. The enzyme involved, *cyclooxygenase* (COX) catalyzes the reaction of arachidonic acids with O_2 to give an *endoperoxide* (PGG_2).



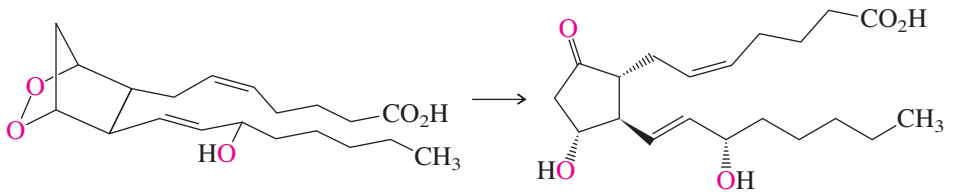
Arachidonic acid PGG_2

In the next step, the —OOH group of PGG_2 is reduced to an alcohol function. The product of this step is called PGH_2.



PGG_2 PGH_2

PGH_2 is the precursor to a number of prostaglandins and related compounds, depending on the enzyme that acts on it. One of these cleaves the O—O bond of the endoperoxide and gives PGE_2.



PGH_2 PGE_2

Before leaving this biosynthetic scheme, notice that PGE_2 has four chirality centers. Even though arachidonic acid is achiral, only the stereoisomer shown as PGE_2 in the equation is formed. Moreover, it is formed as a single enantiomer. Like most enzyme-catalyzed reactions, the transformations in the biosynthesis of PGE_2 are enantioselective.

Problem 24.6

Write the structural formula and give the IUPAC name for the fatty acid from which PGE_1 is biosynthesized. The structure of PGE_1 is shown in Figure 24.6

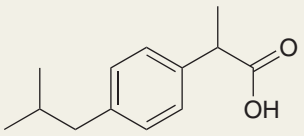
Prostaglandins belong to a group of compounds that, because they are related to icosanoic acid [$CH_3(CH_2)_{18}CO_2H$)], are collectively known as **icosanoids.** The other icosanoids are *thromboxanes, prostacyclins,* and *leukotrienes.*

Older versions of the IUPAC rules called the unbranched carboxylic acid with 20 carbon atoms *eicosanoic acid.* Consequently, icosanoids are often referred to as *eicosanoids.*

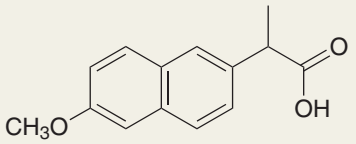
Nonsteroidal Antiinflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs) and COX-2 Inhibitors

An injection of the steroid cortisone is often effective for reducing the pain and inflammation that comes from an injury. But chronic pain and inflammation, such as occurs with arthritis, is better managed with an orally administered remedy. Enter nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs).

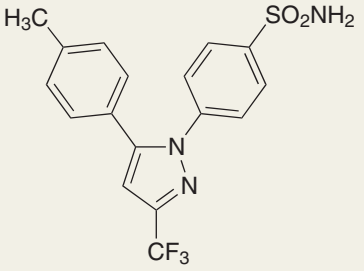
Aspirin is the oldest and best known NSAID. Over the years it has been joined by many others, a few of which are:



Ibuprofen



Naproxen



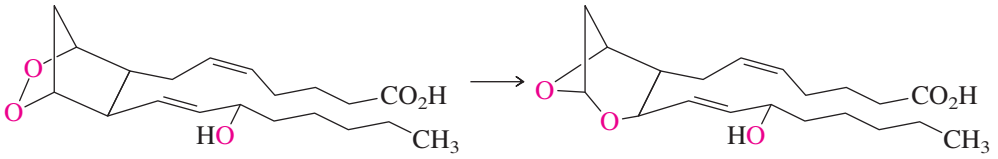
Celecoxib (Celebrex)

The long-standing question of how aspirin works has been answered in terms of its effect on prostaglandin biosynthesis. Prostaglandins are made continuously in all mammalian cells and serve a variety of functions. They are biosynthesized in greater amounts at sites of tissue damage, and it is they that cause the pain and inflammation we feel. Cells contain two forms of the cyclooxygenase enzyme, COX-1 and COX-2; both catalyze prostaglandin biosynthesis. Some of the prostaglandins produced with the aid of COX-1 are involved in protecting the stomach and kidneys. COX-2 is concentrated in injured tissue where it works to catalyze the biosynthesis of the prostaglandins responsible for inflammation. Aspirin inhibits prostaglandin biosynthesis by inactivating both COX-1 and COX-2. Although inhibition of COX-2 has the desired effect of relieving pain and inflammation, inhibition of COX-1 causes irritation of the stomach lining.

A good antiinflammatory drug, therefore, will selectively inactivate COX-2 while leaving COX-1 untouched. Aspirin doesn't; in fact, it is about ten times more effective toward inactivating the "wrong" COX.

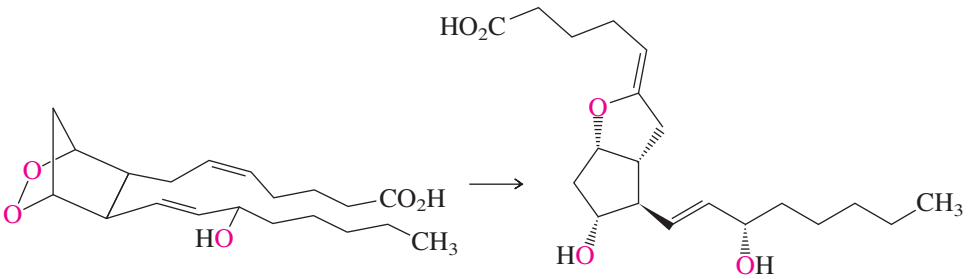
The classical period of drug development emphasized testing a variety of compounds for biological activity, identifying the features believed to be associated with the desired activity, then synthesizing and testing numerous analogs. Celecoxib, however, was developed with the express goal of inhibiting COX-2. Molecular models of the three-dimensional structures of COX-I and COX-2 were examined to guide thinking about the kinds of structural units a drug should have in order to selectively inactivate COX-2. This approach not only led to a successful drug, but validated a structure-based route to new drug development.

Thromboxane A_2 (TXA_2) promotes platelet aggregation and blood clotting. The biosynthetic pathway to TXA_2 is the same as that of PGE_2 up to PGH_2. At that point separate pathways lead to PGE_2 and TXA_2.



PGH_2 TXA_2

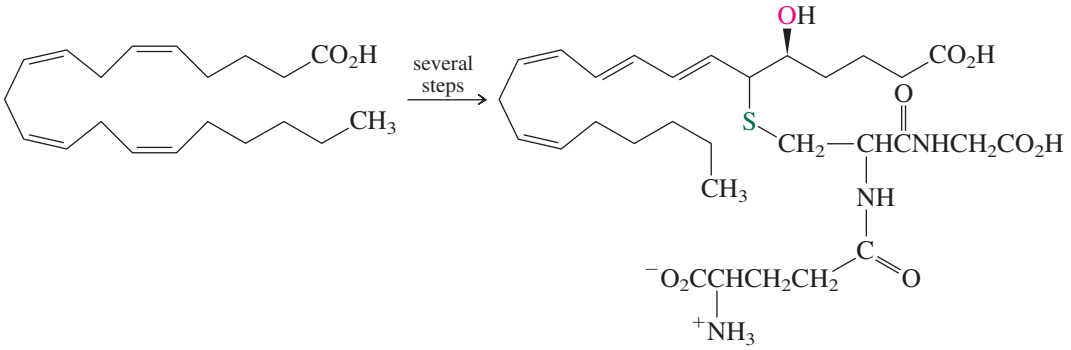
Prostacyclin I_2 (PGI_2) inhibits platelet aggregation and relaxes coronary arteries. Like PGE_2 and TXA_2, it is formed from arachidonic acid via PGH_2.



PGH_2 PGI_2

Leukotrienes are the substances most responsible for the constriction of bronchial passages during asthma attacks. They arise from arachidonic acid by a pathway different

from the one that leads to prostaglandins and related compounds. The pathway to leukotrienes does not involve cyclooxygenation. Instead, oxidation simply introduces —OH groups at specific carbons along the chain. Allylic radicals are involved and some of the double bonds in the product are in different locations than those in arachidonic acid. The enzymes involved are known as *lipoxygenases* and are differentiated according to the carbon of the chain that is oxidized. The biosynthesis of the leukotriene shown begins with a 5-lipoxygenase-catalyzed oxidation of arachidonic acid.



Arachidonic acid — Leukotriene C_4 (LTC_4)

Problem 24.7

The carbon-sulfur bond in LTC_4 is formed by the reaction of glutathione (see Section 15.12) with leukotriene A_4 (LTA_4). LTA_4 is an epoxide. Suggest a reasonable structure for LTA_4.

Most of the drugs such as epinephrine and albuterol used to treat asthma attacks are *bronchodilators*—substances that expand the bronchial passages. Newer drugs are designed to either inhibit the 5-lipoxygenase enzyme, which acts on arachidonic acid in the first stage of leukotriene biosynthesis, or to block leukotriene receptors.

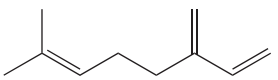
24.7 Terpenes: The Isoprene Rule

A bayberry (wax myrtle) plant.

The word *essential* as applied to naturally occurring organic substances can have two different meanings. With respect to fatty acids, *essential* means "necessary." Linoleic acid is an "essential" fatty acid; it must be included in the diet for animals to grow properly because they lack the ability to biosynthesize it directly.

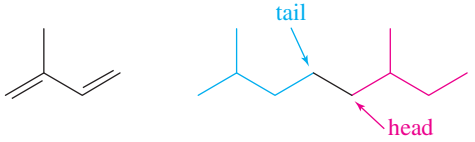
Essential is also used as the adjective form of the noun *essence.* The mixtures of substances that make up the fragrant material of plants are called **essential oils** because they contain the essence, that is, the odor, of the plant. The study of the composition of essential oils ranks as one of the oldest areas of organic chemical research. Very often, the principal volatile component of an essential oil belongs to a class of chemical substances called the **terpenes.**

Myrcene, a hydrocarbon isolated from bayberry oil, is a typical terpene:



Myrcene

The structural feature that distinguishes terpenes from other natural products is the **isoprene unit.** The carbon skeleton of myrcene (exclusive of its double bonds) corresponds to the head-to-tail union of two isoprene units.



Isoprene (2-methyl-1,3-butadiene) — Two isoprene units linked head-to-tail

TABLE 24.2 Classification of Terpenes

Class	Number of isoprene units	Number of carbon atoms
Monoterpene	2	10
Sesquiterpene	3	15
Diterpene	4	20
Sesterpene	5	25
Triterpene	6	30
Tetraterpene	8	40

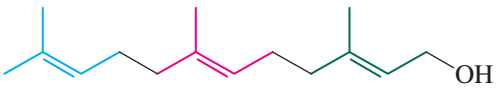
Wallach was awarded the 1910 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

The German chemist Otto Wallach determined the structures of many terpenes and is credited with setting forth the **isoprene rule:** terpenes are repeating assemblies of isoprene units, normally joined head-to-tail.

Terpenes are often referred to as *isoprenoid* compounds and are classified according to the number of isoprene units they contain (Table 24.2).

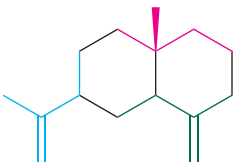
There are more than 23,000 known isoprenoid compounds.

Although the term *terpene* once referred only to hydrocarbons, its use expanded to include functionally substituted derivatives as well, grouped together under the general term *isoprenoids*. Figure 24.7 presents the structural formulas for a number of representative examples. The isoprene units in some of these are relatively easy to identify. The three isoprene units in the sesquiterpene *farnesol,* for example, are indicated as follows in color. They are joined in a head-to-tail fashion.



Isoprene units in farnesol ($C_{15}H_{26}O$)

Many terpenes contain one or more rings, but these also can be viewed as collections of isoprene units. An example is α-selinene. Like farnesol, it is made up of three isoprene units linked head-to-tail.



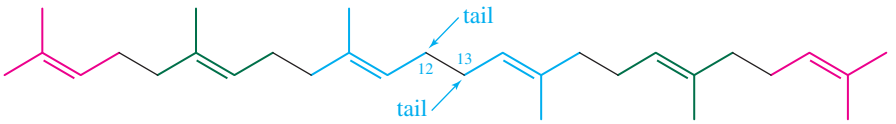
Isoprene units in α-selinene ($C_{15}H_{24}$)

In locating isoprene units within a given carbon skeleton, keep in mind that the double bonds may no longer be present.

Problem 24.8

Locate the isoprene units in each of the monoterpenes, sesquiterpenes, and diterpenes shown in Figure 24.7. (In some cases there are two equally correct arrangements.)

Tail-to-tail linkages of isoprene units sometimes occur, especially in the higher terpenes. The C(12)—C(13) bond of squalene unites two C_{15} units in a tail-to-tail manner. Notice, however, that isoprene units are joined head-to-tail within each C_{15} unit of squalene.



Isoprene units in squalene ($C_{30}H_{50}$)

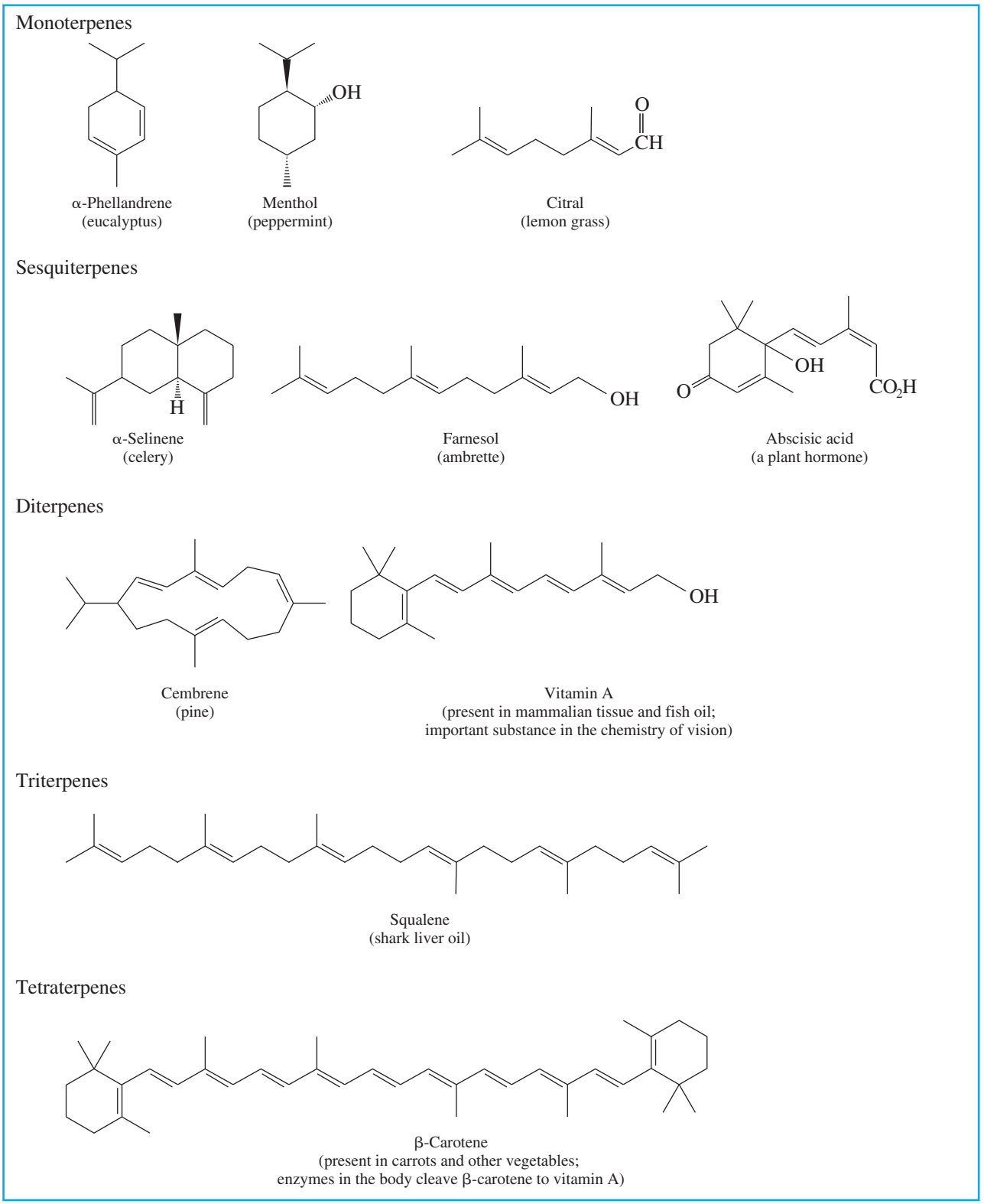


Figure 24.7

Some representative terpenes and related natural products. Structures are customarily depicted as carbon skeleton formulas when describing compounds of isoprenoid origin.

Problem 24.9

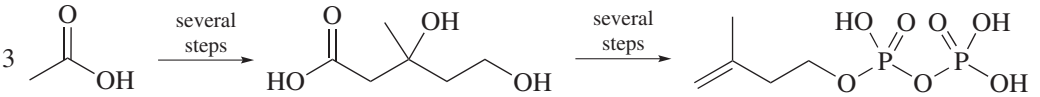
Identify the isoprene units in β-carotene (see Figure 24.7). Which carbons are joined by a tail-to-tail link between isoprene units?

Ruzicka was a corecipient of the 1939 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

Over time, Wallach's original isoprene rule was refined, most notably by Leopold Ruzicka of the Swiss Federal Institute of Technology (Zürich), who put forward a *biological isoprene rule* in which he connected the various classes of terpenes according to their biological precursors. Thus arose the idea of the *biological isoprene unit.* Isoprene is the fundamental structural unit of terpenes and related compounds, but isoprene does not occur naturally—at least in places where biosynthesis is going on. What then is the biological isoprene unit, how is this unit itself biosynthesized, and how do individual isoprene units combine to give terpenes?

24.8 Isopentenyl Diphosphate: The Biological Isoprene Unit

Isoprenoid compounds are biosynthesized from acetate by a process that involves several stages. The first stage is the formation of mevalonic acid from three molecules of acetic acid. In the second stage, mevalonic acid is converted to isopentenyl diphosphate:

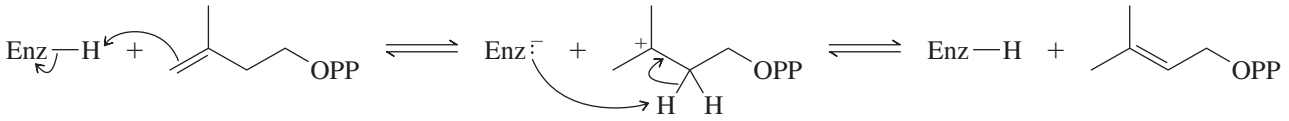


Acetic acid — Mevalonic acid — Isopentenyl diphosphate

It is convenient to use the symbol —OPP to represent the diphosphate group. Diphosphate is also known as pyrophosphate.

Isopentenyl diphosphate is the biological isoprene unit; it contains five carbon atoms connected in the same order as in isoprene.

In the presence of the enzyme *isopentenyl diphosphate isomerase,* isopentenyl diphosphate is converted to dimethylallyl diphosphate. The isomerization involves two successive proton transfers: one from an acidic site of the enzyme (Enz—H) to the double bond to give a tertiary carbocation; the other is deprotonation of the carbocation by a basic site of the enzyme to generate the double bond of dimethylallyl diphosphate.



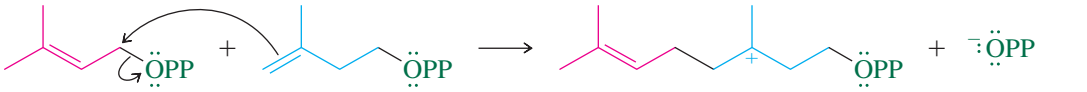
Isopentenyl diphosphate — Carbocation intermediate — Dimethylallyl diphosphate

Isopentenyl diphosphate and dimethylallyl diphosphate are structurally similar—both contain a double bond and a diphosphate ester unit—but the chemical reactivity expressed by each is different. The principal site of reaction in dimethylallyl diphosphate is the carbon that bears the diphosphate group. Diphosphate is a reasonably good leaving group in nucleophilic substitution reactions, especially when, as in dimethylallyl diphosphate, it is located at an allylic carbon. Isopentenyl diphosphate, on the other hand, does not have its leaving group attached to an allylic carbon and is far less reactive than dimethylallyl diphosphate toward nucleophilic reagents. The principal site of reaction in isopentenyl diphosphate is the carbon–carbon double bond, which, like the double bonds of simple alkenes, is reactive toward electrophiles.

24.9 Carbon–Carbon Bond Formation in Terpene Biosynthesis

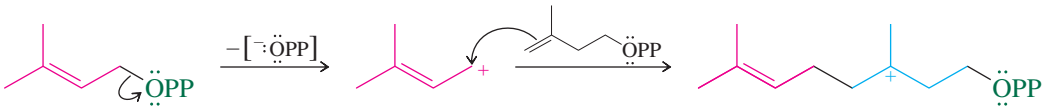
The chemical properties of isopentenyl diphosphate and dimethylallyl diphosphate are complementary in a way that permits them to react with each other to form a carbon–carbon bond that unites two isoprene units. In broad outline, the enzyme-catalyzed process involves bond formation between the allylic CH_2 of dimethylallyl diphosphate and

the vinylic CH_2 of isopentenyl diphosphate. Diphosphate is the leaving group and a tertiary carbocation results.



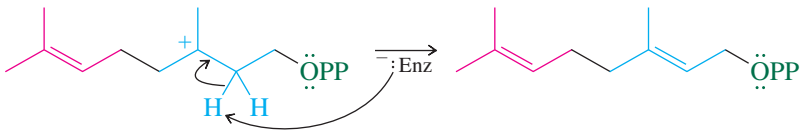
Dimethylallyl diphosphate | Isopentenyl diphosphate | Ten-carbon carbocation | Diphosphate ion

Alternatively, ionization of dimethylallyl diphosphate could precede carbon–carbon bond formation.



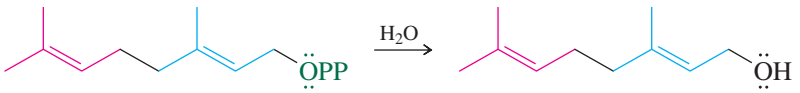
Dimethylallyl diphosphate | Dimethylallyl cation | Ten-carbon carbocation

The ten-carbon carbocation that results is the same regardless of whether it is formed in one step or two. Once formed it can react in several different ways, all of which are familiar to us as typical carbocation processes. One is deprotonation to give the carbon–carbon double bond of *geranyl diphosphate.*



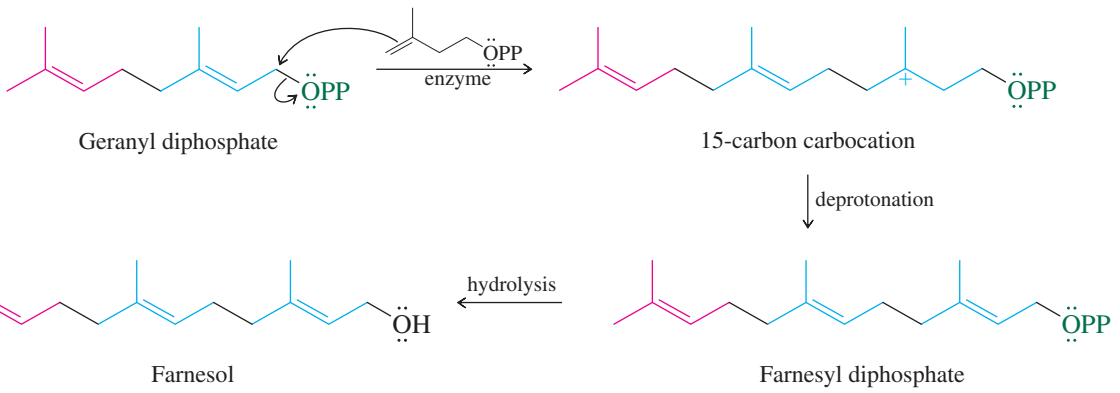
Ten-carbon carbocation | Geranyl diphosphate

Hydrolysis of geranyl diphosphate gives *geraniol,* a pleasant-smelling monoterpene found in rose oil.



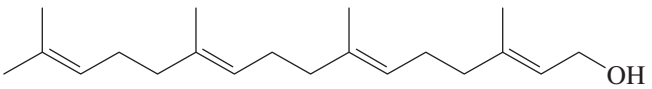
Geranyl diphosphate | Geraniol

Geranyl diphosphate is an allylic diphosphate and, like dimethylallyl diphosphate, can react with isopentenyl diphosphate. A 15-carbon carbocation is formed, which on deprotonation gives *farnesyl diphosphate.* Hydrolysis of farnesyl diphosphate gives the sesquiterpene *farnesol.*



Geranyl diphosphate | 15-carbon carbocation | Farnesol | Farnesyl diphosphate

Repeating the process produces the diterpene geranylgeraniol from farnesyl diphosphate.

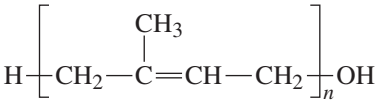


Geranylgeraniol

Problem 24.10

Write a sequence of reactions that describes the formation of geranylgeraniol from farnesyl diphosphate.

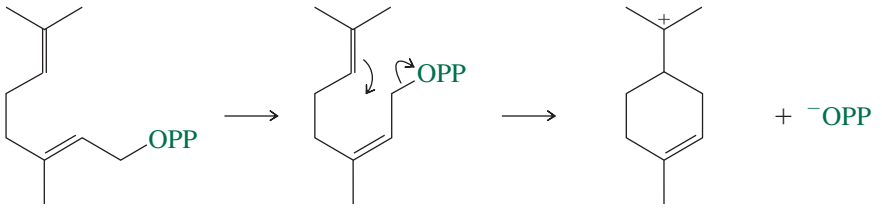
Geraniol, farnesol, and geranylgeraniol are classified as **prenols,** compounds of the type:



The group to which the OH (or other substituent) is attached is called a **prenyl** group.

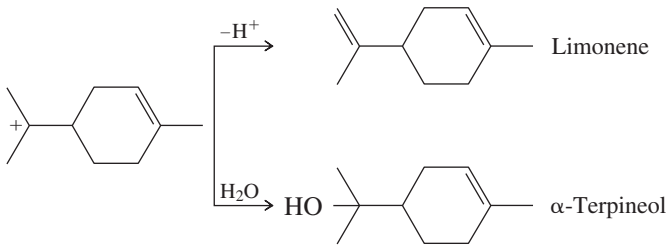
The higher terpenes are formed not by successive addition of C_5 units but by the coupling of simpler terpenes. Thus, the triterpenes (C_{30}) are derived from two molecules of farnesyl diphosphate, and the tetraterpenes (C_{40}) from two molecules of geranylgeranyl diphosphate. These carbon–carbon bond-forming processes involve tail-to-tail couplings and proceed by a more complicated mechanism than that just described.

The reaction of an allylic diphosphate or a carbocation with a source of π electrons is a recurring theme in terpene biosynthesis and is invoked to explain the origin of more complicated structural types. Consider, for example, the formation of cyclic monoterpenes. *Neryl diphosphate,* formed by an enzyme-catalyzed isomerization of the *E* double bond in geranyl diphosphate, has the proper geometry to form a six-membered ring via intramolecular attack of the double bond on the allylic diphosphate unit.

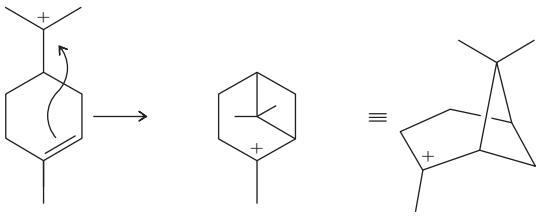


Geranyl diphosphate Neryl diphosphate Tertiary carbocation

Loss of a proton from the tertiary carbocation formed in this step gives *limonene,* an abundant natural product found in many citrus fruits. Capture of the carbocation by water gives α-*terpineol,* also a known natural product.

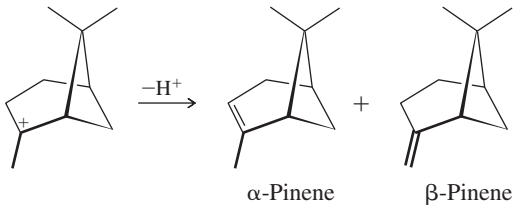


The same tertiary carbocation serves as the precursor to numerous bicyclic monoterpenes. A carbocation having a bicyclic skeleton is formed by intramolecular attack of the π electrons of the double bond on the positively charged carbon.



Bicyclic carbocation

A. Loss of a proton from the bicyclic carbocation yields α-pinene and β-pinene. The pinenes are the most abundant of the monoterpenes. They are the main constituents of turpentine.



B. Capture of the carbocation by water, accompanied by rearrangement of the bicyclo-[3.1.1] carbon skeleton to a bicyclo[2.2.1] unit, yields borneol. Borneol is found in the essential oil of certain trees that grow in Indonesia.

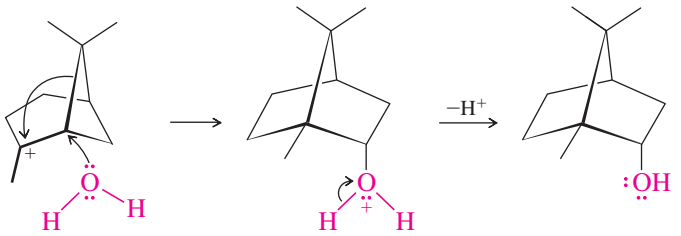


Figure 24.8

Two of the reaction pathways available to the C_{10} bicyclic carbocation formed from neryl diphosphate. The same carbocation can lead to monoterpenes based on either the bicyclo[3.1.1] or the bicyclo[2.2.1] carbon skeleton.

This bicyclic carbocation then undergoes many reactions typical of carbocation intermediates to provide a variety of bicyclic monoterpenes, as outlined in Figure 24.8.

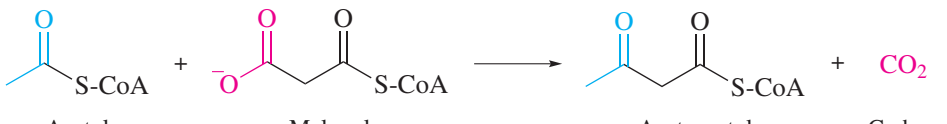
Problem 24.11

The structure of the bicyclic monoterpene borneol is shown in Figure 24.8. Isoborneol, a stereoisomer of borneol, can be prepared in the laboratory by a two-step sequence. In the first step, borneol is oxidized to camphor by treatment with chromic acid. In the second step, camphor is reduced with sodium borohydride to a mixture of 85% isoborneol and 15% borneol. On the basis of these transformations, deduce structural formulas for isoborneol and camphor.

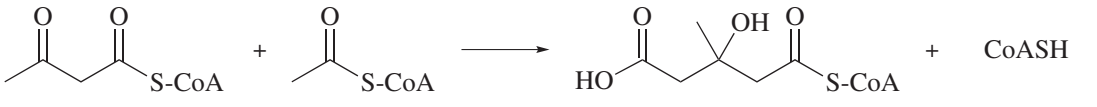
Analogous processes involving cyclizations and rearrangements of carbocations derived from farnesyl diphosphate produce a rich variety of structural types in the sesquiterpene series. We will have more to say about the chemistry of higher terpenes, especially the triterpenes, later in this chapter. For the moment, however, let's return to smaller molecules to complete the picture of how isoprenoid compounds arise from acetate.

24.10 The Pathway from Acetate to Isopentenyl Diphosphate

The introduction to Section 24.8 pointed out that mevalonic acid is the biosynthetic precursor of isopentenyl diphosphate. The early steps in the biosynthesis of mevalonate from three molecules of acetic acid are analogous to those in fatty acid biosynthesis except that they do not involve acyl carrier protein. Thus, the reaction of acetyl coenzyme A with malonyl coenzyme A yields a molecule of acetoacetyl coenzyme A.



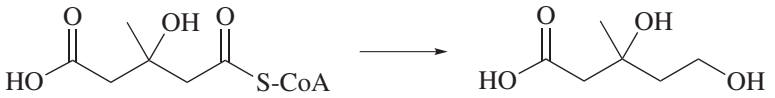
Carbon–carbon bond formation then occurs between the ketone carbonyl of acetoacetyl coenzyme A and the α carbon of a molecule of acetyl coenzyme A.



Acetoacetyl coenzyme A | Acetyl coenzyme A | 3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG-CoA) | Coenzyme A

The product of this reaction, 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG CoA), has the carbon skeleton of mevalonic acid and is converted to it by enzyme-catalyzed reduction.

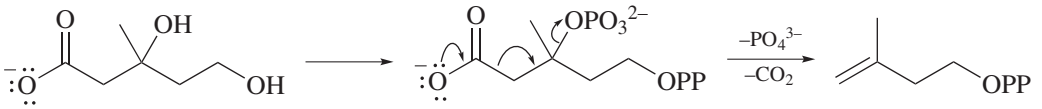
Some of the most effective cholesterol-lowering drugs act by inhibiting the enzyme that catalyzes this reaction.



3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG-CoA) | Mevalonic acid

In keeping with its biogenetic origin in three molecules of acetic acid, mevalonic acid has six carbon atoms. The conversion of mevalonate to isopentenyl diphosphate involves loss of the "extra" carbon as carbon dioxide. First, the alcohol hydroxyl groups of mevalonate are converted to phosphate ester functions—they are enzymatically *phosphorylated,* with introduction of a simple phosphate at the tertiary site and a diphosphate at the primary site. Decarboxylation, in concert with loss of the tertiary phosphate, introduces a carbon–carbon double bond and gives isopentenyl diphosphate, the fundamental building block for formation of isoprenoid natural products.

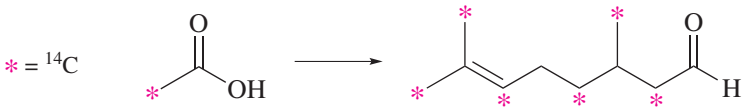
Some bacteria, algae, and plants make isopentenyl diphosphate by a different route.



Mevalonate | Unstable; undergoes rapid decarboxylation with loss of phosphate | Isopentenyl diphosphate

Much of what we know concerning the pathway from acetate to mevalonate to isopentenyl diphosphate to terpenes comes from "feeding" experiments, in which plants are grown in the presence of radioactively labeled organic substances and the distribution of the radioactive label is determined in the products of biosynthesis. To illustrate, eucalyptus plants were allowed to grow in a medium containing acetic acid enriched with ^{14}C in its methyl group. *Citronellal* was isolated from the mixture of monoterpenes produced by the plants and shown, by a series of chemical degradations, to contain the radioactive ^{14}C label at carbons 2, 4, 6, and 8, as well as at the carbons of both branching methyl groups.

Citronellal occurs naturally as the principal component of citronella oil and is used as an insect repellent.



Acetic acid | Citronellal

Figure 24.9 traces the ^{14}C label from its origin in acetic acid to its experimentally determined distribution in citronellal.

Problem 24.12

How many carbon atoms of citronellal would be radioactively labeled if the acetic acid used in the experiment were enriched with ^{14}C at C-1 instead of at C-2? Identify these carbon atoms.

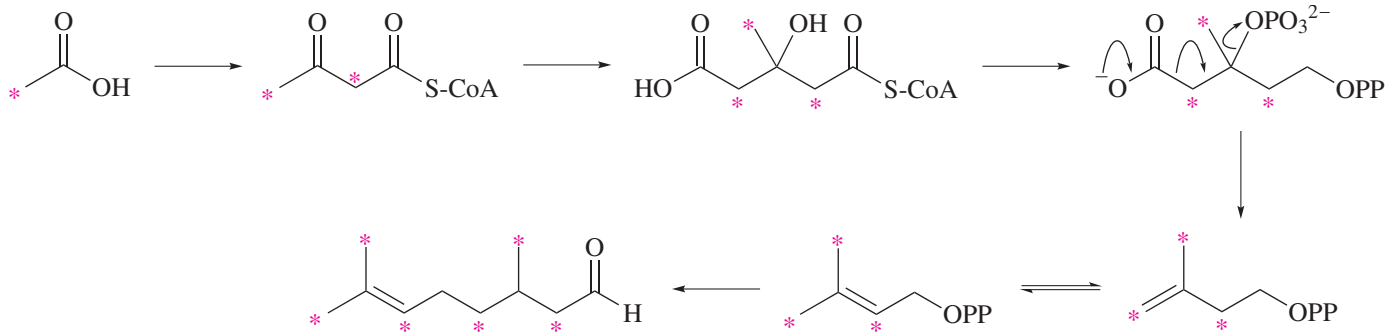


Figure 24.9

The distribution of the ^{14}C label in citronellal biosynthesized from acetate in which the methyl carbon was isotopically enriched with ^{14}C.

The present method employs ^{13}C as the isotopic label. Instead of locating the position of a ^{14}C label by a laborious degradation procedure, the ^{13}C NMR spectrum of the natural product is recorded. The signals for the carbons that are enriched in ^{13}C are far more intense than those corresponding to carbons in which ^{13}C is present only at the natural abundance level.

Isotope incorporation experiments have demonstrated the essential correctness of the just described scheme for terpene biosynthesis. Considerable effort has been expended toward its detailed elaboration because of the common biosynthetic origin of terpenes and another class of acetate-derived natural products, the steroids.

24.11 Steroids: Cholesterol

Cholesterol is the central compound in any discussion of **steroids.** Its name is a combination of the Greek words for "bile" (*chole*) and "solid" (*stereos*) preceding the characteristic alcohol suffix *-ol*. It is the most abundant steroid present in humans and the most important one as well because all other steroids arise from it. An average adult has over 200 g of cholesterol; it is found in almost all body tissues, with relatively large amounts present in the brain and spinal cord and in gallstones. Cholesterol is the chief constituent of the plaque that builds up on the walls of arteries in atherosclerosis.

Cholesterol was isolated in the eighteenth century, but its structure is so complex that its correct constitution was not determined until 1932 and its stereochemistry not verified until 1955. Steroids are characterized by the tetracyclic ring system shown in Figures 10*a* and 10*b*, and cholesterol in Figure 10*c* modified to include an alcohol function at C-3, a double bond at C-5, methyl groups at C-10 and C-13, and a C_8H_{17} side chain at C-17.

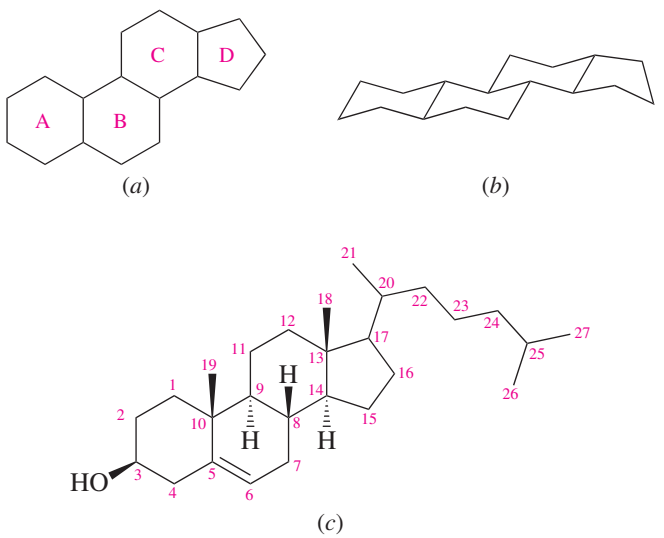


Figure 24.10

(*a*) The tetracyclic ring system characteristic of steroids and the customary designation of its rings as A, B, C, and D. (*b*) A conformational depiction of a typical steroid showing the stereochemistry of the ring fusions. (*c*) The structure of cholesterol and the steroid numbering system.

Isoprene units may be discerned in various portions of the cholesterol molecule, but the overall correspondence with the isoprene rule is far from perfect. Indeed, cholesterol has only 27 carbon atoms, three too few for it to be classed as a triterpene.

Animals accumulate cholesterol from their diet, but are also able to biosynthesize it from acetate. The pioneering work that identified the key intermediates in the complicated pathway of cholesterol biosynthesis was carried out by Konrad Bloch (Harvard) and Feodor Lynen (Munich). An important discovery was that the triterpene **squalene** (see Figure 24.7) is an intermediate in the formation of cholesterol from acetate. Thus, *the early stages of cholesterol biosynthesis are the same as those of terpene biosynthesis* described in Sections 24.8–24.10. In fact, a significant fraction of our knowledge of terpene biosynthesis is a direct result of experiments carried out in the area of steroid biosynthesis.

Bloch and Lynen shared the 1964 Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine.

How does the tetracyclic steroid cholesterol arise from the acyclic triterpene squalene? It begins with the epoxidation of squalene described earlier in Section 16.13 and continues from that point in Mechanism 24.1. Step 1 is an enzyme-catalyzed electrophilic ring opening of squalene 2,3-epoxide. Epoxide ring opening triggers a series of carbocation reactions. These carbocation processes involve cyclization via carbon–carbon bond formation (step 1), ring expansion via a carbocation rearrangement (step 2), another cyclization (step 3), followed by a cascade of methyl group migrations and hydride shifts (step 4). The result of all these steps is the tetracyclic triterpene *lanosterol.* Step 5 of Mechanism 24.1 summarizes the numerous remaining transformations by which lanosterol is converted to cholesterol.

Lanosterol is one component of lanolin, a mixture of many substances that coats the wool of sheep.

Problem 24.13

The biosynthesis of cholesterol as outlined in Mechanism 24.1 is admittedly quite complicated. It will aid your understanding of the process if you consider the following questions:

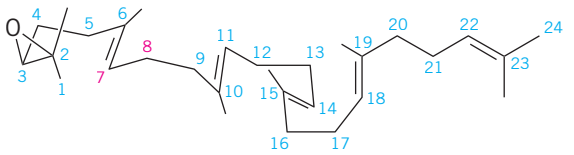
(a) Which carbon atoms of squalene 2,3-epoxide correspond to the doubly bonded carbons of cholesterol?

(b) Which two hydrogen atoms of squalene 2,3-epoxide are the ones that migrate in step 4?

(c) Which methyl group of squalene 2,3-epoxide becomes the methyl group at the C,D ring junction of cholesterol?

(d) What three methyl groups of squalene 2,3-epoxide are lost during the conversion of lanosterol to cholesterol?

Sample Solution (a) As the structural formula in step 5 of Mechanism 24.1 indicates, the double bond of cholesterol unites C-5 and C-6 (steroid numbering). The corresponding carbons in the cyclization reaction of step 1 in the figure may be identified as C-7 and C-8 of squalene 2,3-epoxide (systematic IUPAC numbering).



Squalene 2,3-epoxide

Problem 24.14

The biosynthetic pathway shown in Mechanism 24.1 was developed with the aid of isotopic labeling experiments. Which carbon atoms of cholesterol would you expect to be labeled when acetate enriched with ^{14}C in its methyl group ($^{14}CH_3COOH$) is used as the carbon source?

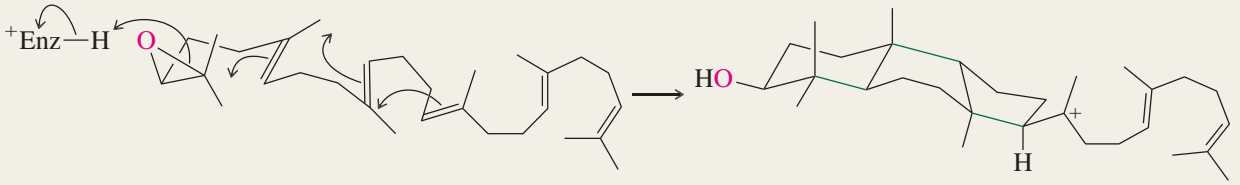
Once formed, cholesterol undergoes a number of biochemical transformations. A very common one is acylation of its C-3 hydroxyl group by reaction with coenzyme A derivatives of fatty acids. Other processes convert cholesterol to the biologically important steroids described in the following sections.

Mechanism 24.1

Biosynthesis of Cholesterol from Squalene

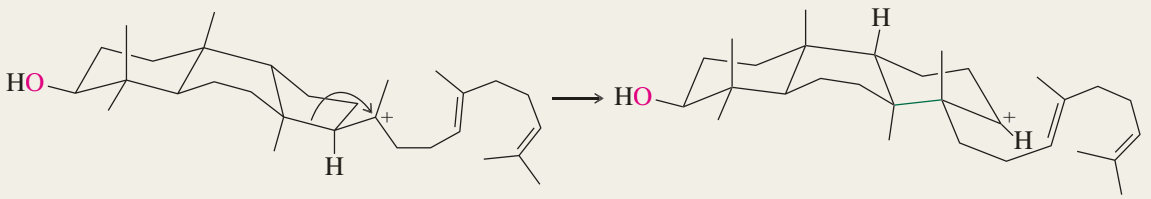
The biosynthetic conversion of squalene to cholesterol proceeds through lanosterol. Lanosterol is formed by enzyme-catalyzed cyclization of the 2,3-epoxide of squalene.

Step 1: An electrophilic species, shown here as $^{+}$Enz—H, catalyzes ring opening of squalene 2,3-epoxide. Ring opening is accompanied by cyclization to give a tricyclic tertiary carbocation. It is not known whether formation of the three new carbon–carbon bonds occurs in a single step or a series of steps.



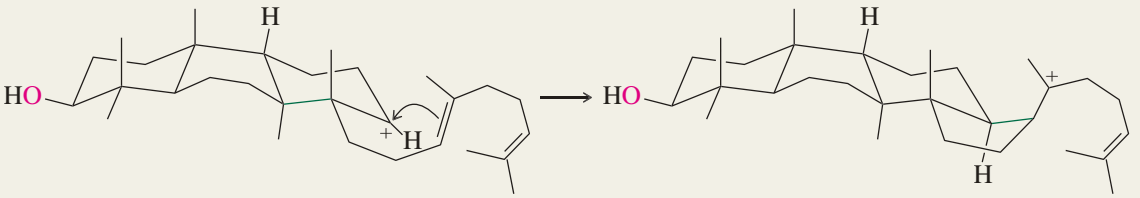
Squalene 2,3-epoxide — Tricyclic carbocation

Step 2: Ring expansion converts the five-membered ring of the carbocation formed in step 1 to a six-membered ring.



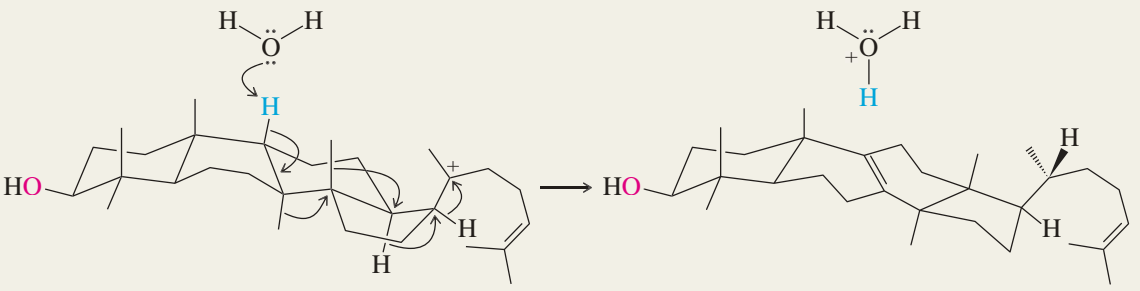
Tricyclic carbocation — Ring-expanded tricyclic carbocation

Step 3: Cyclization of the carbocation formed in step 2 gives a tetracyclic carbocation (*protosteryl cation*).



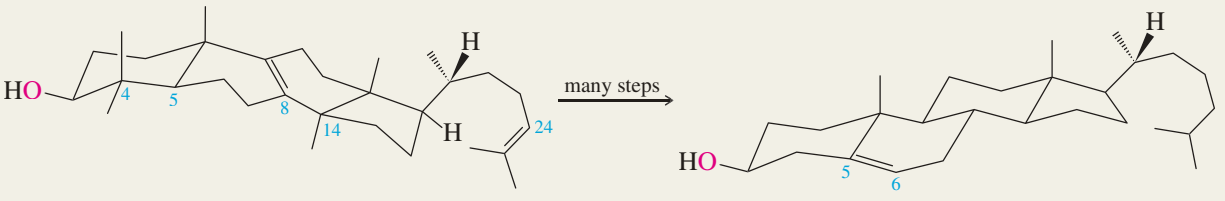
Ring-expanded tricyclic carbocation — Protosteryl cation

Step 4: Rearrangement and deprotonation of protosteryl cation gives the tetracyclic triterpene lanosterol.



Protosteryl cation — Lanosterol

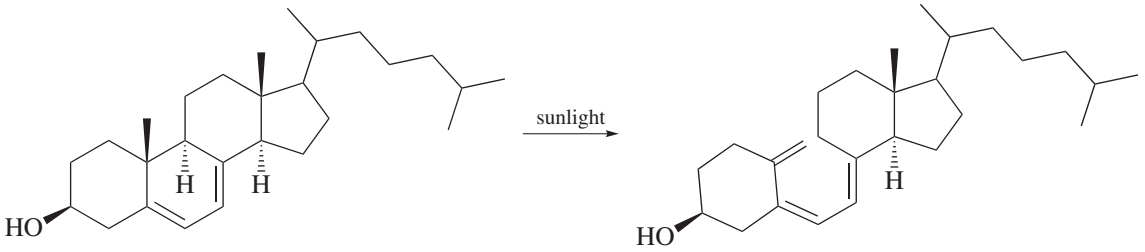
Step 5: A series of enzyme-catalyzed reactions converts lanosterol to cholesterol. The methyl groups at C-4 and C-14 are lost, the C-8 and C-24 double bonds are reduced, and a new double bond is introduced at C-5.



Lanosterol — Cholesterol

24.12 Vitamin D

A steroid very closely related structurally to cholesterol is its 7-dehydro derivative. 7-Dehydrocholesterol is formed by enzymatic oxidation of cholesterol and has a conjugated diene unit in its B ring. 7-Dehydrocholesterol is present in the tissues of the skin, where it is transformed to vitamin D_3 by a sunlight-induced photochemical reaction.



7-Dehydrocholesterol Vitamin D_3

Vitamin D_3 is a key compound in the process by which Ca^{2+} is absorbed from the intestine. Low levels of vitamin D_3 lead to Ca^{2+} concentrations in the body that are insufficient to support proper bone growth, resulting in rachitis, or "rickets."

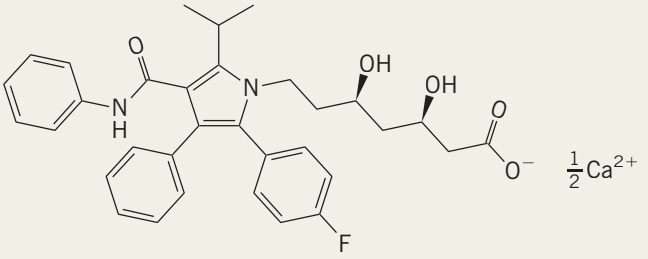
Rachitis was once thought to be a dietary deficiency disease because it could be prevented in children by feeding them fish liver oil. Actually, it is an environmental disease brought about by a deficiency of sunlight. Where the winter sun is weak, children may not be exposed to enough of its light to convert the 7-dehydrocholesterol in their skin to

Good Cholesterol? Bad Cholesterol? What's the Difference?

Cholesterol is biosynthesized in the liver, transported throughout the body to be used in a variety of ways, and returned to the liver where it serves as the biosynthetic precursor to other steroids. But cholesterol is a lipid and isn't soluble in water. How can it move through the blood if it doesn't dissolve in it? The answer is that it doesn't dissolve, but is instead carried through the blood and tissues as part of a *lipoprotein* (lipid + protein = lipoprotein).

The proteins that carry cholesterol from the liver are called *low-density lipoproteins,* or LDLs; those that return it to the liver are the *high-density lipoproteins,* or HDLs. If too much cholesterol is being transported by LDL, or too little by HDL, the extra cholesterol builds up on the walls of the arteries, causing atherosclerosis. Blood work done as part of a thorough physical examination measures not only total cholesterol but also the distribution between LDL and HDL cholesterol. An elevated level of LDL cholesterol is a risk factor for heart disease. LDL cholesterol is "bad" cholesterol. HDLs, on the other hand, remove excess cholesterol and are protective. HDL cholesterol is "good" cholesterol.

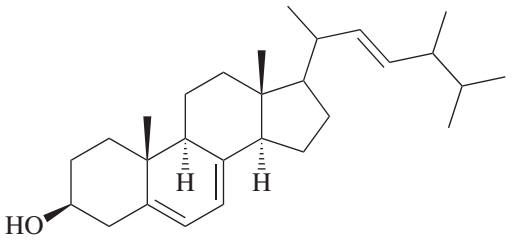
The distribution between LDL and HDL cholesterol depends mainly on genetic factors, but can be altered. Regular exercise increases HDL and reduces LDL cholesterol, as does limiting the amount of saturated fat in the diet. Much progress has been made in developing new drugs to lower cholesterol. The *statin* class, beginning with lovastatin in 1988, has proven especially effective. The most prescribed cholesterol-lowering drug is atorvastatin (as its calcium salt). A chiral drug, atorvastatin was introduced in 1997 and is sold as a single enantiomer.



Atorvastatin calcium (Lipitor)

The statins lower cholesterol by inhibiting the enzyme 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A reductase, which is required for the biosynthesis of mevalonic acid (see Section 24.10). Mevalonic acid is an obligatory precursor to cholesterol, so less mevalonic acid translates into less cholesterol.

vitamin D_3 at levels sufficient to promote the growth of strong bones. Fish have adapted to an environment that screens them from sunlight, and so they are not directly dependent on photochemistry for their vitamin D_3 and accumulate it by a different process. Although fish liver oil is a good source of vitamin D_3, it is not very palatable. Synthetic vitamin D_3, prepared from cholesterol, is often added to milk and other foods to ensure that children receive enough of the vitamin for their bones to develop properly. *Irradiated ergosterol* is another dietary supplement added to milk and other foods for the same purpose. Ergosterol, a steroid obtained from yeast, is structurally similar to 7-dehydrocholesterol and, on irradiation with sunlight or artificial light, is converted to vitamin D_2, a substance analogous to vitamin D_3 and comparable in its ability to support bone growth.



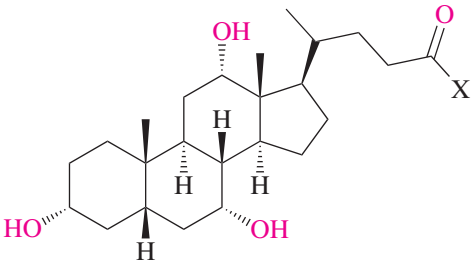
Ergosterol

Problem 24.15

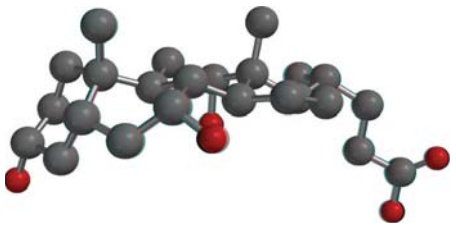
Suggest a reasonable structure for vitamin D_2.

24.13 Bile Acids

A significant fraction of the body's cholesterol is used to form **bile acids.** Oxidation in the liver removes a portion of the C_8H_{17} side chain, and additional hydroxyl groups are introduced at various positions on the steroid nucleus. *Cholic acid* is the most abundant of the bile acids. In the form of certain amide derivatives such as *sodium taurocholate,* bile acids act as emulsifying agents to aid the digestion of fats.



X = OH; cholic acid
X = $NHCH_2CH_2SO_3Na$; sodium taurocholate



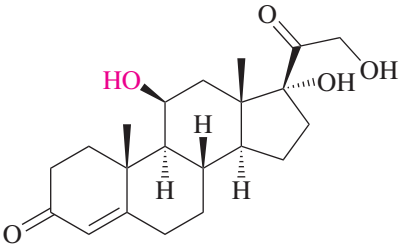
Cholic acid

The structure of cholic acid helps us understand how bile salts such as sodium taurocholate promote the transport of lipids through a water-rich environment. The bottom face of the molecule bears all of the polar groups, and the top face is exclusively hydrocarbon-like. Bile salts emulsify fats by forming micelles in which the fats are on the inside and the bile salts are on the outside. The hydrophobic face of the bile salt associates with the fat that is inside the micelle; the hydrophilic face is in contact with water on the outside.

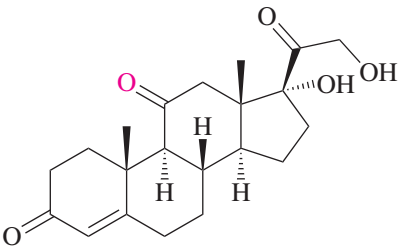
24.14 Corticosteroids

The outer layer, or *cortex,* of the adrenal gland is the source of a large group of substances known as **corticosteroids.** Like the bile acids, they are derived from cholesterol by oxidation, with cleavage of a portion of the alkyl substituent on the D ring. *Cortisol* is the most abundant of

the corticosteroids, but *cortisone* is probably the best known. Cortisone is commonly prescribed as an antiinflammatory drug, especially in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.



Cortisol



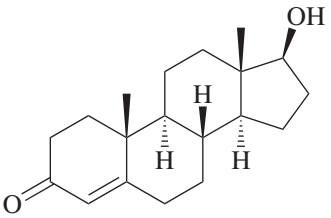
Cortisone

Many antiitch remedies contain dihydrocortisone.

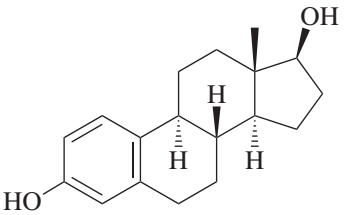
Corticosteroids exhibit a wide range of physiological effects. One important function is to assist in maintaining the proper electrolyte balance in body fluids. They also play a vital regulatory role in the metabolism of carbohydrates and in mediating the allergic response.

24.15 Sex Hormones

Hormones are the chemical messengers of the body; they are secreted by the endocrine glands and regulate biological processes. Corticosteroids, described in the preceding section, are hormones produced by the adrenal glands. The sex glands—testes in males, ovaries in females—secrete a number of hormones that are involved in sexual development and reproduction. *Testosterone* is the principal male sex hormone; it is an **androgen.** Testosterone promotes muscle growth, deepening of the voice, the growth of body hair, and other male secondary sex characteristics. Testosterone is formed from cholesterol and is the biosynthetic precursor of estradiol, the principal female sex hormone, or **estrogen.** *Estradiol* is a key substance in the regulation of the menstrual cycle and the reproductive process. It is the hormone most responsible for the development of female secondary sex characteristics.



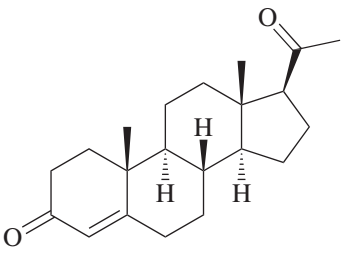
Testosterone



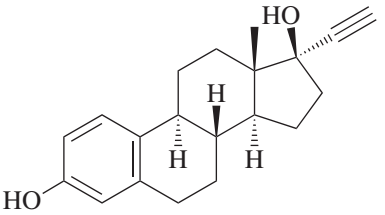
Estradiol

Testosterone and estradiol are present in the body in only minute amounts, and their isolation and identification required heroic efforts. In order to obtain 0.012 g of estradiol for study, for example, 4 tons of sow ovaries had to be extracted!

A separate biosynthetic pathway leads from cholesterol to *progesterone,* a female sex hormone. One function of progesterone is to suppress ovulation at certain stages of the menstrual cycle and during pregnancy. Synthetic substances, such as *norethindrone,* have been developed that are superior to progesterone when taken orally to "turn off" ovulation. By inducing temporary infertility, they form the basis of most oral contraceptive agents.



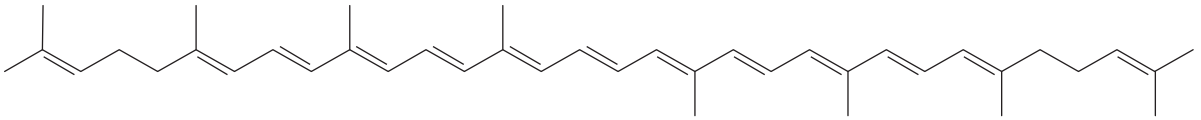
Progesterone



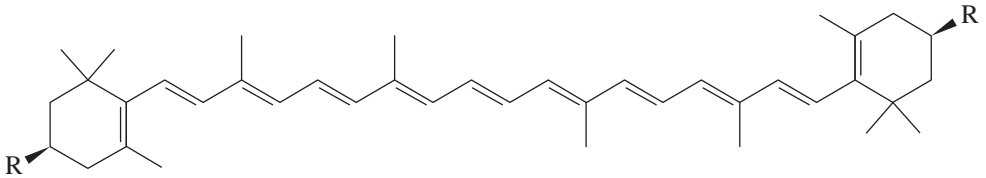
Norethindrone

24.16 Carotenoids

Carotenoids are natural pigments characterized by a tail-to-tail linkage between two C_{20} units and an extended conjugated system of double bonds. They are the most widely distributed of the substances that give color to our world and occur in flowers, fruits, plants, insects, and animals. It has been estimated that biosynthesis from acetate produces approximately a hundred million tons of carotenoids per year. The most familiar carotenoids are lycopene and β-carotene, pigments found in numerous plants and easily isolable from ripe tomatoes and carrots, respectively.



Lycopene (tomatoes)



R = H; β-Carotene (carrots)
R = OH; Zeaxanthyn (yellow corn)

Not all carotenoids are hydrocarbons. Oxygen-containing carotenes called *xanthophylls,* which are often the pigments responsible for the yellow color of flowers, are especially abundant.

Carotenoids absorb visible light (see Section 13.23) and dissipate its energy as heat, providing protection from the potentially harmful effects of sunlight-induced photochemistry. They are also indirectly involved in the chemistry of vision, owing to the fact that β-carotene is the biosynthetic precursor of vitamin A, also known as retinol, a key substance in the visual process.

The structural chemistry of the visual process, beginning with β-carotene, was described in the boxed essay entitled *Imines in Biological Chemistry* in Chapter 17.

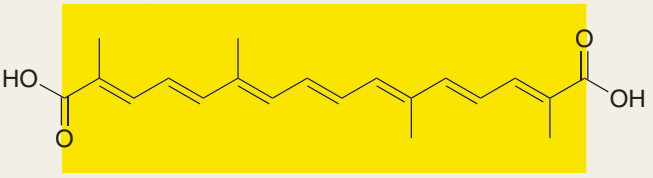
The color of a flamingo's feathers comes from the carotenes in the brine shrimp they eat.

Crocuses Make Saffron from Carotenes

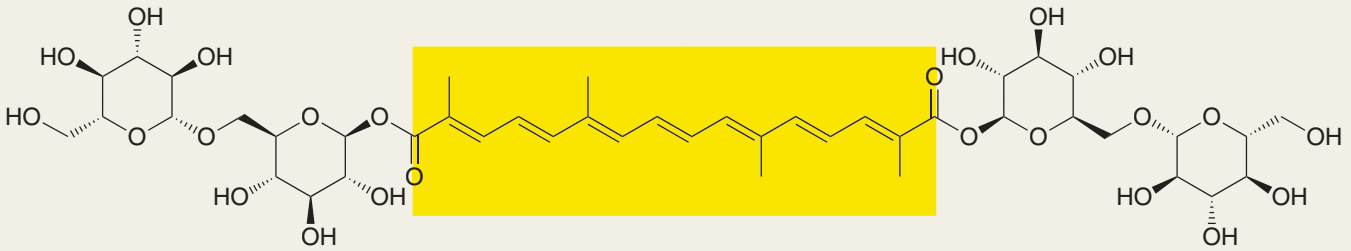
The flowers of *Crocus sativus* are not only pretty, they are valuable. The saffron crocus is cultivated on a large scale because the three gold-colored filaments in each bloom are the source of *saffron,* a dye and a spice that has been used for thousands of years. The amount is small; 75,000 flowers are needed to provide 1 pound of saffron, yet 300 tons of it reach the worldwide market each year.

Saffron is a mixture of substances. Those that make it desirable as a spice and dye are among the ones the plant uses to attract insects. Two of them, *crocetin* and *crocin,* are mainly responsible for its color, another (*safranal*) its odor, and another (*picrocrocin*) its taste. The same 20-carbon conjugated polyene unit is the chromophore that gives crocetin and crocin their yellow color. The difference between the two is that crocin is a glycoside in which both carboxylic acid functions of crocetin are attached to a disaccharide (*gentiobiose*) by ester linkages.

Crocetin

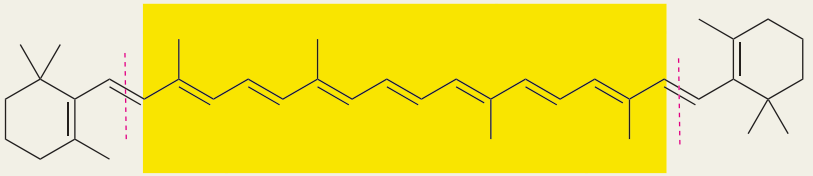


Crocin



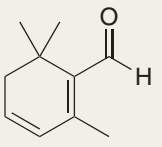
The 20-carbon chromophore originates in biochemical degradation of β-carotene and related carotenoids. Enzyme-catalyzed oxidation cleaves the double bonds at the points indicated to give crocetin.

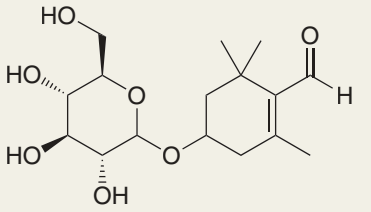
β-Carotene



Safranal and picrocrocin are both aldehydes. Their structures suggest that they too come from carotenoid precursors. Because it is volatile, safranal contributes to the odor that attracts insects to the flowers. Picrocrocin is a glycoside. Its ability to participate in hydrogen bonding makes it nonvolatile and allows it to remain in place within the flowers where it provides the characteristic saffron flavor.

Safranal





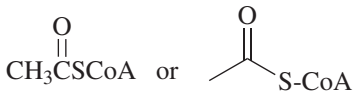
Picrocrocin

Problem 24.16

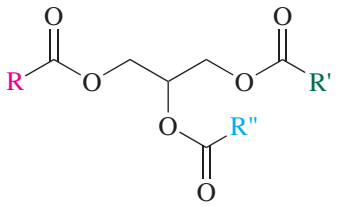
Can you find the isoprene units in crocetin, crocin, safranal, and picrocrocin?

24.17 SUMMARY

Section 24.1 Chemists and biochemists find it convenient to divide the principal organic substances present in cells into four main groups: *carbohydrates, proteins, nucleic acids,* and **lipids.** Structural differences separate carbohydrates from proteins, and both of these are structurally distinct from nucleic acids. Lipids are characterized by a *physical property,* their solubility in nonpolar solvents, rather than by their structure. In this chapter we have examined lipid molecules that share a common biosynthetic origin in that all their carbons are derived from acetic acid (acetate). The form in which acetate occurs in many of these processes is a thioester called acetyl coenzyme A, represented for convenience as:

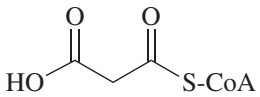


Section 24.2 Acetyl coenzyme A is the biosynthetic precursor to the **fatty acids,** which most often occur naturally as esters. **Fats** and **oils** are glycerol esters of long-chain carboxylic acids. Typically, these chains are unbranched and contain even numbers of carbon atoms.



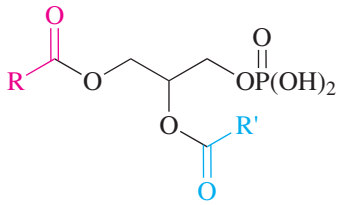
A triacylglycerol:
R, R', and R" may be the same or different

Section 24.3 The biosynthesis of fatty acids follows the pathway outlined in Section 24.3. Malonyl coenzyme A is a key intermediate.



Malonyl
coenzyme A

Section 24.4 **Phospholipids** are intermediates in the biosynthesis of triacylglycerols from fatty acids and are the principal constituents of the lipid bilayer component of cell membranes.

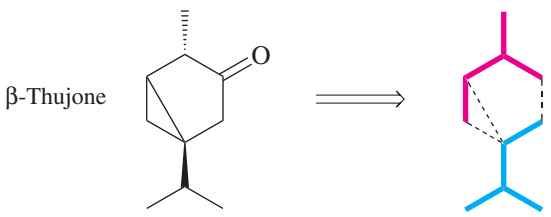


A phospholipid

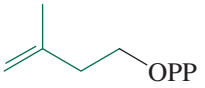
Section 24.5 **Waxes** are mixtures of substances that usually contain esters of fatty acids and long-chain alcohols.

Section 24.6 **Icosanoids** are a group of naturally occurring compounds derived from unsaturated C_{20} carboxylic acids. Icosanoids include *prostaglandins, prostacyclins, thromboxanes,* and *leukotrienes.* Although present in very small amounts, icosanoids play regulatory roles in a very large number of biological processes.

Section 24.7 **Terpenes** have structures that follow the isoprene rule in that they can be viewed as collections of isoprene units.

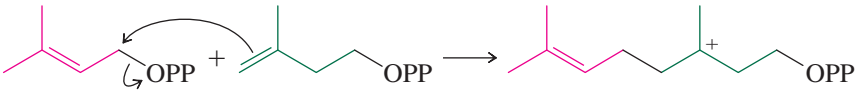


Section 24.8 Terpenes and related *isoprenoid* compounds are biosynthesized from *isopentenyl diphosphate.*

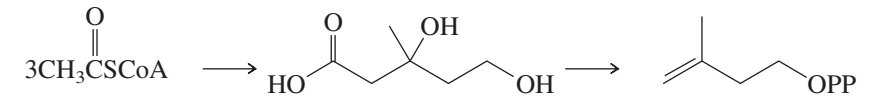


Isopentenyl diphosphate is the "biological isoprene unit."

Section 24.9 Carbon–carbon bond formation between isoprene units can be understood on the basis of nucleophilic attack of the π electrons of a double bond on a carbocation or an allylic carbon that bears a diphosphate leaving group.



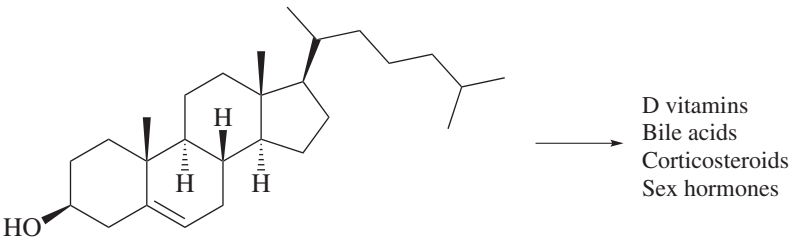
Section 24.10 The biosynthesis of isopentenyl diphosphate begins with acetate and proceeds by way of *mevalonic acid.*



Acetyl coenzyme A — Mevalonic acid — Isopentenyl diphosphate

Section 24.11 The triterpene *squalene* is the biosynthetic precursor to cholesterol by the pathway shown in Mechanism 24.1.

Sections 24.12–24.15 Most of the steroids in animals are formed by biological transformations of cholesterol.



Section 24.16 **Carotenoids** are tetraterpenes. They have 40 carbons and numerous double bonds. Many of the double bonds are conjugated, causing carotenes to absorb visible light and be brightly colored. They are often plant pigments.

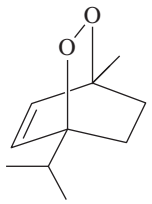
PROBLEMS

24.17 The structures of each of the following are given within the chapter. Identify the carbon atoms expected to be labeled with ^{14}C when each is biosynthesized from acetate enriched with ^{14}C in its methyl group.

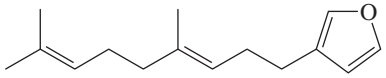
(a) Palmitic acid
(b) PGE_2
(c) PGI_2
(d) Limonene
(e) β-Carotene

24.18 Identify the isoprene units in each of the following naturally occurring substances:

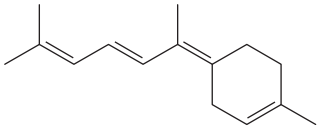
(a) *Ascaridole,* a naturally occurring peroxide present in chenopodium oil:



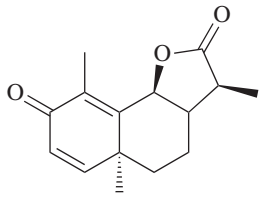
(b) *Dendrolasin,* a constituent of the defense secretion of a species of ant:



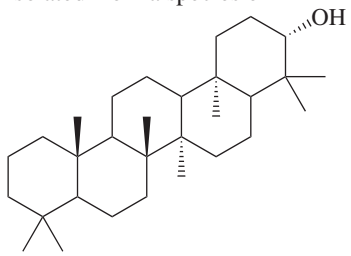
(c) γ-*Bisabolene,* a sesquiterpene found in the essential oils of a large number of plants:



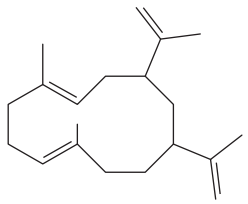
(d) α-*Santonin,* a lactone found in artemisia flowers:



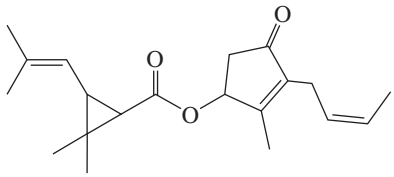
(e) *Tetrahymanol,* a pentacyclic triterpene isolated from a species of



24.19 *Cubitene* is a diterpene present in the defense secretion of a species of African termite. What unusual feature characterizes the joining of isoprene units in cubitene?



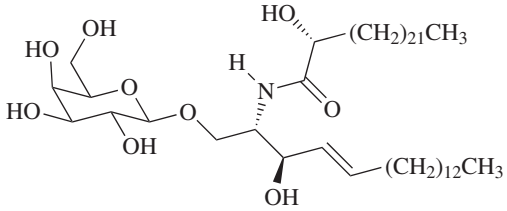
24.20 *Pyrethrins* are a group of naturally occurring insecticidal substances found in the flowers of various plants of the chrysanthemum family. The following is the structure of a typical pyrethrin, *cinerin I* (exclusive of stereochemistry):



(a) Locate any isoprene units present in cinerin I.

(b) Hydrolysis of cinerin I gives an optically active carboxylic acid, (+)-chrysanthemic acid. Ozonolysis of (+)-chrysanthemic acid, followed by oxidation, gives acetone and an optically active dicarboxylic acid, (–)-caronic acid ($C_7H_{10}O_4$). What is the structure of (–)-caronic acid? Are the two carboxyl groups cis or trans to each other? What does this information tell you about the structure of (+)-chrysanthemic acid?

24.21 *Cerebrosides* are found in the brain and in the myelin sheath of nerve tissue. The structure of the cerebroside *phrenosine* is



(a) What hexose is formed on hydrolysis of the glycoside bond of phrenosine? Is phrenosine an α- or a β-glycoside?

(b) Hydrolysis of phrenosine gives, in addition to the hexose in part (a), a fatty acid called *cerebronic acid,* along with a third substance called *sphingosine.* Write structural formulas for both cerebronic acid and sphingosine.

24.22 Each of the following reactions has been reported in the chemical literature and proceeds in good yield. What are the principal organic products of each reaction? In some of the exercises more than one diastereomer may be theoretically possible, but in such instances one diastereomer is either the major product or the only product. For those reactions in which one diastereomer is formed preferentially, indicate its expected stereochemistry.

(a) $CH_3(CH_2)_7C{\equiv}C(CH_2)_7COOH + H_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Lindlar Pd}}$

(b) $CH_3(CH_2)_7C{\equiv}C(CH_2)_7COOH \xrightarrow[2.\ H^+]{1.\ Li,\ NH_3}$

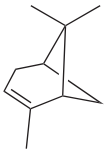
(c) $(Z)\text{-}CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}OCH_2CH_3 + H_2 \xrightarrow{Pt}$

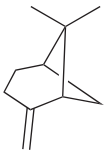
(d) $(Z)\text{-}CH_3(CH_2)_5\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{CH}CH_2CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}OCH_3 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ LiAlH_4}$

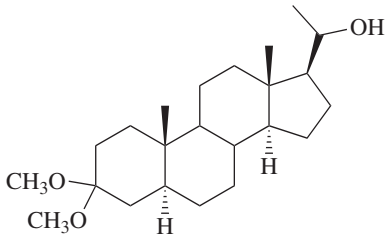
(e) $(Z)\text{-}CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7COOH + C_6H_5\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}OOH \longrightarrow$

(f) Product of part (e) $+ H_3O^+ \longrightarrow$

(g) $(Z)\text{-}CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7COOH \xrightarrow[2.\ H^+]{1.\ OsO_4,\ (CH_3)_3COOH,\ HO^-}$

(h)  $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2,\ HO^-]{1.\ B_2H_6,\ \text{diglyme}}$

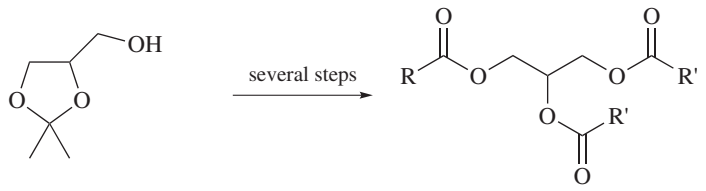
(i)  $\xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2,\ HO^-]{1.\ B_2H_6,\ \text{diglyme}}$

(j)  $\xrightarrow[H_2O]{HCl} C_{21}H_{34}O_2$

24.23 Describe an efficient synthesis of each of the following compounds from octadecanoic (stearic) acid using any necessary organic or inorganic reagents:

(a) Octadecane
(b) 1-Phenyloctadecane
(c) 3-Ethylicosane
(d) Icosanoic acid
(e) 1-Octadecanamine
(f) 1-Nonadecanamine

24.24 A synthesis of triacylglycerols has been described that begins with the substance shown.

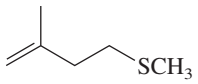


4-(Hydroxymethyl)-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxolane

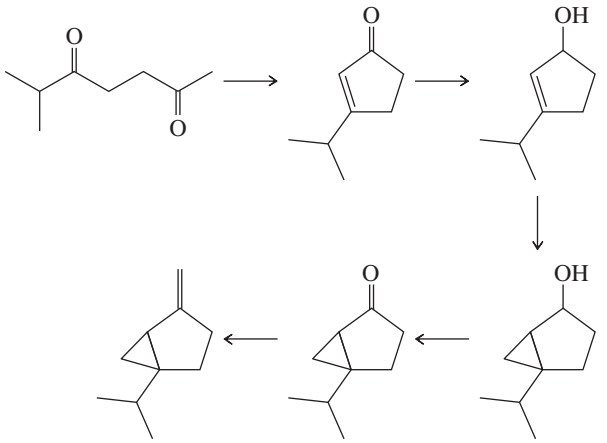
Triacylglycerol

Outline a series of reactions suitable for the preparation of a triacylglycerol of the type illustrated in the equation, where R and R′ are different.

24.25 The isoprenoid compound shown is a scent marker present in the urine of the red fox. Suggest a reasonable synthesis for this substance from 3-methyl-3-buten-1-ol and any necessary organic or inorganic reagents.

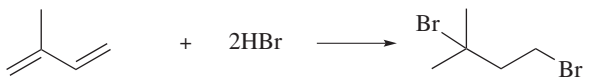


24.26 *Sabinene* is a monoterpene found in the oil of citrus fruits and plants. It has been synthesized from 6-methyl-2,5-heptanedione by the sequence that follows. Suggest reagents suitable for carrying out each of the indicated transformations. (Hint: See Section 14.8.)



Sabinene

24.27 Isoprene has sometimes been used as a starting material in the laboratory synthesis of terpenes. In one such synthesis, the first step is the electrophilic addition of 2 mol of hydrogen bromide to isoprene to give 1,3-dibromo-3-methylbutane.



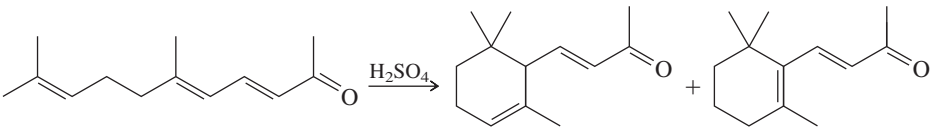
2-Methyl-1,3-butadiene (isoprene)

Hydrogen bromide

1,3-Dibromo-3-methylbutane

Write a series of equations describing the mechanism of this reaction.

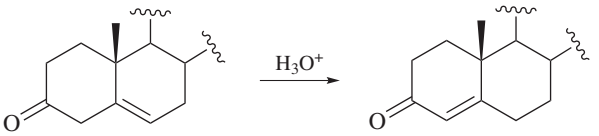
24.28 The ionones are fragrant substances present in the scent of iris and are used in perfume. A mixture of α- and β-ionone can be prepared by treatment of pseudoionone with sulfuric acid.



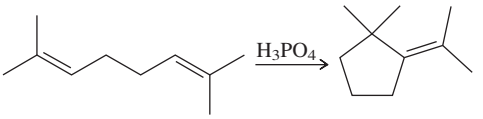
Pseudoionone α-Ionone β-Ionone

Write a stepwise mechanism for this reaction.

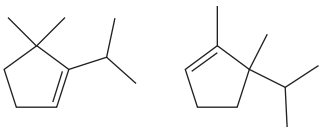
24.29 β,γ-Unsaturated steroidal ketones represented by the partial structure shown here are readily converted in acid to their α,β-unsaturated isomers. Write a stepwise mechanism for this reaction.



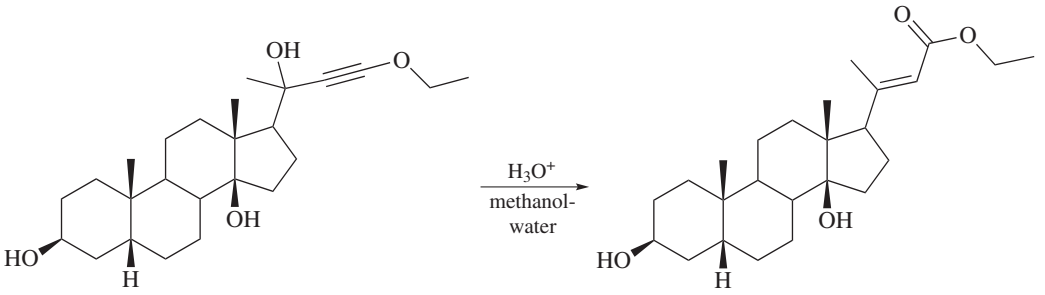
24.30 (a) Suggest a mechanism for the following reaction.



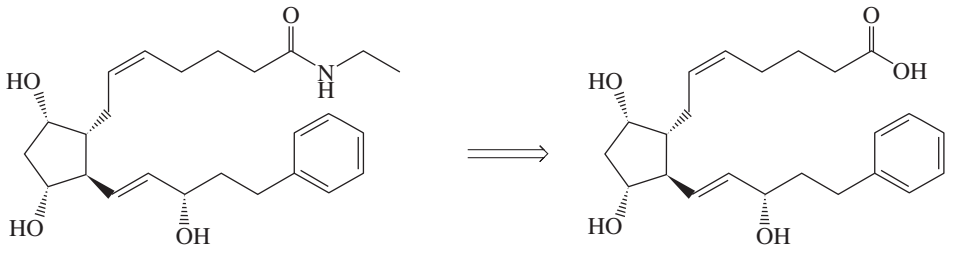
(b) The following two compounds are also formed in the reaction given in part (a). How are these two products formed?



24.31 The following transformation was carried out as part of a multistep synthesis of digitoxigenin. Propose a mechanism.



24.32 The glaucoma drug *bimatoprost* is synthesized in two steps from another prostaglandin. Can you suggest a method for this conversion?

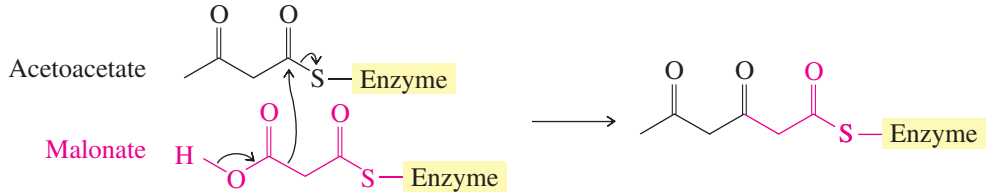


Bimatoprost

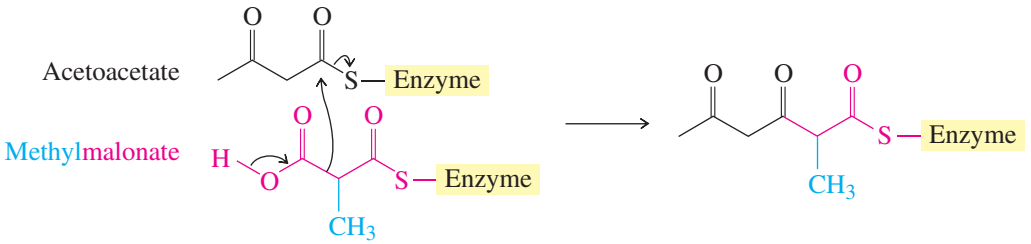
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 24

Polyketides

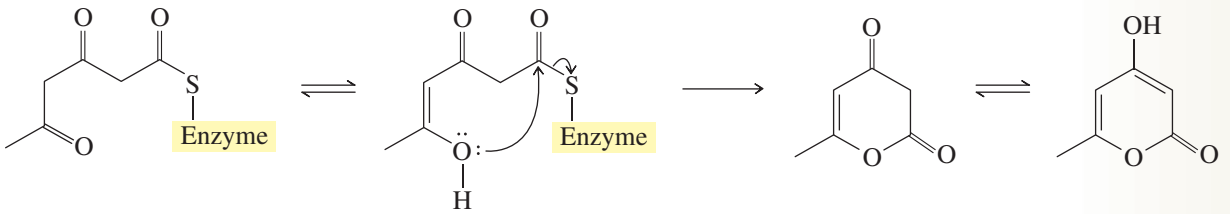
We have seen in this chapter that acetoacetate is an intermediate in both fatty acid and terpene biosynthesis. It is also an intermediate in the biosynthesis of the **polyketides,** a class of compounds of which more than 7000 are known to occur naturally. Polyketides are composed of alternating C═O and CH_2 groups as well as compounds derived from them. Their biosynthesis resembles fatty acid biosynthesis except that many of the carbonyl groups destined for reduction during fatty acid biosynthesis are retained in polyketide biosynthesis.



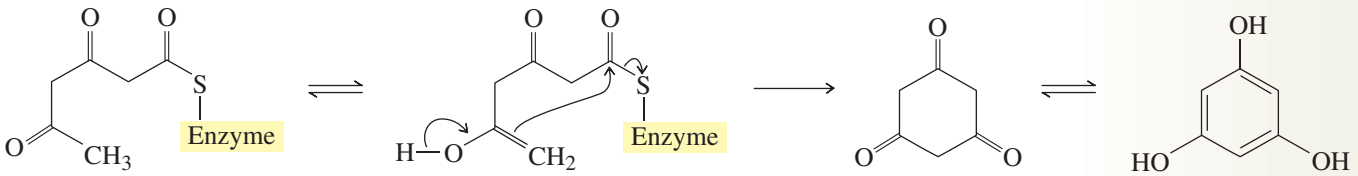
Many polyketides have one or more methyl substituents on their carbon chain. In some cases *S*-adenosylmethionine is the source of a methyl group; in others methylmalonyl CoA (from propanoic acid) substitutes for acetate during chain assembly.



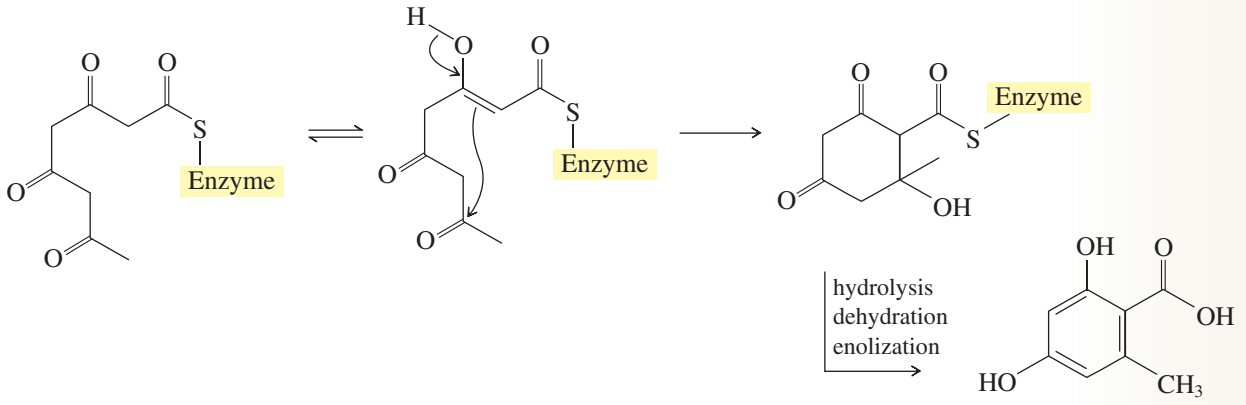
1. An enolic OH derived from the β-diketone structural unit can act as the nucleophile in a nucleophilic acyl substitution to give a six-membered oxygen heterocycle known as a pyrone.



2. Intramolecular Claisen condensation gives 1,3,5-trihydroxybenzene.

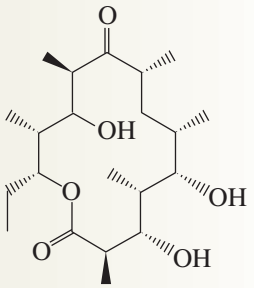


3. Intramolecular aldol condensation of a slightly longer polyketide chain gives orsellinic acid.



The number and complexity of structural types that can arise via polyketides is magnified when one realizes that other reactions involving the carbon chain and its carbonyl groups can precede or follow cyclization. Although the number of polyketides for which precise biosynthetic details are known is limited, reasonable suggestions can be made as to their main elements based on a few basic principles of organic reaction mechanisms.

The first enzyme-free intermediate in the biosynthesis of erythromycin is the polyketide 6-deoxyerythronolide B. All of the carbons come from either acetate or propanoate.



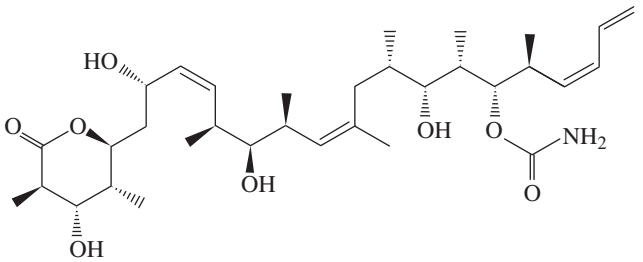
6-Deoxyerythronolide B ($C_{21}H_{38}O_6$)

24.33 How many of the carbons come from acetate? From propanoate?

	Acetate	Propanoate
A.	0	21
B.	6	15
C.	12	9
D.	18	3

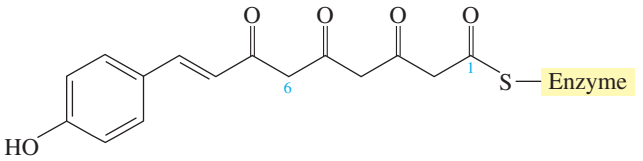
24.34 How many methylmalonates are involved in the biosynthesis of 6-deoxyerythronolide B?
(a) 0 (b) 3 (c) 6 (d) 7

24.35 (+)-Discodermolide ($C_{33}H_{55}NO_8$) holds promise as an anticancer drug. Except for its amide carbonyl, all of the carbons of discodermolide are believed to come from acetate or propanoate. How many acetate units? How many propanoate units?



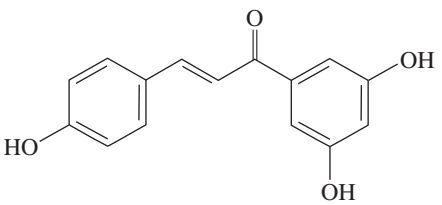
(a) 1 acetate; 10 propanoate
(b) 4 acetate; 8 propanoate
(c) 10 acetate; 4 propanoate
(d) 16 acetate; 0 propanoate

24.36 A key bond-forming step in the biosynthesis of naringenin chalcone is believed to involve an intramolecular Claisen condensation between C-1 and C-6 of the modified polyketide chain shown.

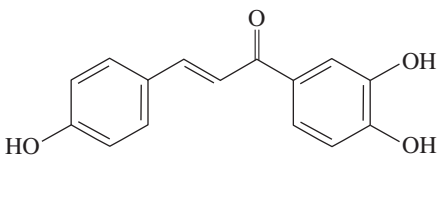


Which of the following is the most reasonable structure of naringenin chalcone based on this hypothesis?

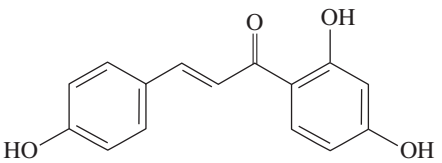
A.



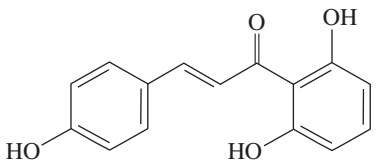
C.



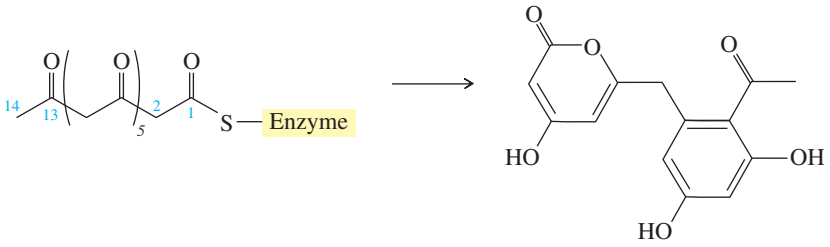
B.



D.



24.37 Carbon–carbon bond formation in the 14-carbon polyketo chain is suggested to be a key biosynthetic step leading to the compound shown.

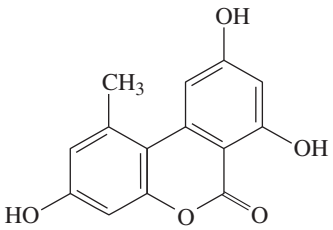


What two carbons are involved in this carbon–carbon bond-forming step?

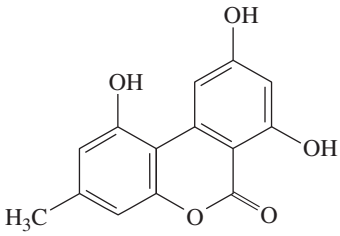
(a) C-1 and C-5
(b) C-2 and C-14
(c) C-7 and C-12
(d) C-8 and C-13

24.38 Alternariol is a toxin produced by a mold that grows on agricultural products. It is a polyketide derived from seven acetate units. Which of the following is the most reasonable structure for alternariol?

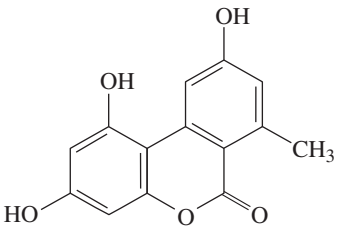
A.



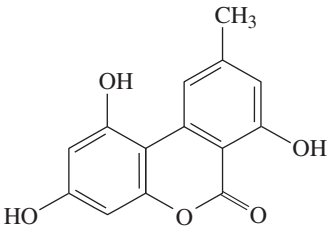
C.



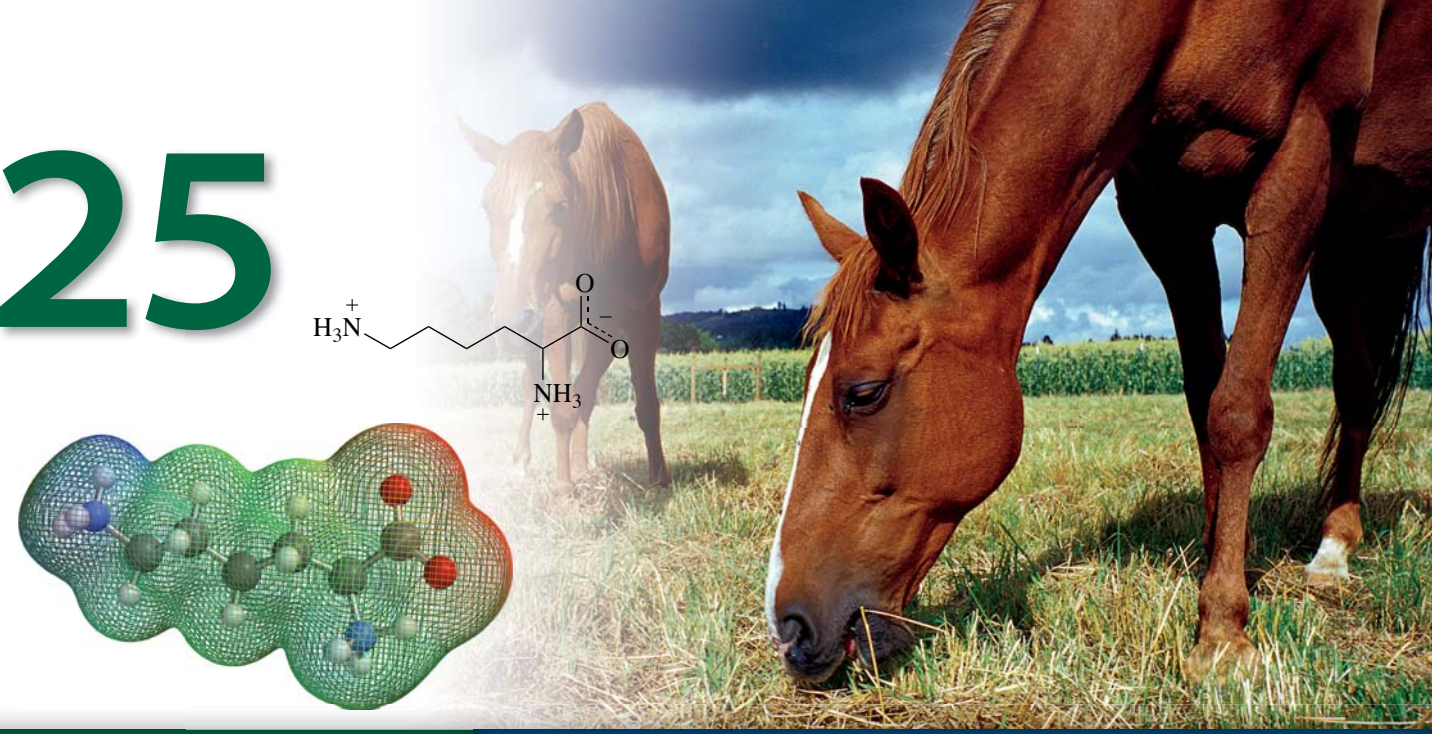
B.



D.



25



CHAPTER OUTLINE

25.1 Classification of Amino Acids 1031
25.2 Stereochemistry of Amino Acids 1035
25.3 Acid–Base Behavior of Amino Acids 1036
- Electrophoresis 1039

25.4 Synthesis of Amino Acids 1040
25.5 Reactions of Amino Acids 1041
25.6 Some Biochemical Reactions of Amino Acids 1043
25.7 Peptides 1049
25.8 Introduction to Peptide Structure Determination 1052
25.9 Amino Acid Analysis 1052
25.10 Partial Hydrolysis and End Group Analysis 1053
25.11 Insulin 1055
25.12 Edman Degradation and Automated Sequencing of Peptides 1056
- Peptide Mapping and MALDI Mass Spectrometry 1058

25.13 The Strategy of Peptide Synthesis 1059
25.14 Amino and Carboxyl Group Protection and Deprotection 1060
25.15 Peptide Bond Formation 1061
25.16 Solid-Phase peptide synthesis: The Merrifierd Method 1064
25.17 Secondary Structures of Peptides and Proteins 1066
25.18 Tertiary Structure of Polypeptides and Proteins 1069
25.19 Coenzymes 1073
- Oh NO! It's Inorganic! 1074

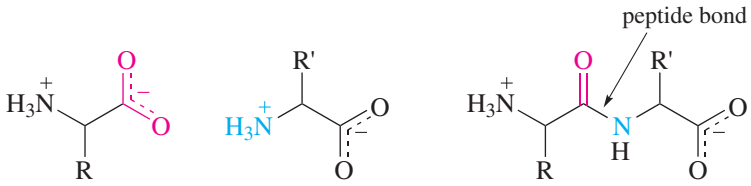
25.20 Protein Quaternary Structure: Hemoglobin 1074
25.21 G-Coupled Protein Receptors 1075
25.22 Summary 1076
Problems 1078
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 25: Amino Acids in Enantioselective Synthesis 1081

Horses and many other animals, including humans, must obtain lysine from the food they eat because they can't biosynthesize it; thus, it is one of several "essential" amino acids. Commercial animal feed is often enriched in lysine obtained by methods based in biotechnology.

Amino Acids, Peptides, and Proteins

The relationship between structure and function reaches its ultimate expression in the chemistry of amino acids, peptides, and proteins.

Amino acids are carboxylic acids that contain an amine function. An amide bond between the carboxylic acid function of one amino acid and the amino nitrogen of another is called a **peptide bond.**



Two α-amino acids Dipeptide

A **dipeptide** is a molecule consisting of two amino acids joined by a peptide bond. A **tripeptide** has three amino acids joined by two peptide bonds, a **tetrapeptide** has four amino acids, and so on. Peptides with more than 30–50 amino acids are **polypeptides. Proteins** are polypeptides that have some biological function.

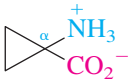
The most striking thing about proteins is the diversity of their roles in living systems: silk is a protein, skin and hair are mostly proteins, many hormones are proteins, a protein carries

oxygen from the lungs to the tissues where it is stored by another protein, and all enzymes are proteins.

As in most aspects of chemistry and biochemistry, structure is the key to function. We'll explore the structure of proteins by first concentrating on their fundamental building block units, the α-amino acids. Then, after developing the principles of peptide structure, we'll see how the insights gained from these smaller molecules aid our understanding of proteins.

25.1 Classification of Amino Acids

Amino acids are classified as α, β, γ, and so on, according to the location of the amine group on the carbon chain that contains the carboxylic acid function.

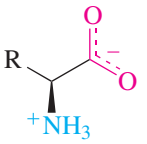


1-Aminocyclopropanecarboxylic acid: (an α-amino acid that is the biological precursor to ethylene in plants)

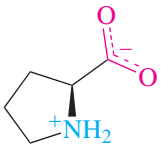
3-Aminopropanoic acid: (known as β-alanine, it is a β-amino acid that makes up one of the structural units of coenzyme A)

4-Aminobutanoic acid: (known as γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA), it is a γ-amino acid and is involved in the transmission of nerve impulses)

Although more than 700 different amino acids are known to occur naturally, the group of 20 α-amino acids called the **standard amino acids** listed in Table 25.1 commands special attention. These 20 are coded for in DNA-directed protein synthesis, and all except proline are characterized by the general formula shown where R is a side chain. Proline has a cyclic side chain that incorporates the α-amino function.



General formula of an α-amino acid



Proline

Two different formats are widely used to abbreviate the names of the standard amino acids. One employs three letters, the other one. Both are given in the table. Our bodies make 12 of the standard amino acids; the other 8 are called **essential amino acids,** which have to be obtained from our diet and are so noted in the table.

The most important aspect of Table 25.1 is that although the 20 standard amino acids share the common feature of being α-amino acids, their side chains differ in respect to their:

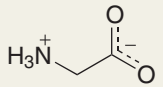
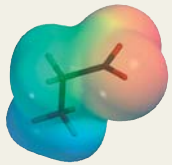
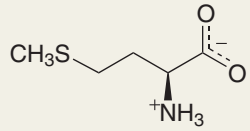
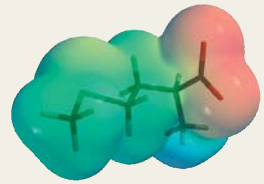
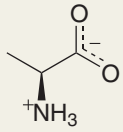
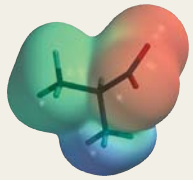
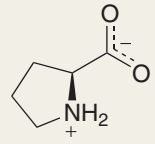
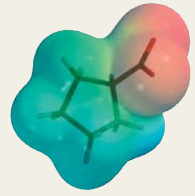
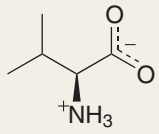
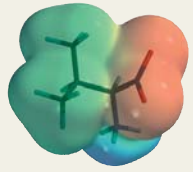
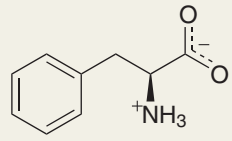
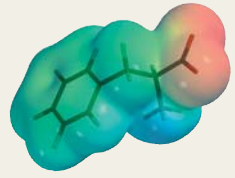
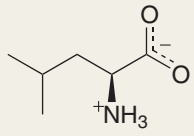
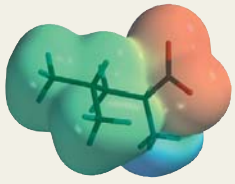
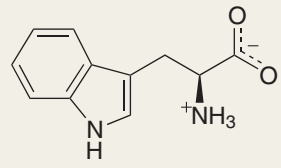
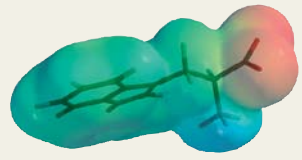
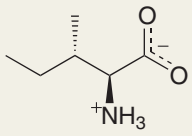
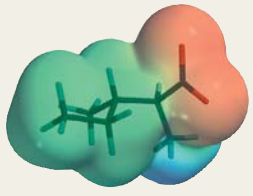
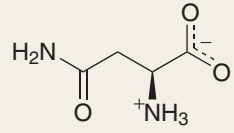
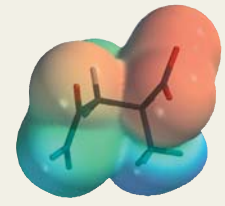
1. Size and shape
2. Electronic characteristics; acid–base properties; and ability to engage in ionic bonding, covalent bonding, hydrogen bonding, and van der Waals forces.

Table 25.1 shows the amino acids in the form in which they exist at a pH of 7: amine groups as positively charged ammonium ions, and carboxylic acid groups as negatively charged carboxylates. Their electrostatic potential maps compare their shape and charge distribution.

Nonpolar Side Chains *Glycine* ($H_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2^-$) has no side chain and is the smallest amino acid. It adds length and flexibility to a polypeptide chain without sacrificing strength or making spatial demands of its own. After glycine, the next four amino acids in Table 25.1—*alanine, valine, leucine,* and *isoleucine*—all have simple alkyl groups as side chains: methyl, isopropyl, isobutyl and *sec*-butyl, respectively. These side chains are hydrophobic and, although electronically similar, differ in size and shape.

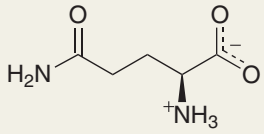
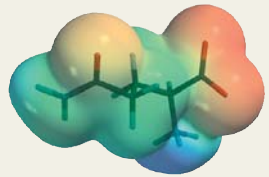
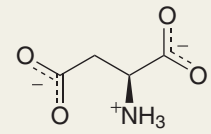
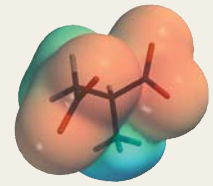
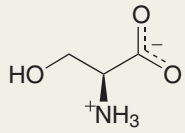
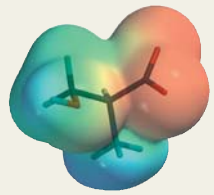
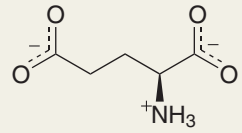
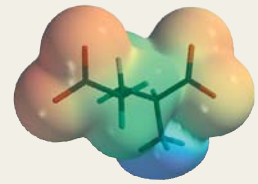
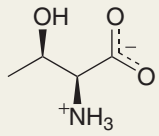
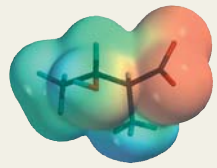
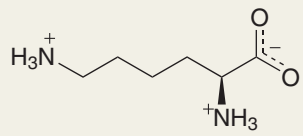
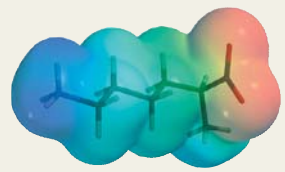
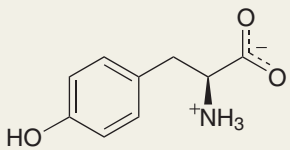
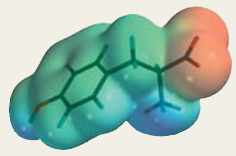
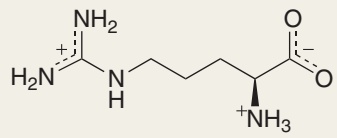
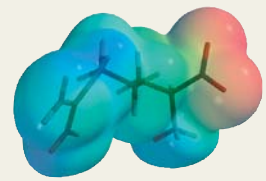
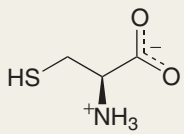
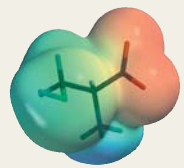
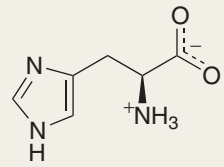
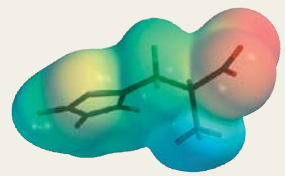
The presence of sulfur in the *methionine* side chain distinguishes it from an alkyl group in making it more polarizable and better able to participate in dispersion forces.

TABLE 25.1 The Standard Amino Acids

Name and abbreviation	Structural formula*	Electrostatic potential map	Name and abbreviation	Structural formula*	Electrostatic potential map
Amino acids with nonpolar side chains					
Glycine Gly (G)			Methionine† Met (M)		
Alanine Ala (A)			Proline Pro (P)		
Valine† Val (V)			Phenylalanine† Phe (F)		
Leucine† Leu (L)			Tryptophan† Trp (W)		
			Amino acids with polar but nonionized side chains		
Isoleucine† Ile (I)			Asparagine Asn (N)		

*All amino acids are shown in the form present in greatest concentration at pH 7.
†An essential amino acid, which must be present in the diet of animals to ensure normal growth.

TABLE 25.1 The Standard Amino Acids (*Continued*)

Name and abbreviation	Structural formula*	Electrostatic potential map	Name and abbreviation	Structural formula*	Electrostatic potential map
Amino acids with polar but nonionized side chains (*continued*)			**Amino acids with acidic side chains**		
Glutamine Gln (Q)			Aspartic acid Asp (D)		
Serine Ser (S)			Glutamic acid Glu (E)		
			Amino acids with basic side chains		
Threonine Thr (T)			Lysine Lys (K)		
Tyrosine Tyr (Y)			Arginine† Arg (R)		
Cysteine Cys (C)			Histidine† His (H)		

*All amino acids are shown in the form present in greatest concentration at pH 7.

†An essential amino acid, which must be present in the diet of animals to ensure normal growth.

Proline, which has a cyclic side chain spanning its α carbon and the amino nitrogen, is relatively compact with limited conformational flexibility. Amides of proline, such as those in a peptide chain, lack N—H bonds so cannot participate in hydrogen bonding, and the presence of proline affects the shape of a peptide more than most other amino acids.

Phenylalanine and *tryptophan* have hydrophobic side chains of the type —CH_2Ar. Tryptophan is larger, more polarizable, and less common in proteins than most of the other standard amino acids.

Amino Acids with Polar but Nonionized Side Chains Among amino acids with polar side chains, *serine* is the smallest; it is not much larger than alanine. With a —CH_2OH side chain, serine participates well in hydrogen bonding and often occurs in regions of a peptide that are exposed to water. *Threonine* has a methyl group in place of one of the hydrogens of the —CH_2OH group of serine, sterically hindering the hydroxyl group and making it less effective in hydrogen bonding.

Tyrosine is a *p*-hydroxy derivative of phenylalanine. Its phenolic hydroxyl group makes it an effective participant in hydrogen bonding and acid–base properties.

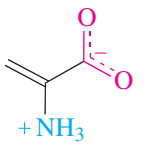
Cysteine is related to serine except that its side chain is —CH_2SH rather than —CH_2OH. The number of cysteines in a protein is often relatively small, but their effect on its three-dimensional shape is substantial. Oxidation of two cysteines converts their —CH_2SH side chains to a —CH_2S—SCH_2— disulfide bridge, which ties two remote amino acids together and helps guide the folding of the protein.

Asparagine and *glutamine* are amides. The side chains of both terminate in —$\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}NH_2$ and differ by only a single CH_2 group. Amide functions are quite polar and interact strongly with water molecules by hydrogen bonding. Like serine, asparagine and glutamine are often found in regions of a peptide that are in contact with water.

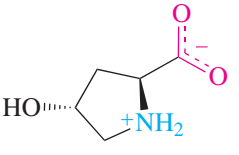
Amino Acids with Acidic Side Chains The electrostatic potential maps of *aspartic acid* and *glutamic acid* are two of the most prominent ones in Table 25.1. The —CO_2H side chains of both aspartic and glutamic acid are almost completely deprotonated to —CO_2^- at biological pH, giving these species the most electron-rich units of all of the common amino acids. Their most important function is in ionic bonding to positively charged species such as metal ions and ammonium ions.

Amino Acids with Basic Side Chains The basic amino acids—*lysine, arginine,* and *histidine*—are the opposite of acidic amino acids. They form ionic bonds to negative ions such as phosphate. Argninine is the most basic, histidine the least.

Nonstandard Amino Acids Peptides sometimes contain an amino acid different from the 20 shown in Table 25.1. *Dehydroalanine,* for example, is a component of a toxic substance produced by a strain of cyanogenic bacteria, and *hydroxyproline* is a component of the collagen in connective tissue.

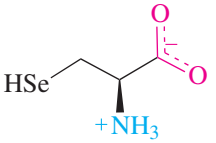


Dehydroalanine

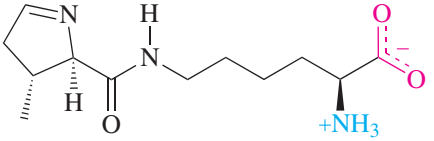


Hydroxyproline

Like most nonstandard amino acids, dehydroalanine and hydroxyproline are formed by modification of one of the standard amino acids that has already been incorporated into a peptide. Two nonstandard amino acids—*selenocysteine* and *pyrrolysine*—the so-called "twenty-first and twenty-second amino acids," however, are coded for by DNA.



Selenocysteine



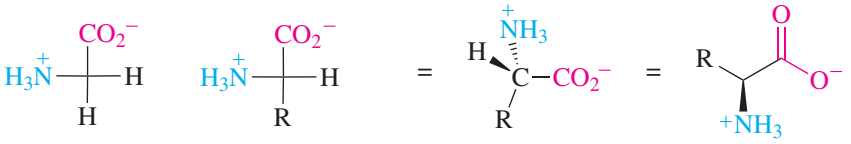
Pyrrolysine

Problem 25.1

The next section deals with amino acid stereochemistry. You can prepare for it by locating all of the chirality centers in the four nonstandard amino acids just shown and specifying their configuration using the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog *R,S* notation.

25.2 Stereochemistry of Amino Acids

Glycine is the only amino acid in Table 25.1 that is achiral; the α-carbon atom is a chirality center in all the others. Configurations in amino acids are normally specified by the D, L notational system. All the chiral amino acids obtained from proteins have the L configuration at their α-carbon atom, meaning that the amine group is at the left when a Fischer projection is arranged so the carboxyl group is at the top.

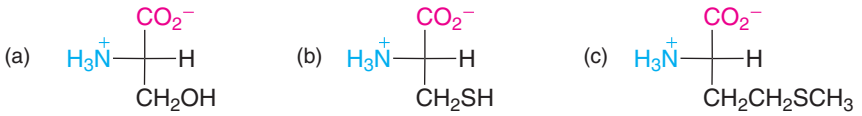


Glycine

Fischer projection of an L-α-amino acid

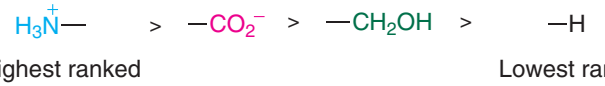
Problem 25.2

What is the absolute configuration (*R* or *S*) at the α-carbon atom in each of the following L-amino acids?



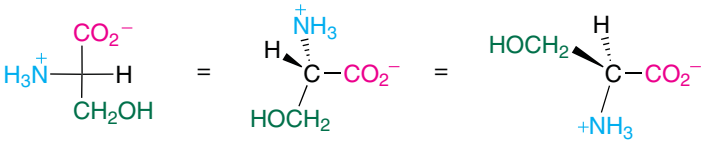
L-Serine L-Cysteine L-Methionine

Sample Solution (a) First identify the four groups attached directly to the chirality center, and rank them in order of decreasing sequence rule precedence. For L-serine these groups are

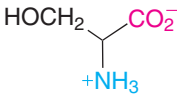


Highest ranked Lowest ranked

Next, translate the Fischer projection of L-serine to a three-dimensional representation, and orient it so that the lowest ranked substituent at the chirality center is directed away from you.



In order of decreasing precedence the three highest ranked groups trace a counterclockwise path.



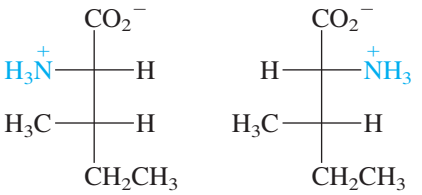
The absolute configuration of L-serine is *S*.

Problem 25.3

The amino acid L-threonine is (2*S*,3*R*)-2-amino-3-hydroxybutanoic acid. Draw a Fischer projection and line formula for L-threonine.

Although all the chiral amino acids obtained from proteins have the L configuration at their α carbon, that should not be taken to mean that D-amino acids are unknown. In fact, quite a number of D-amino acids occur naturally. D-Alanine, for example, is a constituent of bacterial cell walls and D-serine occurs in brain tissue. The point is that D-amino acids are not coded for by DNA.

A novel technique for dating archaeological samples called **amino acid racemization (AAR)** is based on the stereochemistry of amino acids. Over time, the configuration at the α-carbon atom of a protein's amino acids is lost in a reaction that follows first-order kinetics. When the α carbon is the only chirality center, this process corresponds to racemization. For an amino acid with two chirality centers, changing the configuration of the α carbon from L to D gives a diastereomer. In the case of isoleucine, for example, the diastereomer is an amino acid not normally present in proteins, called *alloisoleucine.*



L-Isoleucine D-Alloisoleucine

By measuring the L-isoleucine/D-alloisoleucine ratio in the protein isolated from the eggshells of an extinct Australian bird, it was determined that this bird lived approximately 50,000 years ago. Radiocarbon (^{14}C) dating is not accurate for samples older than about 35,000 years, so AAR is a useful addition to the tools available to paleontologists.

25.3 Acid–Base Behavior of Amino Acids

The physical properties of a typical amino acid such as glycine suggest that it is a very polar substance, much more polar than would be expected on the basis of its formulation as $H_2NCH_2CO_2H$. Glycine is a crystalline solid; it does not melt, but on being heated it eventually decomposes at 233°C. It is very soluble in water but practically insoluble in nonpolar organic solvents. These properties are attributed to the fact that the stable form of glycine is a **zwitterion.**

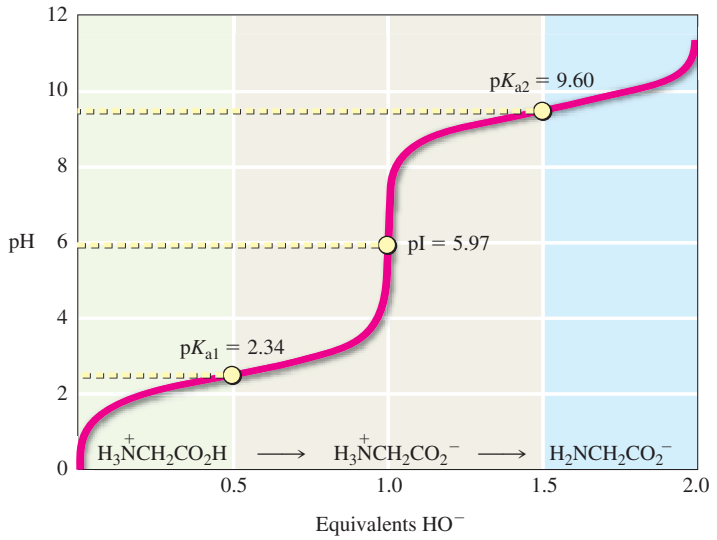
The zwitterion is also often referred to as a *dipolar ion*. Note, however, that it is not an ion, but a neutral molecule.

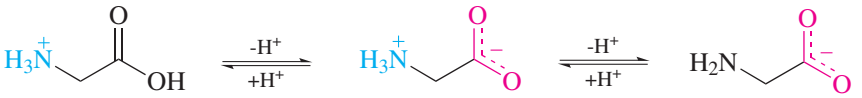
Stronger acid $pK_a = 5$ Zwitterionic form of glycine

Weaker acid $pK_a = 9$

The equilibrium expressed by the preceding equation lies overwhelmingly to the side of the zwitterion.

Glycine, as well as other amino acids, is *amphoteric,* meaning it contains an acidic functional group and a basic functional group. The acidic functional group is the ammonium ion $H_3\overset{+}{N}$—; the basic functional group is the carboxylate ion —CO_2^-. How do we know this? Aside from its physical properties, the acid–base properties of glycine, as illustrated by the titration curve in Figure 25.1, require it. In a strongly acidic medium the species present is the cation $H_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2H$. As the pH is raised, its most acidic proton is removed. Is this proton removed from the positively charged nitrogen or from the carboxyl group? We know what to expect for the relative acid strengths of $R\overset{+}{N}H_3$ and RCO_2H. A typical ammonium ion has $pK_a \approx 9$, and a typical carboxylic acid has $pK_a \approx 5$. The measured pK_a for the conjugate acid of glycine is 2.34, a value closer to that expected for deprotonation of the carboxyl group. As the pH is raised, a second deprotonation step, corresponding to removal of a proton from nitrogen of the zwitterion, is observed. The pK_a associated with this step is 9.60, much like that of typical alkylammonium ions.





Major species at pH < 2.3 | Major species at pH > 2.3–9.6 | Major species at pH > 9.6

Thus, glycine is characterized by two pK_a values: the one corresponding to the more acidic site is designated pK_{a1}, the one corresponding to the less acidic site is designated pK_{a2}. Table 25.2 lists pK_{a1} and pK_{a2} values for the α-amino acids that have neutral side chains, which are the first two groups of amino acids given in Table 25.1. In all cases their pK_a values are similar to those of glycine.

TABLE 25.2 Acid–Base Properties of Amino Acids with Neutral Side Chains

Amino acid	pK_{a1}*	pK_{a2}*	pI
Glycine	2.34	9.60	5.97
Alanine	2.34	9.69	6.00
Valine	2.32	9.62	5.96
Leucine	2.36	9.60	5.98
Isoleucine	2.36	9.60	6.02
Methionine	2.28	9.21	5.74
Proline	1.99	10.60	6.30
Phenylalanine	1.83	9.13	5.48
Tryptophan	2.83	9.39	5.89
Asparagine	2.02	8.80	5.41
Glutamine	2.17	9.13	5.65
Serine	2.21	9.15	5.68
Threonine	2.09	9.10	5.60
Tyrosine	2.20	9.11	5.66

*In all cases, pK_{a1} corresponds to ionization of the carboxyl group; pK_{a2} corresponds to deprotonation of the ammonium ion.

Figure 25.1

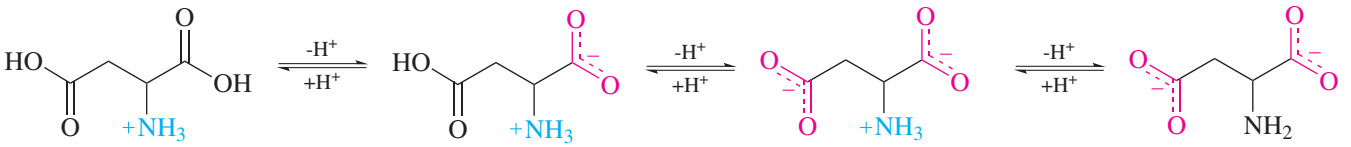
Titration curve of glycine. At pH values lower than 2.34, $H_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2H$ is the major species. At pH = 2.34 $[H_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2H] = [H_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2^-]$. Between pH = 2.34 and 9.60, $H_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2^-$ is the major species. Its concentration is a maximum at the isoelectric point (pI = 5.97). At pH = 9.60, $[H_3\overset{+}{N}CH_2CO_2^-] = [H_2NCH_2CO_2^-]$. Above pH = 9.60, $H_2NCH_2CO_2^-$ is the predominant species.

Table 25.2 includes a column labeled pI, which is the *isoelectric point* of the amino acid. The **isoelectric point,** also called the **isoionic point,** is the pH at which the amino acid has no net charge. It is the pH at which the concentration of the zwitterion is a maximum. At a pH lower than pI, the amino acid is positively charged; at a pH higher than pI, the amino acid is negatively charged. For the amino acids in Table 25.2, pI is the average of pK_{a1} and pK_{a2} and lies slightly to the acid side of neutrality.

Some amino acids have side chains that bear acidic or basic groups. As Table 25.3 indicates, these amino acids are characterized by three pK_a values. The third pK_a reflects the nature of the side chain. Acidic amino acids (aspartic and glutamic acid) have acidic side chains; basic amino acids (lysine, arginine, and histidine) have basic side chains.

The isoelectric points of the amino acids in Table 25.3 are midway between the pK_a values of the zwitterion and its conjugate acid. Take two examples: aspartic acid and lysine. Aspartic acid has an acidic side chain and a pI of 2.77. Lysine has a basic side chain and a pI of 9.74.

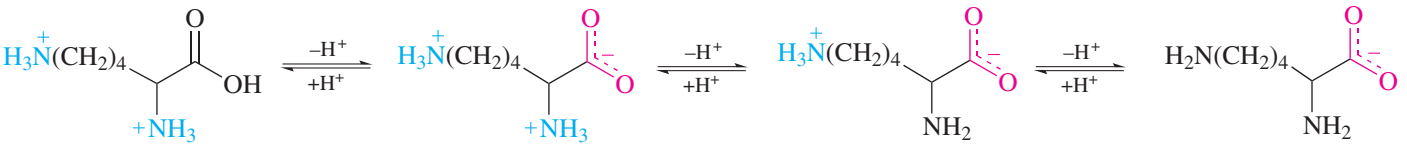
Aspartic Acid:



Major species at pH < 1.9 | Major species at pH 1.9–3.6 | Major species at pH 3.6–9.6 | Major species at pH > 9.6

The pI of aspartic acid is the average of pK_{a1} (1.88) and the pK_a of the side chain (3.65) or 2.77.

Lysine:



Major species at pH < 2.2 | Major species at pH 2.2–9.0 | Major species at pH 9.0–10.5 | Major species at pH > 10.5

The pI of lysine is the average of pK_{a2} (8.95) and the pK_a of the side chain (10.53) or 9.74.

Problem 25.4

Cysteine has $pK_{a1} = 1.96$ and $pK_{a2} = 10.28$. The pK_a for ionization of the —SH group of the side chain is 8.18. What is the isoelectric point of cysteine?

TABLE 25.3 Acid–Base Properties of Amino Acids with Ionizable Side Chains

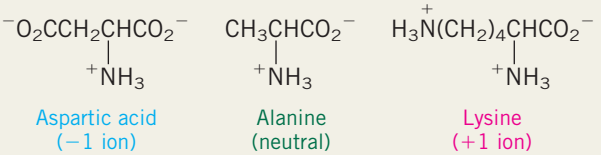
Amino acid	pK_{a1}*	pK_{a2}	pK_a of side chain	pI
Aspartic acid	1.88	9.60	3.65	2.77
Glutamic acid	2.19	9.67	4.25	3.22
Lysine	2.18	8.95	10.53	9.74
Arginine	2.17	9.04	12.48	10.76
Histidine	1.82	9.17	6.00	7.59

*In all cases, pK_{a1} corresponds to ionization of the carboxyl group of $RCHCO_2H$ and pK_{a2} to ionization of the ammonium ion.
|
NH_3^+

Electrophoresis

Electrophoresis is a method for separation and purification that depends on the movement of charged particles in an electric field. Its principles can be introduced by considering some representative amino acids. The medium is a cellulose acetate strip that is moistened with an aqueous solution buffered at a particular pH. The opposite ends of the strip are placed in separate compartments containing the buffer, and each compartment is connected to a source of direct electric current (Figure 25.2*a*). If the buffer solution is more acidic than the isoelectric point (pI) of the amino acid, the amino acid has a net positive charge and migrates toward the negatively charged electrode. Conversely, when the buffer is more basic than the pI of the amino acid, the amino acid has a net negative charge and migrates toward the positively charged electrode. When the pH of the buffer corresponds to the pI, the amino acid has no net charge and does not migrate from the origin.

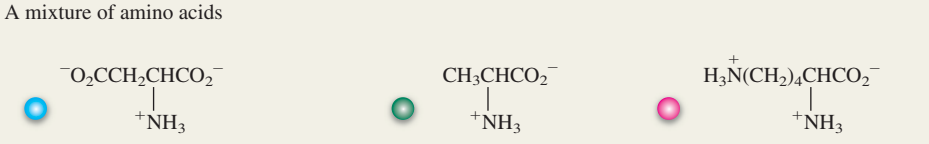
Thus if a mixture containing alanine, aspartic acid, and lysine is subjected to electrophoresis in a buffer that matches the isoelectric point of alanine (pH 6.0), aspartic acid (pI = 2.8) migrates toward the positive electrode, alanine remains at the origin, and lysine (pI = 9.7) migrates toward the negative electrode (Figure 25.2*b*).

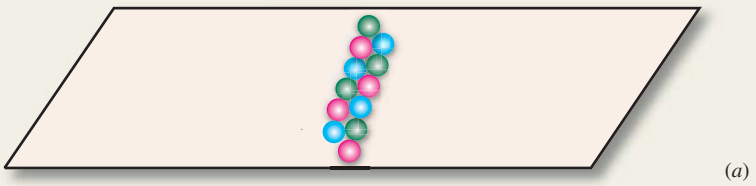


Electrophoresis is used primarily to analyze mixtures of peptides and proteins, rather than individual amino acids, but analogous principles apply. Because they incorporate different numbers of amino acids and because their side chains are different, two peptides will have slightly different acid–base properties and slightly different net charges at a particular pH. Thus, their mobilities in an electric field will be different, and electrophoresis can be used to separate them. The medium used to separate peptides and proteins is typically a polyacrylamide gel, leading to the term *gel electrophoresis* for this technique.

A second factor that governs the rate of migration during electrophoresis is the size (length and shape) of the peptide or protein. Larger molecules move through the polyacrylamide gel more slowly than smaller ones. In current practice, the experiment is modified to exploit differences in size more than differences in net charge, especially in the *SDS gel electrophoresis* of proteins. Approximately 1.5 g of the detergent *sodium dodecyl sulfate* (SDS, page 747) per gram of protein is added to the aqueous buffer. SDS binds to the protein, causing the protein to unfold so that it is roughly rod-shaped with the $CH_3(CH_2)_{10}CH_2$— groups of SDS associated with the lipophilic (hydrophobic) portions of the protein. The negatively charged sulfate groups are exposed to the water. The SDS molecules that they carry ensure that all the protein molecules are negatively charged and migrate toward the positive electrode. Further more, all the proteins in the mixture now have similar shapes and tend to travel at rates proportional to their chain length. Thus, when carried out on a preparative scale, SDS gel electrophoresis permits proteins in a mixture to be separated according to their molecular weight. On an analytical scale, it is used to estimate the molecular weight of a protein by comparing its electrophoretic mobility with that of proteins of known molecular weight.

Later, in Chapter 26, we will see how gel electrophoresis is used in nucleic acid chemistry.





Application of an electric current causes the negatively charged ions to migrate to the + electrode, and the positively charged ions to migrate to the − electrode. The zwitterion, with a net charge of zero, remains at its original position.

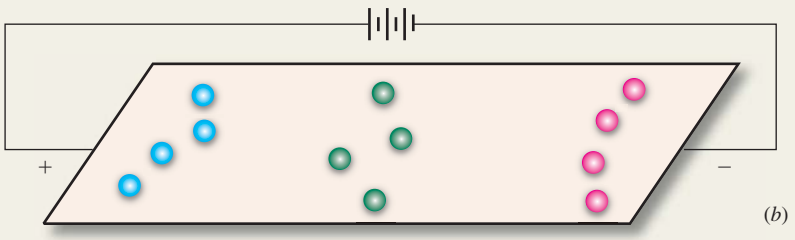


Figure 25.2

Application of electrophoresis to the separation of aspartic acid, alanine, and lysine according to their charge type at a pH corresponding to the isoelectric point (pI) of alanine.

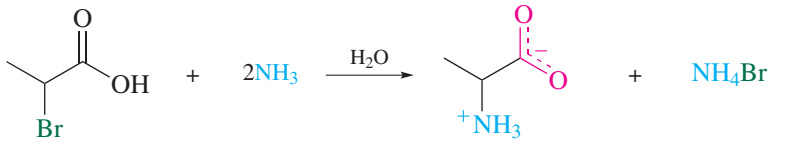
Problem 25.5

Above a pH of about 10, the major species present in a solution of tyrosine has a net charge of –2. Suggest a reasonable structure for this species.

Individual amino acids differ in their acid–base properties. This is important in peptides and proteins, where the properties of the substance depend on its amino acid constituents, especially on the nature of the side chains. It is also important in analyses in which a complex mixture of amino acids is separated into its components by taking advantage of the differences in their proton-donating and accepting power.

25.4 Synthesis of Amino Acids

Two still-used methods for the synthesis of amino acids date from the nineteenth century. One is a nucleophilic substitution in which ammonia reacts with an α-halo carboxylic acid.



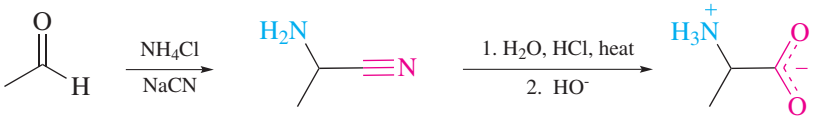
2-Bromopropanoic acid | Ammonia | Alanine (65-70%) | Ammonium bromide

Problem 25.6

Use retrosynthetic analysis to plan a synthesis of valine from 3-methylbutanoic acid and write equations for the synthesis. (Hint: See Section 20.1).

The synthesis of alanine was described by Adolf Strecker of the University of Würzburg (Germany) in a paper published in 1850.

A second method, called the **Strecker synthesis,** combines both functional group manipulation and chain extension to give an α-amino acid having one more carbon atom than the aldehyde. It begins with two nucleophilic additions that convert the aldehyde to an aminonitrile, followed by hydrolysis of the nitrile function.

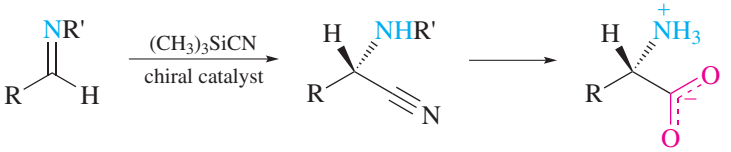


Acetaldehyde | 2-Aminopropanenitrile | Alanine (52–60%)

Problem 25.7

Use retrosynthetic analysis to plan a synthesis of isoleucine from 2-methyl-1-butanol and write equations for the synthesis.

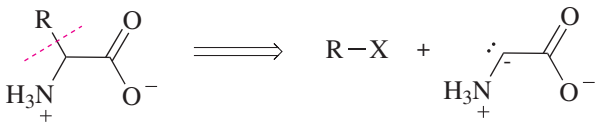
There has been striking success in adapting the Strecker synthesis to the preparation of α-amino acids with greater than 99% enantioselectivity. The numerous methods that have been developed employ specialized chiral reagents or catalysts and feature enantioselective generation of a chirality center by nucleophilic addition to an imine.



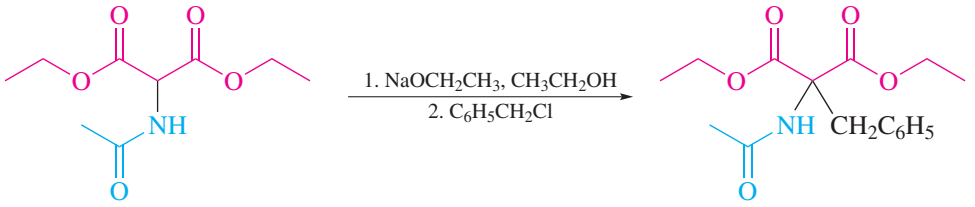
Imine | Aminonitrile | Amino acid

These procedures not only allow chemists to prepare L-amino acids, but also their much rarer D-enantiomers.

In an approach related to the malonic ester synthesis (see Section 20.6), carbon–carbon bond formation occurs by nucleophilic substitution as summarized by the disconnection:



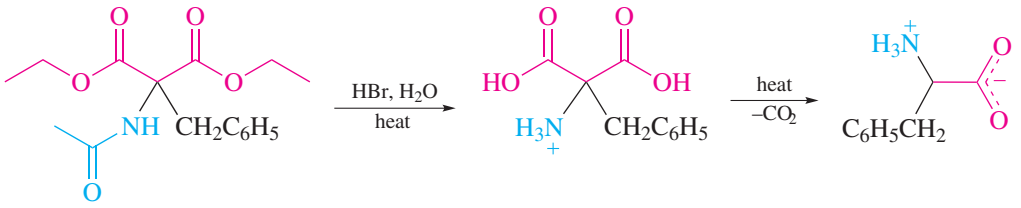
The carbanion source is diethyl malonate modified so as to bear an acetamido group at its α-carbon.



Diethyl acetamidomalonate

Diethyl acetamidobenzylmalonate (90%)

Hydrolysis removes the acetyl group from nitrogen and converts both ester functions to carboxyl groups. Decarboxylation gives the desired product.



Diethyl acetamidobenzylmalonate

(not isolated)

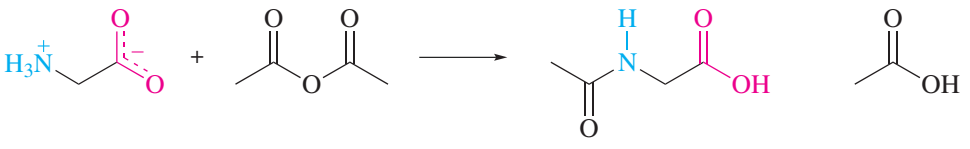
Phenylalanine (65%)

Problem 25.8

Outline the steps in the synthesis of valine from diethyl acetamidomalonate. The overall yield of valine by this method is reported to be rather low (31%). Can you think of a reason why this synthesis is not very efficient?

25.5 Reactions of Amino Acids

The reactions that amino acids undergo are those of its two functional groups plus those associated with the side chain. Many, such as acylation of the amino group, are familiar.



Glycine

Acetic anhydride

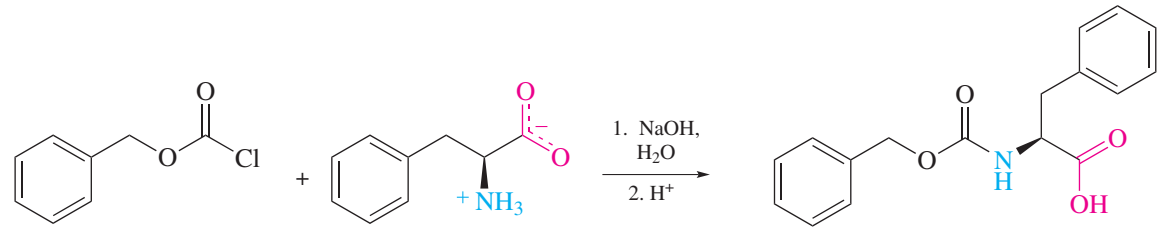
N-Acetylglycine (89–92%)

Acetic acid

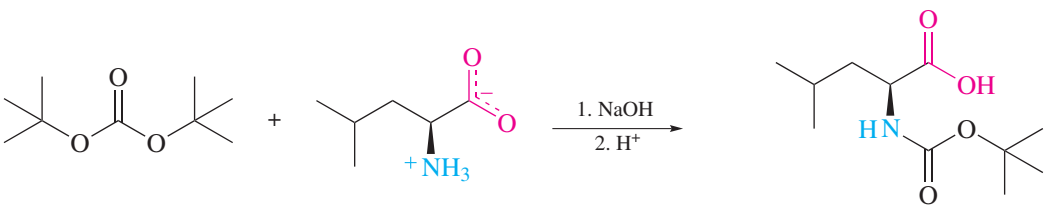
It's often the case that acylation is carried out for the purpose of protecting the amino group by temporarily suppressing its reactivity. Three widely used protecting groups are *benzyloxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl,* and *9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl,* which are abbreviated

The synthesis of the anti-Parkinson drug L-dopa by enantioselective hydrogenation was described earlier in Section 14.12.

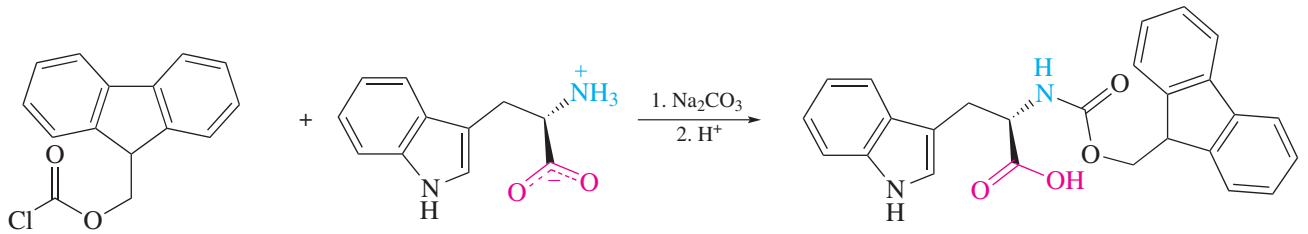
as Z, Boc, and Fmoc, respectively. Various reagents and methods have been developed for introducing these groups, among which are the following examples.



Benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (Z-Cl) + L-Phenylalanine (L-Phe or L-F) → *N*-Benzyloxycarbonyl-L-phenylalanine (82–87%) (Z-L-Phe or Z-L-F)



Di-*tert*-Butyl carbonate + L-Leucine (L-Leu or L-L) → *N*-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyl-L-leucine (96%) (Boc-L-Leu or Boc-L-L)

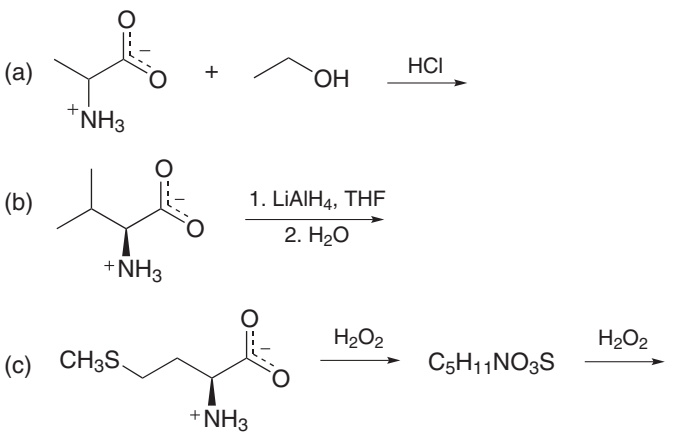


9-Fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl chloride (Fmoc-Cl) + L-Tryptophan (L-Trp or L-W) → 9-Fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl-L-tryptophan (91%) (Fmoc-L-Trp or Fmoc-L-W)

As protecting groups in polypeptide synthesis, Z, Boc, and Fmoc have complementary properties with respect to their removal upon completion of a synthetic step. Boc is removed by acid-cleavage, Fmoc by base, and Z by either acid-cleavage or hydrogenolysis. We'll return to these applications in Section 25.14.

Problem 25.9

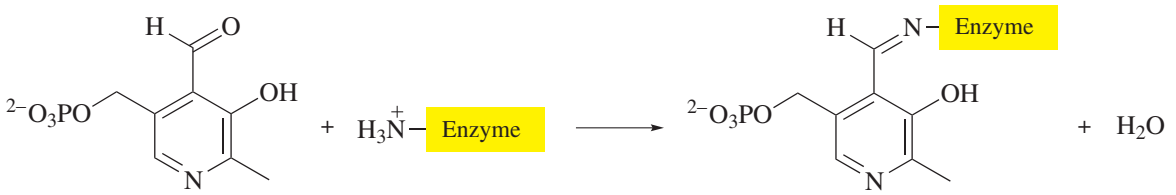
Among the typical functional group reactions of amino acids are the following. Predict the product in each case.



25.6 Some Biochemical Reactions of Amino Acids

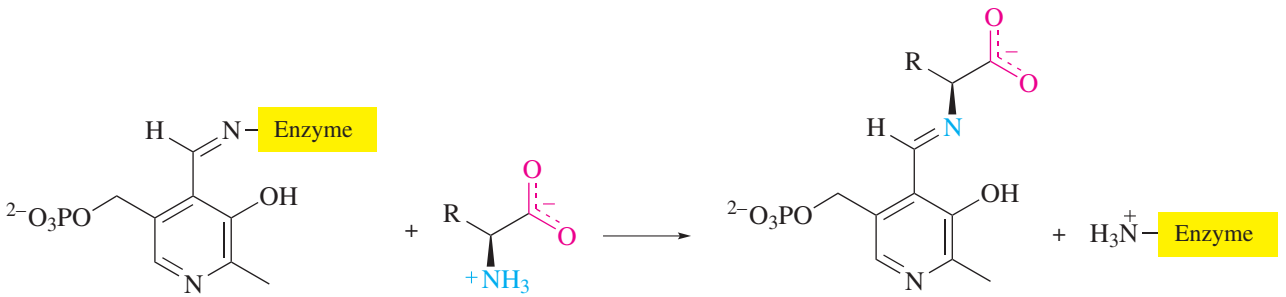
In addition to serving as building blocks for proteins, the standard amino acids are involved in numerous other biochemical processes. They store energy, although less efficiently than carbohydrates and lipids, and are starting materials for the biosynthesis of other amino acids, amines, alkaloids, and neurotransmatters.

Many of the biochemical reactions of amino acids require *pyridoxal 5′-phosphate* (PLP), the active form of vitamin B_6, as a coenzyme. Before acting on an amino acid, PLP uses its aldehyde function to form an imine with the amino group of a lysine side chain of a protein.



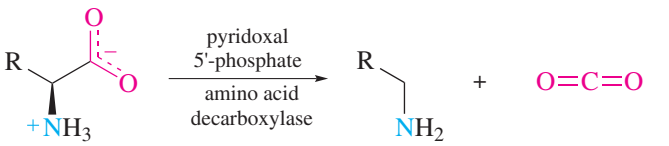
Pyridoxal phosphate (PLP) Enzyme Enzyme-bound PLP Water

Reaction of the enzyme-bound PLP with an amino acid exchanges one imine linkage for another.



Enzyme-bound PLP Amino acid Imine Enzyme

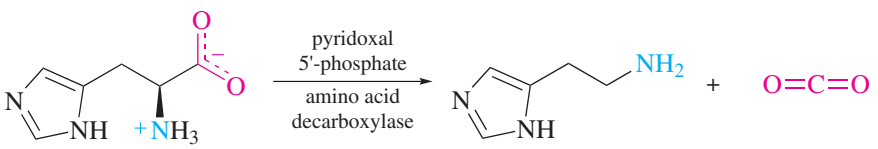
The pyridine ring of PLP, especially when protonated, facilitates several kinds of reactions at the amino acid's α-carbon by acting as an electron-withdrawing group. One reaction is decarboxylation.



Amino acid Amine Carbon dioxide

Mechanism 25.1 outlines the mechanism of decarboxylation, showing the role played by the coenzyme.

Many bioactive amines arise by PLP-assisted decarboxylation. Decarboxylation of histidine, for example, gives histamine, a powerful vasodilator normally present in the body but formed in excessive amounts under conditions of traumatic shock.

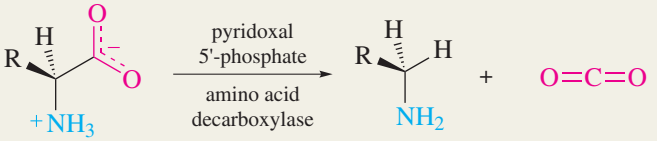


Histidine Histamine Carbon dioxide

Mechanism 25.1

Pyridoxal 5′-Phosphate-Mediated Decarboxylation of an α-Amino Acid

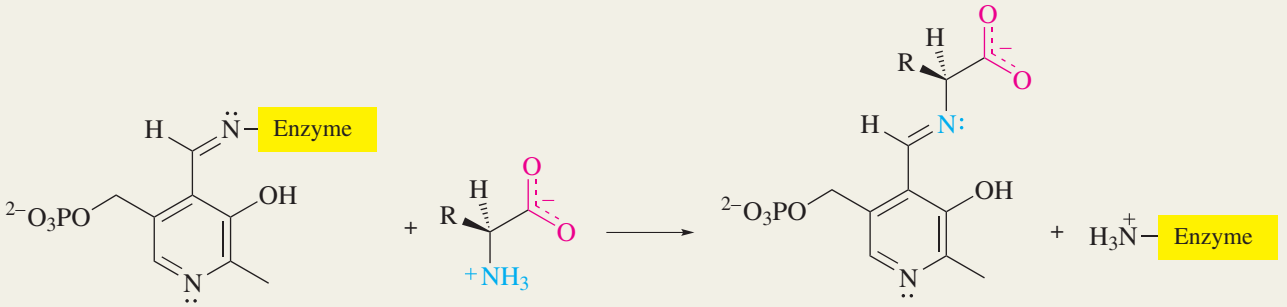
THE OVERALL REACTION:



Amino acid Amine Carbon dioxide

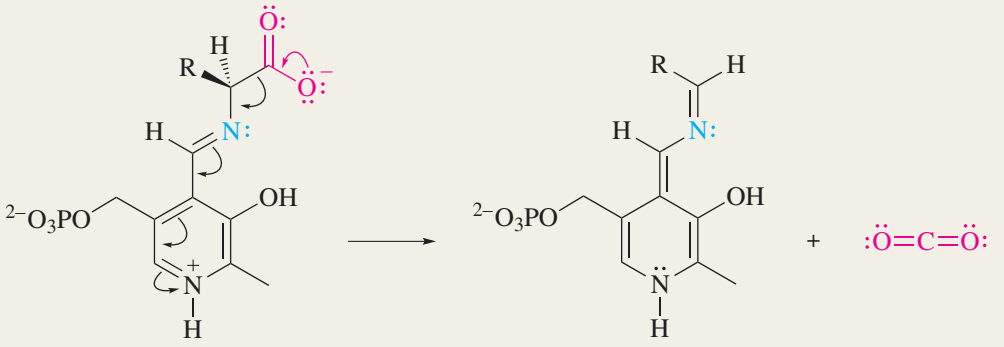
THE MECHANISM: Each stage is enzyme-catalyzed and can involve more than one elementary step.

Stage 1: The amino acid reacts with enzyme-bound pyridoxal 5′-phosphate (PLP). An imine linkage (C═N) between the amino acid and PLP forms, and the enzyme is displaced.



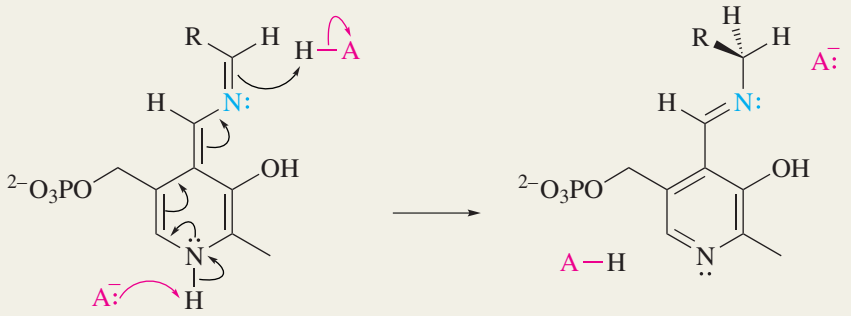
Enzyme-bound PLP Amino acid Imine Enzyme

Stage 2: When the pyridine ring is protonated on nitrogen, it becomes a stronger electron-withdrawing group, and decarboxylation is facilitated by charge neutralization.



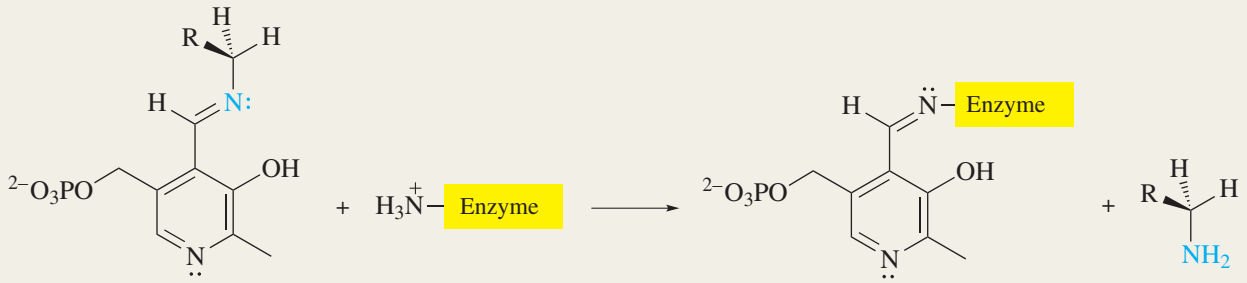
Imine Decarboxylated imine Carbon dioxide

Stage 3: Proton transfer to the α carbon and abstraction of a proton from the pyridine nitrogen brings about rearomatization of the pyridine ring.



Decarboxylated imine PLP-bound imine

Step 4: Reaction of the PLP-bound imine with the enzyme liberates the amine and restores the enzyme-bound coenzyme.



Histamine is present in various tissues and produces different effects depending on the kind of receptor it binds to. Binding of histamine to H_1 receptors in mast cells triggers, for example, the sneezing and watery eyes of hay fever and the itching of mosquito bites. The H_2 receptors in the cells that line the stomach regulate the secretion of gastric acid. The present generation of antiallergy and antiulcer drugs bind to H_1 and H_2, respectively, and act by denying histamine access to these receptors.

Problem 25.10

One of the amino acids in Table 25.1 is the biological precursor to γ-aminobutyric acid (4-aminobutanoic acid), which it forms by a decarboxylation reaction. Which amino acid is this?

The chemistry of the brain and central nervous system is affected by a group of **neurotransmitters,** substances that carry messages across a synapse from one neuron to another. Several of these neurotransmitters arise from L-tyrosine by structural modification and decarboxylation, as outlined in Figure 25.3.

Problem 25.11

Which of the transformations in Figure 25.3 is catalyzed by an amino acid decarboxylase?

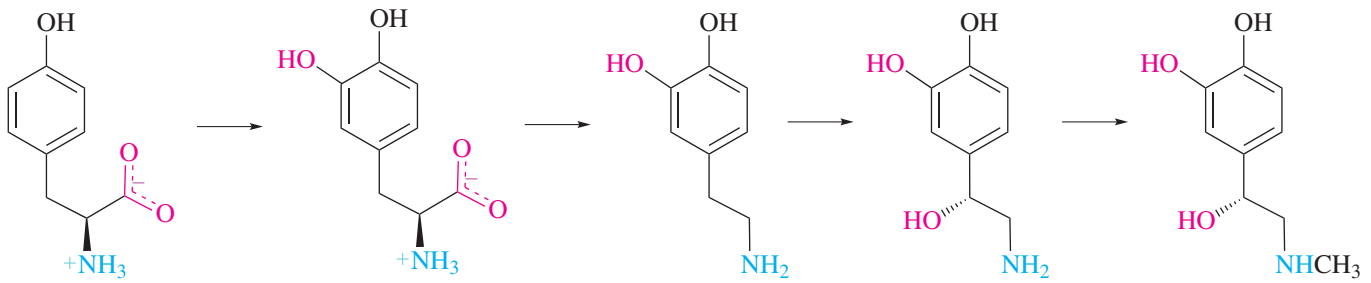
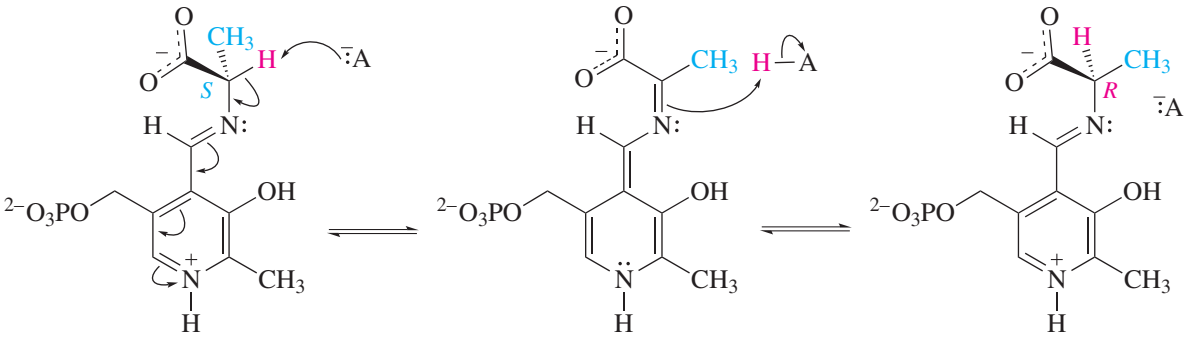


Figure 25.3

Tyrosine is the biosynthetic precursor to a number of neurotransmitters. Each transformation is enzyme-catalyzed.

Many of the drugs prescribed to treat anxiety, depression, or attention deficit disorder are "reuptake" inhibitors. They increase the concentration in the brain of a necessary neurotransmitter such as dopamine or epinephrine by slowing the rate at which it is reabsorbed.

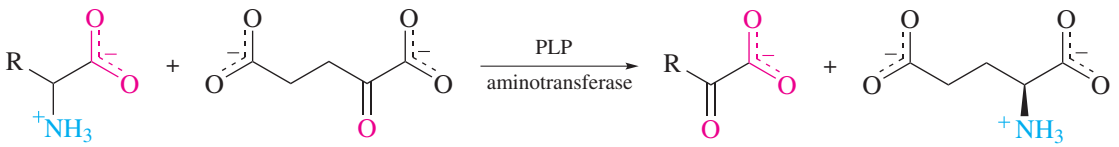
Pyridoxal 5′-phosphate is also a coenzyme for the enzyme-catalyzed racemization of amino acids. The key reaction is proton abstraction from the α carbon of the amino acid imine of PLP. This step converts the α carbon, which is a chirality center, from sp^3 to sp^2.



PLP-imine of L-alanine | Achiral intermediate | PLP-imine of D-alanine

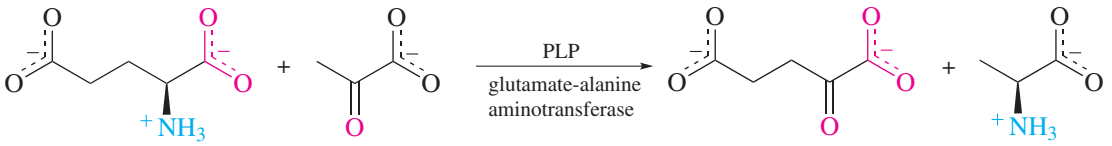
Proton transfer to the imine carbon of the achiral intermediate gives equal amounts of both enantiomers of the PLP imine. The equation illustrates the racemization of L-alanine, which is catalyzed by the PLP-dependent enzyme *alanine racemase.* Because D-alanine is an essential component of bacterial cell walls, there is considerable interest in designing inhibitors of alanine racemase as potential antibacterial drugs.

In addition to amino acid decarboxylation and racemization, PLP is a coenzyme for **transamination**—the transfer of an amino group from one compound to another. The enzymes that catalyze transaminations are called *aminotransferases* or *transaminases.* Many transaminations involve two compounds: α-ketoglutaric acid and L-glutamic acid—one as a reactant, the other as its product.



Amino acid | α-Ketoglutaric acid | α-Keto acid | L-Glutamic acid

The reaction shown illustrates a feature of amino acid metabolism, the breaking down of amino acids and using their structural units for other purposes. Written in the other direction, it illustrates a biosynthetic pathway to amino acids. L-Alanine, for example, is not an essential amino acid because we have the capacity to biosynthesize it. One biosynthetic route to L-alanine is the transamination of pyruvic acid.



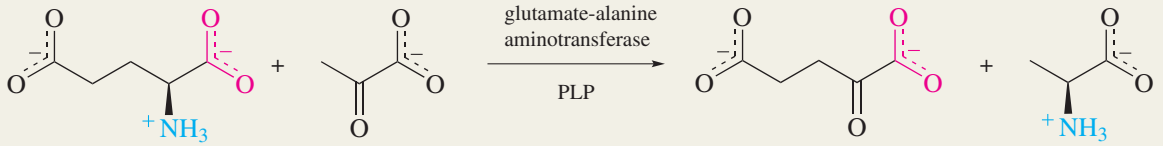
L-Glutamic acid | Pyruvic acid | α-Ketoglutaric acid | L-Alanine

As outlined in the first four stages of Mechanism 25.2, the amino group of L-glutamic acid is transferred to the coenzyme PLP to give pyridoxamine 5′-phosphate (PMP). A second transamination shown in abbreviated form as stage 5, is analogous to the first and gives L-alanine.

Mechanism 25.2

Transamination: Biosynthesis of L-Alanine from L-Glutamic Acid and Pyruvic Acid

THE OVERALL REACTION:

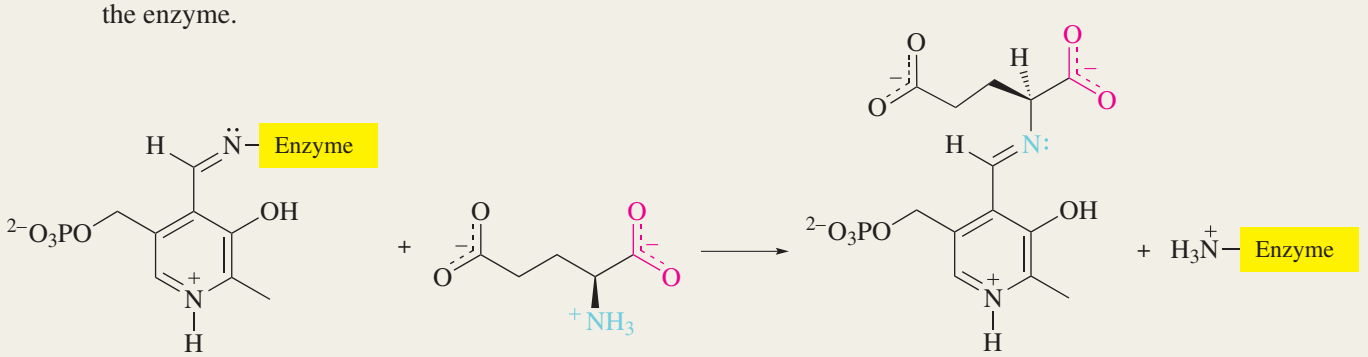


L-Glutamic acid + Pyruvic acid → α-Ketoglutaric acid + L-Alanine

THE MECHANISM:

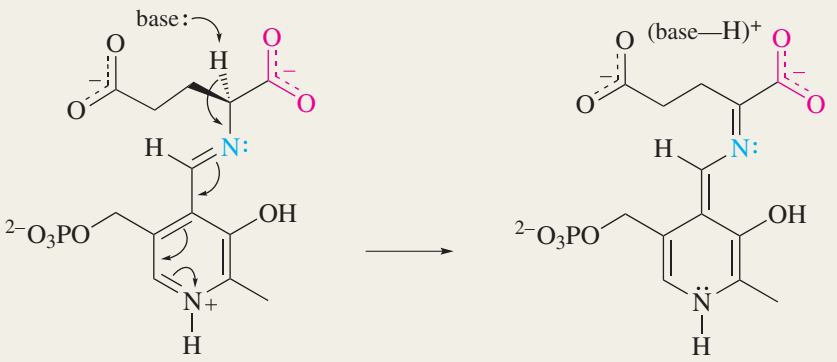
Each stage can involve more than one elementary step, and each reaction is enzyme-catalyzed. Stages 1–4 show the transfer of the amino group of L-glutamic acid to pyridoxal 5′-phosphate to give α-ketoglutaric acid and pyridoxamine 5′-phosphate (PMP). PMP reacts with pyruvic acid to give an imine, which then follows stages analogous to 1–4, but in reverse order, to give L-alanine and PLP. These stages are summarized as stage 5.

Stage 1: L-Glutamic acid forms an imine bond to the coenzyme PLP by reaction with the imine formed between PLP and the enzyme.



Enzyme-bound PLP + L-Glutamic acid → PLP-glutamic acid imine + Enzyme

Stage 2: The electron-withdrawing effect of the pyridinium ring stabilizes the conjugate base formed by proton abstraction from the α carbon of the imine.



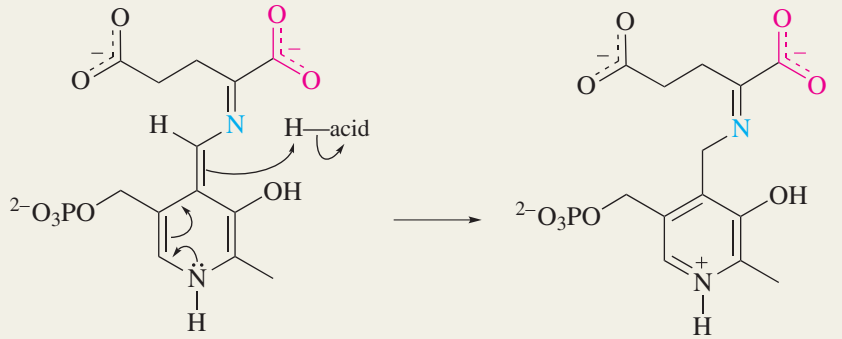
PLP-glutamic acid imine → Conjugate base of PLP-glutamic acid imine

continued

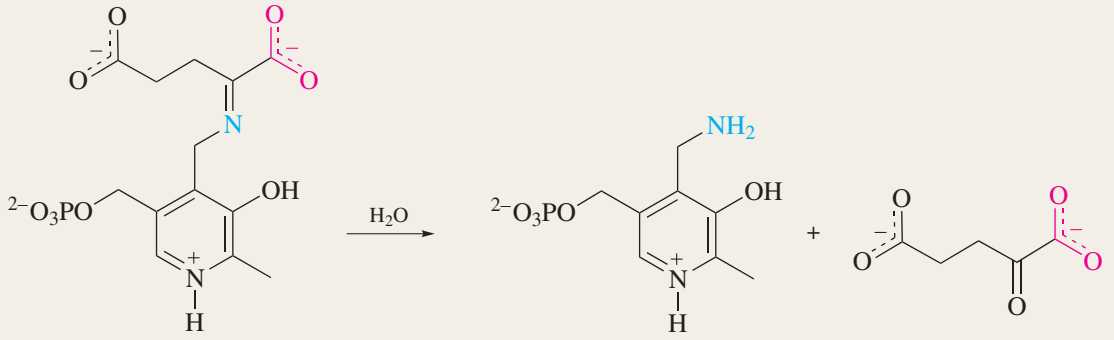
Mechanism 25.2

Transamination: Biosynthesis of L-Alanine from L-Glutamic Acid and Pyruvic Acid *continued*

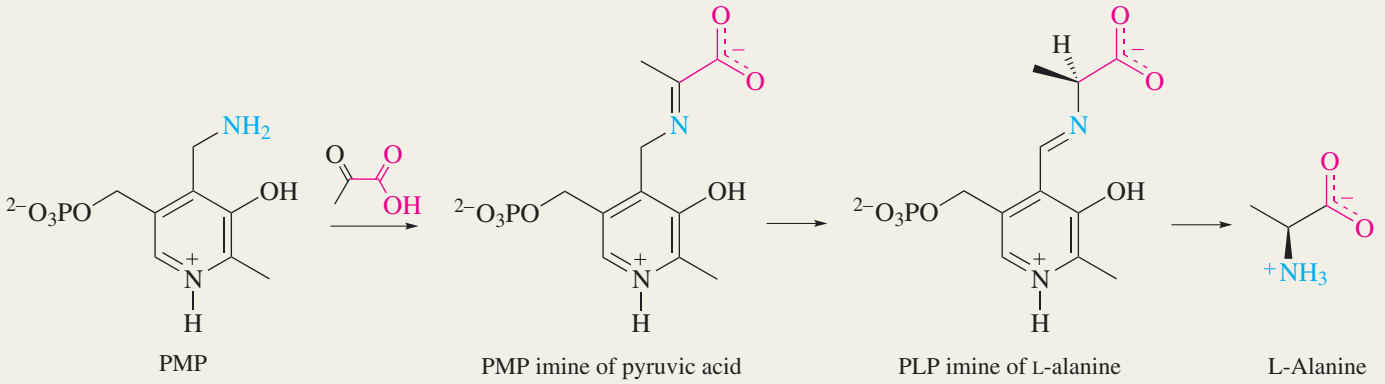
Stage 3: Electron reorganization and protonation of carbon restores the aromaticity of the pyridine ring while converting a PLP imine to a PMP imine.



Stage 4: Cleavage of the PMP imine, shown here as a hydrolysis, gives pyridoxamine and α-ketoglutaric acid.



Stage 5: Formation of the imine from PMP and pyruvic acid sets the stage for the conversion of pyruvic acid to L-alanine.

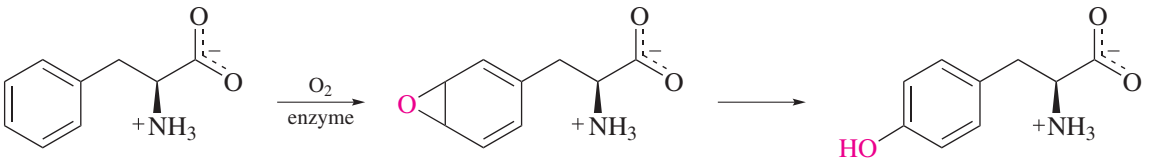


Problem 25.12

α-Ketoglutaric acid undergoes a transamination reaction with L-aspartic acid (see Table 25.1), converting it to a compound known as oxaloacetic acid. What is the structure of oxaloacetic acid?

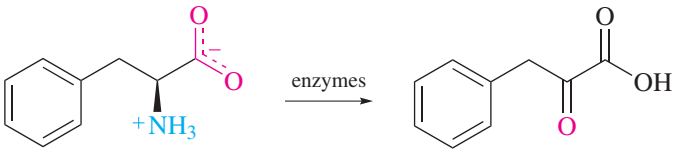
Peptide-bond formation and transamination are the most general reactions of the standard amino acids, but individual amino acids often undergo reactions of more limited scope. One of the biosynthetic pathways to L-tyrosine is oxidation of L-phenylalanine. An *arene oxide* is an intermediate.

For more on this reaction, see Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 16: Epoxide Rearrangements and the NIH Shift.



L-Phenylalanine Arene oxide intermediate L-Tyrosine

Some individuals lack the enzyme *phenylalanine hydroxylase* required for this conversion, and any L-phenylalanine that would ordinarily be converted to L-tyrosine is converted to phenylpyruvic acid by transamination.



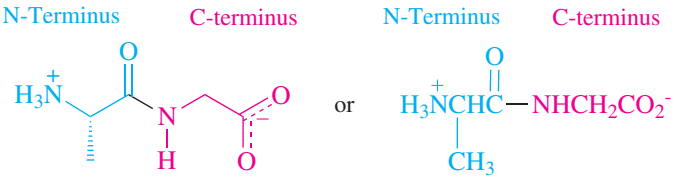
L-Phenylalanine Phenylpyruvic acid

Too much phenylpyruvic acid causes *phenylketonuria* (PKU disease), which can lead to mental retardation in growing children. Infants are routinely screened for PKU disease within a few days of birth. PKU disease cannot be cured, but is controlled by restricting the dietary intake of foods, such as meat, that are rich in L-phenylalanine.

25.7 Peptides

A key biochemical reaction of amino acids is their conversion to peptides, polypeptides, and proteins. In all these substances amino acids are linked together by amide bonds. The amide bond between the amino group of one amino acid and the carboxyl of another is called a **peptide bond.** Alanylglycine is a representative dipeptide.

It is understood that α-amino acids occur as their L stereoisomers unless otherwise indicated. The D notation is explicitly shown when a D amino acid is present, and a racemic amino acid is identified by the prefix DL.



Alanylglycine
(Ala-Gly or AG)

By agreement, peptide structures are written so that the amino group (as $H_3\overset{+}{N}$— or H_2N—) is at the left and the carboxyl group (as CO_2^- or CO_2H) is at the right. The left and right ends of the peptide are referred to as the **N terminus** (or amino terminus) and the **C terminus** (or carboxyl terminus), respectively. Alanine is the N-terminal amino acid in alanylglycine; glycine is the C-terminal amino acid. A dipeptide is named as an

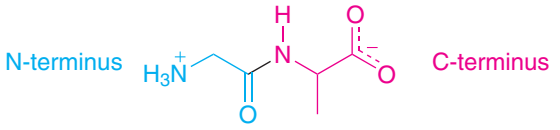
acyl derivative of the C-terminal amino acid. The precise order of bonding in a peptide (its amino acid *sequence*) is conveniently specified by using the three-letter amino acid abbreviations for the respective amino acids and connecting them by hyphens. One-letter abbreviations are used without punctuation. Individual amino acid components of peptides are often referred to as **amino acid residues.**

Problem 25.13

Write structural formulas showing the constitution of each of the following dipeptides. Rewrite each sequence using one-letter abbreviations for the amino acids.

(a) Gly-Ala
(b) Ala-Phe
(c) Phe-Ala
(d) Gly-Glu
(e) Lys-Gly
(f) D-Ala-D-Ala

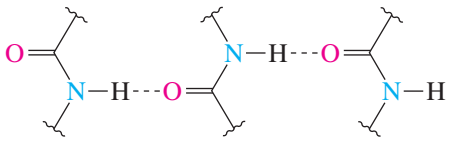
Sample Solution (a) Glycine is the N-terminal amino acid in Gly-Ala; alanine is the C-terminal amino acid.



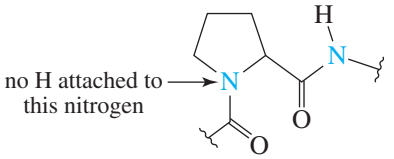
Glycylalanine (GA)

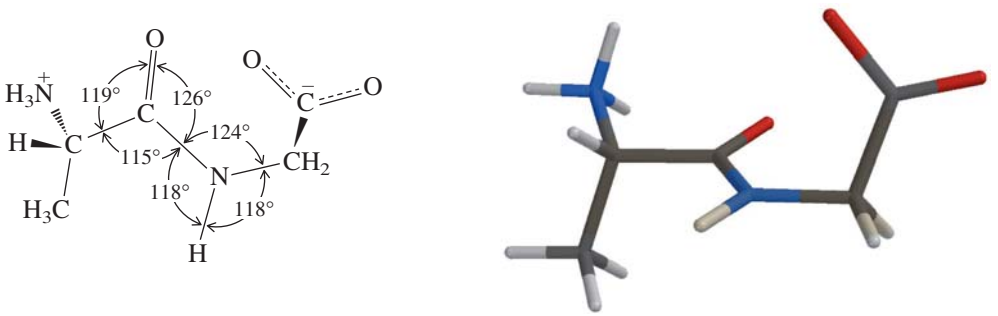
Figure 25.4 shows the structure of Ala-Gly as determined by X-ray crystallography. An important feature is the planar geometry of the peptide bond, and the most stable conformation with respect to this bond has the two α-carbon atoms anti to each other. Rotation about the amide bond is slow because delocalization of the unshared electron pair of nitrogen into the carbonyl group gives partial double-bond character to the carbon–nitrogen bond.

In addition to its planar geometry, the amide bond affects the structure of peptides in another important way. The N—H and the C═O units are candidates for hydrogen bonding with other peptide linkages both within the same and with adjacent polypeptide chains.



As the only secondary amine among the standard amino acids, L-proline is an exception in that its amides lack an N—H bond.





(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 25.4

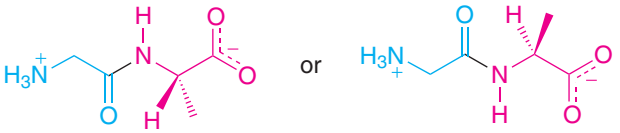
Structural features of the dipeptide L-alanylglycine as determined by X-ray crystallography. All of the bonds of the peptide linkage lie in the same plane and both α carbons are anti to each other.

This structural feature of L-proline affects the three-dimensional shape of peptides that contain it by limiting the number of hydrogen-bonding opportunities.

Problem 25.14

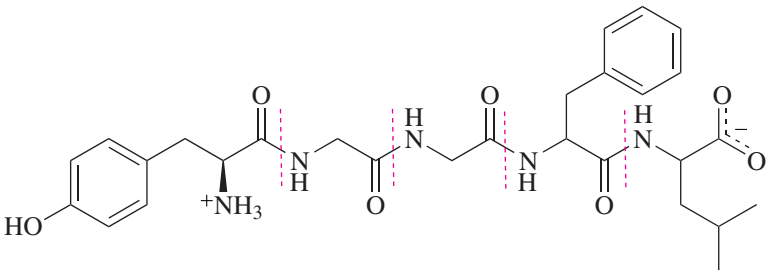
Expand your answer to Problem 25.13 by showing the structural formula for each dipeptide in a manner that reveals the stereochemistry at the α-carbon atom. Assume that each chirality center is L.

Sample Solution (a) Glycine is achiral, and so Gly-Ala has only one chirality center, the α-carbon atom of the L-alanine residue. When the carbon chain is drawn in an extended zigzag fashion and L-alanine is the C terminus, its structure is as shown:



Glycylalanine (GA)

The structures of higher peptides are extensions of the structural features of dipeptides. The neurotransmitter *leucine enkephalin,* for example, has the structure:



Tyr Gly Gly Phe Leu

Enkephalins are pentapeptide components of *endorphins,* polypeptides present in the brain that act as the body's own painkillers.

Problem 25.15

Methionine enkephalin has the same structure as leucine enkephalin except its C-terminal amino acid is methionine instead of leucine. Using one-letter abbreviations for the amino acids, what is the amino acid sequence of methionine enkephalin?

Peptides having structures slightly different from those described to this point are known. One such variation is seen in the nonapeptide *oxytocin,* shown in Figure 25.5. Oxytocin is a

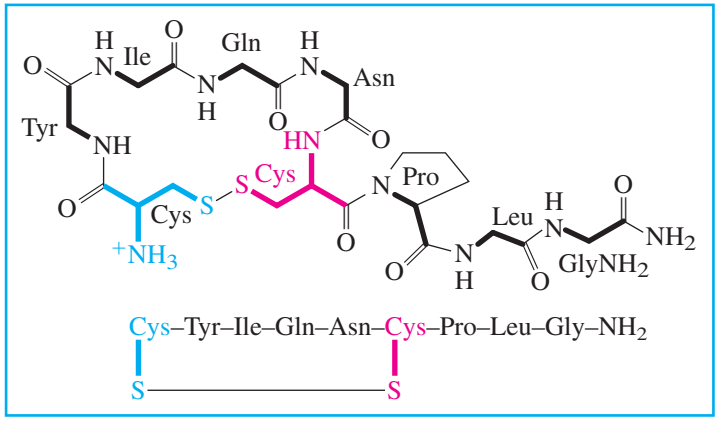


Figure 25.5

The connectivity of oxytocin with most of the side chains omitted for clarity. A disulfide bond connects the two cysteines. The cysteine shown in blue is the N-terminal amino acid; the one in red is the fourth amino acid beginning at the C-terminus. The C-terminus is the amide of glycine.

hormone secreted by the pituitary gland that stimulates uterine contractions during childbirth and promotes lactation. Rather than terminating in a carboxyl group, the C-terminal glycine residue in oxytocin has been modified to become its corresponding amide. Two cysteine units, one of them the N-terminal amino acid, are joined by the sulfur–sulfur bond of a large-ring cyclic disulfide unit. This is a common structural modification in polypeptides and proteins that contain cysteine residues. It provides a covalent bond between regions of peptide chains that may be many amino acid residues removed from each other.

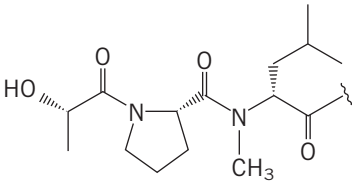
Recall from Section 15.12 that compounds of the type RSH are readily oxidized to RSSR.

Problem 25.16

What is the net charge of oxytocin at pH = 7?

Problem 25.17

A certain cyclic peptide bears a side chain that includes two amino acids resembling those in Table 25.1. Which two? How do they differ from those in the table?



25.8 Introduction to Peptide Structure Determination

There are several levels of peptide structure. The **primary structure** is the amino acid sequence plus any disulfide links. With the 20 amino acids of Table 25.1 as building blocks, 20^2 dipeptides, 20^3 tripeptides, 20^4 tetrapeptides, and so on, are possible. Given a peptide of unknown structure, how do we determine its amino acid sequence?

We'll describe peptide structure determination by first looking at one of the great achievements of biochemistry, the determination of the amino acid sequence of insulin by Frederick Sanger of Cambridge University (England). Sanger was awarded the 1958 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for this work, which he began in 1944 and completed 10 years later. The methods used by Sanger and his coworkers are, of course, dated by now, but the overall logic hasn't changed very much. We'll use Sanger's insulin strategy to orient us, then show how current methods of protein sequencing have evolved from it.

Sanger was a corecipient of a second Nobel Prize in 1980 for devising methods for sequencing nucleic acids. Sanger's strategy for nucleic acid sequencing will be described in Section 26.14.

Sanger's strategy can be outlined as follows:

1. Determine what amino acids are present and their molar ratios.
2. Cleave the peptide into smaller fragments, separate these fragments, and determine the amino acid composition of the fragments.
3. Identify the N-terminal and the C-terminal amino acid in the original peptide and in each fragment.
4. Organize the information so that the amino acid sequences of small fragments can be overlapped to reveal the full sequence.

25.9 Amino Acid Analysis

The chemistry behind amino acid analysis begins with acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of amide bonds. The peptide is hydrolyzed by heating in 6 M hydrochloric acid to give a solution that contains all of the amino acids. Analysis of the mixture in terms of its components and their relative amounts is typically done by chromatographic methods.

Moore and Stein shared one half of the 1972 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

These methods flow from the work of Stanford Moore and William H. Stein of Rockefeller University who developed automated techniques for separating and identifying

amino acids. In their original work, Moore and Stein used ion-exchange chromatography. Modern methods based on high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) are both faster and more selective for separating the individual amino acids in a mixture. Either before or after their separation, the amino acids are allowed to react ("tagged") with a substance that bears a group—a naphthalene ring, for example—that fluoresces. The fluorescence is strong enough so that modern analyzers can detect the amino acids obtained from 10^{-5} to 10^{-7}g of peptide.

Fluorescence is the emission of radiation by a substance after it has absorbed radiation of a higher frequency.

Problem 25.18

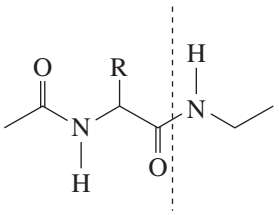
Amino acid analysis of a certain tetrapeptide gave alanine, glycine, phenylalanine, and valine in equimolar amounts. What amino acid sequences are possible for this tetrapeptide?

25.10 Partial Hydrolysis and End Group Analysis

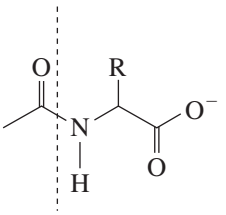
Whereas acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of peptides cleaves amide bonds indiscriminately and eventually breaks all of them, enzymatic hydrolysis is much more selective and is the method used to convert a peptide into smaller fragments.

The enzymes that catalyze the hydrolysis of peptide bonds are called **peptidases.** *Trypsin,* a digestive enzyme present in the intestine, catalyzes only the hydrolysis of peptide bonds involving the carboxyl group of a lysine or arginine residue. *Chymotrypsin,* another digestive enzyme, is selective for peptide bonds involving the carboxyl group of amino acids with aromatic side chains (phenylalanine, tyrosine, tryptophan). One group of pancreatic enzymes, known as *carboxypeptidases,* catalyzes only the hydrolysis of the peptide bond to the C-terminal amino acid. In addition to these, many other digestive enzymes are known and their selectivity exploited in the selective hydrolysis of peptides.

Papain, the active component of most meat tenderizers, is a peptidase.



Trypsin cleaves here when
R = side chain of lysine or arginine



Carboxypeptidase cleaves the peptide bond of the C-terminal amino acid

Chymotrypsin cleaves here when
R = side chain of phenylalanine, tyrosine, or tryptophan

Problem 25.19

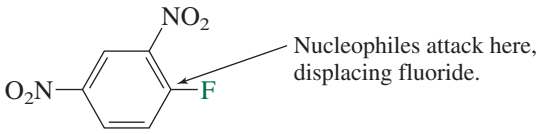
Digestion of the tetrapeptide of Problem 25.18 with chymotrypsin gave a dipeptide that on amino acid analysis gave phenylalanine and valine in equimolar amounts. What amino acid sequences are possible for the tetrapeptide?

An amino acid sequence is ambiguous unless we know the direction in which to read it—left to right, or right to left. We need to know which end is the N terminus and which is the C terminus. As we've just seen, carboxypeptidase-catalyzed hydrolysis cleaves the C-terminal amino acid and so can be used to identify it. What about the N terminus?

Several chemical methods take advantage of the fact that the N-terminal amino group can act as a nucleophile. The α-amino groups of all the other amino acids are part of amide linkages and are much less nucleophilic. Sanger's method for N-terminal residue analysis

involves treating a peptide with 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene, which is very reactive toward nucleophilic aromatic substitution (see Chapter 12).

1-Fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene is commonly referred to as *Sanger's reagent*.



1-Fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene

The amino group of the N-terminal amino acid displaces fluoride from 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene and gives a peptide in which the N-terminus is labeled with a 2,4-dinitrophenyl (DNP) group. This is shown for the case of Val-Phe-Gly-Ala in Figure 25.6. The 2,4-dinitrophenyl-labeled peptide DNP-Val-Phe-Gly-Ala is isolated and subjected to hydrolysis, after which the 2,4-dinitrophenyl derivative of the N-terminal amino acid is isolated and identified as DNP-Val by comparing its chromatographic behavior with that of standard samples of DNP-labeled amino acids. None of the other amino acid residues bear a 2,4-dinitrophenyl group; they appear in the hydrolysis product as the free amino acids.

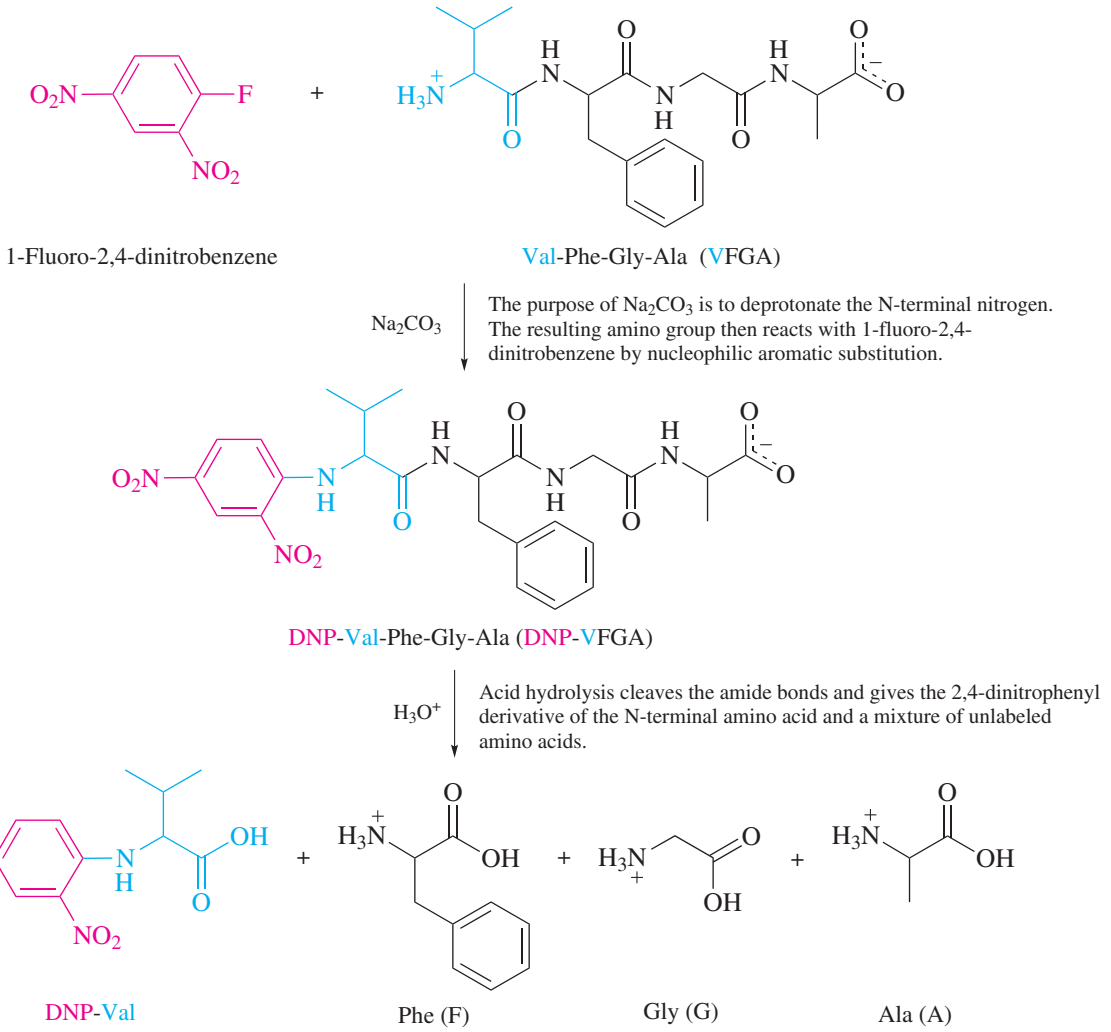


Figure 25.6

Use of 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene to identify the N-terminal amino acid of a peptide.

Labeling the N-terminal amino acid as its DNP derivative is mainly of historical interest and has been replaced by other methods. We'll discuss one of these—the Edman degradation—in Section 25.12. First, though, we'll complete our review of the general strategy for peptide sequencing by seeing how Sanger tied all of the information together into a structure for insulin.

25.11 Insulin

Sanger worked with insulin from cows, which has 51 amino acids, divided between two chains. One of these, the A chain, has 21 amino acids; the other, the B chain, has 30. The A and B chains are joined by disulfide bonds between cysteine residues (Cys-Cys). Figure 25.7 shows some of the information that defines the amino acid sequence of the B chain.

- Reaction of the B chain peptide with 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene established that phenylalanine is the N terminus.
- Pepsin-catalyzed hydrolysis gave the four peptides shown in blue in Figure 25.7. (Their sequences were determined in separate experiments.) These four peptides contain 27 of the 30 amino acids in the B chain, but there are no points of overlap between them.
- The sequences of the four tetrapeptides shown in red in Figure 25.7 bridge the gaps between three of the four "blue" peptides to give an unbroken sequence from 1 through 24.
- The peptide shown in green was isolated by trypsin-catalyzed hydrolysis and has an amino acid sequence that completes the remaining overlaps.

The collection of sequenced fragments constitutes the **peptide map** for insulin.

Sanger also determined the sequence of the A chain and identified the cysteine residues involved in disulfide bonds between the A and B chains as well as in the disulfide

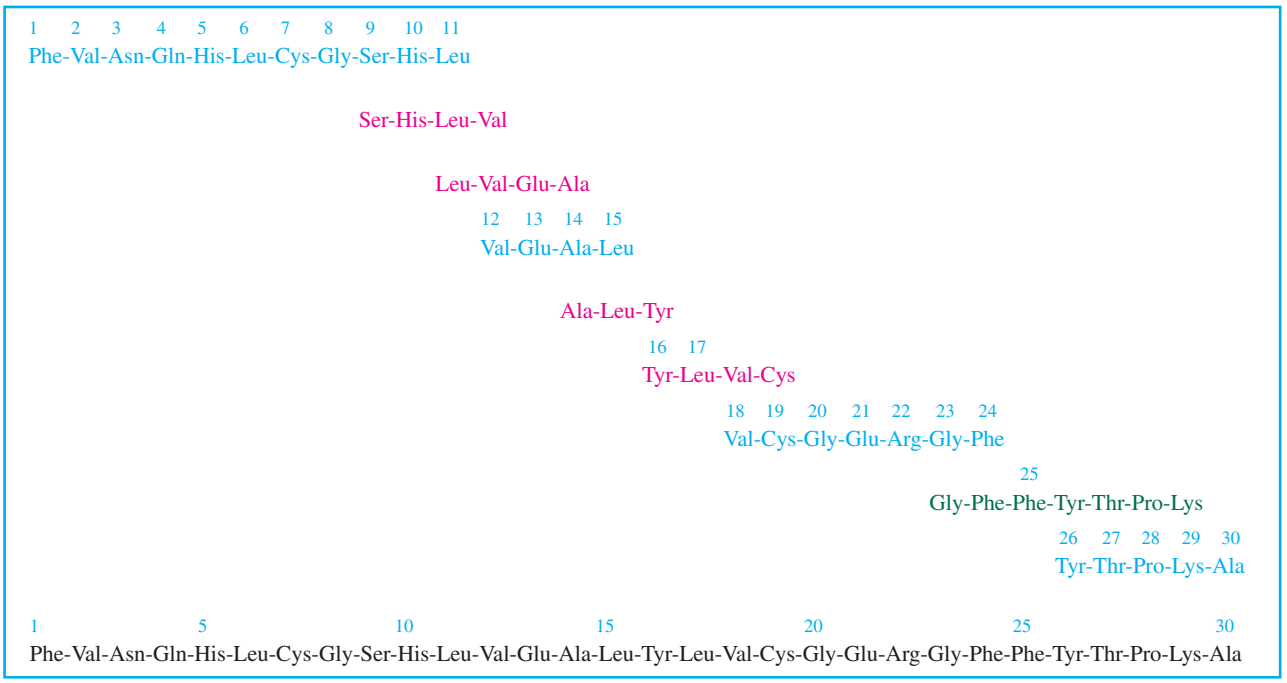
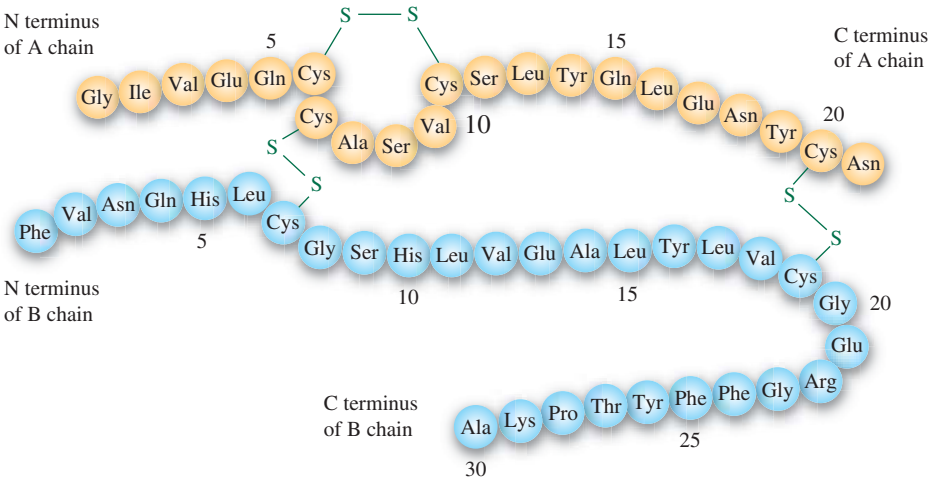


Figure 25.7

Diagram showing how the amino acid sequence of the B chain of bovine insulin can be determined by overlap of peptide fragments. Pepsin-catalyzed hydrolysis produced the fragments shown in blue, trypsin produced the one shown in green, and acid-catalyzed hydrolysis gave many fragments, including the four shown in red. Using one-letter abbreviations, the amino acid sequence is FVNQHLCGSHLVEALYLVCGERGFFYTPKA.

Figure 25.8

The amino acid sequence in bovine insulin. The A chain is joined to the B chain by two disulfide units (shown in green). There is also a disulfide bond linking cysteines 6 and 11 in the A chain. Human insulin has threonine and isoleucine at residues 8 and 10, respectively, in the A′ chain and threonine as the C-terminal amino acid in the B chain.



linkage within the A chain. The complete insulin structure is shown in Figure 25.8. The structure shown is that of bovine insulin. The A chains of human insulin and bovine insulin differ in only two amino acid residues; their B chains are identical except for the amino acid at the C terminus.

25.12 Edman Degradation and Automated Sequencing of Peptides

When Sanger's method for N-terminal residue analysis was discussed, you may have wondered why it was not done sequentially. Simply start at the N terminus and work steadily back to the C terminus identifying one amino acid after another. The idea is fine, but it just doesn't work well in practice, at least with 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene.

A major advance was devised by Pehr Edman (University of Lund, Sweden) that became the standard method for N-terminal residue analysis. The **Edman degradation** is based on the chemistry shown in Mechanism 25.3. A peptide reacts with phenyl isothiocyanate to give a *phenylthiocarbamoyl* (PTC) derivative, as shown in the first step. This PTC derivative is then treated with an acid in an *anhydrous* medium (Edman used nitromethane saturated with hydrogen chloride) to cleave the amide bond between the N-terminal amino acid and the remainder of the peptide. No other peptide bonds are cleaved in this step as amide bond hydrolysis requires water. When the PTC derivative is treated with acid in an anhydrous medium, the sulfur atom of the C═S unit acts as an internal nucleophile, and the only amide bond cleaved under these conditions is the one to the N-terminal amino acid. The product of this cleavage, called a *thiazolone,* is unstable under the conditions of its formation and rearranges to a *phenylthiohydantoin* (PTH), which is isolated and identified by comparing it with standard samples of PTH derivatives of known amino acids. This is normally done by chromatographic methods, but mass spectrometry has also been used.

Only the N-terminal amide bond is broken in the Edman degradation; the rest of the peptide chain remains intact. It can be isolated and subjected to a second Edman procedure to determine its new N terminus. We can proceed along a peptide chain by beginning with the N terminus and determining each amino acid in order. The sequence is given directly by the structure of the PTH derivative formed in each successive degradation.

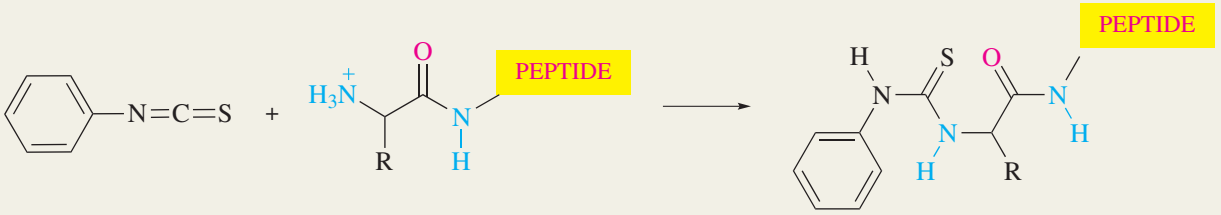
Problem 25.20

Give the structure of the PTH derivative isolated in the second Edman cycle of the tetrapeptide Val-Phe-Gly-Ala.

Mechanism 25.3

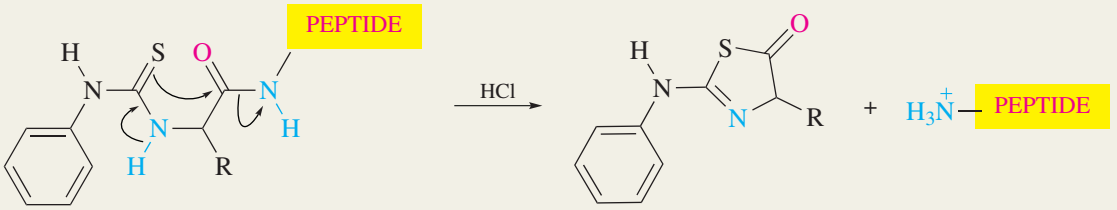
The Edman Degradation

Step 1: A peptide is treated with phenyl isothiocyanate to give a phenylthiocarbamoyl (PTC) derivative.



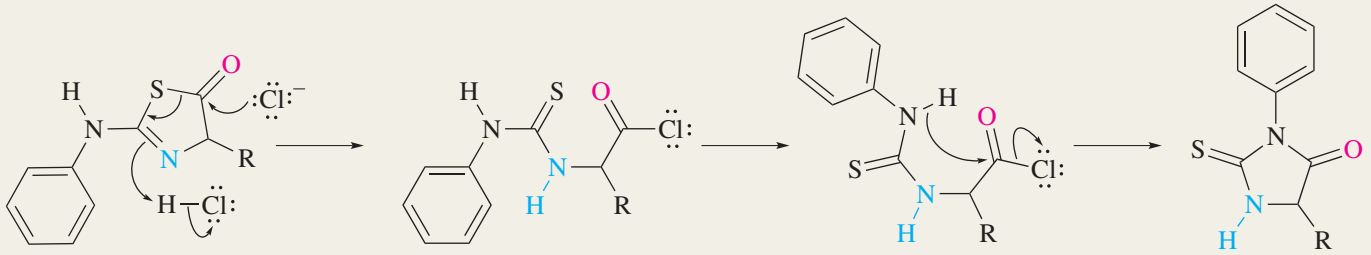
Phenyl isothiocyanate PTC derivative

Step 2: On reaction with hydrogen chloride in an anhydrous solvent, the thiocarbonyl sulfur of the PTC derivative attacks the carbonyl carbon of the N-terminal amino acid. The N-terminal amino acid is cleaved as a thiazolone derivative from the remainder of the molecule.



PTC derivative Thiazolone Remainder of peptide

Step 3: Once formed, the thiazolone derivative isomerizes to a more stable phenylthiohydantoin (PTH) derivative, which is isolated and characterized, thereby providing identification of the N-terminal amino acid. The remainder of the peptide (formed in step 2) can be isolated and subjected to a second Edman degradation.



Thiazolone PTH derivative

Ideally, one could determine the primary structure of even the largest protein by repeating the Edman procedure. Because anything less than 100% conversion in any single Edman degradation gives a mixture containing some of the original peptide along with the degraded one, two different PTH derivatives are formed in the next Edman cycle, and the ideal is not realized in practice. However, it is a fairly routine matter to sequence the first 20 amino acids from the N terminus by repetitive Edman cycles, and even 60 residues have been determined on a single sample of the protein myoglobin. The entire procedure has been automated and incorporated into a device called an *Edman sequenator.* The amount of sample required is quite small; as little as 10^{-10} mol is typical.

So many peptides and proteins have been sequenced now that it is impossible to give an accurate count. What was Nobel Prize-winning work in 1958 is routine today. Nor has the story ended. Sequencing of *nucleic acids* has advanced so dramatically that it is possible to clone the gene that codes for a particular protein, sequence its DNA, and deduce the structure of the protein from the nucleotide sequence of the DNA. We'll have more to say about DNA sequencing in the next chapter.

Peptide Mapping and MALDI Mass Spectrometry

Biological materials often contain proteins that must be identified. Recent advances in mass spectrometry have made peptide mapping a convenient tool for this purpose. The protein in question is selectively hydrolyzed with a peptidase such as trypsin and the mixture of peptides produced is analyzed by *matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization* (MALDI) as illustrated in Figure 25.9.

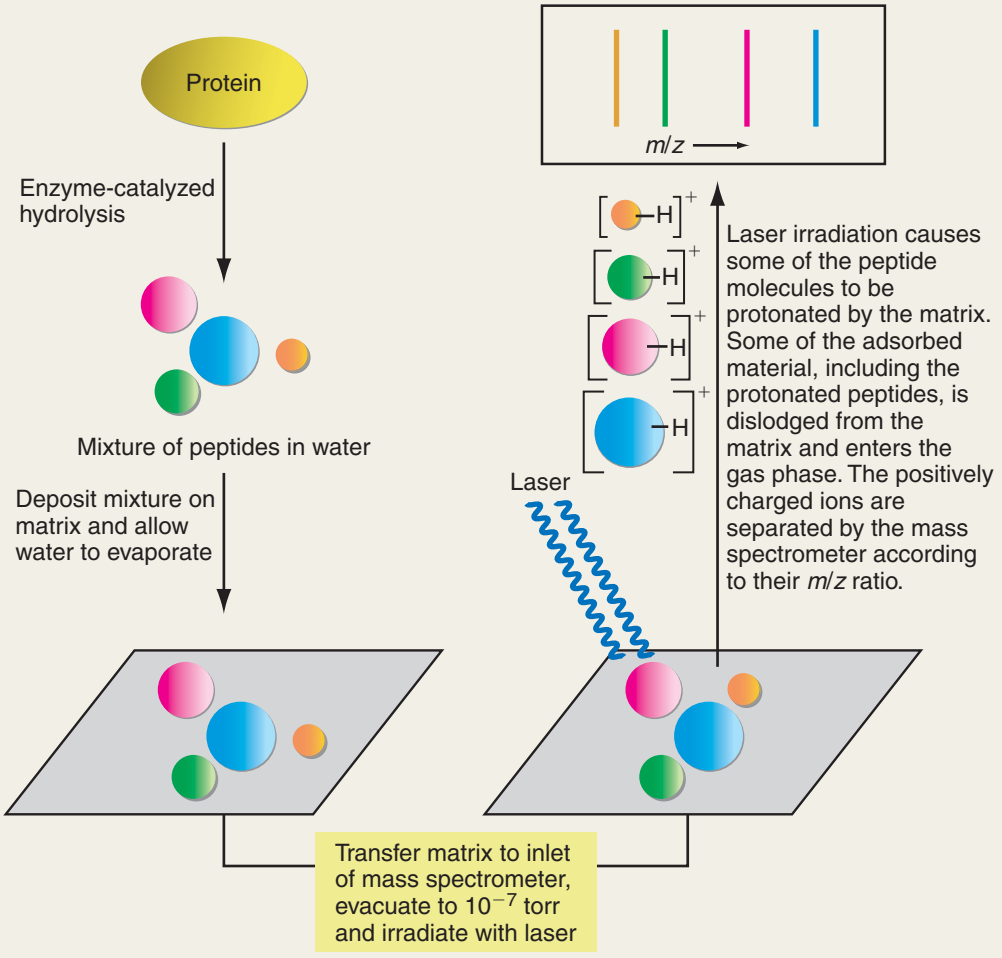
MALDI offers two main advantages over traditional mass spectrometric methods.

1. Substances, such as peptides, that lack sufficient volatility to be vaporized for analysis by conventional mass spectrometry can be vaporized by MALDI.
2. The species analyzed by the mass spectrometer is the conjugate acid of a peptide (peptide + H^+). Unlike the highly energetic ions generated by electron impact (see Section 13.24), the cations produced by MALDI have little tendency to fragment. Consequently, a mixture of peptide fragments gives a mass spectrum dominated by peaks with *m/z* values corresponding to those of the individual protonated peptides.

With the aid of freely available Internet tools and databases, the MALDI data set is compared with known proteins to generate a list of potential matches. The analyst inputs the peptidase used to digest the original protein and the *m/z* values of the peptides displayed in the MALDI spectrum. As specified by the search criteria, the search delivers (in a matter seconds!) a list of peptide sequences and the proteins these sequences contain. Next, a different peptidase is used to hydrolyze the protein, to provide a second set of peptides that are also analyzed by MALDI and matched against the database. MALDI mass spectrometry compares the amino acid *composition* of unsequenced peptides with the amino acid *sequence* of known proteins in order to identify an unknown protein. The procedure is repeated until the list of potential matches is narrowed to a single known protein, additional data are needed, or it becomes likely that the protein is new.

Figure 25.9

The molecular weights of all of the peptides in a mixture obtained by the enzyme-catalyzed hydrolysis of a protein are determined simultaneously by mass spectrometry using matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI).



Problem 25.21

Which two of the standard amino acids cannot be differentiated on the basis of their *m/z* ratio?

25.13 The Strategy of Peptide Synthesis

One way to confirm the structure proposed for a peptide is to synthesize a peptide having a specific sequence of amino acids and compare the two. This was done, for example, in the case of *bradykinin,* a peptide present in blood that acts to lower blood pressure. Excess bradykinin, formed as a response to the sting of wasps and other insects containing substances in their venom that stimulate bradykinin release, causes severe local pain. Bradykinin was originally believed to be an octapeptide containing two proline residues; however, a nonapeptide containing three prolines in the following sequence was synthesized and determined to be identical with natural bradykinin in every respect, including biological activity:

Arg-Pro-Pro-Gly-Phe-Ser-Pro-Phe-Arg or RPPGFSPFR

Bradykinin

A reevaluation of the original sequence data established that natural bradykinin was indeed the nonapeptide shown. Here the synthesis of a peptide did more than confirm structure; synthesis was instrumental in determining structure.

The synthesis of peptides is an important area of drug development. For many years, the high cost of peptide synthesis and the rapid degradation of peptides when administered in the body hampered the progress of peptide drug discovery. Recent advances in peptide manufacturing and drug delivery have increased the use of peptide-based pharmaceuticals. Two of the most prominent peptide drugs are insulin and calcitonin.

A promising method of drug delivery uses liposomes (see Section 24.4).

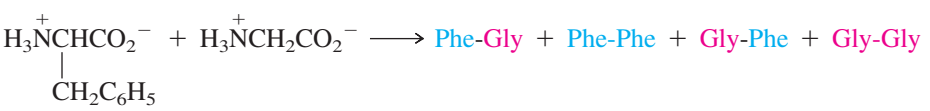
The insulin required for the treatment of diabetes used to be obtained by extraction from the pancreas glands of cows and pigs. Since the early 1980s, this "natural" insulin has been replaced by "synthetic" human insulin prepared by recombinant DNA technology (see Section 26.17). Synthetic insulin is not only identical to human insulin, it is both safer and less expensive than insulin obtained from animals. A somewhat smaller polypeptide, *calcitonin* with 32 amino acids, is prepared by more traditional methods of synthetic organic chemistry. Synthetic calcitonin is identical to that obtained from salmon and is widely used for the treatment of osteoporosis. How calcitonin acts remains uncertain, but one possibility is that it maintains bone mass, not by increasing the rate of bone growth, but by decreasing the rate of bone loss.

Other than the biochemical methods typified by the synthesis of insulin, there are two major approaches to peptide synthesis:

1. Solution phase
2. Solid phase

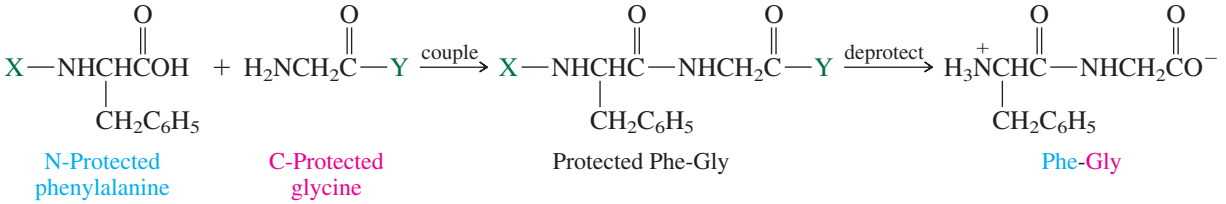
Although the two approaches differ in respect to the phase in which the synthesis is carried out, the overall strategy is the same in both.

The objective in peptide synthesis may be simply stated: to connect amino acids in a prescribed sequence by amide bond formation between them. A number of very effective methods and reagents have been designed for peptide bond formation, so that the joining together of amino acids by amide linkages is not difficult. The real difficulty lies in ensuring that the correct sequence is obtained. This can be illustrated by considering the synthesis of a representative dipeptide, Phe-Gly. Random peptide bond formation in a mixture containing phenylalanine and glycine would be expected to lead to four dipeptides:



To direct the synthesis so that only Phe-Gly is formed, the amino group of phenylalanine and the carboxyl group of glycine must be protected so that they cannot react under the conditions of peptide bond formation. We can represent the peptide bond formation

step by the following equation, where X and Y are amine- and carboxyl-protecting groups, respectively:



N-Protected phenylalanine | C-Protected glycine | Protected Phe-Gly | Phe-Gly

Thus, the synthesis of a dipeptide of prescribed sequence requires at least three operations:

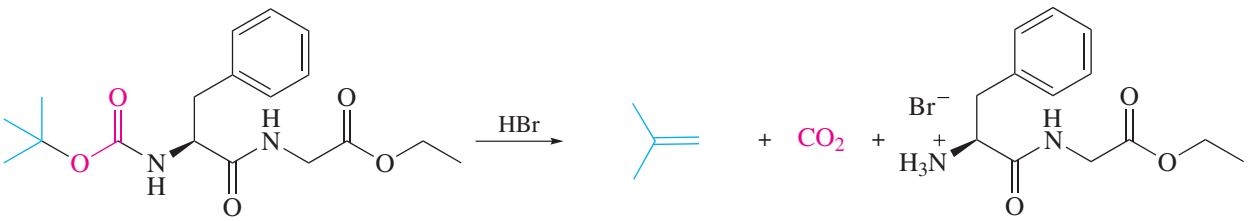
1. *Protect* the amino group of the N-terminal amino acid and the carboxyl group of the C-terminal amino acid.
2. *Couple* the two protected amino acids by amide bond formation between them.
3. *Deprotect* the amino group at the N terminus and the carboxyl group at the C terminus.

Higher peptides are prepared in an analogous way by a direct extension of the logic just outlined for the synthesis of dipeptides.

Sections 25.14 and 25.15 describe the chemistry associated with the protection and deprotection of amino and carboxyl functions, along with methods for peptide bond formation. The focus in those sections is on solution-phase peptide synthesis. Section 25.16 shows how these methods are adapted to solid-phase synthesis.

25.14 Amino and Carboxyl Group Protection and Deprotection

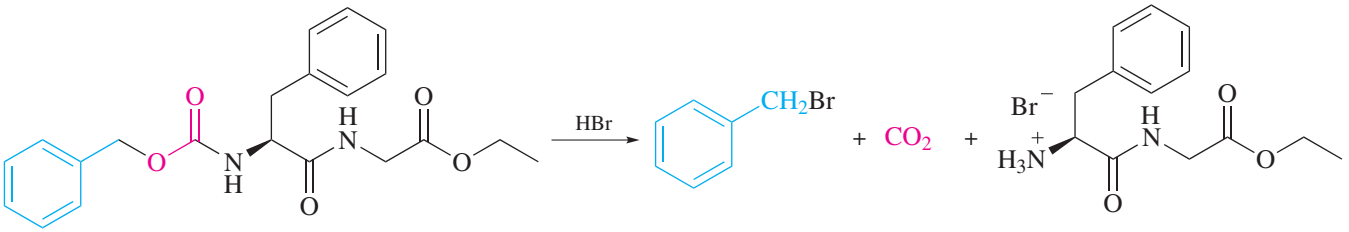
Amino groups are normally protected as their *tert*-butoxycarbonyl (Boc), carbobenzoxycarbonyl (Z), or 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl (Fmoc) derivative prepared as described in section 25.5. The Boc group may be removed by treatment with hydrogen bromide. Other acidic reagents such as trifluoroacetic acid may also be used.



N-tert-Butoxycarbonylphenylalanylglycine ethyl ester | 2-Methylpropene | Carbon dioxide | Phenylalanylglycine ethyl ester hydrobromide (86%)

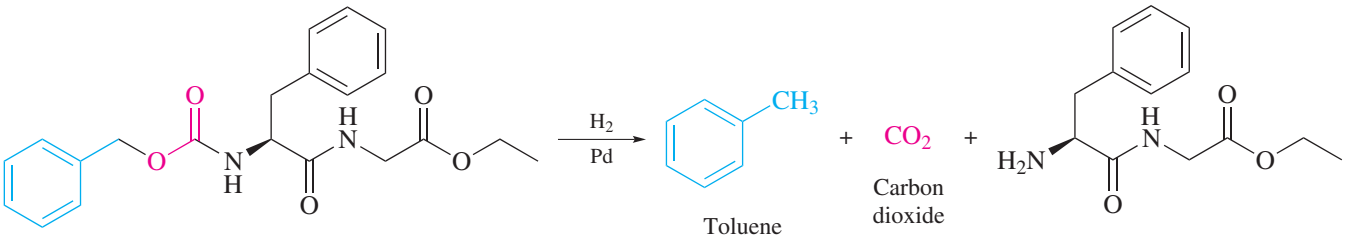
The *tert*-butyl group is cleaved as *tert*-butyl carbocation which, on deprotonation, gives 2-methylpropene.

Like the Boc protecting group, benzyloxycarbonyl can be removed by treatment with hydrogen bromide; its derived product is benzyl bromide.



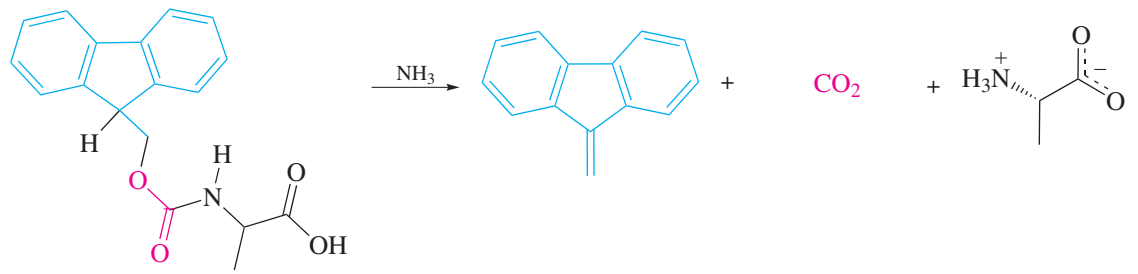
N-Benzyloxycarbonylphenylalanylglycine ethyl ester | Benzyl bromide | Carbon dioxide | Phenylalanylglycine ethyl ester hydrobromide (82%)

Unlike Boc, however, benzyloxylcarbonyl can also be removed by *hydrogenolysis* in the presence of palladium. In this case, the derived product is toluene.



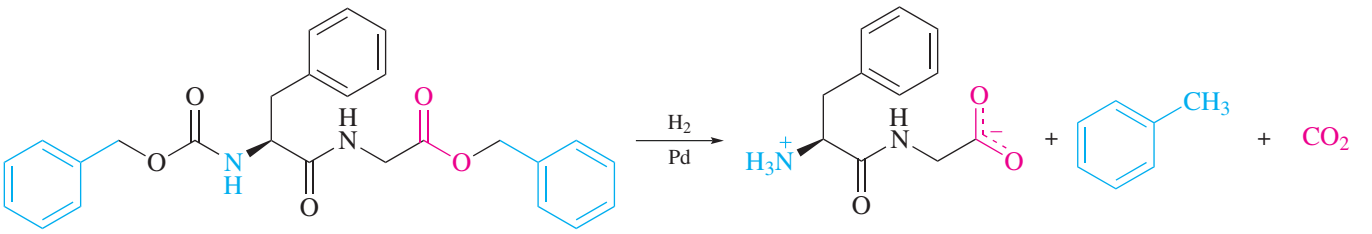
N-Benzyloxycarbonylphenylalanylglycine ethyl ester — Toluene — Phenylalanylglycine ethyl ester (100%)

9-Fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl (Fmoc) differs from benzyloxycarbonyl and Boc in that it is removable by treatment with bases such as ammonia.



9-Fluorenylmethoxycarbonylalanine — Dibenzofulvene — Carbon dioxide — Alanine (100%)

Carboxyl groups are normally protected as esters. Methyl and ethyl esters are prepared by Fischer esterification and removed by hydrolysis in base. Benzyl esters are a popular choice because a synthetic peptide, protected at its N terminus with a Z group and at its C terminus as a benzyl ester, can be completely deprotected in a single operation by hydrogenolysis.



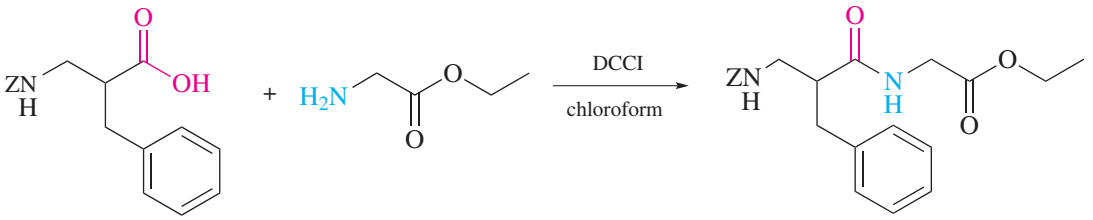
N-Benzyloxycarbonylphenylalanylglycine benzyl ester — Phenylalanylglycine (87%) — Toluene — Carbon dioxide

Several of the amino acids listed in Table 25.1 bear side-chain functional groups, which must also be protected during peptide synthesis. In most cases, protecting groups are available that can be removed by hydrogenolysis.

25.15 Peptide Bond Formation

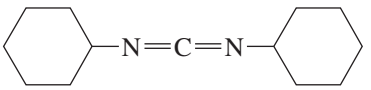
To form a peptide bond between two suitably protected amino acids, the free carboxyl group of one of them must be *activated* so that it is a reactive acylating agent. The most familiar acylating agents are acyl chlorides, and they were once extensively used to couple amino acids. Certain drawbacks to this approach, however, led chemists to seek alternative methods.

In one method, treatment of a solution containing the N-protected and the C-protected amino acids with *N,N′*-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCCI) leads directly to peptide bond formation:



Z-Protected phenylalanine Glycine ethyl ester Z-Protected Phe-Gly ethyl ester (83%)

N,N′-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide has the structure:



N,N′-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCCI)

Mechanism 25.4 shows how DCCI promotes the formation of the peptide bond shown in the preceding equation.

Problem 25.22

Show the steps involved in the synthesis of Ala-Leu from alanine and leucine using benzyloxycarbonyl and benzyl ester protecting groups and DCCI-promoted peptide bond formation.

The *N,N′*-dicyclohexylurea that is produced in peptide couplings with DCCI is soluble in the same solvents as the product, making it more difficult to separate the by-products during purification. An alternative carbodiimide used in peptide synthesis is 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide, known as EDCI. Both EDCI and the urea that is produced from it are water-soluble and can be more easily separated from the peptide product. EDCI can also be used in organic solvents.

$$CH_3CH_2N{=}C{=}NCH_2CH_2CH_2N(CH_3)_2$$

1-Ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (EDCI)

Problem 25.23

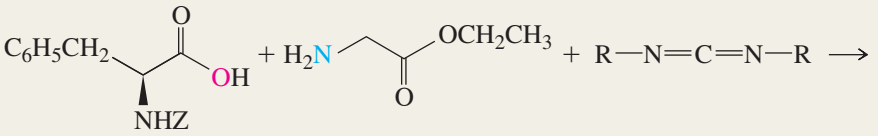
What is the structure of the urea that is produced in the coupling reaction of a protected amino acid and a carboxylic acid with EDCI?

Higher peptides are prepared either by stepwise extension of peptide chains, one amino acid at a time, or by coupling of fragments containing several residues (the *fragment condensation* approach). Human pituitary adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), for example, has 39 amino acids and was synthesized by coupling of smaller peptides containing residues 1–10, 11–16, 17–24, and 25–39. An attractive feature of this approach is that the various protected peptide fragments may be individually purified, which simplifies the purification of the final product. Among other substances that have been synthesized by fragment condensation are insulin (51 amino acids) and the protein ribonuclease A (124 amino acids). In the stepwise extension approach, the starting peptide in a particular step differs from the coupling product by only one amino acid residue and the properties of the two peptides may be so similar as to make purification by conventional techniques all but impossible. The solid-phase method described in the following section overcomes many of the difficulties involved in the purification of intermediates.

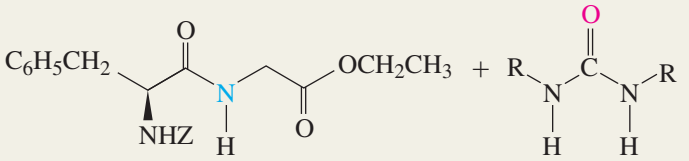
Mechanism 25.4

Amide Bond Formation Between a Carboxylic Acid and an Amine Using *N,N′*-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide

THE OVERALL REACTION:



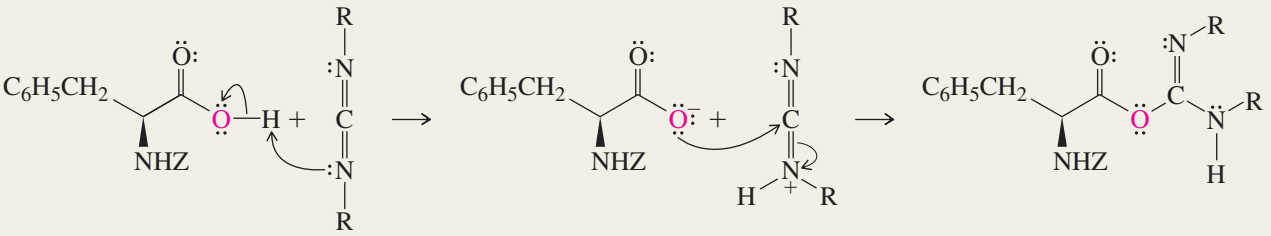
Z-Protected phenylalanine (Z = Benzyloxycarbonyl) | Glycine ethyl ester | *N,N′*-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCCI) (R = cyclohexyl)



Z-Protected Phe-Gly ethyl ester | *N,N′*-Dicyclohexylurea

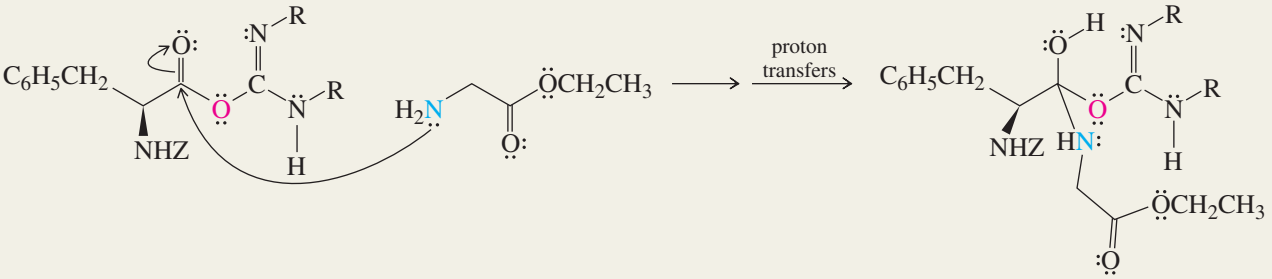
THE MECHANISM:

Step 1: In the first stage of the reaction, the carboxylic acid adds to one of the double bonds of DCCI to give an *O*-acylisourea.



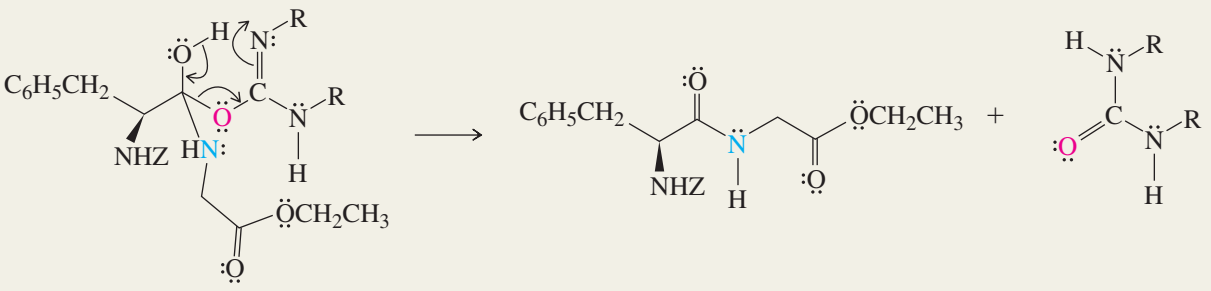
Z-Protected phenylalanine | DCCI | An *O*-Acylisourea

Step 2: Structurally, *O*-acylisoureas resemble acid anhydrides and are powerful acylating agents. In the reaction's second stage the amine adds to the carbonal group of the *O*-acylisourea to give a tetrahedral intermediate.



An *O*-acylisourea | Glycine ethyl ester | Tetrahedral intermediate

Step 3: The tetrahedral intermediate dissociates to an amide and *N,N′*-dicyclohexylurea.



Tetrahedral intermediate | Z-Protected Phe-Gly ethyl ester | *N,N′*-Dicyclohexylurea

25.16 Solid-Phase Peptide Synthesis: The Merrifield Method

Merrifield was awarded the 1984 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for developing the solid-phase method of peptide synthesis.

In 1962, R. Bruce Merrifield of Rockefeller University reported the synthesis of the nonapeptide bradykinin by a novel method. In Merrifield's method, peptide coupling and deprotection are carried out not in homogeneous solution but at the surface of an insoluble polymer, or *solid support.* Beads of a copolymer prepared from styrene containing about 2% divinylbenzene are treated with chloromethyl methyl ether and tin(IV) chloride to give a resin in which about 10% of the aromatic rings bear —CH_2Cl groups (Figure 25.10). The growing peptide is anchored to this polymer, and excess reagents, impurities, and by-products are removed by thorough washing after each operation. This greatly simplifies the purification of intermediates.

The actual process of **solid-phase peptide synthesis,** outlined in Figure 25.11, begins with the attachment of the C-terminal amino acid to the chloromethylated polymer in step 1. Nucleophilic substitution by the carboxylate anion of an *N*-Boc-protected C-terminal amino acid displaces chloride from the chloromethyl group of the polymer to form an ester, protecting the C terminus while anchoring it to a solid support. Next, the Boc group is removed by treatment with acid (step 2), and the polymer containing the unmasked N terminus is washed with a series of organic solvents. By-products are removed, and only the polymer and its attached C-terminal amino acid residue remain. Next (step 3), a peptide bond to an *N*-Boc-protected amino acid is formed by condensation in the presence of *N,N′*-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide. Again, the polymer is washed thoroughly. The Boc protecting group is then removed by acid treatment (step 4), and after washing, the polymer is now ready for the addition of another amino acid residue by a repetition of the cycle. When all the amino acids have been added, the synthetic peptide is removed from the polymeric support by treatment with hydrogen bromide in trifluoroacetic acid.

The Merrifield procedure has been adapted to accommodate FMOC as well as Boc protecting groups.

By successively adding amino acid residues to the C-terminal amino acid, it took Merrifield only eight days to synthesize the nonapeptide bradykinin in 68% yield. The biological activity of synthetic bradykinin was identical with that of natural material.

Problem 25.24

Starting with phenylalanine and glycine, outline the steps in the preparation of Phe-Gly by the Merrifield method.

Merrifield successfully automated all the steps in solid-phase peptide synthesis, and computer-controlled equipment is commercially available to perform this synthesis. Using an early version of his "peptide synthesizer," in collaboration with coworker Bernd Gutte, Merrifield reported the synthesis of the enzyme ribonuclease in 1969. It took them only six weeks to perform the 369 reactions and 11,391 steps necessary to assemble the sequence of 124 amino acids of ribonuclease.

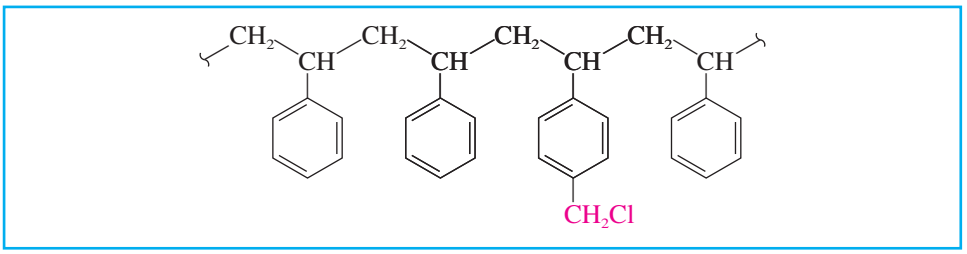


Figure 25.10

A section of polystyrene showing one of the benzene rings modified by chloromethylation. Individual polystyrene chains in the resin used in solid-phase peptide synthesis are connected to one another at various points (cross-linked) by adding a small amount of *p*-divinylbenzene to the styrene monomer. The chloromethylation step is carried out under conditions such that only about 10% of the benzene rings bear —CH_2Cl groups.

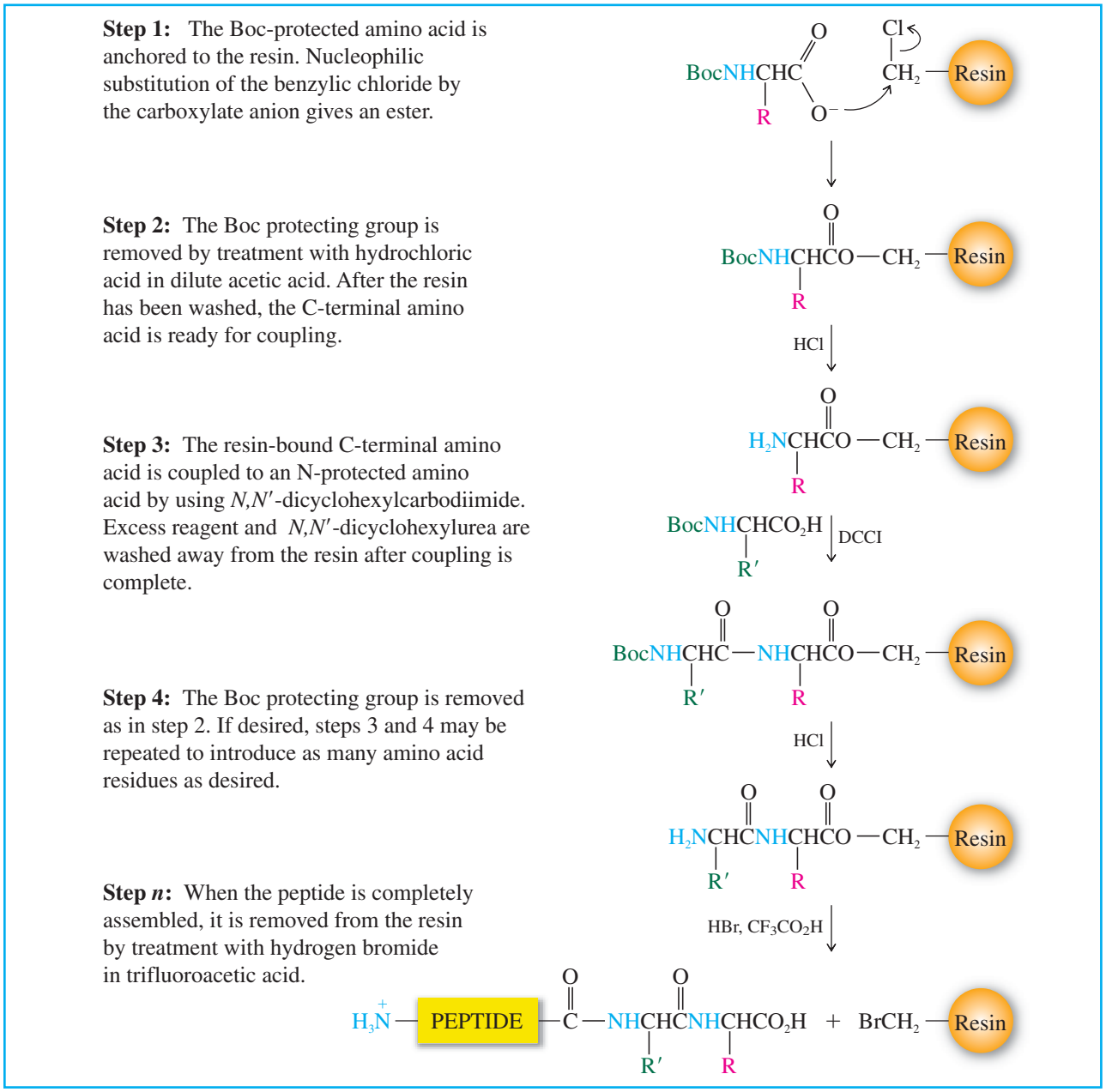


Figure 25.11

Peptide synthesis by the solid-phase method. Amino acid residues are attached sequentially beginning at the C terminus.

Solid-phase peptide synthesis does not solve all purification problems, however. Even if every coupling step in the ribonuclease synthesis proceeded in 99% yield, the product would be contaminated with many different peptides containing 123 amino acids, 122 amino acids, and so on. Thus, Merrifield and Gutte's six weeks of synthesis was followed by four months spent in purifying the final product. The technique has since been refined to the point that yields at the 99% level and greater are achieved with current instrumentation, and thousands of peptides and peptide analogs have been prepared by the solid-phase method.

Merrifield's concept of a solid-phase method for peptide synthesis and his development of methods for carrying it out set the stage for an entirely new way to do chemical reactions. Solid-phase synthesis has been extended to include numerous other classes of compounds and has helped spawn a whole new field called **combinatorial chemistry.** Combinatorial synthesis allows a chemist, using solid-phase techniques, to prepare hundreds of related compounds (called *libraries*) at a time.

25.17 Secondary Structures of Peptides and Proteins

The primary structure of a peptide is its amino acid sequence. The **secondary structure** is the conformational relationship of nearest neighbor amino acids with respect to each other. On the basis of X-ray crystallographic studies and careful examination of molecular models, Linus Pauling and Robert B. Corey of the California Institute of Technology showed that certain peptide conformations were more stable than others. Two arrangements, the **α helix** and the **β sheet,** stand out as secondary structural units that are both particularly stable and commonly encountered. Both of these incorporate two important features:

1. The geometry of the peptide bond is planar and the main chain is arranged in an anti conformation (see Section 25.7).
2. Hydrogen bonding can occur when the N—H group of one amino acid unit and the C=O group of another are close in space; conformations that maximize the number of these hydrogen bonds are stabilized by them.

Chains in a β sheet exist in an extended conformation with hydrogen bonds between a carbonyl oxygen of one chain and an amide N—H of another (Figure 25.12). Both the parallel and antiparallel arrangements of chains occur in proteins. Some of the space between peptide chains is occupied by the amino acid side chains, represented by R in Figure 25.12. Van der Waals repulsive forces involving these substituents cause the chains to rotate with respect to one another, giving a rippled effect known as a *β-pleated sheet* (Figure 25.13).

The β-pleated sheet is an important secondary structure in proteins that are rich in amino acids with small side chains such as H (glycine), CH_3 (alanine), and CH_2OH (serine). The model in Figure 25.13 is a portion of the calculated structure for a sheet composed of antiparallel strands containing only glycine and alanine in alternating order (Gly-Ala-Gly-Ala-, etc.). It was designed to resemble *fibroin,* the major protein of silk.

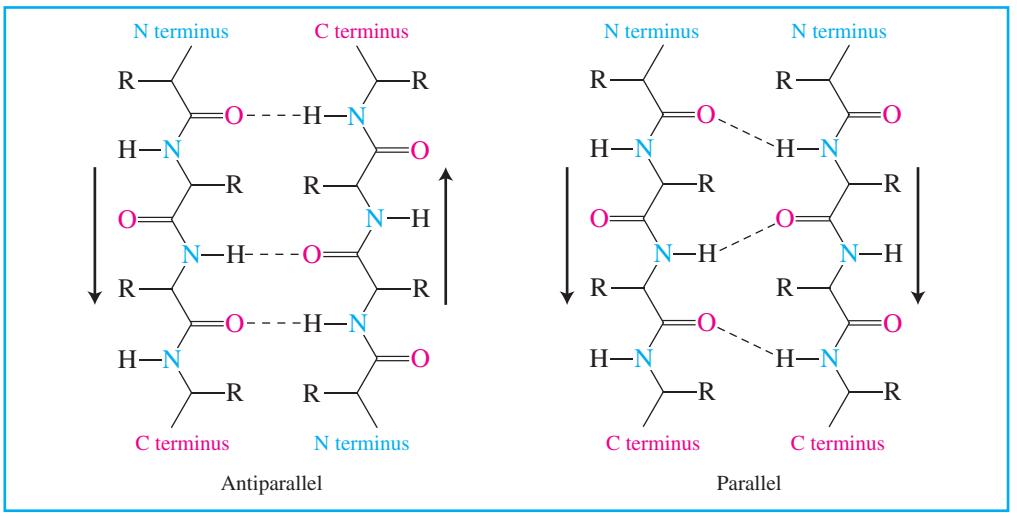


Figure 25.12

Hydrogen bonding between the carbonyl oxygen of one peptide chain and the amide N—H of another in a β-pleated sheet. In the antiparallel arrangement, the N-terminus → C-terminus direction of one chain is opposite to that of the other. In the parallel arrangement, the N-terminus → C-terminus direction is the same for both chains.

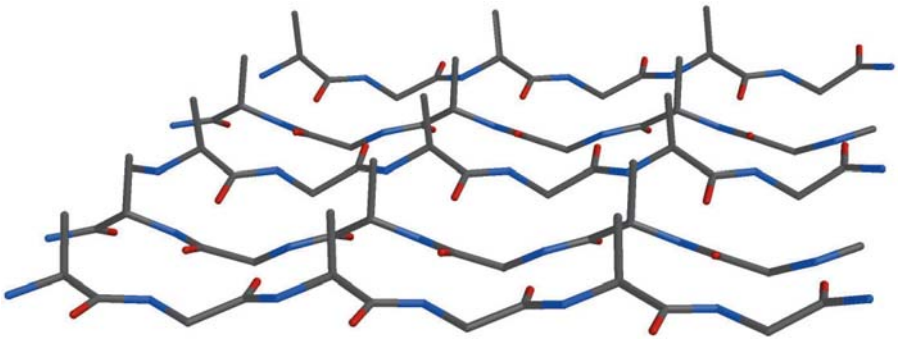


Figure 25.13

The β-pleated sheet secondary structure of a protein, composed of alternating glycine and alanine residues.

Fibroin is almost entirely pleated sheet, and over 80% of it is a repeating sequence of the six-residue unit -Gly-Ser-Gly-Ala-Gly-Ala-. Because the polypeptide backbone adopts an extended zigzag conformation, silk, unlike wool for example, resists stretching.

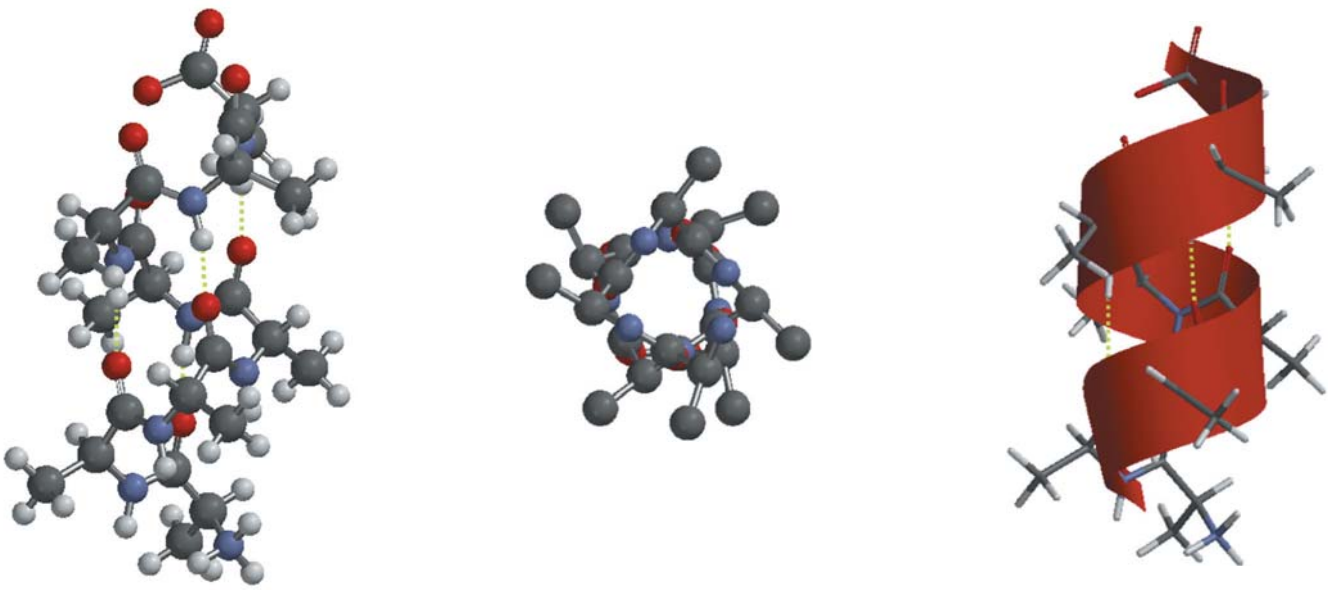
Problem 25.25

The methyl groups of the alanine residues of the β sheet in Figure 25.13 all point upward. If this pleated sheet were composed of only alanine residues instead of being Gly-Ala-Gly-Ala, etc. what would be the pattern of methyl groups? Would they all point up, alternate up and down, or be random?

The α helix is another commonly encountered secondary structure. Figure 25.14 gives three views of an α-helix model constructed from eight L-alanine residues. Part *a* of the figure is a ball-and-spoke model; part *b* is a view through the center of the helix along its axis. The helix is right-handed with about 3.6 amino acids per turn and is stabilized by hydrogen bonds between the carbonyl oxygens and N—H protons. View *b* shows how the methyl groups of L-alanine project outward from the main chain. This outward orientation of amino acid side chains makes them the points of contact with other amino acids of the same chain, with different protein chains, and with other biomolecules. Part *c* of the figure uses a ribbon to trace the peptide backbone. The ribbon helps distinguish front from back, makes the right-handedness of the helix more apparent, and is especially useful when looking at how proteins are folded.

The protein components of muscle (*myosin*) and wool (α-*keratin*) contain high percentages of α helix. When wool is stretched, hydrogen bonds break and the peptide chain is elongated. Covalent S—S bonds between L-cysteine residues limit the extent to which the chain can be stretched, however, and once the stretching force is removed the hydrogen bonds re-form spontaneously.

Most proteins cannot be described in terms of a single secondary structure. Rather, most are mixtures of α helix and β sheet, interspersed with regions of **random coils** that have no



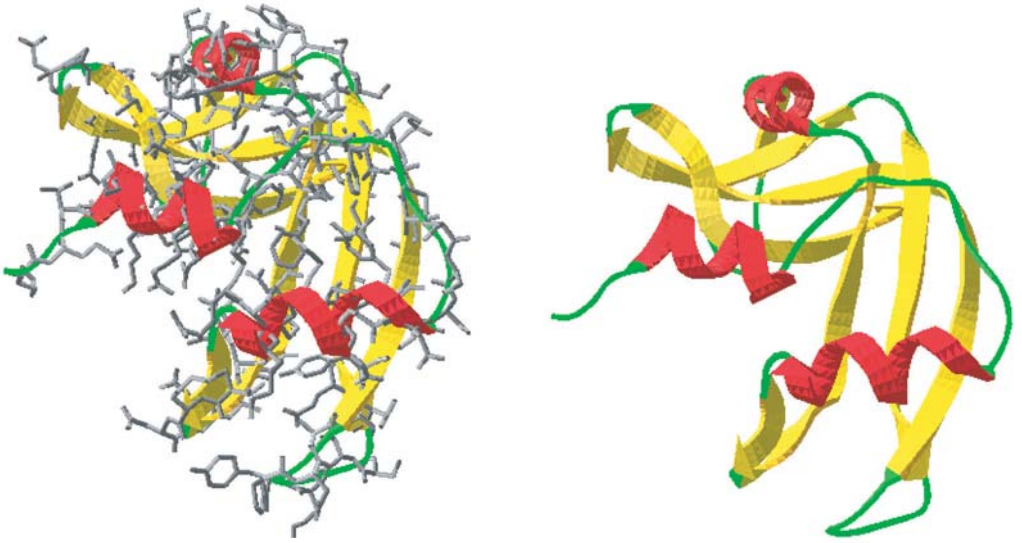
(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Figure 25.14

Molecular models of an α helix composed of eight alanine residues. The N terminus is at the bottom. (*a*) A ball-and-spoke model. Hydrogen bonds are shown as dashed lines. (*b*) The same model looking up the helical axis from the bottom. Hydrogens have been omitted for clarity. The helix is right-handed, and all of the methyl groups point outward. (*c*) A tube model framed in a ribbon that traces the path of the helix.

Figure 25.15

Molecular models of ribonuclease. Red ribbons identify sequences where the secondary structure is a helix; yellow ribbons identify strands of β sheet. Arrowheads point in the direction from the N terminus to the C terminus. (*a*) Shows both a molecular model and ribbons. (*b*) Shows only the ribbons.



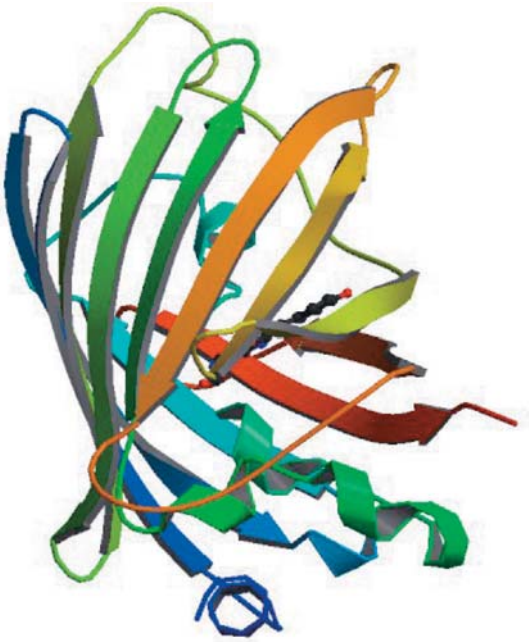
(*a*) (*b*)

regular pattern. Figure 25.15 shows a model of ribonuclease, an enzyme that catalyzes the hydrolysis of RNA. The helical regions are shown in red, the β sheets in yellow. Of the 124 amino acids in this protein, 24 are represented in three sections of α helix. There are two β sheets, one with three strands accounting for 21 amino acids, the other with four strands and 20 amino acids. The strands of each β sheet belong to the same chain and are brought within hydrogen bonding distance because of how the chain is folded. Indeed, the formation of hydrogen bonds such as these is one of the factors that contributes to chain folding.

Another protein which has regions of α helix and β sheet is green fluorescent protein, or GFP. In GFP, the β sheet structure is barrel-shaped, and the α helix runs along the center of the barrel, where it is shielded from the exterior (Figure 25.16). The α helix in GFP contains an arrangement of amino acids that undergoes fluorescence. Through the use of recombinant DNA technology (see Section 26.17), GFP can be attached to other proteins that are normally invisible, but now can be imaged using fluorescence microscopy. Using GFP as a biomarker,

Figure 25.16

Barrel-shaped green fluorescent protein (GFP) has an outer β-sheet structure and an α helix in the inner region.



it is possible to monitor the roles of different proteins in the body, in part because GFP has very low toxicity toward living cells. The development of nerve cells in the brain, the spread of cancer cells, and the damage to neurons that occurs during Alzheimer's disease can be followed by techniques that use GFP.

The 2008 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to Osamu Shimomura, Martin Chalfie, and Roger Tsien for their work in the development of GFP.

25.18 Tertiary Structure of Polypeptides and Proteins

The way a protein chain is folded, its **tertiary structure,** affects both its physical properties and its biological function. The two main categories of protein tertiary structure are **fibrous** and **globular.**

1. Fibrous proteins are bundles of elongated filaments of protein chains and are insoluble in water.
2. Globular proteins are approximately spherical and are either soluble or form colloidal dispersions in water.

The primary structure of a protein, its amino acid sequence, is the main determinant of tertiary structure. Secondary structure also contributes by limiting the number of conformations available to a polypeptide chain.

Fibrous proteins, being insoluble in water often have a structural or protective function. The most familiar fibrous proteins are the keratins and collagen. α-Keratin (Figure 25.17) is based on the α-helix secondary structure and is the protein structural component of hair, wool, nails, claws, quills, horns, and the outer layer of skin. β-Keratin is based on the β-sheet secondary structure and occurs in silk as fibroin. L-Cysteine is especially abundant in keratins, where it can account for more than 20% of the amino acids present. Collagen occurs mainly in connective tissue (cartilage and tendons) and has a triple helix structure.

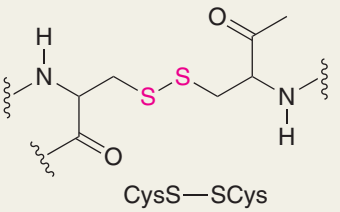
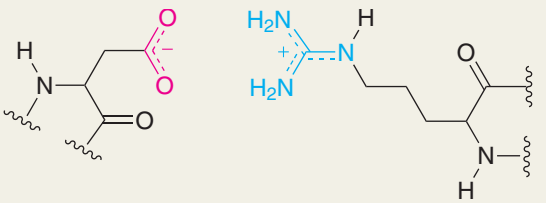
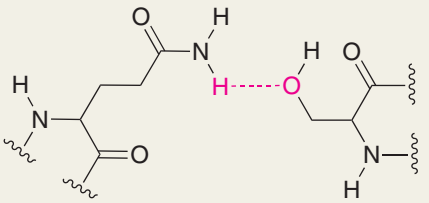
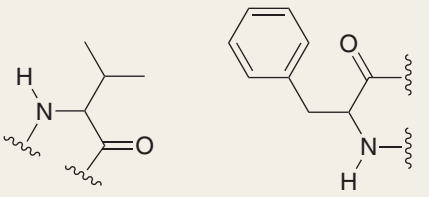
Globular proteins include most enzymes and function in aqueous environments. About 65% of the mass of most cells, for example, is water. When placed in water, nonpolar materials, including nonpolar amino acid side chains, cause nearby water molecules to adopt a more ordered arrangement, reducing the entropy of water. This is called the **hydrophobic effect.** The unfavorable negative ΔS is moderated if the protein adopts a spherical shape which places nonpolar side chains inside and polar ones on the surface. Of

(*a*) (*b*) (*c*) (*d*)

Figure 25.17

α-Keratin. Two α helices (*a*) combine to give a coiled coil (*b*). A pair of coiled coils is a protofilament (*c*). Four protofilaments give a filament (*d*), which is the structural material from which the fibrous protein is assembled.

TABLE 25.4 Covalent and Noncovalent Interactions Between Amino Acid Side Chains in Proteins

Description	Type of interaction	Example
Covalent		
Disulfide bridge	S—S bond between two cysteines	 CysS—SCys
Noncovalent		
Salt bridge	Electrostatic attraction between oppositely charged ions	 Asp···Arg
Hydrogen bond	Positively polarized H of O—H or N—H group interacts with an electronegative atom (O or N)	 Gln···Ser
Van der Waals	Induced-dipole/induced-dipole attraction (dispersion force) between nonpolar side chains	 Val···Phe

the various globular arrangements, the one that best offsets the entropy loss with attractive forces among the side chains is the tertiary structure adopted by the protein in its normal, or *native state.*

Table 25.4 lists the attractive forces that most influence protein tertiary structure. The strongest of these is the covalent S—S bond that unites two cysteine residues. This *disulfide bridge* can form between the $—CH_2SH$ groups of two cysteines, which, although they may be remote from each other in respect to the amino acid sequence, become neighbors when the chain is folded. Formation of the disulfide bond connecting the two stabilizes the local folded arrangement. A typical globular protein normally has only a small number of disulfide bridges. Of the 124 amino acids in ribonuclease (see Figure 25.15 in Section 25.17), 6 are cysteines and each participates in a disulfide bridge; one bridge unites Cys-26 and Cys-84, another Cys-58 and Cys-110, and a third Cys-65 and Cys-72.

The noncovalent interactions are all much weaker than the S—S covalent bond. Among them, the electrostatic attraction between positively and negatively charged side chains, called a salt bridge, is the strongest, followed by hydrogen bonding, then van der Waals forces. Keep in mind though, that the total contribution of the various forces depends

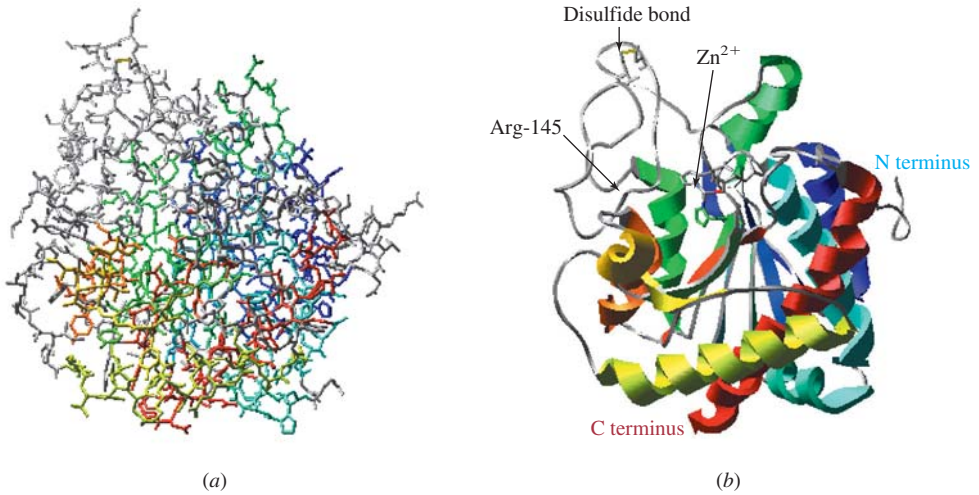


Figure 25.18

The structure of carboxypeptidase A displayed as (*a*) a tube model and (*b*) a ribbon diagram. The most evident feature illustrated by (*a*) is the globular shape of the enzyme. The ribbon diagram emphasizes the folding of the chain.

not only on the magnitude of an interaction but also on their number. Disulfide bridges may be strong, but there are usually only a few of them. Van der Waals forces are weak, but they outnumber all the other intermolecular attractive forces.

Problem 25.26

Table 25.4 shows a salt bridge between aspartic acid and arginine. Sketch the analogous electrostatic attraction between lysine and an amino acid other than aspartic acid from Table 25.1.

Knowing how the protein chain is folded is a key element in understanding how an **enzyme** catalyzes a reaction. Biochemical processes are usually related to the core reaction types of organic chemistry and involve similar key intermediates. The reactions, however, are much faster and more selective. In proposing an enzyme-catalyzed mechanism for a reaction such as amide or ester hydrolysis, it is customary to assume it proceeds by way of a tetrahedral intermediate, then modify the usual nucleophilic acyl substitution mechanism by assigning various catalytic functions to selected amino acid side chains of the enzyme.

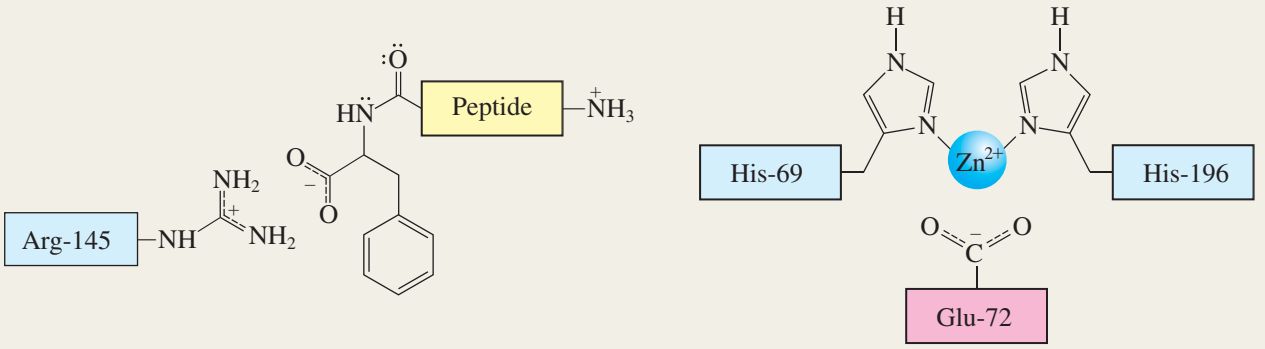
We saw in Section 25.10 that carboxypeptidase A catalyzes the hydrolysis of the peptide bond to the C-terminal amino acid of polypeptides. Carboxypeptidase A is a *metalloprotein;* it contains a Zn^{2+} ion, which is essential for catalytic activity. The X-ray crystal structure of carboxypeptidase A (Figure 25.18) locates this Zn^{2+} ion in a hydrophobic cavity near the center of the enzyme, where it is held by coordination to a glutamic acid residue (Glu-72) and two histidines (His-69 and His-196). This is the same region, called the **active site,** where the substrate binds. The substrate in the case of carboxypeptidase is a peptide, especially a peptide with a hydrophobic C-terminal amino acid such as phenylalanine or tyrosine. In addition to being hydrophobic, as is the active site, the substrate is bound by an electrostatic attraction between its negatively charged carboxylate and the positively charged side chain of Arg-145. Mechanism 25.5 shows the interactions of the side chains of carboxypeptidase A with Zn^{2+} and a peptide, then describes the mechanism for cleaving the peptide bond to the terminal amino acid. Side chains other than those shown in Mechanism 25.5 have been implicated but have been omitted. The main feature of the mechanism is its relationship to the mechanism of nucleophilic acyl substitution (on which it was patterned). Not only does the enzyme bring the substrate and catalytically active functions together at the active site, but by stabilizing the tetrahedral intermediate it lowers the activation energy for its formation and increases the reaction rate.

Mechanism 25.5

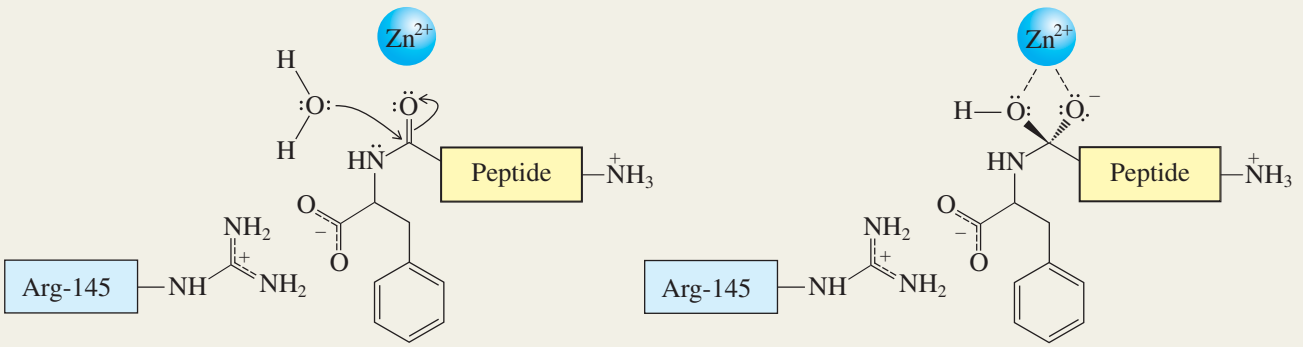
Carboxypeptidase-Catalyzed Hydrolysis

THE MECHANISM: The mechanism shown outlines the major stages in carboxypeptidase-catalyzed hydrolysis of a peptide in which the C-terminal amino acid is phenylalanine. Proton transfers accompany stages 2 and 3 but are not shown. Only the major interactions of the substrate with the carboxypeptidase side chains are shown although others may also be involved.

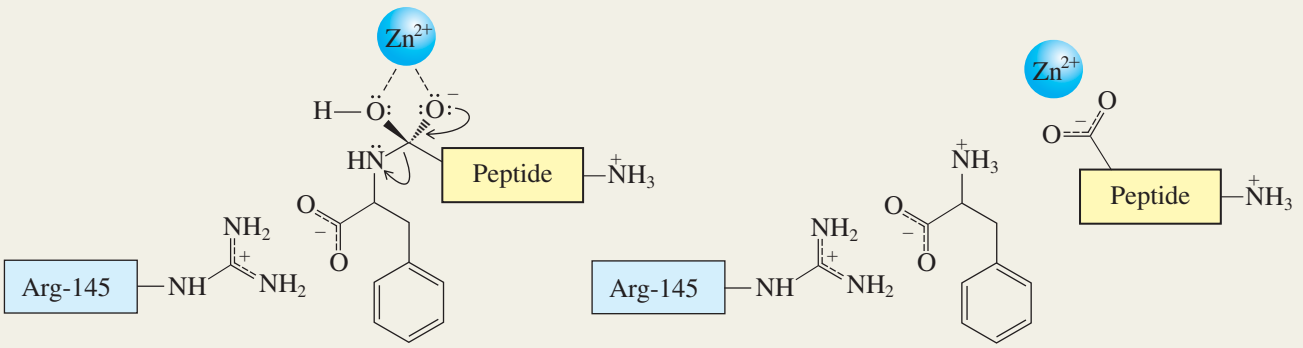
Stage 1: The peptide is positioned in the active site by an electrostatic bond between its negatively charged C-terminal carboxylate and a positively charged arginine side chain of the enzyme. Also at the active site, Zn^{2+} engages in Lewis acid/Lewis base interactions with His-69 and His-196 and an electrostatic attraction with the negatively charged carboxylate of Glu-72. These ligands are shown here but will be omitted in subsequent steps for simplicity.



Stage 2: Water adds to the carbonyl group of the peptide bond. The rate of this nucleophilic addition is accelerated by coordination of the carbonyl oxygen to Zn^{2+} and/or to one of the N—H protons of Arg-127 (not shown). The product is a tetrahedral intermediate stabilized by coordination to zinc. Stabilization of the tetrahedral intermediate may be the major factor for the rapid rate of the carboxypeptidase-catalyzed hydrolysis.



Stage 3: The tetrahedral intermediate dissociates to the C-terminal amino acid (phenylalanine in this case). Subsequent steps restore the active site.

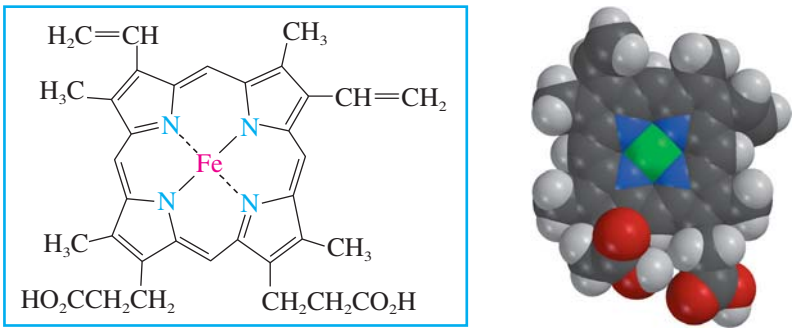


25.19 Coenzymes

The number of chemical processes that protein side chains can engage in is rather limited. Most prominent among them are proton donation, proton abstraction, and nucleophilic addition to carbonyl groups. In many biological processes a richer variety of reactivity is required, and proteins often act in combination with substances other than proteins to carry out the necessary chemistry. These substances are called **cofactors,** and they can be organic or inorganic and strongly or weakly bound to the enzyme. Among cofactors that are organic molecules, the term **coenzyme** is applied to those that are not covalently bound to the enzyme, and **prosthetic group** to those that are. Acting alone, for example, proteins lack the necessary functionality to be effective oxidizing or reducing agents. They can catalyze biological oxidations and reductions, however, in the presence of a suitable coenzyme. In earlier sections we saw numerous examples of these reactions in which the coenzyme NAD^+ acted as an oxidizing agent, and others in which NADH acted as a reducing agent.

Pyridoxal 5′-phosphate (see Section 25.6) is a coenzyme.

Heme (Figure 25.19) is an important prosthetic group in which iron(II) is coordinated with the four nitrogen atoms of a type of tetracyclic aromatic substance known as a *porphyrin.* The oxygen-storing protein of muscle, myoglobin, represented schematically in Figure 25.20, consists of a heme group surrounded by a protein of 153 amino acids. Four of the six available coordination sites of Fe^{2+} are taken up by the nitrogens of the porphyrin, one by a histidine residue of the protein, and the last by a water molecule. Myoglobin stores oxygen obtained from the blood by formation of an Fe—O_2 complex. The oxygen displaces water as the sixth ligand on iron and is held there until needed. The protein serves as a container for the heme and prevents oxidation of Fe^{2+} to Fe^{3+}, an oxidation state in which iron lacks the ability to bind oxygen. Separately, neither heme nor the protein binds oxygen in aqueous solution; together, they do it very well.

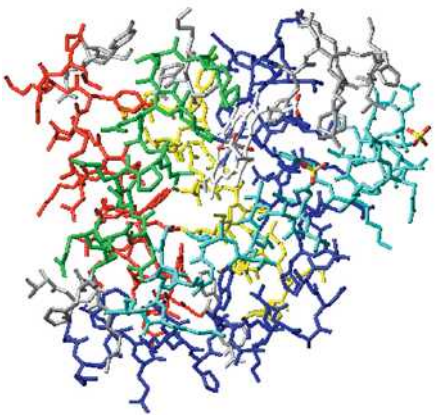


(*a*)

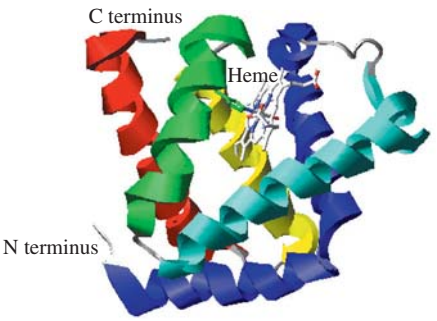
(*b*)

Figure 25.19

Heme shown as (*a*) a structural drawing and as (*b*) a space-filling model. The space-filling model shows the coplanar arrangement of the groups surrounding iron.



(*a*)



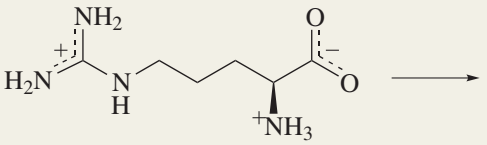
(*b*)

Figure 25.20

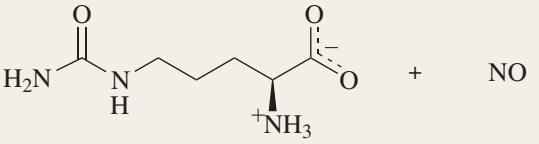
The structure of sperm-whale myoglobin displayed as (*a*) a tube model and (*b*) a ribbon diagram. There are five separate regions of α helix in myoglobin, which are shown in different colors to distinguish them more clearly. The heme portion is included in both drawings, but is easier to locate in the ribbon diagram, as is the histidine side chain that is attached to the iron of heme.

Oh NO! It's Inorganic!

The amino acid L-arginine undergoes an interesting biochemical conversion.



L-Arginine

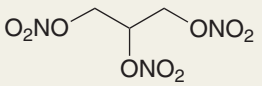


L-Citrulline + NO

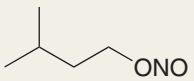
Nitric oxide

Our experience conditions us to focus on the organic components of the reaction—L-arginine and L-citrulline—and to give less attention to the inorganic one—nitric oxide (nitrogen monoxide, NO). To do so, however, would lead us to overlook one of the most important discoveries in biology in the last quarter of the twentieth century.

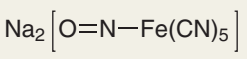
Our story starts with the long-standing use of nitroglycerin to treat the chest pain that characterizes angina, a condition in diseases such as atherosclerosis in which restricted blood flow to the heart muscle itself causes it to receive an insufficient amount of oxygen. Placing a nitroglycerin tablet under the tongue provides rapid relief by expanding the blood vessels feeding the heart. A number of other nitrogen-containing compounds such as amyl nitrite and sodium nitroprusside exert a similar effect.



Nitroglycerine



Amyl nitrite



Sodium nitroprusside

A chemical basis for their action was proposed in 1977 by Ferid Murad who showed that all were sources of NO, thereby implicating it as the active agent.

Three years later, Robert F. Furchgott discovered that the relaxing of smooth muscles, such as blood vessel walls, was stimulated by an unknown substance produced in the lining of the blood vessels (the *endothelium*). He called this substance the *endothelium-dependent relaxing factor,* or EDRF and, in 1986, showed that EDRF was NO. Louis J. Ignarro reached the same conclusion at about the same time. Further support was provided by Salvador Moncada who showed that endothelial cells did indeed produce NO and that the L-arginine-to-L-citrulline conversion was responsible.

The initial skepticism that greeted the idea that NO, which is (a) a gas, (b) toxic, (c) inorganic, and (d) a free radical, could be a biochemical messenger was quickly overcome. An avalanche of results confirmed not only NO's role in smooth-muscle relaxation, but added more and more examples to an ever-expanding list of NO-stimulated biochemical processes. Digestion is facilitated by the action of NO on intestinal muscles. The drug Viagra (*sildenafil citrate*), prescribed to treat erectile dysfunction, works by increasing the concentration of a hormone, the release of which is signaled by NO. A theory that NO is involved in long-term memory receives support from the fact the brain is a rich source of the enzyme *nitric oxide synthase* (NOS), which catalyzes the formation of NO from L-arginine. NO even mediates the glow of fireflies. They glow nonstop when placed in a jar containing NO, but not at all when measures are taken to absorb NO.

Identifying NO as a signaling molecule in biological processes clearly justified a Nobel Prize. The only mystery was who would get it. Nobel Prizes are often shared, but never among more than three persons. Although four scientists—Murad, Furchgott, Ignarro, and Moncada—made important contributions, the Nobel committee followed tradition and recognized only the first three of them with the 1998 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.

25.20 Protein Quaternary Structure: Hemoglobin

Rather than existing as a single polypeptide chain, some proteins are assemblies of two or more chains. The manner in which these subunits are organized is called the **quaternary structure** of the protein.

Hemoglobin is the oxygen-carrying protein of blood. It binds oxygen at the lungs and transports it to the muscles, where it is stored by myoglobin. Hemoglobin binds oxygen in very much the same way as myoglobin, using heme as the prosthetic group. Hemoglobin is much larger than myoglobin, however, having a molecular weight of 64,500, whereas that of myoglobin is 17,500; hemoglobin contains four heme units, myoglobin only one. Hemoglobin is an assembly of four hemes and four protein chains, including two identical chains called the *alpha chains* and two identical chains called the *beta chains.*

Some substances, such as CO, form strong bonds to the iron of heme, strong enough to displace O_2 from it. Carbon monoxide binds 30–50 times more effectively than oxygen to myoglobin and hundreds of times better than oxygen to hemoglobin. Strong binding of

CO at the active site interferes with the ability of heme to perform its biological task of transporting and storing oxygen, with potentially lethal results.

How function depends on structure can be seen in the case of the genetic disorder *sickle cell anemia.* This is a debilitating, sometimes fatal, disease in which red blood cells become distorted ("sickle-shaped") and interfere with the flow of blood through the capillaries. This condition results from the presence of an abnormal hemoglobin in affected people. The primary structures of the beta chain of normal and sickle cell hemoglobin differ by a single amino acid out of 146; sickle cell hemoglobin has valine in place of glutamic acid as the sixth residue from the N terminus of the β chain. A tiny change in amino acid sequence can produce a life-threatening result! This modification is genetically controlled and probably became established in the gene pool because bearers of the trait have an increased resistance to malaria.

25.21 G-Coupled Protein Receptors

Biological receptors have been mentioned a few times in this book, in the context of organic molecules that bind to them. In Section 24.2 of the previous chapter, we described anandamide, a lipid that binds to the same receptor in the brain as the cannabinoids. In Section 25.14 of this chapter, we mentioned calcitonin, a peptide that regulates blood calcium levels and is used in the treatment of osteoporosis. The biological receptors for anandamide and for calcitonin both belong to a very large class of protein receptors known as **G-coupled protein receptors,** or GCPRs. The "G" stands for guanine in "guanine nucleotide-binding proteins." GCPRs occur throughout the body and function as "molecular switches" that regulate many physiological processes.

The 2012 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to **Robert J. Lefkowitz** (Howard Hughes Medical Institute and Duke University) and **Brian K. Kobilka** (Stanford University) for their studies of G-protein-coupled receptors.

GCPRs span the cell membrane (see Figure 24.4). When GCPRs bind their specific ligand, such as a lipid, peptide, or ion, they undergo a conformational change, which results in the transduction of a signal across the membrane. The details of how signaling occurs are not completely understood. The conformational change may result in an interaction with a nearby G protein, which in turn can activate enzymes or ion channels (Figure 25.21).

Signal transduction pathways in biochemistry involve a relay of molecular interactions that ultimately produce an intracellular response. These pathways can serve as a connection between events at the cell surface and gene expression in the nucleus.

In the biochemistry of vision (see Chapter 17), the interaction of rhodopsin, a GCPR, with light results in the photo-induced isomerization of cis retinal imine to trans retinal imine. This causes conformational changes in rhodopsin, which ultimately result in the *closing* of an ion channel, polarization of the cell membrame, and a nerve impulse that is transmitted to the brain in vision.

G-coupled protein receptors are involved in many diseases. It is estimated that nearly one-half of prescription drugs target GCPRs, in the treatment of cancer, cardiac malfunction, inflammation, pain, and disorders of the central nervous system.

GDP and GTP are abbreviations for the nucleotides guanosine 5′-diphosphate and guanosine 5′-triphosphate. Nucleotides are discussed in Section 26.2.

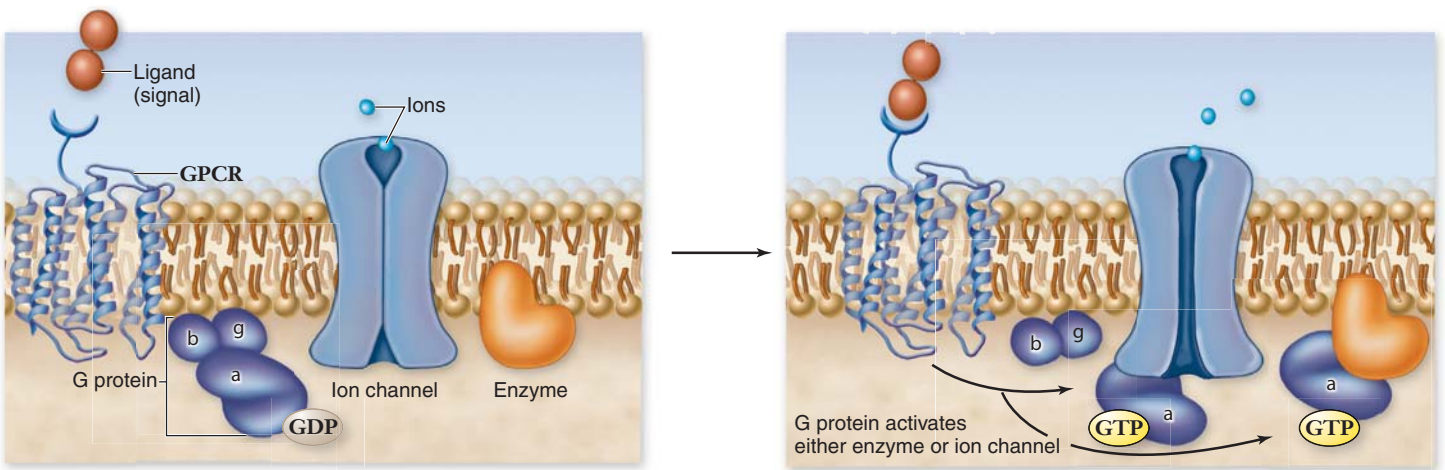


Figure 25.21

Signal transduction is initiated by the binding of a G-coupled protein receptor (GCPR) to the ligand on the exterior of the cell. Interactions with a nearby G protein inside the cell results in the exchange of bound GDP to GTP and in the release of one of its subunits in a GTP-bound form that activates an ion channel or enzyme.

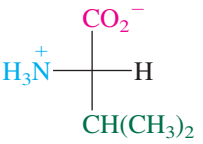
25.22 SUMMARY

This chapter revolves around **proteins.** It describes the building blocks of proteins, progressing through **amino acids** and **peptides,** and concludes with proteins themselves.

Section 25.1 The 20 amino acids listed in Table 25.1 are the building blocks of proteins. All are α-amino acids.

Section 25.2 Except for glycine, which is achiral, all of the α-amino acids in Table 25.1 are chiral and have the L configuration at the α carbon.

Section 25.3 The most stable structure of a neutral amino acid is a **zwitterion.** The pH of an aqueous solution at which the concentration of the zwitterion is a maximum is called the isoelectric point (pI).



Fischer projection of
L-valine in its zwitterionic form

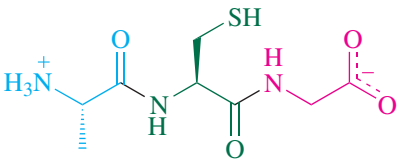
Section 25.4 Amino acids are synthesized in the laboratory from

1. α-Halo acids by reaction with ammonia
2. Aldehydes by reaction with ammonia and cyanide ion (the Strecker synthesis)
3. Alkyl halides by reaction with the enolate anion derived from diethyl acetamidomalonate

Section 25.5 Amino acids undergo reactions characteristic of the amino group (e.g., amide formation) and the carboxyl group (e.g., esterification). Amino acid side chains undergo reactions characteristic of the functional groups they contain.

Section 25.6 Among the biochemical reactions of α-amino acids, several use pyridoxal 5′-phosphate as a coenzyme. These reactions involve bonds to the α carbon and include transamination, decarboxylation, and racemization.

Section 25.7 An amide linkage between two α-amino acids is called a **peptide bond.** By convention, peptides are named and written beginning at the N terminus.



Alanylcysteinylglycine
(Ala-Cys-Gly or ACG)

Section 25.8 The **primary structure** of a peptide is its amino acid sequence plus any disulfide bonds between two cysteine residues. The primary structure is determined by a systematic approach in which the protein is cleaved to smaller fragments, even individual amino acids. The smaller fragments are sequenced and the main sequence deduced by finding regions of overlap among the smaller peptides.

Section 25.9 Complete hydrolysis of a peptide gives a mixture of amino acids. An amino acid analyzer identifies the individual amino acids and determines their molar ratios.

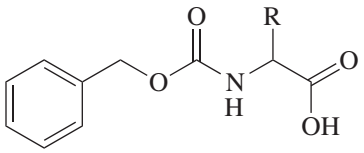
Section 25.10 Selective hydrolysis can be accomplished by using enzymes to catalyze cleavage at specific peptide bonds. Carboxypeptidase-catalyzed hydrolysis can be used to identify the C-terminal amino acid. The N terminus is determined by chemical means. One reagent used for this purpose is Sanger's reagent, 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene.

Section 25.11 The procedure described in Sections 25.8–25.11 was used to determine the amino acid sequence of insulin.

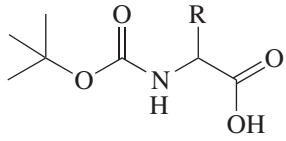
Section 25.12 Modern methods of peptide sequencing follow a strategy similar to that used to sequence insulin, but are automated and can be carried out on a small scale. An example is repetitive N-terminal amino acid identification using the **Edman degradation.**

Section 25.13 Synthesis of a peptide of prescribed sequence requires the use of protecting groups to minimize the number of possible reactions.

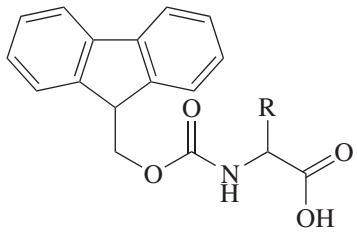
Section 25.14 Amino-protecting groups include *benzyloxycarbonyl* (Z), tert-*butoxycarbonyl* (Boc), and *9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl* (Fmoc).



Z-protected amino acid



Boc-protected amino acid

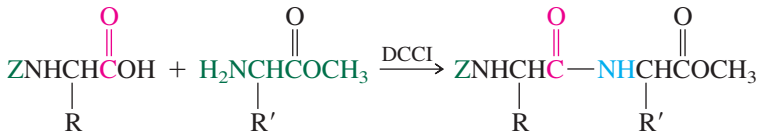


Fmoc-protected amino acid

Hydrogen bromide may be used to remove either the benzyloxycarbonyl or *tert*-butoxycarbonyl protecting group. The benzyloxycarbonyl protecting group may also be removed by catalytic hydrogenolysis. Fmoc is removed in base.

Carboxyl groups are normally protected as benzyl, methyl, or ethyl esters. Hydrolysis in dilute base is normally used to deprotect methyl and ethyl esters. Benzyl protecting groups are removed by hydrogenolysis.

Section 25.15 Peptide bond formation between a protected amino acid having a free carboxyl group and a protected amino acid having a free amino group can be accomplished with the aid of *N*,*N*′-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCCI).



Section 25.16 In the Merrifield method the carboxyl group of an amino acid is anchored to a solid support and the chain extended one amino acid at a time. When all the amino acid residues have been added, the polypeptide is removed from the solid support.

Section 25.17 Two **secondary structures** of proteins are particularly prominent. The *pleated β sheet* is stabilized by hydrogen bonds between N—H and C═O groups of adjacent chains. The α *helix* is stabilized by hydrogen bonds within a single polypeptide chain.

Section 25.18 The folding of a peptide chain is its **tertiary structure.** The tertiary structure has a tremendous influence on the properties of the peptide and the biological role it plays. The tertiary structure is normally determined by X-ray crystallography.

Many globular proteins are enzymes. They accelerate the rates of chemical reactions in biological systems, but the kinds of reactions that take place are the fundamental reactions of organic chemistry. One way in which enzymes accelerate these reactions is by bringing reactive functions together in the presence of catalytically active functions of the protein.

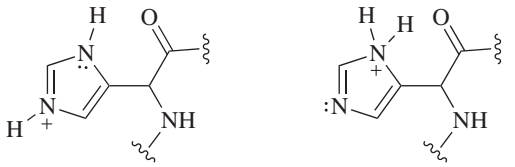
Section 25.19 Often the catalytically active functions of an enzyme are nothing more than proton donors and proton acceptors. In many cases a protein acts in cooperation with a **coenzyme,** a small molecule having the proper functionality to carry out a chemical change not otherwise available to the protein itself.

Section 25.20 Many proteins consist of two or more chains, and the way in which the various units are assembled in the native state of the protein is called its **quaternary structure.**

Section 25.21 G-coupled protein receptors are transmembrane proteins that function as molecular switches in many physiological processes.

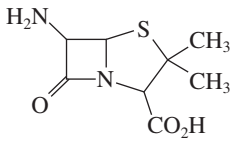
PROBLEMS

25.27 The imidazole ring of the histidine side chain acts as a proton acceptor in certain enzyme-catalyzed reactions. Which is the more stable protonated form of the histidine residue, A or B? Why?

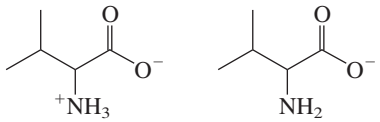


A B

25.28 Which two α-amino acids are the biosynthetic precursors of the penicillins?



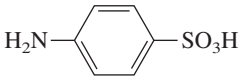
25.29 (a) Use the data in Table 25.2 and the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation to calculate the ratio $\frac{[A]}{[B]}$ at pH = 7.



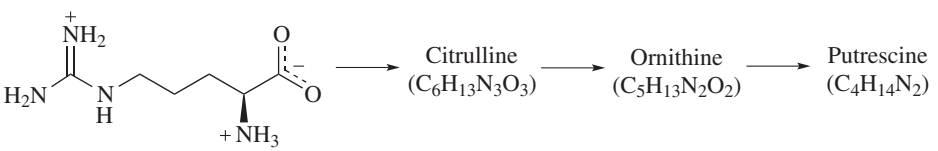
A B

(b) At what pH is [A] the largest?

25.30 α-Amino acids are not the only compounds that exist as zwitterions. *p*-Aminobenzenesulfonic acid (sulfanilic acid) is normally written in the form shown but its zwitterionic form is more stable. Write a structural formula for the zwitterion.



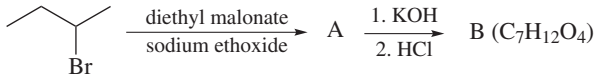
25.31 Putrescine, citrulline, and ornithine are products of arginine metabolism. The molecular formulas are given for the form in which each exists at pH = 7. The net charge corresponding to each formula is zero, +1, and +2. Suggest a reasonable structure for each species.

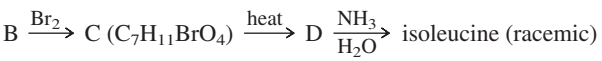


Arginine ($C_6H_{15}N_4O_2$)

25.32 Acrylonitrile ($H_2C{=}CHC{\equiv}N$) readily undergoes conjugate addition when treated with nucleophilic reagents. Describe a synthesis of β-alanine ($H_3NCH_2CH_2CO_2^-$) that takes advantage of this fact.

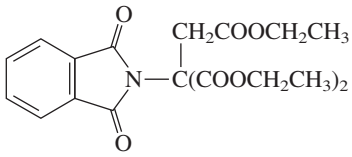
25.33 (a) Isoleucine has been prepared by the following sequence of reactions. Give the structure of compounds A through D isolated as intermediates in this synthesis.





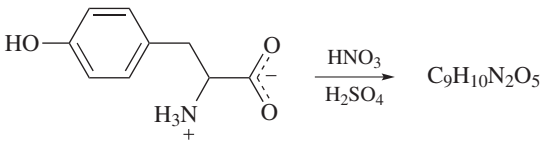
(b) An analogous procedure has been used to prepare phenylalanine. What alkyl halide would you choose as the starting material for this synthesis?

25.34 Hydrolysis of the following compound in concentrated hydrochloric acid for several hours at 100°C gives one of the amino acids in Table 25.1. Which one? Is it optically active?

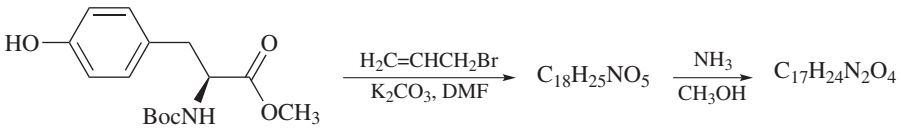


25.35 Identify the major product in each of the following reactions.

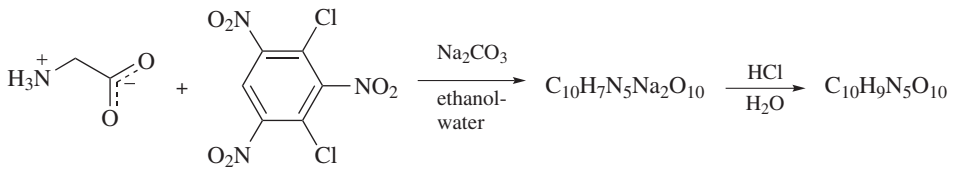
(a)



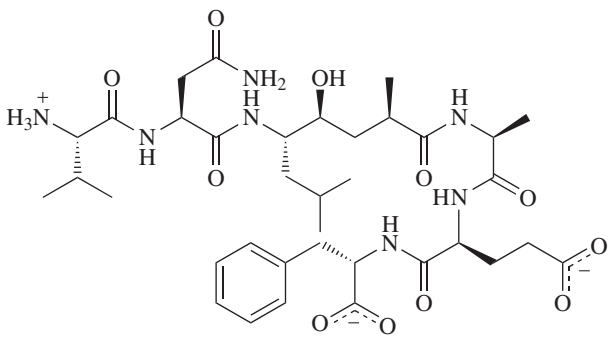
(b)



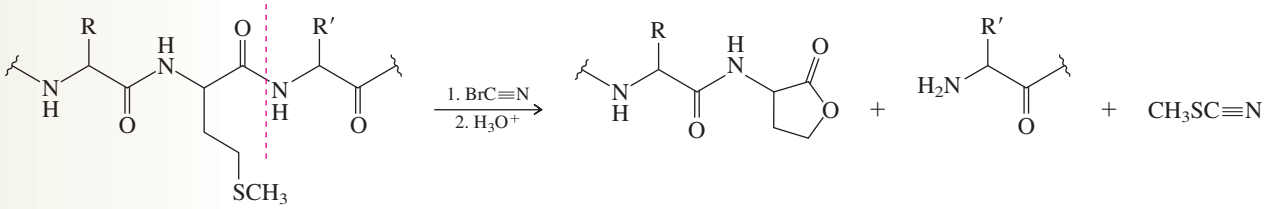
(c)



25.36 The synthetic peptide shown is an inhibitor of the enzyme β-secretase, which plays a role in the development of Alzheimer's disease. It contains five amino acids from Table 25.1. Which ones?

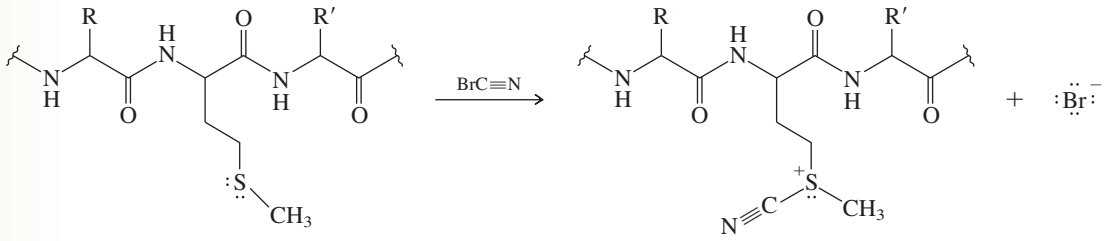


25.37 Cyanogen bromide (BrC≡N) cleaves peptides between the carbonyl group of a methionine residue and the next amino acid.



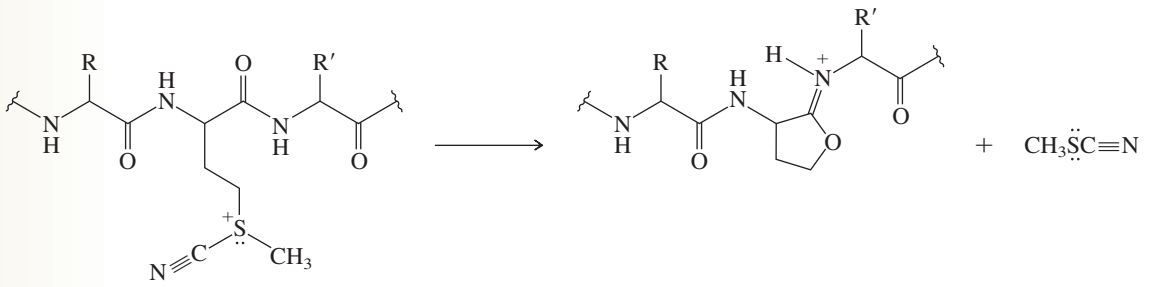
Methionine-containing peptide — Lactone — C-Terminal fragment — Methyl thiocyanate

(a) The mechanism begins with the reaction of cyanogen bromide with the peptide to give a sulfonium ion:



Methionine-containing peptide — Sulfonium ion — Bromide ion

The sulfonium ion then cyclizes to an iminolactone with loss of methyl thiocyanate.

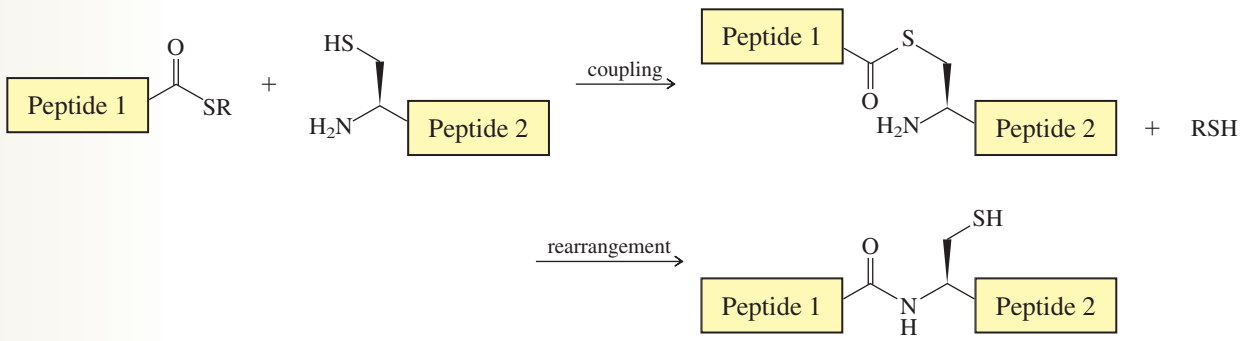


Sulfonium ion — Conjugate acid of iminolactone — Methyl thiocyanate

Using curved arrows to show the flow of electrons, suggest a reasonable mechanism for this cyclization.

(b) Hydrolysis of the conjugate acid of the iminolactone to the corresponding lactone cleaves the peptide chain. Write a stepwise mechanism for this reaction.

25.38 *Native chemical ligation* (NCL) is a method for coupling peptide chains. It requires that one of the peptides has an N-terminal cysteine, and the C terminus of the other peptide be a thioester. The thiol of the N-terminal cysteine of peptide 2 reacts with the thioester of peptide 1 to give an initial product that contains a "nonnative" thioester linkage. The initial product rearranges to a more stable, amide-linked (native) peptide. Write mechanisms for the coupling and rearrangement steps in NCL.



25.39 If you synthesized the tripeptide Leu-Phe-Ser from amino acids prepared by the Strecker synthesis, how many stereoisomers would you expect to be formed?

25.40 Automated amino acid analysis of peptides containing asparagine (Asn) and glutamine (Gln) residues gives a peak corresponding to ammonia. Why?

25.41 What are the products of each of the following reactions? Your answer should account for all the amino acid residues in the starting peptides.

(a) Reaction of Leu-Gly-Ser with 1-fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene

(b) Hydrolysis of the compound in part (a) in concentrated hydrochloric acid (100°C)

(c) Treatment of Ile-Glu-Phe with $C_6H_5N{=}C{=}S$, followed by hydrogen bromide in nitromethane

(d) Reaction of Asn-Ser-Ala with benzyloxycarbonyl chloride

(e) Reaction of the product of part (d) with *p*-nitrophenol and *N,N′*-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide

(f) Reaction of the product of part (e) with the ethyl ester of valine

(g) Hydrogenolysis of the product of part (f) by reaction with H_2 over palladium

25.42 The first 32 amino acids from the N terminus of the protein *bovine angiogenin* were determined by Edman degradation and have the sequence:

AQDDYRYIHFLTQHYDAKPKGRNDEYCFNMMK

(a) Identify the sites of cleavage during trypsin-catalyzed hydrolysis of this protein.

(b) What are the cleavage sites using chymotrypsin?

25.43 *Somatostatin* is a tetradecapeptide of the hypothalamus that inhibits the release of pituitary growth hormone. Its amino acid sequence has been determined by a combination of Edman degradations and enzymic hydrolysis experiments. On the basis of the following data, deduce the primary structure of somatostatin:

1. Edman degradation gave PTH-Ala.

2. Selective hydrolysis gave peptides having the following indicated sequences:

Phe-Trp

Thr-Ser-Cys

Lys-Thr-Phe

Thr-Phe-Thr-Ser-Cys

Asn-Phe-Phe-Trp-Lys

Ala-Gly-Cys-Lys-Asn-Phe

3. Somatostatin has a disulfide bridge.

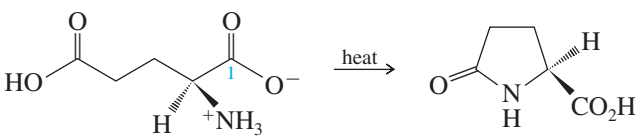
25.44 What protected amino acid would you anchor to the solid support in the first step of a synthesis of oxytocin (see Figure 25.5) by the Merrifield method?

Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 25

Amino Acids in Enantioselective Synthesis

Organic chemists speak of a "chiral pool," which comprises those naturally occurring compounds that are readily available as a single enantiomer and capable of being used as starting materials for the enantioselective synthesis of other chiral molecules. Amino acids are well represented in the chiral pool. All except glycine have at least one chirality center and, although L-amino acids are more abundant and less expensive than their D-enantiomers, both are available.

Most of the standard amino acids have served as starting materials for enantioselective syntheses. One of the most widely used is L-glutamic acid and its lactam (*S*)-pyroglutamic acid, which is easily prepared by heating an aqueous solution of L-glutamic acid in a sealed container.

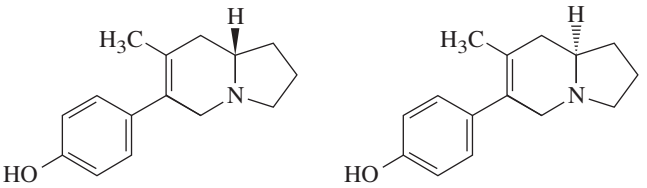


L-Glutamic acid (*S*)-Pyroglutamic acid

With three functional groups in a compound with only five carbons, L-glutamic acid and (*S*)-pyroglutamic acid provide access to more complex molecules via functional-group manipulation.

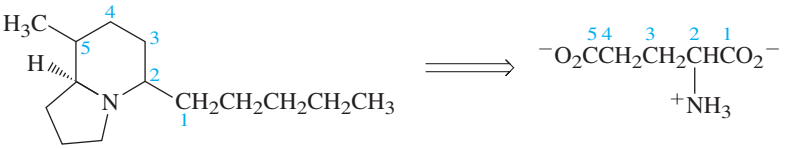
Many of the syntheses are lengthy, and most contain some specialized reactions. The following problems emphasize the planning aspect of amino acid-based enantioselective syntheses starting with either L-glutamic acid or (*S*)-pyroglutamic acid. The few reactions that are included are either familiar or similar to those covered in earlier chapters.

25.45 (*S*)-Pyroglutamic acid was used as the starting material in a synthesis of (+)-ipalbidine, an analgesic alkaloid obtained from the seeds of the white moonflower, *Ipomoea alba*. No bonds are made or broken to the chirality center of (*S*)-pyroglutamic acid in this synthesis. Which of the following is the structure of (+)-ipalbidine?

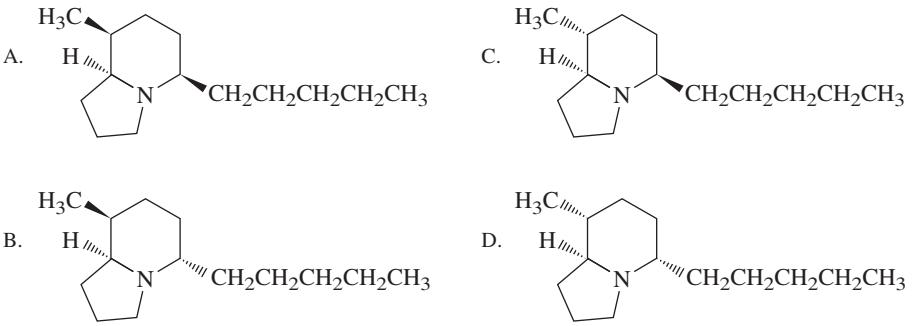


A. B.

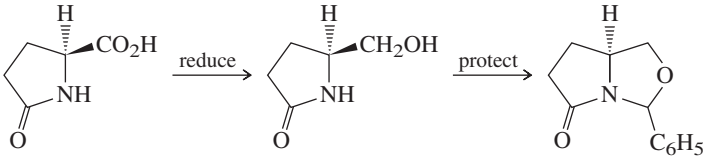
25.46 A synthesis of poison-dart frog toxin has been described that begins with L-glutamic acid.



The numbered carbons in the product correspond to the same numbered carbons in L-glutamic acid. No bonds to carbon-2 are made or broken in the synthesis. If the configuration at carbon-5 in the product is *R,* which of the following best represents the stereochemistry of the frog toxin?



25.47 One synthesis of fosinopril, a drug used to combat high blood pressure, starts with the reduction of (*S*)-pyroglutamic acid to the primary alcohol, followed by protection of the OH and NH groups.



What reaction conditions are appropriate for the protection step?

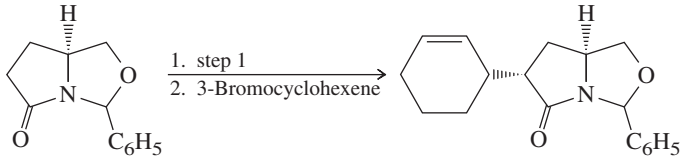
A. $C_6H_5\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}Cl$, pyridine

B. $C_6H_5CH{=}O$, *p*-toluenesulfonic acid, toluene, heat

C. $C_6H_5CO_2CH_3$

D. $C_6H_5CH_2Br$, Na_2CO_3, acetone

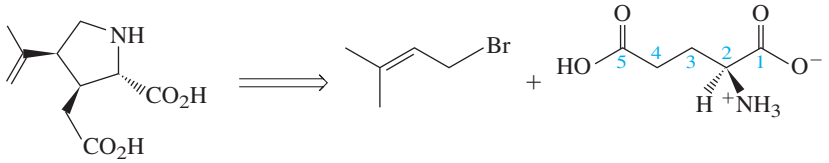
25.48 The *N,O*-protected compound formed in the preceding problem was alkylated with 3-bromocyclohexene.



What reaction conditions are appropriate for step 1?

A. $LiAlH_4$, diethyl ether
B. $NaOCH_2CH_3$, ethanol
C. Mg, diethyl ether
D. $[(CH_3)_2CH]_2NLi$, tetrahydrofuran

25.49 α-Kainic acid is a neurotoxin produced by certain algae. Several enantioselective syntheses of it have been described, one of which is based on 1-bromo-3-methyl-2-butene and L-glutamic acid.

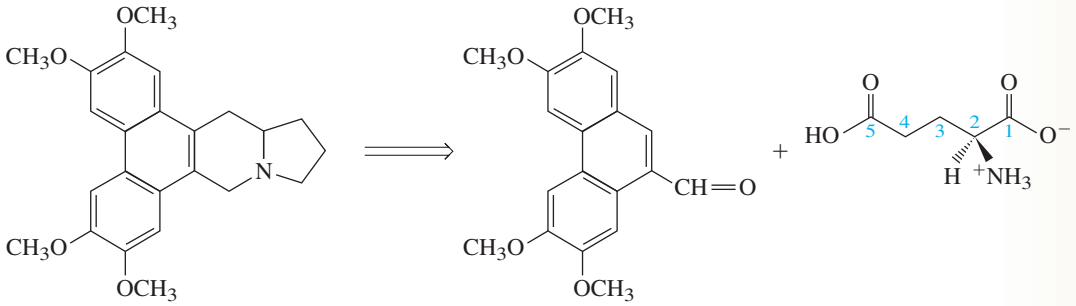


α-Kainic acid L-Glutamic acid

Which carbon of L-glutamic acid is involved in the only carbon–carbon bond forming step of the synthesis?

A. C-1
B. C-2
C. C-3
D. C-4
E. C-5

25.50 (*S*)-Tylophorine is an alkaloid isolated from a plant that grows in India and Southeast Asia, which is of interest as a potential antitumor drug. It has been synthesized by a multistep procedure based on L-glutamic acid and the phenanthrene derivative shown.



Tylophorine L-Glutamic acid

Which carbon of L-glutamic acid is involved in the only carbon–carbon bond forming step of the synthesis?

A. C-1
B. C-2
C. C-3
D. C-4
E. C-5

26

CHAPTER OUTLINE

26.1 Pyrimidines and Purines 1085
26.2 Nucleosides 1088
26.3 Nucleotides 1090
26.4 Bioenergetics 1091
26.5 ATP and Bioenergetics 1092
26.6 Phosphodiesters, Oligonucleotides, and Polynucleotides 1094
26.7 Nucleic Acids 1095
26.8 Secondary Structure of DNA: The Double Helix 1096
- "It Has Not Escaped Our Notice…" 1096

26.9 Tertiary Structure of DNA: Supercoils 1098
26.10 Replication of DNA 1100
26.11 Ribonucleic Acids 1102
26.12 Protein Biosynthesis 1104
26.13 AIDS 1105
26.14 DNA Sequencing 1106
26.15 The Human Genome Project 1108
26.16 DNA Profiling and the Polymerase Chain Reaction 1108
26.17 Recombinant DNA Technology 1111
26.18 Summary 1112
Problems 1115
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 26: Oligonucleotide Synthesis 1117

Gregor Mendel's studies of the inherited traits of garden peas received little attention during his lifetime. What he found is now recognized as the beginning of our understanding of genetics. Adenine, shown in the electrostatic potential map, is a "purine base" present in DNA and RNA.

Nucleosides, Nucleotides, and Nucleic Acids

In Chapter 1 we saw that a major achievement of the first half of the twentieth century was the picture of atomic and molecular structure revealed by quantum mechanics. In this chapter we examine the major achievement of the second half of that century—a molecular view of genetics based on the structure and biochemistry of nucleic acids.

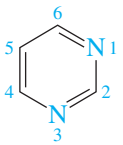
Nucleic acids are substances present in the nuclei of cells and were known long before anyone suspected they were the primary substances involved in the storage, transmission, and processing of genetic information. There are two kinds of nucleic acids: ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Both are biopolymers based on three structural units: a carbohydrate, a phosphate ester linkage between carbohydrates, and a heterocyclic aromatic compound. The heterocyclic aromatic compounds are referred to as purine and pyrimidine bases. We'll begin with them and follow the structural thread:

Purine and pyrimidine bases → Nucleosides → Nucleotides → Nucleic acids

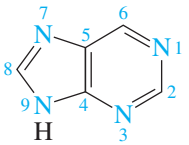
There will be a few pauses along the way as we stop to examine some biochemical roles played by these compounds separate from their genetic one.

26.1 Pyrimidines and Purines

Two nitrogen-containing heterocyclic aromatic compounds—**pyrimidine** and **purine**—are the parents of the "bases" that constitute a key structural unit of nucleic acids.



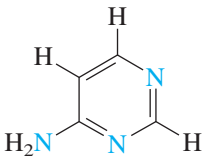
Pyrimidine



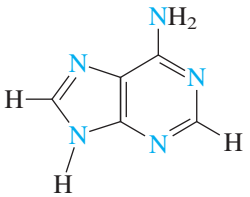
Purine

Both pyrimidine and purine are planar. You will see how important this flat shape is when we consider the structure of nucleic acids. In terms of their chemistry, pyrimidine and purine resemble pyridine. They are weak bases and relatively unreactive toward electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Pyrimidine and purine themselves do not occur naturally, but many of their derivatives do. Before going too far, we need to point out an important structural difference between derivatives that bear —OH groups and those with $—NH_2$ groups. The structure of a pyrimidine or purine that bears an $—NH_2$ group follows directly from the structure of the parent ring system.



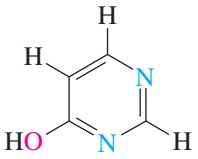
4-Aminopyrimidine



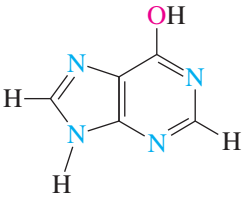
6-Aminopurine

6-Aminopurine is *adenine* and will appear numerous times in this chapter.

However, the corresponding compounds that have an —OH group resemble enols:

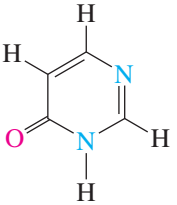


4-Hydroxypyrimidine

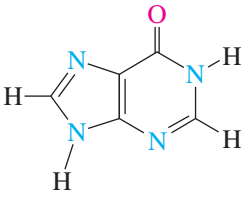


6-Hydroxypurine

but exist instead in their keto forms.

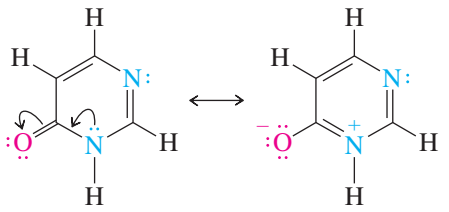


Keto form of 4-hydroxypyrimidine

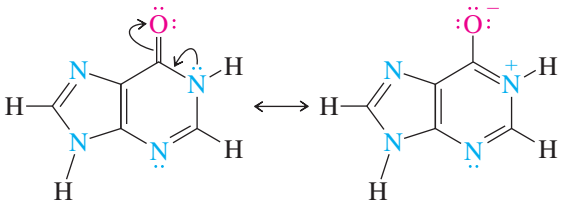


Keto form of 6-hydroxypurine

By analogy to phenols, we would expect the isomers with —OH groups on benzene-like rings to be more stable. This turns out not to be true because the keto forms are also aromatic owing to amide resonance.



Resonance in keto form of 4-hydroxypyrimidine



Resonance in keto form of 6-hydroxypurine

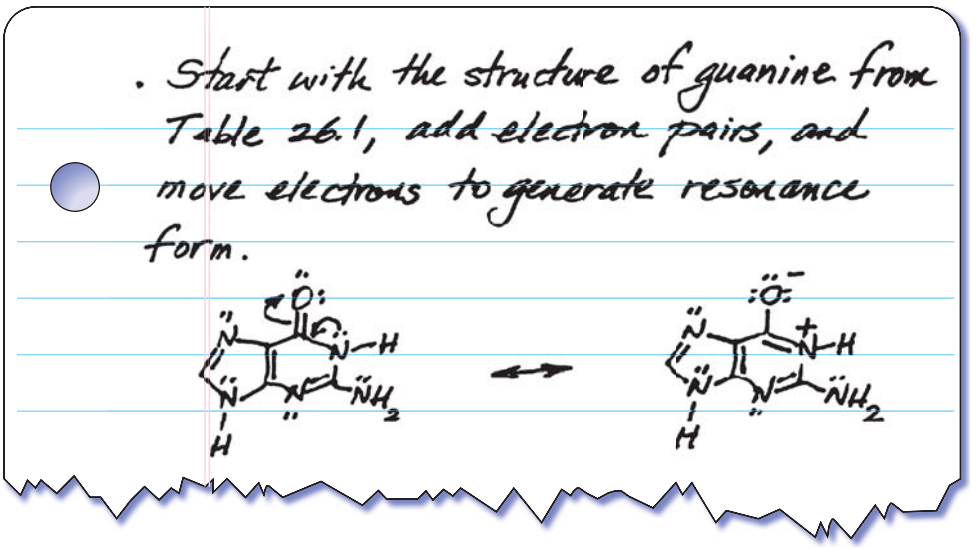
These relationships are general. Hydroxyl-substituted purines and pyrimidines exist in their keto forms; amino-substituted ones retain structures with an amino group on the ring. The pyrimidine and purine bases in DNA and RNA listed in Table 26.1 follow this general rule. Beginning in Section 26.7 we'll see how critical it is that we know the correct tautomeric forms of the nucleic acid bases.

Problem 26.1

Write a structural formula for the enol tautomer of cytosine (Table 26.1).

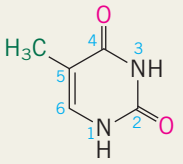
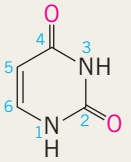
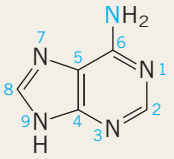
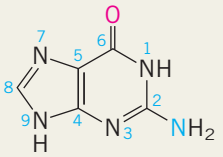
Problem 26.2

(a) Write a resonance form for guanine in which the six-membered ring has an electronic structure analogous to benzene. Show all unshared pairs and don't forget to include formal charges.

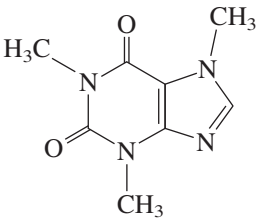


(b) Write three contributors for uracil that involve amide resonance.

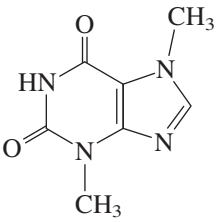
TABLE 26.1 Pyrimidines and Purines That Occur in DNA and/or RNA

	Name	Structure	Occurrence
Pyrimidines			
	Cytosine		DNA and RNA
	Thymine		DNA
	Uracil		RNA
Purines			
	Adenine		DNA and RNA
	Guanine		DNA and RNA

Pyrimidines and purines occur naturally in substances other than nucleic acids. Coffee, for example, is a familiar source of caffeine. Tea contains both caffeine and theobromine.



Caffeine



Theobromine

The caffeine added to soft drinks is the caffeine that was removed when decaffeinating coffee and tea.

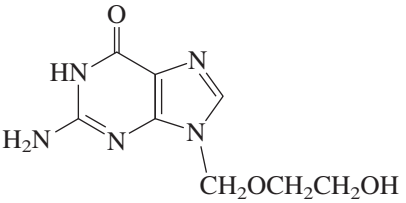
Problem 26.3

Classify caffeine and theobromine according to whether each is a pyrimidine or a purine. One of these cannot isomerize to an enolic form; two different enols are possible for the other. Explain and write structural formulas for the possible enols.

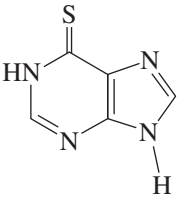
Several synthetic pyrimidines and purines are useful drugs. *Acyclovir* was the first effective antiviral compound and is used to treat herpes infections. 6-*Mercaptopurine* is

Acyclovir and 6-mercaptopurine are representative of the kind of drugs for which Gertrude B. Elion and George H. Hitchings of Burroughs Wellcome were awarded a share of the 1988 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine. The co-recipient was Sir James Black for his work in separate areas of drug development.

one of the drugs used to treat childhood leukemia, which has become a very treatable form of cancer with a cure rate approaching 80%.



Acyclovir



6-Mercaptopurine

26.2 Nucleosides

The most important derivatives of pyrimidines and purines are nucleosides. **Nucleosides** are glycosylamines in which a pyrimidine or purine nitrogen is bonded to the anomeric carbon of a carbohydrate. The nucleosides listed in Table 26.2 are the main building blocks of nucleic acids. In RNA the carbohydrate component is D-ribofuranose; in DNA it is 2-deoxy-D-ribofuranose.

Among the points to be made concerning Table 26.2 are the following:

1. Three of the bases (cytosine, adenine, and guanine) occur in both RNA and DNA.
2. Uracil occurs only in RNA; thymine occurs only in DNA.
3. The anomeric carbon of the carbohydrate is attached to N-1 in pyrimidine nucleosides and to N-9 in purines.
4. The pyrimidine and purine bases are cis to the $-CH_2OH$ group of the furanose ring (β stereochemistry).
5. Potential hydrogen-bonding groups ($-NH_2$ and $C{=}O$) point away from the furanose ring.

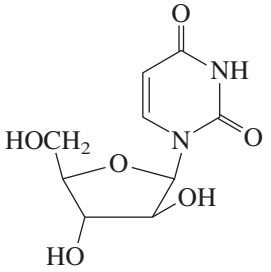
The numbering scheme used for nucleosides maintains the independence of the two structural units. The pyrimidine or purine is numbered in the usual way. So is the carbohydrate, except that a prime symbol (′) follows each locant. Thus adenosine is a nucleoside of D-ribose, and 2′-deoxyadenosine is a nucleoside of 2-deoxy-D-ribose.

Problem 26.4

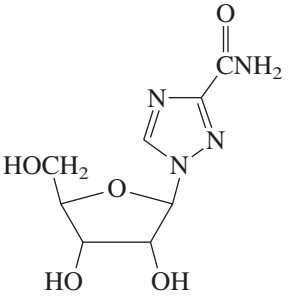
The nucleoside *cordycepin* was isolated from cultures of the fungus *Cordyceps militaris* and found to be 3′-deoxyadenosine. Write its structural formula.

Table 26.2 doesn't include all of the nucleoside components of nucleic acids. The presence of methyl groups on pyrimidine and purine rings is a common, and often important, variation on the general theme.

Although the term *nucleoside* was once limited to the compounds in Table 26.2 and a few others, current use is more permissive. Pyrimidine derivatives of D-arabinose, for example, occur in the free state in certain sponges and are called *spongonucleosides.* The powerful antiviral drug ribavirin, used to treat hepatitis C and Lassa fever, is a synthetic nucleoside analog in which the base, rather than being a pyrimidine or purine, is a *triazole.*

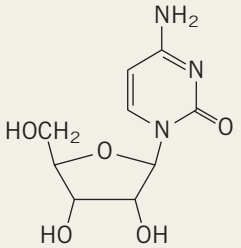
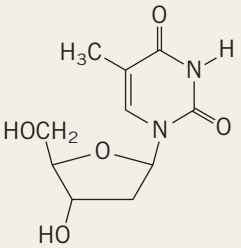
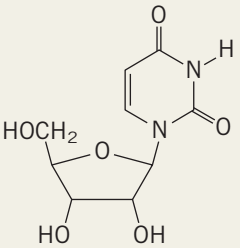
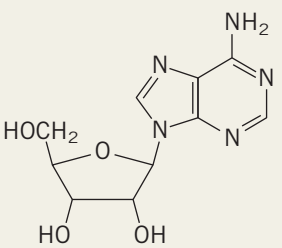
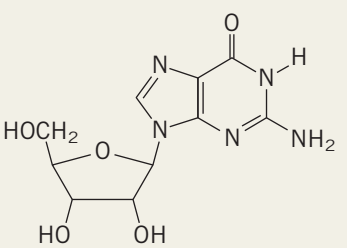
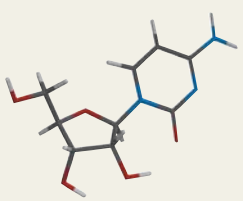
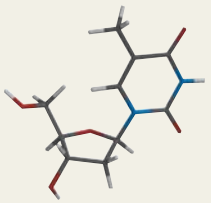
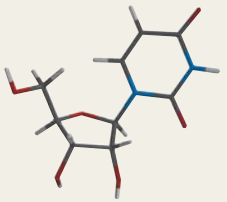
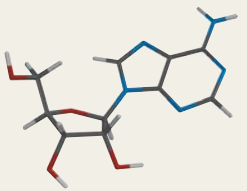
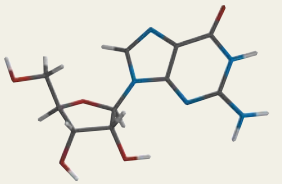


1-β-D-Arabinofuranosyluracil ("spongouridine")



Ribavirin

TABLE 26.2 The Major Pyrimidine and Purine Nucleosides in RNA and DNA

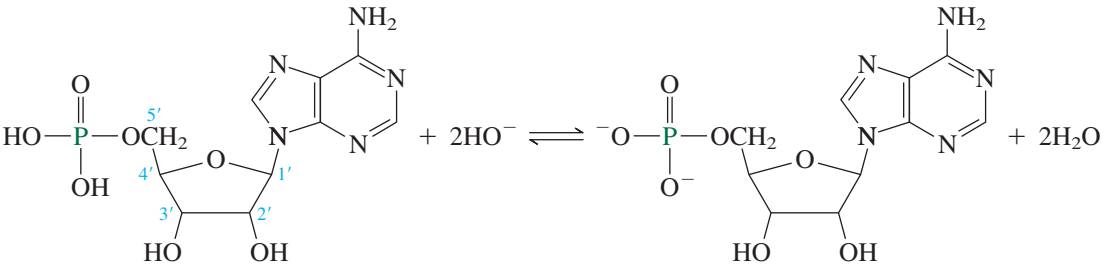
	Pyrimidines			Purines	
Name	**Cytidine**	**Thymidine**	**Uridine**	**Adenosine**	**Guanosine**
Abbreviation*	C	T	U	A	G
Systematic name	1-β-D-Ribofuranosylcytosine	2′-Deoxy-1-β-D-ribofuranosylthymine	1-β-D-Ribofuranosyluracil	9-β-D-Ribofuranosyladenine	9-β-D-Ribofuranosylguanine
Structural formula					
Molecular model					
Found in	RNA 2′-Deoxy analog in DNA	DNA	RNA	RNA 2′-Deoxy analog in DNA	RNA 2′-Deoxy analog in DNA

*Sometimes the abbreviation applies to the pyrimidine or purine base, sometimes to the nucleoside. Though this may seem confusing, it is normally clear from the context what is intended and causes no confusion in practice.

1089

26.3 Nucleotides

Nucleotides are phosphoric acid esters of nucleosides. Those derived from adenosine, of which *adenosine 5′-monophosphate* (AMP) is but one example, are especially prominent. AMP is a weak diprotic acid with pK_a's for ionization of 3.8 and 6.2, respectively. In aqueous solution at pH 7, both OH groups of the $P(O)(OH)_2$ unit are ionized.

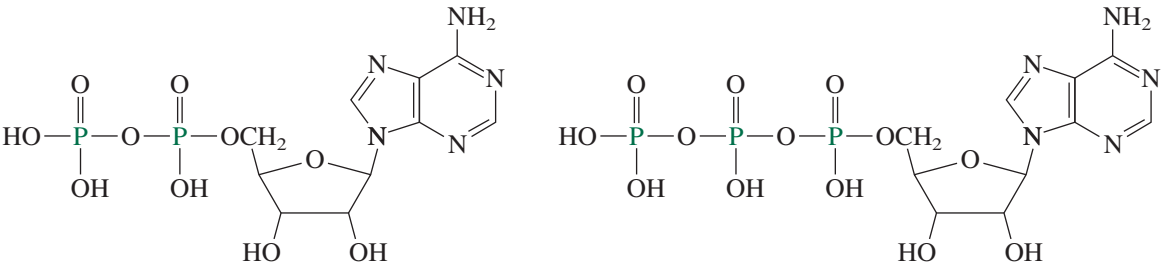


Adenosine 5′-monophosphate (AMP) Major species at pH 7

Problem 26.5

Write a structural formula for 2′-deoxycytidine 3′-monophosphate. You may wish to refer to Table 26.2 for the structure of cytidine.

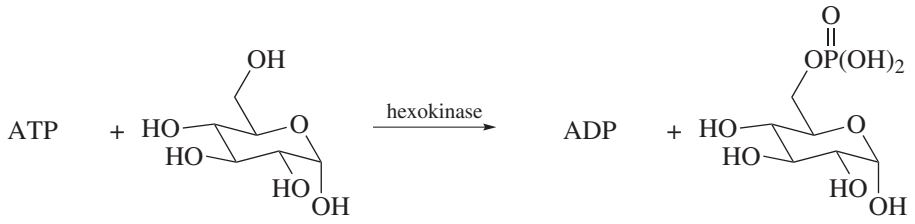
Other important 5′-nucleotides of adenosine include **adenosine 5′-diphosphate** (ADP) and **adenosine 5′-triphosphate** (ATP):



Adenosine 5′-diphosphate (ADP) Adenosine 5′-triphosphate (ATP)

ATP is the main energy-storing molecule for practically every form of life on Earth. We often speak of ATP as a "high-energy compound" and its P—O bonds as "high-energy bonds." This topic is discussed in more detail in Sections 26.4 and 26.5.

The biological transformations that involve ATP are both numerous and fundamental. They include, for example, many *phosphorylation* reactions in which ATP transfers one of its phosphate units to the —OH of another molecule. These phosphorylations are catalyzed by enzymes called *kinases.* An example is the first step in the metabolism of glucose:

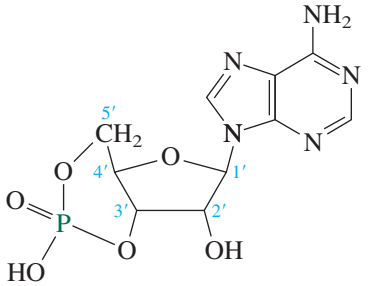


Adenosine triphosphate α-D-Glucopyranose Adenosine diphosphate α-D-Glucopyranose 6-phosphate

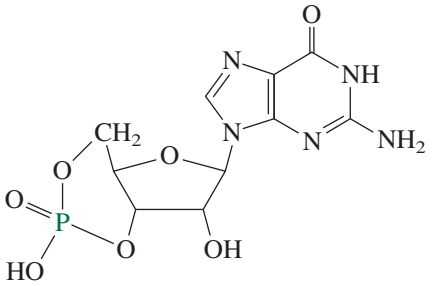
Earl Sutherland of Vanderbilt University won the 1971 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for uncovering the role of cAMP as a second messenger in connection with his studies of the "fight or flight" hormone epinephrine (see Section 25.6).

Both adenosine and guanosine form cyclic monophosphates (*cyclic-AMP* or *cAMP* and *cyclic-GMP* or *cGMP,* respectively) that are involved in a large number of biological processes as "second messengers." Many hormones (the "first messengers") act by stimulating the formation of cAMP or cGMP on a cell surface, which triggers a series of events

characteristic of the organism's response to the hormone. Signalling by cAMP is also involved in the activation of G-coupled protein receptors (see Section 25.23).



Adenosine 3′,5′-cyclic monophosphate (cAMP)



Guanosine 3′,5′-cyclic monophosphate (cGMP)

As we saw in the boxed essay *Oh NO! It's Inorganic!* in Chapter 25, nitric oxide (NO) expands blood vessels and increases blood flow. This process begins when NO stimulates the synthesis of cGMP as a second messenger. Erectile dysfunction drugs such as *sildenafil* (Viagra) increase the concentration of cGMP by inhibiting the enzyme that catalyzes hydrolysis of its cyclic phosphate unit.

Problem 26.6

Cyclic-AMP is formed from ATP in a reaction catalyzed by the enzyme *adenylate cyclase.* Assume that adenylate cyclase acts as a base to remove a proton from the 3′-hydroxyl group of ATP and write a mechanism for the formation of cAMP.

26.4 Bioenergetics

Recall that free energy is the energy available to do work. By focusing on free energy, we concern ourselves more directly with what is important to a living organism.

Bioenergetics is the study of the thermodynamics of biological processes, especially those that are important in energy storage and transfer. Some of its conventions are slightly different from those we are accustomed to. First, it is customary to focus on changes in free energy (ΔG) rather than changes in enthalpy (ΔH). Consider the reaction

$$m\text{A}(aq) \rightleftharpoons n\text{B}(aq)$$

where (aq) indicates that both A and B are in aqueous solution. The reaction is spontaneous in the direction written when ΔG is negative, nonspontaneous when ΔG is positive.

But spontaneity depends on the concentrations of reactants and products. If the ratio $[\text{B}]^n/[\text{A}]^m$ is less than a certain value, the reaction is spontaneous in the forward direction; if $[\text{B}]^n/[\text{A}]^m$ exceeds this value, the reaction is spontaneous in the reverse direction. Therefore, it is useful to define a **standard free-energy change ($\Delta G°$)** that applies to a standard state where [A] = [B] = 1 M.

$$\begin{array}{lcc} & m\text{A}(aq) \rightleftharpoons & n\text{B}(aq) \\ \text{standard state:} & 1\text{ M} & 1\text{ M} \end{array}$$

Reactions are classified as **exergonic** or **endergonic** according to the sign of $\Delta G°$. An exergonic reaction is one in which $\Delta G°$ is negative, an endergonic reaction has a positive value of $\Delta G°$.

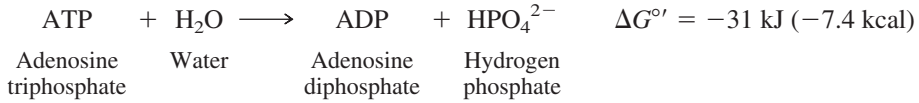
Thus, ΔG tells us about the *reaction* with respect to the substances present and their concentrations. $\Delta G°$ focuses more clearly on the differences in free energy between the reactants and products by removing their concentrations from consideration.

The next point takes the standard-state idea and makes it more suitable for biological processes by defining a new $\Delta G°$, called $\Delta G°'$. This new standard state is one with a pH of 7. This is the standard state used most of the time for biochemical reactions and is the one we will use. Not only does it make a big difference in reactions in which H^+ is consumed or produced, it also requires us to be aware of the form in which various species exist at a pH of 7. A reaction that is endergonic at $[H^+] = 1$ M can easily become exergonic at $[H^+] = 10^{-7}$ M (pH = 7) and vice versa.

26.5 ATP and Bioenergetics

The key reaction in bioenergetics is the interconversion of ATP and ADP, usually expressed in terms of the hydrolysis of ATP.

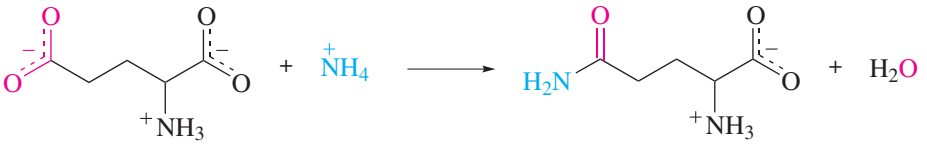
HPO_4^{2-} is often referred to as "inorganic phosphate" and abbreviated P_i.



As written, the reaction is exergonic at pH = 7. The reverse process—conversion of ADP to ATP—is endergonic. Relative to ADP + HPO_4^{2-}, ATP is a "high-energy compound."

When coupled to some other process, the conversion of ATP to ADP can provide the free energy to transform an otherwise endergonic process to an exergonic one. Take, for example, the conversion of glutamic acid to glutamine at pH = 7.

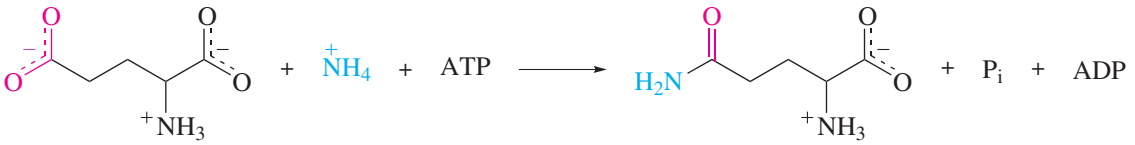
Equation 1:



Equation 1 has $\Delta G^{\circ\prime} = +14$ kJ and is endergonic. The main reason for this is that one of the very stable carboxylate groups of glutamic acid is converted to a less-stable amide function.

Nevertheless, the biosynthesis of glutamine proceeds from glutamic acid. The difference is that the endergonic process in Equation 1 is coupled with the strongly exergonic hydrolysis of ATP.

Equation 2:

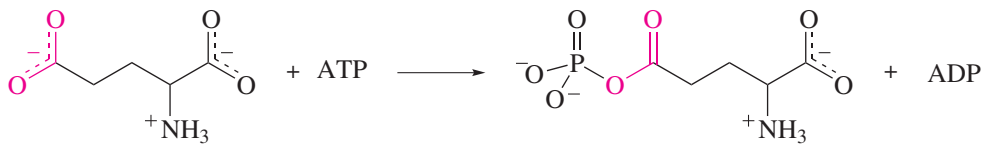


Adding the value of $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ for the hydrolysis of ATP (−31 kJ) to that of Equation 1 (+14 kJ) gives $\Delta G^{\circ\prime} = -17$ kJ for Equation 2. The biosynthesis of glutamine from glutamic acid is exergonic because it is coupled to the hydrolysis of ATP.

Problem 26.7

Verify that Equation 2 is obtained by adding Equation 1 to the equation for the hydrolysis of ATP.

There is an important qualification to the idea that ATP can serve as a free-energy source for otherwise endergonic processes. There must be some mechanism by which ATP reacts with one or more species along the reaction pathway. Simply being present and undergoing independent hydrolysis isn't enough. More often than not, the mechanism involves transfer of a phosphate unit from ATP to some nucleophilic site. In the case of glutamine synthesis, this step is phosphate transfer to glutamic acid to give γ-glutamyl phosphate as a reactive intermediate.



The γ-glutamyl phosphate formed in this step is a mixed anhydride of glutamic acid and phosphoric acid. It is activated toward nucleophilic acyl substitution and gives glutamine when attacked by ammonia.

Problem 26.8

Write a stepwise mechanism for the formation of glutamine by attack of NH_3 on γ-glutamyl phosphate.

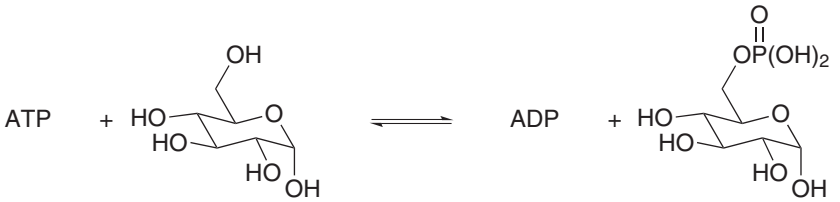
If free energy is stored and transferred by way of ATP, where does the ATP come from? It comes from ADP by the endergonic reaction

$$\underset{\text{Adenosine diphosphate}}{\text{ADP}} + \underset{\text{Hydrogen phosphate}}{HPO_4^{2-}} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Adenosine triphosphate}}{\text{ATP}} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O} \qquad \Delta G^{\circ\prime} = +31 \text{ kJ } (+7.4 \text{ kcal})$$

which you recognize as the reverse of the exergonic hydrolysis of ATP. The free energy to drive this endergonic reaction comes from the metabolism of energy sources such as fats and carbohydrates. In the metabolism of glucose during glycolysis, for example, about one third of the free energy produced is used to convert ADP to ATP. Glycolysis produces phosphoenolpyruvate, which provides sufficient energy for the conversion of ADP to ATP. Energy-rich compounds are compared in terms of $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ for their hydrolysis in Table 26.3.

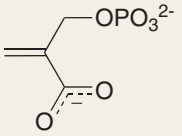
Problem 26.9

Is $K > 1$ or $K < 1$ for the transfer of a phosphate group from ATP to glucose to give glucose 6-phosphate?



As important as nucleotides of adenosine are to bioenergetics, that is not the only indispensable part they play in biology. The remainder of this chapter describes how these and related nucleotides are the key compounds in storing and expressing genetic information.

TABLE 26.3 $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ for the Hydrolysis of Bioenergetically Important Phosphates

Phosphate	$\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ kJ/mol; kcal/mol
Phosphoenolpyruvate 	–62.2 kJ/mol; –14.9 kcal/mol
ADP	–35 kJ/mol; –8.4 kcal/mol
ATP	–31 kJ/mol; –7.4 kcal/mol
Glucose-1-phosphate	–21.0 kJ/mol; –5.0 kcal/mol
Glucose-6-phosphate	–13.9 kJ/mol; –3.3 kcal/mol
AMP	–9.2 kJ/mol; –2.2 kcal/mol

26.6 Phosphodiesters, Oligonucleotides, and Polynucleotides

Just as amino acids can join together to give dipeptides, tripeptides, and so on up to polypeptides and proteins, so too can nucleotides join to form larger molecules. Analogous to the "peptide bond" that connects two amino acids, a **phosphodiester** joins two nucleosides. Figure 26.1 shows the structure and highlights the two phosphodiester units of a trinucleotide of 2′-deoxy-D-ribose in which the bases are adenine (A), thymine (T), and guanine (G). Phosphodiester units connect the 3′-oxygen of one nucleoside to the 5′-oxygen of the next. Nucleotide sequences are written with the free 5′ end at the left and the free 3′ end at the right. Thus, the trinucleotide sequence shown in Figure 26.1 is written as ATG.

The same kind of 5′→3′ phosphodiester units that join the 2′-deoxy-D-ribose units in Figure 26.1 are also responsible for connecting nucleosides of D-ribose.

Problem 26.10

How would the structures of the trinucleotides AUG and GUA in which all of the pentoses are D-ribose differ from the trinucleotide in Figure 26.1?

Adding nucleotides to the 3′-oxygen of an existing structure is called *elongation* and leads ultimately to a **polynucleotide.** The most important polynucleotides are ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). As we shall see in later sections, the polynucleotide chains of DNA and some RNAs are quite long and contain hundreds of thousands of bases.

Oligonucleotide synthesis is the subject of the Descriptive Passage at the end of this chapter.

Polynucleotides of modest chain length, say 50 or fewer, are called **oligonucleotides.** With the growth of the biotechnology industry, the chemical synthesis of oligonucleotides has become a thriving business with hundreds of companies offering custom syntheses of oligonucleotides of prescribed sequences. Such oligonucleotides are required as "primers" in the polymerase chain reaction (Section 26.16) and as "probes" in DNA cloning and genetic engineering. Their synthesis is modeled after the Merrifield solid-phase method and, like it, is automated. The synthesis of a typical oligonucleotide containing 20–50 bases can be accomplished in a few hours.

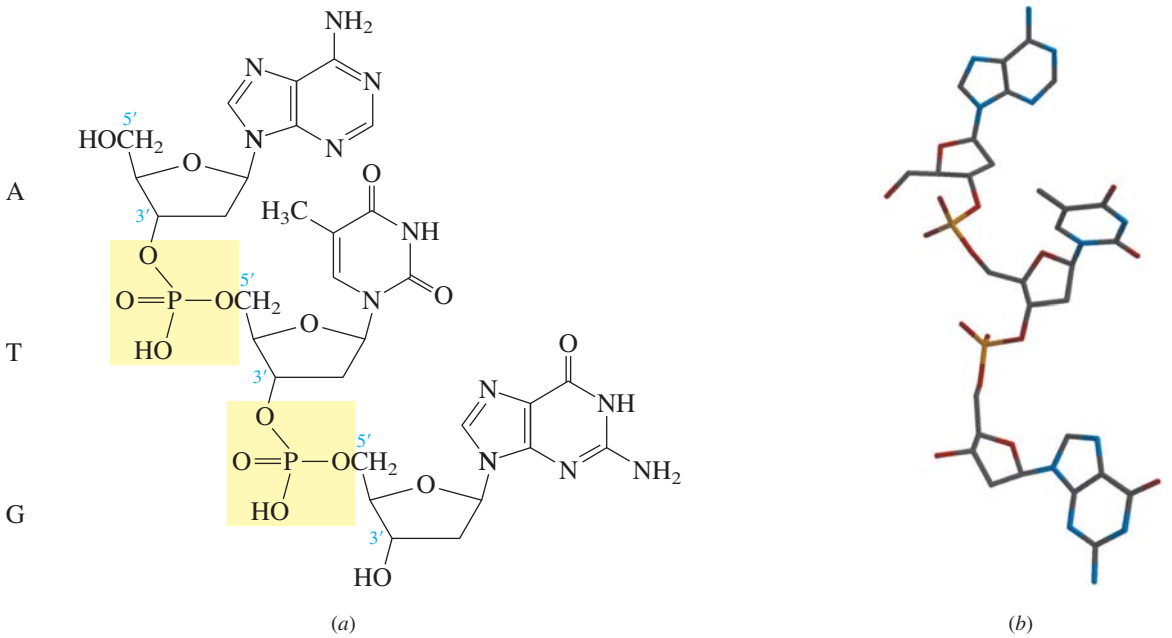


Figure 26.1

(*a*) Structural formula and (*b*) molecular model of the trinucleotide ATG. The phosphodiester units highlighted in yellow in (*a*) join the oxygens at 3′ of one nucleoside to 5′ of the next. By convention, the sequence is read in the direction that starts at the free CH_2OH group (5′) and proceeds toward the free 3′ OH group at other end.

26.7 Nucleic Acids

Gregor Mendel systematically studied and statistically analyzed inherited traits in garden peas.

The nineteenth century saw three things happen that, taken together, prepared the way for our present understanding of genetics. In 1854, an Augustinian monk named Gregor Mendel began growing peas and soon discovered some fundamental relationships about their inherited characteristics. Mendel discovered two laws of heredity: segregation and independent assortment. His work demonstrated the existence of paired elementary units of heredity, and revealed statistical relationships that govern their expression. He described these at a scientific meeting in 1865 and sent copies of a paper describing his work to a number of prominent scientists. At about the same time (1859), Charles Darwin published his book *On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection.* Mendel's work was ignored until it was rediscovered in 1900; Darwin's was widely known and vigorously debated. The third event occurred in 1869 when Johann Miescher isolated a material he called *nuclein* from the nuclei of white blood cells harvested from the pus of surgical bandages. Miescher's nuclein contained both a protein and an acidic, phosphorus-rich substance that, when eventually separated from the protein, was given the name *nucleic acid.*

After 1900, genetic research—but not research on nucleic acids—blossomed. Nucleic acids were difficult to work with, hard to purify, and, even though they were present in all cells, did not seem to be very interesting. Early analyses, later shown to be incorrect, were interpreted to mean that nucleic acids were polymers consisting of repeats of some sequence of adenine (A), thymine (T), guanine (G), and cytosine (C) in a 1:1:1:1 ratio. Nucleic acids didn't seem to offer a rich enough alphabet from which to build a genetic dictionary. Most workers in the field believed proteins to be better candidates.

The Mendel Medal, awarded by Villanova University.

More attention began to be paid to nucleic acids in 1945 when Oswald Avery of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research found that he could cause a nonvirulent strain of a bacterium (*Streptococcus pneumoniae*) to produce virulent offspring by incubating them with a substance isolated from a virulent strain. What was especially important was that this virulence was passed on to succeeding generations and could only result from a permanent change in the genetic makeup—what we now call the **genome**—of the bacterium. Avery established that the substance responsible was DNA and in a letter to his brother speculated that it "may be a gene."

Avery's paper prompted other biochemists to rethink their ideas about DNA. One of them, Erwin Chargaff of Columbia University, soon discovered that the distribution of adenine, thymine, cytosine, and guanine differed from species to species, but was the same within a species and within all the cells of a species. Perhaps DNA did have the capacity to carry genetic information after all. Chargaff also found that regardless of the source of the DNA, half the bases were purines and the other half were pyrimidines. Significantly, the ratio of the purine adenine (A) to the pyrimidine thymine (T) was always close to 1:1. Likewise, the ratio of the purine guanine (G) to the pyrimidine cytosine (C) was also close to 1:1. For human DNA the values are:

Purine	Pyrimidine	Base ratio
Adenine (A) 30.3%	Thymine (T) 30.3%	A/T = 1.00
Guanine (G) 19.5%	Cytosine (C) 19.9%	G/C = 0.98
Total purines 49.8%	Total pyrimidines 50.2%	

Problem 26.11

Estimate the guanine content in turtle DNA if adenine = 28.7% and cytosine = 21.3%.

Avery's studies shed light on the *function* of DNA. Chargaff's touched on *structure* in that knowing the distribution of A, T, G, and C in DNA is analogous to knowing the amino acid composition of a protein, but not its sequence or three-dimensional shape.

The breakthrough came in 1953 when James D. Watson and Francis H. C. Crick proposed a structure for DNA. The Watson–Crick proposal ranks as one of the most important in all of science and has spurred a revolution in our understanding of genetics. The

structure of DNA is detailed in the next section. The boxed essay *It Has Not Escaped Our Notice*... describes how it came about.

26.8 Secondary Structure of DNA: The Double Helix

Watson and Crick shared the 1962 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine with Maurice Wilkins who, with Rosalind Franklin, was responsible for the X-ray crystallographic work.

Watson and Crick relied on molecular modeling to guide their thinking about the structure of DNA. Because X-ray crystallographic evidence suggested that DNA was composed of two polynucleotide chains running in opposite directions, they focused on the forces holding the two chains together. Hydrogen bonding between bases seemed the most likely candidate.

It Has Not Escaped Our Notice...

Our text began with an application of physics to chemistry when we described the electronic structure of atoms. We saw then that Erwin Schrödinger's introduction of wave mechanics figured prominently in developing the theories that form the basis for our present understanding. As we near the end of our text, we see applications of chemistry to areas of biology that are fundamental to life itself. Remarkably, Schrödinger appears again, albeit less directly. His 1944 book *What Is Life?* made the case for studying genes, their structure, and function.

Schrödinger's book inspired a number of physicists to change fields and undertake research in biology from a physics perspective. One of these was Francis Crick who, after earning an undergraduate degree in physics from University College, London, and while employed in defense work for the British government, decided that the most interesting scientific questions belonged to biology. Crick entered Cambridge University in 1949 as a 30-year-old graduate student, eventually settling on a research problem involving X-ray crystallography of proteins.

One year later, 22-year-old James Watson completed his Ph.D. studies on bacterial viruses at Indiana University and began postdoctoral research in biochemistry in Copenhagen. After a year at Copenhagen, Watson decided Cambridge was the place to be.

Thus it was that the paths of James Watson and Francis Crick crossed in the fall of 1951. One was a physicist, the other a biologist. Both were ambitious in the sense of wanting to do great things and shared a belief that the chemical structure of DNA was the most important scientific question of the time. At first, Watson and Crick talked about DNA in their spare time because each was working on another project. Soon, however, it became their major effort. Their sense of urgency grew when they learned that Linus Pauling, fresh from his proposal of helical protein structures, had turned his attention to DNA. Indeed, Watson and Crick were using the Pauling approach to structure—take what is known about the structure of small molecules, couple it to structural information about larger ones, and build molecular models consistent with the data.

At the same time, Maurice Wilkins and Rosalind Franklin at King's College, Cambridge, were beginning to obtain high-quality X-ray crystallographic data of DNA. Some of their results were presented in a seminar at King's attended by Watson, and even more were disclosed in a progress report to the Medical Research Council of the U.K. Armed with Chargaff's A = T and G = C relationships and Franklin's X-ray data, Watson and Crick began their model building. A key moment came when Jerry Donohue, a postdoctoral colleague from the United States, noticed that they were using the wrong structures for the pyrimidine and purine bases. Watson and Crick were using models of the enol forms of thymine, cytosine, and guanine, rather than the correct keto forms (recall Section 26.1). Once they fixed this error, the now-familiar model shown in Figure 26.2 emerged fairly quickly and they had the structure of DNA.

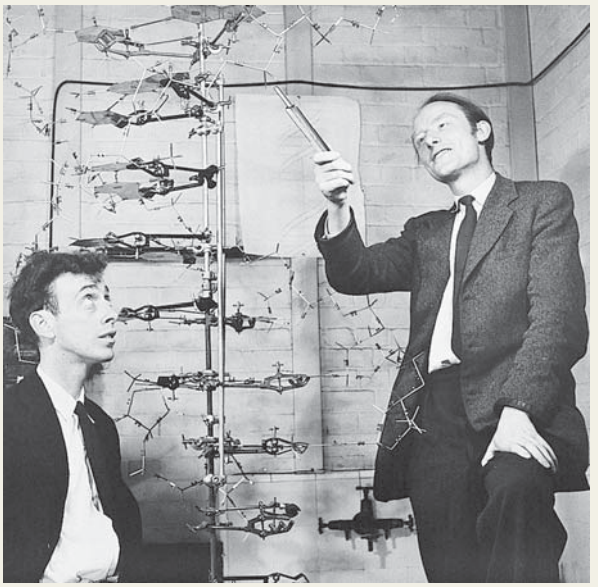


Figure 26.2

Molecular modeling—1953 style. James Watson (*left*) and Francis Crick (*right*) with their DNA model. © *A. Barrington Brown/Science Source Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Watson and Crick published their work in a paper entitled "A Structure for Deoxyribose Nucleic Acid" in the British journal *Nature* on April 25, 1953. In addition to being one of the most important papers of the twentieth century, it is also remembered for one brief sentence appearing near the end.

> "It has not escaped our notice that the specific pairing we have postulated immediately suggests a possible copying mechanism for the genetic material."

True to their word, Watson and Crick followed up their April 25 paper with another on May 30. This second paper, "Genetical Implications of the Structure of Deoxyribonucleic Acid," outlines a mechanism for DNA replication that is still accepted as essentially correct.

After exploring a number of possibilities, Watson and Crick hit on the arrangement shown in Figure 26.3 in which adenine and thymine comprise one complementary *base pair* and guanine and cytosine another. This base-pairing scheme has several desirable features.

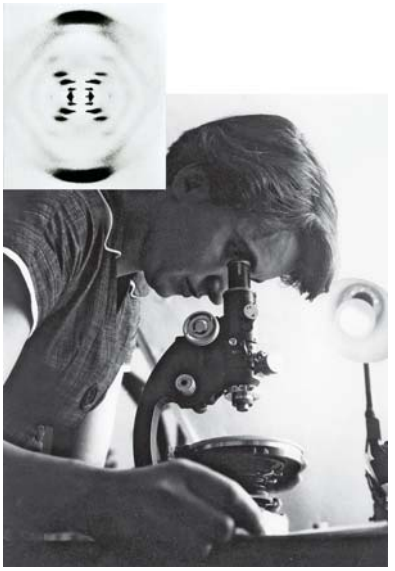
1. Pairing A with T and G with C gives the proper Chargaff ratios (A = T and G = C).
2. Each pair contains one purine and one pyrimidine base. This makes the A---T and G---C pairs approximately the same size and ensures a consistent distance between the two DNA strands.
3. Complementarity between A and T, and G and C suggests a mechanism for copying DNA. This is called replication and is discussed in Section 26.10.

Figure 26.4 supplements Figure 26.3 by showing portions of two DNA strands arranged side by side with the base pairs in the middle.

Hydrogen bonding between complementary bases is responsible for association between the strands, whereas conformational features of its carbohydrate–phosphate backbone and the orientation of the bases with respect to the furanose rings govern the overall shape of each strand. Using the X-ray crystallographic data available to them, Watson and Crick built a molecular model in which each strand took the shape of a right-handed helix. Joining two antiparallel strands by appropriate hydrogen bonds produced the **double helix** shown in the photograph (Figure 26.2). Figure 26.5 shows two modern renderings of DNA models.

In addition to hydrogen bonding between the two polynucleotide chains, the double-helical arrangement is stabilized by having its negatively charged phosphate groups on the outside where they are in contact with water and various cations, Na^+, Mg^{2+}, and ammonium ions, for example. Attractive van der Waals forces between the aromatic pyrimidine and purine rings, called π-*stacking,* stabilize the layered arrangement of the bases on the inside. Even though the bases are on the inside, they are accessible to other substances through two grooves that run along the axis of the double helix. They are more accessible via the *major groove,* which is almost twice as wide as the *minor groove.* The grooves differ in size because of the way the bases are tilted with respect to the furanose ring.

The structure proposed by Watson and Crick was modeled to fit crystallographic data obtained on a sample of the most common form of DNA called B-DNA. Other forms



Rosalind Franklin. Her X-ray crystallographic data was used to solve the structure of DNA.

A helical structure for DNA strands had been suggested in 1949 by Sven Furberg in his Ph.D. dissertation at the University of London.

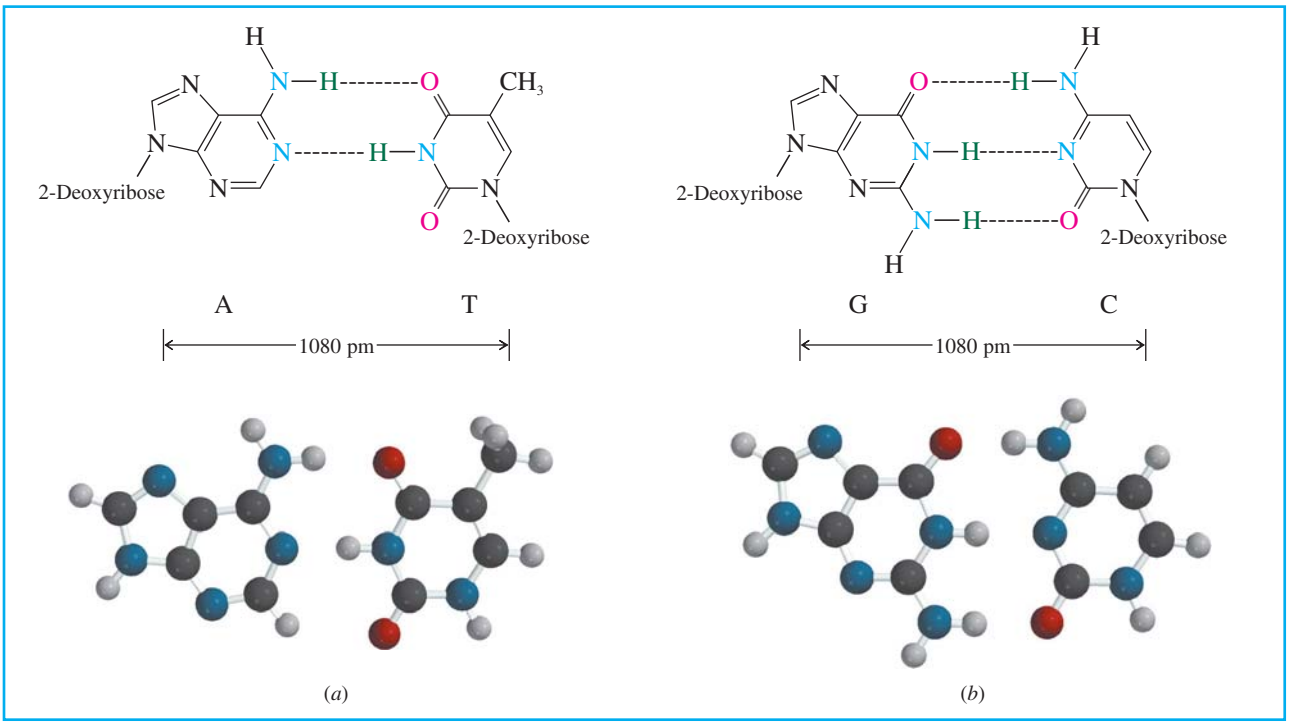


Figure 26.3

Hydrogen bonding between DNA bases shown as structural drawings of nucleosides (top) and as molecular models (bottom) of (*a*) adenine and thymine and (*b*) guanine and cytosine.

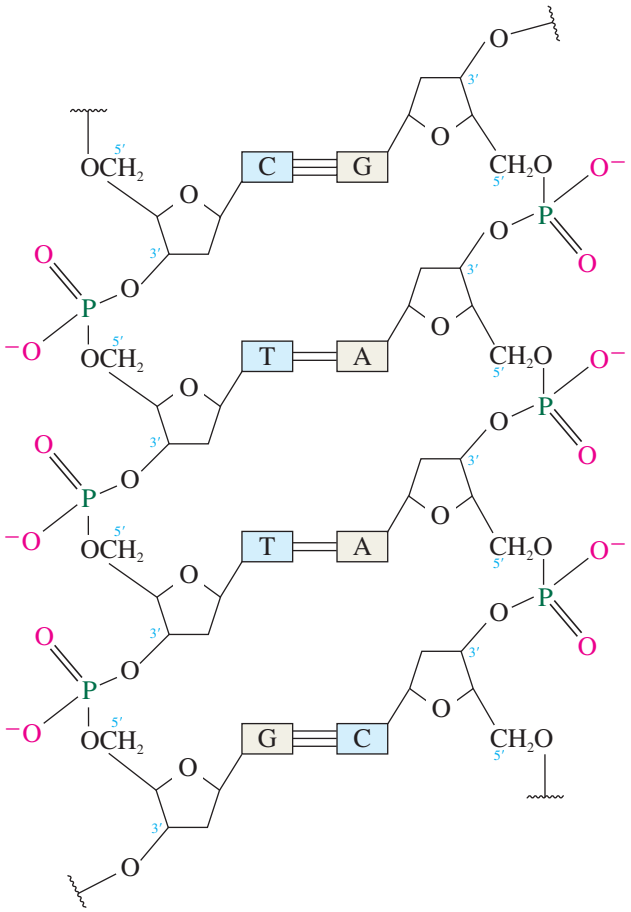
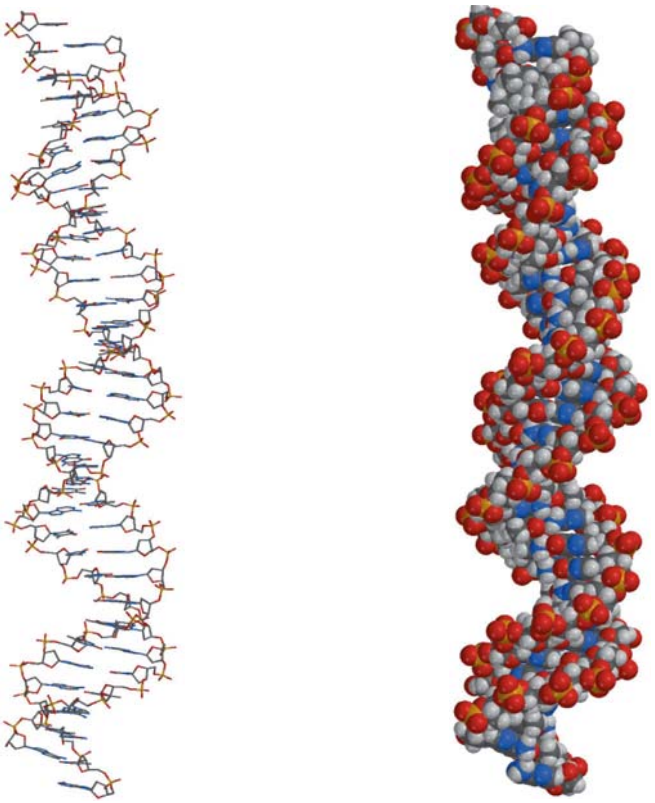


Figure 26.4

Hydrogen bonding between complementary bases (A and T, and G and C) permit pairing of two DNA strands. The strands are antiparallel; the 5′ end of the left strand is at the top, and the 5′ end of the right strand is at the bottom.



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 26.5

(*a*) Tube and (*b*) space-filling models of a DNA double helix. The carbohydrate– phosphate "backbone" is on the outside and can be roughly traced in (*b*) by the red oxygen atoms. The blue atoms belong to the purine and pyrimidine bases and lie on the inside. The base-pairing is more clearly seen in (*a*).

include A-DNA, which is similar to, but more compact than B-DNA, and Z-DNA, which is a left-handed double helix.

By analogy to the levels of structure of proteins, the **primary structure** of DNA is the sequence of bases along the polynucleotide chain, and the A-DNA, B-DNA, and Z-DNA helices are varieties of **secondary structures.**

Not all DNAs are double helices (*duplex DNA*). Some types of viral DNA are single-stranded, and even a few triple and quadruple DNA helices are known.

26.9 Tertiary Structure of DNA: Supercoils

We have, so far, described the structure of DNA as an extended double helix. The crystallographic evidence that gave rise to this picture was obtained on a sample of DNA removed from the cell that contained it. Within a cell—its native state—DNA almost always adopts some shape other than an extended chain. We can understand why by doing a little arithmetic. Each helix of B-DNA makes a complete turn every 3.4×10^{-9} m and there are about 10 base pairs per turn. A typical human DNA contains 10^8 base pairs. Therefore,

$$\text{Length of DNA chain} = \frac{3.4 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m/turn}}{10\ \text{base pairs/turn}} \times 10^8\ \text{base pairs}$$

$$\text{Length of DNA chain} = 3.4 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m} = 3.4\ \text{cm}$$

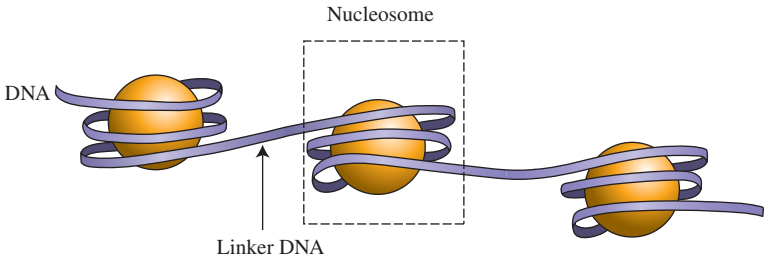


Figure 26.6

The effective length of DNA is reduced by coiling around the surface of histones to form nucleosomes. The histone proteins are represented by the spheres and the DNA double helix by the ribbon.

For a 3-cm-long molecule of DNA to fit inside a cell so tiny that we can only see it with a microscope, the polynucleotide chain must be folded into a more compact form. Not only must the DNA be compacted, it must be folded in a way that allows it to carry out its main functions. The way the chain is folded defines the **tertiary structure** of a nucleic acid.

The compacting mechanism is a marvel of cellular engineering. A twisted tangle of indefinite shape would present serious problems as a vessel for storing genetic information. Coiling the duplex, however, reduces its length without blocking access to important parts of its structure. Remember though, that DNA is negatively charged at biological pH. Thus, the tighter the coil, the closer together are the negatively charged phosphate units and the less stable the coil. Nature solves this puzzle for chromosomes by wrapping short sections of the DNA around proteins called histones (Figure 26.6). **Histones** are a family of five proteins rich in basic amino acids such as arginine and lysine, which are positively charged at biological pH. The positively charged histones stabilize the coiled form of the negatively charged DNA. The species formed between a section of DNA and histones is called a **nucleosome.** Each nucleosome contains about one and three quarters turns of coil comprising 146 base pairs of DNA and is separated from the next nucleosome by a "linker" of about 50 base pairs of DNA. Figure 26.7 shows a molecular model of a single nucleosome.

Problem 26.12

Approximately how many nucleosomes are in a gene with 10,000 base pairs?

A single helix is a coil; a double helix is two nested coils. The tertiary structure of DNA in a nucleosome is a coiled coil. Coiled coils are referred to as **supercoils** and are quite common.

A coiled α-helix in a protein is another example of a supercoil.

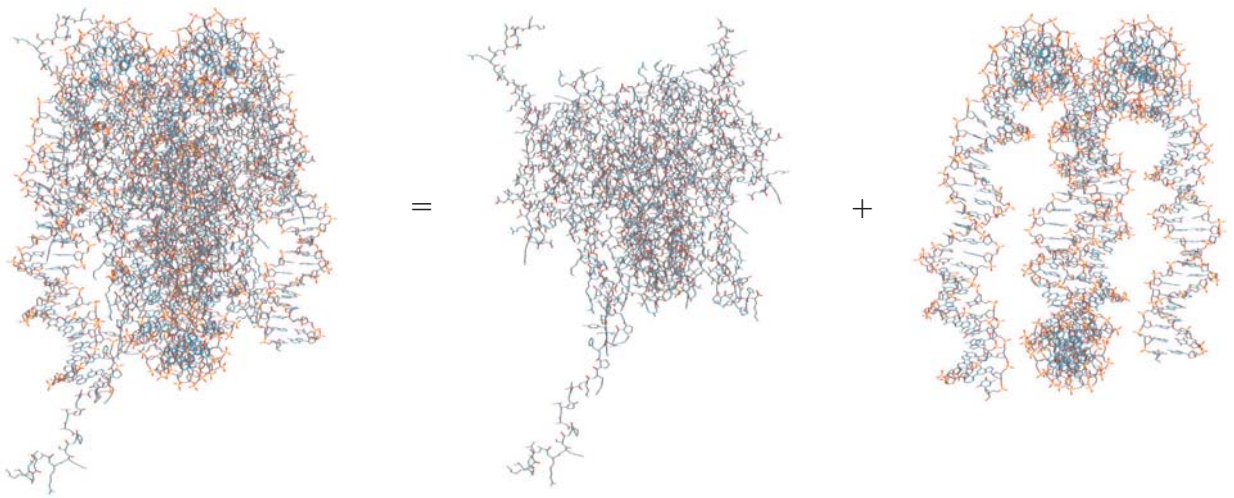


Figure 26.7

Molecular models of a nucleosome and its components. The nucleosome has a protein core around which is wound a supercoil of duplex DNA.

26.10 Replication of DNA

Every time a cell divides, its DNA is duplicated so that the DNA in the new cell is identical to that in the original one. As Figure 26.8 shows, Watson–Crick base-pairing provides the key to understanding this process of DNA **replication.** During cell division the DNA

1. The DNA to be copied is a double helix, shown here as flat for clarity.
2. The two strands begin to unwind. Each strand will become a template for construction of its complement.
3. As the strands unwind, the pyrimidine and purine bases become exposed. Notice that the bases are exposed in the 3′ → 5′ direction in one strand, and in the 5′ → 3′ direction in the other.
4. Two new strands form as nucleotides that are complementary to those of the original strands are joined by phosphodiester linkages. The sources of the new bases are dATP, dGTP, dCTP, and dTTP already present in the cell.
5. Because nucleotides are added in the 5′ → 3′ direction, the processes by which the two new chains grow are different. Chain growth can be continuous in the leading strand, but not in the lagging strand.
6. Two duplex DNA molecules result, each of which is identical to the original DNA.

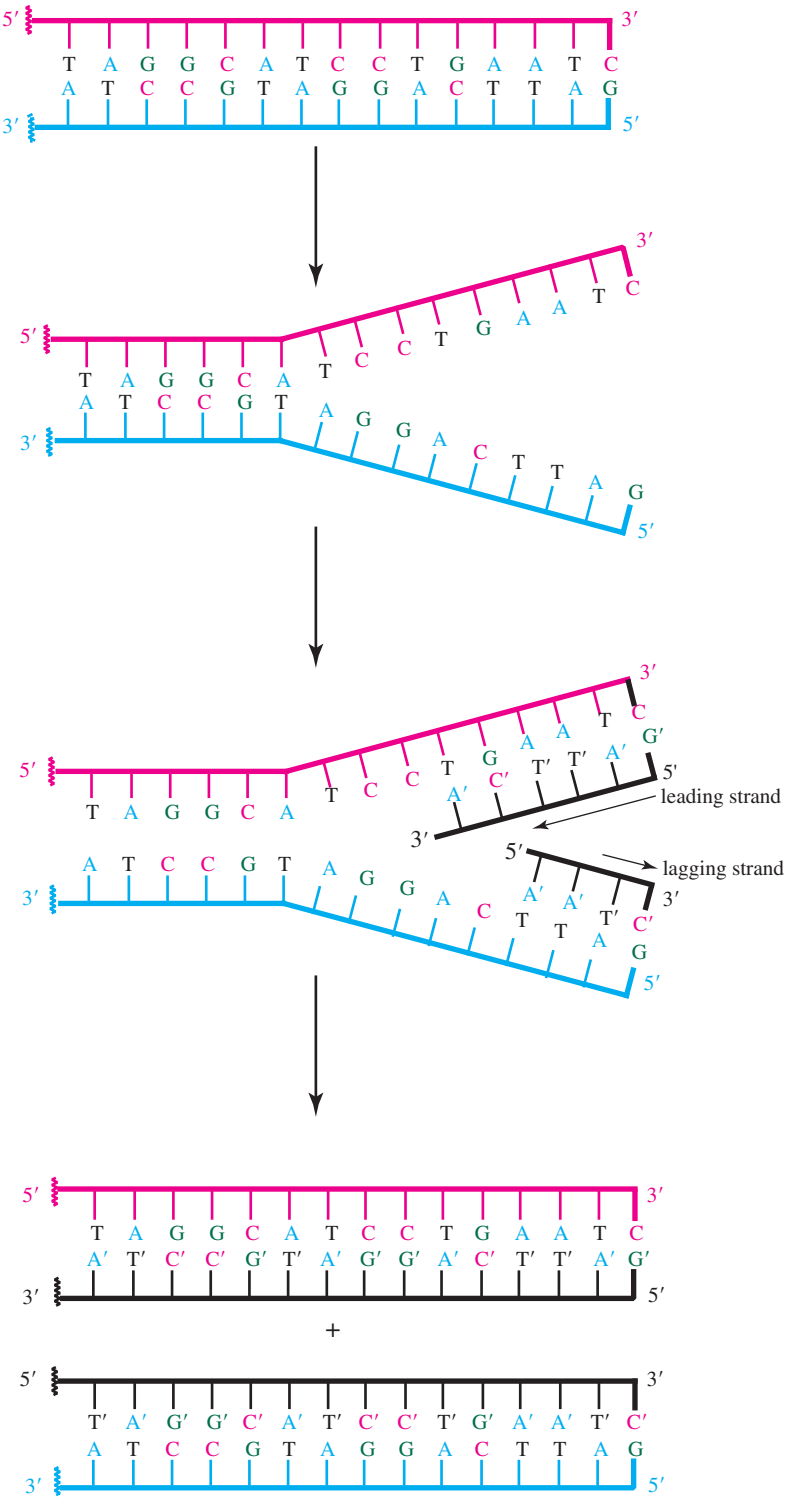


Figure 26.8

Outline of DNA replication. The original strands are shown in red and blue and are the templates from which the new strands, shown in black, are copied.

double helix begins to unwind, generating a **replication fork** separating the two strands. Each strand serves as a template on which a new DNA strand is constructed. The A—T, G—C base-pairing requirement ensures that each new strand is the precise complement of its template strand. Each of the two new duplex DNA molecules contains one original and one new strand.

Both new chains grow in their 5′→3′ direction. Because of this, one grows toward the replication fork (the **leading strand**) and the other away from it (the **lagging strand**), making the details of chain extension somewhat different for the two. The fundamental chemistry, however, is straightforward (Figure 26.9). The hydroxyl group at the 3′ end of the growing polynucleotide chain acts as a nucleophile, attacking the 5′-triphosphate of 2′-deoxyadenosine, 2′-deoxyguanosine, 2′-deoxycytidine, or thymidine to form the new phosphodiester linkage. The enzyme that catalyzes phosphodiester bond formation is called *DNA polymerase;* different DNA polymerases operate on the leading strand and the lagging strand.

All of the steps, from the unwinding of the original DNA double helix to the supercoiling of the new DNAs, are catalyzed by enzymes.

Genes are DNA and carry the inheritable characteristics of an organism and these characteristics are normally *expressed* at the molecular level via protein synthesis. Gene expression consists of two stages, **transcription** and **translation,** both of which involve RNAs. Sections 26.11 and 26.12 describe these RNAs and their roles in transcription and translation.

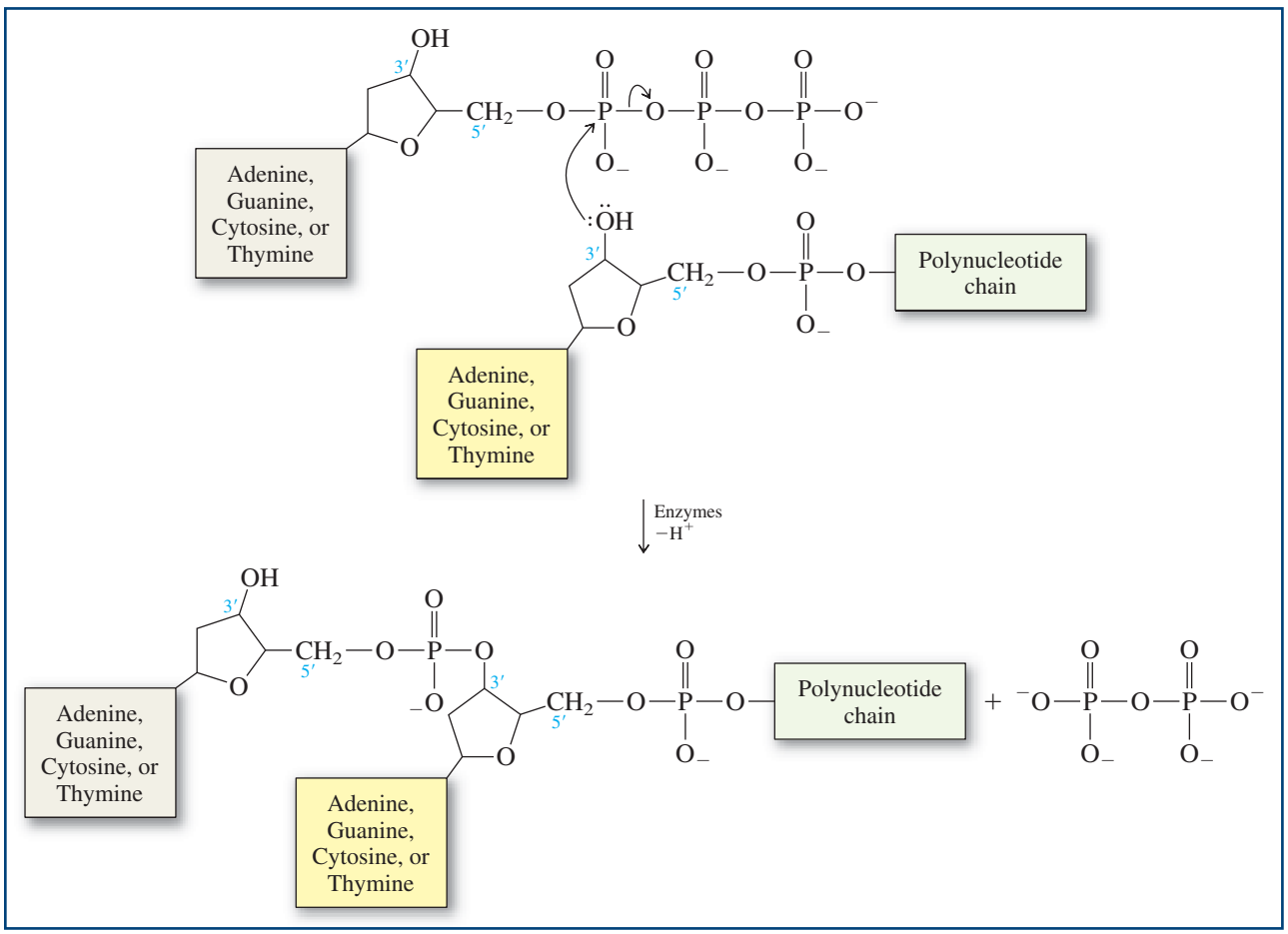


Figure 26.9

The new polynucleotide chain grows by reaction of its free 3′-OH group with the 5′-triphosphate of an appropriate 2′-deoxyribonucleoside.

26.11 Ribonucleic Acids

Unlike DNA, most of which is in the nucleus, RNA is found mostly in the cell's main compartment, the cytoplasm. There are three different kinds of RNA, which differ substantially from one another in both structure and function:

1. Messenger RNA (*mRNA*)
2. Transfer RNA (*tRNA*)
3. Ribosomal RNA (*rRNA*)

All are important in the biosynthesis of proteins.

Messenger RNA (mRNA): According to Crick, the so-called central dogma of molecular biology is "DNA makes RNA makes protein." The first part can be restated more exactly as "DNA makes mRNA." This is what transcription is—transcribing the message of DNA to a complementary RNA, in this case messenger RNA. mRNA is the least abundant of the RNAs and is the only one that is synthesized in the cell's nucleus. This transcription process is illustrated in Figure 26.10. Transcription resembles DNA replication in that a DNA strand serves as the template for construction of, in this case, a ribonucleic acid. mRNA synthesis begins at its 5′ end, and ribonucleotides complementary to the DNA strand being copied are added. The phosphodiester linkages are formed by reaction of the free 3′-OH group of the growing mRNA with ATP, GTP, CTP, or UTP (recall that uracil, not thymine, is the complement of adenine in RNA). The enzyme that catalyzes this reaction is *RNA polymerase.* Only a small section of about 10 base pairs of the DNA template is exposed at a time. As the synthesis zone moves down the DNA chain, restoration of hydrogen bonds between the two original DNA strands displaces the newly synthesized single-stranded mRNA. The entire DNA molecule is not transcribed as a single mRNA. Transcription begins at a prescribed sequence of bases (the *promoter sequence*) and ends at a *termination sequence.* Thus, one DNA molecule can give rise to many different mRNAs and code for many different proteins. There are thousands of mRNAs and they vary in length from about 500 to 6000 nucleotides.

The **genetic code** (Table 26.4) is the message carried *by* mRNA. It is made up of triplets of adjacent nucleotide bases called **codons.** Because mRNA has only four different bases and 20 amino acids must be coded for, codes using either one or two nucleotides per amino acid are inadequate. If nucleotides are read in sets of three, however, the four mRNA bases generate 64 possible "words," more than sufficient to code for 20 amino acids.

In addition to codons for amino acids, there are *start* and *stop* codons. Protein biosynthesis begins at a start codon and ends at a stop codon of mRNA. The start codon is the nucleotide triplet AUG, which is also the codon for methionine. The stop codons are UAA, UAG, and UGA. UAG and UGA can also code for pyrrolysine and selenocysteine, respectively. How these two "ambiguous" codons are read depends on the presence of specific genes.

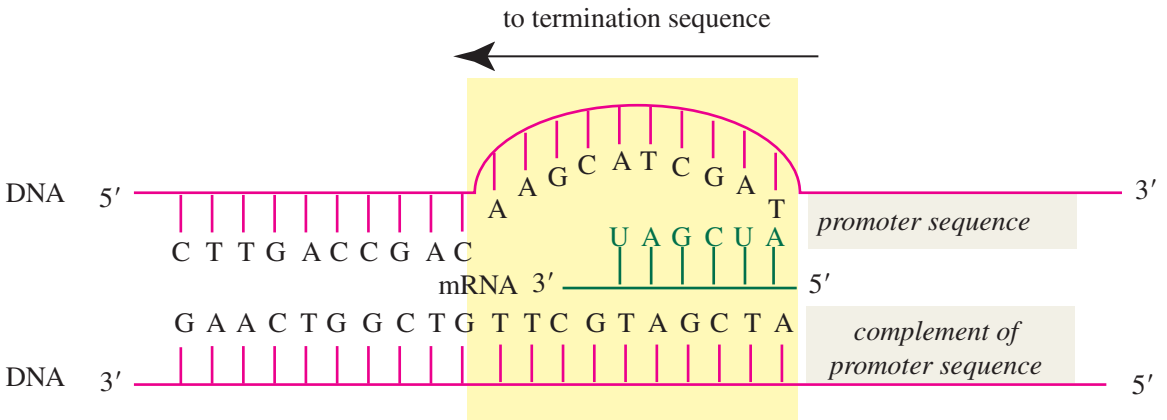


Figure 26.10

During transcription a molecule of mRNA is assembled from a DNA template. Transcription begins at a promoter sequence and proceeds in the 5′→3′ direction of the mRNA until a termination sequence of the DNA is reached. Only a region of about 10 base pairs is unwound at any time.

TABLE 26.4 The Genetic Code (Messenger RNA Codons)

First Position (5′ end)	Second Position: U	Second Position: C	Second Position: A	Second Position: G	Third Position (3′ end)
U	UUU Phe	UCU Ser	UAU Tyr	UGU Cys	U
	UUC Phe	UCC Ser	UAC Tyr	UGC Cys	C
	UUA Leu	UCA Ser	UAA Stop	UGA Stop*	A
	UUG Leu	UCG Ser	UAG Stop†	UGG Trp	G
C	CUU Leu	CCU Pro	CAU His	CGU Arg	U
	CUC Leu	CCC Pro	CAC His	CGC Arg	C
	CUA Leu	CCA Pro	CAA Gln	CGA Arg	A
	CUG Leu	CCG Pro	CAG Gln	CGG Arg	G
A	AUU Ile	ACU Thr	AAU Asn	AGU Ser	U
	AUC Ile	ACC Thr	AAC Asn	AGC Ser	C
	AUA Ile	ACA Thr	AAA Lys	AGA Arg	A
	AUG Met	ACG Thr	AAG Lys	AGG Arg	G
G	GUU Val	GCU Ala	GAU Asp	GGU Gly	U
	GUC Val	GCC Ala	GAC Asp	GGC Gly	C
	GUA Val	GCA Ala	GAA Glu	GGA Gly	A
	GUG Val	GCG Ala	GAG Glu	GGG Gly	G

*UGA also codes for selenocysteine.
†UAG also codes for pyrrolysine.

Transfer RNA (tRNA): Transfer-RNAs are relatively small nucleic acids, containing only about 70 nucleotides. They get their name because they transfer amino acids to the ribosome for incorporation into a polypeptide. Although 20 amino acids need to be transferred, there are 50–60 tRNAs, some of which transfer the same amino acids. Figure 26.11 shows the structure of phenylalanine tRNA ($tRNA^{Phe}$). Like all tRNAs it is composed of a single strand, with a characteristic shape that results from the presence of paired bases in some regions and their absence in others.

The 1968 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine was shared by Robert W. Holley of Cornell University for determining the nucleotide sequence of phenylalanine transfer RNA.

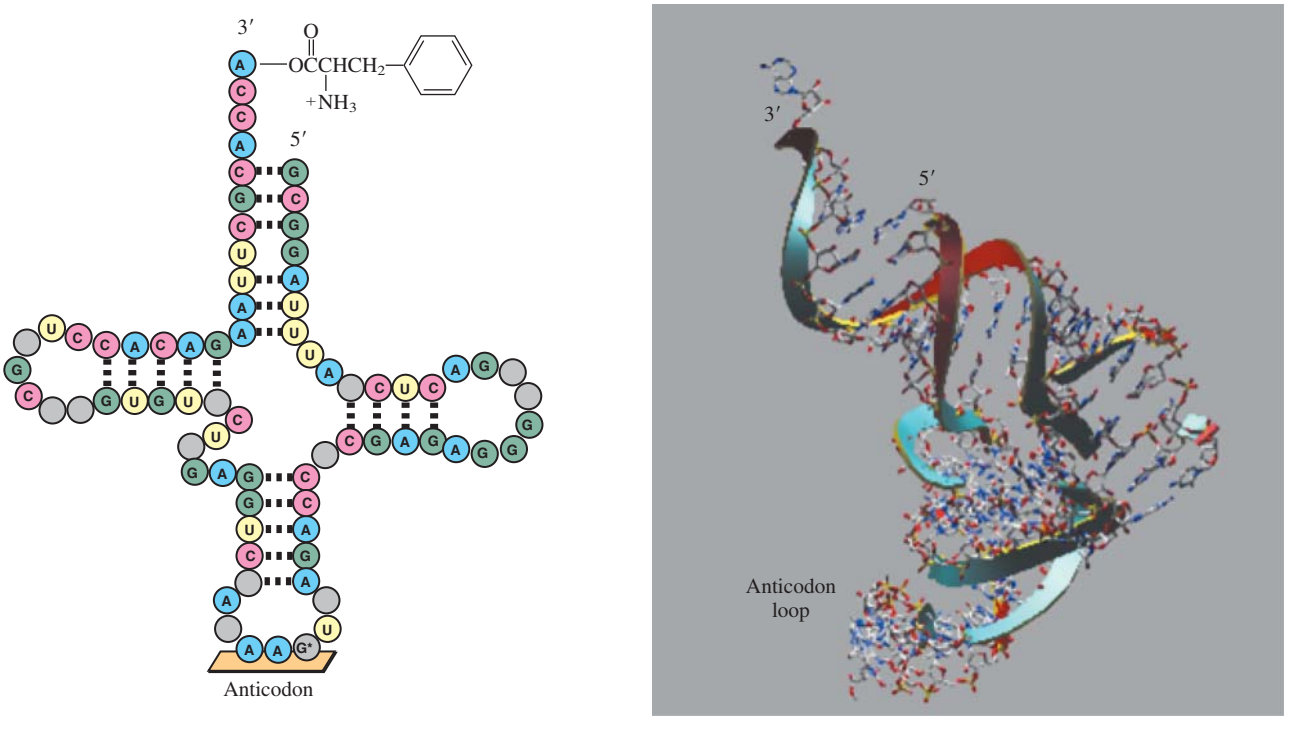
Among the 76 nucleotides of $tRNA^{Phe}$ are two sets of three that are especially important. The first is a group of three bases called the **anticodon,** which is complementary to the mRNA codon for the amino acid being transferred. Table 26.4 lists two mRNA codons for phenylalanine, UUU and UUC (reading in the 5′→3′ direction). Because base-pairing requires the mRNA and tRNA to be antiparallel, the two anticodons are read in the 3′→5′ direction as AAA and AAG.

3′ —A—A—G— 5′ tRNA anticodon

5′ —U—U—C— 3′ mRNA codon

The other important sequence is the CCA triplet at the 3′ end. The amino acid that is to be transferred is attached through an ester linkage to the terminal 3′-oxygen of this sequence. *All tRNAs have a CCA sequence at their 3′ end.*

Transfer RNAs normally contain some bases other than A, U, G, and C. Of the 76 bases in $tRNA^{Phe}$, for example, 13 are of the modified variety. One of these, marked G* in



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 26.11

Phenylalanine tRNA from yeast. (*a*) A schematic drawing showing the sequence of bases. Transfer RNAs usually contain a number of modified bases (gray circles). One of these is a modified guanosine (G*) in the anticodon. Hydrogen bonds, where present, are shown as dashed lines. (*b*) The structure of yeast $tRNA^{Phe}$ as determined by X-ray crystallography.

Figure 26.11, is a modified guanosine in the anticodon. Many of the modified bases, including G*, are methylated derivatives of the customary RNA bases.

For their studies on the structure and mode of action of ribosomes, Venkatraman Ramakrishnan (Medical Research Council, UK), Thomas Steitz (Yale University, U.S.) and Ada Yonath (Weizmann Institute, Israel) were awarded the 2009 Nobel Prize in Chemistry.

Ribosomal RNA (rRNA): Ribosomes, which are about two thirds nucleic acid and about one third protein, constitute about 90% of a cell's RNA. A ribosome is made up of two subunits. The larger one contains two rRNAs, one with 122 nucleotides and the other with 2923; the smaller subunit contains one rRNA with 1500 nucleotides.

The ribosome is where the message carried by the mRNA is **translated** into the amino acid sequence of a protein. How it occurs is described in the next section. One of its most noteworthy aspects was discovered only recently. It was formerly believed that the RNA part of the ribosome was a structural component and the protein part was the catalyst for protein biosynthesis. Present thinking tilts toward reversing these two functions by ascribing the structural role to the protein and the catalytic one to rRNA. RNAs that catalyze biological processes are called **ribozymes.**

Sidney Altman (Yale University) and Thomas Cech (University of Colorado) shared the 1989 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for showing that RNAs could function as biological catalysts.

26.12 Protein Biosynthesis

As described in the preceding sections, protein synthesis involves transcription of the DNA to mRNA, followed by translation of the mRNA as an amino acid sequence. In addition to outlining the mechanics of transcription, we have described the relationship among mRNA codons, tRNA anticodons, and amino acids.

During translation the protein is synthesized beginning at its N-terminus (Figure 26.12). The mRNA is read in its 5′→3′ direction beginning at the start codon AUG and ending at a stop codon (UAA, UAG, or UGA). Because the start codon is always AUG, the N-terminal amino acid is always methionine (as its *N*-formyl derivative). However, this

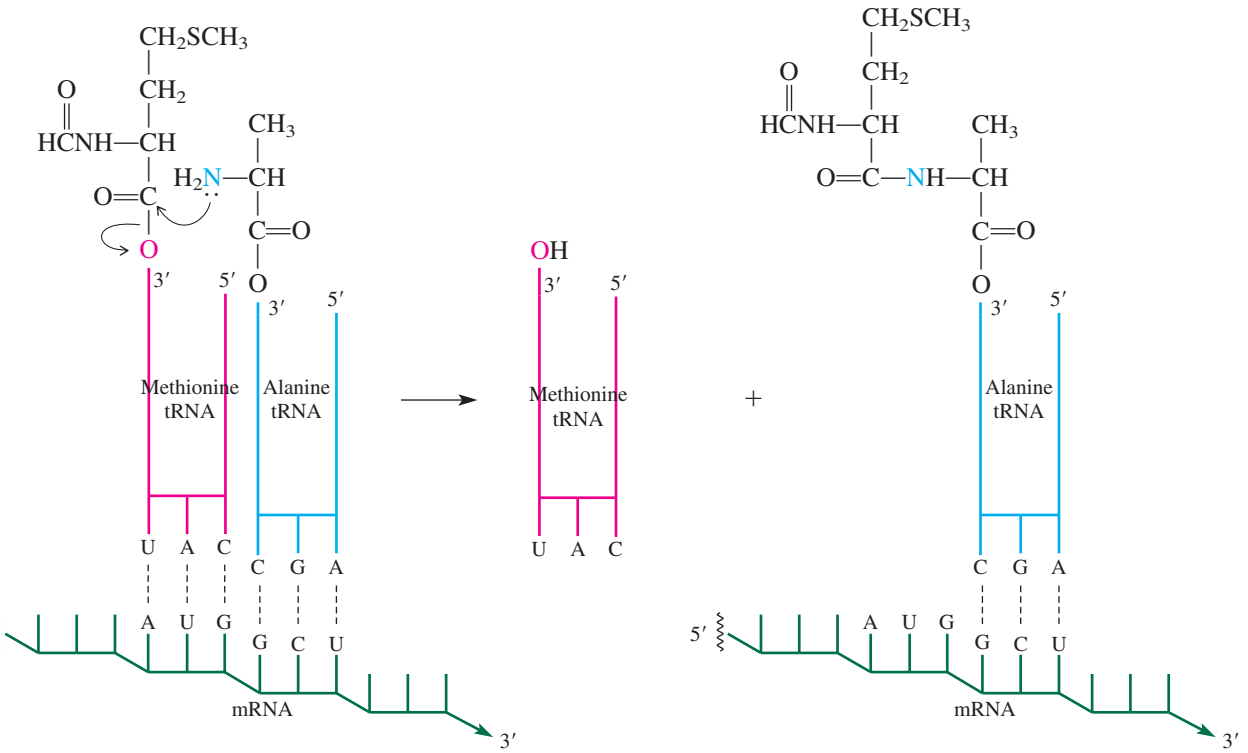


Figure 26.12

Translation of mRNA to an amino acid sequence of a protein starts at an mRNA codon for methionine. Nucleophilic acyl substitution transfers the *N*-formylmethionine residue from its tRNA to the amino group of the next amino acid (shown here as alanine). The process converts an ester to an amide.

N-formylmethionine residue is normally lost in a subsequent process and the N-terminus of the expressed protein is therefore determined by the second mRNA codon. The portion of the mRNA between the start and stop codons is called the coding sequence and is flanked on either side by noncoding regions.

In addition to illustrating the mechanics of translation, Figure 26.12 is important in that it shows the mechanism of peptide bond formation as a nucleophilic acyl substitution. Both methionine and alanine are attached to their respective tRNAs as esters. In a reaction apparently catalyzed by a ribozyme, the amino group of alanine attacks the methionine carbonyl, displacing methionine from its tRNA and converting the carbonyl group of methionine from an ester to an amide function.

Problem 26.13

Modify Figure 26.12 so that it corresponds to translation of an mRNA in which the sequence of the first six bases of the coding sequence are AUGUCU.

26.13 AIDS

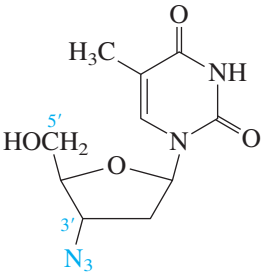
The explosive growth of our knowledge of nucleic acid chemistry and its role in molecular biology in the 1980s coincided with the emergence of AIDS (acquired immune deficiency syndrome) as a major public health threat. In AIDS, a virus devastates the body's defenses to the extent that its victims can die from infections that are normally held in check by a healthy immune system. In the time since its discovery in the early 1980s, AIDS has claimed the lives of over 25 million people, and current estimates place the number of those infected at more than 34 million. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), AIDS is the fourth leading cause of death worldwide and the leading cause of death in Africa.

The viruses responsible for AIDS are human immunodeficiency virus 1 and 2 (HIV-1 and HIV-2). Both are **retroviruses,** meaning that their genetic material is RNA rather than DNA. HIVs require a host cell to reproduce, and the hosts in humans are the T4 lymphocytes, which are the cells primarily responsible for inducing the immune system to respond when provoked. The HIV penetrates the cell wall of a T4 lymphocyte and deposits both its RNA and an enzyme called *reverse transcriptase* inside. There, the reverse transcriptase catalyzes the formation of a DNA strand that is complementary to the viral RNA. The transcribed DNA then serves as the template from which the host lymphocyte produces copies of the virus, which then leave the host to infect other T4 cells. In the course of HIV reproduction, the ability of the T4 lymphocyte to reproduce itself is compromised. As the number of T4 cells decrease, so does the body's ability to combat infections.

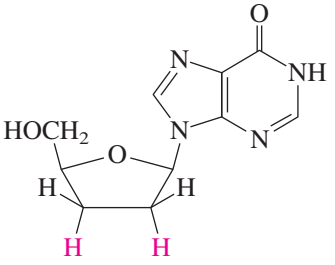
Problem 26.14

When the RNA of a retrovirus is transcribed, what DNA base is the complement of the uracil in the viral RNA?

Although there is no known cure for AIDS, progress has been made in delaying the onset of symptoms and prolonging the lives of those infected with HIV. The first advance in treatment came with drugs such as the nucleoside *zidovudine,* also known as azidothymine, or AZT. During reverse transcription, AZT replaces thymidine in the DNA being copied from the viral RNA. AZT has a 5′-OH group, so can be incorporated into a growing polynucleotide chain. But because it lacks a 3′-OH group, the chain cannot be extended beyond it and synthesis of the viral DNA stops before the chain is complete.



Zidovudine (AZT)



2′,3′-Dideoxyinosine (ddI)

Reverse transcriptase inhibitors are also used against certain viruses which, although they are not retroviruses, do require reverse transcriptase to reproduce. The virus that causes hepatitis B is an example.

Other nucleosides such as 2′,3′-dideoxyinosine (ddI) also block the action of reverse transcriptase and are often combined with AZT in "drug cocktails." Using a mixture of drugs as in *Highly Active Antiretroviral Therapy,* or HAART makes it more difficult for a virus to develop resistance than using a single drug.

An advance in treating HIV infections has been to simultaneously attack the virus on a second front using a *protease inhibitor.* Proteases are enzymes that catalyze the hydrolysis of proteins at specific points. When HIV uses a cell's DNA to synthesize its own proteins, the initial product is a long polypeptide that contains several different proteins joined together. To be useful, the individual proteins must be separated from the aggregate by protease-catalyzed hydrolysis of peptide bonds. Protease inhibitors prevent this hydrolysis and, in combination with reverse transcriptase inhibitors, slow the reproduction of HIV. Dramatic reductions in the "viral load" in HIV-infected patients have been achieved with this approach.

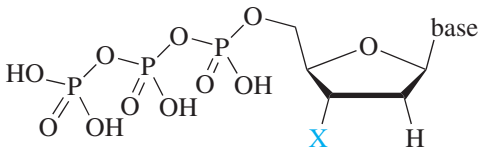
26.14 DNA Sequencing

Once the Watson–Crick structure was proposed, determining the nucleotide sequence of DNA emerged as an important area of research. Some difficulties were apparent from the beginning, especially if one draws comparisons to protein sequencing. First, most DNAs

are much larger biopolymers than proteins. Not only does it take three nucleotides to code for a single amino acid, but vast regions of DNA don't seem to code for anything at all. A less obvious problem is that the DNA alphabet contains only four letters (A, G, C, and T) compared with the 20 amino acids from which proteins are built. Recall too that protein sequencing benefits from having proteases available that cleave the chain at specific amino acids. Not only are there no enzymes that cleave nucleic acids at specific bases but, with only four bases to work with, the resulting fragments would be too small to give useful information. In spite of this, DNA sequencing not only developed very quickly, but also has turned out to be much easier to do than protein sequencing.

To explain how DNA sequencing works, we must first mention **restriction enzymes.** Like all organisms, bacteria are subject to infection by external invaders (e.g.,viruses and other bacteria) and possess defenses in the form of restriction enzymes that destroy the invader by cleaving its DNA. Over 3000 restriction enzymes are known, and hundreds are readily available. Unlike proteases, which recognize a single amino acid, restriction enzymes recognize specific nucleotide *sequences.* Cleavage of the DNA at prescribed sequences gives fragments 100–200 base pairs in length, which are separated, purified, and sequenced independently.

Each sample is used as a template to create complements of itself and placed in a tube containing the materials necessary for DNA synthesis. These materials include the four nucleosides present in DNA, 2′-deoxyadenosine (dA), 2′-deoxythymidine (dT), 2′-deoxyguanosine (dG), and 2′-deoxycytidine (dC) as their triphosphates dATP, dTTP, dGTP, and dCTP. Also present are small amounts of synthetic analogs of ATP, TTP, GTP, and CTP that had been modified in two ways. Their 2′- and 3′-hydroxyl groups have been replaced by hydrogens giving the dideoxy nucleotides 2′,3′-dideoxyadenosine triphosphate (ddATP), 2′,3′-dideoxythymidine triphosphate (ddTTP), 2′,3′-dideoxyguanosine triphosphate (ddGTP), and 2′,3′-dideoxycytidine triphosphate (ddCTP).



X = OH	X = H
dATP	ddATP
dTTP	ddTTP
dGTP	ddGTP
dCTP	ddCTP

Because their furanose rings lack a 3′ hydroxyl group, incorporation of ddATP, ddTTP, ddGTP, or ddCTP into a growing strand of DNA terminates chain growth. In its original formulation by Frederick Sanger the method relied on priming DNA synthesis with ^{32}P-labeled dideoxynucleotides, which were detected by a radioactivity tracing method. Sanger's method has been superceded by using synthetic dideoxy nucleotides identified according to which of four different fluorescent dyes is attached to their purine or pyrimidine base.

Sanger, who had already won a Nobel Prize in 1958 for protein sequencing, shared the 1980 chemistry prize with Walter Gilbert of Harvard University and Paul Berg of Stanford. Gilbert developed a chemical method for DNA sequencing and Berg was responsible for many important techniques in the study of nucleic acids.

As DNA synthesis proceeds, nucleotides from the solution are added to the growing polynucleotide chain. Chain extension takes place without complication as long as the incorporated nucleotides are derived from dATP, dTTP, dGTP, and dCTP. If, however, the incorporated species is derived from a dideoxy analog, chain extension stops. Thus, the sample contains a mixture of DNA fragments of different length, *each of which terminates in a dideoxy nucleotide.*

After separation by electrophoresis, which discriminates among fragments according to their length, the gel is read by argon-laser irradiation at four different wavelengths. One wavelength causes the modified ddA-containing polynucleotides to fluoresce, another causes modified ddT fluorescence, and so on. The data are stored and analyzed in a computer and printed out as the DNA sequence. A single instrument can sequence about 10,000 bases per day.

In addition to sequencing bits of DNA or individual genes, DNA sequencing has become so powerful a technique that the entire genomes of several thousand organisms have been sequenced. The first and largest number of these organisms were viruses—organisms with relatively small genomes. Then came a bacterium with 1.8 million base

pairs, then baker's yeast with 12 million base pairs, followed by a roundworm with 97 million. The year 2000 brought announcements of the sequences of the 100 million base-pair genome of the wild mustard plant and the 180 million base-pair genome of the fruit fly. On the horizon was the 3-billion-base-pair human genome.

26.15 The Human Genome Project

The International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium was headed by Francis S. Collins of the U.S. National Institutes of Health. J. Craig Venter led the Celera effort.

In 1988, the National Research Council (NRC) recommended that the United States mount a program to map and then sequence the human genome. Shortly thereafter, the U.S. Congress authorized the first allocation of funds for what became a 15-year $3-billion-dollar project. Most of the NRC's recommendations for carrying out the project were adopted, including a strategy emphasizing technology development in the early stages followed by the sequencing of model organisms before attacking the human genome. The NRC's recommendation that the United States collaborate with other countries was also realized with the participation of teams from the United Kingdom, Japan, France, Germany, and China.

What was not anticipated was that in 1998 Celera Genomics of Rockville, Maryland, would undertake its own privately funded program toward the same goal. By 2000, the two groups agreed to some coordination of their efforts and published draft sequences in 2001 and final versions in 2003.

Because a fruit fly, for example, has about 13,000 genes, scientists expected humans to have on the order of 100,000 genes. The first surprise to emerge from the human genome sequence is that we have far fewer genes than we thought—only about 20,000–25,000. Because human DNA has more proteins to code for than fruit-fly DNA, gene expression must be more complicated than the phrase "one gene–one protein" suggests. Puzzles such as this belong to the new research field of **genomics**—the study of genome sequences and their function.

The human genome sequence has been called "the book of life" and, more modestly, a "tool box" and an "instruction manual." Regardless of what we call it, it promises a bright future for advances in medical science.

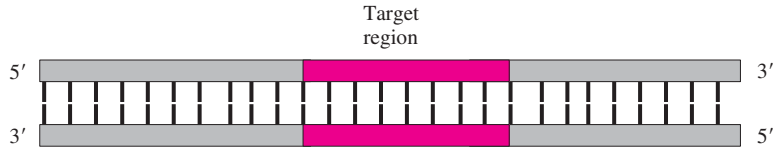
26.16 DNA Profiling and the Polymerase Chain Reaction

DNA sequencing and DNA profiling are different. The former, as we have seen, applies to procedures for determining the sequence of nucleotides in DNA. The latter is also a familiar term, usually encountered in connection with evidence in legal proceedings. In DNA profiling, the genes themselves are of little interest because their role in coding for proteins demands that they differ little, if at all, between individuals. But less than 2% of the human genome codes for proteins. Most of it lies in noncoding regions and this DNA does vary between individuals. Enzymatic cleavage of DNA produces a mixture of fragments that can be separated by electrophoresis to give a pattern of bands more likely to belong to one individual than others. Repeating the process with other cleaving enzymes gives a different pattern of bonds and increases the probability that the identification is correct. Until the 1980s, the limiting factor in both DNA profiling and sequencing was often the small amount of sample that was available. A major advance, called the **polymerase chain reaction (PCR),** effectively overcomes this obstacle and was recognized with the award of the 1993 Nobel Prize in Chemistry to its inventor Kary B. Mullis.

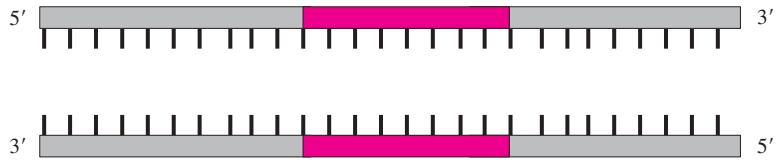
The main use of PCR is to "amplify," or make hundreds of thousands—even millions—of copies of a portion of the polynucleotide sequence in a sample of DNA. Suppose, for example, we wish to copy a 500-base-pair region of a sample of DNA that contains a total of 1 million base pairs. We would begin as described in Section 26.14 by cleaving the DNA into smaller fragments using restriction enzymes, then use PCR to make copies of the desired fragment.

Figure 26.13 illustrates how PCR works. In general, it involves multiple cycles of a three-step sequence. In working through Figure 26.13, be alert to the fact that the material we want does not arise until after the third cycle. After that, its contribution to the mixture

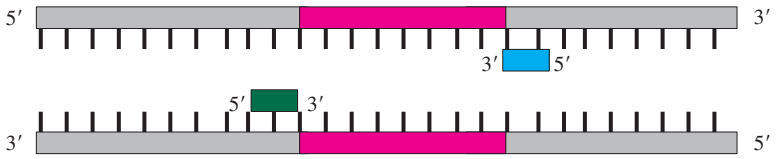
(*a*) Consider double-stranded DNA containing a polynucleotide sequence (the **target region**) that you wish to amplify (make millions of copies of).



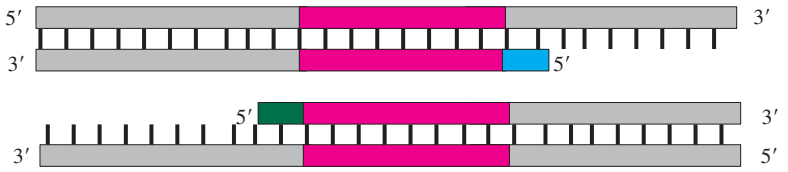
(*b*) Heating the DNA to ≈95°C causes the strands to separate. This is the denaturation step.



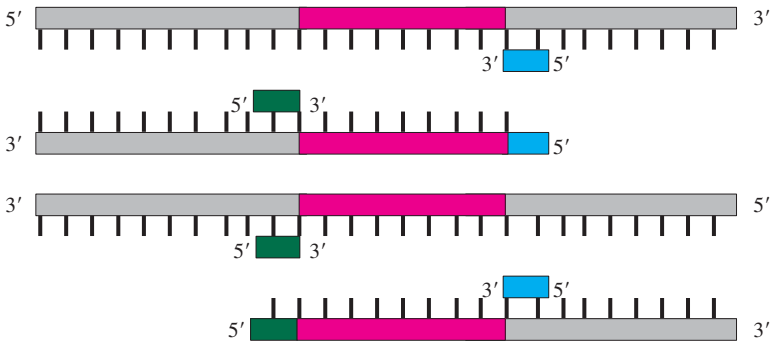
(*c*) Cooling the sample to ≈60°C causes one primer oligonucleotide to bind to one strand and the other primer to the other strand. This is the annealing step.



(*d*) In the presence of the four DNA nucleotides and the enzyme DNA polymerase, the primer is extended in its 3′ direction as it adds nucleotides that are complementary to the original DNA strand. This is the synthesis step and is carried out at ≈72°C.



(*e*) Steps (*a*)–(*d*) constitute one cycle of the polymerase chain reaction and produce two double-stranded DNA molecules from one. Denaturing the two DNAs and priming the four strands gives:



Continued

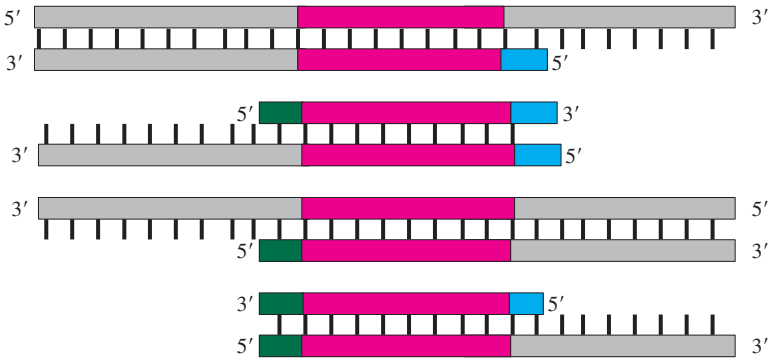
Figure 26.13

The polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Three cycles are shown; the target region appears after the third cycle. Additional cycles lead to amplification of the target region.

Figure 26.13

Continued

(*f*) Elongation of the primed polynucleotide fragments completes the second cycle and gives four DNAs.



(*g*) Among the eight DNAs formed in the third cycle are two having the structure shown. This is the structure that increases disproportionately in the succeeding cycles.

of DNA fragments increases disproportionately. Repetitive PCR cycling increases both the amount of material and its homogeneity (Table 26.5). If every step proceeds in 100% yield, a greater than 1-billionfold amplification is possible after 30 cycles.

Each cycle incorporates three steps:

1. Denaturation
2. Annealing (also called priming)
3. Synthesis (also called extension or elongation)

All of the substances necessary for PCR are present throughout, and proceeding from one cycle to the next requires only changing the temperature after suitable time intervals. The entire process is carried out automatically, and 30 cycles can be completed within a few hours.

The double-stranded DNA shown in Figure 26.13(*a*) contains the polynucleotide sequence (the target region) we wish to amplify. The DNA is denatured by heating to ≈95°C, which causes the strands to separate by breaking the hydrogen bonds between them [Figure 26.13(*b*)].

The solution is then cooled to ≈60°C, allowing new hydrogen bonds to form [Figure 26.13(*c*)]. However, the reaction mixture contains much larger concentrations of two primer molecules than DNA, and the new hydrogen bonds are between the separated DNA strands and the primers rather than between the two strands.

Each primer is a synthetic oligonucleotide of about 20 bases, prepared so that their sequences are complementary to the (previously determined) sequences that flank the target regions on opposite strands. Thus, one primer is annealed to one strand, the other to the other strand. The 3′-hydroxyl end of each primer points toward the target region.

The stage is now set for DNA synthesis to proceed from the 3′ end of each primer [Figure 26.13(*d*)]. The solution contains a DNA polymerase and Mg^{2+} in addition to the deoxynucleoside triphosphates dATP, dTTP, dGTP, and dCTP. The particular DNA polymerase used is one called *Taq polymerase* that is stable and active at the temperature at which the third step of the cycle is carried out (72°C).

The products of the first cycle are two DNAs, each of which is composed of a longer and a shorter strand. These products are subjected to a second three-step cycle [Figure 26.13(*e*)–(*f*)] to give four DNAs. Two of these four contain a "strand" that is nothing more than the target region flanked by primers. In the third cycle, these two ultrashort "strands" produce two DNAs of the kind shown in Figure 26.13(*g*). This product contains only the target region plus the primers and is the one that increases disproportionately in subsequent cycles.

TABLE 26.5 Distribution of DNAs with Increasing Number of PCR Cycles

Cycle number	Total number of DNAs*	Number of DNAs containing only the target region
0 (start)	1	0
1	2	0
2	4	0
3	8	2
4	16	8
5	32	22
10	1,024	1,004
20	1,048,566	1,048,526
30	1,073,741,824	1,073,741,764

*Total number of DNAs is 2^n, where n = number of cycles

Since its introduction in 1985, PCR has been applied to practically every type of study that requires samples of DNA. These include screening for genetic traits such as sickle cell anemia, Huntington's disease, and cystic fibrosis. PCR can detect HIV infection when the virus is present in such small concentrations that no AIDS symptoms have as yet appeared. In forensic science, analysis of PCR-amplified DNA from tiny amounts of blood or semen have helped convict the guilty and free the innocent. Anthropologists increasingly use information from DNA analysis to trace the origins of racial and ethnic groups but sometimes find it difficult, for cultural reasons, to convince individuals to volunteer blood samples. Thanks to PCR, a strand of hair is now sufficient.

26.17 Recombinant DNA Technology

The use of restriction enzymes to cleave DNA at specific sequences was mentioned earlier in this chapter in the context of DNA sequence analysis. These enzymes are also important in the field of **recombinant DNA** technology. We will illustrate this application by describing a method for the production of human insulin.

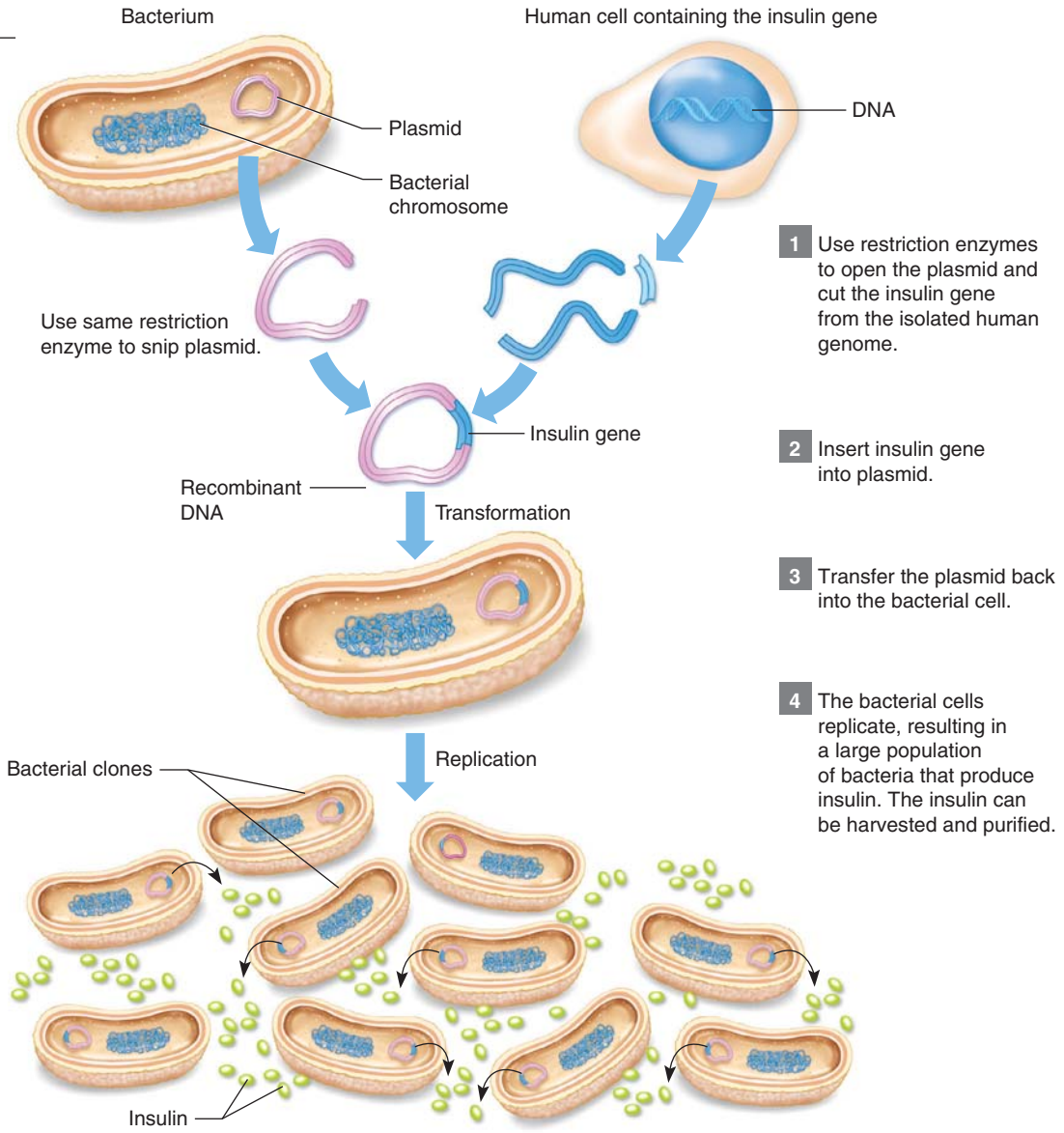
A plasmid, which is a circular DNA molecule separate from the chromosomal DNA, is obtained from bacterial cells such as *Escherischia coli* and treated with a restriction enzyme to snip the DNA at a specific site (Figure 26.14). The human DNA sequence that codes for the synthesis of insulin is then inserted into the plasmid to give a *recombinant DNA molecule*. The new DNA is the result of the recombination of DNA from the plasmid plus the sequence that codes for human insulin. The new plasmid is termed a *chimeric plasmid* because it contains DNA from two sources, bacterial and human. The plasmid is taken up by growing bacterial cells through a process called *transformation*. The chimeric plasmid serves as a *cloning vector* because it serves as a vehicle to carry the recombinant DNA into *E. coli*. Transcription and translation of the insulin DNA then occur to produce human insulin. When the cells divide, the plasmids are divided between the daughter cells and they continue to produce clones. Insulin produced by recombinant DNA technology is commercially sold as Humulin.

The term *chimera* comes from Greek mythology and refers to a beast composed of the parts of different animals. Homer's *Iliad* describes such a creature: "...the Khimaira, of ghastly and inhuman origin, her forepart lionish, her tail a snake's, a she-goat in between. This thing exhaled in jets a rolling fire." (Translation by R. Fitzgerald, Book Six, line 210.) Farrar, Straus, and Giroux, 2004, New York

The amplification of many other DNA sequences has been carried out by transfection of a cloning vector into a bacterial cell, making it possible to produce quantities of natural proteins that were not previously available, as well as unknown proteins. Green fluorescent protein (see Section 25.17) and its derivatives are produced by recombinant DNA technology. A recombinant human-platelet-derived growth factor (rh-PDGF) *becaplermin* (Regranex) is used clinically in the treatment of diabetic skin ulcers.

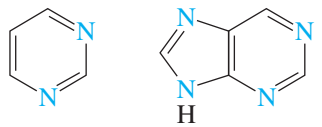
Figure 26.14

The production of human insulin by recombinant DNA technology.



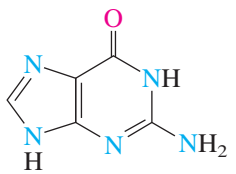
26.18 SUMMARY

Section 26.1 Many biologically important compounds are related to the heterocyclic aromatic compounds pyrimidine and purine.



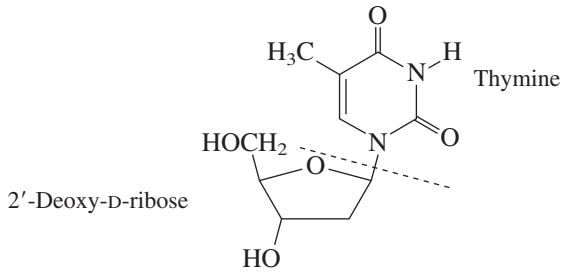
Pyrimidine Purine

The structure of guanine illustrates an important feature of substituted pyrimidines and purines. Oxygen substitution on the ring favors the keto form rather than the enol. Amino substitution does not.



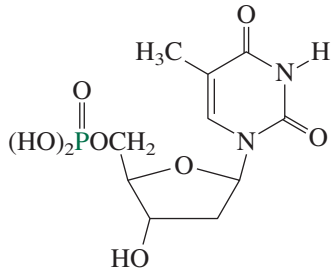
Guanine

Section 26.2 **Nucleosides** are carbohydrate derivatives of pyrimidine and purine bases. The most important nucleosides are derived from D-ribose and 2-deoxy-D-ribose.



Thymidine

Section 26.3 **Nucleotides** are phosphate esters of nucleosides.

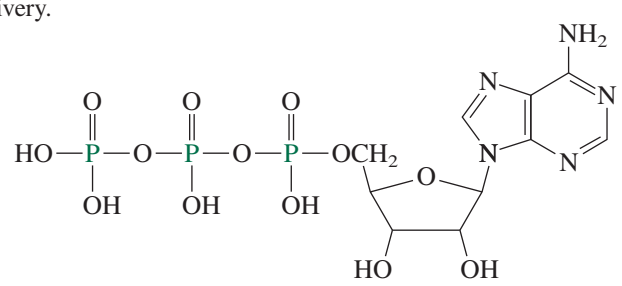


Thymidine 5′-monophosphate

In the example shown, the 5′-OH group is phosphorylated. Nucleotides are also possible in which some other OH group bears the phosphate ester function. Cyclic phosphates are common and important as biochemical messengers.

Section 26.4 **Bioenergetics** is concerned with the thermodynamics of biological processes. Particular attention is paid to $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$, the standard free-energy change of reactions at pH = 7. When the sign of $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ is +, the reaction is **endergonic;** when the sign of $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ is −, the reaction is **exergonic.**

Section 26.5 **Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)** is a key compound in biological energy storage and delivery.



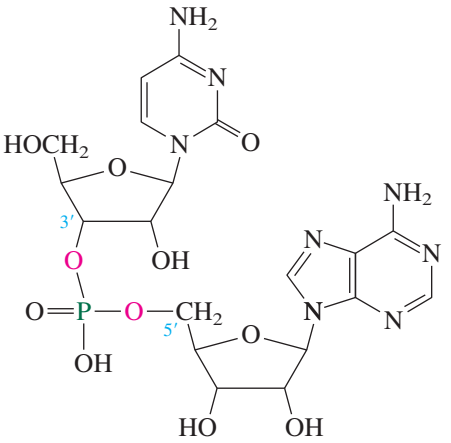
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)

The hydrolysis of ATP to ADP and HPO_4^{2-} is exergonic.

$$ATP + H_2O \longrightarrow ADP + HPO_4^{2-} \quad \Delta G^{\circ\prime} = -31 \text{ kJ } (-7.4 \text{ kcal})$$

Many formally endergonic biochemical processes become exergonic when they are coupled mechanistically to the hydrolysis of ATP.

Section 26.6 Many important compounds contain two or more nucleotides joined together by a **phosphodiester** linkage. The best known are those in which the phosphodiester joins the 5′-oxygen of one nucleotide to the 3′-oxygen of the other.



Oligonucleotides contain about 50 or fewer nucleotides held together by phosphodiester links; **polynucleotides** can contain thousands of nucleotides.

Section 26.7 **Nucleic acids** are polynucleotides present in cells. The carbohydrate component is D-ribose in ribonucleic acid (RNA) and 2-deoxy-D-ribose in deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).

Section 26.8 The most common form of DNA is B-DNA, which exists as a right-handed double helix. The carbohydrate–phosphate backbone lies on the outside, the purine and pyrimidine bases on the inside. The double helix is stabilized by complementary hydrogen bonding (base pairing) between adenine (A) and thymine (T), and guanine (G) and cytosine (C).

Section 26.9 Within the cell nucleus, double-helical DNA adopts a **supercoiled** tertiary structure in which short sections are wound around proteins called **histones.** This reduces the effective length of the DNA and maintains it in an ordered arrangement.

Section 26.10 During DNA replication the two strands of the double helix begin to unwind, exposing the pyrimidine and purine bases in the interior. Nucleotides with complementary bases hydrogen bond to the original strands and are joined together by phosphodiester linkages with the aid of DNA polymerase. Each new strand grows in its 5′→3′ direction.

Section 26.11 Three RNAs are involved in gene expression. In the **transcription** phase, a strand of **messenger RNA (mRNA)** is synthesized from a DNA template. The four bases A, G, C, and U, taken three at a time, generate 64 possible combinations called **codons.** These 64 codons comprise the **genetic code** and code for the 20 amino acids found in proteins plus start and stop signals. The mRNA sequence is **translated** into a prescribed protein sequence at the ribosomes. There, small polynucleotides called **transfer RNA (tRNA),** each of which contains an **anticodon** complementary to an mRNA codon, carries the correct amino acid for incorporation into the growing protein. **Ribosomal RNA (rRNA)** is the main constituent of ribosomes and appears to catalyze protein biosynthesis.

Section 26.12 The start codon for protein biosynthesis is AUG, which is the same as the codon for methionine. Thus, all proteins initially have methionine as their N-terminal amino acid, but lose it subsequent to their formation. The reaction responsible for extending the protein chain is nucleophilic acyl substitution.

Section 26.13 HIV, which causes AIDS, is a retrovirus. Its genetic material is RNA instead of DNA. HIV contains an enzyme called reverse transcriptase that allows its RNA to serve as a template for DNA synthesis in the host cell.

Section 26.14 The nucleotide sequence of DNA can be determined by a technique in which a short section of single-stranded DNA is allowed to produce its complement in the presence of dideoxy analogs of ATP, TTP, GTP, and CTP. DNA formation terminates when a dideoxy analog is incorporated into the growing polynucleotide chain. A mixture of polynucleotides differing from one another by an incremental nucleoside is produced and analyzed by electrophoresis. From the observed sequence of the complementary chain, the sequence of the original DNA is deduced.

Section 26.15 The sequence of nucleotides that make up the human genome has been completed. There is every reason to believe that the increased knowledge of human biology it offers will dramatically affect the practice of medicine.

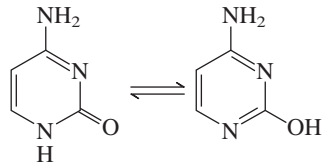
Section 26.16 In DNA profiling the noncoding regions are cut into smaller fragments using enzymes that recognize specific sequences, and these smaller bits of DNA are then separated by electrophoresis. The observed pattern of DNA fragments is believed to be highly specific for the source of the DNA. Using the **polymerase chain reaction (PCR),** millions of copies of minute amounts of DNA can be produced in a relatively short time.

Section 26.17 DNA sequences that code for the synthesis of a specific protein can be inserted into a bacterial DNA plasmid. The growing bacteria then incorporate the **recombinant DNA** and produce the protein.

PROBLEMS

26.15 5-*Fluorouracil* is one component of a mixture of three drugs used in breast-cancer chemotherapy. What is its structure?

26.16 (a) Which isomer, the keto or enol form of cytosine, is the stronger acid?



keto enol

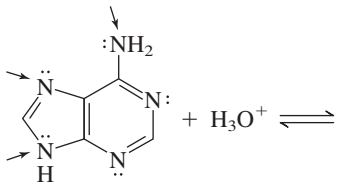
(b) What is the relationship between the conjugate base of the keto form and the conjugate base of the enol form?

26.17 Birds excrete nitrogen as *uric acid.* Uric acid is a purine having the molecular formula $C_5H_4N_4O_3$; it has no C—H bonds. Write a structural formula for uric acid.

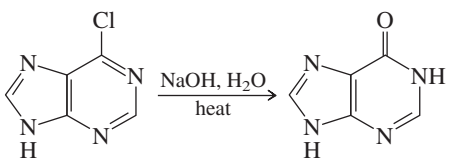
26.18 *Nebularine* is a toxic nucleoside isolated from a species of mushroom. Its systematic name is 9-β-D-ribofuranosylpurine. Write a structural formula for nebularine.

26.19 The D-arabinose analog of adenosine is an anitiviral agent (vidarabine) used to treat conjunctivitis and shingles. Write a structural formula for this compound.

26.20 Adenine is a weak base. Which one of the three nitrogens designated by arrows in the structural formula shown is protonated in acidic solution? Evaluation of the resonance contributors of the three protonated forms will tell you which one is the most stable.

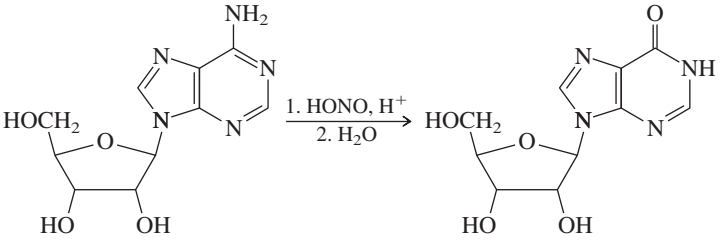


26.21 When 6-chloropurine is heated with aqueous sodium hydroxide, it is quantitatively converted to *hypoxanthine*. Suggest a reasonable mechanism for this reaction.



6-Chloropurine Hypoxanthine

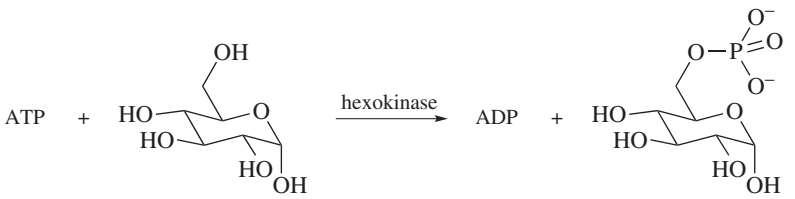
26.22 Treatment of adenosine with nitrous acid gives a nucleoside known as *inosine*. Suggest a reasonable mechanism for this reaction.



Adenosine Inosine

26.23 The 5′-nucleotide of inosine, *inosinic acid* ($C_{10}H_{13}N_4O_8P$) is added to foods as a flavor enhancer. What is the structure of inosinic acid? (The structure of inosine is given in Problem 26.22.)

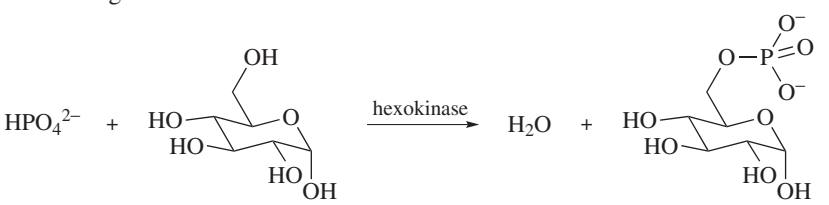
26.24 The phosphorylation of α-D-glucopyranose by ATP (Section 26.3) has $\Delta G^{\circ\prime} = -23$ kJ at 298 K.



(a) Is this reaction exergonic or endergonic?

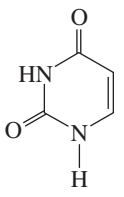
(b) How would the value of $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ change in the absence of the enzyme hexokinase? Would it become more positive, more negative, or would it stay the same? Why?

(c) Use the value for the hydrolysis of ATP to ADP (Section 26.5) to calculate $\Delta G^{\circ\prime}$ for the reaction of α-D-glucopyranose with inorganic phosphate. Is this reaction exergonic or endergonic?



26.25 In one of the early experiments designed to elucidate the genetic code, Marshall Nirenberg of the U.S. National Institutes of Health (Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine, 1968) prepared a synthetic mRNA in which all the bases were uracil. He added this poly(U) to a cell-free system containing all the necessary materials for protein biosynthesis. A polymer of a single amino acid was obtained. What amino acid was polymerized?

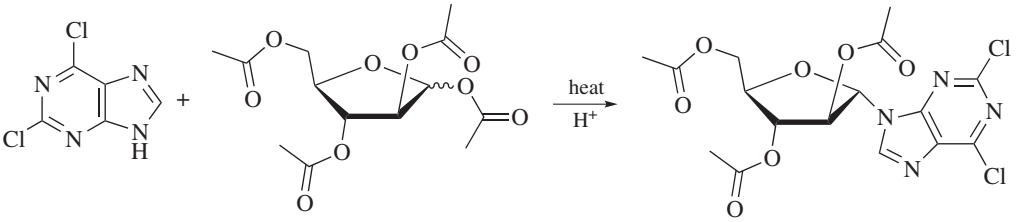
26.26 (a) The two most acidic hydrogens of uracil have pK_a's of 9.5 and 14.2 respectively. Match these pK_a's with the hydrogens in the structural formula and provide structures for the most stable resonance contributors of the monoanion and the dianion.



Uracil

(b) The pK_a of the conjugate acid of triethylamine is 10.4. Is triethylamine a strong enough base to convert uracil to its monoanion? To its dianion?

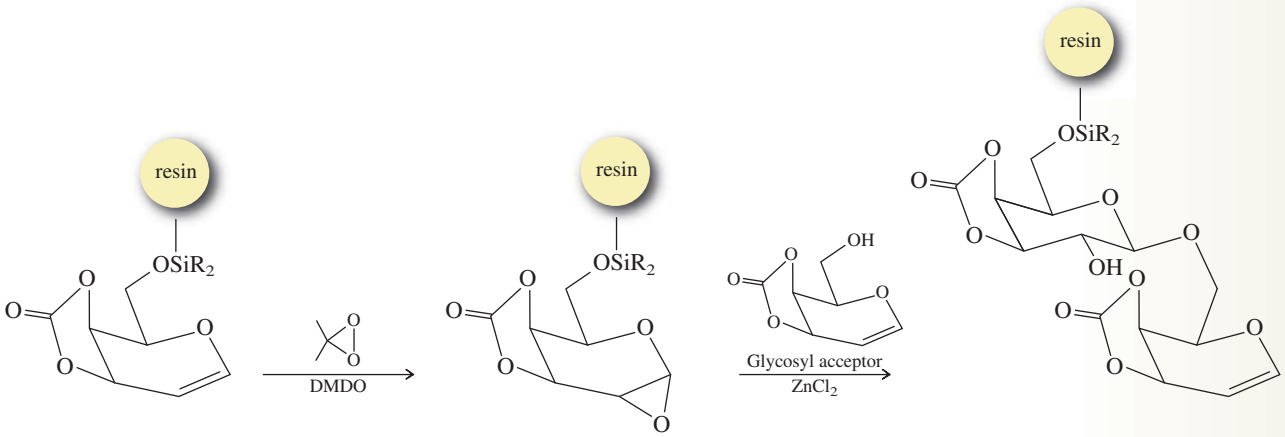
26.27 The coupling reaction of 2,6-dichloropurine with 1,2,3,4-tetra-*O*-acetyl-α+β-arabinofuranose takes place when the two are heated in the presence of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid to give the nucleoside in 75% yield. The reaction is stereoselective for the formation of the α-anomer, even though the starting sugar is a mixture of anomers. Can you think of a reason for the stereoselectivity? (*Hint:* See Mechanism 23.3.)



2,6-Dichloropurine

1,2,3,4-Tetra-*O*-acetyl-α+β-arabinofuranose

26.28 The descriptive passage in this chapter describes the solid-phase synthesis of oligonucleotides. The solid phase technique has also been applied to the automated synthesis of oligosaccharides in what is termed the glycal assembly method. An unsaturated carbohydrate known as a glycal is attached to the solid polystyrene support. The glycal is then converted to an epoxide by treatment with dimethyldioxirane (DMDO). The epoxide serves as the glycosyl donor and undergoes nucleophilic attack by the hydroxyl group of the glycosyl acceptor. The double bond of the new disaccharide is activated and coupled in the same way to allow extension of the oligosaccharide chain.



Glycal

Glycosyl donor

(a) Show a mechanism for the reaction of the glycosyl donor with the glycosyl acceptor. (Hint: Zn^{2+} acts as a catalyst.)

(b) Explain the regioselectivity of the reaction in (a).

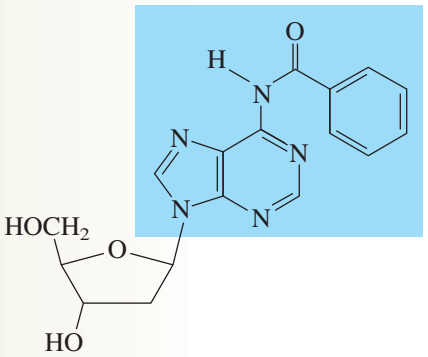
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 26

Oligonucleotide Synthesis

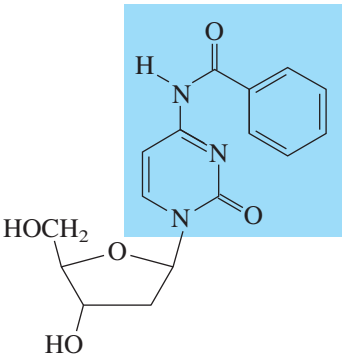
In Section 26.6 we noted that synthetic oligonucleotides of defined sequence were commercially available for use as primers for PCR and as probes for cloning DNA. Here we will examine how these oligonucleotides are prepared.

The method bears many similarities to the Merrifield solid-phase synthesis of peptides. A starter unit is attached to a solid support, nucleosides are attached one-by-one until the sequence is complete, whereupon the target oligonucleotide is removed from the support and purified. Like solid-phase peptide synthesis, the preparation of oligonucleotides relies heavily on protecting groups and bond-forming methods.

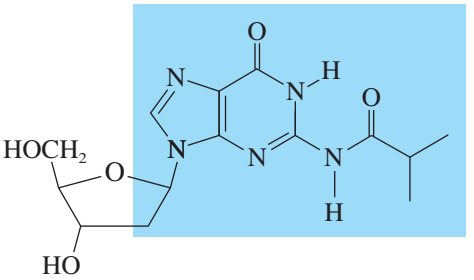
The starter units are nucleosides in which amine groups on the DNA bases have been protected by acylation.



N-Benzoyl-protected 2′-deoxyadenosine



N-Benzoyl-protected 2′-deoxycytidine

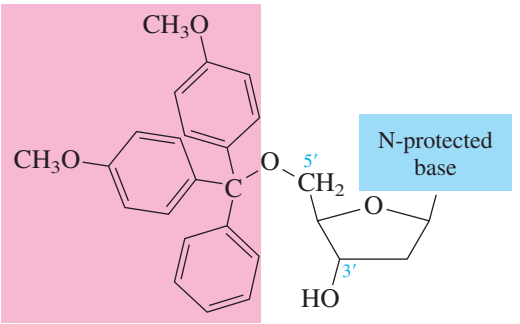


N-2-Methylpropanoyl-protected 2′-deoxyguanosine

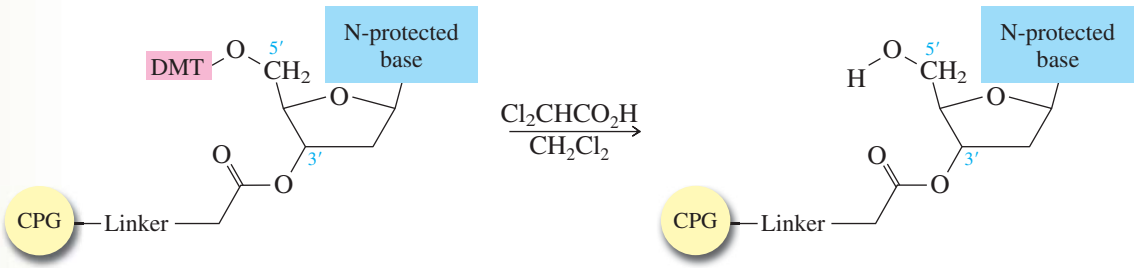
Thymidine lacks an —NH_2 group, so needs no protecting group on its pyrimidine base.

These N-protecting groups remain in place throughout the synthesis. They are the first ones added and the last ones removed. None of the further "chemistry" that takes place involves the purine or pyrimidine rings.

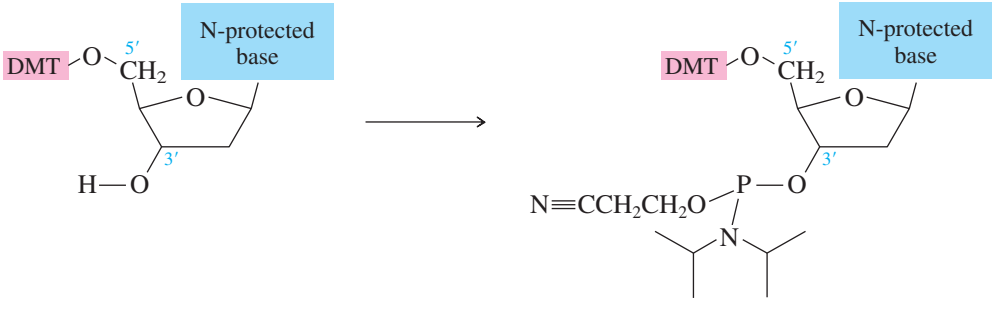
The 5′-OH group of the 2′-deoxyribose portion of the nucleosides is primary and more reactive toward ether formation than the 3′-OH group, which is secondary. This difference allows selective protection of the 5′-OH as its 4,4′-dimethoxytriphenylmethyl (DMT) ether.



The nucleoside that is to serve as the 3′ end of the final oligonucleotide is attached to a controlled-pore glass (CPG) bead by ester formation between its unprotected 3′-OH and a linker unit already attached to the CPG. In order for chain elongation to proceed in the 3′→5′ direction, the DMT group that protects the 5′-OH of the starter unit is removed by treatment with dichloroacetic acid.



The stage is now set for adding the second nucleoside. The four blocked nucleosides prepared earlier are converted to their corresponding 3′-phosphoramidite derivatives. An appropriate A, C, T, or G phosphoramidite is used in each successive stage of the elongation cycle.



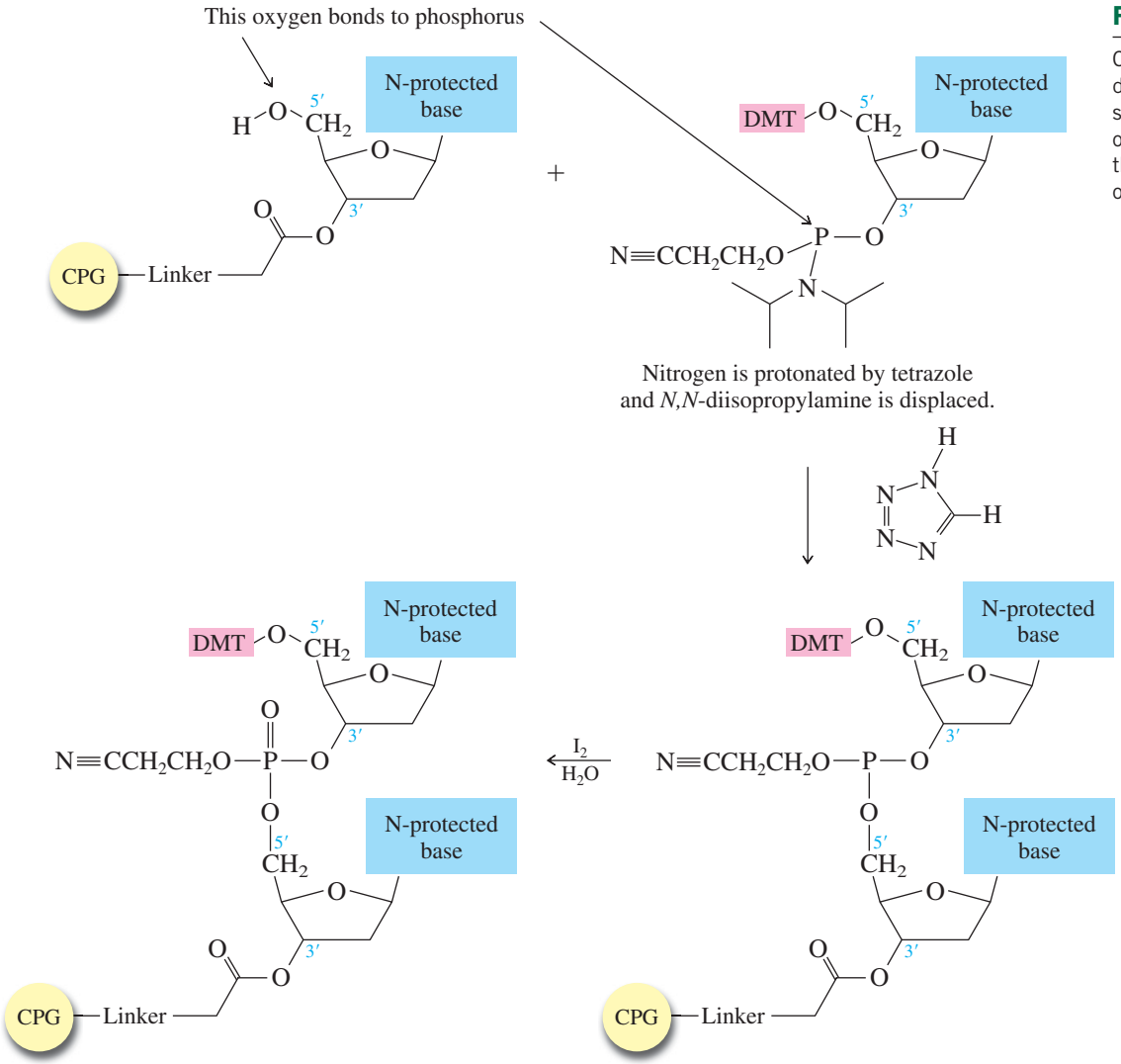


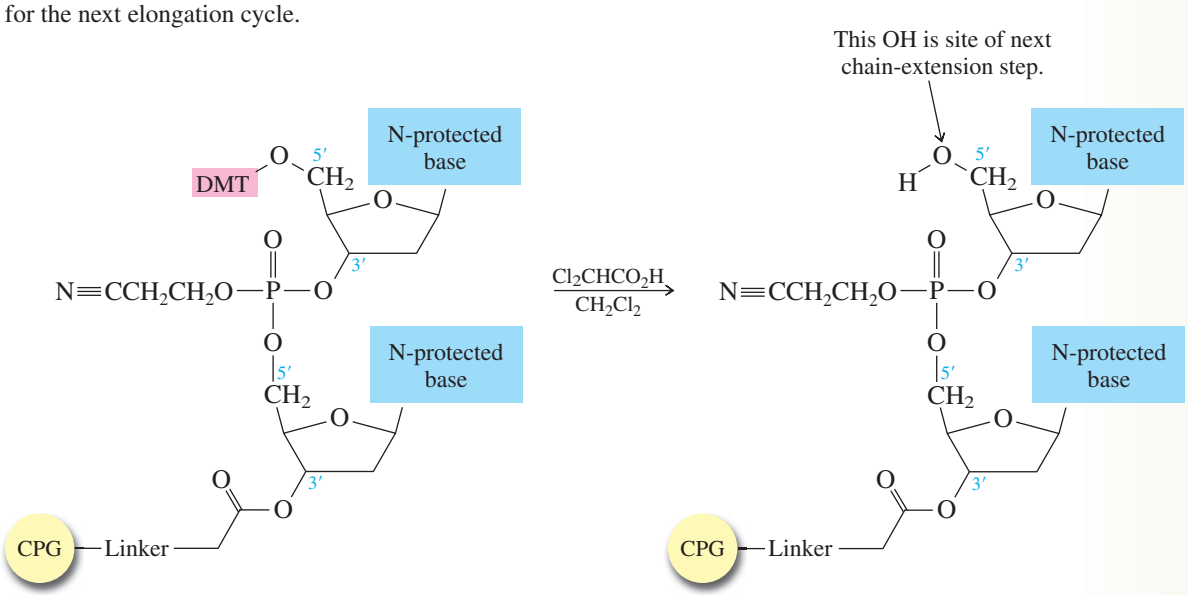
Figure 26.15

Coupling of a 3′-phosphoramidite derivative of a nucleoside to the starter unit nucleoside in a solid-phase oligonucleotide synthesis. Following the coupling, the resulting phosphite is oxidized to a phosphate.

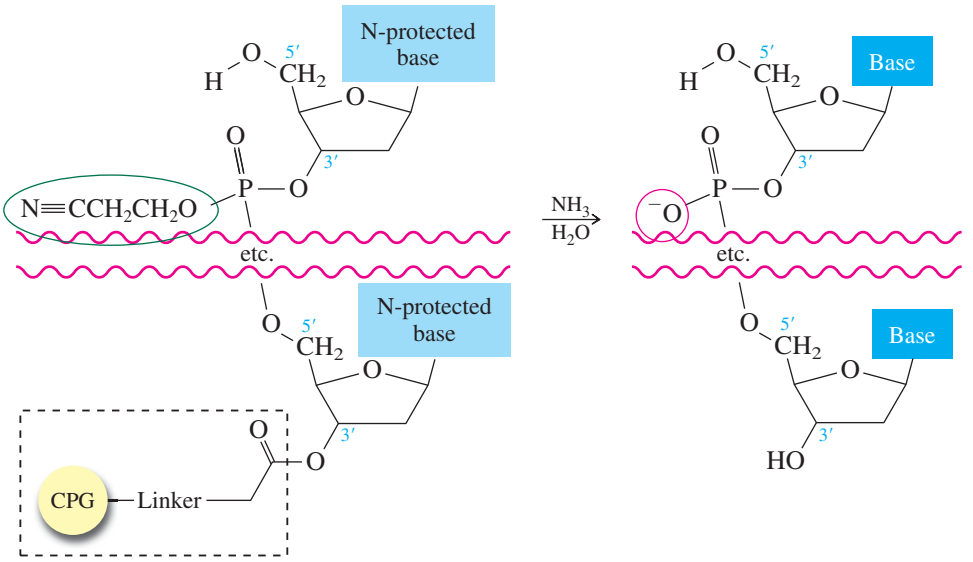
Each phosphoramidite is coupled to the anchored nucleoside by a reaction in which the free 5′-OH of the anchored nucleoside displaces the diisopropylamino group from phosphorus (Figure 26.15). The coupling is catalyzed by tetrazole, which acts as a weak acid to protonate the diisopropylamino group.

The product of the coupling is a phosphite; it has the general formula $P(OR)_3$. It is oxidized to phosphate $[P(O)(OR)_3]$ in the last step of Figure 26.15.

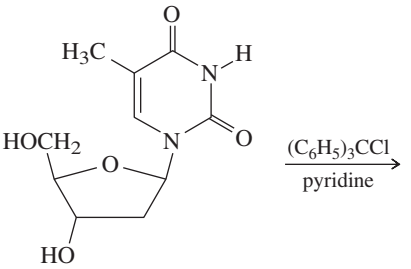
The 5′-OH of the newly added nucleoside is then deprotected to prepare the bound dinucleotide for the next elongation cycle.

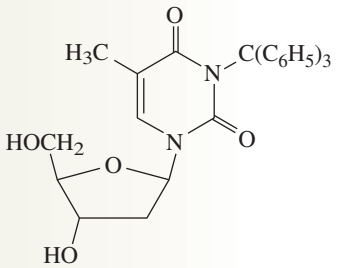


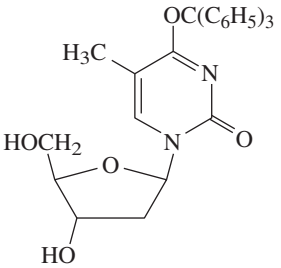
Once all the nucleosides are in place and the last DMT is removed, treatment with aqueous ammonia removes the acyl and cyanoethyl groups and cleaves the oligonucleotide from the CPG support.

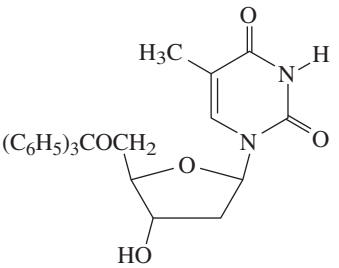


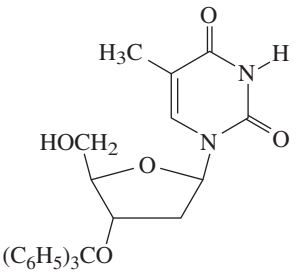
26.29 What is the product of the following reaction?



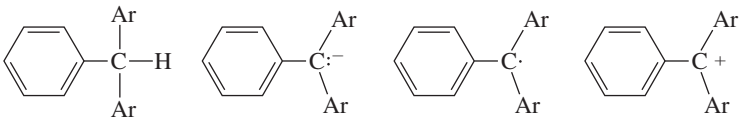

A.


B.

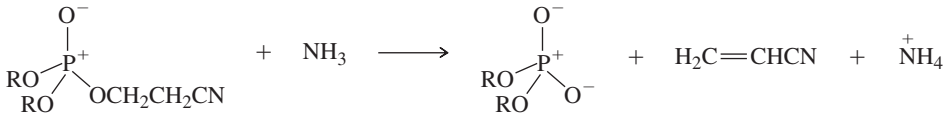

C.


D.

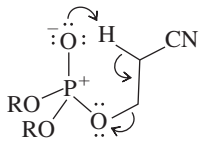
26.30 What species is formed from the DMT-protecting group when it is removed using dichloroacetic acid? (Ar = *p*-$CH_3OC_6H_4$)

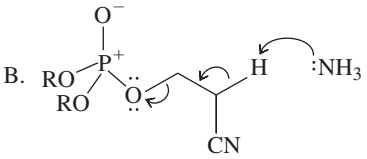

A. B. C. D.

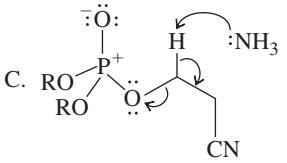
26.31 Cyanoethyl groups are removed during treatment of the product with aqueous ammonia in the last stage of the synthesis.

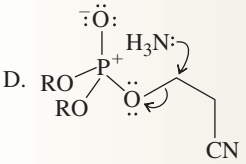


If this reaction occurs in a single bimolecular step, which of the following best represents the flow of electrons?

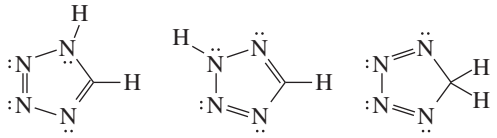
A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

26.32 Structure **1** is the one given for tetrazole in Figure 26.15. Structures **2** and **3** have the same molecular formula (CH_2N_4) and the same number of electrons as **1.** How are these structures related?



1 **2** **3**

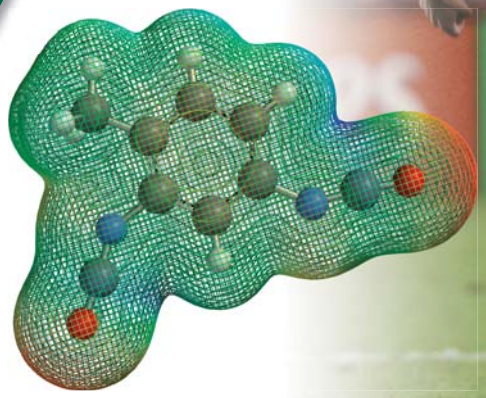
A. **1, 2,** and **3** are constitutional isomers.
B. **1, 2,** and **3** are resonance contributors of the same compound.
C. **1** and **2** are resonance contributors of the same compound; **3** is an isomer of **1** and **2.**
D. **1** and **3** are resonance contributors of the same compound; **2** is an isomer of **1** and **3.**

26.33 Consider the conjugate bases of structures **1, 2,** and **3** in the preceding problem and choose the correct response.
A. **1, 2,** and **3** give different conjugate bases on deprotonation.
B. **1, 2,** and **3** give the same conjugate base on deprotonation.
C. **1** and **2** give the same conjugate base on deprotonation; the conjugate base of **3** is different.
D. **1** and **3** give the same conjugate base on deprotonation; the conjugate base of **2** is different.

26.34 Antisense oligonucleotides are a new class of synthetic drugs, one of which has been approved for use, with numerous others being developed and tested. An antisense drug is designed to have a sequence that is complementary to a portion of a messenger RNA of an organism connected with a disease. The rationale is that the oligonucleotide will bind to the mRNA and interfere with the biosynthesis of a particular protein. An antisense oligonucleotide proposed for treatment of ulcerative colitis has the sequence 5′-GCC CAA GCT GGC ATC GCT CA-3′. In the solid-phase synthesis of this drug, what nucleoside is attached to the controlled-pore glass bead?

A. A
B. T
C. C
D. G

27



CHAPTER OUTLINE

27.1 Some Background 1122
27.2 Polymer Nomenclature 1123
27.3 Classification of Polymers: Reaction Type 1124
27.4 Classification of Polymers: Chain Growth and Step Growth 1126
27.5 Classification of Polymers: Structure 1127
27.6 Classification of Polymers: Properties 1130
27.7 Addition Polymers: A Review and a Preview 1130
27.8 Chain Branching in Free-Radical Polymerization 1133
27.9 Anionic Polymerization: Living Polymers 1135
27.10 Cationic Polymerization 1137
27.11 Polyamides 1139
27.12 Polyesters 1140
27.13 Polycarbonates 1141
27.14 Polyurethanes 1141
27.15 Copolymers 1142
- Conducting Polymers 1144

27.16 **Summary** 1145
Problems 1148
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 27: Chemically Modified Polymers 1149

Like all soccer balls made since the 1980s, the official ball for the 2006 World Cup was constructed of polymeric materials. Four layers of polyurethane, with a total thickness of 1.1 mm, make up the outer covering. Polyurethanes are normally prepared from a diol and a diisocyanate, such as toluene diisocyanate.

Synthetic Polymers

A **polymer** is a substance composed of **macromolecules,** molecules that contain a very large number of atoms and have a high molecular weight. Starch, cellulose, silk, and DNA are examples of naturally occurring polymers. Synthetic polymers include nylon, polyethylene, and Bakelite, among countless others. Polymers need not be homogeneous, and most are not. Even one as simple as polyethylene is a mixture of macromolecules with different chain lengths and different degrees of branching.

This chapter is about synthetic polymers, many of which have been introduced in earlier chapters where we emphasized the connection between the reactions used to prepare polymers and the core reactions of organic chemistry. In this chapter, we will add new polymers and methods to those already introduced and expand our understanding of their synthesis, structure, and properties. As we do so, keep in mind that *the reactions used to prepare polymers are the same fundamental reactions that occur with simple organic compounds*.

27.1 Some Background

The earliest applications of polymer chemistry involved chemical modification designed to improve the physical properties of naturally occurring polymers. In 1839, Charles Goodyear

transformed natural rubber, which is brittle when cold and tacky when warm, to a substance that maintains its elasticity over a wider temperature range by heating it with sulfur (vulcanization). The first synthetic fibers—called *rayons*—were made by chemical modification of cellulose near the end of the nineteenth century.

Vulcanization was summarized in the essay *Diene Polymers* in Chapter 10.

Leo Baekeland patented the first totally synthetic polymer, which he called *Bakelite,* in 1910 (Figure 27.1). Bakelite is a versatile, durable material prepared from low-cost materials (phenol and formaldehyde) and was the most successful synthetic material of its kind for many years.

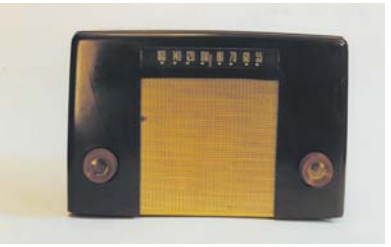


Figure 27.1

At one time, it almost always went without saying that anything plastic was made of Bakelite. Many Bakelite items are now sought after as collectibles.

These early successes notwithstanding, knowledge about polymer *structure* was meager. Most chemists believed that rubber, proteins, and the like were colloidal dispersions of small molecules. During the 1920s Hermann Staudinger, beginning at the Swiss Federal Institute of Technology and continuing at the University of Freiburg, argued that polymers were high-molecular-weight compounds held together by normal covalent bonds. Staudinger's views received convincing support in a 1929 paper by Wallace H. Carothers of Du Pont who reached similar conclusions.

Staudinger received the 1953 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his studies of polymers. Many believe that were it not for his untimely death in 1937, Carothers would likely have shared in the award.

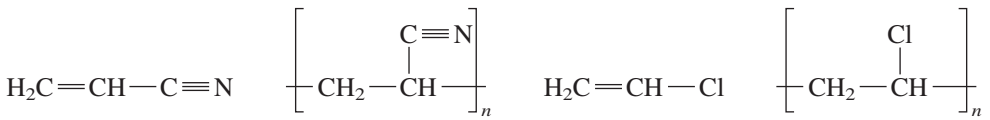
Staudinger's studies of polymer structure and Carothers' achievements in polymer synthesis accelerated the development of polymer chemistry, especially its shift from chemical modification of natural polymers to the design and synthesis of new materials. Thousands of synthetic polymers are now known; some mimic the properties of natural materials, others have superior properties and have replaced natural materials.

27.2 Polymer Nomenclature

Although the IUPAC has set forth rules for naming polymers according to structure, an alternative IUPAC *source-based* system that names polymers according to the **monomers** from which they are prepared is more widely used.

A monomer is any compound from which a polymer can be prepared.

Source-based names are, for example, the ones we are accustomed to seeing for polymers such as polyethylene (see Section 6.14) and polystyrene (see Section 11.14). When the name of the monomer is a single word, the polymer derived from it is generated by simply adding the prefix *poly-*. When the name of the monomer consists of two words, both words are enclosed in parentheses immediately following *poly*. Thus, polyacrylonitrile and poly(vinyl chloride) are the polymers of acrylonitrile and vinyl chloride, respectively.

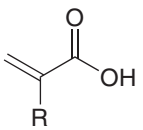


Acrylonitrile | Polyacrylonitrile | Vinyl chloride | Poly(vinyl chloride)

The convention for writing polymer formulas is to enclose the **repeating unit** within brackets, followed by the letter *n* to indicate that the number of repeating units is not specified. It is, however, assumed to be large.

Problem 27.1

Structural formulas for acrylic and methacrylic acids are as shown. Give the names of the polymers requested in (a) and (b) and represent their structures in the bracketed repeating unit format.



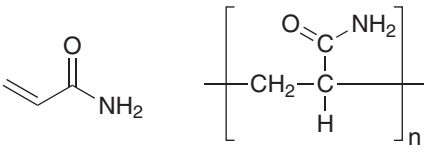
R = H; Acrylic acid

R = CH_3; Methacrylic acid

(a) The amide of acrylic acid (acrylamide)

(b) The methyl ester of methacrylic acid (methyl methacrylate)

Sample Solution (a) *Acrylamide* is one word; therefore, its polymer is *polyacrylamide*. The repeating unit follows the pattern illustrated for polyacrylonitrile and poly(vinyl chloride).



Acrylamide Polyacrylamide

Source-based nomenclature does not require that a particular polymer actually be made from the "source" monomer. Both poly(ethylene glycol) and poly(ethylene oxide), for example, are made from ethylene oxide and have the same repeating unit.

$$\left[\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}\right]_n$$

The structural difference between the two is that the value of n is larger for poly(ethylene oxide) than for poly(ethylene glycol). Therefore, their physical properties are different and they are known by different source-based names.

Many polymers are routinely referred to by their common names or trade names. The polymer $\left[\text{CF}_2\text{CF}_2\right]_n$ is almost always called Teflon rather than polytetrafluoroethylene.

27.3 Classification of Polymers: Reaction Type

Structure, synthesis, production, and applications of polymers span so many disciplines that it is difficult to classify them in a way that serves every interest. Figure 27.2 compares some of the different ways. This section describes how polymers are classified according to the type of reaction—addition or condensation—that occurs.

Addition polymers are formed by reactions of the type:

$$\text{A} + \text{B} \longrightarrow \text{A—B}$$

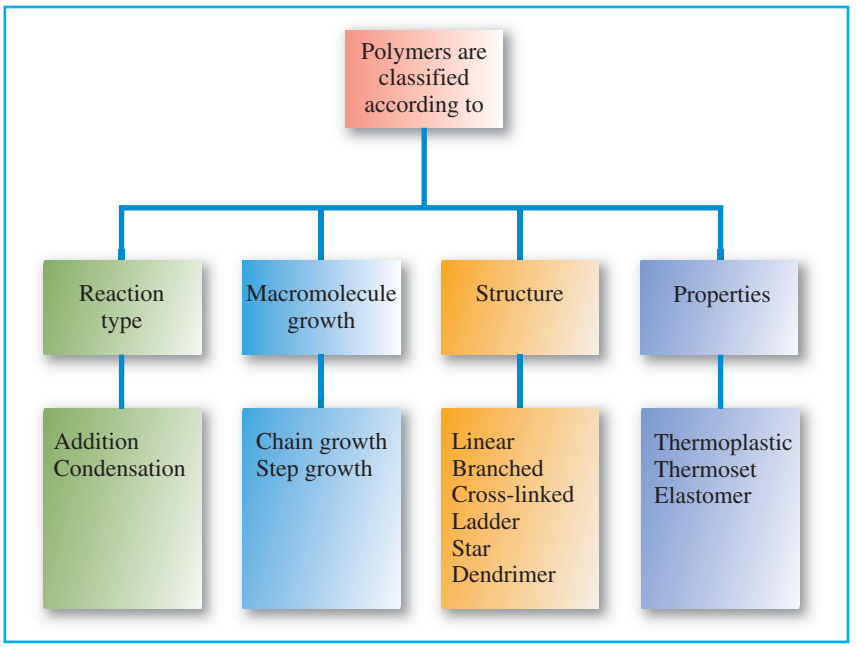
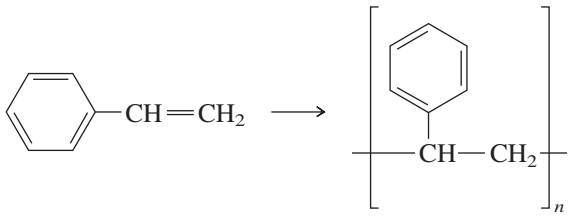


Figure 27.2

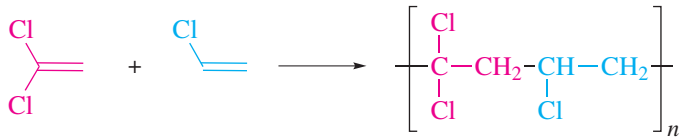
Classification of polymers.

where the product (A—B) retains all of the atoms of the reactants (A + B). In the general equation, A and B are monomers that react to give the polymer. When A = B, the resulting polymer is a **homopolymer.** Polystyrene is an example of a homopolymer.



Styrene Polystyrene

When the two monomers are different, the polymer is a **copolymer.** Saran, used as a protective wrap for food, is a copolymer of vinylidene chloride and vinyl chloride.

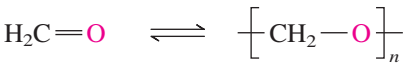


Vinylidene chloride Vinyl chloride Saran

The two components in a copolymer need not be present in equal-molar amounts. In a typical Saran formulation vinylidene chloride is the major monomer (about 85%), and vinyl chloride the minor one.

Polymers prepared from alkenes, regardless of whether they are homopolymers or copolymers, are known as **polyolefins** and are the most familiar addition polymers.

Not all addition polymers are polyolefins. Formaldehyde, for example, polymerizes to give an addition polymer that retains all of the atoms of the monomer.



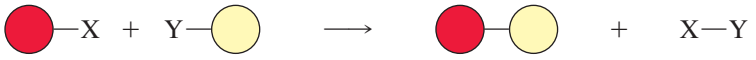
Formaldehyde Polyformaldehyde

When monomeric formaldehyde is needed, to react with a Grignard reagent, for example, it is prepared as needed by heating the polymer in order to "depolymerize" it.

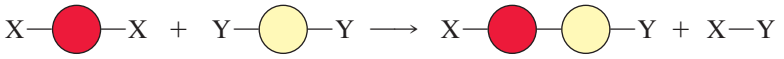
Problem 27.2

Under certain conditions formaldehyde forms a cyclic trimer ($C_3H_6O_3$) called *trioxane*. Suggest a structure for this compound.

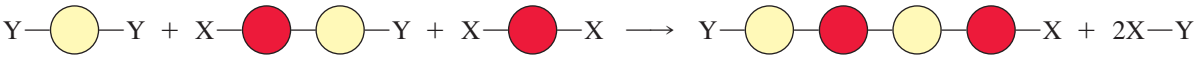
Condensation polymers are prepared by covalent bond formation between monomers, accompanied by the loss of some small molecule such as water, an alcohol, or a hydrogen halide. The condensation reaction:



gives a condensation polymer when applied to difunctional reactants. The first condensation step:



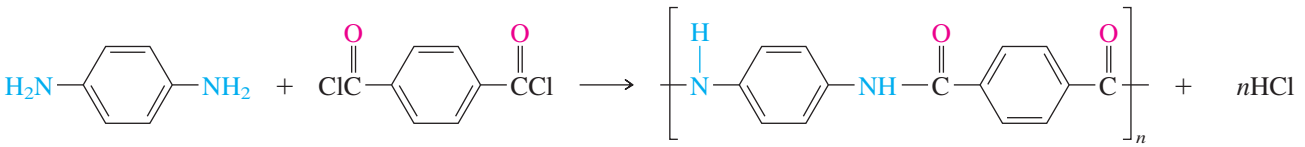
gives a product that has reactive functional groups. Condensation of these functional groups with reactant molecules extends the chain.



The product retains complementary functional groups at both ends and can continue to grow.

The most familiar condensation polymers are polyamides, polyesters, and polycarbonates.

The **aramids,** polyamides in which aromatic rings are joined by amide bonds, are one class of condensation polymer. Heating 1,4-benzenediamine and the acyl chloride of benzene-1,4-dicarboxylic acid (terephthalic acid) gives the aramid *Kevlar* with loss of hydrogen chloride.



1,4-Benzenediamine | Terephthaloyl chloride | Kevlar | Hydrogen chloride

Kevlar fibers are both strong and stiff and used to make bulletproof vests and protective helmets (Figure 27.3).

Figure 27.3

Police and the military depend on body armor and helmets made of Kevlar fibers. Kevlar protective equipment is more effective than steel, yet far lighter in weight.

Problem 27.3

The amide bond between a molecule of 1,4-benzenediamine and a molecule of terephthaloyl chloride is formed by the usual nucleophilic acyl substitution mechanism. Write a structural formula for the tetrahedral intermediate in this reaction.

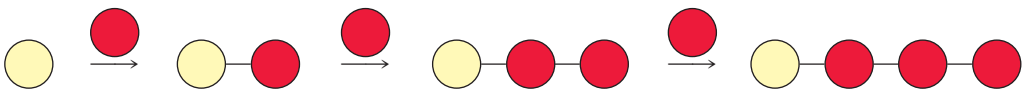
27.4 Classification of Polymers: Chain Growth and Step Growth

Addition and *condensation* are familiar to us as reaction types in organic chemistry. The terms we apply to the two different ways that macromolecules arise from lower-molecular-weight units are unique to polymer chemistry and are illustrated in Figure 27.4.

In a **chain-growth** process monomers add one-by-one to the same end of a growing chain (Figure 27.4*a*). Each chain has only one growth point. The concentration of monomer decreases gradually until it is depleted.

The terms *chain growth* and *step growth* are attributed to Paul Flory who was awarded the 1974 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his studies on the physical chemistry of polymers.

(*a*) **Chain growth:** Monomers add one-by-one to the same end of a growing chain.



(*b*) **Step growth:** A mixture of polymers of intermediate length (oligomers) form. These oligomers react together to give longer chains.

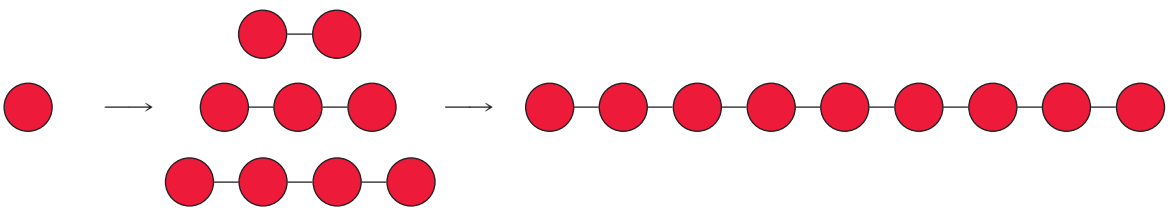


Figure 27.4

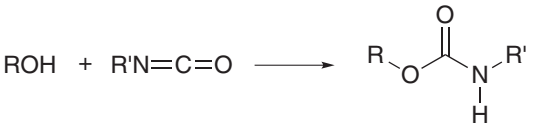
Chain-growth (*a*) and step-growth (*b*) polymerization. During chain growth, the amount of monomer remaining decreases gradually. In step growth, most of the monomer is consumed early and the molecular weight of the polymer increases as oligomers combine to form longer chains.

In a **step-growth** process (Figure 27.4*b*), chains have at least two growth points. Most of the monomer molecules are consumed early in the process to give a mixture of compounds of intermediate molecular weight called **oligomers.** These oligomers react with one another to form the polymer. The molecular weight continues to increase even after all the monomer molecules have reacted.

In general, chain growth is associated with addition polymerization and step growth with condensation polymerization. It is not always so, however. We'll see an example later in this chapter of an addition polymer in which step growth, not chain growth, characterizes macromolecule formation.

Problem 27.4

We can anticipate this "later in the chapter" example by examining the reaction:

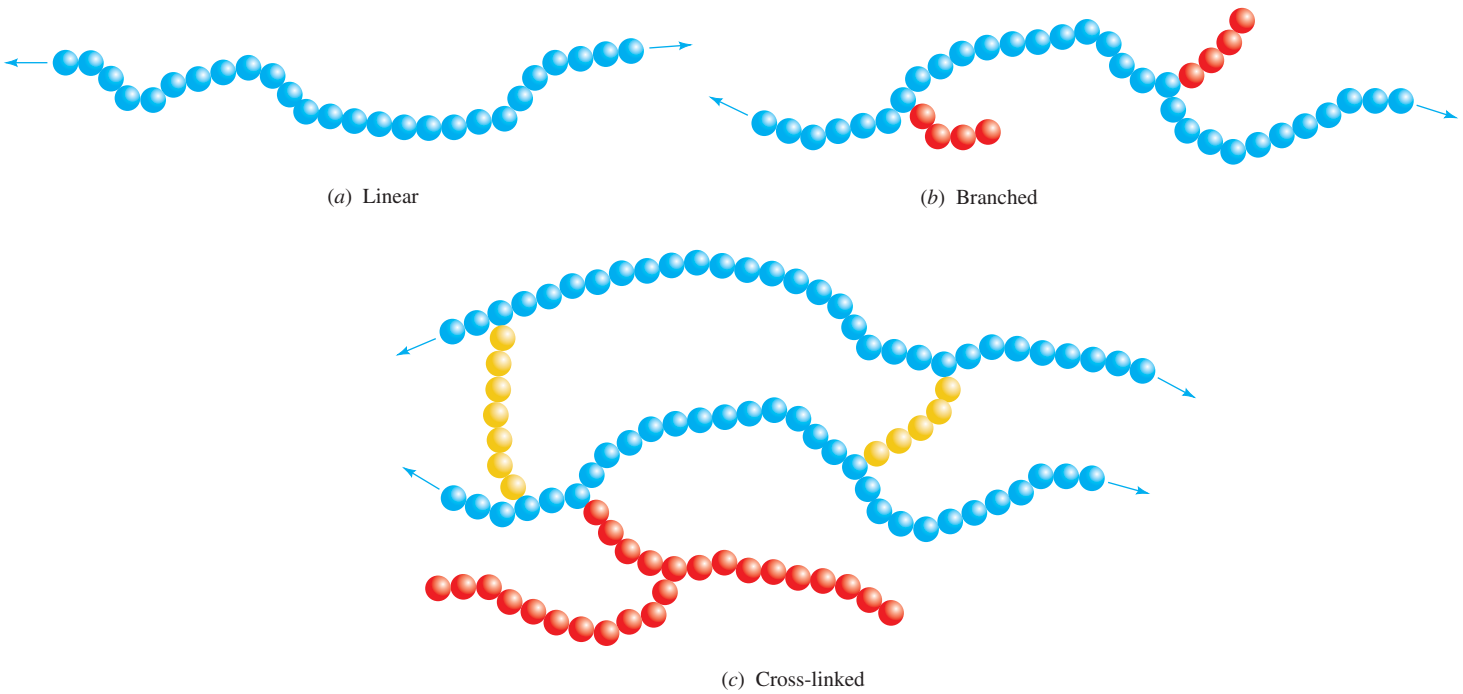


Is this an addition reaction or a condensation?

27.5 Classification of Polymers: Structure

Polymers made from the same compounds can have different properties depending on how they are made. These differences in physical properties result from differences in the overall *structure* of the polymer chain. The three major structural types—linear, branched, and cross-linked—are illustrated in Figure 27.5. Other, more specialized, structural types—ladders, stars, and dendrimers—have unique properties and are under active investigation.

Linear polymers (Figure 27.5*a*) have a continuous chain of repeating units. The repeating units within the chain are subject to the usual conformational requirements of organic chemistry. The collection of chains can range from *random,* much like a bowl of



(*a*) Linear (*b*) Branched

(*c*) Cross-linked

Figure 27.5

(*a*) A linear polymer has a continuous chain. (*b*) A branched polymer has relatively short branches connected to the main chain. (*c*) A cross-linked polymer has covalently bonded linking units between chains. The main chains are shown in blue, the branches in red, and the cross links in yellow.

spaghetti, to *ordered*. We describe polymers at the random extreme as *amorphous* and those at the ordered extreme as *crystalline.*

Most polymers are a mixture of random tangles interspersed with crystalline domains called **crystallites** (Figure 27.6). The degree of crystallinity of a polymer, that is, the percentage of crystallites, depends on the strength of intermolecular forces between chains. For a particular polymer, density increases with crystallinity because randomly coiled chains consume volume, while closer packing puts the same mass into a smaller volume. The efficiency with which the chains can pack together is strongly affected by the extent to which the chain is branched.

Branched polymers (Figure 27.5*b*) have branches extending from the main chain. In general, increased branching reduces the crystallinity of a polymer and alters properties such as density.

Contrast the properties of low-density polyethylene (LDPE) and high-density (HDPE), two of the six polymers familiar enough to have their own identifying codes for recycling (Table 27.1). Both are homopolymers of ethylene, but are prepared by different methods and have different properties and uses. As their names imply, LDPE has a lower density than HDPE (0.92 g/cm^3 versus 0.96 g/cm^3). LDPE is softer, HDPE more rigid. LDPE has a lower melting point than HDPE. LDPE is the plastic used for grocery store bags; HDPE is stronger and used for water bottles, milk jugs, and gasoline tanks.

The structural difference between the two is that LDPE is more branched, averaging about 20 branches for every thousand carbon atoms compared with about 5 per thousand for HDPE. The greater density of HDPE results from packing more mass into the same volume. Unbranched chains pack more efficiently than branched ones, which translates into stronger intermolecular forces, greater crystallinity, and a tougher, more durable material.

Stereoregular polymers including isotactic polypropylene were described in Section 7.16.

Like HDPE, isotactic polypropylene is highly crystalline with numerous uses, including fibers for rope and carpets. Atactic polypropylene, on the other hand, is much less crystalline and has few applications.

Chains in a **cross-linked** or **network polymer** (Figure 27.5*c*) are connected to one another by linking units, which may be long or short and composed of the same repeating units as the main chain or different ones. Vulcanization, for example, uses sulfur to cross-link the hydrocarbon chains of natural rubber. In general, cross-linking increases rigidity by

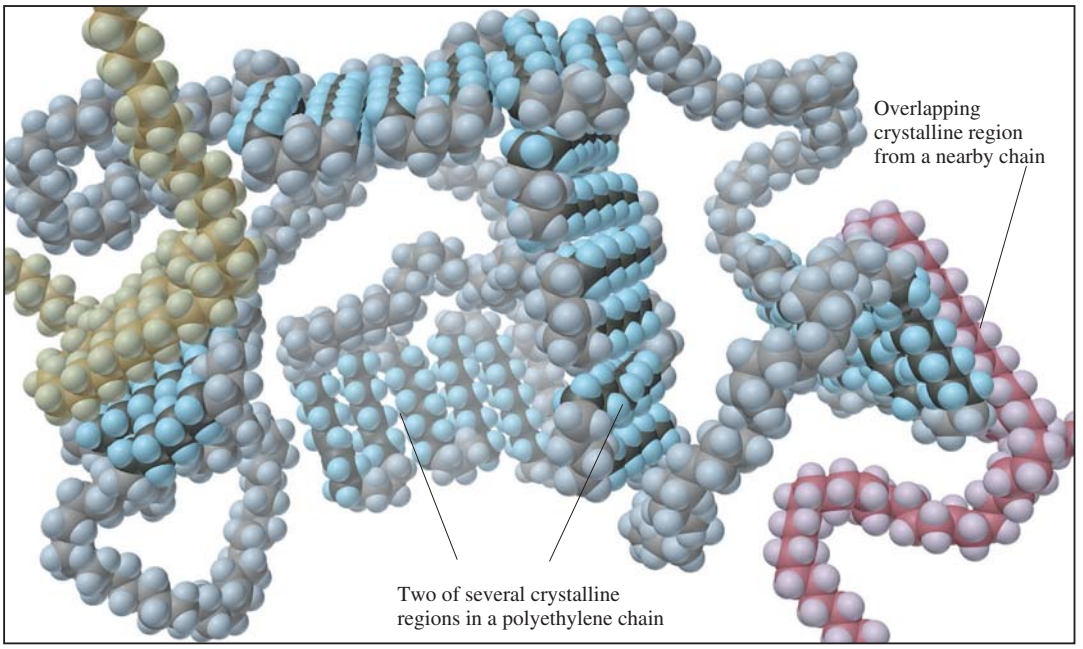


Figure 27.6

Polyethylene contains both randomly coiled (amorphous) and ordered (crystalline) regions. The ordered regions (crystallites) of one chain are shown in a darker color than the random main chain. Crystallites involving the main chain with neighboring ones are in red and yellow. Reprinted, with permission, from M. Silberberg, *Chemistry,* 6th ed., McGraw-Hill Higher Education, 2012. p. 463.

TABLE 27.1 Recycling of Plastics

Symbol	Polymer	Some uses*	
		New	Recycled
1 PETE	Poly(ethylene terephthalate)	Polyester textile fibers, tire cords, photographic film, soft drink and water bottles, food jars	Carpet fibers, detergent bottles, bathtubs, car parts, audio- and videotapes
2 HDPE	High-density polyethylene	Bottles, automobile fuel tanks, milk jugs, bags, cereal box liners	Plastic lumber for exterior uses (picnic tables, mailboxes, decks, trash bins, planters)
3 V	Poly(vinyl chloride)	Floor tiles, vinyl siding, plumbing pipe, gutters and downspouts, garden hoses, shower curtains, window frames, blister packs	Many of the uses of recycled poly(vinyl chloride) are the same as those of new material
4 LDPE	Low-density polyethylene	Trash bags, packaging, squeezable bottles, grocery bags	Packaging film and bags
5 PP	Polypropylene	Indoor–outdoor carpet, rope, medicine bottles, packaging	Indoor–outdoor carpet, rope, fishing nets, tarpaulins, auto parts
6 PS	Polystyrene	Television cabinets, luggage, egg cartons, toys, Styrofoam cups, appliances	Styrofoam insulation and packaging, coat hangers, containers
7 OTHER	Other (acrylics, nylon, polycarbonates, etc.)	5-Gallon reusable water bottles, automobile bumpers and other parts, tires, telephones, safety helmets	

*The uses of new and recycled plastics are often the same, and many products are a mixture of new and recycled material.

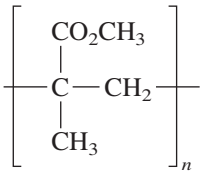
restricting the movement of the polymer chains. Vulcanized rubber is a lightly cross-linked elastomer; Bakelite can be so highly cross-linked as to be considered a single molecule.

27.6 Classification of Polymers: Properties

How a polymer responds to changes in temperature is important not only with respect to the conditions under which it can be used, but also in the methods by which it is transformed into a commercial product.

Thermoplastic polymers are the most common and are those that soften when heated. At their *glass transition temperature* (T_g), thermoplastic polymers change from a glass to a flexible, rubbery state. Past this point amorphous polymers are gradually transformed to a liquid as the temperature is raised. Crystalline polymers undergo a second transition, liquefying only when the *melting temperature* (T_m) is reached. Compare the behaviors of atactic, isotactic, and syndiotactic poly(methyl methacrylate) on being heated.

Poly(methyl methacrylate)	T_g(°C)	T_m(°C)
atactic	114	—
isotactic	48	160
syndiotactic	126	200



The atactic form of poly(methyl methacrylate) is amorphous and exhibits only one transition temperature (T_g). The stereoregular isotactic and syndiotactic forms are partially crystalline and undergo both a glass transition and melting.

The process that takes place at T_g is an increase in the conformational mobility of the polymer chains. At T_m, attractive forces in crystallites are broken and individual chains separate.

Melting temperature is an important factor in respect to how polymers are used. The relatively low T_m for low-density polyethylene (115°C) makes it an easy polymer to cast into the desired shape when melted, but at the same time limits its applications. When, for example, a container is required that must be sterilized by heating, the higher T_m of HDPE (137°C) makes it a better choice than LDPE.

Unlike thermoplastic polymers that soften on heating, **thermosetting polymers** (also called *thermosetting resins*) pass through a liquid state then solidify ("cure") on continued heating. The solidified material is a **thermoset.** It is formed by irreversible chemical reactions that create cross links as the thermosetting polymer is heated. *Bakelite,* a highly cross-linked thermoset made from phenol and formaldehyde, is prepared in two stages. In the first stage, condensation between phenol and formaldehyde gives a polymer, which, in its fluid state, is cast in molds and heated, whereupon it solidifies to a hard, rigid mass. The chemical reactions that form the fluid polymer and the solid thermoset are the same kind of condensations; the difference is that there are more cross links in the thermoset. *Melamine* (used in plastic dinnerware) is another example of a thermoset.

Elastomers are flexible polymers that can be stretched but return to their original state when the stretching force is released. Most amorphous polymers become rubbery beyond their glass transition temperature, but not all rubbery polymers are elastic. Cross links in elastomers limit the extent to which elastomers can be deformed then encourage them to return to their original shape when they are relaxed.

27.7 Addition Polymers: A Review and a Preview

Addition polymers are most familiar to us in connection with the polymerization of alkenes.

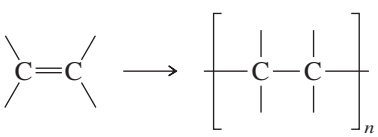
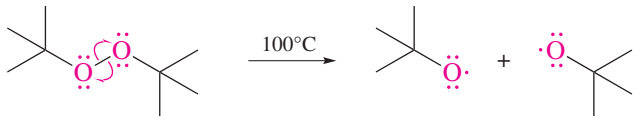
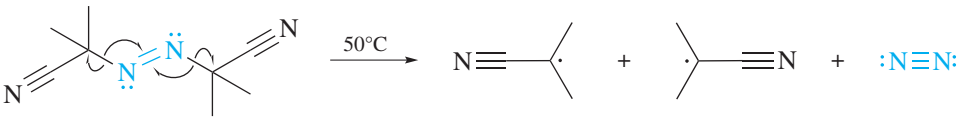


Table 27.2 reviews alkene polymerizations that proceed by free radicals and by coordination complexes of the Ziegler–Natta type. Both are chain-growth processes; their propagation steps were outlined in Mechanisms 6.9 and 14.3, respectively. The present section examines two other significant factors in alkene polymerization: initiation and termination.

Initiators of Alkene Polymerization: Whether free-radical or coordination polymerization occurs depends primarily on the substance used to initiate the reaction. Free-radical polymerization occurs when a compound is present that undergoes homolytic bond cleavage when heated. Two examples include

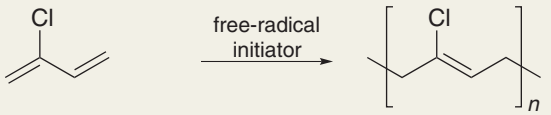
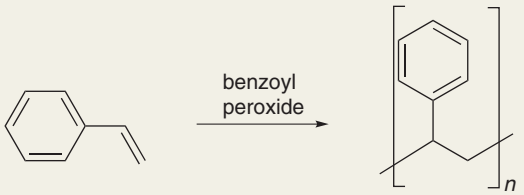
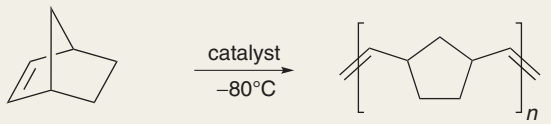


Di-*tert*-butyl peroxide — Two *tert*-butoxy radicals



Azobisisobutyronitrile (AIBN) — Two 1-cyano-1-methylethyl radicals — Nitrogen

TABLE 27.2 Summary of Alkene Polymerizations Discussed in Earlier Chapters

Reaction (section) and comments	Example
Free-radical polymerization of alkenes (see Section 6.14) Many alkenes polymerize when treated with free-radical initiators. A free-radical chain mechanism is followed and was illustrated for the case of ethylene in Mechanism 6.9.	$H_2C{=}CH_2$ —(200°C, 2000 atm; O_2 or peroxides)→ $+CH_2-CH_2+_n$ Ethylene — Polyethylene
Free-radical polymerization of dienes (see Section 10.10) Conjugated dienes undergo free-radical polymerization under conditions similar to those of alkenes. The major product corresponds to 1,4-addition.	 2-Chloro-1,3-butadiene (Chloroprene) — Polychloroprene
Free-radical polymerization of styrene (see Section 11.14) Styrene can be polymerized under free-radical, cationic, anionic, and Ziegler–Natta conditions. The mechanism of the free-radical polymerization was shown in Mechanism 11.2.	 Styrene — Polystyrene
Ring-opening metathesis polymerization (see Section 14.13) The double bonds of strained cyclic alkenes are cleaved by certain carbene complexes of tungsten and, in the process, undergo polymerization.	 Bicyclo[2.2.1]-2-heptene (Norbornene) — Polynorbornene
Coordination polymerization (see Section 14.14) Organometallic compounds such as bis(cyclopentadienyl)zirconium dichloride (Cp_2ZrCl_2) catalyze the polymerization of ethylene by the sequence of steps shown in Mechanism 14.3.	$H_2C{=}CH_2$ —(Cp_2ZrCl_2; methalumoxane)→ $+CH_2-CH_2+_n$ Ethylene — Polyethylene

Problem 27.5

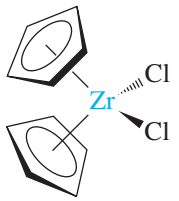
(a) Write a chemical equation for the reaction in which *tert*-butoxy radical adds to vinyl chloride to initiate polymerization. Show the flow of electrons with curved arrows.

(b) Repeat part (a) for the polymerization of styrene using AIBN as an initiator.

Sample Solution (a) *tert*-Butoxy radical adds to the CH_2 group of vinyl chloride. The free radical formed in this process has its unpaired electron on the carbon bonded to chlorine.

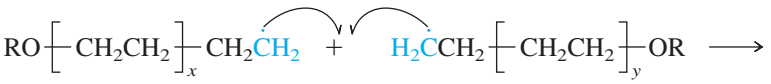
tert-Butoxy radical | Vinyl chloride | 2-*tert*-Butoxy-1-chloroethyl radical

Coordination polymerization catalysts are complexes of transition metals. The original Ziegler–Natta catalyst, a mixture of titanium tetrachloride and diethylaluminum chloride, has been joined by numerous organometallic complexes such as the widely used bis(cyclopentadienyl)zirconium dichloride.

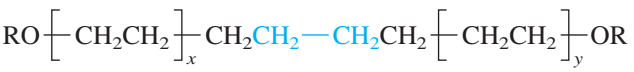


Bis(cyclopentadienyl)zirconium dichloride

Termination Steps in Alkene Polymerization: The main chain-terminating processes in free-radical polymerization are *combination* and *disproportionation*. In a combination, the pairing of the odd electron of one growing radical chain with that of another gives a stable macromolecule.

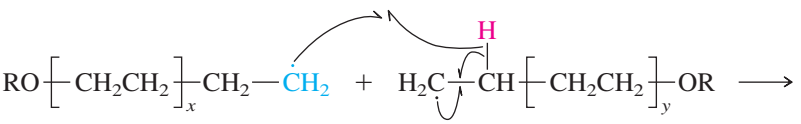


Two growing polyethylene chains

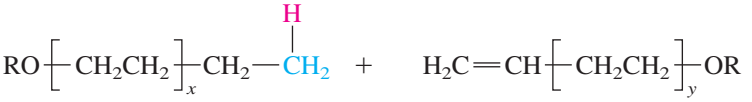


Terminated polyethylene

In disproportionation, two alkyl radicals react by hydrogen-atom transfer. Two stable molecules result; one terminates in a methyl group, the other in a double bond.



Two growing polyethylene chains



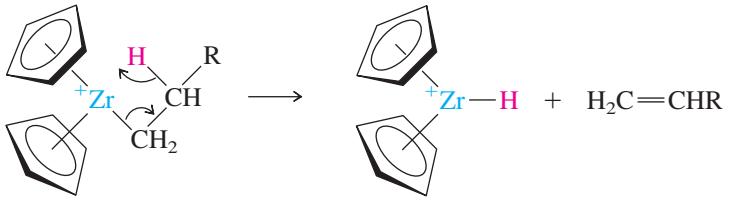
Methyl-terminated polyethylene | Double-bond-terminated polyethylene

Both combination and disproportionation consume free radicals and decrease the number of growing chains. Because they require a reaction between two free radicals, each of which is present in low concentration, they have a low probability compared with chain growth, in which a radical reacts with a monomer. Combination involves only bond making and has a low activation energy; disproportionation has a higher activation energy because bond breaking accompanies bond making. Disproportionation has a more adverse effect on chain length and molecular weight than combination.

Problem 27.6

Other than combination, a macromolecule of the type RO$-[CH_2CH_2]_x-CH_2-CH_2-$OR can arise by a different process, one which also terminates chain growth. Show a reasonable reaction and represent the flow of electrons by curved arrows.

Among several chain terminating reactions that can occur in coordination polymerization, a common one is an elimination in which a β-hydrogen is transferred to the metal.

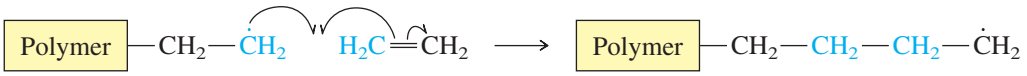


27.8 Chain Branching in Free-Radical Polymerization

Even with the same monomer, the properties of a polymer can vary significantly depending on how it is prepared. Free-radical polymerization of ethylene gives low-density polyethylene; coordination polymerization gives high-density polyethylene. The properties are different because the structures are different, and the difference in the structures comes from the mechanisms by which the polymerizations take place. Free-radical polymerization of ethylene gives a branched polymer, coordination polymerization gives a linear one.

What is the mechanism responsible for the branching that occurs in the free-radical polymerization of ethylene?

By itself, the propagation step in the free-radical polymerization of ethylene cannot produce branches.



In order for the polymer to be branched, an additional process must occur involving a radical site somewhere other than at the end of the chain. The two main ways this can happen both involve hydrogen abstraction from within the polymer chain.

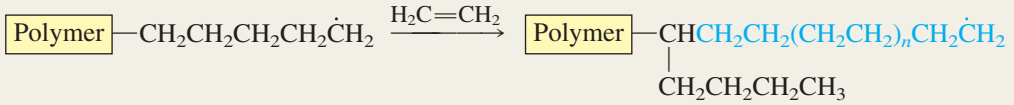
1. Intramolecular hydrogen atom abstraction
2. Intermolecular hydrogen atom abstraction (chain transfer)

Intramolecular Hydrogen Atom Abstraction: Mechanism 27.1 shows how intramolecular hydrogen atom abstraction can lead to the formation of a four-carbon branch. Recall that an intramolecular process takes place *within* a molecule, not *between* molecules. As the mechanism shows, the radical at the end of the growing polymer abstracts a hydrogen atom from the fifth carbon. Five carbons and one hydrogen comprise six atoms of a cyclic transition state. When a hydrogen atom is removed from the fifth carbon, a secondary radical is generated at that site. This, then, is the carbon that becomes the origin for further chain growth. Analogous mechanisms apply to branches shorter or longer than four carbons.

Mechanism 27.1

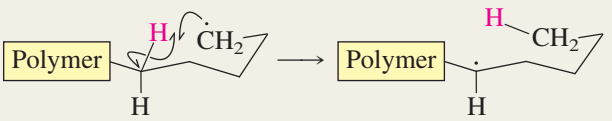
Branching in Polyethylene Caused by Intramolecular Hydrogen Transfer

THE OVERALL REACTION:

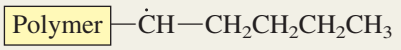


THE MECHANISM:

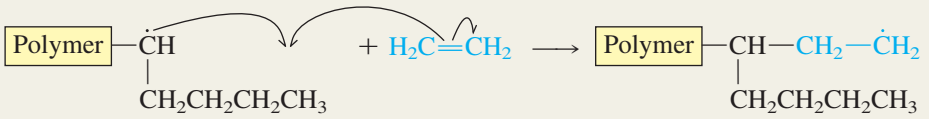
Step 1: The carbon at the end of the chain—the one with the unpaired electron—abstracts a hydrogen atom from the fifth carbon. The transition state is a cyclic arrangement of six atoms.



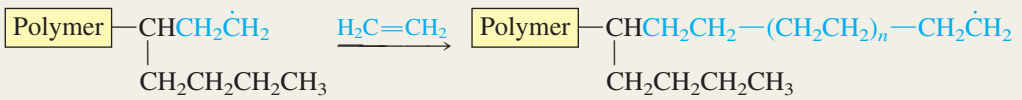
The resulting radical is secondary and more stable than the original primary radical. Therefore, the hydrogen atom abstraction is exothermic.



Step 2: When the radical reacts with ethylene, chain extension takes place at the newly formed radical site. The product of this step has a four-carbon branch attached to the propagating chain.



Step 3: Reaction with additional ethylene molecules extends the growing chain.



Problem 27.7

Suggest an explanation for the observation that branches shorter or longer than four carbons are found infrequently in polyethylene. Frame your explanation in terms of how ΔH and ΔS affect the activation energy for intramolecular hydrogen atom abstraction.

A comparable process cannot occur when Ziegler–Natta catalysts are used because free radicals are not intermediates in coordination polymerization.

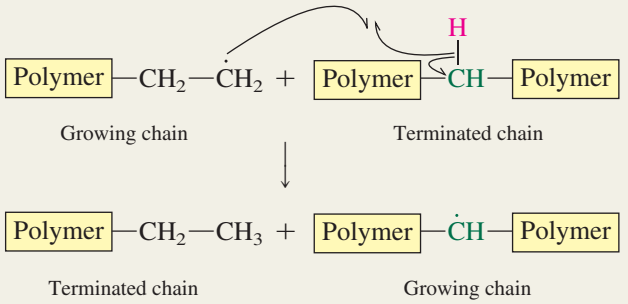
Intermolecular Hydrogen Atom Abstraction (Chain Transfer): Mechanism 27.2 shows how a growing polymer chain abstracts a hydrogen atom from a terminated chain. The original growing chain is now terminated, and the original terminated chain is activated toward further growth. Chain growth, however, occurs at the branch point, not at the end of the chain. An already long chain adds a branch while terminating a (presumably shorter) growing chain. Chain transfer not only leads to branching, but also encourages disparity in chain lengths—more short chains and more long branched chains. Both decrease the crystallinity of the polymer and reduce its strength.

As in the case of intramolecular hydrogen abstraction, branching by chain transfer is not a problem when alkenes are polymerized under Ziegler–Natta conditions because free radicals are not intermediates in coordination polymerization.

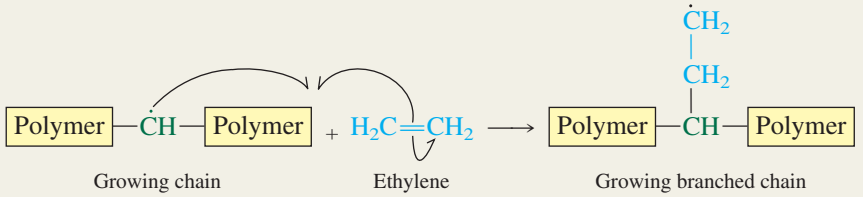
Mechanism 27.2

Branching in Polyethylene Caused by Intermolecular Hydrogen Transfer

Step 1: A growing polymer chain abstracts a hydrogen atom from a terminated chain. This step terminates the growing chain and activates the terminated one.

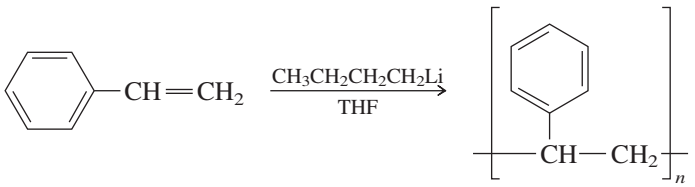


Step 2: Reaction of the new chain with monomer molecules produces a branch at which future growth occurs.



27.9 Anionic Polymerization: Living Polymers

Anionic polymerization is a useful alternative to free-radical and Ziegler–Natta procedures for certain polymers. Adding butyllithium to a solution of styrene in tetrahydrofuran (THF), for example, gives polystyrene.



Mechanism 27.3 shows how addition of butyllithium to the double bond of styrene initiates polymerization. The product of this step is a benzylic carbanion that then adds to a second molecule of styrene to give another benzylic carbanion, and so on by a chain-growth process.

Polystyrene formed under these conditions has a narrower range of molecular weights than provided by other methods. Initiation of polymerization by addition of butyllithium to styrene is much faster than subsequent chain growth. Thus, all the butyllithium is consumed and the number of chains is equal to the number of molecules of butyllithium used. These starter chains then grow at similar rates to produce similar chain lengths.

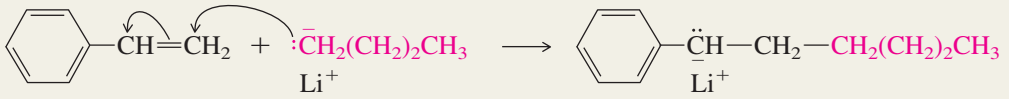
Problem 27.8

How will the average chain length of polystyrene vary with the amount of butyllithium used to initiate polymerization?

Mechanism 27.3

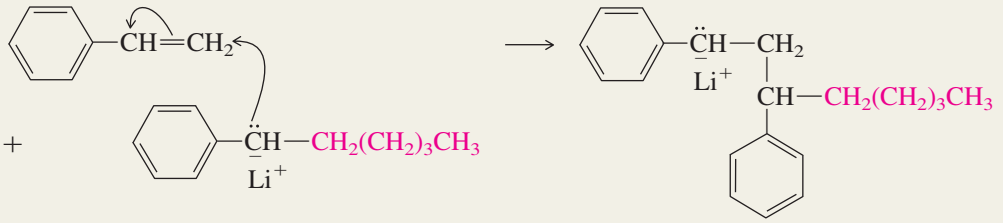
Anionic Polymerization of Styrene

Step 1: Anionic polymerization of styrene is initiated by addition of butyllithium to the double bond. The regioselectivity of addition is governed by formation of the more stable carbanion, which in this case is benzylic.



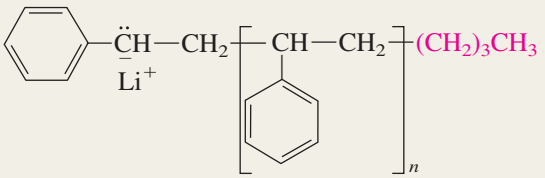
Styrene Butyllithium 1-Phenylhexyllithium

Step 2: The product of the first step adds to a second molecule of styrene.



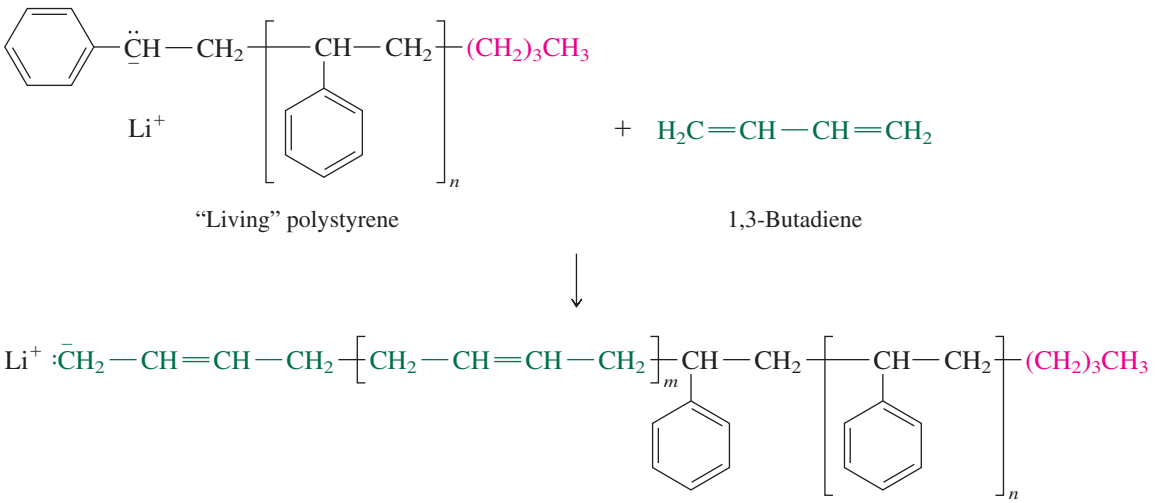
Styrene + 1-Phenylhexyllithium 1,3-Diphenyloctyllithium

Step 3: The product of the second step adds to a third molecule of styrene, then a fourth, and so on to give a macromolecule. Reaction continues until all of the styrene is consumed. At this point the polystyrene exists as an organolithium reagent.



The organolithium reagent is stable, but easily protonated by water to give polystyrene. Alternatively, another monomer can be added to continue extending the chain.

As shown in step 3 of Mechanism 27.3 once all of the monomer is consumed the polymer is present as its organolithium derivative. This material is referred to as a **living polymer** because more monomer can be added and anionic polymerization will continue until the added monomer is also consumed. Adding 1,3-butadiene, for example, to a living polymer of styrene gives a new living polymer containing sections ("blocks") of polystyrene and poly(1,3-butadiene).

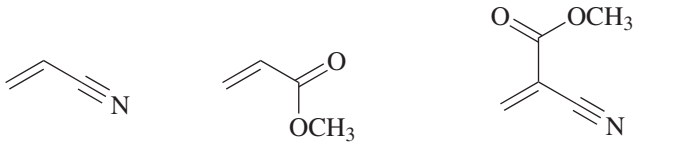


"Living" polystyrene 1,3-Butadiene

"Living" styrene-butadiene copolymer

Living polymerizations are characterized by the absence of efficient termination processes. They are normally terminated by intentionally adding a substance that reacts with carbanions such as an alcohol or carbon dioxide.

The kinds of vinyl monomers that are susceptible to anionic polymerization are those that bear electron-withdrawing groups such as —C≡N and —C(=O)— on the double bond.

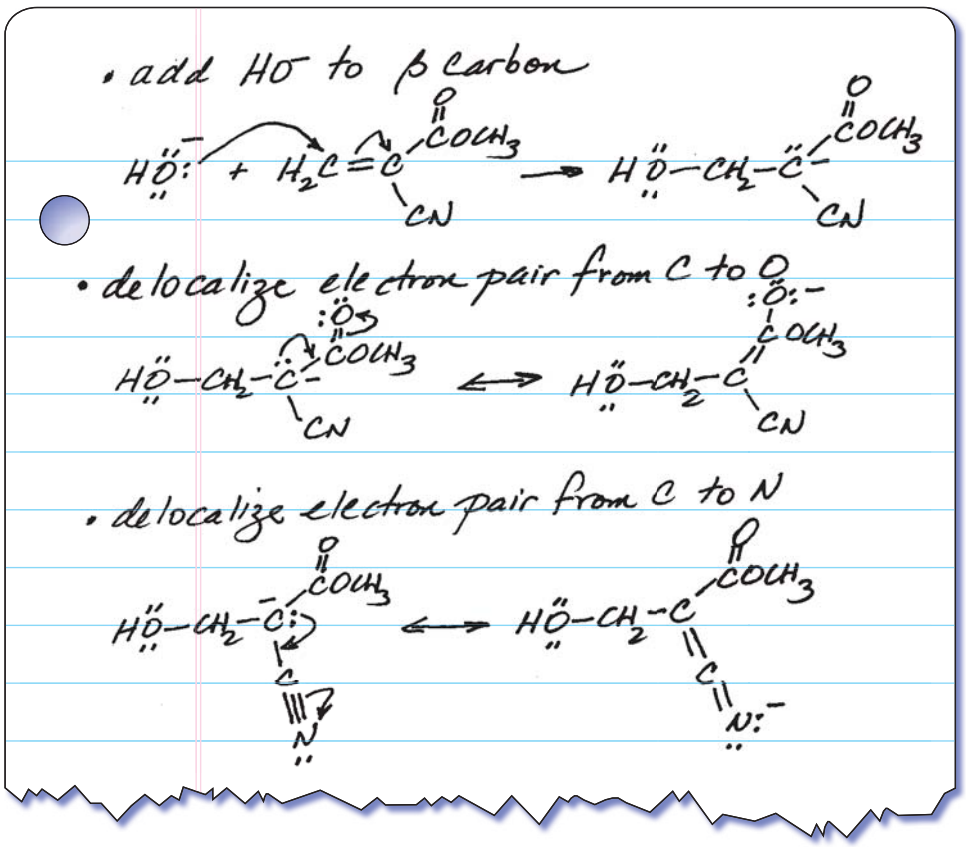


Acrylonitrile Methyl acrylate Methyl 2-cyanoacrylate

When a carbonyl and a cyano group are attached to the same carbon as in methyl 2-cyanoacrylate, the monomer that constitutes *Super Glue,* anionic polymerization can be initiated by even weak bases such as atmospheric moisture or normal skin dampness.

Problem 27.9

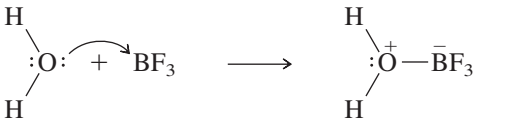
Write a structural formula for the carbanion formed by addition of hydroxide ion to methyl 2-cyanoacrylate. Accompany this structural formula by a contributing resonance structure that shows delocalization of the negative charge to oxygen, and another to nitrogen.



27.10 Cationic Polymerization

Analogous to the initiation of anionic polymerization by addition of nucleophiles to alkenes, cationic polymerization can be initiated by the addition of electrophiles. The alkenes that respond well to cationic polymerization are those that form relatively stable

carbocations when protonated. Of these, the one used most often is 2-methylpropene, better known in polymer chemistry by its common name *isobutylene*. Mechanism 27.4 outlines the mechanism of this polymerization as catalyzed by boron trifluoride to which a small amount of water has been added. The active catalyst is believed to be a Lewis acid/Lewis base complex formed from them by the reaction:



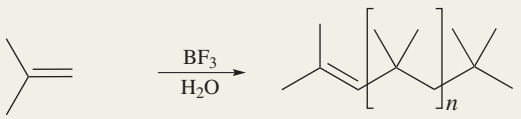
Water Boron trifluoride Water/Boron trifluoride complex

This complex is a strong Brønsted acid and protonates the double bond of 2-methylpropene in step 1 of the mechanism.

Mechanism 27.4

Cationic Polymerization of 2-Methylpropene

THE OVERALL REACTION



2-Methylpropene Polyisobutylene

THE MECHANISM:

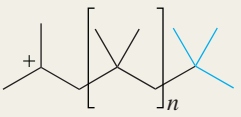
Step 1: The alkene is protonated, forming a carbocation.

2-Methylpropene *tert*-Butyl cation

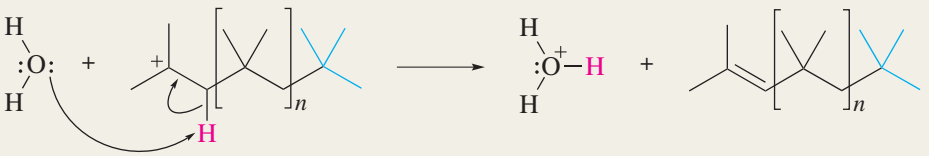
Step 2: The carbocation formed in the preceding step reacts with a molecule of the alkene, forming a new carbocation.

2-Methylpropene *tert*-Butyl cation 1,1,3,3-Tetramethylbutyl cation

Step 3: The process shown in step 2 continues, forming a chain-extended carbocation.



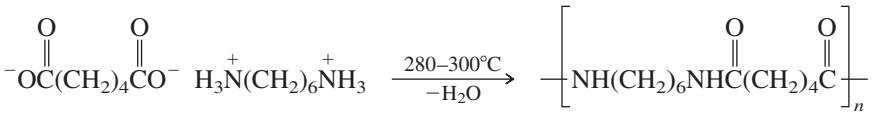
Step 4: One mechanism for chain termination is loss of a proton.



Polyisobutylene is the "butyl" in butyl rubber, one of the first synthetic rubber substitutes. Most inner tubes are a copolymer of 2-methylpropene (isobutylene) and 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene (isoprene).

27.11 Polyamides

The polyamide nylon 66 takes its name from the fact that it is prepared from a six-carbon dicarboxylic acid and a six-carbon diamine. The acid–base reaction between adipic acid and hexamethylenediamine gives a salt, which on heating undergoes condensation polymerization in which the two monomers are joined by amide bonds.

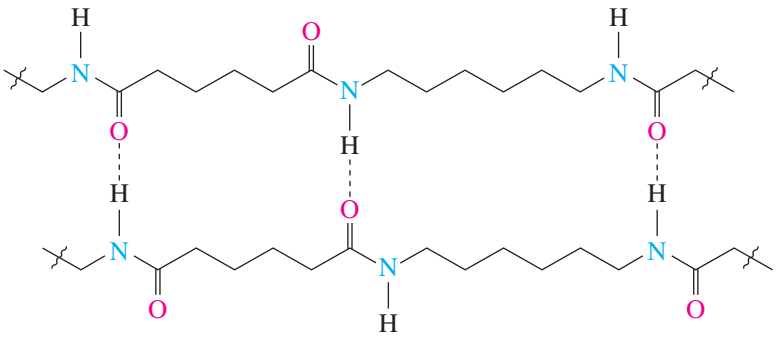


Salt of adipic acid and hexamethylenediamine — Nylon 66

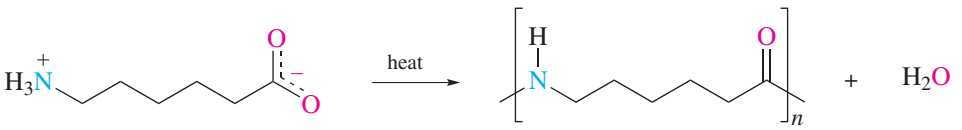
The systematic names of adipic acid and hexamethylenediamine are hexanedioic acid and 1,6-hexanediamine, respectively.

Nylon 66 was the first and remains the most commercially successful synthetic polyamide (Figure 27.7). Others have been developed by varying the number of carbons in the chains of the diamine and the dicarboxylic acid.

Nylon 66 resembles silk in both structure and properties. Both are polyamides in which hydrogen bonds provide an ordered arrangement of adjacent chains.



A variation on the diamine/dicarboxylic acid theme is to incorporate the amino and carboxylic acid groups into the same molecule, much as Nature does in amino acids. Nylon 6 is a polyamide derived by heating 6-aminohexanoic acid.



6-Aminohexanoic acid — Nylon 6 — Water

Figure 27.7

Skydivers' parachutes are made of nylon 66.

Problem 27.10

Nylon 6 is normally prepared from the lactam derived from 6-aminohexanoic acid, called ε-caprolactam. Do you remember what a lactam is? Write the structure of ε-caprolactam.

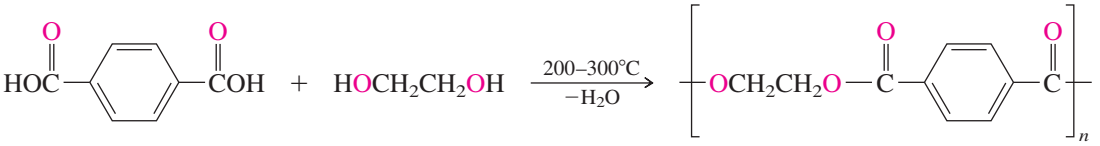
Problem 27.11

Nomex is an aramid fiber used for fire-resistant protective clothing. It is a polyamide prepared by condensation of 1,3-benzenediamine (*m*-phenylenediamine) and 1,3-benzenedicarboxylic acid (isophthalic acid). What is the repeating unit of Nomex?

27.12 Polyesters

The dimethyl ester of terephthalic acid is used in an analogous method.

The usual synthetic route to a polyester is by condensation of a dicarboxylic acid with a diol. The best known polyester is poly(ethylene terephthalate) prepared from ethylene glycol and terephthalic acid.



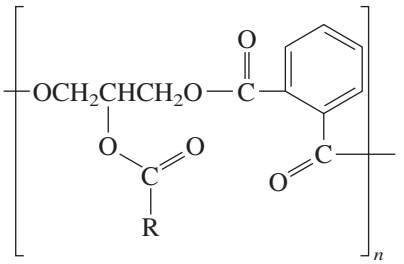
Terephthalic acid (Benzene-1,4-dicarboxylic acid) | Ethylene glycol | Poly(ethylene terephthalate)

Figure 27.8

Dacron is widely used as the material in surgical sutures.

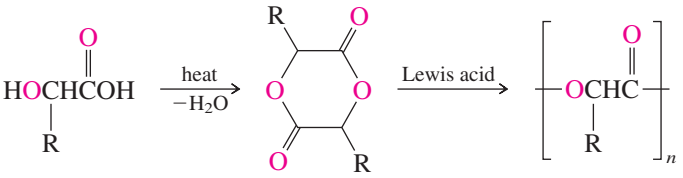
The popularity of clothing made of polyester-cotton blends testifies to the economic impact of this polymer. Poly(ethylene terephthalate) is the PETE referred to in the recycling codes listed in Table 27.1. Plastic bottles for juice, ketchup, and soft drinks are usually made of PETE, as is Mylar film and Dacron sails for boats.

Alkyd resins number in the hundreds and are used in glossy paints and enamels—house, car, and artist's—as illustrated in Figure 27.9. Most are derived from benzene-1,2-dicarboxylic acid (*o*-phthalic acid) and 1,2,3-propanetriol (glycerol). Two of the hydroxyl groups of glycerol are converted to esters of *o*-phthalic acid; the third is esterified with an unsaturated fatty acid that forms cross links to other chains.



An alkyd resin

With both a hydroxyl group and a carboxylic acid function in the same molecule, glycolic acid and lactic acid have the potential to form polyesters. Heating the α-hydroxy acid gives a cyclic diester, which, on treatment with a Lewis acid catalyst ($SnCl_2$ or SbF_3) yields the polymer.



R = H	Glycolic acid	Glycolide	Poly(glycolic acid)
$R = CH_3$	Lactic acid	Lactide	Poly(lactic acid)

Surgical sutures made from poly(glycolic acid) and poly(lactic acid), while durable enough to substitute for ordinary stitches, are slowly degraded by ester hydrolysis and don't require a return visit for their removal. Poly(glycolic acid) fibers also hold promise as a scaffold upon which to grow skin cells. This "artificial skin" is then applied to a wound to promote healing.

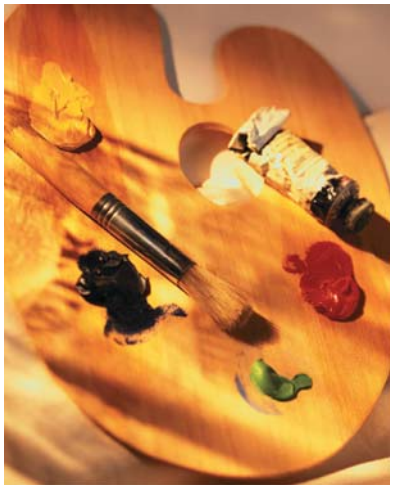
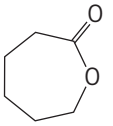


Figure 27.9

Alkyds are used for more than painting rooms. Artists use them too.

Problem 27.12

Another monomer from which surgical sutures are made is ε-caprolactone. What is the repeating unit of poly(ε-caprolactone)?

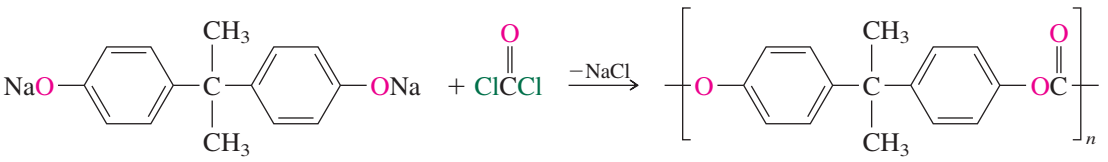


ε-Caprolactone

Polyesters are also used in controlled-release forms of drugs and agricultural products such as fertilizers and herbicides. By coating the active material with a polyester selected so as to degrade over time, the material is released gradually rather than all at once.

27.13 Polycarbonates

Polycarbonates are polyesters of carbonic acid. *Lexan* is the most important of the polycarbonates and is prepared from the diphenolic compound bisphenol A.



Disodium salt of bisphenol A Phosgene Bisphenol A polycarbonate (Lexan)

Problem 27.13

Write a mechanism for the reaction of one molecule of the disodium salt of bisphenol A with one molecule of phosgene.

Bisphenol A is made from phenol and acetone. Industrial processes are usually very efficient. One process, described in Chapter 22, gives both phenol and acetone as products of the same reaction. Can you find it?

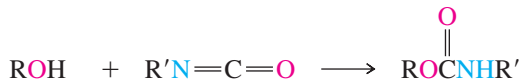
Lexan is a clear, transparent, strong, and impact-resistant plastic with literally countless applications. It is used in both protective and everyday eyeglasses as illustrated in Figure 27.10. The Apollo 11 astronauts wore Lexan helmets with Lexan visors on their 1969 trip to the moon. CDs and DVDs are Lexan polycarbonate, as are many cell phones, automobile dashpanels, and headlight and taillight lenses.

Figure 27.10

The polycarbonate lenses in these protective glasses are lightweight, yet shatterproof.

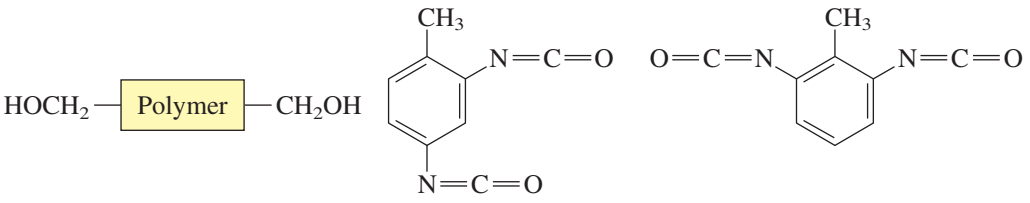
27.14 Polyurethanes

A *urethane,* also called a *carbamate,* is a compound that contains the functional group —OCNH—. Urethanes are normally prepared by the reaction of an alcohol and an isocyanate.



Alcohol Isocyanate Urethane

Polyurethanes are the macromolecules formed from a diol and a diisocyanate. In most cases the diol is polymeric and the diisocyanate is a mixture of the "toluene diisocyanate" isomers.



Polymeric diol Mixture of "toluene diisocyanate" isomers

If, for example, only the 2,6-diisocyanate were present, the repeating unit of the resulting polyurethane would be

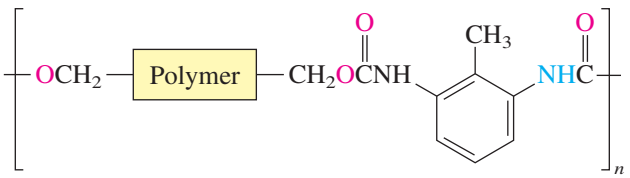


Figure 27.11

Spandex skinsuits make speedskaters more aerodynamic.

Because a mixture of diisocyanate isomers is actually used, a random mixture of 2,4- and 2,6-substitution patterns results.

Problem 27.14

Write the repeating unit of the "polymeric diol" if it is derived from 1,2-epoxypropane.

The reaction of an alcohol with an isocyanate is addition, not condensation. Therefore, polyurethanes are classified as addition polymers. But because the monomers are difunctional, the molecular weight increases by step growth rather than chain growth.

A major use of polyurethanes is in spandex fibers. Spandex, even when stretched several times its length, has the ability to return to its original state and is a superior substitute for rubber in elastic garments. Its most recognizable application is in athletic wear (swimming, cycling, running) where it is the fabric of choice for high-performance athletes (Figure 27.11).

Polyurethanes have many other applications, especially in paints, adhesives, and foams. Polyurethane foams, which can be rigid (insulation panels) or flexible (pillows, cushions, and mattresses) depending on their degree of cross linking, are prepared by adding foaming agents to the polymerization mixture. One method takes advantage of the reaction between isocyanates and water.

$$\underset{\text{Isocyanate}}{RN{=}C{=}O} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Carbamic acid}}{RNH{-}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Amine}}{RNH_2} + \underset{\text{Carbon dioxide}}{CO_2}$$

Although esters of carbamic acid (urethanes) are stable compounds, carbamic acid itself rapidly dissociates to an amine and carbon dioxide. Adding some water to the reactants during polymerization generates carbon dioxide bubbles which are trapped within the polymer.

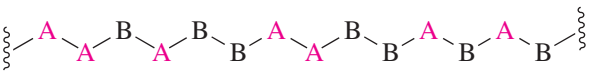
27.15 Copolymers

Copolymers, polymers made from more than one monomer, are as common as homopolymers. The presence of more than one monomer in a chain makes some control of properties possible. Some structural units stiffen the chain, others make it more flexible. Often a second monomer is added to allow cross linking.

Copolymers are classified according to the distribution of monomers in the macromolecule.

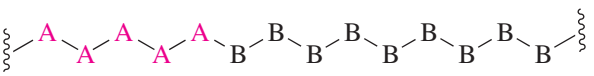
1. Random
2. Block
3. Graft

Random Copolymers: As the name implies, there is no pattern to the distribution of monomer units in a random copolymer.



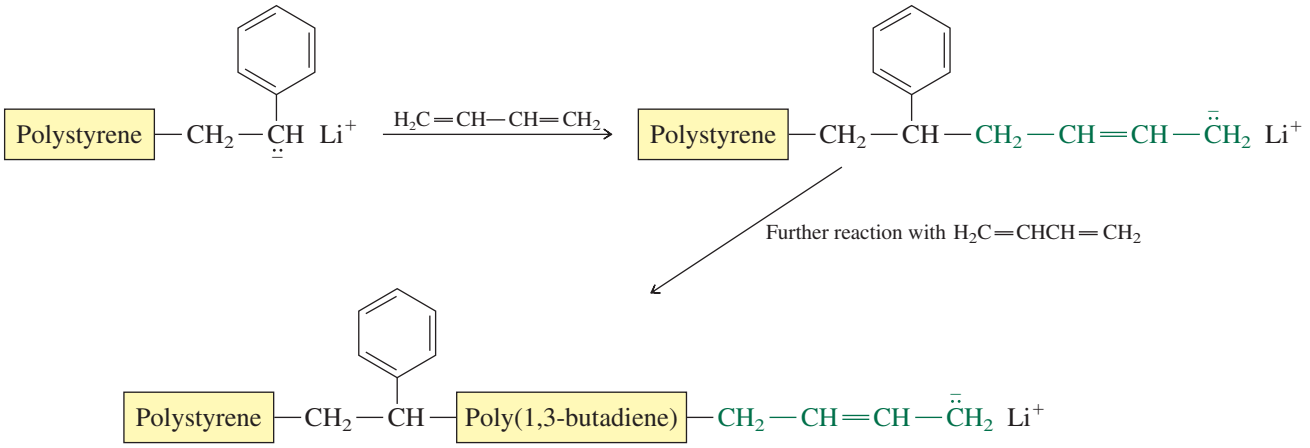
Styrene–butadiene rubber (SBR) for automobile tires is a random copolymer. It is prepared by two methods, free-radical and anionic polymerization, both of which are carried out on a mixture of styrene and 1,3-butadiene. Free-radical initiation is essentially nonselective and gives the random copolymer. Anionic initiation is carried out under conditions designed to equalize the reactivity of the two monomers so as to ensure randomness.

Block Copolymers: The main chain contains sections (blocks) of repeating units derived from different monomers. The sequence:



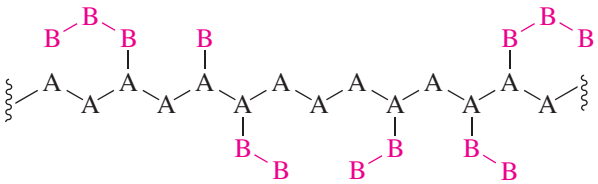
shows only two blocks, one derived from A and the other from B. A macromolecule derived from A and B can contain many blocks.

The living polymers generated by anionic polymerization are well suited to the preparation of block polymers. Adding 1,3-butadiene to a living polystyrene block sets the stage for attaching a poly(1,3-butadiene) block.

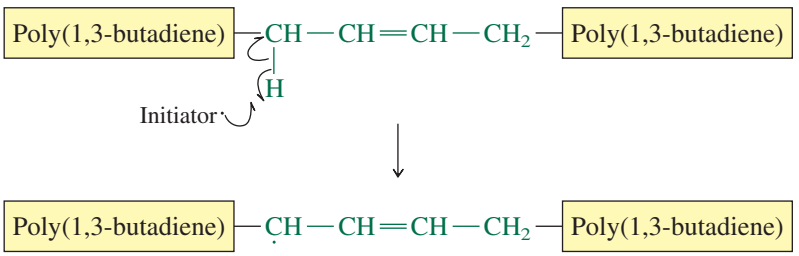


The properties of the block copolymer prepared by anionic living polymerization are different from the random styrene–butadiene copolymer.

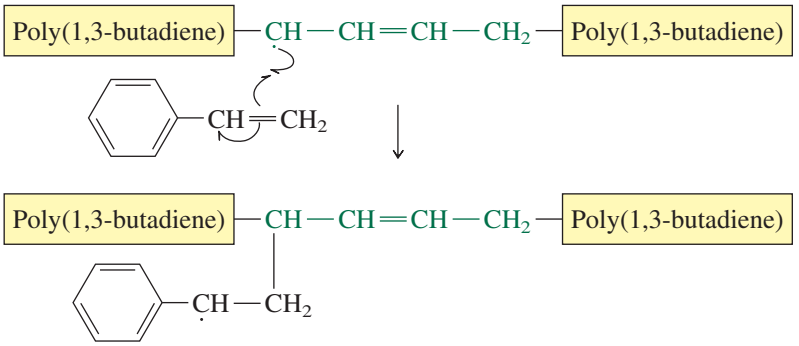
Graft Copolymer: The main chain bears branches (grafts) that are derived from a different monomer.



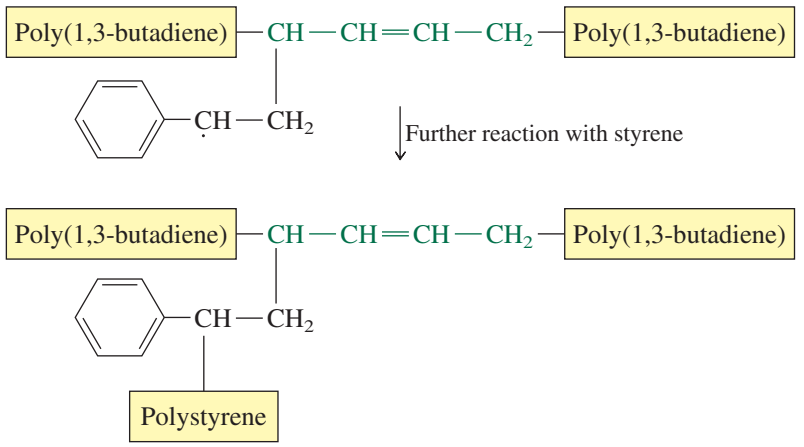
A graft copolymer of styrene and 1,3-butadiene is called "high-impact polystyrene" and is used, for example, in laptop computer cases. It is prepared by free-radical polymerization of styrene in the presence of poly(1,3-butadiene). Instead of reacting with styrene, the free-radical initiator abstracts an allylic hydrogen from poly(1,3-butadiene).



Polystyrene chain growth begins at the allylic radical site and proceeds in the usual way at this and random other allylic carbons of poly(1,3-butadiene).



Polystyrene grafts on a poly(1,3-butadiene) chain are the result.



Polystyrene alone is brittle; poly(1,3-butadiene) alone is rubbery. The graft copolymer is strong, but absorbs shock without cracking because of the elasticity provided by its poly(1,3-butadiene) structural units.

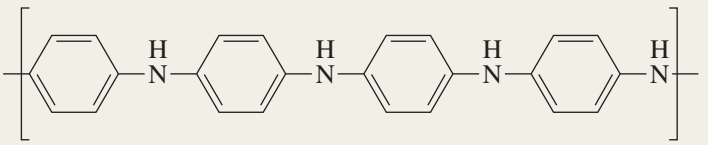
Conducting Polymers

The notion that polymers can conduct electricity seems strange to most of us. After all, the plastic wrapped around the wires in our homes and automobiles serves as insulation. Do polymers exist that can conduct electricity? Even if such materials could be made, why would we be interested in them?

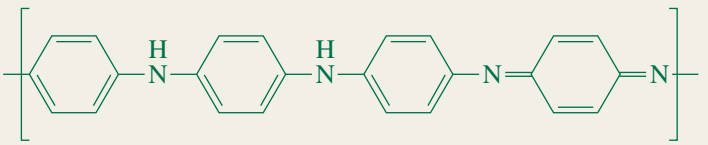
Henry Letheby, a lecturer in chemistry and toxicology at the College of London Hospital, obtained a partially conducting material in 1862 by the anodic oxidation of aniline in sulfuric acid. The material Letheby synthesized was a form of polyaniline. In the 1980s, Alan MacDiarmid of the University of Pennsylvania reinvestigated polyaniline, which is now a widely used conducting polymer. Polyaniline exists in a variety of oxidation states (Figure 27.12), each with different properties. The emaraldine salt is a conductor without the use of additives that enhance conductivity, but its conductivity is enhanced by adding a Brønsted acid that protonates the nitrogen atoms.

Figure 27.12

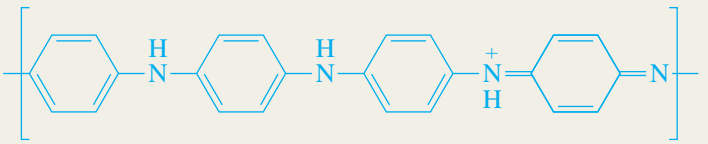
Polyaniline exists in different forms with varying states of oxidation. One of the forms is a conductor.



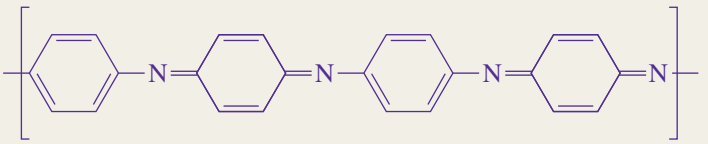
Leucoemaraldine, colorless, fully reduced, insulating



Emaraldine base, green, partially oxidized, insulating



Emaraldine salt, blue, partially oxidized, conducting



Pernigraniline, purple, fully oxidized, insulating

The synthesis of polyaniline can be carried out in aqueous HCl solution, by electrochemical oxidation, or in the presence of a chemical oxidant such as ammonium persulfate. The different forms of polyaniline can then be obtained by altering the current or the pH of the solution. The ability to tailor the process increases the potential for commercial application where the unique properties of a certain polyaniline are desired. Polyanilines are used as corrosion inhibitors and in the electromagnetic shielding of circuits, where they can protect against electrostatic discharge.

Another conducting polymer that has found commercial application is poly(3,4-ethylenedioxythiophene), PEDOT, which is marketed as a dispersion that contains poly(styrene sulfonate). This polymer dispersion is used in the manufacture of organic light-emitting diodes (OLEDs), which are materials that emit light when an electric current is applied to them (Figure 27.13). OLEDs are used for flat panel displays in televisions and cellular telephone displays.

The 2000 Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to Alan Heeger (University of California Santa Barbara), Alan MacDiarmid (University of Pennsylvania), and Hideki Shirakawa (University of Tsukuba, Japan) for their "discovery and development of electrically conductive polymers."

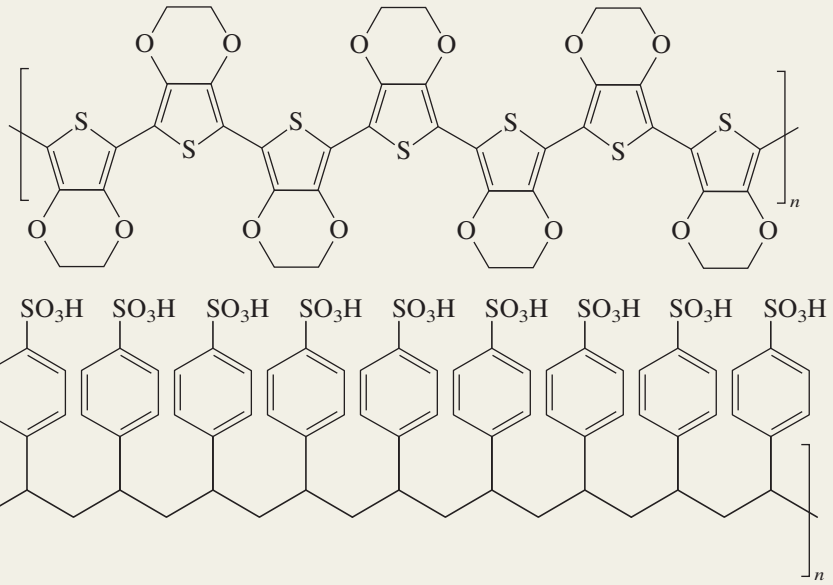


Figure 27.13

A mixture of poly(3,4-ethylenedioxythiophene) and poly(styrene sulfonate) is used in the manufacture of organic light-emitting diodes (OLEDs).

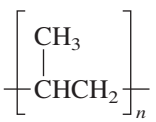
SONY markets a flat panel television with an OLED screen that is 3 mm thick.

This cellular telephone made by Nokia uses an OLED display.

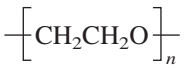
27.16 SUMMARY

Section 27.1 Polymer chemistry dates to the nineteenth century with the chemical modification of polymeric natural products. Once the structural features of polymers were determined, polymer synthesis was placed on a rational basis.

Section 27.2 Polymers are usually named according to the monomers from which they are prepared (*source-based nomenclature*). When the name of the monomer is one word, the polymer is named by simply adding the prefix *poly-*. When the name of the monomer is two words, they are enclosed in parentheses and preceded by *poly*.



Polypropylene



Poly(ethylene oxide)

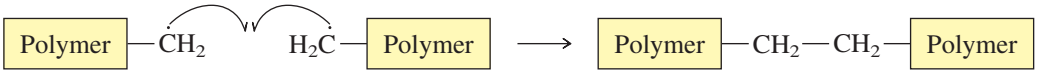
Sections 27.3–27.6

Polymers may be classified in several different ways:

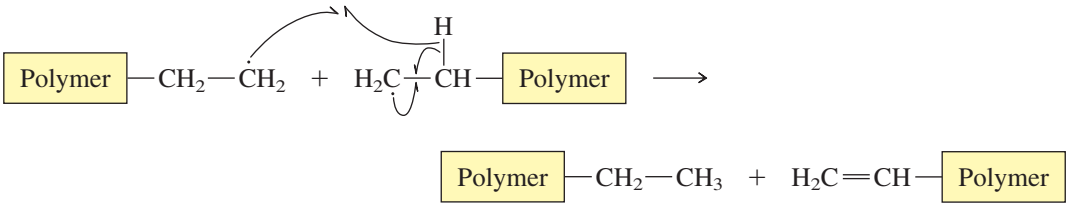
- Reaction type (addition and condensation)
- Chain-growth or step-growth
- Structure (linear, branched, cross-linked)
- Properties (thermoplastic, thermoset, or elastomer)

Section 27.7

This section emphasizes initiation and termination steps in alkene polymerization. The main terminating reactions in free-radical polymerization are the coupling of two radicals and disproportionation. *Coupling* of two radicals pairs the odd electrons and stops chain growth.

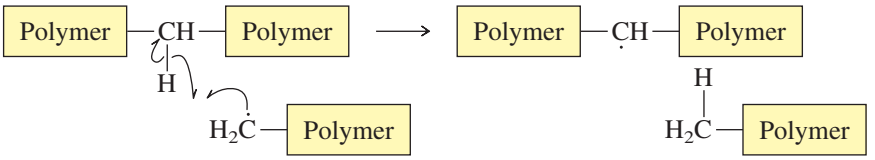


In *disproportionation,* a hydrogen atom is exchanged between two growing chains, terminating one in a double bond and the other in a new C—H bond.

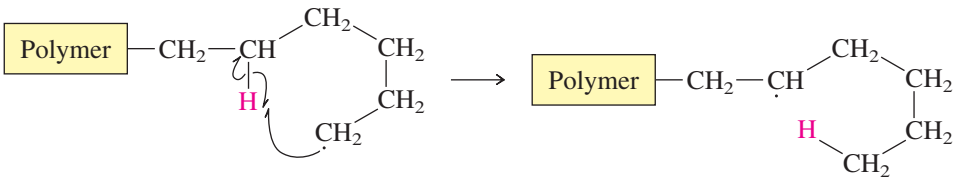


Section 27.8

Free-radical polymerization of alkenes usually gives branched polymers of low crystallinity. The two main mechanisms by which branches form both involve hydrogen atom abstraction by the radical site. In one, a growing chain abstracts a hydrogen atom from a terminated polymer.

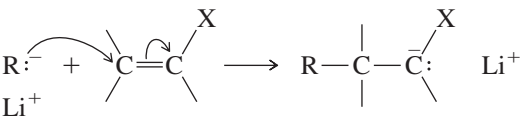


The other is an intramolecular hydrogen-atom abstraction. In most cases this reaction proceeds by a six-center transition state and moves the reactive site from the end of the growing chain to inside it.



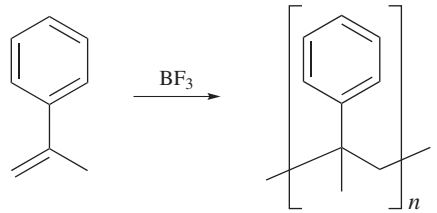
Section 27.9

Anionic polymerization of alkenes that bear a carbanion-stabilizing substituent (X) can be initiated by strong bases such as alkyllithium reagents.



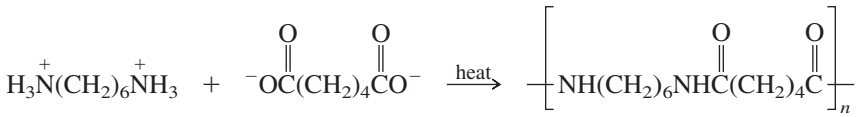
The product of this step is a new organolithium reagent that can react with a second monomer molecule, then a third, and so on. The growing organolithium chain is stable and is called a living polymer.

Section 27.10 Cationic polymerization of alkenes that can form relatively stable carbocations can be initiated by protonation of the double bond or coordination to Lewis acids such as boron trifluoride.

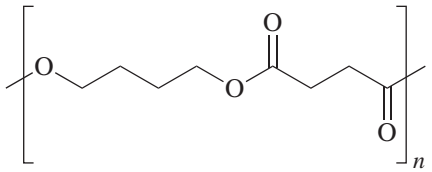


Section 27.11 The key bond-forming process in many polymerizations is a *condensation* reaction. The most common condensations are those that produce polyamides and polyesters.

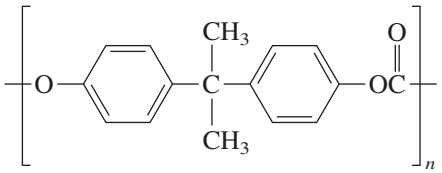
Polyamide synthesis is illustrated by the preparation of nylon 66, the most commercially successful synthetic fiber.



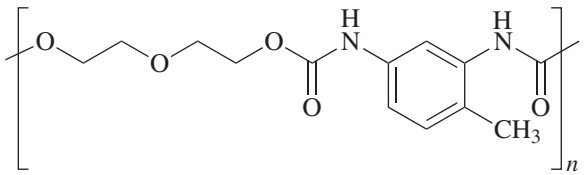
Section 27.12 The condensation of a diol and a dicarboxylic acid produces a *polyester.* Poly(tetramethylene succinate) is a biodegradable polyester derived from butanedioic acid and 1,4-butanediol.



Section 27.13 Most of the applications of *polycarbonates* center on Lexan, a polyester derived from phosgene and bisphenol A.



Section 27.14 Like polycarbonates, *polyurethanes* enjoy wide use even though there are relatively few structural types. Most polyurethanes are made from a mixture of the 2,4- and 2,6-diisocyanate derivatives of toluene and a polymeric diol or triol.



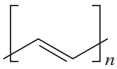
Section 27.15 *Copolymers* are the polymers formed when two or more monomers are present in the mixture to be polymerized. They are classified as random, block, or graft. A *random copolymer* lacks a regular sequence in respect to the appearance of the structural units of the components. A *block copolymer* of monomers A and B is composed of blocks of poly(A) and poly(B). A *graft copolymer* has a main chain of poly(A) to which are grafted branches of poly(B).

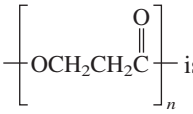
PROBLEMS

27.15 Nylon 11 is a polyamide used as fishing line and is prepared by heating 11-aminoundecanoic acid [$H_2N(CH_2)_{10}CO_2H$]. What is the repeating unit of nylon 11? Is it a condensation or an addition polymer? Chain-growth or step-growth?

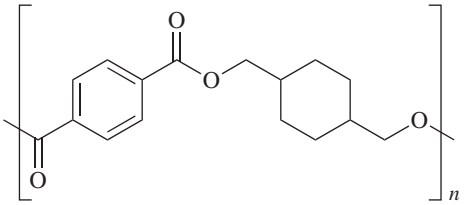
27.16 Is protein biosynthesis as shown in Figure 26.12 step growth or chain growth? Is the protein that results an addition or a condensation polymer? Why?

27.17 *Pseudomonas oleovorans* oxidizes nonanoic acid, then stores the 3-hydroxynonanoic acid produced as a homopolymer. Write the formula for the repeating unit of this polyester.

27.18 From what monomer is the polymer with the repeating unit  prepared? Suggest a source-based name.

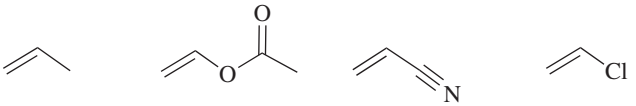
27.19 Give the structure of the lactone from which  is prepared.

27.20 Kodel fibers are made from the polymer shown. Suggest suitable monomers for its preparation.

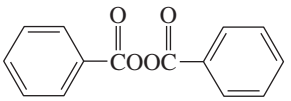


27.21 Of the following monomers, which one would undergo cationic polymerization most readily?

27.22 Of the following monomers, which one would undergo anionic polymerization most readily?



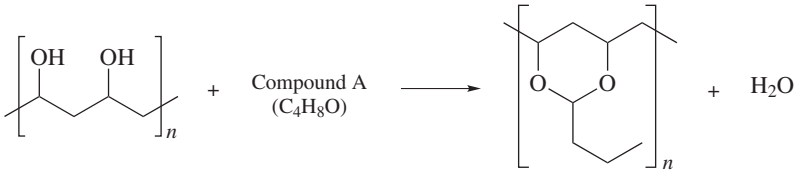
27.23 Polymerization of styrene can occur by a free-radical, cationic, anionic, or coordination mechanism. What mechanism will be followed when each of the compounds shown is used to initiate polymerization?

(a) $TiCl_4$, $(CH_3CH_2)_3Al$ (b)  (c) BF_3

27.24 Styrene undergoes anionic polymerization at a faster rate than *p*-methoxystyrene. Suggest an explanation for this observation.

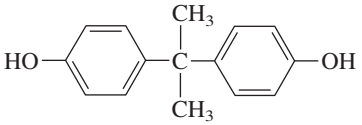
27.25 Given that —C≡N stabilizes carbanions better than phenyl, which monomer would you start with to prepare a copolymer of styrene and acrylonitrile?

27.26 *Poly(vinyl butyral)* is the inner liner in safety glass. It is prepared by the reaction shown. What is compound A?



27.27 *Linear low-density polyethylene* is a copolymer in which ethylene is polymerized under Ziegler–Natta conditions in the presence of a smaller quantity of a second alkene such as 1-hexene. What structural feature characterizes the resulting polymer?

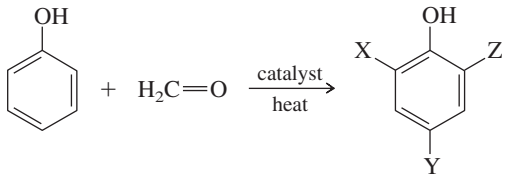
27.28 (a) Bisphenol A (shown) is made by the reaction of phenol and acetone. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction. Assume acid (H_3O^+) catalysis.



(b) Bisphenol B is made from phenol and 2-butanone. What is its structure?

27.29 Poly(ethylene oxide) can be prepared from ethylene oxide by either anionic or cationic polymerization methods. Write reaction mechanisms for both processes. Use H_3O^+ as the acid and OH^- as the base.

27.30 (a) The first step in the formation of Bakelite from phenol and formaldehyde introduces —CH_2OH groups onto the ring.

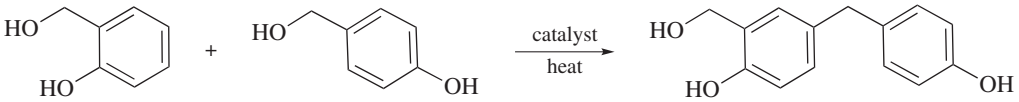


Phenol Formaldehyde

Write a mechanism for the formation of *o*-hydroxybenzyl alcohol (X = CH_2OH, Y = Z = H) in this reaction. Assume the catalyst is H_3O^+.

X	Y	Z
H	CH_2OH	H
CH_2OH	H	H
CH_2OH	CH_2OH	H
CH_2OH	H	CH_2OH
CH_2OH	CH_2OH	CH_2OH

(b) The second step links two of the aromatic rings by a CH_2 group. Write a mechanism for the example shown.



27.31 The first step in the mechanism of cationic polymerization of formaldehyde is:

Write an equation for the second step using curved arrows to track electron movement.

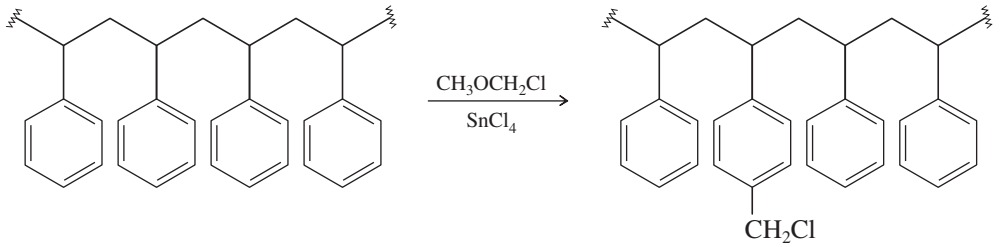
Descriptive Passage and Interpretive Problems 27

Chemically Modified Polymers

Many useful polymers are not themselves the initial products of polymerization but are prepared by chemically modifying the original polymer. Partially fluorinated polyethylene used for protective gloves and to coat automobile gasoline tanks is made by exposing polyethylene to F_2 diluted with nitrogen.

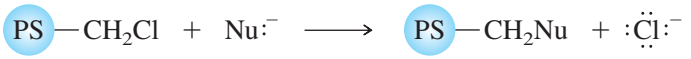
Partial fluorination gives a polymer that, like polyethylene, is easy to cast into films but with a greater resistance to oxidation and water penetration.

The solid support in Merrifield's synthesis of ribonuclease (see Section 25.18) was prepared by incorporating —CH_2Cl groups into a styrene/*p*-divinylbenzene copolymer by electrophilic aromatic substitution.



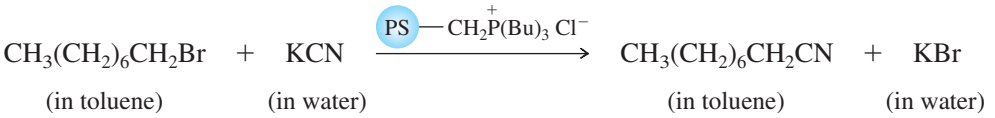
At the same time that Merrifield was developing his method for the solid-phase synthesis of peptides, Robert Letsinger (Northwestern University) was independently applying the same concept to polynucleotide synthesis. Modern methods for making oligonucleotides are direct descendants of Letsinger's method.

Today's chemists can buy Merrifield-type resins with varying degrees of chloromethyl substitution and cross linking tailored for specific purposes. Because the chlorine atom is primary and benzylic, these resins can be further modified by nucleophilic substitution.



(In this and succeeding equations, the blue sphere represents a polymer bead and PS stands for polystyrene or a copolymer of polystyrene and *p*-divinylbenzene.)

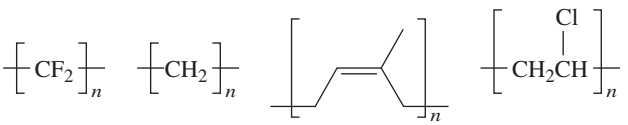
The products of these reactions form the basis for an entire methodology—*polymer-supported chemical reactions*—wherein the modified polystyrene serves as a reactant, reagent, or catalyst. The reactions are the usual ones of organic chemistry. In the following equation, for example, the modified polystyrene serves as a phase-transfer catalyst (see Section 21.5). The main advantage of using a polymer-supported reagent, or in this case a polymer-supported catalyst, is that it makes isolation of the reaction product easier.



Cyanide ion from aqueous KCN exchanges with Cl^- of the polymer-supported phosphonium chloride and reacts with 1-bromooctane on the surface and within channels of the polymer support. When the reaction is judged to be complete, the polymer (insoluble in both toluene and water) is recovered by filtration and the aqueous layer removed. Distillation of the toluene solution of the product furnishes nonanenitrile, the product of nucleophilic substitution of cyanide for bromide.

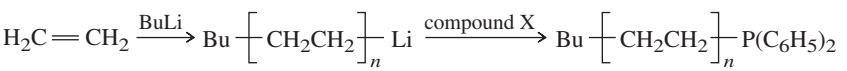
The number of applications of chemically modified polymers as materials, reagents, and catalysts is extremely large. The following problems give a few examples.

27.32 Chemical modification of polymers is not always beneficial. Which of the following polymers will be adversely affected by air oxidation the most?



A. B. C. D.

27.33 The living polymer formed by reaction of ethylene with butyllithium can be converted to a long-chain alkyldiphenylphosphine by reaction with compound X. The alkyldiphenylphosphine is used in the preparation of phase-transfer catalysts and as a ligand in polymer-supported organometallic compounds. What is compound X?



$(C_6H_5)_2PH$ $(C_6H_5)_2PCl$ $(C_6H_5)_2PLi$ $(C_6H_5)_3P$

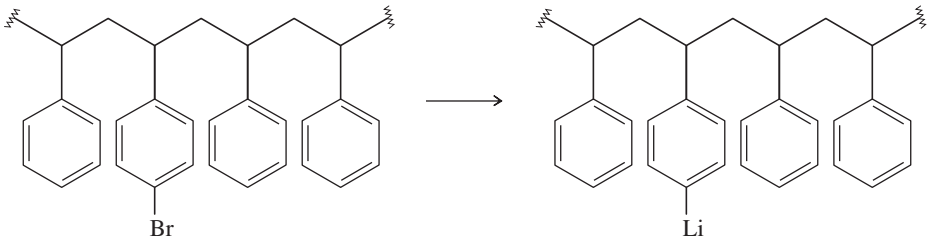
A. B. C. D.

27.34 The alkyldiphenylphosphine formed in the preceding equation was converted to a dialkyldiphenylphosphonium salt for use as a phase-transfer catalyst. Which of the following is a suitable reactant for such a conversion?

$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Br$ $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Li$ $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$ $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2ONa$

A. B. C. D.

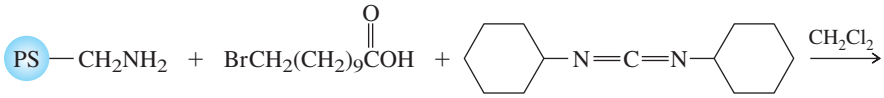
27.35 A copolymer of styrene and *p*-bromostyrene can be transformed into a living polymer as shown. The aryllithium sites then serve to start chain growth when a suitable monomer is added.



Which of the following is the most suitable for the transformation in the equation?

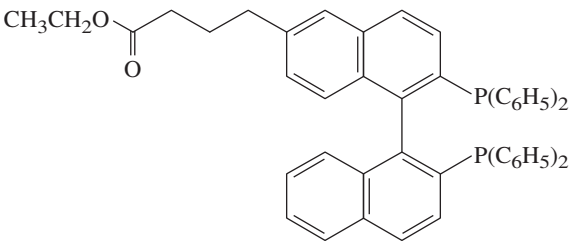
LiOH	LiCl	$LiCu(CH_3)_2$	Li
A.	B.	C.	D.

27.36 What is the polymer-containing product of the following reaction?



A. B.

27.37 The ethyl ester function in the *R*-BINAP derivative shown was used as the reactive "handle" to bind the chiral unit to polystyrene giving a ligand suitable for ruthenium-catalyzed enantioselective hydrogenation.



Which of the following has the proper functionality to react with this ester by nucleophilic acyl substitution to give a polystyrene-supported ligand?

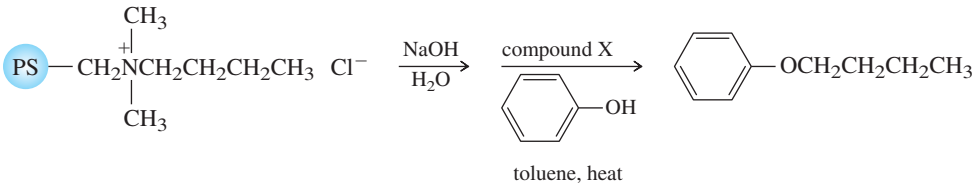
A. PS—CH_2Cl

C. PS—$CH_2N(CH_3)_2$

B. PS—CH_2NH_2

D. PS—$CH_2\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3\ Cl^-$

27.38 The polystyrene-supported quaternary ammonium chloride shown was treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide, then shaken with a solution of compound X and phenol in toluene at 90°C to give butyl phenyl ether in 97% yield. What is compound X?



A. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$

C. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2Br$

B. $CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2$

D. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2NH_2$

This page intentionally left blank

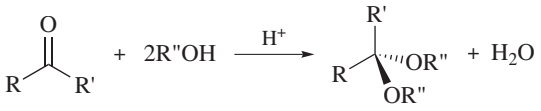
Glossary

A

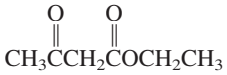
Absolute configuration: The three-dimensional arrangement of atoms or groups at a chirality center.

Absorbance: In UV-VIS spectroscopy, the value of $\log_{10}(I_0/I)$, where I_0 is the intensity of the incident radiation and I is the intensity of the beam after it has passed through the sample.

Acetal: Product of the reaction of an aldehyde or a ketone with two moles of an alcohol according to the equation

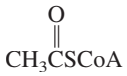


Acetoacetic ester synthesis: A synthetic method for the preparation of ketones in which alkylation of the enolate of ethyl acetoacetate



is the key carbon–carbon bond-forming step.

Acetyl coenzyme A: A thioester abbreviated as



that acts as the source of acetyl groups in biosynthetic processes involving acetate.

Acetylene: The simplest alkyne, HC≡CH.

Achiral: Opposite of *chiral.* An achiral object is superimposable on its mirror image.

Acid: According to the Arrhenius definition, a substance that ionizes in water to produce protons. According to the Brønsted–Lowry definition, a substance that donates a proton to some other substance. According to the Lewis definition, an electron-pair acceptor.

Acid anhydride: Compound of the type

Both R groups are usually the same, although they need not always be.

Acidity constant K_a: Equilibrium constant for dissociation of an acid:

$$K_a = \frac{[H^+][A^-]}{[HA]}$$

Activating substituent: A group that when present in place of a hydrogen causes a particular reaction to occur faster. Term is most often applied to substituents that increase the rate of electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Activation energy: The minimum energy that a reacting system must possess above its most stable state in order to undergo a chemical or structural change.

Active site: The region of an enzyme at which the substrate is bound.

Acylation: Reaction in which an acyl group becomes attached to some structural unit in a molecule. Examples include the Friedel–Crafts acylation and the conversion of amines to amides.

Acyl cation: Synonymous with *acylium ion.*

Acyl chloride: Compound of the type

R may be alkyl or aryl.

Acyl group: The group

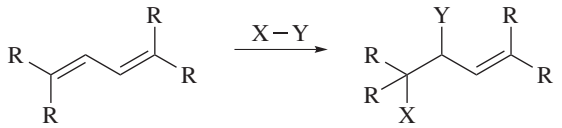
R may be alkyl or aryl.

Acylium ion: The cation $R{-}C{\equiv}\overset{+}{O}{:}$

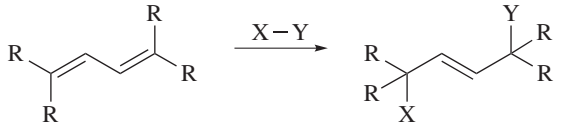
Acyl transfer: A nucleophilic acyl substitution. A reaction in which one type of carboxylic acid derivative is converted to another.

Addition: Reaction in which a reagent X—Y adds to a multiple bond so that X becomes attached to one of the carbons of the multiple bond and Y to the other.

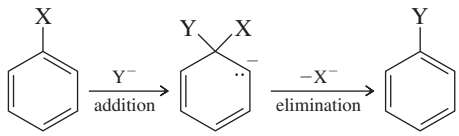
1,2 Addition: Addition of reagents of the type X—Y to conjugated dienes in which X and Y add to adjacent doubly bonded carbons:



1,4 Addition: Addition of reagents of the type X—Y to conjugated dienes in which X and Y add to the termini of the diene system (see *conjugate addition*).

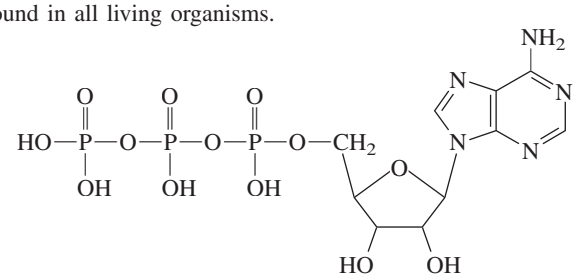


Addition–elimination mechanism: Two-stage mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution. In the addition stage, the nucleophile adds to the carbon that bears the leaving group. In the elimination stage, the leaving group is expelled.



Addition polymer: A polymer formed by addition reactions of monomers.

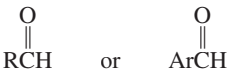
Adenosine 5′-triphosphate (ATP): The main energy-storing compound in all living organisms.



Alcohol: Compound of the type ROH.

Aldaric acid: Carbohydrate in which carboxylic acid functions are present at both ends of the chain. Aldaric acids are typically prepared by oxidation of aldoses with nitric acid.

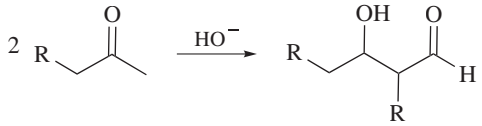
Aldehyde: Compound of the type



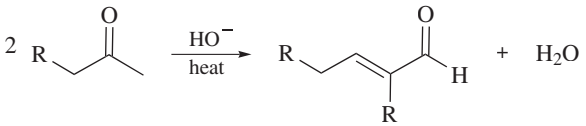
Aldimines: Imines of the type RCH═NHR′ formed by the reaction of aldehydes with primary amines.

Alditol: The polyol obtained on reduction of the carbonyl group of a carbohydrate.

Aldol addition: Nucleophilic addition of an aldehyde or ketone enolate to the carbonyl group of an aldehyde or a ketone. The most typical case involves two molecules of an aldehyde, and is usually catalyzed by bases.



Aldol condensation: When an aldol addition is carried out so that the β-hydroxy aldehyde or ketone dehydrates under the conditions of its formation, the product is described as arising by an aldol condensation.



Aldonic acid: Carboxylic acid obtained by oxidation of the aldehyde function of an aldose.

Aldose: Carbohydrate that contains an aldehyde carbonyl group in its open-chain form.

Aliphatic: Term applied to compounds that do not contain benzene or benzene-like rings as structural units. (Historically, *aliphatic* was used to describe compounds derived from fats and oils.)

Alkadiene: Hydrocarbon that contains two carbon–carbon double bonds; commonly referred to as a *diene.*

Alkaloid: Amine that occurs naturally in plants. The name derives from the fact that such compounds are weak bases.

Alkane: Hydrocarbon in which all the bonds are single bonds. Alkanes have the general formula C_nH_{2n+2}.

Alkanethiolate: The conjugate base of a thiol.

Alkene: Hydrocarbon that contains a carbon–carbon double bond (C═C); also known by the older name *olefin.*

Alkoxide ion: Conjugate base of an alcohol; a species of the type $R—\ddot{O}:^-$.

Alkylamine: Amine in which the organic groups attached to nitrogen are alkyl groups.

Alkylation: Reaction in which an alkyl group is attached to some structural unit in a molecule.

Alkyl group: Structural unit related to an alkane by replacing one of the hydrogens by a potential point of attachment to some other atom or group. The general symbol for an alkyl group is R—.

Alkyl halide: Compound of the type RX, in which X is a halogen substituent (F, Cl, Br, I).

Alkyloxonium ion: Positive ion of the type ROH_2^+.

Alkyne: Hydrocarbon that contains a carbon–carbon triple bond.

Allene: The compound $H_2C═C═CH_2$.

Allyl group: The group

$$H_2C═CHCH_2—$$

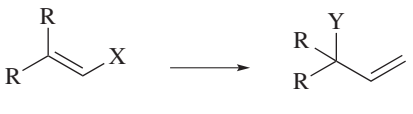
Allylic anion: A carbanion in which the negatively charged carbon is allylic.

Allylic carbocation: A carbocation in which the positively charged carbon is allylic.

Allylic carbon: The sp^3-hybridized carbon of a C═C—C unit. Atoms or groups attached to an allylic carbon are termed *allylic substituents.*

Allylic free radical: A free radical in which the unpaired electron is on an allylic carbon.

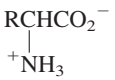
Allylic rearrangement: Functional group transformation in which double-bond migration has converted one allylic structural unit to another, as in:



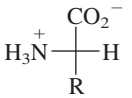
Amide: Compound of the type $RC(O)NR'_2$.

Amine: Molecule in which a nitrogen-containing group of the type —NH_2, —NHR, or —NR_2 is attached to an alkyl or aryl group.

α-Amino acid: A carboxylic acid that contains an amino group at the α-carbon atom. α-Amino acids are the building blocks of peptides and proteins. An α-amino acid normally exists as a *zwitterion.*



L-Amino acid: The Fischer projection of an L-amino acid has the amino group on the left when the carbon chain is vertical with the carboxyl group at the top.



Amino acid racemization: A method for dating archeological samples based on the rate at which the stereochemistry at the α carbon of amino acid components is randomized. It is useful for samples too old to be reliably dated by ^{14}C decay.

Amino acid residues: Individual amino acid components of a peptide or protein.

Amino sugar: Carbohydrate in which one of the hydroxyl groups has been replaced by an amino group.

Amphiphilic: Possessing both hydrophilic and lipophilic properties within the same species.

Amylopectin: A polysaccharide present in starch. Amylopectin is a polymer of α-(1→4)-linked glucose units, as is amylose (see *amylose*).

Unlike amylose, amylopectin contains branches of 24–30 glucose units connected to the main chain by an α-(1→6) linkage.

Amylose: The water-dispersible component of starch. It is a polymer of α-(1→4)-linked glucose units.

Androgen: A male sex hormone.

Angle strain: The strain a molecule possesses because its bond angles are distorted from their normal values.

Anion: Negatively charged ion.

Anionic polymerization: A polymerization in which the reactive intermediates are negatively charged.

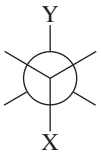
Annulene: Monocyclic hydrocarbon characterized by a completely conjugated system of double bonds. Annulenes may or may not be aromatic.

[*x*]Annulene: An annulene in which the ring contains *x* carbons.

Anomeric carbon: The carbon atom in a furanose or pyranose form that is derived from the carbonyl carbon of the open-chain form. It is the ring carbon that is bonded to two oxygens.

Anomeric effect: The preference for an electronegative substituent, especially a hydroxyl group, to occupy an axial orientation when bonded to the anomeric carbon in the pyranose form of a carbohydrate.

Anti: Term describing relative position of two substituents on adjacent atoms when the angle between their bonds is on the order of 180°. Atoms X and Y in the structure shown are anti to each other.



Anti addition: Addition reaction in which the two portions of the attacking reagent X—Y add to opposite faces of the double bond.

Antiaromatic: The quality of being destabilized by electron delocalization.

Antibonding orbital: An orbital in a molecule in which an electron is less stable than when localized on an isolated atom.

Anticodon: Sequence of three bases in a molecule of tRNA that is complementary to the codon of mRNA for a particular amino acid.

Aprotic solvent: A solvent that does not have easily exchangeable protons such as those bonded to oxygen of hydroxyl groups.

Aramid: A polyamide of a benzenedicarboxylic acid and a benzenediamine.

Arene: Aromatic hydrocarbon. Often abbreviated ArH.

Arenium ion: The carbocation intermediate formed by attack of an electrophile on an aromatic substrate in electrophilic aromatic substitution. See *cyclohexadienyl cation.*

Aromatic hydrocarbon: An electron-delocalized species that is much more stable than any structure written for it in which all the electrons are localized either in covalent bonds or as unshared electron pairs.

Aromaticity: Special stability associated with aromatic compounds.

Arrhenius equation: The expression $k = Ae^{-E_a/RT}$ relating the rate of a chemical process to temperature.

Arylamine: An amine that has an aryl group attached to the amine nitrogen.

Aryne: A species that contains a triple bond within an aromatic ring (see *benzyne*).

Asymmetric: Lacking all significant symmetry elements; an asymmetric object does not have a plane, axis, or center of symmetry.

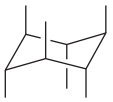
Asymmetric synthesis: The stereoselective introduction of a chirality center in a reactant in which the stereoisomeric products are formed in unequal amounts.

Atactic polymer: Polymer characterized by random stereochemistry at its chirality centers. An atactic polymer, unlike an isotactic or a syndiotactic polymer, is not a stereoregular polymer.

Atomic number: The number of protons in the nucleus of a particular atom. The symbol for atomic number is *Z,* and each element has a unique atomic number.

Atropisomers: Stereoisomers that result from restricted rotation about single bonds where the barrier for rotation is sufficient to allow isolation of the isomers.

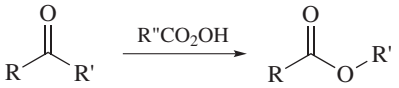
Axial bond: A bond to a carbon in the chair conformation of cyclohexane oriented like the six "up-and-down" bonds in the following:



Azo coupling: Formation of a compound of the type ArN═NAr′ by reaction of an aryl diazonium salt with an arene. The arene must be strongly activated toward electrophilic aromatic substitution; that is, it must bear a powerful electron-releasing substituent such as —OH or $—NR_2$.

B

Baeyer–Villiger oxidation: Oxidation of an aldehyde or, more commonly, a ketone with a peroxy acid. The product of Baeyer–Villiger oxidation of a ketone is an ester.



Base: According to the Arrhenius definition, a substance that ionizes in water to produce hydroxide ions. According to the Brønsted–Lowry definition, a substance that accepts a proton from some suitable donor. According to the Lewis definition, an electron-pair donor.

Base pair: Term given to the purine of a nucleotide and its complementary pyrimidine. Adenine (A) is complementary to thymine (T), and guanine (G) is complementary to cytosine (C).

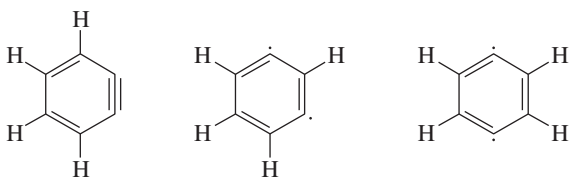
Base peak: The most intense peak in a mass spectrum. The base peak is assigned a relative intensity of 100, and the intensities of all other peaks are cited as a percentage of the base peak.

Bending vibration: The regular, repetitive motion of an atom or a group along an arc the radius of which is the bond connecting the atom or group to the rest of the molecule. Bending vibrations are one type of molecular motion that gives rise to a peak in the infrared spectrum.

Benzyl group: The group $C_6H_5CH_2—$.

Benzylic carbon: A carbon directly attached to a benzene ring. A hydrogen attached to a benzylic carbon is a benzylic hydrogen. A carbocation in which the benzylic carbon is positively charged is a benzylic carbocation. A free radical in which the benzylic carbon bears the unpaired electron is a benzylic radical.

Benzyne: Benzene that lacks two hydrogens.



o-Benzyne *m*-Benzyne *p*-Benzyne

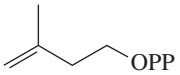
Biaryl: A Compound in which two aromatic rings are joined by a single bond.

Bile acids: Steroid derivatives biosynthesized in the liver that aid digestion by emulsifying fats.

Bimolecular: A process in which two particles react in the same elementary step.

Bioenergetics: The study of energy transfer in biological processes. The standard state pH = 7 instead of the customary pH = 1.

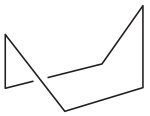
Biological isoprene unit: Isopentenyl diphosphate, the biological precursor to terpenes and steroids:



Birch reduction: Reduction of an aromatic ring to a 1,4-cyclohexadiene on treatment with a group 1 metal (Li, Na, K) and an alcohol in liquid ammonia.

Block copolymer: A copolymer of monomers A and B in which sections of poly-A and poly-B of variable length alternate.

Boat conformation: An unstable conformation of cyclohexane, depicted as



π bond: In alkenes, a bond formed by overlap of *p* orbitals in a side-by-side manner. A π bond is weaker than a σ bond. The carbon–carbon double bond in alkenes consists of two sp^2-hybridized carbons joined by a σ bond and a π bond.

σ bond: A connection between two atoms in which the orbitals involved overlap along the internuclear axis. A cross section perpendicular to the internuclear axis is a circle.

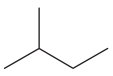
Bond dipole moment: The dipole moment of a bond between two atoms.

Bond dissociation enthalpy: For a substance A:B, the energy required to break the bond between A and B so that each retains one of the electrons in the bond.

Bonding orbital: An orbital in a molecule in which an electron is more stable than when localized on an isolated atom. All the bonding orbitals are normally doubly occupied in stable neutral molecules.

Bond-length distortion: The deviation of the length of a bond between two atoms from its normal value.

Bond-line formula: Formula in which connections between carbons are shown but individual carbons and hydrogens are not. The bond-line formula



represents the compound $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$.

Boundary surface: The surface that encloses the region where the probability of finding an electron is high (90–95%).

Branched-chain carbohydrate: Carbohydrate in which the main carbon chain bears a carbon substituent in place of a hydrogen or hydroxyl group.

Branched polymer: A polymer with branches having the same repeating units as the main chain.

Bridged compound: A compound in which two nonadjacent atoms are common to two or more rings.

Broadband decoupling: A technique in ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy that removes the splitting of ^{13}C signals caused by coupling of ^{13}C and ^{1}H nuclei. Thus, all of the ^{13}C signals appear as singlets.

Bromohydrin: A halohydrin in which the halogen is bromine (see *halohydrin*).

Bromonium ion: A halonium ion in which the halogen is bromine (see *halonium ion*).

Buckminsterfullerene: Name given to the C_{60} cluster with structure resembling the geodesic domes of R. Buckminster Fuller.

***n*-Butane:** Common name for butane $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$.

***n*-Butyl group:** The group $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2$—.

***sec*-Butyl group:** The group

$$CH_3CH_2\underset{|}{C}HCH_3$$

***tert*-Butyl group:** The group $(CH_3)_3C$—.

C

Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system: System for specifying absolute configuration as *R* or *S* on the basis of the order in which atoms or groups are attached to a chirality center. Groups are ranked in order of precedence according to rules based on atomic number.

Carbanion: Anion in which the negative charge is borne by carbon. An example is acetylide ion.

Carbene: A neutral species in which one of the carbon atoms is associated with six valence electrons.

Carbenoid: A compound, usually organometallic, that resembles a carbene in its chemical reactions.

Carbinolamine: An obsolete name for a **hemiaminal.** (see *hemiaminal*)

Carbocation: Positive ion in which the charge resides on carbon. An example is *tert*-butyl cation, $(CH_3)_3C^+$. Carbocations are unstable species that, though they cannot normally be isolated, are believed to be intermediates in certain reactions.

Carbon skeleton diagram: Synonymous with bond-line formula.

Carboxylic acid: Compound of the type $R\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}OH$, also written as RCO_2H.

Carboxylic acid derivative: Compound that yields a carboxylic acid on hydrolysis. Carboxylic acid derivatives include acyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, esters, and amides.

Carcinogen: A cancer-causing substance.

Carotenoids: Naturally occurring tetraterpenoid compounds found in plants and animals.

Catalyst: A substance that increases the rate of a chemical reaction, but is not consumed by it.

Cation: Positively charged ion.

Cationic polymerization: A polymerization in which the reactive intermediates are carbocations.

Cation radical: A positively charged species that has an odd number of electrons.

Cellobiose: A disaccharide in which two glucose units are joined by a β-(1→4) linkage. Cellobiose is obtained by the hydrolysis of cellulose.

Cellulose: A polysaccharide in which thousands of glucose units are joined by β-(1→4) linkages.

Center of symmetry: A point in the center of a structure located so that a line drawn from it to any element of the structure, when extended an equal distance in the opposite direction, encounters an identical element. Benzene, for example, has a center of symmetry.

Chain-growth polymerization: Macromolecule formation by a process in which monomers add sequentially to one end of a chain.

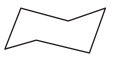
Chain reaction: Reaction mechanism in which a sequence of individual steps repeats itself many times, usually because a reactive intermediate consumed in one step is regenerated in a subsequent step. The halogenation of alkanes is a chain reaction proceeding via free-radical intermediates.

Chain terminating step: A chemical reaction that stops further growth of a polymer chain.

Chain transfer: A reaction between a growing chain and a terminated chain that terminates the growing chain and activates the previously terminated chain to further growth.

Chair–chair interconversion: Synonymous with ring inversion of cyclohexane and related compounds.

Chair conformation: The most stable conformation of cyclohexane:



Characteristic absorption frequencies: The regions of the infrared (IR) spectrum where peaks characteristic of particular structural units are normally found.

Chemical bond: A connection between atoms.

Chemically nonequivalent: In NMR, synonymous with *chemical-shift-nonequivalent.*

Chemical shift: A measure of how shielded the nucleus of a particular atom is. Nuclei of different atoms have different chemical shifts, and nuclei of the same atom have chemical shifts that are sensitive to their molecular environment. In proton and carbon-13 NMR, chemical shifts are cited as δ, or parts per million (ppm), from the hydrogens or carbons, respectively, of tetramethylsilane.

Chemical-shift-nonequivalent: Nuclei with different chemical shifts in nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR).

Chiral: Term describing an object that is not superimposable on its mirror image.

Chiral drug: A chiral molecule in which the desired therapeutic effect resides in only one of its enantiomers.

Chirality axis: Line drawn through a molecule that is analogous to the long axis of a right-handed or left-handed screw or helix.

Chirality center: An atom that has four nonequivalent atoms or groups attached to it. At various times chirality centers have been called *asymmetric centers* or *stereogenic centers.*

Chlorohydrin: A halohydrin in which the halogen is chlorine (see *halohydrin*).

Chloronium ion: A halonium ion in which the halogen is chlorine (see *halonium ion*).

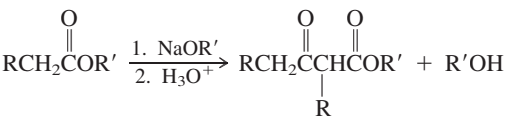
Cholesterol: The most abundant steroid in animals and the biological precursor to other naturally occurring steroids, including the bile acids, sex hormones, and corticosteroids.

Chromatography: A method for separation and analysis of mixtures based on the different rates at which different compounds are removed from a stationary phase by a moving phase.

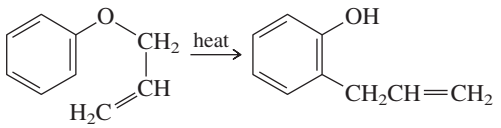
Chromophore: The structural unit of a molecule responsible for absorption of radiation of a particular frequency; a term usually applied to ultraviolet-visible spectroscopy.

***cis*-:** Stereochemical prefix indicating that two substituents are on the same side of a ring or double bond. (Contrast with the prefix *trans*-.)

Claisen condensation: Reaction in which a β-keto ester is formed by condensation of two moles of an ester in base:



Claisen rearrangement: Thermal conversion of an allyl phenyl ether to an *o*-allyl phenol. The rearrangement proceeds via a cyclohexadienone intermediate.



Claisen–Schmidt condensation: A mixed aldol condensation involving a ketone enolate and an aromatic aldehyde or ketone.

Clemmensen reduction: Method for reducing the carbonyl group of aldehydes and ketones to a methylene group ($C{=}O \rightarrow CH_2$) by treatment with zinc amalgam [Zn(Hg)] in concentrated hydrochloric acid.

Closed-shell electron configuration: Stable electron configuration in which all the lowest energy orbitals of an atom (in the case of the noble gases), an ion (e.g., Na^+), or a molecule (e.g., benzene) are filled.

^{13}C NMR: Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy in which the environments of individual carbon atoms are examined via their mass-13 isotope.

Codon: Set of three successive nucleotides in mRNA that is unique for a particular amino acid. The 64 codons possible from combinations of A, T, G, and C code for the 20 amino acids from which proteins are constructed.

Coenzyme: A cofactor that is not chemically bonded to an enzyme.

Coenzyme Q: Naturally occurring group of related quinones involved in the chemistry of cellular respiration. Also known as ubiquinone.

Cofactor: A molecule that acts in combination with an enzyme to bring about a reaction. A cofactor may be either a coenzyme or a prosthetic group.

Combinatorial chemistry: A method for carrying out a large number of reactions on a small scale in the solid phase so as to generate a "library" of related compounds for further study, such as biological testing.

Combustion: Burning of a substance in the presence of oxygen. All hydrocarbons yield carbon dioxide and water when they undergo combustion.

Common name: Name given to a compound on some basis other than a systematic set of rules.

σ-Complex: Synonymous with *arenium ion.*

Compound: An assembly of two or more atoms with properties different from the individual atoms.

Concerted reaction: Reaction that occurs in a single elementary step.

Condensation polymer: Polymer in which the bonds that connect the monomers are formed by condensation reactions. Typical condensation polymers include polyesters and polyamides.

Condensation reaction: Reaction in which two molecules combine to give a product accompanied by the expulsion of some small stable molecule (such as water). An example is acid-catalyzed ether formation:

Condensed formula: Structural formula in which subscripts are used to indicate replicated atoms or groups, as in $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$.

Conformational analysis: Study of the conformations available to a molecule, their relative stability, and the role they play in defining the properties of the molecule.

Conformational enantiomers: Nonsuperimposable mirror-image conformations of a molecule.

Conformations: Nonidentical representations of a molecule generated by rotation about single bonds.

Conformers: Different conformations of a single molecule.

Conjugate acid: The species formed from a Brønsted base after it has accepted a proton.

Conjugate addition: Addition reaction in which the reagent adds to the termini of the conjugated system with migration of the double bond; synonymous with 1,4 addition. The most common examples include conjugate addition to 1,3-dienes and to α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds.

Conjugate base: The species formed from a Brønsted acid after it has donated a proton.

Conjugated diene: System of the type C═C—C═C, in which two pairs of doubly bonded carbons are joined by a single bond. The π electrons are delocalized over the unit of four consecutive sp^2-hybridized carbons.

Conjugated system: A structural arrangement in which electron delocalization permits two groups to interact so that the properties of the conjugated system are different from those of the separate groups.

Conjugation energy: Synonymous with *resonance energy.*

Connectivity: Order in which a molecule's atoms are connected. Synonymous with *constitution.*

Constitutional isomers: Isomers that differ in respect to the order in which the atoms are connected. Butane ($CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$) and isobutane [$(CH_3)_3CH$] are constitutional isomers.

Contributing structures: The various resonance structures that can be written for a molecule.

Coordination polymerization: A method of addition polymerization in which monomers are added to the growing chain on an active organometallic catalyst.

Copolymer: Polymer formed from two or more different monomers.

Corticosteroid: A steroid present in the outer layer, or *cortex,* of the adrenal gland.

COSY: A 2D NMR technique that correlates the chemical shifts of spin-coupled nuclei. COSY stands for correlated spectroscopy.

Coulombic attraction: The electrical attraction between opposite charges.

Coupling constant *J*: A measure of the extent to which two nuclear spins are coupled. In the simplest cases, it is equal to the distance between adjacent peaks in a split NMR signal.

Covalent bond: Chemical bond between two atoms that results from their sharing of two electrons.

COX-2: Cyclooxygenase-2, an enzyme that catalyzes the biosynthesis of prostaglandins. COX-2 inhibitors reduce pain and inflammation by blocking the activity of this enzyme.

Cracking: A key step in petroleum refining in which high-molecular-weight hydrocarbons are converted to lower molecular-weight ones by thermal or catalytic carbon–carbon bond cleavage.

Critical micelle concentration: Concentration above which substances such as salts of fatty acids aggregate to form micelles in aqueous solution.

Cross-linked polymer: A polymer in which two or more chains are covalently bonded.

Crown ether: A cyclic polyether that, via ion–dipole attractive forces, forms stable complexes with metal ions. Such complexes, along with their accompanying anion, are soluble in nonpolar solvents.

Crystallite: An ordered crystalline region within a polymer.

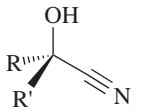
C terminus: The amino acid at the end of a peptide or protein chain that has its carboxyl group intact—that is, in which the carboxyl group is not part of a peptide bond.

Cumulated diene: Diene of the type C═C═C, in which one carbon has double bonds to two others.

Cumulenes: Compounds that contain C═C═C as a structural unit.

Curved arrows: Arrows that show the direction of electron flow in chemical reactions; also used to show differences in electron placement between resonance forms.

Cyanohydrin: Compound of the type



Cyanohydrins are formed by nucleophilic addition of HCN to the carbonyl group of an aldehyde or a ketone.

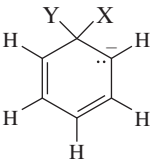
Cycloaddition: Addition, such as the Diels–Alder reaction, in which a ring is formed via a cyclic transition state.

Cycloalkane: An alkane in which a ring of carbon atoms is present.

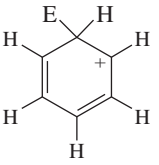
Cycloalkene: A cyclic hydrocarbon characterized by a double bond between two of the ring carbons.

Cycloalkyne: A cyclic hydrocarbon characterized by a triple bond between two of the ring carbons.

Cyclohexadienyl anion: The key intermediate in nucleophilic aromatic substitution by the addition–elimination mechanism. It is represented by the general structure shown, where Y is the nucleophile and X is the leaving group.



Cyclohexadienyl cation: The key intermediate in electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions. It is represented by the general structure



where E is derived from the electrophile that reacts with the ring.

D

d-Block elements: Elements in groups 3–12 of the Periodic Table.

Deactivating substituent: A group that when present in place of hydrogen causes a particular reaction to occur more slowly. The term is most often applied to the effect of substituents on the rate of electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Debye unit (D): Unit customarily used for measuring dipole moments:

$$1\text{D} = 1 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{esu·cm}.$$

Decarboxylation: Reaction of the type $RCO_2H \rightarrow RH + CO_2$, in which carbon dioxide is lost from a carboxylic acid. Decarboxylation normally occurs readily only when the carboxylic acid is a 1,3-dicarboxylic acid or a β-keto acid.

Decoupling: In NMR spectroscopy, any process that destroys the coupling of nuclear spins between two nuclei. Two types of decoupling are employed in ^{13}C NMR spectroscopy. Broadband decoupling removes all the ^1H–^{13}C couplings; off-resonance decoupling removes all ^1H–^{13}C couplings except those between directly bonded atoms.

Dehydration: Removal of H and OH from adjacent atoms. The term is most commonly employed in the preparation of alkenes by heating alcohols in the presence of an acid catalyst.

1,2-, 1,3- and 1,4-Dehydrobenzene: See *benzyne*.

Dehydrogenation: Elimination in which H_2 is lost from adjacent atoms. The term is most commonly encountered in the industrial preparation of ethylene from ethane, propene from propane, 1,3-butadiene from butane, and styrene from ethylbenzene.

Dehydrohalogenation: Reaction in which an alkyl halide, on being treated with a base such as sodium ethoxide, is converted to an alkene by loss of a proton from one carbon and the halogen from the adjacent carbon.

Delocalization: Association of an electron with more than one atom. The simplest example is the shared electron pair (covalent) bond. Delocalization is important in conjugated π electron systems, where an electron may be associated with several carbon atoms.

Delocalization energy: Synonymous with *resonance energy.*

Deoxy sugar: A carbohydrate in which one of the hydroxyl groups has been replaced by a hydrogen.

DEPT: Abbreviation for *d*istortionless *e*nhancement of *p*olarization *t*ransfer. DEPT is an NMR technique that reveals the number of hydrogens directly attached to a carbon responsible for a particular signal.

Detergents: Substances that clean by micellar action. Although the term usually refers to a synthetic detergent, soaps are also detergents.

Deuterium isotope effect: The difference in a property, usually reaction rate, that results when one or more atoms of ^1H in a compound are replaced by ^2H.

Diastereomers: Stereoisomers that are not enantiomers—stereoisomers that are not mirror images of one another.

Diastereotopic: Describing two atoms or groups in a molecule that are attached to the same atom but are in stereochemically different environments that are not mirror images of each other. The two protons shown in bold in $\mathbf{H_2}C{=}CHCl$, for example, are diastereotopic. One is cis to chlorine, the other is trans.

1,3-Diaxial repulsion: Repulsive forces between axial substituents on the same side of a cyclohexane ring.

Diazonium ion: Ion of the type $R{-}\overset{+}{N}{\equiv}N{:}$. Aryl diazonium ions are formed by treatment of primary aromatic amines with nitrous acid. They are extremely useful in the preparation of aryl halides, phenols, and aryl cyanides.

Diazotization: The reaction by which a primary amine is converted to the corresponding diazonium ion by nitrosation.

Dieckmann cyclization: An intramolecular version of the Claisen condensation.

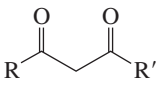
Dielectric constant: A measure of the ability of a material to disperse the force of attraction between oppositely charged particles. The symbol for dielectric constant is ϵ.

Diels–Alder reaction: Conjugate addition of an alkene to a conjugated diene to give a cyclohexene derivative. Diels–Alder reactions are extremely useful in synthesis.

Dienophile: The alkene that adds to the diene in a Diels–Alder reaction.

Dihydroxylation: Reaction or sequence of reactions in which an alkene is converted to a vicinal diol.

β-Diketone: Compound of the type

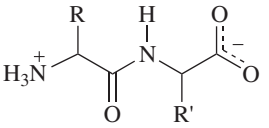


also referred to as a 1,3-diketone.

Dimer: Molecule formed by the combination of two identical molecules.

Diol: A compound with two alcohol functional groups.

Dipeptide: A compound in which two α-amino acids are linked by an amide bond between the amino group of one and the carboxyl group of the other:



Dipole–dipole attractive force: A force of attraction between oppositely polarized atoms.

Dipole/induced-dipole force: A force of attraction that results when a species with a permanent dipole induces a complementary dipole in a second species.

Dipole moment: Product of the attractive force between two opposite charges and the distance between them. Dipole moment has the symbol μ and is measured in Debye units (D).

Direct addition: Synonymous with *1,2-addition.*

Disaccharide: A carbohydrate that yields two monosaccharide units (which may be the same or different) on hydrolysis.

Disproportionation: A reaction in which transfer of an atom from one growing polymer chain to another terminates both.

Disubstituted alkene: Alkene of the type $R_2C{=}CH_2$ or $RCH{=}CHR$. The groups R may be the same or different, they may be any length, and they may be branched or unbranched. The significant point is that there are two carbons *directly* bonded to the carbons of the double bond.

Disulfide: A compound of the type RSSR′.

Disulfide bridge: An S—S bond between the sulfur atoms of two cysteine residues in a peptide or protein.

DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid): A polynucleotide of 2′-deoxyribose present in the nuclei of cells that serves to store and replicate genetic information. Genes are DNA.

Double bond: Bond formed by the sharing of four electrons between two atoms.

Double dehydrohalogenation: Reaction in which a geminal dihalide or vicinal dihalide, on being treated with a very strong base such as sodium amide, is converted to an alkyne by loss of two protons and the two halogen substituents.

Double helix: The form in which DNA normally occurs in living systems. Two complementary strands of DNA are associated with each other by hydrogen bonds between their base pairs, and each DNA strand adopts a helical shape.

Downfield: The low-field region of an NMR spectrum. A signal that is downfield with respect to another lies to its left in the spectrum.

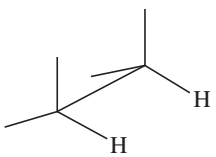
E

***E*-:** Stereochemical descriptor used when higher ranked substituents are on opposite sides of a double bond.

E1: See *Elimination unimolecular (E1) mechanism.*

E2: See *Elimination bimolecular (E2) mechanism.*

Eclipsed conformation: Conformation in which bonds on adjacent atoms are aligned with one another. For example, the C—H bonds indicated in the structure shown are eclipsed.



Edman degradation: Method for determining the N-terminal amino acid of a peptide or protein. It involves treating the material with

phenyl isothiocyanate ($C_6H_5N{=}C{=}S$), cleaving with acid, and then identifying the phenylthiohydantoin (PTH derivative) produced.

Elastomer: A synthetic polymer that possesses elasticity.

Electromagnetic radiation: Various forms of radiation propagated at the speed of light. Electromagnetic radiation includes (among others) visible light; infrared, ultraviolet, and microwave radiation; and radio waves, cosmic rays, and X-rays.

Electron affinity: Energy change associated with the capture of an electron by an atom.

Electronegativity: A measure of the ability of an atom to attract the electrons in a covalent bond toward itself. Fluorine is the most electronegative element.

Electron configurations: A list of the occupied orbitals of an element or ion including the number of electrons in each. Sodium, for example, has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$.

Electronic effect: An effect on structure or reactivity that is attributed to the change in electron distribution that a substituent causes in a molecule.

Electron impact: Method for producing positive ions in mass spectrometry whereby a molecule is bombarded by high-energy electrons.

Electron-releasing group: An atom or group that increases the electron density around another atom by an inductive or resonance effect.

18-Electron rule: The number of ligands that can be attached to a transition metal are such that the sum of the electrons brought by the ligands plus the valence electrons of the metal equals 18.

Electron-withdrawing group: An atom or group that decreases the electron density around another atom by an inductive or resonance effect.

Electrophile: A species (ion or compound) that can act as a Lewis acid, or electron pair acceptor; an "electron seeker." Carbocations are one type of electrophile.

Electrophilic addition: Mechanism of addition in which the species that first reacts with the multiple bond is an electrophile ("electron seeker").

Electrophilic aromatic substitution: Fundamental reaction type exhibited by aromatic compounds. An electrophilic species (E^+) replaces one of the hydrogens of an aromatic ring.

$$\text{Ar—H} + \text{E—Y} \longrightarrow \text{Ar—E} + \text{H—Y}$$

Electrostatic attraction: Force of attraction between oppositely charged particles.

Electrostatic potential map: The charge distribution in a molecule represented by mapping the interaction energy of a point positive charge with the molecule's electric field on the van der Waals surface.

Elementary step: A step in a reaction mechanism in which each species shown in the equation for this step participates in the same transition state. An elementary step is characterized by a single transition state.

Elements of unsaturation: See *index of hydrogen deficiency.*

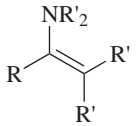
β Elimination: Reaction in which a double or triple bond is formed by loss of atoms or groups from adjacent atoms. (See *dehydration, dehydrogenation, dehydrohalogenation,* and *double dehydrohalogenation.*)

Elimination–addition mechanism: Two-stage mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution. In the first stage, an aryl halide undergoes elimination to form an aryne intermediate. In the second stage, nucleophilic addition to the aryne yields the product of the reaction.

Elimination bimolecular (E2) mechanism: Mechanism for elimination of alkyl halides characterized by a transition state in which the attacking base removes a proton at the same time that the bond to the halide leaving group is broken.

Elimination unimolecular (E1) mechanism: Mechanism for elimination characterized by the slow formation of a carbocation intermediate followed by rapid loss of a proton from the carbocation to form the alkene.

Enamine: Product of the reaction of a secondary amine and an aldehyde or a ketone. Enamines are characterized by the general structure



Enantiomeric excess: Difference between the percentage of the major enantiomer present in a mixture and the percentage of its mirror image. An optically pure material has an enantiomeric excess of 100%. A racemic mixture has an enantiomeric excess of zero.

Enantiomers: Stereoisomers that are related as an object and its nonsuperimposable mirror image.

Enantioselective synthesis: Reaction that converts an achiral or racemic starting material to a chiral product in which one enantiomer is present in excess of the other.

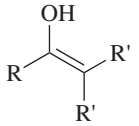
Enantiotopic: Describing two atoms or groups in a molecule whose environments are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other. The two protons shown in bold in $CH_3C\mathbf{H_2}Cl$, for example, are enantiotopic. Replacement of first one, then the other, by some arbitrary test group yields compounds that are enantiomers of each other.

Endergonic: A process in which $\Delta G°$ is positive.

Endothermic: Term describing a process or reaction that absorbs heat.

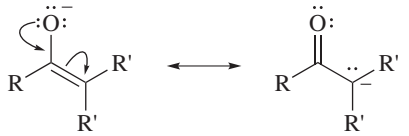
Enediyne antibiotics: A family of tumor-inhibiting substances that is characterized by the presence of a C≡C—C═C—C≡C unit as part of a nine- or ten-membered ring.

Enol: Compound of the type

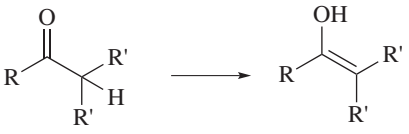


Enols are in equilibrium with an isomeric aldehyde or ketone, but are normally much less stable than aldehydes and ketones.

Enolate ion: The conjugate base of an enol. Enolate ions are stabilized by electron delocalization.



Enolization: A reaction of the type:



Entgegen: See *E-*.

Enthalpy: The heat content of a substance; symbol, *H*.

Envelope: One of the two most stable conformations of cyclopentane. Four of the carbons in the envelope conformation are coplanar; the fifth carbon lies above or below this plane.

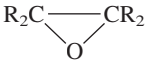
Enzymatic resolution: Resolution of a mixture of enantiomers based on the selective reaction of one of them under conditions of enzyme catalysis.

Enzyme: A protein that catalyzes a chemical reaction in a living system.

Epimers: Diastereomers that differ in configuration at only one of their chirality centers.

Epoxidation: Conversion of an alkene to an epoxide, usually by treatment with a peroxy acid.

Epoxide: Compound of the type



Equatorial bond: A bond to a carbon in the chair conformation of cyclohexane oriented approximately along the equator of the molecule.

Erythro: Term applied to the relative configuration of two chirality centers within a molecule. The erythro stereoisomer has like substituents on the same side of a Fischer projection.

Essential amino acids: Amino acids that must be present in the diet for normal growth and good health.

Essential fatty acids: Fatty acids that must be present in the diet for normal growth and good health.

Essential oils: Pleasant-smelling oils of plants consisting of mixtures of terpenes, esters, alcohols, and other volatile organic substances.

Ester: Compound of the type

Estrogen: A female sex hormone.

Ethene: IUPAC name for $H_2C{=}CH_2$. The common name ethylene, however, is used far more often, and the IUPAC rules permit its use.

Ether: Molecule that contains a C—O—C unit such as ROR′, ROAr, or ArOAr.

Ethylene: $H_2C{=}CH_2$, the simplest alkene and the most important industrial organic chemical.

Ethyl group: The group CH_3CH_2—.

Exergonic: A process in which ΔG° is negative.

Exothermic: Term describing a reaction or process that gives off heat.

Extinction coefficient: See *molar absorptivity.*

***E–Z* notation for alkenes:** System for specifying double-bond configuration that is an alternative to cis–trans notation. When higher ranked substituents are on the same side of the double bond, the configuration is *Z.* When higher ranked substituents are on opposite sides, the configuration is *E.* Rank is determined by the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system.

F

Fats and oils: Triesters of glycerol. Fats are solids at room temperature, oils are liquids.

Fatty acid: Carboxylic acids obtained by hydrolysis of fats and oils. Fatty acids typically have unbranched chains and contain an even number of carbon atoms in the range of 12–20 carbons. They may include one or more double bonds.

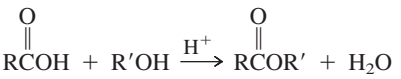
Fatty acid synthetase: Complex of enzymes that catalyzes the biosynthesis of fatty acids from acetate.

Fibrous protein: A protein consisting of bundled chains of elongated filaments.

Field effect: An electronic effect in a molecule that is transmitted from a substituent to a reaction site via the medium (e.g., solvent).

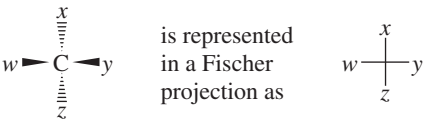
Fingerprint region: The region 1500–500 cm^{-1} of an infrared spectrum. This region is less characteristic of functional groups than others, but varies so much from one molecule to another that it can be used to determine whether two substances are identical or not.

Fischer esterification: Acid-catalyzed ester formation between an alcohol and a carboxylic acid:



Fischer glycosidation: A reaction in which glycosides are formed by treating a carbohydrate with an alcohol in the presence of an acid catalyst.

Fischer projection: Method for representing stereochemical relationships. The four bonds to a tetrahedral carbon are represented by a cross. The horizontal bonds are understood to project toward the viewer and the vertical bonds away from the viewer.



Fluid mosaic model: A schematic representation of a cell membrane.

Formal charge: The charge, either positive or negative, on an atom calculated by subtracting from the number of valence electrons in the neutral atom a number equal to the sum of its unshared electrons plus half the electrons in its covalent bonds.

Fragmentation pattern: In mass spectrometry, the ions produced by dissociation of the molecular ion.

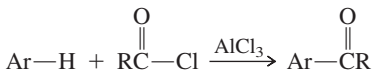
Free energy: The available energy of a system; symbol, *G.* See also *Gibbs energy.*

Free radical: Neutral species in which one of the electrons in the valence shell of carbon is unpaired. An example is methyl radical, $\cdot CH_3$.

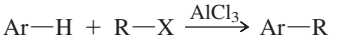
Free-radical polymerization: An alkene polymerization proceeding via free-radical intermediates.

Frequency: Number of waves per unit time. Although often expressed in hertz (Hz), or cycles per second, the SI unit for frequency is s^{-1}.

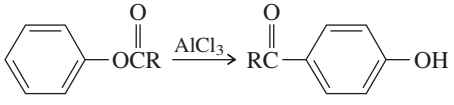
Friedel–Crafts acylation: An electrophilic aromatic substitution in which an aromatic compound reacts with an acyl chloride or a carboxylic acid anhydride in the presence of aluminum chloride. An acyl group becomes bonded to the ring.



Friedel–Crafts alkylation: An electrophilic aromatic substitution in which an aromatic compound reacts with an alkyl halide in the presence of aluminum chloride. An alkyl group becomes bonded to the ring.



Fries rearrangement: Aluminum chloride-promoted rearrangement of an aryl ester to a ring-acylated derivative of phenol.



Frontier orbitals: Orbitals involved in a chemical reaction, usually the highest occupied molecular orbital of one reactant and the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital of the other.

Frost's circle: A mnemonic that gives the Hückel π MOs for cyclic conjugated molecules and ions.

Functional class nomenclature: Type of IUPAC nomenclature in which compounds are named according to functional group families. The last word in the name identifies the functional group; the first word designates the alkyl or aryl group that bears the functional group. Methyl bromide, ethyl alcohol, and diethyl ether are examples of functional class names.

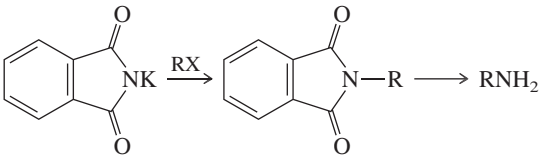
Functional group: An atom or a group of atoms in a molecule responsible for its reactivity under a given set of conditions.

Furanose form: Five-membered ring arising via cyclic hemiacetal formation between the carbonyl group and a hydroxyl group of a carbohydrate.

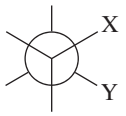
G

***G*:** Symbol for Gibbs energy.

Gabriel synthesis: Method for the synthesis of primary alkylamines in which a key step is the formation of a carbon–nitrogen bond by alkylation of the potassium salt of phthalimide.



Gauche: Term describing the position relative to each other of two substituents on adjacent atoms when the angle between their bonds is on the order of 60°. Atoms X and Y in the structure shown are gauche to each other.



G-coupled protein receptors: A large family of protein receptors that function as transmembrane molecular switches to regulate many physiological processes.

Geminal dihalide: A dihalide of the form R_2CX_2, in which the two halogen substituents are located on the same carbon.

Geminal diol: The hydrate $R_2C(OH)_2$ of an aldehyde or a ketone.

Generic name: The name of a drug as designated by the U.S. Adopted Names Council.

Genetic code: The relationship between triplets of nucleotide bases in messenger RNA and the amino acids incorporated into a protein in DNA-directed protein biosynthesis.

Genome: The aggregate of all the genes that determine what an organism becomes.

Genomics: The study of genome sequences and their function.

Gibbs energy: The free energy (energy available to do work) of a system.

Gilman reagents: Compounds of the type R_2CuLi used in carbon-carbon bond-forming reactions.

Globular protein: An approximately spherically shaped protein that forms a colloidal dispersion in water. Most enzymes are globular proteins.

Glycobiology: The biochemical study of the structure and function of carbohydrate-containing substances, especially those that occur naturally.

Glycogen: A polysaccharide present in animals that is derived from glucose. Similar in structure to amylopectin.

Glycolysis: Biochemical process in which glucose is converted to pyruvate with release of energy.

Glycoside: A carbohydrate derivative in which the hydroxyl group at the anomeric position has been replaced by some other group. An *O*-glycoside is an ether of a carbohydrate in which the anomeric position bears an alkoxy group.

Graft copolymer: A copolymer of monomers A and B in which branches of poly-A are attached to a poly-B main chain.

Grain alcohol: A common name for ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH).

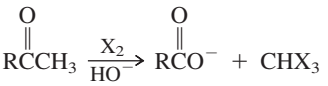
Graphene: An allotropic form of elemental carbon composed of sheets of planar fused six-membered rings.

Grignard reagent: An organomagnesium compound of the type RMgX formed by the reaction of magnesium with an alkyl or aryl halide.

H

Half-chair: One of the two most stable conformations of cyclopentane. Three consecutive carbons in the half-chair conformation are coplanar. The fourth and fifth carbons lie, respectively, above and below the plane.

Haloform reaction: The formation of CHX_3 (X = Br, Cl, or I) brought about by cleavage of a methyl ketone on treatment with Br_2, Cl_2, or I_2 in aqueous base.



Halogenation: Replacement of a hydrogen by a halogen. The most frequently encountered examples are the free-radical halogenation of alkanes and the halogenation of arenes by electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Halohydrin: A compound that contains both a halogen atom and a hydroxyl group. The term is most often used for compounds in which the halogen and the hydroxyl group are on adjacent atoms (vicinal halohydrins). The most commonly encountered halohydrins are chlorohydrins and bromohydrins.

Halonium ion: A species that incorporates a positively charged halogen. Bridged halonium ions are intermediates in the addition of halogens to the double bond of an alkene.

Hammond's postulate: Principle used to deduce the approximate structure of a transition state. If two states, such as a transition state and an unstable intermediate derived from it, are similar in energy, they are believed to be similar in structure.

Haworth formulas: Planar representations of furanose and pyranose forms of carbohydrates.

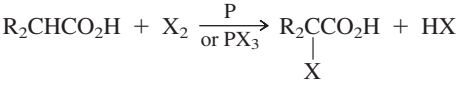
Heat of combustion: Heat evolved on combustion of a substance. It is the value of $-\Delta H°$ for the combustion reaction.

Standard heat of formation: The value of $\Delta H°$ for formation of a substance from its elements.

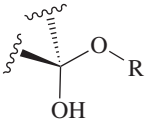
Heat of hydrogenation: Heat evolved on hydrogenation of a substance. It is the value of $-\Delta H°$ for the addition of H_2 to a multiple bond.

α Helix: One type of protein secondary structure. It is a right-handed helix characterized by hydrogen bonds between NH and C═O groups. It contains approximately 3.6 amino acids per turn.

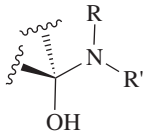
Hell–Volhard–Zelinsky reaction: The phosphorus trihalide-catalyzed α halogenation of a carboxylic acid:



Hemiacetal: Product of nucleophilic addition of one molecule of an alcohol to an aldehyde or a ketone. Hemiacetals are compounds of the type



Hemiaminal: A compound of the type shown formed by nucleophilic addition of a primary or secondary amine to an aldehyde or ketone.



Hemiketal: A hemiacetal derived from a ketone.

Henderson–Hasselbalch equation: An equation that relates degree of dissociation of an acid at a particular pH to its pK_a.

$$pH = pK_a + \log \frac{[\text{conjugate base}]}{[\text{acid}]}$$

HETCOR: A 2D NMR technique that correlates the ^1H chemical shift of a proton to the ^{13}C chemical shift of the carbon to which it is attached. HETCOR stands for *heteronuclear chemical shift correlation.*

Heteroatom: An atom in an organic molecule that is neither carbon nor hydrogen.

Heterocyclic aromatic compound: A heterocyclic compound in which the ring that contains the heteroatom is aromatic.

Heterocyclic compound: Cyclic compound in which one or more of the atoms in the ring are elements other than carbon. Heterocyclic compounds may or may not be aromatic.

Heterogeneous reaction: A reaction involving two or more substances present in different phases. Hydrogenation of alkenes is a heterogeneous reaction that takes place on the surface of an insoluble metal catalyst.

Heterolytically: A term used to describe the cleavage of a chemical bond between two atoms in which both electrons are retained by only one of them.

Heterolytic cleavage: Dissociation of a two-electron covalent bond in such a way that both electrons are retained by one of the initially bonded atoms.

Hexose: A carbohydrate with six carbon atoms.

Histones: Proteins that are associated with DNA in nucleosomes.

Hofmann elimination: Conversion of a quaternary ammonium hydroxide, especially an alkyltrimethylammonium hydroxide, to an alkene on heating. Elimination occurs in the direction that gives the less substituted double bond.

$$R_2CH{-}\underset{\displaystyle {}^{+}N(CH_3)_3}{\underset{|}{CR'_2}}\ HO^- \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} R_2C{=}CR'_2 + N(CH_3)_3 + H_2O$$

Hofmann rule: β-Elimination of quaternary ammonium hydroxides gives predominantly the alkene with the least substituted double bond.

HOMO: Highest occupied molecular orbital (the orbital of highest energy that contains at least one of a molecule's electrons).

Homogeneous hydrogenation: Hydrogenation of a double bond catalyzed by an organometallic compound that is soluble in the solvent in which the reaction is carried out.

Homologous series: Group of structurally related substances in which successive members differ by a CH_2 group.

Homolytic cleavage: Dissociation of a two-electron covalent bond in such a way that one electron is retained by each of the initially bonded atoms.

Homopolymer: A polymer formed from a single monomer.

Hückel's rule: Completely conjugated planar monocyclic hydrocarbons possess special stability when the number of their π electrons = $4n + 2$, where n is an integer.

Hund's rule: When two orbitals are of equal energy, they are populated by electrons so that each is half-filled before either one is doubly occupied.

Hybrid orbital: An atomic orbital represented as a mixture of various contributions of that atom's *s, p, d,* etc., orbitals.

Hydration: Addition of the elements of water (H, OH) to a multiple bond.

Hydride shift: Migration of a hydrogen with a pair of electrons (H:) from one atom to another. Hydride shifts are most commonly seen in carbocation rearrangements.

Hydroboration–oxidation: Reaction sequence involving a separate hydroboration stage and oxidation stage. In the hydroboration stage, diborane adds to an alkene to give an alkylborane. In the oxidation stage, the alkylborane is oxidized with hydrogen peroxide to give an alcohol. The reaction product is an alcohol corresponding to the anti-Markovnikov, syn hydration of an alkene.

Hydrocarbon: A compound that contains only carbon and hydrogen.

Hydroformylation: An industrial process for preparing aldehydes ($RCH_2CH_2CH{=}O$) by the reaction of terminal alkenes ($RCH{=}CH_2$) with carbon monoxide.

Hydrogenation: Addition of H_2 to a multiple bond.

Hydrogen bonding: Type of dipole–dipole attractive force in which a positively polarized hydrogen of one molecule is weakly bonded to a negatively polarized atom of an adjacent molecule. Hydrogen bonds typically involve the hydrogen of one —OH or —NH group and the oxygen or nitrogen of another.

Hydrolysis: Water-induced cleavage of a bond.

Hydronium ion: The species H_3O^+.

Hydrophilic: Literally, "water-loving"; a term applied to substances that are soluble in water, usually because of their ability to form hydrogen bonds with water.

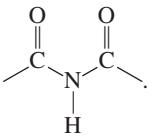
Hydrophobic: Literally, "water-hating"; a term applied to substances that are not soluble in water, but are soluble in nonpolar, hydrocarbon-like media.

Hydrophobic effect: The excluding of nonpolar molecules from water.

Hyperconjugation: Delocalization of σ electrons.

I

Icosanoids: A group of naturally occurring compounds derived from unsaturated C_{20} carboxylic acids.

Imide: A compound containing the group  .

Imine: Compound of the type $R_2C{=}NR'$ formed by the reaction of an aldehyde or a ketone with a primary amine ($R'NH_2$). Imines are sometimes called *Schiff's bases.*

Index of hydrogen deficiency: A measure of the total double bonds and rings a molecule contains. It is determined by comparing the molecular formula C_nH_x of the compound to that of an alkane that has the same number of carbons according to the equation:

$$\text{Index of hydrogen deficiency} = \frac{1}{2}(C_nH_{2n+2} - C_nH_x)$$

Induced-dipole/induced-dipole attractive force: Force of attraction resulting from a mutual and complementary polarization of one molecule by another. Also referred to as *London forces* or *dispersion forces.*

Inductive effect: An electronic effect transmitted by successive polarization of the σ bonds within a molecule or an ion.

Infrared (IR) spectroscopy: Analytical technique based on energy absorbed by a molecule as it vibrates by stretching and bending bonds. Infrared spectroscopy is useful for analyzing the functional groups in a molecule.

Initiation step: A process which causes a reaction, usually a free-radical reaction, to begin but which by itself is not the principal source of products. The initiation step in the halogenation of an alkane is the dissociation of a halogen molecule to two halogen atoms.

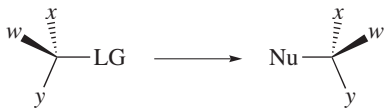
Integrated area: The relative area of a signal in an NMR spectrum. Areas are proportional to the number of equivalent protons responsible for the peak.

Intermediate: Transient species formed during a chemical reaction. Typically, an intermediate is not stable under the conditions of its formation and proceeds further to form the product. Unlike a transition state, which corresponds to a maximum along a potential energy surface, an intermediate lies at a potential energy minimum.

Intermolecular attractive forces: Forces, either attractive or repulsive, between two atoms or groups in *separate* molecules.

Intramolecular forces: Forces, either attractive or repulsive, between two atoms or groups *within* the same molecule.

Inversion of configuration: Reversal of the three-dimensional arrangement of the four bonds to sp^3-hybridized carbon. The representation shown illustrates inversion of configuration in a nucleophilic substitution where LG is the leaving group and Nu is the nucleophile.



Ion: A charged particle.

Ionic bond: Chemical bond between oppositely charged particles that results from the electrostatic attraction between them.

Ionization energy: Amount of energy required to remove an electron from some species.

Isobutane: The common name for 2-methylpropane, $(CH_3)_3CH$.

Isobutyl group: The group $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2$—.

Isoelectric point: pH at which the concentration of the zwitterionic form of an amino acid is a maximum. At a pH below the isoelectric point the dominant species is a cation. At higher pH, an anion predominates. At the isoelectric point the amino acid has no net charge.

Isoionic point: Synonymous with *isoelectric point.*

Isolated diene: Diene of the type

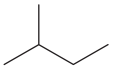
$$C{=}C{-}(C)_x{-}C{=}C$$

in which the two double bonds are separated by one or more sp^3-hybridized carbons. Isolated dienes are slightly less stable than isomeric conjugated dienes.

Isomers: Different compounds that have the same molecular formula. Isomers may be either constitutional isomers or stereoisomers.

Isoprene rule: Terpenes are composed of repeating head-to-tail-linked isoprene units.

Isoprene unit: The characteristic five-carbon structural unit found in terpenes:



Isopropenyl group: The group $H_2C{=}C(CH_3)$—.

Isopropyl group: The group $(CH_3)_2CH$—.

Isotactic polymer: A stereoregular polymer in which the substituent at each successive chirality center is on the same side of the zigzag carbon chain.

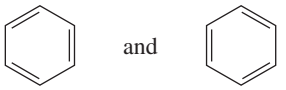
Isotope effect: The difference in a property, usually reaction rate, that is evident when isotopes of the same atom are compared.

Isotopic cluster: In mass spectrometry, a group of peaks that differ in *m/z* because they incorporate different isotopes of their component elements.

IUPAC rules: The most widely used method of naming organic compounds. It uses a set of rules proposed and periodically revised by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry.

K

Kekulé structure: Structural formula for an aromatic compound that satisfies the customary rules of bonding and is usually characterized by a pattern of alternating single and double bonds. There are two Kekulé formulations for benzene:



A single Kekulé structure does not completely describe the actual bonding in the molecule.

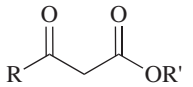
Ketal: An acetal derived from a ketone.

Ketimines: Imines of the type $R_2C{=}NHR$ formed by the reaction of ketones with primary amines. The two groups designated R in the general formula may be the same or different.

Keto-: A tautomeric form that contains a carbonyl group.

Keto–enol tautomerism: Process by which an aldehyde or a ketone and its enol equilibrate:

β-Keto ester: A compound of the type



Ketone: A member of the family of compounds in which both atoms attached to a carbonyl group (C═O) are carbon, as in

Ketose: A carbohydrate that contains a ketone carbonyl group in its open-chain form.

Kiliani–Fischer synthesis: A synthetic method for carbohydrate chain extension. The new carbon–carbon bond is formed by converting an aldose to its cyanohydrin. Reduction of the cyano group to an aldehyde function completes the synthesis.

Kinases: Enzymes that catalyze the transfer of phosphate from ATP to some other molecule.

Kinetically controlled reaction: Reaction in which the major product is the one that is formed at the fastest rate.

Kinetic isotope effect: An effect on reaction rate that depends on isotopic composition.

Kinetic resolution: Separation of enantiomers based on their unequal rates of reaction with a chiral reactant.

Kinetics: The study of reaction rates and the factors that influence them.

Kolbe–Schmitt reaction: The high-pressure reaction of the sodium salt of a phenol with carbon dioxide to give an *o*-hydroxybenzoic acid. The Kolbe–Schmitt reaction is used to prepare salicylic acid in the synthesis of aspirin.

L

Lactam: A cyclic amide.

β-Lactam: A cyclic amide in which the amide function is part of a four-membered ring. The antibiotic penicillin contains a β-lactam.

Lactone: A cyclic ester.

Lactose: Milk sugar; a disaccharide formed by a β-glycosidic linkage between C-4 of glucose and C-1 of galactose.

Lagging strand: In DNA replication, the strand that grows away from the replication fork.

LDA: Abbreviation for lithium diisopropylamide $LiN[CH(CH_3)_2]_2$. LDA is a strong, sterically hindered base.

Leading strand: In DNA replication, the strand that grows toward the replication fork.

Leaving group: The group, normally a halide ion, that is lost from carbon in a nucleophilic substitution or elimination.

Le Châtelier's principle: A reaction at equilibrium responds to any stress imposed on it by shifting the equilibrium in the direction that minimizes the stress.

Lewis acid/Lewis base complex: The species that results by covalent bond formation between a Lewis acid and a Lewis base.

Lewis structure: A chemical formula in which electrons are represented by dots. Two dots (or a line) between two atoms represent a covalent bond in a Lewis structure. Unshared electrons are explicitly shown, and stable Lewis structures are those in which the octet rule is satisfied.

Ligand: An atom or group attached to another atom, especially when the other atom is a metal.

Lindlar catalyst: A catalyst for the hydrogenation of alkynes to *cis*-alkenes. It is composed of palladium, which has been "poisoned" with lead(II) acetate and quinoline, supported on calcium carbonate.

Linear polymer: A polymer in which the chain of repeating units is not branched.

Lipid bilayer: Arrangement of two layers of phospholipids that constitutes cell membranes. The polar termini are located at the inner and outer membrane–water interfaces, and the lipophilic hydrocarbon tails cluster on the inside.

Lipids: Biologically important natural products characterized by high solubility in nonpolar organic solvents.

Lipophilic: Literally, "fat-loving"; synonymous in practice with *hydrophobic*.

Liposome: Spherical objects comprised of a phospholipid bilayer.

Living polymer: A polymer that retains active sites capable of further reaction on addition of more monomer.

Localized electrons: Electrons associated with a single atom; that is, not shared with other atoms in a molecule.

Locant: In IUPAC nomenclature, a prefix that designates the atom that is associated with a particular structural unit. The locant is most often a number, and the structural unit is usually an attached substituent as in 2-chlorobutane.

LUMO: The orbital of lowest energy that contains none of a molecule's electrons; the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital.

M

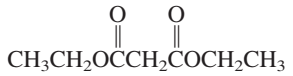
Macromolecule: A substance containing a large number of atoms and having a high molecular weight.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI): A diagnostic method in medicine in which tissues are examined by NMR.

Main-group elements: Elements in Groups 1A–8A of the Periodic Table

MALDI: Abbreviation for matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization. A mass spectrometric method used in determining the amino acid sequence of peptides and proteins.

Malonic ester synthesis: Synthetic method for the preparation of carboxylic acids involving alkylation of the enolate of diethyl malonate



as the key carbon–carbon bond-forming step.

Maltose: A disaccharide obtained from starch in which two glucose units are joined by an α-(1→4)-glycosidic link.

Markovnikov's rule: An unsymmetrical reagent adds to an unsymmetrical double bond in the direction that places the positive part of the reagent on the carbon of the double bond that has the greater number of hydrogens.

Mass spectrometry: Analytical method in which a molecule is ionized and the various ions are examined on the basis of their mass-to-charge ratio.

Mechanism: The sequence of steps that describes how a chemical reaction occurs; a description of the intermediates and transition states that are involved during the transformation of reactants to products.

Mercaptan: An old name for the class of compounds now known as *thiols.*

Merrifield method: See *solid-phase peptide synthesis*.

Meso stereoisomer: An achiral molecule that has chirality centers. The most common kind of meso compound is a molecule with two chirality centers and a plane of symmetry.

Messenger RNA (mRNA): A polynucleotide of ribose that "reads" the sequence of bases in DNA and interacts with tRNAs in the ribosomes to promote protein biosynthesis.

Meta: Term describing a 1,3 relationship between substituents on a benzene ring.

Meta director: A group that when present on a benzene ring directs an incoming electrophile to a position meta to itself.

Metallocene: A transition metal complex that bears a cyclopentadienyl ligand.

Methine group: The group CH.

Methylene group: The group $—CH_2—$.

Methyl group: The group $—CH_3$.

Micelle: A spherical aggregate of species such as carboxylate salts of fatty acids that contain a lipophilic end and a hydrophilic end. Micelles containing 50–100 carboxylate salts of fatty acids are soaps.

Michael reaction: The conjugate addition of a carbanion (usually an enolate) to an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound.

Microscopic reversibility: The principle that the intermediates and transition states in the forward and backward stages of a reversible reaction are identical, but are encountered in the reverse order.

Molar absorptivity: A measure of the intensity of a peak, usually in UV-VIS spectroscopy.

Molecular dipole moment: The overall measured dipole moment of a molecule. It can be calculated as the resultant (or vector sum) of all the individual bond dipole moments.

Molecular formula: Chemical formula in which subscripts are used to indicate the number of atoms of each element present in one molecule. In organic compounds, carbon is cited first, hydrogen second, and the remaining elements in alphabetical order.

Molecular ion: In mass spectrometry, the species formed by loss of an electron from a molecule.

Molecularity: The number of species that react together in the same elementary step of a reaction mechanism.

Molecular orbital theory: Theory of chemical bonding in which electrons are assumed to occupy orbitals in molecules much as they

occupy orbitals in atoms. The molecular orbitals are described as combinations of the orbitals of all of the atoms that make up the molecule.

Monomer: The simplest stable molecule from which a particular polymer may be prepared.

Monosaccharide: A carbohydrate that cannot be hydrolyzed further to yield a simpler carbohydrate.

Monosubstituted alkene: An alkene of the type $RCH{=}CH_2$, in which there is only one carbon directly bonded to the carbons of the double bond.

Multiplicity: The number of peaks into which a signal is split in nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Signals are described as singlets, doublets, triplets, and so on, according to the number of peaks into which they are split.

Mutarotation: The change in optical rotation that occurs when a single form of a carbohydrate is allowed to equilibrate to a mixture of isomeric hemiacetals.

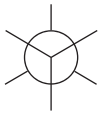
N

Nanotube: A form of elemental carbon composed of a cylindrical cluster of carbon atoms.

Network polymer: Synonymous with *cross-linked polymer.*

Neurotransmitter: Substance, usually a naturally occurring amine, that mediates the transmission of nerve impulses.

Newman projection: Method for depicting conformations in which one sights down a carbon–carbon bond and represents the front carbon by a point and the back carbon by a circle.



Nitration: Replacement of a hydrogen by an $-NO_2$ group. The term is usually used in connection with electrophilic aromatic substitution.

$$Ar{-}H \xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{HNO_3} Ar{-}NO_2$$

Nitrile: A compound of the type $RC{\equiv}N$. R may be alkyl or aryl. Also known as alkyl or aryl cyanides.

Nitrogen rule: The molecular weight of a substance that contains C, H, O, and N is odd if the number of nitrogens is odd. The molecular weight is even if the number of nitrogens is even.

Nitrosamine: See N-*nitroso amine*.

Nitrosation: The reaction of a substance, usually an amine, with nitrous acid. Primary amines yield diazonium ions; secondary amines yield *N*-nitroso amines. Tertiary aromatic amines undergo nitrosation of their aromatic ring.

***N*-Nitroso amine:** A compound of the type $R_2N{-}N{=}O$. R may be alkyl or aryl groups, which may be the same or different. *N*-Nitroso amines are formed by nitrosation of secondary amines.

Noble gases: The elements in group 8A of the periodic table (helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, radon). Also known as the *rare gases,* they are, with few exceptions, chemically inert.

Nodal surface: A plane drawn through an orbital where the algebraic sign of a wave function changes. The probability of finding an electron at a node is zero.

Nonpolar solvent: A solvent with a low dielectric constant.

N terminus: The amino acid at the end of a peptide or protein chain that has its α-amino group intact; that is, the α-amino group is not part of a peptide bond.

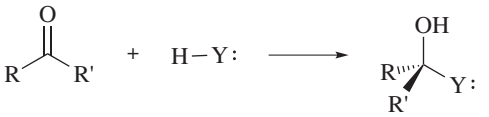
Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy: A method for structure determination based on the effect of molecular environment on the energy required to promote a given nucleus from a lower energy spin state to a higher energy state.

Nucleic acid: A polynucleotide present in the nuclei of cells.

Nucleophile: An atom or ion that has an unshared electron pair which can be used to form a bond to carbon. Nucleophiles are Lewis bases.

Nucleophilic acyl substitution: Nucleophilic substitution at the carbon atom of an acyl group.

Nucleophilic addition: The characteristic reaction of an aldehyde or a ketone. An atom possessing an unshared electron pair bonds to the carbon of the C=O group, and some other species (normally hydrogen) bonds to the oxygen.



Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution: Reaction in which a nucleophile replaces a leaving group, usually a halide ion, from sp^3-hybridized carbon. Nucleophilic aliphatic substitution may proceed by either an S_N1 or an S_N2 mechanism.

Nucleophilic aromatic substitution: A reaction in which a nucleophile replaces a leaving group as a substituent on an aromatic ring. Substitution may proceed by an addition–elimination mechanism or an elimination–addition mechanism.

Nucleophilicity: A measure of the reactivity of a Lewis base in a nucleophilic substitution reaction.

Nucleoside: The combination of a purine or pyrimidine base and a carbohydrate, usually ribose or 2-deoxyribose.

Nucleosome: A DNA–protein complex by which DNA is stored in cells.

Nucleotide: The phosphate ester of a nucleoside.

O

Octane rating: The capacity of a sample of gasoline to resist "knocking," expressed as a number equal to the percentage of 2,2,4-trimethylpentane ("isooctane") in an isooctane–heptane mixture that has the same knocking characteristics.

Octet: A filled shell of eight electrons in an atom.

Octet rule: When forming compounds, atoms gain, lose, or share electrons so that the number of their valence electrons is the same as that of the nearest noble gas. For the elements carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, and the halogens, this number is 8.

Olefin metathesis: Exchange of substituents on the double bonds of two alkenes.

$$2R_2C{=}CR'_2 \longrightarrow R_2C{=}CR_2 + R'_2C{=}CR'_2$$

Oligomer: A molecule composed of too few monomer units for it to be classified as a polymer, but more than in a dimer, trimer, tetramer, etc.

Oligonucleotide: A polynucleotide containing a relatively small number of bases.

Oligosaccharide: A carbohydrate that gives three to ten monosaccharides on hydrolysis.

Optical activity: Ability of a substance to rotate the plane of polarized light. To be optically active, a substance must be chiral, and one enantiomer must be present in excess of the other.

Optically pure: Describing a chiral substance in which only a single enantiomer is present.

Optical rotation: The extent to which a chiral substance rotates the plane of plane-polarized light.

Orbital: Strictly speaking, a wave function ψ. It is convenient, however, to think of an orbital in terms of the probability ψ^2 of finding an electron at some point relative to the nucleus, as the volume inside the boundary surface of an atom, or the region in space where the probability of finding an electron is high.

σ Orbital: A bonding orbital characterized by rotational symmetry.

σ*Orbital: An antibonding orbital characterized by rotational symmetry.

Organometallic compound: A compound that contains a carbon-to-metal bond.

Ortho: Term describing a 1,2 relationship between substituents on a benzene ring.

Ortho, para director: A group that when present on a benzene ring directs an incoming electrophile to the positions ortho and para to itself.

Oxidation: A decrease in the number of electrons associated with an atom. In organic chemistry, oxidation of carbon occurs when a bond between carbon and an atom that is less electronegative than carbon is replaced by a bond to an atom that is more electronegative than carbon.

Oxidation number: The formal charge an atom has when the atoms in its covalent bonds are assigned to the more electronegative partner.

Oxidation–reduction: A reaction in which an electron is transferred from one atom to another so that each atom undergoes a change in oxidation number.

Oxidation state: See *oxidation number*.

Oxonium ion: The species H_3O^+ (also called *hydronium ion*).

Oxymercuration–demercuration: A two-stage procedure for alkene hydration.

Ozonide: A compound formed by the reaction of ozone with an alkene.

Ozonolysis: Ozone-induced cleavage of a carbon–carbon double or triple bond.

P

Para: Term describing a 1,4 relationship between substituents on a benzene ring.

Paraffin hydrocarbons: An old name for alkanes and cycloalkanes.

Partial rate factor: In electrophilic aromatic substitution, a number that compares the rate of attack at a particular ring carbon with the rate of attack at a single position of benzene.

Pauli exclusion principle: No two electrons can have the same set of four quantum numbers. An equivalent expression is that only two electrons can occupy the same orbital, and then only when they have opposite spins.

PCC: Abbreviation for pyridinium chlorochromate $C_5H_5NH^+\ ClCrO_3^-$. When used in an anhydrous medium, PCC oxidizes primary alcohols to aldehydes and secondary alcohols to ketones.

PDC: Abbreviation for pyridinium dichromate $(C_5H_5NH)_2^{2+}\ Cr_2O_7^{2-}$. Used in same manner and for same purposes as PCC (see preceding entry).

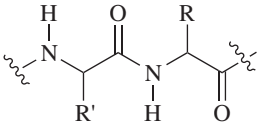
***n*-Pentane:** The common name for pentane, $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$.

Pentose: A carbohydrate with five carbon atoms.

Peptidases: Enzymes that catalyze the hydrolysis of peptides and proteins.

Peptide: Structurally, a molecule composed of two or more α-amino acids joined by peptide bonds.

Peptide bond: An amide bond between the carboxyl group of one α-amino acid and the amino group of another.



Peptide map: The collection of sequenced fragments of a protein from which its amino acid sequence is determined.

Pericyclic reaction: A reaction that proceeds through a cyclic transition state.

Period: A horizontal row of the periodic table.

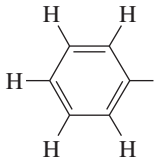
Peroxide: A compound of the type ROOR.

Peroxide effect: Reversal of regioselectivity observed in the addition of hydrogen bromide to alkenes brought about by the presence of peroxides in the reaction mixture.

Phase-transfer catalysis: Method for increasing the rate of a chemical reaction by transporting an ionic reactant from an aqueous phase where it is solvated and less reactive to an organic phase where it is not solvated and is more reactive. Typically, the reactant is an anion that is carried to the organic phase as its quaternary ammonium salt.

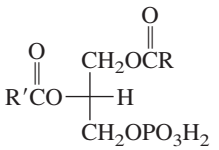
Phenols: Family of compounds characterized by a hydroxyl substituent on an aromatic ring as in ArOH. *Phenol* is also the name of the parent compound, C_6H_5OH.

Phenyl group: The group

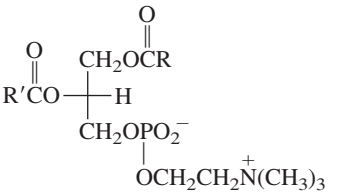


It is often abbreviated C_6H_5—.

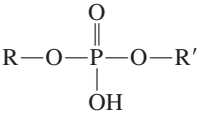
Phosphatidic acid: A compound of the type shown, which is an intermediate in the biosynthesis of triacylglycerols.



Phosphatidylcholine: One of a number of compounds of the type:



Phosphodiester: Compound of the type shown, especially when R and R′ are D-ribose or 2-deoxy-D-ribose.



Phospholipid: A diacylglycerol bearing a choline-phosphate "head group." Also known as *phosphatidylcholine*.

Photochemical reaction: A chemical reaction that occurs when light is absorbed by a substance.

Photon: Term for an individual "bundle" of energy, or particle, of electromagnetic radiation.

Pi (π) bond: A bond in which the electron distribution is concentrated above and below the internuclear axis, rather than along it as in a σ bond. In organic chemistry π bonds are most often associated with a side-by-side overlap of *p* orbitals on adjacent atoms that are already connected by a σ bond.

Pi (π) electron: Electrons in a π bond or a π orbital.

pK_a: A measure of acid strength defined as $-\log K_a$. The stronger the acid, the smaller the value of pK_a.

Planck's constant: Constant of proportionality (h) in the equation $E = h\nu$, which relates the energy (E) to the frequency (ν) of electromagnetic radiation.

Plane of symmetry: A plane that bisects an object, such as a molecule, into two mirror-image halves; also called a mirror plane. When a line is drawn from any element in the object perpendicular to such a plane and extended an equal distance in the opposite direction, a duplicate of the element is encountered.

Pleated β sheet: Type of protein secondary structure characterized by hydrogen bonds between NH and C═O groups of adjacent parallel peptide chains. The individual chains are in an extended zigzag conformation.

Polar covalent bond: A shared electron pair bond in which the electrons are drawn more closely to one of the bonded atoms than the other.

Polarimeter: An instrument used to measure optical activity.

Polarizability: A measure of the ease of distortion of the electric field associated with an atom or a group. A fluorine atom in a molecule, for example, holds its electrons tightly and is very nonpolarizable. Iodine is very polarizable.

Polar solvent: A solvent with a high dielectric constant.

Polyamide: A polymer in which individual structural units are joined by amide bonds. Nylon is a synthetic polyamide; proteins are naturally occurring polyamides.

Polyamine: A compound that contains many amino groups. The term is usually applied to a group of naturally occurring substances, including spermine, spermidine, and putrescine, that are believed to be involved in cell differentiation and proliferation.

Polycarbonate: A polyester of carbonic acid.

Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon: An aromatic hydrocarbon characterized by the presence of two or more fused benzene rings.

Polycyclic hydrocarbon: A hydrocarbon in which two carbons are common to two or more rings.

Polyester: A polymer in which repeating units are joined by ester bonds.

Polyether: A molecule that contains many ether linkages. Polyethers occur naturally in a number of antibiotic substances.

Polyethylene: A polymer of ethylene.

Polymer: Large molecule formed by the repetitive combination of many smaller molecules (monomers).

Polymerase chain reaction: A laboratory method for making multiple copies of DNA.

Polymerization: Process by which a polymer is prepared. The principal processes include free-radical, cationic, coordination, and condensation polymerization.

Polynucleotide: A polymer in which phosphate ester units join an oxygen of the carbohydrate unit of one nucleoside to that of another.

Polyolefin: An addition polymer prepared from alkene monomers.

Polypeptide: A polymer made up of "many" (more than eight to ten) amino acid residues.

Polypropylene: A polymer of propene.

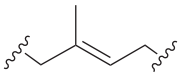
Polysaccharide: A carbohydrate that yields "many" monosaccharide units on hydrolysis.

Polyurethane: A polymer in which structural units are corrected by a linkage of the type —NHCO—.

Potential energy: The energy a system has exclusive of its kinetic energy.

Potential energy diagram: Plot of potential energy versus some arbitrary measure of the degree to which a reaction has proceeded (the reaction coordinate). The point of maximum potential energy is the transition state.

Prenyls: Compounds derived from the group:



Primary alkyl group: Structural unit of the type RCH_2—, in which the point of attachment is to a primary carbon.

Primary amine: An amine with a single alkyl or aryl substituent and two hydrogens: an amine of the type RNH_2 (primary alkylamine) or $ArNH_2$ (primary arylamine).

Primary carbon: A carbon that is directly attached to only one other carbon.

Primary structure: The sequence of amino acids in a peptide or protein.

Principal quantum number: The quantum number (n) of an electron that describes its energy level. An electron with $n = 1$ must be an s electron; one with $n = 2$ has s and p states available.

Prochiral: The capacity of an achiral molecule to become chiral by replacement of an existing atom or group by a different one.

Prochirality center: An atom of a molecule that becomes a chirality center when one of its attached atoms or groups is replaced by a different atom or group.

Propagation steps: Elementary steps that repeat over and over again in a chain reaction. Almost all of the products in a chain reaction arise from the propagation steps.

Prostaglandin: One of a class of lipid hormones containing 20 carbons, 5 of which belong to an oxygenated cyclopentanoid ring; the remaining 15 carbons are incorporated into two unbranched side chains, adjacent to each other on the ring.

Prosthetic group: A cofactor that is covalently bonded to an enzyme.

Protease inhibitor: A substance that interferes with enzyme-catalyzed hydrolysis of peptide bonds.

Protecting group: A temporary alteration in the nature of a functional group so that it is rendered inert under the conditions in which reaction occurs somewhere else in the molecule. To be synthetically useful, a protecting group must be stable under a prescribed set of reaction conditions, yet be easily introduced and removed.

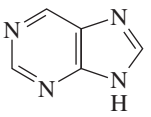
Protein: A naturally occurring polypeptide that has a biological function.

Protic solvent: A solvent that has easily exchangeable protons, especially protons bonded to oxygen as in hydroxyl groups.

Proton acceptor: A Brønsted base.

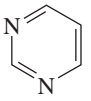
Proton donor: A Brønsted acid.

Purine: The heterocyclic aromatic compound



Pyranose form: Six-membered ring arising via cyclic hemiacetal formation between the carbonyl group and a hydroxyl group of a carbohydrate.

Pyrimidine: The heterocyclic aromatic compound



Q

Quantized: Referring to states for which only certain energies are allowed. These states are governed by the relationship $E = nh\nu$, where n is an integer, h is Planck's constant, and ν is the frequency of electromagnetic radiation.

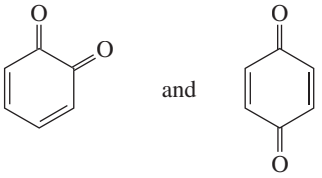
Quantum: The energy associated with a photon.

Quaternary ammonium salt: Salt of the type $R_4N^+ X^-$. The positively charged ion contains a nitrogen with a total of four organic substituents (any combination of alkyl and aryl groups).

Quaternary carbon: A carbon that is directly attached to four other carbons.

Quaternary structure: Description of the way in which two or more protein chains, not connected by chemical bonds, are organized in a larger protein.

Quinone: The product of oxidation of an ortho or para dihydroxybenzene derivative. Examples of quinones include



R

R: Symbol for an alkyl group.

Racemic mixture: Mixture containing equal quantities of enantiomers.

Random coil: A portion of a protein that lacks an ordered secondary structure.

Rare gases: Synonymous with noble gases (helium, neon, argon, krypton, and xenon).

Rate constant *k*: An experimentally determined proportionality constant that relates the rate of a reaction to the concentrations of the substances present.

Rate-determining step: Slowest step of a multistep reaction mechanism. The overall rate of a reaction can be no faster than its slowest step.

Rearrangement: Intramolecular migration of an atom, a group, or a bond from one atom to another.

Recombinant DNA: DNA molecules that are made by combining nucleotide sequences obtained from different sources. For example, the nucleotide sequence that codes for the synthesis of human insulin can be combined with a bacterial nucleotide sequence to produce recombinant DNA used in the production of insulin.

Reduction: Gain in the number of electrons associated with an atom. In organic chemistry, reduction of carbon occurs when a bond between carbon and an atom which is more electronegative than carbon is replaced by a bond to an atom which is less electronegative than carbon.

Reductive amination: Method for the preparation of amines in which an aldehyde or a ketone is treated with ammonia or an amine under conditions of catalytic hydrogenation.

Refining: Conversion of crude oil to useful materials, especially gasoline.

Reforming: Step in oil refining in which the proportion of aromatic and branched-chain hydrocarbons in petroleum is increased so as to improve the octane rating of gasoline.

Regioselective: Term describing a reaction that can produce two (or more) constitutional isomers but gives one of them in greater amounts than the other. A reaction that is 100% regioselective is termed regiospecific.

Relative configuration: Stereochemical configuration on a comparative, rather than an absolute, basis. Terms such as D, L, erythro, threo, α, and β describe relative configuration.

Repeating unit: The structural units that make up a polymer; usually written enclosed in brackets.

Replication: Biosynthetic copying of DNA.

Replication fork: Point at which strands of double-helical DNA separate.

Resolution: Separation of a racemic mixture into its enantiomers.

Resonance: Method by which electron delocalization may be shown using Lewis structures. The true electron distribution in a molecule is regarded as a hybrid of the various Lewis structures that can be written for it.

Resonance energy: Extent to which a substance is stabilized by electron delocalization. It is the difference in energy between the substance and a hypothetical model in which the electrons are localized.

Resonance hybrid: The collection of Lewis structures that, taken together, represent the electron distribution in a molecule.

Restriction enzymes: Enzymes that catalyze the cleavage of DNA at specific sites.

Retention of configuration: Stereochemical pathway observed when a new bond is made that has the same spatial orientation as the bond that was broken.

Retrosynthetic analysis: Technique for synthetic planning based on reasoning backward from the target molecule to appropriate starting materials. An arrow of the type ⇨ designates a retrosynthetic step.

Retrovirus: A virus for which the genetic material is RNA rather than DNA.

Ribosomal RNA (rRNA): The RNA in a cell's ribosomes.

Ribozyme: A polynucleotide that has catalytic activity.

Ring current: Electric field associated with circulating system of π electrons.

Ring flipping: Synonymous with *ring inversion* of cyclohexane and related compounds.

Ring inversion: Process by which a chair conformation of cyclohexane is converted to a mirror-image chair. All of the equatorial substituents become axial, and vice versa. Also called ring flipping, or chair–chair interconversion.

RNA (ribonucleic acid): A polynucleotide of ribose.

Robinson annulation: The combination of a Michael addition and an intramolecular aldol condensation used as a synthetic method for ring formation.

Row: Synonymous with *period* in the periodic table.

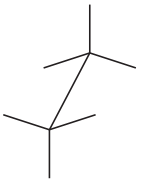
S

Sandmeyer reaction: Reaction of an aryl diazonium ion with CuCl, CuBr, or CuCN to give, respectively, an aryl chloride, aryl bromide, or aryl cyanide (nitrile).

Saponification: Hydrolysis of esters in basic solution. The products are an alcohol and a carboxylate salt. The term means "soap making" and derives from the process whereby animal fats were converted to soap by heating with wood ashes.

Saturated hydrocarbon: A hydrocarbon in which there are no multiple bonds.

Sawhorse formula: A representation of the three-dimensional arrangement of bonds in a molecule by a drawing of the type shown.



Schiemann reaction: Preparation of an aryl fluoride by heating the diazonium fluoroborate formed by addition of tetrafluoroboric acid (HBF_4) to a diazonium ion.

Schiff's base: Another name for an imine; a compound of the type $R_2C{=}NR'$.

Scientific method: A systematic approach to establishing new knowledge in which observations lead to laws, laws to theories, theories to testable hypotheses, and hypotheses to experiments.

Secondary alkyl group: Structural unit of the type $R_2CH{-}$, in which the point of attachment is to a secondary carbon.

Secondary amine: An amine with any combination of two alkyl or aryl substituents and one hydrogen on nitrogen; an amine of the type

$$RNHR' \quad \text{or} \quad RNHAr \quad \text{or} \quad ArNHAr'$$

Secondary carbon: A carbon that is directly attached to two other carbons.

Secondary structure: The conformation with respect to nearest neighbor amino acids in a peptide or protein. The α helix and the pleated β sheet are examples of protein secondary structures.

Sequence rule: Foundation of the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system. It is a procedure for ranking substituents on the basis of atomic number.

Shared-electron pair: Two electrons shared between two atoms.

Sharpless epoxidation: Epoxidation, especially enantioselective epoxidation, of an allylic alcohol by *tert*-butyl hydroperoxide in the presence of a Ti(IV) catalyst and diethyl tartrate.

β-Sheet: A type of protein secondary structure in which the C═O and N—H groups of adjacent chains, or regions of one chain, are hydrogen-bonded in a way that produces a sheet-like structure which may be flat or pleated.

Shell: The group of orbitals that have the same principal quantum number *n*.

Shielding: Effect of a molecule's electrons that decreases the strength of an external magnetic field felt by a proton or another nucleus.

Sigma (σ) bond: In valence-bond theory, a bond characterized by overlap of a half-filled orbital of one atom with a half-filled orbital of a second atom along a line connecting the two nuclei.

Sigmatropic rearrangement: Migration of a σ bond from one end of a conjugated π electron system to the other. The Claisen rearrangement is an example.

Simmons–Smith reaction: Reaction of an alkene with iodomethylzinc iodide to form a cyclopropane derivative.

Skew boat: A conformation of cyclohexane that is less stable than the chair, but slightly more stable than the boat.

Solid-phase peptide synthesis: Method for peptide synthesis in which the C-terminal amino acid is covalently attached to an inert solid support and successive amino acids are attached via peptide bond formation. At the completion of the synthesis the polypeptide is removed from the support.

Solvolysis reaction: Nucleophilic substitution in a medium in which the only nucleophiles present are the solvent and its conjugate base.

Specific rotation: Optical activity of a substance per unit concentration per unit path length:

$$[\alpha] = \frac{100\alpha}{cl}$$

where α is the observed rotation in degrees, c is the concentration in g/100 mL, and l is the path length in decimeters.

Spectrometer: Device designed to measure absorption of electromagnetic radiation by a sample.

Spectroscopy: Study of the interaction of a molecule with electromagnetic radiation so as to learn more about its structure and/or properties.

Spectrum: Output, usually in chart form, of a spectrometer. Analysis of a spectrum provides information about molecular structure.

***sp* Hybridization:** Hybridization state adopted by carbon when it bonds to two other atoms as, for example, in alkynes. The *s* orbital and one of the 2*p* orbitals mix to form two equivalent *sp*-hybridized orbitals. A linear geometry is characteristic of *sp* hybridization.

***sp*^{2} Hybridization:** A model to describe the bonding of a carbon attached to three other atoms or groups. The carbon 2*s* orbital and the two 2*p* orbitals are combined to give a set of three equivalent sp^2 orbitals having 33.3% *s* character and 66.7% *p* character. One *p* orbital remains unhybridized. A trigonal planar geometry is characteristic of sp^2 hybridization.

***sp*^{3} Hybridization:** A model to describe the bonding of a carbon attached to four other atoms or groups. The carbon 2*s* orbital and the three 2*p* orbitals are combined to give a set of four equivalent orbitals having 25% *s* character and 75% *p* character. These orbitals are directed toward the corners of a tetrahedron.

Spin: Synonymous with *spin quantum number*.

Spin density: A measure of the unpaired electron distribution at the various atoms in a molecule.

Spin quantum number: One of the four quantum numbers that describe an electron. An electron may have either of two different spin quantum numbers, $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$.

Spin–spin coupling: The communication of nuclear spin information between two nuclei.

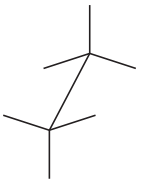
Spin–spin splitting: The splitting of NMR signals caused by the coupling of nuclear spins. Only nonequivalent nuclei (such as protons with different chemical shifts) can split one another's signals.

Spiro compound: A compound in which a single carbon is common to two rings.

Spontaneous reaction: Among several definitions, the one most relevant to the material in this text defines a spontaneous reaction as one that proceeds with a decrease in free energy ($\Delta G < 0$). The "official" definition is that a spontaneous process is one in which the entropy of the universe increases.

Squalene: A naturally occurring triterpene from which steroids are biosynthesized.

Staggered conformation: Conformation of the type shown, in which the bonds on adjacent carbons are as far away from one another as possible.



Standard amino acids: The 20 α-amino acids normally present in proteins.

Standard free-energy change ($\Delta G°$): The free-energy change ΔG for a reaction occurring under standard state conditions. The standard state is the state (solid, liquid, or gas) of a substance at a pressure of 1 atm. The standard state for a solution is 1 M.

Standard free-energy change ($\Delta G°'$): The value of $\Delta G°$ at pH=7.

Standard heat of formation: The enthalpy change for formation of one mole of a compound from its elements with all in their standard states.

Step-growth polymerization: Polymerization by a process in which monomers are first consumed in oligomer formation followed by subsequent reaction between oligomers to form macromolecules.

Stereochemistry: Chemistry in three dimensions; the relationship of physical and chemical properties to the spatial arrangement of the atoms in a molecule.

Stereoelectronic effect: An electronic effect that depends on the spatial arrangement between the orbitals of the electron donor and acceptor.

Stereoisomers: Isomers with the same constitution but that differ in respect to the arrangement of their atoms in space. Stereoisomers may be either *enantiomers* or *diastereomers.*

Stereoregular polymer: Polymer containing chirality centers according to a regular repeating pattern. Syndiotactic and isotactic polymers are stereoregular.

Stereoselective reaction: Reaction in which a single starting material has the capacity to form two or more stereoisomeric products but forms one of them in greater amounts than any of its stereoisomers. Terms such as "addition to the less hindered side" describe stereoselectivity.

Stereospecific reaction: Reaction in which stereoisomeric starting materials give stereoisomeric products. Terms such as *syn addition, anti elimination,* and *inversion of configuration* describe stereospecific reactions.

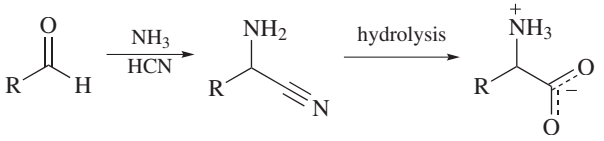
Steric hindrance: An effect on structure or reactivity that depends on van der Waals repulsive forces.

Steric strain: Destabilization of a molecule as a result of van der Waals repulsion, distorted bond distances, bond angles, or torsion angles.

Steroid: Type of lipid present in both plants and animals characterized by a nucleus of four fused rings (three are six-membered, one is five-membered). Cholesterol is the most abundant steroid in animals.

Strain energy: Excess energy possessed by a species because of van der Waals repulsion, distorted bond lengths, bond angles, or torsion angles.

Strecker synthesis: Method for preparing amino acids in which the first step is reaction of an aldehyde with ammonia and hydrogen cyanide to give an amino nitrile, which is then hydrolyzed.



Stretching vibration: A regular, repetitive motion of two atoms or groups along the bond that connects them.

Structural isomer: Synonymous with *constitutional isomer.*

Structure: The sequence of connections that defines a molecule, including the spatial orientation of these connections.

Substitution: The replacement of an atom or group in a molecule by a different atom or group.

Substitution nucleophilic bimolecular (S_N2) mechanism: Concerted mechanism for nucleophilic substitution in which the nucleophile attacks carbon from the side opposite the bond to the leaving group and assists the departure of the leaving group.

Substitution nucleophilic unimolecular (S_N1) mechanism: Mechanism for nucleophilic substitution characterized by a two-step process. The first step is rate-determining and is the ionization of an alkyl halide to a carbocation and a halide ion.

Substitutive nomenclature: Type of IUPAC nomenclature in which a substance is identified by a name ending in a suffix characteristic of the type of compound. 2-Methylbutanol, 3-pentanone, and 2-phenylpropanoic acid are examples of substitutive names.

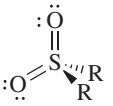
Sucrose: A disaccharide of glucose and fructose in which the two monosaccharides are joined at their anomeric positions.

Sulfide: A compound of the type RSR′. Sulfides are the sulfur analogs of ethers.

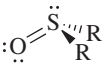
Sulfonation: Replacement of a hydrogen by an $—SO_3H$ group. The term is usually used in connection with electrophilic aromatic substitution.

$$Ar—H \xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{SO_3} Ar—SO_3H$$

Sulfone: Compound of the type



Sulfoxide: Compound of the type



Supercoil: Coiled DNA helices.

Symmetry-allowed reaction: Concerted reaction in which the orbitals involved overlap in phase at all stages of the process.

Symmetry-forbidden reaction: Concerted reaction in which the orbitals involved do not overlap in phase at all stages of the process.

Syn addition: Addition reaction in which the two portions of the reagent that add to a multiple bond add from the same side.

Syndiotactic polymer: Stereoregular polymer in which the configuration of successive chirality centers alternates along the chain.

Synthon: A structural unit in a molecule that is related to a synthetic operation.

Systematic names: Names for chemical compounds that are developed on the basis of a prescribed set of rules. Usually the IUPAC system is meant when the term *systematic nomenclature* is used.

T

Tautomerism: Process by which two isomers are interconverted by the movement of an atom or a group. Enolization is a form of tautomerism.

Tautomers: Constitutional isomers that interconvert by migration of an atom or group.

Terminal alkyne: Alkyne of the type RC≡CH, in which the triple bond appears at the end of the chain.

Termination steps: Reactions that halt a chain reaction. In a free-radical chain reaction, termination steps consume free radicals without generating new radicals to continue the chain.

Terpenes: Compounds that can be analyzed as clusters of isoprene units. Terpenes with 10 carbons are classified as monoterpenes, those with 15 are sesquiterpenes, those with 20 are diterpenes, and those with 30 are triterpenes.

Tertiary alkyl group: Structural unit of the type $R_3C—$, in which the point of attachment is to a tertiary carbon.

Tertiary amine: Amine of the type R_3N with any combination of three alkyl or aryl substituents on nitrogen.

Tertiary carbon: A carbon that is directly attached to three other carbons.

Tertiary structure: A description of how a protein chain is folded.

Tesla: SI unit for magnetic field strength.

Tetrahedral angle: The angle between one line directed from the center of a tetrahedron to a vertex and a second line from the center to a different vertex. This angle is 109° 28′.

Tetrahedral intermediate: The key intermediate in nucleophilic acyl substitution. Formed by nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group of a carboxylic acid derivative.

Tetramethylsilane (TMS): The molecule $(CH_3)_4Si$, used as a standard to calibrate proton and carbon-13 NMR spectra.

Tetrapeptide: A compound composed of four α-amino acids connected by peptide bonds.

Tetrasubstituted alkene: Alkene of the type $R_2C{=}CR_2$, in which there are four carbons *directly* bonded to the carbons of the double bond. (The R groups may be the same or different.)

Tetrose: A carbohydrate with four carbon atoms.

Thermodynamically controlled reaction: Reaction in which the reaction conditions permit two or more products to equilibrate, giving a predominance of the most stable product.

Thermoplastic polymer: A polymer that softens or melts when heated.

Thermoset: The cross-linked product formed by heating a thermoplastic polymer.

Thermosetting polymer: A polymer that solidifies ("cures") when heated.

Thiol: Compound of the type RSH or ArSH.

Three-bond coupling: Synonymous with *vicinal coupling.*

Threo: Term applied to the relative configuration of two chirality centers within a molecule. The threo stereoisomer has like substituents on opposite sides of a Fischer projection.

Torsional strain: Decreased stability of a molecule associated with eclipsed bonds.

***trans*-:** Stereochemical prefix indicating that two substituents are on opposite sides of a ring or a double bond. (Contrast with the prefix *cis*-.)

Transamination: The transfer (usually biochemical) of an amino group from one compound to another.

Transcription: Construction of a strand of mRNA complementary to a DNA template.

Transfer RNA (tRNA): A polynucleotide of ribose that is bound at one end to a unique amino acid. This amino acid is incorporated into a growing peptide chain.

Transition state: The point of maximum energy in an elementary step of a reaction mechanism.

Translation: The "reading" of mRNA by various tRNAs, each one of which is unique for a particular amino acid.

Triacylglycerol: A derivative of glycerol (1,2,3-propanetriol) in which the three oxygens bear acyl groups derived from fatty acids.

Tripeptide: A compound in which three α-amino acids are linked by peptide bonds.

Triple bond: Bond formed by the sharing of six electrons between two atoms.

Trisubstituted alkene: Alkene of the type $R_2C{=}CHR$, in which there are three carbons *directly* bonded to the carbons of the double bond. (The R groups may be the same or different.)

Trivial nomenclature: Term synonymous with *common nomenclature.*

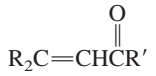
Twist boat: Synonymous with *skew boat.*

U

Ultraviolet-visible (UV-VIS) spectroscopy: Analytical method based on transitions between electronic energy states in molecules. Useful in studying conjugated systems such as polyenes.

Unimolecular: Describing a step in a reaction mechanism in which only one particle undergoes a chemical change at the transition state.

α, β-Unsaturated aldehyde or ketone: Aldehyde or ketone that bears a double bond between its α and β carbons as in



Unsaturated hydrocarbon: A hydrocarbon that can undergo addition reactions; that is, one that contains multiple bonds.

Unshared pair: In a Lewis structure, two valence electrons of an atom that are in the same orbital and not shared with any other atom.

Upfield: The high-field region of an NMR spectrum. A signal that is upfield with respect to another lies to its right on the spectrum.

Uronic acids: Carbohydrates that have an aldehyde function at one end of their carbon chain and a carboxylic acid group at the other.

V

Valence bond theory: Theory of chemical bonding based on overlap of half-filled atomic orbitals between two atoms. Orbital hybridization is an important element of valence bond theory.

Valence electrons: The outermost electrons of an atom. For second-row elements these are the 2*s* and 2*p* electrons.

Valence shell: The group of orbitals, filled and unfilled, responsible for the characteristic chemical properties of an atom.

Valence shell electron-pair repulsion (VSEPR) model: Method for predicting the shape of a molecule based on the notion that electron pairs surrounding a central atom repel one another. Four electron pairs will arrange themselves in a tetrahedral geometry, three will assume a trigonal planar geometry, and two electron pairs will adopt a linear arrangement.

Van der Waals forces: Intermolecular forces that do not involve ions (dipole–dipole, dipole/induced-dipole, and induced-dipole/induced-dipole forces).

Van der Waals radius: A measure of the effective size of an atom or a group. The repulsive force between two atoms increases rapidly when they approach each other at distances less than the sum of their van der Waals radii.

Van der Waals strain: Destabilization that results when two atoms or groups approach each other too closely. Also known as van der Waals repulsion.

Vicinal: Describing two atoms or groups attached to adjacent atoms.

Vicinal coupling: Coupling of the nuclear spins of atoms X and Y on adjacent atoms as in X—A—B—Y. Vicinal coupling is the most common cause of spin–spin splitting in ^{1}H NMR spectroscopy.

Vicinal dihalide: A compound containing two halogens on adjacent carbons.

Vicinal diol: Compound that has two hydroxyl (—OH) groups on adjacent sp^3-hybridized carbons.

Vicinal halohydrin: A compound containing a halogen and a hydroxyl group on adjacent carbons.

Vinyl group: The group $H_2C{=}CH—$.

Vinylic carbon: A carbon that is doubly bonded to another carbon. Atoms or groups attached to a vinylic carbon are termed *vinylic substituents.*

W

Wave functions: The solutions to arithmetic expressions that express the energy of an electron in an atom.

Wavelength: Distance between two successive maxima (peaks) or two successive minima (troughs) of a wave.

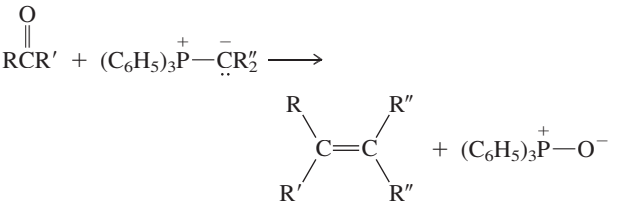
Wavenumbers: Conventional units in infrared spectroscopy that are proportional to frequency. Wavenumbers are cited in reciprocal centimeters (cm^{-1}).

Wax: A mixture of water-repellent substances that form a protective coating on the leaves of plants, the fur of animals, and the feathers of birds, among other things. A principal component of a wax is often an ester in which both the acyl portion and the alkyl portion are characterized by long carbon chains.

Williamson ether synthesis: Method for the preparation of ethers involving an S_N2 reaction between an alkoxide ion and a primary alkyl halide:

$$RONa + R'CH_2Br \longrightarrow R'CH_2OR + NaBr$$

Wittig reaction: Method for the synthesis of alkenes by the reaction of an aldehyde or a ketone with a phosphorus ylide.



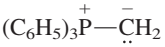
Wittig reagents: Name given to the phosphorus ylides used in the Wittig reaction.

Wolff–Kishner reduction: Method for reducing the carbonyl group of aldehydes and ketones to a methylene group ($C{=}O \rightarrow CH_2$) by treatment with hydrazine (H_2NNH_2) and base (KOH) in a high-boiling alcohol solvent.

Wood alcohol: A common name for methanol, CH_3OH.

Y

Ylide: A neutral molecule in which two oppositely charged atoms, each with an octet of electrons, are directly bonded to each other. The compound



is an example of an ylide.

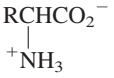
Z

***Z*-:** Stereochemical descriptor used when higher ranked substituents are on the same side of a double bond.

Zaitsev's rule: When two or more alkenes are capable of being formed by an elimination reaction, the one with the more highly substituted double bond (the more stable alkene) is the major product.

Zusammen: See *Z*-.

Zwitterion: The form in which neutral amino acids actually exist. The amino group is in its protonated form and the carboxyl group is present as a carboxylate



This page intentionally left blank

Credits

Photographs

Chapter 1
Opener: © Richard Brady/Icon SMI/Corbis; p. 3 (left), p. 3 (top right): © David Tietz/Editorial Image, LLC; p. 3 (bottom right): © Alliance Images/Alamy.

Chapter 2
Opener: © Jurgen Freund/NPL/Minden Pictures; Fig 2.9: USGS; Fig 2.19: © Mark Jones; Fig 2.21: © Werner Blessing/StockFood Creative/Getty Images.

Chapter 3
Opener: © William Whitehurst/Corbis; p. 107: © evirgen/iStock.com; Fig 3.21: © Paul Truong/The Vetiver Network.

Chapter 4
Opener: © 07_av/iStockphoto.

Chapter 5
Opener: © Alexander Safonov/Getty Images; p. 181 (olives): © Corbis; p. 181 (cinnamon): © Photodisc Green/Getty Images.

Chapter 6
Opener: © FoodCollection/Index Stock; p. 239: © Photo by Scott Bauer/USDA.

Chapter 7
Opener: © Tom Grill/Corbis; p. 265: © Pixtal/SuperStock; p. 275 (spearmint): © DAJ/Getty Images; p. 275 (caraway): © The McGraw-Hill Companies/Elite Images; p. 292: © Russell Illig/Photodisc/Getty Images.

Chapter 8
Opener: © Oredia/Alamy; Fig 8.4.

Chapter 9
Opener: © MedioImages/SuperStock.

Chapter 10
Opener: © Brand X Pictures/PunchStock.

Chapter 11
Opener: © Joel Schumacher Productions/The Kobal Collection/Art Resource; p. 432: © Photodisc Blue/Getty Images.

Chapter 13
Opener: © iStock.com.

Chapter 14
Opener: © James Steidl/SuperFusion/SuperStock.

Chapter 15
Opener: © Fuse/Getty Images; 15.1 (all): © iStock.com.

Chapter 16
Opener: USDA.

Chapter 17
Opener: © NHPA/SuperStock; p. 702: © iStock.com; 17.6: © William Weber/Visuals Unlimited.

Chapter 18
Opener: © Robert Atkins; 18.6 (beetle): © Kirk J. Larsen, Luther College Biology; 18.6 (gingko seeds): © Blickwinkel/Alamy; 18.6 (vinegar): © Corbis; 18.6 (fruits and vegetables): © Photodisc/Getty Images; 18.6 (ants): © Digital Vision/Getty Images.

Chapter 19
Opener: © Don Farrall/Getty Images; Fig 19.3: © Mary Evans Picture Library/Alamy.

Chapter 20
Opener: © Foodcollection; p. 832: © Forest & Kim Starr; p. 841: © Steven Pinker.

Chapter 21
Opener: © Keystone/Getty Images.

Chapter 22
Opener: USDA; Fig 22.1: © Steven Dewey/Utah State University; p. 923: © Bob Penn/Sygma/Corbis.

Chapter 23
Opener: © Daniel Dempster Photography/Alamy; 23.7: © Andrew J. Martinez/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Chapter 24
Opener: © Royalty-Free/Corbis; p. 996: © Philippe Colombi/Getty Images; p. 999: © Steve Horrell/Photo Researchers; p. 1002: © DAJ/Getty Images; p. 1005: © USDA photo by J.S. Peterson; p. 1019: © Medioimages/PunchStock; p. 1020: © David Liebman.

Chapter 25
Opener: © Ingram Publishing.

Chapter 26
Opener: © Robert Giuliano; p. 1087: © Corbis; p. 1095 (both): Courtesy of Villanova University; Fig 26.2: © A. Barrington Brown/Science Source/Photo Researchers; p. 1097: © NLM/Science Source/Photo Researchers; p. 1097 (inset): © Science Source/Photo Researchers.

Chapter 27
Opener: © DIPAG; Fig 27.1: © Phil Nelson; Fig 27.3: U.S. Air Force photo by Tech. Sgt. Jim Varthegyi; Fig 27.7: © Jump Run Productions/Riser/Getty Images; Fig 27.8: © Bettmann/Corbis; Fig 27.9: © Corbis; Fig 27.10, Fig 27.11: © Getty Images; p. 1145 (top): AP Photo/Jae C. Hong; p. 1145 (bottom): Courtesy of Nokia.

Line Art

Chapter 1
Figure 1.7 Adapted from coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank. PDB ID: 2KJJ. Hua, Q.X., Weiss, M.A., Dynamics of Insulin Probed by 1H NMR. Amide Proton Exchange. Anomalous Flexibility of the Receptor-Binding Surface.

Chapter 8
Figure 8.4 8.4: is adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank. PDB ID: 1EDB. Verschueren, K.H.G., Kingma, J., Rozeboom, H.J., Kalk, K.H., Janssen, D.B., Dijkstra, B.W.D., Crystallographic and Fluorescence Studies of the Interaction of Haloalkane Dehalogenase with Halide Ions: Studies with Halide Cmpounds Reveal a Halide Binding Site in the Active Site.

Chapter 11
Figure 11.6 Generated using crystallographic coordinates obtained from the Crystal Lattice Structures Web page, http://cst-www.nrl.navy.mil/lattice/, provided by the Center for Computational Materials Science of the United States Naval Research Laboratory.
Figure 11.7 Courtesy of Dmitry Kazachkin, Ph.D.
Figure 11.8 Courtesy of Dmitry Kazachkin, Ph.D.
Figure 11.9 Courtesy of Dmitry Kazachkin, Ph.D.

Chapter 13
Figure 13.1 From M. Silberberg, *Chemistry*, 5th ed., p. 257, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2009.
Figure 13.33 Courtesy of Professor Craig Merlic, UCLA.
Figure 13.33 Courtesy of Professor Bradley D. Smith, Department of Chemistry & Biochemistry, University of Notre Dame.
Figure 13.40 Adapted, with permission, from M. Silberberg, *Chemistry*, 5th ed., p. 55, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2009.

Chapter 14
Figure 14.1 From M. Silberberg, *Chemistry*, 6th ed., p. 349, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2012.

Chapter 16
Figure 16.3 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with The Cambridge Crystallographic Data Centre, CCDC ID: NAMNSB. Duax, W.L., Smith, G.D., Strong, P.D. *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, 1980, 102, 6725.

Chapter 23
Figure 23.9 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank. PDB ID: 4TF4. Sakon, J., Irwin, D. Wilson, D.B., Karplus, P., Structure and Mechanism of Endo/Exocellulase E4 from Thermomonospora Fusca.

Figure 23.10 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank. PDB ID 1C58, Gessler, K., Uson, I., Takahan, T., Krauss, N., Smith, S.M., Okada, G.M., Sheldrick, G.M., Saenger, W., V-Amylose at Atomic Resolution: X-ray Structure of a Cycloamylose with 26 Glucose Residues (Cycloamaltohexaicosaose). *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA,* 1999, 4246.

Chapter 24

Figure 24.3 The simulation is based on the coordinates of H. Heller, M. Schaefer, and K. Schulten, Molecular Dynamics Simulation of a Bilayer of 200 Lipids in the Gel and in the Liquid-Crystal Phases, *Journal of Physical Chemistry, 97,* 8343-8360 (1993) and taken from an interactive animated tutorial by E. Martz and A. Herraez, "Lipid Bilayers and the Gramicidin Channel" (http://molvis.sds.edu/bilayers/index.htm (2001) by courtesy of Professor Martz.

Figure 24.4 From Denniston, Topping, & Caret, *General, Organic, and Biochemistry*, 7th ed., p. 591, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011.

Chapter 25

Figure 25.13 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Proten Data Bank PDB ID: 2SK, Fossey, S.A., Nemethy, G. Gibson, K.D., Scheraga, H.A. Conformational Energy Studies of Beta-Sheets of Model Silk Fibroin Peptides. I. Sheets of Poly (Ala-Gly) Chains. *Biopolymers* 31, 1529 (1991).

Figure 25.15 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank, PDB ID: 1A5P, Pearson, M.A., Karplus, P.A., Dodge, R.W., Laity, J.H., Scherage, H.A., Crystal Structures of Two Mutants That Have Implications for the Folding of Bovine Pancreatic Ribonuclease A.

Figure 25.16 Adapted from crystal structure of the green fluorescent protein (GFP) variant YFP-H148Q with two bound iodides. PDB ID: 1F09. Wachter, R.M., Yarbrough, D., Kallio, K., Remington, S.J. (2000) Crystallographic and energetic analysis of binding of selected anions to the yellow variants of green fluorescent protein. *J.Mol.Biol. 301: 157-171*

Figure 25.17 Adapted from T. McKee and J. McKee, *Biochemistry: The Molecular Basis of Life*, 3rd ed., p. 141. McGraw-Hill, New York, 2003.

Figure 25.18 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank. PDB ID: 2CTB. Teplyakov, A., Wilson, K. S., Orioli, P., Mangani S., The High Resolution Structure of the Complex between Carboxypeptidase A and L-Phenyl Lactate.

Figure 25.20 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank. PDB ID: 1VXH. Yang, F., Phillips Jr., G.N., Structures of Co-, Deoxy- and met-Myoglobins at Various pH values.

Figure 25.21 From Raven, Johnson, et al., *Biology*, 9th ed., pg. 172, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011.

Chapter 26

Figure 26.5 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank. PDZB ID: 1DDN. White, A., Ding, X., Vanderspek, J.C., Murphy J.R., Ringe, D., Structure for the Metal-Ion-Activated Diptheria Toxin Repressor/Tox Operator Complex. *Nature*, 394, 502 (1998).

Figure 26.7 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with The Protein Data Bank. PDB ID: 1A01. Luger, A., Mader, W. Richmond, R.K., Sargent, D.F., Richmond, T.J., Crystal Structure of the Nucleosome Core Particle at 2.8 A Resolution. *Nature*, 1997, V. 389, 251.

Figure 26.11 Adapted from crystallographic coordinates deposited with the Protein Data Bank. PDB ID: 6TNA. Sussman, J.L., Holbrook, S.R., Warrant, R.W., Church, G.M., Kim, S.H., Crystal Structure of Yeast Phenylalanine tRNA. I. Crystallographic Refinement, *J. Mol. Biol*., 126, 607. (1978).

Figure 26.14 From Presson and Jenner, *Biology: Dimensions of Life,* p. 271, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2008.

Chapter 27

Figure 27.6 From M. Silberberg, *Chemistry*, 6th ed., p. 463, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2012.

Index

A

Abscicic acid, 1007
Absolute configuration, 269–273, 271*t,* 296
Absorption maxima, alkenes and polyenes, 554*t*
Absorption of electromagnetic radiation, 512
  in infrared spectroscopy, 545
  in nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy, 512–514
  in ultraviolet-visible spectroscopy, 553–554
Acetaldehyde, 687
  bond angles, 689
  preparation
    from ethylene, 248
    by hydration of acetylene, 358–359
  reactions
    with hexylmagnesium bromide, 585
    hydration, 697
    in Strecker synthesis of D,L-alanine, 1040–1041
Acetals, 703–707, 722
  glycosides as, 965–966
  hydrolysis, 704–707
  ketals, 744
  preparation, 703–706, 722
  as protecting groups, 704–707
Acetamide, 773
Acetanilide, 876, 884
Acetic acid, 738
  acidity and pK_a, 33, 39, 740–742, 743*t,* 744
  conversion to mevalonic acid, 1008, 1011–1012
  electrostatic potential map, 739
  industrial preparation and use, 749–750
  natural occurrence, 736, 749
  natural products derived from, 992–1029
Acetic anhydride, 771, 773
  in Friedel-Crafts acylation, 468, 486–487, 497
  reactions
    with alcohols, 779, 782
    with amines, 779, 883, 884
    with glycine, 1041–1042
    with phenols, 923–925
    with salicylic acid, 925
  UV absorption, 806
Acetoacetic ester synthesis, 838
Acetoacetyl-ACP, 998
Acetoacetyl coenzyme A, 998, 1011–1012
Acetone
  bond angles, 689
  reactions
    cyanohydrin formation, 701
    hydration, 697
    reductive amination, 898
    Wittig reaction, 723
    as solvent, 308
Acetophenone, 412, 468, 689
  phenylhydrazone, 712
  reactions
    bromination, 486
    with butyllithium, 616
    chlorination, 487
    nitration, 487
Acetyl chloride, 771, 773
  reactions
    with arylamines, 883
    with *tert*-butyl alcohol, 640
    with phenol, 922
    UV absorption, 806
Acetylcholine, 102, 818, 993
Acetyl coenzyme A, 817–818, 992–994, 997
  in fatty acid biosynthesis, 997–998
  in terpene biosynthesis, 1012
N-Acetyl-D-glucosamine, 964
Acetylene, 53
  acidity and pK_a, 34, 347–348
  alkylation, 348–350, 362
  bonding in, 10, 63–64, 87, 344–347
  chemical shifts, proton, 520–521
  conversion to cyclooctatetraene, 432
  electrostatic potential map, 345
  hydration, 358–359
  as industrial chemical, 359
  preparation, 343
  structure, 63–64, 344–347
Acetylide ion, 347–348
N-Acetylneuraminic acid, 964, 982
Achiral molecules, 263, 294
  meso forms, 284–286
  symmetry elements, 266–267
Acid anhydrides
  Friedel-Crafts acylation with, 468, 486–487, 497, 693
  infrared absorption, 805–806
  nomenclature, 771
  preparation, 777
  reactions
    with alcohols, 626, 640, 779*t,* 782, 808
    with amino acids, 1041–1042
    with ammonia and amines, 779*t,* 808, 883–884
    hydrolysis, 779*t*
    with phenols, 923–925, 936
  resonance in, 774
Acid-base equilibria, 39
Acid-base properties of amino acids, 1036–1040
Acid-base reactions, 39–41, 46, 347–348, 582–583, 634, 863–865
Acid catalysis
  acetal formation and hydrolysis, 703–706
  amide hydrolysis, 796–799, 809
  dehydration of alcohols, 189–197, 208, 426
  epoxide ring opening, 673
  ester hydrolysis, 783–786, 808
  esterification, 640, 754–756, 762
  ether formation, 624–625, 655–656, 674
  glycoside formation, 965–969
  hydration of alkenes, 226–228, 250
  hydration of alkynes, 357–358, 364
  nitrile hydrolysis, 803, 809
  nucleophilic acyl substitution, 778–780, 924
  nucleophilic addition to aldehydes and ketones, 698–700, 722
Acidity
  acetylene and alkynes, 346–347, 347–348, 361–362
  alcohols, 34, 36–37
  alkanes, 347
  ammonia, 34, 348
  ammonium ions, 33, 33*t,* 863–867
  benzene, 34
  carbonic acid, 33, 748
  carboxylic acids, 740–747, 761–762
    substituent effects on, 742–745
    substitution effects on, 37
  cycloheptatriene, 439
  cyclopentadiene, 439
  dicarboxylic acids, 747
  diethyl malonate, 34
  diisopropylamine, 34
  ethane, 34, 347
  ethanol, 34, 741–742
  ethyl acetoacetate, 33
  ethylene, 34, 347
  hydrocarbons, 347
  hydrogen, 34
  hydrogen fluoride, 33
  methane, 34, 347
  phenols, 917–920, 935
  propane and propene, 381
  quantitative relationships, 741–742
  representative compounds, 33–34*t*
  structural effects on, 35–39
  substituted benzoic acids, 744–745, 745*t*
  thiols, 634–636
  water, 34, 347, 582–583
Acidity constants
  K_a and pK_a, 31–32, 45, 347–348, 740–747, 863–867, 918–919
  pK_a, 33–34*t*
Acids and bases, 30–34
Acids and bases, definitions
  Arrhenius, 30
  Brønsted-Lowry, 30–31, 45–46
  Lewis, 41–42, 45–46

Aconitic acid, 302, 766
Acrolein, 391
Acrylic acid, 738, 744
Acrylonitrile, 247, 248, 359, 1123–1124
Activated complex, 100
Active ester, 1061–1063
Acyclovir, 1088
Acyl carrier protein, 997–998
Acyl cations, 467–469
Acyl chlorides
  infrared absorption frequency, 805–806
  nomenclature, 771
  preparation, 468, 777–778
  reactions, 776–779, 807–808
    with alcohols, 625–627, 640, 777, 782
    with ammonia and amines, 777, 795, 807–808, 880, 883
    with carboxylic acids, 777*t*
    Friedel-Crafts acylation, 467–470, 497, 922
    with phenols, 924
    with water, 777
  resonance in, 773–774
Acyl group, 686, 771
Acyl halides, 771
Adamantane, 119
Addition-elimination mechanism of nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 492–495, 499
Addition polymers, 1124–1126, 1131–1132
Addition reactions
  1,2 addition versus 1,4 addition, 389–390, 398
  anti addition, 236, 238, 250–251, 288–290, 359
  Diels-Alder cycloaddition, 391–396, 398
  electrophilic, 378
    to alkenes, 221–239, 239–242, 250–251*t,* 288–290
    to alkenylbenzenes, 426–427, 447
    to alkynes, 354–359, 364*t*
    to conjugated dienes, 388–390
  free-radical, to alkenes, 242–244, 245, 250–251
  hydrogenation
    alkenes, 216–217, 250, 289
    alkenylbenzenes, 426–427
    alkynes, 352–353, 363
    dienes, 382
  and Markovnikov's rule
    alkenes, 221–224, 250
    alkynes, 356–357, 358, 364
  nucleophilic, to aldehydes and ketones, 695–718
  syn addition, 232, 240, 250–251, 288, 290, 352
Ad_E3 mechanism, 356
Adenine, 441, 1084, 1087, 1095
Adenosine, 965–966, 1089
Adenosine 3′-5′-cyclic monophosphate (cyclic AMP), 1091
Adenosine 5′-diphosphate, 1090
Adenosine triphosphate, 23
Adenosine 5′-triphosphate (ATP), 1090, 1113
  as an energy source, 1092–1093
  reaction with methionine, 669–670
Adrenaline, 276, 669–670
AIDS, 1001, 1105–1106, 1111
Alanine, 1031
  biosynthesis, 1047–1048
  electrophoresis, 1039
  ethyl ester, 1041–1042
  isoelectric point, 1038
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
  synthesis, 1040–1041
β-Alanine, 1031
Alanyglycine, 1049
Alcohols
  acidity, 34, 36–37, 741–742, 917
  bonding, 136–137
  as Brønsted bases, 144
  classification, 168
  classification, 136
  dehydration, 189
  in Friedel-Crafts reactions, 922
  hydrogen bonding in, 137–141, 168
  hydrogen-deuterium exchange in, 534
  infrared spectra, 550, 552
  mass spectra, 638
  naturally occurring, 615
  nomenclature, 135–136, 167, 177
  nuclear magnetic resonance spectra
    carbon, 638
    proton, 534, 638
  physical properties, 137–141, 168
  preparation of
    from epoxides, 620–621, 662–663, 665
    from Grignard reagents, 583–587, 616, 638
    by hydration of alkenes, 226–228, 250, 616
    by hydroboration-oxidation, 231–232, 250, 616
    by hydrolysis of alkyl halides, 616
    from organolithium reagents, 586–587, 616
    by oxymercuration, 258–261
    by reduction of carbonyl compounds, 614–620, 783
  reactions, 640*t*
    with acid anhydrides, 626, 640, 779
    with acyl chlorides, 625–627, 640, 777
    with aldehydes and ketones, 703–707
    conversion to ethers, 640, 655–656, 674
    dehydration, 189–197, 208, 386, 426
    esterification, 625–627, 640, 754–756, 782
    with hydrogen halides, 141–154, 333
    with inorganic acids, 640
    oxidation, 627–632, 641*t*
    with phosphorus tribromide, 155, 169
    with thionyl chloride, 155, 169
    with *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride, 329, 333
  solubility in water, 140
Aldaric acids, 976–977
Aldehydes
  infrared spectra, 550, 718–719
  mass spectra, 720
  naturally occurring, 692
  nomenclature, 687, 721
  nuclear magnetic resonance spectra, 537–538, 719–721
  nucleophilic addition to, 696–718
  physical properties, 691
  preparation of
    hydroformylation of alkenes, 695
    oxidation of primary alcohols, 627–628, 641, 692, 693
    ozonolysis of alkenes, 241–242, 693
  reactions
    acetal formation, 703–707, 722
    with amines, 707–714, 722, 880
    cyanohydrin formation, 700–704, 722
    with derivatives of ammonia, 712*t*
    with Grignard reagents, 585*t,* 695
    hydration, 696–700, 722
    hydrogenation, 695
    with organolithium reagents, 586–587, 695
    oxidation, 718, 724
    reduction, 695
    with Wittig reagents, 714–716, 723
  in reductive amination, 878–879, 898
  in Strecker synthesis of amino acids, 1040–1041
  structure and bonding, 689–691, 722
Alder, Kurt, 391
Alder rule, 394
Aldohexose, 287, 950–952
Aldol addition, 828
Aldol reactions, 831–833
Aldonic acids, 976–977
Aldopentose, 950–952
Aldoses, 947–948, 983
  Fischer projection formulas, 951
Aldotetrose, 948–950
Alicyclic hydrocarbons, 75
Aliphatic hydrocarbon, definition, 53, 407
Alizarin, 932
Alkadienes, 381–391
  ultraviolet-visible spectra, 553–555
Alkaloids, 868–869
Alkanes, 52–95
  acidity, 347
  chiral, 265
  conformations, 97–104, 123
  heat of combustion, 81*t,* 87
  infrared spectra, 547–549
  IUPAC names of unbranched, 69*t*
  mass spectra, 558
  nomenclature, 68–72
  physical properties, 77–80
  preparation of
    hydrogenation of alkenes, 216–217
    hydrogenation of alkynes, 352
  reactions
    combustion, 80–83
    dehydrogenation, 179, 188–189
    halogenation, 156, 161–167, 175, 176, 177
  relative stability of isomers, 82
  sources, 76–77
Alkenes, 53, 176–267
  acidity, 347
  bonding in, 178–180, 207
  cycloalkenes, 178, 187–188, 208
  as dienophiles, 391

electrophilic addition to, 221–239, 239–242, 250–251*t,* 288–290
E-Z notation, 181–183, 207
free-radical addition to, 242–244, 245, 250–251
in Friedel-Crafts reactions, 467
heats of combustion, 184–185
heats of hydrogenation, 220*t*
infrared spectra, 547–549, 552
isomers, 180–189, 207
relative stabilities, 184–188, 207
naturally occurring, 179
nomenclature, 176–178, 207
physical properties, 183–184
preparation, 179, 188–206, 209*t,* 426
from alkynes, 352–354, 363
dehydration of alcohols, 189–197, 208, 426
dehydrogenation of alkanes, 179, 188–189, 426
dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides, 217–218, 426
Hofmann elimination, 881–883, 899
Wittig reaction, 714–716, 723
reactions, 216
allylic halogenation, 377–380, 397
Diels-Alder reaction, 391–396
dihydroxylation, 622, 666
epoxidation, 239–240, 250–251, 279–280, 660–661, 674
halogen addition, 234–238, 250–251
halohydrin formation, 238, 250–251
homogeneous catalytic hydrogenation, 597–600
hydration, 226–228, 250
hydroboration-oxidation, 231–234, 250
hydroformylation, 695
hydrogenation, 216–217, 250, 289, 597–600
with hydrogen halides, 221–226, 242–244, 250, 279–280, 426–427
with iodomethylzinc iodide, 588
metathesis, 600–605
oxymercuration, 258–261
ozonolysis, 241–242, 251, 693
polymerization, 252, 293, 428, 603–604, 1131–1132
with sulfuric acid, 250
stereoisomerism in, 180–181, 207
Alkenylbenzenes, 426–427
Alkenylboranes, 366–367
Alkenyl cations, 356
Alkenyl groups, 177
Alkenyl halides, 307
Alkenyl radical, 354
Alkoxide ions
as nucleophiles, 309, 316, 657–659, 674
substitution versus elimination in reactions with alkyl halides, 326–329, 334, 657–659
Alkyd resins, 1140
Alkylation
acetylene and alkynes, 348–350, 362
ammonia, 872–874
Friedel-Crafts, 457, 465–467, 497–498
Alkyl azides
preparation, 308, 327, 871
reduction, 874–875, 897
Alkylbenzenes
free-radical halogenation, 422–423, 446
infrared spectra, 547–549
mass spectra, 558–559
oxidation, 424–426, 447
preparation, 457, 465–467, 469, 497
Alkyl fluorides, 654–655
Alkyl groups, 72–75
classification and nomenclature, 73–75, 89*t*
splitting patterns in ^{1}H magnetic resonance spectra, 528–530
stabilizing effect in
aldehydes and ketones, 691, 697
alkenes, 184–185, 208
alkynes, 352
carbocations, 149–152, 168
free radicals, 157–161
steric hindrance to nucleophilic substitution by, 313–315
Alkyl halides
bonding in, 136–137
classification, 136
in Friedel-Crafts alkylation reactions, 457, 465–467, 497
in Gabriel synthesis of amines, 873–874, 897
nomenclature, 134–135, 167
nucleophilic substitution in, 306–329, 334*t,* 348–350, 362, 657–659
crown-ether catalysis, 673
phase-transfer catalysis, 869–870
physical properties, 137–141
preparation, 169*t*
from alcohols, 141–155, 169*t*
from alkanes, 156, 161–167, 169*t*
from alkenes, 222–224, 242–244
reactions
with alkynide ions, 348–350, 362
with amines, 881, 898
with ammonia, 872–874, 897
dehydrohalogenation, 197–206, 209, 219, 426
with magnesium, 581–582
with sodium azide, 309, 324*t,* 327, 871
with triphenylphosphine, 715
with typical nucleophiles, 307–308*t*
in Williamson ether synthesis, 657–659, 674, 926
solubility in water, 140
Alkyl hydrogen sulfates, 250
Alkyl hydroperoxides, 659
Alkyl iodides
nucleophilic substitution in, 309, 334
preparation, 308
Alkyloxonium ions, 144, 226
in dehydration of alcohols, 206
in ether cleavage, 660
in reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides, 144–146, 169
in solvolysis reactions, 315–316, 318
Alkynes, 53, 342–369
acidity, 347–348, 361
bonding in, 344–347, 361
chemical shifts
carbon, 517
proton, 520–521
cyclic, 345
as dienophiles, 391
infrared spectra, 552
naturally occurring, 343–344
nomenclature, 344
physical properties, 344
preparation, 348–351, 362*t*
reactions, 352–360, 363–364*t*
alkylation, 348–350, 362, 707
halogen addition to, 358–359, 364
hydration, 357–358, 364, 693
hydrogenation, 352–354, 363
hydrogen halide addition to, 354–357, 364
metal-ammonia reduction, 354, 363
ozonolysis, 359–360
structure, 344–347
Allene(s), 382, 383, 385–386, 397
D-Alloisoleucine, 1036
D-Allose, 951
Allyl, 396
alcohol, 371
anion, 380–381
bromide, 927
chloride, 371
group, 177, 371–373
radical, 377–380
Allylamine, 371
Allylic
alcohols, epoxidation, 660–661
anions, 370, 380–381
carbocations, 370, 372, 389–390, 396
carbon, 371
free radicals, 370, 377–380, 396
halides, nucleophilic substitution in, 374–377
halogenation, 377–380, 397
hydrogens, 377–380
rearrangement, 376, 396–397
Allyl phenyl ether
Claisen rearrangement, 931–932
preparation, 927
Altman, Sidney, 1104
D-Altrose, 951
Aluminum chloride
catalyst for Friedel-Crafts reaction, 457, 465–469, 497, 693
catalyst for Fries rearrangement, 925
Amide ion
as base, 348–351, 586
in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 507
Amides, 551, 805–806
acidity and pK_a, 793
infrared spectra, 552
as intermediates in hydrolysis of nitriles, 803–804
intermolecular forces, 793*t*
mass spectrometry, 807
nomenclature, 771–772
physical properties, 792–793
preparation, 777, 779, 783, 790–791, 794–796, 808, 872, 884
reactions
dehydration, 802–803
hydrolysis, 796–800, 883–884
reduction, 898
resonance in, 774–775, 793
rotational energy barrier, 774
structure, 774–775

Amines, 858–913
  basicity, 863–867, 864*t,* 894–895
  classification, 858–859
  infrared spectra, 551, 552, 894–895
  mass spectra, 894–895
  naturally occurring, 868–869
  nomenclature, 858–860, 894–895
  nuclear magnetic resonance spectra
    carbon, 894–895
    proton, 894–895
  physical properties, 862–863
  preparation, 870–879, 897–898
    alkylation of ammonia, 872–874, 897
    Gabriel synthesis, 873–874, 897
    reduction of nitrogen-containing compounds, 874–879, 897–898
    reductive amination, 878–879, 898
  pyramidal inversion in, 294
  reactions, 879–893, 898–901
    with acid anhydrides, 779, 808, 884
    with acyl chlorides, 777, 807, 880, 883
    with aldehydes and ketones, 707–714, 722, 880
    with alkyl halides, 881, 898
    electrophilic aromatic substitution in arylamines, 899
    with esters, 790–791, 795
    Hofmann elimination, 881–883, 899
    nitrosation, 885–887, 899
  structure and bonding, 860–862, 894–895
Amino acids
  acid base properties, 1036–1040
  analysis, 1039, 1052–1053
  classification, 1031–1035
  in enantioselective synthesis, 1081–1083
  preparation, 1040–1041
  racemization, 1036
  reactions, 682–685, 710, 1041–1049
  side chains, 1031–1035, 1037*t*
  standard, 1031, 1032–1033*t*
  stereochemistry, 1035–1036, 1076
  zwitterionic structure, 1036–1037, 1076
p-Aminobenzoic acid, 885, 892
γ-Aminobutyric acid, 1031
1-Aminocyclopropanecarboxylic acid, in ethylene biosynthesis, 179, 1031
Amino sugars, 964–965
Ammonia
  acidity and pK_a, 37, 348
  boiling point, 138
  bond angles, 26
  reactions
    with alkyl halides, 872–874, 897
    with epoxides, 663, 871
    with esters, 790–791
    with α-halo carboxylic acids, 871, 1040
  in reductive amination, 878–879, 898
  as solvent, 349, 354
  VSEPR and molecular geometry, 24t
Ammonium ion, 15, 860
Ammonium salts
  nomenclature, 860
Amphiphilic, 746
Amphoteric, 1036
Amygdalin, 702
Amylopectin, 971–973
Amylose, 971
Analysis
  amino acid, 1052–1053
  amino acid racemization, 1036
  retrosynthetic, 606
  spectroscopy, 510–577
Anandamide, 997
Androgens, 1018
Angle strain, 103–104, 123
  [10]annulene, 435–436
  cycloalkanes, 104–105, 124–125
  cycloalkynes, 345
  cyclopropene, 187
  epoxides, 652, 662
Angstrom unit, 19
Aniline, 412
  basicity, 864–865
  electrostatic potential map, 861
  isolation, 859
  reactions
    acylation, 883–884
    bromination, 479–480
    diazotization, 887–888
  in reductive amination, 877
  resonance in, 862
  structure and bonding, 860–862
Anionic polymerization, 1135–1137, 1142, 1146
Anion radical intermediates
  Birch reduction, 429–430
  metal-ammonia reduction of alkynes, 354
  reaction of alkyl halides with metals, 582
Anions, 6
Anisole, 412
  bromination, 478
  ^{13}C chemical shifts, 934
  Friedel-Crafts acylation, 497, 693
  preparation, 926
Annulenes, 435–436, 445
  aromatic and antiaromatic ring currents in, 522
Anomeric carbon, 952
Anomeric effect, 960–962
Anthracene, 414–415, 418, 444
Anthrax, detecting, 981
Antiaromaticity, 433, 435, 522
Antibiotics
  anthracycline, 941
  carbohydrate components, 964
  enediyne, 343–344
  β-lactam, 800–801
  macrolide, 757
  nucleoside, 1088
  polyether, 656
  sulfa drugs, 892
Anticodon, 1104–1105, 1114
Anti conformation, 98–99
  alkanes, 101, 123
  E2 reactions, 202–204, 208
  ethers, 652
  meso-2,3-butanediol, 284–286
  peptides and proteins, 1049–1051
Antigen-antibody interactions, 981
Antioxidants, 928–930
D-Apiose, 965
Aprotic solvents, 323–324, 873–874
D-Arabinose, 951
L-Arabinose, 950
Arachidic acid, 995
Arachidonic acid, 996, 1002–1005
Aramid polymers, 1126
Archaea, 59, 301
Arene oxides, 415, 1049
  in oxidation of L-phenylalanine, 682–685
Arenes, 53, 406–455
  biological oxidation, 415, 425
  infrared spectra, 552
  nuclear magnetic resonance spectra
    carbon, 538*t*
    proton, 522
  physical properties, 416–418
  reactions, 456–509
L-Arginine, 1034
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
Armodafinil, 294
Aromatic compounds and aromaticity, 53, 406–455
  annulenes, 435–436, 445
  benzene, 407–411
  heterocyclic, 440–443, 445–446
  Hückel's rule, 433–440, 442–443, 445
  ionic, 437–440
  nomenclature, 412*t,* 444
  physical properties, 444
  polycyclic, 414–415, 444
  reactions
    Birch reduction, 429–430, 445
    electrophilic aromatic substitution, 456–509
    side-chain reactivity, 424–427, 446–447*t*
  ring current, 519, 522
Arrhenius, Svante, 30
Arrhenius equation, 100
Artificial sweeteners, 972
Arylamines
  basicity, 864–866
  nomenclature, 858–860
  preparation, 875–876
  reactions
    acylation, 883–884
    electrophilic aromatic substitution, 474–480, 883–885, 899
  in reductive amination, 877
  structure and bonding, 860–862
Aryl esters
  Fries rearrangement, 925
  preparation, 923–925, 935
Aryl ethers
  cleavage by hydrogen halides, 930–931, 937
  directed metalation, 943–945
  preparation, 926–928, 936
Aryl halides, 309
  preparation of
    from aryl diazonium salts, 888–890, 900–901
    halogenation of arenes, 457, 462–465, 497
  reactions
    electrophilic aromatic substitution, 482–484
    formation of Grignard reagent, 581–582
    nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 490–494, 919–920, 926–928, 1054
Ascaridole, 1023
Ascorbic acid (vitamin C), 48, 925–930, 953–954

L-Asparagine, 1034
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
Aspartame, 972, 1049
L-Aspartic acid, 1034
  electrophoresis, 1039
  isoelectric point, 1038
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
Aspirin, 48
  inhibitor of prostaglandin biosynthesis, 1004
  preparation, 925–926
Atactic polymers, 293, 603
Atom economy, 630
Atomic number, 2
  and stereochemical nomenclature, 183
Atomic orbitals (AOs), 373
Atomic structure, 2
Atorvastatin, 1016–1017
Atropisomers, 278
Avery, Oswald, 1095
Axial bonds in cyclohexane, 108–110, 125
Azeotropic mixture, 625, 704
Azide ion, 309, 324, 327, 736, 871
Azo coupling, 891, 893, 923
Azo dyes, 891–893

B

Baekeland, Leo, 1123
Baeyer, Adolf von, 104
Baeyer strain theory, 104
Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 732, 782
Bakelite, 1123, 1130
Barton, Derek, 107
Base pairs, 1096–1098
Base peak, 555–557
Bases, used in elimination reactions, 197–198, 350–351, 362
Basicity
  amines, 864*t,* 896
  amines, 863–867
  constant K_b, 32
  constant K_b and pK_b, 45
  definition
    Arrhenius, 30
    Brønsted-Lowry, 30–31
    Lewis, 41
  Grignard reagents, 582–583, 587
  heterocyclic amines, 866–867
  leaving groups, 310, 329*t,* 886–887
  and nucleophilicity, 326–329
  organolithium compounds, 582–583
β-blockers, 485, 661
Beeswax, 77, 1001–1002
Bender, Myron, 786, 788
Bending vibrations in infrared spectroscopy, 547
Benzaldehyde, 412, 687
  cyanohydrin, 702
  diethyl acetal, 704
  preparation, 692
  reactions
    with methylamine, 708–709, 871
    nitration, 480, 871
    reductive amination, 879
Benzenamine, 859
Benzene, 53, 406, 407–411, 444
  acidity and pK_a, 34
  Birch reduction, 429–430
  ^{13}C chemical shifts, 934
  derivatives, nomenclature, 412*t*
  electrophilic aromatic substitution in, 457*t*
    bromination, 457, 462–465, 486
    chlorination, 457, 463
    Friedel-Crafts acylation, 457, 467–470, 486, 487
    Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 457, 465–467, 497
    nitration, 457, 459–460, 487
    sulfonation and disulfonation, 457, 461, 481–482
  electrostatic potential map, 411
  hydrogenation, 409–410
  as industrial chemical, 407
  infrared spectrum, 547–549
  isolation and discovery, 407
  mass spectrum, 555–557
  molecular orbitals, 410–411, 433–434
  nuclear shielding in, 519
  stability, 409–410, 444
  structure and bonding, 407–409
    Kekulé formulation, 407–409, 444
    orbital hybridization model, 410–411
    resonance description, 409–410
Benzenediazonium chloride, 887–888
1,2-Benzenedicarboxylic acid, 738
1,4-Benzenedicarboxylic acid, 750
Benzene dimer, 416–417
Benzenediols, 914–915
Benzenesulfonic acid
  preparation, 457, 461
  reactions, 481, 919–920
(Benzene)tricarbonylchromium, 590
Benzimidazole, 441
Benzocaine, 814
Benzofuran, 440
Benzoic acid, 412, 738
  acidity, 744, 745*t*
  esterification, 754–756
  by oxidation of toluene, 425
Benzophenone, 689
Benzo[a]pyrene, 415
Benzothiophene, 440
Benzoyl chloride, 481, 777
Benzyl alcohol, 692
  ^{1}H NMR spectrum, 534
Benzylamine, preparation, 873–874
Benzyl cation, 416–417, 558
Benzyl chloride
  nucleophilic substitution in, 657–658, 752
  reaction with, *N*-potassiophthalimide, 873–874
Benzyl group, 414, 418–420
Benzylic
  anions, 423–424
  halides, nucleophilic substitution in, 420–422
  halogenation, 422–423, 446
  hydrogens, ^{1}H NMR chemical shifts, 519
Benzyloxycarbonyl protecting group in peptide synthesis, 1060, 1077
Benzyne
  bonding in, 508
  electrostatic potential map, 508
  generation, 507
  intermediate in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 507–508
Berg, Paul, 1107
Bergström, Sune, 1002
Berzelius, Jöns Jacob, 3
Bicarbonate
  pK_a, 748
Bile acids and salts, 1017, 1022
Bimatoprost, 1026
Bimolecular
  elementary step, 143–144, 146, 153–154
  elimination, 193, 199–205
BINAP, 600
Bioenergetics, 1092–1093, 1113
Biosynthesis
  amino acids, by transamination, 1046–1049
  cholesterol, 1013–1015
  ethylene, 179
  fatty acids, 997–998
  polyketides, 1027–1029
  prostaglandins, 1003
  terpenes, 1008–1013
Biosynthetic halogenation, 464
Biot, Jean-Baptiste, 268
Biphenyl, 414, 480, 510–577
Birch, Arthur J., 429
Birch reduction, 429–430, 445
Bisabolene, 1023
Bisphenol A, 1141
β-lactams, 801
Bloch, Felix, 513
Bloch, Konrad, 1014
Boat conformation, 107–108, 124
Boiling points
  alcohols, 168
  alkanes, 57–58, 77–80
  alkyl halides, 137–141, 139*t,* 168
  amides, 792–793
  amines, 863
  carboxylic acids, 739
  and intermolecular attractive forces, 77–80, 137–141, 691, 792–793
  and intramolecular hydrogen bonds, 916–917
  thiols, 634
Bond angles
  acetaldehyde, 689
  acetone, 689
  acetylene, 344–347
  ammonia, 26
  aniline, 861
  [10]annulene, 435–436
  benzene, 408
  boron trifluoride, 24
  carbon dioxide, 24
  cyclohexane, 107
  cyclopropane, 104
  dialkyl ethers, 652
  ethane, 58
  ethylene, 61, 178, 346
  ethylene oxide, 652
  formaldehyde, 24, 689
  formic acid, 739

Bond angles, *cont.*
methane, 24, 58, 60
methanol, 136, 652
methylamine, 861
phenol, 916–917
propane, 58
and VSEPR, 26
water, 26, 652
Bond dissociation enthalpies, 8, 167
acetylene, 346
ethane, 159–160, 167, 346
ethylene, 346
and halogenation of methane, 161
2-methylpropane, 160
propane, 160
propene, 378–379
table, 159*t*
Bond distances
acetic acid, 741
acetylene, 63, 344–347
alkyl halides, 136
allene, 385
benzene, 408
1,3-butadiene, 384
cyclobutadiene, 433
cyclooctatetraene, 432
dimethyl ether, 652
ethane, 58, 346
ethylene, 61, 178, 346
ethylene oxide, 652
formic acid, 739
methane, 58
methanol, 136
methylamine, 861
phenol, 916–917
propane, 58
propene, 179, 346
propyne, 346
and strain, 103, 123
Bonding
acetylene, 10, 63–64, 87, 344–346, 361
alcohols, 136–137
aldehydes and ketones, 689–691, 722
alkenes, 178–180, 207
alkyl halides, 136–137
alkynes, 344–346, 361
allene, 385–386
amines, 860–862
benzene, 410–411, 433–434
benzyne, 508
carbocations, 149–152
carboxylic acid derivatives, 772–775
carboxylic acids, 739
conjugated dienes, 383–385
ethane, 8, 61
ethers and epoxides, 652
ethylene, 9–10, 61–63, 86, 178–180
formaldehyde, 10, 689
free radicals, 158
hydrogen, 8, 53–56
methane, 57, 58, 60
models, comparison, 54–55, 64–65, 87
phenols, 916–917
Bond-line formulas, 18–19, 66, 179
Bonds
axial and equatorial, 108–110, 125
bent, in cyclopropane, 105
carbon-metal, 556, 578
covalent, 8–9
double, 9–10, 178–179, 207
hydrogen bonds, 137–141, 146, 652–654
ionic, 6–8
π
acetylene, 64, 87, 345
ethylene, 61, 86, 178–180, 207
formaldehyde, 689
partial, 145
polar covalent, 10–13
dipole moments, 12*t*
σ
acetylene, 64, 87, 346
ethylene, 61, 87, 178–180, 207
methane and alkanes, 58–60
three-center two-electron, 233
triple, 9–10, 344–346
Bond strength
and acid strength, 35–38
Borane, 232–233
Borneol, 1011
Borohydride ion, 15
Boron trifluoride
catalyst for cationic polymerization, 1137–1139, 1147
Lewis acid/base complex with diethyl ether, 41
VSEPR and molecular geometry, 24
Boundary surfaces, 4–5
Bradykinin, 1059
Branched-chain carbohydrates, 965, 984
Branched polymers, 1124, 1128, 1133–1135
Brevicomin, 727
Bridged bicyclic compounds, 120–121
products in Diels-Alder reactions, 393–394
Bridgehead carbons, 120
Brifentanil, 908
Broadband decoupling, 541
Bromination
alkanes, 166–167, 169
alkenes
electrophilic, 234–238, 250, 288–290, 426
free-radical, 377–380, 397
alkynes, 359
benzene, 457, 462–465
benzylic, of alkylbenzenes, 423, 447
conjugated dienes, 390–391
electrophilic aromatic substitution
acetophenone, 486
p-aminobenzoic acid, 885
aniline, 479–480, 890–891
anisole, 478
benzene, 457, 462–465, 486
4-chloro-*N*-methylaniline, 485
m-fluorophenol, 920–921
nitrobenzene, 482
p-nitrotoluene, 484
phenols, 497, 920–923
ketones, 904
Bromine, addition to
alkenes, 234
Bromobenzene
preparation, 457, 462
reaction with, magnesium, 581
1-Bromobutane, 242
alkylation of
acetylene, 348–349
o-nitrophenol, 936
nucleophilic substitution in, 324*t*
2-Bromobutane, 141, 221, 242
preparation, 142
Bromochlorofluoromethane, 263–264, 279
Fischer projections, 273
Bromoform, 517
2-Bromo-2-methylbutane
elimination, 198, 205
substitution versus elimination in, 327
2-Bromo-3-methylbutane, rearrangement in hydrolysis, 321–322
Bromomethylcycloheptane, 173
Bromonium ion, 236–237
(R)-and *(S)*-2-Bromooctane, stereochemistry of hydrolysis, 312, 320–321
N-Bromosuccinimide (NBS), reagent for
allylic bromination, 379, 397
benzylic bromination, 423, 446
Bronchodilators, 1005
Brønsted, Johannes, 30
Brown, Herbert C., 231, 714
Buckminsterfullerene, 416–417
1,3-Butadiene
addition of halogens to, 390–391, 398
addition of hydrogen halides to, 388–390, 398
conformations, 382, 397
Diels-Alder reactions, 391–396
industrial preparation, 386
π molecular orbitals, 395
polymers, 387, 1136–1137
structure and bonding, 384
Butanal
heat of combustion, 691
infrared spectrum, 718–719
reductive amination, 878
n-Butane, 65
2,3-Butanediol, 284–286
Butanes, 65. *See also* Isobutane
chlorination, 165, 280
conformations, 101–102, 123
Butanoic acid
biosynthesis, 997–998
natural occurrence, 749
1-Butanol
acid-catalyzed ether formation from, 624, 655
conversion to 1-bromobutane, 142
dehydration, 196–197
Fischer esterification, 782
physical properties, 653
2-Butanol
chirality center in, 265, 271
enantiomers, 271
reaction with hydrogen bromide, 142
2-Butanone
heat of combustion, 691
^{1}H NMR spectrum, 719
1-Butene, 180, 690
addition of hydrogen bromide to, 221, 242–243
addition of sulfuric acid to, 250
boiling point, 691
dipole moment, 181
electrostatic potential map, 690
heat of combustion, 184
heat of hydrogenation, 220
cis and *trans*-2-Butene, 180–181
dipole moments, 181
heats of combustion, 184, 186
heats of hydrogenation, 220

Butlerov, Alexander, 3
tert-Butoxide ion, 328
tert-Butoxycarbonyl, protecting group in peptide synthesis, 1060–1061, 1064–1065, 1077
sec-Butyl alcohol, 625
tert-Butyl alcohol
  acidity and pK_a, 34, 36
  dehydration, 192
  esterification, 640, 777
  reaction with hydrogen chloride, 142, 144–149
Butylamine
  acylation, 880
  infrared spectrum, 894–895
Butyl bromide
  preparation from 1-butanol, 142
  reaction with sodium cyanide, 869–870
tert-Butyl bromide
  nucleophilic substitution in, 317–318
tert-Butyl cation
  electrostatic potential map, 150, 421
  intermediate in
    acid-catalyzed hydration of 2-methylpropene, 227
    dehydration of *tert*-butyl alcohol, 192
    Friedel-Crafts alkylation of benzene, 465–467
    nucleophilic substitution, 317–318
    polymerization of 2-methylpropene, 1138
    reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride, 144–149, 151–153
    stability, 150–152
tert-Butyl chloride
  by chlorination of 2-methylpropane, 165
  in Friedel-Crafts reaction, 457, 465–467
  preparation from *tert*-butyl alcohol, 141–149, 147
tert-Butylcyclohexane, conformations, 112
4-*tert*-Butylcyclohexyl bromide, elimination rates of *cis* and *trans* isomers, 202–204
Butyl group, 73
n-Butyl group, 73
sec-Butyl group, 73
tert-Butyl group, 73, 186
  large size, 112, 118–119, 313–315
tert-Butyl hydroperoxide, 622, 638, 661
Butyllithium, 616
  initiator of anionic polymerization, 1135
sec-Butyl methyl ether, 659
tert-Butyloxonium ion, intermediate in
  dehydration of *tert*-butyl alcohol, 192
  hydration of 2-methylpropene, 227
  hydrolysis of *tert*-butyl bromide, 317–318
  reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride, 144–146, 147–148
sec-Butyl radical, 165
tert-Butyl radical, 158, 160
1-Butyne, 344, 349
2-Butyne, 344

C

c, speed of light, 511
Caffeine, 1087
Cahn, R. S., 181, 271
Cahn-Ingold-Prelog (CIP) system of stereochemical notation
  chiral molecules, 269–273, 271*t*, 296
  priority rules, 182*t*
Calcium carbide, 342–343
Calicene, 451
Camphene, 120
Cannabinoids, 1075
ε-Caprolactam, 800, 1139
Capsaicin, 854
Carbamates, 1141
Carbanions
  basicity, 347, 582–583
  enolates as, 820–857
  intermediates in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 492–495
Carbenes and carbenoids, 588
Carbinolamine, 708
Carbocations
  acyl cations, 467–469
  alkenyl cations, 356
  allylic, 370, 372, 388–390, 396
  benzylic, 420–421, 427
  tert-butyl cation, 144–152, 192–193, 227, 317–318, 465–467
  electrostatic potential maps, 150
  intermediates in acetal formation, 704, 965–966
  intermediates in biosynthesis
    cholesterol, 1013–1015
    terpenes, 1008–1013
  intermediates in glycoside formation, 967–969
  intermediates in pinacol rearrangement, 646–649
  intermediates in reactions of alcohols
    dehydration, 192–197, 208–209
    with hydrogen halides, 145–149, 169, 331
  intermediates in reactions of alkenes
    acid-catalyzed hydration, 226–228
    addition of hydrogen halides, 221–222, 225–226
    addition of hydrogen halides to conjugated dienes, 388–390, 398
  intermediates in reactions of alkyl diazonium salts, 886–887
  intermediates in reactions of alkyl halides
    E1, 192–193, 205–206, 208–209
    Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 465–467, 497
    S_N1, 147, 317–322, 420–421
  isopropyl cation, 150, 152
  methyl cation, 149–150, 152
  reaction with nucleophiles, 146–149, 227, 318
  rearrangements, 193–197, 225–226, 321–322, 334, 466, 497
  structure, bonding, and stability, 149–152, 169
  triphenylmethyl, 421
Carbohydrates, 287, 946–991
  aldoses, 947–948
  amino sugars, 964–965
  branched-chain carbohydrates, 965
  classification, 947*t*
  configurations of D-aldoses, 949–952
    mnemonic for, 952
  cyclic hemiacetal formation in, 131, 952–958
  deoxy sugars, 963
  disaccharides, 947, 969–971, 984
  Fischer determination of glucose structure, 989–991
  Fischer projections, 947–948, 983
  furanose forms, 131, 952–955, 983
  glycolysis, 992
  glycosides, 965–969, 984
  Haworth formulas, 953–954
  ketoses, 947–948, 962–963
  mutarotation in, 958–960, 984
  polysaccharides, 971–973, 984
  pyranose forms, 131, 956–958, 983
  reactions
    acetal formation, 974
    acylation, 974
    aldol addition, 975
    aldose-ketose isomerization, 975
    alkylation, 974
    cyanohydrin formation, 974
    enolization, 974
    epimerization, 975
    isomerization, 972
    pyranose-furanose isomerization, 974
    reduction, 974
    vetro-aldol cleavage, 975
Carbolic acid, 917
Carbon
  ^{14}C as isotopic label
    in Claisen rearrangement, 931–932
    nucleophilic aromatic substitution via benzyne, 507
    terpene biosynthesis, 1012–1013
  ^{13}C isotope nuclear magnetic resonance, 536–545
  clusters, 416–417
Carbon dioxide
  and carbonic acid, 748
  in Kolbe-Schmitt reaction, 926, 936
  reaction with acetyl coenzyme A, 818, 993
  reaction with Grignard reagents, 751, 762
  VSEPR and molecular geometry, 24
Carbonic acid
  pK_a, 33, 749
Carbonic anhydrase, 42, 748
Carbon monoxide
  reactions, 589, 615, 695
Carbon tetrachloride, 27
Carbonyl group
  ^{13}C chemical shifts, 537–538
  and functional groups, 132–134
  infrared absorption frequencies, 549, 805–806
  stabilization by substituents, 691, 739, 772–775
  structure and bonding, 689–691, 721
Carboxylates
  electron delocalization in, 741–742
  micelle formation, 746–747
  nomenclature, 746
  as nucleophiles, 309, 316
Carboxylation
  Grignard reagents, 751, 762
  phenol, 925–926, 936
Carboxylic acid derivatives, 770–819
  nomenclature, 771–772
  relative reactivity, 773
  spectroscopic analysis, 805–807
  structure and bonding, 772–775

Carboxylic acids, 736–769
  acidity, 740–745, 743*t,* 761–762
  derivatives, 770–819
  dicarboxylic acids, 747, 758–760
  hydrogen bonding in, 740
  infrared spectra, 550, 552, 760
  nomenclature, 737
  nuclear magnetic resonance spectra, 760–761
  physical properties, 739–740
  preparation, 750*t*
    carboxylation of Grignard reagents, 751, 762
    hydrolysis of nitriles, 752–753, 762, 803–804
    oxidation of aldehydes, 718, 750
    oxidation of alkylbenzenes, 424–426, 750
    oxidation of primary alcohols, 627–628, 641, 750
  protecting group for, 1061
  reactions, 753*t*
    with acyl chlorides, 777*t,* 807
    decarboxylation, 758–760, 762–763
    esterification, 625–627, 640, 754–756, 762–763, 782
    reduction, 620, 639, 692, 756
    with thionyl chloride, 468
  salts, 745–747
  structure and bonding, 739
Carboxypeptidases, 1052–1053, 1071–1073
Carcinogens, 415
  polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, 415
Carnosine, 903
β-Carotene, 710, 1007, 1017–1020
Carotenoids, 1017–1022
Carothers, Wallace H., 1123
Carvone enantiomers, 275
Catechin enantiomers, 920–921
Cationic polymerization, 1137–1139
Cation radicals in mass spectrometry, 555–556
Cations, 6
Cech, Thomas, 1104
Celecoxib, 1004
Cellobiose, 969–971
Cellulose, 971–973
Cembrene, 1007
Center of symmetry, 268
  in meso-2,3-butanediol, 284–286
Cephalexin, 800–801
Cephalosporins, 800–801
Cerebrosides, 1023–1024
Chain, Ernst, 800
Chain branching, 186
Chain growth polymer(s), 1124, 1126
Chair conformation
  cyclohexane and derivatives, 107–112, 115–119, 125, 534–536
  piperidine, 122
  pyranose forms of carbohydrates, 957–958
  tetrahydropyran, 652
Chalfir, Martin, 1069
Chargaff, Erwin, 1095
Chargaff ratios, 1097
Chauvin, Yves, 600
Chemical Abstracts, 70
Chemical bond, 6
Chemical shift
  carbon, 537–539, 562
    calculation of, 575–577
    equivalence and replacement test for, 523–525
    protons, 514–525, 534–536, 562
    scale (δ), 516
    tables (^{13}C), 538*t*
Chimeric plasmids, 1111
Chiral, definition, 263
Chiral drugs, 277
Chirality, 262–305
Chirality axis, 276–279, 296, 386, 397
Chirality center, 265–266, 282–288, 294
  absolute configuration, 269–273
  and Fischer projections, 273–275, 283, 296, 947–948, 983, 1035–1036
  formation of in chemical reactions, 279–281, 288–290
  phosphorus and sulfur, 294
Chiral molecules, 263–266, 294
  absolute and relative configuration, 269–270, 296
  Fischer projections, 273–275, 283, 285–286, 296
  formation of in chemical reactions, 279–281, 288–290, 296
  with multiple chirality centers, 282–290, 297
  with one chirality center, 265–266, 295
  optical activity in, 268–269, 294
  and *R,S* notation, 271–273, 296
Chiral recognition, 276
Chitin, 964
Chloral, 697
Chlorination
  electrophilic substitution
    aldehydes and ketones, 904
    aromatic, 457, 481, 487, 885
  free-radical substitution
    alkanes, 156, 161–167, 175, 176, 177, 280
    ethane, 161
    methane, 156–157, 161–163, 167
    propene, 379
    toluene, 422–423
Chlorine, addition to
  alkenes, 236
  conjugated dieties, 390
  propyne, 358
Chlorobenzene
  conversion to phenol, 919–920
  mass spectrum, 558
  nitration, 482
  nucleophilic aromatic substitution in, 491, 507
1-Chlorobutane, 165
2-Chlorobutane, 165
Chlorocyclobutane, 164
1-Chloro-2,4-dinitrobenzene, 491
Chloroethane, 163
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 156
Chloroform
  ^{1}H chemical shift, 517
  ^{1}H nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum, 517
Chloroform-δ, solvent for NMR spectroscopy, 517
Chloromethane, 156
  boiling point, 140
  dipole moment, 137
  electrostatic potential map, 137
  naturally occurring, 841
Chloromethylation, 1064–1065
1-Chloro-2-methylpropane, 165
2-Chloro-2-methylpropane, 165
p-Chloronitrobenzene, nucleophilic substitution in, 490
1-Chlorooctadecane, 200
1-Chloropentane, ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR, 537
2-Chloro-1,3,5-trinitrobenzene, 491
Cholesterol, 1013–1017, 1022
  biosynthesis, 1013–1015
  7-dehydro, 1014–1017
Cholic acid, 121, 287–288, 1017
Choline, 993, 999
Chromic acid oxidation
  alcohols, 693, 750
  alkylbenzenes, 422–423, 750
  phenols, 932
Chromophore, 555
Chrysanthemic acid, 115, 1023
Chrysoidine, 891, 893
Chymotrypsin, 1052–1053
Cimetidine, 441
Cinnamaldehyde, 181
Circadian rhythms, 817
cis and *trans* descriptors of stereochemistry, 114, 125, 180–181, 207
s-cis conformation, 304
Citral, 692, 1007
Citric acid, 302, 749, 766
Citronellal, 629, 1012–1013
Citronellol, 629
Claisen rearrangement, 931–932, 937
Clathrate, 59
Clemmensen reduction, 469, 695
Cocaine, 868
Codon, 1103, 1114
Coenzymes, 1072–1073, 1077
  acetyl coenzyme A, 817–818, 992–994, 1012
  coenzyme B_6, 710
  coenzyme B_{12}, 591
  coenzyme Q, 933
  heme, 1073
Cofactor, 1073
Coke, 343
Collins, Francis S., 1108
Columbus, Christopher, 387
Combinatorial synthesis, 1065
Combustion of alkanes, 80–83, 87
Compounds, 6
Computational chemistry, 25
Concerted reaction, 143
  bimolecular elimination, 199–205
  bimolecular nucleophilic substitution, 153–154, 310–315, 334
  Diels-Alder reaction, 391
Condensation, 624
  ether formation, 624, 655, 674
  Fischer esterification, 625–627, 640, 754–756, 782
  polymers, 1125
Condensed structural formulas, 18–19, 66

Configuration
  alkenes
    cis and *trans,* 180–181, 187–188, 207
    E and *Z,* 181–183, 187–188, 207
    disubstituted cycloalkanes, *cis* and *trans,* 114, 115–119, 125
    and Fischer projections, 273–275, 296
  absolute, 269–273, 296
  aldoses, 951
  notational systems
    α and β, 953–954
    cis and *trans,* 114
    D-L, 949–952, 983
    erythro and threo, 283
    R-S, 271–273, 296
Conformation(s), 96–131
  alkanes
    butane, 101–102, 123
    ethane, 97–101, 123
    higher alkanes, 102, 104, 124
    1,3-butadiene, 382, 397
    chiral, 286
    s-cis and *s*-trans, 304, 397
  cycloalkanes, 107–112, 124–125
    cyclobutane, 116, 124
    cyclohexane and derivatives, 107–112, 115–119, 125, 286, 535–536
    cyclopentane, 116, 124
    cyclopropane, 124
    medium and large rings, 119
    eclipsed, 98, 123
    ethers, 652
    heterocyclic compounds, 122
    hydrogen peroxide, 96–97
    and nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy, 535–536
    peptides and proteins, 1049–1051, 1066–1069
    pyranose forms of carbohydrates, 957–958
    staggered, 97–99, 102, 123–124
Conformers, 100
Coniine, 868
Conjugate acids and bases, 31, 35, 347, 741–742, 863–865
Conjugate addition
  of bromine to 1,3-butadiene, 390
  of hydrogen bromide to 1,3-butadiene, 388–390
Conjugation
  in alkenylbenzenes, 426–427
  in allylic systems, 388–390, 397
  in dienes, 381–385, 553–555
  energy, 382–383
Connectivity, 15, 44
Constitutional isomers, 15, 44, 65, 180
  alkanes, number of, 67*t*
Contributing structures, 19, 23
Coordination polymerization, 246, 387, 605, 1131
Copolymers, 387, 1125, 1136–1137, 1142–1144
  block, 1142–1143
  graft, 1142–1144
  random, 1142–1143
Copper(I) salts
  reactions with aryl diazonium ions, 887–888, 889–890, 900–901
Corey, Elias J., 248
Corey, Robert B., 1066
Correlated spectroscopy (COSY and HETCOR), 543–545, 563
Corticosteroids (cortisol and cortisone), 1017, 1022
Coulombic force, 103
Coulombic particles, 9
Couper, Archibald S., 3
Coupling constant *(J),* 528, 530, 531–533, 575
Covalent bonds, 8–9, 43
Covalent catalysis, 317
Cracking, in petroleum refining, 77
Crafts, James M., 465
Crepenynic acid, 343
m-Cresol
  acidity, 918–919
  ^{13}C NMR spectrum, 540
o-Cresol, 922
p-Cresol
  acidity, 918–919
  ^{1}H NMR spectrum, 934
  infrared spectrum, 934
  nitration, 922
  preparation, 919–920
Crick, Francis H. C., 1096–1098, 1102
Critical micelle concentration, 746–747
Crocetin, 1020
Crocin, 1020
Cross-coupling reactions, paladium-catalyzed, 595
Cross-linked polymers, 1124, 1128–1130
Crown ethers, 673
  electrostatic potential map, 655
Crystallites, 1128
Cubane, 119
Cubitene, 1023
Cumene, 248, 424, 919–920, 941
Cumulated dienes, 381–382
Curl, Robert F., 416
Curme, George O., 359
Curved arrows, 20, 23, 28–30, 45, 158
Cyanide ion
  basicity, 327
  in formation of cyanohydrins, 700–704
  as nucleophile, 309, 324, 327
Cyanocobalamin, 591
Cyanohydrins
  dissociation, 703
  hydrolysis, 753
  naturally occurring, 701–703
  preparation, 700–703, 722, 802, 975
Cycloaddition, 391
  molecular orbital treatment, 395–396, 403–405
Cycloalkanes, 52–95, 75, 107–110, 124–125
  angle strain, 104–105
  conformations, 107–110, 124–125
  heats of combustion, 105*t*
  nomenclature, 75–76
  physical properties, 77–80
  polycyclic, 119–121, 125
  sources, 76–77
Cycloalkenes, 178, 187–188
  nomenclature, 178
  stereoisomeric, 187–188, 199
  nomenclature, 207
Cycloalkynes, 345
Cyclobutadiene, 431–433, 445
Cyclobutane
  angle strain, 116
  chlorination, 164
  conformations, 116
  heat of combustion, 105
Trans-1,3-Cyclobutanediol, plane of symmetry in, 267
Cyclobutanone, 733
Cyclobutyl chloride, 164
Cyclodecane, 169, 418
  heat of combustion, 105
(E)- and *(Z)*-Cyclodecene, 198
Cyclodecyl chloride, 169
Cycloheptatriene, 438
Cycloheptatrienide anion, 439
Cycloheptatrienyl cation, 438, 446
trans-Cycloheptene, 187
Cyclohexadienyl anion, intermediate in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 492–495, 499
Cyclohexadienyl cation, intermediate in electrophilic aromatic substitution, 457–460, 463, 465, 468, 472–480, 484, 488–489, 493–494, 496
Cyclohexane, 75, 77
  bond angles, 107
  conformational analysis, 107–110, 125
    derivatives, 115–119, 125, 286
    drawing chair conformation, 109
    heat of combustion, 105
    ^{1}H NMR spectrum, 535–536
Cyclohexanol
  infrared spectrum, 637
  reactions
    dehydration, 189
    with hydrogen bromide, 142
    oxidation, 628
Cyclohexanone
  and ethylene glycol, cyclic acetal from, 704
  preparation, 628
  reaction with
    ethylmagnesium bromide, 695
    isobutylamine, 708
    methylenetriphenylphosphorane, 715
    morpholine, 723
    pyrrolidine, 880
    reductive amination, 877
Cyclohexene
  derivatives, preparation by Diels-Alder reaction, 391–396
  preparation, 189, 197
  reactions
    alkylation of benzene with, 466
    with *N*-bromosuccinimide, 379
    dihydroxylation, 622, 666
    epoxidation, 666
    trans stereoisomer, 187
Cyclohexylamine, 859
  basicity, 864–865
  preparation, 877
  reductive amination by, 898
Cyclohexyl chloride
  β-elimination, 197
  Grignard reagent from, 585
Cyclononyne, 345

1,3-Cyclooctadiene, UV-VIS spectrum, 553–554
1,5-Cyclooctadiene, bromination, 400
Cyclooctane, heat of combustion, 105
Cyclooctatetraene, 431–433, 445
  dianion, 439–440
Cyclooctene
  addition of chlorine to, 236
  epoxidation, 240
  trans stereoisomer, 187
Cyclooctyne, 345
Cyclooxygenase (COX), 1003
1,3-Cyclopentadiene
  acidity, 439
  Diels-Alder reactions, 393
  reaction with hydrogen chloride, 388
Cyclopentadienide anion, 438, 446
Cyclopentane, 77
  conformations, 116, 124
  heat of combustion, 105
Cyclopentanol
  reaction with phosphorus tribromide, 156
Cyclopentanon
  reaction with methylmagnesium chloride, 585
Cyclopentanone
  enamine, 712–714
Cyclopentene
  bromine addition to, 237
  halohydrins, 238
Cyclopentyl bromide, 497
Cyclopentylmethanol, 616
Cyclopropane(s), 75
  angle strain and bonding, 104–106
  conformations, 124
  cis and *trans*-1,2-dimethyl-, 114
  heat of combustion, 105
  structure, 105–106
Cyclopropene ring, 187
Cyclopropenyl cation, 439–440
Cyclotetradecane, 418
L-Cysteine, 1034
  disulfide formation, 1055–1056, 1070
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
Cytidine, 1089
Cytosine, 1087, 1095

D

Darwin, Charles, 1095
L-Daunosamine, 963
Davy, Edmund, 343
Deamination, 890–891, 901
Dean-Stark trap, 625–626
de Broglie, Louis, 3, 53
Debye, Peter, 12
Debye unit, 12
cis- and *trans*-Decalin, 121
Decane
  mass spectrum, 558
1-Decanol, 231, 693
Decarboxylation
  α-amino acids, 1042–1043
  β-keto acids, 759–760, 763
  malonic acid derivatives, 758–760, 763, 1040–1041
1-Decene
  dihydroxylation, 622
  hydroboration-oxidation, 231, 616
Decoupling
  alcohol protons in ^{1}H NMR, 534, 562
  in ^{13}C NMR, 541
Dehydration, in preparation
  alkenes from alcohols, 188–197, 209, 426
  dienes, 386, 398
  nitriles from amides, 802–803
Dehydroalanine, 1034
Dehydrogenation
  biological, 188
  butane, 386
  ethane, 179, 188–189
  ethylbenzene, 426, 467
  ethylene, 343
  propane, 179, 188–189
Dehydrohalogenation
  alkyl halides, 197–206, 209, 219, 426
  2-bromo-2-methylbutane, 198, 205–206
  5-bromononane, 198–199
  cis- and *trans*-4-*tert*-butylcyclohexyl bromide, 202–204
  1-chloro-1-methylcyclohexane, 209
  1-chlorooctadecane, 198
  cyclohexyl chloride, 197
  dihalides, 350–351, 362
  menthyl and neomenthyl chloride, 213
  in preparation of
    alkenes, 197–208, 217–218
    alkenylbenzenes, 426
    alkynes, 350–351, 362
    dienes, 386
Delocalization energy, 383, 961
Delocalized electrons, 20
Dendrobine, 869
Dendrolasin, 1023
Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)
  A-, B-, and Z-DNA, 1097–1098
  linker, 1099
  profiling and PCR, 1108–1111, 1114
  and protein biosynthesis, 1104–1105
  purine and pyrimidine bases in, 1088–1089
  recombinant, 1111, 1114
  replication, 1099–1101, 1114
  sequencing, 1106–1108, 1114
  structure, 1096–1098, 1114
  synthesis, 1117–1121
2-Deoxy-D-ribose, 963, 1089, 1113
Deoxy sugars, 963, 984
DEPT routine, 541, 563
Detergents, 747
Deuterium isotope effect, 204–205, 209, 460
Deuterium oxide, 534, 760
Dextrorotatory, 269
Diacetylene, 344
Diastereomers, 282–293, 297
Diastereotopic, 290, 525, 532–533
1,3-Diaxial repulsion, 111
Diazonium salts, 887–891, 899–901
  azo coupling, 891, 893
  conversion to
    aryl cyanides, 889–890
    aryl halides, 888–890, 900–901
    aryl nitriles, 901
    phenols, 888–889, 900, 919–920, 935
    ions, 886
    preparation, 887–888
    reduction, 889–891, 901
Diborane, 231
Dibromocarbene, 588
1,2-Dibromocyclopropane, stereoisomers, 286
Dibutyl ether, 624, 655
Dicarboxylic acids
  acidity, 747
  decarboxylation, 758–760, 763
  nomenclature, 737
  in preparation of polyamides and polyesters, 1139
Dichlorocyclohexane isomers, 286
Dichloromethane, 27, 140, 156
Diclofenac, 1004
N,N´-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCCI), in preparation of
  esters, 1062
  peptides, 1064–1065, 1077
Didemnins, 1030
Dieckmann condensation, 848
Dielectric constant
  and rate of nucleophilic substitution, 324–325, 334
  various solvents, 325*t*
Diels, Otto, 391
Diels-Alder reaction, 391–396, 402–405, 444
  orbital symmetry analysis, 395–396
Dienes
  conjugated, 370–371, 381–385, 553–555
    1,2 and 1,4 addition to, 388–391, 398
    conformations, 384–385, 398
    Diels-Alder reactions, 391–396, 398
    electron delocalization in, 382–385
    electrophilic addition reactions, 398
    polymers, 387, 1122–1151
    preparation, 386, 398
    resonance energy, 383
  cumulated, 381–382, 385–386
  heats of hydrogenation, 382–383, 409–410
  isolated, 381–382, 386
  stability of various classes, 382–385, 397
Dienophiles, 391–394
Diethyl acetamidomalonate, 1040–1041
Diethylamine
  basicity, 864
  infrared spectrum, 894–895
Diethyl ether, 651
  cleavage by hydrogen bromide, 659
  conformation, 652
  dipole moment, 652–654
  hydrogen bonding to water, 652–653
  as Lewis base, 41
  peroxide formation in, 658
  physical properties, 652–654
  preparation, 624
Diethyl malonate, 838–840
  acidity and pK_a, 34
Diethyl tartrate, 660–661
Difunctional compounds, 883
Diglyme, 231, 651
Dihalides
  vicinal, 234

Dihaloalkanes
alkynes from, 350–351, 362
geminal, 350–351, 362
vicinal, 350–351, 362
Dihedral angle, 98
Dihexyl ether, infrared spectrum, 551
Dihydropyran, 729
2,3-Dihydroxybutanoic acid, stereoisomers, 282–283
Dihydroxylation of alkenes
anti, 666
syn, 622, 638
L-3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-Dopa), 1045
Diiodomethane, 588
Diisopropyl ether, 658
Diltiazem, 292
1,2-Dimethoxyethane, 651
Dimethylallyl diphosphate, 1008
Dimethylamine
nitrosation, 885
3,3-Dimethyl-2-butanol, dehydration and rearrangement, 193–194
2,3-Dimethyl-1-butene, 193
2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene, 193
heat of hydrogenation, 220
3,3-Dimethyl-1-butene, 193
1,2-, 1,3-, and 1,4-Dimethylcyclohexane stereoisomers, 115–118
1,2-Dimethylcyclopropane stereoisomers, 114
Dimethyl ether, 652
^{1}H chemical shift, 517
1,1-Dimethylethyl group, 73
N,N-Dimethylformamide (DMF), 873–874
2,2-Dimethylpropane, 79
2,2-Dimethylpropyl group, 73
Dimethyl sulfide, 315
Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), as solvent in elimination reactions, 197
NMR spectroscopy of alcohols, 534
nucleophilic substitution reactions, 309
Wittig reaction, 715
2,4-Dinitrophenylhydrazine, 748
Diols, 614
cyclic ethers from, 625
geminal, 696–700
nomenclature, 621–622
oxidative cleavage, 633, 639
pinacol rearrangement of, 646–649
polyesters from, 1140–1141
preparation, 621–622
Dioxane, 651
Dioxolenium ion, 980
Dipeptides, 1030
(S)-1,2-Diphenyl-2-propanol, 533
Diphenylamine, basicity, 865
Diphosphates, 1008
Dipole-dipole attractions, 78, 137–141
in ethyl fluoride, 138
and hydrogen bonding, 137–141, 652–654
Dipole direction, 12
Dipole-induced dipole attractions, 78, 138, 143
Dipole moment, 12*t,* 45
alcohols, 136–137
aldehydes and ketones, 689–690
alkanes, 78
alkyl halides, 136–137
amides, 792–793
1-butanol, 652
butene isomers, 184
carbon tetrachloride, 27
chloromethane, 137
trans-1-chloropropene, 183
1,2-dichloroethane, 130
dichloromethane, 27
diethyl ether, 652–654
ethanol, 138
ethylene, 183–184
fluoroethane, 138
methanol, 137
and molecular geometry, 27
propanal, 690–691
propane, 138
propene, 183
water, 137
Dipropyl ether
^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR spectra, 671
infrared spectrum, 670–671
preparation, 674
Disaccharide, 947, 969–971, 984
Disparlure, 239, 661
Disulfides
glutathione, 636
α-keratin, 1067, 1069
lipoic acid, 122, 636
oxytocin, 1051
preparation, 636
and protein structure, 1070
Diterpenes, 1005–1007
Domagk, Gerhard, 892
L-Dopa, 598, 600
Dopamine, 1045
Double bond, 9–10, 62, 86, 178–180
cumulated, 397
Double helix, 1096–1098, 1114
Droxidopa, 302
Drugs
chiral, 277
generic names, 70
Dyes, 891–893
Dynemicin A, 343

E

E (stereochemical prefix), 181, 207
E1 mechanism, 192–193, 205–206
E2 mechanism, 193, 208, 219, 326–329
Eclipsed conformations, 97–99, 102, 123
and Fischer projections, 283, 285–286
Ectocarpene, 300
Edman, Pehr, 1056
Edman degradation, 1056–1057
Edman sequenator, 1057
Eigen, Manfred, 144
Elaidic acid, 366
Elastomer, 387, 1124, 1130
Electromagnetic radiation, 511–512
Electromagnetic spectrum, 511
Electron affinity, 7
Electron configuration, 5
and orbital hybridization, 58, 60, 61, 63
Electron delocalization, 825
acetate ions, 38
allylic carbocations, 371, 388–390
allylic radicals, 376–378
benzylic radicals, 419
carbocations, 149–152
carboxylate ions, 741–742, 775
conjugated dienes, 382–385
enolates, 870–871
nitrate ion, 38
nitrophenoxide ion, 918–919
and resonance, 19–23, 38–39, 45
Electron density, 29
Electronegativity, 10, 43
and acid strength, 35–38, 45
and chemical shift, 517, 519, 537–538
and polar covalent bonds, 10–13
relation to *s* character at carbon, 346
selected elements, 11*t,* 580
Electronic effects, 185
alkyl groups, in alkenes, 208
18-Electron rule, 589–590
Electrons
excitation, 553–555
nuclear shielding by, 514–517
valence, 5
wave properties, 53–54
Electrophiles, 42, 146
Electrophilic addition. *See* Addition reactions
Electrophilic aromatic substitution, 456–509
arylamines, 883–885
azo coupling, 891, 893, 923
benzene, 457–470
mechanism, 457–459
Friedel-Crafts acylation, 468
Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 465
halogenation, 462–465
nitration, 459–460
sulfonation, 461–462
in phenols, 478, 920–923
substituent effects in, 470–489, 477*t,* 490, 496–498
summary tables, 457*t,* 497*t,* 922–923*t*
Electrophoresis
amino acids, 1039
and nucleic acid sequencing, 1107
Electropositivity, 10
Electrostatic particles, 7
Electrostatic potential maps, 11, 13, 65
acetic acid, 739
acetylene, 345
adenine, 1084
allyl anion, 381
allyl cation, 372
aniline, 861
benzene, 411, 471, 483
benzyne, 508
1-butene, 690
tert-butyl cation, 150, 421
calicene, 451
chloromethane, 137
crown, 655
18-crown-6, and K^+ complex, 655
ethanol, 37
ethyl cation, 150
ethylene, 221, 345
fluorine, 11, 13
fluorobenzene, 483
glucose, 946
glycine, 1032
hydrogen, 11, 13

Electrostatic potential maps, *cont.*
hydrogen bonding
in acetic acid, 739
in ethanol, 139
between ethanol and water, 140
in phenol, 916–917
between phenol and water, 916–917
hydrogen chloride, 221
hydrogen fluoride, 11, 13
isoamyl acetate, 770
isopropyl cation, 150
lactic acid, 736
lithium hydride, 13
methane, 25
methanethiol, 635
methanol, 137, 635
methylamine, 858, 861
methyl cation, 150
methylcopper, 580
methylenetriphenylphosphorane, 714
methyl fluoride, 580
methyllithium, 580
1-methyl-1-phenylethyl cation, 421
nitronium ion, 459
ozone, 19–20
phenol, 916–917
propanal, 690
propanoyl cation, 467–469
propyl anion, 381
pyridine and pyrrole, 442
sodium stearate, 746
sulfur trioxide, 461
toluene, 471
2,2,2-trifluoroethanol, 37
water, 916–917
Elimination-addition mechanism, 507–508
Elimination reactions, 176–215
β, 188–206
anti, 202–204, 208
competition with substitution, 326–329, 334
dehydration of alcohols, 189–197, 208, 386
dehydrogenation of alkanes, 179, 188–189, 386
dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides, 197–210, 217–218, 219, 386
dehydrohalogeriation of geminal and vicinal dihalides, 350–351, 362
E1 mechanism, 192–193, 205–206, 208
E2 mechanism, 193, 199–204, 208, 219, 326–329
Hofmann elimination, 881–883, 899
isotope effects, 204–205, 209
potential energy diagram, 175
Zaitsev rule, 190, 198, 208
in preparation of
alkenes, 179, 188–208, 217–218
alkenylbenzenes, 426
alkynes, 350–351, 362
dienes, 386, 398
Emulsin, 970
Enamines
preparation, 712–714
synthetic applications, 910–913
Enantiomeric excess, 268
Enantiomers, 263–264, 296
configurational notation
D-L, 947–948
R-S, 271–273
bromochlorofluoromethane, 263–264, 273
2-butanol, 271
conformational, 286
and Fischer projections, 273–275, 296, 949–950
formation, 279–281
optical rotations, 268–269
physical properties, 275–276
Enantioselective synthesis, 600, 622, 1040–1041
using amino acids, 1081–1083
Enantiotopic, 280, 304–305, 525
Endergonic, 229, 1091
End group analysis, 1053–1057
Endorphins, 1049
Endo rule, 394
Endothermic reaction
relation to bond dissociation enthalpies, 161
Endothermic reactions, 7
Enediyne antibiotics, 343–344
Energy of activation, 100
and carbocation stability, 152–153
in reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides, 144–149, 150, 151–152, 152–153
for rotation about double bond, 180–181
and single-bond rotation, 100, 384–385
and temperature, 100
Enkephalins, 1051
Enol(s)
acetyl coenzyme A, 993
intermediates in
α halogenation of aldehydes and ketones, 904
hydration of alkynes, 357–358, 364
purines and pyrimidines, 1085–1086, 1097, 1113
Enolate
nucleophiles, 827
thermodynamic, 826
Enolate ions, 820–857
Enthalpy, 81, 113, 161, 229
Entropy, 113, 229, 744
Envelope conformation, 106, 124
Enzymatic resolution, 292, 317
Enzymes
aconitase, 766
alcohol dehydrogenase, 631
aminotransferases, 1046
carbonic anhydrase, 42, 748
carboxypeptidases, 1052–1053, 1071–1073
choline acetyltransferase, 818
chymotrypsin, 1052–1053
cyclooxygenases, 1003
dehydratase, 190
emulsin, 970
esterases, 292
fatty acid synthetase, 998
fumarase, 281
haloalkane dehalogenase, 317
kinases, 1090
lactase, 970–971
lactate dehydrogenase, 632, 716–718
lipases, 292
maltase, 970
monooxygenases, 667
nitric oxide synthase, 1074
penicillin acyl transferase, 801
restriction enzymes, 1107
reverse transcriptase, 1106
RNA polymerase, 1102
serotonin *N*-acetyltransferase, 817
Taq polymerase, 1111
transaminases, 1046
transpeptidase, 801
trypsin, 1052–1053
Epibatidine, 869
Epichlorohydrin, 171
Epinephrine, 669–670, 868, 1045, 1090
Epoxidation
alkenes, 239–240, 251, 660–661, 674
biological, 667
(E)- and *(Z)*-2-butene, 288–289
enantioselective, 660–661
propene, 279–280
Epoxides
nomenclature, 239, 651
preparation, 239–240, 251, 279–280, 660–662, 674*t*
reactions, 662–667
in biological processes, 667
with Grignard reagents, 620–621, 638, 664
structure and bonding in, 652
1,2-Epoxycyclohexane
hydrolysis, 665
preparation, 662
reactions
with hydrogen bromide, 665
with sodium azide, 875
1,2-Epoxypropane
chirality center in, 266, 279–280
preparation, 664
Equatorial bonds in cyclohexane, 108–110, 125
Equilibrium constants
hydration of aldehydes and ketones, 696*t*
relation to G°, 113
cyanohydrin formation, 701
Ergosterol, 1016–1017
Ernst, Richard R., 514
Erythro, stereochemical prefix, 283
Erythromycin, 757–758
D-Erythrose, 949–950
furanose forms, 952–955
L-Erythrose, 949–950
Essential amino acids, 1031, 1032–1033
Essential fatty acids, 1003
Essential oils, 1005
Esterification
amino acids, 1041–1042, 1061
Fischer, 625–627, 640, 754–756, 782
glycerol, 999–1001
phenols, 923–925
Esters
infrared spectra, 551, 552, 805–806
lactones, 757–758, 781
naturally occurring, 780–781
nomenclature, 771–772
nuclear magnetic resonance spectra, 805–807
physical properties, 780–782
preparation by Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 732, 782
preparation from alcohols
with acid anhydrides, 626, 640, 779, 808

with acyl chlorides, 625–627, 640, 777, 782, 808
by Fischer esterification, 625–627, 640, 754–756, 782
reactions, 783–791, 783*t*
with ammonia and amines, 783, 790–791
with Grignard reagents, 616, 836–838
hydrolysis, acid catalyzed, 783–786, 808
hydrolysis, base promoted, 783, 786–790, 808
reduction, 620, 783
resonance in, 774
thioesters, 816–818
waxes, 1001–1002
Estradiol, 1018
Estrogens, 1018
Ethane, 53, 57–58
acidity and pK_a, 34, 346, 347
biochemical oxidation, 266
bond angles and bond distances in, 58, 346
bond dissociation enthalpies in, 346
bonding in, 61, 86
chemical shifts, ^{1}H, 517
chlorination, 163
conformations, 97–101, 123
dehydrogenation, 179, 230
in natural gas, 58
structure, 8, 346
Ethanol, 135, 138, 615
acidity and pK_a, 34, 36–37, 741–742
and benzaldehyde, acetal from, 703
biological oxidation, 749
conversion to diethyl ether, 624
dehydration, 189
dipole moment, 138, 862
by fermentation, 615
hydrogen bonding in, 138–139
industrial preparation, 615
physical properties, 137–141, 615
reduction of aryl diazonium salts by, 889–891, 901
Ethene, 176
Ethers, 650–660, 926–932
as anesthetics, 675
crown ethers, 673
^{1}H chemical shifts, 671–672, 675
infrared spectra, 551, 670–671
mass spectra, 672
nomenclature, 650–651, 672
physical properties, 652–654, 672
preparation
from alcohols, 640, 655–656, 674*t*
Williamson ether synthesis, 657–659, 674, 926
reactions
Claisen rearrangement of allyl aryl ethers, 931–932, 937
cleavage by hydrogen halides, 659–661, 673, 930–931, 937
metalation of aryl ethers, 943–945
oxidation, 658
structure and bonding in, 652
Ethyl acetate
^{1}H NMR spectrum, 805–807
reaction with pentylmagnesium bromide, 616
saponification, 786–787
Ethyl acetoacetate, 838
acidity and pK_a, 33
Ethylamine, basicity, 864
Ethylbenzene
benzylic bromination, 423
dehydrogenation, 426, 467
^{1}H NMR chemical shifts, 519
Ethyl benzoate
hydrolysis, 786
Ethyl bromide, ^{1}H NMR spectrum, 528
Ethyl cation, electrostatic potential maps, 150
Ethyl chloride, 163
Ethyl cinnamate, 781
Ethylene, 53, 176, 179
acidity and pK_a, 34, 346, 347
biosynthesis, 179
bond dissociation enthalpies in, 346
bonding in, 9–10, 61–63, 86, 178–180
electrostatic potential map, 221, 345
^{1}H chemical shift, 519
heat of hydrogenation, 217, 220
as industrial chemical, 179, 248, 359, 467
π-molecular orbitals, 395
natural occurrence, 179
preparation of
dehydration of ethyl alcohol, 189
dehydrogenation of ethane, 179, 188–189
reactions
alkylation of benzene, 467
with bromine, 238
dehydrogenation, 343
hydration, 227
hydrogenation, 216, 230
metathesis, 600–605
polymerization, 245–247, 603–604
structure, 61, 178, 346*t*
Ethylene glycol, 248
polyesters, 1139
Ethylene oxide, 122, 239, 248, 651
industrial preparation, 248
reactions with nucleophiles, 620–621, 638, 662–667
structure, 652
Ethyl fluoroacetate
reaction with ammonia and amines, 783, 790–791
Ethyl group, 72
spin-spin splitting in, 528
Ethylmagnesium bromide, reaction of
with cyclohexanone, 695
Ethyloxonium ion as intermediate
in dehydration of ethyl alcohol, 193
in formation of diethyl ether, 624
Ethyl propanoate
saponification, 786–787
Ethyl *p*-toluenesulfonate, 329
Ethynyl group, 344
Eugenol, 919–920
Exergonic, 229, 1091
Exothermic reaction, 81
relation to bond dissociation enthalpies, 161

F

Faraday, Michael, 387, 407
Farnesol, 1006, 1007, 1009–1010
diphosphate, 1009
Fats, 781, 994
Fatty acids, 343, 781, 786–787, 994–997, 995–996*t*
biosynthesis, 823, 997–998
essential, 1003
esters, 781, 999–1001
hydrogenation, 994–997
trans-, 994–997
Fatty acid synthetase, 998
FD&C dyes (Red No. 40, Yellow No. 5, and Yellow No. 6), 892–893
Fermentation, 615
Ferrocene, 590–591
Fibroin, 1066–1067
Fibrous proteins, 1069–1070
Field effect, 744
Fieser, Louis F., 952
Fieser, Mary, 952
Fingerprint region of infrared spectrum, 547–548
"First point of difference rule," IUPAC nomenclature, 75, 413, 859
Fischer, Emil, 273, 947–948
determination of glucose structure, 989–991
Fischer, Ernst O., 601
Fischer glycosidation, 965–969
Fischer projections, 273–275, 283, 285–286, 296
α-amino acids, 1035–1036, 1076
carbohydrates, 947–948, 983
meso stereoisomer, 285
tartaric acids, 290
Flagpole hydrogens, 107–108
Flavanoids, 920–921
Fleming, Alexander, 800
Florey, Howard, 800
Flory, Paul, 1126
Fluid mosaic model, 1000
of cell membrane, 1004
9-Fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, protecting group in peptide synthesis, 1061
Fluorescence, 1052–1053
Fluorinated hydrocarbons, 140, 1149
Fluorine
addition to, alkenes, 234, 236
electronegativity, 10–11
electron structure F_2, 8
electrostatic potential map, 11, 13
magnetic resonance spectroscopy of ^{19}F, 572
reaction with alkanes, 156, 161
Fluorobenzene
physical properties, 917
1-Fluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene, 1054
Fluoroethane, attractive forces in, 138
p-Fluoronitrobenzene, nucleophilic aromatic substitution in, 491, 492–494, 928
m-Fluorophenol, bromination, 920–921
p-Fluorophenol, *O*-acylation, 924
Formal charge, 13–15, 44
Formaldehyde, 241, 687
bond angles, 689
hydration, 697
industrial preparation, 615, 693
polymerization, 1125
reaction with Grignard reagents, 585
structure and bonding, 10, 689–690
VSEPR and molecular geometry, 24

Formaldoxime, 18
Formamide, 44, 775, 793
Formic acid, 48, 738
  natural occurrence, 749
  structure and bonding, 739
Fourier-transform spectroscopy
  infrared (FT-IR), 547
  nuclear magnetic resonance (FT-NMR), 514–515, 541–545
Fragmentation in mass spectrometry, 558
Fragment condensation in peptide synthesis, 1062
Franklin, Rosalind, 1096–1097
Free energy (G), 229
  and bioenergetics, 1092–1093
  and equilibrium constant, 113, 228, 744
Free radical, 157–168, 170
  allylic, 370, 377–380, 397
  benzylic, 422–423
  bonding in, 158, 170
  chain reactions, 161–167, 170
  combination and disproportionation, 1133, 1146
  as intermediates in
    addition of hydrogen bromide to alkenes, 242–244, 251
    allylic halogenation, 377–380, 397
    benzylic halogenation, 422–423
    halogenation of alkanes, 156–167, 175, 177
  stabilization by alkyl groups, 158, 170
Freon 114, 46
Friedel, Charles, 465
Friedel-Crafts reaction
  acylation, 776
    with acid anhydrides, 468
    with acyl chlorides, 457, 467–469, 922
    anisole, 497, 693
    benzene, 467–470, 486, 487
    bromobenzene, 486
    2-ethylacetanilide, 885
    furan, 489–490
    mechanism, 468
    naphthalene, 488–489
    phenol, 922
  alkylation
    with alcohols, 922
    with alkenes, 467
    with alkyl halides, 457, 465–467, 497
    benzene, 465–467, 497
    o-cresol, 922
    scope and limitations, 498*t*
Fries rearrangement, 925
Frontier orbitals, 395
Frost, Arthur A., 433
Frost's circle, 433–434
D-Fructose, 947, 962
L-Fucose, 963
Fukui, Kenichi, 396
Fullerenes, 416–417
Fumarase, 281
Fumaric acid, 188, 281
Functional class nomenclature
  alcohols, 135–136
  alkyl halides, 134–135
  ethers, 650–651
  ketones, 688–689
Functional groups, 132–134, 167
  and infrared spectroscopy, 510, 547–548, 563
  tables, 134*t*
  transformation, by nucleophilic substitution, 307–310
Furan, 440, 444
  bonding in, 443
  electrophilic aromatic substitution in, 489–490
Furanose forms of carbohydrates, 952–955
Furberg, Sven, 1097
Furchgott, Robert F., 1074
Furfural, 440, 718, 750

G

G°
  relation to free energy, 113
G (symbol for free energy), 113, 229
Gabriel, Siegmund, 873–874
Gabriel synthesis, 873–874, 897
D-Galactose, 951, 957–958
Gamma rays, 512
Gasoline, 76–77
Gauche conformation, 98, 101, 112, 123–124
G-coupled protein receptors (GCPRs), 1075
Geminal coupling, 531, 562
Geminal dihalides
  by hydrogen halide addition to alkynes, 356, 364
  in preparation of alkynes, 350–351, 362
Generic names of drugs, 70
Genetic code, 1103*t*
Genome, 1095
Genomics, 1108
Gentiobiose, 978–979
Geometric isomers, 114
Geosmin, 121
Geraniol, 211, 1009–1010
  diphosphate, 1009–1010
Geranylgeraniol, 1009–1010
Gibbs, J. Willard, 229
Gilbert, Walter, 1107
Gilman, Henry, 592
Gilman reagents, 592
Global warming, 59
Globular proteins, 1069–1070
α-D-Glucopyranose, 956–960
β-D-Glucopyranose, 956–960
D-Glucose, 129, 947, 951
  conversion to D-fructose, 972
  electrostatic potential map, 946
  Fischer determination of structure, 989–991
  metabolism, 823, 993
  methyl glycosides, 965–969
  mutarotation, 958–960
  natural occurrence, 950
  pyranose form, 956–957
L-Glutamic acid, 1034
  biochemical transformations, 1046–1049, 1092–1093
  in enantioselective synthesis, 1081–1083
  isoelectric point, 1038
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
L-Glutamine, 1034
  formation, 1092–1093
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
Glutathione, 636
D-Glyceraldehyde
  Fischer projection formula, 947–948
L-Glyceraldehyde, 947–948
Glycerol
  esters, 781, 786–787, 994–996, 999–1001, 1021
Glycidol, 661, 677
Glycine, 1031, 1035
  acetylation, 1041–1042
  acid-base properties, 33, 1036–1040
  ethyl ester, 1062
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
Glycolysis, 833, 992
Glycosidation, silver-assisted, 980
Glycosides, 965–969, 984
  cyanogenic, 701–703
Goodyear, Charles, 387, 1122
Grain alcohol, 135
Grandisol, 210
Graphite, 416
Green fluorescent protein (GFP), 1068
Greenhouse gases, 59
Grignard, Victor, 581, 588
Grignard reagents
  acetylenic, 586–587
  basicity, 582–583
  preparation, 581–582
  reactions
    with aldehydes, 585, 694, 695
    carboxylation, 751, 762
    with epoxides, 620–621, 638, 662
    with esters, 616, 790–791
    with formaldehyde, 585, 616
    with ketones, 585, 695
    with nitriles, 805, 809
Grubbs, Robert H., 600
Grubbs catalyst, 601
Guaiacol, 931
Guanine, 1087, 1095, 1112
Guanosine, 1089
D-Gulose, 951
Gum benzoin, 407
Gutta percha, 387
Gutte, Bernd, 1064–1065
Gynocardin, 703

H

h (symbol for Planck's constant), 511
H° (symbol for enthalpy), 81
H°
  and bond dissociation enthalpy, 161
  and heats of reaction, 81
Half-chair conformation, 106
α-Halo carboxylic acids
  reaction with ammonia, 872
Haloform reaction, 842

Halogen addition
to alkenes, 234–238, 250–251, 288–290
to alkynes, 358–359, 364
to conjugated dienes, 390–391
Halogenation
aldehydes and ketones, 904
biosynthetic, 464
electrophilic aromatic substitution, 457, 462–465, 479–480, 486, 487, 497
free radical
alkanes, 156–167, 170
allylic, 377–380, 396, 397
benzylic, 422–423
Halohydrins
conversion to epoxides, 660–662, 674
preparation, from alkenes, 238, 250–251
Halonium ion, 236, 251
Halothane, 46
Hammett, Lewis P., 453
Hammett equation, 453–455
Hammond, George S., 145
Hammond's postulate, 145, 166, 175, 459
Hassel, Odd, 107, 960
Haworth, Norman, 953–954
Haworth formulas, 953–954
Heatley, Norman, 800
Heat of combustion, 81
aldehydes and ketones, 691
alkanes, 81*t,* 87
alkenes, 184–185
cycloalkanes, 105*t*
dimethylcyclohexanes, 115*t*
cis and *trans*- 1,2-dimethylcyclopropane, 114
Heat of formation, 83
Heat of hydrogenation, 217
alkadienes, 382–383
alkenes, 220*t*
alkynes, 352–354
allene, 383
benzene, 409–410
butene isomers, 220
1,,3-cyclohexadiene, 409–410
(*Z*)-1,3,5-hexatriene, 410
Heat of reaction, 83, 161
Heck, Richard F., 986
Heeger, Alan, 1145
Heisenberg uncertainty principle, 4
α-Helix, 1066–1069
Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction, 824, 872
Heme, 1073
Hemiacetal, 703
cyclic, of carbohydrates, 952–958
Hemoglobin, 1074–1075
Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, 741–742, 863
Heptanal
cyclic acetal, 704
oxime, 748
preparation, 628
in reductive amination, 877
Heptanes, 77
1–Heptanol
oxidation, 628
reaction with hydrogen bromide, 142
2-Heptanone, 366
3-Heptanone, 720
Heptyl group, 72
Heroin, 868
Hertz, Heinrich R., 511
Heteroatoms, 18
Heterocyclic compounds
aliphatic, 122, 125, 651
amines, 866–867
aromatic, 440–443, 445–446, 1085–1088
electrophilic aromatic substitution in, 489–490
nucleophilic aromatic substitution in, 494–495
Heterogeneous reactions, 217
Heterolytic bond cleavage, 158, 307
Hexafluoroacetone, 697
Hexafluorobenzene, 493–494, 938
Hexafluoroethane, 140
Hexanamide, infrared spectrum, 551
Hexane
conformation, 104
infrared spectrum, 548–549
Hexanenitrile, infrared spectrum, 550
Hexanoic acid, 749
infrared spectrum, 550
2-Hexanone, infrared spectrum, 550
Hexanoyl-ACP, 998
(Z)-1,3,5-Hexatriene, 410
1-Hexene
heat of hydrogenation, 220
infrared spectrum, 548–549
Hexylamine, infrared spectrum, 551
Hexylmagnesium bromide, reaction with
acetaldehyde, 585
ethylene oxide, 620
High-density lipoprotein (HDL), 1016–1017
High-density polyethylene (HDPE), 1128–1129
Highly Active Antiretroviral Therapy (HAART), 1106
High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), 1052–1053
Histamine, 1045
L-Histidine, 867
decarboxylation, 1043
isoelectric point, 1038
structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
Histone, 1099
Hodgkin, Dorothy Crowfoot, 591
Hoffmann, Roald, 396
Hofmann, August W. von, 407, 882
Hofmann elimination, 881–883
Hofmann rule, 881–883
Holley, Robert W., 1103
HOMO (highest occupied molecular orbital), 393, 420
Homogeneous catalytic hydrogenation, 597–600
Homologous series, 66, 81, 87
HOMO-LUMO interactions
in bimolecular nucleophilic substitution, 312–313
in cycloaddition, 395–396
HOMO-LUMO transitions in ultraviolet-visible spectroscopy, 553–555
Homolytic bond cleavage, 158
Homopolymer, 1125
Hückel, Erich, 372, 433
Hückel approximation, 372
Hückel's rule, 433–440, 442–443, 445, 447, 794
Hughes, Edward D., 310, 317, 339
studies of reaction mechanisms, 199
Human Genome Project, 1108
Human insulin, 25
Humulene, 597
Hund's rule, 5
Hydration
aldehydes and ketones, equilibria in, 696–700, 722
alkenes
acid-catalyzed, 226–230, 250, 616
hydroboration-oxidation, 231–234, 250, 616
oxymercuration, 258–261
alkynes, 357–358, 364, 693
enzyme-catalyzed, of fumaric acid, 281
Hydrazine
reaction
with aldehydes and ketones, 748
with *N*-alkylphthalimides, 873–874
in Wolff-Kishner reduction, 470, 695
Hydrazones, 748
Hydride shift
alcohol dehydration, 196
cholesterol biosynthesis, 1015
electrophilic addition to alkenes, 225–226
Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 466, 497
in S_NI reactions, 321–322
Hydroboration-oxidation, 231–234, 250, 616
Hydrocarbons, classes of, 53
Hydroformylation, 695
Hydrogen
bonding in, 8, 53–56
nuclear spin states, 512–513
Hydrogenation
aldehydes and ketones, 639
alkadienes, 382–383
alkenes
heterogeneous catalysis, 216–217, 250
homogeneous catalysis, 597–600
alkenylbenzenes, 426, 447
alkyl azides, 874–875
alkynes, 352–354, 363
benzene, 409–410
carbon monoxide, 615
catalysts for, 216–217, 353–354, 597–600, 875
fatty acid esters, 994–997
imines, 878–879
ketones, 617, 639
mechanism, 218, 994–997
nitriles, 875
nitroarenes, 875–876
stereochemistry, 290
vegetable oils, 994–997
Hydrogen bonding, 139
alcohols, 137–141, 168
amides, 792–793
amines, 862
carboxylic acids, 739–740
DNA, 1096–1098

Hydrogen bonding, *cont.*
intramolecular
o-nitrophenol, 916–917
peroxyacetic acid, 240
salicylate ion, 926
peptides and proteins, 1066–1067, 1070
phenols, 916–917
and solvent effects on rate of nucleophilic substitution, 321–326
Hydrogen bromide
acidity and pK_a, 33, 35, 39
electrophilic addition
alkynes, 364
conjugated dienes, 388–390
free-radical addition, alkenes, 242–244, 251
free-radical addition, alkenes
alkynes, 356–357
reaction with
alcohols, 141–142, 152–154, 169
epoxides, 665
ethers, 659–661, 673, 930–931
Hydrogen chloride
addition to
alkenes, 222, 225–226, 250
alkynes, 356
conjugated dienes, 389, 398
electrostatic potential map, 221
pK_a, 33, 35
reaction with alcohols, 141–149, 169
Hydrogen cyanide
acidity and pK_a, 32, 33, 327
addition to, aldehydes and ketones, 700–704, 722, 802
and cyanogenic glycosides, 701–703
Hydrogen-deuterium exchange
alcohols, 534
carboxylic acids, 760
Hydrogen fluoride, 9*t,* 10–11, 13
addition to alkynes, 356
electrostatic potential map, 13
pK_a, 33, 35
Hydrogen halides
acidity, 35
addition to
alkenes, 221–226, 242–244, 250–251*t*
alkenylbenzenes, 427, 446
alkynes, 356, 364
conjugated dienes, 388–390, 398
electrophilic addition, alkynes, 355–356
reaction with
alcohols, 141–142, 152–154, 331
ethers, 659–661, 673, 930–931, 937
Hydrogen iodide
addition to alkynes, 356
cleavage of ethers, 937
pK_a, 33, 35
reaction with alcohols, 141
Hydrogenolysis, of benzyl esters, 1060–1061
Hydrogen peroxide
conformations, 96–97
oxidation of dialkyl sulfides by, 668
oxidation of organoboranes by, 231, 235
Hydrogen sulfide
acidity and pK_a, 33, 327
anion, as a nucleophile, 309, 327
boiling point, 634
Hydrolysis
acetals, 704–707704–707, 748
acid anhydrides, 779
acyl chlorides, 777
alkyl halides, 315–320, 616
amides, 796–800, 883–884
2-bromooctane, stereochemistry, 312, 320–321
tert-butyl bromide, 317–318
cyanohydrins, 753
esters, 783–789, 808
nitriles, 752–753, 762, 803–804
peptides and proteins, 1052–1053
Hydronium ion, 31
pK_a, 33, 39
Hydrophilic effect, 746
Hydrophobic effect, 80, 746, 1069
Hydroquinone, 914–915, 933
Hydroxide ion
as base, 41, 42, 347, 635, 745
as nucleophile, 42, 309–312, 316, 698–699, 786–790, 799
4-Hydroxybutanal, 704
Hydroxylamine, 748
Hydroxyproline, 1034
Hyperconjugation, 151–152
Hypophosphorous acid, 889–891, 901
Hz (symbol for Hertz), unit of frequency, 511

I

Ibuprofen, 171, 277, 1004
Icosanoic acid, 995
Icosanoids, 1002–1005
D-Idose, 951
Ignarro, Louis J., 1074
Illuminating gas, 407
Imidazole, 441, 443, 866–867
Imides, 794
Imines
in addition of Grignard reagents to nitriles, 805
in biological chemistry, 710–711, 1041–1049
as intermediates in reductive amination, 878–879
preparation, 707–712, 722
Iminium ion, 879
Indene, 427
Index of hydrogen deficiency, 560–561
Indigo, 104, 859
Indole, 440–441
Induced dipole, 92
Induced-dipole/induced-dipole forces, 77–80, 87, 137–141
Inductive effects, 37–38, 45, 151–152
and acidity, 37–38, 740, 742–745
alkyl groups
in aldehydes and ketones, 697
in alkenes, 184–186, 207
in carbocations, 151–152
electron-withdrawing, 825
trifluoromethyl group, 37, 474
Industrial preparation
acetaldehyde, 693
acetic acid, 749–750
acetone, 693, 919–920
acetylene, 343
aldehydes, 695
benzene, 407
1,3-butadiene, 386
chloromethanes, 156
1,2-epoxypropane, 664
ethylene, 179, 188
ethylene oxide, 248
formaldehyde, 615, 693
methanol, 615
phenol, 919–920
propene, 179, 188
styrene, 426, 467
terephthalic acid, 750
Infrared spectra
benzene, 549
butanal, 718–719
butylamine, 894–895
p-cresol, 934
cyclohexanol, 637
dipropyl ether, 671
hexane, 548–549
1-hexanol, 550
2-hexanone, 550
1-hexene, 548–549
hexylbenzene, 548–549
4-phenylbutanoic acid, 760
Infrared (IR) spectroscopy, 510, 545–552, 563
alcohols, 549, 637
aldehydes and ketones, 549, 718–719
amides, 551
amines, 551, 894–895
carboxylic acids, 549, 760, 805–806
characteristic absorption frequencies table, 552*t*
epoxides, 670–671
esters, 551
ethers, 551
nitriles, 549, 805–806
phenols, 934
thiols, 637
Ingold, Christopher
stereochemical notation, 181, 271
studies of reaction mechanisms, 147, 154, 199, 310, 317, 459
Initiation step, 156, 161–163, 245
Initiators of free-radical reactions
addition of HBr to alkenes, 242
benzylic bromination, 423
polymerization of alkenes, 245, 1131
Inorganic chemistry, 3
Insulin, 1052, 1055–1056, 1112
Integration and NMR peak area measurement, 523
Intramolecular forces, 82
Inversion of configuration
complete, in S_N2 reactions, 311–312, 334
partial, in S_N1 reactions, 320–321, 334
Iodination, 156, 463
Iodolactonization, 768–769
Iodomethylzinc iodide, 588
Ionic bonds, 6–8, 43
Ionization energy, 7
α- and β-Ionone, 1026
Ionophores, 656, 1000
Ions, 6, 15
Iron, reduction of nitroarenes by, 875
Iron(III) salts as catalysts in halogenation of arenes, 457, 462–465
Isoamyl acetate, 171, 770

Isobutane, 65
Isobutyl chloride, 165, 466
Isobutylene, 1138
Isobutyl group, 73
Isocitric acid, 766
Isoelectric point, 1038
Isoelectronic, 46
Isolated diene, 381–382, 397
L-Isoleucine, 1031
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
Isomers, 44
  alkanes, 65, 66–67, 69–71, 87
  alkenes, 180–181, 207
  classification, 295*t*
  constitutional, 15, 44, 65
  keto-enol, 357
  number, 67*t*
Isopentane, 66–67
Isopentenyl diphosphate, 1008–1013
Isoprene, 387, 1005
Isoprene rule, 1005–1008
Isoprene units, 1006, 1013
Isopropenyl group, 177
Isopropyl alcohol, 135
  pK_a, 34, 36
  properties, 615
Isopropylbenzene, 631
  conversion to phenol, 920
  nitration, 875–876
Isopropyl chloride, ^{1}H NMR spectrum, 529
Isopropyl group, 72
  size, 112, 313–315
  spin-spin splitting in, 530
Isopropyl radical, 160
Isoquinoline, 440
Isotactic polymers, 293, 603
Isotope effects, 204–205, 209, 460
Isotopes
  in biosynthetic studies, 1012–1013
  H-D exchange in carboxylic acids, 760
  in study of reaction mechanisms
    bromine addition to alkenes, 236
    Claisen rearrangement, 931–932
    ester hydrolysis, 786, 787–788
    esterification, 754
    nucleophilic aliphatic substitution, 340
    nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 507
Isotopic clusters in mass spectrometry, 557
IUPAC (International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry), 23, 68

J

Jenner, Edward, 981
Joule (SI unit of energy), 7

K

K (symbol for equilibrium constant), relation to G°, 113
Karplus relationship, 576
Kekulé, August, 407–409
α-Keratin, 1067, 1069
Kerosene, 76
β-Keto acids, decarboxylation, 759–760, 763
Keto-enol isomerism, 357
α-Ketoglutaric acid, 1046–1049
Ketones
  chemical shifts, ^{1}H and 13C, 719–729
  infrared absorption frequencies, 550, 718
  naturally occurring, 692
  nomenclature, 688–689, 721
  physical properties, 691
  preparation, 691–695
    by hydration of alkynes, 357–358, 364, 693
    from nitriles, 805, 810
    by oxidation of secondary alcohols, 628, 639, 693
    by ozonolysis of alkenes, 693
  reactions
    acetal formation, 703–706, 722
    Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 732, 782
    Clemmensen reduction, 469, 695
    cyanohydrin formation, 700–704, 722
    with derivatives of ammonia, 712*t*
    enamine formation, 712–714
    with Grignard reagents, 585*t*, 695
    halogenation, 904
    hydration, 696–700, 722
    imine formation, 708, 722
    with organolithium reagents, 586–587, 616, 695
    reduction, 617–620, 639, 695
    reductive amination, 878–879
    Wittig reaction, 714–716, 723
    Wolff-Kishner reduction, 470, 695
  spectroscopy, 719–721
  structure and bonding, 689–691, 721
Ketoses, 947–948, 962–963, 983
Kevlar, 1126
Kharasch, Morris S., 242
Kinetic control, 389
  O-acylation of phenols, 924–925
  addition, to conjugated dienes, 389
Kinetic resolution, 292
Kinetic studies, 100
  elimination reactions, 199
  ester hydrolysis, 787–788
  isotope effects, 204, 209, 460
  nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 492
  nucleophilic substitution, 310, 317–320, 334
Knorr, Edward, 979
Knowles, William S., 598, 600
Kodel fibers, 1148
Koenigs, William, 979
Koenigs-Knorr reaction, 979
Kolbe, Hermann, 925
Kolbe-Schmitt reaction, 925–926, 936
Kossel, Albrecht, 7
Kossel, Walther, 7
Kroto, Harold W., 416

L

Lactams, 800–801
Lactase, 970–971
Lactic acid, 738
  biological oxidation, 632
  electrostatic potential map, 736
  (S) enantiomer by enzyme-catalyzed hydrolysis, 317
  reduction, 716–718
Lactones, 757–758, 781
  preparation of, by electrophilic addition to unsaturated carboxylic acids, 768–769
Lactose, 970–971
Lanosterol, 1013–1015
Lapworth, Arthur, 822–823
Lattice energy, 7
Lauric acid, 992, 995
Leaving groups
  basicity of, 310, 329*t*
  in dehydrohalogenation, 199
  halides, 307–314, 334*t*
  nitrogen of diazonium ions, 886–887
  in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 491
  p-toluenesulfonates, 329–331
Le Bel, Joseph Achille, 262, 268
Le Châtelier's principle, 228–229, 601
Lenthionine, 122
Letheby, Henry, 1144
Letsinger, Robert, 1150
L-Leucine, 1031
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
Leucine enkephalin, 1051
Leukotrienes, 728, 1004–1005
Levorotatory, 269
Levulinic acid, 766
Lewis, Gilbert N., 8
Lewis acid, 41–42
  as electrophile, 42, 146
Lewis approach, 2
Lewis base, 41–42
  as nucleophile, 42, 146, 152–154, 315–316
Lewis structural formulas, 8–24, 44
  formal charges in, 13–15, 44
  multiple bonding in, 43
  and resonance, 19–23, 44
  writing, 16*t*
Lexan, 1141
Limonene, 266, 1010
Linalool, 265
Linamarin, 965–966
Lindlar palladium, 353–354, 363
Linear combination of atomic orbitals-molecular orbital (LCAO-MO) method, 56
Linear α-olefins, 603, 695
Linear polymers, 1124, 1127–1128
Linoleic acid, 343, 995, 1003
Linolenic acid, 996
Lipids, 992–1029
Lipoic acid, 122, 636
Lipophilic, 746
Liposomes, 1001
Lipoxygenase, 1005
Lister, Joseph, 917
Lithium
  diarlcuprates, 593
  electronegativity, 581
Lithium aluminum hydride, reducing agent for
  aldehydes and ketones, 617–620, 639, 695
  alkyl azides, 874, 897
  amides, 877, 898
  carboxylic acids, 619–620
  esters, 619–620
  nitriles, 875, 897
  table, 639*t*

Lithium diisopropylamide (LDA), 831, 833, 837
Lithium diorganocuprates, preparation, 607
Lithium hydride, electrostatic potential map, 13
"Living" polymer, 1135–1137, 1143, 1147
Localized electrons, 20
Locant, numerical prefix in IUPAC nomenclature, 71–72, 75, 177
Loschmidt, Johann Josef, 407
Lovastatin, 814, 1016–1017
Low-density lipoprotein (LDL), 1016–1017
Low-density polyethylene (LDPE), 1128–1129
Lowest unoccupied molecular orbital. *See* LUMO
Lowry, Thomas M., 30
Luciferin, 441
LUMO (lowest unoccupied molecular orbital), 373, 377, 420
Lycopene, 553–555, 1019
Lynen, Feodor, 1014
L-Lysine
  electrophoresis, 1039
  isoelectric point, 1038
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
D-Lyxose, 951

M

MacDiarmid, Alan, 1144–1145
Macrocyclic polyethers, 654
Macrolide antibiotics, 757
Macromolecule, 1122
Magnesium, reaction of with alkyl and aryl halides, 581–582
Magnetic field
  induced, and nuclear shielding, 514–523
  strength, 512–514
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 535–536
Main-group elements, 6
Maleic anhydride, 391–392, 398
(S)-Malic acid, 281, 291–292, 749
Malonic acid, 738
  acidity, 747
  decarboxylation, 758–760, 763
Malonic ester synthesis, 838
Malonyl coenzyme A, 993, 997–998, 1012
Maltase, 970
Maltose, 969–971
Mammalian fatty acid synthase (mFAS), 998
Mandelic acid, 738
D-Mannose, 951
Marijuana, 920–921
Marjoram oil, 48
Markovnikov, Vladimir, 222, 225
Markovnikov's rule, 222
  in addition
    to alkenes, 221–224
    to alkynes, 356–357, 358, 364
Mass spectrometer, 555–556
Mass spectrometry, 555–559, 563
  alcohols, 638
  aldehydes and ketones, 720
  amines, 894–895
  carboxylic acid derivatives, 807
  carboxylic acids, 761
  ethers, 672
  and gas chromatography, 535–536
  peptides, 1058
  phenols, 935
  thiols, 638
Mass spectrometry (MS), 511
Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization mass spectrometry (MALDI), 1058
Mechanisms
  acetal formation, 705, 965–969
  Ad_E3, 356
  Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 732
  biosynthesis
    amino acids by transamination, 1046–1049
    cholesterol, 1013–1015
    fatty acids, 997–998
    terpenes, 1008–1013
  Birch reduction, 429–430
  branching in polyethylene via intramolecular and intermolecular hydrogen transfer, 1134, 1146
  carboxypeptidase-catalyzed hydrolysis, 1072
  cationic polymerization of 2-methylpropene, 1138
  chlorination of methane, 161–163
  Claisen rearrangement, 931–932
  cyanohydrin formation, 701
  DCCI-promoted peptide bond formation, 1063
  decarboxylation of malonic acid, 758–760
  dehydration of alcohols, 192–193, 208
  dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides, 199–206, 209
  DNA replication, 1099–1101
  Edman degradation, 1056–1057
  electrophilic addition
    to alkenes, 221–226
    to 1,3-cyclopentadiene, 388
  electrophilic aromatic substitution, 457–459
    bromination, of benzene, 463
    Friedel-Crafts acylation, of benzene, 468
    Friedel-Crafts alkylation, of benzene, 465
    nitration, of benzene, 459–460
    sulfonation, of benzene, 461–462
  elimination
    E1, 192–193, 205–206, 210
    E2, 193, 199–205, 208, 326–329
  enamine formation, 713
  enol conversion to ketone, 357
  epoxidation, 240
  esterification, 754–755
  ether cleavage, 660
  ether formation, 624
  free-radical addition of hydrogen bromide to alkenes, 243
  glycosidation, 967–969
  halogenations
    addition to alkenes, 288–290
    α, of aldehydes and ketones, 904
    allylic, of alkenes, 377–380
    bromination, of benzene, 463
    chlorination, of methane, 161–163
  hydration
    aldehydes and ketones, 698–700
    alkenes, 226–228
    alkynes, 357
  hydroboration-oxidation, 233
  hydrogenation of alkenes, 218, 599
  hydrogen halide addition
    to alkenes, 221–226
    to alkynes, 356
  hydrolysis
    acid anhydrides, 780
    allylic halide, 375
    amides, 796–800
    esters, 783–786
    nitriles, 803–804
    saponification, 786–790
  imine formation, 709
  nitration of benzene, 459–460
  nucleophilic acyl substitution, 770, 807–808
  nucleophilic alkyl substitution
    S_N1, 147, 168, 317–322, 334*t*
    S_N2, 153–154, 169, 311, 334*t*
  nucleophilic aromatic substitution
    addition-elimination, 492–494, 499
    elimination-addition, 507–508
  nucleophilic substitution, 318
  olefin metathesis, 602
  polymerization of ethylene
    coordination polymerization, 605
    free-radical polymerization, 245
  polymerization of styrene
    anionic, 1135, 1143
    free-radical, 428
  proton transfer, 144–145
  reaction of alcohols with hydrogen halides, 144–149, 152–154, 333
  reduction of alkynes by sodium in ammonia, 355
Melatonin, 817
Mendel, Gregor, 1084, 1095
Menthol, 171, 1007
Menthyl chloride, 213
6-Mercaptopurine, 1088
Mercury(II) oxide, 358
Merlic, Craig A., 545–552
Merrifield, R. Bruce, 1064–1065, 1150
Mesityl oxide, 843
Meso stereoisomer, 284–286
Meta *(m)*
  directing groups, 475–476, 477*t*, 480–482, 496–498
  disubstituted aromatic compounds, 412–413
Metal-ammonia reduction
  alkynes, 354, 363
Metallocenes, 592
Methane
  acidity, 34, 36, 347
  bond angles and bond distances in, 58
  bonding, 65, 86
  chlorination, 156–157, 161–164
  clathrates, 59
  conversion to acetylene, 343
  electrostatic potential map, 25
  natural occurrence, 59
  pK_a, 34, 36
  structure, 26, 58
  VSEPR and molecular geometry, 24
Methanesulfonic acid, 329
Methanethiol
  electrostatic potential map, 635
  pK_a, 33

Methanide ion, 347
Methanol, 135, 615
  bond distances and bond angles, 137
  ^{13}C NMR, 894–895
  dehydrogenation, 693
  dipole moment, 137
  electrostatic potential map, 137, 635
  esterification, 754–756
  industrial preparation, 615
  pK_a, 34, 36
  properties, 615
Methanolysis, 315
Methine group, 65
L-Methionine, 669–670
  isoelectric point, 1037
  and protein biosynthesis, 1104–1105
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
Methionine enkephalin, 1049
4-Methoxyphenyl acetate
  hydrolysis, 919–920
Methyl acetate, UV absorption, 806
Methyl acrylate, 1136–1137
Methyl alcohol, 135
Methylalumoxane (MAO), 604
Methylamine
  basicity, 863
  ^{13}C NMR, 894–895
  electrostatic potential map, 858
  reaction with benzaldehyde, 871
Methyl benzoate
  preparation, 625, 754–756
Methyl bromide
  nucleophilic substitution in, 310–313
  reaction with triphenylphosphine, 714–715
2-Methylbutane, 79
2-Methyl-2-butanol
  dehydration, 190
  preparation, 226
3-Methyl-2-butanol
  preparation, 232
2-Methyl-2-butene
  acid catalyzed hydration, 226, 616
  hydroboration-oxidation, 232
  hydrogenation, 220
  preparation, 190, 198, 205
  reaction with hydrogen halides, 222
Methyl cation, 150, 152
Methylcopper
  electrostatic potential map, 580
Methyl 2-cyanoacrylate, polymerization of, 1137
Methylcyclohexane, conformations, 110–111
1-Methylcyclopentene
  addition of hydrogen chloride, 222
  hydroboration-oxidation, 233
Methylenecyclohexane, 715
Methylene group, 65, 178
Methylenetriphenylphosphorane, 715
  electrostatic potential map, 714
1-Methylethyl group, 72
Methyl fluoride
  chemical shifts, proton, 517
  electrostatic potential map, 580
Methyl α-D-glucopyranoside, 727, 965–969
Methyl β-D-glucopyranoside, 965–969
Methyl groups, 65
Methyl hexanoate, infrared spectrum, 551
Methyl iodide
  reaction with amines, 881
Methyllithium
  electrostatic potential map, 580
Methylmagnesium halides, reaction with cyclopentanone, 585
Methyl 2-methylpropenoate, hydrolysis, 786–787
Methyl migration
  in alcohol dehydration, 193–197
  in cholesterol biosynthesis, 1013, 1015
2-Methylpentane, 71
  bromination, 166
3-Methylpentane, 71
2-Methylpropanal
  acidity and pK_a, 34
  ^{1}H NMR, 719
  reaction with *tert*-butylamine, 722
2-Methylpropane
  bond dissociation enthalpies, 160, 422
  chemical shifts, ^{1}H, 519
  chlorination, 165
Methyl propanoate
  ^{1}H NMR spectrum, 805–807
2-Methyl-2-propanol, 142
  acid-catalyzed dehydration, 189
2-Methylpropene
  addition of hydrogen bromide to, 224
  addition of methanol to, 656
  bromohydrin formation, 238
  dipole moment, 181
  heat of combustion, 184
  hydration, 227, 229–230
  polymerization, 1137–1139
  preparation, 189
1-Methylpropyl group, 73
2-Methylpropyl group, 73
N- Methylpyrrolidone, 800
Methyl radical
  intermediate in chlorination of methane, 161–163
  structure and stability, 157–158
Methyl red, 891, 893
Methyl salicylate, 781, 916–917
Methyltrioctylammonium chloride, 869
Mevalonic acid, 757, 1008, 1012, 1022
Mevalonolactone, 757–758, 766
Micelle, 746–747, 786–787
Microscopic reversibility, 228
Microwaves, 512
Miescher, Johann, 1095
Mitscherlich, Eilhardt, 407
Molar absorptivity, 553
Molecular formula, 15
  a clue to structure, 560–561
Molecular formulas, 44
Molecular ion, 555
Molecular models and modeling, 25, 103
Molecular orbital (MO) calculations, 103
Molecular orbital model, 53–54, 56–57
  bonding and antibonding, 56
  hydrogen, 56–57
  σ, 56
Molecular orbitals
  allyl cation, 402
  [10]annulene, 435
  and anomeric effect, 960–962
  benzene, 410–411, 433–434
  and bimolecular nucleophilic substitution, 312
  1,3-butadiene, 395
  cyclobutadiene, 433–434
  cycloheptatrienyl cation, 438
  cis, trans-1,3-cyclooctadiene, 553–554
  cyclooctatetraene, 433–434
  cyclopentadienide anion, 438
  ethylene, 395
  frontier, 395
  highest occupied (HOMO), 395–396, 553–554
  lowest unoccupied (LUMO), 395–396, 553–554
  π and π*, 395, 553–555
Molecular orbital theory, 372
Molecular recognition, 960
Molecules, 2
Moncado, Salvador, 1074–1075
Monensin, 656
Monomer, 1123–1124
Monosaccharides, 947, 973–976
  oxidation, 976–978
Monoterpene, 1005–1007
Montelukast, 48
Moore, Stanford, 1052–1053
Morphine, 868
Morpholine, 723
MTBE, 656
Mullis, Kary B., 1108
Multifidene, 300
Multiplets
  in ^{13}C NMR spectra, 563
  in ^{1}H NMR spectra, 525–533, 562
Murad, F., 1074
Muscarine, 300
Mutarotation, 958–960, 984
Myoglobin, 1073–1074
Myosin, 1067
Myrcene, 1005
Myristic acid, 995

N

ν (symbol for frequency), 511
n (prefix), 65–66, 69
n + 1 splitting rule, 526, 531
Nanotubes, 416–417
Naphthalene, 406, 414–415
  electrophilic aromatic substitution in, 488–489
Naproxen, 600, 1004
Napthalene, 418
Native chemical ligation (NCL), 1080
Natta, Giulio, 603–604
Natural gas, 58, 63
Negishi, Ei-ichi, 595
Neomenthol, 171
Neomenthyl chloride, 213
Neopentane, 66
Neopentyl group, 73
Neopentyl halides
  nucleophilic substitution in, 315
Neoprene, 387, 401
Neryl diphosphate, 1010

Neurotransmitters, 868, 1045
Newman, Melvin S., 98
Newman projections, 98, 102, 107
Nexium, 668
Nickel, hydrogenation catalyst, 216–217, 230, 250, 409
Nickel carbonyl, 589
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD)
  coenzyme in
    epoxidation of alkenes, 667
    formation of acetyl coenzyme A, 993
    reduction of pyruvic acid, 716–718
    structure, 632
Nicotine, 276, 868
NIH shift, 682–685
Ninhydrin, 1041–1042
Nirenberg, Marshall, 1116
Nitration
  acetanilide, 884
  acetophenone, 487
  benzaldehyde, 480, 871
  benzene, 457, 459–460, 487
  p-tert-butyltoluene, 485
  chlorobenzene, 482
  p-cresol, 922
  fluorobenzene, 497
  p-isopropylacetanilide, 883
  p-methylbenzoic acid, 486
  phenol, 478
  toluene, 470–474, 488
  (trifluoromethyl)benzene, 471, 474–476
  m-xylene, 485
Nitric acid
  formal charges in, 14
  nitration of arenes by, 459–460
  oxidation, *p*-xylene, 750
  pK_a, 33, 38
Nitric oxide synthase, 1074
Nitriles
  α-amino, as intermediates in Strecker synthesis, 1040–1041
  hydrolysis, 752–753, 762, 803–804
  infrared absorption, 805–806
  nomenclature, 771–772
  preparation of
    from alkyl halides, 308, 752, 802*t*
    from aryl diazonium salts, 889–890, 901
    by dehydration of amides, 802–803
  reaction with Grignard reagents, 805
  reduction, 875, 897
m-Nitroaniline, diazotization, 889–890, 899, 900
o-Nitroaniline, diazotization, 901
p-Nitroaniline
  basicity, 865–866
  bromination, 899
  electron delocalization, 866
  preparation, 884
Nitrobenzene
  electrophilic aromatic substitution in, 482
  preparation, 457, 459–460, 487
Nitrogen fixation, 858
Nitrogen rule, 560, 894–895
Nitroglycerin, 1074
Nitro group
  electron-withdrawing effect, 482, 493–494, 918–919
  reduction, 875–876, 898
Nitromethane, 13
Nitronium cation, 459–460
m-Nitrophenol
  acidity, 918–919
  preparation, 900, 919–920
o-Nitrophenol
  acidity, 918–919
  intramolecular hydrogen bonding, 916–917
  reaction with
    acetic anhydride, 923–925, 936
    butyl bromide, 936
p-Nitrophenol
  acidity, 918–919
p-Nitrophenylhydrazine, 712
Nitrosamines, 885–887
Nitrosation
  amines, 885–887, 899
  phenols, 922
N-Nitrosodimethylamine, 885–887
Nitrosomethane, 18
N-Nitrosonornicotine, 886–887
N-Nitrosopyrrolidine, 886–887
Nitrous acid, 14, 885–891
N-Methoxy-*N*-methylamide synthasis, 908
Noble gases electron configuration, 6
Nodal properties
  π orbitals and pericyclic reactions, 395
Nodal surfaces, 5
Nomenclature
  common names
    alcohols, 135–136
    alkanes, 69*t*
    alkenes, 176–178
    alkenyl groups, 177
    alkyl groups, 73–75, 89*t*
    functional class, 134–135, 167
    historical development, 70
  IUPAC
    acid anhydrides, 771
    acyl halides, 771
    alcohols, 135–136, 167
    aldehydes, 687, 720
    alkadienes, 382
    alkanes, 68–72, 87, 88–89*t*
    alkenes, 176–178, 207
    alkyl groups, 73–75, 89*t*
    alkyl halides, 134–135, 167
    alkynes, 344
    amides, 771–772
    amines, 858–860, 896
    benzene derivatives, 412*t*
    bridged bicyclic ring systems, 120–121
    carboxylic acids, 737
    cycloalkanes, 75–76, 89*t*
    diols, 621–622
    epoxides, 239, 650–651
    esters, 771–772
    ethers, 650–651
    highly branched alkanes, 73–75
    ketones, 688–689, 720
    lactones, 757–758
    nitriles, 771–772
    organometallic compounds, 579, 606
    polymers, 1123–1124, 1146
    sulfides, 651
    thiols, 634
  stereochemical notation
    cis and *trans,* 114
    D-L, 948–952, 983
    erythro and threo, 283
    E-Z, 181–183, 207
    R and *S,* 290
    R-S, 271–273
    substitutive, 135, 167
Nomex, 1139
Nonpolar solvents, 323–324
Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 1004
Norepinephrine, 669–670, 1045
Norethindrone, 1018
Norjirimicin, 964
Noyori, Ryoji, 598, 600
Nuclear magnetic resonance spectra
  carbon
    1-chloropentane, 537
    m-cresol, 517
    3-heptanone, 720
    methanol, 894–895
    methylamine, 894–895
    1-phenyl-1-pentanone, 541–542
  proton
    benzyl alcohol, 534
    2-butanone, 719
    chloroform, 517
    1-chloropentane, 537
    p-cresol, 934
    1,1-dichloroethane, 526
    dipropyl ether, 671–672
    ethyl acetate, 805–807
    ethyl bromide, 528
    isopropyl chloride, 529
    methoxyacetonitrile, 523
    4-methylbenzyl alcohol, 894–895
    4-methylbenzylamine, 894–895
    2-methylpropanal, 719
    methyl propanoate, 805–807
    m-nitrostyrene, 531–533
    4-phenylbutanoic acid, 761
    2-phenylethanol, 637
    2,3,4-trichloroanisole, 531
Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy
  carbon, 535–536, 562–563
    alcohols, 637
    aldehydes and ketones, 719–721
    amines, 894–895
    carboxylic acid derivatives, 805–807
    carboxylic acids, 760–761
    chemical shifts, 537–539, 575–577
    ethers, 671–672
    and magnetic field strength, 512–514
    thiols, 637
  proton, 512–536, 561–562
    alcohols, 534, 562, 638, 640
    aldehydes and ketones, 719
    amines, 894–895
    carboxylic acid derivatives, 805–807
    carboxylic acids, 760–761
    chemical shift, 514–519, 562
    and conformations, 535–536, 562
    ethers and epoxides, 671–672, 675
    interpretation, 523–525
    nuclear shielding, 514–517
    phenols, 933–934
    spin-spin splitting, 525–533, 562

thiols, 637
two dimensional (2D NMR), 543–545, 563
Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy, 511
Nuclear spin states, 512–513
Nucleic acids, 1095
Nucleophiles, 43, 146–147, 153–154, 307–310
relative reactivity, 315–316
solvation and reactivity, 316*t,* 321–326
Nucleophilic acyl substitution, 770–819, 872
and acetyl coenzyme A, 817, 993
acid anhydrides, 778–780, 808
acyl chlorides, 776–779, 808
amides, 796–800
esters, 783–791, 808
general mechanism, 770, 775–776, 807
thioesters, 816–818
Nucleophilic addition
to aldehydes and ketones, 695–718, 722–723*t*
Nucleophilic alkyl substitution
alcohols, 144–154
alkyl halides, 306–329, 716, 752–753, 802
alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonates, 329–331
allylic halides, 374–377, 396, 635
benzylic halides, 420–422
enzyme-catalyzed, 317
epoxides, 662–667
phase-transfer catalysis, 869–870
Nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 490–494, 919, 926–928
Nucleophilic substitution, 307–308*t*
unimolecular, 168, 170
in alkyl halides, 306–341
in aryl halides, 490–491
Nucleosides, 1088–1089, 1117
Nucleosomes, 1099
Nucleotides, 1090–1091, 1094, 1114
Nylon 66, 1139

O

Octadecanoic acid, 738
Octadecyl group, 72
Octane, relative stability of isomers, 82
Octane number of gasoline, 77
2-Octanol, 585
Octet of electrons, 6
Octet rule, 8, 43, 704
Off-resonance decoupling, 541
Oil of cloves, 48
Olah, George A., 80
Olefin, 179
Olefin metathesis, 600–605, 608, 1131
Oleic acid, 181, 738, 749, 995
Oligomer, 1127
Oligonucleotide(s), 1094
synthesis of, 1117–1121
Oligosaccharide, 947–948
synthesis, 978–980
Opsin, 710
Optical activity, 268–269, 294
and chemical reactions, 279–281, 288–289, 296, 320–321, 331
Optical purity, 268–269
Orbital hybridization
model for bonding, 58, 60, 64–65
sp
acetylene and alkynes, 63–64, 87, 344–346, 361
allenes, 385–386
sp^2
alkadienes, 384
aniline, 861–862
benzene, 410–411
carbocations, 146, 149–152, 168
ethane, 86
ethylene, 61–62
ethylene and alkenes, 86, 178–180, 207
formaldehyde, 689–690
free radicals, 157–158
sp^3
alkyl halides, 136–137
methane, 58, 60, 86
methanol, 136–137
methylamine, 861
Orbitals
atomic, 4–6, 43
hybrid orbitals, 58, 60, 61–65, 87–89, 90–91
Orbital symmetry, and Diels-Alder reaction, 395–396
Organic chemistry, 3
Organic compounds, 52
Organic light-emitting diodes (OLEDs), 1145
Organic molecules
structural formulas, 15–19
Organic Structure Elucidation, 546
Organoboranes, 231–234
Organocopper reagents, 592
Organolithium reagents
basicity, 582–583
preparation, 606, 943–945
reaction with
aldehydes and ketones, 583–585, 616
epoxides, 620–621
nitriles, 805
Organometallic compounds, 578–613
Organozinc compounds, 588
Ortho-
directing groups, 496–498
Ortho *(o),* disubstituted organic compounds, 412–413
Ortho-para directing groups, 470–480, 477*t,* 482–484
Osmium tetraoxide, 638
Oxalic acid, 48, 747
Oxane, 651
Oxaphosphetane, 716
Oxazole, 441
Oxetane, 651
Oxidation
alcohols, 627–632, 641*t,* 691–695, 750
aldehydes, 718, 724, 750
alkylbenzenes, 424–426, 447, 750
biological, 266, 415, 425
ketones, 732
phenols, 932–933, 937
vicinal diols, 639
Oxidation-reduction in organic chemistry, 83–85, 87
Oxidative addition, 540
Oxidative stress, 928–930
Oximes, 712
Oxirane, 651
Oxolane, 651
Oxonium ion, 31
Oxygen
biological storage and transport, 1072–1073
isotopic labels, 754, 786, 787–788
Oxymercuration, 258–261
Oxytocin, 1051
Ozone, 14
Ozone, bonding in, 19–20, 241
Ozonide, 241
Ozonolysis
alkenes, 241–242, 251, 693
alkynes, 359–360

P

Paclitaxel, 402
Palladium
hydrogenation catalyst, 217, 230, 250
Lindlar, 353–354, 363
Palmitic acid, 994–997
Papain, 1052–1053
Para-
directing groups, 496–498
Para *(p),* disubstituted organic compounds, 412–413
Paraffin hydrocarbon, 80
Partial rate factors, 473, 503
Pasteur, Louis, 290–291, 981
Pauli exclusion principle, 4
Pauling, Linus, 11
electronegativity scale, 11*t*
and orbital hybridization, 58
and peptide structure, 1066
Pedersen, Charles J., 654
Penicillin, 800–801
1,3- and 1,4-Pentadiene, relative stabilities, 382–383
2,3-Pentadiene, enantiomers, 386
Pentane, 68, 79
conformation, 104
photochemical chlorination, 174
physical properties, 653
n-Pentane, 66–67
2,4-Pentanedione
pK_a, 33
Pentanenitrile
hydrogenation, 875
preparation, 869–870
Pentanoic acid, 738
1–Pentanol
esterification, 640
reaction with thionyl chloride, 169
3-Pentanol, dehydration, 191
3-Pentanone
cyanohydrin, 722
Pentenyl glycoside, 1082
Pentyl azide, 871
Peptide(s), 1049–1051
amino acid analysis, 1052–1053
classification, 1030
end-group analysis, 1053–1057
hydrolysis, 1052–1053
mapping, 1058
structure, 1030, 1049–1051
synthesis, 1059–1065

Peptide bond, 1030
  geometry, 1049–1051
  preparation, 1061–1065
Pericyclic reactions, 391
Periodic acid cleavage
  vicinal diols, 633, 639
Periodic tables, 4, 580
anti- and *syn*-Periplanar, 202–204
Peroxides
  initiators of free-radical reactions, 242, 1131–1132
  intermediates in icosanoid biosynthesis, 1002–1005
  by oxidation of ethers, 658
Peroxyacetic acid, 240, 251, 660–661, 674
Peroxybenzoic acid, 732
Petrochemicals, 179
Petroleum, 76–77
Phase-transfer catalysis, 869–870, 896
α-Phellandrene, 1007
Phenacetin, 939
Phenanthrene, 414–415
Phenol(s), 614, 914–945
  acidity and pK_a, 33, 41, 917–920, 935
  ^{13}C chemical shifts, 934
  electrostatic potential maps, 916–917
  formation, in Claisen rearrangement, 931–932, 937
  hydrogen bonding, 916–917
  naturally occurring, 920–921, 936
  nomenclature, 412, 914–915
  physical properties, 916–917
  preparation from
    aryl diazonium salts, 888–889, 900, 919–920, 935
    Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 919–920
    benzenesulfonic acid, 919–920
    chlorobenzene, 919–920
    cumene, 919–920
  reactions
    O-alkylation, 926, 936
    azo coupling, 923
    carboxylation, 925–926, 936
    electrophilic aromatic substitution, 478, 920–923
    esterification, 925
    Friedel-Crafts acylation, 922, 924
    Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 922
    Kolbe-Schmitt reaction, 925–926, 936
    nitration, 478, 922
    nitrosation, 922
    oxidation, 932–933, 937
    sulfonation, 922
    structure and bonding, 916–917
  resonance in, 916–917
  spectroscopic analysis, 933–934
Phenylacetic acid, 824
    preparation, 752
L-Phenylalanine, 1034
  ^{1}H NMR spectrum, 533
  N-benzyloxycarbonyl derivative, 1060
  conversion to L-tyrosine, 682–685
  isoelectric point, 1037
  in PKU disease, 1049
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
Phenylalanylglycine, synthesis of, 1059–1061
Phenyl benzoate, Fries rearrangement, 925
2-Phenylethanol, 617, 626
  ^{1}H NMR spectrum, 637
1-Phenylethylamine, resolution, 292
Phenyl group, 414
Phenylhydrazine, reaction, with aldehydes and ketones, 712
Phenyl isothiocyanate, 1056–1057
Phenylketonuria (PKU disease), 1049
Phenylmagnesium bromide
  carboxylation, 752
  preparation, 581
2-Phenylpropene, dihydroxylation of, 638
Phenylpyruvic acid, 1049
Phenylselenolactonization, 768–769
Phenylthiohydantoin, 1056–1057
Pheromones
  aggregating
    cockroach, 66
    European elm bark beetle, 644
  alarm
    ant, 692, 694
    bees, 692
  sex attractant
    boll weevil, 210
    boll worm moth, 813
    codling moth, 211
    female gypsy moth, 239
    female house fly, 181, 367
    female Japanese beetle, 781
    female tiger moth, 91
    female winter moth, 728
    greater wax moth, 692
    honeybee, 211
    male Oriental fruit moth, 781
    Mediterranean fruit fly, 211
    Western pine beetle, 727
Phosphates, 23
  hydrolysis of biologically important, 1093*t*
Phosphatidic acid, 999
Phosphatidylcholine, 999
Phosphines
  optically active, 294
Phosphoglycerides, 999
Phospholipid bilayer, 999
Phospholipids, 998, 999–1001
Phosphoric acid
  catalyst for alcohol dehydration, 189, 193
  esters, 1090–1091
Phosphorus pentoxide, 802
Phosphorus tribromide, reaction with alcohols, 155, 169
Phosphorylation, 1090
Photochemical initiation
  free-radical reactions, 251
Photochemical reactions, 164
Photon, 511–512
Photosynthesis, 950
Phthalhydrazide, 873–874
Phthalimide, potassium salt of in Gabriel synthesis, 873–874, 897
Physostigmine, 902
Phytane, 71
Picometers, 19
Picrocrocin, 1020
Pinacol rearrangement, 646–649
α-Pinene, 1011
    hydroboration-oxidation, 232
β-Pinene, 1011
Piperidine, 122, 777, 866, 878
pK_a, 32
pK_b, 32
Planck, Max, 511
Planck's constant, 511
Plane of symmetry, 266–267
    in meso- 2,3-butanediol, 284–286
    cis-1,2-dibromocyclopropane, 286
Plane-polarized light, 268–269
Platinum, hydrogenation catalyst, 217, 230, 250, 409, 617
Pleated β-sheet, 1066–1067
Poison ivy, allergens, 940
Polarimeter, 268–269
Polarizability, 140
Polar solvents, 309, 323–324
Polyacrylonitrile, 1123–1124
Polyamides, 1126, 1139, 1147
Polyamines, 869
Polyaniline, 1144–1145
Polycarbonates, 1141, 1147
Polycyclic hydrocarbons
    aliphatic, 119–121
    aromatic, 414–415, 488–489
Polyesters, 1140–1141, 1147
Polyethers, 652–654
Polyethylene, 245–246, 603–604
    high-density (HDPE), 1128–1129
    low-density (LDPE), 1128–1129
Poly(ethylene glycol), 1123–1124
Poly(ethylene oxide), 1123–1124
Poly(ethylene terephthalate), 1129, 1140–1141
Poly(glycolic acid), 1140
Polyisobutylene, 247, 1137–1139
Polyisoprene, 387
Polyketides, 1027–1029
Poly(lactic acid), 1140
Polymer(s), 252, 1122–1151
  classification, 1124–1130, 1146
  conducting, 1144–1145
  copolymers, 1142–1144, 1147
  crystallinity, 1128
  definition, 1122
  dienes, 387, 1131
  glass transition and melting temperature, 1130
  living, 1135–1137, 1147
  nomenclature, 1123–1124, 1146
  polyamides, 1139, 1147
  polycarbonates, 1141, 1147
  polyesters, 1140–1141, 1147
  polyurethanes, 1141–1142, 1147
  preparation, 247*t*
  repeating unit in, 1123–1124
  stereoregular, 293, 297, 603–604
  synthetic, 1122–1151
  vinyl, 247
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 1108–1111
Polymerization
  anionic, 1135–1137, 1146
  cationic, 1137–1139, 1146
  condensation, 1147
  coordination, 246, 293, 387, 605
  free-radical, 1133–1135, 1146
Polymer-supported chemical reactions, 1149–1151
Polynucleotides, 1094
Polyolefin, 1125

Polypeptide, 1030
Polypropylene, 247, 248, 1129
  stereoregular, 293, 606
Polysaccharide, 947–948, 971–973, 984
Polystyrene, 247, 248, 427, 445, 1131
  by anionic polymerization, 1135
  recycling, 1129
Polytetrafluoroethylene, 1123–1124
Polyurethanes, 248, 1122, 1141–1142, 1147
Poly(vinyl chloride), 177, 247, 248, 1123–1124
  recycling, 1129
Porphyrin, 1073
Potassium *tert*-butoxide, base in elimination reactions, 197–198
Potassium dichromate
  oxidation of aldehydes, 718, 750
Potassium permanganate
  oxidation of alcohols, 750
  oxidation of aldehydes, 750
  oxidation of alkylbenzenes, 424, 447, 750
Potential energy, 82
  diagrams, 144–149
    addition of hydrogen bromide to 1,3-butadiene, 390
    bimolecular elimination (E2), 201
    bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2), 311
    branched versus unbranched alkanes, 82
    carbocation formation, 146
    carbocation rearrangement, 195
    conformations of 1,3-butadiene, 384
    conformations of butane, 101
    conformations of cyclohexane, 110
    conformations of ethane, 99
    electrophilic aromatic substitution, 458, 473, 476
    hydration of aldehydes and ketones, 699
    and Markovnikov's rule, 224
    proton transfer, 144
    reaction of *tert*-butyl alcohol with hydrogen chloride, 147
    unimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N1), 147, 319
    and heat of combustion, 82, 184
    and heat of hydrogenation, 220
Pott, Percivall, 415
Prelog, Vladimir, 181, 271
Prenols and prenyl groups, 1010
Priestley, Joseph, 387
Prilosec, 668
Primaquine, 315
Primary carbon, 72
Principal quantum number, 4
Pristane, 90
Probability distributions, 4
Prochirality, 279–281, 304–305
Progesterone, 1018
L-Proline, 1031
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
Prontosil, 892
Propagation step, 161–163, 168, 169
Propanal, 690
Propane
  bond dissociation enthalpy, 378
  attractive forces in, 138
  bond angles and bond distances in, 58
  bond dissociation enthalpies in, 160
  chemical shifts, ^{1}H, 517
  conformational analysis, 102
  dehydrogenation, 179, 188–189
  dipole moment, 138, 862
  in natural gas, 58
Propanol
  electrostatic potential map, 690
2-Propanol, 135
Propanolol, 677
Propene, 176, 378–379
  allylic chlorination, 379
  bond dissociation enthalpy, 378–379, 422
  bond distances in, 179, 383
  dipole moment, 183
  epoxidation, 279–280
  heat of hydrogenation, 221, 382–383
  hydration rate, 227
  as industrial chemical, 179, 248, 359
  polymerization, 293, 606
  structure, 179
Propyl
  anion, 380
Propylene, 176
Propylene oxide, 248
Propyl group, 73
Prostacyclins, 1003
Prostaglandins, 736, 1002–1005
Prosthetic group, 1073
Protease inhibitors, 1106
Protecting groups
  acetals as, 704–707
  for amino acids, 1060–1061
  for arylamines, 884
  for DNA bases, 1117–1118
Protein Data Bank (PDB), 25
Proteins
  amino acid analysis, 1052–1053
  biosynthesis, 1150
  hydrolysis, 1052–1053
  structure
    primary, 1052–1058, 1076
    quaternary, 1074–1075, 1078
    secondary, 1066–1069, 1077
    tertiary, 1069–1073, 1077
  synthesis, 1059–1065
Protic solvents, 323–324
Proton acceptors, 30
Proton donors, 30
Pseudoionone, 1026
Purcell, Edward, 513
Purines, 441, 1085–1088
  hydrogen bonding in, 1096–1097
  nucleosides of, 1088–1089, 1113
  nucleotides, 1090–1091, 1094
  occurring in DNA and/or RNA, 1087*t*, 1089*t*
  polynucleotides, 1094, 1114
Putrescine, 869
Pyramidal inversion, 294
Pyranose forms of carbohydrates, 952, 956–960, 983
β-Pyranosyl chloride, 961
Pyrethrins, 1023
Pyridine, 440
  acylation catalyst, 625–627, 777
  basicity, 866
  bonding in, 442–443
  electrophilic aromatic substitution in, 489–490
  electrostatic potential map, 442
  pK_a of conjugate acid, 33
Pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC), 628, 641, 693
Pyridinium dichromate (PDC), 628, 641
Pyridoxal 5′-phosphate (PLP), 710
  coenzyme in amino acid reactions
    decarboxylation, 1042–1043
    racemization, 1046
Pyrimidines, 1085–1088, 1112–1113
  hydrogen bonding in, 1096–1097
  nucleosides of, 1088–1089, 1113
  nucleotides, 1090–1091, 1113
  occurring in DNA and/or RNA, 1087*t*, 1089*t*
  polynucleotides, 1094, 1114
Pyrocatechol, 914–915, 931
(S)-Pyroglutamic acid, 1081–1083
Pyrrole, 440
  bonding in, 442–443
  electrophilic aromatic substitution in, 489–490
  electrostatic potential map, 442
Pyrrolidine, 122
  acylation, 872
  enamine, 713, 880
Pyrrolysine, 1031, 1034
Pyruvic acid
  acetyl coenzyme A from, 993
  biological reduction, 716–718
  biosynthesis, 632, 992–993
  conversion to L-alanine, 1046–1049

Q

Quantized energy states, 512
Quantum, 511–512
Quantum numbers, 4
Quaternary ammonium salts, 860
  hydroxides, Hofmann elimination, 881–883, 899
  as phase-transfer catalysts, 869–870, 896
  preparation, 872, 881
Quaternary carbon, 72
Quaternary structure proteins, 1074–1075
Quinine, 868
Quinoline, 440
Quinones, 932–933, 937

R

Racemic mixtures, 268, 279–281, 294
  resolution, 290–293, 297
Racemization
  and chair-chair interconversion, 286
  in S_N1 reactions, 320–321
Radio waves, 512
Ramakrishnan, Venkatraman, 1104
Rate constant, 100, 152
Rate-determining step, 147
Rate of reaction
  and carbocation stability, 149–153, 319
  effect of catalyst, 216–217
  effect of temperature, 100, 152

Rayon, 1122
Reactive oxygen species (ROS), 928–930
Rearrangement
  alcohol dehydration, 193–197, 209
  allylic, 376, 389, 396–397
  Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 732, 782
  Claisen rearrangement, 931–932, 937
  electrophilic addition to alkenes, 225–226
  Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 466, 497
  Fries rearrangement, 925
  NIH shift, 682–685
  pinacol rearrangement, 646–649
  reactions of alcohols with hydrogen halides, 331
  S_N1 reactions, 321–322
Recycling, 1129*t*
Recycling codes, 1129
Red Dye #40, 892–893
Reduction, 83–85
  aldehydes and ketones, 617–621, 639, 695
  amides, 876–877, 898
  aryl diazonium salts, 889–893, 901
  azides, 874–875, 897
  Birch reduction, 445
  carbonyl groups, agents for, 639*t*
  carboxylic acids, 620, 639, 692
  Clemmensen, 469, 695
  esters, 620, 639
  imines, 878–879
  metal-ammonia reduction of alkynes, 354
  nitriles, 875, 897
  nitro groups, 875–876, 898
  Wolff-Kishner, 470, 695
Reductive amination, 878–879, 898
Reductive elimination, 594
Refining of petroleum, 76–77
Reforming, in petroleum refining, 77
Regioselectivity
  addition of hydrogen halides to 1,3-butadiene, 388–390
  allylic halogenation, 377–380, 397
  dehydration of alcohols, 190, 209, 386, 398, 427
  dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides, 198–199, 209, 386, 427
  electrophilic addition to alkenes, 222–223, 231–234, 242, 250–251*t*
electrophilic aromatic substitution, 470–490
epoxide ring opening, 662–667
Hofmann elimination, 881–883, 899
hydration of alkynes, 357–358
hydroboration-oxidation, 231–234, 250
and Markovnikov's rule, 222–223, 250
and regiospecificity, 290
and Zaitsev's rule, 190, 208–209
Relative configuration, 270
Relenza, 982
Repeating unit of polymer, 1123–1124
Resolution, 290–293, 297
  kinetic, 292
Resonance, 19–23, 44
  aldehydes and ketones, 480–482, 691
  allyl anion, 380
  allylic carbocations, 371
  allyl radical, 376–378
  amides, 774–775
  aniline, 862
  and anomeric effect, 960–962
  benzene, 409–410
  benzylic radicals, 419
  carboxylic acid derivatives, 773–775
  cyclohexadienyl anions, 492–494
  cyclohexadienyl cations, 458, 472–476, 478–479, 480, 484, 488–489
  enolate ions, 869
  formic acid, 739
  p-nitroaniline, 866
  ozone, 19–20
  phenol, 916–917
  phenoxide anions, 917–919, 926
  protonated benzoic acid, 754–755
  protonated ketone, 698
  purines and pyrimidines, 1085–1086
  rules for, 21–22*t*
  thioesters, 817
Resonance energy
  [18]annulene, 436
  anthracene and phenanthrene, 415
  benzene, 409–410, 444
  conjugated dienes, 382–383
  1,3,5-hexatriene, 410
  naphthalene, 415
Resonance hybrid, 19
Resorcinol, 914–915
  acylation, 924
Restriction enzymes, 1107
Resveratrol, 914–915, 930
Retention of configuration, 234
  in Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 732
  in ester hydrolysis, 788–789
Retinal, 711
Retinol, 710
Retro-aldol reaction, 833
Retro Diels-Alder reaction, 403
Retrosynthetic analysis, 248, 252, 254, 398, 830
  benzylic side chains, 431
  Grignard and organolithium reagents, 586
  Simmons-Smith reaction, 588
  and synthesis of substituted benzenes, 486–488
Retroviruses, 1106
Reverse transcriptase, 1106
Rhodium, hydrogenation catalyst, 217, 250, 597
Rhodopsin, 710–711
Ribavarin, 1088
Ribonuclease, 1064–1065, 1067–1068
Ribonucleic acid (RNA), 1094, 1102–1105
  messenger (mRNA), 1102–1104, 1114
  polymerase, 1102
  purine and pyrimidine bases in, 1088–1089
  ribosomal (rRNA), 1104
  transfer (tRNA), 1104–1105, 1114
D-Ribose, 950, 951
  2-deoxy, 963
  furanose and pyranose forms, 131, 952–958, 983
Ribosome and rRNA, 1104
Ribozyme, 1104
D-Ribulose, 962
Rickets, 1016–1017
Ring inversion
  cyclohexane, 109–110, 125, 535–536
  substituted cyclohexanes, 110–112, 115–119, 125
Ring-opening metathesis, 603, 1131
Roberts, Irving, 754
Roberts-Urey experiment, 754, 756
Robinson, Robert, 408, 858
Rofecoxib, 1004
Rosanoff, M. A., 948
Rotational energy barrier
  alkenes, 181
  amides, 774–775
  butane, 102
  conjugated dienes, 384
  ethane, 100
R-*S*-notational system, 271–273, 296
Rubber, 387
Rubbing alcohol, 135
Ruzicka, Leopold, 1008

S

S (symbol for entropy), 113
Sabatier, Paul, 217, 581
Sabinene, 1025
Saccharin, 972
Saffron, 1020
Safranal, 1020
Salicylic acid
  acetylation, 925
  acidity, 32, 926
  synthesis, 925–926
Salt bridge, 1070
Samuelsson, Bengt, 1002
Sandmeyer reactions, 887–888, 889–890, 901
Sanger, Frederick, 1052, 1055–1056, 1107
Sanger's reagent, 491, 1034
α-Santonin, 1023
Saponification, 783, 786–790, 808
Sawhorse diagrams, 98
Schiemann reaction, 887–888, 889–891, 900
Schiff, Hugo, 708
Schiff's base, 708
Schrock, Richard R., 600
Schrödinger, Erwin, 3, 53
Scientific method, 225
Secondary carbon, 72
Secondary structure, 1066–1069
Selenocysteine, 1031, 1034
α-Selinene, 1007
Semicarbazide, 712
Semicarbazones, 712
Sequence rule
  alkene stereochemistry, 181–183, 207
  R-*S* notation, 271–273, 296
L-Serine, 1032, 1034
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
Serotonin, 817, 868
Sesquiterpene, 1005–1008
Sesterpene, 1006
Sex hormones, 1017–1019
Sharpless, K. Barry, 622, 661
Sharpless epoxidation, 661
Shell, 4
Shielding of nuclei in NMR spectroscopy, 514–519, 537–539
Shimomura, Osamu, 1069
Shirakawa, Hideki, 1145

Sialic acids, 964–965
Sickle-cell anemia, 1075
Sigma (σ) bond, 58
Sigmatropic rearrangement, 932
Sildenafil, 1091
Silk, 1066, 1139
Silver-assisted glycosidation, 980
Silver oxide, 881, 932
Simmons, Howard E., 588
Simmons-Smith reaction (reagent), 588, 607
Singly occupied molecular orbital. *See* SOMO
Sinigrin, 965–966
SI units, 7, 19
Skew-boat conformation of cyclohexane, 108, 125
Smalley, Richard, 416
Smith, Bradley D., 546
Smith, Ronald D., 588
S_N1 mechanism, 147, 168, 317–318, 334*t*
S_N2 mechanism, 153–154, 169, 311, 334*t*
Soap, 747, 786–787
Sodium, reaction with
  alkynes, 354, 363
Sodium acetylide
  preparation, 349
  reaction with, alkyl halides, 348–350
Sodium alkoxides
  as bases in elimination reactions, 197, 326–329
  preparation, 197
  in Williamson ether synthesis, 657–659, 674
Sodium amide
  as base, 348–351, 361–362, 586
  reaction with aryl halides, 507–508
Sodium borohydride, reduction
  aldehydes and ketones, 617–620, 639, 695
  aryl diazonium ions, 890–891
Sodium cyanoborohydride, 879
Sodium dichromate
  oxidation of alkylbenzenes, 424, 447
Sodium 1-dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 1039
Sodium ethoxide, as base
  elimination reactions, 197, 326–329
Sodium iodide, 308
Sodium lauryl sulfate, 747
Sodium metaperiodate, 668
Sodium methoxide, reaction with aryl halides, 490–494
Sodium stearate, 746
Solid-phase synthesis
  and chemically modified polymers, 1149–1151
  of oligonucleotides, 1117–1121
  of peptides, 1064–1065
Solvation, and nucleophilicity, 316*t*
Solvent effects, and rate of nucleophilic substitution, 323–326, 324*t,* 325*t,* 334
Solvolysis
  alkyl halides, 315–322
  allylic halides, 374–377
  benzylic halides, 420–421
Somatostatin, 1081
SOMO (singly occupied molecular orbital), 420
Sondheimer, Franz, 435
Sorbitol, 641
Space-filling models, 25, 314
Spandex, 1142
Specific rotation, 269
Spectral Data Base System, 546
Spectrometer, 512
  mass, 555–556
  nuclear magnetic resonance, 514–515
Spectroscopy, 510–577
  ^{13}C NMR, 535–536, 562–563
  general principles, 511–512, 561
  ^{1}H NMR, 512–536, 561–562
  infrared, 545–552, 563
  ultraviolet-visible, 553–555, 563
  Web sites, 546
Speed of light, 511
Spermaceti, 1001–1002
Spermidine, 868
Spermine, 869
Sphingosine, 300
Spin density, 158
  in allyl radical, 376–378
  in methyl radical, 158
Spin quantum number, 4
Spin-spin coupling, 526
Spin-spin splitting
  in ^{19}F NMR, 572
  in ^{1}H NMR, 525–533, 562
  n +1 rule, 526, 531
Spiro compounds, 119–120, 125
Spiropentane, 119–120
Splitting diagrams
  doublet of doublets, 530–531
  quartet, 527–528
  triplet, 528
Splitting patterns, of common multiplets, 529*t*
Spongonucleosides, 1088
Spontaneous reaction, 229
Squalene, 667, 1007, 1014–1015, 1022
Squalene 2,3-epoxide, 667
  in cholesterol biosynthesis, 1014–1015
Squaric acid, 50
Staggered conformation, 97–99, 123–124
Standard state, 229, 1091
Starch, 971–973
Statins, 1016–1017
Staudinger, Hermann, 1123
Stearic acid, 738, 995
Stearolic acid, 343
Stein, William H., 1052–1053
Steitz, Thomas, 1104
Step-growth polymer, 1124–1127
Sterculic acid, 187
Stereochemistry, 262–305
  and chemical reactions
    bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2), 311–312, 334
    ester hydrolysis, 292–293, 788–789
    hydrogenation of alkenes, 289
    that produce chiral molecules, 279–281, 296
    that produce diastereomers, 288–290, 297
    unimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N1), 320–321, 334
  Fischer projection formulas
    α-amino acids, 1035–1036, 1076
    carbohydrates, 947–948, 951, 983
    chiral molecules, 273–275, 296
    two chirality centers, 282–286, 297
  notational systems
    cis and *trans,* 114, 180–181, 207
    D and L, 948–952, 983, 1035–1036
    E and *Z,* 181–183, 207
    erythro and threo, 283
    R and *S,* 271–273, 296
Stereoelectronic effect
  bimolecular elimination, 202–204
  nucleophilic substitution, 312–313
Stereoisomers, 15, 114–119, 125, 149
  alkenes, 180–181, 207
  diastereomers, 282–293, 296, 297
  enantiomers, 263–266, 296
  endo and exo, 716
  maximum number, 287–288, 297
Stereoregular polymers, 293, 297, 603–604
Stereoselective reactions, 290
  addition to carbonyl groups, 716–718
  alcohol dehydration, 191
  dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides, 198
  enzyme-catalyzed hydration of fumaric acid, 281
  epoxidation, 660–661
  hydrogenation of alkenes, 290
  metal-ammonia reduction of alkynes, 354, 363
Stereospecific reactions, 288–290
  Baeyer-Villiger oxidation, 732
  bimolecular (E2) elimination, 202–204
  bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2), 311–312, 334*t*
  Diels-Alder reaction, 393
  dihydroxylation of alkenes, 622
  epoxidation of alkenes, 239–240, 251, 288–289, 660–661
  epoxide formation from bromohydrins, 661–662
  epoxide ring opening, 666
  halogen addition to alkenes, 236, 251, 288–290
  halogen addition to alkynes, 359
  Hofmann elimination, 881–883
  hydroboration of alkenes, 232, 250
  hydrogenation of alkenes, 290
  hydrogenation of alkynes, 353–354, 363
  Simmons-Smith reaction, 588
Steric effects, 101–102
  bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2), 313–315, 334
  cyclohexane derivatives, 110–111
  electrophilic aromatic substitution, 485
  Hofmann elimination, 881–883
  hydration of aldehydes and ketones, 696–699
  sodium borohydride reduction, 716–718
  and stability of isomeric alkenes, 184–188, 208, 221
  and stereoselectivity, 290, 716–718
Steric hindrance, 101–102, 716–718
  bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2), 313–315, 334
Steric strain, 99–102, 104, 185–188, 197–198
Steroids, 130, 287, 1013–1018
Stille, John, 595
Strain energy minimization, 103
Strecker, Adolf, 1040–1041
Strecker synthesis, 1040–1041
Stretching vibrations and infrared spectroscopy, 546

Strong acids and bases definitions, 32, 40
Structural formulas
  Fischer projections, 273–275, 296, 947–948, 951, 983, 1035–1036, 1076
  formaldehyde, 17
  Lewis structures, 8–9, 9*t*
  Newman projections, 98, 101
  organic molecules, 15–19
  sawhorse, 98
  wedge-and-dash, 25–26, 98
Structural isomers. *See* Constitutional isomers
Structural theory, 3
Styrene, 412
  addition of bromine, 426
  addition of hydrogen bromide, 428
  anionic polymerization, 1135–1137
  industrial preparation, 248, 407, 426, 467
  polymers, 427, 1064–1065, 1125
    copolymer with 1,3-butadiene, 387, 1136–1137, 1142–1144
Substituent effects
  on acidity
    carboxylic acids, 742–745
    phenols, 918–920
    on basicity of amines, 863–867
    on equilibrium, hydration of aldehydes and ketones, 696–699
    Hammett equation, 453–455
  on rate
    acid-catalyzed hydration, 227–228
    bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2), 313–315, 334, 376–377, 421–422
    epoxidation, 241
    nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 490–494
    unimolecular elimination, 205–206
    unimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N1), 152–153, 317–320, 334, 420–421
    on rate and regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution, 470–490, 493–494
  on stability
    aldehydes and ketones, 691
    alkenes, 184–187, 207–208
    carbocations, 149–152, 168, 376
    carbon-carbon triple bonds, 352
    free radicals, 157–161, 170
Substitution reactions, 42, 144–154, 306–341
  aryl diazonium salts, 888–891, 900–901
  electrophilic aromatic, 456–509
  free radical
    alkanes, 156–167
    allylic, 377–380, 397
    benzylic, 422–423, 446
  nucleophilic
    acyl, 770–819
    aliphatic, 147, 152–154, 306–341
    allylic, 374–377, 396
    aromatic, 490–494, 926–928
    benzylic, 420–422, 445
Substitutive nomenclature, 135, 167
Succinic acid, 188, 738
Succinic anhydride, 469
Succinimide, 379, 423
Sucralose, 972
Sucrose, 947, 971
Sulfa drugs, 892
Sulfanilamide, 892
Sulfenic acids, 635–636
Sulfhydryl group, 634
Sulfides
  alkylation, 669–670
  oxidation, 668–669
  preparation, 635, 675
Sulfinic acids, 636
Sulfonate esters
  nucleophilic substitution reactions, 329–331
  preparation, 329
Sulfonation
  benzene, 457, 461–462
  benzenesulfonic acid, 481
  2,6-dimethylphenol, 922–923
  1,2,4,5-tetramethylbenzene, 497
Sulfones, 668, 675
Sulfonic acids, 329, 457, 635–636
Sulfonium salts, 669–670, 675
Sulfoxides
  optically active, 294
  preparation, 668–669, 675
Sulfuric acid
  addition to alkenes, 250
  as catalyst, 226–228, 250, 461
    for alcohol dehydration, 189
    Fischer esterification, 625
  pK_a, 33
Sulfur trioxide, 461
Supercoiled DNA, 1099
Super Glue, 246
Sustainability, 630
Sutherland, Earl, 1090
Suzuki, Akira, 595
Symmetry-allowed reaction, 395
Symmetry-forbidden reaction, 396
Syndiotactic polymer, 293, 297
Synthon, 839

T

Talaromycin A, 727
D-Talose, 951
Tamiflu, 982
Tamoxifen, 941
Tariric acid, 343
Tartaric acid, 290
Teflon, 246, 1123–1124
Termination step, 162–163
  in alkene polymerization, 1132–1133
Terpenes, 1005–1008, 1022
  biosynthesis, 1008–1013
  classification, 1006*t*
  and isoprene rule, 1005–1008
α-Terpineol, 1010
Terreic acid, 850
Tertiary carbon, 72
Tertiary structure, 1069–1073
Tesla, Nikola, 513
Testosterone, 1018
Tetrachloromethane, 140, 156
Tetrafluoroethylene, 246
Tetrahedral geometry
  sp^3 hybridization, 58, 60
  VSEPR, 25–26
Tetrahedral intermediate, 754–756, 763, 775–776, 799
  Fischer esterification, 754–756
  hydrolysis of
    acid anhydrides, 780
    acyl chlorides, 776
    amides, 796–799
    esters, 784–785, 788–789, 808
^{9}-Tetrahydrocannabinol, 920–921, 997
Tetrahydrofuran, 122, 651
  acid-catalyzed cleavage, 659
  complex with borane, 232
  as solvent, 581
Tetrahydropyran, 651, 652
Tetrahymanol, 1023
2,2,6,6 tetramethylpiperidine-1-oxyl (TEMPO), 630
Tetramethylsilane, 517, 537–538
  chemical-shift ranges for protons, 518
Tetramethylsilane (TMS), 516
Tetrapeptide, 1030
Tetraterpene, 1005–1007
Thalidomide, 277
Theobromine, 1087
Thermochemistry, 83
Thermodynamic control
  addition of hydrogen bromide to 1,3-butadiene, 389–390
  Fries rearrangement, 924–925
  glycoside formation, 966
  Kolbe-Schmitt reaction, 925–926
Thermodynamics
  and addition-elimination equilibria, 228–230
  bioenergetics, 1092–1093
  and conformational equilibria, 113
Thermoplastic polymer, 1124
  properties, 1130
Thermosetting polymer, 1124
  properties, 1130
Thiazole, 441
Thiirane, 651
Thioesters
  acetyl coenzyme A, 817, 992–994
  nucleophilic acyl substitution in, 816–818
  resonance in, 817
Thioglycoside, 1081
Thiols, 614
  acidity, 634–635, 639
  oxidation, 635–636, 639
  physical properties, 634
  preparation, 636
Thionyl chloride, 14
  reactions
    with alcohols, 155, 169
    carboxylic acids, 468
Thiophene, 440, 490
Threo, stereochemical prefix, 283
L-Threonine, 1034
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1033
D-Threose, 949–950
L-Threose, 949–950
Thromboxanes, 1003
Thymidine, 1089
Thymine, 794, 1087, 1095
Thymol, 919–920
Thyroxine, 276

Tin, reduction of nitro groups by, 875, 898
Titanium(IV) isopropoxide, 661
Toluene, 406, 407
  bond dissociation enthalpy, 422
  nitration, 470–474, 488
  oxidation, 425
  physical properties, 917
p-Toluenesulfonic acid
  as acid catalyst, 704
  esters
    nucleophiic aliphatic substitution in, 329–331
    nucleophilic aromatic substitution in, 919–920
p-Toluenesulfonyl chloride, reaction with alcohols, 329, 333
o-Toluidine, 889–890
Torsional strain, 99, 123
  cycloalkanes, 106–110
  eclipsed conformation of butane, 101–102
  eclipsed conformation of ethane, 99
Torsion angle, 98–99
s-Trans conformation, 384
Transcription, 1101, 1103, 1114
Transformation, 1111
Transition metal organometallic compounds, 589–597
Transition state
  and activation energy, 100
  addition of bromine to alkenes, 236
  bimolecular elimination (E2), 202
  bimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N2), 153–154, 311–312, 334
  bond rotation in ethane, 100
  carbocation rearrangement, 194–195
  conversion of primary alcohols to primary alkyl halides, 153–154, 168
  Diels-Alder reaction, 391, 395
  double-bond rotation, 180–181
  free-radical halogenation, 165
  nucleophilic capture of carbocation, 146, 319
  oxonium ion dissociation, 145, 152–153
  proton transfer, 144, 150
  unimolecular nucleophilic substitution (S_N1), 147, 319
Translation, 1101, 1104–1105
Transmetalation, 596
Tranylcypromine, 902
Trichloromethane, 140, 156
cis-9-Tricosene, 367
Triethylamine, 864
Trifluoroacetic acid, 762
2,2,2-Trifluoroethanol, 37
Trifluoromethanesulfonic acid, 330
(Trifluoromethyl)benzene, nitration, 470–471, 474–476
Trifluralin, 505
Trigonal planar geometry
  and sp^2 hybridization, 146, 178–179, 410–411, 689–690
  and VSEPR, 24
Trigonal pyramidal geometry, 26
Trihalomethanes, biosynthesis of, 841
Trimethylamine, 863
  ^{1}H chemical shift, 517
2,2,4-Trimethylpentane
  chlorination, 174
Trimyristin, 787
Trinucleotide, 1094
Tripeptide, 1030
Triphenylamine, 865
Triphenylmethyl perchlorate, 421
Triphenylphosphine, 715–716
Triple bond, 9–10, 64, 87, 342–343, 344–346, 360. *See also* Bonds
  in benzyne, 508
Tristearin, 781, 994
Triterpenes, 1005–1007
  biosynthesis, 1010, 1013–1015
Trypsin, 1053
L-Tryptophan, 1034
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
Tsien, Roger, 1069
Tyrian purple, 48
L-Tyrosine, 1034, 1045
  formation from L-phenylalanine, 682–685
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032

U

Ubiquinone, 933
Ultraviolet-visible (UV-VIS) spectroscopy, 511, 553–555, 563
  alcohols, 638
  aldehydes and ketones, 720
  amines, 894–895
  carboxylic acids and derivatives, 761, 806
  ethers and epoxides, 672
  phenols, 934
Unimolecular
  elementary step, 145
  elimination, 192, 205–206
  nucleophilic substitution, 147, 168, 170, 317–322
United Nations Conference on the Human Environment, 630
Unshared pairs, 8
Uracil, 1087, 1116
Urey, Harold C., 754
Uridine, 1089
Uronic acids, 976–977
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 630

V

Vaccines, 981
Valence bond model, 53–56
Valence-bond theory, 64–65
Valence electrons, 5
  and Lewis structures, 8–9, 9*t,* 14, 16–17
Valence shell, 5
Valence-shell electron pair repulsion, and molecular geometry, 24*t,* 26, 27–28, 45
Valeric acid, 738
L-Valine, 1031
  isoelectric point, 1037
  structure and electrostatic potential map, 1032
L-Vancosamine, 965
Van der Waals forces
  attractive, 77–80
    and stability of isomeric alkanes, 83
  and protein structure, 1070
  repulsive, 80, 101–102, 111 (*See also* Van der Waals strain)
  stereoisomers, 114–115, 120, 185–186, 208
Van der Waals radius, 80, 87, 101
Van der Waals strain, 101–103, 123
  alkenes, 185–186, 208
  [10]annulene, 436
  axial substituents in cyclohexane, 110–112
  boat conformation of cyclohexane, 107–108
  butane, 101–102, 123–124
  S_N2 reactions, 313–315
  in stereoisomers, 114, 185–186, 208
Vane, John, 1002
Vanillin, 919–920
Van't Hoff, Jacobus, 262, 268
Venter, J. Craig, 1108
Vernolepin, 758
Vetiver and β-vetivone, 120
Viagra, 1074, 1091
Vibrations of methylene group, 545–547
Vicinal coupling, 527–528, 562
Vicinal dihalides. *See* Dihaloalkanes, vicinal
Vicinal diols, 621–622
  cyclic acetals from, 704
  oxidative cleavage, 977
  preparation, 621–622
  reaction with periodic acid, 633
Vinyl acetate, 359
Vinylacetylene, 344
Vinyl chloride, 46, 177, 183–184, 248, 359, 581, 1123
Vinyl group, 177
Vinylidene chloride, 1125
Vinylmagnesium chloride, 581
Vinyl polymers, 246
Visible light, 511–512
Vision, chemistry of, 710–711
Vitamins, 858
  A, 712–714, 1007
  B_6, 710
  B_{12}, 591
  D_3, 1016–1017
  K, 933
Vulcanization, 387, 1123, 1128–1130

W

Wallach, Otto, 1006
Water
  acidity and pK_a, 32, 34, 36, 347, 582–583
  bond angles, 26
  as a Brønsted acid, 31–32
  as a Brønsted base, 31, 39
  dipole moment, 137
  solubility of alcohols in, 140
  VSEPR and molecular geometry, 24*t*
Watson, James D., 1096–1098
Wave function, 3, 43
Wavenumber, 547
Waxes, 1001–1002, 1021
WebSpectra, 546
Wedge-andash structural formulas, 25–26, 98
Whitmore, F. C., 193

Wilkins, Maurice, 1095, 1096
Wilkinson, Geoffrey, 597, 601
Wilkinson's catalyst, 597–598
Williamson, Alexander, 657
Williamson ether synthesis, 657–659, 674, 926
Willson, Thomas L., 343
Wittig, Georg, 714
Wittig reaction, 714–716, 723
Wöhler, Friederich, 3
Wolff-Kishner reduction, 470, 695
Wood alcohol, 135, 615
Woodward, Robert B., 396, 644
Woodward-Hoffmann rules, 396, 402
Wool, 1067

X

Xanthophylls, 1019
X-ray crystallography and structure
  carbohydrates, 956–957, 958
  nucleic acids, 1096
  peptides, 1050, 1066–1067
  vitamin B_{12}, 591
X-rays, 512
m-Xylene, 412–413
  nitration, 485
o-Xylene, 412–413
p-Xylene, 412–413
  oxidation, 750
D-Xylose, 951
  furanose and pyranose forms, 131, 955
L-Xylulose, 962

Y

Yellow #5 and Yellow #6, 893
Yields in chemical reactions, 142
Ylides, 714–716
Yonath, Ada, 1104

Z

Z (abbrevation for benzyloxycarbonyl group), 1060
Z (stereochemical prefix), 181, 207
Z (symbol for atomic number), 3
Zaitsev, Alexander M., 190
Zaitsev's rule, 190, 198, 208–209
Zeaxanthyn, 1019
Zidovudine (AZT), 1106
Ziegler, Karl, 603–604
Ziegler-Natta catalyst, 293, 387, 603–604
Ziegler-Natta polymerization of alkenes, 592
Zigzag conformations of alkanes, 104
Zinc
  in carboxypeptidase A, 1071–1073
  in Clemmensen reduction, 469
  in synthesis of cyclopropanes, 587–588
Zingerone, 936
Zirconium, bis-cyclopentadiene complex catalyst in alkene polymerization, 604, 1132
Zwitterion, 1036–1037